CATHAL J. NOLAN

The Age of Wars of Religions, 1000–1650

An Encyclopedia of Global Warfare and Civilization

The Age of Wars of Religion, 1000–1650

The Age of Wars of Religion, 1000–1650

AN ENCYCLOPEDIA OF GLOBAL WARFARE AND CIVILIZATION

Volume 1, A–K

Cathal J. Nolan

Greenwood Encyclopedias of Modern World Wars

GREENWOOD PRESS
Westport, Connecticut • London

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Nolan, Cathal J.
The age of wars of religion, 1000–1650 : an encyclopedia of global warfare and civilization / Cathal J. Nolan.
p. cm.—(Greenwood encyclopedias of modern world wars)
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN 0–313–33045–X (set)—ISBN 0–313–33733–0 (vol. 1)—
ISBN 0–313–33734–9 (vol. 2)
1. Middle Ages—History—Encyclopedias. 2. History, Modern—17th century—Encyclopedias. 3. Military history, Medieval—Encyclopedias. 4. Military history, Modern—17th century—Encyclopedias. 5. Biography—Middle Ages, 500–1500—Encyclopedias. 6. Biography—17th century—Encyclopedias. I. Title.
D114.N66 2006
909.0703—dc22 2005031626

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data is available.

Copyright © 2006 by Cathal J. Nolan

All rights reserved. No portion of this book may be reproduced, by any process or technique, without the express written consent of the publisher.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 2005031626

ISBN: 0–313–33045–X (set)
0–313–33733–0 (vol. I)
0–313–33734–9 (vol. II)

First published in 2006

Greenwood Press, 88 Post Road West, Westport, CT 06881
An imprint of Greenwood Publishing Group, Inc.
www.greenwood.com

Printed in the United States of America

The paper used in this book complies with the Permanent Paper Standard issued by the National Information Standards Organization (Z39.48–1984).

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Covenants without swords are but words.

—Thomas Hobbes, *Leviathan* (1651)

You are engaged in God's service and in mine—which is the same thing.

—Philip II, of Spain

[The terms are] null and void, invalid, iniquitous, unjust, condemned, rejected, frivolous, without force or effect, and no one is to observe them, even when they be ratified by oath.

—Pope Innocent X,
On the articles of religious toleration in the *Peace of Westphalia* (1648)

Who brings famine? The army.
Who brings the plague? The army.
Who the sword? The army.
Who hinders trade? The army.
Who confounds all? The army.

—Hugh Peter,
A Word for the Army and Two Words to the Kingdome (1647)

Contents

List of Entries *ix*

Preface: Wars of Religion in History *xliii*

Author's Note *li*

Note on Dates *lix*

The Encyclopedia *1*

Chronology of Major Events *959*

Selected Bibliography *981*

Index *1021*

List of Entries

abatis
Abbas I (1571–1629)
Aceh
Acemi Oğlan
Acre, fall of (1291)
adarga
Aden
admiral
admiralty
Admiralty
Adwalton Moor, Battle of (1643)
Affair of the Placards (October 18, 1534)
Afghanistan
aftercastle
Agincourt, Battle of (October 25, 1415)
Agnadello, Battle of (May 14, 1509)
Ahlspiess
ailettes
Ain Jalut, Battle of (1260)
Aïr, Kingdom of
Akbar (1542–1605)
aketon
akincis/akinjis
Akritai
akutō
Alais, Peace of (June 28, 1629)
Alamut, Battle of (1234)
al-Andalus
Alarcos, Battle of (1195)
Alba, Don Fernando Álvarez de Toledo, duque de (1507–1582)
Albania
Albert, Archduke of Austria (1559–1621)
Albigensian Crusade (1208–1229)
d'Albuquerque, Alfonso de (1453–1515)
alcabala
alcancia
Alcántara, Battle of (August 25, 1580)
Alcántara, Knights of
Alcazarquivir, Battle of (August 4, 1578)
Alexandria, Siege of (1364)
alferes
Alfonso V (1432–1481)
Alfonso XI (1312–1350)
Alford, Battle of (July 2, 1645)
Algeciras, Siege of (1344)
Algiers
Alhama de Granada, Battle of (1482)
Ali Pasha
Aljubarrota, Battle of (August 14, 1385)
Alkmaar, Siege of (August 21–October 8, 1573)
alla moderna
Allerheim, Battle of (1645)
Almiranta
Almogavars
Almohads
Almoravids
Alte Feste, Siege of (August 24–September 18, 1632)
Altmark, Truce of (September 26, 1629)

List of Entries

Alton, Battle of (1643)
Alva
Alvarado, Pedro de (1485–1541)
Alwa
Amasya, Peace of (May 1555)
Amboise, Conspiracy of (March 1560)
Amboise, Peace of (1563)
Amiens, Siege of (1597)
ammunition
amphibious warfare
amsār
Anabaptism
Anatolia
ancient
Andorra, Principality of
Anegawa, Battle of (July 22, 1570)
Angola
Angora, Battle of
d'Anjou, duc (1555–1584)
Ankara, Battle of (July 20, 1402)
annates
Antichrist
anti-Semitism
Antwerp, Siege of (1584–1585)
Appanage system
appatis
Appenzell Wars (1403–1411)
Aquitaine
Arabs
Aragon
arbaleste
arbalétriers
Arbedo, Battle of (1422)
arceri
archers
Argentina
Argyll, Marquis of (1607–1661)
Arianism
aristocracy
arma
Armada Real (de la Guarda de la Carrera de los Indias)
Armagnacs
arme blanche
Armeé d'Allemagne
Armenia
armet
''Armies of the Religion on the Sea''
arming cap
arming doublet
Arminianism
armor
armories
Army of Flanders
Army of the Catholic League
Army of the States
Arnay-le-Duc, Battle of (June 26, 1570)
Arnim, Hans Georg von (1581–1641)
arquebus
arquebus à croc
arquebusiers
arquebusiers à cheval
Arques, Battle of (1303)
Arques, Battle of (September 21, 1589)
arrêt de cuirasse
arrière-ban
arrows
Arsenal of Venice
arsenals
Articles of War
artillery
artillery fortress
artillery towers
artillery train (1)
artillery train (2)
Art of War
ashigaru
askeri
Assassins
Assize of Arms
Astrakhan, Conquest of (1554–1556)
astrolabe
astrology
Atahualpa (c.1502–1533)
atlatl
atrocities
attrition
Augsburg, Peace of (September 25, 1555)
Augsburg Confession (1530)
'Auld Alliance
Auldearn, Battle of (May 9, 1645)
Auray, Battle of (1364)
Austria
Austrian Army
Auszug
auto de fe
auxiliaries
avariz

aventail
aventuriers
"Avignon Captivity" of the papacy (1314–1362)
Aviz, Order of
axes
Axtorna, Battle of (1565)
ayatollah
Ayn Jālut, Battle of (September 3, 1260)
Azaps
Azerbaijan
Azores
Aztec Empire

Babur (1483–1530)
bacinet
back-staff
Baden, Margrave George Frederick (1577–1622)
baggage train
Baghdad, Siege of (1638)
Bagirmi
Bahamas
bahşiş
bailey
bailli
bakufu
balance of power
baldric
balestrieri
balinger
balistae
balistarii equites
Balkh, Battle of (1602)
ballista
ballock
ballot
Baltic
bal yemez
Banbury, Battle of (1469)
bandeiras
bandolier
banduq
Banér, Johann (1596–1641)
ban et l'arrière-ban
banking
banner (*bannières*) (1)
banner (*bannières*) (2)
Banner (Swiss)
banneret
banner system (China/Manchuria)
banner system (Japan)
Bannockburn (June 24, 1314)
bannum
banquette
Barbados
Barbarossa (c.1483–1546)
Barbary corsairs
barber
barbican
barbuta
bard
barded horse
bardiche
barge
bark
Barletta, Battle of (1502)
Barnet, Battle of (1471)
Barons' Wars (1215–1217 and 1264–1267)
barony
Bärwalde, Treaty of (January 1631)
bascinet
Basel-Ferrara-Florence, Council of (1431, 1438, 1439)
Bashi-Bazouks
basilard
basilisk
bastard feudalism
bastard musket
bastille
bastion
Batavia
Báthory, Stefan (r.1575–1586)
battalion
battery (1)
battery (2)
battery (3)
battle (1)
battle (2)
battle-axe
battle cries
Bavaria
Bayezid I (r.1389–1402)
Bayezid II (1447–1512)
Bay of Seine, Battle of (1417)
bayonet
Béal Atha Buí, Battle of (1598)

beat the drum
Beaugé, Battle of (March 21, 1421)
beaver
beaver wars
bedel-i nüzul
Bedouin
beeldenstorm
beg
Beggars (“*Gueux*”)
Beijing, Fall of (1214)
Beijing, Fall of (1644)
Bektashi Order
Bektaşi Order
belatores
beldar
belfry
Belgium Nostrum
Belgrade, Siege of (1456)
Belgrade, Siege of (1521)
bellum hostile
bellum justum
bellum se ipse alet
Benburb, Battle of (1646)
Benevento, Battle of (1266)
Benin, Kingdom of
Berbers
Bergen-op-Zoom, Siege of (1622)
Bergerac, Peace of (September 17, 1577)
Bergfreid
Bernardines
Bernard of Clairvaux (1090–1153)
Bernhard von Sachsen-Weimar (1604–1639)
besagaws
besonios
Bestallungbrief
Bethlen, Gabriel (1580–1629)
bevor
bey
Beyliks
Bhutan
Bicocca, Battle of (1522)
bill
billhook
birlin
Biscuits, Battle of (1594)
Bishops’ War, First (1639)
Bishops’ War, Second (1640–1641)
Black Bands
Black Company
Black Death
Black Guard
Black Legend
Black Prince (1330–1376)
Black Riders (*Schwartzenreiter*)
Blackwater River, Battle of (1598)
Blake, Robert (1599–1657)
blockade
blockship
Blois, Treaties of (1504–1505)
Blore Heath, Battle of (1459)
blunderbuss
boarding
boatswain
boatswain’s mate
Böblingen, Battle of (1525)
Bocskay Rebellion (1604–1606)
bodkin
Bogomil heresy
Bohemia
Bohemian Brethren
Boisot, Louis (c.1530–1576)
bolt
bomba
bombard
bombardetta
bombardier (1)
bombardier (2)
bonaventure
Bondetal
bonfire of the vanities
Bonnets Rouges
boom
booty
Bornholm, Battle of (August 1457)
Bornu
Boroughbridge, Battle of (March 16, 1322)
Bosnia
Bostancilar
Bosworth, Battle of (1485)
boulevard
Boulogne, Siege of (August–September 1544)
Bourbon, Charles, duc de (1490–1527)
Bourbon dynasty
Bouvines, Battle of (1214)
bow(ing)

bowlines
bows
bowsprit
boyars (Russia)
boyars (Ruthenia)
boyars (Ukraine)
boys
bracer
bracers
Braddock Down, Battle of (1643)
Branxton, Battle of (1513)
brayette
Brazil
breach
Breda, Siege of (1625)
breech
breeching
breech-loader
Bregenz, Battle of (1408)
breidex
Breitenfeld, First (September 17, 1631)
Breitenfeld, Second (November 2, 1642)
Brentford, Battle of (1642)
Brest, Union of
bretasche
Brétigny, Treaty of (1360)
Breton Succession, War of (1341–1365)
brevet
Brielle, Battle of (April 1, 1572)
brig (1)
brig (2)
brigade
brigandine
brigantine (1)
brigantine (2)
Brill (Brielle), Battle of (April 1, 1572)
British Army
broadhead arrow
broadside
Brömsebro, Peace of (August 1645)
brown bill
Bruce, Robert (1274–1329)
Brunkeberg, Battle of (1471)
Brustem, Battle of (October 28, 1467)
buccaneers
Buckingham, 1st Duke of (1592–1628)
buckler
Bucquoy, Count de (1571–1621)
Buddhism
Buenos Aires
buff coats
Bukhara, Battle of (1220)
Bulgaria
bullets
bullionism
burden (''burthen'')
Bureau, Jean (1390–1463) and Gaspard (d.1470)
Burgundian-French War (1474–1477)
Burgundian-Swiss War (1474–1477)
Burgundy, Duchy of
Burma
Burnt Candlemas (1356)
Bursa, Siege of (1317–1326)
busby
bushidō
Byland, Battle of (1322)
byrnie
Byzantine Empire

cabasset
Cadiz, Raid on (1587)
Cadiz, Raid on (1596)
Cadiz, Raid on (1625)
Cairo, Sack of (1517)
Calais
Calatrava, Knights of
Calicut, Battle of (March 18, 1506)
caliph
caliphate
caliver
Calixtines
caltrop
Calven, Battle of (May 22, 1499)
Calvin, Jean (1509–1564)
Calvinism
Cambrai, League of (1508–1510)
Cambrai, Treaty of (1529)
camels
camino francés
camp followers
Canada
Canary Islands
canister shot
cannibalism
cannon
cannonballs
cannon-royal

cannon-serpentine
cañon
cañon de batir
caparison
Capitana
capitulations
capo de squadra
caprison
capsquare
captain
capture
Capuciati
caracole
Carafa War (1556–1557)
caravel
Carberry Hill, Battle of (1567)
Carbiesdale, Battle of (April 27, 1650)
carbine
carbiniers
Cardinal of Lorraine
Carmagnola, Francesco Bussone (1390–1432)
carpenter
carrack
carreaux
carroccio
cartridges
carvel
casemate
casement
case shot
Casimir III (1310–1370)
Casimir IV (1427–1492)
Cassel, Battle of (August 1328)
Castagnaro, Battle of (1387)
Castelnaudary, Battle of (September 1, 1632)
Castile
Castillon, Battle of (July 17, 1453)
casting
castles, on land
castles, on ships
castle towns
Castra Dei
casualties
cat (“*chatte*”)
Catalan Great Company
Catalonia, Revolt of (1640)
catapult
Cateau-Cambrésis, Peace of (April 2–3, 1559)
Cathars
Catherine de Medici
Catholic Church
Catholic League (France)
Catholic League (Germany)
Catholic Reformation
cavalgada
cavalier (1)
cavalier (2)
Cavaliers
cavalry
Cebelu
Cebici başi
Cebicis (*cebicilar*)
Cecil, William (1520–1598)
Cecora (Ţuţora), Battle of (November 20, 1620)
Celâli Revolts
celata
Les Cent-Suisses
Ceresole, Battle of (1544)
Cerignola, Battle of (April 21, 1503)
Český-Brod, Battle of (May 30, 1434)
Ceuta
chaiky
chain shot
Chaldiran, Battle of (August 23, 1514)
Chalgrove Field, Battle of (1643)
chamber
chambre ardente
Champlain, Samuel de (1567–1635)
chanfron
chapel-de-fer
char-aina
Charles I, of England (1600–1649)
Charles II, of England (1630–1685)
Charles V, Holy Roman Emperor (1500–1558)
Charles VII, of France (1403–1461, r.1429–1461)
Charles VIII, of France (1470–1498, r.1483–1498)
Charles IX, of France (1550–1574)
Charles IX, of Sweden
Charles de Lorraine (1524–1574)
Charles the Rash (1433–1477)
charter colony

charter company
chase gun(s)
Chastillon, Battle of (1453)
Châteauneuf-de-Randon, Fall of (1380)
Châtillon
Chaul, Siege of (1571)
chausses
chauve-souris
chemin de ronde
Chemnitz, Battle of (April 14, 1638)
Cherasco, Peace of (1631)
Cheriton, Battle of (1644)
chertva lines
chevalier
chevauchée
chevaux de frise
chevaux-légers
Chiksan, Battle of (1597)
child-mother gun
Chile
chimalli
China
Chinese armies
Chinggisid Empire
Chinggis Khan (1162–1227)
chivalry
Chocim, Battle of (1621)
Chodkiewicz, Jan Karol (1561–1621)
Chojnice, Battle of (September 18, 1454)
choragiew
Christendom
Christian Brotherhood
Christian humanism
Christianity
Christian IV (1588–1648)
Christian of Anhalt-Bernburg (1568–1630)
Christian of Brunswick (1598–1626)
El Cid
cihuacoatl
cimarónes
Cinque Ports
Circles (of the Holy Roman Empire)
circumvallation
citadel
çit palankasi
city-states
civilians
Civitate, Battle of (1053)
claymore
Clermont, Battle of (1358)
clinker-built
Clontibret, Battle of (1595)
close-fights
close-haul
close order
close-quarters
club men
coaster
"coat-and-conduct" money
coat of plates
cocha
cog
Cognac, League of (1527)
coiffe-de-maille
Colchester, Battle of (1648)
Coligny, Gaspard de (1549–1572)
colonel
colonialism
columbrina ad manum
combat
commandery
Committee of Both Kingdoms
Commonwealth of the Two Nations
communis exercitus
compagnies de l'ordonnance (du roi)
company
compass
composite bow
Comyn Wars (1297–1304)
Condé, Henri I, de Bourbon (1552–1588)
Condé, Henri II, de Bourbon (1588–1646)
Condé, Louis de Bourbon (1530–1569)
Condé, Louis II, de Bourbon (1621–1686)
condottieri
conestabularia
Confederate Army
Confederation of Kilkenny (May 10, 1641)
Confessio Augustana (1530)
confessionalism
confraternities
confratres

confrère knights
Confucianism
Congo
Congregatio de Propaganda Fidei
Conitz
conquistadores
conrois
conscription
consorterie
Conspiracy of Amboise
constable
Constable of France
Constabulary
Constance, Council of (1414–1418)
Constantinople, Sack of (1204)
Constantinople, Siege of (April 5–May 29, 1453)
continuous bullet gun
contravallation
contributions
conversos
convoy
Coptic Church
Çorbasi
Córdoba, Battle of (1236)
Córdoba, Caliphate of
Córdoba, Gonzalo di (1453–1515)
corned gunpowder
cornet (1)
cornet (2)
cornette (1)
cornette (2)
corning/corned gunpowder
coronal
coronation wars
coronelia
corporal
Corpus Catholicorum
Corpus Christi
Corpus Evangelicorum
corpus mysticum
corsair
Cortes
Cortés, Hernán (1485–1547)
Cossacks
couched lance
coudières
couleuveriniers
coulverin à main
coulverine
coulverines enfustées
Council of Blood
Council of Ten
Council of the Indies
Council of Trent (1545–1563)
Council of Troubles
counter-castle
counter-guard (1)
counter-guard (2)
counter-march
counter-mining
Counter-Reformation
counterscarp
counter-sinking
coureurs
courser
courtaux
Courtrai (Kortrijk), Battle of (July 11, 1302)
couseque
couters (*coudières*)
coutillers
Coutras, Battle of (October 20, 1587)
Covenanters
covered way
"Cowardice Peace" (1328)
coxswain
Cracow, Battle of (1241)
Cracow, Peace of (1525)
cranequin
crapadeaux
Crécy, Battle of (August 26, 1346)
crenel
Crete
crinet
Croatia
cromster
Cromwell, Oliver (1599–1658)
Cromwell, Thomas (c.1485–1540)
Cropedy Bridge, Battle of (1644)
Croquants
crossbow
crossbow à croc
crossbow à jalet
cross-staff
crouching tiger
crownwork
cruising

crupper
Crusades
cruzada
cuartel general
cuirass
cuirassier
cuir-bouilli
cuisses (*cuissart*)
cuius regio eius religio
culebrina
cultellus
culverin
culverin-bastard
culverin-moyenne
culverin-royal
curtain wall
Cyprus
Czasniki, Battle of (1564)

dag
daggers
daimyo
Danubian principalities
Danzig
Dar al-Harb
Dar al-Islam
dastana
Day of the Barricades (May 12, 1588)
deadmen's eyes
dead-pays
dead reckoning
Declaratio Ferdinandei
"Defenestration of Prague" (1419)
"Defenestration of Prague" (May 23, 1618)
defilade
Delhi, Sack of (1398)
Delhi Sultanate (c.1200–1526)
demi-bastion
demi-cannon
demi-culverin
demi-lancers
demi-lune
demi-saker
demurrage
Denmark
Derbençi
desertion
Deshima
Dessau Bridge, Battle of (April 25, 1626)
destrier
Deulino, Truce of (January 1619)
Deutschorden
Deutschritter
Deventer, Siege of (1591)
dévotes/dévots
Devşirme system
dey
dhal
dhow
dice shot
Diet of Worms (1495)
Diet of Worms (1507)
Diet of Worms (1521)
dirlik yememiş
Dirshau, Battle of (October 17–18, 1627)
discipline
disease
Dithmarscher
Diu
Diu, Battle of (February 2, 1509)
divanî hizmet
divine fire-arrow
dolman
do-maru
Dominum Maris Baltici
Donauwörth
Donauwörth Incident (1607)
donjon
Don Juan of Austria (1547–1578)
Doppelgänger
Doppelhacken
Doppelsöldner
Doria, Andrea (1468–1560)
Doria, Gian Andrea (1539–1606)
Dornach, Battle of (July 22, 1499)
Dorpat, Battle of (1501)
Dorpat, Sack of (January 1558)
double cannon
double volley
doubling the ranks
Dover, Battle of (August 24, 1217)
The Downs, Battle of (October 11/21, 1639)
dragoons
drake
Drake, Francis (1540–1596)
Drang nach Osten

drekkar/drekki
Dreux, Battle of (December 19, 1562)
drill
Drogheda, Sack of (September 11, 1649)
dromon
drums
Druse
druzhyna
Dunbar, Battle of (April 27, 1296)
Dunbar, Battle of (September 3, 1650)
Dungan's Hill, Battle of (1647)
Dupplin Moor, Battle of (1332)
Dutch Army
Dutch exercises
Dutch musket
Dutch Revolt
dziesietniks

eagle knight
Eastern Army
Eastern Association Army
Eastern Route Army
East India Company (EIC)
East Prussia
East Stoke, Battle of (1487)
Ecorcheurs
Ecumenical Councils
Edgecote Moor, Battle of (1470)
edged weapons
Edgehill, Battle of (October 23, 1642)
Edict of Alès (June 28, 1629)
Edict of Amboise (March 19, 1563)
Edict of Beaulieu (May 6, 1576)
Edict of Châteaubriant (1551)
Edict of January (1562)
Edict of Longjumeau (March 1568)
Edict of Nantes (April 13, 1598)
Edict of Restitution (June 1617)
Edict of Restitution (March 28, 1629)
Edict of Saint-Germain (January 17, 1562)
Edict of Saint-Germain-en-Laye (August 8, 1570)
Edict of Toleration (1562)
Edict of Union (July 1588)
Edward I (1239–1307)
Edward II (1284–1327)
Edward III (1312–1377)
Edward IV (1442–1483)
Edward VI (1537–1553)
Effingham, Admiral Lord Howard of (1536–1624)
Egmont, Lamoral Graaf van (1522–1568)
Egypt
Eighty Years' War (1568–1648)
einschildig Ritter
Elbing, Battle of (September 15, 1463)
El Dorado
elephants
Elizabeth I (1533–1603)
embargo
emir
enarmes
enceinte
encomienda
enfilade
engagements
engineers
England
English armies
English Civil Wars (1639–1651)
English Fury (April 1580)
Enrique the Navigator (1394–1460)
enseigne
ensign
"Enterprise of England" (1588)
epaulière
equine armor
equitatores
equites
Erasmus (1466–1536)
Erastianism
Ermes, Battle of (1560)
esame
escarp
escutcheon
esmeril
espaliers
esplanade (1)
esplanade (2)
espringarda
esquire
Essex, 2nd Earl of (1566–1601)
Essex, 3rd Earl of (1591–1646)
Estates
étapes
Eternal Peace (1533)

Ethiopia (Abyssinia)
eunuchs
Everlasting League
Evesham, Battle of (1265)
exact militia
expeditio ultra Alpes
Exploration, Age of
expulsion of the Jews (from Iberia)
expulsion of the Moors (from Iberia)
Eyâlet Askerleri
eyâlet-i Budin

facings
factory
Fähnlein
Fairfax, Thomas (1612–1671)
falchion
falcon
falconete
Falkirk, Battle of (July 22, 1298)
"False Dimitri"
Famagusta, Siege of (1570–1571)
familia
familiares ad arma
famine, as a weapon of war
Farangi
Farnesse, Alexander
fascine
Fastolf, John (d.1459)
Fatamids
fathom
fauld
Feldarzt
Feldobrist
Feldweibel
Ferdinand I, Holy Roman Emperor (1503–1564)
Ferdinand II, Holy Roman Emperor (1578–1637)
Ferdinand II, of Aragon (1452–1516) and Isabella I, of Castile (1451–1504)
Ferdinand III, Holy Roman Emperor (1608–1657)
Ferdinand V, of Castile
Ferrybridge, Battle of (1461)
feudalism
fief
fief de chambre
field artillery
field fortifications and obstacles
Field Marshal
"Field of the Cloth of Gold" (1520)
Fifteen Years' War (1591–1606)
Fifth Monarchists
fire
firearms
fire-lance
firepots
fireships
firing on the roll
fitna
flagellants
flags
flagship
flails
flanchard(s)
Flanders
Fleurus, Battle of (August 29, 1622)
flintlock
Flodden Field, Battle of (September 9, 1513)
Florence
Flores, Battle of (1591)
flota
flower wars
fodder
Foix, Gaston de, duc de Nemours (1489–1512)
folangji
Fontainebleau, Treaty of (May 1631)
Fontaine-Francaise, Battle of (June 5, 1595)
food
foot ropes
forecastle
Foreign Contingent
Forest Cantons
forged guns
Forlorn Hope
Formigny, Battle of (April 15, 1450)
Formula of Concord (1577–1578)
Fornovo, Battle of (July 6, 1495)
Fort Caroline
fortification
foundries
Fra
franc-archers

France
Franche-Comté
Francis I (1494–1547)
Francis II (1544–1560)
François I
François II
Franco–Spanish War (1595–1598)
Franco–Spanish Wars (1494–1559)
Frankenhausen, Battle of (1525)
Frankfurt-an-der-Oder, Storming of (1631)
Franks
Frastenz, Battle of (April 20, 1499)
free cities
Free Companies
freedom of the seas
free quarter
Freiburg, Battle of (August 3–10, 1644)
French armies
French Civil Wars (1562–1629)
Frey
Friedrich I (c.1125–1190)
Friedrich V (1596–1632)
frigate (1)
frigate (2)
Frobisher, Martin (1539–1594)
front (1)
front (2)
fryd
Fugger, House of
Fujian ships
Fulbe (Fulani)
Funj Sultanate
Fürstenberg, Count
Fürstenverschwörung
Fürth, Battle of (1632)
fuses
fusiliers de taille
fusta

gabions
gadlings
gaff
Gainsborough, Battle of (1643)
"galeones"
galets
galleass
galleon
galley
galley slaves
Gallican Church
Gallican crisis
galliot
galloglass
galloper gun
gambeson
Gambia
ganimet
gardebraces
Gardetal
Garigliano River, Battle of (December 28, 1503)
garrisons
garrots
gauntlets
Gazi
gekokujō
Gembloux, Battle of (January 31, 1578)
gendarmerie
gen d'armes
general
General at Sea
Generalfeldobrist
Generality
Generallissimus
Generalobrist
general officer
genitors
Genoa
genouillières
Gentili, Alberico (1552–1608)
Georg, Johann (1611–1656)
Georg Wilhelm, of Brandenburg (1619–1640)
German brigade
German Peasant War (1525)
Germany
Gevierthaufen
Gewalthut
ghaz
ghazi
ghulams
Gibraltar
Gibraltar, Battle of (April 25, 1607)
Giornico, Battle of (December 28, 1478)
gisarmes
Giza, Battle of (April 2, 1517)

glacis
glaive
Glyndŵr's Rebellion (1401–1406)
Goa, Seizure of (1510)
goat's foot lever
Godunov, Boris Fyodorovich (c.1552–1605)
goedendag
Golden Bull (1356)
Golden Bull of Rimini (1223)
Golden Horde
gomeres
Gonzaga, Giovanni (1466–1519)
gorget
Grace of Alais (1629)
graffle
Granada
Grand Parti de Lyon
Grandson, Battle of (March 2, 1476)
Grand Vezier (*Vezir-i Azam*)
Grantham, Battle of (1643)
grapeshot
Graubünden
Gravelines, Battle of (July 13, 1558)
Gravelines, Battle of (August 8, 1588)
Great Apostasy
Great Condé
Great Enterprise (1521–1522)
Great Galley
Great Helm
Great Interregnum (1250–1273)
Great Schism (1378–1417)
Great Ships
Great Swabian League
Great Wall
"Great War" (1409–1411)
Great Zimbabwe
greaves
Greece
Greek fire
grenades
Grenville, Richard (1542–1591)
Grey, Lady Jane (1537–1554)
The Grisons
Grotius, Hugo (1583–1645)
Grünhag
Grunwald, Battle of (1410)
Guangdong
guardas reales
guastatores
Guelphs and Ghibellines
Guerra Arciducale (1615)
guerra dels segadors
guerre couverte
guerre d'usure
guerre guerroyante
guerre mortelle
guerriers de Dieu
guerrilla warfare
Guinegate, Battle of (1513)
guisarmes
Guise, Charles, Cardinal de Lorraine (1524–1574)
Guise, Charles de Lorraine (1554–1611)
Guise, François, duc de Lorraine (1519–1563)
Guise, Henri, duc de Lorraine (1550–1588)
Guise family
Gujarat
gun carriages
gun-deck
gun metal
gunner
Gunner's Mark
gunner's quadrant
gunner's rule
gunnery
gun port
gunpowder empires
gunpowder revolution
gunpowder weapons
gun tackle
Gur states
Gustavus I (1496–1560)
Gustavus II Adolphus (1594–1632)

Haarlem, Siege of (December 11, 1572–July 12, 1573)
habergeon
Habsburgs
hackbut
hackbutters
hackney
hagbutters
Hague Alliance (December 9, 1625)
Haiduks
hail shot

Haiti
Hakata (Hakozaki) Bay, Battle of (1274)
Hakata (Hakozaki) Bay, Battle of (1281)
hakenbüsche
haketon
halberd
halberdiers
half-pike
Halidon Hill, Battle of (July 19, 1333)
Hamburg, Treaty of (March 15, 1638)
han
hand cannon
hanger
Hansa
Hanse
Hanseatic League
Hara Castle, massacre of Christians at (1638)
haramaki
Harfleur, Battle of (1416)
harness
harquebus
Harsthörner
Hashemites
Hastings, Battle of (1066)
hata jirushi
hatamoto
hauberk
Haudenosaunee
Haufen
haul close
haul wind
Hauptmann
Hauptstuke
Hausa
havoc radius
Hawkwood, John (d.1394)
Hawkyns, John (1532–1595)
heave to
heavy cavalry
Hedgely Moor, Battle of (1464)
Heemskerk, Jacob van
Heerschild
Heerschildordnung
Heilbronn, League of
Heiligerlee, Battle of (1568)
Hejaz
Hellburners
helm
helmets
Helvetian Confederation
Hemmingstedt, Battle of (1500)
Hendrik, Frederik (1584–1647)
Henri de Navarre
Henri II, of France (1519–1559)
Henri III, of France (1551–1589)
Henri IV, of France (1553–1610)
Henry the Navigator
Henry V, of England (1387–1422)
Henry VIII, of England (1491–1547)
herald
Herat, Battle of (1221)
Herat, Battle of (1598)
heresy
Héricourt, Battle of (November 13, 1474)
Hermandad(es)
hermangildas
Herrings, Battle of the (1429)
hetman (*otaman*)
Hexham, Battle of (1464)
Highland galley
hijra
Hinduism
Hispaniola
hobelars
Hochmeister
Höchst, Battle of (June 20, 1622)
Hofkriegsrat
Hohenzollern
Holk, Heinrich (1599–1633)
Holy Lands
Holy League (France)
Holy League (Italy)
Holy Office
Holy Places
Holy Roman Empire (of the German Nation)
Holy Union
"holy war"
Holy Water Sprinkler
Homildon Hill, Battle of (1402)
homosexuality
Homs, Battle of (1281)
Honganji fortress, Siege of (1570–1580)
Hongwu emperor (r.1368–1398)
Honigfelde, Battle of (1629)
honjō

hook gun
hoop-and-stave method
Hopton, Ralph (1598–1652)
Horasani technique
Hormuz
hornwork
horo
hors de combat
horse
horse armor
horseman's axe
horses
Hospitallers
hostage-taking
Hotin, Battle of (1621)
hot shot
housecarls
Howard, Charles (1536–1624)
howdah
Hsiang-Yang, Siege of (1268–1273)
Huguenots
hulk
Hunderpanzer
Hundred Years' War (1337–1453)
Hungarian Army
Hungary
Hung Taiji (d.1643)
Hunyadi, János (c.1407–1456)
Hurenweibel
Hus, Jan (1369–1415)
hussars
Hussite Wars (1419–1478)

ichcahuipilli
iconoclasm
Ifriqiya
Ikkō-ikki
Île de Ré, Siege of (July–October, 1627)
Il-Khans
imam
Imperial Army (of the Holy Roman Empire)
Imperial Diet
impressment
Inca Empire
incastellamento
incendiaries
indentures for war
Index Librorum Prohibitorium
India
Indian (subcontinental) armies
Indian Wars (Mexico, Central and South America)
Indian Wars (North America)
indulgences
inermis
infantry
Inner Asia
Innocent III (1198–1216)
Inquisition (1478–1834)
intelligence
interior lines (of operations)
Inverlochy, Battle of (February 2, 1645)
Invincible Armada (1588)
invincible generalissimo
Iran (Persia)
Iraq
Ireland
Ireton, Henry (1611–1651)
Ironsides
Iroquois Confederacy
Isabella I (1451–1504)
ishan
Islam
Ismaili
Italian armies
Italian Renaissance
Italian traces
Italian Wars (1494–1559)
Italic League (1454–1494)
Italy
itqa
Ivan III (1440–1505)
Ivan IV (1530–1584)
Ivry-la-Bataille, Battle of (March 14, 1590)

jack
Jacob's staff
Jacquerie (1358)
Jagiello dynasty
jaguar knight
jamber
James I and VI (1566–1625)
Jamestown
Jand, Battle of (1240)
Janissary Corps
Jankov, Battle of (March 6, 1645)

Jansenism
Japan
Jargeau, Battle of (1429)
Jarnac, Battle of (March 13, 1569)
Java
Jeanne d'Arc (1412–1431)
Jemmingen, Battle of (July 21, 1568)
jeniçeri Ocak
Jerusalem
Jesuits
Jews
jihad
jinetes
jizya
Johannitterorden
John Company
Joinville, Treaty of (December 31, 1584)
jōkaku
jōkamachi
Juan of Austria
Jülich-Kleve, Crisis over (1609–1614)
Julius III (r.1549–1555)
junk
Junkers
jupon
Jürchen
jus ad bellum
jus armorum
jus emigrandi
jus in bello
jus pacis et belli
justification by faith
just war tradition

kabuto
kaffir
kaim mekam
Kakure Kirishitan
kale
Kallo, Battle of (1638)
Kalmar, Union of
Kalmar War (1611–1613)
kamikaze
Kandurcha, Battle of (1391)
Kanem
Kapikulu
Kapikulu Askerleri
Kappel, Battle of (October 11, 1531)
Kapudan-i Derya
kapu kulu
karacena
Karl IX (1550–1611)
Karrenbüchsen
karr-wa-farr
Karsthans
Katzbalger
Kazan
Kazan, Conquest of (1552)
keel-haul
keep
keep-and-bailey
kenshin
Kephissos, Battle of (1311)
Keresztes, Battle of (1596)
kerne
kettle-hat
Khanua, Battle of (1527)
Khanwa, Battle of (March 16–17, 1527)
Khotyn, Battle of (September 21–October 9, 1621)
kieko
Kievan Rus
Kildare Rebellion (1534–1535)
Kilsyth, Battle of (August 15, 1645)
"King's Two Bodies"
Kinsale, Battle of (1601)
Kirishitan
Kirishitan Shumon Aratame Yaku
Kirkholm, Battle of (September 27, 1605)
kizilbash
Klozbüchse
Klushino, Battle of (1610)
Knabenschaften
Knäred, Peace of (1613)
Knechte
knight
knighthood
knight marshal
Knights Hospitaller
Knights in the Service of God in Prussia
Knights of Alcántara
Knights of Aviz
Knights of Calatrava
Knights of Christ
Knights of Malta
Knights of Our Lady of Montesa
Knights of Our Lady of Montjoie

Knights of San Julián de Pereiro
Knights of Santa Maria
Knights of Santiago
Knights of Santo Stefano
Knights of St. George
Knights of St. James of the Sword
Knights of St. John of the Hospital
Knights of St. Lazarus
Knights of St. Thomas Acon
Knights of the Sword
Knights of Trufac
Knights Templar
Knights' War (1522–1523)
knocking
Knocknanuss, Battle of (1647)
Knollen
knot
Knox, John (c.1513–1572)
Komaki-Nagakute, Battle of (1584)
Konfessionalisierung
Kongo, Kingdom of
Königshofen, Battle of (1525)
Konitz
köprücu
Korea
Kosovo, Battle of (June 20, 1389)
Kosovo Polje, Battle of (October 16–17, 1448)
kote
Kreise
Kreisoberst
Kremlin
Krevo, Union of (1385)
Kriegskasse
Kringen, Battle of (1612)
kubi jikken
Kublai Khan (1214–1294)
kul
kulah
Kulikovo, Battle of (1380)
kumade
Kur'aci
Kurds
Kurfürsten
kurofune
Kutná Hora, Battle of (January 6, 1422)

La Bicocca, Battle of (April 27, 1522)
La Forbie, Battle of (1244)
lağimci
Lake Boyang, Battle of (1363)
lamellar armor
lance (1)
lance (2)
lance (3)
lance-rest
lanceri
lancers
Landesabwehr
Landesaufgebot
Landsdown Hill, Battle of (1643)
Landsknechte
Landstrum
Landwehr
Landwere
Langport, Battle of (1645)
Langside, Battle of (1568)
"Lanowa" infantry
Lansdowne, Battle of (1643)
lansquenets
Lanze
lanze spezzate
La Rochelle
Las Navas de Tolosa, Battle of (1212)
last
lateen sails
launciers
Laupen, Battle of (1339)
Laws of Olèron
laws of war
league
League of Public Weal
"leather guns"
Lech, Battle of (1632)
legharnesses
Lehnsaufgebot
Leicester, Earl of (c.1530–1588)
Leiden, Siege of (May 26–October 3, 1574)
Leipheim, Battle of (1525)
Leipziger Bund (1631)
Lens, Battle of (August 2, 1648)
Leonardo da Vinci (1452–1519)
Lepanto, Battle of (July 28, 1499)
Lepanto, Battle of (October 7, 1571)
Lerma, Duke of (1553–1625)
Les Espagnols sur Mer, Battle of (1350)
Leslie, Alexander

Leslie, David (1601–1682)
Leslie, Walter (1606–1667)
Le Tellier, Michel (1603–1685)
letters of marque
letters of reprisal
lettres de retenue
Letzinen
Levellers
Leven, Earl of (c.1580–1661)
levend/levendat
Lewes, Battle of (1264)
Liegnitz, Battle of (1241)
lieutenant
Lieutenant-General (Germany)
Lieutenant-général du royaume (''of the kingdom'')
Liga
light cavalry
limacon
line abreast
line ahead
line ahead and astern
line astern
line of battle
Line of Demarcation (May 4, 1493)
line of march
line of metal
lines of circumvallation
lines of communication
lines of contravallation
lines of investment
lines of operations
lines of supply
Linköping, Battle of (1598)
linstock
Lipany, Battle of (1434)
Lipsius, Justus (1547–1606)
Lisowczyks
Lithuania, Grand Duchy of
living off the land
Livonia
Livonian Order
Livonian War (1558–1583)
Lobsters
lochaber axe
locks (on firearms)
locumentems
Lodewijk, Willem (1560–1620)
lodgement
Lodi, Peace of (1454)
logistics
Loja, Battle of (1486)
Lollard Knights
Lollards
lombarda
longboat
longbow
longship
Long War (1593–1606)
Lord High Admiral
Lordship
Lorraine
Lorraine, Charles, Cardinal of (1524–1574)
Lorraine, Charles, duc de Mayenne (1554–1611)
Lose-coat Field, Battle of (1470)
Lostwithiel, Battle of (1644)
Loudon Hill, Battle of (1307)
Louis de Bourbon
Louis of Nassau (1538–1574)
Louis XI (1423–1483)
Louis XII (1462–1515)
Louis XIII (1601–1643)
Lübeck, Peace of (July 7, 1629)
Lublin, Union of (1569)
Ludford, Bridge, Battle of (1459)
Luther, Martin (1483–1546)
Lutheranism
Lutter-am-Barenberg, Battle of (August 17/27, 1626)
Lützen, Battle of (November 6, 1632)
lymphad
Lyon, League of (February 1623)
Lyon, Treaty of (1601)

Maastricht, Siege of (1579)
Maastricht, Siege of (June–August 1632)
Macao
mace
Machiavelli, Niccolò di Bernardo (1469–1527)
machicolation
Madrid, Treaty of (1526)
madu
magazines
Magdeburg, Sack of (May 20, 1631)
Maghreb
maghribis

magnus equus
mahdi
mail
mail-tippet
main-gauche
maître de camp
Majapahit
make sail
Malacca
Málaga, Siege of (1487)
Malaya
Malcontents (Flanders)
Malcontents (France)
Mali Empire
Malinche, La (c.1505–1529)
Malta
Mamlūks
Manchester, Earl of (1602–1671)
Manchuria
Manchus
mandate of heaven
mandrel
maneuvers
mangonel
Mannschaftsrodel
man-of-war
mansabdari
Mansfeld, Count Ernst Graf von (1580–1626)
manteletes
Manzikert, Battle of (1071)
maps
marabout
Marathas
March
maréchal de camp
maréchal de logis
Mared, Battle of (1564)
Margaret of Parma (1522–1586)
Margate, Battle of (1387)
Marienburg (Malbork), Fortress of
Marignano, Battle of (September 13–14, 1515)
Marind dynasty
marines
Maritza River, Battle of (September 26, 1371)
Marj Dabiq, Battle of (August 24, 1516)
maroons
marshal
Marston Moor, Battle of (July 2, 1644)
martial music
martinet
Martinique
Martolos
Mary I (of England)
maryol taifesi
Mary Stuart, Queen of Scots (1542–1587)
Mary Tudor (1516–1558)
Masaniello
masnada
masse
masse d'armes
master
master carpenter
master gunner
master's mate
masts
match
matchcord
matchlock
mate
Matthias (1458–1490)
Matthias (1557–1619)
mattross
Maurice of Nassau
Maurits of Nassau (1567–1625)
Maximilian I (1459–1519)
Maximilian I, of Bavaria (1573–1651)
Maximilian II (1527–1576)
Mayenne, duc de (1554–1611)
Mazarin, Jules (1602–1661)
Mecklenburg, Duchy of
media culebrina
media falconeta
media sacre
Medici
Medici, Catherine de (1519–1589)
Medici, Marie de (1573–1642)
Medina Sidonia, duque de (1550–1615)
Mediterranean system (of war at sea)
Mehemet I
Mehemet II
Melegnano, Battle of (1515)
Melilla
Melo, Francisco di (1608–1666)
Meloria, Battle of (1284)

men-at-arms
mendum
menzil-hane supply system
mercenaries
Mercy, Franz von (1590–1645)
Mergentheim, Battle of (May 2, 1645)
merlon
Mesopotamia
Mestre
mestres de camp
Methven, Battle of (1306)
Metz, Fortress of
Mewe, Battle of (1626)
Mexico
Mezókeresztes, Battle of (1596)
midshipman
Mikata ga Hara, Battle of (1572)
Milan
miles
Militargrenze (*vojna krajina*)
military colonies
military discipline
military flail
military fork
military labor
military medicine
Military Orders
military revolutions
military slavery
milites
militia
militia Sancti Petri
milling
Ming Army
Ming dynasty (1368–1644)
Mingolsheim, Battle of (April 22, 1622)
mining
minion (1)
minion (2)
miquelet
misericord
missile weapons
Missio Hollandica
missionaries
mitaille
mitrailleuses
mizzen
moat
mobility
Moctezuma II (c.1470–1520)
Mogul Empire
Mohács, Battle of (August 29, 1526)
Mohi, Battle of (1242)
Moldova
monarchia universalis
Moncontour, Battle of (October 3, 1569)
Mongols
Monk, George (1608–1670)
Mons-en-Pévèle, Battle of (August 18, 1304)
Monsieur, Peace of (1576)
Montecuccoli, Raimundo (1609–1680)
Montezuma II
Montfort, John
Montfort, Simon de (d.1218)
Montiel, Battle of (1369)
Montihéry, Battle of (1465)
Montijo, Battle of (1644)
Montjoie, Knights of
Montmorency, Anne, duc de (1493–1567)
Montpellier, Peace of (1622)
Montrose, Marquis of (1612–1650)
Monzón, Treaty of (May 1626)
Mookerheyde, Battle of (April 14, 1574)
Moors
Morat, Battle of (June 9–22, 1476)
Moray's Rebellion (1565)
Mordax
More, Thomas (1478–1535)
Morgarten, Battle of (November 15, 1315)
Morgenstern
morion
Moriscos
"Morning Star"
Morocco
Morozov riots (1648)
mortar
Mortimer's Cross, Battle of (1461)
Mossi states
motte
motte-and-bailey
mounted shock combat
Mountjoy, Baron of (1562–1606)
mourning war
moyen/moyenne
Mozambique

mudéjar
mufflers
Mughal Army
Mughal Empire (1526–1857)
Muhammad I (r.1413–1421)
Muhammad II (1430–1481)
Mühlburg, Battle of (1547)
mujahadeen
mukai-jiro
Muley Hacen (d.1484)
mulkgiri
mullah
Münster, Siege of (1534–1535)
Münster, Treaty of (January 30, 1648)
Münster, Treaty of (October 24, 1648)
Müntzer, Thomas (c.1490–1525)
Murad I (c.1326–1389)
Murad II (r.1421–1444; 1446–1451)
Murbräcker
murder holes
Muret, Battle of (1213)
murtat
Muscovite Army
Muscovy, Grand Duchy of
musketeers
muskets
muster
mutilation
mutiny
muzzle-loader
Myongnyang, Battle of (1597)
Myton, Battle of (1319)

Nachhut
Nachrichter
Näfels, Battle of (1388)
Nagakute, Battle of (1584)
Nagasaki
Nagashino, Battle of (1575)
naginata
Nájera, Battle of (April 3, 1367)
Nancy, Battle of (January 5, 1477)
Nantes, Edict of (1598)
Nantwich, Battle of (1644)
nao
naphtha
Naples revolt (1647)
nariada
Narrow Seas, Battle of (1588)
Naseby, Battle of (June 14, 1645)
Nassau, William of
National Contingent
National Covenant (England)
National Covenant (Scotland)
naval warfare and tactics
Navarre
Navarrete, Battle of (1367)
nave
Navigation Acts
navy royale
Nayakas
nef
nefer-i am
Negora Temple
Negroponte, Battle of (1470)
Nemçe (*Nemse*)
Nêmecký Brod, Battle of (January 10, 1422)
Nemours, Treaty of (July 1585)
Netherlands
Neville's Cross, Battle of (October 17, 1346)
Nevsky, Alexander (1220–1263)
Newburn, Battle of (1639)
Newbury, First Battle of (September 20, 1643)
Newbury, Second Battle of (October 27, 1644)
New England
New English
New France
New Model Army
New Monarchies
New Ross, Battle of (1643)
New Spain, Viceroyalty of
Ngola
Nichiren Shonin (1222–1282)
Nicopolis, Battle of (September 25, 1396)
Nieuwpoort, Battle of (July 2, 1600)
Nijmegen, Siege of (1591)
Nine Years' War (1594–1603)
ninja
Noblesse d'epée
Noblesse de robe
nobori
"*Noche Triste*" (1520)
Nonsuch, Treaty of (August 20, 1585)
Nordic Seven Years' War (1563–1570)

Nördlingen, First Battle of (September 5–6, 1634)
Nördlingen, Second Battle of (August 3, 1645)
Normaljahr
Normans
Northampton, Battle of (1460)
Northern Army
Northern War, First (1558–1583)
Novara, Battle of (1500)
Novara, Battle of (June 6, 1513)
Noyon, Peace of (1516)
Nuremberg, Congress of (June 26, 1650)
Nurgaci (1559–1626)
nüzül

Oberster Feldhauptmann
Oberster Feldweibel
Obrist
Obrona Potoczna
ocak
Oda Nobunaga (1534–1582)
odoshi ge
officer
Oikoumene
Okehazama, Battle of (1560)
okka
Oldenbaarneveldt, Johan van (1547–1619)
Old English
Old Irish
Olivares, conde-duque de (1587–1645)
olive line
Oliwa (Oliva), Battle of (November 28, 1627)
Oñate, Treaty of (March 1617)
O'Neill, Hugh
O'Neill, Owen Roe (c.1583–1649)
Ōnin War (1467–1477)
Opbud
open order
Oprichnina
Orange, Principality and House of
Ordensmarschall
Ordensstaat
Order of Aviz
Order of the Garter
Order of the Golden Fleece
Order of Trufac
Order States
Ordinary
ordu bazar
Orgelgeschütz
Orléans, Siege of (1428–1429)
Ormonde, 1st Duke of (1610–1688)
Orta
Orthodox Churches
Osaka Castle, Siege of (1615)
Osman I (1259–1326)
Osnabrück, Treaty of (October 24, 1648)
Ostend, Siege of (1601–1604)
otaman
Otterburn, Battle of (August 15, 1388)
Ottoman Army
Ottoman Empire
Ottoman-Safavid Wars
Ottoman warfare
Otumba, Battle of (July 2, 1520)
Outremer
outworks
overlordship
Oxenstierna (1583–1654)
o-yoroi

Pacification of Ghent
pacifism
Pacta Conventa
page
palace guards
palanka
The Pale
palfrey
Pancerna cavalry
Panipat, Battle of (December 17, 1398)
Panipat, Battle of (April 21, 1526)
Panipat, Battle of (November 5, 1556)
papacy
Papal States
Pappenheim, Graf zu (1594–1632)
parapet
parcq en champ
"Pardon of Maynooth"
parias
Parlement (of Paris)
Parliament
Parma, duque di (1545–1592)
Parthian shot
partisan (1)

partisan (2)
pasavolante
Passau, Convention of (1552)
pata
patache
Patay, Battle of (1429)
patis
patron
pauldrons
Paul IV (1476–1559)
Pavia, Battle of (February 23–24, 1525)
pavisade
pavisare
pavise
Pax Dei
Pax Hispanica
Peace of God
peasants
pedites
pedrero
Pedro the Cruel (1334–1369)
penal settlements
Penenden Heath, Battle of (1648)
pennant
pennon
peones
Pequot War (1636–1637)
permanent navies
"Perpetual Peace"
perrier
Persia
Peru, Viceroyalty of (1544)
pervase
Pescara, marchese di (1490–1525)
petering
petite mottes
petrariae
petrary
petronels
petty officer
peytral
Pfenningmeister
phalanx
Philip II, of Spain (1527–1598)
Philip III, of Spain (1578–1621)
Philip IV, of France (1285–1314)
Philip IV, of Spain (1605–1665)
Philip VI, of France (1293–1350, r.1328–1350)
Philiphaugh, Battle of (September 13, 1645)
Philippines
Piatka River, Battle of (1591)
picchieri
Piccolomini, Ottavio (1599–1656)
picorreurs
pike
pike court
pikemen
pillage
Pilsen, Battle of (1618)
Pinkie Cleugh, Battle of (September 10, 1547)
pinnace
pioneers
piracy
pishchal
pishchal'niki
pistolade
pistols
Piyadeğan militia
Pizarro, Francisco (c.1478–1541)
placard
place d'armes
place de sûreté
plantations
plate armor
Pluderhosen
plunder
poczet
podestà
point-blank range
poison
Poissy, Colloquy of (1561)
Poitiers, Battle of (September 19, 1356)
Poitou, Battle of (April 15, 1622)
Poland
polearm
poleax
poleyns
Polish Army
Polish-Lithuanian Commonwealth (*Rzeczpospolita*)
Polish-Muscovite War (1609–1619)
Polish-Swedish War (1600–1611)
Polish-Swedish War (1621–1629)
politiques (France)
politiques (Netherlands)

Pomerania
Pomest'e cavalry
"Poor Conrad" revolt (1514)
Poor Knights
port
portcullis
port fire
Portland Bill, Battle of (1588)
portolan chart
port piece
Portugal
Portuguese India
porucznik
pots de fer
powder scoop
Powhatan War (1609)
Powick Bridge, Battle of (1642)
Prague, Battle of (1420)
Prague, Peace of (May 30, 1635)
Prague, Siege of (1645)
Prague, Siege of (1648)
prangĭ
predestination
Preliminaries of Pirna (1634)
Presbyterianism
press gang
Prester John, Legend of
Preston, Campaign of (August 17–20, 1648)
Preussische Bund
Preveza, Battle of (1538)
Prévôt des maréchaux
price revolution (of the 17th century)
prickers
printing
Prior Mor
prise
prisoners of war
privateer
Privilegium minus
prize
prize court
prize money
Procopius the Great (d.1434)
Procopius the Little (d.1434)
professed
prohibited weapons
propaganda
Propositions
Protestant Reformation
Protestant Union
Providence Island
Provost
provost marshal
Prussia
Prussian Confederation
psychological warfare
Pubei rebellion
pulk
punishment
Puritans
purser
purveyance
push of pike
Pym, John (1583–1643)
Pyongyang, Battle of (1592)

Qing dynasty
Qizilbash
quarrel
quarter
Quarter Army
quarter deck
quartermaster
quartermaster's mate
quarterstaff
quarto-cannon
Québec
quick match

Raad van State
rabito
race-built
rachat
raiding
Rain, Battle of (April 15, 1632)
Rajputs
rake
Rakoczy, George (1593–1648)
Raleigh, Walter (1552–1618)
ramming (of guns)
ramming (of ships)
rampart
ramrods
Rana Sangha (r.1509–1527)
ransom
Rathmines, Battle of (August 2, 1649)

rations
ravelin
Ravenna, Battle of (April 11, 1512)
Ravenspur, Battle of (1471)
rawcon
Raya
al-Raydaniyya, Battle of (1517)
Razats
razzia
real patronato
reaming
rear admiral
Reconquista
recruitment
redan
"red barbarian cannon"
redoubt
redshanks
Red Turbans
reflex bow
reformadoes
Reformation
regard
regementsstycke
Regensburg, Treaty of (1630)
Regensburg Diet (1640–1641)
regiments
Reichsgrafen
Reichskreis
Reichsritter
Reichsstädte
Reichstag
Reisläufer
Reiters
reîtres
Religionsfriede
Renaissance
renegades
Rennfahne
requerimiento
requisition
rerebrace
reservatum ecclesiaticum
resfuerzo
res publica Christiana
restaur
retirata
retrenchment
"Revenge," Fight of
Revolt of the Netherlands (1487–1492)
Revolt of the Netherlands (1568–1648)
revolution in military affairs
Rex christianissimus
Rheinfelden, Battle of (March 2–3, 1638)
Rhodes, Siege of (1444)
Rhodes, Siege of (1479–1480)
Rhodes, Siege of (1522–1523)
ribat
ribaudequin
Richard III (1452–1485)
Richelieu, Cardinal Armand Jean du Plessis de (1585–1642)
Riddarhus
rifled-bore
Riga, Siege of (1621)
rigging
"right to the bells"
Rigksdag
Rigsdag
Río Salado, Battle of (1340)
Ritter des Deutschordens
Ritterstand
robinet
rockets
Rocroi, Battle of (May 19, 1643)
Rohan, Henri, duc de (1579–1638)
Romanov, Michael (1586–1645)
Rome, Sack of (1527)
rondel
ronin
Roosebeke, Battle of (November 27, 1382)
"Root and Branch" petition (December 1640)
Rostjeneste
rota
rotmistrz
Rotte
Rottmeister
rotularii
Rouen, Siege of (1418–1419)
Rouen, Siege of (1449)
Rouen, Siege of (November 1591–April 1592)
rouncey
roundel (1)
roundel (2)
Roundheads

round robin
roundship
Roundway Down, Battle of (1643)
routiers
Rouvray, Battle of (February 12, 1429)
rowbarge
Royalists
Royal Navy
Royal Prussia
royal ships
Royal Touch
Rudolf II (1552–1612)
Rumania
Rumelia
Rumis
run the gauntlet
Rupert, Prince (1619–1682)
ruse
ruses de guerre
Russia
rusttjänst
Ruthven, Patrick (c.1573–1651)

sabatons
Sablat, Battle of (June 10, 1619)
Sachsen-Weimar, Bernhard von
sack (of a city)
sacre (1)
sacre (2)
Safavid Army
Safavid Empire
safeguard the sea
sail
sails
Saint-Denis, Battle of (November 10, 1567)
Saint-Quentin, Battle of (August 10, 1557)
Saka
saker
salade
Salāh al-Dīn (1137–1193)
Salic Law
sallet
salute
salva guardia
samurai
sanack bey
Santa Cruz, marques de (1526–1588)
Santiago, Knights of
Santiago Matamoros
sap
Sapa Inca
sapper
Saracens
Sardinia
Sarhu, Campaign of (1619)
sarmatian armor
sashimono
saubannerzug
sauve-garde
Savonarola, Girolamo (1452–1498)
Saxony
scalping
scarp
schiltron
schiopettari
Schladming, Battle of (1525)
Schlegelerbund
Schmalkaldic League
Schnepper
Schultheiss
schutterijen
Schweizerdegen
Schweizerdolch
schynbalds
scorched earth
Scotland
Scots Archers
Scottish Wars (13th–14th centuries)
Scottish Wars (15th–17th centuries)
scourers
scurvy
scutage (*scutagium*)
scuttle
Sea Beggars (“*Gueux*”)
Sea Brothers
Seacroft Moor, Battle of (1643)
sea dogs
sea power
Sea Victuallers
seclusion decrees
secret
Sefarad
sefer bahşişi
Sejm
sejmiki
sekban

Sekigahara, Battle of (September 15, 1600)
Selim I (1467–1520)
Selim II (1524–1574)
Seljuk Turks
Seminara, Battle of (June 28, 1495)
Sempach, Battle of (July 9, 1386)
Sempach, Covenant of (1393)
Sengoku daimyo
Sengoku jidai (1467–1568)
Seoul, Battle of (1592)
serasker
Serbia
Serb Sindin (''Serbian Defeat''), Battle of (1371)
serdar
Serdengeçti (*serden-geçtiler*)
serfdom
sergeant
Seritsa River, Battle of (January 1501)
serpentine
serving the vent
servitium debitum
servitium scottianum
servitor classes
sesto
Sforza, Ludovico (1451–1508)
Sforza, Maximilian (1493–1530)
shaffron
shallop
shell-keep
shells
Sher Khan (1486–1545)
shī'a Islam
shields/shielding
shi'ite
shijō
Shimabara Rebellion (1637–1638)
shino-gote
ship money
ship-of-the-line
ships
ship's boys
ship-smashers
shipyards
Shirley, Anthony (1565–1635)
Shirley, Robert (c.1581–1628)
shock
Shogun (''*Sei-i-tai-shogun*'')
shorten sail
shot
Shrewsbury, Battle of (1403)
shugo
shynbalds
sich
Sicily
Sickingen, Franz von (1481–1523)
siege engines
siege train
siege warfare
Sigismund (1368–1437)
Sigismund I (1466–1548)
Sigismund III Vasa (1566–1632)
Sigismund August II (1520–1572)
signals
Sikhism
silahdars
Silesia
Simon de Montfort (d.1218)
sipahis
sipar
Sis, Battle of (1606)
Sixteen, The
skeggøx
skeleton-built
''skulking way of war''
slavery and war
slave soldiers
sling
sloop-of-war
slow match
Sluys, Battle of (June 23, 1340)
small shot
small war
Smolino River, Battle of (1502)
smoothbore
Smutnoe Vremia (*Smuta*)
snacca
Society of Jesus
Sofala
sōhei
Sold
solid shot
sollerets
Songhay
Sound Tolls
Southern Route Army

Sovereign Military Order of Malta (SMOM)
"sovereignty of the sea"
sow (*truies*)
soyughal
spahis
Spain
Spanish America
Spanish Armada (1588)
Spanish Army
"Spanish Captivity" of Portugal (1580–1640)
"Spanish Fury" (November 4–5, 1576)
Spanish Inquisition
Spanish Main
Spanish Monarchy
"Spanish musket"
Spanish Netherlands
Spanish riders
Spanish Road
spar
spaudlers
spears
Speicher (Vögelisegg), Battle of (1403)
Spice Islands
spice trades
spiking (guns)
Spínola, Ambrogio di (1569–1630)
sponge
springald
Spurs, Battle of (1302)
Spurs, Battle of (1513)
squadron
square rig
squares
squire
Sri Lanka
Stadholder
Stadtlohn, Battle of (August 6, 1623)
staff-weapons
St. Albans, First Battle of (1455)
St. Albans, Second Battle of (1461)
standardization (of weapons)
standing army
standing navies
standing officer
Stangebro, Battle of (1598)
starotsy
starshnya
States General
St. Augustine Massacre (1565)
St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres (August 24, 1572)
St. Bernard of Clairvaux (1090–1153)
St. Denis, Battle of (1567)
Stegeborg, Battle of (September 8/18, 1598)
sternpost rudder
Stettin, Peace of (1570)
stiletto
Stirling Bridge, Battle of (September 11, 1297)
St. Jacob-en-Birs, Battle of (August 16, 1444)
St. Lazarus, Knights of
Stolbova, Peace of (1617)
stop-rib
storm
Stormakstid
Stoss, Battle of (1405)
Stow-on-the-Wold, Battle of (1646)
St. Quentin, Battle of (1557)
stradiots
Straslund, Siege of (May–July, 1628)
strategic metals
strategy
Stratton, Battle of (1643)
strel'sty
Stuart, Mary
Stuhm, Battle of (June 17–27, 1629)
Stuhmsdorf, Truce of (September 12, 1635)
Sturmgeld
subashi
subinfeudation
sub utraque specie
Sudan
Sud-Beveland, Battle of (1574)
Sudler
Sufism
Suleiman I (1494–1566)
Sully, duc de (1560–1641)
sultan
sultanate
sumpter
sunni Islam
supply lines

surcoat
surety towns
Susa, Peace of (1629)
sutlers
Swabia
Swabian League
Swabian War (1499)
Swahili Arabs
Sweden
Swedish Army
Swedish-Muscovite War (1554–1557)
Swedish-Muscovite War (1590–1595)
sweeps
Sweinfedder
Swiecino, Battle of (August 17, 1462)
swine feathers
Swiss Army
Swiss Confederation
Swiss square
swivel gun
Sword Brethren
sword hunts
swords
Syria
Szigetvár, Siege of (1566)
szlachta

tabard
tabor
Taborites
tackle
tactics
taifa states
taille
taillon
Taiwan
Talbot, John (c.1385–1453)
Tamerlane
Tangier
tanko
Tannenberg, Battle of (July 15, 1410)
Tarasbüchsen
Tard-Avisés
targe
targhieri
tarides
tarpaulin
Tartaglia, Niccolò (c.1499–1557)
Tartars
tassets
tatami
Tatars
tate
taxes
teamsters
technology and war
Templars
tenaille
tenere in dominico
tenere in servitio
ten-eyed gun
Tennoji, Battle of (1615)
Tenochtitlán, First Siege of (June 24–30, 1520)
Tenochtitlán, Second Siege of (April 28–August 13, 1521)
Tenth Penny
terakki
Terceira, Battle of (1582)
tercio
Terek River, Battle of (1262)
terrain
terre-plein
testudo
Teutonic Knights, Order of
Tewkesbury, Battle of (1471)
Thérouanne, Siege of (1543)
Third Rome
Thirteen Years' War (1454–1466)
Thirteen Years' War (1593–1606)
Thirty, Battle of the (1352)
Thirty Years' War (1618–1648)
Three Kingdoms, Wars of (1639–1653)
thughur
Thurn, Count Mathias von (1567–1640)
tier
Tilly, Count Johann Tserclaes (1559–1632)
timariots
"Time of Troubles" (1604–1613)
Timur (1336–1405)
Timurid dynasty
Tippermuir, Battle of (1644)
Tokugawa Ieyasu (1542–1616)
Tokugawa Shogunate (1603–1867)
toleration
Tolsburg, Truce of (1618)
tompion

tonlet
tonnage
top
Top Arabacs (*top arabacilar*)
top castle
Topçu (*Topçuar*)
topgallant
Tophane-i Amire
Tordesillas, Treaty of (1494)
toredar
Toro, Battle of (1476)
Torquemada
torre alberrano
torre del homenaje
Torrington, Battle of (1646)
Torstensson, Lennart (1603–1651)
Torstensson's War (1643–1645)
Torun, Second Peace of (October 19, 1466)
Tournai, Siege of (1581)
tournaments
tourney
Towarzysz
tower-keep
Tower of London
Towton, Battle of (1461)
Toyotomi Castle, Siege of (1614–1615)
Toyotomi Hideyori (1593–1615)
Toyotomi Hideyoshi (1537–1598)
Trabanten
trace italienne
train (1)
train (2)
train (3)
trained bands
transportation
Transylvania
trapper
treasure fleets
trebuchet
Trent, Council of (1545–1563)
Trent, Peace of (1501)
Treuga Dei
tribute
Tridentine Reforms
Triebel, Battle of (1647)
Trier, bishopric of
Triple Alliance
Tripoli (Tripolitania)
Triumvirate
Tromp, Maarten van (1598–1653)
Troppau, Battle of (1642)
Tross
trou de loup
Troyes, Treaty of (1420)
truages
Truce of God
True Pure Land
trunnion
Tuareg
Tudor, Mary
Tudors
tufang
Tüfeçis
Tula River, Battle of (1372)
Tumu, Battle of (September 1, 1449)
Tunis
"tunnage and poundage"
Turcopoles
Turenne, Henri de (1611–1675)
Turkish bow
Turks
Turnham Green, Battle of (1642)
Turnhout, Battle of (August 22, 1597)
turtle ships
Ţuţora, Battle of (1620)
Tüttlingen, Battle of (November 24–25, 1643)
Twelfth-imam shi'ism
Twelve Years' Truce (April 1609–April 1621)
two swords, doctrine of
Tyndale, William (d.1536)
Tyrone, Earl of (1540–1616)
Tyrone's Rebellion

Uhlans
ujen cooha
Ukraine
Ula River, Battle of (1564)
ulema
Ulm, Treaty of (1620)
Ulster
uma jirushi
Umma
Uniate Churches
Unification Wars (1550–1615)
uniforms

Union of Arms
Union of Arras
Union of Brest (1595)
union of crowns
Union of Kalmar (1397)
Union of Krevo (1385)
Union of Lublin (1569)
Union of Utrecht
United Provinces of the Midi
United Provinces of the Netherlands
Upphåd
Urban (n.d.)
Urban II
Urban VIII (1568–1644)
urca
Ustí nad Labem, Battle of (1426)
Utraquists
Utskrivning
Uzbeks
Uzkok War (1615–1617)

vadia
valet
Valois, House of
Valtelline
vambraces
van
vanguard
Varna, Battle of (1444)
Vasa, House of
Vasco da Gama (1469–1524)
Vassy massacre (March 1, 1562)
vatahy
Vegetius
Venice
Vereenigde Oostindische Compaagnie (VOC)
Verneuil, Battle of (August 17, 1424)
verso
Vervins, Peace of (May 2, 1598)
Vesting Holland
veterans
veuglaire
vice admiral
victualer
Vienna, Siege of (September 27–October 15, 1529)
Vijayanagar
vintenar
Virginia
visor
vivente rege
Vlachs
vlieboot
VOC
Vögelisegg (Voegelinsegg), Battle of (1403)
voivodes
volley fire
Vorhut
votchina/votchiny
vouge
Voynuqs (*Voynuks*)

waardgelders
Wachmeister
waft
wafter
Wagenburg
waist-lames
Wakefield, Battle of (1460)
wakō
Walcheren, Battle of (1574)
Waldstätte
Wales
Wallace, William (c.1274–1305)
Wallenstein, Albrecht von (1583–1634)
Waller, William (1597–1668)
Wallhof, Battle of (1626)
Walsingham, Sir Francis (c.1530–1590)
Wanli Emperor (r.1573–1620)
war at sea
War Between the Courts
war by diversion
war chest
war cries
war dogs
war elephants
war finance
war hammer
warhorses
War of Cologne (1583–1588)
War of Smolensk (December 1632–June 1634)
War of the Breton Succession (1341–1365)
War of the Cities (1454–1466)
War of the Debatable Lands (1532)

War of the Eight Saints (1375–1378)
War of the Mantuan Succession (1627–1631)
War of the Schmalkaldic League (1546–1547)
War of the Sicilian Vespers (1282–1302)
War of the Three Henries (1587–1589)
warp
warrant officer
"Warring States"
Warrington, Battle of (1648)
warrior monks
warships
Wars of Investiture (1077–1122)
"Wars of Religion" (in France)
Wars of the Roses (1455–1485)
Wars of the Three Kingdoms (1639–1651)
war wagons
wastage
wasters
weapons
wear
weather (1)
weather (2)
weather, its effect on military operations
weather gauge
weatherly
Weepers
Weimar Army
Wenden, Siege of (1577)
Werben, Battle of (July 22–28, 1631)
Werth, Johann Count von (c.1595–1652)
Western Army (England)
Western Army (Japan)
Western Association
West Indies Company (WIC)
Westphalia, Peace of (1648)
Wexford, Sack of (October 11, 1649)
wheeling
wheel lock
Whiggamore Rising (1648)
white armor
White Company
White Hoods
White Mountain, Battle of (November 8, 1620)
Wiesloch, Battle of (April 27, 1622)
William I, of Nassau
William Louis, of Nassau (1560–1620)
William the Silent (1533–1584)
Wimpfen, Battle of (May 6, 1622)
Winceby, Battle of (October 11, 1643)
Winchelsea, Battle of (1350)
wind
windlass
windward
winged-tiger gun
"Winter King"
Winwick, Battle of (1648)
witchcraft
Witkov, Battle of (1420)
Wittstock, Battle of (October 4, 1636)
wolf holes
Wolgast, Battle of (September 2, 1628)
Wolsey, Cardinal Thomas (1471–1530)
women
Worcester, Battle of (1642)
Worcester, Battle of (1651)
worm
Worms, Diet of (1495)
Worms, Diet of (1521)
wounds
Wrangel, Karl Gustaf (1613–1676)
Wu Sangui (1612–1678)
Wyatt's Rebellion (1554)
wybraniecka infantry
Wycliffe, John (1320–1384)

Xanten, Treaty of (1614)
xebec
Xochiyaoyotl
Xuande Emperor

yabusame
Yaka
yamajiro
Yamazaki, Battle of (1582)
Yang Yinglong Rebellion (1587–1600)
yard
yardarm
yari
yari fusuma
Yaya infantry
Yellow Ford, Battle of (1598)
Yellow Waters, Battle of (February 1648)

Yeniçeri Ağasi
Yeoman of the Guard
Yongle Emperor (1360–1424, r.1402–1424)
Yoruba

Zabern, Battle of (May 16–17, 1525)
zabra
zakat
Zanzibar
Zaporozhian Cossacks
Zaragoza, Treaty of (1529)
zarbzens
Zatoka Swieza, Battle of (September 15, 1463)
Zemshchina
zemsky sobor
zereh bagtar
Zeugherr
Zheng He (1371–1433)
ziamet
Žižka, Jan (d.1424)
Zsitva Torok, Treaty of (November 1606)
Zuhab Treaty of (May 1639)
Zuider Zee, Battle of (1573)
Zúñiga y Requesens, Luis (1528–1576)
Zusmarshausen, Battle of (May 17, 1648)
Zutphen, Battle of (September 22, 1586)
Zutphen, Siege of (1591)
Zwingli, Huldrych (1484–1531)

Preface: Wars of Religion in History

The states and empires of early modern Europe were not unique in waging ''wars of religion.'' Wars between rival faiths, whether in the name of the gods or competing views of the place of the sacred in daily human affairs, have an ancient pedigree. Religious motivation to combat has been located by historians in most eras and among virtually all the world's diverse peoples and cultures, and usually on both sides in any given war. The hoary cry that ''the gods are on our side'' was among the earliest and most potent of incitements to battle, ranking alongside collective theft and rapine as perennial motivations for which men made war. The city-states that arose in the Fertile Crescent fought to impose their civic gods on one another, believing that success in war demonstrated who possessed the more powerful deities, a claim the defeated also accepted. Great riverine empires such as Sumer and Egypt developed complex civilizations that clashed with neighbors over such material reasons as a need for ''living space'' or to secure trade routes and frontiers. But they also had a theocratic purpose for making war, claiming that they fought at the behest of their gods to establish divine primacy over the lesser gods of enemies. Later casting of monotheism in the fires of ancient civilizations of the Nile and Mediterranean did little to break the mold of wars waged in the name of God. The ancient Israelites escaped Pharaoh into Sinai in search of religious and personal liberty, searching for new kingdoms in lands promised by Yahweh. Their kingdoms were made not by mere wandering and discovery, however, but by stealthy wars of conquest and expulsion of the beaten and the heathen. The ancient Greeks were among the most warlike of Mediterranean peoples. They sanctified incessant hoplite battles with ritual sacrifice and devotions even before Alexander became convinced of his own godhead and led a war of conquest that nearly reached the Ganges. As did the Romans, that most martial of ancient peoples. Once they achieved full military mastery over their world they closed the circle by proclaiming dead emperor-conquerors to be divine and built great temples in which to worship them.

Early Christians living in pagan Rome carefully distinguished between what belonged to God and what was owed to Caesar, but they fundamentally rethought this discomforting notion once the Caesars became Christian. From the 5th century, the Latin Church upheld a doctrine that ''Two Swords'' had been given to Man by God, one secular and one religious, one for the emperor and the other for the pope in Rome. For the next 1,000 years Latin Christians could not conceive of war being waged outside the just purposes of God and his anointed Church on Earth. Like pagans before them, they still believed that divine judgment was evident in the outcome of martial contests fought between knights, as between nations. Christian Orthodox in the east merged the role of warlord and high priest in the doctrine of ''Caesaropapism,'' which effectively lodged even military policy in the Holy of Holies, in the tabernacle of the doctrines of the faith. The first Muslims spliced war and faith to form a hybrid, the ''jihad'' (or ''holy war'') waged in the name of Allah and for plunder. The first jihad, against the pagans of Mecca and the Arabian peninsula, was led by the Prophet Muhammad himself. Within a few generations, Muslim warriors swept aside older empires and opened parts of three continents to conversion and exploitation. A powerful religious impulse to war carried Bedouin warriors and their new Islamic faith far from the deserts of Arabia. In the west they conquered Christian Egypt and North Africa, crossed over to Spain, and raided even into the south of France. To the north of Arabia they overran old Christian and Jewish communities in Palestine, Syria, and parts of Anatolia, to arrive at the front porch of the Byzantine Empire. Eastward they rode over Zoroastrian Iran, pushed into Afghanistan, and conquered northern India. Jihadis also rode across Central Asia to reach as far as the western borders of China. The Latin counterattack to recover the formerly Christian lands of the eastern Mediterranean, the Crusades, began in the 11th century and persisted over several centuries of intermittent war. While religious fervor and greed for land alike ultimately expired in defeat in the Middle East, the crusader spirit more successfully waged war and forced conversion against the Moors of Spain and Christian ''heretics'' in the south of France. And with great gore and slaughter, the Teutonic Knights and other crusading orders brought fire and the terror of the cross into pagan Slav lands of the Baltic, Poland, and what is today western Russia. Subsequently, the impetus to ''jihad'' inspired a rising Ottoman tide that swept into Europe, to ultimately capture Constantinople, bring new conquests in the Balkans, and invasions of Austria that twice washed Muslim armies against the walls of Vienna. All the while, orthodox Muslims fought Muslim ''heretics,'' as the shi'ia Safavid Empire in Iran challenged sunni empires of the Uzbeks and Ottomans.

Nor was religious warfare confined to the civilizations born of the Mediterranean world, where millennia of spiritual ferment troubled and reordered the region's history, and still does. In faraway lands which knew little of Christian and Muslim quarrels, religious justification for war was nonetheless ubiquitous. The island realm of Japan was said by its people to be ruled by the ''Son of Heaven,'' a divine emperor to whom total loyalty was owed, even

unto death. While in practice more that a few emperors were little more than prisoners of some powerful daimyo or the later shoguns, kept under effective palace arrest and compelled to carry out mind-numbing daily rituals, this cultural and religious myth had enormous power to motivate men to combat. To some degree, it continued to do so during Japan's half-century of serial wars of aggression from 1895 to 1945. The Japanese warrior ethic culminated in a cult of death from 1943 to 1945, best but not solely expressed in the extraordinary self-sacrifice of isolated island garrisons and by the ''kamikaze.'' In Chinese history, Buddhist monasteries had become military powers where warrior monks and their armed retainers engaged in protracted fighting with local warlords and bandits. In India, the Rajputs and Marathas, and later the Sikhs, organized huge armies around religious communities. They made holy war to throw off the ''Muslim yoke'' of the Mughal Empire, and fought also against Christian invaders from Europe. As for the Americas, ideas of divine kingship sustained by powerful priesthoods and religious warfare also developed there historically. Along the great spine of the Andes rose the extraordinary theocracy of Inca Peru, ruled by a Sapa Inca said by his priests, and thought by his subjects, to reign as a god among men. Terrible were the bloody rites carried out by warriors, priests, and emperors of the Aztecs in the Central Valley of Mexico. For the Aztecs, war's central purpose was not just to conquer, but to capture prisoners for later human sacrifice needed to appease ferocious Aztec gods. War and faith formed a seamless, sanguinary whole: conquest of neighboring tribes and cities permitted ritual sacrifice of captives, leading to further expansion and sacrifice, all to uphold a core religious purpose according to a calendar written in the heavens by the gods. Virtually all major societies, in short, no matter how distant or diverse, have waged war for the usual reasons material and political, but also to match their religious beliefs and meet spiritual needs.

Nevertheless, in intensity of belief, ferocity of the zealotry displayed, global scope, and their lasting impact on world economic, legal, political, and military affairs, the wars of religion fought by Europeans from the 15th through 17th centuries deservedly garner special attention in world military history. These wars really began, though this is not always recognized, with the Hundred Years' War (1337–1453), which dovetailed with the later Crusades. Its effects were greatly disintegrative of the old notion of Latin unity within ''*res publica Christiana.*'' It gave rise to the first nation-states, starting with England and France. Then it spilled into Italy and Spain, and to a lesser extent into Germany and even eastern Europe, as rootless and ruthless soldiers went in search of fresh vineyards and women to despoil. That prolonged conflict furthered a fundamental shift in the conception of the political order in western Europe. The change was long in the making, materially and intellectually, as Europe began to recover economically and demographically from 600 years of hunkered down, castilian defense against barbarian invaders (Goths, Vandals, Arabs, Vikings, and Mongols). The Hundred Years' War was decisive in pushing the governing classes away from the old belief in a single Christian people, whose empire and far-off crusades were seen as the

finger of God writing the history of the world. This shift was greatly reinforced by the ''Great Schism'' (1378–1417), which shook the old Church to its core. Replacing the Medieval worldview among the educated laity, and some clergy, was a more modern worldview which held that history should be understood in terms of human endeavor, unaided and undiluted by divine purpose or intervention. This profound awareness of the primacy of human agency as the motive force of history changed the basic conception and practice of European statecraft: denying the historical necessity of Christian unity necessarily favored the secular interests of princes, that is, of raw material power. The revolutionary change in outlook that proceeded from this fact informed the spirit of the Italian Renaissance and found high expression in the thought and writings of Niccolò Machiavelli. In turn, this resulted in a great irony and paradox of the wars of religion fought from the early 16th century: Europe's Christians slaughtered one another over doctrinal differences even as their civilization was adopting a more secular focus by leaving behind a view of history which said that restoration of a single Christian empire was the will of God, the only sure path to peace, and a prerequisite to the ''Second Coming of the Redeemer.''

Meanwhile, during the first half of the 15th century the shell of the Byzantine Empire, that once-proud bastion of Orthodox Christianity, staggered to a tortuous end to its long conflict with the Ottoman Empire, the Great Power of the Muslim world. The Ottomans, in turn, were still engaged in an equally ancient intra-Muslim war, between sunnis and shi'ites, with the latter in control of Iran (or Persia, as this Muslim empire was ineptly known in the West). The Ottoman capture of Constantinople in 1453, the same year that saw an end to the Hundred Years' War in France, was a geopolitical earthquake that sent a tsunami of fear and unrest across the Mediterranean, with tremors and aftershocks felt even in the faraway capitals of the rising Atlantic states of western Europe. At this exquisite historical moment, when old powers and voices like the popes invoked old ways of thinking by calling for Christian unity in support of yet another crusade against the hated Muslim foe, the Latin world was soon riven by fundamental religious and political divisions. The West thus did not answer the call—which popes and the devout nevertheless still made with the old fervor and insistence. But the papacy was already politically and spiritually impotent, with the Papal States themselves militarily weak even within Italy, where throughout the 15th century they struggled against other wolf-like city-states. This weakness was a long-term consequence of the ''Avignon Captivity'' of the papacy during the 14th century and the grave shock to the faithful caused by prolonged clerical scandal and confusion during the Great Schism. That divide had seen three popes arrayed against each other, quarreling as well over power and legitimacy with general Church Councils. In addition, a militant ''heresy'' thrived in Bohemia, that of the Hussites, which 200 years before would have been crushed by the Inquisition, the power of the popes, and the ideal of Christian unity. Jan Hus was burned at the stake by the Church and Empire, but migratory armies of his Hussite followers were eventually pushed out of

Germany only with great violence. Other forces of rebellion were present throughout Europe, needing only a moment of opportunity born of Catholic division to awake from political dormancy. Such a moment was pending: serial financial and priestly scandals in the Medieval Church had in fact caused fatal damage to Latin Christian unity, not least by leading local princes to become accustomed to the idea of themselves as sovereign—though they did not yet know or use that word in the early modern sense. What was needed to ignite the fires of princely ambition was a match to fall onto the broad tinder of popular religious unrest. The hand that struck the light was Martin Luther's. The conflagration he started as an argument among priests and monks would end by burning out much of Europe during vicious wars of religion that lasted nearly 150 years. Neither the old Medieval vision of a single people called ''Christians'' united in an empire called ''Christendom,'' nor the threat of rising Muslim power, could overcome doctrinal hatreds and the new national and confessional geography that divided Catholic from Protestant in Europe.

Nor was the rest of the world unaffected. The European wars of the 16th and 17th centuries spread over the oceans to be fought out on several continents. The conflicts reshaped world commerce and marked the beginning of the modern, integrated world economy. Crucially, confessional-cum-national wars were fought with new weapons and tactics born of the ''gunpowder revolution,'' the major feature of which was the eclipse of cavalry and the expansion of infantry on the battlefield. Alongside the expansion of infantry armies came the evolution of intense drill, standardized equipment, disciplined tactics and maneuver, and greater military discipline and princely control of armed forces. Above all, there was a vast expansion in the size of armies and a trend toward standing (permanent or year-round) military forces. The vast sums this required meant that the emerging nation-states of Europe undertook a wholesale reorganization of their societies, including of taxation, royal finances, state promotion of economic activity, and overseas trade. These changes were so far-reaching in their impact on the character of war, the nature of the state, and the balance of power in Europe and the world, that most military historians agree that the period is best conceived as having experienced a ''military revolution.'' In logistics and in strategy, on the other hand, the wars of religion ended much as they had begun, as wars between armies organized as not much more than marauding hordes. It was not until the further development of the mature state structures and magazine system in the late 17th and early 18th centuries that wars were waged between true standing armies. In sum, what emerged after the fires of confessional conflict finally burned out in the orgy of destruction of the Thirty Years' War and the Eighty Years' War was a new type of warfare. In the century and a half that followed the Peace of Westphalia, until the next military revolution was revealed during the great fights occasioned by the French Revolution, wars would be fought for dynastic and other secular causes by small, professional standing armies backed by the financial and bureaucratic resources of centralized states principally organized to make war.

But all that lay in the future. To get there, Europeans first passed through generations of religious conflict and carnage in which they cleaved, smashed, stabbed, burned, and shot and bombarded each other on an unprecedented scale, without ever proving on whose side God really stood, if any.

The wars of religion which broke out at the start of the Protestant Reformation in the early 16th century were, like the Hundred Years' War of the 14th and 15th centuries, also wars of nation-building and raw princely ambition. This is crucial to note if one is to understand why it was that at the end of the period what triumphed in Europe was not one confessional Christian sect over another, but a secular states system ratified and upheld by all the powers. Nor was the essential result of these wars defeat of Muslims by Christians or Christians by Muslims (at least, not in any meaningful sense beyond the extinction of the Byzantine Empire, which had long been a shadow of its former powerful and imperial self in any case). Instead, what emerged from the era of the wars of religion was a new type of polity: the nation-state, in which absolute ideas about the will of God were displaced by ideas of absolutism and the will and sovereignty of princes. Over time, these novel secular constructions spread across the globe, displacing most other religious polities as well in favor of the modern state. This process was intimately connected to the era of the wars of religion, which closed with overseas expansion and competition that led to European global commercial and military dominance and vast seaborne empires. In short, the great doctrinal and military schism within Latin Christendom ended not with the triumph of orthodox Catholic or reformist Protestant sectarians, but in a military stalemate and stable balance of power within Europe. The era of the wars of religion was thus closed at Westphalia in 1648 not by agreement on doctrine, but by acceptance that disagreement over doctrine need not affect the affairs of princes. The vexing religious questions were buried beneath a shroud formed of the legal equality of secular sovereigns. Raw material power, not asserted spiritual authority, was the foundation stone of a new, modern international order. To the surprise and dismay of confessional fanatics, it was thus kings who emerged supreme in temporal matters. Neither popes nor preachers mattered for much after Westphalia in the councils of the great and powerful. Popes were openly flouted even by Catholic monarchs who were as jealously protective of their sovereign prerogatives as any proud Protestant prince. So angry did this make Pope Innocent X he condemned the religious toleration clauses of the Westphalian settlement as ''null and void, invalid, iniquitous, unjust, condemned, rejected, frivolous, without force or effect, and no one is to observe them, even when they be ratified by oath.''

Rail and rage as the pontiff might, the Reformation and the Counter-Reformation alike had failed to achieve doctrinal, political, or military supremacy. And so, the fierce passions they aroused began to fade for all but the most zealous. Finished also was any loyalty to quasi-feudal military obligations on the part of princes, or any pretension to universal authority on the part of Holy Roman Emperors. In place of old religious divisions and imperial causes, an age of mostly secular conflict among sovereign states began. With it

came a new pattern of international politics and therefore also of war, in which Great Powers deployed their wealth in the form of standing armies, and battered down the small and weak. In this brave new world, amoral principles of statecraft such as *raison d'etat* and the idea of the balance of power swept away older concerns about the truth or untruth of transubstantiation, who filled the ranks of predestined salvation, or whether it was proper for clerics to sell indulgences. Not until the bracing ruthlessness of the French Revolution tempted France to seek dominion over the entire continent would Europeans again embark on protracted war to decide whose ideas were the most true.

Yet, the religious impulse to make war did not wholly depart from international politics with the passing of the wars of religion. True, diplomats who drafted the various treaties that codified the Peace of Westphalia sincerely tried to remove confessionalism from diplomacy and war by elevating the secular state to the supreme position it has enjoyed in theory and law ever since. Long afterward, however, European states and rulers continued to enunciate and pursue overtly religious goals in their foreign policies and wars. Tsarist Russia prosecuted what amounted to a sustained Orthodox crusade against the ''infidel Turk'' (who returned the religious insult, and the hostility) from the 17th through the 19th centuries, even as ''Old Believers'' at home accused more than one despotic tsar of being a usurper, or even the ''Antichrist.'' Robespierre and more radical French Revolutionaries waged war on established religion within France, and the mature Revolution declared and made war on the legitimacy of all the monarchies of the ancien regime from 1793 onward. Some monarchs, such as Alexander I of Russia, fought France to defend the Faith as well as noble privilege, though more cynical kings and foreign ministers only said that they did, so as not to frighten pious neighbors. Napoleon, who was wholly cynical about religious affairs, was thought by some Orthodox facing his onslaught in 1812 to be the ''Antichrist,'' even though he had secured domestic legitimacy in the eyes of Catholic subjects by snatching his crown directly from the hands of a pope. Even so late a conflict as the Crimean War, fought after the mid-point of the 19th century, was said by key participants to have started in part over a religious *casus belli*, the question of control of the keys to the Church of the Holy Sepulcher and other ''Holy Places'' in Jerusalem. One may be skeptical about that claim, but one cannot understand the two bloodiest conflicts fought between 1815 and 1914, the Taiping Rebellion and the American Civil War, without appreciating that they had deep religious meaning for many involved. The Taiping Rebellion, which consumed millions of lives, began as a revolt by a Christian cult led by a messianic visionary who claimed he was the brother of Jesus of Nazareth. Marked by fierce religious, class, and ethnic hatred, the Taiping Rebellion ended in massacre and death on a genocidal scale. And many who fought in the American Civil War, perhaps toward the end even including Abraham Lincoln, believed they served the will of Providence to eradicate the sin of slavery from the new promised land of North America.

It did not stop there. Through all the blood, mud, fire, murder, lethal ideology, and bombast that made up World War I, the inscription on the belt

buckles of German soldiers read ''Gott mit uns'' (''God is with us''). That concise expression voiced a spiritual arrogance common to all armies of the Great War: Russians boasted that they fought for ''God and the Tsar,'' until millions of them voted with their feet against both in 1917; the British stiffly proclaimed that they were making war for ''God, King and Country,'' along with the ''rights of small nations.'' Similar sentiments about siding with the deity were expressed by Catholic Italians and Austrians, Orthodox Serbs and Greeks, and Muslim Arabs and Turks, even as they fought co-religionists on the other side. Most French believed the same, even if many were also convinced anti-clericals and republicans. Many Americans, most notably Woodrow Wilson, felt called by Providence to redress the imbalance of the Old World with the redemptive sacrifice of boys and men from the New World. After the war, among those who had experienced four years of bloody murder and mayhem such pious cant was angrily rejected. Surviving soldiers had learned to despise civilian and religious leaders who called for yet more men to march, and to kill and maim, in the name of God.

Elsewhere, however, religious motivations continued to play a major role in interstate relations and in motivations to war. The collapse of the Ottoman Empire opened the Middle East to sectarian conflict between Muslim and Jew in Palestine; to Christian, Druse, and Muslim infighting in Lebanon; and to sunni versus shi'ia conflicts in Iraq, Iran, and Yemen. Religious conflict mixed with land hunger and ethnic hatred scarred the politics of partition in India, and thereafter contributed to three major wars between predominantly Hindu India and self-consciously Muslim Pakistan. The founding of Israel as a Jewish homeland in the old land of Palestine, and its rejection on religious and ethnic grounds by most neighboring Arabs and Muslims, led to a series of armed conflicts in the second half of the 20th century that some military historians have called the ''Fifty Years' War.'' The Soviet invasion of Afghanistan in 1979 provoked a widespread call for ''jihad'' against the Soviet Union, a call answered by thousands of ''mujahadeen'' from across the Muslim world. Muslim conflict with the Orthodox world flared again in the 1990s with a murderous war by Russian forces in Chechnya. In the Balkans, that poor and backward corner of Europe where old hatreds were only held in abeyance between generations by outside influence, religious and ethnic hatred flared again into war as Orthodox, Catholic, and Muslim resumed in arms their ancient, sterile arguments. The terrorist attack on the United States of September 11, 2001, then revealed to a secular political world that the abiding ferocity of religious hatred was not yet confined to history. After all the posing, both pious and impious, it was made clear that war in the name of the gods had been only partially and temporarily tamed at Westphalia in 1648.

Author's Note

Specialization is properly prized and admired in historians and is the fundamental basis of all advances in historical knowledge. But excessive specialization can lead to distortion in which one century's political or cultural or military evolution is misunderstood by a different set of specialists as revolution, because change is always more exciting and impressive than underlying continuities. Historical tribes comprised of period specialists are nearly as territorial as actual tribes. General studies and encyclopedias have their weaknesses as well, but at the end of the day a broad understanding of history is the goal of all who study it, or should be. For this work I have delved into sources ranging from remarkable in-depth studies of the chemistry of gunpowder combustion, the forging of tempered swords and the ballistics of trebuchets, to sweeping general interpretations of Chinese and Islamic civilization, the Crusades, the Hundred Years' War, and the Protestant Reformation. It has been a thrilling intellectual ride and a scholarly experience that revived and deepened my original enthusiasm for historical studies, even as the ubiquity of death and war came close to crushing my optimism about the human condition. For any study such as this must lead to the baleful conclusion that war has been the singular engine of change shaping human societies and cultures beyond any other intellectual, economic, or social force. Wars have built and broken empires ancient and modern, made and unmade dynasties and tyrants, shaped, reformed, or mercilessly exterminated whole nations and peoples.

War is endlessly confusing. What does it really mean that this or that border was crossed by an army, that fleets were sunk, castle walls toppled, or great cities sacked? In studying war there is a natural temptation to focus on the spectacular, to recount the great battle upon which history seemed to turn and tell tales of great commanders who supposedly turned it. But war is a far deeper phenomenon than battle, with much more elusive causes and effects. Its meaning is entwined in symbiotic relation to changes in religion, culture,

politics, and economics. In and of itself, war is usually morally agnostic: it has upheld governing elites whether they were just or despotic, or overthrown them in favor of some other set of masters who had advantages in weapons or tactics but not better manners or morals. Yet war has moral significance even if it is often unclear as to moral meaning. Somehow, we know that it matters whether civilians are massacred or protected, whether prisoners of war have their throats cut or are ransomed or paroled. It is important that some men and women of conscience over the centuries have tried to limit or end war, even as others with refined consciences supported some wars as necessary (if nonetheless evil) means to longer-term or wider moral goods. It is significant that some artists and poets have celebrated war while others have lamented it, but that mothers only ever fear it.

War undresses humanity. Soldiers know better than anyone the murky moral arena in which they live and work. The Duke of Wellington, walking the field of his great victory at Waterloo, mumbled to an aide: ''Nothing except a battle lost can be half so melancholy as a battle won.'' Half a century later and a continent away, Confederate General Robert E. Lee spoke a different truth, one far less acceptable in polite modern company but an abiding fact of war nonetheless: it has its own aesthetic, powerful and alluring. On the spectacle and lure of war he said, after repelling a Union charge at Fredericksburg: ''It is well that war is so terrible, else we should grow too fond of it.'' On the other side of the lines William T. Sherman recalled the carnage of the American Civil War this way: ''War is at best barbarism. . . . Its glory is all moonshine. It is only those who have neither fired a shot nor heard the shrieks and groans of the wounded who cry aloud for blood, more vengeance, more destruction. War is hell.'' It is also the most expensive, technically complex, physically, emotionally, and morally demanding enterprise which humans undertake. No art, no music, no cathedral or mosque, no great city, no space program or research into the cure for AIDS or cancer has ever received a fraction of the money, time, and effort that people and societies have regularly put into preparing for and waging war. Those hard truths have shaped my approach to this work and the tone in which it is written.

In discussing so vast a range of issues and events I have relied heavily on hundreds of specialist works by historians of enormously impressive erudition and deep regional historical knowledge. I am immensely grateful to these specialists upon whose books and articles I have relied in such measure. I have not hesitated to add interpretations of my own in areas I know well, or where it seemed to me that larger patterns in history were readily apparent and broad lessons might be fairly drawn. Yet, writing a work of history such as this is primarily an exercise in synthesis. It is simply not possible for one author to master all the primary sources which are the raw ore from which the purer metals of historical truth are smelted. My challenge has been to gain sufficient command of the specialty literature in order to provide enough detailed narrative that past events become comprehensible, while also communicating the differing interpretations to which those events may be subject. In that I cleave to the wisdom of G. M. Trevelyan that in assessing historical actors and events

''the really indispensable qualities [are] accuracy and good faith.'' Reconstructions of past events and motivations are as accurate as I have been able to make them. I ask readers to accept that I have presented what I believe to be the facts of history and drawn conclusions about the meaning of those facts in scholarly good faith, without conscious bias or preference for the claims of any one faith over another. I have, in sum, tried to the limits of my ability as a scholar to present war in the medieval and early modern era as it really was: naked and brutal and raw, as well as complex in motivation and effects. I am content to leave it to readers and critics to determine how well I performed that task.

Concerning the comparative length of one entry as against another, it is generally true that the more distantly great events recede from the present the more the history of those events, and the historians who write about them, compress their description. Ideally, that is done because more of the original dross which always conceals the meaning of human affairs has been burned away, and the right conclusions have been drawn about what place in the larger human story a given historical event or person holds. In reality, it probably more closely reflects a common tendency and need to fix all stars in relation to one's own time and point of view. I have made what effort I can to correct for this baleful habit, but I am sure that I am as guilty of it as most. As to the length of the overall work, I may only plead in the spirit of Blaise Pascal that I would have written far less, but I did not have the time.

Logic of the Work

I have addressed the complexity of war in this period by including entries that span questions of military technology, royal finance, social and class relations, major confessional groups (including those seen as ''heretics'' by orthodox communities), and elite mores and conceits about combat and chivalry. I have summarized theological disputations that may seem arcane and obscure to modern readers, but which clearly animated confessional groups to do great violence to one another during the period. Also included are key military, political, and intellectual biographies. Of course, as befits a work of military history, most entries are concerned with narrative recounting of major wars and descriptions of key battles and sieges. This includes explanations of their significance to the wars in which they occurred, and discussion of tactics and weapons employed. Longer battle entries concern fights that revealed an important changing of the guard among disputing powers, or were a turning point in a given war. Some longer battle entries, however, concern fights from minor wars or that were not in themselves decisive, but which nonetheless warranted extended treatment because they exposed some key change in military technology or use of bold new tactics. Yet, other entries illustrate opposite but arguably even more important truths, that battles were seldom decisive in this period and that changes in military technology were not usually ''revolutions in military affairs'' because they were not always or quickly adapted to, or adopted. Why? Because fiscal or cultural or class restraints led to entrenched resistance to change.

In this work there are entries that explain minutely technical matters such as the velocity and effect of drag on a spherical shot or a musket ball, the evolution of drill, the peculiar nature of wounds caused by period weapons, battlefield manifestation of class and warrior psychology in heraldic devices and early uniforms, and the display and use of various flags from the Aztec Empire to Medieval Europe to Japan, and also the banner system of the Qing Army in Manchuria. There are entries that translate and/or define period terminology, others which describe weapons and features of fortification, and still more that explain naval construction techniques and describe the period conduct of war at sea. There is extensive discussion of the burden of logistics that so often determined the composition of opposing forces and decided the strategies pursued, from Ming failure to penetrate the deserts of Mongolia to wars of endless maneuver without battles of encounter by armies of *condottieri* in Italy, or campaigns of maneuver by locust-like armies in Germany during the Thirty Years' War. Closely related to logistics were problems of pay, so there are also entries on contributions, mutiny, military discipline, and systems of war finance. There are entries that discuss the rise and fall in the size of armies from the Ottoman Empire to early modern France, to the vast Ming and Manchu armies of Asia, to the near-guerrilla forces of rural Ireland or the Balkan *Militargrenze.* Other main entries deal with the effects of technology and disease, including on campaigns of conquest and on class structure and the social make-up of armies. On religious aspects of the period there are broad entries on all the major faiths, along with their peculiar heresies and internal controversies. There is solid coverage of outbreaks of toleration and persistent and terrible theological persecution alike, and on disputes territorial between emperors and popes, kings and barons, and the barony and rising urban classes. There are several entries on peasant uprisings and other involvement of the ''lower orders'' in medieval and early modern warfare, from the *ashigaru* of Japan to the great *Jacquerie* in 14th-century France, to the German Peasant War of the early 16th century.

The contemporary ''clash of civilizations'' thesis, which is popular among journalists and social scientists, ostensibly explains the grand historical pattern of the post–Cold War period by reference to earlier eras. It rests heavily on an ahistorical view that in pre-modern times wars were engaged across ''civilizational lines.'' It is then suggested that these lines remain more salient today than the political borders established by modern nations and states. Yet, many of the sharpest and most unforgiving wars of religion were in fact fought among communities of a single faith, usually to destroy some sect identified as heretical. In most wars of the era of ''wars of religion'' the majority of Muslims who were killed in battle were thus slain by other Muslims, the majority of Christian dead were butchered or burned by other Christians, and so on. This was true even during the Crusades and the later Ottoman advance into southern Europe, both of which saw Christians and Muslims ally against clusters of coreligionists on the other side. Religious-military lines were perhaps sharper in India, though even there dynastic wars and Mughal civil wars were often more destructive than wars between Muslim conquerors

on one side and Hindu Marathas or Rajputs resisting on the other. Truly protracted wars over religious differences were waged in the 16th–17th centuries within Western Christianity, as they were also between the sunni Ottoman and Uzbek empires and shi'ia Safavid Ian. The title ''Wars of Religion'' therefore should not be taken as implying that all conflicts of the period were rooted in theological or sectarian quarrels, that the ''*ghazi*'' or ''crusader'' spirit was always paramount. It is sufficient to note that religious justifications, sincere or merely propagandistic, were present at some level in nearly every war.

Analytically, this study starts from the straightforward observation that large states, empires, and civilizations have dominated world affairs for most of recorded history. Even so, smaller states and marginal societies sometimes have been quite influential in the larger course of world history, even if mainly as objects of aggression or imperial competition. Such societies can be interesting and important in their own right, in addition to being of regional significance. Thus, some smaller kingdoms such as Scotland in Europe or isolated Songhay and Mali in Africa are covered, at varying length, in addition to all major kingdoms and empires. Each is treated in an entry which at the least summarizes the main features of its military position and development, and which tries to situate it in the larger contexts of time and region. It remains true, however, that it was the most powerful kingdoms and empires, the major civilizations from which they arose, and the wars in which they were involved that were the prime movers of world history in this period. Even small changes within certain key societies had a more important long-term impact on world affairs than signal events within or among smaller countries. Comprehensive coverage is thus given to the policies and interactions of the most powerful kingdoms and empires, and to the dynamics which drove them, including economic, intellectual, political, and social innovation or decay. This includes some contenders for power which fell short and disappeared from modern maps, such as Burgundy.

Likewise, it is true that lesser—whether in character or talent—individuals in charge of the affairs of major states had a broad influence on world history. Often, their influence was weightier than that of a moral or intellectual titan, if the latter was confined by chance or birth to a Lilliputian land. Therefore, individuals who might be reasonably judged as of little personal consequence are sometimes given their day in this work, owing to the indisputable public consequences of their choices, actions, or omissions while in command of the public affairs of some major power. More than one otherwise insignificant pope or prince, or king or emperor, or some effete aristocratic general or admiral, has slipped into significant history via this back door, held ajar for them by the pervasive importance of raw power as a motive and moving force in the affairs of the world. Great and small alike pursued grand plans and strategic interests within an international system which reflected wider economic, political, and military realities, and upheld—or at least, claimed to uphold—legal, cultural, moral, and diplomatic norms. A full understanding of medieval and early modern affairs would be incomplete without awareness of the historical

evolution and nature of the early modern "international system" (or better said, "international society"), its key terms, ideas, successes, and failures. There are, therefore, entries in this work on various treaties, legal doctrines and traditions, and evolving ideas about a rudimentary "international law" rooted in the just war tradition and cultural norms about the treatment of civilians swept up or aside by war, later supplemented by the works of key jurists and legal thinkers such as Alberico Gentili and Hugo Grotius, and codified in 1648 in the great settlement known as the Peace of Westphalia.

War as a general phenomenon—and great wars among major players in particular—receives direct attention in this work. War is more costly, and requires more preparation, effort, sacrifice, ingenuity, and suffering than any other collective human endeavor. There is no greater engine of social, economic, political, or technological change than war, and the ever-present threat of war even in times of peace. An effort was made to capture something of this reality in wide-ranging entries such as *battle*, *castles*, *horses*, and *recruitment*, among others. Moreover, war and the early modern state, and the emerging international states system, evolved together from c.1450, each greatly influencing the other. Large and protracted wars—wars which involved many powers in determined conflict—greatly compounded these manifold effects. Hence, major wars of the late medieval and early modern periods are covered in detail, including the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453), the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559), the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648), and the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648). Dozens of lesser wars, civil wars, and rebellions are also recounted, of course, as they constituted a good part of the local, regional, and international history of the period.

In the interest of universality, a serious effort was made to cover regions of the wider world which, objectively speaking, formed only tributary streams of the riverine flow of world history during the period. Along with something of the flavor of their local histories, it is recounted how such areas were affected by larger historical trends that brushed against them, even in their deep desert or distant continental isolation. Detailed knowledge of historical events of even better-known societies is far greater after c.1300 than before that date. As a result, there are more—and more detailed—entries for the second half of the period covered in this work than there are for the first half. Fortuitously, this division roughly corresponds with the advent of gunpowder weapons in sieges and on the battlefield, from Asia to India, the Middle East, and Europe. Special attention is paid to the evolution of gunpowder weapons, along with the great and grave social, political, and fiscal changes they wrought over several centuries. Also discussed is whether these changes occasioned a "revolution in military affairs." The technological and social changes effected by gunpowder weapons are referenced throughout the work, while recounted most directly and plainly in such general entries as *infantry*, *cavalry*, *artillery*, *siege warfare*, and *gunpowder weapons*. Major intellectual revolutions with global historical significance are also discussed, most notably the *Italian Renaissance*, the *Protestant Reformation*, and the Catholic *Counter-Reformation*. While these tumultuous upheavals were originally and primarily

European phenomena, they ultimately had profound effects on societies as far afield as Asia, Africa, and the Americas. Paradoxically, they also contributed to the spread and acceptance in Europe of secularism and the ascendancy of the early modern state.

Structure of the Work

This work is organized alphabetically. Single-word entries are easy and straightforward to locate. It is not always obvious, however, where a compound term should be listed. For ease of use by readers, compound entries are listed as they are employed in normal speech and writing; that is, in the form in which they are most likely to be first encountered by the average reader. For example, *Edict of Nantes* and *Union of Kalmar* appear under "E" and "U," respectively, with blind entries serving as guideposts to the proper location placed under "N" and "K." If readers are unable to find an entry they seek under one part of a compound term, they should have little difficulty finding it under another component of the term or phrase. Additionally, the book is heavily cross-referenced (all words in *italics*, thus), with some licence taken when cross-referencing adjectives or adverbs to entries which are actually listed as nouns, such as *feudal*, which directs the reader to a main entry head that is actually *feudalism*. Readers are advised to make use of this feature since cross-references almost always provide additional information or insight not contained in the original entry. Rather than clutter the text unduly with italics, however, common references such as "battle" or specific weapons, as well as all country names, have been left in normal font. In select instances, even terms such as "knight" or "men-at-arms" or "longbow" have been left in normal font since a cross-reference at that given point would not especially illuminate the main entry being read. Yet, all such commonly used military terms and all countries are discussed in discrete entries. In very rare cases, some common terms have been highlighted to indicate that they contain additional information that is highly relevant to the entry being perused. To avoid confusion or sending the reader on a fruitless cross-reference search, foreign words and phrases have not been italicized in the main entries (they have, however, been italicized in the entry heads). With only one exception—rare in-text references to book titles, which are clear from the context in which they appear—all in-text terms or phrases rendered in italics in a main entry indicate an active cross-reference.

Some technical points: (1) All dates are provided in the non-sectarian "Common Era" (C.E.) unless stated otherwise, in which case the designation B.C.E. ("Before the Common Era") is used. In cases where ambiguity exists, C.E. has been added to ensure clarity. For other matters pertaining to calendar issues, see the "Note on Dates" elsewhere in the frontmatter of this work. (2) I have for the most part followed the practice of modern specialists in using the Pinyin system for romanizing Chinese personal and place names. In cases where place names remain more familiar to Western readers under their Wade-Giles form, this alternate form has been provided in parentheses. (3) In

areas where place names of battles or sieges differ significantly in spelling in several regional languages, I have provided each alternative place name and its language of origin at the start of the main entry. In many cases, blind entries were also added directing readers to the main entry. This is especially the case concerning Hungarian, Turkish, Greek, and other competing place names in the Balkans. (4) To avoid confusion as to which Emperor Charles or King John is being referred to, I have left German, Polish, Portuguese, Spanish, Swedish, and most Balkan names in their original languages, with blind cross-references provided elsewhere if it is likely English-language readers might look there in the first instance. Thus, Charles IX of Sweden is rendered as Karl IX in this work; Frederick V is given instead as Friedrich V, and so forth. There are rare exceptions to this: Charles V, King of Spain and Holy Roman Emperor, is so important a ruler, and so well known by that name to English-language readers, that I have listed his entry under its English spelling rather than in German. For the same reason, familiarity to English-language students of history, I have listed French monarchs by their common English names (hence, Francis II, not François II). Similarly, Ottoman emperors are listed under generally accepted English spellings of Arab or Turkish personal names.

Note on Dates

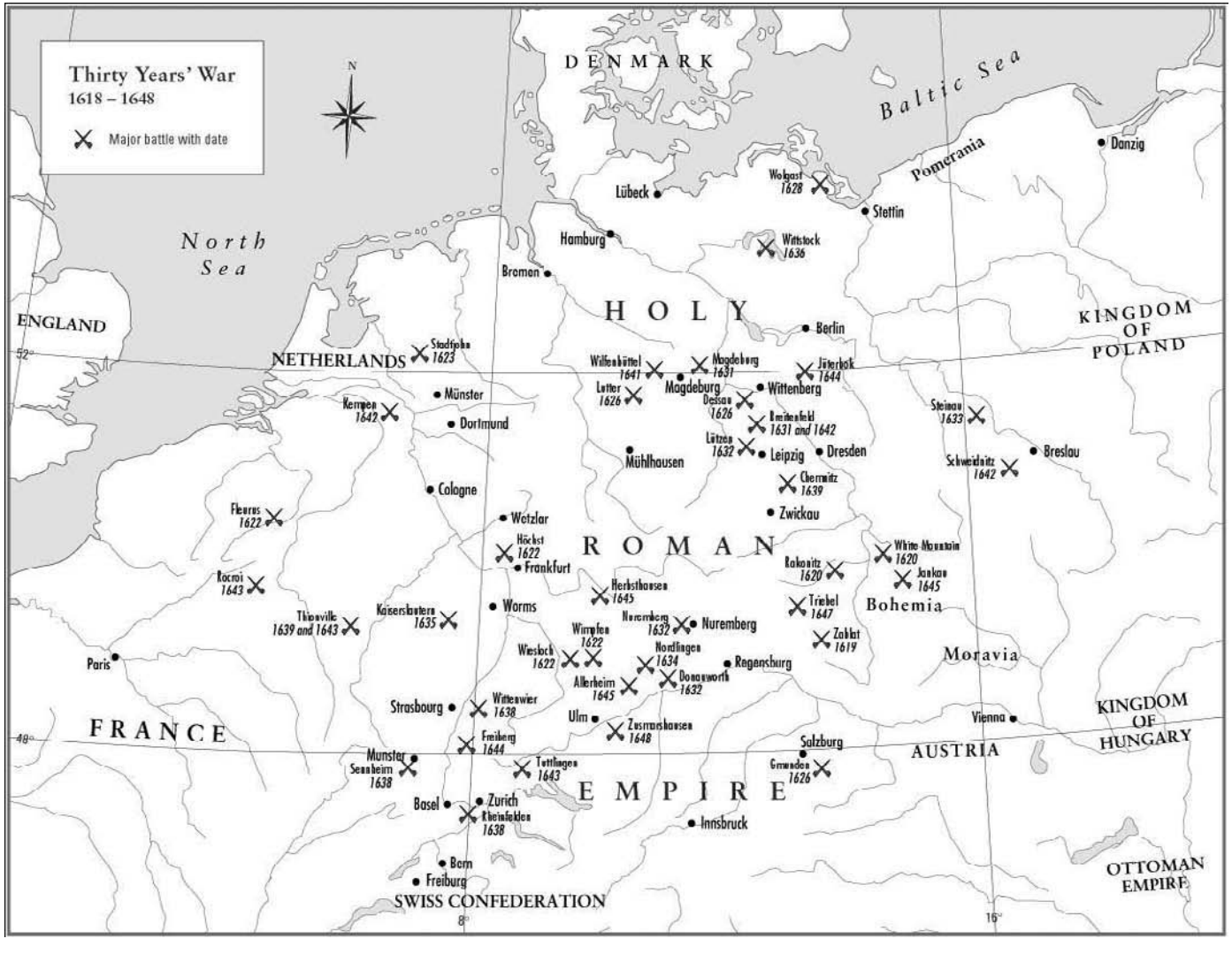
In 1582 parts of Europe shifted to a new calendar issued by Pope Gregory XIII. The old Julian calendar was 14 days out of sync with the solar year. Gregory made a 10-day correction by using the Vernal Equinox as the base marker. Thus, the day after October 4, 1582, was not October 5 but October 15. He also decreed that each new year would start on January 1 and that only centuries evenly divisible by 400 would contain ''leap years.'' The Gregorian calendar promised greater accuracy for several millennia. Even so, no self-respecting Protestant would take orders from the pope concerning the correct measure of time, a matter that rightfully belonged solely to eternity and to God. Only Catholic countries shifted to ''New Style'' (NS): Austria and Catholic states in Germany, France, Portugal, and Spain. Protestants cleaved to ''Old Style'' (OS), which left them 10 days behind Gregorian dates until 1700 and 11 days behind after that.

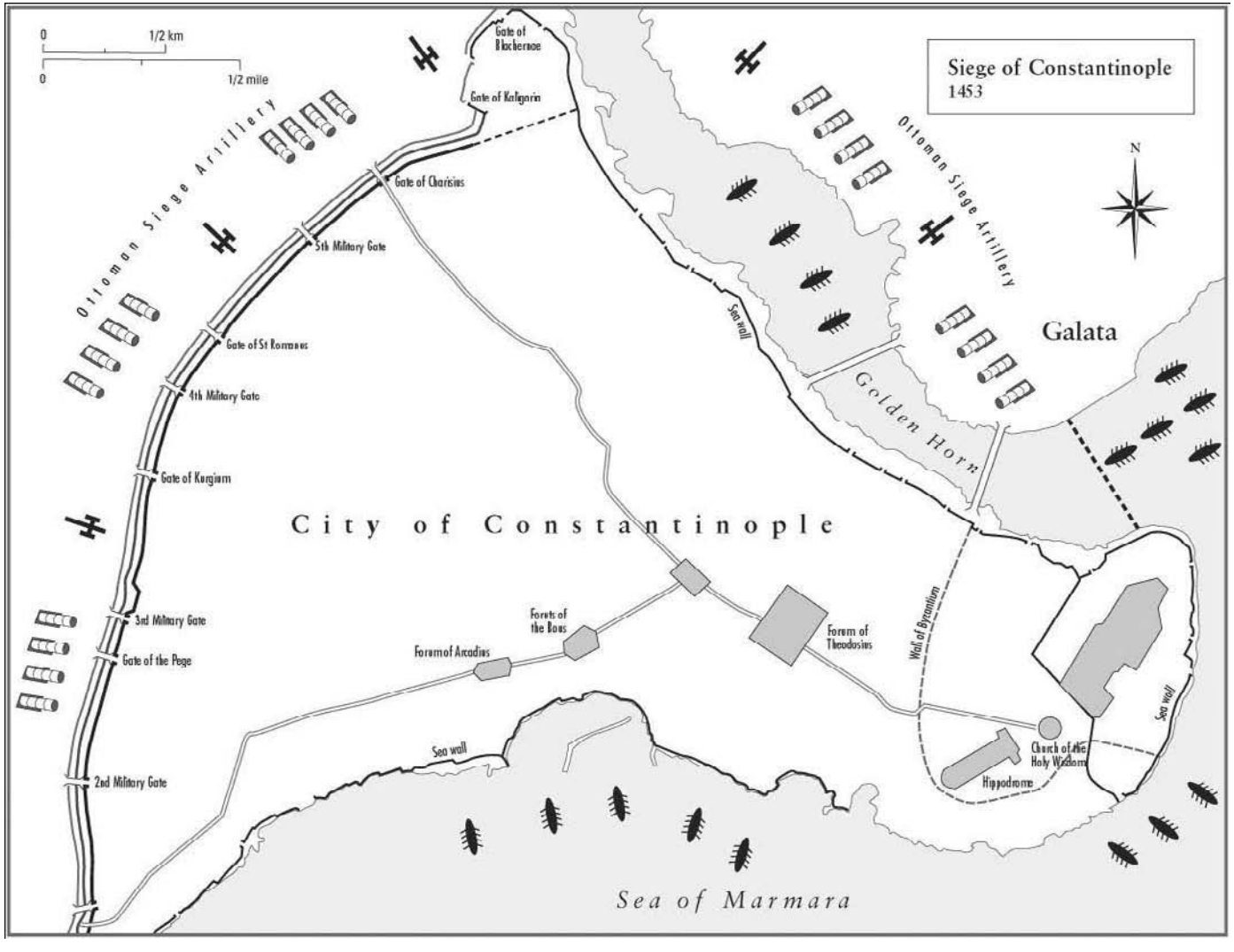
Once the fires of religious conflict burned out, most Protestants were prepared to accept the logic and greater accuracy of the Gregorian system. Saxony shifted to New Style in 1697. Other German states followed suit two years later. Great Britain and its overseas empire only changed to New Style in 1752. Sweden used New Style from 1700 but reverted to Old Style in 1712, which meant the same events might be recorded on three different dates. For instance, the Battle of Poltava in 1709 for many Protestants took place on June 27 (OS) but on June 28 for Swedes and July 8 (NS) for Catholics, some Protestants, and most later historians. In 1753, Sweden decided that Gregory had been right after all and reconverted to New Style. European empires imposed New Style on various conquered peoples of other continents over the course of the 18th and 19th centuries. Orthodox Russia declined to concede that the Latin West knew best how to keep God's time and remained staunchly committed to the inaccurate Julian calendar to the end of the Tsarist era. The Bolsheviks—rough reformers of everything they could conceive or lay hands to—forced Russians to shift to New Style in

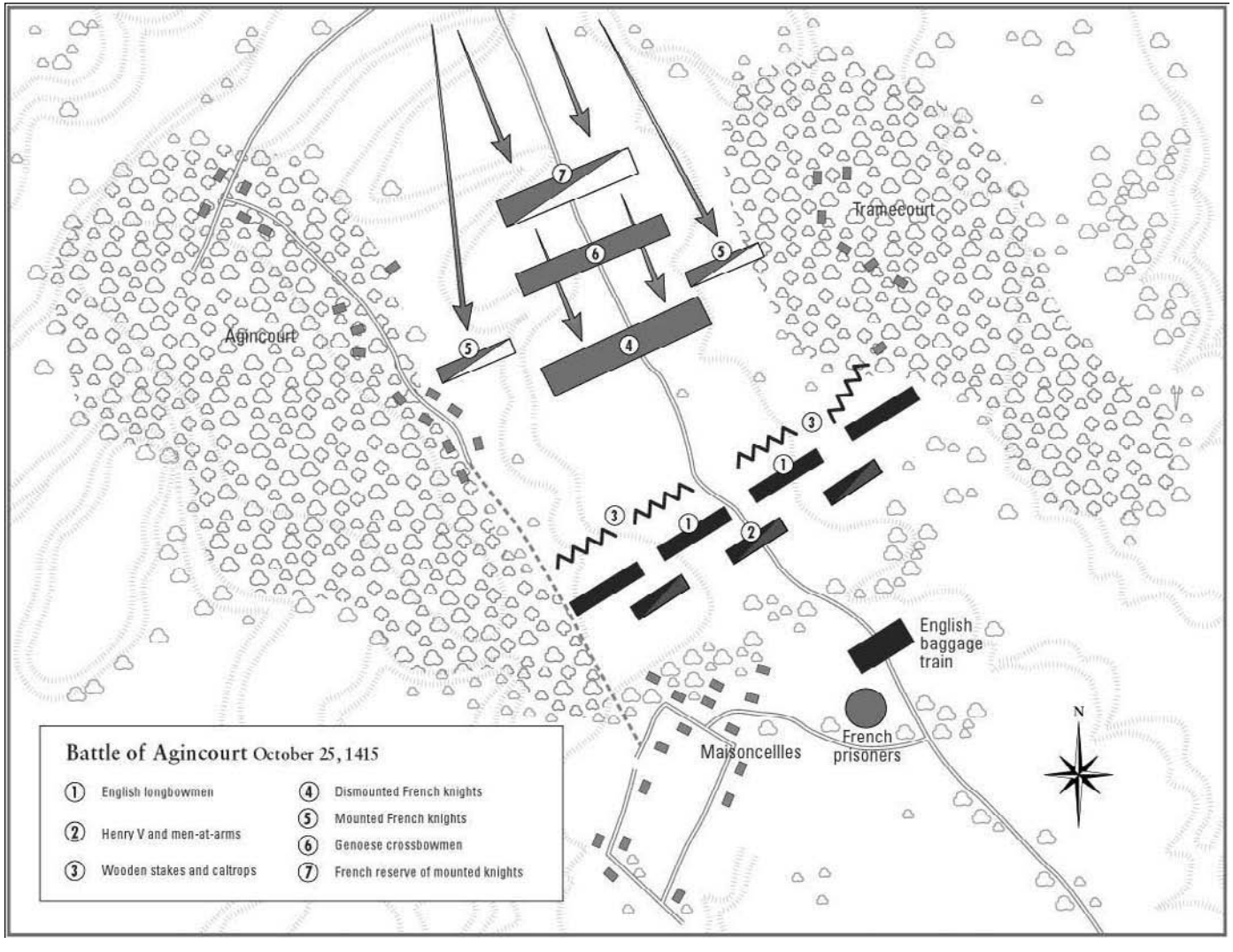
1918. Other Orthodox countries resisted the change until 1923. As part of the imitative modernization of the Meiji Restoration, Japan adopted New Style in 1873. Chinese bureaucrats kept to the ancient Confucian calendar as they clung to most things traditional and non-Western. The successors to China's scholar-bureaucrats were impatient, modernizing republicans who looked to the West for models of national development. They imposed New Style on China in 1912.

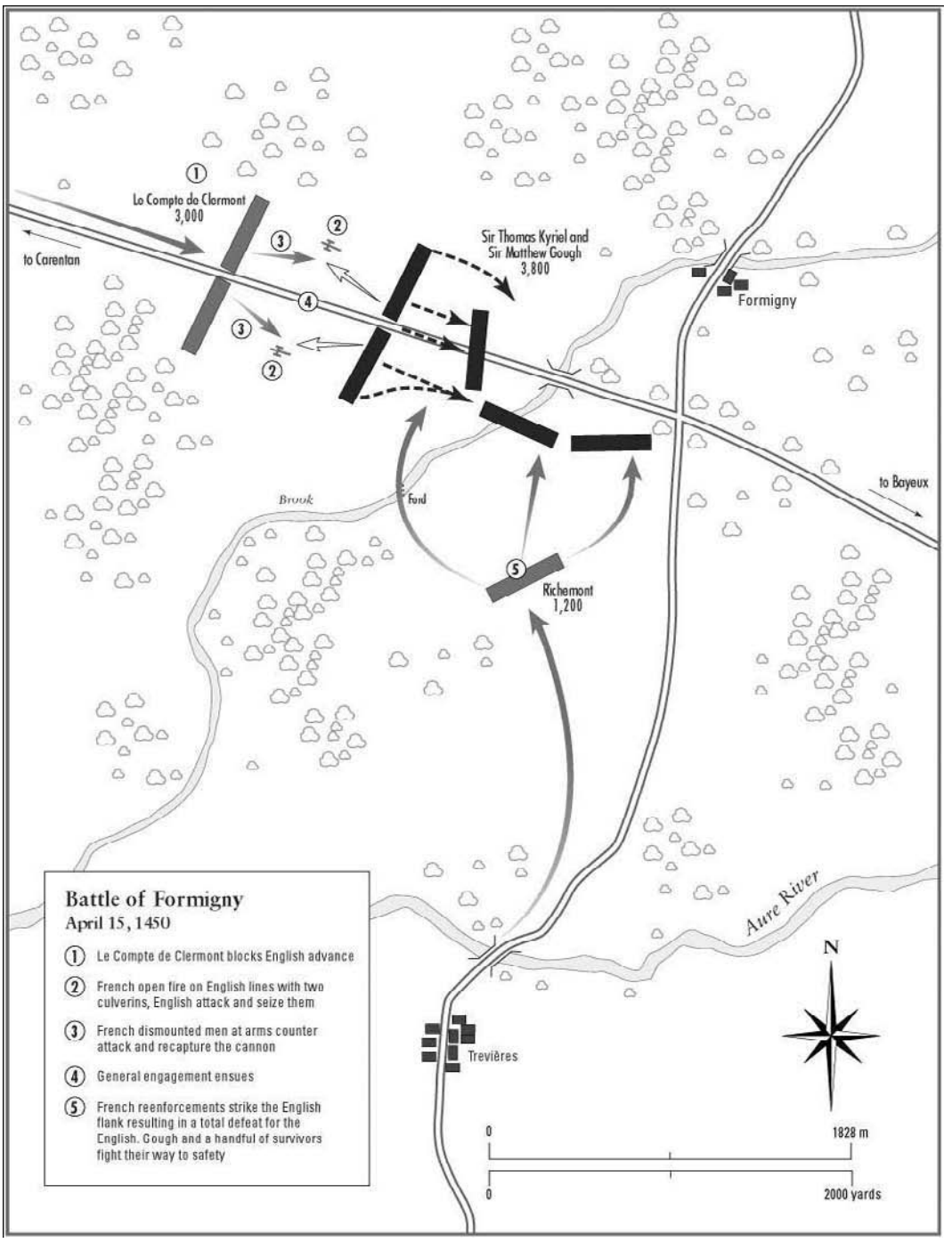
Muslim societies continued to follow the Islamic calendar proclaimed in 639 by Caliph Umar I, dating "Year One" to the *Hegira* (flight of the Prophet) in 622 and marking the new year in mid-July. Western scholars designated this system the "*Anno Hegirae*" ("In the year of the *Hegira*"). The Muslim year is lunar and thus just 354 days long, an 11-day difference from all solar calendars. The A.H. calendar was divided into 12 lunar cycles of equal length beginning with each crescent moon. It did not need to add leap days or years, but the price for temporal evenness was that it took 34 solar years for a given lunar month to repeat exactly in the same place and season of the solar year. The Ottoman Empire introduced an Islamicized solar calendar but it ran 13 days behind the West. As part of a radical postwar modernization after World War I, Turkey shifted to New Style along with Latin script. Stricter Islamic societies refused the change but most Muslims eventually adopted NS for its sheer convenience, making it a common international calendar. A.H. notation remains in use to chart days of special Muslim religious obligation and observance.

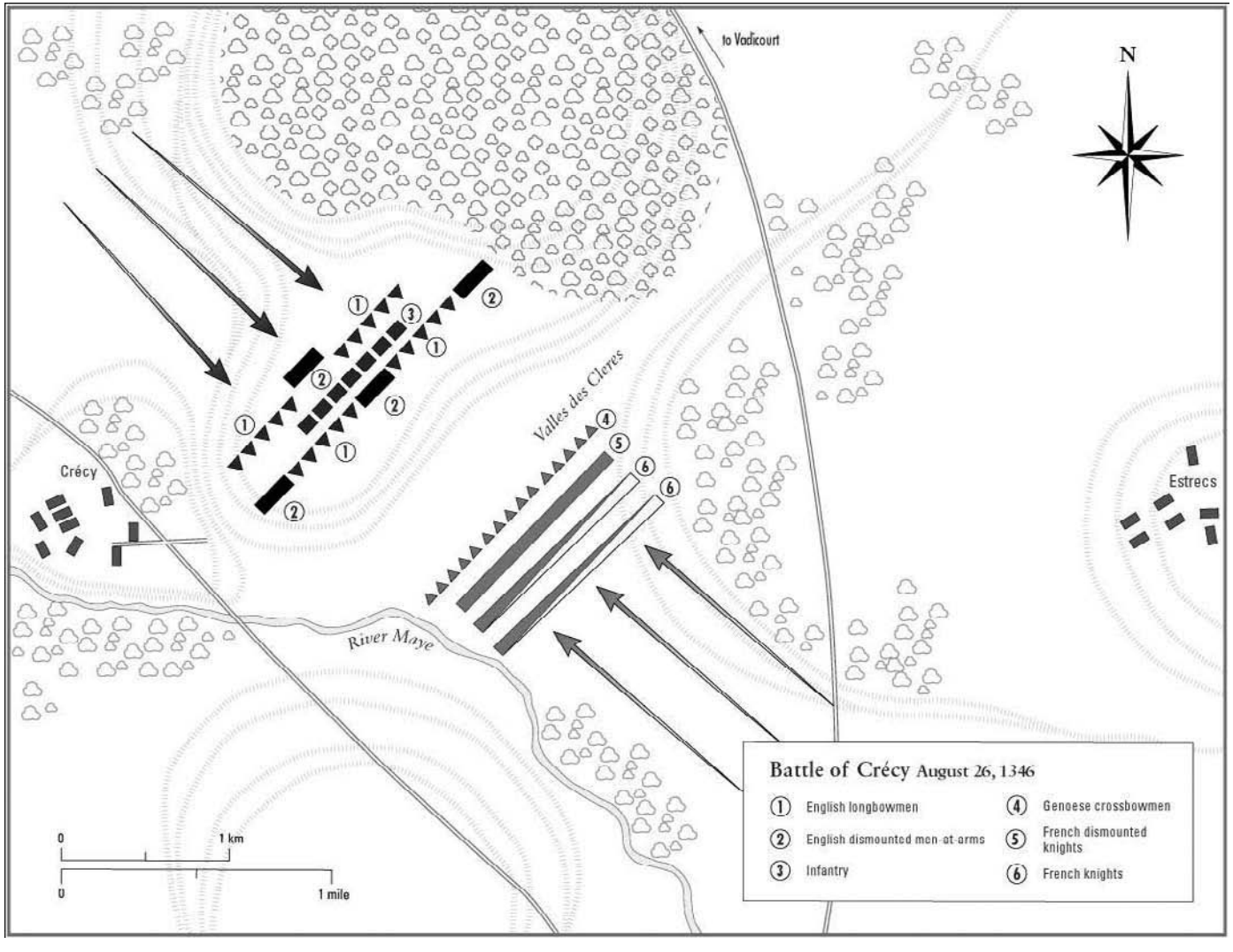
Unless otherwise indicated, most Julian, Hegira, Orthodox, and Ottoman dates have been converted here to New Style, except where standard OS usage is so accepted that any change would cause undue confusion. Finally, rather than use the Christian "Anno Domini" ("In the Year of Our Lord"), all dates are given in modern, nonsectarian "Common Era" (C.E.).

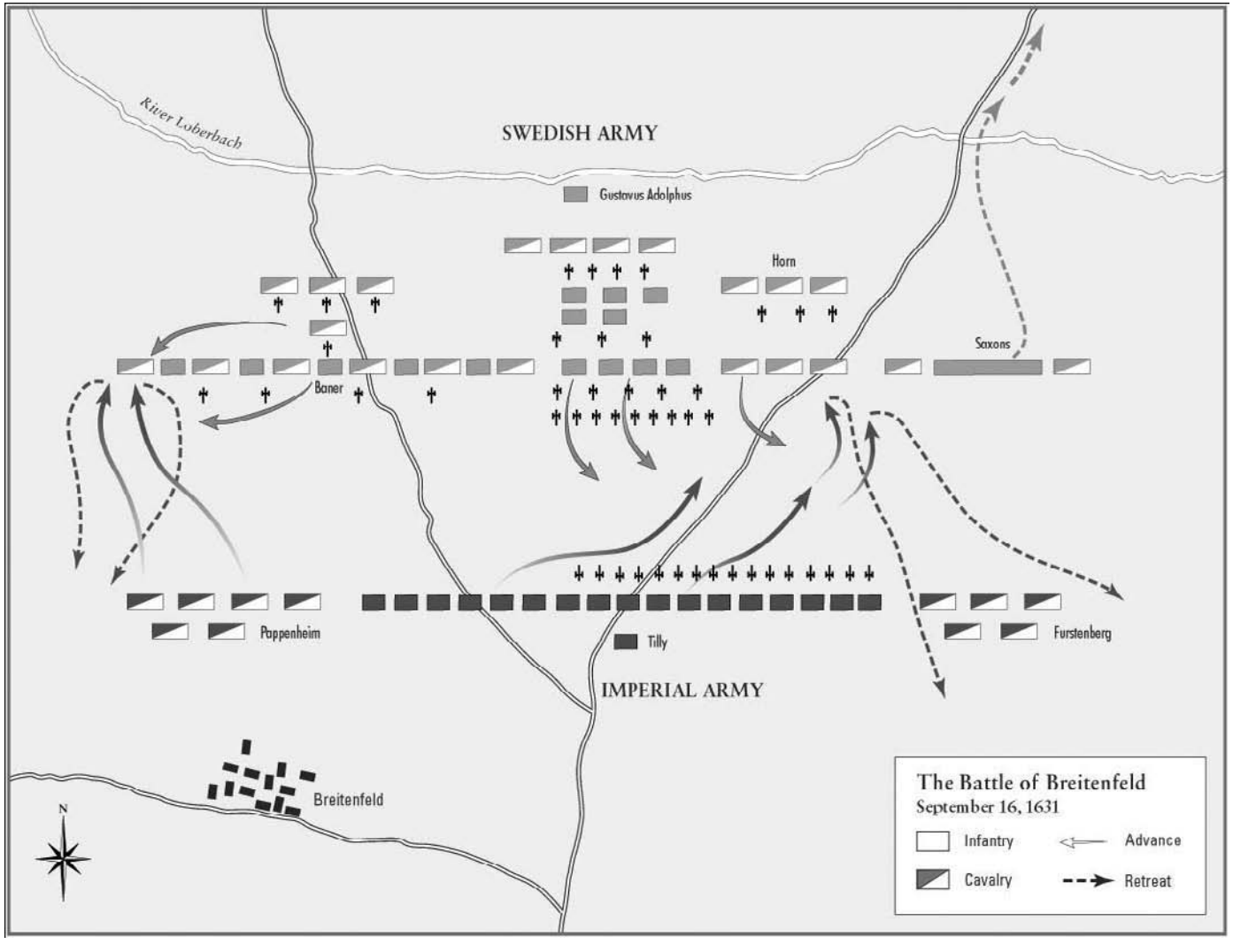

Thirty Years' War
1618 – 1648
Major battle with date
N
DENMARK
Baltic Sea
North Sea
ENGLAND
NETHERLANDS
HOLY
ROMAN
EMPIRE
FRANCE
SWISS CONFEDERATION
KINGDOM OF POLAND
KINGDOM OF HUNGARY
AUSTRIA
Bohemia
Moravia
Pomerania
OTTOMAN EMPIRE
Lübeck
Wolgast 1628
Danzig
Stettin
Hamburg
Wittstock 1636
Bremen
Berlin
Stadtlohn 1623
Wolfenbüttel 1641
Magdeburg 1631
Jüterbok 1644
Lutter 1626
Magdeburg
Wittenberg
Dessau 1626
Breitenfeld 1631 and 1642
Kempen 1642
Münster
Dortmund
Lützen 1632
Leipzig
Dresden
Mühlhausen
Chemnitz 1639
Steinau 1633
Schweidnitz 1642
Breslau
Cologne
Zwickau
Fleurus 1622
Wetzlar
Höchst 1622
Frankfurt
Rocroi 1643
Herbsthausen 1645
Rakonitz 1620
White Mountain 1620
Jankau 1645
Thionville 1639 and 1643
Kaiserslautern 1635
Worms
Nuremberg 1632
Nuremberg
Triebel 1647
Zablat 1619
Wimpfen 1622
Wiesloch 1622
Nördlingen 1634
Regensburg
Paris
Donauwörth 1632
Allerheim 1645
Strasbourg
Wittenweier 1638
Ulm
Zusmarshausen 1648
Vienna
Freiberg 1644
Salzburg
Munster Sennheim 1638
Tuttlingen 1643
Gmunden 1626
Basel
Zurich
Rheinfelden 1638
Innsbruck
Bern
Freiburg
48°
8°
16°

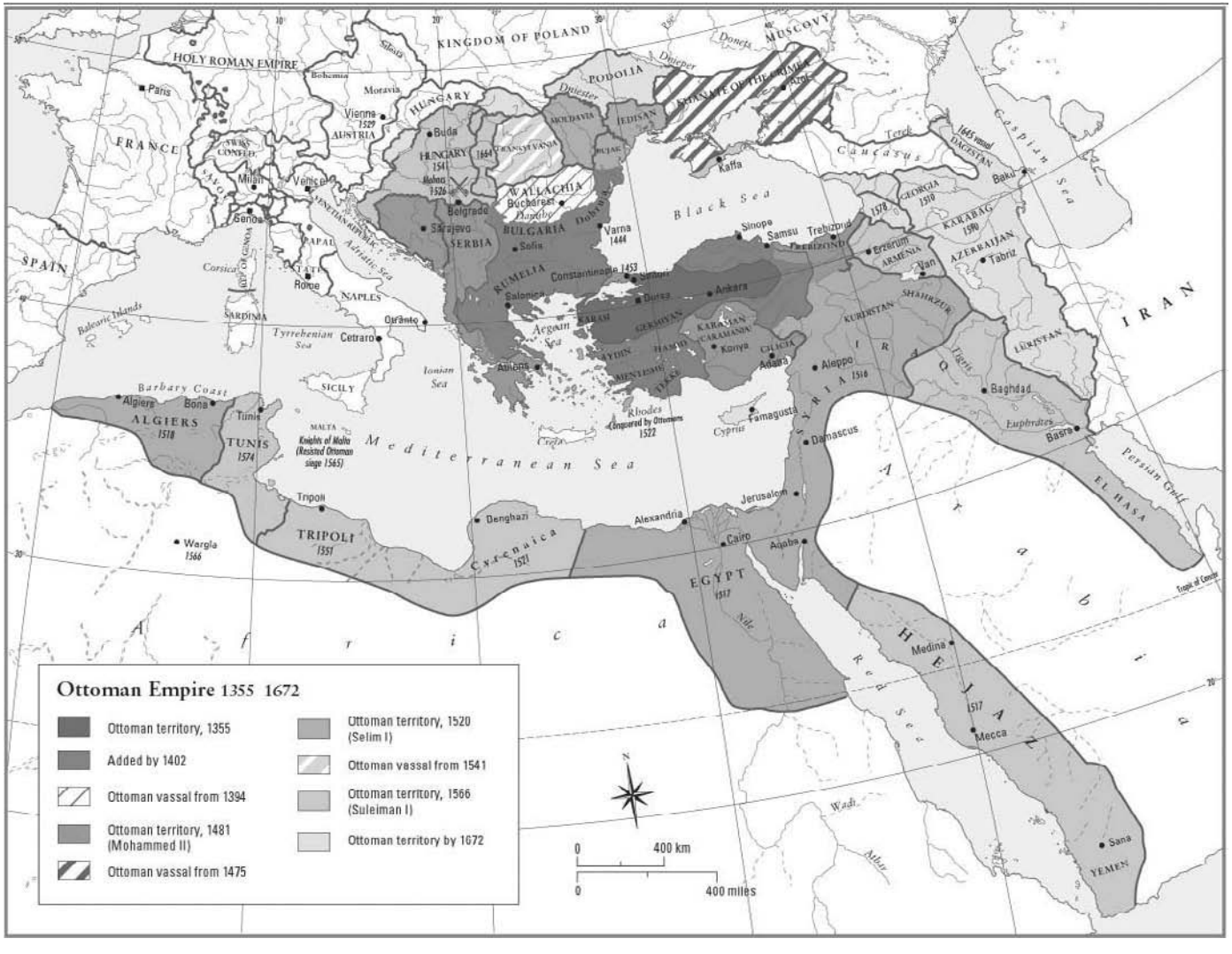

Siege of Constantinople
1453
0
1/2 km
0
1/2 mile
N
Gate of Blachernae
Gate of Kaligaria
Gate of Charisius
5th Military Gate
Gate of St Romanus
4th Military Gate
Gate of Kerigium
3rd Military Gate
Gate of the Pege
2nd Military Gate
Ottoman Siege Artillery
Ottoman Siege Artillery
Sea wall
Galata
Golden Horn
City of Constantinople
Forum of Arcadius
Forum of the Bous
Forum of Theodosius
Wall of Byzantium
Sea wall
Church of the Holy Wisdom
Hippodrome
Sea wall
Sea of Marmara


Agincourt
Tramecourt
English baggage train
French prisoners
Maisoncellles
N
Battle of Agincourt October 25, 1415
1 English longbowmen
2 Henry V and men-at-arms
3 Wooden stakes and caltrops
4 Dismounted French knights
5 Mounted French knights
6 Genoese crossbowmen
7 French reserve of mounted knights

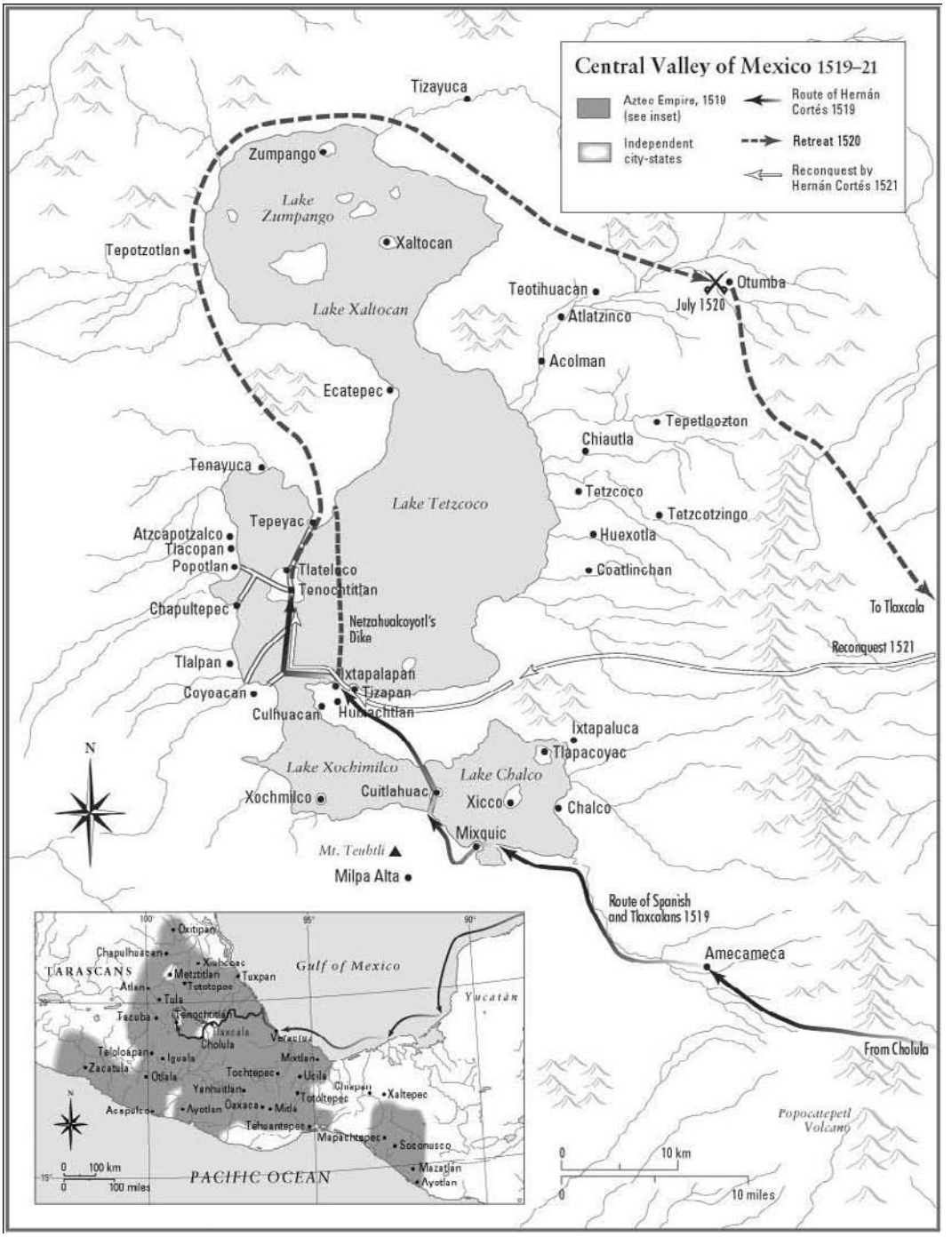

Battle of Formigny
April 15, 1450
1 Le Compte de Clermont blocks English advance
2 French open fire on English lines with two culverins, English attack and seize them
3 French dismounted men at arms counter attack and recapture the cannon
4 General engagement ensues
5 French reenforcements strike the English flank resulting in a total defeat for the English. Gough and a handful of survivors fight their way to safety
Le Compte de Clermont 3,000
to Carentan
Sir Thomas Kyriel and Sir Matthew Gough 3,800
Formigny
to Bayeux
Brook
Ford
Richemont 1,200
Aure River
Trevières
N
0
1828 m
0
2000 yards

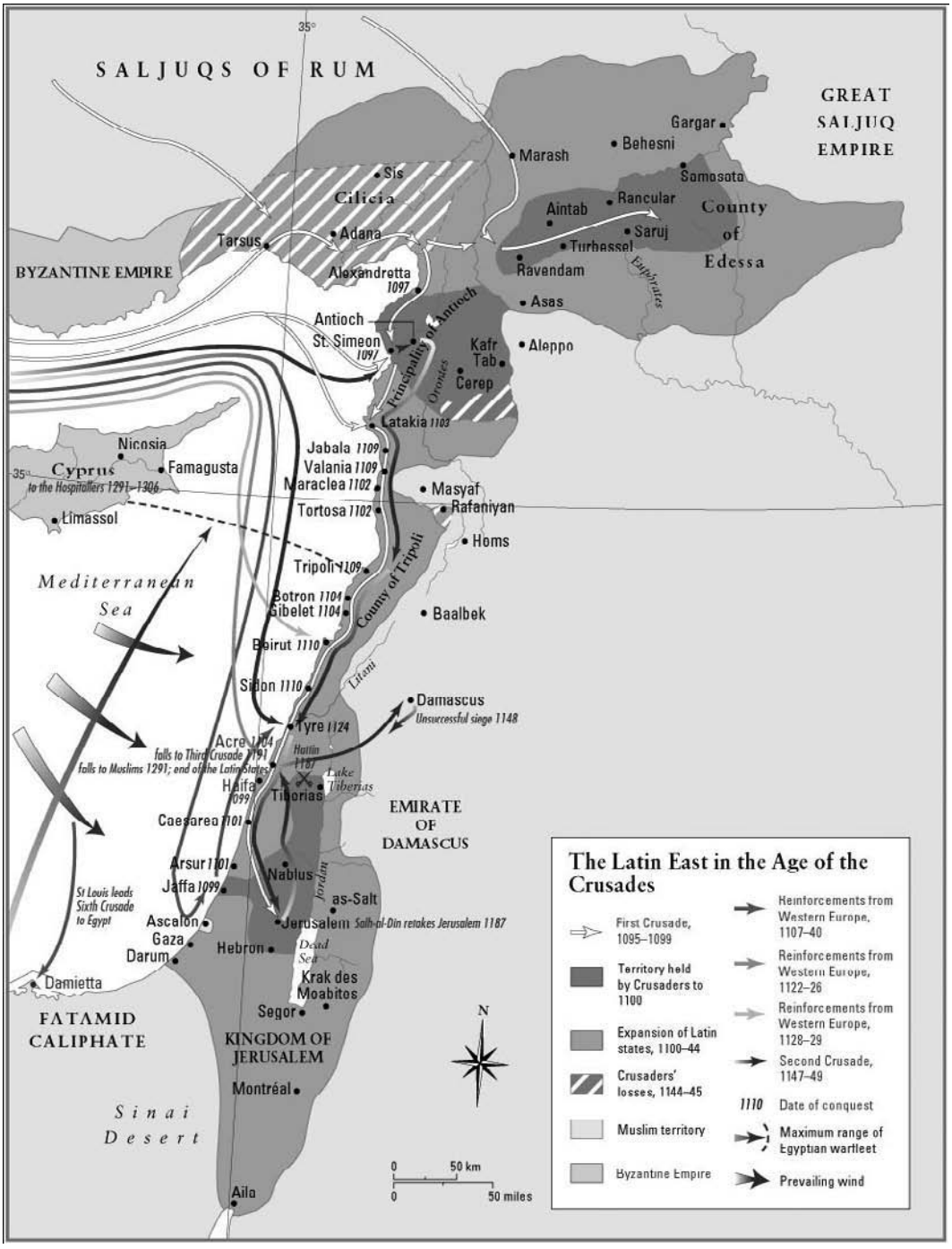

to Vadicourt
N
Valles des Cleres
Crécy
Estrecs
River Maye
0
1 km
0
1 mile
Battle of Crécy August 26, 1346
1 English longbowmen
2 English dismounted men-at-arms
3 Infantry
4 Genoese crossbowmen
5 French dismounted knights
6 French knights

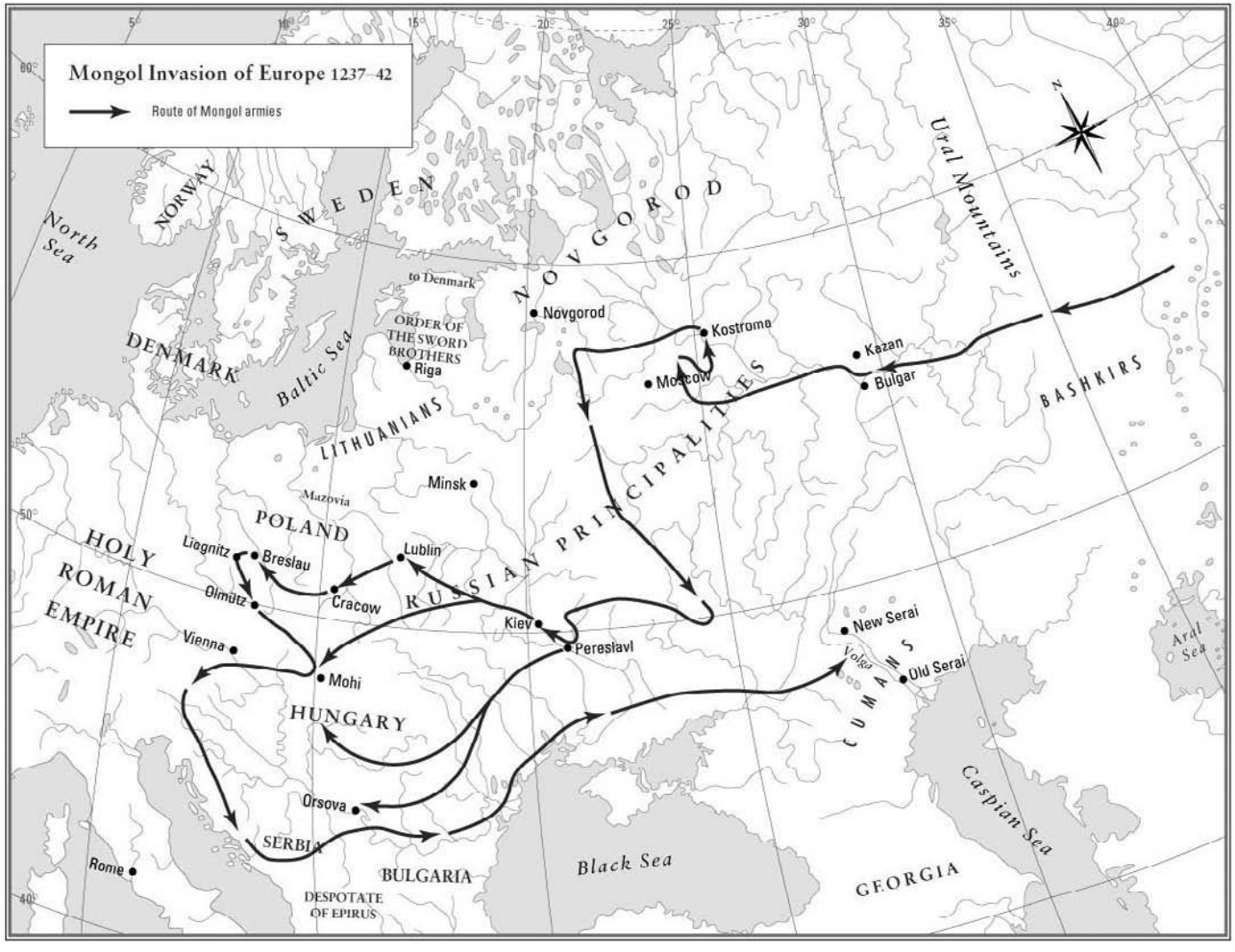

River Loberbach
SWEDISH ARMY
Gustavus Adolphus
Horn
Saxons
Baner
Pappenheim
Tilly
Furstenberg
IMPERIAL ARMY
Breitenfeld
N
The Battle of Breitenfeld
September 16, 1631
Infantry
Cavalry
Advance
Retreat

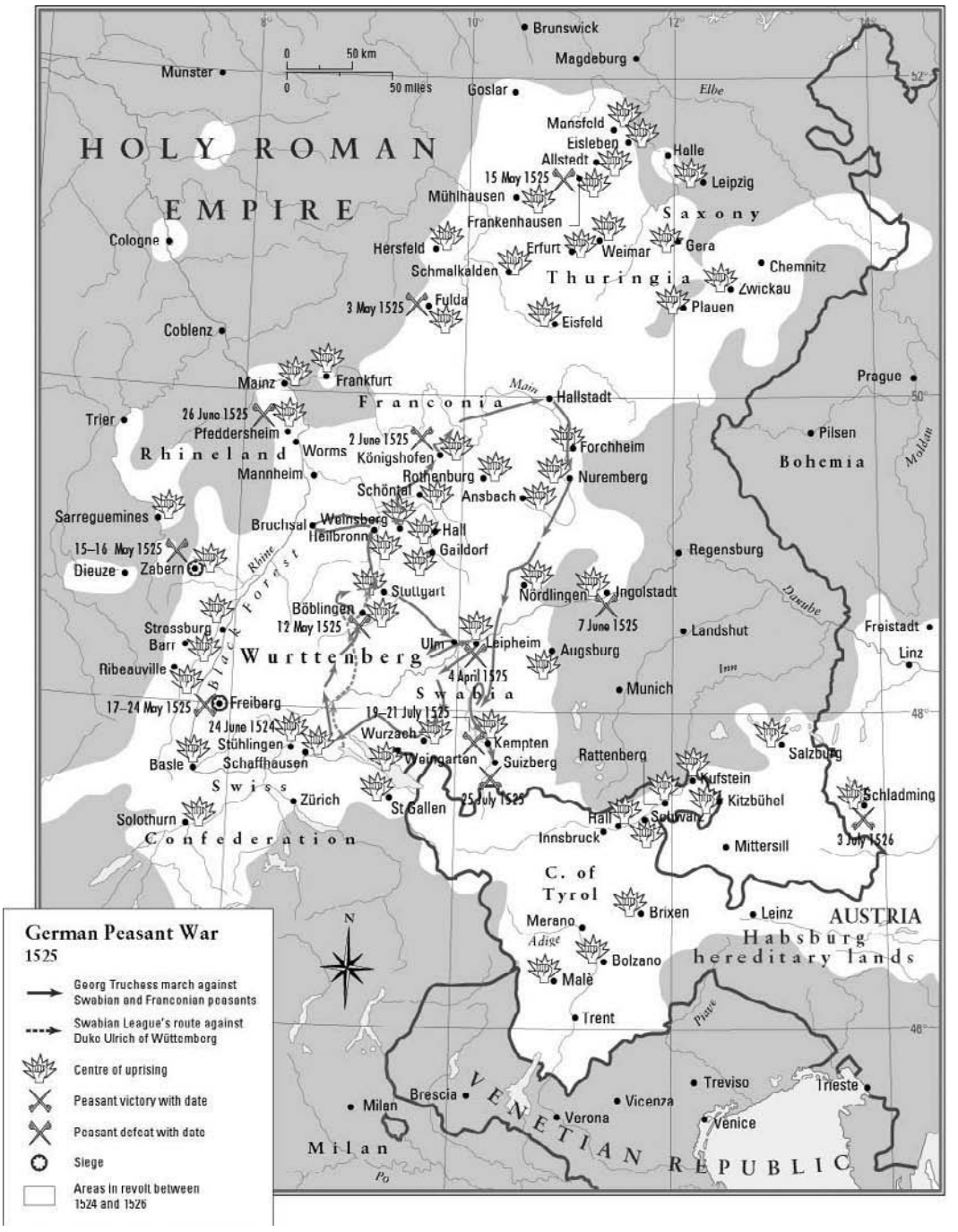

Ottoman Empire 1355 1672
Ottoman territory, 1355
Added by 1402
Ottoman vassal from 1394
Ottoman territory, 1481 (Mohammed II)
Ottoman vassal from 1475
Ottoman territory, 1520 (Selim I)
Ottoman vassal from 1541
Ottoman territory, 1566 (Suleiman I)
Ottoman territory by 1672
0 400 km
0 400 miles
HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE
KINGDOM OF POLAND
MUSCOVY
FRANCE
SPAIN
AUSTRIA
HUNGARY
PODOLIA
MOLDAVIA
WALLACHIA
BULGARIA
SERBIA
RUMELIA
TRANSYLVANIA
Black Sea
Caspian Sea
Caucasus
IRAN
IRAQ
SYRIA
EGYPT
ARABIA
HEJAZ
YEMEN
ALGIERS
TUNIS
TRIPOLI
Cyrenaica
Mediterranean Sea
Barbary Coast
SICILY
SARDINIA
NAPLES
PAPAL STATE
Rhodes Conquered by Ottomans 1522
Cyprus
Crete
Ionian Sea
Aegean Sea
Adriatic Sea
Tyrrhenian Sea
Balearic Islands
Corsica
Persian Gulf
Red Sea
Euphrates
Tigris
Nile
Wadi
Athar
Paris
Vienna 1529
Buda
Belgrade
Sarajevo
Sofia
Varna 1444
Constantinople 1453
Bucharest
Danube
Dniester
Dnieper
Don
Donets
Terek
Kaffa
Sinope
Samsun
Trebizond
Erzerum
Van
Baku
Tabriz
Ankara
Bursa
Salonica
Athens
Konya
Aleppo
Damascus
Baghdad
Basra
Jerusalem
Alexandria
Cairo
Aqaba
Medina
Mecca
Sana
Tripoli
Denghazi
Tunis
Algiers
Bona
Wargla 1566
Milan
Venice
Genoa
Rome
Otranto
Cetraro
MALTA Knights of Malta (Resisted Ottoman siege 1565)
1645 vassal DAGHESTAN
GEORGIA 1510
KARABAG 1590
AZERBAIJAN
KURDISTAN
SHAHRZUR
LURISTAN
ARMENIA
1578
1517
1516
1574
1551
1577
1517
1518

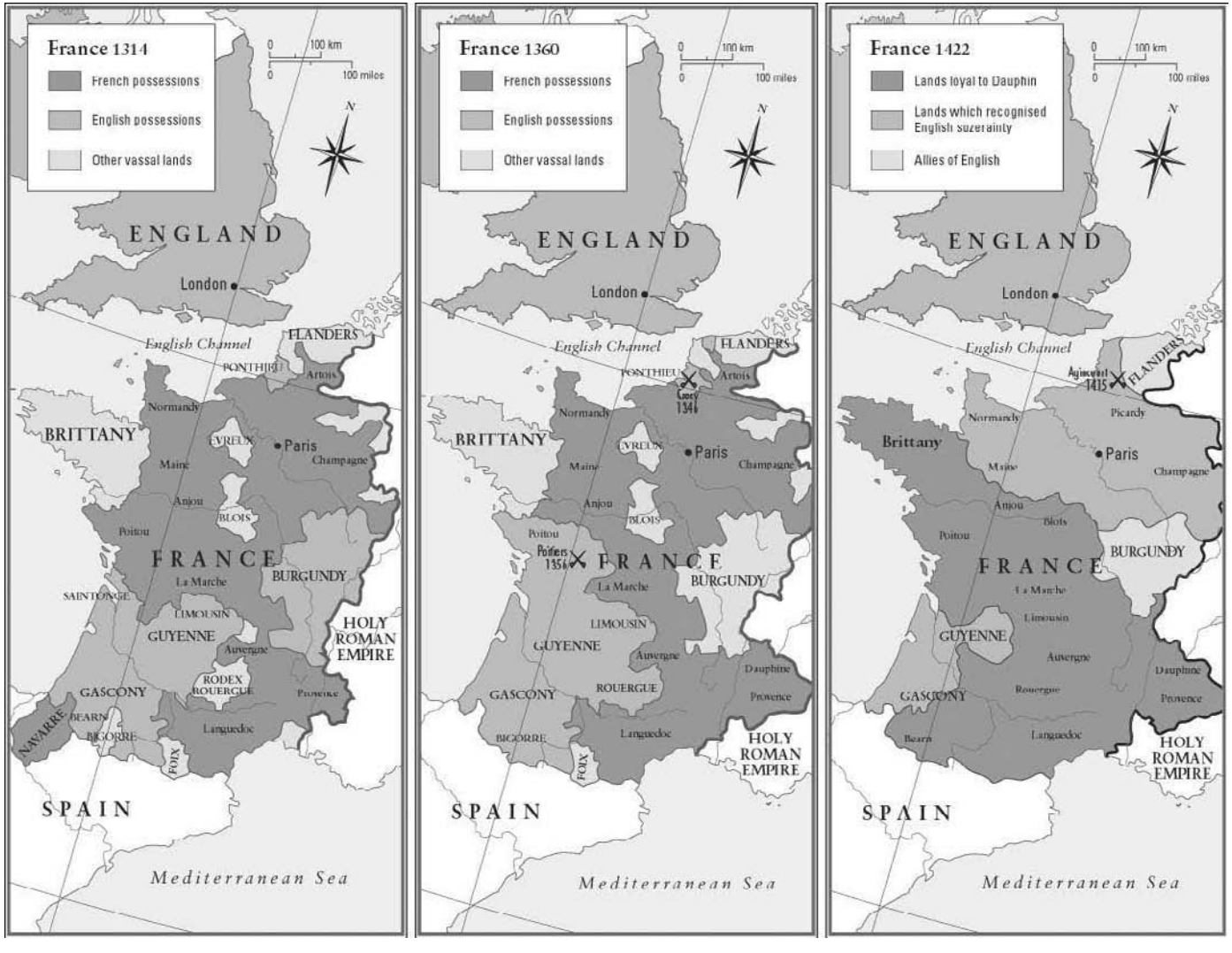
Europe 1648
Spanish–Habsburg land
Austrian–Habsburg land
"Spanish Road"; main supply routes to Habsburg possessions
N
0 200 km
0 200 miles
SWEDEN
NORWAY
SCOTLAND
Edinburgh
North Sea
DENMARK
Baltic Sea
IRELAND
Dublin
York
ENGLAND
UNITED PROVINCES
Amsterdam
The Hague
Bristol
London
Antwerp
Brussels
Calais
Lübeck
Hamburg
Stettin
Brandenburg
Berlin
POLAND
HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE
Saxony
Breslau
Silesia
Bohemia
Moravia
Mainz
Bamberg
Luxemburg
Paris
Brest
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Orléans
Nantes
Lorraine
Bavaria
Augsburg
Munich
Vienna
Pressburg
Buda
Archd. of Austria
Tirol
Salzburg
Franche Comté
Basel
Swiss Confederation
Charolais
FRANCE
Geneva
Bordeaux
Milan
DUCHY OF VENICE
Venice
Mantua
Carniola
Mohács
OTTOMAN EMPIRE
Toulouse
Marseille
Genoa
Lucca
REP. OF GENOA
REP. OF FLORENCE
PAPAL STATES
Adriatic Sea
San Sebastián
León
Burgos
Pamplona
Roussillon
Saragossa
Barcelona
PORTUGAL
CASTILLE
ARAGON
Madrid
Toledo
Lisbon
Valencia
Corsica
Rome
KINGDOM OF NAPLES
Naples
Sardinia
Palma
KINGDOM OF MAJORCA (1521–24)
Córdova
Jaén
Seville
Murcia
Cartagena
Granada
Cádiz
Palermo
Sicily
Mediterranean Sea
Algiers
Bugia
Tunis


Central Valley of Mexico 1519–21
Aztec Empire, 1519 (see inset)
Independent city-states
Route of Hernán Cortés 1519
Retreat 1520
Reconquest by Hernán Cortés 1521
Tizayuca
Zumpango
Lake Zumpango
Xaltocan
Tepotzotlan
Lake Xaltocan
Teotihuacan
July 1520
Otumba
Atlatzinco
Acolman
Ecatepec
Tepetlaoztoc
Chiautla
Tenayuca
Lake Tetzcoco
Tetzcoco
Tetzcotzingo
Huexotla
Tepeyac
Atzcapotzalco
Tlacopan
Popotlan
Tlatelolco
Tenochtitlan
Coatlinchan
Chapultepec
Netzahualcoyotl's Dike
To Tlaxcala
Reconquest 1521
Tlalpan
Ixtapalapan
Tizapan
Coyoacan
Culhuacan
Huitzilopochtli
Ixtapaluca
Tlapacoyac
Lake Xochimilco
Lake Chalco
Xochimilco
Cuitlahuac
Xicco
Chalco
Mixquic
Mt. Tenbtli
Milpa Alta
Route of Spanish and Tlaxcalans 1519
Amecameca
From Cholula
Popocatepetl Volcano
N
0
10 km
0
10 miles
TARASCANS
Gulf of Mexico
Yucatán
PACIFIC OCEAN
Oxitipan
Chapulhuacan
Xiuhcoac
Metztlan
Tuxpan
Atlan
Tototepec
Tula
Tacuba
Tenochtitlan
Tlaxcala
Cholula
Veracruz
Teloloapan
Iguala
Zacatula
Ocuila
Tochtepec
Mixtlan
Yanhuitlan
Chiapan
Xaltepec
Totoltepec
Acapulco
Ayotlan
Oaxaca
Mitla
Tehuantepec
Mapachtepec
Soconusco
Mazatlan
Ayotlan
0
100 km
0
100 miles


SALJUQS OF RUM
GREAT SALJUQ EMPIRE
BYZANTINE EMPIRE
Cilicia
County of Edessa
Principality of Antioch
County of Tripoli
EMIRATE OF DAMASCUS
FATAMID CALIPHATE
KINGDOM OF JERUSALEM
Mediterranean Sea
Sinai Desert
Dead Sea
Lake Tiberias
Euphrates
Jordan
Litani
Gargar
Behesni
Marash
Samosata
Sis
Aintab
Rancular
Saruj
Turhessel
Ravendam
Tarsus
Adana
Alexandretta 1097
Asas
Antioch
St. Simeon 1091
Kafr Tab
Aleppo
Cerep
Latakia 1103
Jabala 1109
Valania 1109
Maraclea 1102
Masyaf
Rafaniyan
Tortosa 1102
Homs
Tripoli 1109
Botron 1104
Sibelet 1104
Baalbek
Beirut 1110
Sidon 1110
Damascus
Unsuccessful siege 1148
Tyre 1124
Acre 1104
falls to Third Crusade 1191
falls to Muslims 1291; end of the Latin States
Hattin 1187
Haifa 1099
Tiberias
Caesarea 1101
Arsur 1101
Nablus
Jaffa 1099
as-Salt
Ascalon
Jerusalem
Saladin retakes Jerusalem 1187
Gaza
Hebron
Darum
Krak des Moabites
Segor
Montréal
Aila
Damietta
St Louis leads Sixth Crusade to Egypt
Nicosia
Cyprus
to the Hospitallers 1291–1306
Famagusta
Limassol
35°
N
0 50 km
0 50 miles
The Latin East in the Age of the Crusades
First Crusade, 1095–1099
Territory held by Crusaders to 1100
Expansion of Latin states, 1100–44
Crusaders' losses, 1144–45
Muslim territory
Byzantine Empire
Reinforcements from Western Europe, 1107–40
Reinforcements from Western Europe, 1122–26
Reinforcements from Western Europe, 1128–29
Second Crusade, 1147–49
1110 Date of conquest
Maximum range of Egyptian warfleet
Prevailing wind


Mongol Invasion of Europe 1237–42
Route of Mongol armies
NORWAY
SWEDEN
NOVGOROD
North Sea
Ural Mountains
to Denmark
Novgorod
Kostroma
Kazan
Bulgar
BASHKIRS
ORDER OF THE SWORD BROTHERS
Riga
DENMARK
Baltic Sea
Moscow
RUSSIAN PRINCIPALITIES
LITHUANIANS
Minsk
Mazovia
POLAND
HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE
Liegnitz
Breslau
Lublin
Olmütz
Cracow
Kiev
Pereslavl
New Serai
Volga
Olu Serai
Aral Sea
Vienna
Mohi
HUNGARY
CUMANS
Orsova
SERBIA
Caspian Sea
Rome
BULGARIA
Black Sea
GEORGIA
DESPOTATE OF EPIRUS

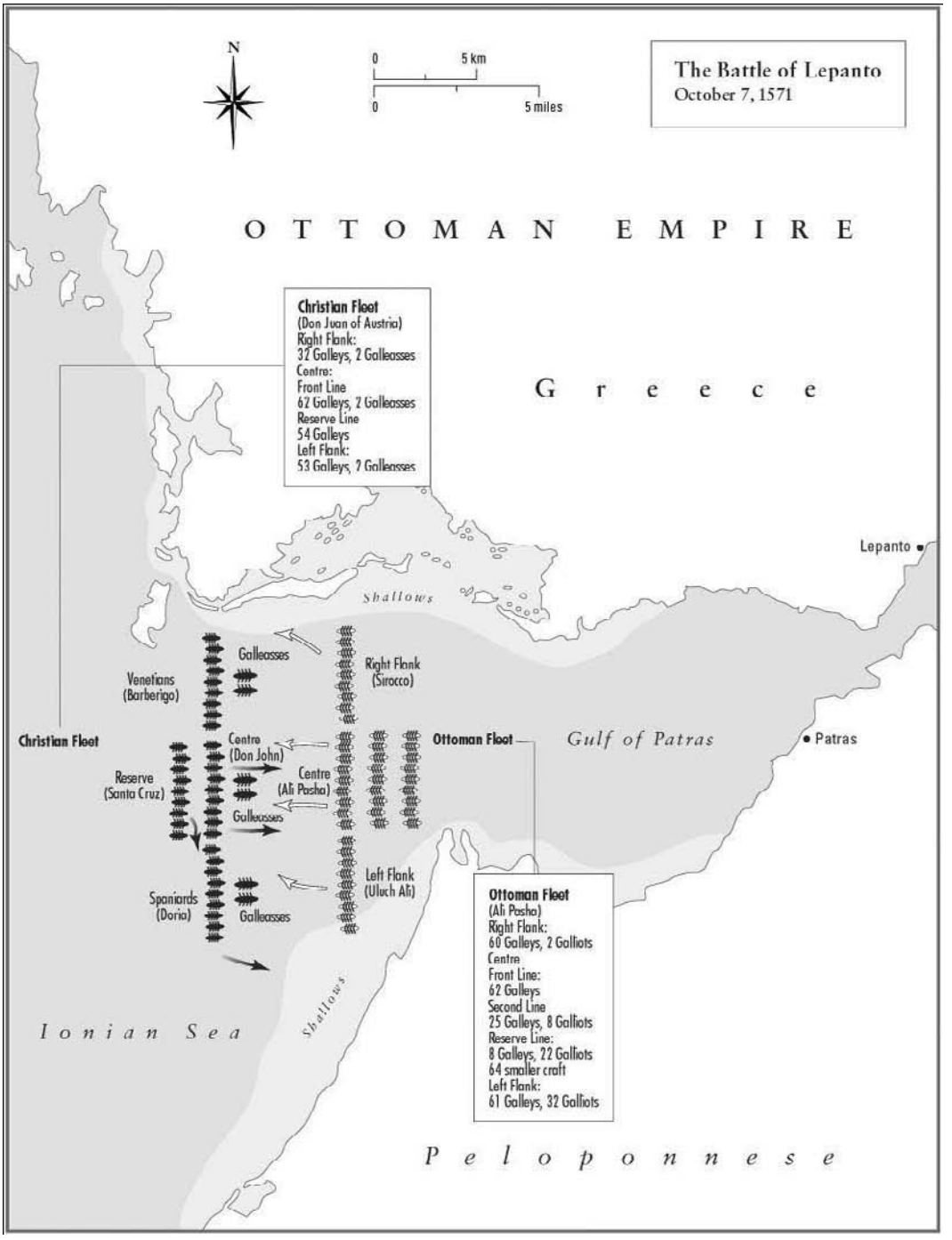

HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE
Brunswick
Magdeburg
Munster
Goslar
Elbe
Mansfeld
Eisleben
Halle
Allstedt
15 May 1525
Leipzig
Mühlhausen
Saxony
Frankenhausen
Cologne
Hersfeld
Erfurt
Weimar
Gera
Schmalkalden
Thuringia
Chemnitz
Zwickau
Fulda
3 May 1525
Plauen
Eisfeld
Coblenz
Mainz
Frankfurt
Main
Franconia
Hallstadt
Prague
Trier
26 June 1525
Pfeddersheim
Worms
2 June 1525
Königshofen
Forchheim
Pilsen
Rhineland
Mannheim
Rothenburg
Nuremberg
Bohemia
Moldau
Schöntal
Ansbach
Sarreguemines
Bruchsal
Weinsberg
Heilbronn
Hall
15–16 May 1525
Gaildorf
Regensburg
Dieuze
Zabern
Rhine
Black Forest
Stuttgart
Nördlingen
Ingolstadt
Danube
Böblingen
12 May 1525
7 June 1525
Landshut
Freistadt
Strassburg
Barr
Ulm
Leipheim
Augsburg
Linz
Württemberg
Ribeauville
Swabia
4 April 1525
Inn
Munich
17–24 May 1525
Freiburg
19–21 July 1525
24 June 1524
Wurzach
Kempten
Salzburg
Stühlingen
Weingarten
Suizberg
Rattenberg
Basle
Schaffhausen
Kufstein
Swiss
Zürich
25 July 1525
Kitzbühel
Schladming
Solothurn
St Gallen
Hall
Salzburg
Confederation
Innsbruck
3 July 1526
Mittersill
C. of Tyrol
Brixen
Leinz
AUSTRIA
Habsburg hereditary lands
Merano
Adige
Bolzano
Malè
Trent
Piave
Treviso
Trieste
Brescia
Vicenza
Milan
Verona
Venice
Milan
VENETIAN REPUBLIC
Po
German Peasant War
1525
Georg Truchsess march against Swabian and Franconian peasants
Swabian League's route against Duke Ulrich of Württemberg
Centre of uprising
Peasant victory with date
Peasant defeat with date
Siege
Areas in revolt between 1524 and 1526
N
0
50 km
0
50 miles


France 1314
French possessions
English possessions
Other vassal lands
0 100 km
0 100 miles
N
ENGLAND
London
English Channel
FLANDERS
PONTHIEU
Artois
Normandy
BRITTANY
EVREUX
Paris
Champagne
Maine
Anjou
BLOIS
Poitou
FRANCE
La Marche
BURGUNDY
SAINTONGE
LIMOUSIN
GUYENNE
Auvergne
HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE
RODEZ
ROUERGUE
Provence
GASCONY
BEARN
NAVARRE
BIGORRE
Languedoc
FOIX
SPAIN
Mediterranean Sea
France 1360
French possessions
English possessions
Other vassal lands
0 100 km
0 100 miles
N
ENGLAND
London
English Channel
FLANDERS
PONTHIEU
Artois
Crecy 1346
Normandy
BRITTANY
EVREUX
Paris
Champagne
Maine
Anjou
BLOIS
Poitou
Poitiers 1356
FRANCE
La Marche
BURGUNDY
LIMOUSIN
GUYENNE
Auvergne
Dauphine
ROUERGUE
Provence
GASCONY
BIGORRE
Languedoc
FOIX
HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE
SPAIN
Mediterranean Sea
France 1422
Lands loyal to Dauphin
Lands which recognised English suzerainty
Allies of English
0 100 km
0 100 miles
N
ENGLAND
London
English Channel
Agincourt 1415
FLANDERS
Picardy
Normandy
Brittany
Paris
Champagne
Maine
Anjou
Blois
Poitou
BURGUNDY
FRANCE
La Marche
Limousin
GUYENNE
Auvergne
Dauphine
Rouergue
Provence
GASCONY
Bearn
Languedoc
HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE
SPAIN
Mediterranean Sea

The Growth of the Swedish Empire
Sweden under Gustav Vasa, 1523–60
Swedish acquisitions, 1561–1645
Swedish acquisitions by 1660
0 100 km
0 100 miles
ARCTIC OCEAN
North Cape
Kola
Kola Penninsula
Arctic Circle
White Sea
Lofoten Is.
Kabelvåg
Lappland
Alstahaug
Torneå
Luleå
Vasterbotten
Uleåborg
Osterbotten
Norwegian Sea
Angermanland
Umeå
Gulf of Bothnia
Karelia
Jamtland
Trondheim
SWEDISH EMPIRE
Vaa sa
Finland
Nyslott
Lake Onega
Herjedalen
Särna
Helsingland
Bjöneborg
Kexholm
Lake Ladoga
Vyborg
Nystad
Abo (Turku)
Helsingfors
Falun
Hamar
Bergen
Christiania
Uppland
Gulf of Finland
Narva
Ingria
Åland Is.
Reval
1561
Estonia
1581
Uppsala
Vasteras
Stockholm
Dagö
1582
Novgorod
MUSCOVITE EMPIRE
Bohuslän
Linkoping
Ösel
1645
Gulf of Riga
Pskov
Christiansand
West Gotland
East Gotland
Marienburg
Skaggerak
Jonkoping
Visby
Gotland
1645
Riga
1621–29
Livonia
Gothenburg
Halland
1645
Kattegat
Windau
Courland
Libau
Baltic Sea
North Sea
Jutland
Blekinge
Vitebsk
Aarhus
Copenhagen
Malmo
Scania
Memel
Samogitia
Roskilde
Zeeland
Bornholm
1658–60 to Sweden
Vilna
Orsha
Königsberg
Duchy of Prussia
Great Principality of Lithuania
Minsk
Kiel
Danzig
Further Pomerania
Pomerania
Wismar
Mecklenburg
Kujavia
KINGDOM OF POLAND
Pinsk
Pripyet Marshes
UNITED PROVINCES
Munster
Great Poland
Mazovia
R. Bug
Polesia
Lüneburg
Berlin
Poznam
Warsaw
KINGDOM OF DANMARK AND NORWAY

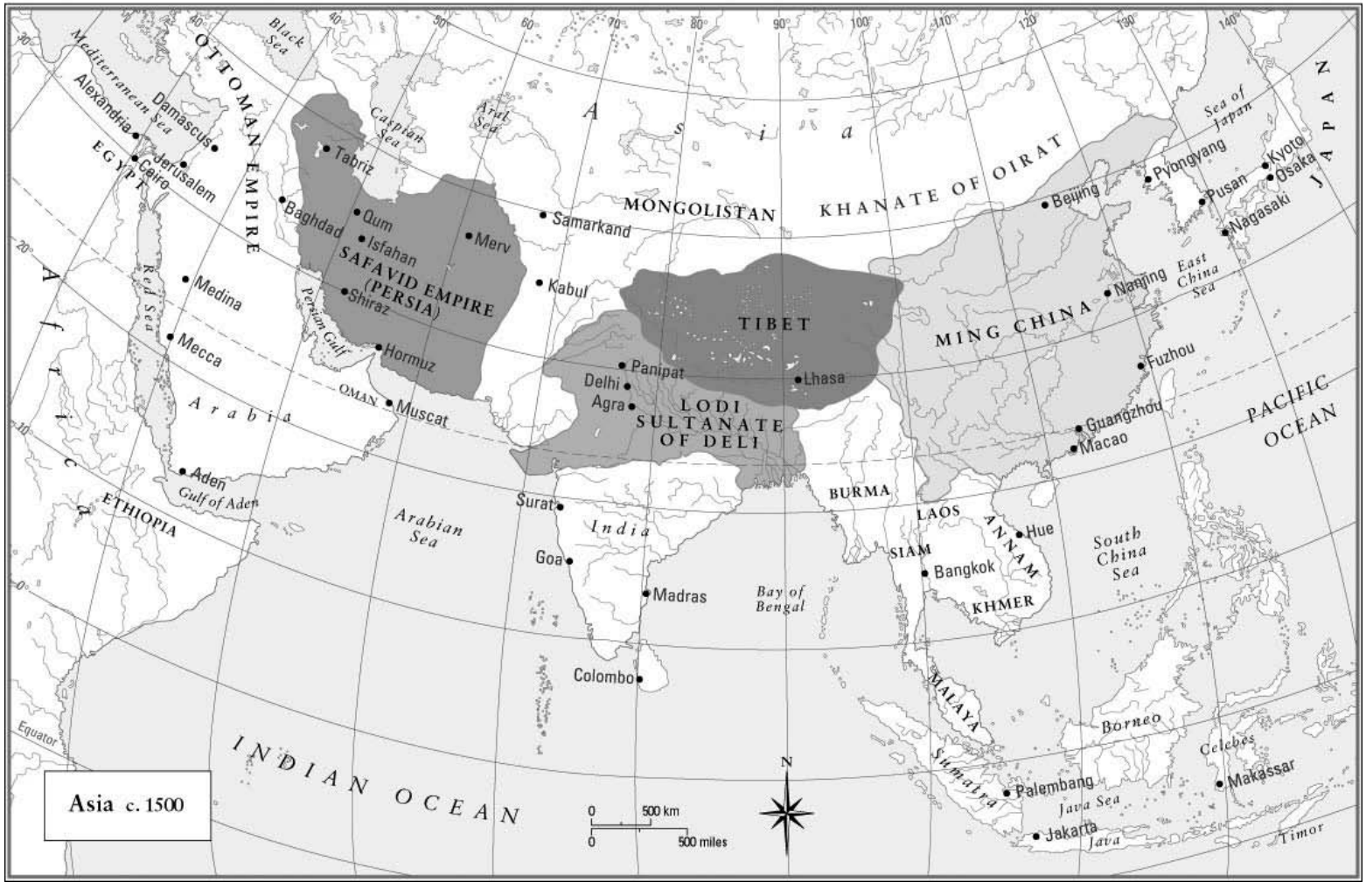
NORWAY
SWEDEN
SCOTLAND
North Sea
DENMARK
Baltic Sea
COURLAND
TEUTONIC ORDER PRUSSIA
Edinburgh 1559
IRELAND
Dublin
Danzig
Pomerania
Mecklenburg
Stettin
Bremen
Hamburg
Brandenburg
Wales
ENGLAND
Brunswick
Berlin
KINGDON OF POLAND
Magdoburg
London 1559
Münster 1535
Netherlands
Silesia
Saxony
Leipzig
Dresden
Breslau
Cologne
Prague 1618
Frankfurt
Worms 1521
BOHEMIA Moravia
KINGDOM OF HUNGARY
Rouen
Paris
Meaux
Alençón
Troyes
Strasbourg
Württemberg 1517
Regensburg
Augsburg 1530, 1555
Ulm
Vienna
Bavaria
Salzburg
FRANCE
Basel
Zurich 1522
Austria
Innsbruck
Bourges
Freiburg
Bern
La Rochelle
Geneva 1536, 1555
R. of Venice
Limoges
Lyon
Trent 1545–63
Savoy
OTTOMAN EMPIRE
Bordeaux
Périgueux
Bergerac
Rodez
Orange
Bologna
Papal States
Montauban
Albi
Millau
Gaillac
Nimes
Toulouse
Montpellier
Adriatic Sea
Tuscany
Pamplona
NAVARRE
Mediterranean Sea
CASTILLE
Corsica
Naples
Reformation in Europe 1520 – 1600
Mostly Roman Catholic
Mostly Anglican
Mostly Calvanist
Orthodox with Muslim minorities
Mostly Lutheran
Seigneurial lands of the King of Navarre in France
Mixed Catholic and Protestant areas
Saint Bartholomew's Day massacres, 1572
Areas of waivering adherance
1559
Events of special importance
N
Sardinia
0
200 km
0
200 miles
Messina
Sicily

The Netherlands
1609
Union of Utrecht, 1579
Boundary during the Twelve Years' Truce, 1609–21
Union of Arras, 1579
0 25 km
0 25 miles
N
2°
4°
6°
52°
50°
Groningen
Groningen
Friesland
Drenthe
R. Vecht
R. Ijssel
Overijssel
Amsterdam
Leiden
Holland
Zutphen
Utrecht
Gelderland
Rotterdam
Utrecht
North Sea
R. Maas
R. Lippe
Zeeland
Joined by 1581
Lands of the Generality
Joined by 1581
Upper Gelders
Joined by 1581, lost 1609
R. Ruhr
Sluys
Ostend
Antwerp
Brabant
Brugge
Ghent
Calais
Flanders
Joined by 1581, lost 1609
R. Scheldt
Maastricht
Cologne
Brussels
Aachen
R. Lys
Limburg
Lille
Tournai
Namur
Liège
Bishopric of Liège
Artois
Namur
Arras
R. Sambre
Hainaut
R. Somme
Luxembourg
Trier
R. Meuse
Luxembourg
FRANCE
R. Aisne
R. Saar
R. Oise
Reims

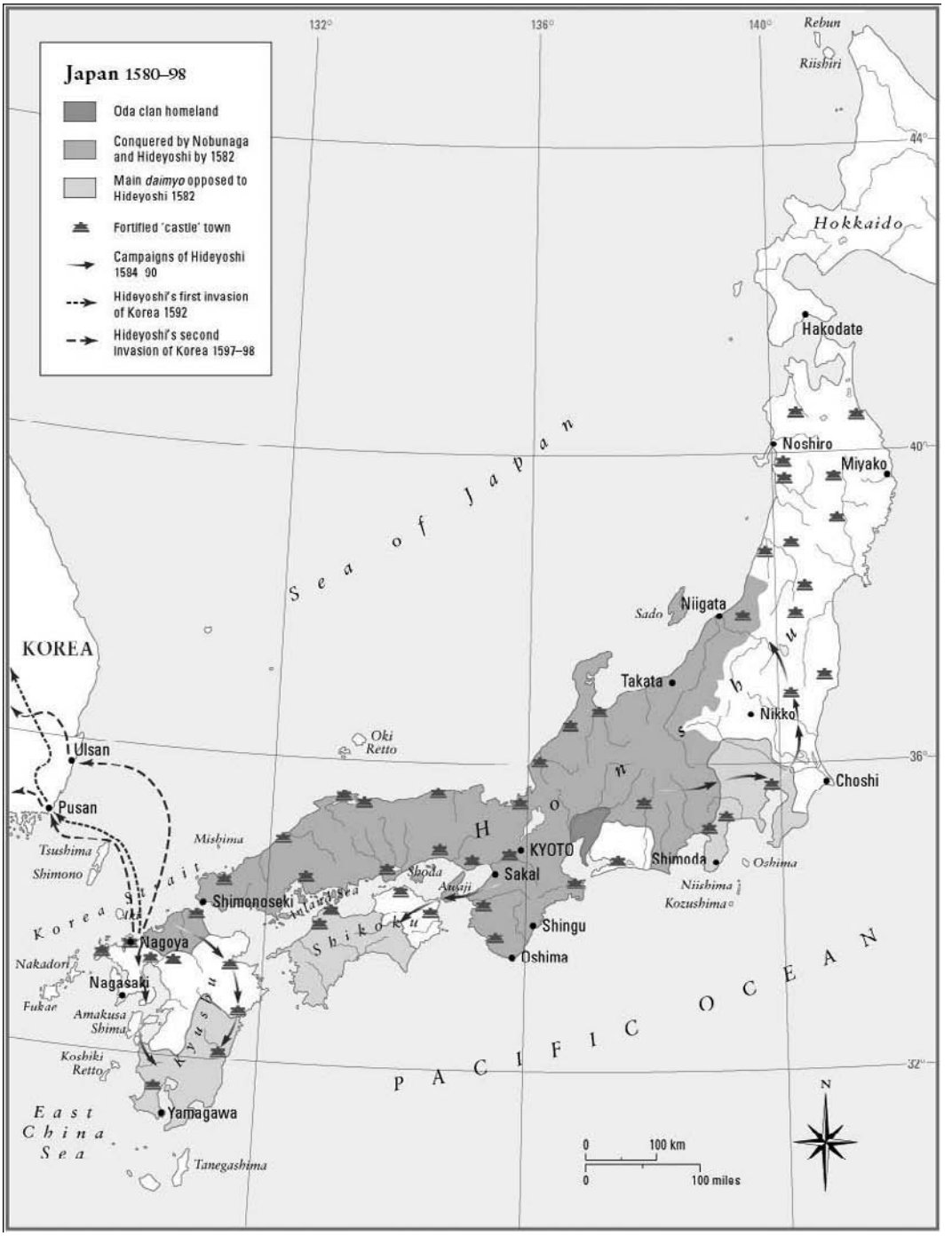

The Battle of Lepanto
October 7, 1571
N
0
5 km
0
5 miles
OTTOMAN EMPIRE
Greece
Christian Fleet
(Don Juan of Austria)
Right Flank:
32 Galleys, 2 Galleasses
Centre:
Front Line
62 Galleys, 2 Galleasses
Reserve Line
54 Galleys
Left Flank:
53 Galleys, 2 Galleasses
Lepanto
Shallows
Galleasses
Right Flank
(Sirocco)
Venetians
(Barberigo)
Christian Fleet
Centre
(Don John)
Ottoman Fleet
Gulf of Patras
Patras
Reserve
(Santa Cruz)
Centre
(Ali Pasha)
Galleasses
Left Flank
(Uluch Ali)
Spaniards
(Doria)
Galleasses
Ottoman Fleet
(Ali Pasha)
Right Flank:
60 Galleys, 2 Galliots
Centre
Front Line:
62 Galleys
Second Line
25 Galleys, 8 Galliots
Reserve Line:
8 Galleys, 22 Galliots
64 smaller craft
Left Flank:
61 Galleys, 32 Galliots
Ionian Sea
Shallows
Peloponnese

Invincible Armada
May – September 1588
Route of the Armada
Individual or small groups of ships blown off course
Site of battle
Spanish Empire
United Provinces in revolt against Spain
Faroe Islands
Alesund
Shetland Islands
Orkney Islands
Bergen
NORWAY
Stavanger
Outer Hebrides
SCOTLAND
Edinburgh
Newcastle
North Sea
DENMARK
Ireland
Dublin
Wales
ENGLAND
Bristol
Amsterdam
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Scilly Islands
Plymouth
London
Dover
Netherlands
Calais
Brussels
English Channel
HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE
Le Havre
Brest
Rouen
Paris
Seine
Nantes
Loire
Bay of Biscay
La Rochelle
FRANCE
SWISS CONFED.
Lyon
Bordeaux
Corunna
Gijon
Santander
Bilbao
Oporto
Valladolid
Ebro
Rhône
Marseille
Zaragoza
Lisbon
Madrid
Portugal
Tagus
SPAIN
Barcelona
Rome
Valencia
Cordoba
Sevilla
Majorca
Cadiz
Gibraltar
Tangier
Ceuta
Mediterranean Sea
Oran
Algiers
Rabat
Fez
Tunis
MOROCCO
ALGERS
21 Aug.
24 Aug.
12 Aug.
8 Aug.
6–7 Aug.
31 July
29 July
20 Sept.
17 Sept.
18 June – 21 July
23 Sept.
28 May
Arrival of Portugese galleons from Brazil
from Naples and Sicily

Europe 1420–1560
Austrian Habsburgs
Spanish Habsburgs
Ottoman Empire
0 250 km
0 250 miles
NORWAY
to Denmark
SWEDEN
MUSCOVY
SCOTLAND
IRELAND
North Sea
DENMARK
Baltic Sea
ORDENSSTAAT
Riga
Moscow
Smolensk
ENGLAND
London
Danzig
PRUSSIA
LITHUANIA
FLANDERS AND BURGUNDY
Dunkirk
BRANDENBURG
Warsaw
HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE
SAXONY
POLAND
Kiev
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Paris
BOHEMIA
KHANATE OF CRIMEA
La Rochelle
FRANCE
AUSTRIA
SWISS CONFED.
HUNGARY
MOLDAVIA
Bordeaux
SAVOY
Venice
MILAN
PAPAL
VENETIAN
Wallachia
Black Sea
PORTUGAL
Madrid
SPAIN
Barcelona
REP. OF GENOA
FLORENCE
STATES
OTTOMAN
Rome
Adriatic Sea
Constantinople
Naples
NAPLES
SARDINIA
EMPIRE
Tyrrhenian Sea
Tangiers
Mediterranean Sea
Aegean Sea
Algiers
SICILY
REPUBLIC
MOROCCO
ZAYYANIDS
ALGIERS
HAFSIDS
Tunis
MALTA

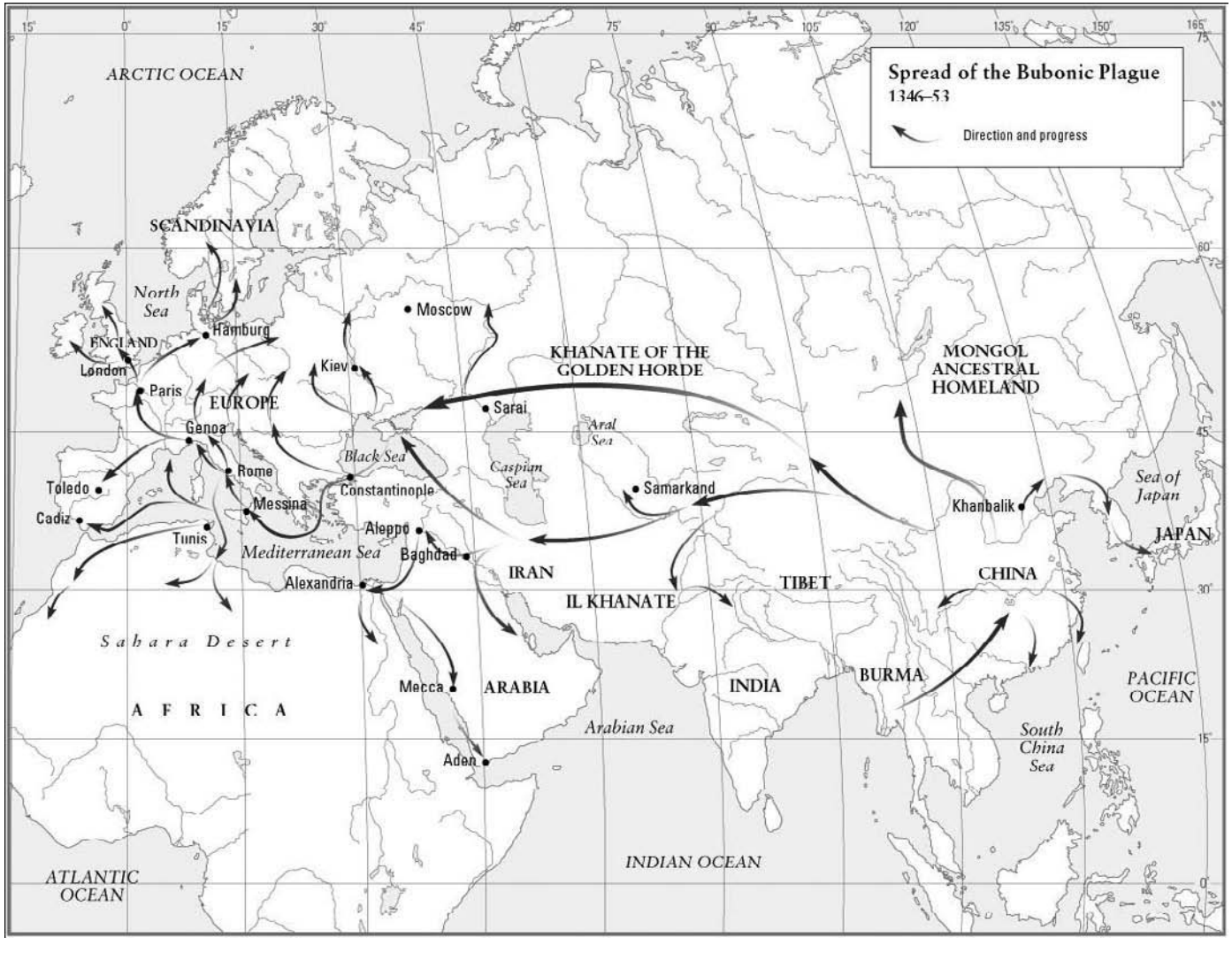

Asia c. 1500
OTTOMAN EMPIRE
SAFAVID EMPIRE (PERSIA)
MONGOLISTAN
KHANATE OF OIRAT
TIBET
MING CHINA
LODI SULTANATE OF DELI
Black Sea
Caspian Sea
Arab Sea
Mediterranean Sea
Red Sea
Persian Gulf
Arabian Sea
Bay of Bengal
South China Sea
East China Sea
Sea of Japan
PACIFIC OCEAN
INDIAN OCEAN
Alexandria
Damascus
Jerusalem
Cairo
EGYPT
Tabriz
Baghdad
Qum
Isfahan
Shiraz
Merv
Samarkand
Kabul
Medina
Mecca
Hormuz
OMAN
Muscat
Aden
Gulf of Aden
ETHIOPIA
Arabia
Africa
Asia
Panipat
Delhi
Agra
Lhasa
Surat
India
Goa
Madras
Colombo
Beijing
Pyongyang
Pusan
Nagasaki
Kyoto
Osaka
JAPAN
Nanjing
Fuzhou
Guangzhou
Macao
BURMA
LAOS
ANNAM
Hue
SIAM
Bangkok
KHMER
MALAYA
Borneo
Sumatra
Celebes
Java Sea
Java
Palembang
Jakarta
Makassar
Timor
Equator
0 500 km
0 500 miles
N

UZBEKS
SAFAVID EMPIRE
Afghanistan
Kabul
Kabul
Qandahar
Qandahar
Punjab
Lahor
Multan
Kashmir
Kangra
T I B E T
Himalayas
Qalat
Qalat
Indus
Thar Desert
Delhi
Delhi
Kumaun
Ajmer
Ajmer
Agra
Agra
Awadh
Bihar
Assam
Ahoms
Allahabad
Allahabad
Ganges
Patna
Sind
Thatta
Kach
Orchha
Malwa
Ahmadabad
Gujarat
Jharkhand
Chatgaon
Calcutta
Bangala
Kathiawar
Gondwana
Khandesh
Barar
Tribes acknowledging Mughal Suzerainty
Orisa
Ahmadnagar
Arabian Sea
Bombay
Bidar
Bay of Bengal
Godhavari
Bijapur
Masulipatam
Goa
Portuguese from 1510
Golkonda
Sira
Madras
Mangalur
Udaiyars
Zamorin
Tanjore
Calicut
Tanjore
Cochin
Nayaks
Jaffna
Savulus
INDIAN OCEAN
N
0 200 km
0 200 miles
Mughal Empire
1525–1605
Babur's domains 1525
Babur's expansion to 1539
Mughal Empire c. 1600
Maximum extent of Marahata rule


Japan 1580–98
Oda clan homeland
Conquered by Nobunaga and Hideyoshi by 1582
Main daimyo opposed to Hideyoshi 1582
Fortified 'castle' town
Campaigns of Hideyoshi 1584 90
Hideyoshi's first invasion of Korea 1592
Hideyoshi's second invasion of Korea 1597–98
132°
136°
140°
44°
40°
36°
32°
Rebun
Riishiri
Hokkaido
Hakodate
Noshiro
Miyako
Niigata
Sado
Takata
Nikko
Choshi
Oki Retto
KYOTO
Sakai
Shimoda
Oshima
Niishima
Kozushima
Shingu
Oshima
Mishima
Tsushima
Shimono
Shimonoseki
Inland Sea
Shodo
Awaji
Shikoku
Nagoya
Nakadori
Nagasaki
Fukae
Amakusa Shima
Kyushu
Koshiki Retto
Yamagawa
Tanegashima
Ulsan
Pusan
KOREA
Korea Strait
East China Sea
Sea of Japan
PACIFIC OCEAN
Honshu
0 100 km
0 100 miles
N

SWISS CONFED.
AUSTRIA
FRANCE
DUCHY OF SAVOY
DUCHY OF MILAN
Milan
REPUBLIC OF VENICE
SALUZZO
MONFERRATO
Po
Mantua
MARQUISATE OF MANTUA
DUCHY OF FERRARA AND MODENA
Venice
REPUBLIC OF GENOA
Genoa
MONACO
ISTRIA (Venetian)
KINGDOM OF HUNGARY
Lucca
REPUBLIC OF LUCCA
REPUBLIC OF FLORENCE
Florence
Arno
Urbino
OTTOMAN EMPIRE
Siena
REPUBLIC OF SIENA
PAPAL STATES
CORSICA (Genoese)
Adriatic Sea
DALMATIA (Venetian)
Tiber
Rome
SARDINIA (Spanish)
Naples
Bari
Cagliari
Tyrrhenian Sea
KINGDOM OF NAPLES (Spanish)
Taranto
Palermo
KINGDOM OF SICILY (Spanish)
Renaissance Italy
c. 1500
Spanish territories in Italy
Papal States
Other Italian states and territories
0 100 km
0 100 miles
N
Mediterranean Sea
8°
12°
16°
46°
42°
38°

Safavid Empire
c. 1630
Uzbeck invasions 1587
Major Ottoman campaigns
Battle, with date
Area disputed with Ottomans 1512–1639
Territories taken from Mughal Empire
SAFAVID EMPIRE
OTTOMAN EMPIRE
MUGHAL EMPIRE
KAZAKHS
UZBEKS
KALMYK TATARS
KURDS
Armenia
Kurdistan
Luristan
Fars
Kerman
Seistan
Baluchistan
Khurasan
Khanate of Khiva
Khanate of Bukhara
Afghanistan
Oman
Black Sea
Caspian Sea
Aral Sea
Persian Gulf
Arabian Sea
Lake Balkhash
Syr Darya
Amu Darya
Astrakhan
Sinope
Trabzon
Tiflis 1578
Derbent 1579
Erivan 1604
Kars 1578
Ganja 1588
Arash 1578
Baku 1583
Caldiran 1514
Nakhichevan 1554
Tabriz 1534, 1555, 1585
Mosul
Baghdad 1534 lost to Ottomans 1623–38 regained by Safavids
Hamadan 1587
Tehran
Qom
Gorgan
Merv
Mashad
Nishapur 1588–89
Herat 1506, 1588–89
Esfahan
Yazd
Basra 1538
Shiraz
Kerman
Bushire
Bandar Abbas
Hormus 1507–1622 Portuguese
Bahrain
Muscat
Khiva
Tashkent
Kokand
Samarkand
Bukhara
Kashgar
Yorkand
Kabul
Peshawar
Kandahar
Lahore
Multan
Delhi
Thatta
0 300 km
0 300 miles
N
40°
50°
60°
70°
80°
30°
20°


Spread of the Bubonic Plague
1346–53
Direction and progress
ARCTIC OCEAN
SCANDINAVIA
North Sea
ENGLAND
London
Hamburg
Paris
EUROPE
Genoa
Rome
Toledo
Cadiz
Messina
Tunis
Mediterranean Sea
Black Sea
Constantinople
Kiev
Moscow
Sarai
KHANATE OF THE GOLDEN HORDE
Aral Sea
Caspian Sea
Aleppo
Baghdad
Alexandria
IRAN
IL KHANATE
Samarkand
MONGOL ANCESTRAL HOMELAND
Khanbalik
Sea of Japan
JAPAN
TIBET
CHINA
BURMA
INDIA
Sahara Desert
AFRICA
Mecca
ARABIA
Aden
Arabian Sea
South China Sea
PACIFIC OCEAN
INDIAN OCEAN
ATLANTIC OCEAN

A

abatis. An ancient field obstacle, dating at least to the wars of Rome. It was made from a felled tree laid lengthwise with sharpened branches left facing the enemy. Iron spikes were also used. Abatis protected miners and sappers working on a siege, and archers, musketeers, and cannon in the field.

Abbas I (1571–1629). ''Abbas the Great.'' *Safavid* Shah of Iran (1587–1629). Abbas was a civilizer by inclination and a builder, not least of a grand capital at Isfahan starting in 1597. That move to central Iran was dictated by the military vulnerability of the then Safavid capital Qazwin, and the yet more vulnerable location of the original capital at Tabrīs. Mounting the throne at age 17, Abbas suffered early military defeat and was compelled to surrender large swaths of important territory to the Ottomans to the west—Christian Georgia and Azerbaijan, as well as Tabrīs—in order to concentrate on fighting the Uzbeks, who had captured several towns in northeastern Iran, including Herat (1588). This costly peace bought time to consolidate power over the fractious Iranian tribes by displacing them from their traditional place in the army. This proved to be Abbas' singular accomplishment: creation of a professional *standing army*. This was a radical change in a society where infantry played a minor role and feudal cavalry was the dominant arm. Moreover, Safavid cavalry was recruited by tribe and retained local rather than ''national'' or dynastic loyalties. The new system significantly reduced the number of horse soldiers available. These were replaced by infantry armed with muskets, units Abbas modeled on the *Janissaries*. This was intended to stop Ottoman gunpowder troops, who had so often beaten Iran's armies in the long century of war between these rival *sunni* and *shīa* empires that began at *Chaldiran* (1514). Abbas also drew directly from Western expertise: he built Iran's first artillery corps utilizing European *renegades*, notably *Robert Shirley* (whose brother, *Anthony Shirley*, Abbas made ambassador to the crowns of Europe). The shah also changed the ethnic mix of the army. Gone were the core Iranian tribes, replaced

by Georgian, Armenian, and Circassian converts to Islam, descendants of Christian prisoners from earlier wars. These military slaves, or "*ghulams* of the shah," were prized and trusted because of their unique dependence on Abbas. This, too, imitated the close Janissary ties to the sultan.

As elsewhere, creation of a standing army soon led to a financial crisis. Where tribal cavalry was paid for by *servitor* warlords, the new troops were paid from central revenues. This meant, as it did with reforming monarchs in Europe, that Abbas had to modernize Iran's tax system and bureaucracy and reduce the grip of the old religious elite, in his case the *Qizilbash*. Once the reformed army was ready Abbas used it in a spectacular expansionist drive which carried almost to Iran's pre-Islamic borders, from the Indus at Kandahar to Baghdad in Iraq. In the first of a series of campaigns against the Ottomans, he retook Tabrīs in 1603. Through sieges of Erivan, Shirvan, and Mosul, he captured most of Iraq. Each side employed scorched earth tactics along the frontier to deny resources to the enemy, but in 1606 Abbas destroyed an Ottoman army at *Sis*. To the east, he retook Kandahar in 1621, a city seized by the *Mughals* under *Akbar* during his boyhood. Southward, in alliance with the *East India Company* (EIC) he captured Hormuz from the Portuguese in 1622. Shrewdly, in the rest of his empire he granted trading privileges to the EIC's main rival, the Dutch *Vereenigde Oostindische Compaagnie* (VOC). In 1623 he took Baghdad when its Ottoman garrison defected. While he was sometimes ruthless and cruel in court politics, in matters religious or commercial he was open to foreign ideas and practices. By the standards of the age he was a moderate, modernizing, and tolerant ruler.

Suggested Reading: Yves Bomati and Houchang Nahavandi, *Shah Abbas, Empereur de Perse, 1587–1629* (1998); Eskandar Beg Monshi, *History of Shah Abbas the Great*, Roger Savory, trans. (1978).

Aceh. An independent Muslim sultanate on Sumatra. In the 1530s, facing pressure from the Portuguese, it accepted military aid from the Ottoman Empire, including 300 musketeers for which it paid with four shiploads of black pepper. It contested Portuguese and Spanish control of Malacca for the next century. In 1588 *Philip II* rejected a call from his governor in India to attack Aceh, because Spain was already overcommitted to the *Invincible Armada.* In 1629, Sultan Iskandar Muda made a supreme, final effort to take Malacca. He lost the bulk of Aceh's fleet and army in the attempt: 250 ships and 20,000 men.

Acemi Oğlan. Training units of the *Janissary Corps.* They occupied two training centers in the capital where they carried out military education of boy recruits.

Acre, fall of (1291). See *Crusades*; *Knights Templar*.

adarga. A heart-shaped shield that originated among the Moors of North Africa, migrated from there to Iberia, and was subsequently adopted by Spanish *conquistadores*.

Aden. A key port in the Indian Ocean trade, located at the mouth of the Red Sea. It maintained an independent trade with Kilwa on the Sofala coast of East Africa during the 13th–15th centuries. In 1538 it was attacked by the Ottomans and captured in a classic galley action: an amphibious operation.

admiral. The term was imported to Europe from Arabic, where it meant an officer in command of a squadron (at the minimum) or fleet of ships. In most maritime communities during the Middle Ages, and well into the early modern period for some, admirals were often also land-based generals of note and authority. In several states admirals were responsible for recruiting men and outfitting ships, not necessarily for command at sea. In England, the Lord High Admiral was at times wholly land-based. He oversaw the Admiralty and naval administration. In several 16th–17th century Atlantic nations an admiral was the first rank in command of a fleet, ahead of a *vice admiral* and any *rear admiral*. See also *Laws of Olèron*.

admiralty. ''Fleet.'' In this period, a geographical region of command, usually an expanse of coastal area for which an *admiral* (who was also often a general) was responsible. It was a practical administrative division with little significance for command rank.

Admiralty. See *Royal Navy*.

Adwalton Moor, Battle of (1643). See *English Civil Wars*; *Fairfax, Thomas*.

Affair of the Placards (October 18, 1534). French exiles had broadsheets printed in Switzerland, then pasted along routes passed by Catholics heading to Mass in Paris and other French cities. The placards were ''sacramentarian'' propaganda: they attacked Catholic belief in transubstantiation in vitriolic language that mocked the sacramental nature of the eucharist, and implicitly attacked its social and political purposes of communal union. The ''Affair'' caused deep anger among Catholics. *Francis I* responded with repression of French Protestants, increasingly seen as rebels as well as heretics. All religious printing was banned by decree. Francis turned the 1535 *Corpus Christi* procession into a heresy hunt, adding six executions by fire to the traditional feasting and prayers. Among others, the rector of the University of Paris and *Jean Calvin* fled to Geneva in the wake of the ''Affair.'' Henceforth, distinctions between Catholic orthodoxy and Protestant ''heresy'' were more clear, with reform identified increasingly with rebellion as well as doctrinal error. See also *Edict of Saint-Germain*.

Afghanistan. See *Akbar*; *Babur*; *Mongols*; *Mughal Empire*; *Timur*.

aftercastle. A fighting platform or tower built over the stern of a warship from where archers or arqbusiers would shoot down onto an enemy's deck. Other

fighting men would throw *caltrops*, hurl blinding lime with the wind, pour oil or resin to be lighted by fire arrows, and otherwise pelt the lower enemy deck with harmful inconveniences. Aftercastles were a common feature of 13th–14th-century ships.

Agincourt, Battle of (October 25, 1415). Fought on ''St. Crispin's Day,'' late in the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). *Henry V* crossed the Channel with 8,000 foot and 2,000 men-at-arms and embarked on an extended *chevauchée* into France. After a month's siege and losing one-third of his army, he captured Harfleur on September 22. On October 8 he headed for Calais, 120 miles away by direct march. The destruction he caused along the route and the smallness of his army provoked the French to block his crossing the Somme with a large force of men-at-arms serving as cavalry and heavy infantry. However, after six days of searching and hot pursuit Henry found a ford and slipped crossed (October 19). Outnumbered three to one, the English were forced to fight when the French pulled ahead of their line of march and blocked the way forward (October 24). Henry chose the ground: a narrow valley near the village of Agincourt, about 30 miles from Arras. His front was 1,200 yards wide, anchored at either end in small copses. He placed men-at-arms in three *battle*s at the center, each supported by longbowmen on the flanks. The archers were organized ''en herse'' (in farrows), adding to the line's crenelated look. Henry's small cavalry reserve was at the rear. To the front the field was sloppy with mud, after a week of rain. This careful position countered French numerical superiority, including a contingent of *Armagnacs*, which could not be exploited on such narrow frontage. Having faced longbows at *Crécy* (1346) and *Poitiers* (1356), most French knights and men-at-arms, about 8,000, dismounted to fight on foot. They deployed in two thick lines lightly salted with crossbowmen, with about 500 cavalry apiece on either flank. A large cavalry reserve formed a third, distant line.

When the French failed to advance, Henry moved his archers into range, at about 250 yards. His longbowmen planted *Spanish riders*, stuck clusters of arrows into the ground, and opened fire, sending an ''arrow storm'' arcing forward to kill and wound French knights where they stood. This provoked the first French line to advance through the mud, until it staggered into the English men-at-arms. As the heavily armored French slogged forward the archers leveled aim and shot them down at point-blank ranges, while men-at-arms cut them to pieces as they sank under the weight of armor, weapons, and sheer physical exhaustion. Once the archers exhausted arrow stocks they dropped bows and rushed forward to finish off the knights with dirks and short swords, or weapons dropped by dead or dying French. The second line of French men-at-arms also advanced, pushing into the backs of their panicking and dying comrades, and dying in turn as the fighting became a close and bloody mêlée. The mounted knights of the French reserve did nothing but watch and worry.

Many French were taken prisoner and shifted to the rear. When a scuffle broke out in the baggage train (armed French peasants attacked and looted it), Henry may have feared the prisoner knights might escape and attack his

rear, so he ordered them killed. His men-at-arms refused, not from mercy but from concern for ransoms they might lose. Lower-class archers happily obeyed the order, however, impaling prisoners on swords, cutting throats, and burning some alive inside a thatch peasant cottage. The murders were halted when it became clear that no threat existed. In the interim 1,000 unarmed prisoners were butchered. The French reserve and survivors now balked at any suggestion of a final charge into the gore before them, and withdrew in great disorder. English dead numbered about 1,500, but as many as 8,000 French may have died at Agincourt. That was a spectacular rise in the sanguinary price of war brought about by the shift from cavalry to infantry as the principal arm of battle, and perhaps also a corresponding decline in the restraints and mores of *chivalry*. See also *Verneuil, Battle of*.

English dead numbered about 1,500, but as many as 8,000 French may have died at Agincourt.

Suggested Reading: Alfred H. Burne, *The Agincourt War* (1956; 1999); John Keegan, *The Face of Battle* (1976).

Agnadello, Battle of (May 14, 1509). Early in the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559), a French army of 30,000 led by Louis XII stumbled into Venetian-paid *condottieri* at Agnadello, between Milan and Brescia. The French were part of the *League of Cambrai*, an anti-Venetian alliance dedicated to dismemberment and partition of the Republic. The Venetians fought off the first cavalry and pike assaults, but failed to bring up reinforcements as some mercenaries bolted to live to fight (or at least draw pay) another day. The rest were overrun. Venice lost several thousand men and its artillery train. After the battle, *Maximilian I* forced Venice to make large territorial and political concessions. See also *Holy League*.

Ahlspiess. A *halberd* with a medium-sized haft but an extra-long spike.

ailettes. Small armor plates sometimes attached to *spaudlers*. They provided little added protection and may have been merely decorative.

Ain Jalut, Battle of (1260). See *Ayn Jālut, Battle of*; *Mamlūks*; *Mongols*.

Aïr, Kingdom of. See *Tuareg*.

Akbar (1542–1605). "The Great." Mughal Emperor. In 1562 Akbar wrested control from his harem and regent and launched a new era in Indian history: he sought accommodation with old *Rajput* foes by hiring many into his army, and he married a Rajput woman. Still, he could be ruthless toward resisters, as when he reduced the Rajput city of Chitor and slaughtered 30,000 inhabitants in 1568. Overall, he extended toleration to Hindus, ended forced conversions to Islam, abolished the hated *jizya* tax on non-Muslims ("dhimmîs"), and lifted the Mughal ban on building new Hindu temples and shrines.

And he donated land in Amritsar to the Sikhs, who built the Golden Temple there. Akbar altered the administrative power structure of Mughal society, establishing new provincial emirs (''mansabdar'') whom he watched with a vast intelligence network of spies and informers in every subdistrict, including runners and camel messengers who delivered secret intelligence directly to him. He distrusted the ''ulema'' (community of Islamic scholars), whom he had offended by toleration of, and apparent personal interest in, other Indian faiths. Muslims were also alienated by his fiscal assault on their hitherto tax-protected estates, even though his expensive state still rested mainly on hard-pressed peasants taxed at suffocating rates. In 1579 his policies contributed to a revolt by Muslim emirs in Afghanistan.

The mature Mughal military system laid great emphasis on fixed fortresses guarding strategic locations, manned by garrisons of loyal infantry. The field army consisted mostly of cavalry, with contingents of war elephants borrowed from the pre-Muslim Indian military tradition, and poor supporting infantry. Akbar expanded the infantry and added an artillery corps. Akbar was a restless warrior king—though not a notable general—overseeing an unstable but still expanding realm. His Rajput and Mughal generals conquered Gujarat in 1572 and Bengal in 1576. In 1581 they took Kabul, reversing an age-old pattern of invasion of India from Afghanistan. In 1592 Akbar conquered Orissa, and three years later added Baluchistan to the Empire. While he modernized the regime and army he never brought stability to the Empire or escaped the trap of further expansion that made it more unwieldy and prone to chronic rebellion. In his old age even his son, Salim, rebelled (1601), a common succession problem for empires rooted in Central Asian warrior cultures and governed by absolutist dynasties. Akbar died in 1605 after 47 years on the throne. He may have been poisoned by his son.

aketon. Also ''haketon.'' A stuffed cloth or leather garment worn under a mail *hauberk*.

akincis/akinjis. Light horse, paid in booty. Recruited from villages and the countryside, they were a key element in Ottoman armies in the 14th–15th centuries, numbering perhaps 50,000 in all. They shrank to an auxiliary and scouting role over the course of the 16th century. They were only marginal by the 17th century as the Empire adopted state-paid, professional forces. Once the Tatars allied with the Ottomans they assumed the foraging and scouting role formerly performed by akincis.

Akritai. Frontier troops of the Byzantine Empire.

akutō. ''Evil bands.'' Wild, independent bands of lower-class infantry and some *ronin*, who proliferated during the *Sengoku* period in Japan. They took refuge in high mountain forts (*jōkaku*).

Alais, Peace of (June 28, 1629). See *Edict of Alès*.

Alamut, Battle of (1234). See *Assassins*; *Mongols*.

al-Andalus. This Muslim kingdom in southern Spain sustained, along with southern Italy, a wealthy urban culture long after the decline of most other cities in Western Europe. It was host to the Umayyad Caliphate that ruled from Córdoba, but collapsed in 1008 to be replaced by dozens of *taifa* states. See also *mercenaries*; *Reconquista*.

Alarcos, Battle of (1195). See *Castile*; *Reconquista*.

Alba, Don Fernando Álvarez de Toledo, duque de (1507–1582). Castilian general and *Counter-Reformation* fanatic. At age 16 he signed up to fight the French in Italy. His noble birth conduced to the usual quick rise in rank, but in Alba's case bravery in action confirmed the justice of his ascent: his courage was noted at *Pavia*, in Hungary, and on *Charles V*'s expedition to Algiers. He made general by age 26 and was commander-in-chief of all Habsburg armies at 30. He fought against the *Schmalkaldic League* (1546–1547), crushing the German princes at *Mühlburg* (1547). His victories in Germany made him a court favorite, and Charles sent him back to Italy when the *Italian Wars* resumed. Alba defeated the French at Marciano (1553) and pushed *François de Guise* out of southern Italy by 1556. Alba next enjoyed the trust of *Philip II*, whom he encouraged to believe that every problem of the Spanish crown and empire—and these were legion—was amenable to an unpitying military solution and calculated cruelty. Alba represented Philip at the negotiations leading to the *Peace of Cateau-Cambrésis* (1559), ending the 65-year conflict with France over control of Italy. Philip sent Alba north in 1567, at age 60, with orders to crush the Dutch rebellion and prosecute his perpetual crusade against Protestantism. Alba promised to do the job with his usual ruthlessness, saying: ''I have tamed men of iron. . . . I shall know how to deal with these men of butter.'' He began his sojourn in the Netherlands by garrisoning the most important towns with *tercio* veterans. Next, he established a trial court, the ''Council of Troubles,'' which bitter Protestants quickly dubbed his ''Council of Blood.'' Alba used the Council to try 8,950 people, many in absentia, condemning most for treason or heresy or both, and confiscating their property in the usual style of an Inquisition. Alba's Council executed over 1,000 people, including leading Flanders nobles (84 on January 4, 1568, alone), starting with *Egmont* and others who thought they had settled their differences with the king. Perhaps 60,000 more fled into exile, where they organized under the Princes of Nassau and plotted their return. This ensured that the rebellion grew in strength and determination and that Alba's name would be forever linked to the ''*Black Legend*'' of Spain. For all that, he was merely the trigger, not the cause, of the great revolt of the Netherlands.

Alba handily beat *Louis of Nassau* at *Jemmingen* (July 21, 1568), and subsequently pushed a mercenary army under *William the Silent* out of Brabant. As tens of thousands of refugees fled the Netherlands for Germany and England the circle of Protestant states and princes opposed to Philip II

expanded. Alba did not understand this or care: his policy was always calculated terror, carried out by judicial murder of nobles and wholesale massacres of rebel and heretic townsfolk—it was later his proud boast that he executed 18,000 Dutch heretics. He even proposed breaking the dams and sluices to flood rebel areas, drowning all heretics within; but Philip forbade him. Still, whole populations in breached and broken rebel towns like Mechlen and Naarden were butchered, as was the garrison of *Haarlem* after it surrendered in July 1573. That same year Alba's troops mutinied for want of pay. Then he was checked in his attempt to capture *Alkmaar* (1573) and was recalled to Spain. At 73 he was entrusted to secure Portugal for Philip II, which he did upon winning his last battle at *Alcántara* in 1580. He died two years later. See also *maps*; *prisoners of war*.

Suggested Reading: W. Maltby, *Alba* (1983).

Albania. Mountainous Albania has most often been part of other people's empires: the ancient Greeks, the Romans, and the Byzantines all held some or all of Albania under their sway. From the 11th to the 13th centuries coastal Albania was contested ground between the declining power of Byzantium and rising seaborne power of the dominant warrior-people of Latin Christendom, the *Normans*. In the 14th century Albania was overrun by Serbs. In turn, Serbs and Albanians were conquered and ruled by the Ottoman Empire; in Albania's case for several centuries. It was conquered by the Ottomans in stages, partly with the help of Albanian chieftains who allied with the invader against local rivals, though the conquest was fiercely resisted by others. Albania's struggle against conquest was aided by a revolt of the *Janissary* garrison in 1443, but was completed by *Muhammad II* in 1468. The Ottomans governed lightly, leaving much of Albania's local custom intact though converting most of its people to Islam.

Albert, Archduke of Austria (1559–1621). Son of *Maximilian II*; husband of Isabella, daughter of *Philip II*. Appointed Spain's governor in Brussels along with his wife (they were known jointly as ''The Archdukes''), Albert marched out to intercept *Maurits of Nassau* on the way to relieve the *Siege of Ostend*. They met in battle at *Nieuwpoort*, where Albert's *tercios* were badly beaten among the dunes. The insistence by the Archdukes on nominal acceptance by the United Provinces of their sovereignty over all the Netherlands was a stumbling block to peace prior to the *Twelve Years' Truce* (1609–1621).

Albigensian Crusade (1208–1229). The Albigenses, or ''Cathars'' (''Catharí''), were a 12th–13th-century Christian sect concentrated in Languedoc and elsewhere in southern France that cleaved to a radical vegan diet, a Manichean image of the nature of good and evil, pacifism, and rejection of the doctrine that Jesus of Nazareth had a corporeal and incorporeal nature. They held that the Catholic Church was evil, that the only true Christian faithful were the ''parfaits'' (or ''perfecti,'' or ''perfect ones''), known by the poverty and asceticism of their lives. Worldly wealth of the monastery, cathedral, or

feudatory was a sure sign of sin, corruption, and faithlessness. This change was hotly condemned as heretical by the Church, which was eagerly supported by outraged northern French nobility. The Cathar revolt against the corrupt rich of clergy and nobility was the gravest challenge to the authority of the Church prior to the *Hussite Wars* and the *Protestant Reformation*. The Church responded to the recruiting success of the sect's ascetic preachers, including conversion of some southern nobles, by sending Bernard of Clairvaux and his Cistercian brethren, followed later by St. Dominic and his fanatic friars, to counter-preach in Cathar areas. The contest turned violent from 1208 when a papal legate was murdered. Pope Innocent III (r.1198–1216) retaliated by proclaiming a crusade against the Cathar "heretics." Catholics lined up behind a regional warlord, Simon de Montfort, while Cathars looked to their noble converts and hired thousands of *routiers*. They also accepted informal alliance with Aragon, which had designs on Languedoc.

The northern nobility savagely repressed the Cathars, burning and wreaking much of Languedoc in a brutal *guerre mortelle*. They massacred by sword and burned Cathars at the stake, and killed routiers with merciless cruelty. In fact, so many routiers died that France enjoyed an unusual internal peace of several decades once the Cathar wars ended. Among the horrors of a notoriously awful war, Simon de Montfort had the population of the town of Bram blinded, except for an old man he left to guide them. In an unconnected act of justice, he was killed in 1218 by a stone trebuchet ball ("pomme") reportedly fired toward him by women from inside fortified Toulouse, which he was besieging.

They massacred by sword and burned Cathars at the stake . . .

As was usual in medieval warfare, the Cathar wars were a matter of sieges and savage *chevauchées* rather than set-piece battles. Only one large battle took place, at Muret (September 12, 1213), where de Montfort defeated a Cathar-Catalan army. In addition to the religious divide the war spoke to regional rivalry: Languedoc nobles who protected the Cathars were besieged in their great castles by armies of Catholic knights from the north. The Catholics brought with them the new counterweight trebuchet, with which they battered down thin-walled southern castles. Capetian monarchs also used the war to expand royal reach into Languedoc: Louis VIII personally led an expedition south in 1226. After most fighting ended in 1229 a Dominican *Inquisition* set out to ferret out lingering "heresy." Over several decades all Cathars were hunted down and their belief eradicated. However, powerful regional resentments of northern and Catholic power lingered to play some role in the *French Civil Wars*, and even after.

Suggested Reading: Stephen O'Shea, *The Perfect Heresy* (2000); Steven Runciman, *The Medieval Manichee* (1947; 1961); Jonathon Sumption, *The Albigensian Crusade* (1978).

d'Albuquerque, Alfonso de (1453–1515). Portuguese admiral, explorer, and empire-builder. He voyaged to India in 1503 and again in 1506. In 1507 he

led a failed expedition to capture *Hormuz*. He retreated to India where a rival Portuguese commander jailed him. He was released in 1509. The next year he took Goa, adding it to the growing number of coastal enclaves that constituted *Portuguese India*. He understood that a large territorial empire was beyond his country's abilities, if not to acquire, at least to hold. Instead, he captured Malacca in 1511 and finally took Hormuz in 1514, adding both territories to a growing seaborne but essentially coastal empire. He carefully fortified these and other enclaves which serviced armed traders and the navy and could be defended by shipboard artillery, gaining a foothold for Portugal in the international *spice trade* hitherto controlled by Muslim middlemen and dominated by Venice at its terminus in the Mediterranean.

alcabala. A form of early sales tax imposed in Castile and critical to Imperial Spain's system of *war finance*. In 1571 *Philip II* modeled a new Netherlands tax, the *Tenth Penny*, on the alcabala.

alcancia. ''firepots.'' Small incendiaries that were thrown like hand grenades during ship-to-ship close fighting. They were in use in most navies into the late 16th century. Not to be confused with the earlier *pots des fer*.

Alcántara, Battle of (August 25, 1580). When the Portuguese king died in 1580 without an heir, *Philip II* claimed the throne for Spain. The *Duke of Alba* led a tough, veteran Spanish army into Portugal. Most Portuguese nobles backed the Spanish merger, but popular opinion did not. A ragtag army of peasants and townsfolk, and some knights, met the Spanish at Alcántara. The fight was one-sided, and after the Spanish routed the defenders Portugal and its entire empire were annexed to Spain.

Alcántara, Knights of. See *Knights of Alcántara*.

Alcazarquivir, Battle of (August 4, 1578). ''Battle of the Three Kings.'' The Portuguese invaded Morocco in 1578, taking advantage of a Moroccan civil and religious war raging among several factions organized by fanatic desert *marabouts*. The Portuguese shrewdly engaged Muslim allies, followers of one candidate in the struggle for the Moroccan throne. The armies of three rivals met about 60 miles south of Tangier, at Alcazarquivir. The fighting was so ferocious it led to the deaths of ''Three Kings'': the Moroccan pretender allied to the Portuguese, the King of Fes, and King Sebastian of Portugal.

Alexandria, Siege of (1364). A Cypriot-Hospitaller galley fleet of 165 ships landed besiegers and took up blockade positions off Alexandria. The *mamlūks* defended their city with *naphtha* flamethrowers and incendiary bombs, traditional and gunpowder artillery, and liquid ammonia to blind assaulting troops. When the city fell its Christian attackers raped indiscriminately, and slaughtered 20,000 men, women, and children.

alferes. In the Iberian *Military Orders*, this low-ranking officer was the standard bearer.

Alfonso V (1432–1481). ''The African.'' King of Portugal. He campaigned successfully against the Moors of North Africa, taking *Tangier* in 1471. But he failed in his more ambitious attempt to marry Isabella of Castile. He lost the war he waged to seize control of Castile and León. He abdicated in 1476, but was compelled to ascend the throne again under the shadow of Spain. He died of plague.

Alfonso XI (1312–1350). See *Algeciras, Siege of*; *Gibraltar*; *Reconquista*.

Alford, Battle of (July 2, 1645). Even as *Charles I* was losing the first *English Civil War* in England, the Royalist cause was waxing in Scotland under the *Marquis of Montrose*. A small *Covenanter* army moved north to check Montrose's advances. He feigned a retreat that led the Covenanters into a trap at Alford, where they suffered heavy casualties. A campaign of maneuver then took both armies south.

Algeciras, Siege of (1344). Following his victory at Río Salado (October 20, 1340), Alfonso XI moved to besiege Algeciras. His allied army from Castile and León was supported by the *Military Orders*. The Christians nearly destroyed the city in the process of capturing it, during heavy fighting. Two *Mestres* of the *Knights of Alcántara* died during the siege. The fall of Algeciras left only *Granada* in Muslim hands. The ''gentle, parfait Knight'' of Chaucer's *Canterbury Tales* was present at Algeciras, as were the English Earls of Derby and Arundel. See also *Reconquista*.

Algiers. Algiers was governed by a succession of Arab-Berber dynasties: Fatamids, Almoravids, Almohads, and Marinds. With the swing in military favor toward the Christian kingdoms in Iberia during the *Reconquista*, Muslim principalities in Africa faced a new naval threat. They built galley navies of their own and became known in Europe as the *Barbary corsairs*. Algiers supported major corsair raids on the lucrative trade of the western Mediterranean into the Italian Renaissance, and on a lesser scale for another 300 years after that. With the dominance of the Ottomans in the eastern Mediterranean, and with Spanish power ascendant in the West, Algiers proved unable to maintain its independence. The ''corsairs'' turned to the Ottomans for help against Spain and Venice. The price exacted was Ottoman suzerainty over Algiers, although the city retained de facto independence. From 1518 Algiers served as the main Ottoman port in the western Mediterranean. That year, its corsair leader was chased out by Spanish and Zayanid (a new dynasty) forces. His brother, Khair al-Din, returned in 1525 as Ottoman pasha. He resumed corsair ways, briefly occupying Tunis in 1534. A Christian fleet under *Andrea Doria* attacked in force in 1541, but was repulsed with heavy losses. Algiers and its hinterland was subsequently ruled by *deys*, nominally in behalf of the Ottomans.

Alhama de Granada, Battle of (1482). See *Reconquista*.

Ali Pasha. See *Lepanto, Battle of (October 7, 1571)*.

Aljubarrota, Battle of (August 14, 1385). Portugal was threatened with takeover by Castile when Ferdinand I died in 1383. His illegitimate half-brother, then head of the *Order of Aviz*, led the knights in blocking a Castilian succession to the Portuguese throne, proclaiming himself King Juan I. Another Juan I sat on Castile's throne, however, and he invaded Portugal with 18,000 cavalry and 10,000 foot to assert his claim. About 200 Aviz knights, along with 7,500 infantry, met the invaders at Aljubarrota, north of Lisbon. In the Portuguese ranks were English and Gascon mercenaries, tough veterans of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453) with France. The Portuguese also adopted the tactics developed by *Edward III*: infantry and dismounted men-at-arms were positioned at the center of their line, protected by large units of archers anchored just forward of each flank and smaller groups at the flank of each infantry echelon. Their enemies fought in the old way. As was the case in France, in Portugal the new archery tactics and dismounted knights defeated massed heavy horse, the flower of the chivalry of Castile. The victory secured Portugal's independence from Castile.

Alkmaar, Siege of (August 21–October 8, 1573). Early in the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648), Dutch resolve and fighting capacity was tested at Alkmaar. After capturing *Haarlem*, the *Duke of Alba* moved with 16,000 ruthless *tercio* veterans to besiege Alkmaar, which was defended by just 2,000 militia. The townsfolk successfully resisted the first assault, then opened the dikes. Alba responded with a siege and by bringing up an inland fleet, but it was bested by the "*Sea Beggars*" in a sharp fight on the Zuider Zee. The victory was the first successful rebel defense of a major town, as well as the last battle fought in the north by Alba.

alla moderna. "The modern style." The Italian term for the new style of *bastion* fortification that was invented in central Italy, and hence known everywhere else as the *trace italienne.*

Allerheim, Battle of (1645). See *Mercy, Franz von*; *Nördlingen, Second Battle of*.

Almiranta. The vice-flagship of a Spanish war fleet. The Admiral sailed on the *Capitana*.

Almogavars. Mountain soldiers drawn from the shepherds of Aragon and Catalonia. They fought mainly for Aragon. They disdained all metal armor in preference for leather so that they were far more agile than any armored enemy, who were in any case forced by the mountainous terrain in which the Almogavars lived to dismount to fight them. Almogavar fleetness afoot gave

them their name, which was derived from the Arabic ''mugâwir'' or ''runner.'' See also *Catalan Great Company*.

Almohads. See *Algiers*; *caliph*; *Castile*; *Gibraltar*; *''holy war''*; *Ifriqiya*; *Maghreb*; *Morocco*; *Reconquista*; *taifa states*.

Almoravids. See *Algiers*; *caliph*; *Castile*; *''holy war''*; *Reconquista*; *taifa states*; *Tuareg*.

Alte Feste, Siege of (August 24–September 18, 1632). ''Fürth.'' *Albrecht von Wallenstein* assumed a strong defensive position at the Alte Feste (Alte Veste) near Nürnberg to await the advancing Swedish army. *Gustavus Adolphus* grew impatient and attacked him, twice, but failed to carry the Catholic lines. After two days Gustavus withdrew with a loss of some 2,000 dead, *Johann Banér* wounded, and *Lennart Torstensson* captured. This rebuff, and the lure of Wallenstein's gold and reputation as a reliable paymaster, induced some mercenaries to switch from the Protestant side. Gustavus marched south to eat out Swabia and Bavaria, but Wallenstein marched into Saxony and took Leipzig, drawing Gustavus back north. The armies met again at *Lützen*.

Altmark, Truce of (September 26, 1629). This truce of exhaustion between Sweden and Poland was to last six years. In fact, it restored peace after seven decades of war in northeast Europe and was extended for another 26 years at Stuhmsdorf (1635). Altmark concluded the active phase of the Polish–Swedish struggle that had resumed following expiration of the *Truce of Tolsburg* in 1621. Mediated by Cardinal *Richelieu* and Georg Wilhelm of Brandenburg, it freed *Gustavus Adolphus* to intervene in Germany in 1630. It left part of Livonia in Swedish hands, but otherwise reflected the military stalemate reached earlier that summer. See also *Oxenstierna*.

Alton, Battle of (1643). See *Waller, William*.

Alva. See *Alba, Don Fernando Álvarez de Toledo, duque de*.

Alvarado, Pedro de (1485–1541). *Conquistadore*. He explored the coast of Yucatan in 1518, then accompanied *Cortés* to Vera Cruz and the Central Valley of Mexico in 1519. During Cortés' absence from Tenochtitlán (1520), Alvarado's torments of Aztec priests and murder of nobles in a relentless search for gold provoked the city to rise. He survived the causeway escape of the ''*Noche Triste*'' (June 30, 1520) to fight in the desperate action at *Otumba* (1520) and in the *Second Siege of Tenochtitlán* (1521). He was made ''alcalde'' (governor) of the city's smoking ruins. Reckless and ill-tempered, he argued constantly with other conquistadore commandants. In 1524 he campaigned in Central America (Guatemala), and later in northern Mexico and modern Ecuador (1534). Late in life he was made a *Knight of Santiago*, by then a hollow shell of the former *Military Order* which survived as a mere civil list.

Alwa. ''Maquerra.'' An early medieval, sudanic, and Christian kingdom on the upper Nile (Nubia). In the 10th century it was still able to keep Muslim traders away from its borders, though it conducted trade with *Mamlūk* Egypt. Its king was captured by a mamlūk army in 1316, and replaced by a Muslim ruler. Alwa migrated farther south, but was unable to fend off nomadic Arabicized tribes also migrating southward. It fragmented into several smaller states, some of which survived into the late 15th century.

Amasya, Peace of (May 1555). This treaty ended a protracted Ottoman–Safavid war, whereupon the Safavids removed their capital to Qazwin from Tabrīs. Iran recognized Ottoman suzerainty over Iraq and eastern Anatolia, while *Suleiman I* accepted Iranian rule over parts of Azerbaijan and the Caucasus. The peace lasted until an Ottoman offensive in 1578, timed to take advantage of a period of weakness under Shah Muhammad Khudabanda (1578–1587). This territorial division of Muslim lands along sectarian lines paralleled Christian divisions in Germany codified in the *Peace of Augsburg* the same year.

Amboise, Conspiracy of (March 1560). The French court was dominated by the *Guise* brothers, who exerted great influence over their young nephew, *Francis II*. Armed Protestant nobles conspired to kidnap Francis from his summer palace at Amboise. Their intent was to free him from the influence of the radical Catholic Guise, whom they would dismiss, arrest, try, and execute. Before the plot could be carried out it was disrupted by troops sent to Amboise by the duc de Guise. In the aftermath, hundreds of Protestant nobles were tortured and executed, or drowned in the Loire. Corpses were left hanging on the palace walls at Amboise into April as a warning to all heretic-rebels. The Guise arrested *Condé*, who played no role in the conspiracy but whom they planned to execute to settle an old, personal score. But Francis died suddenly (December 5, 1560), permitting *Catherine de Medici* to proclaim herself regent for her other minor son, Charles IX. In the short run, the Guise were checked and retreated to Lorraine while Protestants seized towns, including Lyon, and raised troops. Longer term, the ''conspiracy of Amboise'' confirmed the fears of most Catholics that the Huguenots were seditious rebels even before they were heretics. *Jean Calvin* later wrote to *Coligny* disassociating himself from the attempt to usurp a king's rightful authority, though *John Knox* moved in a different direction.

Amboise, Peace of (1563). See *Edict of Amboise*.

Amiens, Siege of (1597). See *Franco-Spanish War*.

ammunition. See *arrows*; *artillery*; *ballot*; *bolt*; *bullets*; *cannonballs*; *case shot*; *chain shot*; *dice shot*; *grapeshot*; *gunpowder weapons*; *hail shot*; *hot shot*; *quarrel*; *shells*; *small shot*; *solid shot*.

amphibious warfare. See *Aden*; *Antwerp, Siege of*; *Aztec Empire*; *birlin*; *conquistadores*; *Cossacks*; *galley*; *Gravelines, Battle of*; *Drake, Francis*; *Hakata Bay, Battle of (1274)*; *Hakata Bay, Battle of (1281)*; *Henry V, of England*; *Hundred Years' War*; *Janissary Corps*; *lymphad*; *Nine Years' War*; *Normans*; *Sea Beggars*; *tarides*; *wakō*; *war at sea*.

amsār. An Arab military colony and administrative center. Initially, *Bedouin* warriors in conquered lands lived inside the amsār according to tribe. Over time, the markets they provided and the centers of military and political power they represented led to growth of administrative cities around the garrisons. As a result, amsār played a key role in Arabization and conversion to Islam of non-Arab and non-Muslim peoples. Not least important in this process was the assimilation into Arab armies of non-Arab converts who resented the entrenched privileges of Bedouin and demanded, and effected, reform.

Anabaptism. A fervent, minority Protestant sect that first arose in Zürich under the guidance of Conrad Grebel, who broke with *Zwingli* in the mid-1520s and was vehemently opposed by *Martin Luther*. It was especially prominent in the Netherlands after 1530. Elsewhere, it was a marginal movement. Doctrinally, Anabaptism was prone to frequent fractures; politically, it lurched toward anarchism. Emotionally and psychologically, early Anabaptists were excitable, often violent, *iconoclastic* utopians who believed in a voluntary church of true believers as opposed to uniform religious belief and practice enforced by the state. They objected, therefore, to infant baptism, arguing instead that baptism be confined to consenting adults who understood the spiritual obligations it demanded. This opposed them to mainstream cultural acceptance that infant baptism inaugurated a child into the spiritual care of the believing congregation. Adult baptism was first performed in Zürich on January 21, 1525. It was made a capital offense on March 7, and families who declined to submit newborns for baptism were expelled from the city. *Charles V* made adult baptism a capital offense throughout the Holy Roman Empire in 1529. It has been estimated that between 1525 and 1618 from 1,500 to 5,000 Anabaptists were burned, decapitated, or drowned for their faith, the latter a particularly vicious form of symbolic retribution.

Anabaptists were burned, decapitated, or drowned for their faith, the latter a particularly vicious form of symbolic retribution.

Anabaptism divided into two main factions. The first was determined to take up arms against all comers. Adherents of this group ran naked through the streets of Amsterdam in 1534, threatening the ungodly with swords and hellfire. One group later attacked a monastery with artillery. Others sacked churches and smashed altars, images, and statuary. A large group of aggressive, polygamist Anabaptists seized control of Münster, in Westphalia. They quickly set up a radical theocracy and persecuted all in the city who would not undergo adult baptism. Hundreds of armed Anabaptists joined them as

Münster was besieged for 18 months (1534–1535), before succumbing. Along with the *German Peasant War* (1525), the Anabaptist revolution in Münster was seen by Lutherans and Calvinists as the dark underside of Protestantism.

The other faction was eventually formed by the vast majority of Anabaptists who took the lessons of Münster to heart and became radical pacifists who eschewed arms and war, and religious separatists who declined to participate in any coercive acts or responsibilities of the state. They set up segregated communities that sought to remain aloof from worldly struggle and war, but were persecuted just as fiercely as their more aggressive and violent co-sectarians. By far, the majority executed in the Spanish Netherlands on charges of ''heresy'' were Anabaptists; they were also persecuted north of the rivers throughout the first four decades of the new Dutch Republic. Mennonites were specially targeted from 1596. After 1612 the situation improved as confessional lines settled down and each sect had less to fear from mass conversion or reconversion to the faith of its enemies. Anabaptists thus survived on the margin of Dutch society. In 1650 they formed about 5 percent of the Dutch population.

Suggested Reading: C-P. Clasen, *Anabaptism* (1972); A. Verheyden, *Anabaptism in Flanders, 1530–1650* (1961).

Anatolia. See *Ankara, Battle of*; *Byzantine Empire*; *Iran*; *Mongols*; *Ottoman Empire*; *Turks*.

ancient. A ship's flag; an ensign.

Andorra, Principality of. A political curiosity even for the Middle Ages. Holy Roman Emperor Charles II appointed the Archbishop of Urgel to control Andorra, but this was disputed by the local prince, the Comte de Foix. In 1278 a compromise was agreed whereby joint suzerainty was established. Andorra remained for centuries a feudal holding of the archbishops, while on the French side it was considered an independent princedom ruled by successive Comtes de Foix, who controlled Andorra to 1574 when their claim finally passed to the crown during the *French Civil Wars*.

Anegawa, Battle of (July 22, 1570). *Nobunaga Oda* and *Tokugawa Ieyasu* joined forces to defeat their main northern enemies, the *daimyo* Azai Nagamasa and Asakura Yoshikage. Tokugawa's men attacked the Asakura position while Nobunagu's forces held back the Azai. Once Tokugawa pushed all Asakura troops from the field he wheeled to take the Azai position in the right flank. Nobunaga then committed his reserve against the left flank, and the battle was won. See also *Unification Wars*.

Angola. See *Ngola*.

Angora, Battle of. See *Ankara, Battle of*.

d'Anjou, duc (1555–1584). Né François. Youngest son of *Henri II* and *Catherine de Medici*, brother of *Francis II*, *Charles IX*, and *Henri III*. Although he had no Protestant inclinations he was so politically ambitious he briefly allied with the Huguenots. Along with *Henri de Navarre*, d'Anjou was held prisoner at court for three years, from the first night of the *St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres* (August 24, 1572) until his escape on September 15, 1575. He took refuge among the Huguenots in the Midi, with whom he sided in the fifth of the *French Civil Wars*. He was closely associated with the *Edict of Beaulieu* (''Peace of Monsieur'') in 1576. That reconciled him to the childless Henri III and to French Catholics worried about the succession. D'Anjou was touted as a match for *Elizabeth I*, but she found him physically repellant when they met in 1579 and probably never intended to marry him in any case. Instead, he was installed by *William the Silent* as ''prince and lord'' of the Dutch rebel provinces, which had rejected *Philip II* but were not yet ready to establish a republic. The deal was signed in September 1580 and d'Anjou arrived in January 1581. He proved an inept military commander immediately, and a treacherous leader over time. Fretting over restraints on his authority, he attempted a coup in Flanders and Brabant in January 1583, seizing Aalst and Dunkirk, but failing to take Antwerp. Tired of his plots and battlefield ineptitude, the Beggars forced him to leave the Netherlands. His unexpected death, in June 1584, left Henri de Navarre presumptive heir to the French throne.

Ankara, Battle of (July 20, 1402). Also known as ''Angora.'' Having won decisively at *Nicopolis*, Sultan *Bayezid I* besieged Constantinople. Meanwhile, *Timur* invaded Asia Minor with a large Mongol-Tatar army, and sacked Aleppo, Damascus, and Baghdad. Bayezid broke off the siege and turned east to meet the Tatars at Ankara. Cavalry predominated on both sides, feudal levies for the Ottomans and light steppe cavalry under Timur. The *Janissaries* fought well, holding several hilltops in a defensive line. But the Ottoman *timariots* and *sipahis* deserted in droves before the highly skilled and motivated Tatar assault. Bayezid was captured and shortly after killed himself, setting off an Ottoman civil war over the succession.

annates. Fees tendered to a pope upon appointment to a ''reserved'' office. Such fees, amounting to a full year's income of a bishopric, or more, were key to papal financial adjustment to the new money economy. They also occasioned fierce opposition from all opposed to Ultramontane claims by the popes. See also *Council of Trent*.

Antichrist. The Apocalyptic opponent of Jesus of Nazareth (''The Christ'') who was expected by the early and Medieval Church, and by all millenarians in spirit, to appear on Earth before the Final Judgment at the ''End of the World.'' Depictions of confessional opponents as the Antichrist were both sincere and commonplace in propaganda of the wars of religion.

anti-Semitism. Anti-Semitism as a virulent, specific hatred of Jews was, until modern times, commonly found among Christians rather than Muslims, though it was known to Islam as well. In this period, anti-Semitism was state policy in Spain, Turkey, Poland, Russia, the Holy Roman Empire, and the Berber states. It usually took the form of proscriptions on the occupations Jews might enter and restrictions on where they could live. Jews were forced into ghettos as early as 1280 in Moorish-Berber North Africa. From the early 13th century anti-Jewish legislation became commonplace in Europe. In 1235 the Church Council that met in Arles, France, ordered all Jews to wear a yellow patch, four fingers wide, over their heart. In most cities in Europe Jews were confined to ghettos known as ''Jewish Quarters.'' In 1290, England expelled its small Jewish community. In 1306 France expelled many Jews. In both countries, Jews returned and resettled in later decades. The Catholic Church stepped up persecution of Jews across Europe with founding of the Medieval *Inquisition* in 1232. In Castile, it was forbidden for anyone to convert from Islam to Judaism or from Judaism to Islam. In 1255 it was made illegal for Christians to apostatize. This new aggressiveness toward Jews (and Muslims) was paralleled by a more intolerant attitude toward Christian heretics and other religious dissenters. In southern France an all-out ''holy war'' against the *Albigensian* heresy aimed at eradicating the Cathars, against whom the Medieval Inquisition was originally targeted.

Throughout Christendom, but most notably in the Swiss lands and in Germany, Jews were blamed for the spread of the *Black Death*. There were ferocious outbreaks of anti-Semitism and massacres of Jews by German Christians in 1349, with thousands more killed by crowds stirred to religious frenzy by the *flagellants*. This had happened before, when Crusaders detoured into Jewish villages or ghettos to commit murder for Christ; it would happen again in Germany during the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). In each case, Jews became victims of religious zeal run amok and of scapegoating by local elites eager to deflect blame for all the social, economic, and military turmoil that coursed over Germany and Europe in the mid-14th and again in the mid-17th centuries. Everywhere, Jews were blamed by superstitious, ignorant Christians—who also ferreted out supposed ''witches'' and ''demon-worshipers'' for persecution and death—during episodes of natural calamity or wartime suffering. Such Christians neglected to recall the persecution of their own founding generations, who were blamed for natural disasters or misfortune in war by distraught pagans of the Roman Empire. The culminating act of anti-Semitism in the Middle Ages was the *expulsion of the Jews* from Spain in 1492. Many who left were welcomed to settle inside the Ottoman Empire. Those Jews who formally converted to Catholicism in order to remain in Iberia after 1492 (''conversos'') were the main target of the Spanish Inquisition over the next 150 years. Even longtime, loyal ''converso'' families were persecuted and expelled, including from Portugal after it was annexed to Spain in 1580.

Antwerp, Siege of (1584–1585). Eight years after the *Spanish Fury*, Antwerp was again attacked by the *Army of Flanders*, this time led by the *Duke of Parma*. The townsmen cut all dikes to protect the city, but Parma built a fortified, floating bridge and gun platforms across the Scheldt. That brought the city of 80,000 inhabitants under close artillery fire and cut it off from resupply via the sea during the lean winter months. *Sea Beggars* from Holland and Zeeland launched an amphibious relief operation in April 1585, but it was repelled by Parma's tough veterans. After 14 months of fighting, disease, starvation, and death, Antwerp surrendered in August. For once, the Spanish did not sack a defeated rebel town. Instead, they garrisoned it and forced the Protestant population to convert or leave. About 38,000 left for the north.

Appanage system. See *Muscovy, Grand Duchy of*; *war finance*.

***appatis*.** "Truce payments." Contracts that set out the amount of protection money extorted from civilians to be paid to enemy (or even "friendly") troops garrisoned in the area, in exchange for soldiers abstaining from burning crops and villages or killing peasants or townsfolk. *Mercenaries* often demanded "patis" because pay from a distant employer was months in arrears. The worst excesses came from *routiers* or *Free Companies* who took over a stronghold and then systematically wasted the surrounding region. Their most common method of intimidation was to burn out peasant huts or an entire village or town if money was not paid. If a *chevauchée* or other scorched earth campaign was underway, even prompt payment might not spare property from being razed. And appatis might be demanded from the same village or town by two or more companies in a frontier war zone, or from multiple groups of routiers.

Appenzell Wars (1403–1411). Following the *Covenant of Sempach* (1393), the Canton of Appenzell sought to break free from the control of its feudal liege lord, the Abbot of St. Gallen. Appenzell won the initial fight at Speicher, or Vögelisegg (May 15, 1403), where the Swiss forces used "*Letzinen*" palisades to great effect, not by defending from behind the barricades but by leaving them undefended to lure the enemy into a trap. Once the troops of St. Gallen crossed over the earthworks, concealed Swiss closed behind them and a slaughter commenced. The Swiss employed the same tactic at Stoss (June 17, 1405), where the men of Appenzell, fighting under their *Banner* of an angry standing bear, similarly trapped and defeated an Austrian army behind Letzinen. Appenzell was defeated at Bregenz (January 13, 1408) by the Austrians, but it was saved by alliance with the Swiss Confederation (1411). Appenzell formally joined the Swiss Confederation a hundred years later (1514).

Aquitaine. See *Black Prince*; *Brétigny, Treaty of*; *castles, on land*; *Edward III*; *Hundred Years' War*; *Nájera, Battle of*; *Poitiers, Battle of*.

Arabs. Originally, a nomadic pastoralist (*Bedouin*) people from Arabia. More loosely, any of the Semitic peoples of North Africa, the Arabian peninsula, Palestine, Lebanon, Syria, Iraq, and northern Sudan—excluding Jews, who are also a Semitic people historically living in the Middle East, but with a distinct history and faith. Originally located on a strategically sited peninsula which joins the Indian Ocean to the Mediterranean, and the worlds of India and Asia to Europe and Africa, Arabs emerged as a people of world historical significance with the "explosion of *Islam*" out of the Arabian desert in the 7th century C.E. While Arab military ascendancy was brief and the tribes either retreated to the desert or were assimilated into more advanced civilizations they conquered, Arab language, politics, and the Muslim faith remained as a lasting influence on world history. The Arab caliphate lasted until defeat of the Abbasid caliphs in Baghdad by the *Mongols* in 1258. After that, Mongol and *Turkic* dynasties and empires, or *Mamlūks*, ruled the many and divers peoples converted to Islam under the Arab caliphs. For the Ottomans, Arab militia played an important military role east of the Jordan River, but other Arab troops allied with *Azaps* in local wars against the *Janissaries*.

Aragon. This north Iberian state became an independent kingdom in 1076. Along with Castile and Portugal, it engaged in a prolonged war of raids, plunder, and enforced tribute against the *taifa* states of *al-Andalus*. Aragon emerged as a real power under Alfonso I ("The Battler," d.1134) in the early 12th century. He summoned Christian knights from France in 1117, and with their help took Muslim Zaragoza from the Almoravids the next year. He later captured Malaga. James I ("The Conqueror," 1208–1276, r.1213–1276), captured the Balearic Islands (1229–1235), Majorca (1229), and Valencia (1238), laying the foundation for an Aragonese trading and martial empire with its economic core in Catalan Barcelona, and in control of the eastern seaboard of Iberia. Aragon was more tolerant of its Muslim subjects than was Castile: it left intact a large Muslim population in Valencia, which contributed to economic growth and a social, legal, and cultural sophistication that Castile lost by driving its Moors as refugees to Granada. See also *Albigensian Crusade*; *Almogavars*; *Ferdinand I, Holy Roman Emperor*; *Inquisition*; *Reconquista*; *Sardinia*; *Spain*; *War of the Sicilian Vespers*.

Aragon emerged as a real power under Alfonso I in the early 12th century.

arbaleste. See *crossbow*.

arbalétriers. Mounted crossbowmen. They were also known by the Latin *balistarii equites*.

Arbedo, Battle of (1422). Several Swiss cantons wished to expand into northern Italy. The Milanese contracted the *condottieri* captain *Carmagnola* to

defend them with an army of 16,000 mercenaries, including 5,000 cavalry. The Swiss fielded a force of just 2,500. Carmagnola surprised these men in camp. The Swiss quickly formed a pike square and held back repeated attacks by the enemy horse, until Carmagnola ordered *men-at-arms* to attack dismounted. Sheer weight of numbers forced the Swiss into a fighting retreat along a steep defile, in which they became trapped. When Carmagnola ordered no quarter the Swiss ranks stiffened and steadied. Swinging *halberds* wildly, the men of the Cantons cut their way right through the Italian foot and escaped the trap, although they left many hundreds of dead behind. Shortly after the battle a Diet was held in Lucerne that decided to add more pikes to the *Swiss square* to better protect halberdiers and archers. This reform led to the maturation of Swiss formations and tactics, so that they became the supreme infantry of the 15th century in Europe.

***arceri*.** Fifteenth-century Italian archers armed with ordinary bows, not *crossbows*.

archers. See individual battles and *abatis*; *arceri*; *armor*; *arquebus*; *arrows*; *artillery*; *ashigaru*; *Azaps*; *Bedouin*; *bracer*; *cavalry*; *compagnies de l'ordonnance*; *composite bow*; *crossbow*; *dragoons*; *drill*; *Edward III*; *elephants*; *franc-archers*; *galley*; *heavy cavalry*; *hobelars*; *howdah*; *hussars*; *indentures for war*; *jack*; *Janissary Corps*; *junk*; *lance* (1); *longbow*; *Mamlūks*; *mercenaries*; *Mongols*; *morion*; *murtat*; *muskets*; *pavisare*; *pavise*; *pike*; *reflex bow*; *Scots Archers*; *shock*; *siege warfare*; *Swiss square*; *tate*; *torre del homenaje*; *Turcopoles*; *uniforms*; *warhorses*; *war wagons*; *yabusame*.

Argentina. See *Buenos Aires*.

Argyll, Marquis of (1607–1661). Né Archibald Campbell. *Covenanter* general. Presbyterianism was his bedrock belief, for which he fought hard and often, but not well: he was repeatedly bested in battle by the *Marquis of Montrose*. *David Leslie* defeated Montrose at *Philipaugh* (September 13, 1645), restoring control of Scotland to Argyll. At the start of the Second *English Civil War* Argyll supported *Charles I*, but he backed away from the Royalists when *Oliver Cromwell* won at *Preston* (August 17–20, 1648) blocking the border to reentry by beaten English Royalists. He led the *Whiggamore Rising* in 1648, then returned to cursing Montrose, the Great White Whale of his hatred and obsession, until Montrose was caught, humiliated by Argyll, and hanged in 1650. When Cromwell invaded Scotland, Argyll spun another of his many political pirouettes and made peace. He survived into the Restoration, but by then he had betrayed too many men and causes to die quietly in bed. He met death instead on the block, unpitied and unmourned.

Arianism. The original "Arian heresy" dated to the 4th century thinker Arius, whose arguments were condemned by the Council of Nicaea (325 C.E.) and banned and repressed by the Catholic Church thereafter. In the early modern period the term applied to believers in the "unitarian" nature of God, who emerged as a small but important, and largely urban, religious and social

movement. As in original Arianism, 17th-century Arians rejected the claimed divinity of Jesus of Nazareth and the doctrine of the Trinity (or, as Muhammad once put it: ''God does not beget, nor is he begotten''). Some Arians promoted radical economic and social reforms such as communal holding of property, equality of all regardless of birth or social station, pacifism, and rejection of moral or political allegiance to any state. Arianism had small but influential congregations as far afield as Poland and Ukraine.

aristocracy. See *armor*; *Aztec Empire*; *baggage train*; *Burgundy, Duchy of*; *caliph*; *cavalry*; *caste system*; *castles, on land*; *castles, on ships*; *chivalry*; *Confucianism*; *consorterie*; *esquire*; *feudalism*; *gunpowder weapons*; *Hundred Years' War*; *Hungary*; *Hussite Wars*; *infantry*; *Janissary Corps*; *Japan*; *jus in bello*; *knights*; *Landsknechte*; *logistics*; *Mamlūks*; *Mughals*; *new monarchies*; *Normans*; *officer*; *Order of the Garter*; *Order of the Golden Fleece*; *price revolution*; *Rajputs*; *Reconquista*; *Richelieu, Armand Jean du Plessis de*; *revolution in military affairs*; *samurai*; *servitor cavalry*; *sipahis*; *Teutonic Knights*; *Tuareg*; *war finance*.

arma. In 1591 *Songhay* was invaded by Moroccan troops equipped with firearms, who made an extraordinary trek across the desert to capture Timbuktu, where they completely outmatched Songhay's spear-bearing cavalry and bowmen. The Moroccans were reinforced for a number of years, but ties to Morocco were broken in 1618 when the material fruits of conquest failed to meet expectations in Marrakesh. The Moroccans abandoned in Songhay clung to power, and over time formed an ethnically distinct ruling class called the ''arma'' (''gunmen''). In the 1660s a succession crisis in Morocco led the arma to formally repudiate the old connection. Steeped in desert mysticism, the arma were disdainful of the older, alternate, and more tolerant Muslim intellectual tradition of Timbuktu. For another 200 years the arma, also known as the ''Moors of Timbuktu,'' ruled an area centered on old Songhay, the cities of Gao, Jenne, and Timbuktu, but little else of what had once been governed by the Mali and Songhay empires.

Armada Real (de la Guarda de la Carrera de los Indias). Prior to 1570 Spain had no permanent navy. That year, it formed a flotilla of 12 small galleons to escort the *flota* to and from the Americas. Ten larger galleons were added in the 1580s; these formed the ''Castilian Squadron'' of the *Invincible Armada* of 1588. To this fleet were added the great galleons of Portugal, annexed to the Spanish Empire in 1580. After the catastrophe of 1588 the fleet was rebuilt remarkably fast, and in 1591 the Armada Real resumed escort of the flota.

Armagnacs. French mercenaries, leftovers from the *Free Companies* brought together by the Count of Armagnac in Languedoc. In 1407 they became embroiled in a local civil war, gaining a fearsome reputation for atrocities committed in the region of Paris. They were hired by French kings during the final decades of the *Hundred Years' War*. The Dauphin (later, Charles VII) allied with them, which helped drive Burgundy into alliance with England. The

French army which lost to *Henry V* at *Agincourt* (1415) had a large Armagnac contingent. During this nadir of French military fortunes, when most royal resistance to the English invasion collapsed, Armagnac captains and companies continued to resist English and Burgundian advances. After the Peace of Arras (1435) many Armagnacs joined companies of comparably brutal *Ecorcheurs*. See also *St. Jacob-en-Birs, Battle of*.

arme blanche. With bayonet fixed or saber drawn. *Gustavus Adolphus* abandoned the tactic of *caracole* by 1630, in favor of cavalry that charged with sabers drawn for maximum *shock* effect.

Armeé d'Allemagne. The French Army in the Rhineland and Germany during the *Thirty Years' War*.

Armenia. Armenia has existed in some form since the 9th century B.C.E. In 300 C.E. most of its population converted to Christianity—a faith preserved by Armenians despite conversion of neighboring populations to Islam from the 7th century. It was divided between the Roman and Iranian Empires in 387 C.E. Located at a major geopolitical crossroads, Armenians suffered repeated invasion: *Seljuk Turks*, 11th century; *Mongols*, 13th century; Turkmen tribes, 14th–15th centuries; then Tamerlane followed by the *Safavids*. The resulting waves of emigration and Armenian displacement constituted a prolonged diaspora. Armenia was conquered by the Ottomans in the 14th century, who occupied a devastated and underpopulated country.

armet. A late medieval (mid-15th-century) helmet of Italian origin that replaced the *bascinet* in most armies. It was formed of a large iron globe reaching to the ears, which were covered by separate pieces, with a long hollow projection covering the back of the neck. In front it sported a visor and gorget.

"Armies of the Religion on the Sea." See *Malta*.

arming cap. A quilted coif worn under a *helm* to ease discomfort and secure it to the head.

arming doublet. A thinner form of cloth padding that replaced the heavier *habergeon* in the 15th century as armor climaxed in form of the articulated full suit of plate.

Arminianism. A movement led by the Dutch theologian Jacobus Arminius (né Jacob Harmensen, 1560–1609) who sought a ''via media'' (middle path) between hardening Catholic and Protestant doctrines, and to moderate increasingly intemperate beliefs among Dutch Calvinist preachers. He rejected Calvinism's doctrine of absolute predestination (election), preaching instead that salvation was available to all who repented their sins and embraced ''The Christ.'' This embroiled him in a lifetime of controversy which

he only escaped in death, but which continued in a series of famous debates (''Remonstrances'') after his passing. His followers were more rigid than he was, and as they also tended to support peace with Spain they were suspect on political grounds. Neither doctrine nor politics endeared Arminians to Calvinists or Dutch nationalists. The crisis neared civil war in Holland over the issue of *waardgelders* in 1617, which was resolved only by a coup d'etat carried out by *Maurits of Nassau*. Maurits purged Arminians from town councils, replacing them with members of old noble families.

In England, *Charles I* was a follower of Arminianism, of sorts. He got into trouble in 1637 over introduction of the Arminian prayer book in place of the Book of Common Prayer and his effort to Anglicize the Scottish Kirk. English Latitudinarians shared Arminian views. In fact, all who wished to emphasize the differences between the reformed English church and more radical, continental-style Protestantism were called ''Arminians,'' whether or not they agreed with the views of Jacobus Arminius. For English *Puritans*, Arminianism represented all the subtle artifice, black arts, moral trickery, and doctrinal falsehood that they abhorred and more usually associated with the papacy and the Catholic Church, which was in their eyes the Whore of Babylon or even the Antichrist. See also *Grotius, Hugo*.

armor. Armor was a distinguishing characteristic of the medieval *knight* in Europe, as it was also of the *samurai* in Japan. Medieval soldiers in China wore armor as well, but in African warfare it was seldom worn, with exceptions in Ethiopia and in naval warfare. In Europe, chain *mail* was the standard form through the 12th century when the principal threat was blade strikes. *Plate* was adopted to better deflect or stop missiles as these improved in hitting power and penetration. This began a prolonged transition, starting in the 12th century and not reaching fruition until full, head-to-toe plate armor was adopted in the 15th century, just as armor became obsolete in the face of the ''infantry revolution'' of *pike* and *square* and more powerful *crossbows* and *gunpowder weapons*. By that time Milanese armor was widely sought after. It was much lighter and cheaper than German ''gothic'' armor that hitherto dominated the market. These styles were part fashion, but had a functional purpose, too: Italian warfare saw more cavalry-to-cavalry action with swords and lances, hence it took a more rounded form to ward off glancing blows. German and north European warfare involved many more archers, to which armorers responded with added grooves and crenelations to prevent penetration by quarrels or arrows. The new style of wearing *white armor* (uncovered by cloth) caught on, so that knights actually fought clad in ''shining armor.''

In China and Japan, chest plate for horses was produced as early as the 6th century. Several centuries later the *Mongols* made *lamellar* horse armor in which small plates were bound with leather to make larger flexible strips. Horse armor appeared in Europe in the late 12th century, usually in the form of mail. This was a response to the increasing number of archers on the battlefield. Equine plate was manufactured much later, in tandem with the

move toward fully articulated suits of plate armor for riders. Again, the spur to defensive innovation was improvement in the power and volume of missile weapons on the battlefield in the 14th century. The Italians pioneered in horse armor as they did in armor generally, with Milan emerging as a major center of equine armor production. By the mid-15th century, equine plate protected every part of a battle horse except its legs. Thirty years later, just before armor in general fell out of use (though not out of fashion), some magnates ordered equine suits that covered their chargers from nose to fetlock. Late horse armor was made of iron or steel plate, but hardened leather and wood were still in wide use in the late Middle Ages. The lack of equine armor told heavily against the French at *Crécy* (1346) and *Poitiers* (1356), as a result of which French knights dismounted to fight on foot, as did 14th-century men-at-arms everywhere. At *Agincourt*, the French thought their equine armor sufficient to fight mounted again, but it was not. Even so, by the end of the armor age some warhorses were clad in full plate akin to that of their riders, which forced an increase in the size of chargers and a reduction in speed afoot.

Despite improvements in the punching power of missile weapons and the increasing tactical prevalence of pike-and-firearms infantry, knights continued to wear armor. They increased its body coverage and thickness and remodeled it, adding crenelations and deflective surfaces. The full suit of body armor was thus a product of the end of the age of armor, and still in use into the 16th century. But personal plate became ineffective and obsolete with introduction of more powerful firearms capable of using *corned gunpowder*, which gave far greater penetrating power to handguns and cannon. At that point, the weight of ever-thickening plate became too great a burden: a fully articulated suit of 16th-century plate weighed 60 pounds. Though fully encased in metal, a fit warrior was capable of supple movement in suit armor. At least one case was reported of a knight able to turn and leap onto his horse unaided. Still, this was the exception rather than the rule: most armor restricted movement and interfered with sight and hearing to the point that dismounted knights would often fight in pairs, guarding each other's back. A number of older knights died of heart attacks, and younger ones died from dehydration or heat stroke after a hot summer's day spent in suffocating heat inside a full suit of plate. Discomfort was magnified by stuffing armor suits with shock-absorbent cloth, horsehair, or straw. Added to the problems of weight and discomfort was sharp limitation on sight, hearing, and a knight's defensive and offensive movements. These negatives came to outweigh suit armor's protective quality, and it was discarded along with the heavier horses needed to bear up a fully armored knight. Instead, cloth or leather garments were worn and smaller, fleeter steeds were newly desired: the fully armed knight and the destrier retired from war together, into romantic memory and imagination.

The new style of wearing white armor *(uncovered by cloth) caught on, so that knights actually fought clad in "shining armor."*

Professionals (mercenaries) were the first to abandon armor in order to regain combat mobility. By the 17th century most had discarded all armor other than a helmet and cuirass, in favor of cloth or leather and unobstructed sight and hearing. Speed was now to be the horse soldier's best defense, and freedom of movement replaced torpor, discomfort, tactical confinement, and immobility. By the mid-17th century even cavalry units, which were still predominantly aristocratic in origin, discarded most armor other than the helm and breastplate. Leg armor went first, replaced by three-quarter leather skirts. Over time, further recessions were made. By the end of the 17th century only bits and pieces of burnished metal survived here and there, and then mostly as polished ceremonial accouterments for officers-on-parade. A partial exception to the trend was princely armor, worn as a boastful but militarily anachronistic display by high aristocrats who refused to accept any social leveling in their politics or on the field of battle. Since such men seldom came within the range of enemy fire they could afford to continue to broadcast their social status through shiny metal burnished by some servant. Ceremonial and decorative armor lasted longest among *heavy cavalry*, the most aristocratic arm, but was more quickly discarded by pragmatic *hussars* and *dragoons*. Conversely, infantry armor became more common and heavy during the 16th and 17th centuries. This was partly because prices fell and armor retained utility for front ranks of pikemen whose job was to make contact with enemy lancers. Even so, most infantry preferred cheaper and more comfortable hardened leather *buff coats* and boots to confining breastplates and steel leggings.

Body armor was more useful and hence lasted much longer in Japan and China because effective personal firearms arrived there later than in Europe. Early Japanese armor left the right arm uncovered to allow mounted archers (the standard deployment of *samurai*) maximum freedom of movement. Later, splints of plate (''shino-gote'') were added to the right arm. The lower body was covered by four large plates. Subsequently, the Japanese developed a unique form of lamellar, or scale, armor. Samurai protection from the 5th to 8th centuries, called ''tanko,'' was made of discrete, overlapping iron plates. The Japanese developed this into ''kieko'' or hanging armor for mounted archers. In turn, kieko evolved into the great and justly famous ''o-yoroi'' armor. This was made of hundreds of small iron plates arranged like articulated blinds and was remarkably flexible. It was usually lacquered in black to prevent rusting and laced together with brightly colored silk cords (''odoshi ge''). The method of lacing allowed armorers to form intricate and beautiful patterns that gave Japanese armor its signature appearance. Sometimes leather was used in place of silk, but silk was preferred for its resistance to weather, the status it signified, and its sheer beauty. Japanese infantry originally wore a simpler form of rounded armor called ''do-maru,'' or the still simpler armor body wrap called ''haramaki.'' Later, infantry wore more elaborate armor known as ''tatami,'' made of mail and plate sewn onto a fabric shirt and leggings. After meeting the Mongols twice at *Hakata Bay*, battles

which were largely infantry affairs along a confined beach and wall defense, some samurai cavalry began to fight on foot. To do so they adopted functional elements of ''do-maru'' while retaining as much as possible of the more colorful ''o-yoroi.''

The Aztecs wore cotton armor sufficient to deflect the obsidian-tipped arrows and blades of their enemies, but which did nothing to stop penetration by bronze-tipped quarrels or sword blades forged from Toledo steel. Quilted ''armor'' was also worn in India by fierce Hindu warriors, the *Rajputs* and *Marathas*. This native armor was later adopted by some Muslim troops. As with Aztec cloth armor, it was primarily useful in defense against archers using standard bows. The *Mughals* introduced Iranian-style plate armor to warfare in India. This so-called ''Four Mirrors'' (''char-aina'') armor was comprised of four large curved plates, tied together and worn girdle-style around the chest and stomach over a long mail coat. The upper arms were protected by mail, with smaller hinged plates (''dastana'') worn over mail on the lower arm. Often, Iranian ''Four Mirror'' armor was cut and inlaid with gold, which added real beauty and dazzled the first Europeans to see it. The Mongols were light cavalry with no iron or metal industries, but they were not wholly unarmored. Chinese armor impressed them and they plundered and adopted hauberks and plate. Mongols generally preferred lamellar-style armor (small plates bound with leather to make larger, flexible armored strips), which they also used to protect their ponies. Because they remained highly dexterous mounted archers, they did not use armor below the elbow of either arm. Most of their armor was made from hardened ox-hide leather. Sharkskin was sometimes used, along with ox-hide, as waterproofing. In Africa in this period body armor was rare. Among the cavalry empires of the Sahel and sudan, quilted horse and body armor were common but plate was rarely used. Mail was common in North Africa among the Berbers and Moors. Braves of some of eastern North American Indian nations wore wooden armor that worked well enough against arrows, which they also learned to dodge from a young age. This wooden armor was quickly abandoned, along with the bows and arrows, once firearms were widely adopted in the 17th century and braves became expert marksmen. See also *ailettes*; *arming cap*; *arming doublet*; *armor*; *arrêt de cuirasse*; *aventail*; *barber*; *barbuta*; *bard*; *barded horse*; *bascinet*; *beaver*; *besegaws*; *bevor*; *bracers*; *brayette*; *brigantine (1)*; *byrnie*; *caparison*; *Cebicis*; *chanfron*; *chapel-de-fer*; *coiffe-de-maille*; *couters*; *crinet*; *crupper*; *cuir-bouilli*; *cuisses*; *destrier*; *elephants*; *espaliers*; *fauld*; *flanchard(s)*; *gadlings*; *gardebraces*; *gauntlets*; *genouillières*; *gorget*; *greaves*; *habergeon*; *haketon*; *hauberk*; *helm*; *Hunderpanzer*; *jack*; *jamber*; *jupon*; *karacena*; *kote*; *lance (1)*; *lance-rest*; *Landsknechte*; *legharnesses*; *mufflers*; *pauldrons*; *peytral*; *placard*; *poleyns*; *sabatons*; *salute*; *sarmatian armor*; *sashimono*; *schynbalds*; *secret*; *shields/shielding*; *sollerets*; *spaudlers*; *stop-rib*; *surcoat*; *tassets*; *tonlet*; *tournaments*; *vambraces*; *waist-lames*; *warhorses*; *white armor*; *zereh bagtar*.

Suggested Reading: Claude Blair, *European Armour, 1066–1700* (1958; 1979); Robert Elgood, ed., *Islamic Arms and Armour* (1979); Maurice Keen, ed., *Medieval Warfare* (1999); H. Russel, *Oriental Armour* (1967).

armories. In Europe, the first state armories date to the beginning of the 13th century when England, France, and the Italian city-states began to stockpile arms and armor in castles and fortified towns. Most emerging medieval polities maintained centralized arms manufacturing sites with foundries and villages or quarters housing skilled smiths, fletchers, bow-makers, and materials of war. Other polities likely did as well, but records are not extant for most. Early in the period crossbows and quarrels were the most important and numerous items stored. Other stockpiled equipment included basinets, padding to be worn by knights and men-at-arms beneath their armor, various mail, doublets, gorgets, plate, halberds, and pikes. Additionally, *catapults* and *trebuchets* and their hand-cut, stone ammunition were stored. Still, general stockpiling of weapons was not common practice until the 15th century, but from that point large concentrations of artillery, ammunition, and gunpowder were added to military storehouses kept by kings and the greater nobility. Armories were also maintained by most large towns in expectation of defense against a siege. The most famous was the *Arsenal of Venice*. From the early 15th century cannon and iron cannonballs were cast there for the galley fleet as well as stored in great warehouses near the docks. In England the main royal armory was the *Tower of London*; in Muscovy artillery and firearms were stored in the *Kremlin*. Austrian dukes and emperors kept an arsenal and foundry in Innsbruck, while the dukes of Saxony located their substantial arsenal in Dresden.

There were several advanced arsenal systems outside Europe in this period. In China the Palace Armory—as well as much Ming military production—was located in the Forbidden City and controlled by court *eunuchs*. The Ottomans carefully monitored weapons production and storage. They maintained numerous powder mills and stockpiles of charcoal, saltpeter, and sulphur, as well as copper, lead, iron, and tin, the latter imported from England. The Ottomans produced siege guns and other artillery at central foundries at the Imperial Arsenal (''Tophane-i Amire''), the state cannon foundry set up by *Muhammad II* at Pera. Assisted by *renegade* gunsmiths from Europe, the Ottomans produced unique styles of guns and effective recipes for gunpowder. In general, their technology kept pace with European developments in artillery almost to the end of the 17th century. This is the conclusion of newer research, which corrects an older view of the Ottomans as culturally closed to advances in military technology and already ''backward'' by 1600. See also *artillery train (1)*; *Burgundy, Duchy of*; *Henry VIII, of England*; *logistics*.

Army of Flanders. The Spanish army in Flanders. About half its manpower was recruited locally from among Flanders and Brabant Catholics. The other half came from Italy and Castile, or Germany, with a growing proportion of tough *tercio* troops as the Dutch rebellion and war became protracted. The Army of Flanders was resupplied and reinforced over many decades via the *Spanish Road*, along which some 100,000 troops traveled north between 1567 and 1620. After that, French military activity squeezed then cut the overland route. Since resupply by sea was problematic in the face of English and French

privateers and ruthless ships and crews of the *Sea Beggars*, isolation often led to loss of food and pay and then to mutiny: between 1572 and 1607 the Army of Flanders mutinied in whole or part no fewer than 46 times. During the *Twelve Years' Truce* (1609–1621) it was reduced from 60,000 men to just 20,000. When the war resumed its ranks swelled again. In 1635 it still numbered 70,000 men, before declining in size, along with all other armies, in the 1640s. On its several commanders and many battles and sieges, see *Alba, Don Fernando Alvarez de Toledo, duque de*; *Alkmaar, Siege of*; *Antwerp, Siege of*; *Don Juan of Austria*; *Eighty Years' War*; *French Civil Wars*; *Gembloux, Battle of*; *Haarlem, Siege of*; *Invincible Armada*; *Jemmingen, Battle of*; *Leiden, Siege of*; *Maastricht, Siege of (1579)*; *Mookerheyde, Battle of*; *Oldenbaarneveldt, Johan von*; *Olivares, conde-duque de*; *Ostend, Siege of*; *Parma, duque di*; *Philip II, of Spain*; *Philip III, of Spain*; *Philip IV, of France*; *"Spanish Fury"*; *Spínola, Ambrogio di*; *tercio*; *Thirty Years' War*; *Turnhout, Battle of*; *volley fire*; *Zúñiga y Requesens, Luis*.

Suggested Reading: Geoffrey Parker, *The Army of Flanders and the Spanish Road, 1567–1659* (1972).

Army of the Catholic League. See *Catholic League (Germany)*.

Army of the States. The Dutch army in the *Eighty Years' War*. See also *Maurits of Nassau*.

Arnay-le-Duc, Battle of (June 26, 1570). See *French Civil Wars*; *Henri IV, of France*.

Arnim, Hans Georg von (1581–1641). Mercenary field marshal. Nominally a Lutheran, he fought in Poland and Russia with *Gustavus Adolphus*, 1613–1617, then against the Swedes in behalf of Poland (1621). In Germany he fought for the Catholics under *Albrecht von Wallenstein*, but resigned his imperial commission in 1629 upon proclamation of the *Edict of Restitution* (1629). He commanded the Saxon Army, 1631–1635, but resigned with Saxony's signature of the *Peace of Prague*. He was arrested by the Swedes in 1637, but escaped. Back in the saddle in Saxony in 1638, he worked with *Johann Georg* to organize the smaller German states as a third force in Imperial politics leading to a general settlement. He died while that project was yet unfulfilled.

arquebus. Also "arkibuza," "hackbutt," "hakenbüsche," "harquebus." Any of several types of early, slow-firing, small caliber firearms ignited by a *matchlock* and firing a half-ounce ball. The arquebus was a major advance on the first "hand cannon" where a heated wire or handheld *slow match* was applied to a touch hole in the top of the breech of a metal tube, a design that made aiming by line of sight impossible. That crude instrument was replaced by moving the touch hole to the side on the arquebus and using a firing lever, or *serpentine*, fitted to the stock that applied the match to an external priming pan alongside the breech. This allowed aiming the gun, though aimed fire was not accurate

or emphasized and most arquebuses were not even fitted with sights. Maximum accurate range varied from 50 to 90 meters, with the optimum range just 50–60 meters. Like all early guns the arquebus was kept small caliber due to the expense of gunpowder and the danger of rupture or even explosion of the barrel. However, 15th-century arquebuses had long barrels (up to 40 inches). This reflected the move to *corning* of gunpowder.

The development of the arquebus as a complete personal firearm, ''lock, stock, and barrel,'' permitted recoil to be absorbed by the chest. That quickly made all older handguns obsolete. Later, a shift to shoulder firing allowed larger arquebuses with greater recoil to be deployed. This also improved aim by permitting sighting down the barrel. The arquebus slowly replaced the crossbow and the longbow during the 15th century, not least because it took less skill to use, which meant less expensive troops could be armed with arquebuses and deployed in field regiments. This met with some resistance: one *condottieri* captain used to blind and cut the hands off captured arquebusiers; other military conservatives had arquebusiers shot upon capture. An intermediate role of arquebusiers was to accompany pike squares to ward off enemy cavalry armed with shorter-range *wheel lock* pistols. Among notable battles involving arquebusiers were *Cerignola* (April 21, 1503), where Spanish arquebusiers arrayed behind a wooden palisade devastated the French, receiving credit from military historians as the first troops to win a battle with personal firearms; and *Nagashino*, where *Nobunaga Oda*'s 3,000 arquebusiers smashed a more traditional *samurai* army. The arquebus was eventually replaced by the more powerful and heavier *musket*. See also *cartridges*; *Charles V, Holy Roman Emperor*; *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *hackbutters*; *marines*; *Swiss square*; *tercio*.

arquebus à croc. An over-sized arquebus, usually mounted as a hook or rail gun on the side of a ship, or on the side of a heavy wagon. See also *Pinkie Cleugh, Battle of*.

arquebusiers. Infantry armed with *arquebuses*. See also *hackbutters*.

arquebusiers à cheval. Mounted arquebusiers or *dragoons*. These were special units in the *French Army* of the 15th–16th centuries. Their extremely slow rate of fire (as low as two shots every 20 minutes) limited their use to scouting and escorting, or raiding out of garrisons.

Arques, Battle of (1303). See *Courtrai, Battle of*.

Arques, Battle of (September 21, 1589). The assassination of *Henri III* (August 1, 1589) launched a new phase of the Eighth of the *French Civil Wars* by ending the Valois line and leaving the Huguenot prince and captain, *Henri de Navarre*, the most legitimate candidate for the crown. Abandoning his siege of Paris, Navarre took up a strong defensive position with about 5,000 men at Arques, near Dieppe in Normandy. He dug two sets of trenches that maximized local topographical advantages by forming a narrow frontage. The *duc*

de Mayenne pursued Navarre into Normandy with an army of 24,000 *Catholic League* troops. He probed Navarre's fortifications for three days, then moved to assault through a thick fog. The terrain and defensive works channeled the Leaguers into a single front, barring flanking actions and disallowing the full weight of the larger army from being brought to bear. Mayenne's German infantry breached the first trench line but were stopped at the second by Navarre's hired Swiss. Once the fog lifted, heavy guns Navarre had earlier emplaced at Arques Castle opened fire, scything the Catholic ranks. The Huguenot infantry repelled repeated attacks with volley fire, killing or wounding perhaps 10,000 of their enemy. The position was so strong that Mayenne was forced to withdraw even though Navarre's Swiss defected in the middle of the battle for want of pay. After the fight, Navarre had the Swiss ringleaders executed in front of the assembled army. Six months later the two sides clashed again, at *Ivry-la-Bataille* (1590).

Navarre dug two sets of trenches that maximized local topographical advantages by forming a narrow frontage.

arrêt de cuirasse. A late medieval device, something like a bracket, used to anchor a heavy *lance* against the breastplate of a full suit of *plate* armor. It temporarily revived an offensive role for heavy armored cavalry in Europe.

arrière-ban. The shock of the crushing defeat of France's heavy cavalry at *Courtrai* (1302) at the hands of Flemish militia prompted Philip IV (''The Fair'') to undertake major military reforms aimed at raising trained infantry for his army. He also sought to more efficiently mobilize money by asserting a royal right to summon all able-bodied men of fighting age to military service to the crown. This was an ancient right of French kings (the ''ban et l'arrière-ban,'' or feudal levy) that had fallen into disuse and disrespect. Its reassertion by the monarch after Courtrai was a novel and important response to the new role of infantry on the field of battle, mainly because it allowed the crown to impose a tax in lieu of service. The money raised was then used to hire and equip military professionals, lessening the king's reliance on the old aristocracy. Still, it was not until 1448 that Charles VII used the system to establish a royal infantry reserve of 8,000 *franc-archers*. The dukes of Burgundy used a similar system until the reforms implemented by *Charles the Rash*, starting in 1470. By the 16th century, during the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559), French nobles served seasonally or they paid to avoid military service altogether, as the arrière-ban became a substitute military tax. Many nobles had to mortgage property or borrow against future rents at ruinous rates to avoid serving. See also *French Army*.

arrows. See *bodkin*; *bolt*; *broadhead arrow*; *crossbow*; *longbow*; *pots de fer*; *quarrel*.

Arsenal of Venice. In 1104, Venice founded its famous Arsenal, which grew to cover 30 hectares of enclosed shipyards, docks, warehouses, ships' armories,

gunsmiths, foundries, and related crafts and services. In the warehouses were stored necessary items of war: trebuchet ammunition, tackle, oars, rigging, crossbows, and later, arquebuses, cannon, powder, and shot. By 1500 it reportedly had 12 powder mills worked by horsepower and drawing on huge storehouses filled with saltpeter, sulphur, and charcoal, the ingredients of black powder. This latent military capability allowed Venice to put much larger galley fleets into action than it maintained in peacetime. The Arsenal lagged in shipbuilding from the late 16th century, however, and never fully mastered the design of the new *galleons* (''galeones''), which it first built in 1608.

arsenals. See *armories*; *artillery*; *logistics*; *Tower of London*; *Urban VIII*; *Venice*.

Articles of War. In a *Landsknechte* company or regiment, the ''Schultheiss'' was an officer responsible for overseeing application of the ''Articles of War.'' These were read out to new recruits (most of whom were illiterate). They included a nod in the direction of formal *laws of war* and related moral warnings against military sin promulgated by the Church, including the usual useless prohibitions against swearing, gambling, and whoring. Mostly, the Articles dealt with rates of pay and conditions of service, such as the penalties for cowardice in battle or desertion, the punishment for mutiny, and how *booty* would be divided. In ''German'' companies an oath to God and the Emperor was also sworn.

artillery. The term ''artillery'' originally covered all projectile equipment used in war, including ordinary bows and crossbows. It could even refer to any instrument of war, including swords, pikes, and armor. In ancient and medieval *siege warfare* torsion and counter-poise projectile weapons (*catapults*, *springalds*, and *trebuchets*) were termed artillery. They could be quite effective, hurling heavy stone balls with great smashing power against, or from within, walls of wood or stone. In Europe, there was wide adoption of the trebuchet from 1200 in response to thickening of military architecture in towns and encastellation of the countryside. It was not until the 15th century that normal military usage modified the original term to ''artillery pieces,'' which distinguished gunpowder cannon from nonchemical artillery. Chemically powered or gunpowder artillery had appeared earlier than that, but it took centuries of slow development for cannon to be recognized as a special arm of war. The appearance on the late medieval battlefield of effective cannon hastened the end of individual combat in Europe and the chivalric values that supported it. (This pattern was repeated two centuries later when the *samurai* first faced gunpowder weapons in the hands of other samurai or peasants or wild *ashigaru*.) While this shift took centuries to complete, the pattern was everywhere the same: artillery in the hands of kings made possible centralized power, eroded established privileges of aristocracy, and made low-born master gunners a greatly valued military asset.

Why? Because artillery permitted literal bombardment of the old, fragmented *feudal* order into submission to the monarch. That partly reflected the

great expense of artillery, which for the most part only kings (or emperors or shoguns or sultans) could sustain, and even they had difficulty. It also arose from artillery's raw destructive power: siege cannon, especially those firing cast iron cannonballs rather than cut stone (c.1380), enabled kings to batter in the castellan fortresses of rude or recalcitrant barons and reduce to rubble the walls of cities. Field armies had a new importance as the Middle Ages ended, for many reasons, including the rise of money economies and decline in respect for feudal institutions and social and religious mores. An additional reason was that armies with the latest artillery could do what only the *chevauchée* did before: cause so much destruction that the other side felt compelled to attack first, even though the advantage remained with the defense. Smaller nations such as the Flemings, Scots, and Swiss were able to use new infantry tactics and formations to fend off larger predatory neighbors, such as France, England, and Burgundy. Still, in the end it was only the wealthiest and most powerful monarchs who could afford enough of the best artillery and use it to smash internal enemies and overrun smaller neighbors. The new logic of expensive firepower thus advantaged the Great Powers over the small and middling, until independent cities, duchies, baronies, and petty kingdoms, with some exceptions in each case, fell to one greater sovereign or another. This meant even further concentration of military and political power, and sharp differentiation among the survivor sovereigns of the European states system.

However slowly, change wrought by artillery was inexorable and revolutionary, as gunpowder weapons excited the minds of warriors and improved in reliability and rate of fire. Records show Muslim armies in Spain using gunpowder cannon by 1342, and that three years later Edward III had 100 cannon stored in the Tower of London. Earlier or comparable dates exist concerning China. Similarly, rates of fire accelerated over time. In the late 14th century a cannon might be fired just five times per day, with the largest capable of only a single firing. By the mid-15th century the trend was toward mid-sized siege guns that could fire several dozen times per day, which made them vastly more effective and shortened sieges. Casting and related gunpowder technology only slowly spread to regions or economies where both sides lacked the wealth to buy or make enough guns to make a difference on the field of battle, but where the technology did catch on it was embraced with rarified enthusiasm and its use in battle and sieges became universal and dramatic.

The First Cannon

Gunpowder rockets were used in warfare in Asia from the early 11th century. There was also experimentation with bamboo-tube gunpowder weapons. By the 13th century the Chinese developed metal tubes that lay fair claim to be the first gunpowder cannon. The first references to gunpowder artillery in Europe are to "*pots de fer*" ("fire pots"). These were small, vase-like, bell-shaped pieces. That was important: the long-term lead Europe eventually took in casting artillery was partly rooted in the skills of bell-makers used to casting bronze bells to fill the huge demand from churches. Because "pots de

fer'' were fired from the ground rather than a stabilizing gun carriage they were wildly inaccurate. Also, illustrations suggest they shot thick arrows, wrapped in leather to better fit the mouth of the vase and seal in propellant gasses, not stone or metal balls. They were so ineffective they often did little or no damage to the enemy beyond making a frightful noise and belching fire and smoke to befuddle superstitious troops unused to such daemonic devices and artificial cacophonies. However, this effect cannot have lasted long once it was noticed that no one was actually hurt. Such primitive cannon posed more danger to their own side than to the enemy: a cracked or flawed bell would allow expanding gases to explode the casing into shrapnel, killing or wounding anyone nearby. Or a mishandled match might set off spare powder to scorch, sear, and blind the crew. As late as 1460 a defective cannon exploded at Roxburgh and killed the Scottish king, James II (1437–1460).

As barrels were made tubular, longer, and thicker, it was common practice to affix the gun to a thick board; this allowed adjustments to be made to the angle of fire (which remained line-of-sight only) by adding or decreasing the earth rampart on which the whole contraption rested. Only much later were gun carriages made. The first recognizable, tubular cannon of which there is a record appeared in Florence in 1314. Twelve years later guns capable of firing iron balls were certainly ordered for the defense of Florence, and guns may have been used in France that year. In 1327, Edward III probably brought small cannon (''crakys'') north to use against the Scots, a prelude to his use of artillery against the French during the opening fights of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). While such primitive weapons were useful in sieges, it may be doubted they did more than frighten inexperienced enemy troops in open battle. The early inefficacy, general expense, and the huge difficulty of transporting cannon across difficult terrain largely untamed by law or many roads slowed the spread of gunpowder artillery. By the 1460s cast bronze, muzzle-loading cannon replaced built-up *bombards*, especially in France, though the older guns remained valued and in use. Despite the greater cost of bronze (three to four times that of comparable iron casting), it was preferred since it was less brittle than iron, did not rust, and was cast with fewer of the deadly imperfections that led some iron cannon to burst when fired. Two-wheeled, towed carriages also replaced older four-wheeled, unsprung gun carts.

Artillery in Asia

Ottoman sultans boasted a fine artillery train, purchased from Europe or cast in their own foundries with initial assistance from *renegade* gunsmiths. Ottoman commanders campaigning along or beyond the frontier often left the big guns in reserve. Instead, they hauled ore or iron slag to the siege site and cast guns in place as needed. This partly solved the problem of transporting huge siege guns. In China artillery progress paralleled changes occurring in Europe, though it remains unclear to what extent one civilization influenced trends or ideas in the other, or even if they did. At the end of the

15th century some Chinese guns were bigger than the greatest bombards then made in Europe. Chinese armies also mounted greater numbers of small cannon, many on two-wheeled gun carriages that made them mobile in the field or at least speeded their arrival at sieges. This progress reflected China's advanced knowledge of metallurgy and its vastly greater wealth. Chinese smiths even experimented with two-barreled cannon which faced in opposite directions while mounted on a rotary, a clever trick which doubled the rate of fire. The Chinese also invented a form of *grapeshot* as early as the 13th century and a form of exploding shell well before these were seen in Europe. Chinese armies also used rocket artillery as an adjunct to their cannon, which European armies did not.

Still, it was developments in Europe that ultimately spread to reshape world military practice and history. The key advances in development of artillery, in the sense of large-bore metal tubes firing high-velocity solid or explosive projectiles, along with the skilled and specialized troops and the science of ballistics that accompany such guns, took place in Europe during the 14th and 15th centuries. Until then, Europe's technology had just kept pace with China's (for instance, in both regions the *hoop-and-stave* or forged gun method of assembling large cannon was used, with casting reserved for smaller pieces). But thereafter Europe pulled ahead to stay. Moreover, cannon became central in a global military revolution as casting technology spread to other continents and civilizations from the decks of European armed merchants and warships, along with European traders, mercenaries, renegade technicians, and priests.

In 1511 the Portuguese brought their most modern cannon to China, where they were quickly recognized as superior to domestic models. The Jesuits were especially important in transferring casting technology to the Chinese and Japanese in the 16th century. The dual mode of technology transfer—slowly by land across central Eurasia, more rapidly by sea—meant that artillery might be technically decades ahead in one area compared even to a nearby region. Thus, the Moors in Spain probably used gunpowder weapons as early as the 12th century, and certainly Muhammad IV of Granada used it at Alicante in 1331 and after. But after that they did not have access to the advanced models of their Christian enemies. Various Turkic peoples acquired artillery in the 14th century, possibly directly from the Chinese. It is known that Turks introduced artillery to India at the latest by 1368 and that cannon were soon in wide use in the Deccan by Muslims and by Hindu Vijayanagar. Turkish technology was dominant in north India into the 17th century, reflecting Muslim power and external contacts. That included a tendency to gigantism in artillery, with za few monster bombards exceeding 50 metric tons of iron. In southern India more modern European gun types were available as contact was made with Portuguese, French, Dutch, and English ships and traders along the coast. Ceylon (Sri Lanka) became a major center of European-style cannon manufacture in the Indian Ocean during the

The Jesuits were especially important in transferring casting technology to the Chinese and Japanese in the 16th century.

16th–17th centuries. Similarly, in SE and North Asia most local powers sought to set up their own foundries, often hiring renegade gunsmiths to help them (Venetians in Malabar, Dutch in Japan, Portuguese, English or Dutch in SE Asia, Italian and German Jesuits in China). European powers also set up foundries in Asia to cast guns for their fortification and other local needs: the Dutch had a foundry in Hirado, Japan, then a much larger operation in Batavia; the Portuguese had a cannon foundry in Macao; the Spanish cast cannon for their Asian forts and ships in Gavite, in the Philippines.

Field Artillery

To kill men in battle outside their fortifications, field artillery was developed. Mobile guns light enough to accompany infantry and cavalry on the march and still be effective weapons took a long time to develop. Field guns were first used in Iberia in 1385, at Aljubarrota. The first recorded use in Italy was by *John Hawkwood*, at Castagnaro in 1387. But in no early example was a sufficient rate of fire achieved to effect anything resembling a bombardment, let alone a barrage. Bulky hoop-and-stave cannon in India were positioned to the front of the battle line but used only to signal the start of a day's fighting. Then they just lay on the field while cavalry and infantry attacked or defended. Lack of corned powder and primitive carriages also impeded development and deployment of true field artillery in India, as they did everywhere initially. That began to change in Europe in the late 15th century, where *ribaudequins* originally mounted on town or castle walls were moved onto four-wheeled carts to form an early, small-bore field artillery. The French astonished Italian defenders in 1494 when they used 40 such small cannon to knock down, in days or weeks, thin walls designed to stop scaling that had stood for months or years in prior sieges. Yet, these guns remained poor quality with low practical mobility and very low rates of fire. Slowly, more and bigger guns appeared on the battlefield in the 16th century. Once in place they could not be moved, and so were easily overrun in the thick of a fight. But they could outrange small arms and archers, and that was something.

As casting improved, barrels thinned and artillery lightened and improved. As it did so, the presence of big guns on the battlefield expanded the scale of war as opposing troops sought to move beyond hitherto unheard of killing ranges. At the start of the 16th century bombards could throw a large stone ball close to 2,500 meters, and an iron ball perhaps 1,800. No archer—not even a longbowman—came close to that range, while handguns were useless as aimed weapons past 50 meters. Artillery also encouraged broadening of formations by compelling defenders to stretch their squares so fewer ranks were exposed to frontal cannon fire, which could bore bloody holes many ranks deep through a densely packed human square. But this should not be overstated: the shift to fewer infantry ranks did not take hold until the start of the 17th century and had more to do with increasing the effect of massed offensive fire by infantry than trying to avoid cannon fire. As demand for cannon that might be deployed as field artillery grew, efforts were made to further reduce size and weight. Other experiments refined the recipe for black

powder, or altered the weights of powder charges and projectiles. One result was that for a long time types of guns and calibers of ammunition proliferated wildly. This meant that even though cannon were at hand in an artillery train, available ammunition and pre-measured charges might not fit the tubes. *Charles V* was the first major ruler to standardize artillery. He ordered Imperial guns to conform to seven types. *Henri II* followed suit, ordering French guns to conform to six standard calibers (*cannon*, *great culverin*, *culverin-bastard*, *culverin-moyenne*, *faucon*, and *fauconneau*). By 1500, France had the best artillery in Europe, a lead it kept to the end of the 16th century.

The real breakthrough in field artillery did not occur until the turn of the 17th century, with the innovations of *Maurits of Nassau*. He reduced artillery used by the United Provinces to four standard calibers (6, 12, 24, and 48 pounders) at a time when the Spanish were still using over 50 types of guns spread over 20-odd calibers. Maurits also limited types and designs of gun carriages. Finally, he deployed a *siege train* of truly massive cannon. This was only possible because he also made innovative use of river transport, which could be done in the Netherlands but not everywhere. The largest guns in his train, known as ''Karouwen,'' weighed up to 5½ tons and had to be disassembled prior to transport by river or canal barge. This meant that their usefulness was limited to deployment against those garrisons and strongpoints reachable by barge, even in watery Flanders. On land, these behemoths needed 30 horses apiece to haul them into firing position. Dozens more horses pulled the heavy carts needed to bring their massive shot and tons of black powder used to hurl stone and iron death and destruction against enemy fortifications.

All that took time. And slowing the pace of moving armies not only decreased the chance of achieving tactical surprise while permitting improvements to be made to the defense faced upon arrival, it hugely increased the *logistics* problem of feeding men and beasts of burden. Once the logistical wall was reached, campaigns quickly failed. Even small field cannon (''demi'' or ''half-cannon'') needed as many as 16 horses per gun to move. While wheeled gun carriages were pulled along main roads, albeit at an appallingly high rate of loss of horses or oxen to death-in-harness from overwork against the pull of mud and the raw strain of too much tonnage, they were not true field pieces since off-road maneuver was still extremely difficult. In battle, once positioned the guns stayed in place, allowing the enemy to evade their fire by moving or capturing them with a surprise attack.

The innovations of *Gustavus Adolphus* took Maurits' reforms and advanced them to deploy the first true field artillery. The great Swede accepted standardization and limited calibers, adding manufacture of interchangeable parts. Most important, he cast ultra-light, genuinely mobile guns which a single horse or two men might move. Gustavus' famous early experiment with ''*leather guns*'' failed, but he oversaw production of light iron cannon that were easily towed off-road and could be repositioned during battle. He cast bores as small as 1½-pounders, and far more of his favorite 3-pounders. These he deployed in front of his infantry, and like his flexible infantry formations his field guns could adjust and move position as the battle unfolded. Some of his

field pieces also achieved a rate of fire exceeding the rate of contemporary muskets. Finally, Gustavus reorganized his heaviest guns into batteries, to concentrate fire. That was a highly effective and still novel deployment. As Swedish-style guns were replicated and deployed by other armies, by the middle of the 17th century true field artillery arrived on the battlefield and changed the face of land combat.

Ammunition

The projectiles fired by cannon also changed over time. Where ''pots de fer'' fired darts with iron or wood ''feathers,'' the first tubular cannon fired stone balls (the type of stone varied according to availability, from sandstone, to marble, alabaster, and granite). These were hand cut by masons to approximate the diameter of the barrel. The introduction of cast iron cannonballs greatly increased impact power by standardizing size and weight and more snugly fitting the barrel. In addition, iron balls were sometimes retrievable where stone balls were destroyed on impact. And yet, while iron cannonballs are referenced as early as 1341, stone balls were preferred much longer because they were cheaper and their raw material far more plentiful. It took discovery of new deposits of iron and better mining techniques that allowed for deeper delving after ore to bring down the cost of iron ammunition. A stone cannonball was also lighter, and so required less expensive black powder to heave it at the enemy. On the other hand, hand-cut stone balls inevitably varied in size and weight, and some fit a given barrel better than others. A bad fit resulted in wasted powder and reduced projectile force, as propulsive gasses escaped past the ball instead of pushing it from behind. This led to wide variation in the distance and accuracy of successive shots. In the 14th century, one cannoneer who hit the same target three times in succession was compelled to make a penitential pilgrimage, because observers could not conceive that this feat could have been accomplished without daemonic aid. In consequence, siege cannon—and these were by far the most common type of early guns—had to be hauled close to the targeted city or castle wall, because with point-blank shooting even imperfect guns did capable work of transforming the chemical energy of gunpowder to propellent force, as stone balls hurled at great speed cracked and broke opposing stone on impact.

Sieges

A main effect of the ''artillery revolution'' in hitting power and accuracy was to reduce the role of fixed fortifications and briefly restore battle to a primary place in war. It did this by forcing defenders to emerge from their fortifications and offer combat in the field, or lose. This effect was exaggerated by a general shortage of cannon that was not made up until discovery of new iron casting techniques in England, which made cheap cannon available even for emplacement in fortified defenses. This shifted the firepower imbalance back to the defense. Revived usefulness of fortifications in turn resuscitated siege warfare. By the time of the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559), cannon played a major role in deciding the outcome of sieges, though they were still problematic in

battle because they remained largely immobile once position was taken and the first shot fired. Dragging cannon close to enemy parapets exposed guns and crew to capture or death should the defenders sortie, or a skilled archer land a flame-arrow among the powder sacks. That meant a besieging army had to deploy more troops to defend the guns, a tactic met by more men in the sortie, and so on. Early siege cannon were also slow-firing and defended by easy counter-measures such as hanging fascines of wood and wool wadding over outer walls. Even so, some did enough damage to stone defenses that were otherwise unbreachable to make worthwhile hauling big guns by barge or overland (using as many as 40 oxen per gun), handling the treacherous black powder that was their constant companion, paying master gunners to conduct the bombardment, and devoting hundreds of expensive mercenaries to protect the guns. All that was justified by the resulting broken walls, dead enemies, ceded positions, and war booty. Improved casting technology allowed guns to move back, out of range of archers or mounted sorties. By the early 15th century bombards could hurl stone balls 25 inches in diameter great distances, causing severe damage to fortifications unprotected by shock-absorbing earthworks. Experimentation led to gigantism, and huge bombards were assembled that were so impressive they were given names. With such great bombards as ''Elipolos'' (''City-Taker'') *Muhammad II* smashed the high walls of Constantinople that had withstood a dozen prior sieges over a thousand years. That same year, the French used cannon to crush an English army at *Castillon*, the final battle of the Hundred Years' War. By then cast-iron cannonballs were in wider use, better recipes for gunpowder were crafted, and gunners were more skilled. Other innovations included primitive explosive shells, improved wheeled gun carriages from 1470, and rifling of some guns as early as 1520. Accuracy, throw weight, range, and power had all increased. The Age of Castles was over and the Age of Artillery began. Whatever *chivalry* and glory there ever was in medieval warfare was burned away by the new, and utterly morally indifferent, weapons of the gunpowder age.

Artillery at Sea

A distinct area of artillery development was warfare at sea. Ships' guns were used to bombard shore positions in support of amphibious operations, and in ship-to-ship or fleet actions to de-mast, demobilize, and sometimes sink enemy ships. French warships are known to have used guns in 1356; an Iberian ship mounted guns in 1359; and Genoese and Venetian ships used guns against each other from 1379. In the evolution of artillery at sea *pirates* and *privateers*, and the armed merchants on whom they preyed, played a greater role than the primitive state navies that marked most of this period. Big guns were brought to bear in war at sea earlier than in land warfare because ships solved the key problem of early artillery: its weight and lack of mobility. Cannon were housed and employed differently by *galleys* and ships of sail. Because of the weak hull construction of galleys and their straight-ahead, hard-charging tactics, all cannon were mounted forward, with perhaps a small *chase gun* or two at the rear. The prow was cut away to accommodate

big, multi-ton culverins and demi-culverins, along with smaller anti-personnel pieces such as *swivel guns*. Arming galleys stimulated demand for naval artillery (there were 600 war galleys in all Mediterranean fleets in the late 16th century). Existing foundries had difficulty meeting the need. Once Atlantic-built armed merchants and purpose-built sailing warships armed with cast-iron cannon arrived in the Mediterranean, and with Venetian deployment of the hybrid *galleass*, the days of strict galley-to-galley warfare ended. Ships of sail progressively substituted weight of guns for sheer numbers of fighting men and developed new *broadside* tactics to match the change. In turn, reducing the size of a ship's crew reduced the amount of food and potable water carried in the hold. When that change was combined with new building techniques that greatly increased tunnage, long-distance navigation and commerce became possible and lucrative. And with that, *cruiser* warfare and long-range naval attrition of an enemy's merchant marine became feasible and perhaps even command of the sea.

Big guns were brought to bear in war at sea earlier than in land warfare because ships solved the key problem of early artillery: its weight and lack of mobility.

Terminology

Before the era of standardized manufacture artillery pieces went by many names in many countries, each type with some novel characteristic or use. Phillipe Contamine noted that in the 14th century in Europe only two terms were used for artillery in France, ''cannon'' and ''bombard,'' but that the next century saw a great proliferation in gun types and names. On gun types, European and otherwise, in addition to types cited above, see *bal yemez*; *basilisk*; *blunderbuss*; *bombard*; *bombardetta*; *cannon*; *cannon-royal*; *cannon-serpentine*; *cañon*; *cañon de batir*; *columbrina ad manum*; *coulverines enfustées*; *courtaux*; *crapadeaux*; *crouching tiger*; *culverin*; *demi-cannon*; *demi-culverin*; *demi-saker*; *esmeril*; *falcon*; *falconete*; *farangi*; *folangii*; *Karrenbüchsen*; *minion (2)*; *mortar*; *moyen/moyenne*; *Murbräcker*; *nariada*; *pasavolante*; *pedrero*; *perrier*; *pishchal*; *port piece*; *pranği*; *quarto-cannon*; *ribaudequin*; *robinet*; *saker*; *serpentine*; *Tarasbüchsen*; *verso*; *veuglaire*.

On other matters pertaining to artillery, see *armories*; *artillery towers*; *breach*; *breech*; *Burgundy, Duchy of*; *canister shot*; *case shot*; *casting*; *chamber*; *corning/corned gunpowder*; *Fornovo, Battle of*; *French Army*; *Fugger, House of*; *fusiliers de taille*; *gabions*; *galloper gun*; *Grandson, Battle of*; *gunner's quadrant*; *gunner's rule*; *gun port*; *Habsburgs*; *Hakata Bay, Battle of (1274)*; *Henry VIII, of England*; *Ivan III*; *linstock*; *Lützen, Battle of*; *Marignano, Battle of*; *Morat, Battle of*; *Nancy, Battle of*; *Nobunaga Oda*; *okka*; *port fire*; *powder scoop*; *printing*; *quick match*; *ramming*; *reaming*; *''red barbarian cannon''*; *sling*; *slow match*; *solid shot*; *spiking*; *sponge*; *stiletto*; *strategic metals*; *Tartaglia, Niccolò*; *teamsters*; *Thérouanne, Siege of*; *tompion*; *trunnion*; *worm*; *wounds*; *zarbzens*; *Zeugherr*.

Suggested Reading: Martin van Creveld, *Technology and War* (1989); H. W. Hime, *The Origin of Artillery* (1915); John Norris, *Artillery: A History* (2000); John Patrick, *Artillery and Warfare During the Thirteenth and Fourteenth Centuries* (1961); Hugh Rogers, *Artillery Through the Ages* (1971).

artillery fortress. A felicitous term introduced by historian John Lynn in reference to what traditionally was called the *trace italienne*.

artillery towers. These were mostly a product of the 16th century. Some were scratch-built, others were add-ons to existing fortifications. Many had winches and other hoist systems to raise powder and shot to the firing platform. Their purpose was to host larger defensive cannon to engage in counter-battery fire during a siege. Purpose-built artillery towers were squat and sited along killing-zones outside the walls. Some were much more impressive: Reval, in the Baltic, built a six-story artillery tower called ''Kiek in de Kök'' to support a roundel hosting the potbellied bombard ''Fat Margaret.'' See also *bastion*; *casemate*; *cavalier (1)*.

artillery train (1). The guns; carriages and wagons, the gunners and assistants, all wagons filled with powder and shot, engineers and military laborers, and all others associated with an army's artillery when on the move. A ''siege train'' was a variant, moving the largest siege guns to their place of use.

artillery train (2). All artillery belonging to a king or state, whether on the move or in an artillery park. The size of the trains needed to move the artillery of even a small power was staggering. In 1472, Milan needed 334 wagons and 754 oxen and buffaloes to move eight large bombards, eight smaller cannons, and 34,000 pounds of powder and shot. In 1568 a French Royalist army took just 20 guns on campaign, along with 5,000 cannonballs and 91 ''milliers'' of black powder. To move this lot 1,550 horses were needed to haul the guns and hundreds of wagons filled with forges, tools, fodder, powder and shot, spare wheels, and parts. Nearly 3,000 men were required, including 2,000 *pioneers* to smooth the road and put shoulders to the gun carriages.

Art of War. At its narrowest definition, the ''art of war'' is the study of tactics and strategy. More broadly, it is all literary studies, military manuals, and guides to weapons, tactics, and strategy peculiar to a historical time and place. In China for most of this period the guiding text remained Sun Tzu's *Art of War*, dating to the 4th century B.C.E., along with associated commentaries by later writers. In 1571 the Ming author Qi Jiguang published a treatise on strategy and tactics called *Lianbing shiji*, in which he proposed major reforms that included mixed fighting brigades and a new emphasis on firearms, along with a special corps of war wagoneers and portable defensive walls for field armies. In Europe the most widely read and venerated medieval text was *Epitoma de re militari*, a study of the late Roman Army in the West written by Vegetius in the late 4th (or possibly, the early 5th) century. It was available initially only in Latin, but later was translated into most of the major vernacular languages. Vegetius stressed the inherent tactical superiority of defense in war, recommending fortification but also close-order infantry formations to enliven this principle. This emphasis on a ''Fabian strategy'' of defense and attrition was well-received in an era that found offensive war too

difficult, expensive, and unrewarding: medieval commanders husbanded armies out of fear of the high stakes of battle, in preference for *siege warfare*, or to conduct *chevauchées*. Other medieval military lore and literature included rules and histories of the *Military Orders*, especially the *Templars*; tales, fables, and some serious memoirs of the *Crusades*; and contemporary chronicles, notably that by Froissart during the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453).

During the Italian Renaissance new attention was paid to histories and biographies of classical military leaders, primarily Alexander the Great, Julius Caesar, Quintus Fabius Maximus, Sulla, Scipio Africanus and other notable Roman generals, and Hannibal of Carthage. In the early 1490s *Leonardo da Vinci* published *Codex Madrid II*, a highly influential and reliable guide to gun types and gunpowder recipes. At the start of the 16th century *Niccolò Machiavelli* wrote his *Art of War* (''Arte della guerra'') urging revival of Graeco-Roman virtues and citizen military systems, reflecting on the respective merits of militia versus mercenaries in his own day, and arguing for a strategy of annihilation of enemy armies as the path out of indecisive yet ruinous *condottieri* wars. Although Machiavelli did not transform Florentine military capabilities as he hoped and has received sharp criticism from modern military historians, his work was quite influential on developments in the Netherlands a century later where it inspired *Justus Lipsius* to write *De Militia Romana* (1596). In turn, that helped shape neoclassical military reforms introduced by *Maurits of Nassau*. The key contribution made by Machiavelli and Lipsius was renewed emphasis on *military discipline* and *drill*. In the view of Max Weber, this led to a shift in military norms that initiated the final transformation to true gunpowder armies: ''gunpowder and all the war techniques associated with it became significant only with the existence of discipline.''

Professionalism and social acceptance of military careers as suitable for the middle classes took hold by necessity and in advanced imaginations during the 16th–17th centuries. Printing presses and expanded lay literacy led to a proliferation of new military manuals and texts. Most had some practical utility and reflected the new cultural empiricism, even though many merely relied on reworkings of classical texts and formal ideas. *Niccolò Tartaglia* published his extraordinary study of ballistics, *Nuova Scientia*, in 1537. In France, Marin du Bellay's *Discipline Militaire* appeared in 1548, while John Smythe published *Instructions, Observations, and Orders Mylitarie* in England in 1598. On the new style and techniques (*alla moderna*) in fortification, J. Perret published *Des fortifications et artifices d'architecture et perspective* in 1594; a Dutch military engineer, Simon Stevin, published *De Sterctenbouwing* in 1594. The real impact of military literature came with illustration of the new tactics and drill methods introduced by the Dutch. In 1607, Count Johann of Nassau, brother of Maurits, published the first fully illustrated drill manual under the nom de plume ''Jacob de Gheyn.'' His *Exercise of Arms for Calivres, Muskettes, and Pikes* (the English translation) was widely copied, amended, and reprinted in multiple languages. His sponsorship of a military academy in Siegen (''Schola Militaris''), to educate better officers in the service of Dutch

Reform in arms, led to wide dissemination of Dutch ideas and drill techniques. Its director, Johann Jacob von Wallhausen, published numerous training manuals. Lesser authors still found it necessary to pretend to a classical pedigree in order to gain wide acceptance. Thus, in 1616, John Bingham, an English officer who had served with the Dutch, published *The Tacktics of Aelien*, purporting to study classical principles of war but really reporting on the Dutch system. More self-consciously empirical and up-to-date was Robert Barret's 1598 tract *Theorike and Practike of Moderne Warres*. Other influential works included Nicholas Goldman's *La nouvelle fortification*, published in Leiden in 1630. As a result of the *English Civil Wars* (1639–1651) a host of manuals and works in English appeared, including how-to books by artillerymen and other veterans such as John Vernon's *Young Horseman, or Honest Plain-dealing Cavalier*, published in 1644. Others were solid memoirs published decades later by experienced field commanders such as *George Monk*. See also *drill*; *strategy*; *tactics*; *tournaments*.

ashigaru. ''Lightfoot.'' New infantry that appeared in the chaos of 15th-century Japan. They began as wild successors to the rural *akutō*, but were recruited more from townsmen than surrounding peasants. They were men themselves uprooted by war or attracted to the easy prospect of booty. Some were so destitute they fought wearing only sandals and loincloths, or naked. Most were armed with *kumade*, *naginata*, or *yari*, and all used arson as a weapon. They earned an evil reputation for atrocity. Later, ashigaru evolved into a trained infantry supporting more expensive *samurai* cavalry. In *Sengoku jidai*–era battles ashigaru spearmen acted much like European pikemen, protecting archers and arquebusiers from cavalry within a ''yari fusuma'' (spear circle). See also *aventuriers*; *Celâli Revolts*; *Ecorcheurs*; *fire*; *Free Companies*; *guerre couverte*; *ronin*; *schiltron*; *wakō*.

askeri. The servitor military class of the Ottoman Empire, mainly the *sipahis* and *timariots*.They were exempt from taxation, unlike the ''reaya'' (taxpayers, mostly peasants). Jealous protection of their legal privileges led them to accept performance of military labor rather than see civilians do the work. This was very different from the attitude of comparable warrior classes elsewhere, notably in Europe. See also *Kapikulu Askerleri*.

Assassins. A secret sect of *Ismaili* fanatics known as ''hashshāshin'' (''hashish eaters''), or ''Assassins.'' They were followers of a radical, messianic Ismaili cult of Islam that awaited the return of the rightful caliph, or ''hidden Imam.'' From 1090 these *shī'a* fanatics were headquartered in a mountain redoubt at Alamut, in northern Iran. From there they spread into Syria, building fortress retreats (''eagle nests'') in high mountain passes. The Grand Masters of the hashshāshin ordered campaigns of terror and political murders of orthodox (*sunni*) Muslim princes, whom they deemed illegitimate, supposedly to clear the way for the return of the hidden Imam. They also fought the Latin kingdoms of the *Crusaders* in Syria into the 13th century, in a *jihad* that promised

martyrdom to *mujahadeen* high on Allah and hashish. Yet, some Assassins paid tribute to the *Templars* and *Hospitallers* in northern Syria. Their favorite weapon was a poison dagger. The Assassins were displaced from Iran in 1256 by the *Mongols*, who massacred most of the brethren they found. The last Syrian Assassins were overwhelmed by a combination of military pressure from the Mongols in the north and the *Mamlūks* of Egypt to their south.

Suggested Reading: Bernard Lewis, *The Assassins* (1967).

Assize of Arms. A traditional military obligation of all free Englishmen was to bear arms in the general defense (*fryd*). Henry II proclaimed the Assize of Arms in 1182, listing the arms, and armor nobles were expected to provide retainers according to their lands and wealth. A ''knight's fee'' detailed equipment for each service-bound knight, and the Assize expanded service to all ''free and honourable men.'' It was later used to distrain men of property but ignoble birth to become *knights*. In 1230 ''unfree'' English were added to the rolls. The Assize was revised again in 1242. Twenty-two years later another revision assigned every village a quota of infantry to raise and equip, akin to the old ''select fryd.'' The Assize was eventually replaced by *scutage* and other sources of revenue used to hire professional soldiers.

Astrakhan, Conquest of (1554–1556). See *Ivan IV*.

astrolabe. An instrument for calculating a ship's latitude by measuring altitude from the horizon of known stars (notably, the Pole Star) or the Sun. Despite its utility, the astrolabe was never a common item in a ship's stores. Even after the astrolabe became available, for decades most navigators clung to *dead reckoning*, the simple *cross-staff* or magnetic *compass*, and close navigation of known coastlines.

astrology. The pseudo-science of astrology was believed in by the rulers of most countries in this period, as well as mercenary generals and ordinary folk. Among the leaders who consulted astrologers and their charts when making major political and military decisions were *Christian IV*, *Elizabeth I*, *Ferdinand II*, *Ivan III*, *Ivan IV*, *Albrecht von Wallenstein*, a good many popes, and most every Ottoman sultan and Chinese emperor. Even such great empirical scientists as Johannes Kepler were devotees.

Atahualpa (c.1502–1533). See *Inca Empire*.

atlatl. A sling used by *Aztec* warriors to hurl their javelins. It greatly extended the range and velocity of their spears.

atrocities. See *Agincourt, Battle of*; *akutō*; *Albigensian Crusade*; *Armagnacs*; *ashigaru*; *Aztecs Empire*; *Baghdad*; *Black Prince*; *Buddhism*; *civilians*; *Coligny, Gaspard de*; *condottieri*; *confraternities*; *Constantinople, Siege of*; *Cortés, Hernán*; *Cromwell, Oliver*;

Crusades; *Dorpat, Sack of*; *Drogheda, Sack of*; *Eighty Years' War*; *Fort Caroline*; *Frastenz, Battle of*; *French Civil Wars*; *German Peasant War*; *Grandson, Battle of*; *guerre guerroyante*; *guerre mortelle*; *Haarlem, Siege of*; *Hawkwood, John*; *Hideyoshi Toyotomi*; *hostage-taking*; *Hundred Years' War*; *Indian Wars*; *Ivan IV*; *Japan, Jerusalem*; *jus in bello*; *Kakure Kirishitan*; *Kalmar War*; *kerne*; *Knights Templar*; *Maastricht, Siege of (1579)*; *Maastricht, Siege of (1632)*; *Magdeburg, Sack of*; *Mongols*; *Naseby, Battle of*; *Nicopolis, Battle of*; *Nobunaga Oda*; *Oprichnina*; *Pequot War*; *Philiphaugh, Battle of*; *Pizarro, Francisco*; *prisoners of war*; *Rajputs*; *Roosebeke, Battle of*; *Rupert, Prince*; *scalping*; *Selim I*; *Sempach, Battle of*; *siege warfare*; *"skulking way of war"*; *St. Augustine Massacre*; *St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres*; *Tenochtitlán, First Siege of*; *Tenochtitlán, Second Siege of*; *Teutonic Knights, Order of*; *Timur*; *True Pure Land*; *Vassy Massacre*; *Wexford, Sack of*.

attrition. French: "guerre d'usure." German: "Ermattungsstrategie." Wearing down an enemy by eroding his forces and morale, and destroying his resource base and supplies. In the era covered in this work, in which dense fortifications made battle a rare event, this was a major strategy of war. The central way it was accomplished was by *raiding* and burning or the grand *chevauchée*. Attrition was not accomplished by battle, as it would be in the appallingly destructive wars of the 20th century. Instead, raids exhausted the enemy's treasury, burned out his lands, and forced his armies into starvation or surrender, while the attacker's troops lived off the fat of enemy farms and towns in order to make "war pay for itself." See also *bellum se ipse alet*; *castles, on land*; *fortification*; *guerre guerroyante*; *siege warfare*.

Augsburg, Peace of (September 25, 1555). Following the *Convention of Passau* (1552), *Ferdinand I* and *Charles V* agreed to a general settlement of the confessional and princely wars in Germany. What occasioned concession for Ferdinand was pragmatism; for Charles it was military defeat and personal melancholia, which also moved him to abdicate. Augsburg established a principle of religious truce, rather than peace, based on limited tolerance between Catholics ("the old religion") and Lutherans (those "espousing the *Augsburg Confession*"). The great principle of the Peace was: "cuius regio eius religio" ("whosoever rules the territory decides the religion"), although that famous summary phrase was not coined for many more years. The toleration afforded at Augsburg was importantly limited by the *reservatum ecclesiaticum* and freezing of the religious status quo in Imperial Cities, with only 8 out of 60 confessionally divided. Calvinists, Anabaptists, and other reformed faiths were explicitly excluded from the settlement ("all such as do not belong to the two above named religions shall not be included in the present peace but be totally excluded from it"). Nor did Augsburg toleration apply outside the confines of the Holy Roman Empire. Still, the Peace of Augsburg tempered

Attrition was not accomplished by battle, as it would be in the appallingly destructive wars of the 20th century.

the religious question in Germany for 50 years, until it broke down leading into the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). This was a major accomplishment in the very land that midwifed the *Protestant Reformation*, and where triconfessional zealotry burned perhaps most fiercely. No one thought that permanent peace would result from the agreement; few even desired such an outcome, since all sides regarded the Church as indivisible. It was understood by all that religious debate would continue, just as all were convinced that the obvious truth of their own position must surely prevail. Augsburg promised only a military peace, not civil or social tranquility. A cynic might say that it only delayed the violent resolution of confessional conflict until the next century, and then at the cost of perpetuating Germany's fragmentation even as other powers around it were emerging as powerful ''*new monarchies*.'' An idealist would say that Augsburg presaged a future where medieval civil and religious authority gave way to rational secularism in politics, leading to broad tolerance of the disparate beliefs of individuals in civil and private affairs. A realist would say that it was an expedient, short-term pause in a ferocious conflict that had temporarily exhausted both sides, and that it was probably the most that could be achieved at the intersection of limited religious imagination and the hard confessional realities of the day.

Augsburg is all the more remarkable for the contrasting solutions essayed by other rulers in other states at that time. In Spain, *Philip II* refused a request from his Burgundian subjects to permit limited tolerance of individual conscience, then launched a crusade to repress traditional liberties in the Spanish Netherlands that provoked the Dutch to rebellion and led directly to the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648). Philip also made war against Elizabethan England in the name of a Catholic policy while she sent *Francis Drake* to sack his ports and supported Spain's Protestant enemies in the Netherlands. While Germany remained at peace, the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629) tore that society apart, ravaging France for 30 years as Catholics and Calvinists (*Huguenots*) killed with abandon and kept France in a chronic state of weakness, civil war, and murderous strife. Given those choices and national tragedies, the German peace achieved at Augsburg must be judged a considerable success, even if by the 1570s confessionalism became more rigid and pronounced as all sides recognized a new reality of perpetual doctrinal warfare and a divided Church in fact. The most direct parallel to Augsburg was actually in the Islamic world, where the *Treaty of Amasya*, also signed in 1555, divided the territory of Muslims between hostile *shi'ia* and *sunni* states just as Augsburg divided German Christians. While both treaties offered respite, neither ultimately kept the peace. See also *Carafa War*; *Counter-Reformation*; *Declaratio Ferdinandei*; *Edict of Nantes*; *jus emigrandi*; *Westphalia, Peace of*.

Augsburg Confession (1530). ''Confessio Augustana.'' A great summary statement of *Martin Luther*'s theological positions. In law, from 1555 it was the only Protestant creed deemed legal within the *Holy Roman Empire*. That meant all followers of *Jean Calvin* or *Zwingli* or *Anabaptism* were excluded from

toleration. In practice, from 1555 German Calvinists claimed and often received the Augsburg protections afforded Lutherans.

'Auld Alliance. The long military, political, and sometimes also dynastic alliance of Scotland and France, which held from the 13th to the 17th century, mainly as a result of mutual propinquity to a common enemy: England. It was shattered by the diplomatic revolution that accompanied the *Protestant Reformation*, which saw England, France, Scotland, Spain, and the Netherlands take different doctrinal paths that redefined who was a potential ally and who was seen as an eternal foe. See also *Scottish Wars*.

Auldearn, Battle of (May 9, 1645). During the first *English Civil War*, the *Marquis of Montrose* kept the Royalist cause alive in Scotland even as it was losing in England. At Auldearn, with a small force of 2,200 men, he routed a much larger *Covenanter* army, thereby protecting the Gordon lands from invasion and burning.

Auray, Battle of (1364). The final stage of fighting in the *War of the Breton Succession* (1341–1365). It secured the decision for John of Montfort, the English candidate for the ducal title.

Austria. In 1156 the dukes of Austria gained the right to abstain (''Privilegium minus'') from the military expeditions of the *Holy Roman Empire* sent to territories beyond its immediate region. This was a key loosening of ties that allowed it to evolve separately from Germany, under control of the *Habsburgs* from c.1300. Habsburg Austria devolved defense of the *Militargrenze* against the expanding Ottoman Empire to local nobles and clan lords, while Vienna was increasingly occupied with wars in southern Germany or Italy. During the 14th century Austrian knights were repeatedly bested in battle by Swiss infantry. At the start of the 15th century Austria was drawn into the *Appenzell Wars* (1403–1411) with the Swiss and the more important and protracted *Hussite Wars* (1419–1478) in Bohemia. *Maximilian I* (1459–1519) married Mary of Burgundy after her father, *Charles the Rash*, was killed at *Nancy* (1477) by the Swiss. This gained Burgundy, greatest of all French medieval feudatories, for the Austrian Habsburgs. The rest of Europe looked on in envy as once again Austria used dynastic marriage to expand without making war (''Tu, felix Austria, nube'' or ''You, happy Austria, marry''). Another marriage produced a son who came into a spectacular inheritance: *Charles V*, who united Austrian and Spanish empires in his person. This preeminence did not go unchallenged: Austria was deeply involved in the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559) against France through the reign of Charles V, and fought off the Ottomans who besieged Vienna itself. From 1530, Charles was concerned with *Martin Luther* and the *Protestant Reformation* in Germany, culminating in war against his own subjects in the *Schmalkaldic League*. A truce was called in Germany with the *Peace of Augsburg* (1555). Charles abdicated and retired into melancholia and an early death in Spain.

By the mid-16th century Austria's rulers were too weak to reimpose Catholicism on those of their subjects who embraced Protestantism, although *Ferdinand I* tried hard to do so. From 1568 to 1571, *Maximilian II* instead legalized Protestant parishes in Lower Austria and even approved their reformed Prayer Book. That was prudent, since by the 1570s the majority of Upper and Lower Austria's nobility was Protestant. The rights of Protestants of the lower orders and in the towns were not as secure. The Imperial Court remained staunchly Catholic, moreover, while a Catholic revival was already underway in Inner Austria by the 1560s. Protestants there, notably the citizens of Graz and three other large towns, were granted toleration because of the Ottoman threat. But these temporary freedoms were whittled away by *Jesuit* missionaries as the threat from Constantinople receded and the spirit and tactics of the *Counter-Reformation* seized the Catholic world. From 1599 to 1601, Catholic bishops in Graz and other towns, supported by Imperial and Austrian troops, suppressed reformed religion in Inner Austria. They closed reform churches, burned Lutheran and Calvinist books, and exiled or even burned Protestant clergy. The start of the 17th century saw Austria pulled reluctantly into the indecisive *Thirteen Years' War* (1593–1606) with the similarly reluctant Ottomans, and 10 years later into the *Uzkok War* (1615–1617) with Venice. A decisive turn of fortune, for the worse, came when Bohemia rejected the candidacy of then Archduke Ferdinand, later *Ferdinand II*, and carried through the "*Defenestration of Prague*" (1618). That launched Bohemia, Austria, and Europe into the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). Austria emerged from that titanic contest a lesser power than before, but with more clearly defined boundaries and Catholicism more uniformly enforced and established. See also *Bergfreid*; *Catholic League (France)*; *Catholic League (Germany)*; *Don Juan of Austria*; *Fugger, House of*; *German Peasant War*; *The Grisons*; *March*; *Oñate, Treaty of*; *Reichskreis*; *Ritterstand*; *Rudolf II*; *Silesia*; *Swabian League*; *Vienna, Siege of*.

Suggested Reading: R. Kann, *History of the Habsburg Empire, 1526–1918* (1974); V. S. Matmatey, *Rise of the Habsburg Empire, 1526–1815* (1978); Robin Okey, *The Habsburg Monarchy* (2000).

Austrian Army. Throughout this period the Austrian Habsburgs did not maintain a *standing army*. Instead, they relied on the *Reichskreis* and on *contributions* and recruiting skills of mercenary captains such as *Albrecht von Wallenstein*. In 1648, Vienna finally decided to maintain a permanent force of 25,000 men, begun with leftovers from the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). Some of these regiments served the Habsburgs until 1918. See also *Appenzell Wars*; *armories*; *Breitenfeld, First*; *Breitenfeld, Second*; *The Grisons*; *Italian Wars*; *Jankov, Battle of*; *Laupen, Battle of*; *Lützen, Battle of*; *Maximilian I*; *Mercy, Franz von*; *Morgarten, Battle of*; *Näfels, Battle of*; *Nemçe*; *Pappenheim, Graf zu*; *partisan (2)*; *Reichskreis*; *Sempach, Battle of*; *Thirty Years' War*; *Tilly, Count Johann Tserclaes*; *Uzkok War*; *Vienna, Siege of*; *Wallenstein, Albrecht von*; *war finance*; *Westphalia, Peace of*; *White Mountain, Battle of*; *Zusmarshausen, Battle of*.

Auszug. See *Swiss Army*.

auto de fe. ''Act of faith.'' Public declarations of the judgments of the courts of the *Inquisition*, and execution of the court's judgments by secular authorities. Penalties ranged from fines or imprisonment to banishment and confiscation of all property, to death by cruel torments and burning at the stake. See also *Corpus Christi*; *expulsion of the Jews*; *expulsion of the Moors*.

auxiliaries. Settled civilizations which bordered the Asian steppe learned to hire nomad warriors as effective light cavalry auxiliaries. This was important to counter other, more dangerous steppe peoples who conducted raids against settled populations. Essentially, nomads were used to fight nomads. The Chinese thus employed *Mongol* auxiliaries to fight other Inner Asian peoples, including other Mongols. This not only solved the problem of not having an indigenous light cavalry capability, it answered the problem of China's lack of grass-fed horses that could pursue fleeing raiders across the steppe (most Chinese horses were grain-fed). The Russians similarly solved their *Cossack* problem by alternately conquering and co-opting Cossacks to fight other Cossacks. In Europe, comparable frontier and fringe zone peoples who were enlisted as auxiliaries in foreign armies included, at various times: the Celts (Irish, Scots, and Welsh); Croats and other Balkan populations in service to the Austrians; and *Tatars* who fought in large numbers for the Ottomans. See also *Derbençi*; *feudalism*; *Hakata Bay, Battle of (1274)*; *Hakata Bay, Battle of (1281)*; *hobelars*; *Hungary*; *Janissary Corps*; *levend/levendat*; *mercenaries*; *Militargrenze*; *Ming Army*; *Morgarten, Battle of*; *Raya*; *Sekban*; *St. Jacob-en-Birs, Battle of*; *turcopoles*; *Voynuqs*.

avariz. An Ottoman land tax initially imposed only on peasants to pay for advance purchases of grain used by the army on campaign but still marching within the borders of the empire. By the mid-17th century it ceased to be an extraordinary war tax and became a fixture of Ottoman *war finance*. It was also expanded to include townsfolk.

aventail. A *mail* curtain hung from the helm to protect the neck. See also *coiffe-de-maille*.

aventuriers. French ''new bands'' of the 16th century, or troops only called up during wartime. Like their medieval predecessors, the *routiers*, they were disbanded upon the making of peace and often scoured and scourged the countryside until the next war began. See also *akutō*; *ashigaru*; *Ecorcheurs*; *guerre couverte*; *ronin*; *wakō*.

"Avignon Captivity" of the papacy (1314–1362). See *Great Schism*; *Guelphs and Ghibellines*; *Holy Roman Empire*; *Italian Renaissance*; *Papal States*; *res publica Christiana*; *War of the Eight Saints*.

Aviz, Order of. In 1211, Alphonso II of Portugal gave the town of Aviz to a set of Brethren who evolved into a new *Military Order*. Although the *Hospitallers*

were also important in Portugal, it was the knights of Aviz who dominated military affairs. In 1383 the bastard half-brother of Ferdinand I, *Mestre* of the Order, led the Brethren in blocking a Castilian succession to the Portuguese throne. Using the tactics of *Edward III* the Portuguese learned from the *Black Prince*, he won at *Aljubarrota*. He was crowned Juan I, first king of the Aviz dynasty that ruled until 1580 when *Philip II* of Spain seized a vacant throne. The knights played a role in *Enrique the Navigator*'s southward expansion. Along with his *Knights of Christ*, in 1437 knights of Aviz mounted a raid-in-force on Tangier. They met defeat, humiliation, and death.

axes. Small axes could be thrown, often in unison, but most medieval battle-axes were too large for that and were swung instead. The Viking, or "Danish," axe was of two types: the "skeggøx" or beard axe, and the "breidex" or more familiar broad axe. German axes had a Gothic appearance, with multiple spikes added to the main blade. By the 14th century most short battle-axes were discarded by the infantry in favor of *pole-axes*. However, as cavalry cast aside the heavy *couched lance* some took up light axes in its place, which they swung downward in battle. See also *halberd*; *lochaber axe*; *Mordax*; *tournament*.

Axtorna, Battle of (1565). See *Nordic Seven Years' War*.

ayatollah. "The sign of God." A title of senior clerics within the *shī'a* tradition of Islam. See also *caliph*; *imam*; *mahdi*; *sultan*.

Ayn Jālut, Battle of (September 3, 1260). "The Spring of Goliath." A *Mamlūk* army out of Egypt met and defeated a *Mongol* horde in Galilee, stopping its southward march of conquest. Babyars, the Mamlūk commander, was a Kipchack Turk who had been captured by the Mongols as a boy and thus knew their fighting style and tactics. The Egyptians also outnumbered the Mongols by five to one. On the other hand, the Mongols had adopted some weapons of their Middle Eastern enemies: in addition to their usual light cavalry of archers armed with composite bows they had some heavy lancers in their ranks. The Mongols attacked with their usual and predictable aggression. Babyars turned this to his advantage by feigned retreat of a small part of his army, luring the main body of over-eager Mongols deep into a narrow valley. Then he revealed the ruse by closing the trap behind them and on each flank. The Mongols fought hard but were wiped out almost to a man. The few allowed to surrender were sent to the galleys or into some other slavery. Following the victory Babyars rode north, scourging and scorching the land to deny food and fodder to any successor Mongol horde that might enter Syria seeking revenge.

Azaps. "Azabs" or "bachelors." Infantry archers, mostly volunteer Turkic or Kurdish tribesmen from Anatolia, in auxiliary service to the Ottomans. These bowmen were drawn from among the hunters of the Anatolian rural

population, and were not equal to the highly trained slave archers of the *Janissary Corps*, with which Azaps maintained a fierce rivalry. During the 14th century many Azaps served as marines with *Beylik* or Ottoman fleets. Although some adapted to firearms, by the early 16th century most were employed in support roles as ammunition carriers, runners, guards, or sappers. By the end of the century, however, their combat role was revived as new volunteers from the frontiers of the Empire joined Azap units.

Azerbaijan. This Central Asian, mainly *shī'a* land was part of the *Safavid Empire* established in Iran at the start of the 16th century. It was surrendered to the Ottomans by *Abbas I* at the start of his reign, and subsequently became a province in the Ottoman Empire.

Azores. An uninhabited island group in the Atlantic which came under Portuguese control after being discovered in 1427 by ships sent out by *Enrique the Navigator*. Portuguese settlement followed from c.1439, with heavier settlement in the 1460s. Unusually, slavery did not take hold in the Azores since its climate was not conducive to plantation agriculture. The islands were conquered by Spain in 1582. See also *Canary Islands*.

Aztec Empire. The Aztecs began as four discrete Nahuatl-speaking tribes—Achlhua, Chichimecs, Mexica, and Tepanecs—who migrated from the north into the Central Valley of Mexico in the early 13th century. The Toltecs (centered on the city of Tula) and Mixtecs had preceded the Mexica (Aztecs) into the Central Valley. But their states were in decline by the 12th century. Through mercenary service to these city-states, which were engaged in chronic warfare, the Mexica evolved as a fierce warrior people, tributary servants of Mezoamerican peoples who preceded them in status, wealth, and accomplishment. When the Mexica were defeated in a war by the Tepanecs they became supplicants of Culhua, and subsequently minor allies as their status increased through success in battle. However, when Culhua sent a princess to the Mexica to fix the alliance through marriage, the Mexica misread the offering and sacrificed her instead. Enraged, Culhuacan warriors drove the Mexica away, leaving them outcast in the Valley. They settled on a barren, scrubby island inside Lake Texcoco. This proved a felix culpa, a happy fault: in 1320 they began to build their capital there, Tenochtitlán, and a sister city, Tlatelolco, strategically sited at the junction of the three main powers in the Central Valley: Culhua, Tepaneca, and Achlhua. During the 14th century the Mexica remained vassals of Tepaneca. In 1420, however, in a ''reneversement des alliance'' they turned on Tepaneca in concert with another city-state, Tecacoco, and a rebellious tributary of the Tepanecs, Tlacopan. The Mexica shucked off their tributary status and made war to gather tribute for themselves. After the three upstart cities overthrew

. . . when Culhua sent a princess to the Mexica to fix the alliance through marriage, the Mexica misread the offering and sacrificed her instead.

Tepaneca and ritually sacrificed its ruler and nobility, they formed a ''Triple Alliance'' and divided the rich Central Valley, though Tlacopan got the lesser share. This set the mold for future Aztec expansion: conquered lands were distributed to an ever more distant aristocratic and military elite which lived for wars of conquest that marched tens of thousands of prisoners to Tenochtitlán in dreary files to feed a voracious appetite for human sacrifice, while fields were worked by an enserfed peasantry cowed by religious, military, and state terror.

The Aztec were driven by an imperial-religious ideology which demanded annual, ritual human sacrifice on a scale that expanded with each extension of Aztec rule. Every time a ''tlatoani'' (emperor) was crowned, religion and ritual demanded ''coronation wars'' be fought whose principal aim was to take prisoners to Tenochtitlán for ritual sacrifice, so that their blood would renew the Sun, Earth, and seasons. Other Mezoamerican states practiced ritual sacrifice, but after formation of the Triple Alliance and conquest of the Central Valley traditional communal checks on Aztec megalomania were shredded, as each tlatoani seemed to grow more bloodthirsty. Itzcoatl (d.1440) consolidated control of the Aztec Empire, which was a confederation of city-states dominated by the Mexica of Tenochtitlán, rather than a unitary empire. Moctezuma I (or Motecuhzoma, d.1469) greatly expanded the Aztec Empire, conquering the Mixtecs, razing their temples, and sending long, miserable lines to ritual murder in Tenochtitlán. Axaycatl (1450–1481), elected tlatoani at age 19, was a failure under whom war broke out with Tlatelolco in 1473. Axaycatl won this and several other small wars, but led the Aztecs to a crushing defeat at the hands of Tarascan to the northwest. Tarascan was the only other Mesoamerican civilization to have organized a grand confederation comparable to the Aztecs. Over 30,000 Aztec warriors may have perished in battle with the Tarascans in 1479. Ten years was spent reconquering vassal cities that rebelled in wake of that catastrophe, a pattern that marked the history of the Aztecs' unstable empire of fear. It would repeat in climactic form when the Spanish arrival triggered a massive Indian uprising against the Aztecs from 1519 to 1521. The climax, though not the end, of Aztec bloodlust came under Ahuizotl (r.1486–1502). His coronation war was no small affair. It was a sweeping campaign to suppress vassal city rebellions and instill mass terror in all tributary lands, and in Tenochtitlán itself. To rededicate the Great Temple in Tenochtitlán in 1487, Ahuizotl had hearts ripped from 20,000 captives. The slaughter lasted four days, during which the steps of the Great Temple literally ran with blood, to form black pools in the plaza below. The skulls of the dead were then assembled in a great skull-rack (''tzompantli''), so that after death they continued to terrify the living. The next year, Ahuizotl killed all the adults in two conquered cities, redistributed 40,000 captive children across the empire, and resettled 9,000 married Mexica couples in the dead zone. This was ''ethnic cleansing,'' 15th-century-Aztec style.

The Aztecs expanded in part because their economic system required it, and because they were led by dynamic emperors chosen by the military elite for their promise as warlords, not because they were law givers or great

builders (except of more bloodstained temples). The coronation act itself demanded war and human sacrifice, which meant both practices were built into the religious-political structure of the society and state. Each war of expansion was followed by another, then another. New peoples were terrorized into submission and annual tribute, and the appalling levels of annual sacrifice kept rising. In 1502, *Moctezuma II* was elected. He, too, waged a coronation war, sacrificed thousands to propitiate the gods, and expanded the Aztec Empire. By the time of his reign the Aztecs had conquered cities and territory so far outside the Central Valley that they controlled a vast and complex tributary domain stretching to northern Guatemala. In Tenochtitlán a highly privileged military-theocratic elite rode herd on a mass of peasants, artisans, and conquered and cowered Mesoamerican nations. From these ranks, sacrificial victims were taken by the thousands each year, not just to feed a religious rite but also as a deliberate policy of political terror: the sacrifices atop the Great Temple could be seen from every point in the city. Terror undergirded a ferocious theology in service to a merciless warrior-god, Huitzilopochtli. The warrior elite also engaged in ritual cannibalism as a reward for courage displayed in battle, with the choicest flesh (arms and thighs) awarded to the bravest warriors. Terror kept the military and nobility in power, but it also made the Aztec Empire brittle and unstable. Aztec social, political, and military structures were all overly hierarchical, as the problem of chronic rebellion showed. The Aztecs were so deeply hated by city-states and tribes they conquered and exploited, and from whose populations they may have taken several hundred thousand lives in war and as tribute over the course of the 15th century, that even a band of unwashed Christian savages from Spain who also slaughtered with zeal and abandon might be viewed as liberators, of a sort, for a time. Something similar happened in Ukraine in 1941.

Technologically, the Aztecs were centuries behind the *conquistadores* who invaded the Central Valley of Mexico from 1519 to 1521. Aztec weapons were primarily obsidian knives, simple bows that shot obsidian-tipped arrows, fire-hardened darts, and blunt javelins used to stun rather than pierce flesh. Simple stone-throwing slings were also common, and could be effectively lethal. The Aztecs used blunt wooden swords without thrusting tips. Instead, shards of obsidian were embedded along the edges to make a shallow cutting weapon. These swords were of minimal lethality unless multiple strikes were made: they were designed to cut, bleed, and weaken an enemy so that he could be captured and sacrificed, not to kill him outright. Aztec knights wore cotton armor that stopped such blades when wielded by similarly armed Mesoamerican enemies. However, their equipment was of little avail against European weapons, from bronze-tipped crossbow bodkins designed to penetrate armor, to swords sharpened to open gaping wounds and pointed for lethal thrusts, to iron balls and jagged projectiles fired from arquebuses, demicannon, and falconetes. Moreover, Aztec warriors did not use *shock* tactics or fight in close order. They preferred loose formations, fighting almost as individual braves, as warriors rather than soldiers, with an emphasis on

capturing enemies, not killing them right away. Although they mustered and fought by region, their tactical units were led by officers (renowned warriors) who led by displays of personal courage rather than selecting tactics and ordering concerted, practiced actions. This befitted a style of combat whose main purpose was not to kill the enemy, but to stun or blind and then bind him, so he could be passed back through the ranks and taken away for later sacrifice. The greatest warriors and generals wore the most gaudy and distinctive headdresses and decorations, which made them easy to identify as key targets for Spanish lancers, swordsmen, or marksmen. Once these great knights were killed, leaderless groups of lesser Aztec warriors often dispersed.

Although the first Spanish came with barely a dozen horses—an animal then unknown in the Americas—and a few cannon, they wore plate armor and carried arquebuses, crossbows, and deadly swords made of Toledo steel. These impious Iberian cutthroats and brigands were led by a brilliant strategist and at least capable tactician, *Hernán Cortés*. In 1520 he led 550 conquistadores in a peaceful entry into the Aztec capital, Tenochtitlán. But his men plundered with a greed that astonished the Aztecs, and caused the death of Moctezuma. This caused an Aztec rising that cost the Spanish most of their gold and half their men in the bloody *First Siege of Tenochtitlán* in June 1520. After a fighting retreat and the sharp exchange at *Otumba*, Cortés regrouped. He gathered more Spanish amphibious pirates to his command, and returned—crucially aided by thousands of Indian allies—in the summer of 1521 for the *Second Siege of Tenochtitlán* and great slaughter of the city's people. In the course of the conquest of Central Mexico the Spanish and their Indian allies—or was it Indian rebels with a few Spanish allies?—threw down three Aztec emperors from life or power and destroyed the Aztec Empire.

For all the advantages afforded to Cortés by European weaponry and shock tactics, the Aztecs were not primarily the victims of technological inferiority; that is a crudely technologically deterministic thesis argued by those historians who also cling to the ahistorical view that conquistadores harkened back to a supposed 2,000-year tradition of ''linear warfare'' unique, and uniquely lethal, to the West. Disregarding the fact that war in the West from Greece to Spain did not share a linear history, and that Medieval warfare was closer to the style of the warriors of Tenochtitlán than the ruthless squares of Sparta or the Legions of Rome, it remains the case that the Aztecs were not overthrown by a tiny force of 2,000 (counting reinforcements) technologically advanced Spaniards with a superior military culture, but by a vast Indian rebellion that rallied tens of thousands of warriors to an alien banner because it afforded an opportunity to overthrow a loathed and brittle imperial theocracy. The second great ally of the conquistadores was pandemic disease. This not only wiped out huge numbers of Aztec warriors; it may have demoralized the Aztecs and undermined their religious and cultural supports when they needed them most. In sum, the Aztecs were not conquered by the Spanish so much as by a massive uprising of their long subject and suffering Indian tributaries that was triggered by the arrival of the Spanish. Aztec defeat was made more likely by ravages of virgin diseases and to a lesser extent, perhaps

the coincidences of events with Aztec prophesy. On the other hand, the Spanish provided critical leadership and military advantages, and Cortés showed exceptional tenacity in pursuing his goal of conquest, and not just plunder, of the Aztec Empire.

The psychological-religious factor may have been critical to the conquest of Mexico: both sides believed that ''God'' or ''The Gods'' were with them, so that each victory or defeat took on a religious as well as strategic meaning. Beyond that, it is hard to say more. In the traditional version, faith in the potency of Aztec gods supposedly cracked when Moctezuma was kidnaped by Cortés, then killed. That fissure of doubt widened as thousands of warriors went down in droves in battle against strange enemies with thunderous weapons and a magical ability to kill at a distance. The worldview that upheld Aztec martial confidence then broke apart when pandemic disease devastated their warriors and people—all this suffering, death, and disease was taken as a sign that the Aztec gods were weak, or had deserted them, and that the cyclical destruction of the world they deeply believed in and had been prophesied was now at hand. For the Spanish, the same events confirmed that they were divinely favored over the pagan civilization whose blood-smeared priests, dressed in cloaks of human skin, who performed human sacrifice and ritual cannibalism, they slew in the name of their Catholic faith and emperor. Victories in arms and the mass death of enemies by disease were read as clearly affirming the justice of the conquistadore ''cause.'' And if external events failed to inspire, priests were ready to say Mass, preach the rectitude of crusade against heathens, and console or intimidate doubters. One unusually honest conquistador, Bernal Días del Castillo, who accompanied Cortés to plunder Aztec temples, those sites of awful carnage in the midst of glorious urban vistas and sophisticated building and craftsmanship, put it succinctly: ''We came here to serve God and the King, and also to get rich.'' On the other hand, Ross Hassig—the leading contemporary military historian of the Aztec Empire—argues forcefully and convincingly that the Aztecs ''did not surrender, did not relinquish their beliefs, and were not paralyzed, but rather fought to the end—bitterly, effectively, and valiantly—with no sign of the various forms of ideological or psychological collapse to which their defeat is often attributed.''

. . . ''We came here to serve God and the King, and also to get rich.''

It is possible that over 1 million Mesoamericans died during the course of the Spanish conquest, 1519–1521, most from disease but several tens of thousands in battle. When pandemics also wiped out Mesoamericans like the Tlaxcalans who were allied with the conquistadores, the Spaniards were left to collect the spoils of victory won by the Indian rebellion. They quickly enslaved Aztec and Tlaxcalan alike, driving the pathetic and demoralized remnants of Indian city-states into the *encomienda system* the ''conquerors'' set up on the ashes of Mesoamerican civilization in Mexico. This was possible because the collapse of the Aztecs was sudden, and left the other city-states still divided by old hostilities and deeply distrustful. Over the next three years the Spanish played off one Indian power against another, conquering them

severally then altogether. The original population of Mexico and Central America then underwent a catastrophic decline from exposure to a Pandora's Box of epidemic diseases of European and African origin, to which Mesoamericans had no native resistance. Within 50 years of the conquest the Indian population fell by 90 percent, from 25–30 million to just 2–3 million. By 1620 there were only 1.2 million Mesoamericans left in Mexico, at which point demographic decline stopped, to slowly reverse during the 17th century as natural resistance built. Given the horrors of the Aztec state it might be argued that the tragedy of the conquest was not their political downfall, but the unintentional killing of 95 percent of the Mesoamerican population by pandemics that would have arrived by ship from Europe and Africa even if Cortés and the conquistadores had borne gifts and good will, not swords and muskets. See also *chimalli*; *cihuacoatl*; *eagle knight*; *flower wars*; *jaguar knight*; *Xochiyaoyotl*.

Suggested Reading: Inga Clendinnen, *Aztecs* (1991); Geoffrey Conrad and Arthur Demarest, *Religion and Empire* (1984); Noble Cook, *Born to Die: Disease and New World Conquest, 1492–1650* (1998); Nigel Davies, *The Aztec Empire* (1987); Ross Hassig, *Aztec Warfare* (1988) and *Mexico and the Spanish Conquest* (1995); Richard Townsend, *The Aztecs* (1990; 2000).

B

Babur (1483–1530). Né Zahir ud-Din Muhammad. King of Kabul; founder of the *Mughal Empire*. Babur was descended from *Timur* and *Chinggis Khan* by blood, and in his predatory warlordism. However, in the Uzbeks he faced a formidable enemy he was not able to overcome: they resisted his repeated attempts to recapture Samarkand and other, formerly Timurid cities in Central Asia. This forced Babur into Afghanistan, where he took Kabul in 1504. From there he continued to battle the Uzbeks, failing again to take Samarkand in 1512. Babur next looked to India as a wealthy yet vulnerable land ripe for raiding, to enrich his dynasty. In 1519 he began raiding in force into north India. In 1526 he met and defeated a much larger Indian army at *Panipat* (1526), killed the sultan, took Agra and Delhi, and toppled the *Delhi Sultanate*. The next year, at *Khanwa*, he won a key victory over the *Rajputs*. This laid open all of northern India for invasion rather than mere raiding. His grandson, *Akbar*, completed the Mughal conquest of north India.

Suggested Reading: Babur, *The Babur-nama in English*, Susannah Beveridge, trans. (1921); Bamber Gascoigne, *The Great Moghuls* (1971).

bacinet. See *bascinet*.

back-staff. See *cross-staff*.

Baden, Margrave George Frederick (1577–1622). See *Wiesloch, Battle of*; *Wimpfen, Battle of*.

baggage train. As European armies expanded during the 16th and 17th centuries, so too did the baggage trains which followed them in the field and into camp. These required an enormous effort in organized transportation that strained to the limits the logistical capabilities of the day. Thus, in 1602, *Maurits of Nassau* needed over 3,000 four-horse wagons to support a field

army of just 24,000 men, and even this great land convoy carted only about 10 percent of the food or fodder which his troops consumed. The rest was bought or plundered from the countryside, from peasants and from villages or towns so unfortunate as to reside along the chosen route of march. Aristocratic officers used to a pampered life of personal servants and luxury goods were a particularly heavy logistical burden on armies. For instance, on his 1610 campaign, Maurits requisitioned 942 wagons of which just under 130 were devoted to hauling goods and baggage for staff officers and his own household. As to camp followers, Martin Van Creveld estimates that a typical 16th-century European army of some 30,000 troops (principally homeless mercenaries reliant on the army for their pay, food, and shelter) needed 4 horses to each 15 men, and was likely followed by a throng of servants, *sutlers*, prostitutes, and wives and children of the troops, totaling perhaps 150 percent the size of the actual army. The women of the train were wholly dependent on the men for their living, some as wives who might become prostitutes if their husband was killed, others as prostitutes who hoped to become wives. One bit of crucial military work done by the train, in particular by women and children, was to dig field works which European (though not Ottoman) professional soldiers in this period regarded as beneath their dignity. This attitude to the spade was not changed until the reforms of *Gustavus Adolphus*. See also *bombard*; *Hurenweibel*; *Provost*.

Baghdad, Siege of (1638). Baghdad had 211 defensive towers and 52 crenels fixed in 25-meter-high walls that were 15 meters thick at the base and 7 meters at the top. They were built of hard brick in the *Horasani* mode, surrounded on three sides (the Tigris protected the fourth wall) by three wide rings of dry moats, each up to 40 meters across. *Abbas I* took this impressive fortress-city in 1623 only because its garrison defected. Over the following 16 years the Ottomans devoted most of their military resources to its recapture. A seven-month siege failed in 1625–1626. A second attempt was made in 1630, with a caravan of 2,000 camels carrying bales of cotton to fill in the dry moats. However, the *Safavid* garrison counter-mined and trapped the attackers in a concealed pit, where they were slaughtered. It took a 39-day siege in 1638 to finally crack Baghdad's defenses. For the final siege the Ottomans brought 24,000 *beldar* (military laborers) and another 8,000 *lağimci* (sappers and miners), as well as specialized engineers and thousands of assault troops. Instead of cotton bales, brush and boughs to make *gabions* were carried in from lusher locales, on top of the regular kit of the laborers and soldiers, during the last leg of the march. Immediately, sapping of zigzag trenches began a mile out from the walls. Once the main guns were in place, on high ramparts on top of filled-in moats, shifts of *Janissaries* kept up a slow but constant bombardment of the inner defenses. A wide breach was made and the city was stormed after hard fighting atop the broad walls, not just with firearms but also with older weapons, including bows, sabers, hatchets, halberds, and knives.

Bagirmi. A small Central African state with its capital at Massenya. Around 1500 its governing class converted to Islam. Along with adoption of cavalry and firearms, this spurred it to violently expand. It did so mainly through slave-raiding at the expense of technologically less-advanced, pagan peoples to the south, around the Lake Chad basin. It also made war on *Bornu*.

Bahamas. A chain of hundreds of small islands of which but a handful were inhabited by Lucayas Indians. To fill out the *encomienda system*, from 1509 the Lucayas were deported by the Spanish to Hispaniola, where the local Indian population was dying in droves from disease and maltreatment. The Lucayas were subsequently made outright slaves and bought and sold in island marketplaces. Within four years there were no Lucayas left on the Bahamas. Permanent European settlement started in 1647.

bahşiş. The Ottoman pay system of cash bonuses given to members of the regular army; this was less a reward than a permanent salary increase (*terakki*). It was unrelated to payment from spoils (''*ganimet*''), the system used by the sultans to reward irregulars and auxiliaries.

bailey. A ringwork fort or enclosure made of timber, across a moat or dry ditch dug when building up a *motte*. The bailey afforded refuge inside a simple fort and allowed stockpiling of supplies. However, it was extremely susceptible to *mining* and *fire*. See also *keep-and-bailey*; *motte-and-bailey*.

bailli. A French official in charge of a ''bailliage,'' the basic unit of government in medieval France. Traditionally, his military duty was merely honorary: he summoned the feudal levy (*arrière-ban*).

bakufu. ''Tent government.'' The military bureaucracy, dominated by one major clan or another, which supported emperor-rule in Japan from 1185. The bakufu played a key role in mobilizing Japanese defenses against the *Mongol* invasion attempts that led to the *Battles of Hakata* (1274 and 1281). The Kamakura bakufu was displaced by the Muromachi bakufu in 1333. Under the *shoguns* the ''baku-han'' system (shogunal administration with local authority delegated to the *daimyo*) maintained a pretense of national government. Later, ''bakufu'' referred to the civil bureaucracy of the *Tokugawa shogunate* centered in Edo (Tokyo) and monitoring the Imperial Court at Kyoto and all regional daimyo. The lead bakufu council in charge of foreign policy and daimyo relations was the ''Rōjū.'' The bakufu wrote the ''Code for Military Houses'' which established control over the daimyo, regulated commoners, enforced the Tokugawa ban on Christianity, and oversaw submission of the *samurai*.

balance of power. See *'Auld Alliance*; *Elizabeth I*; *Ethiopia*; *gunpowder empires*; *Habsburgs*; *Italian Renaissance*; *Italian Wars*; *Lodi, Peace of*; *Machiavelli, Niccolò di*

Bernardo; *Pavia, Battle of*; *Philip II, of Spain*; *Revolution in Military Affairs*; *slavery and war*; *Thirty Years' War*; *Venice*; *Westphalia, Peace of*.

baldric. A leather sword belt or harness, usually slung over the breast or back.

balestrieri. Italian infantry of the 15th century armed with ordinary crossbows. If they were armed with the much heavier type of crossbow that had to be transported on wheeled carts and manned by a firing crew of three or four men, they were known instead as "balestrieri ad molinellum."

balinger. During the 14th–16th centuries, a class of *clinker-built*, oared ship, with a single mast and sail. Originating in the Basque whaling industry, its design migrated to England where balingers were used in war and trade, displacing English *galleys* from local waters during the 14th century. See also *barge*.

balistae. Naval *crossbows*, whether ship-mounted or hand-fired.

balistarii equites. Mounted crossbowmen. They were known to the French as "arbalétriers."

Balkh, Battle of (1602). See *Uzbeks*.

ballista. See *springald*.

ballock. See *daggers*.

ballot. The action of, and loss of power and accuracy caused by, *solid shot* rebounding from side-to-side inside the bore as it traveled up the barrel of an artillery piece. This was unavoidable in early cannon, each of which had individualized and idiosyncratic bores. The problem was compounded by the fact that big guns fired nonstandardized stone shot. Since stonecutters only approximated the fit of shot to a specific bore, despite their great skill at cutting each cannonball was as unique in size, shape, and trajectory as the individual bores of the guns that fired them. The problem was worsened by a natural tendency to cut the ball significantly smaller than the bore to ensure a fit, which dramatically reduced propellent power of the expanding, explosive gases. The problem of balloting was lessened by later adoption of cast-iron cannonballs and standardized cast iron or bronze cannon, but it is in the nature of artillery ballistics and physics that it cannot be perfectly resolved for gravity-directed ordnance and remains a problem today.

Baltic. See *Christian IV*; *Danzig*; *Denmark*; *Dominum Maris Baltici*; *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *Hanse*; *Livonian Order*; *Muscovy, Grand Duchy of*; *Northern War, First*; *Poland*; *Sigismund III Vasa*; *Sound Tolls*; *Sweden*; *Teutonic Knights, Order of*; *Thirty Years' War*; *Wallenstein, Albrecht von*; *War of the Cities*.

bal yemez. Intermediate-size Ottoman siege guns, firing 24-okka shot (equivalent to 68-pound shot).

Banbury, Battle of (1469). See *Wars of the Roses*.

bandeiras. See *Brazil*.

bandolier. See *cartridges*.

banduq. A light matchlock firearm in use in India from the 15th century.

Banér, Johann (1596–1641). Swedish general. He served *Gustavus Adolphus* in Livonia, Poland, and Russia before moving with the king into Germany in 1630. He fought at *First Breitenfeld* (1631), where he commanded the Swedish horse on the right. He also fought at *Rain*. He was wounded at *Alte Feste*, but remained in command in the west while Gustavus marched to his death at *Lützen* in 1632. In 1634 Banér led 16,000 men into Bohemia, joined with the Saxons, and marched on Prague. He was recalled after the Swedes lost at *First Nördlingen*. He next fought and won at *Wittstock* (1636), but could not hold the territory taken. In 1637 he retreated into Pomerania. In 1639 he defeated the Saxon Army at Chemnitz, and went on to occupy parts of Bohemia. After wintering in the west, 1640–1641, Banér tried to seize Regensburg in a rare winter campaign, but fell short. He died later that spring.

In 1634 Banér led 16,000 men into Bohemia, joined with the Saxons, and marched on Prague.

ban et l'arrière-ban. The feudal levy of France. See also *arrière-ban*.

banking. See *Fugger, House of*; *war finance*.

banner (*bannières*) (1). A small, square flag used as the ensign of a band (*banneret*) of *knights* fighting as a group under the designated commander of their *constabulary*, or unit of 10 or more knights. Such banners were celebrated and venerated under the code of *chivalry*, and were fiercely defended. They slowly evolved into sophisticated heraldic devices of the great magnate families of Europe. See also *choragiew*; *flags*; *pennant*; *sashimono*.

banner (*bannières*) (2). A small tactical unit, several of which made up a *battle*, which was the main medieval cavalry formation in Europe. They were often recruited on a lineage basis. Knights were supposed to cluster around the banner, which served as a rally point; but they also relied on discrete *battle cries*.

Banner (Swiss). Cantonal units each carried large flags, ''Banners'' displaying the unique symbol of their Canton. Around these, cantonal troops formed a

Swiss square. In battle, the Banner was carried at the center of the square by a ''Venner'' (''ensign''), tasked to keep close to the ''oberster Feldhauptmann'' (commanding officer). The Banners were capable of arousing deep devotion and sacrifice in battle, as the Swiss fought ferociously to defend standards in which they stored great pride. They were assigned honored hand-picked guards, over two dozen in some cases, who represented the guilds or towns of the Canton. If the army was confederate (an alliance of cantons), then all the major Banners were gathered around the main Swiss banner under heavy protection. The Banners provided each square with a central focus on the march, in assaults, and in defense. This enforced tight combat discipline and helped make the Swiss famously maneuverable. It also inspired confidence in commanders and in the collective endeavor. These large flags were often works of embroidered art, carefully stored and protected in peacetime by a designated officer. Most Banners were accompanied by fifers and drummers. The larger and wealthier cantonal Banners also retained ''*Harsthörner*'' (''Great War Horn'') players, to inspire their own men and frighten the enemy. See also *carroccio*; *Fähnlein*; *Grandson, Battle of*; *mercenaries*.

banneret. From the 13th century an ''officer'' knight, usually a baron, in command of a small group of knights gathered to fight under a square *banner*, in place of each flying his own *pennant*. This formation was called a *constabulary*. In English armies a banneret had 10–15 knights and men-at-arms.

banner system (China/Manchuria). Chinese: ''baqi,'' Manchu: ''jakūn gūsa.'' A highly effective military organization established among the *Manchus* (Jürchen) by *Nurgaci*. While there is evidence of banner organization as early as 1595, it is conventionally said that Nurgaci arranged his 150,000-strong army into four banners in 1601. Each was grouped beneath a colored ''plain'' banner commanded by one of his kinsmen: blue, red, yellow, and white. In 1615–1616 he added four banners under ''bordered'' flags using the same four colors. About 300 ''households'' made up a company (Chinese ''zuoling,'' Manchu ''niru''), with 25 companies comprising a banner. This organization allowed coordinated and flexible tactical maneuvers; and the banners built unit solidarity and morale. Yet, they remained loyal to their generals as much as to Nurgaci or his son, Hong Taiji, until the conquest of Ming China. Late in that campaign, which lasted in the north from 1618 to 1644, Han Chinese and Mongol banners were formed within the Qing army from ''ujen cooha'' immigrant units which fought under a distinct black banner in the early 1600s. Chinese martial banners and Mongol units were officially added in 1642, raising the number of banners to 24 (with additional specialized companies): eight Manchu, eight Mongol, and eight Chinese. Additional banners were added later for ''New Manchus'' (the Sibo of Siberia) and Muslims from Turkmenistan. Many of the ethnically Han soldiers were experienced professionals, released prisoners of war who swore allegiance to the Manchus, or they were *renegades*. Unlike the Manchus, the

Chinese knew how to cast cannon and were skilled in siegecraft, which was important when facing China's fortified cities. On the other hand, Han banners did not tend herds in the winter but had to be maintained year-round, unlike Manchus and Mongols who were used to life as seasonal campaigners. This fact forced the Qing to modernize their empire and added incentive to acquire richer lands in China. After 1644 an elite guard drawn from the banners was positioned around Beijing displacing the armed *eunuchs* who previously guarded the Forbidden City. A few Russian captives also served in Qing banners. The banners survived to the end of the dynasty (1911). They were formally eliminated by the dictator Yuan Shikai in 1914.

banner system (Japan). Under the *Tokugawa*, "bannermen" ("hatamoto") served as shogunal retainers and guards of the main routes to Edo. This was of minimal military significance since the Tokugawa ended Japan's chronic civil wars, bringing a peace that lasted over 250 years.

Bannockburn (June 24, 1314). A key battle of the *Scottish Wars* fought astride the Bannock Burn, a small creek that fed into the Forth River. England's Edward II sent a relief army north to try to lift sieges of the last castles his men held in Scotland, at Berwick and Stirling. The English army comprised 2,000 knights and 12,000 *men-at-arms*, archers, and other infantry. The Scots, under Robert "The Bruce" (later Robert I) had just 8,000 men, mostly armed with pikes, along with 700 to 800 noble horse, and a few other mounted men-at-arms. Although outnumbered, the Scots knew about the dramatic lesson taught by Flemish militia to French knights at *Courtrai* (1302). Bruce chose the high ground, setting his right flank in a bend of the Burn while anchoring the left flank against a small wood. The English horse crossed the Bannock in broken formation. Bruce saw the opportunity to strike before his enemy was in position and sent four *schiltrons* of pikemen down the slope in echelon formation to close with the English knights. This lessened the impact of Edward's longbowmen, who tried to outflank the Scots but were met instead by a charge of the Scottish cavalry which scourged and scattered the archers. As the English knights turned to run the sheer weight of their own armor and horses trapped them in the fens astride the Bannock Burn, with the Scots pursuing and killing from the rear with bloody pikes and dirks. Thousands of knights and men-at-arms fell on the single bloodiest day for English *chivalry*. It was also a bloody day for the Scots, who lost half their men. Still, Stirling Castle soon surrendered, leaving only Berwick in English hands for a few years more. After Bannockburn, Scotland was assured of remaining an independent kingdom.

Suggested Reading: W. M. Mackenzie, *Battle of Bannockburn* (1913).

bannum. The feudal right of public *recruitment* and command of military service of vassals in one's immediate household or set of retainers. It was held

by many noble ranks, from emperor to kings, dukes, counts, and other magnates. It was different from the obligations of military service based on the *fief*. See also *Imperial Army*.

banquette. See *parapet*.

Barbados. The Spanish never bothered to settle Barbados, concentrating on richer Caribbean islands. It was settled by England from 1627. Intended as a base from which to penetrate the monopoly of Iberian trade with New Spain and as a site to grow tobacco, it quickly became a refuge for *privateers*. When the tobacco crop failed planters turned to sugar, importing African slaves to work the fields. The success of sugar had an unintended consequence: Barbados became a market for food crops and fish that helped keep the tentative New England colonies viable. By the 1640s Barbados was dominated by a planter elite and made a small market for luxury goods in an increasingly integrated and burgeoning English empire in the Atlantic.

Barbarossa (c.1483–1546). Né Khayr ad-Din. Muslim corsair. As *dey* of Algiers he expanded the hinterland, took over the slave trade, fought off the Spanish, and imposed his will on other pirates with the help of European *renegades*. In command of an Ottoman galley fleet in the name of *Suleiman I*, in 1534 this red-bearded (''barbarossa'') pirate and nominal Ottoman vassal captured Tunis. The next year he was driven off by *Andrea Doria* in command of an Imperial fleet sent by *Charles V*. Barbarossa built a Barbary battle fleet that scourged the western Mediterranean, raiding for slaves and capturing prizes on a grand scale. When not corsairing, this fleet supported the Ottoman navy. Barbarossa's skills were such that he commanded the entire Ottoman fleet at *Preveza* (1538), inflicting a sharp defeat on Andrea Doria and the Holy League. From 1541 to 1544 he raided Spanish coastal territories in Italy, in secret accord with France. Thirty years later, the corsair fleet he built up was annihilated at *Lepanto* (1571).

Barbary corsairs. While some actual *pirates* infested the North African coast, most of the so-called ''Barbary corsairs'' were navies of small Muslim states (*Tunis*, *Algiers*, and *Tripoli*) in the Maghreb which harassed and plundered Mediterranean commerce, especially after the end of the *Reconquista* in Spain. Regarded as pirates by Europeans, these ''corsairs'' were a thorn in the side of *Ferdinand* of Aragon, who fought them from 1490 to 1511, but then became their tacit protector against the Ottoman Empire as the Barbary states loosened ties with Constantinople. *Charles V* violently opposed them, and *Oliver Cromwell* sent an expedition against them in the 1650s. See also *Ifriqiya*.

Suggested Reading: Peter Earle, *Corsairs of Malta and Barbary* (1970).

barber. A layer of iron plate worn on top of other armor for extra protection during a *tournament*.

barbican. An overhang or outer barrier emplaced to protect the gate (the weakest point of defense) of a castle or city wall. Some contained *machicolations* through which hot oils and water could be poured on attackers, or missiles hurled or fired down at them. They were later replaced by *boulevards*.

barbuta. From the 15th century, a widely used armored helmet hammered out in the style of ancient Corinth: it fully covered the head, neck, and throat, with a T-shaped slit in front instead of a visor. It offered maximum protection while preserving visibility and was thus highly popular among soldiers.

bard. An early form of quilted blanket armor for horses, comparable to a *caparison*. Also, a generic term for horse armor. See also *chanfron*; *crinet*; *crupper*; *flanchard(s)*; *peytral*.

barded horse. A horse covered by a thick, armored blanket (*bard*) worn as light armor. See also *caparison*.

bardiche. A type of *halberd* with an elongated blade-head that curved back toward the haft. Also called a ''vouge.''

barge. In this period (14th–16th centuries), not a flat floating or towed craft as today, but a *clinker-built* oared ship with a single mast and sail used in trade or war. Fifteenth-century versions were larger than their cousin-in-design, the *balinger*.

bark. A class of 16th-century, small, sea-capable sailing ship. The variety of vessels covered by the term was vast. The key distinction was not size but ocean capability.

Barletta, Battle of (1502). See *Italian Wars*.

Barnet, Battle of (1471). See *Wars of the Roses*.

Barons' Wars (1215–1217 and 1264–1267). See *England*.

barony. Throughout the Middle Ages in Europe a lack of revenue and administrative skills in the lay population forced kings to rely on the most powerful magnates to help them raise armies greater than those drawn from royal lands, retinue, and vassals. Only the barons, dukes, and other great subjects had the capability to gather large numbers of followers from their extended family and vassal networks, equip them for war, and lead them into battle. The price paid by kings for lack of revenues and state structures sufficient to maintain a *standing army* was acceptance of the effective military independence of powerful magnates, who could and frequently did use private armies in rebellion, lead them away on *Crusades*, or spend them fecklessly in

private wars over some local grievance with another great noble. See also *boyars (Russia)*; *boyars (Ruthenia)*; *boyars (Ukraine)*; *Burgundy, Duchy of*; *Casimir IV*; *feudalism*; *Guise family*; *Hundred Years' War*; *knights*; *Muscovy, Grand Duchy of*; *Poland*; *Polish Army*.

Bärwalde, Treaty of (January 1631). Signed by Cardinal *Richelieu*, this treaty promised a French subsidy of 400,000 taler per year in support of intervention by *Gustavus Adolphus* and the Swedish Army in the *Thirty Years' War*. It was superceded by another alliance treaty in 1635.

bascinet. A conical, visored helmet which had an *aventail* attached at the back to protect the neck. It was widely adopted in the 14th century, mainly by *knights* and *men-at-arms* but also by common soldiers who captured one in battle. They slowly evolved a high point to deflect glancing blows from swords and arrows. They came with various types of moveable visor, including a snout visor that gave the bascinet a pig-like appearance. The "great helm" was sometimes worn over the bascinet. The *armet* replaced the bascinet in the mid-15th century. See also *beaver*; *mail-tippet*.

Basel-Ferrara-Florence, Council of (1431, 1438, 1439). An *Ecumenical Council* of the Medieval Church which dealt with the Hussite rebellion in Bohemia and Hussite invasions of Austria, Hungary, and Germany. The moderate Hussites (*Utraquist*) accepted a compact that brought them back into the Catholic fold, but the offer was rejected by the more radical Taborites. See also *Hussite Wars*.

Bashi-Bazouks. *Mercenaries* in service to the Ottoman Empire. As irregulars, they fought in tribal dress rather than Ottoman uniform, and took payment in plunder rather than wages. Originally, they were mostly Afghan tribesmen. In later periods they came from marginal tribes of various ethnic backgrounds from all over the Empire. They were widely renowned for ferocity and merciless treatment of civilians.

basilard. See *daggers*.

basilisk. The term "basilisk" was most commonly used in England for 15th–16th-century big guns of the *cannon* class. The earliest were typically breech-loaded. The most famous was a huge gun, over seven meters in length, nicknamed "Queen Elizabeth's Pocket Pistol," a brass 12-pounder cast in Germany in 1544. It was presented to *Henry VIII* by *Charles V* when those monarchs allied against France. In 1643, during the *English Civil War*, it was deployed by *Charles I* and the *Cavaliers* at the siege of Hull. It was later captured by the *Roundheads* and used against the Royalists at the siege of Sheffield. By the end of the 16th century the term referred to the biggest guns (thousands of pounds deadweight) of the cannon class. These used huge amounts of black powder to hurl a 90-pound shot 750 yards with good

accuracy and effectiveness. Theoretically, they could fire heavy projectiles as far as 4,000 yards.

bastard feudalism. See *feudalism*; *war finance: England*.

bastard musket. An early 17th-century English gun that weighed less than the standard ''Dutch musket.'' It had a larger bore than a normal musket but was smaller than a *caliver*. The bastard musket fired one-ounce bullets (16 to a pound of lead). It saw limited service in a time of sustained peace in England.

bastille. A siege tower, or ''counter-castle.'' By the 14th century they achieved final form as large towers built on earthen bases 30–40 yards wide and 2–3 yards high. A great bastille might house up to 500 men-at-arms and archers.

bastion. A shaped mound of earth surrounded with geometrically arranged walls, forming two angles and two faces in relation to the curtain wall of a castle or other fortification. It permitted defenders to fire in enfilade along the curtain wall, moat, or dry ditch. The development and spread of bastions swung the military advantage away from field armies back to defended strongpoints, mainly fortified towns and restructured castles. This forced most fighting, with important exceptions, back into prolonged sieges. J. R. Hale has convincingly demonstrated that the origins of the *trace italienne* date to a variety of sources around 1450. The complex geometrical bastion or full trace italienne was perfected in central Italy by Guilliano da Sangallo (1445–1516) between 1500 and 1515 and was widespread in its final form by 1530. See also *casement*; *chemin de ronde*; *counter-guard (1)*; *crownwork*; *demi-bastion*; *demi-lune*; *front*; *rampart*; *ravelin*.

The complex geometrical bastion or full trace ialienne was perfected in central Italy by Guilliano da Sangallo . . .

Batavia. The Dutch naval base and entrepôt at Jakarta, Asian headquarters of the *Vereenigde Oostindische Compaagnie* (VOC) and the most valuable Dutch colony in the Far East. It served the *spice trade*. In Jonathon Israel's words, Batavia was ''the foremost military, naval, and commercial base in Asia'' in the 17th century, with ''the largest concentration of Europeans anywhere in Asia,'' at 6,000 souls.

Báthory, Stefan (r.1575–1586). Duke of Transylvania; king of Poland. He was elected by the powerful Polish nobility, who compelled Anna *Jagiellon* to again marry a foreign prince to give him legitimacy on the throne. Báthory added Poland's military might to his own efforts to resist Ottoman pressure on Hungary and Transylvania. This required that he assert central control over the irascible and independent Polish nobility, raise taxes, and reform the

bureaucracy and the army. In 1578 he reformed the infantry, units in which nobles had less interest or control. He established elite ''wybraniecka'' units which were attractive to peasants because military service freed them from *feudal* labor service. He had less luck with the cavalry, where the nobility predominated. His new taxes and tribunals and religious tolerance were resisted by Polish nobles across the land, and his engagement in foreign wars was deeply resented and opposed. *Danzig* refused to accept his election and in 1576 invited Denmark to intervene. Báthory blockaded Danzig by land and sea, but was unable to force the well-fortified and defended city to terms. In 1577 he agreed to effective autonomy for Danzig in exchange for nominal annual tribute. In the interim, Muscovy moved against Livonia, threatening greater Polish interests. Báthory led his new army on three expeditions into Russia during the *First Northern War* (1558–1583). See also *Polish Army*.

battalion. A basic infantry unit comprised of about 600 men. See also *brigade*; *company*; *drill*; *Ming Army*.

battery (1). ''Ship's battery.'' The array of large cannon mounted on a single side of a ship; alternately, an array of broadside guns mounted on a single gun deck of a ship.

battery (2). ''Shore battery.'' An array of large guns mounted along a shoreline or cliff's edge, usually protecting a harbor or placed at the mouth of a navigable river to fire upon and deny access to enemy ships.

battery (3). An array of cannon emplaced together on a battlefield to concentrate fire of the guns on a specific point in the enemy line. The usual number of guns per battery was 4, 6, or 8.

battle (1). The major division of a medieval army. A large medieval army was divided into three or four ''battles,'' with each battle subdivided into *banners*. In cavalry armies, one or more battles might wait in reserve until the main battle had either broken against or through the enemy's line. Wings were added to protect the flanks. By the end of the Middle Ages cavalry armies usually had a main battle, a rearguard, two wings, and a small van. See also *pulk*.

battle (2). Combat at sea was for centuries mostly an affair of *piracy* and *privateering*, or amphibious actions intended to capture or relieve important coastal bases. Only occasionally did opposing fleets meet in open battle. When they did, until the 16th century the principal tactic was to close rapidly and grapple and board the enemy vessel. Combat at sea was, until the mounting of gunpowder cannon in the prows of galleys and broadside artillery on ships of sail, largely a matter of closing, ramming, grappling, boarding, and hand-to-hand and face-to-face killing and maiming. Opposing ships of sail would first maneuver for position, trying to catch the *weather gauge* and *windward* position. In a galley-to-sail action, the galleys had the upper hand

initially as they were faster and more maneuverable, especially into the wind. As ships closed, if one had *castles* and the other did not, the height-advantaged troops would shower the enemy with missiles: stones, quarrels, and arrows, arquebus and swivel gun fire. If the wind was to their back they would throw lime over the enemy to blind him, unless he had anticipated this and erected protective nets. Also thrown were pots of hot pitch, resin, and oil, started aflame with fire arrows. Or soaps might be spilled, slicking the enemy's deck to impede his boarders or hamper his defense. *Greek Fire* was spat from flamethrowers by Byzantine ships. In the Atlantic *pots de fer* were launched at the enemy, or flaming tar arrows fired into his hull and deck. Weapons specialists with unique broadhead arrows that tore through sails went into action, while men with scythes cut the enemy's rigging, disabling his ship while other men fought his crew and marines. Once ships grappled, every slashing, puncturing, clubbing, thrusting, murderous hand weapon available for land warfare was used at sea as well. Close fighting seldom allowed for taking prisoners or for giving or receiving quarter.

Land combat was largely a matter of prolonged sieges and confused skirmishes. Small garrisons sallied to harass enemy lines and camps, or attacking infantry stormed broken town or fortress walls where a beech was made by artillery bombardment or a sapper's tunnel or mine. When field armies clashed the fighting was at remarkably close quarters. The carnage and savagery of a *Swiss square* was awesome, as men hacked off limbs or heads from other men and their horses, and impaled each other with ''push of pike.'' Even when arquebusiers arrived on the battlefield fighting remained close: early hand guns were hardly accurate past 50–75 yards, and produced so much obscuring smoke that beyond the first volley or two little visual contact was had with the enemy, or even one's own formations. As a result, after discharging single-shot, muzzle-loading arquebuses or muskets, infantry advanced to engage in hand-to-hand fighting, deploying pikes, using muskets as clubs, thrusting and slashing at legs and belly with hard steel axes or swords or halberds. If winning cavalry had chased the opponent's horse from the field, it overran the baggage train or pivoted to attack into the flank of the enemy's infantry. As one side prevailed at the bloody, slogging, smoke-beclouded front, the enemy's formation disintegrated as file after file broke and ran from the rear, abandoning beaten comrades in the front files to wounding or death. From the 11th to 15th centuries it is thought that the losing side in the average battle left from 20 to 50 percent of its men dead on the field. At *Courtrai* (1302) the French lost 40 percent of their army, the same figure for French losses at *Poitiers* (1356) and *Agincourt* (1415).

This sort of encounter was, understandably, highly risky in the eyes of commanders. Not just the military outcome of a given battle, but the political stakes of the whole war were put in jeopardy by the vagaries of combat. Also, threat to life and limb of nobles was extremely high; even worse, destitution loomed possible if one was captured and had to pay a huge ransom to regain liberty. Field armies were also expensive and most of all, extremely hard to supply. Reserve armies were rare to nonexistent because it was just too

expensive and inefficient to raise and billet an army and not use it. A single defeat of a king's field army might prove decisive, losing the war and with it much territory, titles, prestige, and wealth. In addition to the usual haphazards and chance outcomes of battle, field commanders could never be sure of the loyalty or fighting quality of the numerous *mercenaries* in their employ: would these men fight or run? And for whom would they fight? More than one commander rose on the morning of battle to observe that, during the night, a part of his army had gone over to the enemy and had lined up on the other side of the field, where the pay was better or the chance of survival deemed greater.

Mercenary captains made war as a game in which competitive positioning of field armies by each commander was designed to avoid more than to engage in battle, while gaining some slight advantage should battle nevertheless result. Both might then withdraw without offering combat, one giving an admiring salute to his opposite number in concession that he had been outmaneuvered and lost the advantage of topography or secure lines of supply. Given the contingency and risk of battle, wise commanders and monarchs usually preferred the controlled risks of a siege. Kingdoms could be, and were, made and unmade in battles that turned on some chance event or unpredictable act of heroism or cowardice by some underling. An old English nursery rhyme captured this reality well: ''For want of a nail the shoe was lost, for want of a shoe the horse was lost; for want of a horse the battle was lost, for want of a battle the kingdom was lost.'' In China also, commanders often tried to avoid battles, seeing them as too risky militarily and politically. Dynasties rose and fell as a result of battles, cities were saved or sacked, thousands lived or died. That meant those who had wealth and power usually hunkered down behind solid fortifications and fought to keep it at the least possible risk, while those who sought power or plunder employed ruses and stratagems of any and every kind to force a battle that might bring the chance to rise high in the world in the course of a single hour or day. See discrete battles and *castles, on land*; *chevauchée*; *chivalry*; *condottieri*; *fortification*; *knight*; *raiding*; *siege warfare*; *war at sea*.

battle-axe. See *axes*; *poleax*.

battle cries. A common means to either pluck up collective courage, or signal rally points, or issue commands was the battle cry. The Ottomans timed pre-battle shouts to the crash of musket volleys, to frighten the enemy and raise their own spirits. Constant beating of battle drums served similar purposes. Battle cries of this period, as in all war, were extremely varied. Only a handful of illustrative samples are listed here. Among the most famous and most typical of an age that mixed God and battle in every recipe for war was the battle cry of the *Teutonic Knights*. They shouted as they charged toward some poor Wend or other pagan village on the Baltic coast, or against a more equal Lithuanian host: ''Gott mit uns!'' (''God is with us!''). French Crusaders fighting Muslims or heretics yelled ''Dieu le veut!'' (''God wills it!''). Matching deity to deity, when Muslims

drew swords they shouted toward heaven: ''Allah akbar!'' (''God is Great!''). The yell of *Hospitallers* was ''St. Jean! St. Jean.'' When *Hussites* fought the *Ordensstaat* in the 1450s they beat a war drum made from the skin of their dead commander, *Jan Žizka*, and sang the battle hymn: ''We, warriors of God!'' which ended: ''slay, slay, slay, slay them every one.'' It was common to shout out the name of one's country alongside that of the deity. The *conquistadores* who slew with *Cortés* shouted ''Castilla! Castilla!'' as they charged into the Aztecs at *Otumba* (1520) and at *Tenochtitlán* (1521), while Mezoamerican allies chanted the name of their city-state: ''Tlaxcala! Tlaxcala!''

Some battle cries were intended more for enemy ears than one's own. Finnish cavalry fighting for *Gustavus Adolphus* in Poland or Muscovy or Germany raised terror among their enemies when they foretold bloodthirsty deeds to come: ''Hakkaa paalle!'' (''Cut them down!''). In battles of the *Thirty Years' War* fought after the *sack of Magdeburg* by a Catholic army in 1631, Protestants cried: ''Magdeburg Quarter!'' meaning they would give none. Royalist gunners in the *English Civil Wars* (1639–1651) rather languorously exclaimed the politically sophisticated battle cry: ''First shot for the devil! Second for God! Third for the King!'' Conversely, some things just were not said on the battlefield. For instance, in medieval English armies it was forbidden to shout ''Monte'' (''to horse!''), because it tended to induce panic if mistaken as the signal to dismounted knights to remount and flee. On the other hand, crying ''Havoc!'' was a self-issued warrant from the most savage soldiers to commence murder, burning, pillaging, and rape, a practice recalled, though predated to ancient Rome, by Shakespeare's ''Cry Havoc! And let slip the dogs of war!'' (*Julius Caesar*, Act III, Scene I).

. . . crying ''Havoc!'' was a self-issued warrant from the most savage soldiers to commence murder, burning, pillaging, and rape . . .

Bavaria. See *Catholic League (Germany)*; *Guelphs and Ghibellines*; *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *Holy Roman Empire*; *Maximilian I*; *Rupert, Prince*; *Swabian League*; *Swabian War*; *Thirty Years' War*; *Wallenstein, Albrecht von*.

Bayezid I (r.1389–1402). Ottoman sultan. Following the *Battle of Kosovo*, he consolidated the European holdings of the Ottoman Empire and absorbed remaining independent Turkic statelets in Anatolia. From 1390 he built a *standing army*, including a large artillery train and expanded *Janissary Corps*. His navy challenged the fleets of Venice and Genoa and pressured the coastline of the weakening Byzantine Empire. He defeated a Christian coalition army at *Nicopolis* (1396), but was himself defeated and taken prisoner by *Timur* at *Ankara* (1402). Unable to bear humiliation and torment, he committed suicide in captivity. His defeat and death set off a civil war within the Ottoman Empire that did not end until the emergence of *Murad II*.

Bayezid II (1447–1512). Ottoman sultan, 1481–1512; successor to *Muhammad II*. He continued the Ottoman advance into the Balkans, built up the

Ottoman artillery train, and expanded the *Janissary Corps*. In a naval war with Venice, 1499–1503, his fleet severely damaged the Venetians at *Lepanto* (1499), thereby securing domination of the eastern Mediterranean. He was less successful regarding the Mamlūks of Egypt, whose army he fought in Iraq. He was stymied by the zealous *Safavid* regime in Iran, partly because in his last decade he concentrated on domestic reform and personal religious study. A tolerant ruler, he accepted 200,000 Jews into the Empire after their expulsion from Spain, Portugal, and Italy, settling most near Salonika. Bayezid was deposed by his murderous son, *Selim I* (''The Grim'').

Bay of Seine, Battle of (1417). See *Hundred Years' War*.

bayonet. Named for Bayonne, where it originated. Blades had long been attached to hunting weapons to finish off wounded animals without reloading or wasting shot and powder. The earliest military use of bayonets was by the French Army in 1647, at Ypres. These were plug-fitted into the barrel. That prevented firing once they were mounted, but allowed musketeers to act as their own pikemen, which gave infantry formations greater firepower. By 1650 some muskets had bayonets fixed to the gun at manufacture, hinged and foldable back along the barrel. French fusiliers adopted the plug bayonet as standard equipment in 1671; English fusiliers followed suit in 1685. The socket, or ring, bayonet did not appear until shortly after this period when it was introduced to the French Army by Sébastien le Prestre de Vauban. See also *child-mother gun*.

Béal Atha Buí, Battle of (1598). See *Nine Years' War*.

beat the drum. Recruiting parties offering pay, board, and other enticements to prospective soldiers marched through towns accompanied by a boy or young soldier beating a small drum. After a crowd gathered the recruiter made his pitch, which usually included a token up-front payment (known as ''beer money'' in England). This crude approach was surprisingly effective.

Beaugé, Battle of (March 21, 1421). A Franco-Scots army raided English lands in Normandy and Maine, provoking an English army into the field. The two forces met at Beaugé in Anjou. The English cavalry made a French mistake—over pursuit—and were cut off, surrounded, and slaughtered. The English infantry arrived later and fared better, pushing the French and Scots from the field, but not compensating for the loss of the English horse. This victory for France was a small premonition of the coming turn of the tide in the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453).

beaver. A moveable face-guard on a *bascinet*. Sometimes connected to, other times replacing, the visor.

beaver wars. Large-scale wars between the Iroquois and Huron Indians of northeastern North America in the 17th century, fought over control of the fur trade. They engaged armies with many hundreds of braves, not small war parties conducting frontier raids. See also *Indian Wars*.

bedel-i nüzul. An exceptional surtax used to provide grain to the army, increasingly relied on by the Ottoman sultans in the 17th century as military expenditures rose. It was partly offset by compulsory state buying of grain at local market prices along the lines of march, so that it proved more a boon than a bane to the peasantry. This contrasted greatly with the European system of *contributions*.

Bedouin. Nomadic tribes originally of the Arabian desert, but after the expansion of Islam found across North Africa and into southern Iraq. While the majority of early Muslim rulers and generals were townsfolk from Mecca or Medina, most warriors of the first decades of Arab expansion were tough desert tribesmen, schooled in the *razzia* tactics and caravan warfare of the Arabian desert. Their style and strategy has often been compared to war at sea, where the deep desert provided refuge from more powerful infantry armies which could not penetrate it, while also offering opportunities for lightning strikes against high-value targets around its perimeter. In this they most closely resembled the Mongols, although the camel was nowhere near the quality of war animal that the Mongol grass-fed pony was. Archery from a camel's back was even more difficult than from horseback. Also, camels could not be made into a desert equivalent of *heavy cavalry* since they would not charge the way a trained *destrier* did. Bedouin instead fought as *dragoons*, riding to battle but dismounting for combat. In defense, camels took the Bedouin deep into the desert where neither horse cavalry nor infantry from plush riverine lands in Egypt or Iraq could follow.

Bedouin caught the fire of religious zeal when they converted to Islam in the 7th century. They joined Muhammad on the first *jihad*, conquering and converting pagan Arabia. Then they burst outward in one of the most explosive and lastingly influential campaigns of conquest in world history. Wherever possible, conquering Arab-Bedouin armies preferred to set up military bases where their barren desert refuge bordered on conquered agricultural lands. Of course, where a major city such as Cairo or Damascus fell it became a new Arab capital. Garrison towns of Bedouin military colonists grew from tent encampments into administrative centers of a vast empire, then into rich and prosperous cities (*amsār*). Such was the case with Basra in northern Iraq, Qomm in Iran, and Qaurawān in Tunisia, all centers of Islamic and Arab military power that were originally Bedouin military camps. Over time, Bedouin were assimilated by the more advanced urban populations they conquered. Traditional Bedouin ways of military and cultural life persisted in Arabia and deep inside other desert fringes such as the northern border of the Sahara. There, Bedouin skills remained finely honed by a climate unforgiving

of error. From there, religious revivals of a puritanical nature would sweep Bedouin mujahadeen out of the desert to assault coastal Muslims seen as grown lax in the faith. African Bedouin frequently came under the influence of desert *marabouts*, and warred with the coastal city-states of Africa. Later, they fiercely resisted European penetration of Tunisia, Tripoli, and Morocco.

beeldenstorm. See *Eighty Years' War*; *iconoclasm*.

beg. See *bey*.

Beggars (*"Gueux"*). See *Eighty Years' War*; *Margaret of Parma*; *Sea Beggars*.

Beijing, Fall of (1214). See *China*; *Mongols*.

Beijing, Fall of (1644). See *China*; *Ming Army*.

Bektashi Order. See *Bektaşi Order*.

***Bektaşi* Order.** An important dervish order founded by Hacci Bektash Veli. Moderate Bektashism was broadly tolerated by Ottoman sultans, and Bektashi troops served in the army alongside orthodox sunni and Christian soldiers. See also *Janissary Corps*; *Ottoman warfare*.

belatores. ''Men of war.'' The second class in the mature feudal worldview of three orders: clergy, nobles, and peasants. ''Belatores'' were great nobles and *knights*, men who lived for and from war.

beldar. Ottoman military laborers. Employed mainly in trench digging during sieges, they were civilians recruited in Anatolia (one from every 20 households) and used solely for military labor, not as fighting men. See also *lağimci*.

belfry. A moveable siege tower that could be rolled against a castle or town wall to permit storming. It was made of wood, usually with hide, lead, or copper shielding to block or impede arrows.

Belgium Nostrum. The idea of a single ''fatherland'' encompassing all 17 provinces of the Habsburg Netherlands. It did not survive the *Protestant Reformation* and *Eighty Years' War*.

Belgrade, Siege of (1456). See *Hunyadi, János*; *Muhammad II*.

Belgrade, Siege of (1521). See *Suleiman I*.

bellum hostile. A *just war* waged by a rightful, sovereign ruler. If proclaimed by right authority and recognized as such, no legal or moral impediment

barred his doing harm to the lives and property of enemy civilians (subjects of the enemy lord against whom the "bellum hostile" was declared and fought).

bellum justum. See *just war tradition*.

bellum se ipse alet. "War should pay for itself." A widely accepted principle holding that armies should sustain themselves to the highest degree possible by plunder. In countries with semi-representative bodies, usually controlled by the nobility, there was a corresponding belief that war was largely the king's business and that he should pay for it from royal revenues rather than new or general taxes. See also *attrition*; *chevauchée*; *contributions*; *logistics*; *war finance*.

Benburb, Battle of (1646). See *English Civil Wars*; *O'Neill, Owen Roe*.

Benevento, Battle of (1266). See *Saracen*.

Benin, Kingdom of. A West African city-state centered on the walled Edo city of Benin. In the 13th century (the precise date is unknown) Benin adopted a dynasty from the prestigious and ancient *Yoruba* city of Ife, to fill the position of "Oba," and settled into a stable period. In the mid-15th century it began to expand and sell prisoners as slaves to the Portuguese, who arrived in 1486, based on São Tomé and Principe. From 1520, Benin chose a policy of isolation from European traders. It remained insulated from Europe for nearly 200 years. Within its region it maintained trade and political relations with the Yoruba city-states, toward which it steadily expanded. By the end of the 16th century Benin governed most Edo as well as some Ibo and Yoruba within the Niger delta.

Berbers. Hamitic peoples of North Africa living along the Barbary Coast, and penetrating as well into the Sahara desert. Their peak influence in world history came when, united under the Almohads ruling from Marrakesh from the 12th century, they governed all the Maghreb and most of Spain. Their military was predominantly light cavalry who wore mail armor and spiked onion-helmets. They used javelins or thrusting spears, not *lances*. Their infantry were normally black slave soldiers armed with stabbing spears, slings, and bows. Their tactics were to swarm the enemy, overwhelming with numbers. However, the Christian *Reconquista* eroded this advantage as attacks by *heavy cavalry* routinely broke up the Muslim battle-order. See also *caliph*; *Granada*; *"holy war."*

Bergen-op-Zoom, Siege of (1622). See *Eighty Years' War*.

Bergerac, Peace of (September 17, 1577). See *French Civil Wars*.

Bergfreid. A type of early castle typical of the mountainous regions of Austria, Germany, Italy, and Switzerland. It was characterized by a watchtower rather than a *motte*, built on a highpoint.

Bernardines. See *Bernhard von Sachsen-Weimar*.

Bernard of Clairvaux (1090–1153). Cistercian Abbot. See also *Albigensian Crusade*; *Crusades*; *Knights Templar*.

Bernhard von Sachsen-Weimar (1604–1639). "Saxe-Weimar." Mercenary general. A minor noble without income, he became a mercenary at an early age and saw action in many of the key battles of the *Thirty Years' War*. He served *Frederick V* of the Palatinate first, losing at *Wiesloch* and *Wimpfen* in 1622, and *Stadtlohn* in 1623. Where other captains, such as *Graf von Mansfeld*, were greedy but dilatory and incompetent, Bernhard was ruthless and avaricious but at least kept his regiments together. He hired out to *Christian IV* in 1624, and *Gustavus Adolphus* in 1630. He was courageous at *First Breitenfeld* (1631), for which he reaped the reward of the bishoprics of Würzburg and Bamberg. He fought at *Lützen*, rallying the Swedes to victory after Gustavus was killed and personally capturing the Imperial artillery train. In command of the *League of Heilbronn* army, Bernhard and Horn were beaten at *First Nördlingen* (1634), losing 21,000 out of 25,000 men. The next year Bernhard allied with the French and campaigned in Alsace and northern Germany. He fought at *Rheinfelden* and took the key fortress of Breisach, in December 1638. When he died on July 18, 1639, of smallpox, his contract army (the "Bernardines" or "German brigade") was released to *Louis XIII*. Bernhard's generalship was spotty, but he was second only to *Albrecht von Wallenstein* as an entrepreneur of war. Both men enforced *contributions* on occupied territory more ruthlessly than any other field commander. See also *prisoners of war*.

Where other captains . . . were greedy but dilatory and incompetent, Bernhard was ruthless and avaricious, but at least kept his regiments together.

besagaws. Small, round pieces of *plate armor* that protected the underarms.

besonios. Raw recruits for the *Army of Flanders* trained by the Spanish in Italian garrisons before sending them up the *Spanish Road* to glory or to gory death.

Bestallungbrief. "Letter of appointment." A document issued to a mercenary captain laying out terms of payment and the number of men he was expected to recruit, and naming him or some other officer as the *Obrist* (colonel) of the *Landsknechte* company raised.

Bethlen, Gabriel (1580–1629). Transylvanian prince. A tolerant Protestant, he allied with *Friedrich V* against the Habsburgs. After the *White Mountain* (1620), he made peace with *Ferdinand II* and retained control of parts of

Hungary. Mansfeld tried to link with Bethlen in 1626, after losing at *Dessau Bridge*. Bethlen then confirmed his understanding with Ferdinand.

bevor. An armored collar worn to protect the chin and throat.

bey. Turkish: ''beg'' (''lord''). The term had three related meanings. Originally, it referred to semi-independent Turkic or Kurdish begs who ruled large parts of eastern Anatolia after the collapse of the Abbasid Caliphate. From this, it was later used for any provincial governor in the Ottoman Empire ruling a territory called a *Beylik*. The ''sanjak bey'' governed a sanjak, the main administrative unit of the Empire. A ''kahya bey'' acted as the field agent of the *Grand Vezier* in military and political affairs. More generally, a ''bey'' was the local ruler of any independent Muslim principality. The honorific was used in this sense throughout the *Maghreb*. In Tunis and Algiers the bey was formally, though not always actually, subordinate to the *dey*.

Beyliks. In its original meaning, this referred to minor Muslim (usually, Turkic) principalities that emerged in Anatolia after the collapse of the Abbasid caliphate, the defeat of the Crusader states, and the defeat and retreat of the Mongols. The westernmost Beyliks waged a prolonged frontier war with the declining *Byzantine Empire*. Further east, the Beyliks were steadily gobbled up by the expanding Ottomans. Later the term was applied to any Ottoman province governed by an autonomous official called a *bey*. See also *Piyadeğan militia*; *Yaya infantry*.

Bhutan. A mountain kingdom ruled from Tibet in the 16th century. Under Buddhist rule, it followed a policy of strict isolationism throughout this period.

Bicocca, Battle of (1522). See *La Bicocca, Battle of*.

bill. See *brown bill*; *gisarmes*; *halberd*; *staff-weapons*.

billhook. See *brown bill*.

birlin. A small oared warship used for raids and amphibious assaults in the isolated West Highlands and outer islands of Scotland. They were still in use into the 17th century. See also *galley*.

Biscuits, Battle of (1594). See *Nine Years' War*.

Bishops' War, First (1639). This bloodless war of maneuver was provoked by the effort of *Charles I* to impose episcopacy on Scotland, along with a Scottish Book of Common Prayer. Outraged, the Scots drafted a National Covenant and stripped bishops of all authority, while *Alexander Leslie* raised a *Covenanter* army and seized Edinburgh and other Royalist outposts. The king planned a

campaign to include an amphibious landing and tried to raise an Irish army, but it never mustered. Instead, about 15,000 English troops, mainly drawn from the *trained bands* moved to York under Arundel, an inept Catholic general favored by the Queen. Forward detachments of the two armies brushed near Kelso but no fight ensued there or the next day at Duns Law (June 5). Charles lost his nerve despite vastly greater numbers, and opened negotiations. This handed the Scots a strategic victory without the risk or sacrifice of battle. Meanwhile, wild Gordons routed a small Covenanter detachment at Turriff, the first bloodletting of the *English Civil Wars*.

Bishops' War, Second (1640–1641). *Charles I* again tried to raise an Irish army in 1640, to supplement pressed men from England he raised instead of the *trained bands*. However, *Alexander Leslie* recruited a *Covenanter* army of 20,000 "godly soldiers," officered by veteran Scots mercenaries. Leslie crossed the Tweed and took Newcastle hostage to the king's word before the English fully mobilized. The armies finally met at Newburn, where the English foot fled after losing several hundred men. With his army badly commanded and underfunded, Charles agreed to pay for upkeep of the Covenanter army and sought to seal the truce through elevation of Leslie and other Scots nobles to English peerages. His Irish army later entered the fray of the great Irish rebellion that began in 1641. See also *English Civil Wars*.

Suggested Reading: Mark Fissel, *The Bishops' Wars* (1994).

Black Bands. Mounted arquebusiers active in the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559).

Black Company. Bohemian mercenaries hired by King Mathias (1458–1490) of Hungary to supplement his *hussars* and artillery train.

Black Death. Repeated episodes of pandemic plague affected large areas of Eurasia over millennia. The "plague" was almost certainly a combination of bubonic plague (rat flea borne, and highly disfiguring), pneumonic plague (a more lethal variety, and because air-borne also the most infectious strain), and septicaemic plague (human flea borne, and a quick killer). Early records suggest it may first have struck in Mongolia in 46 C.E., wiping out over half the population. Other outbreaks, most probably of the "Black Death," devastated large parts of China between 312 and 468 C.E. A Mediterranean outbreak in the 4th century may have fatally undermined the western Roman Empire. In the mid-14th century these variants of plague combined to devastate much of Asia and Europe. The pandemic was not usually called the "Black Death" at the time. It was known as the "Great Plague" or the "Poor Plague" or simply as "The Plague," though in France it was called "le morte bleue." The disease most likely originated in Central Asia in the early 1330s, spreading in all directions from there. It may have arrived in China in 1331, where 9 of every 10 people in Hopei province died of some still unidentified epidemic. A plague pandemic was reported in China for 1353–1354. The

dislocation caused by these waves of plague destabilized China, compounding the distress of a dramatic shift in the course of the Yellow River in 1344 that killed more millions. The social pressures these events released underwrote a calamitous civil war that saw radical Buddhists, the *Red Turbans*, topple the Yuan dynasty and allowed a peasant, Zhu Yuanzhang, to found the Ming dynasty as the *Hongwu* (''Vast Military'') emperor. The plague may have halved China's population within just a few decades, dispiriting survivors and opening frontiers to deep raiding by Inner Asian nomads exquisitely organized for war.

The plague also became established in Inner Asia, doing its worst work in the towns and cities that straddled the main trade routes, notably parts of the old Silk Road. It was likely spread by itinerant merchants unknowingly carrying flea-infested rats hitching rides in grain bags, and by infected Tartar and Turkic invaders. It reached India in 1338. Even as it scourged the subcontinent it penetrated Iran. Moving directly west from Central Asia, an outbreak was reported in the Crimea in 1346, where it interrupted the Mongol siege of Caffa. From the Crimea it spread throughout the Mediterranean basin on merchant ships. It arrived in Europe by several routes, but certainly on Genoese galleys pulling from Caffa, their crews fleeing the infection and invading Tartars but in fact bringing the disease with them. Plague first broke out in Italy at Messina in October 1347. Three major centers of Mediterranean contagion then developed: Sicily, Genoa, and Venice (Milan was virtually untouched at first). The Black Death moved thence to Tunis and North Africa, on to Iberia, and up and down Italy. Everywhere, it hit coastal towns first and hardest, then migrated inland, along with the men who made their living from inland riverine commerce. It appears to have moved into Russia with infected crews arriving from the northwest via the sea, not overland from the Tartars. It came not by horse and rider, but inside fleas riding on rats aboard Baltic cogs and on plague ships from England, the Netherlands, and infected cities of the *Hanse*. It killed 200,000 in a late outbreak in Muscovy in 1570.

Mortality rates reached from 30 percent to 90 percent everywhere it appeared. Death might occur within 24 hours of the first outward signs of contagion, a speed which only heightened the terror. At least one-third of Europe's 25 million people died in the first outbreak (1347–1350). The populations of China, India, and Europe all declined intermittently but unrelentingly from fresh outbreaks during the next century. Fear gripped the healthy: suspected plague ships arriving in Genoa were driven away by clouds of flaming arrows fired by militia upon the desperate urging of terrified city-folk. Victims were viewed with almost as much revulsion as fear: as well as bringing death the plague was horribly disfiguring of beauty and dignity. Physicians offered no real aid, and survivors were usually so stunned and overwhelmed by the scale of loss and grief that charity and solace was rare. The old social custom for leprosy was revived: 40 days' quarantine on the first sign of infection, although this was difficult to enforce. Almost overnight the plague made arable land—the true coinage of the medieval economy—more plentiful, while sharply

curtailing available labor and thus driving higher wages and prices. Thus, inflation contributed its own evils to a sharp economic decline already underway from other 14th-century upheavals and torments such as the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453) and the *Reconquista*. The plague briefly interrupted those conflicts, in the former by killing more English and French in a passing summer than had killed each other in the prior 10 years. After its first wave, field armies were much smaller than a century before. And although the plague freed land, it killed off so many peasants and landlords and so reduced demand for foodstuffs in depopulated towns that marginal agricultural areas were left fallow or allowed to return to bog or forest.

The Black Death recurred in frequent but less virulent waves for 130 years, until resistance was built up among survivors. Even then, plague could bring catastrophe at a moment's notice, as it did in 1575–1577 and 1630–1631 in Venice where outbreaks killed one-third of the population; or Naples where it killed 300,000 in 1656; or the ''Great Plague of London'' in 1665; or from 1648 to 1652 and again from 1677 to 1685 in northern Spain, where it advanced that country's decline as a major economic and military power. During the *English Civil Wars* (1639–1651) outbreaks of plague in 1644 and 1645 decimated armies and cities on both sides. This lingering threat of plague lent a sense of psychological precariousness to private and public affairs that surely contributed to the general breakdown of religious authority in Europe that anticipated the great religious disturbances of the 16th–17th centuries. The plague underlay abortive revolutions, peasant uprisings, civil wars, and economic, social, and millenarian-like religious unrest, as many concluded that the Black Death was the ''flagellum Dei''—the ''scourge of God''—sent to punish Mankind for its wickedness. But since the plague scourged godly and wicked alike its work among men raised doubts about the moral standing of the Church and even about the Christian worldview. The utter devastation of normal life that plague brought encouraged excesses of both piety and hedonism, dislocations experienced from Ireland to Byzantium, from Italy to Scandinavia, and throughout the Middle East and North Africa. In some countries peasants and townsfolk were aroused to murderous rage against scapegoat populations. In the Swiss Confederation and Germany, Christian mobs murdered thousands of Jews with a ferocity and zealous hate not seen again in Germany until the 20th century, not even during the anti-Semitic outbursts of the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). Some rulers tried to stop such persecutions but lacked the means; others encouraged the pogroms. Many Christians in Germany also turned to mass flagellation to expiate the weight of sin thought to have caused this terrible punishment. Elsewhere, those called ''heretics'' or accused of *witchcraft* were targeted and killed. Many now openly said what previously only a few had dared to think: the Church, too, perhaps even especially, had provoked God's righteous anger with scandalous misbehavior by the clergy and endemic corruption, including selling indulgences in this life as a guarantee of reduced suffering in the afterlife. This established an important intellectual legacy of anti-clericalism that blossomed into ''heresy'' in Bohemia, Germany, and

England in the 14th century, and to some degree underlay the later religious upheavals and wars attending the *Protestant Reformation*.

Muslims in general took a harder attitude than Christians (or Hindus) against quarantine or other ''ungodly'' efforts to deny the apparent will of Allah to use plague to separate the wicked from the good. In the long run this weakened Muslim regimes, which were more urban and hence more susceptible to the spread of pandemics than Balkan Christian or Hindu or other rural populations they governed. Also, by decimating Mongol, Uzbek, Tartar, and other nomad populations of the Eurasian Steppe which had a lesser ability to recover population losses, the Black Death opened the way for the settled civilizations of Russia, Iran, and China to expand into, and finally control, the great grasslands of Eurasia. That reversed a trend of world migratory and military history several millennia old. The plague subsided in Europe partly because new construction techniques eliminated thatch roofing as a nesting place for plague rats. It was eliminated only in the 18th century when an invasion of Europe by non-plague-bearing grey house rats helped squeeze out the last dormant bacillus clusters. In China and India, however, in times of war or famine especially, major outbreaks of plague occurred as late as the 1890s: an outbreak in Bombay in 1898 may have killed six million. In Egypt there was a significant outbreak as late as the 1940s. See also *Council of Trent*; *Crusades*; *Falkirk, Battle of*; *Gibraltar*; *Hanse*; *Hongwu emperor*; *Reconquista*; *Red Turbans*; *Teutonic Knights, Order of*.

. . . many concluded that the Black Death was the ''flagellum Dei''—the ''scourge of God''—sent to punish Mankind for its wickedness.

Suggested Reading: John Kelly, *The Great Mortality* (2005); William H. McNeill, *Plagues and Peoples* (1977; 1998); Philip Ziegler, *The Black Death* (1969).

Black Guard. See *Landsknechte*.

Black Legend. Iberian and Latin American historians have long debated the character of Spanish government in Europe and the fundamental nature of Spanish colonial rule. The ''Black Legend'' refers to Spain's reputation among those historians, mainly classical liberals, who condemned Spanish civilization and government as especially oppressive, backward, and obscurantist, even by the standards of lingering Medievalism and early modern history and colonialism elsewhere. The principal contribution to the Black Legend was the *Inquisition*, notorious for its corruption, repression of conscience, torture and inspired terror, and burning of books and people (*auto de fe*). The Black Legend was also advanced by English Protestant historians who wrote about the great war with Spain from a nationalist and Protestant perspective. Also contributing was the widespread Protestant perception that the policies of *Charles V* and *Philip II* were driven by a core ambition to restore a single Catholic empire, by any means, including deliberately sending ruthless generals such as the *Duke of Alba* to slaughter Protestants in the Netherlands. The *Spanish Fury* in Antwerp also advanced the legend. With regard to Spain's

colonies, the picture was attended by portrayal of pre-colonial Indian political and social life as pacific and idyllic, which was far from the truth concerning the *Inca* or the *Aztec*, at the least. The converse propaganda produced by Spanish and Catholic historians was a ''White Legend'' which stressed the benefits of the *Pax Hispanica*, and the supposed mildness of conditions of slavery in New Spain as compared to Brazil or the English slave colonies of the Caribbean and North America.

Black Prince (1330–1376). Edward, Prince of Wales. At age 16 his father, *Edward III*, put him in command of the English right flank at *Crécy* (August 26, 1346). When the young prince asked for reinforcements his father declined, supposedly saying ''Let the boy earn his spurs.'' In 1355 the Black Prince led a bloody *chevauchée* from Bordeaux to the Mediterranean Sea, burning hundreds of towns and villages in a wide swath of destruction and round trip of 900 km in just two months. The Black Prince won a victory for England at *Poitiers* (1356), where he captured and held for ransom the French king, Jean II. He took his father's infantry tactics into Iberia, where he used them to win a victory for *Pedro the Cruel* at *Nájera* (1367). In 1370 he carried out an atrocity in Limoges, slaughtering 3,000 civilians. Late in his father's reign, the Black Prince championed the clerical faction in a growing quarrel among the English elites over the place of the Church in national life, royal revenues, and papal authority. He never ruled as Edward IV because he predeceased his father by a year. His son, Richard II, reigned from 1377 to 1399. See also *Brétigny, Treaty of*; *Jacquerie*.

Suggested Reading: H. Hewitt, *The Black Prince's Expedition of 1355–1357* (1958).

Black Riders (*Schwartzenreiter*). German *Reiter* cavalry who wore all black armor. They were active in the war between *Charles V* and the *Schmalkaldic League*.

Blackwater River, Battle of (1598). See *Nine Years' War*.

Blake, Robert (1599–1657). Parliamentary soldier in the *English Civil Wars*. He was a talented tactician and leader, winning several early defensive battles against superior Royalist forces. In 1649 he was appointed ''General at Sea.'' He subsequently proved equally adept in naval warfare as he was on land, against the Royalists and later in the Republic's several wars with the Netherlands.

blockade. Sea blockades, in the modern sense, were beyond the capabilities of this era. The most that was assayed was occupation of small harbors, such as by Ottoman galleys during the *sieges of Malta*. More common were river blockades in densely populated areas like Germany and the Netherlands. On land, the small size of many castles meant that, unlike towns, they were susceptible to circumvallation and blockade. Land blockades sometimes deployed a

''counter-castle'' (''siege bastilles'') or small fort used to intercept commercial traffic, but the main technique was starvation-induced despair. This meant burning all crops, hamlets, and villages surrounding a castle or town. See also *convoy*; *Danzig*; *Eighty Years' War*; *freedom of the seas*; *Hanse*; *Invincible Armada*; *Jeanne d'Arc*; *Leicester, Earl of*; *Macao*; *Normans*; *Olivares, conde-duque de*; *Oliwa, Battle of*; *Rhodes, Siege of (1522–1523)*; *Sea Beggars*; *siege warfare*; *spice trades*; *tribute*; *True Pure Land*; *Twelve Years' Truce*.

blockship. Any vessel, though for obvious reasons usually confined to valueless, leaky, unseaworthy ships, sunk on purpose with the intent to block a channel or obstruct traffic in a harbor. See also *scuttle*.

Blois, Treaties of (1504–1505). Louis XII (1462–1515) continued the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559) started by his predecessor, the reckless Charles VIII (1470–1498), who invaded Italy in 1494. Following breakdown of a Franco–Spanish agreement to partition Naples, fighting resumed in 1502. The French suffered serious reverses and while they held on to Milan and Genoa, by these treaties they were forced to agree that Naples should go to *Ferdinand II*, who already controlled Sicily.

Blore Heath, Battle of (1459). See *Wars of the Roses*.

blunderbuss. Dutch: ''Blonder bus'' (''thunder gun''). The term was used as early as 1353 in reference to a variety of early hand cannon in the Netherlands. By the mid-17th century it was reserved to short-barreled, large-bore guns with a flared muzzle—either round or oval—which permitted fast reloading. They came in musket and pistol types, either of which could fire several small balls or jagged metal fragments at once for a powerful shotgun effect at close ranges. This made the blunderbuss an ideal weapon for close defense against tightly packed infantry on land, or in boarding actions at sea where fighting was always intimate. Some armies and navies built large blunderbusses that approached artillery calibers. Smaller versions were used by couriers, customs officials, and the first mail deliverers.

boarding. Rushing aboard an enemy ship to which one's own was grappled, lashed, or bound, to engage in hand-to-hand fighting in an effort to gain control of the enemy's ship. Usually carried out by shipboard infantry (marines), this was a costly and risky tactic. On land, the same tactic of rushing a breach in a defended position was called *storming*. See also *castles, at sea*; *Invincible Armada*; *Lepanto, Battle of (October 7, 1571)*.

boatswain. Originally, a minor naval officer responsible for navigation of a ship. On later, specialized warships the boatswain was generally responsible for overseeing the ship's rigging, tackle, and sails, and the crewmen who worked them.

boatswain's mate. A petty naval officer who assisted the *boatswain* in his duties, and apprenticed for his position.

Böblingen, Battle of (1525). See *German Peasant War*.

Bocskay Rebellion (1604–1606). See *Bethlen, Gabriel*; *Hungary*; *Rudolf II*.

bodkin. An arrow fitted with a stiff, straight metal point to better penetrate *plate* armor. It was lighter and flew straighter, at a lower trajectory yet farther, than the earlier *broadhead* arrow. The old barbed broadhead was now reserved for use against cavalry, to gash and bring down horses. See also *longbow*.

Bogomil heresy. See *Bulgaria*.

Bohemia. See *Counter-Reformation*; *"Defenestration of Prague" (1419)*; *"Defenestration of Prague" (1618)*; *Ferdinand II, Holy Roman Emperor*; *Hussite Wars*; *Maximilian I, of Bavaria*; *Protestant Reformation*; *Thirty Years' War*; *Tilly, Johann*; *Wallenstein, Albrecht von*; *White Mountain, Battle of*.

Bohemian Brethren. A small reform religious community in Bohemia. Although influenced by Calvinism, it had roots in the older and native Bohemian *Taborite* movement.

Boisot, Louis (c.1530–1576). *Sea Beggar* admiral. Given command by *William of Orange*, he smashed a Spanish fleet at Sud-Beveland in early 1574, severely harming Spanish interests and military prestige. He fought his way into Leyden, across fields flooded by broken dikes, to lift the Spanish siege later that year and bring herring and white bread to the starving population. In 1576 he failed to lift the siege of Zierikzee, where he was killed.

bolt. A thick-shafted short arrow with a diamond-shaped iron or steel head fired from a *crossbow*; also called a *quarrel*. Most were made from ash or yew, as were most bows. Early bolts had wood fins; others were fitted with feathers. Very large iron bolts with large wooden fletchings were fired from *springalds* and could kill several men at once.

bomba. See *fire-lance*.

bombard. "Stone throwing engine." The term "bombard" is somewhat arbitrary, but generally referred to the largest guns of the medieval period. They were usually breech-loaders, using removable "*pots de fer*" containing powder, wadding, and a stone cannonball. Some balls thrown by these guns were gigantic, so large they were cut at the site by masons rather than transported with the bombard. Several were in use over many decades, some for centuries. Bombards were mainly used in sieges during the 14th–15th centuries. Most were made by the *hoop-and-stave* method rather than cast, although a few were

cast in two pieces, barrel and breech. The biggest bombards were so powerful they could hurl stones three kilometers. This was so impressive, and really big guns so rare, that bombards were given distinctive noms de guerre and passed down from emperors and kings to successor princes in royal wills and charters. The ''King's Daughter'' was a famous English bombard. ''Mons Meg,'' weighing in at 15,000 pounds of iron, was ordered by Philip the Good for Burgundy's arsenal in 1449. ''Dulle Griete'' (''Mad Margot'') was the bombard of Ghent, while ''Chriemhilde'' served Nuremberg. At 40 tons, the largest stone-throwing bombard ever made, the ''Tsar-Pushka,'' was built by Muscovy to frighten the Tatars. It was never fired.

Very large bombards were built by *renegade* gunsmiths for the Ottoman sultans. These were so heavy that 60 oxen were needed to move one on dozens of carts, before which 200–300 men leveled the roadway along which they moved. In action, they were served by gun crews of dozens and closely guarded by 200 men. The Ottomans had not only the greatest armory of big guns but the most numerous. The most extraordinary was a bombard called ''Elipolos'' (''City-Taker''), which could hurl a stone ball of 300 kilograms some 1.5 kilometers. In 1453 this gun, and several sister pieces, was used to reduce the walls of *Constantinople*. Bombards were also built in India. The Mughal bombard ''Raja Gopal'' weighed an extraordinary 40 metric tons of iron. Only by water transport on barges were such guns manageable, which greatly restricted their utility at any distance from the waterway. The lack of gun carriages carried over to the battlefield, where bombards were raised on mounds of sloped earth or piles of logs. Angle of fire was adjusted by adding or removing earth, or hammering or removing wedges under the logs. By the mid-15th century some bombards had lifting rings attached to facilitate repositioning on stepped firing blocks. By the mid-16th century bombards were outmoded, replaced by smaller but more powerful cast cannon using corned powder and firing iron shot. Yet, as late as 1807 the Ottomans fired some ancient bombards against enemy ships in the Straits. More generally, the late medieval bombard survived into the early modern period redefined as the *mortar*. See also *artillery*; *artillery towers*; *gunpowder weapons*; *invincible generalissimo*; *Muhammad II*.

The Mughal bombard ''Raja Gopal'' weighed an extraordinary 40 metric tons of iron.

bombardetta. ''lombarda.'' An older Spanish wrought-iron breech-loader, used mainly on armed merchant ships. The English term for similar guns was ''port-piece.''

bombardier (1). A gunner working any of the various types of artillery employing gunpowder.

bombardier (2). An early (c.1420) infantry weapons specialist who threw primitive, usually two-handed, bombs or grenades.

bonaventure. See *masts*.

Bondetal. The Swedish system of raising armies via direct peasant levies. See also *Swedish Army*.

bonfire of the vanities. See *Savonarola, Girolamo*.

Bonnets Rouges. ''Red caps.'' A self-descriptive term by a band of a thousand armed peasants who rose in 1593 in Burgundy to prevent troops crossing their lands during the climactic period of the *French Civil Wars*. See also *club men*; *Tard-Avisés*.

boom. See *spar*.

booty. Moveable enemy property which was claimed as part of the spoils of war. Most prized were portables such as gold, coin, or jewels, but armor, weapons, and warhorses were considered nearly equally valuable. See also *Articles of War*; *ashigaru*; *chevauchée*; *contributions*; *Ecorcheurs*; *Free Companies*; *guerre couverte*; *guerre mortelle*; *logistics*; *plunder*; *ronin*; *routiers*.

Bornholm, Battle of (August 1457). *Danzig*, a major port of the *Hanse*, took a lead role in the ''*War of the Cities*'' (1454–1466), a revolt within Prussia to break free of the overlordship of the *Teutonic Knights*. Danzig built a war fleet on orders from its ally and suzerain, *Casimir IV* of Poland. Supplemented by hired *privateers*, these warships harassed Dutch and Danish shipping plying the Baltic trade with the Teutonic Knights. In August 1457, three Danziger ships met a Danish-Teutonic fleet off the island of Bornholm and, in a battle that lasted on-and-off for nearly two weeks, the Danziger fleet defeated at least 16 enemy warships.

Bornu. An independent West African emirate under the Saifawa dynasty, located near Lake Chad during the African middle ages. It traded with *Kanem* and the *Hausa* states, and was a terminus of the trans-Saharan trade route which led to Tripoli. It later migrated south of the lake to evade pressure from Kanem—itself collapsing and migrating to the southwest—and to conduct slave raids in southern sudan to feed the ancient trade with North Africa. Its armored knights resisted a Kanem migration in the 16th century. They repeatedly raided deep into Hausa lands to the south, and warred with the *Tuareg* to the north. After the fall of *Songhay*, Bornu was the largest state in sub-Saharan Africa. It faced pressure from Bulala, which had occupied much of old Kanem in the 15th–16th centuries, and later also from *Bagirmi*, another cavalry power of central sudan. Bornu reconquered much of old Kanem from the Bulala in the late 16th century, forcing the Bulala to accept tributary status. Bornu passed its peak during the 17th century, falling well behind the Hausa states in military capabilities.

Boroughbridge, Battle of (March 16, 1322). Fought during a baronial revolt against Edward II. The Royalists successfully deployed dismounted men-at-arms and longbowmen to unhorse and defeat the rebel noblemen and their knights and retainers. Boroughbridge was one of a string of early battles where infantry defeated *heavy cavalry*, altering the tactical balance of military power in Europe.

Bosnia. This mountainous province was ruled by Catholic Croatians in the Middle Ages (12th–15th centuries), then was briefly an independent duchy before becoming a province of the Ottoman Empire, 1463–1878.

Bostancilar. ''Gardeners.'' The elite guard of Ottoman sultans.

Bosworth, Battle of (1485). See *Wars of the Roses*.

boulevard. A late addition to castle and town fortifications, replacing the *barbican* with an advance work that protected the gate(s). This permitted enfilade fire along external moats or dry ditches.

Boulogne, Siege of (August–September 1544). In alliance with *Charles V* against France, *Henry VIII* took an English army to besiege Boulogne, which surrendered after two months (September 14, 1544). Five days later Charles made a separate peace with France without consulting Henry. In 1550, England sold Boulogne back to the French.

Bourbon, Charles, duc de (1490–1527). Constable of France (1515). He quarreled with *Francis I* and conspired with *Charles V*. When his treason was discovered he fled to the Empire and took up arms with the Habsburgs. In 1524 he invaded France from Italy in an effort to depose Francis. He fought also at *Pavia* (1525). He was killed in the Imperial assault on Rome.

Bourbon dynasty. The branch of the Capetian dynasty which ascended the throne of France in the person of *Henri IV*, and held it until overthrown during the French Revolution (1792). Its ancient rival was the *House of Valois*. See also *French Civil Wars*.

Bouvines, Battle of (1214). See *routiers*.

bow(ing). Handling and angling a ship's gun through a gun port so that a cannon normally mounted and fired broadside could track and fire forward, in the direction of the bow.

bowlines. See *rigging*; *sails*.

bows. See *arrows*; *crossbow*; *longbow*; *reflex bow*; *Turkish bow*.

bowsprit. See *sails*.

boyars (Russia). Originally, the military retinue of princes of Muscovy. By the 15th century, a noble *servitor class* below the rank of prince. Used especially about those hereditary servitors residing in and around Moscow. They had the right to representation in the Boyar Duma. See also *strel'sty*; ''*Time of Troubles*.''

boyars (Ruthenia). A Lithuanian petty service class. Ruthenian boyars did not enjoy the social status, wealth, or political influence of Russian boyars.

boyars (Ukraine). See *Poland*; *Ukraine*.

boys. See *Acemi Oğlan*; *beat the drum*; *Black Prince*; *Cortés, Hernán*; *Devşirme sys-sirme system*; *eagle knight*; *ensign*; *esquire*; *Mamlūks*; *revolution in military affairs*; *ship's boys*; *slavery and war*; *St. Augustine massacre*; *taifa states*; *top*; *tribute*; *uniforms*.

bracer. A leather covering for the left wrist of an archer protecting against the snap of the bow string.

bracers. *Plate* armor for the arms. They were comprised of ''rerebraces'' covering the upper arms (originally, the back side only); ''vambraces'' for the lower arms; and ''spaudlers'' to cover the shoulders.

Braddock Down, Battle of (1643). See *English Civil Wars*; *Hopton, Ralph*.

Branxton, Battle of (1513). See *Flodden Field, Battle of*.

brayette. *Mail* underpants, worn beneath even fully articulated suit armor to protect the groin.

Brazil. Discovered for Europe by Pedro Cabral, coastal Brazil fell into the Portuguese sphere of influence under terms of the *Line of Demarcation*. At first, sparse settlements cleaved to the coastline, planted there to support escort ships protecting the Portuguese merchants returning from India around Africa. The main threat was French *privateers*, a naval contest that continued to the end of the 16th century. In 1532, Lisbon decided to encourage more settlement in order to forestall encroachment. The native population, mainly Tupí-speaking Indians, was too politically divided and heavily engaged in intertribal warfare to effectively resist. The various Tupí peoples were killed mainly by disease, though some were exterminated deliberately. All were overrun, with survivors pushed into the interior of the Amazon basin in a slow but steady process that covered some 200 years. In 1549 a local government was established by royal decree, at Salvador. In 1570 the devout

Catholic King Sebastião decreed all Indians free. Exceptions were made for cannibals or rebels, which provided the excuse needed for planters to keep most Indians in slavery despite the king and the efforts of the *Society of Jesus*. However, there were not enough Indians left alive to fill the forced labor needs of a growing colony. Therefore, white settlers started importing African slaves in larger numbers to work on plantations growing sugar, a new crop imported from the Caribbean. African slaves were first imported in 1538, when only about 2,000 settlers and traders were in Brazil. The number of African slaves thereafter grew rapidly. During Portugal's ''Spanish Captivity'' (1580–1640), Portuguese coastal settlements in Brazil were targeted by Dutch and English privateers. In 1624, marines of the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC) invaded Brazil, but were repulsed by the settler militia. A WIC fleet returned in force and captured Recife after a bloody battle in 1630. Dutch settlers arrived, and skirmished constantly with local Portuguese. At one point, the Dutch controlled 2,000 miles of Brazilian coastline. When Portugal reasserted its independence from Spain in 1640, Lisbon and Amsterdam became uneasy allies. This new geopolitical reality in Europe abated fighting in Brazil, but did not end it: the local Dutch were not defeated (driven into Surinam) until 1654, and then mainly by Brazilian militia rather than Portuguese soldiers. See also *Eighty Years' War*; *Hendrik, Frederik*.

breach. A gap made in a defensive wall by mining or artillery.

Breda, Siege of (1625). See *Eighty Years' War*; *Maurits of Nassau*; *Spínola, Ambrogio di*.

breech. The rear end of the bore of a gun that held the charge and *shot*. In *muzzle-loaders* the breech was the inner chamber at the rear of the gun. Early breech-loaders had detachable chambers, roughly cylindrical in shape, which were pre-loaded with powder and shot then wedged into place for firing. However, the seal was never airtight and this reduced reliability and range. Some breech-loaders were screwed into place, but heat from ignition of the prior shot often expanded the thread so that the gun could not be reloaded until the metal cooled, which might take several hours. Breech-loaders were slowly phased out in favor of muzzle-loaders as the *hoop-and-stave* method of building cannon was displaced by improved technology that permitted casting of guns in single pieces. This occurred along with invention of *corned gunpowder* which raised firing pressures beyond what hoop-and-stave guns could handle. Muskets were actually welded shut at the breech to prevent explosive gases erupting into the eyes and searing the face of the musketeer.

breeching. Ropes attaching a naval gun to the side of the ship to control its recoil and movement.

breech-loader. See *breech*.

Bregenz, Battle of (1408). See *Appenzell Wars*.

breidex. A Viking-style broad axe. See *axes*.

Breitenfeld, First (September 17, 1631). A major victory for the Swedish Army under *Gustavus Adolphus* over the Imperial Army and the army of the *Catholic League* commanded by *Johann Tilly*. It was the largest battle of the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). Gustavus was looking for a fight. He needed to shore up shaky German alliances by proving to cautious Protestant princes that his army could hold its own in battle against the immense forces of the Habsburgs of Austria and Spain and the Catholic states of southern Germany. He got his wish at Breitenfeld, northwest of Leipzig. His artillery train of 70 small but highly mobile and rapid-firing field guns was under the able command of *Lennart Torstensson*. The Swedish army of 24,000 was supported by 18,000 coerced Saxons and troops of the *Leipziger Bund*. These were on the Swedish left flank, commanded by the timid Elector *Johann Georg*. Gustavus faced 35,000 Spanish on loan to *Ferdinand II*. Tilly's *tercios* were supported by Bavarians, Croats, and others from the Catholic League. He had 30 big but immobile guns: the Catholic guns were large 24-pounders, not true field artillery. They required teams of 24 horses each to tow and an additional dozen or more draught animals to pull carts burdened with ammunition and casks of black powder. Once emplaced, it was almost impossible to shift these behemoths even if the battle drifted out of range. Torstensson placed his highly mobile 3-pounders in batteries in front of his infantry. These true field pieces were served by crews of two men, and could be swung around or moved with speed and ease by a pair of horses. Gustavus had also integrated gunners into his army: he did not depend on civilian specialists for hire as did the Catholic army. Highly trained, the Swedish gunners supported equally well-drilled musketeers and achieved a rate of fire that may have exceeded that of their enemies by three-to-one. Gustavus also set blocks of infantry between his cavalry, so that each arm supported and steadied the other two. Tilly positioned his army in standard formation: solid blocks of infantry at the center, with two cavalry wings. His artillery was at his center-right in front of his infantry.

Torstensson opened the fight, peppering the Imperial cavalry with accurate fire from his forward field guns. This seems to have provoked *Graf zu Pappenheim* to charge with one wing of Imperial cavalry, but Swedish musketeers cut down the Imperial horse. Swedish light cavalry counterattacked and drove Pappenheim's cuirassiers from the field. On Gustavus' left Imperial cavalry under Count Fürstenberg had attacked upon seeing Pappenheim move. Unlike the Swedes on the right, after just a few salvoes the Saxons wavered, then ran, leaving their artillery to be overrun. Johann Georg also galloped off in fright, tending to neither the exposed flank of his ally nor to his own men. The suddenly exposed Swedes held fast, articulating their flexible infantry line to meet the onrushing Imperial horse, and blasted away at the surprised

cavalrymen—who had expected to roll up an exposed flank—with heavy musket fire supported by their light field cannon, which had also repositioned and now blasted away with grapeshot at intimate ranges. The Imperials fell back under withering fire while taking heavy casualties. The Swedes rushed forward and recovered the Saxon cannon which Fürstenberg's cavalry had overrun but was forced to leave behind. As the Imperials also neglected to spike the guns, the Swedes turned them around and fired into what was now the enemy's exposed flank. Then the Swedes again articulated their line, moving with a tactical speed the clumsy tercios simply could not match. Thus, they enfiladed the Spaniards (and Walloons and Croats) and poured musket fire into exposed ranks and files from both front and side. Meanwhile, some Swedish cavalry maneuvered to the rear of the tercios, cutting at their back ranks with sabers or stabbing with lances. The fighting went on for seven hours, with the Swedes tearing up the Imperial tercios with musket and artillery fire. Gustavus personally led his Finnish cavalry reserve (about 1,000 horse) in a fierce charge against the Spanish, already bled white by his artillery and badly exposed by the earlier flight of their cavalry. Many were crushed or trampled to death by comrades as panic set in and the tercio ranks finally broke. Tilly was wounded thrice, in the neck, chest, and arm, and taken by his bodyguards from the field.

Casualty estimates vary, but as many as 12,000 Habsburg–Catholic League troops were left dead or dying . . .

Casualty estimates vary, but as many as 12,000 Habsburg–Catholic League troops were left dead or dying on the field, to just 2,000 lost by Gustavus (and two-thirds of those were allied troops, not Swedish). Another 6,000 Imperials were taken prisoner, along with all the heavy Imperial artillery and 120 regimental and company standards. That represented two-thirds losses for an Imperial Army previously undefeated in battle with Protestant forces. The victory, the first major success by the Protestant side in 12 years of fighting, opened the way for Gustavus to move west or south. This was critical, as he had eaten out his original base and resupply areas in Pomerania and Brandenburg. First Breitenfeld scattered the surviving Habsburg and Catholic troops. Gustavus failed to pursue them, but that was largely due to the more pressing need he had of bringing his own army into fat new lands from which it could feed. After the battle, the Catholic position in north Germany, the Rhineland, and parts of southern Germany, utterly collapsed. The next year, Gustavus invaded Bavaria, occupied Munich, and threatened Vienna. The more general consequence of Breitenfeld was discrediting of the old tactics of ''push of pike'' by infantry squares in favor of more mobility and greater firepower, a lesson read and applied all over Europe.

Suggested Reading: Fletcher Pratt, *Battles that Changed History* (1956).

Breitenfeld, Second (November 2, 1642). Swedish Field Marshal *Lennart Torstensson* besieged Leipzig with 20,000 men, intent on pushing Saxony out of the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). Arrival of a larger Imperial force, under

Archduke Leopold Wilhelm, brother of *Ferdinand III*, and *Piccolomini*, lifted the siege. Leopold then vigorously pursued Torstensson as he withdrew six miles to Breitenfeld. The battle began with an Imperial artillery bombardment intended to cover a cavalry charge on the left. But the Swedish cavalry did not wait to be killed by whirling chain or solid shot: it charged, catching the Imperial horse in the flank. As Leopold's cavalry fled in broken disorder, Torstensson wheeled left to attack enemy infantry pressing hard on the Swedish infantry at the center. These Imperials also wilted, leaving only cavalry on Leopold's right and that, too, was soon engulfed by the Swedes. Those Imperial troops who did not die or fall wounded, or spur their horses to flight, soon surrendered. About 5,000 Imperials were killed and an equal number taken prisoner. Swedish losses were light. Imperial fortunes never recovered from this defeat, the military nadir for the Habsburg cause in the Thirty Years' War.

Brentford, Battle of (1642). See *English Civil Wars*.

Brest, Union of. See *Union of Brest*.

***bretasche*.** A wooden screen used to protect skirmishers, archers, and others engaged in *siege warfare*.

Brétigny, Treaty of (1360). This treaty ended the first phase of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453) in France, though fighting continued in Brittany to 1364 and broke out in Castile in 1365. It was forced on the French by the capture of Jean II (''The Good,'' 1319–1364) by the *Black Prince* at *Poitiers* (1356). Also contributing was a sorrowful *chevauchée* in 1359–1360, in which an English army cut a swath of destruction many miles wide from Calais to Reims, through the heart of Burgundy, and on to the suburbs of Paris. Finally, the French monarchy was faced with internal fears and challenges born of the *Jacquerie* of 1358 and, more important, virtual secession of several provinces under powerful barons. France had had enough of war for the moment, and agreed to a huge ransom for Jean II (three million ''livres tournais''), gave most of the Aquitaine as an independent fief to the Black Prince, and surrendered nearly a third of France to English sovereignty in a new ''Gascony'' that was vastly enlarged by territory taken from neighboring provinces. The treaty brought formal peace with England but not real peace within France: disbandment by both armies of common troops and thousands of mercenaries led to formation of over 100 *Free Companies*, some of mixed French and English troops, who moved through the land taking or burning whatever they wished. More fighting took place in Brittany and Normandy and along the border of English Languedoc. The larger war between England and France broke out again in 1369. See also *routiers*; *War of the Breton Succession*.

Breton Succession, War of (1341–1365). A war for control of Brittany fought within the larger context of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). It

was sparked when the duke of Brittany died without a clear heir. England's *Edward III* backed one candidate, John de Montfort, while France supported the claim of Charles of Blois. The first phase left England in control of Brest, which it held from 1346 to 1362 and from 1372 to 1397, securing lines of supply and trade with Gascony. The fighting in Brittany was intermittent, with only a single set-piece battle at Auray (1364). During that clash Charles of Blois was killed. The fate of Brittany was settled the next year when France recognized Montfort's claim in the Treaty of Guérande.

brevet. A royal decree bestowing some privilege. Brevets conceding limited military rights to the Huguenots were key to the short-term success of the *Edict of Nantes*.

Brielle, Battle of (April 1, 1572). See *Brill, Battle of*.

brig (1). A military prison, especially if on a ship.

brig (2). See *brigantine* (2).

brigade. A basic infantry formation of the 15th and 16th centuries, of varying size. In the 17th century standardized brigades were formed modeled on the Dutch system of *Maurits of Nassau*, in which four battalions or regiments formed a single brigade. This cut Dutch battlefield deployment time in half, or even to a quarter that of other armies: Hans Delbrück suggested that the Dutch could deploy 2,000 men in under half an hour, where opponents could deploy 1,000 in no less than an hour. *Gustavus Adolphus* also adopted a brigade system, which allowed Swedish armies to articulate their lines to cover open flanks or otherwise adjust to battle conditions. His brigades had four squadrons each, with three forming an arrow-head formation and the fourth in reserve. Each brigade was supported by nine regimental field pieces. See also *First Breitenfeld*.

brigandine. See *brigantine* (2).

brigantine (1). Also "brigandine." A type of armored jacket or "coat of plates" made from overlapping plates of armor sewn onto a leather or canvas vest. Commonly worn in land battles and sea actions.

brigantine (2). A small 16th-century oared warship, two-masted and square-rigged on the foremast. *Hernán Cortés* built 14 brigantines which his men launched from the shore of Lake Texcoco. See also *Tenochtitlán, Second Siege of*.

Brill (Brielle), Battle of (April 1, 1572). In early 1572 the *Sea Beggars* were denied use of English harbors where they had been based since 1568. In search of a safe harbor, a fleet of 28 Beggar ships (*galleys*, *vlieboots*, and

cromsters) carrying 600 ''Gueux'' entered the Scheldt estuary and anchored off Brill on Walcheren Island. Beggar marines took the town—the garrison was absent, guarding the border with France—then scoured and burned all Catholic churches. The Spanish counterattacked with small boats, but these were broadsided out of the water with much loss of life. Five days later the Sea Beggars were invited into Flushing, on the Scheldt. Major risings followed in the towns of Zeeland and Holland, with Spanish garrisons killed or expelled. The Sea Beggars secured most of Walcheren by the end of April, establishing a secure haven for supporters of *William the Silent* and the rebellion. This marked a definitive shift from small-scale rebellion to the full-scale warfare of the ''Great Revolt,'' or *Eighty Years' War*.

British Army. Strictly speaking, there was no ''British Army'' prior to the Act of Union of 1707, though a certain ''Britishness'' existed from the union of the crowns under *James I/VI* in 1604 and proclamation of the title ''Great Britain.'' The main outlines of the English military system are covered here under *English armies*. See also *Edward III*; *English Civil Wars*; *Hundred Years' War*; *Ireland*; *New Model Army*; *Scottish Wars*; *Wars of the Roses*.

broadhead arrow. An arrow tipped with wide (broad) and angled head that ripped gaping wounds in flesh. After invention of the *bodkin* they were used mainly to bring down horses in a cavalry charge, so that their riders might be killed as they turtled on the ground.

broadside. This term had several meanings. At its simplest, it referred to the broad side of a ship, as opposed to the prow or stern. From this, it was used in reference to an array of guns along the broad side of a ship. Lastly, it meant firing all the guns along the broad side of a ship at the same time. Ships in this period would sometimes steer in a figure-eight pattern so that guns along one side could be reloaded while firing from the other broadside. Some historians consider the development of broadside artillery and tactics to constitute a *revolution in military affairs* at sea, though that was not fully evident or evolved until the late 17th century.

Brömsebro, Peace of (August 1645). Having lost *Torstensson's War* (1643–1645), Denmark was forced to cede Gotland, Jämtland, Ösel, and Härjedal to Sweden, and to cede Halland for 30 years.

brown bill. Precursor to the *pike*, but closer in idea to the *halberd*, this English polearm was fitted with a flat iron blade. The blade always rusted, leaving a browned surface that gave the weapon its name.

Bruce, Robert (1274–1329). See *'Auld alliance*; *Bannockburn*; *Falkirk, Battle of*; *Scottish Wars*; *Wallace, William*.

Brunkeberg, Battle of (1471). See *Denmark*; *Union of Kalmar*.

Brustem, Battle of (October 28, 1467). Fought outside Liège as a result of Burgundy's efforts to expand at the expense of neighboring free cities and other minor territories. The squares of Liège militia entrenched at the edge of the village of Brustem, with prepared positions for their *culverins* and *cannons*. The Burgundian van was made up mostly of mounted archers and pikemen, supported by artillery. An exchange of artillery began the battle. After that, artillery played little further role. The Burgundians prevailed, forcing the Liège militia to abandon guns and positions.

buccaneers. ''Boucaniers.'' French *pirates*. Initially, they raided Spanish and Portuguese shipping in the Caribbean and partway down the Atlantic coast of South America from bases nestled in caves and coves of Central America. Raids by ''boucaniers'' (or ''buccaneers,'' as they were known to English seamen who faced them) caused the Spanish to evacuate all settlements on the north coast of Hispaniola in 1603.

Buckingham, 1st Duke of (1592–1628). Né George Villiers. A relative unknown, he emerged as a fey court favorite of *James I* at age 22 and soon was recipient of so many titles, lands, and royal favors that intense jealousy followed him everywhere. In 1623 he traveled in secret to Madrid with *Charles I*, only to be rebuffed in his effort to arrange a royal match. This was partly due to Buckingham's arrogance and pretension, but more because a Protestant match had no appeal for Spain. This soured James and Charles on Spain, contributing to their foolhardy decision to declare war. Buckingham soon arranged for Charles to marry a French Catholic princess, Henrietta. He remained favored at court after Charles succeeded James in 1625. Bringing a Catholic queen to England did not win him many favors with the country, however. Buckingham led an ill-planned raid on Cadiz in November 1625, in which he lost 30 ships and accomplished nothing. In 1627 he led another badly executed expedition to relieve the Huguenots at *La Rochelle*. They refused to admit him to the harbor, so he landed on Île de Ré, where his men fought and died to no end. While in Portsmouth to organize a third expedition he was assassinated by a subaltern. The fleet sailed to La Rochelle without him. It did no better, but perhaps less badly, for his absence.

buckler. An early medieval *shield*, small and round with a metal boss in the center and a bar or straps at the back by which it was held or secured to the arm.

Bucquoy, Count de (1571–1621). Né Charles de Longueval. Catholic general. During the opening rounds of the *Thirty Years' War* he caught *Graf von Manstein* strung out on the march and bested him at *Sablat* (1619). He commanded the Austrian wing of the Imperial Army in support of the army of the *Catholic League* under *Johann Tilly*. In that role he helped smash the Protestant army of *Anhalt*, *Mansfeld*, and *Thurn* at the *White Mountain* (November 8, 1620).

Buddhism. A world historical faith founded by the Nepalese aristocrat Prince Siddhartha (''The Buddha,'' or ''Enlightened One,'' 563?–480? B.C.E.). Buddhism was distinctively Indian in origin, though in later times it is hardly to be found in India. That shift was brought about by disruptive invasions, by the co-option of the Buddha in north India into a revived *Hinduism* (as an Avatar in the cult of Vishnu-worship), and in part by violent repression by a new devotional cult of Shiva-worshipers (bhakti), who slaughtered so many Jains they wiped out that faith in south India. The Asoka emperor (269–232 B.C.E.) was more kindly disposed, and sent out Buddhist missionaries to Sri Lanka and west Asia. Buddhism spread from north India to Bhutan, Burma, China, Indochina, Japan, Sri Lanka, Thailand, and Tibet. It reached Southeast Asia in the 1st century C.E. Buddhism was introduced to China in the Han dynasty and enjoyed a ''golden age'' there from the 5th to the 9th centuries, until it was harshly repressed by the Tang from 845 C.E. In defense, Buddhist monasteries were rebuilt as mountaintop fortresses and housed thousands of well-trained and armed monks. A ''White Lotus'' sect of Buddhism evolved a military offshoot known as the *Red Turbans*, who were so adept at the martial arts they helped overthrow the Mongol (Yuan dynasty) in 1368.

These great souls could intercede for the salvation of the still earth-bound and unenlightened.

Classical Buddhism was rooted in the mystical traditions of ancient Indian belief, but was founded also as a reaction against Aryan ritual and rigidity. The Buddha rejected Brahman claims to simply inherit piety. Instead, he posited that suffering could be eliminated only through self-perfection and through prajna, or ''enlightenment,'' in which an end to Earthly woes came from the extinction of desire via the ''eightfold path'' (right conduct, effort, meditation, memory, occupation, resolve, speech, and views) of right living on the ''middle way'' between extremes of radical asceticism and hedonism. Classical Buddhism thus stressed a tolerant, moderate, personal discipline and self-correction leading via a cycle of reincarnations to nirvana (in the Mahayana tradition, a condition of holiness, purity, and release from all desires and travails of earthly life—an end to suffering rather than a mystical paradise). One may halt the cycle of births and deaths only with full enlightenment and merger with the Buddha, the first being to achieve nirvana. This later led to development of the doctrine of ''Bodhisattvas,'' or enlightened souls, of whom the Buddha (Siddhartha) was the first. These great souls could intercede for the salvation of the still earth-bound and unenlightened. Along with elevation of Buddha to godhead came development of a monastic movement dedicated to preservation of the original doctrine—in short, Buddhism became more anthropomorphic as well as rigidly doctrinaire over time. As also happened in medieval Christianity, its monastic movement shifted from purist contemplation to great material wealth, lurched into radical reformism, then repeated the cycle in some variant form. A highly meditative version of Buddhism developed in China known as ''Chan'' (in Japan, ''Zen'').

Socially, Buddhism tended to promote fatalistic resignation by the masses, but encouraged charity and good works that gave rise to its hugely influential and widespread monastic movement. Buddhist monasteries played an important role in the accumulation of wealth and dissemination of learning and culture in Asia, directly comparable to the great Cistercian and other monastic movements in European history. Politically, Buddhism was associated with traditional kingship systems. In Japan, Buddhism thrived for many centuries before its monasteries and sectarian armies were crushed in the 16th century by *Nobunaga Oda* and *Hideyoshi Toyotomi*. Under the *Tokugawa shoguns*, Buddhism was co-opted to serve the *bakufu* state, though in Satsuma prefecture a break-away sect emerged that was heavily persecuted. See also *Nichiren Shoni*; *True Pure Land*.

Suggested Reading: William T. de Bary, ed., *The Buddhist Tradition in India, China, and Japan* (1972); N. McMullen, *Buddhism and the State in 16th Century Japan* (1984); R. Robinson, *The Buddhist Religion* (1982).

Buenos Aires. A colony established by Spain in 1515 at Río de la Plata to block southward expansion by Portugal. In fact, the Portuguese were barely ensconced along coastal Brazil and in no position to expand further. Buenos Aires was so distant from other Spanish colonies it was beyond the effective reach of Madrid's rule for many decades. As such, it became a haven for Dutch, English, and French smugglers (that is, free traders). *Privateers* found in the port a refuge and market for pirated goods. This distorted development arose because Madrid forbade Buenos Aires to trade even with other Spanish colonies, including Peru and New Spain. This was done to staunch untaxed, illegal silver moving overland to Buenos Aires from the silver mines of Mexico and Peru, and thence to Europe.

buff coats. Thick leather coats that replaced most armor on the continent during the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648), and in Britain during the *English Civil Wars* (1639–1651). *Oliver Cromwell* dressed his *Ironsides* cavalry in buff coats and high leather boots. These were not cheap garments: although some infantry wore them, they were mostly restricted to more affluent cavalry troopers. What made them different was that during manufacture the leather was washed in lime and heavily oiled. This made it more resistant to wear, hardening, and rot, the main hazards facing cavalrymen. Buff coats provided protection against slashing swords and bills, but not *musket* or *caliver* balls. *Gustavus Adolphus* was wearing a buff coat when he was pierced by several musket balls at *Lützen* (1632). The result would have been the same had he worn armor, and that would have militated against his new cavalry doctrine and tactical innovations, which is why he wore buff instead.

Bukhara, Battle of (1220). See *Mongols*.

Bulgaria. In the 9th century the population of Bulgaria was converted to Orthodox Christianity and made a rough peace with the Byzantines. This

truce was upset by the ''Bogomil heresy,'' a dualist belief which split its intense adherents from communion with the larger body of Orthodox believers. The new doctrine began in Bulgaria and was most deeply rooted there, though it spread to other areas of the Balkans. Heavily persecuted, Bogomil belief nonetheless lasted for several centuries in remoter areas. Intra-Christian quarrels ceased to mean much once Bulgaria was conquered by the Ottomans in 1396. It remained under Ottoman rule for nearly 500 years.

bullets. Standardized, centrally produced, and issued ammunition was not in general use before the end of the 17th century. Instead, soldiers were issued lumps or bricks of lead, with each expected to cast his own bullets from a mold he carried in his kit. A soldier issued a *bastard musket* would cast 16 one-ounce bullets from a pound of lead; one with a *caliver* cut a smaller ball at 20 to the pound; a full musket took a ball cut 12 to the pound, or 1 ½ ounces per bullet.

bullionism. A crude, mercantilist practice in which sovereigns desperate to maintain the full *war chests* thought necessary to military strength restricted exports of monetary metals. The practice arose from the quite literal need for bullion and coin to finance a nation's wars, and from a basic misunderstanding of the nature of the underlying value of monetary metals. See also *war finance*.

burden ("burthen"). The internal volume of a ship's hull; the carrying capacity of a ship. See also *tonnage*.

Bureau, Jean (1390–1463) and Gaspard (d.1470). These brother engineers were the driving force behind France's acquisition of the best artillery train anywhere during the final days of the *Hundred Years' War*. The Bureau brothers brought powerful cannon to bear in over 60 separate sieges of English fortified positions and in several field battles. As suppliers and advisors to the French Army they gave *Charles VII* a superior siege train as he set out to retake Normandy from the English in 1449–1450. They helped take Rouen on October 19, 1449, then directed successful assaults on Harfleur (December 1449) and Honfleur (January 1450). They were also instrumental in the campaign in Guyenne in 1451–1453. They likely convinced the king to switch to cast-iron cannonballs, greatly increasing the hitting power of his artillery and taking full advantage of *corned gunpowder*. The Bureau brothers perfected the siege artillery technique of seeking to hit the same spot in a wall several times with smaller ordnance rather than the medieval method of seeking a single crushing hit. See also *Castillon, Battle of*; *Formigny, Battle of*.

Burgundian-French War (1474–1477). In 1428 and 1443 forays were made into the French-Imperial borderlands by Philip the Good of Burgundy, who also expanded toward the Low Countries. This westward thrust was consummated by a reckless invasion of Alsace and Lorraine by *Charles the*

Rash in 1474. Charles lacked his father's tact and diplomatic skills. Rather than make up for these deficiencies in superior generalship, he was inadequate in that area also. Instead of maximizing alliances with local German princes who wanted to see France humbled and reduced, Charles alienated potential friends by striking in too many directions at once. He provoked René of Lorraine into an alliance with the Swiss, alienated powerful cities such as Strasbourg, lost the favor of the Medici bank, and provoked the hostility of Louis XI (1461–1483). The predictable end was defeat.

Burgundian-Swiss War (1474–1477). Burgundy's conflict with the Swiss Confederation resulted principally from the effort by *Charles the Rash* to expand his domain and elevate his Duchy to the rank of kingdom and even one of the Great Powers of Europe. To connect his core holdings in the north with rich Italian lands to the south, he sought to carve a path of conquest and annexation through the Swiss Confederation. The inevitable clash came at *Héricourt* in 1474, where mature *Swiss square* tactics allowed the men of the Cantons to catch in a pincer maneuver a mercenary relief column, mostly comprised of armored cavalry, and destroy it. The next major encounter came at *Grandson* (1476), where the Swiss captured the Burgundian artillery train of over 400 very fine cannon and many more ammunition and support wagons. However, the Swiss pursuit floundered when it reached Charles' hastily abandoned camp and a frantic and ill-disciplined scramble for booty began. The Cantons thereby missed a main chance to destroy the Burgundian army. The two forces met again at *Morat* (1476), where some 12,000 Burgundians and allied mercenaries in *lance* formation fell to Swiss 'push of pike' and the spears and pistols of allied cavalry from Lorraine. At Morat, a further 200 Burgundian cannon were lost to the Swiss, giving them one of the finest trains in Europe. This string of defeats unhinged what might have become a Burgundian empire. Along with mutinies and treachery by mercenary garrisons, Charles' power and territorial holdings were alike eroded. The final act came at *Nancy* (1477), where Charles lost another battle through stilted tactics to a superior and more disciplined enemy, saw the Burgundian army built up over a century destroyed, and surrendered his life. The defeat ensured that Burgundy would not emerge as one of the Great Powers of the early modern age but would instead see its territory eaten by more powerful and militarily successful neighbors, especially Austria and France.

Burgundy, Duchy of. During the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453) the Valois dukes of this largest and greatest of all French medieval feudatories moved into the enemy's camp, allying with England (to which its duke handed over *Jeanne d'Arc*) and establishing themselves as a rising power. Burgundy switched back to the French side, restoring occupied Paris to France in 1435, once it was clear France would win the Hundred Years' War. Like Austria, Burgundy often expanded by making love rather than war: the dynastic marriage of Philip the Bold to the daughter of the Count of Flanders and

Artois in 1369 was the first of many such bloodless advances. When Louis de Malle died in 1384, Margaret inherited Flanders, which was joined to Burgundy. Brabant and Limburg were added in 1404–1406, Namur was annexed in 1421, followed by Hainault in 1428, Holland and Zeeland in 1425–1428, Luxembourg in 1451, with Utrecht taken by force in 1455 and Gelderland invaded in 1473. The dukes were also students of the art of war. They were the first to add gunpowder artillery units to a regular army, and the first to appoint salaried nobles as artillery officers (most nobles preferred to serve in the cavalry, the traditional arm of aristocracy). They were also the first to concentrate cannon in batteries, rather than disperse them evenly across a battle front. In a series of military reforms from 1468 to 1473, the Burgundian army was remade, partly on the French model but also making use of a unique four-man *lance* as its core unit. Subsequently, Burgundy fought with France (1474–1477), then with the Swiss (1474–1477), in the hope of becoming a full kingdom and one of the emerging Great Powers of Europe, stretching from Lorraine to Milan. Instead, the Swiss destroyed the Burgundian army and killed *Charles the Rash*. Control of Burgundy was then contested by claimants from the Houses of Habsburg and Valois, and later also by the Bourbons. Charles' daughter, Mary, married Emperor *Maximilian I*, which gave most Burgundian possessions to the Habsburgs. The original duchy, however, was annexed to France by *Louis XI*. See also *Brustem, Battle of*; *Grandson, Battle of*; *Landsknechte*; *Morat, Battle of*; *Nancy, Battle of*.

Like Austria, Burgundy often expanded by making love rather than war. . . .

Suggested Reading: R. Vaughan, *Valois Burgundy* (1975).

Burma. The site of several ancient kingdoms, it was also ruled at times as a Chinese province. In the 11th century C.E., a long Burman struggle entered a new phase with conquest of an ancient rival state, the Mons, a Buddhist kingdom to the south. The enlarged Burman empire survived until overrun by the *Mongols* (under Kublai Khan) in 1287. When the Mongols departed, control of Burma was contested between Burman and Mons dynasties. In the 16th century the Toungoo dynasty (Burman) was ascendant.

Burnt Candlemas (1356). A harrying expedition, or small *chevauchée*, conducted by *Edward III* into Scotland. This was a poor substitute for invasion and occupation and in fact a sign of military weakness, or at least preoccupation with the *Hundred Years' War* with France. See also *Scottish Wars*.

Bursa, Siege of (1317–1326). The Ottomans crossed into Europe after securing control of Asia Minor (Anatolia). Although the siege of Bursa lasted nine years, little detail is known. Still, it is clear from duration alone that the Ottomans did not have adequate siege artillery (theirs was primarily a cavalry army) and that Byzantine morale and resolve was high. *Osman I* died just

before the walls were breached and the victory won. His son, Orkhan, made Bursa the Ottoman capital from 1326 to 1366.

busby. See *hussar*.

bushidō. "Way of the Warrior." The feudal martial code of honor of the Japanese warrior elite, the *samurai*. It was rooted in vassal obedience to the *daimyo* and supported by Confucian and Buddhist teaching about self-sacrifice and mastery of physical pain. It was not adhered to by lower-class Japanese infantry or *ashigaru*.

Byland, Battle of (1322). See *Scottish Wars*.

byrnie. A long *cuirass* or coat of *mail*, whether made from *cuir-bouilli* or metal rings.

Byzantine Empire. From the 9th to 11th centuries the Byzantine Empire enjoyed a succession of strong emperors as well as a respite from imminent danger of being overrun by fragmenting Islamic foes. However, it faced a new enemy in the form of seaborne attacks by the *Normans*, who rounded Iberia by longship from their Atlantic strongholds to loosen much of southern Italy from Constantinople's grasp, and rip Sicily away from the Muslims. They also raided and plundered along the Adriatic coast. The Byzantines held on to territory in Italy for some time in the face of this threat, but never again went on the offensive in the West or otherwise tried to restore "the glory that had been Rome." Byzantium's final doctrinal break with the *res publica Christiana* in the West came in 1054, with formal confirmation of a schism brewing for centuries in a cauldron of disputes in earlier Ecumenical Councils and conflicting bulls, spiced with conflicting episcopal and conciliar decrees. The argument produced false histories issued by the Patriarchate in Constantinople and the Papacy in Rome, each supporting narrow claims. Meanwhile, Venice emerged as commercial competitor for the eastern Mediterranean carriage trade, though also as a partner carrying Byzantine goods to the West. This relationship was eventually cemented by granting a monopoly on trade to Venetian ships. As always, when the Empire enjoyed relative peace its depths of talent in law, art, philosophy, architecture, and high culture enjoyed a renaissance befitting one of the world's great civilizations. In military affairs, too, the Byzantines were far advanced in comparison to the fragmented states of Europe. Byzantium was a major territorial empire, with a sophisticated and effective tax system and bureaucracy. It had a powerful *standing army* and *permanent navy*, both capable of long-distance and sustained campaigns and wars. However, over the course of the 11th century, central control by the emperors was weakened by provincial lords whose semi-feudal authority gave them great political and military independence.

Even leaving aside such internal troubles, the Byzantines could never rest secure for long: some new and grave external threat always arose. The next

danger came from the East in the form of the *Seljuk Turks*, a nomadic warrior people from Central Asia then engaged in constructing an empire of their own in the greater Middle East in place of the old Arabicized caliphates. Pressure from the Seljuks, who first broke through Byzantine defenses in Anatolia in 1058–1059, prevented reinforcement or even proper defense of provinces in the West, even as the Normans moved out from their fortified bases to attack Byzantine Apulia and Calabria. The Seljuks captured Asia Minor upon defeating a Byzantine army at the crucial and decisive Battle of Manzikert (1071), where Emperor Diogenes was unhorsed and captured. In grave and imminent danger, and despite the bitter schism with the West, the Byzantines turned for help to their co-religionists in the Latin states and to the popes. The result was the fanatically exuberant Latin military response known as the *Crusades*. The next 200 years saw extensive and direct intervention by Latin Christendom in the affairs, external and domestic, and the wars of Byzantium and the eastern Mediterranean basin. This gained immediate relief for the Byzantine Empire during the 12th century, but led to disaster in 1204 when cruder knights and retainers of the Fourth Crusade sacked Constantinople instead of attacking Muslim armies in the Holy Land. They displaced the ancient Greek empire from its capital, and established in its place the ''Latin Empire of Constantinople.''

All this occurred just as another scourge from Inner Asia arrived in the Middle East and Levant: the *Mongols*. Remarkably, the Byzantine Empire was not entirely finished: its Hellenic peoples persisted and resisted, preserving essential institutions and the line of Byzantine succession intact in Nicaean and other exile, until they were able to expel the faux-emperors of the ''Latin Empire'' and restore Byzantine emperors to their palace in Constantinople in 1261. The Byzantines then plotted the *War of the Sicilian Vespers* (1282–1302) in order to forestall an Angevin invasion from the West. But they had lost control of their outer provinces to other invaders: Bulgars, Serbs, and Slavs. They next faced a renewed assault from a new and rising Muslim power: the *Ottoman Empire*. The Ottomans pressed home a sustained invasion of Byzantium, taking *Bursa* in 1326 and progressively cutting off Constantinople from its Balkan hinterland, one province after another. Other vultures circled as well: corsairs from North Africa, armed merchant ships from Venice and Genoa, and Slavs and Bulgars in the northern mountains. The Empire was reduced to the confines of its capital and a tiny hinterland by the middle of the 15th century. Under *Muhammad II* the Ottomans crossed the Straits with a huge army that battered down the famous walls of Constantinople with great bombards, even as his navy hammered them from the fabled harbor of the Golden Horn. In 1453 the *Siege of Constantinople* finally ended in defeat and massacre, including inside the great, 1,000-year-old cathedral of Hagia Sophia (''Church of the Holy Wisdom,'' subsequently converted into a grand mosque). Thereafter, the cities and lands of what had been Byzantium were made over in the image of its Muslim conquerors. The fall of Constantinople was an event of world historical importance, despite the fact that the Byzantine Empire was a fraction if its former self. Its violent end sent

psychological shock waves through Europe and the Middle East. Explorers, adventurers, misfits, and conquerors of the *Age of Exploration* would ride these waves around the entire world in the century to come.

Bitterness over the great betrayal by fellow Christians in the sack of Constantinople in 1204 remained deeply felt among the Greeks who lived thereafter under Ottoman rule. Byzantium's success as a civilization and its longevity at the crossroads of world-shaking military conquests and civilizations must impress. It stood for a millennium under constant military threat from warlike peoples from Arabia and North Africa, fierce nomadic invaders from Central Asia, and crude Franks and Normans from Western Europe. To survive all that, to recover at all after the betrayal of the Fourth Crusade, was a remarkable achievement attributable to flexible Byzantine diplomacy, determination, and an advanced culture and skilled people. ''Byzantine'' later became a synonym in the West for excessive adornment and ''oriental bureaucracy,'' corruption, and license. In fact, it describes an advanced, powerful, centralized state akin in its sophisticated political and military culture to that of Imperial China, and centuries ahead of later states and empires in the Muslim world or the Latin West.

Suggested Reading: Michael Angold, *The Byzantine Empire, 1025–1204* (1997); Humfrey Bartusis, *The Late Byzantine Army, 1204–1453* (1992); Robert Browning, *The Byzantine Empire* (1992); Edward Gibbon, *Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire* (1960); John Haldon, *Byzantium* (2000); D. Oblonsky, *The Byzantine Commonwealth* (1971).

C

cabasset. Also ''cabacet.'' A 16th–17th-century Spanish helmet in the basic style of a *morion* but with a narrow brim and overall almond shape, and pointed at the rear.

Cadiz, Raid on (1587). See *Drake, Francis*; *Invincible Armada.*

Cadiz, Raid on (1596). See *Raleigh, Walter.*

Cadiz, Raid on (1625). See *Buckingham, 1st Duke of*; *Charles I, of England.*

Cairo, Sack of (1517). See *Selim I.*

Calais. Early in the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453) this crucial port was besieged (September 4, 1346–August 4, 1347) by *Edward III*, during which siege artillery may have been used for the first time in Europe. The townsfolk of Calais resisted vigorously for 11 months. A French relief army arrived at the start of August 1347, but withdrew in face of the strength of Edward's forces. Shorn of hope, the town surrendered. Edward expelled the population and resettled Calais with English, making it the forward base for a planned conquest of France. In this, the capture of Calais accomplished far more for English policy than the celebrated battlefield victory won the year before at *Crécy* (1346). At the end of the Hundred Years' War England was forced to reduce its holdings in France to the port of Calais, which it held for another 100 years. It lost Calais when *Philip II* married *Mary Tudor* in 1558. That drew England into Philip's war with France, so the French attacked. The Calais garrison surrendered to the *duc de Guise* after a five-day siege (January 1–6, 1558). Thirty years later the *Invincible Armada* hove to at Calais (August 6, 1588) on its way to disruption and defeat in the Channel.

Calatrava, Knights of. See *Knights of Calatrava.*

Calicut, Battle of (March 18, 1506). A Portuguese naval squadron of just nine ships of sail, but mounting broadside artillery, met and bested a large galley fleet of the ''Zamorin of Calicut'' said by some to have numbered over 200 small galleys. The victory was a milestone in Portuguese and sailing ship dominance of the Indian Ocean. A similar episode had occurred at the *Siege of Constantinople* in 1453, where more than 120 Ottoman galleys failed to stop a dash for the Golden Horn made by just four Genoese galleasses defended by broadside cannon and missile troops in high castles.

caliph. A spiritual and temporal leader claiming succession from the Prophet Muhammad (570–632 C.E.) in his guidance and political functions, and thus the right to rule all Muslims. The title ''caliph'' (''Khalīfa'') meant ''Successor of the Prophet of God,'' or more ambiguously but also more importantly, ''Deputy of God.'' Claimants thus asserted the ambitious claim to supreme religious and temporal authority over the entire ''Community of the Faithful'' (''Umma''). The main division in *Islam*, between the majority *sunni* and minority *shī'a* traditions, is rooted in a dispute over the proper succession to the early caliphate. The first four caliphs were all related to Muhammad and chosen by the ''Companions'' of the Prophet, and on their legitimacy there was such general agreement that they are known as the ''Rāshidan'' or ''Rightly-Guided Ones.'' Alternately known as the ''Orthodox Caliphs,'' they ruled in succession from 632 to 661 C.E.

Abu Bakr was the first (573–634, r.632–634), the direct successor to Muhammad by virtue of election by the ''Companions of the Prophet.'' He was succeeded by Umar (c.581–644, r.634–644), with majority though not unanimous support among the Companions. Umar was the first to claim the title ''Commander of the Faithful.'' He was assassinated by a Christian slave. Uthman (or Usman, c.574–656, r.644–656) was the third caliph, and the first from one of the aristocratic families of Mecca. During his reign most of Syria, Iraq, Iran, and Egypt were conquered by the Arabs. He was murdered by fellow Muslims, Egyptian converts but mutineers, a fact which severely troubled the intensely devout Umma. Uthman was succeeded by Ali (c.598–661, r.656–661), made caliph by the mutineers who killed the third caliph. Ali was acceptable because he was cousin to Muhammad and son-in-law by virtue of his marriage to Fatima, the Prophet's daughter. Thus was set in play a deep and lasting division between those who accepted an elective caliphate (sunnis), and those who insisted that only members directly descended from the Prophet's family could rule Muslims (shī'a). Ali, too, was assassinated (661) by Muslim Arab rebels against his claimed authority. His successor was Mu'awiya, head of the Meccan clan of Umayya, who founded the Umayyad Caliphate (661–750). He and his clan successors were accepted by sunnis as legitimate, but were rejected by the shī'a minority who viewed only familial descendants or relatives of Ali as rightful successors to the Prophet. Shī'a claimants thus became known as ''Alid'' candidates, for their insistence on sole descent through Ali. They cleaved to this view despite Ali's own son, Hassan, renouncing his familial claim and recognizing the legitimacy of Mu'awiya and the Umayyads.

The Umayyads ruled most of the Islamic world from Damascus. Their conservative reign saw the consolidation of the early Arab conquests despite internal upheavals and civil wars with Kharijites and the shī'a. Some of these events are commemorated still in bloody annual rituals of self-flagellation in shī'a communities, 1,300 years after they took place. At first, Umayyad policies of discrimination against non-Arabs and half-Arabs worked. Over time, however, non-Arab Muslims called for a return to the original message of a single Umma, all equal before God irrespective of tribe or race. The Umayyads were overthrown and succeeded by a shī'a dynasty, the Abbasids, which asserted descent from Muhammad's uncle. The Abbasids moved the caliphate to Baghdad and reigned—more in the imperial Iranian than the tribal Arab style—over the ''Abbasid Caliphate'' (750–1258). In response to the majority faith of the populations they ruled, the Abbasids slowly became less overtly shī'a and leaned more toward the orthodox sunni Islam of their subjects. Drawing on pre-Islamic Iranian example, the Abbasids also established the first *standing army* in the Islamic world, thereby lessening their reliance on Arab tribal levies and opening the military to promotion of the numerous non-Arabs who had converted to Islam. The Abbasids were not recognized in Spain, however, where a branch of the Umayyads survived and ruled from 756 to 800, while a successor and even more localized ''caliphate'' governed *al-Andalus* from Córdoba to 1008. Nor after a time were the Abbasids accepted in Egypt (868) or in the *Maghreb*, where a rival shī'a dynasty rooted in a Berber resurrection, the Fatamids, claimed the caliphate based on direct (''alid'') descent from Fatima. The Berber Fatamids thereby partly reversed the Arab conquest of North Africa, in ethnic and religious if not in cultural or linguistic terms. The Fatamids ruled in Egypt, 909–1171, and sometimes controlled Syria, too. This allowed the desert Bedouin between them to raid the frontiers of the rival caliphates. Long before the Fatamids lost control in Egypt in 1171, to *Salāh-al-Dīn* and his Ayyubid successors, they had already lost most of the Maghreb to rival Berber dynasts: the Almohad Caliphate, based in Marrakesh. And they lost Jerusalem (1099) and most of Palestine and Syria to the Crusaders.

A separate shī'a dynasty in Iran, the Būyids (932–1055), attacked the Abbasid caliphs from the east. In 946 they took Baghdad and captured the caliph, whom they kept a prisoner in his palace. This marked an Iranian interval between the collapse of Arab power and the rise of Turkic peoples to overlordship in the Muslim Middle East, culminating in the *Seljuk Turks* occupation of Baghdad and rule as ''Great Sultans'' while leaving the Abbasid caliphs in place as useful puppets. The main line of Abbasids was overthrown by the Mongols when Baghdad fell to them in 1258. The last Abbasid caliph to reside in Baghdad was brutally murdered. The remnant of the Abbasids retreated to Egypt at the behest of the *Mamlūk* general, Baybārs, who had overthrown and murdered the Ayyubid sultan, Turan Shah, in Cairo. Following the Seljuk example, he supported the Abbasids as a convenient front for his own rule (Egypt had long since seen the end of the Fatamid caliphs). These so-called ''Cairo caliphs'' had no effective authority, as real power was held by successive

slave-soldier (Mamlūk) sultans. Meanwhile, Berber warriors established the Almoravid caliphate in the far western reaches of North Africa. Still fresh with founder's zeal, they intervened in Iberia in the 12th century. They overran extant Muslim *taifa* states, which they saw as impure, and much Christian territory. These radical *jihadis* ruled their Iberian-North African empire from Córdoba. In the main Arab lands the title ''caliph'' was allowed to lapse by the Ottomans upon *Selim I*'s conquest of Egypt in 1517. Later claims made by Ottoman sultans were more political than theological, as Ottoman rulers used the title to reinforce the legitimacy of their imperium over Arabs and other subject Muslims. Partly because they did not claim the title early, and partly because of the Alid issues, Ottoman emperors did not earn acceptance as caliphs by all Muslims within their own empire, let alone the millions of Muslims in far-off Africa, India, Indonesia, and Inner Asia who entirely rejected Ottoman pretensions to a right to govern all Muslims. Regional potentates and ''heretics'' (false claimants) sometimes adopted the title ''caliph,'' though without asserting the Alid claim that they stood in direct line to the Prophet and without claiming the right to rule Muslims beyond those they actually did. See also *ayatollah*; *imam*; *mahdi*; *mullah*; *sultan*.

Suggested Reading: Marshall Hodgson, *The Classical Age of Islam* (1974) and *The Expansion of Islam* (1974); Hugh Kennedy, *The Prophet and the Age of the Caliphates* (1986).

caliphate. The jurisdiction of a *caliph*. Theoretically, this extended to all Muslims. Historically, after the split between *sunni* and *shī'a* Islam and the later rise of non-Arab, Muslim empires, the authority of caliphs was often disputed or ignored in more distant provinces or by rival empires.

caliver. An English corruption of ''calibre'' used about early types of handguns more widely known as *arquebuses*. Most 16th-century calivers were heavier and had a larger bore than the average arquebus, but were still lighter than the heavy *musket*. They fired a small ball cut 20 to a pound of lead, where a musket fired a ball cut 12 to the pound. See also *bastard musket*.

Calixtines. From the Latin for ''chalice.'' Those who accepted service of the sacrament in *sub utraque specie* (''in both kinds''), as both bread and wine. This was an issue of ferocious, even murderous, disputation in the 14th–16th centuries. See also *Hussite Wars*; *Utraquists*; *Zwingli, Huldryeh*.

caltrop. A simple devise in which metal spikes were arranged around a core in such a way that, like a child's ''jumping jack,'' no matter how the caltrop landed one spike would point upwards. They were scattered by the hundreds in front of infantry or artillery positions to hobble the horses of advancing enemy cavalry. They were used effectively by the English to protect longbowmen at *Crécy* (1346) and *Agincourt* (1415), among many other battles. They were also used in war at sea, before the general shift from boarding to broadside tactics in the mid-17th century. Just before boarding, attackers would throw caltrops

onto the opposing deck in front of the enemy defenders as an anti-personnel weapon of considerable—but potentially double—effect.

Calven, Battle of (May 22, 1499). This was the second large battle of the *Swabian War* (1499), a frontier conflict between the Holy Roman Empire and the Swiss Confederation. The Germans held a strong position and outnumbered the approaching Swiss. Neither advantage availed: the terrible *Swiss squares* tore into the German ranks without hesitation, scattering many who would not stand and fight, butchering those who did. The victory secured independence for *The Grisons* but did not end the Swabian War.

Calvin, Jean (1509–1564). See *Calvinism.*

Calvinism. The stern, reformed confession founded by a French exile, Jean Calvin (1509–1564). Trained as a lawyer and theologian in Paris, and deeply read in Christian humanist scholarship, Calvin fled France for Basel in 1535 to escape persecution following the *Affair of the Placards*. In Switzerland he was influenced by several leading reformers already preaching there. In 1536 he published the first of many editions of his *Institutes of the Christian Religion*, which was outlawed and burned in France from 1542. Nevertheless, it became the key reformist text in shaping French Protestantism in particular, as well as defining a community of believers more generally. His adherents were soon called ''Calvinists,'' distinguishing them from followers of the German reforms of *Martin Luther*. Calvin moved to Geneva in 1536 and immediately tried to institute his reforms in the city's law and practice. This proved too much for a population who only recently had disposed of a Catholic bishop and was in no mood to accept a new dogmatist: Calvin was dismissed in April 1538. He resided in Strasbourg from 1538 to 1541, refining and revising his views. Then he returned to Geneva, where he moved more cautiously to put ''godly rule'' into practice. In the interim he published *Ordonnances ecclésiastiques* (1541). Once firmly established, he ruled with a hard hand against all he deemed ''heretics.'' His political and religious enemies were burned or beheaded, infamously including, in 1553, the physician Michael Servetus, an incident Reformation historians depict as the Calvinist equivalent of the Catholic inquisition trial and ultimate silencing of Galileo Galilei.

His adherents were soon called ''Calvinists,'' distinguishing them from followers of . . . Martin Luther.

Calvin accepted many of Luther's published positions: justification by faith alone (though with greater emphasis on the ''Fall from Grace''); the literal truth of the Christian Bible and corresponding primacy of scripture over papal and episcopal authority; the associated doctrine of a ''priesthood of all believers''; the sanctifying role of grace; and the doctrine of predestination (''eternal election, by which God has predestined some to salvation, others to destruction''), in which faith is the fruit of a predestined salvation and

''divine grace'' offers no consolation for the damned. Also with Luther, Calvin rejected Catholic ideas about Purgatory, praying for the dead, the cult of saints, and intercession through prayer. Calvin's lasting impact thus did not lie in developing much new theology but instead in providing an expanded, more legally informed and clearly reasoned, and above all more easily communicated set of explanations of reformed beliefs.

Calvin also dwelled on the dark, corrupt attributes of human nature, seeing the ''ways of the flesh'' as perversely opposed to a disciplined will beloved of God. This gave his views a distinct sexual puritanism that he combined with an overbearing personal paternalism. On the other hand, Calvin freed many laity from the Catholic cult of celibacy, which he dismissed as ''this ornament of chastity.'' Approving clerical marriage, one of the truly successful reforms of the Reformation, arose partly from Calvin's own lusty appetites but also because celibacy was observed mainly in the breach by a corrupt Catholic clergy that openly practiced concubinage then forgave each other's sexual sins in the confessional. In other ways Calvin opposed the severe asceticism espoused by more radical Protestant reformers. But his paternalistic instincts as well as the tenor of the Age drove him to favor strict obedience to secular authorities as God's lieutenants on Earth. This was the defining characteristic of early Calvinists: their insistence that true faith transformed not just the inner life of individuals but the pubic sphere as well.

Calvin's refusal to sanction the *Huguenot* revolt in France did not prevent a good many rulers, Lutheran and Catholic, from suppressing Calvinism there or elsewhere. Still, Calvinism spread across Germany where the ground was prepared by Lutheranism; throughout the Swiss Confederation, where by mid-century Calvinists and Zwinglians joined in confessional and military alliance against Swiss Catholics; and into southern France. Calvin's teachings crossed the Channel to Scotland and England, carried there by refugees returning from Geneva, most notably *John Knox*. Calvinist political thought after the death of the founder in 1564 often tended to political radicalism which threatened or alienated temporal rulers. What offended Catholic and Lutheran monarchs especially were the social implications of the way Calvinist communities were organized and Calvinist doctrine enforced—this was crucial, as all three confessions saw Christianity more as a body of believers than a body of beliefs, and all thought the 16th-century state duty-bound to intervene in spiritual affairs. In Calvinist communities social and spiritual discipline was upheld by a council of elders (consistory), that merged church and state into one body with powers of punishment in both the mortal and immortal realms: death and excommunication. These twin threats, and much social coercion, were used to restrain natural human passions, condemn backsliding and perceived spiritual weakness, and govern and guide the laity in the way of the flesh and the ways of the Lord. If Catholic and Lutheran communities used the church to legitimate and uphold temporal power, in Calvinist communities the reverse was true.

Luther died in 1546, leaving Calvin the preeminent reformer by default and by virtue of his extraordinary writings. In 1555 he drove his last enemies off

the council in Geneva, even as Calvinists were excluded from the *Peace of Augsburg* in Germany. Also that year, he launched his mission to France to recruit leading nobles to protect the vibrant Huguenot communities of artisans and professionals concentrated in the towns of the Midi. These conversions of nobles proved crucial when the *French Civil Wars* broke out in 1562. The only reform confession barely tolerated by Catholics was Lutheran, as defined in the *Augsburg Confession* (1530). In 1557–1578, Lutherans, too, drew up a rigidly anti-Calvinist declaration called the *Formula of Concord*. This increased isolation of Calvinists within Germany but pushed them into foreign alliances with reform communities in England, France, and the Netherlands. The militancy of the Huguenots in France and the fanatic reaction against them of the *Guise* and the *Catholic League* contributed much to prolonging the French Civil Wars. Dutch Calvinists could also be severe, to the point that Flemish Catholics who shared Dutch political grievances were driven back under the protection of Spain during the *Eighty Years' War*. And in 1595, Lutheranism was banned by the Calvinist regents of Amsterdam, while an outbreak of plague in that city in 1602 was blamed on secret Lutheran services. Later in the 17th century accommodations were made in some Dutch and German cities between Lutherans and Calvinists, including Amsterdam.

At the mid-16th-century mark few reform territorial princes had accepted Calvinism over Lutheranism. In Saxony the brief reign of the crypto-Calvinist Christian I (1586–1591) was followed by Lutheran revenge taken against Calvinist theologians, preachers, and laity. Some progress was achieved in the first half of the 17th century, so that by the onset of the *Thirty Years' War* several key princes, among them two Imperial Electors, had converted to Calvinism. Of these, the most important were the Landgrave of Hesse-Kassel, the Elector Palatine, and the pro-Dutch Johann Sigismund of Brandenburg. But Calvinism only gained legal standing within Germany in the *Corpus Evangelicorum* at Westphalia, in 1648. In Bohemia, many erstwhile *Utraquists* also moved into the Calvinist camp but they were either killed, driven into exile, or forcibly recatholicized after 1620. Calvinists played leading roles into the mid-17th century in the expansion of Dutch commercial and military power. They were prominent as well in the *English Civil Wars* and engaged in rebellion and national and dynastic conflict in England and Scotland even longer than in Germany or the Netherlands. See also *Amboise, conspiracy of*; *National Covenant*; *New Model Army*; *Protestant Reformation*; *Puritans*.

Suggested Reading: William Bouwsma, *John Calvin* (1988); John McNeill, *History and Character of Calvinism* (1957); Meena Prestwich, ed., *International Calvinism* (1985).

Cambrai, League of (1508–1510). An alliance of Pope Julius II (r.1503–1513), Louis XII (1462–1515) of France, Emperor *Maximilian I*, and *Ferdinand II* of Spain, as well as several Italian states. In name it was a treaty that aimed at punishing the Ottomans. In fact, it was an aggressive alliance that aimed to dismember Venice and divide the carcass of that watery empire. A French army defeated the Venetians at *Agnadello* in 1509.

The alliance quickly collapsed, however, as a result of too many competing ambitions and interests among the allies. Spain withdrew into neutrality and the Papal States switched sides upon receiving some concessions from Venice, and in order to forestall further French advances in Italy. See also *Italian Wars*.

Cambrai, Treaty of (1529). "The Ladies' Peace." See also *Italian Wars*.

camels. See *Bedouin*; *logistics*; *magazines*; *Mamlūks*; *martial music*; *Mughal Army.*

camino francés. "French Road." A pilgrim road leading to Santiago, in Spain. It was, as the name suggested, frequented mainly by French pilgrims. It was sometimes protected by French knights.

camp followers. Civilians, mainly women and children, but also *sutlers* and craftsmen, following an army to beg, steal, or sell goods or themselves (as prostitutes). They supplied services from laundry to cooking to nursing to sex. In Europe, women and children also dug entrenchments and gun pits because soldiers viewed military labor as beneath them. This was not the case in the *Ottoman Army*. See also *baggage train*; *casting*; *gabions*; *logistics*; *mulkgiri*; *Naseby, Battle of*; *wounded*.

Canada. See *Champlain, Samuel de*; *Haudenosaunee*; *Indian Wars*.

Canary Islands. Located in the Atlantic off West Africa, they were discovered around 1350 by Castilian and Portuguese explorers. In 1393 a Castilian expedition took the first slaves from the native population (Guanches). Portugal also claimed the islands, but settlement was delayed by strong native resistance. A Castilian invasion captured several small islands in the chain in 1402. Portugal invaded Grand Canary in 1425 and the Guanches were overcome by this twin assault. The Canaries were granted to Castile by a treaty confirmed by the pope in 1479, in exchange for which the Portuguese gained title to the Azores, Madeira, and the Cape Verde Islands. This proved a forerunner of the later, more sweeping *Line of Demarcation* (1493) and Treaty of Tordesillas (1494) that purported to divide the world beyond Europe between the Iberian powers.

canister shot. Unlike the more sophisticated *grapeshot*, canister was simply a can or sack full of nails or other bits of jagged metal. It burst when fired to scatter shrapnel at close ranges, with the spray effect of a shotgun but on a cannon-scale. There are records of canister shot dating to 1410.

cannibalism. See *Aztec Empire*; *Brazil*; *Cortés, Hernán*; *Indian Wars*; *rations*; "*skulking way of war*"; *Tenochtitlan, First Siege of*; *Tenochtitlan, Second Siege of*; *Thirty Years' War.*

cannon. The term ''cannon'' (from the Greek ''kanun,'' and the Latin ''canna'') meant ''tube weapon.'' It was originally used about any tubular weapon that fired heavy-caliber ordnance, such as stone or cast-iron balls, but using gunpowder as propellant. ''Cannon'' was later confined to mean a specific class of gun that fired heavy shot over relatively short distances. These second-generation weapons normally had cast barrels, rather than barrels assembled by the *hoop-and-stave* method used in crafting early *bombards*. By the 16th century basic cannon were relatively standardized. They could hurl 50-pound *solid shot* to an effective hitting range of 600 yards, and a maximum (though largely ineffective) throwing range of 3,500 yards. At sea, cannon remained inaccurate dueling pieces when used at long range. This fact midwifed the phrase ''long shot,'' in reference to the high risk of firing at a distance without real effect, which allowed one's enemy to close before a cannon could be reloaded. Cannon proved to be adept ship-killers at close ranges. On land, they were powerful siege weapons, though unwieldy even when mounted, without much mobility, and hence of little use in battle. Firing 1,000 rounds from a battery of full cannon consumed 32,000 pounds of iron shot and 20,000 pounds of powder. This presented a massive logistics problem to any early modern army seeking to move its guns. Other large caliber guns classed as ''cannon'' (as opposed to long-barreled *culverins* or stubby *mortar* types) included: *basilisk*, *cannon-royal*, *cannon-serpentine*, *demi-cannon*, and *quarto-cannon*. See also *artillery*; *siege warfare*.

cannonballs. See *artillery*; *ballot*; *casting*; *chain shot*; *fortification*; *gunpowder weapons*; *hot shot*; *solid shot.*

cannon-royal. A big gun of the *cannon* type, that could fire 60-pound solid shot to an effective range of 750 yards and a maximum range of 4,000 yards. The only larger class was the *basilisk*.

cannon-serpentine. A big gun, in service by the end of the 16th century, that threw 42-pound solid shot to an effective range of 500 yards and a maximum range of 3,000 yards. While smaller than the *cannon-royal* or *basilisk*, it was more powerful than several *cannon* or *culverin* types.

cañon. A Spanish *demi-cannon*.

cañon de batir. A full-sized Spanish cannon with a bore of 7–8 inches and a length of 10–12 feet. English equivalents were called ''double cannon.''

caparison. Early horse armor comprised of a heavy quilt or leather ''blanket.'' See also *armor*.

Capitana. In a Spanish armada, this was the flagship that bore the commander.

capitulations. Contracts drawn up with mercenary companies, especially Swiss or *Landsknechte*.

capo de squadra. See *corporal.*

caprison. See *caparison.*

capsquare. See *trunnion.*

captain. At sea, this rank was used in the Mediterranean to mean a commodore or commander of a squadron of ships. An officer in charge of a single galley was called *patron*. On land, a captain was the leader of a sizeable body of troops, usually a *company*.

capture. The legal right whereby a state took ownership of enemy property seized at sea during a war. See also *prize court*.

Capuciati. ''White Hoods.'' See also *routiers*.

caracole. Once *wheel lock* pistols and carbines made it possible for cavalry to fire while mounted, European troopers—especially *Reiters*—adopted the tactic of ''caracole.'' This was first used in battle at *Dreux* (1562). It involved lines of horsemen riding one-by-one or two-by-two up to the pike hedge of an infantry square, discharging their pistols (each rider carried a brace), then whirling away to reload at a safe distance before returning to fire weapons a second or third time. However, since 16th-century pistols had an effective range barely past six feet and the average pike was 18 to 24 feet long, and the reach of musket balls much farther than that, human nature encouraged riders in the caracole to fire from outside effective pistol range. The caracole thus presented great danger to the cavalry while offering little offensive punch against infantry. Danger was heightened when facing aggressive infantry with hooked spears or halberds, or where pikemen protected arquebusiers or musketeers behind them.

The caracole thus presented great danger to the cavalry while offering little offensive punch against infantry.

So why try the caracole? Because cavalry had been forced out of its historic *shock* role and was still searching for a replacement on the battlefield. At least the caracole engaged large bodies of infantry so that cavalry could do more than scout ahead or chase down stragglers. More importantly, the caracole was actually an effective tactic when engaging other cavalry, especially lancers. The problem concerning infantry was partly solved by *Gustavus Adolphus*, who replaced his cavalry's wheel lock pistols with lances and a return to slashing sabers. This discarded the caracole cantor in favor of a return to attack at the gallop, albeit on lighter horses and dressed in leather and cloth rather than encased in armor. In short, Gustavus ordered a return to

full-speed charges by lancers, a throwback to shock as the staple tactic of horse soldiers. On the Catholic side, *Pappenheim* also disdained the caracole in favor of shock. Yet, even in Sweden, Gustavus' reforms took decades to implement: recent research has shown that Swedish cavalry squadrons did not wholly abandon the caracole prior to the 1680s. Other nations effected changes at varying rates, so that mixed tactics were often in play. In Poland, *Pancerna cavalry* employed the pure caracole to the end of the 17th century.

Carafa War (1556–1557). The Archbishop of Naples, Giovanni Carafa was elected Pope Paul IV in 1555. A confessional fanatic of the first order, and a warrior pope, he sharply opposed the *Peace of Augsburg* in Germany. When *Charles V* abdicated Carafa allied with France and moved to seize Naples from the Habsburgs. *Philip II* sent the *Duke of Alba* to Italy where he quickly won the war and occupied the Papal States to punish the pope. See also *Cateau-Cambrésis, Peace of*.

caravel. ''carvel.'' Originally, this was a two- or three-masted, all-lateen sail ship, *skeleton-built* by Spanish and Portuguese shipwrights in the 15th and 16th centuries. First laid down at less than 70 tons displacement, these shallow-draft vessels were sleek and handy. Fast and versatile, it was used for trade, small raids, and in *piracy*. The caravel migrated northward, where it grew in Dutch shipyards to about 200 tons displacement. By the mid-15th century it was rigged with three or four masts that lofted square mainsails and lateen foresails. In this form it moved back into the Mediterranean, captained by Iberian, Catalan, and Sicilian merchants. Juan II (r.1481–1495) of Portugal shifted cannon mounted on caravels to near their waterline, to fire through gunports cut in their sturdy hulls. This lowered the center of gravity and allowed caravels to carry many more guns, on two decks. Some carried as many as 40 cannon or culverins; most carried 15–20. Caravels made ocean-crossing voyages possible and played a key role in exploration. Christopher Columbus took two, the Niña and Pinta, on his first voyage west in 1492–1493.

Carberry Hill, Battle of (1567). See *Mary Stuart, Queen of Scots*.

Carbiesdale, Battle of (April 27, 1650). After five years in exile, the *Marquis of Montrose* returned to Scotland with 1,500 men, including 500 Swedish mercenaries, hoping to raise a larger Royalist force and take the war to *Oliver Cromwell*. Some Scots rallied to him, but most did not. Montrose was taken by surprise at Carbiesdale by Puritan cavalry that quickly routed his infantry. He was later betrayed out of his hiding place, and hanged at Edinburgh (May 21, 1650) by *Argyll*.

carbine. Ottoman: ''karabina.'' A shortened *musket*, cut down to make it light enough to be used on horseback. It had a short-range and lacked punching power but was better than a *wheel lock* arquebus or pistol.

carbiniers. Irregular French horse soldiers who accompanied war tax collectors (''intendants'').

Cardinal of Lorraine. See *Guise, Charles, Cardinal de Lorraine*.

Carmagnola, Francesco Bussone (1390–1432). Italian *condottieri*. Named for his place of birth near Turin, he entered military service at age 12 with a company of condottieri hired by Milan. When he was just 30 he took command of an army of mercenaries and led them to quick success in a Milanese civil war over the ducal succession. In 1422 he commanded a large Milanese and mercenary army against the Swiss at *Arbedo*, where his order to deny any quarter so stiffened Swiss resistance that a much smaller force hacked its way through his men and escaped. Fear of his ability and ambition on the part of his Milanese employer led to an offer of a strictly civilian post in 1525, as governor of Genoa. More interested in the lucrative life of a mercenary playing all sides against the middle, Carmagnola offered his services to Venice, which he then persuaded to attack Milan. He was appointed Captain-General of St. Mark (1526) and led Venetian forces in a costly, but inconclusive, war with Milan which he did much to deliberately prolong. All the time, he secretly negotiated a possible return to Milanese service. The *Council of Ten* learned of this treachery and brought him to trial. Upon conviction, he was beheaded.

carpenter. A skilled naval craftsman who, by the 17th century, served under the *master carpenter*. The carpenter's job was to keep the ship weatherly and ready for action, and to effect repairs during and following combat, such as by hammering wooden plugs into holes punched in the hull by enemy cannonballs and repairing masts and spars. See also *impressment*; *ship's boys*.

carrack. An ocean-capable ship which could be fitted out for trade or war. Originating in Bayonne, it was dominant in northern waters during the 15th–16th centuries. It was a hybrid design, combining the *clinker-built* hull of the *cog* with sleeker *skeleton-built* lines of ships of the Mediterranean, where carracks were known as *cocha*. Its distinguishing feature was a set of high *castles* at the bow and stern, full *rigging*, and a *sternpost rudder*. The 100-ton Santa Maria, flagship of Christopher Columbus on his 1492–1493 voyage, was a carrack (or *nao*, as carracks were known in Spain). As they moved north to trade, Atlantic seaboard and Baltic shipwrights admired and imitated them. They built a hybrid version with a clinker hull. This produced the first great warships of the ''Age of Fighting Sail'' of the 16th–18th centuries. *Henry V* added to his oared fleet of 15 *balingers* and *barges* several great carracks, including the 500-ton *Trinity Royal* (1416), the 1,000-ton *Jesus* (1416), the 700-ton *Holy Ghost of the Tower* (1416), and the massive 2,750-ton *Grace Dieu* (1418), a warship as big as an 18th-century man-of-war which may have only cruised once, in 1420, and was accidentally burned in the River Hamble in 1439. A general slump in shipping ended the carrack line. As N.A.M. Rogers

put it: ''They continued to be valued as 'capital ships' well into the sixteenth century, but in the long run they represented a 'dead end' in warship design.'' See also *junk*; *kurofune*; *man-of-war*.

Suggested Reading: N.A.M. Rogers, *Safeguard of the Sea: A Naval History of Britain*, vol. I (1997).

***carreaux*.** Any of several types of early, almost wholly ineffective gunpowder weapons that hurled large iron and wood *quarrels* rather than stone or iron balls. A synonym was ''garrots.''

***carroccio*.** A war wagon of the Italian communes in the 13th–14th centuries. It was not a fighting vehicle like the Hussite *Wagenburg*, but an oxcart filled with talismans, religious relics, and the town's holy banners. It was heavily guarded and its loss in battle was a cause of common shame. For instance, in 1237 the Milanese carroccio was captured and, to add to Milan's humiliation, it was hauled through the streets of its enemy by an elephant to be jeered at by the crowd. See also *banner (1)*.

cartridges. Paper cartridges that held a fixed amount of black powder and protected it from dampness or rain were in use by 1560. This significantly improved the performance of muskets, arquebuses, and cannon. A further advance came in 1590, when fixed cartridges that included the ball as well as the powder were invented. For much of the 17th century the preferred ammunition of musketeers was a pre-measured cartridge charge in a wooden or metal container, affixed to a bandolier worn as a belt or over the shoulder.

carvel. See *caravel*.

casemate. A chamber built into the earth or stone wall of a rampart, with loopholes or gunports through which defenders could fire. Large casemates doubled as barracks.

casement. A bomb-proof vault built into the curtain wall or *bastion* of a stone fortification, or under the rampart, and used to house guns and defenders. Probably a corrupt usage of *casemate*.

case shot. Invented about 1410, there were two forms of this short-range artillery ammunition: *canister shot* and *grapeshot*. All case shot were short-range projectiles made of nails or metal fragments, or encased iron balls, fired from a cannon. It could mow down an assaulting force of infantry or cavalry. Its antonym was ''*solid shot*.''

Casimir III (1310–1370). See *Poland*; *Ukraine*.

Casimir IV (1427–1492). Grand duke of Lithuania (1440–1492); king of Poland (1447–1492). The major accomplishment of his kingship was to

decisively defeat the *Teutonic Knights* in the *War of the Cities* (1454–1466). The conflict started badly for Casimir, who barely escaped alive from the disaster of *Chojnice* in 1454. He forced the Brethren to cede ''Royal Prussia'' to Poland in the *Second Peace of Torun* 12 years later. Through dynastic marriage of his son to a *Habsburg* princess, Casimir secured Poland's southern borders. Other marriages secured the hold of the *Jagiellon dynasty* over the thrones of Bohemia and Hungary. On the other hand, the decline of the authority of the Knights set in motion a struggle for power and territory in the eastern Baltic that pulled Poland into endemic warfare which lasted for over a century, during which its powerful nobility and constitutional decentralization ultimately fatally handicapped its chances. Casimir contributed to this outcome by confirming, in 1467, the traditional privileges of the feudal nobility. This was contrary to the general trend in Western Europe, where monarchs were increasingly consolidating and centralizing power at the expense of the feudal barons.

Cassel, Battle of (August 1328). Following the catastrophic defeat of the French nobility at *Courtrai* (1302), the revolt of Flanders gained nearly three decades of independence for the Flemish towns. However, *Philip VI* ascended to the French throne in 1328 determined to reverse the verdict of Courtrai. His army was comprised of *heavy cavalry* but included a mass of infantry and archers. At Cassel, French heavy horse slammed into the Flemings, overwhelming the militia and killing many thousands. After the battle Philip restored his vassal as Count of Flanders, which returned to French control for half a century.

Castagnaro, Battle of (1387). See *ribaudequin*.

Castelnaudary, Battle of (September 1, 1632). With the fall of *La Rochelle* the *Huguenot* threat to the policies of *Richelieu* and *Louis XIII* was finally ended, but internal instability continued. Next came a rebellion of noble families led by the Marshall of France, duc Henri de Montmorency, and the king's bitter brother, the duc d'Orléans. A royal army handily defeated the rebels at Castelnaudary, ending their revolt. Montmorency was executed, but not Orléans.

Castile. Castile began as a rough province where war-hardened colonists sprinkled the land with rude castles to seize and hold it from others just as hardened. It was recognized as a kingdom in 1035. In the 11th and 12th centuries, Castilian armies went on the offensive, raiding and burning the lands of small Muslim states, the *taifa* of *al-Andalus*. During the 11th century Fernando I (1035–1065) used the threat of raids to exact tribute (''parias'') from *Granada* and the taifa states. A turning point came in 1092 when ''El Cid'' (Ruy Díaz de Vivar) captured Valencia for Castile. The Christians of Castile benefitted greatly from the division of Muslim power among the petty taifa states. However, a more powerful Muslim foe, the Almoravids, intervened in Iberia's wars. These puritanical Berbers from North Africa crushed Castile's army at Badajoz, forcing Castile back on the defensive before

a new, united, and militant Muslim power. A set of still more fervent *jihadis*, the Almohads, overthrew the Almoravids and invaded Iberia in 1146. By 1172 they were in full control of all Muslim lands in Morocco and Spain and began to move against Christian territory. In 1195 the full forces of the African-Spanish empire of the Almohads met and destroyed Castile's army at Alarcos (July 18, 1195). A Christian victory at Las Navas de Tolosa (July 16, 1212) stanched the Almohad advance. That was followed in 1230 by unification of Castile and León. The central plain of Iberia then came under Castilian control over the second half of the 13th century, elevating Castile to the front rank of Iberian powers and the sword's edge of the so-called *Reconquista*.

Because Castile's method of conquest was to strip Muslims of land and forcibly remove them from surrendered cities, its southward expansion drove tens of thousands of refugees before it. That impoverished the agricultural lands it overran, much of which reverted from rich farming to poorer ranching, mainly of sheep for their wool. The loss of population also despoiled urban economies. By the end of the 13th century Castile crossed the ''olive line.'' It conquered Toledo, and forced Seville into tributary status. The only substantial Muslim power left in the peninsula was mountainous Granada, toward which the frontiers of Castile stretched out converted ranch lands (''latifundia'') and an engorged medieval barony. After the death of Alfonso XI in 1349 a 20-year civil war broke out between his son, Pedro the Cruel (r.1350–1369), and the eventual successor, Enrique of Trastamara (r.1369–1379). Until the early 15th century (1412), Castile's southward crusade paused and it fought mostly with neighboring Christian kingdoms, especially Portugal and Aragon. The Trastamaran capture of the crown of Aragon subdued the conflict with Castile and smoothed the way for a union of the crowns of Castile and Aragon under *Ferdinand and Isabella* in the second half of the century. After recovering from another civil war provoked by a succession crisis, which once more witnessed intervention by Portugal, Castile retook the lead in renewal of the campaign to expel Moorish power from Iberia. This final campaign culminated in the fall of Granada in 1492. From that point, Castile was the core territory of the new state and empire of ''Spain,'' shaping its imperial and crusading spirit more than any other component part—Castile became to Spain what England later was to Great Britain. Living out Castile's crusading spirit, but also to escape from its stifling orthodoxy, nearly one million Castilians left their homeland for the New World in the 200 years after Columbus claimed it for Spain. See also *conquistadores*; *Cortés, Hernán*; *Inquisition*; *Philip II, of Spain*; *Philip III, of Spain*; *Philip IV, of France*; *Spain*.

Castillon, Battle of (July 17, 1453). Also known as ''Chastillon.'' The final battle of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). It stemmed from an English occupation of Guyenne, which had risen against the French and allied with England. *John Talbot*, then in his seventies, led 3,000 English troops into Bordeaux. He was reinforced by his son with 3,000 more men. The French dispatched several armies to the region and set up a siege camp (''parcq en champ'') around the town of Castillon, which was held by some 5,000–6,000

English infantry and 1,000 horse. This maneuver induced Talbot to sally forth to relieve the garrison at Castillon. With about 6,000 English and 3,000 Gascons, he made a 30-mile forced march to the French camp, then immediately attacked with his cavalry before his infantry could join him. This rash decision brought on the battle. The French were mostly armed with bows, swords, axes, lances, and other nongunpowder weapons. Although an engineer rather than a noble, *Jean Bureau* took effective, though not official, command. Also present was Giraud de Samian, a famous and experienced cannoneer, and Jean's brother, Gaspard. The Bureau brothers had pioneered the royal French artillery, and may have brought as many as 300 guns to the battle. Their exact types are not known. These guns are ofttimes reported as being all "cannon," but 300 cannon would have been a fantastic number for the period and simply beyond credibility. It is likely that the largest number were handguns of various types (though these may have been large caliber muskets, resting on tripods and served by two or three men each). Some larger cannon were also certainly present.

In any case, the French had more gunpowder weapons and field guns at Castillon than any battle fought to that time in Europe, and they used these to inflict enormous, flesh-tearing losses on the English. Talbot and his forward cavalry detachments were lured onto a preset firing line of big guns by a feigned withdrawal of the French wagons and baggage. Following blocks of English horse were thus caught in enfilading fire even as they were torn apart by point-blank cannonades from the big guns to the front. Arrows storms also rained down on the English, while French *arquebusiers* peppered their ranks. The English infantry arrived late, piece-meal, and exhausted, adding their numbers to the carnage without increasing the fighting power or position of Talbot's force as a whole. The cumbersome English artillery train never even made it to the battle. Talbot's horse was killed beneath him by a cannonball, and the old man was finished off while on the ground by an axe swung by a French archer. At *Formigny*, just three years earlier, two French cannon had played an important role in the victory but the French infantry and cavalry did most of the killing. Castillon was the first battle where gunpowder weapons, and specifically artillery, unquestionably decided the outcome against a less-modern and more poorly armed force. The casualty toll confirmed the one-sided outcome: compared to about 100 French dead the English lost nearly 4,000 men, almost all who made it to the battlefield. If red revenge was still wanted by the French for their misery and losses at *Crécy* (1346) and *Agincourt* (1415), it was had in full measure at Castillon. Bordeaux surrendered on October 19 and the last English troops in France (other than at Calais) were allowed to sail home from La Rochelle.

. . . the French had more gunpowder weapons and field guns at Castillon . . .

casting. While barrels for small *artillery* pieces were easily cast as early as the 13th century, most larger cannon and the great *bombards* were constructed by

the *hoop-and-stave* method. It was not until improved casting techniques and mature foundries were developed that large barrels could be made as single pieces of cast metal, first in iron and bronze, and later still in brass. By c.1550 cast barrels of muzzle-loaders were cooled as a single, solid piece, after which the bore was *reamed* and a touch-hole drilled. Iron cannonballs were also being cast from greased, clay molds. Women from among the *camp followers* were frequently employed as laborers to dig the pit in which the mold was cast, gather faggots for the casting fire, dig out the gun after the metal cooled, and drag it to its siege site or for emplacement on the walls of a nearby castle or fort. During the 17th century *Jesuit* priests taught Chinese gunsmiths and generals up-to-date Western casting methods. English gunsmiths worked with local forges in India, and Dutch traders and governors brought the new technology to the Spice Islands, where guns of varying caliber were cast in local forges for use in Dutch fortifications and ships. Late medieval and early modern artillery varied greatly in size, caliber, and utility, but over time certain locales gained reputations as centers of quality gun manufacture. Permanent, large-scale foundries were set up and an international trade in cannon, it must be said, boomed. Northern Italy, Flanders, and Nuremberg were known for casting the best bronze guns. England and Sweden grew famous for casting cheap iron cannon in very large numbers that were nonetheless of excellent quality.

As cannon grew in importance in land and sea warfare in the mid-16th century the Spanish crown set up arsenals and foundries at Medina del Campo, Malaga, and Barcelona, and another at Seville in 1611. However, Spain lacked the skilled labor to meet its foundry needs—partly because its economy stagnated after expelling the Jews and Moors—and so remained dependent on additional purchases from the cannon markets of Flanders, Italy, and Germany. This lack of foresight and strategic planning cost Spain dearly as the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648) led to an acute crisis in armaments that was compounded by war with Elizabethan England and later also with France. This lack of cannon hamstrung Spanish armies and fleets. Due to shortage of skilled labor, Spain's foundry at Seville barely produced three dozen average caliber guns per year during the first half of the 17th century. In contrast, England, the Netherlands, and Sweden each had multiple foundries that cast 100–200 cannon per year. Spain was cut off from these northern markets by its wars with England and the Dutch rebels, although merchants in England sometimes sold to Spain in evasion of royal bans on exporting cannon outside the realm. Portugal also failed to develop a serious cannon production capability. Its chronic shortage of cannon for ships and fortified bases overseas was a significant factor in the loss of empire in Asia to the better armed Dutch and English in the 16th–17th centuries.

During the 15th and 16th centuries German foundries cast guns for use in Italy, by Spanish armies, and in the Netherlands. The *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648) created a huge domestic demand for cannon, but so disrupted the metals trade and skilled labor markets that German production declined. English, Dutch, and Swedish guns were imported and dominated that war.

German cannon foundries recovered quickly after 1648, however, and soon challenged England and Sweden in international gun exports.

Netherlands foundries supplied the Dutch army's growing need for artillery, which was driven by its prolonged war with Spain, its ultimately very large blue water as well as coastal navy, and the huge requirements of fortifying border towns as well as a growing overseas empire. The Netherlands also became a major exporter of first-rate artillery pieces of all calibers. This was not the case at first. The Dutch rebellion cut off the northern provinces from the industries of southern Flanders and the important metals market of Antwerp, which the Spanish still occupied. Over much of the last four decades of the 16th century, until foundries were built north of the rivers and skilled labor imported or trained, the Dutch imported cast iron cannon from England that were happily supplied by *Elizabeth I* to a Protestant ally against Spain. By 1600, Dutch foundries were so efficient they met domestic needs and began exporting ordnance to other European markets. Eventually, the Dutch set up a system whereby bronze ordnance was cast at home while iron cannon were cast in Dutch-owned foundries in Germany and at overseas bases. In Asia, the Dutch cast bronze cannon in Batavia for local use using ''red copper'' from Japan, but cast iron cannon wherein sufficient ore was available and nearby forests provided charcoal fuel.

Sweden and Russia were late starters in the foundry business. Both had great natural advantages—large deposits of iron, copper, and tin, and rich and abundant forests to produce charcoal for the blast furnaces of their great foundries—but only Sweden took full advantage in the 16th and 17th centuries to catch up to the rest of Europe, once social and military-cultural inhibitions to the adoption of gunpowder weapons were overcome. In Sweden the crown played a central role in encouraging casting of guns. Wrought-iron cannon were made from the 1530s; casting of bronze ordnance began in the 1560s; cast iron foundries overtook the older method of making iron cannon after 1580. By the time of *Gustavus Adolphus*, Swedish foundries were among the world's best. Using both local labor and imported ''Walloons'' (gunsmiths from the Low Countries), Sweden emerged as a leading maker and exporter of cast guns in the 17th century. Tolerance of imported Catholic master gunsmiths in Sweden contrasted sharply with Spain, where Protestant gunsmiths eventually refused to work because they were not exempted from torments and execution by the *Inquisition*. The Dutch brought iron casting techniques to Russia, establishing a foundry at Tula in the 1630s. As skilled labor did not exist in Russia at that time, gunsmiths were imported from the Low Countries and Sweden, while unskilled peasants hewed the forests and worked the charcoal pits. Despite foreign aid, Russia remained a minor power in terms of both gun casting and artillery deployment until the great military reforms of Peter the Great around the turn of the 18th century.

English gun casting declined in the 17th century as the countryside was badly stripped of forests to feed the blast furnaces of the foundries and the shipbuilding industry. England's long continental peace also sapped innovation and profit from its military industries. France similarly went into decline

after an early lead in gun design and manufacture. The great French siege trains of the early *Italian Wars* (1494–1559) were no longer seen in the 17th century, as royal armies declined and skilled workers left for better-paying markets or to escape religious persecution of the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629), during which Frenchmen killed each other mainly with imported cannon. This situation was not reversed until *Richelieu* reestablished the French cannon industry to meet the demands of the Thirty Years' War on land, and of a vastly expanded French navy. See also *armories*; *corning/corned gunpowder*; *strategic metals*.

Suggested Reading: Carlo Cipolla, *Guns, Sails, and Empires* (1965).

castles, on land. In inspiration, castles were instruments of raw military power. They also reflected political independence of local magnates and aristocratic warlords who exacted taxation from the surrounding population and economy. In return, they dispensed primitive justice, or injustice, with or without formal legal right. Every noble's castle was his home ground and fortress, and every castellan was a miniature king ruling his own ''civilization of stone.'' This was true despite a *feudal* legal distinction between ''jurable'' castles (those held in behalf of the king by an oath) and ''rendable'' castles (which had to be handed over to the king or lord in times of danger). Many castles were also centers of economic activity, not just places of refuge when locals faced an enemy raiding party. They provided a market for manufactured arms and armor, for grain, meat, horses, sheep, cattle, pots, and cloth. These local markets attracted merchants and craftsmen, who in turn drew in more buyers and sellers. All this activity created portable wealth and that, along with the even more valuable land on which a castle stood and protected, brought armed men from afar determined to steal it. Thus, defense and occupation of surrounding lands remained the first order of business of any castle, however humble.

In Europe

During the early Middle Ages simple stone roundtowers enabled and encouraged chronic ''small wars'' among petty nobles and hundreds of greater castellans whose private fortresses—some 500 in France alone by the 13th century—ran up and down mountainsides, controlled great rivers and valleys, and dominated open country. Local lords of all they surveyed, but not much more, showed little regard for ''national'' claims of a distant king, let alone the universalist pretensions of pope or emperor. Greater authority in law was defied by force majeure in fact, by armed and armored men hunkered with their private armies inside nearly unbreachable stone perimeters. Control of castles and the lands they dominated was thus the principal issue at stake in most local quarrels and in the great ''national'' wars of the Middle Ages. For instance, many Austrian, German, Italian, and Swiss castles date to the 11th-century Wars of Investiture with the papacy, which saw local uprisings against an excommunicated emperor that produced outright anarchy in Saxony and areas of southern Germany. The reality of fragmented polities and private

military power together made the Middle Ages an era of chronic if low-level warfare in which a scourge of warlords defined politics by the crudest forms of force majeure. This near-anarchy of the Medieval countryside separated that period from the era of universal law and empire that ended with the fall of Rome, and from the era of political and military consolidation that followed with the rise of powerful monarchies and then the nation-state.

A wave of castle-building began around 1000 C.E., representing political fragmentation as well as physical fortification of the countryside. Castles could be as simple as an earth and wood *motte-and-bailey* fort or a round tower like those of coastal Ireland. Or they might rise above already grand natural heights as some extraordinary multi-towered and bastioned edifice, as in Normandy and the Aquitaine, Castile and Catalonia, or Syria and Palestine. In the 12th and 13th centuries stone fortifications remained nearly unbreachable by torsion artillery, although a patient and well-organized attacker might be able to sap under thick walls, or batter down thin ones with a *catapult* or *trebuchet*. Alternately, a surrender might be forced through surprise attack at night or at dawn, or intimidation by slow torture or execution of prisoners in view of the defenders. If the attacker could afford the money and the men, assault from a siege tower might bring a mighty castle down. This was rarely tried, however, as loss of life in a storming—from a siege tower or through a breach in the wall—was usually prohibitive. Also, the solution to such direct assaults was simple and obvious: build stone walls higher at the top and thicker at the base. That proved an effective response by military architects at least until the advent of truly effective gunpowder artillery forced defensive walls to shorten and demanded their reinforcement and insulation with external earthworks.

Castles could be as simple as an earth and wood motte-and-bailey fort or a round tower . . .

Castles rose to dominate the countryside in region after region. The most heavily encastellated region of Europe was Italy, because it was the richest and most worth the expense of erecting stone defenses. Castle-building was extensive even in modestly urbanized areas, such as Castile, southern England, Normandy, Saxony, and Thuringia. Castles were built along important overland trade routes to better sweep in taxes and monitor suspicious travelers, or as centers for local administration, or to display private overlordship, power, wealth, and privilege. Given the option of simply out-waiting an enemy, defenders became ever more reluctant to fight a numerically superior, equal, or even slightly inferior army on the battlefield. Encastellation thus led to a characteristic form of medieval warfare wherein battles took place almost exclusively between besieging and relieving armies. Otherwise, commanders stayed behind high stone walls to try to outlast enemy besiegers, perhaps occasionally sending out a sortie to disrupt and kill sappers or overturn and burn a *siege engine*. If caught in the open, defenders tried to regain the castle or sometimes just ran away. The most effective way to entice defenders out to give battle was to assault their economic base by burning crops and killing livestock. In short, by ravaging the land around the castle with a *blockade* or *chevauchée*.

Castle innovation moved in step with improvements in siegecraft, after some earlier design was proven faulty by being overcome. Earth and timber also gave way to stone with rising wealth. Then came improved central design around a *keep* (or *donjon*). Walls grew higher and thinner to deny assault from various siege engines, while gate design grew more complicated and deceptive in order to protect what was the weakest point of any fortification. Moats, dry ditches, and earth banks were added to slow and expose attackers to defensive fire. As artillery improved, square façades became too vulnerable and were displaced by rounded keeps and towers to deflect rather than absorb high velocity stone or iron shot. Walls also dropped in height as bombardment rather than storming emerged as the main danger to defenders. Castles grew in scale with the expansion of economic activity and enclosure of additional buildings within the outer walls. Multiple towers were now located along extended curtain walls, linked by wall-walks and sited within crossbow shot of one another. The larger enclosed areas could accommodate expanded garrisons; some later castles had more than one large *enceinte*. Architecturally attractive, but principally functional defensive features proliferated: *merlons* and *crenels* atop the curtain wall, *machicolations* and *barbicans* above the gates. These modifications were fitted into a grand redesign of the whole fortification on a geometric pattern such as a quadrangle. Some late castles were built as complex octagons with their many sides supported by *boulevards* and *bastions*, features also added to older structures to extend their useful life. At the end of the castle-building era, around 1450 in Europe (170 years later in Japan), stone walls were fitted with *slings* and *swivel guns*. Larger defensive cannon were placed inside or atop specially built *artillery towers*, while squat gun platforms were built behind preexisting curtain walls with gun ports cut close to ground level.

In Asia

Hideyoshi limited all *daimyo* to a single castle and razed all smaller forts. As a result, the daimyo put all their efforts into the one edifice permitted to them so that Japanese castles built in the late-15th and early 16th centuries rose on the most secure and solid foundations and to spectacular heights. Around them grew up *jōkamachi* (''castle towns''). This does not mean that 16th-century Japanese castles would have remained impregnable, as one historian suggested, until aerial bombardment became possible in the 20th century. That most late Japanese castles did in fact survive into the 20th century is testimony to the long peace under the Tokugawa shoguns, during which no castle was tested by modern weaponry, not to their intrinsic qualities as fortifications. During the Tokugawa shogunate an increasingly useless and parasitic *samurai* warrior class was organized around the jōkamachi built during the *Sengoku jidai*, and sustained by a bonded peasantry. China did not build castles per se (with exceptions). Instead, Chinese emperors and warlords walled in entire cities and put enormous effort, especially during the Ming dynasty, to defend the Inner Asian frontier with the *Great Wall* and many lesser defensive walls. Similarly, Indian fortifications tended to be super-massive city defenses rather than ''castles'' in the countryside. Some of these

were so substantial they later withstood bombardment by 19th-century artillery. See also *Albigensian Crusade*; *artillery*; *bastille*; *bastion*; *Bergfreid*; *feudalism*; *keep-and-bailey*; *Livonia*; *murder holes*; *Normans*; *portcullis*; *shell-keep*; *siege warfare*; *tower-keep*.

Suggested Reading: W. Anderson, *Castles of the Middle Ages* (1970); Motoo Hinago, *Japanese Castles* (1986); Maurice Keen, ed., *Medieval Warfare* (1999); D. Pringle, *The Red Tower* (1986).

castles, on ships. Hoisting rounded tubs of missile troops to the masthead of galleys was a long-standing practice of the *Byzantine Empire*. From there, the practice of missile platforms on ships spread to Venice and around the Mediterranean. Ships' castles may have been separately invented in England. Once stable hulls became available, permanent platforms were built to replace the first ad hoc arrangements. Their elevated, crenelated look and use as missile perches caused them to be termed ''castles.'' From the 12th to 15th centuries, ''forecastle'' referred to a fighting platform or tower built in the fore of a ship in the style and appearance of a tower on land. Its essential purpose was to gain a height advantage over would-be boarders, to better shower them with lime, stones, crossbow bolts, arquebus shot, or other missiles. From the 16th to 18th centuries, ''forecastle'' referred to an upper deck built over top of the fore end of the main deck. From the 13th to 16th centuries, a ''top castle'' was a fighting platform secured to a top mast. See also *close-fights*; *cog*; *gun port*; *junk*; *line ahead*; *ship-smashers*.

castle towns. See *jōkamachi*.

Castra Dei. ''God's Camp.'' The northern terminus of the *Spanish Road*. See also *Eighty Years' War*.

casualties. See individual battles, armies, sieges, and wars.

cat (*"chatte"*). One of many names given to various smaller siege engines, usually erected on carts or rollers so that they could be moved right against the walls of a castle or fortified town. They were constructed of wood with some metal and leather shielding to retard fire.

Catalan Great Company. ''Universitas Catalanorum.'' An early and highly unusual example of a *Free Company* or band of *condottieri*. It was formed in Sicily in the 13th century by Aragonese and other veterans of the early *Reconquista*. After the *War of the Sicilian Vespers* (1282–1302) ended fighting in Sicily in 1302, some 6,000 men of the Catalan Great Company (about 4,000 of them *Almogavars*) moved east to operate in the outer provinces of the *Byzantine Empire*, and later fought for the Latin state erected in Greece after the Fourth Crusade expelled the Byzantines from Constantinople. The Catalans learned much from the victory of the Flemish infantry at *Courtrai* (1302), and adapted Flemish tactics in their own fight at *Kephissos* in 1311.

That year, they took control of the principality of the ''Duke of Athens'' and used this as their base until the dissolution of the Company in 1388. See also *prisoners of war*.

Catalonia, Revolt of (1640). From 1635 billeting of Castilian and Italian troops in Catalonia under terms of the ''Union of Arms'' proclaimed by *Olivares* added to the heavy tax burden he imposed to pay for the protracted wars of Imperial Spain. There was also a growing sense in Catalonia that the Empire was failing, and a corresponding rise of local patriotism which took a sharply devotional form among peasants. In May 1640, agrarian workers known as ''segadors'' (''reapers'') attacked tax collectors and soldiers in the towns. The mobs congealed into a peasant army whose leaders proclaimed a holy war against the corrupt and oppressive Spanish state (a change from earlier peasant disturbances that the clergy aimed at Jews, Moors, ''heretics'' or ''Turks''). On the feast of *Corpus Christi* (June 7, 1640), a mob from the peasant ''Christian Army'' entered Barcelona where they cornered *Philip IV*'s viceroy and beat him to death in the street. The urban elite of Catalonia shared many of the peasants' grievances, but they feared to rebel and were frightened by this display of lower-class violence. In December an Imperial army entered Catalonia from Castile. Popular agitation demanded a fight as rebel leaders proclaimed a Catalan republic. This complicated their appeal to *Louis XIII* of France to take them under his protection in exchange for their acceptance of his title as ''Count of Barcelona.'' This appeal to a foreign monarch and historic enemy of the Habsburgs made the Catalan rebels unforgivable traitors in the eyes of Madrid. For the next 11 years Catalonia was fought over by France and Spain, and by pro-French and pro-Spanish Catalans, in what was called locally the ''guerra dels segadors.'' In October 1652, resistance finally crumbled and Barcelona surrendered to the armies of Philip IV.

catapult. An ancient as well as medieval siege engine that threw projectiles (stones, carcasses, fireballs) great distances with reasonable accuracy. The projectile force came from torsion built up by twisting strong fiber (often, human hair), then releasing the arm. Catapults worked best in dry climates: moisture affected both the wooden frame and fiber properties. The *trebuchet* was a major advance over the catapult since it threw greater weight of stone shot, and weight was more important than range in siege warfare. See also *armories*; *artillery*; *castles, on land*; *fortification*; *Osaka Castle, Siege of*.

Cateau-Cambrésis, Peace of (April 2–3, 1559). Two treaties were agreed that finally ended the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559) between Habsburg and Valois waged on-and-off for 65 years. The settlement was prompted by French defeats at *Saint-Quentin* (1557) and *Gravelines* (1558), and the rising need of *Henri II* to deal with militant Protestantism in France. On April 2, 1559, representatives of France and England signed a treaty whereby *Elizabeth I* agreed to withdraw from military commitments in France. The next day, representatives of Henri II and *Philip II* of Spain signed the more important

agreement wherein Henri conceded the key point at issue in the war: Habsburg claims to primacy in north Italy. Specifically, France returned control of Piedmont and Savoy to the Duke of Savoy while recovering Charolais. Paris retained control of more important and defensible territories, notably Saluzzo, Calais, and the key fortresses and bishoprics of Metz, Toul, and Verdun. Spain acquired Franche-Comté. The treaty was cemented with dynastic marriages between the royal houses of Savoy and France, and France and Spain. Cateau-Cambrésis codified de facto Spanish supremacy in Italy, granting legal rights which Madrid defended for the next 150 years. It gravely weakened the Valois since most Frenchmen regarded it as a national humiliation. In sum, a temporary accommodation was reached between the greatest powers in Europe. As France fell into civil war, Philip II was freed to resume twin crusades against Islam and Protestantism. See also *Vervins, Peace of*.

Cathars. See *Albigensian Crusade*.

Catherine de Medici. See *Medici, Catherine de*.

Catholic Church. The Medieval Catholic Church upheld belief in the apostolic succession of bishops, including the primacy of the pope (bishop of Rome) on matters of faith and doctrine; at least it did so other than in periods such as the 14th–15th-century *Great Schism*, which ended when the Council of Constance decreed (''Sacrosancta'') that Church Councils were superior to popes, deposed three contending popes, and elected a new one. The Medieval Church maintained a vast scheme of moral and theological doctrine, much of it actively debated and challenged from within by clerical dissidents and other reformers. On matters of abstract doctrine the hierarchy was often ferocious, as during the *Albigensian Crusade* and *Hussite Wars*. The Medieval Church also evolved formal moral teaching that essentially upheld saintly lives and clerical piety and celibacy as idealized models for the laity. However, in practice the Church tolerated corruption in the sale of benefices and *indulgences*, open fornication and clerical concubinage, pilgrimages and reliquaries that scammed the credulous faithful, pagan folk beliefs and superstitions among the laity that even found representation (for instance, gargoyles) in the great cathedrals, and other daily vices and outlets for spiritual emotion that made life worth living for the majority of plain folk. The Catholic Church did not move to harden and enforce its doctrinal and moral positions until forced to do so by the severe challenge of the *Protestant Reformation*, which was marked from the outset by disobedience by the clergy and radical innovation in doctrine by theologians.

During the late Middle Ages the papacy weakened not from doctrinal challenge but due to decentralization of the Church, and from the corrosive absenteeism of hundreds of bishops who preferred to live in Rome rather than supervise conformity with Catholic teachings in their sees. That allowed regional churches to take on a territorial and even proto-national character. Popes were unable to counteract this trend away from the old ideal of a single

res publica Christiana due to: damage done to their reputation by the *Wars of Investiture* and their general involvement in temporal politics; preoccupation of warrior popes with such conflicts as the *War of the Eight Saints* (1375–1378); the scarring scandals of the *"Avignon Captivity"* of the papacy (1314–1362) and Great Schism; and strong resistance to papal authority by territorial princes and "national churches," notably the *Gallican* Church in France. Meanwhile, conciliar reforms floundered on revived papal resistance anchored to the need of warrior popes of the *Italian Renaissance* to collect *annates* from new bishops to finance their wars. Papal influence also waned as once cosmopolitan and "vertical" religious loyalties became more territorial and "national," as educated lay administrators replaced literate clergy in the royal bureaucracies of powerful *new monarchies*. This process was greatly advanced in England and France during the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453), in Spain and southern Italy under *Ferdinand and Isabella*, and in the rest of Italy, though only regionally, during the chronic city-state wars of the Renaissance before and after the *Peace of Lodi* (1454). German princes were made supreme by the Golden Bull of 1356 and secured in that independence by the fractured condition of the *Holy Roman Empire* into the 17th century. Even within the Church, enhanced state control was defended during the 16th century by Catholic "Erastians" in general and Gallicans in particular.

The building challenge to corrupt Church practices, then quickly also doctrine, spiraled out of control during the opening years of the Reformation, from 1517 to 1530. The Catholic response was unsystematic repression for several decades, then a calculated hardening and counterattack at the mid-century mark that mirrored early generations of Protestants in its spirit of doctrinal intolerance and spiritual coercion. The *Council of Trent* became the centerpiece of this *Counter-Reformation*, and the *Jesuits* its commandos. Even so, before the mid-16th century, Catholic observance and commitment among the general population was weak across much of Europe, especially in England, Germany, and the Netherlands. Similarly, Protestant conversions remained confined mainly to towns. Among the vast rural population awareness of the fierce doctrinal and reform disputes underway was sketchy or nonexistent. Folk belief, including growing belief in the prevalence of witches, daemons, and dark magic, was predominant. This nonconfessionalism of the masses changed around the turn of the 17th century, when Catholic and Protestant elites alike seized on religious education of the laity as the route to confessional expansion, as well as to military power and political privilege. In deepening confessionalism, raw coercion—mandatory church attendance, spies, informers, courts of the *Inquisition*—played a large role on both sides of the doctrinal divide.

Folk belief, including growing belief in the prevalence of witches, daemons, and dark magic, was predominant.

On controversies and conflicts involving the Catholic Church that were formative in medieval and early modern history see *anti-Semitism*; *Arianism*; *Arminianism*; *Calvinism*; *Catholic League (France)*; *Catholic League (Germany)*;

Charles V, Holy Roman Emperor; *Crusades*; *Ecumenical Councils*; *Edict of Restitution*; *Eighty Years' War*; *English Civil Wars*; *Erastianism*; *feudalism*; *flagellants*; *French Civil Wars*; *Guelphs and Ghibellines*; *gunpowder empires*; *Henry VIII, of England*; *heresy*; *Holy Roman Empire*; *iconoclasm*; *Index Liborum Prohibitorum*; *Italian Wars*; *Jeanne d'Arc*; *just war tradition*; *Kakure Kirishitan*; *Lollards*; *Luther, Martin*; *Orthodox Churches*; *Papal States*; *Pax Dei*; *Philip II, of Spain*; *prohibited weapons*; *real patronato*; *requerimiento*; *serpentine*; *Thirty Years' War*; *Treuga Dei*; *two swords, doctrine of*; *Union of Brest*; *witchcraft*; *Zwingli, Huldrych*.

Suggested Reading: Owen Chadwick, *The Popes and European Revolution* (1981); John O'Malley, ed., *Catholicism in Early Modern Europe* (1988); Steven Ozment, *The Age of Reform, 1250–1550* (1980).

Catholic League (France). ''Holy Union.'' When the *duc d'Anjou* died unexpectedly in June 1584, *Henri de Navarre* became presumptive heir to the French throne, then occupied by *Henri III*. The *Guise* grew in power as Henri III weakened, and Catholic militants rose in ferocious opposition to the idea of a Protestant succession. This was the essential, perhaps the only, common goal of the Catholic League: spiritual predecessors of the 17th-century *dévots/dévotes* joined with Guise schemers and Catholic Royalists to block the ascension of a Protestant king to a throne they regarded as uniquely Catholic and sacral, a common purpose made clear in a manifesto of 1585. *Philip II* of Spain lent support to these ''guerriers de Dieu'' (''warriors of God'') in the *Treaty of Joinville* (December 1584). The Guise and other aristocrats provided the officer corps of the League's military wing. The higher bourgeoisie, led by lawyers and magistrates, formed the main body within the towns and cities. All members swore an oath to take up arms to defend Catholic control of the throne. Heavily armed fanatics partook of violent self-abnegation, marching in *flagellant* processions, beating themselves bloody to accompaniment of martial music. As the movement grew, not all League cells were controlled by the Guise. Most importantly, in Paris the ''Sixteen'' (named for ''committees of public safety'' set up in the 16 quarters of the city) was controlled by some 255 upper bourgeoisie. This key cell had wide public support inside Paris. It was politically independent and more radical than the Guise.

The League forced the *Treaty of Nemours* (July 1585) on the king, who capitulated to demands for revocation of all prior concessions to the Huguenots. This launched the eighth of the *French Civil Wars* (''War of the Three Henries''), in which Leaguers promised to ''exterminate the heretics by blood and fire.'' In this project they were opposed by the king and more moderate Catholic *politiques*. In April 1588, Henri III ordered Henri Guise to stay out of Paris, but the king lost control of the city on May 12, the *Day of the Barricades*, when the Sixteen and the Catholic League rose against him. He was driven from the city in favor of Henri Guise. For the next five years the Sixteen and Leaguers ruled Paris and several other Catholic cities. Their grip was made tighter by Henri III's disastrous decision to murder the duc and the Cardinal of Guise in December 1588, which deed was followed by a League

rebellion and inspired assassination of the king (August 1, 1589). League dictatorships were set up in most Catholic towns, no longer under the Guise but run by local bourgeoisie. Afterward, ascetic radicals in the League became near-hysterical in their millenarianism and hatred for the Huguenots and their prince, Henri de Navarre. The League refused to accept this heretic and excommunicate on the sacral throne. Instead, Leaguers seized the major cities and launched a terror purge of Protestants and Catholic compromisers. However, the League lost on the field of battle to newly combined armies of Huguenots and royalist Catholics. In September 1589, *Mayenne* lost 10,000 League troops in battle with Henri IV at *Arques*. Six months later, Henri pushed aside the last Leaguer army at *Ivry-la-Bataille*, and besieged Paris. In desperation, the League turned once more to Philip II, who ordered *Parma* to relieve Paris with a Spanish army from the Netherlands. Die-hard Leaguers looked to seat a foreign Catholic on the throne after 1590, but most French Catholics balked at such an assault on the grand tradition of the Gallican Church. When Henri abjured Calvinism and reconverted to Catholicism on July 25, 1593, the political fight was over. During the next two years League military bitter-enders were run down by royalist troops.

Suggested Reading: Frederic Baumgartner, *Radical Reactionaries* (1975).

Catholic League (Germany). ''Liga.'' An alliance of German Catholic princes formed under the Treaty of Munich signed on July 10, 1609, which gave *Maximilian I* of Bavaria control over the *Kriegskasse* of the *Reichskreis* and command of all troops raised. It was formed in response to the founding of the *Protestant Union*, and stayed together thereafter to promote ''the one, all-embracing, true church.'' It ultimately included 15 bishops, 5 abbots, the city of Aachen, and Bavaria. In addition to *confessionalism*, the League promoted autonomy of its members and Bavarian influence in the Empire. However, an Imperial attempt to co-opt the League by forcing the admission of Austria resulted in break-up of the original League in 1617. Two years later Bavaria reformed a confessional alliance with neighboring bishoprics, again explicitly excluding Austria. Spain's intervention in Bohemia in May 1619, lessened concern over Austrian predominance and the Liga was accordingly reconstituted under Bavarian leadership. The ''Army of the Catholic League'' gave as much or more aid to *Ferdinand II* as did Spain during the Bohemian revolt. It scored a signal victory at the *White Mountain* (November 8, 1620), where it destroyed a patchwork Protestant coalition army led by *Anhalt*, *Mansfeld*, and *Thurn*. That secured Bohemia permanently for the Habsburgs and allowed them to forcibly recatholicize it.

The Liga signed a treaty of neutrality with the Protestant Union at Ulm in 1620 in a joint effort to prevent the war from spreading to Germany; but it could not restrain Ferdinand from pursuing *Friedrich V* into the Palatinate and thereby widening and prolonging what became the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). From 1621 to 1623 the Liga Army repeatedly outfought its opponents, largely because its commander was *Johann Tilly* and not the divers incompetents who commanded the Protestant armies. The Liga benefitted in early

battles from fighting alongside tough Spanish veterans of the Imperial *tercios* and against divided enemies and mostly feckless, confessionally indifferent mercenaries. It did not do as well against the fervently Lutheran Swedes when they entered the war in 1630, under *Gustavus Adolphus*. The reputation of the Liga Army was darkened by participation in the *sack of Magdeburg* in 1631. The next year, it joined Wallenstein outside Nürnberg, before *Alte Feste*. On average, the Liga Army fielded 30,000–40,000 troops before 1635, when it was dissolved under terms of the *Peace of Prague*. See also *Jülich-Kleve, Crisis over*; *Maximilian I, of Bavaria*.

Catholic Reformation. See *Counter-Reformation*.

***cavalgada*.** A fast, vicious cavalry raid. These were the most common feature on both sides of Iberian warfare during the *Reconquista*. See also *chevauchée*; *raiding*; *razzia*.

cavalier (1). A small tower, 10–12 feet high at most, made of earth and stones and used either as an observation post or as a platform to mount small guns.

cavalier (2). A generic term for a trooper in any cavalry unit.

Cavaliers. Originally used as a term of contempt for gentlemen adventurers supporting *Charles I* in the *English Civil Wars*, who played at war the way they hunted, followed fashion, and pursued fast women—for sport. It was later used in reference to Royalist cavalry, and to the more serious nobles and retainers who fought not so much for Charles, who played a feckless *Machiavelli* to his own interests, but to preserve traditional religion, class structure, and the English constitution. Many were English Catholics (up to 40 percent of all loyalist officers) who stood to gain nothing and to lose much from a Parliamentary or Puritan victory.

cavalry. Soldiers who fought from horseback, not *dragoons* who rode to battle but dismounted and fought on foot. There were several great cavalry empires in antiquity, notably the Parthians and Persians. The late Roman Empire saw a transition away from the infantry legions which had built it toward cavalry, necessary to defend it against the horse soldiers of invading barbarian tribes. During the second millennium C.E., the *Fulbe* of West Africa built an empire from horseback, as did the feudal knights of *Songhay*. In fact, cavalry empires dominated West Africa until they met their match in the infantry of the *Ashante* and other coastal and forest peoples, newly armed with European firearms. The *Bedouin* empire was won by Arabian cavalry, while the *Mongols* conquered the greatest land empire in history from the backs of fleet war ponies, and with composite bows and incomparable ruthlessness. The *Mamlūks* of Egypt were a cavalry dynasty that held the reins of overlordship in much of the eastern Mediterranean for nearly 800 years. They survived in truncated form nearly to the 19th century, until crushed by Napoleon at the

''Battle of the Pyramids'' in 1798. Ottoman armies were dominated by *akinci* freelance cavalry, heavy mailed *sipahis*, light cavalry *timariots*, and allied *Tatar* scouts and skirmishers. Even at the peak of *Janissary* enlistment Ottoman armies never exceeded one infantryman for every two horse soldiers. The armies of the *Safavids* of Iran were almost exclusively cavalry until the time of *Abbas I*. Then the Safavids shifted from cavalry as their principal arm, not least because they lost too often and badly to Ottoman gun-bearing infantry and mobile artillery. Horse cavalry did not dominate Indian warfare primarily because the humid Indian climate was inimical to most breeds. Instead, Indian armies relied on *elephants* as cavalry, military transports, and in construction of fortifications.

Whatever the breed of *warhorse*, and despite sharp limitations imposed on horse archers by *siege warfare*, only cavalry could effectively patrol borders, provide swift reinforcement of threatened areas, and hound and pursue a defeated enemy. Medieval Europe was constructed socially as well as militarily around the mounted warrior, as much or more than it was based on the Church. In England, medieval cavalrymen were divided into *bannerets*, *knights*, and *men-at-arms*. In France the key distinction was between those knights who were ''dubbed,'' and those who were not (*sergeants* or *squires*) Knights became progressively more heavily armored in response to the penetrating power of the crossbow and of early *gunpowder weapons*. They were the core of all *Crusader* armies and frequently won against staggeringly greater numbers of Muslim infantry and light horse. Their dominance of the battlefield in Europe began to erode from the late 13th century when England's heavy cavalry was surprised and defeated by *William Wallace*'s army of fierce Scots at *Stirling Bridge* (1297). More influentially, Flemish militia decimated the French mounted nobility at *Courtrai* (1302). Learning from this, Robert I (''The Bruce'') defeated the English again at *Bannockburn* (1314). In all these fights, heavily armored men on big horses, of the type that dominated Norman and European warfare for 200 years, were met and bested by common infantry. To even greater educational and psychological effect, Swiss infantry formed into *pike* squares began to inflict ever greater defeats on Austrian knighthood, at *Morgarten* (1315), *Laupen* (1339), *Sempach* (1386), and *Näfels* (1388). Once they had fully incorporated the pike into their tactics, after a close battle at *Arbedo* (1422), they destroyed the Burgundian heavy horse at *Grandson* (1476), *Morat* (1476), and *Nancy* (1477).

. . . the Mongols *conquered the greatest land empire in history from the backs of fleet war ponies . . .*

Within Europe, the distinction of cavalry from infantry was military and social: the French ''chevalier'' (''horse warrior'') or Italian warrior from one of the *consorterie* came from the aristocracy. He was distinguished from a peasant or town militiaman by his warhorse, armor, and weapons, especially the *couched lance* and *sword*. Such a heavy cavalryman was recruited from between 2 and 4 percent of the population, at most. Only in France, therefore, did large population and national wealth mean that armies were made up principally of

aristocrats. Elsewhere, infantry from the lower orders necessarily supplemented small feudal levies. In *chivalric* warfare most horse actions involved a line of armored horsemen (1,500 to 2,000 three or four ranks deep formed a line one mile wide) charging en masse to achieve maximum *shock* effect. Opposing infantry either opened alleys before the great, panting and pounding *destriers*, or broke apart and scattered. In either case, armored nobles happily slaughtered with lance and sword the unarmored peasants or town militia as they ran in terror. However, infantry tactics evolved around various forms of the pike that effectively countered cavalry shock. When first faced with disciplined arrays of infantry with long spears, and still brimming with an arrogant sense of class and martial superiority, noble cavalry rode on in the same old way to meet disaster at Courtrai, Bannockburn, and elsewhere. Of course, adaptation came with time. The first, simple expedient was a new role assigned to specialized infantry. As enemy archers did their best to interrupt one's heavy cavalry charge with harassing fire into the assembling mass of lumbering horsemen, it became the crucial job of friendly pike infantry to protect friendly archers deployed to pin down the enemy archers interfering with the charge. A sort of light artillery duel ensued, with archers fighting archers. While this occurred, the heavy cavalry could form and move, accelerating into a full charge against the enemy line of infantry or horse at the critical moment (from about 50 to 100 meters out). Where such counter-archery preliminary to the charge was not employed, where the cavalry instead charged first and unsupported by infantry archers as the French did at Courtrai, the result was massive defeat and heavy casualties among the noble horse.

Cavalry slowly learned to avoid the head-on charge in favor of sweeping wide to encircle the infantry's flanks, or to maneuver to the rear to attack the *baggage train*. However, the main shift in horse soldier tactics—starting in England in the early 1330s—was for cavalry to dismount so that men-at-arms could fight on foot, using their lances as pikes before turning to the sword and mace for close-in fighting. Such tactics still permitted dismounted men to resume a cavalry role for pursuit of a fleeing enemy once close fighting and archery had broken his line. In this the English nobility had learned much from their earlier defeats by pikemen in the *Scottish Wars*, when they were led by Edward I and his son, Edward II. Under the grandson, *Edward III*, radical new tactics were used to defeat a far larger Scots army at *Halidon Hill* (1333). The new English tactics called for longbowmen protected by shaved stakes or stands of pikemen to stand forward of the flanks of the main body of English men-at-arms, who dismounted to hold the center of the English line. Or, longbow formations were placed at the flanks of each of two or three smaller ranks of dismounted knights. The archers then shot out arrow storms at long range, breaking up the enemy formations or provoking them to premature attack, which was met well by the dismounted men-at-arms. In this way, Edward destroyed the Scots national host. These new tactics were taken to France by Edward III and his son, the *Black Prince*, and by their successors during the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). The heavy cavalry of the French nobility first ran into them at *Crécy* (1346). The scale of that defeat taught the

French nobility to also dismount so that they, too, fought on foot at *Poitiers* (1356) and later. Lessons learned are often forgotten, however, so that decades later *Henry V* again used Edward III's formations and tactics to kill and capture thousands of mounted French knights at *Agincourt* (1415).

The gunpowder revolution greatly increased infantry firepower at the expense of cavalry, while siege warfare hampered cavalry's effectiveness. The advent of effective firearms in time unhorsed the knight by rendering his own armor and that of his mount equally useless. In Western Europe, 14th- and 15th-century cavalry tried to counter with their own firearms by adopting the pistol and developing the *caracole*. But this proved of little effect against pike squares and musketeers, who drove cavalry to the margins of the battlefield. During the early years of the *Thirty Years' War*, cavalry made up about 20–25 percent of most armies. Heavy cavalry was often supplemented with ''dragoons,'' musket-bearing mounted infantry, who provided mobile firepower. *Light cavalry* provided reconnaissance and skirmishers to the large infantry armies that dominated the early 17th century. The great innovator was *Gustavus Adolphus*, who modeled his cavalry reforms on the Polish style, reducing armor in favor of leather (*buff coats*) or plain uniforms, and replacing the ineffective pistol and caracole cantor with the slashing saber and full-speed charge. This change was captured in the fierce and merciless battle cry of his feared Finnish horse: ''hakkaa paalle!'' (''cut them down''). Sweden's success provoked imitators throughout Germany and as far afield as England, where at mid-century *Cromwell* and the cavalry of the *New Model Army* adopted the proven Swedish tactics and training and drove the individually more skilled horsemen of the *Cavaliers* from the field. On the continent, the ratio of cavalry to infantry increased dramatically after 1635, to 50 percent or more. This was largely due to logistical problems: horsemen could forage more widely, which was necessary in lands burned and eaten out over several decades of war.

In Eastern Europe, things were very different. Light cavalry *hussars* and medium cavalry of the *Polish Army* dominated, fighting against vast horse armies of *Tatars* and *Cossacks*, as well as against Swedish horse and Russian *servitor cavalry*. The most probable explanation of this significant difference was topography rather than ''inferior'' or ''backward'' military culture, as too many Western European histories have suggested. The need for infantry in chronic warfare with mounted nomads, other than in garrisons armed with firearms, was minimal. Instead, eastern armies properly recognized that foot soldiers, other than dragoons, could not yet make up in firepower on the vast eastern plains what they lacked in mobility, even when protected by pikes. And since infantry was mostly ineffective in Eastern Europe and on the Ukrainian and Russian steppes, cavalry remained the principal arm. Likewise, light cavalry could not operate as well as infantry in the densely populated, heavily forested, and riverine geography of Western Europe (or the mountains of Japan), so that infantry over time became the preferred arm in those areas, with archers and gunmen protected by pikemen or *ashigaru*. See also *arbalétriers*; *arquebusiers à cheval*; *castles, on land*; *chivalry*; *close order*; *conrois*;

demi-lancers; *doubling the ranks*; *drill*; *fortification*; *hobelars*; *Ironsides*; *jinetes*; *Lisowczyks*; *motte-and-bailey*; *open order*; *Pancerna cavalry*; *Parthian shot*; *Reiters*; *scourers*; *secret*; *slavery and war*; *stradiots*; *tournaments*; *turcopoles*.

Suggested Reading: Andrew Ayton, *Knights and Warhorses* (1994); Patricia Crone, *Slaves on Horses* (1980); R. Law, *The Horse in West African History* (1980); John Ellis, *Cavalry: The History of Mounted Warfare* (2002).

Cebelu. An armed cavalry retainer in service to a *timariot* or *sipahi*.

Cebici başi. An Ottoman officer in charge of an arsenal.

Cebicis (cebicilar). ''Armorers.'' A specialized unit of support within the *Janissary Corps* responsible for making and repairing armor and weapons. They also formed a small, separate fighting unit. In the mid-16th century they numbered fewer than 1,000 men and were attached to the artillery. In the 17th century their number was expanded many times, and they worked inside large garrisons.

Cecil, William (1520–1598). ''Lord Burghley.'' English statesman. Chief minister to *Elizabeth I*. Under *Mary Tudor* he outwardly conformed to Catholicism. In 1558, Elizabeth appointed him secretary of state, a position from which he guided her and England's policy with unparalleled shrewdness for 40 years. His main interest was to secure Elizabeth on the throne, which made him a lifelong enemy of *Mary Stuart*. Cecil viewed her as twice damned, as a Catholic enemy of England and as a harlot queen and traitor. His extensive network of spies finally gathered the evidence he needed to persuade the reluctant Elizabeth to execute Mary for treason. Cecil was instrumental in most of the successes of Elizabethan government.

Cecora (Ţuţora), Battle of (November 20, 1620). Outraged by the second burning of Constantinople harbor by the *Cossacks* inside five years, a huge Ottoman army of 160,000 invaded Poland-Lithuania (Moldavia). At Cecora, 40,000 Tatars and Ottomans met just 9,000 Poles and Cossacks, who suffered a crushing defeat. That opened Galicia to pillage.

***Celâli* Revolts.** A series of mutinies in segments of the Ottoman military probably caused by the loss of income due to confiscation of the ''timars'' of some 30,000 *timariots* for failure to report for military duty during the *Thirteen Years' War* (1593–1606). Adding to the turmoil was the demobilization without pay of thousands of *sekban*. The main revolt was suppressed by 1603, but rootless troops continued organized robbery and violence in the country to mid-century, behaving rather like *Free Companies* or *Ecorcheurs* in Europe or the *ashigaru* of Japan.

celata. An early Italian *barbuta* helmet. See also *sallet*.

Les Cent-Suisses. "The Hundred Swiss." See also *palace guards*.

Ceresole, Battle of (1544). See *Italian Wars*.

Cerignola, Battle of (April 21, 1503). Spain's "Gran Capitan" *Gonzalo di Córdoba* had been beaten by a Franco-Swiss army at *Seminara* in 1495. To counter Swiss tactics, at Cerignola he dug a ditch in front of his line. This broke up the cadence of the Swiss pikers, exposing them to murderous Spanish arquebus fire. Once the enemy lines grew ragged Córdoba sent his *tercios* forward. These were newly reformed units with added pikes and more arquebusiers, which gave the Swiss a taste of their own famous "push of pike." The Spanish infantry drove the Franco-Swiss troops backward and downslope, while Spanish cavalry pursued and cut down individual soldiers as they ran. The French artillery train was captured. Naples fell to Córdoba on May 13. While the pike remained an integral part of the Spanish tercio, it was the arquebus and musket that gave the formation its power at Cerignola. The battle was the beginning of the end for Swiss infantry dominance. See also *Marignano, Battle of*.

Český-Brod, Battle of (May 30, 1434). "Lipany." The major battle of the second civil war among the *Hussites*, in which the radical *Taborites* fought the more moderate *Utraquists* 20 miles east of Prague. The Taborite general and former priest, *Procopius the Great*, led an army of Bohemian peasants and townsmen against a force dominated by Utraquist nobility, who had reconciled and allied with Bohemian Catholics at the *Council of Basel*. The clash on the field of battle was unusually sanguinary, reflecting the vicious hatreds of a full-fledged religious civil war. Perhaps 18,000 Czechs died that day on both sides, all killed by fellow Czechs and Hussites. This toll severely weakened the Hussites for when they next faced external enemies. In 1436 they were temporarily subdued by *Sigismund*.

Ceuta. This coastal enclave was occupied by Portugal in 1415 as part of an effort to bypass North African middlemen and gain direct access to the gold of Guinea. Prince *Enrique "the Navigator"* was present at the capture. Afterward, he launched new coastal explorations from Ceuta. See also *Melilla*; *Morocco*.

chaiky. A shallow *galley* some 40–80 feet long, used from the 16th century by *Cossacks* to raid *Tatar* settlements in the Crimea and Ottoman towns along the Black Sea coastline.

chain shot. A form of cannon *shot* used in war at sea. It was comprised of a hollowed cannonball inside which rested a chain affixed to two loops linking the half-spheres of the shell. When fired the shell separated to the length of the chain, creating a whirling bola that tore through an enemy ship's rigging and any sailor or marine unlucky enough to stand in the way.

Chaldiran, Battle of (August 23, 1514). The *Janissaries* of the Ottoman Empire, fighting for *Selim I*, smashed the army of the *Safavids* of Iran in this first major battle between the two Muslim empires. The wholly lopsided outcome resulted from the more modern gunpowder weapons and advanced infantry tactics of the Janissaries, but also because the Iranian army was almost exclusively cavalry archers recruited from tribal levies and lacked modern firepower. The Ottomans deployed serried ranks of Janissary musketeers behind wagon-forts. They had also hauled as many as 200 heavy cannon to the battle. The musketeers and cannon exacted a great toll of Iranian horse archers, many thousands of whom fell. Most military historians agree that Ottoman artillery was decisive in the battle, though the Janissary infantry also played a key role in stopping Iran's cavalry which had scattered the Ottoman *timariot* cavalry, before falling in droves before the guns. There is some evidence that the Iranians had access to artillery but foreswore it as unmanly and unworthy of *holy war*. Chaldiran did much to disabuse them of that prejudice while resetting the frontier between the Ottoman and Safavid empires and securing Azerbaijan and Kurdistan to the Ottoman Empire. After Chaldiran the Safavids removed their capital from vulnerable Tabrīs to more distant Qazwin.

Chalgrove Field, Battle of (1643). See *English Civil Wars*.

chamber. In breech-loading guns, a detachable chamber pre-loaded with shot and powder. In muzzle-loaders, the rear part of the bore which narrowed to accommodate a smaller powder charge, and to provide ''shoulders'' on which the wadding and cannonball rested.

chambre ardente. ''Burning Chamber.'' Instituted by *Henri II* in October 1547 immediately upon his ascension, this was a court of royal inquisition into ''heresy'' set up in the Parlement of Paris. Its punishments ranged from torments and fines to death by hanging (for repentant heretics), to execution by burning (for unrepentant heretics). Extant records show that the chambre ardente was principally concerned with the spread of heresy among the clergy, which was the class most directly responsible for the early direction of the *Protestant Reformation*.

Champlain, Samuel de (1567–1635). French explorer and soldier who set the early pattern of French colonization in North America, which emphasized trade over settlement. His first voyage to the New World was actually in service to Spain, to the Caribbean in 1599–1601. He sailed to Canada on a fur trading expedition in 1603, during which he explored the outer St. Lawrence River valley. He returned to chart the coasts of Nova Scotia and New England, 1604–1607. In 1608 he founded Québec city as a military outpost and trading center. In alliance with the Huron, he led several French-Indian expeditions against the empire of the powerful Iroquois League, traditional enemies of the Huron, from 1608 to 1609. In 1611 the French

pushed further up the St. Lawrence and established another fortified outpost at Montréal. He went to Paris in 1612 to obtain royal approval of his monopoly over the lucrative fur trade, then returned to New France as its governor. In 1615 he led another expedition against the Iroquois. He was active in the Anglo-French War of 1626–1630, and was forced to surrender Québec to English troops in 1629. When the town was restored as part of a general settlement in 1632 he resumed his governorship of the colony. As governor, he continued to promote French exploration and expansion into the interior of North America. His close alliance with the Huron set the stage for a century of French-Indian wars with the British and their North American colonists. See also *Indian Wars*.

chanfron. Equine *plate* armor that protected the head of a medieval *warhorse*. See also *peytral*.

chapel-de-fer. A light, iron *kettle-hat* type of infantry helmet, bowl-shaped to cover most of the head with a wide brim. It was similar in appearance to World War I British helmets and was the most common infantry helmet in Europe for several centuries.

char-aina. See *armor*.

Charles I, of England (1600–1649). A sickly youth, he did not speak until age five or walk until age seven, and retained a stammer all his life. A competent scholar and amateur theologian, but arrogant and aloof, his first foreign misadventure came in 1623 when he traveled to Madrid with *Buckingham* to negotiate a dynastic marriage, and was rebuffed. That contributed to his decision to fight Spain in behalf of his exiled brother-in-law, *Friedrich V*. Buckingham arranged his marriage to a French Catholic princess, Henrietta Maria (1609–1669), sister of *Louis XIII*. The match was viewed with suspicion in England for its pro-Catholic clauses. Charles succeeded as king on March 27, 1625, and the next month received Henrietta at Dover. Within a year he grew tired of her two dozen priests and 400 attendants and sent them all back to France. Thereafter, Henrietta was a cardinal influence in his life and policy. Charles intervened in Europe militarily, and foolhardily, from 1625 to 1630. His war aims were wholly beyond his means: a vague defense of Protestantism everywhere; restoration of Friedrich V to the Palatinate; even toppling of Spanish hegemony. In pursuit of these chimeras he joined the *Hague Alliance*. When Parliament refused to fund his promises of aid, he dissolved it and tried to force a war loan. Thus began in foreign misadventure the long and fatal crisis of his reign.

Thus began in foreign misadventure the long and fatal crisis of his reign.

The war against Spain was going badly when Charles also went to war with France, sending Buckingham to relieve the Huguenots at *La Rochelle*. Two

expeditions were so ineptly planned and executed they were an international humiliation for England, and did nothing to prevent the Huguenot surrender to *Richelieu* and Louis XIII. After Buckingham's assassination Charles ended the foolhardy war, signing the Peace of Susa (April 14, 1629). He ended his other useless conflict, the long-distance naval war with Spain, the next year. It was too late: his foolish and expensive wars, his Catholic marriage, and his dismissal of Parliament reopened fissures of confessional and constitutional politics in England which would only widen in the deceptive years of peace that remained before the start of the *English Civil Wars*.

In 1634, Charles imposed collection of *ship money* from the coastal towns. In 1637 he extended this arbitrary tax to inland counties. That year, he also tried to impose the *Arminian* prayer book on the Scottish Kirk. In 1639 he provoked the *First Bishops' War* (1639) by seeking to impose episcopacy on Scotland. Without Parliament to pay for England's defenses, Charles looked to raise an Irish army to fight the *Covenanters*, but was forced to back down. The *Second Bishops' War* (1640–1641) started when Charles broke his word on imposition of episcopacy. Again, he was compelled to retreat after failing to raise an Irish army. Charles was finally forced to recall Parliament. When the Commons met its members were hostile and defiant and refused to vote the king war monies until long-standing grievances were addressed. Charles dissolved this ''Short Parliament'' (April 13–May 5, 1640) and tried once more to govern by fiat. On November 3 he was compelled to recall Parliament as the Scots invaded northern England. This ''Long Parliament'' sat well after Charles lost his crown and the head that carried it, until dismissed by *Oliver Cromwell* in 1653 (formally, to March 16, 1660).

Over the king's meek objections Parliament, led by John Pym (1584–1643), impeached his key advisers, the Earl of Strafford and Archbishop Laud, executing the former. Charles cast the iron dice of war on January 4, 1642, when he sent troops into the Commons to arrest five members, all of whom took flight. Charles declared war on Parliament from his camp at Nottingham on August 22, 1642. During the four years of civil war that followed he proved as cautious and competent a general as he was rash and incompetent a king. He was in command at *Edgehill* (1642) and *First Newbury* (1643), and defeated a small Roundhead army at Cropedy Bridge (1644). He led the Royalist to a decisive defeat at *Naseby* (1645), however, despite displaying real personal courage in a lost cause.

Leaving his headquarters in Oxford, Charles surrendered to *David Leslie* at Newark on May 5, 1646. The next January the Scots sold him to Parliament. He was closely guarded near Northampton for four months, and three more at Hampton Court. He spent more time on the Isle of Wight. He was seized by the Army on June 2, 1647. In December 1648 he was brought to Westminster on the insistence of Oliver Cromwell and the *New Model Army* to be tried by Parliament as a ''tyrant, traitor, and murderer.'' It was, perhaps, the king's finest hour: he refused to plea, rejected the competence of any English court to try a sovereign, and conducted himself with great personal dignity as he was convicted and condemned to death. On the scaffold before

Whitehall he proclaimed anew his view of sacred monarchy: ''A subject and a sovereign are clean, different things.'' His final declamation before the executioner's axe fell on January 30, 1649, was: ''Remember!'' See also *exact militia*; *Fifth Monarchists*.

Suggested Reading: L. Reeve, *Charles I and the Road to Personal Rule* (1989); Kevin Sharpe, *The Personal Rule of Charles I* (1992).

Charles II, of England (1630–1685). See *Cromwell, Oliver*; *Dunbar, Battle of*; *English Civil Wars*; *Worcester, Battle of (1651)*.

Charles V, Holy Roman Emperor (1500–1558). Habsburg emperor of the Holy Roman Empire; king of Spain; duke of Burgundy. During the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559), his grandfather *Ferdinand I* (of Aragon) acquired extensive holdings in Italy, giving Charles titles and domains in Naples and Sicily as well as Spain. He was duke of Burgundy by inheritance of his mother, Mary of Burgundy, daughter of *Charles the Rash*. On January 12, 1519, *Maximilian I* died. After paying handsomely to secure election, Charles was elevated to ''king of the Romans'' on June 28, 1519. At age 19, he already possessed more power, lands, wealth, and legal authority than any king since Charlemagne, in whose capital, Aachen, he was crowned Holy Roman Emperor on October 23, 1520. Europe was impressed, as was Charles, with the idea that the old universal empire (*res publica Christiana*) might be revived in his person. Charles was also titular master of the immense new world empire claimed by Spain in the Americas. In the same year he came into his German inheritance, *Hernán Cortés* began the conquest of the *Aztec Empire*; within two years this immensely rich land was added to Charles' dominion. Before he was 40, the gold rich *Inca Empire* and most of the remainder of Central and South America also came under his sway. And Charles would add the crowns of Hungary, Bohemia, and Lombardy to his many lesser titles. All that came at a price: throughout his reign he had hostile fronts on many frontiers, not least in the *Militargrenze* against an expanding Ottoman Empire.

Charles I's European holdings encircled France on three sides. Although this was the product of serial accidents of birth, death, and inheritance rather than intention, France was implicitly threatened. And Charles inherited the ongoing Italian Wars with young *Francis I* determined to secure Milan. To fight him, Charles relied on the Spanish way of war and military system of heavy infantry squares, or *tercios*. The apex came early, when Charles personally won a great victory at *Pavia* (1525), capturing Francis I and holding him in Spain until he agreed to a peace, which he immediately renounced upon his release. Charles thus remained committed in Italy against France continuously, with brief respites in 1526, 1529, 1538, and 1544. In 1527, angry with Pope Clement VII's involvement in the *League of Cognac*, Charles sent an army to occupy Rome. While there, unpaid mercenaries mutinied and sacked the city, raping nuns and murdering civilians. They also took Clement prisoner. The pious Charles was shocked (some historians date his later, paralyzing melancholia to this incident). He restored Clement both from

principle and in order to obtain his assistance dealing with the religious revolt then in full-throated roar in Germany.

When *Martin Luther* made his resounding protest against Church abuses in 1517 young Charles was faced with a crisis that would bedevil his efforts to either crush or compromise with religious dissent in the Empire. The theological thunderstorm and wars of the *Protestant Reformation* that followed would long outlast him. But he was there at the beginning. In March 1521 he called the Diet of Worms to consider Luther's writings. It condemned them and ordered Luther's books and pamphlets burned. The next year, Charles extended the Inquisition to his Burgundian holdings, shocking the tolerant Netherlands. Yet, it was Charles' preoccupation with his wars with France and the Ottomans that probably saved the Reformation: before 1530 Charles never even ventured into the Empire, and by the time he did Lutheranism had taken permanent root in many of its provinces. The next year, German Protestant princes formed the *Schmalkaldic League* to oppose him and any recatholicization. Thus religious and secular revolt blended. For the rest of his life Charles remained determined to hold the empire together and to defend the Catholic faith, as he understood it. He would fail, but also pass his urgent sense of Habsburg religious mission down to his son, *Philip II*.

Financed with loans from the *Fuggers*, in 1535 Charles defeated the Ottomans and captured *Tunis*. Then it was back to Germany to fight rebellious princes and make a final effort to heal the religious breach. He convened another Imperial Diet, in Regensburg (1641). However, Charles was again pulled into war with the Ottomans and France, who allied against him and all conventional religious allegiance. In 1542 a combined Franco-Ottoman fleet raided Habsburg territory. Charles won a major victory over the Protestant princes at *Mühlberg* (1547), but badly overreached in restoring imperial authority, thereby alienating even Catholic princes. By 1552 Charles was losing to rebels and the French in Germany, and to foreign armies on several other fronts. In deep despair, he agreed to the *Convention of Passau* in 1552, then the great compromise of the *Peace of Augsburg* (1555) which granted legal protections to his Lutheran subjects. Considering that the Habsburg domains were too diverse and scattered to be ruled from one place, but also afraid of the crypto-Protestant sympathies of his brother, *Maximilian II*, Charles divided his inheritance. He abdicated in two installments: first, he stepped down as Holy Roman Emperor (1555) in favor of another brother, *Ferdinand I*. In 1556 he abdicated in Spain in favor of his son, Philip II. Then he retired to a monastery in Estramadura, where he died in a profound melancholy in 1558.

Habsburg power peaked with Charles, though for a time it looked as though Philip II might succeed where Charles had failed. Because of the division of his inheritance the Habsburg territories evolved as separate Spanish and Austrian empires, allied yet increasingly discrete and apart. Charles also left Philip a ''political testament'' which called for defense of the Catholic faith even above empire. Charles cautioned Philip to permit more rights to the conquered

Indians of the New World, but to crush the effort of the Dutch to break free of Habsburg control. He feared this would lead to disintegration of the entire Habsburg edifice. In fact, the empire was already too large when he inherited it, with too many distant borders and far-flung enemies; and he had expanded it since then. What he assayed had been too grand, his empire too unwieldy to be defended with the military technology and fiscal and transportation systems of his day. Mostly, however, Charles failed because he sought to preserve two ideas which over the course of his life and reign were increasingly anachronistic and out of favor with the Age: a sole, unifying Catholic faith for all Christendom, and a single empire to rule the same. Tragically, his son and grandson would continue to tilt at these imperial and confessional windmills from their base in Spain, over another half-century of bloody but ultimately useless religious warfare. See also *Alcántara, Battle of*; *Anabaptism*; *artillery*; *Counter-Reformation*; *Cortés, Hernán*; *encomienda*; *Imperial Diet*; *Knights of Calatrava*; *Malta*; *Moctezuma II*; *Passau*; *Preveza, Convention of*; *Rhodes, Siege of (1522–1523)*; *Santiago, Matamoros*; *Tenochtitlán, First Siege of*; *Tenochtitlán, Second Siege of*.

Suggested Reading: Martyn Rady, *Emperor Charles V* (1988; 1995); James Tracy, *Emperor Charles V, Impresario of War* (2002); Royall Tyler, *Emperor Charles the Fifth* (1956).

Charles VII, of France (1403–1461, r.1429–1461). See *Armagnacs*; *Bureau, Jean and Gaspard*; *compagnies de l'ordonnance*; *Ecorcheurs*; *franc-archers*; *French Army*; *Hundred Years' War*; *Jeanne d'Arc*.

Charles VIII, of France (1470–1498, r.1483–1498). See *Fornovo, Battle of*; *franc-archers*; *Italian Wars*; *Seminara, Battle of*.

Charles IX, of France (1550–1574). See *French Civil Wars*; *Medici, Catherine de*; *St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres*.

Charles IX, of Sweden. See *Karl IX*.

Charles de Lorraine (1524–1574). See *Guise, Charles, Cardinal de Lorraine*.

Charles the Rash (1433–1477). "Charles the Bold." Compte de Charolais; duc de Burgundy, 1467–1477. Son of "Philip the Good," he clashed early with *Louis XI* of France, whom he briefly imprisoned in 1468. That same year he secured an English alliance by marriage to Margaret, sister of King Edward IV. A military perfectionist who believed in the ideal of rational organization of soldiery, and that ideal formations and battle plans could be formulated in advance, he planned elaborate schemes of deployment, carefully accumulated an enviable artillery train, and generally was in the lead of most innovations in the military arts. The core element of the Burgundian army he set up was a force of 1,250 *lances*, which he subdivided into 100 lance units. In a famous

ordinance in 1473, Charles set up "*compagnies de l'ordonnance*" of four uniformed squads, each comprised of five lances of nobility of the sword. But he was not blind to the new role of infantry on the European field of battle. He raised infantry regiments from traditional town militia and incorporated these into his army, and added regular infantry to his compagnies de l'ordonnance, which were comprised of a core of *men-at-arms* but also mounted archers, infantry crossbowmen, and a large number of "couleuveriniers" (hand-gunners). Ultimately, Charles' compagnies de l'ordonnance were built on redesigned lances that counted nine infantrymen for every man-at-arms (three archers, three pikemen, and three couleuveriniers).

On the other hand, as a battlefield commander Charles left much to be desired by his men and duchy. His life's ambition was to elevate Burgundy to a full kingdom and himself from duke to king. He hoped, in addition, to make Burgundy one of the emerging Great Powers, stretching from Flanders to northern Italy and rivaling France and the Holy Roman Empire in wealth and lands. That meant he needed to conquer and annex Alsace and Lorraine and cut a swath through part of the *Swiss Confederation*. His assault on Lorraine brought him into direct conflict with the allied Swiss, whose pike squares destroyed his Burgundian and mercenary armies at *Grandson* (1476) and *Morat* (1476). In his last battle with the Swiss, at *Nancy* (1477), Charles lost his army, then his mount and his life: he was hooked from his horse by Swiss *halberdiers*, who then hacked him to death on the ground. The historical chance for Burgundy to emerge as an independent state, perhaps even as a Great Power, died with him: shortly after his demise Burgundy was claimed and partitioned between Austria and France. See also *Burgundian-French War*; *Burgundian-Swiss War*; *Charles V, Holy Roman Emperor*; *condottieri*; *drill*; *Héricourt, Battle of*; *League of Public Weal*; *Maximilian I*.

. . . he planned elaborate schemes of deployment, carefully accumulated an enviable artillery train . . .

Suggested Reading: R. Vaughan, *Charles the Rash* (1973).

charter colony. A colonial settlement founded by grant of a Royal charter or license, such as Virginia. This loose legal connection allowed exploration and exploitation of new colonies by private interests within a framework that formally recognized the authority and indirect rule of a distant sovereign.

charter company. Private commercial enterprises that were granted governing powers over colonial territories by distant governments which did not wish to take on the commitment or expense of direct rule. The most spectacular examples were the *East India Company* (EIC) and the Dutch *Vereenigde Oostindische Compaagnie* (VOC). Other charter companies were founded by various European countries to explore and monopolize trade with the Caribbean, China, Muscovy, Africa, and the Americas. (Spain was an exception, governing its overseas colonies through vice royalties, the *real patronato*, and the

Council of the Indies.) Joint-stock companies allied the interests of monarchs and commercial classes in bellicose overseas adventures that promised high profits and gave both an interest in naval affairs. In England and the Netherlands, this helped form an incipient sense of ''nationhood'' around support for permanent navies.

chase gun(s). Originally, a main gun mounted to the fore of a *galley* to permit firing when chasing enemy ships. This tactic was also imitated in sailing ships. Later, ''chase gun'' referred to cannon mounted in the rear of sailing vessels, used to fire upon pursuers or to give a ''parting shot'' as the ship turned to reload its broadside guns out of range. See also *frigate*; *weather gauge*.

Chastillon, Battle of (1453). See *Castillon, Battle of*.

Châteauneuf-de-Randon, Fall of (1380). See *Hundred Years' War*.

Châtillon. See *French Civil Wars*; *Montmorency, Anne, duc de*.

Chaul, Siege of (1571). The sultan of Ahmednagar sent an army of 150,000 to besiege this Portuguese *artillery fortress* defended by a garrison of just 1,100 men. With its back to the sea, from whence it was resupplied by Portuguese ships, the bastioned fort held off the sultan's host for six months, after which the Indian troops withdrew.

***chausses*.** Leggings made of *mail*. They were widely adopted by European knights and men-at-arms from the 12th century. Comparable armored leggings were worn by Ottoman soldiers and by warriors in India, Iran, and China.

***chauve-souris*.** ''Bald mouse'' (that is, a bat). A French *halberd* marked by a long central spike flanked by double side blades resembling a bat's ears.

***chemin de ronde*.** A path for either infantry or cavalry atop a wide *rampart*, used to quickly reinforce weak or threatened parts of a fortification under attack. See also *terre-plein*.

Chemnitz, Battle of (April 14, 1638). Following the *Treaty of Hamburg*, which provided Sweden with badly needed French subsidies, a Swedish army under *Johann Banér* defeated the Saxon Army at Chemnitz and went on to occupy parts of Bohemia.

Cherasco, Peace of (1631). See *Richelieu, Armand Jean du Plessis de*; *War of the Mantuan Succession*.

Cheriton, Battle of (1644). See *English Civil Wars*; *Hopton, Ralph*; *Waller, William*.

***chertva* lines.** See *servitor classes*.

chevalier. See *cavalry*; *knight*.

chevauchée. Its original meaning was "riding services," one of the three forms of military obligation of *knights* under the *servitium debitum*. Its later and more general and lasting meaning was a major cavalry raid, in the Angevin and later English tradition and style. In a major chevauchée arable land outside town or castle walls was devastated in order to provoke the owners to sally out to defend it in battle. A chevauchée also garnered plunder, and hence helped war pay for itself (*bellum se ipse alet*). Foragers and plunderers from a chevauchée moving through open country typically devastated land five to seven miles broad ("havoc radius") on either side of the line of march of an advancing army, and sometimes well beyond that range—in 1356 the *Black Prince* wasted lands as far as 40 miles on either side of his army's path. England's *Edward III* was a master of the large-scale, strategic chevauchée. He led one into Scotland in 1333 that provoked the Scots to meet him in battle at *Halidon Hill*, where he crushed their army and relaunched the *Scottish Wars*. He led a chevauchée through northern France in 1339 in an effort to provoke the French king and nobility to fight. He began by besieging Cambrai, but tired of the effort after just 19 days. When that attempt at provocation failed he moved into the countryside, where he burned and plundered some 200 French villages and towns. *Philip VI*, who was the stronger party militarily, did not take the bait. Instead, he responded with a Fabian strategy and scorched earth policy of his own to deny Edward's army the food and fodder it needed to continue the raid.

Edward led or ordered a dozen major chevauchées against his Scottish or French enemies: 1339 to Cambrésis, the first English campaign of the *Hundred Years' War*; one in each of 1340, 1342, and 1345; two in 1346, when the English burned out Barfleur, Cherbourg, most of the Carentan peninsula, and provoked the French to fight at *Crécy* in 1346, and a second in Scotland which led to the Battle of *Neville's Cross*; 1349 to Toulousain; three in 1355, one in Ireland, a second in Scotland, and the third in Languedoc; two in 1356, one of which provoked the French to fight at *Poitiers*; and a climactic great chevauchée in 1359–1360 from Calais to Burgundy and Paris, which forced France to accede to the *Treaty of Brétigny*. In the 1355 chevauchée in France, Languedoc was torched by the Black Prince who rode from central France to the Mediterranean and back, scorching some of the richest agricultural provinces in Europe. In its course the English burned over 500 castles, large villages and towns (if hamlets and small villages are counted, the number was over 1,000), and two large cities: Toulouse and Narbonne. In the 1355 riding the Black Prince devastated four times the area his father destroyed in 1339. Not to be outdone, the next year Edward III led a chevauchée into Scotland, the "*Burnt Candlemas*" raid. As usual, he savaged, burned, plundered, and killed, laying further waste to an already poor and thinly populated land. Additional major chevauchées took place in France in 1369, 1370,

1373, and 1380. Other raids, comparable in the ferocity with which they brought death and destruction, though carried out on a smaller scale, took place from similar enmities between smaller entities; for instance, Liège campaigned against Namur in 1430.

After the exhausting defeat and huge loss of territory in 1360, the French devised a two-part counter to the chevauchée. First, they upgraded the fortification of major urban centers. Next, they developed a strategic response: shadowing a raiding English or Burgundian army with a large field army. The French still did not offer battle, but the effect of keeping a battle-capable army near the raiding force at all times was to compel the English to concentrate. This narrowed the path of destruction they could cut through the French countryside, which lessened the political and economic effect of their raiding while limiting the plunder and supply available to the raiders. If the English Army was intent on conquest, this counter-strategy forced it to resort to time-consuming and expensive sieges, which were then absorbed by the improved fortifications. If the English interest was merely plunder, they were limited in what they could damage or carry away. Even so, shame and dishonor, along with aristocratic overconfidence, occasionally prompted the French into a foolhardy decision to accept or offer battle. The most famous example of this was the incursion into France made by *Henry V* in 1415, an extended chevauchée that provoked the French to move a large army of *heavy cavalry* and Genoese mercenaries to block his path back to Calais, which in turn led to a crushing French defeat by Henry's hand at *Agincourt* (1415). After that, Henry returned to a slow campaign of sieges and successfully conquered Normandy.

The effects of a chevauchée were complex. The first effect was physical devastation: people were scattered or killed, or returned to burnt-out homes, shops, and farms that could no longer provide shelter or sustain livelihoods; barns, windmills, water mills, and other capital investments were special targets and usually burned down; stores of grain and wine were plundered; herds of livestock (pigs, sheep, cattle) were herded away, or slaughtered. The amount of physical destruction of whole towns and villages was staggering, and extended also to monasteries, convents, abbeys, village churches, and alms houses, amounting to many hundreds of thousands of hours of labor reduced to cinders in just hours or days. Second, repeated chevauchées drove up the cost of defense as towns that had been open throughout the early Middle Ages now fortified against wrack and ruin. This included enforced garrison and guard tower duty for the inhabitants, on a rotating but most burdensome basis. And it meant destroying existing buildings that came too close to the new walls, either to create interior boulevards for quick defense and ''interior lines,'' or to deny the enemy use of outer buildings for shelter or a base for his siege. A chevauchée also stripped most capital from the economy, as soldiers extorted vast sums in protection money (*appatis*) from nobles, towns, villages, or hamlets in the path of men of war. A particularly unfortunate village might have to pay off both sides, or even four, five, or more independent bands or *Free Companies* hovering in the region. This impoverished the locals and also the king, who lost tax revenues, which was a

goal of all the destruction in the first place. Fourth, long-distance trade fell off to nothing as the safety and upkeep of roads could not be guaranteed. Fifth, local nobles were freed to also extort and exploit the misery of towns and peasants. This led to rural uprisings such as the great and brutal *Jacquerie* of 1358, which was followed by noble reprisals far more savage than even the ''Jacques Bonhommes'' committed.

The motives behind undertaking a chevauchée were also mixed. In part, they arose from the principle of ''bellum se ipse alet'' by which kings deferred the wages of war to plunder by soldiers. A more important reason was strategic: to wage a war of economic attrition against the enemy so as to weaken his legitimacy in the eyes of his people, lessen his capacity to wage war, and intimidate the population into demanding from its king or lord peace on any terms. For this reason troops did not just burn buildings: they cut down fruit trees and destroyed vines, stopped to burn down mills that otherwise gained the attacker nothing, spoiled wells and polluted creeks, and slaughtered livestock they could not themselves herd away or eat even though this made it more difficult for the attackers to live off the land themselves in future campaigns. All this served a strategic purpose: to provoke an enemy to battle, as happened at Crécy, Poitiers, and Agincourt.

The suffering induced by the great chevauchées was great and the men who caused it were pitiless, but the kings and states that commissioned such raids were too strong to be defeated quickly so that wars and suffering became protracted. Yet, the chevauchée was used to deliberately target civilians because in the end it worked: major raids caused political, economic, strategic, and military damage to the enemy, usually at far greater levels than either risky battles or costly sieges. See also *cavalgada*; *civilians*; *cog*; *Nordic Seven Years' War*; *Otterburn, Battle of*; *raiding*; *razzia*; *routiers*; *war finance*.

Suggested Reading: Philippe Contamine, *War in the Middle Ages*, Michael Jones, trans. (1984; 1990); Clifford Rogers, ''By Fire and Sword: *bellum hostile* and Civilians in the Hundred Years' War,'' in Clifford Rogers and Mark Grimsley, eds., *Civilians in the Path of War* (2002).

chevaux de frise. French: ''Frisian (or Friesland) horses,'' Dutch: ''Vriesse ruyters'' or ''Frisian horsemen,'' German: ''spanische Reiter'' or ''Spanish horsemen.'' A field obstacle that may have originated with the Dutch for use in the siege of Groningen during the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648). Chevaux de frise were made from a log or timber axle about 10 feet long, driven through in three directions with long iron spikes (lances). This made a six-point hedgehog that stood on its own while opposing a row of lethal stakes to the enemy. They were employed chiefly to check cavalry assaults, acting as an inanimate substitute for pikemen so that the Dutch could increase the number of musketeers firing into the Spanish ranks. Alternately, they were set across a breach in a town wall to block the men of the *Army of Flanders* from storming the defenses. In addition to field or siege defense, they were used to block roads or serve as primitive field works where there was no time to make permanent structures or where the ground was frozen or too soft or hard to

erect a palisade. They might be made in advance and transported to a battlefield or held ready inside a town to fit any breach. Alternately, iron spikes were hauled by cart to the battlefield and chevaux de frise easily made on the spot from logs culled from felled trees. While highly effective against cavalry, they seldom held up infantry and were highly vulnerable to artillery fire. On occasion, large chevaux de frise would be sunk in a shallow river or harbor, to block passage by enemy ships by ripping out the bottom of their hull. See also *abatis*; *swine feathers*.

chevaux-légers. ''Light horse.'' Discrete companies of 100 French cavalry each made up of nobles who served outside the gendarmerie.

Chiksan, Battle of (1597). See *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*; *Korea*.

child-mother gun. A Chinese adaptation of the European *musket*, utilizing features of the *swivel gun* as well. It was essentially a musket (the ''mother'') with a removable breech (the ''child''). The Chinese also developed a plug bayonet to fit the muzzle. See also *ten-eyed gun*.

Chile. See *Inca Empire*.

chimalli. A small, oval shield used by an *Aztec* warrior. It was usually brilliantly painted and decorated with colorful plumage.

China. In 1211 northern China was first invaded by the *Mongols*. Beijing fell in 1214, and the whole north was overrun between 1217 and 1223. The Southern Song were crushed later, in 1279, after a five-year siege of the fortress at Hsiang-Yang (1268–1273). The end for the Song came with a final naval battle off Guangzhou (Canton) in April 1279. Their thirst for conquest unslaked, the Mongol khans looked to invade Japan utilizing the Chinese and Korean navies. Two invasion attempts were blocked more by inclement weather than by *samurai*, at *Hakata Bay* in 1274 and 1281. The Mongols ruled China for a century but never gained acceptance. The widespread belief that the Yuan dynasty lacked the ''mandate of heaven'' seemed confirmed when the *Black Death* struck in the 1330s and 1340s, and when the Yellow River shifted its course to the south in 1344, causing massive destruction and loss of life and provoking a prolonged period of banditry, religious (mainly Buddhist) rebellion, and peasant uprisings. The Mongol grip on China was so shaken by these catastrophes the door was opened to a violent change of dynasty. Zhu Yuanzhang, a former leader of the ''*Red Turban Rebellion*,'' captured Nanjing in 1356. He then won the key naval battle of *Lake Boyang* (1363), which opened the path for his Ming army to defeat the rival rebel territory of Han (centered on Wuhan). Next, he crushed Wu, the third major

The Mongol grip on China was so shaken . . . the door was opened to a violent change of dynasty.

rebel area to have broken with the Yuan dynasty. The Wu capital of Suzhou fell to the Ming in 1367. The Ming dynasty was then proclaimed in 1368, although it took more fighting to subdue several smaller rebel provinces in the south. Zhu broke with the Red Turbans (a White Lotus Buddhist sect) to claim descent from the former Song dynasty, a move necessary to acquire greater legitimacy than mere conquest. He was proclaimed emperor under the reign name *Hongwu* (r.1368–1398). He governed from Nanjing, with ever greater cruelty rooted in deepening paranoia. In military affairs he harkened to pre-Mongol traditions while in fact retaining several key Mongol military innovations.

During the 15th century Ming China experienced a surge in economic growth and launched an impressive overseas exploration, but then turned inward to defense of the northwest frontier and radical isolationism. Following a brief war of succession Hongwu was followed to the throne by the third Ming emperor, *Yongle* (r.1402–1424). He moved the capital north to Beijing, from where he could more easily rule a vast empire that he regarded as including both China proper and Mongolia. It was the Yongle emperor who commissioned the first six of seven spectacular transoceanic voyages made by *Zheng He* from 1405 to 1433. During these decades, China experienced a surge in population growth to 130 million. Ming blue-water ships, merchants, ambassadors, and admirals spread into Asia and as far afield as eastern Africa, opening markets and establishing direct trade relations nearly 100 years before Columbus sailed west in far flimsier and much smaller vessels. These contacts influenced local histories, but faded from memory and significance in China after 1433, when the Xuande emperor dry-docked the fleet, forbade overseas trade, and banned all construction of ocean-capable ships. In 1436 he imposed radical isolation on China, abandoning its huge lead in naval power and turning its face from the seas to the Inner Asian frontier. Within 150 years European galleons, not Chinese war junks, took command of the world's oceans. Meanwhile, *wakō* ravaged long stretches of China's coast. Worse, the Ming emperors penalized differential economic growth in the coastal regions, since they believed that wealth garnered from overseas trade threatened central control and imperial unity. This policy stifled possibilities for early capitalism in China by redirecting mercantile wealth and investment into land rather than manufactures. It helped set the table for the ''great divergence'' from the West after 1500.

In the late 15th century China was still a world leader in many areas of technology, having enjoyed advanced economic development for many centuries before the West. However, it began to suffer from worsening ossification of the central government and scholar-elite into endemic corruption and a rigid interpretation of *Confucianism* which ultimately was unable to adapt the rural economy to the expanding population. Late Ming China slowly withered under a baleful climate of stifling bureaucracy and self-imposed insulation from the emerging centers of world trade and technological innovation, which were shifting from China to Europe. For instance, the tendency to concentrate firearms production and casting artillery in centralized

locations may have inhibited innovation in design. Political crisis also interfered with military reform and adaptation. At least on land the Xuande emperor had been a committed war leader. His son, Zhu Qizhen (Zhengtong Emperor), was not. Goaded to invade Mongolia, he was captured and lost an army of 500,000 to the Mongols at *Tumu* in 1449, after which the Mongols advanced on Beijing. After that, the terrified Ming rebuilt old frontier fortifications and added 700 new miles of *Great Wall* to huddle behind in fear of Mongol raids—in short, they surrendered the old claim to rule Mongolia and shifted to a purely defensive strategy. From 1474 wall-building intensified and the number of firearms troops multiplied, with most in garrisons along the walls. Since their major enemies lacked fortifications, Chinese field tactics emphasized the use of guns mainly in defense. It was only in civil wars that Chinese gunners faced the tactical problem of overwhelming fortifications.

The Portuguese first reached China in 1514, but a seven-year effort to establish formal relations floundered over an earlier Portuguese attack on Malacca, which was a Ming tributary. The Ming were impressed with the advanced firearms the Portuguese brought to Asia, recognizing them as superior to extant Chinese and Ottoman makes. In 1521 the Ming experienced firsthand the power of these Portuguese cannon when a trade dispute led to a fight in a southern harbor. The Portuguese did much damage but were too few in number to remain. The next year the Portuguese returned to try to force a trade deal on China, but one of their ships was destroyed and another boarded by the Chinese. Within three years Chinese gunsmiths cast copies of recovered or captured Portuguese cannon, at which point the Portuguese made a virtue out of reality by selling their weapons expertise to Chinese smiths. China also acquired and copied European muskets from the Portuguese before the mid-16th century. These were important advances in military technology but they did not constitute a military revolution and did not stop the Mongols from raiding deep into China in force in 1541, 1545, and 1547–1549. These raids-in-force were an attempt to compel a resumption of trade which the Ming had cut off in the north as punishment for earlier Mongol raids. In 1550 a Mongol army attacked Beijing but could not breach the city's improved walls. Annual Mongol raids continued to 1566.

Over the 277 years of Ming rule there were more than 600 rebellions or incidents of banditry on a scale sufficient to be noteworthy. The prolonged crisis of Ming regime and military paralysis was personified and aggravated by the steady isolation of, and then gross abdication of governing responsibility by, the *Wanli* Emperor (r.1572–1620). As he withdrew from imperial responsibilities daily governance in China was left to a corrupt and tyrannical cadre of court *eunuchs*. This exposed the country to new external threats, such as *Hideyoshi*'s two invasions of Korea in the 1590s with large Japanese armies. The Ming opposed those invasions with hastily dispatched armies sent into Korea. The wars against Japan over Korea were extremely costly in Ming lives and treasure and further destabilized China, but they disrupted Hideyoshi's scheme to overthrow the Ming and replace them with the Japanese emperor

in a great, new Japanese empire in Asia. Internally, matters continued to deteriorate. In a system where all power flowed from the top, the Wanli Emperor's withdrawal resulted in administrative paralysis, the rise of provincial warlordism, and increasingly violent factionalism in the imperial court. Tax revenues fell, army mutinies and desertions increased, and a hugely damaging inflation set it with the arrival of large amounts of monetary metals associated with European seaborne trade.

Then, to the north at the start of the 17th century, *Nurgaci* began to build the *Manchu* empire. In 1618 he invaded China proper. His Mongol *banners* inflicted a crushing defeat on the Ming at *Sarhu* (1619), forcing them to ask the Portuguese in Macau for aid. They received several late model European bronze and cast iron cannon (''*red barbarian cannon*''), recovered from a sunken English or Dutch ship. Ming gunsmiths copied the guns with help from several *Jesuit* master smiths. And they bought more powerful cannon cast in a Portuguese foundry set up in the south in 1623. With these new cannon and firearms they held back the Manchus in 1626. But the Ming now faced active threats on too many fronts. In the south and west, by 1630, Li Zicheng and Zhang Xianzhong emerged as powerful warlords in full rebellion. They each commanded huge armies and controlled large parts of China. The country was additionally ravaged and destabilized by outbreaks of epidemic disease and famine. Continuing internal political divisions—especially between the scholar-elite and out-of-control imperial eunuchs—and desertions to various enemies by several key Ming generals, contributed to more political fragmentation and a fatal decline in military effectiveness.

After the death of Nurgaci the Qing (''Pure'') army mobilized under his son, Hung Taiji, and readied to finish the conquest of China. This involved dozens of campaigns and hundreds of battles over 30 years. As more and more Han prisoners joined the Qing they brought knowledge of firearms, cannon, and siegecraft to the Manchu generals. This closed the technological gap with Chinese armies and fortified cities, as the Qing learned to decide fights with guns. In 1631 the Qing had 40 Portuguese-cast and quality cannon manned by a special all-Han gunnery unit. The Ming also faced a massive rebellion by the regional warlord Li Zicheng. On April 24, 1644, Li took Beijing. The last Ming emperor, Chongzhen, hanged himself the next day, from a tree on Coal Hill outside the Forbidden City. Li Zicheng proclaimed himself emperor and prepared to crush the last Ming armies in the north. In desperation, a Ming ''traitor,'' General Wu Sangui, now caught between the Qing and the rebels, allied with the Qing. Into the chaos of rebellion and civil war rode the huge Qing army, a massive force born of a frontier horse culture bred and organized for nothing but war, now supplemented with skilled Chinese banner troops who knew how to take down a city. General Wu marched on Beijing to capture it for the Qing, drove off Li Zicheng, buried the Chongzhen emperor, then bent to serve a new set of foreign masters. For the Qing claimed the ''mandate of heaven'' fell to them, and smashed all rebel and Ming resistance in the north. Qing armies then rode south in ethnically cohesive units of Manchu, Mongol, and Han banners. Fighting continued in

southern China against ''Ming Princes'' (pretenders and die-hards) for another 17 years, from 1644 to 1661. The last Ming prince fled to Burma. His retainers were slaughtered on arrival and he and his family were made prisoners by the Burmese king. Handed over to Wu Sangui, who invaded Burma for the Qing in 1661, they were all strangled to death. See also *gunpowder weapons*; *Ming Army*; *mutiny*; *war wagons*.

Suggested Reading: Charles Hucker, *China's Imperial Past* (1975); J. Langlois, ed., *China under Mongol Rule* (1981); Ann Paludan, *Chronicle of the Chinese Emperors* (1998); Jonathan Spence and John Wills, *From Ming to Ch'ing* (1979).

Chinese armies. China had a highly sophisticated recruitment system well before any in Europe, Under *Hongwu* the Ming maintained parts of the older Mongol military system which involved registration of all households according to types of service owed to the state, including military service. Beyond commoners, hereditary military households were most numerous. These were exempted from taxes but were expected to maintain themselves in colonies located on lands granted by the regime and scattered across the country. The major Qing military innovation was the *banner system*. On other aspects of Chinese arms and armies, see *fortification*; *Great Wall*; *gunpowder weapons*; *logistics*; *Manchus*; *Ming Army*; *Mongols*; *Nurgaci*; *Red Turbans*; *Sarhu, Campaign of*; *Tumu, Battle of*.

Chinggisid Empire. See *Mongols*.

Chinggis Khan (1162–1227). ''Jenghiz Khan'' and ''Ghengis Khan.'' See also *Mongols*.

chivalry. Chivalry was a medieval institution and tradition that had military, social, and religious manifestations. The military aspect of chivalry revolved around the *knight*. Specifically, it was an aristocratic code of conduct closely associated with equestrian ''shock'' combat. A noble's social function was given religious sanction, and his military function granted sanctification, in the oath-taking and dubbing ceremony (''Benedictio novi militis''). In this ceremony a knight swore solemn vows of religious obligation, then a sword blessed by the Church was used to confer his new social and military status. This reconciled the formally proclaimed peaceful ideals of Christianity and the ethical code of the *just war* with the reality of a thoroughly militarized society in which the ''Fathers of the Church'' were a major power, and the many orders of clergy numbered among the principal beneficiaries of a steeply hierarchical social system. During the *Crusades* the normal ideals of chivalry were set aside in fighting pagans in the Baltic and eastern Europe, and Muslims in the Middle East, Spain, and the Balkans. During the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453) the high ideal of chivalry was proclaimed by nearly all, although dishonorable

In this ceremony a knight swore solemn vows of religious obligation . . .

conduct, theft, murder, savage punishment, and rapine abounded among the knightly classes of England and France. Chivalry thus might be understood as a pragmatic and quasi-legal response to the near complete absence of strong states, wherein the clergy sought to secure social order by direct communication with the armed classes. A powerful and just monarch remained the political ideal, but if strong kings could not be found or crowned at least knights might be dubbed and sworn to justice by the Church. In this way, the just war tradition and the ideal of chivalry were kin, a relation embodied in the widespread cult of martial saints such as St. George and St. Denis, and seen also in the ecstatic reception given by the French to the advent of *Jeanne d'Arc*, the Maid who won for France where so many knights had failed.

The decline of *heavy cavalry* as the principal arm in European warfare hastened the end of martial chivalry. At *Courtrai* (1302), Flemish militia stood and slaughtered the flower of French chivalry. That disaster was repeated at English hands at *Crécy* (1346), *Poitiers* (1356), and *Agincourt* (1415), where French knights were killed in their thousands by English archers. Austrian knights were similarly done in by Swiss peasants and guildsmen at *Morgarten* (1315), *Laupen* (1339), *Sempach* (1386), and *Näfels* (1388). Burgundy lost its duke, its army, and its independence as a result of defeat by Swiss infantry at *Grandson* (1476), *Morat* (1476), and *Nancy* (1477). After the Crusades ended and the military importance of *Military Orders* faded, forms of chivalry assumed a more secular tone and ideal. Personal honor and courtly love displaced Christian zeal and love of God and the Church as the central ambition of the knight, who was now more likely to be a harmless courtier than a heavily armed and dangerously aggressive warrior. In its final and most decadent form, chivalry was tamed and turned by the great monarchs of Europe, who usefully twisted its lingering fantasies into velvet chains to bind the remnant of hereditary knighthood to court service. That was the essential purpose of such feckless associations as the *Order of the Garter* and the *Order of the Golden Fleece*.

It should also be remembered that most of the population lived outside the circle of chivalric grace, beyond the mercy that the brotherhood in arms extended to itself and to women of the noble class. Despite the efforts of some in the Church to expand the ideals of chivalry, peasants were not considered protected by its rules. Instead, they could be robbed, burned out, even killed with relative impunity from the laws of Man or God. It was, for instance, a fairly common practice to hold peasant women until they paid a ''ransom'' in sexual favors. Such routine rape was not usually the fate of upper class women, unless they were so unlucky as to be in a town or city that fell by storm, in which case they, too, were subject to the accepted right of sack and rapine. Chivalry, in sum, protected its practitioners from legal, moral, and heavenly consequences; it did not protect the common people from depredations by the chivalrous. See also *civilians*; *esquire*; *page*; *prisoners of war*; *siege warfare*; *tournaments*; *two swords, doctrine of*.

Suggested Reading: R. Barber, *The Knight and Chivalry* (1970); G. Duby, *The Chivalrous Society* (1978); M. Strickland, *War and Chivalry* (1996); D. Trim, ed., *The*

Chivalric Ethos and the Development of Military Professionalism (2003); Malcolm Vale, *War and Chivalry* (1981); Juliet Vale, *Edward III and Chivalry* (1983).

Chocim, Battle of (1621). See *Khotyn, Battle of*.

Chodkiewicz, Jan Karol (1561–1621). Polish general. Despite fighting for a rash and vacillating king, *Sigismund III*, he led Polish cavalry armies to a series of battlefield victories over armies of Cossacks, Ottomans, Russians, and Swedes. He was also adept at *guerre guerroyante* along the Cossack and Russian–Swedish frontiers. He took Riga and Dorpat in 1601. In 1605, at *Kirkholm*, he defeated a much larger army led by *Karl IX*. He won again over the Swedes in 1609. His march into Russia in relief of the Polish garrison occupying Moscow failed when his troops mutinied. He was killed in the midst of a victory over the Ottomans and Tatars at *Khotyn* (Chocim) in 1621. Chodkiewicz's success with cavalry against larger infantry armies, feats which place him in the front rank of horse soldiers, so impressed *Gustavus Adolphus* that he reformed the Swedish cavalry along Polish lines.

Chojnice, Battle of (September 18, 1454). Conitz or Konitz. The first major battle of the "*War of the Cities*" (1454–1466), fought between Poland-Lithuania and the *Teutonic Knights*. The Poles, led personally by *Casimir IV*, anticipated support from Prussian peasants then in rebellion against the warrior monks, their hard overlords. The Polish army of 16,000 men was itself mostly drawn from feudal peasant levies, badly officered by quarrelsome nobles. Chojnice was a critical entrepôt and a main base of the remaining economic power of the Teutonic Knights, which a small force of Saxons occupied in their behalf. The city had been under ineffective siege by a Prussian peasant army, and some mercenaries, since April. But a combination of inept Polish officering and a shortfall of Prussian monies to pay the mercenaries left the city in Teuton-Saxon hands. Casimir now ordered his main army to Chojnice. Since the great strength of the Poles was noble cavalry, and since fortified towns rarely if ever succumbed to horse soldiers who disdained sapping or trench work, the city stood firm. In early September a large band of German mercenaries (9,000 horse and 6,000 foot) arrived in answer to a summons from the Teutonic Knights. These professionals gave the advantage to the Knights who, along with levies of peasant conscripts, smashed the Polish army and nearly captured Casimir. The Teutons went on to recapture numerous Prussian towns. Unfortunately for the Knights, however, they did not have the money to pay such a large mercenary force. The Grand Master of the Order was therefore forced to promise Prussian cities as collateral to the Germans in the event he could not meet the payroll due in February 1455. This deal cost the Teutonic Knights the war in the end as they lost mercenary support and the greater strength and manpower of Poland told against them. But for awhile longer the victory at Chojnice and the infusion of German mercenaries meant the war continued.

choragiew. ''Troop,'' ''company,'' or ''*banner*.'' In the *Polish Army*, the choragiew was the smallest tactical unit. It was led by a *rotmistrz*, who recruited the men, contracted for their pay (and for *dead-pays*), and appointed junior officers (''*porucznik*''). There was, as a result, no uniform size to these units, which could number as few as 60 men or exceed 150. Multiple choragiews were grouped into a larger tactical unit, the *pulk*.

Christendom. See *res publica Christiana*.

Christian Brotherhood. See *German Peasant War*.

Christian humanism. See *Francis I*; *Italian Renaissance*; *Luther, Martin*; *Protestant Reformation*.

Christianity. See *Albigensian Crusade*; *anti-Semitism*; *Arianism*; *Arminianism*; *Byzantine Empire*; *Calvinism*; *Castile*; *Catholic Church*; *Catholic League (France)*; *Catholic League (Germany)*; *Charles I, of England*; *Charles V, Holy Roman Emperor*; *chivalry*; *Confederation of Kilkenny*; *Coptic Church*; *Counter-Reformation*; *Cromwell, Oliver*; *Crusades*; *Ecumenical Councils*; *Edict of Restitution*; *Eighty Years' War*; *English Civil Wars*; *Erastianism*; *feudalism*; *Fifth Monarchists*; *flagellants*; *French Civil Wars*; *Great Schism*; *Guelphs and Ghibellines*; *gunpowder empires*; *Henry VIII, of England*; *heresy*; *Holy Roman Empire*; *Hospitallers*; *Hussite Wars*; *iconoclasm*; *Index Librorum Prohibitorum*; *Inquisition*; *Ireland*; *Italian Wars*; *Japan*; *Jeanne d'Arc*; *Jesuits*; *just war tradition*; *Kakure Kirishitan*; *knights*; *Knox, John*; *Livonian Order*; *Lollards*; *Luther, Martin*; *Military Orders*; *Orthodox Churches*; *Papal States*; *Pax Dei*; *Philip II, of Spain*; *prohibited weapons*; *Protestant Reformation*; *Puritans*; *real patronato*; *Reconquista*; *Renaissance*; *requerimiento*; *res publica Christiana*; *Spain*; *Teutonic Knights, Order of*; *Third Rome*; *Thirty Years' War*; *Treuga Dei*; *two swords, doctrine of*; *Union of Brest*; *War of Cologne*; *War of the Eight Saints*; *witchcraft*; *Zwingli, Huldrych*.

Christian IV (1588–1648). Duke of Holstein; king of Denmark. He also controlled the fortified bishoprics of Bremen, Halberstadt, and Verden, but later lost them to *Ferdinand II*, then Sweden. Christian longed to be well-regarded for his military virtues and prowess, though he had few of the first and none of the second. He posed as a devout champion of Protestantism, but in private was a womanizer and heavy drinker who spent as much or more time consulting astrology charts as the Bible. His major policies were promotion of the interests of the mercantile classes (he chartered a Danish East India company in 1614 and sought to control the Baltic trade), and expensive military adventurism that cost Denmark its preeminent position in the Baltic, starting with a loss to Sweden in the *Kalmar War* (1611–1613) and ending with his disastrous intervention in the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). In 1625, Christian was elected commander (*Kreisoberst*) of the Lower Saxon Circle (*Reichskreis*). He gathered the *Hague Alliance* around a plan to intervene

in Germany and plunged into war against vastly superior enemies, personally leading 20,000 mercenaries across the Elbe. What drew him in was dynastic interest, a desire to block intervention by his old enemy Sweden (*Richelieu* was already courting *Gustavus Adolphus*), and perhaps also the Protestant cause.

The Danish *Estates* refused to pay for his German war: two aggressions inside 15 years was too much for the Council. That forced Christian to fight as the Duke of Holstein, using revenue from his demesne lands, the *Sound Tolls*, and subsidies from France, the Netherlands, and England (which paid less than one-third of what it promised). Retreating from early defeats in Germany, Christian was pursued and routed in 1626 by *Johann Tilly* at *Lutter-am-Barenberg*. He fled the battlefield, leaving half his army dead or captured on it. The next year he was driven into Holstein by an Imperial army led by *Albrecht von Wallenstein*. Christian's anti-Habsburg alliance now melted: Brandenburg returned to neutrality; England was untrustworthy; in 1627 France allied with Spain against England; and Sweden was still fighting Poland over Royal Prussia instead of entering the German war. Denmark lay open to invasion. In 1628, Christian reinvaded Germany in an attempt at preemption, but was again soundly beaten, at *Wolgast*. Wallenstein then occupied Jutland. On July 7, 1629, Christian came to terms with Ferdinand in the *Peace of Lübeck*, in which he surrendered all claims within the Holy Roman Empire, with Bremen, Halberstadt, and Verden ceded outright to the Emperor. Twenty years later he was tempted to re-enter the German war, but all his machinations earned him was another defeat at the hands of Sweden, in *Torstensson's War* (1643–1645). For all his defeats, Christian IV left Denmark with a national *standing army* officered by Danish professionals, despite his famous prejudice in favor of foreign mercenaries.

Suggested Reading: P. D. Lockhart, *Denmark in the Thirty Years' War, 1618–1648* (1996).

Christian of Anhalt-Bernburg (1568–1630). Protestant general in the *Thirty Years' War*. Before 1618 it was his grand ambition to form and lead a grand military coalition against the Habsburgs and the *Counter-Reformation*. He tried to do this with the *Protestant Union*, but opposition from the cities that provided most military finance blocked his ambition. He encouraged the Bohemian *Estates* to depose *Ferdinand II*, and thereafter was commissioned by *Friedrich V*, whom he served as regent in Amberg, to raise an army to defend Friedrich's claim to the Bohemian throne and make war on Austria. Anhalt joined his force with a mercenary army commanded by *Mathias Thurn*. This allied army was smashed by *Tilly* and *Bucquoy* at the *White Mountain* (November 8, 1620).

Christian of Brunswick (1598–1626). Administrator of Halberstadt and reckless military adventurer. This brash German prince earned a reputation for courageous impetuosity in battle, but not much else. His failure to link with *Graf von Manstein* before *Wimpfen* (May 6, 1622) cost the Protestants the

battle. He fought a brilliant, because desperate, holding action at *Höchst* (June 20, 1622). He was dismissed by Friedrich on July 13, 1622. Two months later he and Mansfeld joined and beat Tilly at *Fleurus*. That victory pushed the Imperials out of the Netherlands, even though Christian lost most of his infantry and one of his arms in the fight. At *Stadtlohn* (August 6, 1623), Christian lost badly to Tilly and the army of the *Catholic League* and was finished as a field general. He commanded indifferently in several minor campaigns before his death in 1626.

El Cid. Né Ruy Díaz de Vivar. See *Castile*; *mercenaries*; *Reconquista*; *siege warfare*.

cihuacoatl. An Aztec senior commander, roughly equivalent to a general. They wore large and colorful headdresses made of animal skins and/or feathers which made them easily identifiable in battle. This worked well enough when facing other Mesoamericans, but it allowed *Hernán Cortés* and his men to single out Aztec commanders, kill them quickly with arquebus, lance, or sword, and thus paralyze and defeat much larger Aztec armies. See also *Otumba, Battle of*.

cimarónes. Or ''cimarrones,'' or ''maroons.'' Runaway black slaves from Spanish colonies who established independent enclaves in the Caribbean, notably along the Mosquito Coast. These free black and mulatto communities lived by their wits and by waylaying passing ships. They traded fruit and produce with English, French, and Dutch *privateers*, and sometimes allied with them to prey on Spanish ports and shipping. See also *Drake, Francis*.

Cinque Ports. Five strategically located English ports first listed in a Royal Charter in 1155: Dover, Hastings, Hythe, New Romney, and Sandwich. Rye and Winchelsea were added a few decades later, and seven more towns were associated with the Cinque Ports in the 15th century. In theory, these ports were obliged to provide 57 ships and supporting crew for a fortnight's service upon notice from the crown, in exchange for special privileges amounting almost to self-governance. This was the only compulsory naval service in England before the introduction of *demurrage* and *impressment*. From time to time the Cinque Ports gave service to the crown when a war was in their own interest, notably in the 13th century. Thus, the majority of ships used to transport and supply Edward I in his conquest of Wales, 1277–1283, came from the Cinque Ports: 25 in 1277 and another 40 in 1282–1283. During the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453), ships from the Cinque Ports accompanied numerous English expeditions, but so did ships from other coastal towns. The *Black Death* ravaged the Cinque Ports, as did major raids and burnings by the French and their allies. The move to a *permanent navy* in the 16th century eliminated any rationale for special privileges, in addition to which some of the harbors of the Cinque Ports silted badly.

Circles (of the Holy Roman Empire). See *Reichskreis*.

circumvallation. See *lines of circumvallation*.

citadel. More than a *donjon*, tower, or stronghold inside a *castle* or fort, a citadel was an entire fort occupied by a garrison positioned well inside a city. They were most common in the Muslim Middle East, where many cities had strong inner forts but only thin outer walls. This reflected the fact that in Arab states the main military danger was often from within, in form of rebellious troops or a palace coup. Citadels also played a role in repressing popular discontent where some unpopular ruler (say, from a *shi'ia* dynasty ruling over a *sunni* populace, or vice versa) was unsure of the ultimate loyalty of the city. The same phenomenon sometimes occurred in Europe where occupying armies could not be certain of the loyalty of the common people. See also *jōkamachi*.

çit palankasi. Simple reed-palisade forts constructed by the Ottomans in areas where stone forts (*kale*) were not needed or were too expensive to build. Often, they were also poorly garrisoned and hence easily overpowered or forced to surrender.

city-states. See *Aztec Empire*; *Hanse*; *Italian Renaissance*; *Machiavelli, Niccolò di Bernardo*.

civilians. In the Middle Ages it was mostly taken for granted that brutal treatment of civilians (''inermis'' or ''unarmed persons'') was part of war. This was because of the nature of *raiding* and the *razzia* for slaves, or the *chevauchée* in which destruction of property, foodstuffs, and livelihoods was an essential part of strategy. Contributing to indiscriminate killing was the general absence of uniforms comparable to those which had clearly demarcated soldiers in Roman times. Lastly, ferocious religious zealotry led to atrocity against civilians of other faiths, as in the *Crusades*, or against *heretics*. Despite the mores of *chivalry*, making life miserable for the population of enemy territories was a main tool of medieval warfare, as it was also in early modern times. There was, in fact, no prohibition in the chivalric code in Europe against attacking civilians. There was a prohibition in the *jus in bello* and the *Pax Dei* against violence directed at clergy, women, children, Jews (generally considered noncombatants, though some in Spain were forced to serve in garrisons), hermits, merchants, shepherds, farmers, and the unfree. This effort to restrain war remained mostly a distant ideal, as it was practically unenforceable. Throughout this period, in Europe and Africa, Asia and the Americas, the effects of war on civilian populations was roughly comparable. Some died in rank atrocities, others from sacks of towns and razing of villages. Most died from disease or starvation. Ancillary effects of the dislocations and privations of wartime included higher infant mortality rates and low fertility rates

There was, in fact, no prohibition in the chivalric code in Europe against attacking civilians.

among malnourished adults. Family life always suffered: marriages broke down, older children were kidnaped into armies or ran away, old people died off in droves from disease or abandonment. The cost of foodstuffs always rose in war, as grain grew scarce or not at all in fallow fields. Abandoned children usually became beggars; abandoned women turned to prostitution, trailing armies as *camp followers*. In general, if a war was underway it was far safer to be a soldier. See also *Alba, Don Fernando Álvarez de Toledo, duque de*; *Albigensian Crusade*; *Anabaptism*; *anti-Semitism*; *appatis*; *askeri*; *baggage train*; *Bashi-Bazouks*; *beldar*; *bellum hostile*; *Black Prince*; *booty*; *camp followers*; *chivalry*; *club men*; *Constantinople, Siege of*; *contributions*; *Cromwell, Oliver*; *Crusades*; *Derbençi*; *disease*; *Dorpat, Sack of*; *Drogheda, Sack of*; *expulsion of the Jews*; *expulsion of the Moors*; *French Civil Wars*; *Grotius, Hugo*; *guerre couverte*; *guerre mortelle*; *heresy*; *hors de combat*; *Inquisition*; *Ireton, Henry*; *Jews*; *jus in bello*; *just war tradition*; *logistics*; *Maastricht, Siege of (1579)*; *Magdeburg, Sack of*; *military discipline*; *Parma, duque di*; *Raya*; *Reconquista*; *requisition*; *routiers*; *Rupert, Prince*; *scorched earth*; *Sempach, Covenant of*; *siege warfare*; *"Spanish Fury"*; *St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres*; *teamsters*; *Thirty Years' War*; *Tilly, Johann*; *Treuga Dei*; *Wexford, Sack of*; *witchcraft*; *women*.

Civitate, Battle of (1053). See *cavalry*; *heavy cavalry*; *Normans*.

claymore. A two-edged (not two-handed) broadsword original to the Scottish Highlands. Later, the term was also used in reference to a short broadsword, sometimes single-edged with a classic basket-hilt. This type of claymore was more commonly used by the Scots from the 16th century.

Clermont, Battle of (1358). See *Jacquerie*.

clinker-built. An expensive, northern shipbuilding technique that constructed a roundship's hull by overlapping planking, starting at the keel and working out and up, not inward from a skeleton as was the practice in the Mediterranean. This used a lot of iron riveting but produced sturdy, walnut-shaped hulls that would be very large (over 1,000 tons displacement) by medieval European standards, though still small compared to contemporary Chinese vessels. See also *balinger*; *barge*; *cocha*; *cog*; *galleon*; *skeleton-built*.

Clontibret, Battle of (1595). See *Nine Years' War*.

close-fights. Bulkheads built at the fore and aft end of a warship, under the *castles*, as a final defense against boarders. They worked by giving cover to defenders and by compartmentalizing the ship to prevent it being overrun all at once. They were made of heavy wooden slats and fitted with loop-holes for firing guns and bayonet work. From this came the synonym and additional meaning of fighting an enemy hand-to-hand and face-to-face, or at "close quarters."

close-haul. See *haul close*.

close order. In the cavalry: the spacing between horses side-by-side in a troop; generally three feet, but sometimes as close as 1½ feet. This was the mode in which *heavy cavalry* charged in order to maximize *shock*. In the infantry: *Maurits of Nassau* enforced a model of close-order *drill* that was ultimately emulated by all modern armies. See also *open order*.

close-quarters. See *close-fight*s.

club men. Gentry and others who supported neither side in the *English Civil Wars*, but instead raised local forces to interfere with recruiting by the king and impressment by Parliament. They objected to unpaid quartering to troops and the common abuses of soldiers against civilians. After *Naseby*, they seriously impeded cross-country movement by *Fairfax* and *Cromwell*, who dealt violently with several thousand at Hambledon Hill on August 5, 1645. See also *free quarter*; *Tard-Avisés*.

coaster. Small, coast-hugging transport ships of various types. They played a prominent role in the *Crusades* and in later trade and military supply in Mediterranean warfare.

"coat-and-conduct" money. In the English system of military recruitment, this was money raised and paid at the county level to new recruits to buy a proper coat and travel to a designated muster point. It was paid following complaints by the army and navy about the utterly destitute condition of too many recruits, who were clearly the dregs of society sent up to fill the county quota and to spare its more favored sons. The coats provided varied greatly and did not constitute a uniform.

coat of plates. See *brigandine*.

cocha. In the 14th–15th centuries, a mid-sized ship representing a redesign of the *cog*. It could be fitted for trade, war, or both (as an armed merchantman). It was first laid in the Mediterranean, where the *skeleton-built* system of the south blended with the *clinker-built* designs of the north to produce this hybrid. In northern waters it was called a *carrack*.

cog. In the 12th–15th centuries, a flat-bottomed single-masted ship that probably first employed the true *sternpost rudder*. It was developed and most widely used in the Baltic and Atlantic. Built primarily for trade—it could sit on a mud flat at low tide to load or unload—it was also well-armed for defense against predatory *galleys* and *longships*. It had a high freeboard that made boarding from lower-lying oared ships difficult while permitting defenders to throw stones or shoot quarrels into the attacking ship. Later versions sported high *castles* to maximize this effect, taking additional advantage of the cog's

unusual stability. The Danes and *Teutonic Knights* used primitive cogs to crush Wend oared seapower in the Baltic from 1210, and to attack pagan Prussia and Lithuania in the 13th and 14th centuries. England relied on the cog to transport thousands of *warhorses* and carts and baggage horses used in *chevauchées* to France during the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). See also *clinker-built*; *tarides*.

Cognac, League of (1527). An alliance among Pope Clement VII, *Henry VIII* of England, the Republic of Venice, and Florence, against *Charles V*. It was formed in the wake of the defeat and capture of *Francis I* by forces led personally to victory by Charles V at *Pavia* (February 25, 1525). It was an ineffective alliance, however, whose main accomplishment was to provoke Charles V to send an army to Rome to punish the pope for his disloyalty. While there, it ran amok, sacked the city, and took the pope captive, all of which appalled Charles. After a few summers of desultory fighting the first phase of the *Italian Wars* ended with the *Peace of Cambrai* (1529).

coiffe-de-maille. A *mail* head piece worn under a helmet. It incorporated an *aventail*, but also protected the chin and cheeks from slashing wounds.

Colchester, Battle of (1648). See *English Civil Wars*.

Coligny, Gaspard de (1549–1572). Admiral of France. He gained his position by virtue of vast land holdings in Normandy and the prominence at Court of his powerful uncle, *Anne de Montmorency*. Coligny was taken prisoner by the Spanish, along with Montmorency, at *St. Quentin* (1557). He was held captive for three years. A moderate Protestant, he condemned the "*conspiracy of Amboise*" but joined the *Huguenot* army at the onset of the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629). Along with *Condé*, he fought Montmorency at *Saint-Denis* (1567). After Condé's murder at *Jarnac* in March 1569, Coligny became military leader of the Huguenots. Later that year he took revenge for Jarnac by ordering a slaughter of Catholic prisoners and peasants, for which a price of 50,000 gold écus was placed on his head. After the *Edict of Saint-Germaine-en-Laye* restored peace, Coligny returned to Court at Blois where he urgently argued for war with Spain, both to advance his own fortunes and heal the religious divide by turning outward against a common and hated enemy. Welcomed by Charles IX to Court, he was distrusted by *Catherine de Medici*. It was thought by many Parisians (probably falsely, but intensely nonetheless) that Coligny had undue influence over the young king and that he had persuaded Charles to back Protestant Dutch rebels against Spain. An attempt to assassinate Coligny in Paris failed on August 22, 1572. The attempt was certainly a *Guise* plot. Wounded, but determined to uncover the assassins, Coligny remained in Paris. That was a fateful and fatal decision: he was among the first to die—killed personally by the duc de Guise—during the first hours of the *St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres* two nights later. His head was cut off and embalmed to be sent as a trophy to the pope. The rest of his corpse was hurled to the street where it was given a mock

trial then dismembered and dragged over the cobblestones of Paris by a Catholic mob. For good measure, and in punishment for "heresy," his various body parts were burned and thrown into the Seine.

Suggested Reading: J. Shimizu, *Conflict of Loyalties* (1970).

colonel. Originally, the rank of officers in the Spanish army of *Ferdinand and Isabella* in command of a "coronelia," a unit of 12 companies of 500 men each. The title spread, along with the fame of Spanish infantry. In 1507 the *Diet of Worms* laid out that a colonel had a right to a personal staff of 22 attendants. In practice, size and quality of a staff varied with the wealth of the colonel. By the mid-17th century, evolving from the original Dutch model, regiments of 1,000 to 1,200 men in most armies were commanded by colonels. The equivalent title in the French Army prior to 1661 was *mestres de camp*. See also *Fähnlein*; *Landsknechte*; *Trabanten*.

colonialism. See *England*; *Elizabeth I*; *Netherlands*; *Ottoman Empire*; *Philip II, of Spain*; *Portugal*; *Spain*.

columbrina ad manum. A mid-15th-century French gun falling between a "hand cannon" and a small artillery piece. It was a portable, shoulder-fired weapon.

combat. See *battle (2)*.

commandery. The basic organizational unit of knights of the *Military Orders*. The *Teutonic Knights* set the minimum at 12 brother-knights, plus sergeants, per commandery. *Santiago* set the maximum at 13. In both cases the idea was imitation of "The Christ," or rather the apostles of Jesus of Nazareth. Spanish commanderies tended to be fortified towns while Military Orders in Palestine and Syria built hilltop forts along with some extraordinary mountaintop castles. As professional troops displaced Military Orders in the affections and employment of kings, the number of knights per commandery fell to as few as four in the early 14th century and just one at century's end. See also *encomienda*; *torre alberrano*; *torre del homenaje*.

Committee of Both Kingdoms. A unified English-Scots command formed in 1644 to coordinate military operations by the Scots army in England allied to Parliament's forces fighting *Charles I*.

Commonwealth of the Two Nations. *Poland-Lithuania* after the *Union of Lublin* in 1569.

communis exercitus. See *Scotland*.

compagnies de l'ordonnance (du roi). Mid-15th-century military reforms carried through by Charles VII set up mixed units of infantry archers and heavy

cavalry (nobility of the sword), supported by smaller groups of specialist troops. All told, they comprised 1,800 men-at-arms, 3,600 archers, and 1,800 auxiliaries. They were organized at the tactical level into *lances*. These ''compagnies'' comprised a rudimentary corps in peacetime, not a full *standing army*. Still, this was a rare permanent force in early modern Europe. Also, it provided a military option for that important minority of French nobles who were determined to display their nobility the old way, in feats of arms. As captains, they filled the compagnies with relatives and ''clients'' who wore their family livery and carried their pennants into battle. The French compagnies served in the final campaigns in Normandy (1449–1450) and Guyenne (1451–1453) that closed out the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). They were the mainstay of Royalist armies deep into the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629), surviving until France adopted reforms on the Dutch model pioneered by *Maurits of Nassau*. Comparable reforms and units, utilizing the same terminology, were made in Burgundy by *Charles the Rash*. See also *Ecorcheurs*; *French Army*.

company. The main body of recruitment and tactical maneuver in armies of the early modern period, which had not yet developed the regimental system of the late 16th–early 17th centuries. Companies varied in size by their place of origin and the army served, averaging anywhere from small units of 100 men to very large companies of 500 or more. In the French Army of the mid-16th century companies were made up of *lances* and ranged from 40 to 100 men. Their captains were all nobles. The term was of continental European origin. In the early 17th century English military professionals adopted it in preference to the older term for civic militia, ''*trained bands*.'' A shift to regiments as the main tactical unit in European armies started in the Netherlands in the 1590s with the reforms of *Maurits of Nassau*. The Dutch retained companies as sub-regimental units, averaging between 200 and 300 men. Mid-17th-century English armies kept small companies of 100 to 120 men within regiments formed by 10–12 companies. See also *Catalan Great Company*; *colonel*; *dead-pays*; *Fähnlein*; *Free Companies*; *regiments*; *Rotte*.

In the French Army of the mid-16th century companies were made up of lances *and ranged from 40 to 100 men.*

compass. As a serious aid to naval and commercial navigation the magnetic compass was useful long before it became widely adopted in Europe during the 13th century (probably via contacts with Muslims, who got it from the Chinese). Prior to its adoption, and for decades afterward, even experienced navigators preferred to steer by *dead reckoning* and stayed close to known coastlines so that they could use direct sighting from point to point. See also *astrolabe*; *cross-staff*.

composite bow. A powerful bow composed of three or more layers of materials of different strength: wood, bone, and sinew. They were harder to make than

plain bows but their complex forms and reinforcing tensile qualities imparted much greater force and range to arrows than either the *crossbow* or *longbow*. See also *Mongols*; *reflex bow*; *Turkish bow*.

Comyn Wars (1297–1304). See *Falkirk, Battle of*; *Scottish Wars*; *Stirling Bridge, Battle of*; *Wallace, William*.

Condé, Henri I, de Bourbon (1552–1588). Son of *Condé* (Louis de Bourbon), father of *Condé* (Henri II, de Bourbon). He took up his father's Protestant cause with passion, but spent most of his foreshortened life in the political and military shadows cast by more talented men. He served under *Coligny* and saw action at *Moncontour* (October 3, 1569), where his face was slashed by a saber. Upon Coligny's murder in the *St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres*, the young Condé dwelled in the shade cast by *Henri de Navarre* from the first night of the massacres, when they were both forced to abjure Calvinism. In 1574, Condé was elected commander of the republican defensive alliance formed by surviving *Huguenot* towns in the Midi. He fought alongside Henri de Navarre in the sixth, seventh, and eighth of the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629).

Condé, Henri II, de Bourbon (1588–1646). He was born several months after the death of his father, Henri I, *Condé*. Henri II eventually abandoned the Protestantism of his famous rebel family and converted to Catholicism. He then fought against the *Huguenots* in behalf of *Louis XIII*, becoming one of their fiercest persecutors. Toward the end of the *Thirty Years' War* Henri conspired with the king's enemies, foreign and domestic, and took up arms in revolt against him.

Condé, Louis de Bourbon (1530–1569). Military leader of the *Huguenots* in the early *French Civil Wars*. In 1555 he visited Geneva on his way home to Navarre from campaigning for France in the *Italian Wars*, and converted to Calvinism. The *Guise* arrested him as part of their anti-Huguenot campaign that included execution of hundreds of Protestant nobles who partook of the "*conspiracy of Amboise*" to kidnap *Francis II*. Condé had not participated in the plot but would have been executed anyway had not the young king suddenly died. Instead, *Catherine de Medici* moved quickly against the Guise, declared herself regent for her minor son, Charles IX, and freed Condé in an effort to heal the confessional rift within France. But the Guise rejected Catherine's call for religious toleration set out in the *Edict of Saint-Germain* (1562) and instead attacked Huguenot worshipers at *Vassy*. A Protestant synod formed in the wake of Vassy called upon Condé to raise and head an army of protection for the Huguenots. Along with *Coligny*, Condé led the Huguenot army during the first three Civil Wars that marked out the early struggle of French Protestants for royal recognition. He was felled at *Jarnac* (March 13, 1569) while leading a charge into a superior Catholic force. As he lay prisoner on the ground, having broken his leg in the charge, a Royalist officer murdered him with a pistol shot. See also *Saint-Denis, Battle of*.

Condé, Louis II, de Bourbon (1621–1686). ''Great Condé,'' duc d'Enghien. At age 22 he won a spectacular victory at *Rocroi* (May 19, 1643). He won again at *Freiburg* (August 5, 1644), and at *Lens* (August 29, 1648). His major military successes and failures came after this period, in behalf of Louis XIV.

condottieri. ''Contract captains.'' From the Italian ''condotte'' or military contracts. Condottieri refers to great mercenary captains who hired highly trained mercenaries and formed them into large companies (''masnada'' or ''conestabularia''), in whose behalf the captains negotiated terms. But it is also used about the companies and men they hired and led. The condottieri were cavalry-heavy units which dominated warfare in Italy before the *Italian Renaissance*. The prominence of the condottieri was made possible (and necessary) by the expansion of the money economy and endless warfare among the city-states of Italy. Initially, they were hired for just a few weeks or months—for a summer's campaigning. They were generally asked to provide their own armor and weapons, though crossbow bolts were supplied by the cities that hired them. Like the *Free Companies* of France, to which some condottieri owed their origin, seasonal warfare left them unpaid and unemployed over the winter months, with predictable results of unauthorized marauding, rape, and pillage. At their height, they held entire cities to ransom and stole vast amounts of wealth. Many of their men were Germans, including as many as 10,000 men-at-arms drawn to Italy for its riches, climate, and chronic but relatively bloodless warfare. Hungarians, English, French, Iberians, and many Italians also joined.

Various ''Great Companies'' were formed, usually named for their commanders. A German Free Company formed in 1334, called ''Knights of the Dove,'' rampaged over central Italy for years. In 1339 another German outfit, the ''Company of St. George,'' fought in the wars of Lodrizio Visconti. In 1342 a Great Company was assembled by Werner von Urslingen, one of some 700 German cavalry leaders identified by historians. His personal motto, engraved on his breastplate, captured the ferocity of all early condottieri: ''Enemy of God, Enemy of Piety, Enemy of Pity.'' When the *Treaty of Brétigny* (1360) paused fighting in France, mixed Free Companies of unemployed French and English infantry drifted into Italy. The most powerful company of this type was the ''*White Company*,'' initially commanded by *John Hawkwood*. Despite overseeing a massacre of 5,000 Italian innocents, he finished his days in peaceful opulence thanks to a Florentine salary and ill-gotten titles and estates from the condottieri wars. Other famous condottieri captains were Montreal d'Albarno (''Fra Moriale,'' an ex-*Hospitaller* executed in Rome in 1354); *Francesco Carmagnola* (beheaded by Venice in 1432); Prospero Colonna; Conrad von Landau (partner of Fra Moriale); Michele (''Micheletto'') degli Attendoli, who was prominent from 1425 to 1429 in the service of nearly all the Italian states; his cousin Francesco; Paolo Vitelli; and Giovanni Gonzaga (1466–1519), whose condottieri army was devastated by the French at *Fornovo* (July 6, 1495), marking the beginning of the end of the condottieri way of war. Those captains

who were not executed for disloyalty often acquired large fiefs, titles, and fabulous wealth. In the late 15th century the pattern of military migration reversed as condottieri fought for pay outside Italy, notably for *Charles the Rash*.

The primary interest of the condottieri was to survive to eat, drink, whore, and collect payment another day. They fought almost as artisans, with a minimum of violence. As a result, battles among condottieri armies were few and far between, and those few that were fought were often desultory affairs wherein hired men on both sides of the field of battle shied away from taking risks or life, and refused to expose themselves to mortal dangers. Instead, they applied their skills (which were real enough) to unhorse or slightly wound some ransomable opponent. The most prized command skill was the art of maneuver, which was engaged in by officers as often, or more often, to avoid a potential battlefield as to secure a superior position on it. Taking prisoners for ransom was almost always the first objective. *Machiavelli* reported on several condottieri ''battles'' in which as few as a handful of skilled men-at-arms were killed, but tens or hundreds of prisoners surrendered themselves. These either joined the company of their captors or were ransomed back to the city-state so unfortunate as to have hired them in the first place. Charles Oman, writing in 1921, summed up condottieri warfare as ''a mere tactical exercise or a game of chess, the aim being to manoeuvre the enemy into an impossible situation, and then capture him, rather than to exhaust him by a series of costly battles. It was even suspected that condottieri, like dishonest pugilists, sometimes settled beforehand that they would draw the game. Battles when they did occur were often very bloodless affairs.''

As the Italian city-states gained greater control over condottieri the latter's fortunes declined, and inconstant captains and soldiers were more often executed or banished. This was mainly a result of the Italian city-states developing sizeable town militia that freed them from condottieri extortion: captains died off or entered long-term salaried service as ''Captain-General'' of one of the city-states; their leaderless soldiers of fortune were then absorbed into emerging *standing armies*. Machiavelli held the condottieri in unique contempt, devoting a lengthy part of his thinking, writing, and organizational energy to training citizen militia to replace them. He hoped his militia would shoo untrustworthy and militarily useless professionals from the field. He even thought that Florence, and perhaps Italy as a whole, might rid itself of feckless and troublesome mercenaries if it inculcated civic and martial virtue in its young men, and trained and armed them in permanent and motivated republican militia on the model of the ancient Roman Republic. In this he was out of tune with his time, though perhaps also ahead of it by about 200 years. It should also be recalled that for all the savagery that characterized condottieri warfare and the mayhem caused, the mercenary wars in Italy were almost civilized compared to the horrors witnessed in Germany and France during the religious wars of the 16th and 17th centuries. See also *Agnadello, Battle of*; *Catalan Great Company*; *Fornovo, Battle of*; *Lodi, Peace of*.

Suggested Reading: M. E. Mallett, *Mercenaries and Their Masters* (1974); G. Trease, *The Condottieri, Soldiers of Fortune* (1970).

conestabularia. A company of *condottieri.*

Confederate Army. The forces that gathered to defend the view of Irish nationhood set out in the *Confederation of Kilkenny*. At its core were thousands of Irish veterans returned from the *Army of Flanders*, joined later by more veterans of tough Spanish or French armies. These organized and officered poorer clan militia raised by the Gaelic lords of the Irish countryside, with the addition of a few *redshanks* from Scotland. The Confederates led the Irish rebellion of 1641–1653 that in turned triggered civil war in England in 1642 and blended with the Scottish civil war to form the ''War of the Three Kingdoms,'' a fight rich in religious and ethnic hatreds and ferocity. The Confederate Army armed itself with guns taken from town armories and cannon lifted from shipwrecks or enemy prizes. They received munitions, money, and still more guns and cannon via Irish ports, shipped in by foreign Catholic powers. The Confederate Army was divided into four commands that corresponded to each of the Irish provinces: Ulster, Leinster, Munster, and Connaught. The Confederates also put to sea an impressive *privateer* navy of a dozen or so ''Dunkirk frigates'' and over 30 foreign warships. See also *English Civil Wars*; *O'Neill, Owen Roe*.

Confederation of Kilkenny (May 10, 1641). A document laying out the principles of the Catholic leaders of the Irish rebellion. Unlike the *National Covenant* of the Scots, it rejected rebellion against *Charles I*. Royalist on the surface, it was cognizant of divisions among *Old English*, *Old Irish*, and *New English*, all of whom were seen as ''Irish.'' It thus was a patriotic document that defined the kingdom in Ireland along legal and confessional (Catholic), rather than ethnic lines. It did not, however, necessarily speak for the Gaelic peasantry, who resorted to more spontaneous and less abstractly motivated violence against their hated English or Scots landlords, especially in Ulster.

***Confessio Augustana* (1530).** See *Augsburg Confession*.

confessionalism. Generally, the distinct religious convictions of discrete communities organized around some confession of faith or theological system. More narrowly, in German historiography confessionalism (''Konfessionalisierung'') is identified as a process of more pervasive influence of strict religious belief in all walks of life in the latter 16th and early 17th centuries, a hardening of dogma and sharper separation among well-defined communities of faith, and a greater role of secular power in enforcing uniformity of belief. During the *Protestant Reformation* in Germany confessionalism took the form of Lutheran princes (the ''temporal sword'') forming close alliances with ''godly'' (reform) preachers. These preachers warned the faithful to submit to the prince's authority in return for princes defending reform preachers and flocks against Catholic efforts to advance the *Counter-Reformation*, as well as encroachment by more radical Calvinists. This idea appealed to territorial

princes more than to anointed kings because it did not recognize the sacral nature claimed by early modern kings, and indeed threatened efforts by powerful monarchs to impose religious peace (meaning, uniformity) within their kingdoms. Calvinist princes did likewise, but there were fewer of them and the strongest were outside Germany. Catholic territorial princes also formed secular-clerical alliances, though they did so more uneasily than Calvinists or Lutherans since the Empire and Church were so much more powerful than they.

Despite strenuous efforts by priests and preachers, the majority of English, Dutch, French, Germans, and other Europeans as late as 1600 were not clearly Catholic or Protestant but only vaguely ''Christian.'' This was especially true outside the large towns where the rural population stayed wedded to peasant folklore and superstitions, for which they were ferociously condemned by ''men of God'' (soi-dissant) on all sides. The intensity of confessionalization programs in the late 16th century had much to do with the fact that most people did not yet reside in the Castra Dei (''God's Camp'') of any of the major sects. And it should be recalled that neither Catholicism nor the variants of Protestantism were voluntary or ''democratic'' faiths then as they are today: most adherents were forced into confessional identification and compliance by coercive institutions of church and state, and by social and moral pressure from fanatic adherents. Why did this matter? Because it was the political danger posed by the chance that some other faith might convert the weak-willed or uncommitted first that elevated fears and led to interconfessional violence and atrocity. By the mid-17th century, however, confessional communities had solidified so that few further gains could be made by any of the major religious camps. It is not a coincidence that around the same time the fires of the ''wars of religion'' burned out, leaving only the odd smoldering ember here or there to warm bitter memories of past wrongs. See also *Anabaptism*; *Antichrist*; *Augsburg, Peace of*; *Calvinism*; *Catholic Church*; *Catholic League (France)*; *Catholic League (Germany)*; *Charles I, of England*; *Confederation of Kilkenny*; *Corpus Catholicorum*; *Corpus Evangelicorum*; *corpus mysticum*; *Cossacks*; *Council of Trent*; *Edict of Nantes*; *Eighty Years' War*; *English Civil Wars*; *Estates*; *Ferdinand II, Holy Roman Emperor*; *Formula of Concord*; *French Civil Wars*; *Henri III, of France*; *Holy Roman Empire*; *Huguenots*; *Imperial Diet*; *Jülich-Kleve, Crisis over*; *Leipziger Bund*; *Luther, Martin*; *Malcontents* (1); *Maximilian II*; *Missio Hollandica*; *politiques (France)*; *politiques (Netherlands)*; *printing*; *Protestant Union*; *reservatum ecclesiaticum*; *Richelieu, Armand Jean du Plessis de*; *Rudolf II*; *sacre* (2); *Thirty Years' War*; *War of Cologne*; *Westphalia, Peace of*; *Zsitva Torok, Treaty of*.

And it should be recalled that neither Catholicism nor the variants of Protestantism were voluntary . . .

confraternities. Originally, French Catholic devotional societies which grew up in the towns as defense associations first in 1562, again in 1568, and most importantly after the *Edict of Beaulieu* in 1576. They represented popular frustration with the failure of the Crown to extirpate ''heretic'' Protestantism

from French soil, so that a holy mission of Catholic piety to purify and cleanse the body social and the body politic alike could be fulfilled. The confraternities took on something of the fanatic spirit and habits of mind of earlier crusades as piety and religious zeal led to murder and massacre. They were run out of towns in the south where the Huguenots were strong, but elsewhere they proved a real bulwark against the spread of Protestantism and a vehicle of violent religious ''cleansing'' of the population. They also served as a conduit of men and arms to Catholic armies fighting against the Huguenots in the protracted *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629).

confratres. See *confrère knights*.

***confrère* knights.** An honorary ''knight brother'' of one of the *Military Orders*. They served only for short periods, donating half their property for the opportunity. Unlike full brethren, they were permitted to marry. The *Hospitallers* and the *Templars*, among other Orders, allowed confrères.

Confucianism. A philosophical system founded by Confucius (Kongfuzi, or K'ung Fu-tse; 551–479 B.C.E.), and amended by his major disciple Mencius (372–289 B.C.E.). It was crucially important in shaping the histories of China, Japan, Korea, and Vietnam. Some scholars view Confucianism as an ethical system existing in the absence of formal religion since, in spite of historical association with religious rites in various countries and eras, classical Confucianism did not insist upon piety or adoration of a deity or produce a priesthood per se. Others see it as a broad, but essentially still religious worldview. Its main texts are comprised of Confucius' known writings and compendiums of his teachings arranged by disciples into two compilations. First is the ''Four Books,'' or *Analects* of Confucius (dialogues with rulers and students) and the *Mencius*; along with parts of the *Book of Rites* or *Great Learning* (which most think was written by Confucius), and the *Doctrine of the Mean*. The second set is the ''Five Classics,'' or *Book of Changes* (''I-ching''), *Book of Documents*, *Book of Songs*, *Book of Rites*, and a collection of antiquarian writings usually ascribed to the Shang and Zhou periods. These nine works were the core curriculum of the famous Chinese examination system. For 2,500 years Chinese civilization to a remarkable degree aspired to implement the ethical constructs of Confucius. During the Song dynasty renaissance, official ''neo-Confucian'' ideas added a sternly hierarchical thrust through an emphasis on virtue rooted in contributing to harmonious family, social, and political relations, or the ''Three Bonds'' of minister to prince, children to parents, and wives to husbands. Confucian family and political ideas were thus broadly similar and mutually reinforcing, amounting to a call for familial and social unity under a single authority.

Classical Confucians believed in moral perfectibility through education, a tradition which marked Chinese culture and government for two millennia. From 136 B.C.E. to 1911 C.E., China's imperial system upheld blended versions of ''Imperial Confucianism'' (''Legalism,'' or ''Neo-Confucianism'') as a state

philosophy, and most dynasties based crucial scholar-elite (roughly, civil service) exams on its main texts. However, Confucian scholars tended to denigrate the callings of merchants and warriors, while state Confucianism repeatedly ossified into rigid conservatism. In the view of some scholars, this tendency held China outside the scientific and mercantile progress made in the West after 1500. Some Chinese blamed the whole tradition for the fall of the Ming dynasty. In contrast, a school of Confucian scholars returned to a purified canon, convinced that corruption of classic texts, rather than obedience to them, caused China's relative decline and martial weakness. They carried out close textual analysis of records dating to the Han dynasty, exposing numerous forgeries in the canon. Some looked to later periods, elevating the Song at the expense of the Ming. And a few smuggled Western and more recent Chinese ideas into gaps in the classical canon opened by the criticisms of the ''New Text Movement.'' See also *bushidō*; *mandate of heaven*; *tribute*.

Suggested Reading: William T. de Bary, *The Trouble with Confucianism* (1991); Irene Eber, *Confucianism* (1986).

Congo. See *Kongo*.

Congregatio de Propaganda Fidei. ''Congregation for the Propagation of the Faith.'' A Catholic committee established by Pope Gregory XV (1554–1623) to supervise foreign missions and proselytize among native populations, and most of all, to recatholicize those parts of the Empire overrun by *Ferdinand II* and his allies. It was centrally involved in the success of the *Counter-Reformation* in Germany, despite its main colleges being located in Italy.

Conitz. See *Chojnice, Battle of*.

conquistadores. Principally, a term used for the Spanish adventurer-soldiers who conquered the Americas. Secondarily, it is used about similar Portuguese slavers and raiders who operated in the African interior from coastal bases. These were truly ruthless warriors, literally soldiers of fortune who disdained literacy, manual labor and commerce, in favor of moving in mercenary companies—like flocks of raptors—whose members shared in the spoils of war and conquest. In their lifestyle they resembled the many nomad warrior tribes which invaded Western Europe after the 5th century. Their methods were learned, and their hearts steeled to cruelty, in generations of ''*holy war*'' against Muslim states during the Iberian *Reconquista*. In the New World, they first conquered the Caribbean islands. From there, *Hernán Cortés* led an expedition to conquer the *Aztec Empire* in the Central Valley of Mexico (1519–1521). Inspired by the vast wealth Cortés and his men obtained, *Pizarro* led an even smaller group of conquistadores on a remarkably similar conquest of the even larger *Inca Empire*. From these two fallen centers of Mesoamerican power and wealth smaller conquistadore expeditions fanned out in all

directions to overrun southern Mexico and Central America in the 1520s and 1530s, though they did not complete the conquest of the inland peoples of northern Mexico until c.1600. From Cuzco in Peru, in the 1530s and 1540s conquistadores moved north into Panama, south to the Río de la Plata, and thence north again into what is today Paraguay. Other expeditions penetrated the Amazon Basin, with equal ruthlessness and torment of the local Indians but far less luck in finding the mythical city of gold (''El Dorado'') or escaping with their lives. There was little honor among these cutthroats, thieves, and amphibious pirates. Within a generation of the conquest of the New World, with no sizeable empires or even concentrations of Indians left to conquer, many of the conquistadores in Peru rebelled violently against Spain's attempt to assert imperial authority over their claimed lands. Other conquistadores made war on each other. A wise few, foremost among them Cortés, returned to Iberia engorged with gold and silver to buy landed estates and noble titles. See also *Alvarado, Pedro de*; *encomienda*; *Otumba, Battle of*; *Peru*; *requerimiento*; *Tenochtitlán, First Siege of*; *Tenochtitlán, Second Siege of*.

Suggested Reading: Michael Wood, *Conquistadors* (2001).

conrois. A squadron of medieval European cavalry numbering anywhere from a handful of *knights* to several hundred. It practiced tactics of feint, false retreat and flank attack as well as the heavy charge. See also *tournaments*.

conscription. See *English armies*; *English Civil Wars*; *French Army*; *fryd*; *Ottoman Army*; *Polish Army*; *recruitment*; *sekban*; *Spanish Army*; *Swedish Army*; *Swiss Army*.

consorterie. The aristocratic clans of the Italian communes and city-states. They were tasked with raising cavalry for civic armies. They were largely displaced by the *condottieri*.

Conspiracy of Amboise. See *Amboise, Conspiracy of*.

constable. In late Medieval England a constable was a junior military ''officer'' assigned to lead a unit of about 100 foot soldiers raised by quota from country villages. He might sometimes serve, with his men, as a constable of marines under a ship's *master*. See also *English armies*.

Constable of France. The highest military office in France, above even maréshal, and carrying political as well as military responsibilities as commander-in-chief in the absence of the king. See also *Montmorency, Anne, duc de*.

constabulary. In the European Middle Ages, a battle group of at least 10 *knights* gathered under the *banner* of a great magnate (a duke or baron).

Constance, Council of (1414–1418). A general council of the Catholic Church held at the close of the *Great Schism*, to which it helped put an end.

Constance reaffirmed earlier condemnations of the teachings of *John Wycliffe* and ordered the trial for ''heresy'' of *Jan Hus*, arrested and burned at the stake in violation of an Imperial safe conduct. This betrayal provoked confessional violence in Bohemia and launched the *Hussite Wars*. See also *Ecumenical Councils*.

Constantinople, Sack of (1204). See *Byzantine Empire*; *Crusades*; *Orthodox Churches*; *Venice*.

Constantinople, Siege of (April 5–May 29, 1453). From its founding in 660 B.C.E., the ancient Greek city Byzantium commanded the strategic Dardanelles. In the early 4th century C.E. it was officially renamed ''Constantinoupolis Nea Roma'' or ''Constantinople the New Rome'' by Constantine the Great (274–337 C.E.). More simply, it was called ''Constantinople'' (''City of Constantine''), or by the Greeks, just ''The City.'' It was the most famous and important city in the Western Hemisphere, and occupied the most strategic ground: it guarded the Bosphorus, the straits that linked the Mediterranean with the Black Sea and divided Europe from Asia. Slavs called it ''Tsarigrad'' (''City of the Emperors''), and many converted to the *Orthodox* faith it championed and defended. The Christians of Armenia knew it as ''Gosdantnubolis.'' Even the distant Norse heard of it: they called it ''Mikligaard'' (''The Big City''). After the sacks of Rome (410 and 455 C.E.) and the end of the Western Empire (476 C.E.), Constantinople remained for a thousand years capital of the *Byzantine Empire* (except for an interlude of Latin occupation and Nicaean exile for the emperors following the Fourth *Crusade*). For all that time it was the epicenter of politics, religion, and culture for the whole Hellenistic and Orthodox world. By the mid-15th century, however, the Byzantine Empire was reduced to an enclave, stripped of Balkan provinces by rebellion or conquest and encircled by the burgeoning Ottoman Empire. As the Ottomans gathered for the final battle following their defeat of the Hungarians at *Kosovo Polje* (1448), the Byzantines once more called on fellow Christians in the West for military aid. But the spirit of the Latin Crusades was nearly spent: few replied, and fewer still came. It was principally for geopolitical rather than religious reasons that Genoa, Venice, and the Papal States sent minor aid: detachments of 200, 400, and 700 men to a city forlorn of hope that all knew must soon fall.

In April 1452, *Muhammad II* tasked 1,000 masons to construct a stone artillery fort on the Bosphorus across the Straits from the city as a prelude to his planned crossing and siege of Constantinople the next year. This fort was called ''Cutter of Throats'' (''Boghaz-kesen''), but later renamed ''Rumeli Hisar.'' It was complemented by an older fort built by *Bayezid I* some six miles south of Constantinople, ''Anadolu Hisar.'' These artillery positions gave the Sultan command of the Bosphorus and platforms from which to pound Constantinople into submission with his great *bombards*. What faced Muhammad was a metropolis that withstood nearly two dozen sieges before

him, and which never fell to assault—its capture by Latin knights in 1204 was achieved by treachery from within. The city was protected by three great, concentric walls on its landward side. The outermost wall had eight gates, each flanked by guard towers, and continued along the south shore of the ''Golden Horn,'' the main harbor with its great iron boom to block enemy galleys. The second wall, the ''Wall of Constantine,'' was half the size of the outer perimeter. The innermost or ''Byzantine'' wall formed a sea wall where it abutted the Straits. More importantly, it enclosed the central hub of the city and the Hagia Sophia, the ''Church of the Holy Wisdom'' built by Emperor Justinian from 532–537 C.E. and host of the Patriarchate for over 1,000 years. All told, there were four miles of land walls and nine miles of sea walls, paralleled by a deep ditch. The defenses also boasted 100 watch and guard towers. However, to defend these long walls Emperor Constantine XI Paleologus (r.1449–1453) had only 6,000 soldiers, supplemented by 3,000 foreigners from various Italian city-states or just mercenaries. Another 700 Genoese arrived in January. Their leader, a tough captain called Giovanni Giustiniani, was given command of the city's defenses.

Starting early in the new year the Sultan amassed 120,000–150,000 men across from the city. At the core of his army were thousands of elite *Janissaries* and tens of thousands of *Bashi-Bazouks*, irregular tribal mercenaries of ferocious reputation. Muhammad began with fire from his cannons and culverins immediately, while still positioning the bombards. These had to be dragged overland on a purpose-built road. The greatest, ''Elipolos'' or ''City-Taker,'' could hurl a 600-pound stone ball three-quarters of a mile, with devastating impact and reasonable accuracy. The Sultan protected his big guns with an earth palisade built with dirt removed from a protective ditch he ordered prepared in front of his lines. His men were all in place by April 5. A fleet of 200 galleys arrived on April 12, with supplies and more assault troops. A minor breach was made in the outer wall and a probing assault was launched on April 18, but it was easily repulsed. Two days later four Genoese *galleasses* broke into the harbor. They raced across at flank speed to escape fire from Ottoman shore batteries while repelling boarders from Ottoman galleys by firing down from high *castles* into the lower Muslim warships. Muhammad reacted to this seaborne relief with real imagination: he had 30 galleys rolled overland on logs to bypass a secondary sea wall on the north shore of the harbor, at Galata. The ships moved along another purpose-built special road constructed by his superb corp of military engineers. Thus, the Ottoman ships slipped past the great chain by land and quickly took strategic control of the Golden Horn.

With Ottoman galleys inside the main harbor all hope of relief failed. The next three weeks inside the city were grim as multiple saps were dug toward the walls, covered by a continuous bombardment. On May 6 a second breach of the outer wall was made near the Fifth Gate, the ''Military Gate of St. Romanus.'' Muhammad's early morning attack was stopped only because the defenders built a secondary wall behind the breach during the night, then

held it with fierce resolve, pikes, and muskets. Ottoman siege towers were burned and blocked as troops pulled them toward the wall, and further sapping and mining was defeated by brilliantly effective Byzantine countermining. All the while, the outer walls were pounded by the distant bombards and by cannon and culverins, while powerful mortars hurled ordnance and incendiaries into the city to smash and burn buildings and demoralize civilians. Muhammad's artillery hammered at the defenses for 55 days, the first mass bombardment of a major city in military history. More breaches were made on May 28, and several all-out assaults were made by Bashi-Bazouks and Janissaries, starting just after midnight of the following day. But these attacks did not take the city. It fell by accident, or perhaps from treachery: a small gate was left open through which Muslim troops rushed, seized a guard tower, and struck into the flank of the last defenders at the gate. Emperor Constantine fell with his men, defending his broken city to the last.

Emperor Constantine fell with his men, defending his broken city to the last.

There followed a bloodbath that lasted several days and took the lives of nearly all the defenders and tens of thousands among the civilian population. Most were slaughtered in their homes and shops or in the streets. Churches and nunneries offered no protection. Those who did not die were taken away to be sold as slaves. Muhammad ordered an end to the killing, but not even he could easily damp down the bloodlust of an army fresh inside after two months of hard siege. When the massacre was over Muhammad had the blood washed from the floors of Hagia Sophia, pulled down its icons, and converted the church into one of the main mosques of the Islamic world. Then he took up residence in what became the Ottoman capital, strategically situated at the center of an expanding empire and symbolically located between the original Asian capital of his ancestors at Brusa and their first European capital at Adrianople. From Constantinople, Muhammad and his descendants gazed west and north toward future conquests in Europe, east toward their core Anatolian possessions and beyond to *shi'ia* foes in Iran, and south across the eastern Mediterranean, now an Ottoman lake, to their empire in Africa.

The fall and sack of Constantinople sent cultural, political, and military shock waves around the Christian and Islamic worlds. For Muslims the city was a prize sought for centuries and its capture confirmed that Islam was still advancing as Allah willed. For the Orthodox nothing could salve the tragedy. For Latin Christians the realization suddenly struck that a new and powerful enemy was moving in the east. Ottomans, too, understood that a new Great Power had arrived on the world stage, one animated by military success and freshly confident of its religious and imperial mission. Commercially, the fall of Constantinople blocked Italian city-states and merchants from their traditional markets in the eastern Mediterranean, and beyond to China. That gave them and Iberian and other competitors a huge incentive to find alternate routes to the sources of the *spice trade* in India and Cathay, sending the

Portuguese ever further around the edges of Africa and a Genoese captain across the Atlantic in 1492. Finally, to all military men the city's fall seemed to announce like a clarion that the best medieval defenses could not stand against the new gunpowder artillery. The Middle Ages were over.

Suggested Reading: Michael Antonucci, ''Siege Without Reprieve,'' *Military History* 9/1 (April 1992); J.F.C. Fuller, *Military History of the Western World*, Vol. I (1954; 1955); Edward Gibbon, ''End of the Roman Empire,'' in *Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire* (1783); Steven Runciman, *The Fall of Constantinople* (1903; 1968).

continuous bullet gun. A remarkable Chinese invention of a multi-shot gun. It used paper cartridges that were pre-loaded in sequence with lighted fuses, while bullets dropped into place from an attached holder before each charge exploded. It was, in effect, a primitive machine gun.

contravallation. See *lines of contravallation*.

contributions. With the dramatic expansion in the size of 17th-century armies and navies, and their establishment on a more permanent basis, the problem of military finance overwhelmed the primitive bureaucratic structures and tax systems of early modern states. A notable exception was the Netherlands, whose advanced economy enabled the Dutch to actually pay their troops on time and in full. This gave them a huge advantage in the long run over the Spanish, whose troops in Flanders were usually owed many months' back pay and who mutinied dozens of times. To solve this problem the Habsburgs turned to the ''contribution system'' first imposed by *Ambrogio Spínola* on the Palatinate in 1620, which reached maturity under the mercenary entrepreneur *Albrecht von Wallenstein* a few years thereafter. The old system of supply was simply seizure or requisition of foodstuffs and fodder by troops from towns and villages along the line of march, or surrounding a garrison, in exchange for promissory notes on the Habsburg treasury that most often went unpaid. This encouraged peasants and sutlers to hide grain and goods rather than supply the army, and eroded support for the Habsburg war effort in Catholic provinces. Spínola and Wallenstein substituted a system of cash taxes (''contributions'') paid directly into their *war chest*. Then the commanders distributed the cash as payment to mercenaries and to buy foodstuffs, fodder, and equipment. This ensured that professional soldiers were paid regularly and was acceptable to peasants and merchants because the money or tax taken flowed back into the local economy. Most importantly, contributions relieved soldiers of the need to forage widely in search of plunder in lieu of pay, or just to keep body and soul together.

Contributions were a ruthless but efficient method of extortion at pike and musket point, in which pay displaced plunder as the principal form of compensation for fighting men. It was also a much more effective system of supply, freeing armies to move more quickly and making commanders virtually self-sufficient—a crucial feature in an era dominated by mercenary generals on all sides. The system was eventually adopted by nearly all armies

in the *Thirty Years' War*. Contributions, along with sales of confiscated Protestant estates and some revenue from the Habsburg hereditary lands, kept the Imperial Army in the field and damped down mutiny. However, it attached primary loyalty to the army's commander, especially Wallenstein. This became clear when he was dismissed for the first time in 1630. His refusal to provide collected contributions to his successor, *Johann Tilly*, paralyzed the Imperial Army. The fact that Imperial troops were primarily loyal to their paymaster and commander was a major concern to *Ferdinand II* and other Catholic princes. Ultimately, it posed such a threat to the Emperor he secretly dismissed Wallenstein a second time in 1634, then sent assassins to kill him. From 1635 Imperial garrisons were no longer principally supported by forced contributions. Instead, taxes were agreed to by the princes and *Estates* under terms of the *Peace of Prague*, extended to the end of the war by the *Imperial Diet* in 1641. In effect for decades, the practice of collecting cash contribution, and the war taxes that replaced this system within the Empire, permanently raised levels of taxation. After 1648 high taxes dating to the war were kept in place by princes and monarchs all over Europe to support their new *standing armies*. See also *bedel-i nüzul*; *Engagements*; *free quarter*; *logistics*; *mutiny*; *Propositions*.

conversos. After the pogroms of 1391 in Iberia, Jews converted to Christianity, either sincerely or to protect themselves from persecution at the hands of Christians, were called "conversos." See also *expulsion of the Jews*; *galley slaves*; *Inquisition*; *moriscos*; *war finance*.

convoy. For centuries, Venetian merchants traveled the Mediterranean in convoy as protection against pirates and predatory rivals. Corporate bodies of merchants, such as the "Bayonne Shipowner's Society," also organized convoys for mutual protection. English kings arranged convoys of merchants to Gascony from the 12th century (Henry II). In the 13th century they extended this system to traders plying the Irish Sea and to ships headed for Calais. Warship escorts were added in the 14th century, a late date reflecting the paucity and impermanence of English naval power prior to the late 15th century. The most famous convoys of the period were the great treasure fleets that sailed from the New World to Spain. In 1562 the city of Seville, confirmed by royal decree issued by *Philip II* two years later, forced merchants sailing to the Spanish Main into two convoys—the "flota" and "galeones," each of which sailed annually from Seville. The flota sailed in April for Veracruz, New Spain, while the galeones sailed in August for Panama. After wintering and taking on cargos of treasure and other New World goods, all ships rendezvoused in Havana in order to return as a single fleet numbering some 80–100 vessels. From 1568 the treasure fleets were escorted by a squadron of warships; by 1584, this squadron comprised eight large ships and six *galleons*. Other Spanish warships patrolled the Atlantic and Caribbean coasts, but not in convoy. The annual treasure fleet made port in Spain every autumn, at Seville until 1717.

The convoy system mostly worked: from 1588 to 1603, when Spain's shipping was hunted by English, Dutch, and French privateers, more gold and silver reached the Spanish treasury than in any other period of comparable length. During the *Eighty Years' War* the Dutch captured the treasure fleet just once, and not for want of trying: Piet Hein of the Dutch West Indies Company pounced on it off the Cuban coast in September 1628. The loss of the treasure fleet led immediately to a major fiscal crisis for Spain, where American silver was crucial to sustain Spain's already debased currency; to pay its mercenary troops fighting in Germany, Italy, and the Netherlands; and to pay off *Fugger* and Genoese loans and notes. Spanish convoys were harder to organize in the Indian Ocean and across the vast Pacific, and hence more rare. This was due to the far greater distances involved and a lack of ships and men on either side of the fight, hunted and hunter.

An additional purpose of the treasure fleets was less obvious: to concentrate royal control over trade and the importation of monetary metals. In this, the convoy system was less successful than in fending off privateers: there was much conniving at smuggling silver when loading and unloading the treasure fleet, and more smuggling by single ships slipping into some port other than Seville—in all, perhaps as much as one-quarter of all the silver entering Europe was smuggled. Alternately, silver smugglers might take the long, dangerous Pacific route to Manila, and thence to the markets of China where goods were bought with illegal or stolen silver to be sold in Europe the next year—a sort of 16th-century international money-laundering scheme. Also, not all merchants sought the protection of the king's ships since the king took a share of all cargoes as tax for his troubles. Many preferred to take their chances alone on the high seas in armed merchantmen that fought even as they ran from English or Dutch pirates or privateers. The fact was that profit margins were so high if a ship made it back to Europe with a New World or Chinese or Indian cargo, that it was cost-effective to chance losing the ship and all its cargo by running the gauntlet of pirates, privateers, enemy commerce raiders, and the occasional formal but ineffective naval blockade.

In contrast to Spain, most English and Dutch merchant ships plying the Atlantic trade in the 16th century were private. But they still used convoys: only a few captains risked pirates and privateers by sailing alone to the sugar isles of the West Indies, though some did it for the same profit motive that moved Spanish sailors to cross the wild and storm-tossed Pacific (a most ill-named ocean). Most English captains preferred to sail together, to afford mutual protection from bad weather and accident as much as from enemy action. Ships headed for the rich fisheries off Newfoundland (nearly 200 per year) or Cape Cod, or plying the Chesapeake trade, most often traveled together but without the protection of the king's (or queen's) warships. Later in the 17th century English merchants formed armed convoys of up to 100 ships to the Caribbean. These sailed at regular times of the year to avoid winter weather and to arrive in time to collect highly perishable tropical crops. They were seldom molested. See also *Flanders*; *Gibraltar*.

Suggested Reading: Timothy Walton, *The Spanish Treasure Fleets* (1994).

Coptic Church. The Christian church and community in Egypt dating to the 3rd century C.E. It maintained links to Christians in Ethiopia for over 1,000 years. After conversion of most Egyptians to Islam in the 8th century, Egyptian Copts clung to a minority but tolerated position. Their distinctive rite was old Monophysite, dating to association with the Orthodox patriarchate in Constantinople. The Copts were first distanced from Christian traditions in the Latin West and the Orthodox world by the decision taken against the extreme Monophysite view of the nature of ''The Christ'' (a singular divine nature, not divided by a subordinate human nature). That position was condemned by the *Ecumenical Council* of Chalcedon in 451, which left the Copts in schism. Copts were additionally distanced by their discrete and distinct hierarchy. The Coptic Church in Egypt upheld a paternal relationship with the Coptic Church in Ethiopia, to which it sent bishops and other high clerics into the late 20th century.

Their distinctive rite was old Monophysite, dating to association with the Orthodox patriarchate . . .

Çorbasi. ''Soup maker.'' An officer in the *Janissary Corps* in command of an *Orta* (company) of 100 men and roughly comparable to *colonel*. The title derived from his original role as the man who fed the sultan's slave soldiers. He was assisted by other officers with titles similarly derived from kitchen functions, which in later years bore no relation whatever to their military roles: the ''master cook,'' ''cook,'' ''head scullion,'' and ''scullion.'' This culinary motif of the Janissaries was best represented by the *Kazan*—the prized cooking pot that was the center of Janissary camp life and part of every battle order.

Córdoba, Battle of (1236). See *Reconquista*.

Córdoba, Caliphate of. See *caliph*; *itqa*; *Reconquista*.

Córdoba, Gonzalo di (1453–1515). ''el Gran Capitan.'' Castilian general who reformed the *tercios*, reducing reliance on polearms and bringing more guns to reinforced pike formations that could operate independently because of their increased firepower. He fought in Castile's civil war that attended the ascension of Isabel to the throne. Next, he fought in the long war to conquer *Granada*, and again against Portugal. He was sent to Naples from 1495 to 1498 to stop the French conquest. He lost to Swiss mercenary infantry at *Seminara*, but adjusted his strategy and slowly pushed the French out of southern Italy. He used the same tactics in Italy that worked in Granada: progressive erosion of the enemy's hold over outposts and the countryside, blockading garrisons, and avoiding pitched battles where he could. He fought the Swiss again, and won, at *Cerignola* (1503), handing them their first battle

loss in 200 years. He beat them again that year at their encampment on the *Garigliano River*. Between fighting the French and Swiss he fought rebellious Moriscos in Granada and against the Ottomans in behalf of Spain and in alliance with Venice. He retired in 1506, well-regarded as a great general of pike and arquebus warfare.

corned gunpowder. See *corning/corned gunpowder*.

cornet (1). A junior officer in an English cavalry troop, charged with protection of the standard of the troop (also called a cornet).

cornet (2). A troop of cavalry.

***cornette* (1).** A French cavalry standard or pennant.

***cornette* (2).** The standard bearer (''le cornette'').

corning/corned gunpowder. A process (and its product) for refining gunpowder developed in France c.1429. Mealing gunpowder ingredients—charcoal, saltpeter, and sulphur—in a dry container only led to later reseparation by weight of each component: saltpeter sank to the bottom since it was heavier than sulphur, which in turn outweighed charcoal. This separation happened through ordinary transport by horseback, backpack, or from rough jogging in an unsprung cart. An interim solution was to delay mixing until the gunpowder was actually needed, but this only posed different dangers. Moreover, mealed or ''serpentine'' black powder was too fine to combust efficiently. Coarser grains were needed to provide a lower surface-to-volume ratio to aid fast combustion. In corning the three ingredients were mixed with water or, more often with vinegar, wine, brandy, or urine from hard drinkers. The thick paste thus formed was forced through a perforated plate or animal hide to even the grains. Then it was shaped into cakes (in German, *Knollen*, in French, *petite mottes*) and dried under the sun or in a powder room. The Knollen were later milled and the resulting granules sorted by degree of coarseness. This method not only produced more sure and powerful combustion, it solved the problem of spoilage of black powder in storage.

Corning permitted standardized powder to be prepared, eventually leading to a triple division of corned powder grades. The finest grains were reserved as ''musket-grade,'' while coarser sorts were used in cannon, mines, and for making fuses or *quick match*. This method solved the separation problem while making gunpowder quicker burning and more explosive, but also more expensive to manufacture. The additional power of the new powder provided a great incentive to also improve *casting* techniques as it was now much more likely that refined powder would explode older guns made with the *hoop-and-stave* method. Larger forges capable of bigger castings resulted and that meant a progressive move from *breech-loaders* to *muzzle-loaders* as single-cast guns were better able to contain the expanding gases and explosive force of corned

powder. At the same time, corning stimulated development of hand guns, notably the long-barreled *arquebus*. By the middle of the 16th century corned powder had compelled a basic redesign of all guns from cannon to muskets and pistols, including the length of the barrel, the shape and diameter of the bore, the form of the breech, and the weight of the shot. The Japanese and Chinese acquired corned powder from Europe in the mid-16th century, the same time they first obtained European muskets. It appears that Indian gunpowder was not corned until very late. That was just as well since most Indian cannon were still hoop-and-stave and could not handle corned powder, which is of course precisely why intelligent Indian gunners did not use it. See also *Bureau brothers*.

Suggested Reading: Bert Hall, *Weapons and Warfare in Renaissance Europe* (1997).

coronal. A blunted spearpoint attached to a practice lance for use in a fight ''à plaisance'' (for pleasure or for fun) in a medieval *tournament*. It stopped the lance from punching through the opponent's armor and causing grave injury.

coronation wars. See *Aztec Empire*; *Moctezuma II*.

coronelia. See *colonel*; *Spanish Army*.

corporal. From the 16th century, a junior or noncommissioned officer who acted as assistant to a *lieutenant*. In the Spanish army, from which the English and most other armies copied the rank, the ''capo de squadra'' was the man in command of a company subunit, a *squadron* of 20–25 men. A variation on this was introduced by the Dutch in the great military reforms of the 1590s.

Corpus Catholicorum. The collective body of Catholic *Estates* of the Holy Roman Empire, numbering 72 members large and small, that gathered to negotiate the *Peace of Westphalia* from 1644 to 1648. At Westphalia it was agreed that future confessional disputes would be settled not by the *Imperial Diet* but by negotiations with its counterpart, the *Corpus Evangelicorum*, representing Protestant interests and including for the first time Calvinists as well as Lutherans. While most members supported the Emperor at Westphalia, two subgroups did not: an anti-Imperial faction that was prepared to use concessions to France and Protestant Germans to counterbalance the Habsburgs, and a militant Catholic faction (''Triumvirs'') backed by Spain and—even after 120 years of stalemated religious wars in Europe—still opposed to religious toleration.

Corpus Christi. The Catholic feast of the ''Body of Christ,'' a central ritual of the faith for the medieval and early modern Church. Princes and kings, even Emperor *Ferdinand II*, marched at the head of Corpus Christi processions. These had a quasi-martial character that exuded the spirit of the *Crusades* long after those military misadventures ended. *Francis I* used the 1535 feast to

reinforce and advertise his persecution of Protestants in the wake of the *Affair of the Placards*. The *Inquisition* sometimes added *autos de fe* to the festivities. In 1640, Corpus Christi rites triggered riots that quickly became the *revolt of Catalonia*.

Corpus Evangelicorum. The collective body of Protestant *Estates* of the Holy Roman Empire, numbering 73 members, including for the first time both Lutherans and Calvinists, gathered from 1644 to 1648 to negotiate terms leading to the *Peace of Westphalia*. It was divided into a small state and more Calvinist faction that wanted total revocation of the *Edict of Restitution* and full toleration for all Protestants everywhere in the Empire, and larger principalities, mainly Lutheran, who wanted real peace more than some abstract argument on toleration. Eventually, the Corpus Evangelicorum proved more united than its counterpart, the *Corpus Catholicorum*, representing Catholic interests. At Westphalia, on March 14, 1648, it was agreed that all future confessional disputes within the Empire would be settled not by the Imperial Diet but by negotiations with the Corpus Catholicorum, and on the basis of a *Normaljahr* of 1624.

corpus mysticum. ''Mystical body.'' The idea that royal sanctity (and sovereignty) resided not in the physical body of the monarch but in his or her ''corpus mysticum.'' This competed directly with claims to unique personal holiness made by the clergy, a contest which played out in the great struggle between popes and Holy Roman Emperors and their surrogates among *Guelphs and Ghibellines*. From this claim to special sanctity the idea of the ''Royal Touch'' developed in France and England, by which monarchs claimed the power of miraculous healing of scrofula by laying on hands. The problem of mortality was resolved around 1500 with promotion of the idea of the monarch's ''dignitas,'' which survived death of the sovereign's earthly body. In practice, European monarchs soon approached ancient Egyptian, Alexandrine, or Roman claims to semi-divinity, while maintaining the theological assertion that the king remained human even if he ruled ''by the grace of God.'' This was especially true in France, where kings took the title *Rex christianissimus* and asserted a quasi-divine status. To maintain this elaborate fiction religious rituals continued even after the physical death of a sovereign. Thus, *Henri III*'s deceased body was ''fed'' twice daily for several weeks before its interment.

With the *Protestant Reformation* and Catholic *Counter-Reformation*, thinkers on both sides of the religious divide reexamined kingly claims to a sacred, incorporeal body. Although the full movement to secular political theory did not occur in this period, in one sense it began with a shift in theology that moved the corpus mysticum away from the king to reside instead in the people as a whole. Why? Because the long search to secure the ''corpus mysticum'' of the old Christian commonwealth, to build the ideal Christian polity, failed in country after country: in Spain, the Crusader spirit led to national calamity; in England, there was religious civil war and the grave moral disappointment of the Puritan republic; in France and Germany confessionalism ushered in

decades of civil war and breathtaking atrocities by one body of Christian believers against another. By the mid-17th century many devout Catholics and Protestants believed with equal fervor that Babylon, not Jerusalem, was ascendent in affairs of the world. Given absolute sovereign power as conceived in Thomas Hobbes' *Leviathan*, which began to displace the old idea of the *res publica Christiana* formally and in fact from the *Peace of Westphalia* in 1648, such devouts seemed proven right just as the fires of the "wars of religion" finally burned out, leaving only embers of emnity glowing in the darker fringes of the continent.

corsair. "To chase." Arab and Berber merchant clans who governed Algiers. Contrary to popular belief, their war galleys were usually rowed by free Muslim soldiers, not by Christian slaves. The latter were used in corsair coastal transport and trading galleys. Slaves took up too many places that were needed for fighters to be used in a fighting ship. Corsairs, or *Barbary pirates*, engaged in trade, raids, and outright *piracy* in the Western Mediterranean for centuries. See also *Algiers*; *Barbarossa*; *dey*; *Tunis*.

Cortes. See *Estates*.

Cortés, Hernán (1485–1547). *Conquistador* and conqueror of the *Aztec Empire*. Born in Estramadura, Cortés studied at a fairly high level at Salamanca but, at age 19, he left for the Caribbean to try his hand as a plantation farmer in Hispaniola. He first fought in the New World with a conquistadore army that brutally occupied Cuba in 1511. There, he witnessed a mindless slaughter of Indians. A decade later he said he was determined to avoid repeating this error when he invaded Mexico. It was not moral sensibility that drove him to that conclusion: his preference was to instead exploit Indian labor within the *encomienda* system. He left Cuba on February 18, 1519, under orders from the governor of Cuba, Diego Velásquez, to conquer Mexico. He had just 11 ships carrying 550 men, 16 horses, some war dogs (mastiffs), and 10 brass cannon. They landed on the Tabasco coast where they allied with the Totonac people, a coastal tribe that was nominally a vassal of the Aztec. They supplied 20 young girls and women slaves to Cortés, who took "*La Malinche*" as his interpreter and mistress. Cortés moved up shore, then paused for four months to reconnoiter the Aztec position. Bypassing his superiors in Cuba, he sent a ship laden with gold and a secret letter written directly to *Charles V*, asking for the concession of the conquest of Mexico. Meanwhile, he mishandled two Aztec tax collectors, the first representatives of that empire he met. Puzzled, Emperor *Moctezuma* (Motechuzoma) II sent an embassy bearing gifts of gold, religious costumes, and food. Cortés thereafter received orders from Diego Velásquez, who had learned of his insubordinate correspondence with Charles V, to return to Cuba. Cortés disregarded the command and instead made his base camp at a site he named Vera Cruz ("The True Cross"). From there he gathered more intelligence from the Totonac and other tribes. He learned that many tribes and cities were fiercely opposed to the Aztecs and

hated their submission to a tribute system that exploited them economically and took people from their communities for ritual sacrifice in the Great Temple in Tenochtitlán. Indian warriors willing to fight alongside Cortés were thus legion. In the Spanish telling, Cortés added thousands of Mesoamerican slingers and javelin throwers to his tiny army. From the vantage point of the Totonac and other Indians, they added small but unique Spanish military capabilities to an armed rebellion they were preparing to rid themselves of the Aztecs.

Before moving inland Cortés sank his remaining ships to show there was no going back and to leave his reluctant men no choice but to follow. On August 16, 1519, he started for Tenochtitlán 150 miles inland, across a range of volcanoes. Over the mountains, he arrived at Tlaxcalan, an independent city-state 70 miles from Tenochtitlán which the Aztecs had never been able to conquer. An army came out to crush the strangers and their Indian allies. In a sharp battle, Spanish discipline and firepower won the day: arquebuses and muskets broke up loose Tlaxcalan lines before their warriors could approach to hurl stones and javelins. The 16 Spanish lancers then further deformed the Indian ranks and picked off their leaders. Then the Spanish foot charged, shoulder-to-shoulder with swords and pikes, slashing and stabbing hundreds of warriors to death before they could swing heavy obsidian clubs in reply. Armor and steel, but even more discipline and ferocity, won over the Mesoamerican style of warfare that emphasized individual heroism in loose, lightly armed formations, and taking an enemy alive so he could be sacrificed later. This victory at Tlaxcalan was a key moment in the conquest because the Tlaxcalans immediately allied with Cortés. They, too, thought his unusual military skills could be used against the hated Aztecs. Tlaxcalan henceforth provided tens of thousands of dedicated, veteran Indian warriors. And it became the key forward base and logistical center for the Spanish for the next two years. Reinforced with 3,000 more Mesoamerican allies, Cortés reached the Aztec tributary city of Cholollan (modern Cholula). Moctezuma tried a stratagem: the Spanish were invited into the city where a trap was laid of missile troops hidden on the rooftops, with ditches filled with sharp stakes to impale riders and horses. But the trick was betrayed so that Cortés struck first, killing Cholollan troops and commanders without mercy.

. . . Cortés sank his remaining ships to show there was no going back and to leave his reluctant men no choice but to follow.

Moctezuma was unable to muster his full army because it was harvest season. Instead, he made a fatal—and fateful—decision: he invited Cortés, the conquistadores, and 3,000 Tlaxcalan warriors into Tenochtitlán, which the expedition reached on November 8. Possibly, Moctezuma hoped to arrange a second, larger Cholollan-style trap, using urban confinement to neutralize the demonstrated superiority of the Spanish in the field. Far less likely is the widely popular legend that he lost confidence due to belief in an old prophesy that Cortés appeared to fulfill, which foretold of a feared, pale Aztec deity (Quetzalcoatl), who would return from the east to reclaim his Aztec kingdom.

The allied intruders were quartered in an older palace, off the ritual square at the city center. After two weeks, Cortés feared such a trap and decided to spring his own first. He asked for an audience with Moctezuma, whom he seized and kept prisoner for six months, effectively decapitating the regime and paralyzing its response. The Aztec nobility obeyed Moctezuma's initial command to bring the city's gold to the conquistadores, to whom they also brought food and women. Doubt about the superiority, let alone quasi-divinity, of their guests grew as they watched the Spaniards eat, rut, and defecate as did other men, and exhibit an extraordinary lust for gold. A crisis for Cortés came when he led most of his men back to the coast to fend off a rival force of 900 conquistadores from Cuba. This group knew of the planned conquest, had orders to arrest Cortés, and intended to take their share of gold. Cortés attacked by surprise, killing a few and capturing their leader (Pánfilo de Narváez). With oratory laced with Crusader ecstacy and promised plunder, he persuaded the survivors to join his little army and together they returned to Tenochtitlán. However, so cruel was the occupation of the man he left in charge in the city, *Pedro de Alvarado*, so insatiable was the Spanish lust for gold, and so numerous the murders of priests and Aztec nobles they committed (probably on the orders of Cortés), the Aztecs at last rebelled. But first they shrewdly let Cortés re-enter the city, which he did against the advice of his Mesoamerican allies.

On June 24, 1520, the Aztecs cut the causeways that led to the city, trapping 1,200 Spanish and about 2,000 Tlaxcalans, along with mounds of hoarded gold in the temple and palace complex. The *First Siege of Tenochtitlán* lasted a week. After several sorties failed, on the night of June 30, Cortés led an effort to sneak out of the city which ended in a desperate flight that left half his men dead or trapped in the temple complex, surrounded by tens of thousands of enraged Aztecs. As Cortés pulled out from Tenochtitlán he left it burning and Moctezuma dead (whether from errant Aztec missiles or Spanish strangulation is unclear). Streams of Spanish and Tlaxcalan blood literally flowed down the temple steps as men left behind or cut off were captured and ritually sacrificed for all to see. The remnant fled with Cortés down the causeway, fighting off thousands of pursing Aztec warriors en route to a dramatic stand at *Otumba*. The Aztecs were by now in full roar: they had killed enough Spaniards, in battle or by ritually cutting out their hearts, to know they faced not demi-gods but mere men who bled, screamed, died, or ran in fear like other men. Their horses, too, were demystified by death and dismemberment.

Cortés lost 70 percent of his horses and 65 percent of his men. The Tlaxcalans suffered as heavily, and in far greater numbers. In the Spanish accounts, it was now that Cortés proved himself an exceptional leader with qualities of strategic foresight, tactical brilliance, and above all, thorough ruthlessness and pitiless single-mindedness of purpose. He spent the rest of 1520 gathering a new anti-Aztec alliance from surrounding cities, and awaiting the successive arrival at Vera Cruz of seven squadrons of ships bringing new cannons, arquebuses, crossbows, powder, and shot. With the weapons came more conquistadores, some intent on revenge for dead brothers or fathers, others keen

to crusade against the rumored pagan ''empire of cannibals.'' The smallpox that came with the Spanish now decimated Aztec ranks, killing Cuitláhuac as well. This reduced the numbers of warriors the Spanish faced and may have undermined Aztec morale, but it also ravaged the Tlaxcalans and other tribes allied with the Spanish. Cortés busied some men with raids against Aztec tributaries, cutting off supplies to Tenochtitlán. Others he set to building 14 *brigantines*, using timber and struts from the wreaks at Vera Cruz. He then had these small ships dismantled and hauled to the shores of Lake Texcoco by thousands of Mesoamerican porters. The 500 Spaniards Cortés had left after Otumba were reinforced by 400–500 fresh arrivals at Vera Cruz, who brought much-needed fresh horses and more arquebuses and cannon. This still left him mainly reliant on Tlaxcalan warriors who were determined to overthrow the Aztecs. Some Indians adapted their weapons to make them more lethal, for instance, switching to copper-tipped arrows with metal obtained from the Spanish. The second expedition—was it a Spanish assault with Indian allies or the reverse?—arrived at the foot of the causeways across Lake Texcoco on April 28, 1521. The aqueducts were quickly broken, cutting off Tenochtitlán from its supply of food and fresh water. The brigantines went into the lake to destroy the Aztec war canoes. This was quickly accomplished. The *Second Siege of Tenochtitlán* now began. It lasted three months. On August 13, 1521, the third and last Aztec leader to face the Spanish assault and Indian vassal rebellion, the boy-emperor Cuauhtémoc, surrendered the city.

Cortés subsequently became governor of the conquered Aztec lands and one of the richest men of the Age. He ruled cruelly, in accordance with his nature: he was an unimaginative, brutal kleptocrat with no regard for the welfare of the Indian population, except an instrumental concern with Indian welfare such that the encomienda system was sustainable. Tenochtitlán was razed so that a Christian citadel of the Spanish Empire in America, Mexico City, might be built atop its ruins. Cortés called in Franciscan priests and other religious radicals to destroy the last temples and indoctrinate Mesoamericans with the usual Catholic pieties. Those Indians who survived were weakened morally as well as physically by pandemic diseases, and were also politically weak and divided. They were effectively enslaved by Spanish settlers who hurried to Mexico following the conquest, many of whom demonstrated even less conscience than did Cortés. The native economy was destroyed, its riches plundered and exported to buy estates or pay royal taxes in Spain. Central Mexico would take centuries to recover from the decimation.

Cortés led several more expeditions to expand ''Spanish America,'' including to Central America in 1524 (during which he had Cuauhtémoc murdered), and later to Baja California. In 1528 he returned to Spain to regain his Mexican governorship, which had been taken from him by a royal appointee. He was unsuccessful, but received a captaincy, a noble title, and a huge land grant in Mexico along with tens of thousands of encomienda forced laborers. Ever the conquistador, he did not rest content in landed wealth. He later fought in Africa, joining the Habsburg attack on Algiers in 1541. He died of dysentery, amidst his riches, in Spain.

Suggested Reading: Ross Hassig, *Mexico and the Spanish Conquest* (1995); Hugh Thomas, *Conquest* (1994).

Cossacks. Turkish: ''kazak'' or ''outlaw.'' A blended people comprised of masterless Turkic and Slavic horsemen from southern Russia, Poland, and Ukraine, occupying the grassland frontiers between Christian and Muslim, and Orthodox and Catholic. Cossacks were at first little more than self-defense bands (''vatahy'') living off the steppe. These grew and founded fortified camps (*sich*), as Cossackdom evolved from seasonal hunting and grazing on the wild grassland into a year-round livelihood. From the 1480s Slavic Cossacks appeared, mostly runaway slaves or serfs but also down-and-out burghers, penurious nobles, and defrocked priests. Others descended from nomadic invaders who had passed through in earlier centuries, and local tribes beyond the reach of the tsars of Muscovy or the khans of Central Asia. During the 15th and 16th centuries there was an explosion in Cossack numbers as military burdens increased in surrounding societies, making private warfare, and hunting and farming far more attractive than staying at home to be enserfed or conscripted. Cossacks enjoyed broad autonomy for several reasons: they were too ferocious to conquer without great cost; their land was not deemed valuable enough to warrant full-scale invasion and conquest; and their scattered grassland fortresses and superb natural cavalry set up effective and useful buffer zones between Poland and Muscovy on one side and the Ottoman Empire and its *Tatar* allies to the south.

In 1553–1554 the Zaporozhian Cossacks built a sich south of Kiev on the island of Mala Khortytsia, ''below the rapids'' (''za porohamy'') on the Dnieper. The ''Zaporozhian Sich'' then became the center of Ukrainian Cossackdom. Indifferent to confessionalism but reserving a violent hatred of Jews, they accepted any Christian male who applied (women and children were barred). This rough, democratic, propertyless military brotherhood was led by an ''otaman'' or ''hetman,'' aided by ''osavuly'' (lieutenants). The ''chern'' (ordinary Cossacks) lived in wooden barracks (''kurin'') and elected their officer corps (''starshnya'').

Cossacks were divided by wealth and ethnicity, by town and rural living, and by which contending power they faced at their nearest grassy frontier. The majority in the Dnieper basin were Ukrainian, while Russians settled farther south along the Don. Without any uniform religious leaning during this period Cossacks, especially the ''Little Russian Cossack Host,'' were hard pressed to determine if their interest lined up best with expanding Orthodox Muscovy, contracting Catholic Poland, or the sprawling Muslim empire of the Ottomans. As a result, they raided deep into all three states at one time or another. In addition, from 1572 Poland registered ''town Cossacks,'' recognizing them as a distinct social class and employing them as salaried frontier guards and a buffer against unregistered, rural Cossacks. By 1589 there were 3,000 registered Cossacks compared to 50,000 unregistered, both distinct from the Zaporozhians. In the early 17th century they conducted deep amphibious raids against the Ottomans along the Crimean and Black Sea coasts.

In 1615 they slipped into Constantinople harbor and burned it. The next year they broke the pens of the slave market in Kaffa, freeing thousands. They burned Constantinople harbor again in 1620, then joined the Poles to fend off an Ottoman-Tatar invasion, 1620–1621. In the 1630s the Zaporozhians fought the Polish-Lithuanian Commonwealth, joined by many peasants. Cossacks were deeply involved in the savage upheaval in Ukraine and Poland known as the Khmelnitsky Uprising (1648–1654). In the Treaty of Pereiaslav (1654), some accepted protection and pay from Muscovy. See also *Cecora, Battle of*; *chaiky*; *Eternal Peace*; *Khotyn, Battle of*; *Pancerna cavalry*; *Polish Army*.

Suggested Reading: G. Gajecky and A. Baran, *Cossacks in the Thirty Years' War*, 2 vols. (1969).

couched lance. A long equestrian spear (not a javelin) made of sound wood that tapered to a lethal point, tipped with metal. Its use required adoption of the stirrup and a heavy saddle that hugged the horse and had a cantle (perpendicular board) to brace the rider's back and keep him in the saddle when his lance met opposing armor or flesh. This combination of saddle and stirrup made it possible for a mounted warrior to brace his feet and back while leveling and ''couching'' the lance under his arm in the charge. The technique channeled the weight of rider and horse into the lance point as the blow was delivered, penetrating armor and shielding and impaling the man inside or behind it. When this effect was multiplied by *heavy cavalry*, or lines of armored men riding great *destriers*, new ''*shock*'' tactics came to dominate the medieval battlefield for over 200 years. See also *chivalry*; *knight*; *lancers*; *plate armor*; *shields/shielding*; *warhorses*.

coudières. See *couters*.

couleuveriniers. French hand-gunners of the 15th century. ''Coulverine'' was then still used as a generic for almost any kind of gun, from *arquebus* to *culverin*.

coulverin à main. A French term for early handguns: ''hand culverins.''

coulverine. See *culverin*.

coulverines enfustées. A mid-15th-century French gun falling between a ''hand cannon'' and a small artillery piece. It was a portable, shoulder-fired weapon.

Council of Blood. See *Alba, Don Fernando Álvarez de Toledo, duque de*; *Eighty Years' War*; *French Civil Wars*.

Council of Ten. The governing body of the Republic of *Venice*. See also *Carmagnola, Francesco Bussone*; *Machiavelli, Niccolò di Bernardo*; *Lepanto, Battle of (October 7, 1571)*.

Council of the Indies. Set up in 1524, this council of the king and his advisers administered and made law for Spain's possessions in the Americas. In theory, it commanded Spanish viceroys and captains-general, regulated trade, conducted Spain's overseas wars, and was the final court of appeal of any decision taken in the audiencia (local courts) of Spain's discrete colonies. In fact, local officials had a great deal of autonomy from Spain.

Council of Trent (1545–1563). A general council of the Catholic Church that met to consider and condemn ''errors'' of Protestantism, which it opposed on every major point of doctrine. Its proclamations revised Church doctrine, revived Catholic confidence, and encouraged a new militancy in the politics and military activity of Catholic princes. It doctrinal achievement is generally known as the ''Tridentine Reform'' (from the Latin ''Tridentum'' or Trent). The Council was called in 1534 by Pope Paul III, who was known to favor reform and wished to end the religious wars in Germany. It opened in 1545 after a decade of delay by those opposed to real Church reform, but also with solid preparation by those supporting change. Trent's deliberations were interrupted by plague several times, so that it met only from 1545 to 1547 (under Paul III), 1551 to 1552 (under the still more pro-Habsburg Julius III), and 1562 to 1563 (under Pius IV). The *Jesuits* were especially influential in its intermediate session, under Julius.

The Council denied Protestant insistence on the sole authority of scripture, upholding tradition (papal and conciliar rulings) as an additional authoritative source of religious truth. The Council addressed clerical abuse of simony (selling indulgences or relics), imposed new restrictions on clergy intended to end the problem of absentee bishops, and addressed common lay practices such as ''secret marriages.'' Its sessions on doctrine led to rebuttal of the Protestant thesis on ''justification by faith,'' for which Trent substituted the traditional medieval position of the need for good works inspired by ''caritas'' (love). It affirmed that transubstantiation took place during the Mass and spoke directly against the *Hussite* and *Utraquist* position by admonishing lay reception of the eucharist in the form of bread alone. Trent defined the nature and set the number of Catholic sacraments at seven, reaffirming such controversial sacraments as penance. It forbade clerical marriage while imposing harsh punishment for clerical concubinage; confirmed the existence of Purgatory and the propriety of indulgences; and reaffirmed veneration of saints and relics. Its deliberations culminated in issuance of a definitive statement of Catholic belief: the ''Catechism of the Council of Trent'' or ''Roman Catechism.'' This both answered and competed with Jean Calvin's *Institutions* in the growing campaign to confessionalize the peasantry and broad masses.

The reforms that followed on the ground were the most effective and important in Catholic history.

The reforms that followed on the ground were the most effective and important in Catholic history. They significantly reshaped and restated

Catholicism and informed and hardened the *Counter-Reformation*. However, they thereby widened the divide with Protestant communities that were by then also settling into final molds. Even some Catholic monarchs, notably those of France, resented Trent's conciliar and papal infringement on the traditional liberties of national churches. In addition, *Francis I* and his son, *Henri II*, had no interest in advancing the cause of religious peace in Germany, where even heresy might be welcome if it worked to weaken their political enemies, just as alliance with the Ottoman sultan was an established fact of French policy. Henri II ordered French bishops not to attend Trent and cut off the traditional payment to Rome of a bishopric's income for a full year upon a new bishop's appointment (*annates*). Later, *Charles Guise, Cardinal de Lorraine*, represented France at sessions of the Council of Trent, upholding the *Gallican* position despite his reputation at home for Catholic fanaticism. See also *Ecumenical Councils*; *Joinville, Treaty of*.

Suggested Reading: H. Jedin, *History of the Council of Trent* (1957; 1961).

Council of Troubles. "Council of Blood." See also *Alba, Don Fernando Álvarez de Toledo, duque de*; *Eighty Years' War*.

counter-castle. See *bastille*; *blockade*.

counter-guard (1). A small, supplemental defense work—often a narrow, detached rampart—emplaced before a more important fortification to protect against its being breached.

counter-guard (2). Part of the hilt of a sword. It protected against an enemy blade sliding down to injure the hand.

counter-march. See *caracole*; *drill*; *La Bicocca, Battle of*; *Maurits of Nassau*; *volley fire*.

counter-mining. See *mining*.

Counter-Reformation. The term "Catholic Reformation" is preferred by Catholic historians to refer to efforts at self-reform by the Catholic Church that actually began in the late medieval period, well before the *Protestant Reformation*. Many reject "Counter-Reformation" entirely as a "reactionary" term. Even most non-Catholic historians now regard the Counter-Reformation as more a continuation of medieval reform than a wholly new effort made in reaction to the Reformation. In the early 15th century the Catholic Church was divided over differences between lay and clerical piety and practices and the scandal of the *Great Schism*. The Council of Constance ended the schism by asserting conciliar authority over the popes. This left unresolved demands for moral and administrative reform, whose need was made clear by the *Hussite Wars* and widespread lay disgust at ongoing Church corruption.

During the 15th century efforts at reform were stymied by papal opposition to the conciliar movement and the increase in cardinals and bishops who resided in Rome while drawing income from absentee benefices. In 1460 a papal decree reasserted the primacy of the Renaissance popes and thus placed the reform program back in the hands of anti-reformers. The last effort at internal reform came just before the Reformation broke out in Germany. The Fifth Lateran Council (1512–1517) was convened by Pope Julius II in opposition to a renegade council called by Louis XII, with whom the Papal States were then at war. As it drew to a close, Fifth Lateran had no effective response to the Protestant broadsides that emanated from Geneva, Zürich, and Wittenberg. The papal monarchy and Church had failed to reform itself in time or in depth before the advent of full-throated Protestant rejection of Catholic doctrine and papal authority. In the first flush of conflict with radical clergy who would no longer wait for reform, men soon to be known as ''Protestants,'' Counter-Reformation popes would attack as well all internal conciliar and episcopal efforts at reform, denouncing them as crypto-Protestantism.

By 1540 Catholic and Protestant alike were horrified by the prospect that they might split Latin Christendom permanently (they had long become used to hostile division from Orthodox and Copts). A final effort was made to heal the breach when *Charles V* convened the *Imperial Diet* at Regensburg in January, 1541. It failed. Thereafter, the Catholic position hardened at the *Council of Trent* (1545–1563) while Charles went to war with the German Protestant princes and free cities of the *Schmalkaldic League*. Even when German Catholics and Lutherans agreed to a religious truce in the *Peace of Augsburg* (1555), popes and some bishops elsewhere continued a powerful counterattack against the Reformation, with the new order of *Jesuits* the ''sword and shield'' of doctrinal and missionary warfare. In this period the Counter-Reformation surely was reactionary, as revival of the *Index* and *Inquisition* demonstrate. Its character was marked by a new militancy and sharp reaction against the ''sins of Luther,'' which were clerical disobedience and doctrinal invention. Certainly, Catholics of the day agreed that repression of Protestants and suppression of heresy were proper complements to any internal reform. The return to parochial conformity of doctrine and practice was aided by Tridentine reform of the episcopacy, which relocated bishops from Rome back to their sees. As the competition for conversions outside the towns intensified in the 1570s, more rigid confessionalism was evident among elites on all sides. In Germany, there was sharp movement away from respect for the terms of the Augsburg peace by Protestant princes in the north and by Catholic emperors and princes in the south. *Maximilian II* had some sympathy for toleration of Protestantism, but he gave way to firmer Counter-Reformation views under *Rudolf II*, succeeded seven years later by open fanaticism under *Ferdinand II*.

It is less clear what role the Catholic laity played, though recent research has uncovered important insights into this neglected area of confessional

history. It is clear that Catholic missionaries within the ''Indies of Europe'' kept what they told the laity deliberately simple, as compared to the clergy's improved religious education and instruction in the formalism of Tridentine doctrine. Insistence on priestly interposition between believer and God contrasted with Protestant printers and preachers bringing scripture directly even to children. But Catholics made an easier peace with traditional folk religion and superstitions than doctrinally more utopian (and more rigid) Protestants. Bishops issued instructions to clergy to steer Catholic flock away from complex doctrinal questions, which were considered answered by rote recital of the Roman Catechism, with belief additionally garnished with certain ''mysteries of the faith.'' Given this lower standard for conversion and observance, and a good deal of coercion, whole principalities earlier converted to Lutheranism or Calvinism were reconverted to Catholicism by the Counter-Reformation. In the Habsburg hereditary lands of Bohemia and Inner Austria this reconversion was harsh, effective, and nearly complete. In southern Germany (Silesia was an exception), the frontier of Protestantism was rolled back by Tridentine reform and *Catholic League* and Imperial troops and state support of the Church. In Poland and Lithuania, entire populations reconverted. But the Counter-Reformation was not successful in Prussia, Courland or Livonia, nowhere in Scandinavia, and only marginally in England and Scotland.

Counter-Reformation teaching was deeply contemptuous of the material and political world. It inserted a new puritanism into Catholic life by radical rejection of the ''ways of the flesh.'' It endorsed moral and physical self-denial, including medieval mortifications of the body from sado-masochistic devotional practices like flagellation, to hair shirts, excessive kneeling at prayer, and extreme fasting. More generally, it turned away from the celebration of family and lay sexuality within marriage promoted by Protestant, especially Calvinist, churches. Instead, even nonclerical lust was to be curtailed by strict regulation and monitoring by a (putatively) celibate clergy. This movement for renewed piety and clerical authority received support from several, though not all, Habsburg monarchs. Catholic extremism clashed directly with comparably militant—and in the case of Calvinism, even more militant—Protestantism. Together, confessional fanatics combined to wage protracted, highly destructive sectarian wars. These climaxed internationally in the *Eighty Years' War* and the *Thirty Years' War*, while ripping apart France internally during the *French Civil Wars* and convulsing the three island kingdoms of England, Ireland, and Scotland in the *English Civil Wars*. Of course, underlying those conflicts and infusing papal and conciliar policy on one side and princely and sectarian responses on the other, were princely egos, divers reasons of state, and class and ethnic bigotry that had little to do with religion. The deepest political legacy of the Counter-Reformation was probably etched in Spain, always the most ideological and committed of the Catholic nations. When the wars of religion ended Spain was left cocooned within rigid dogma and religious and racial reaction, dethroned from its former hegemony and thus culturally brittle.

Suggested Reading: C. H. Carter, ed., *From the Renaissance to the Counter-Reformation* (1965); N. S. Davidson, *The Counter-Reformation* (1987); Steven Ozment, *The Age of Reform, 1250–1550* (1981); A. Wright, *The Counter-Reformation* (1982).

counterscarp. The exterior sloping wall of a defensive ditch surrounding a fortified position, usually supporting a *covered way* and sometimes also the *glacis*.

counter-sinking. See *fortification*; *trace italienne*.

coureurs. ''Runners.'' Men assigned by an army on the move to serve as outriders, to scout out and forage for food and fodder, and to raid, kill, burn, and pillage enemy subjects and provinces. See also *chevauchée*.

courser. A breed of *warhorse* less expensive, smaller, and fleeter than the *destrier* or *rouncey*. It was the preferred mount for cavalry raiding and *chevauchée*.

courtaux. A medium-size medieval French canon.

Courtrai (Kortrijk), Battle of (July 11, 1302). ''Battle of the Spurs.'' On a soggy field south of Ghent, Flemish militia infantry met the *heavy cavalry* of France in battle, and annihilated it. The trigger was a Flemish siege of Courtrai Castle. At the order of Philip IV (''The Fair''), against whom the revolt aimed, a French relief army set out. It was comprised of 2,500 *knights* and *men-at-arms*, led by Robert of Artois, along with 8,000 German and Genoese mercenary infantry. The Flemings chose the ground well, taking up defensive positions in three echelons of eight ranks each with a fourth in reserve facing toward the French garrison in the Castle to the rear. In front was a marshy flat, crisscrossed with small streams and muddy ditches: a natural cavalry trap. The critical error was Robert's, but it reflected a wider contempt for the Flemings on the part of all his knights. Before Genoese archers could thin and demoralize the ranks of Flemish militia armed with *goedendags* (a short, stabbing pike), clubs, and flails, Robert ordered a charge of his heavy horse. As mounts floundered in the marsh and muck they were gashed open or had forelegs hacked off. French knights by the hundred were pulled from the saddle with hooked polearms; well-disciplined militiamen methodically slaughtered these turtled noblemen, without mercy. A counterattack was assayed by Robert's hired foreign infantry, but it failed. All knights who could, turned and fled, followed by panicking Germans and Genoese. The Flemings could not pursue mounted knights on foot, so they concentrated on finishing off wounded and stragglers.

The critical error was Robert's, but it reflected a wider contempt for the Flemings on the part of all his knights.

Courtrai is usually cited as marking the end of dominance of the battlefield by heavy cavalry, although historian Norman Housley adds the wise caution

that it was ''a triumph over stupidity as much as a revelation of what infantry could achieve.'' Through recklessness and stupidity then, but also raw Flemish courage and tenacity, the French lost perhaps half their strength, including several dozen top nobility and as many as 1,000 men-at-arms. Spurs taken from 500 dead French knights were hung as trophies in St. Mary's Church in Courtrai, where they remained until retrieved by the French 80 years later, after *Roosebeke*. The next year, at Arques, the French were again defeated by town militia, though more ambiguously. The shock of these defeats persuaded Philip IV to undertake a major military reform, the *arrière-ban*, which aimed at raising better infantry for his army. His reformed army had better success against the Flemings at *Mons-en-Pévèle* (1304). Even so, the lessons of Courtrai were widely touted. Sometimes they were even applied, as by the *Catalan Great Company* at *Kephissos* (1311) and the Scots at *Bannockburn* (1314). It is possible that Swiss tactics at *Morgarten* (1315) were also inspired by Courtrai, though the difference in terrain militates against that conclusion. It is clear, on the other hand, that at *Laupen* (1339) the Swiss applied lessons learned from Courtrai. See also *cavalry*; *England*; *French Army*; *Scottish Wars*.

couseque. A French *halberd* type marked by a long central spike flanked by double side blades.

couters (*coudières*). Armored elbow-caps.

coutillers. In medieval French armies, foot soldiers armed with short swords.

Coutras, Battle of (October 20, 1587). *Henri de Navarre* led a ragged but veteran *Huguenot* army, 6,300 men in all, out to meet a young and inexperienced Catholic force of 5,000 foot and 1,800 horse under the duc de Joyeuse. Although Navarre had seen combat before, this was the first real test of his field generalship. He interspersed groups of musketeers between units of cavalry, with his line spanning a narrow valley between two wooded hills. The Catholic cavalry, mostly young nobles dressed in silks and plumage, were cocky and overconfident. In contrast, the Huguenots were dour veterans, praying and singing Protestant psalms before the battle. Expecting an easy victory, the Catholic cavalry charged Henri's lines, only to be cut down by volleys of accurate gunfire. The remnants were overridden by a counterattack of Huguenot horse. Within two hours Joyeuse and 3,500 of his troopers were dead. The Protestants lost fewer than 200 men. Henri then squandered these fine results by tending to his mistress at Béarn rather than to his army, which broke up while he played fecklessly at fornication.

Covenanters. Adherents to the principles of the ''National Covenant,'' the central document of the Scottish patriotic and religious revolt of 1637. It declared that the ''true Christian faith and religion'' found expression in the Kirk of Scotland, and that all true Scots ''abhor and detest all contrary religion and doctrine.'' This was radical patriotism united to, and defined by,

Calvinist (Presbyterian) *confessionalism*. The great commanders of the Covenanters were the *Earl of Leven* (Alexander Leslie) and *David Leslie*, while the main political leader was the *Marquis of Argyll*. The latter's bête noire was a former Covenanter turned Royalist, the *Marquis of Montrose*. Montrose won at *Tippermuir* (September 1, 1644), and three times in the summer of 1645, at *Auldearn* (May 9), *Alford* (July 2), and *Kilsyth* (August 15). But he came to a bad end at the hands of Argyll after *Carbiesdale* (1650). Internationally, the Scots found a ready ally in Sweden for whom Scottish mercenaries had fought for decades. In 1638 the Swedes released Scots officers to return to their homeland, where they trained the new levies that opposed the king in the *Bishops' Wars*. See also *Charles I, of England*; *Confederation of Kilkenny*; *Cromwell, Oliver*; *English Civil Wars*; *Kilsyth, Battle of*; *Knox, John*; *Philiphaugh*; *Preston, Campaign of*; *"Root and Branch" petition*.

covered way. Also "covert way." In field fortification, any wide path sheltered from enemy view and fire by a sunken road or trench, usually atop the *counterscarp* but shielded ("covered") by the *parapet* and crest of the *glacis*. In permanent fortifications the covered or covert way ran astride the counterscarp as an outwork sunk below the glacis. Troops used it to defend the glacis against an enemy lodgement and as an assembly or rally point. See also *lodgement*.

"Cowardice Peace" (1328). See *Edward III*; *Scottish Wars*.

coxswain. A minor (petty) officer put in charge of the crew of a ship's boat.

Cracow, Battle of (1241). See *Mongols*.

Cracow, Peace of (1525). See *Livonia*; *Prussia*; *Teutonic Knights, Order of*.

cranequin. A mechanical device for drawing a powerful *crossbow* that could not be spanned by muscle alone. It involved a tiller that turned a cogwheel, which engaged a "tooth" that bumped along a ratchet bar until the cord was taut. The quarrel or bolt could then be loaded and fired. Its pull was much greater than with a *graffle* or *windlass*, but its reloading speed meant that the weapon could fire no faster than twice a minute.

crapadeaux. A medium-size medieval French cannon.

Crécy, Battle of (August 26, 1346). A key battle in the opening phase of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). England's *Edward III* (1312–1377) led an army on an extended *chevauchée* into northern France with the intention of provoking *Philip VI* to give battle. The tactic nearly backfired when the French burned several bridges in an effort to trap the English against the Somme: Edward was fortunate to ford under cover of his skilled archers. Two days later the armies met near the village of Crécy, in Normandy, where they

formed opposing battle lines 2,000 yards long. The English were well-rested and fed. Though outnumbered 2:1 they took position atop a low ridge with their left flank abutting a stream, the Maie, and their right flank touching Crécy Wood. At the center were three blocks of men-at-arms with protecting pikemen. Two sets of archers with *longbows* were on the flanks, each in a ''V'' formation. Each archer had ready about 100 *broad arrows*, their lethal metal tips pushed into the ground to permit rapid reloading. Hundreds of *caltrops* were scattered atop the sod and mud to their front, to hobble oncoming *warhorses* or infantry. Tens of thousands more arrows were packed in wood and leather quivers stacked in carts to the rear. This large supply was key to the English victory. The initial rate of fire of a good longbowman was from six to ten arrows per minute, falling thereafter as muscle fatigue set in. Several hundred thousand arrows thus were likely fired toward the French that day, most from beyond the range of effective retaliation by the gay, pennant-decked lances of the French knights, looking splendid in burnished armor, colorful livery, and plumed helms, but utterly exposed to plunging arrow storms. Nor could Edward's archers be reached by Genoese mercenaries on the French side firing stubby quarrels from crossbows, a deadly and feared weapon of their chosen profession that was wholly outmatched in range by the longbow on this bloody day.

Neither French cavalry nor Genoese infantry nor the Czech mercenaries of ''Blind King John,'' an allied prince, had ever faced the longbow. In ignorance and battle lust, they arrived piecemeal on the field of battle in the late afternoon, hungry and tired but straining to attack the English line. Heavy rain had soaked the field, turning it into sticky mud. The sun also favored the English, as it shone into the faces of the French. When the French heavy cavalry arrayed for the attack it formed in the old manner: a mass of armored horse supported by crossbow fire on the flanks and to the front. It is thought that Edward fired several small cannon at the Genoese to break up their formations. If true, these guns would have been so primitive they likely produced more a psychological than a physical effect. What mattered was that the Genoese were slowed by the Normandy mud and then slaughtered by flights of English arrows, not cannon, well before they got into crossbow range. Worse, in the rush to battle most had left their *pervase* with the baggage wagons. Nor could their slow-loading crossbows do comparable damage to the rapid-firing Welsh and English archers, thus rendering the Genoese attack ineffective and leaving the English lines unbroken and unharried before the French horse arrived. As casualties mounted among the Genoese they broke, turned, and ran, mud sucking at their boots and adding to the agony of panic as they exposed their backs to deadly enemy archers, firing aimed shots at the level.

The French knights, filled with Gallic disdain for everything on foot, spurred callously through the retreating Genoese, slashing at hired infantry in utter contempt, some with cries of ''kill this rabble!'' A large earthen bank channeled the French cavalry into a narrow front. Edward's archers, positioned nearly perfectly, now turned their bows against the plodding, funneled

cavalry and cut it down, too. Ill-formed, repeated French charges, with horsemen at the rear pushing hard against the forward ranks, were repulsed time and again by the longbowmen. Most were broken apart before they began, with staggering losses among the brave but reckless fathers and sons of the nobility of France. Edward's archers kept up an extraordinary rate of fire, impaling knights and horse alike and hundreds of men-at-arms. No cowards the French, despite the carnage they charged, again and again. It is thought they made as many as 16 charges that day, utterly bewildered at their inability to beat or even reach an inferior enemy. For two centuries heavy cavalry had dominated battlefields from Europe to the Holy Land. But at Crécy there were no tattered squares of scrambling peasants to skewer on great lances, no clumps of overmatched men-at-arms to chase down with mace or run through on one's sword. Instead, the chivalry of France met flocks of missiles that felled knight and mount alike at unheard of killing distances. Eye-witnesses reported French awe at the flapping, vital sounds of thousands of feathers on long-shafted arrows arcing in high swarms from an unreachable ridge, to plunge into men, horses, or both. Baleful accounts survive telling how arrows ripped through shields and helmets, pierced faceplates and cuirasses, and arms, legs, and groins, or pinned some best friend to his mount.

Much of this occurred at incredible distances, as unaimed plunging fire reached the French from as far away as 250–300 yards. Longbow accuracy only improved at closer ranges, as bows were leveled and each shot singly aimed at the lumbering steel and flesh targets the French cavalry presented. In prior battles cavalry had been safe at 200 yards or more, the usual distance where riders massed before trotting forward to about 60–100 yards, the distance at which they began the charge. Now death and piercing wounds fell from the sky at double the normal range, slicing through shields and armor to stab deep into chest or thigh, or horse. The French could make no reply to this long-distance death with their lances and swords: knights died in droves that day without ever making contact with their enemies. Armor was pierced and limbs, backs, and necks broken as falling knights entangled in bloody clots of swords and snapped lances, and kicking and screaming dying men and horses. So they charged: anything was better than standing beneath such lethal rain. The nearly 8,000 longbowmen at Crécy probably fired 75,000–90,000 arrows in the 40–60 seconds it took the French to close the range, each arrow speeding near 140 miles per hour, each archer keeping two and some three in the air at once. Those knights who reached the English lines piled up before them, pierced with multiple arrows and forming an armor-and-flesh barrier in front of the English men-at-arms that impeded fresh assaults. With French chivalry broken and its survivors staggering in the mud, the English infantry and Edward's dismounted knights closed in to kill off the lower orders and take nobles prisoner, to be held for later ransom. Then the English stood in place through the night, holding in case of a renewed attack in the morning which never came.

Most casualties at Crécy were inflicted by the longbow and thus losses were hugely lopsided: between 5,000 and 8,000 French and Genoese were killed, including as many as 1,500 knights, compared to about 100 of Edward's men. This was a huge number for a 14th-century battle, and left nearly every castle and chateau in France in mourning. The defeat of its warrior elite shattered France's military capabilities and shook its confidence for a generation. This one-sided battle further eroded the old illusion that heavy cavalry was invincible against common infantry, and elevated recognition of the importance of archers across Europe. A parallel effect was that for the next 50 years French knights, too, preferred to dismount to fight, a practice they followed until better horse armor was made that enticed them back into the saddle at *Agincourt*. See also *artillery*; *Black Prince*; *Calais*; *gunpowder weapons*.

Suggested Reading: Andrew Ayton and Philip Preston, *The Battle of Crécy, 1346* (2005); Alfred H. Burne, *The Crécy War* (1955; 1999); G. C. Macauly, ed., *The Chronicles of Jean Froissart* (1904); Henri de Wailly, *Crécy, 1346: Anatomy of a Battle* (1987).

crenel. An open space between two *merlons* on a castle or town wall through which defenders could fire on besiegers below or in an opposing *bastille* or *belfry*.

Crete. During this period Crete, the largest island in the eastern Mediterranean, was the object of near constant naval warfare (blockades, sieges, piracy, privateering, raids, and so on) between Venice and the Ottoman Empire. It was not finally taken from the Venetians, after a long Ottoman siege, until 1669.

crinet. Articulated, laminated or mail equine armor that sat below the *chanfron* and protected the neck of a *warhorse*. This replaced the original mail curtain that had protected the throat from slashing weapons but was insufficient to stop powerful missile weapons like crossbows or arquebuses. More generally, "crinet" referred to armor that filled the spaces between larger, single pieces such as the *crupper* and *peytral*.

Croatia. See *Austria*; *Hungary*; *Militargrenze*; *Ottoman Empire.*

cromster. A Dutch merchant ship developed as a coastal warship by the *Sea Beggars*. A shallow-draughted, wide-beamed cargo vessel, it was designed to carry trade in the shallow waters of the Netherlands coast and river estuaries. In wartime its sturdy hull accepted a heavy brace of guns. Cromsters also were popular with English allies of the Dutch.

Cromwell, Oliver (1599–1658). Puritan general and revolutionary. He converted to *Puritanism* after his marriage in 1620, and like many converts embraced his new faith with unbridled zeal. First elected to Parliament in

1628, he rose to prominence during the ''Long Parliament'' as both statesman and military leader. At the start of the *English Civil Wars* he served as colonel of a cavalry regiment in the *Eastern Association Army*. Having spent the winter in training, he led 400 of his new *Ironsides* troopers in a small but sharp action against 800 *Cavalier* cavalry at Grantham (May 13, 1643), in Lincolnshire. He served under *Thomas Fairfax* at *Winceby* (October 11, 1643), and afterward helped secure the eastern counties. On July 27, 1643, Cromwell led 1,800 Ironsides in scattering 2,000 Cavaliers at Gainsborough. Under *Manchester* and Fairfax, he led his Ironsides and dragoons well at *Marston Moor* (1644). He broke with Manchester after *Second Newbury* (1644), bringing charges that forced him to resign. He strongly supported Fairfax's creation of the *New Model Army*. On June 10, 1645, he was appointed Lieutenant General of Horse with *Ireton*, his future son-in-law, his subordinate. At *Naseby* (1645) Cromwell began the fight in command of the right wing but dramatically rallied the left and played a crucial role in the overall victory. After *Charles I* surrendered and was handed over to Parliament by the Scots, Cromwell led the Puritan faction in insisting on taming the king, whom he fundamentally distrusted, and with good reason. Charles conspired endlessly from his seat of exile on the Isle of Wight, then from Holdenby House, encouraging the Scots to rise and intriguing with Catholic ambassadors to bring about foreign intervention, all the while dragging out negotiations with Parliament. At this, Cromwell lost all patience. On June 2, 1647, he had the king seized and brought under the Army's control and ''protection'' at Newmarket.

. . . Cromwell led the Puritan faction in insisting on taming the king . . .

When Parliament voted to disband part of the New Model Army and send the rest to Ireland, raised *trained bands* and brought *reformadoes* and deserters into regiments loyal to itself, Cromwell and Fairfax chose the Army over Parliament. They occupied London on August 6, 1647, and chased their opponents from Westminster. After putting down a mutiny by *Levellers*, Cromwell pacified Wales (May–July 1648). Then he moved north and won a brilliant victory over the Scots at *Preston* (August 17–20, 1648). Determined to settle with the king he pressured Charles to come to terms with the results of the civil wars but could not convince him to do so. Cromwell moved the Rump Parliament to charge Charles with treason. The king was tried in December 1648, and executed on January 30, 1649, ''a cruel necessity'' in Cromwell's words. Cromwell next led a punitive expedition to Ireland, 1649–1650, a campaign remembered to the present day in Ireland for its reputed special savagery, including massacres of the captured garrison towns *Drogheda* and *Wexford*. Fighting continued against his sub-commanders as the Irish reverted to guerrilla warfare until 1653. That year, Cromwell dismissed the Long Parliament and erected a military dictatorship. He ruled for the next five years as ''Lord Protector'' of the Commonwealth. See also *Dunbar, Battle of*; *Fifth Monarchists*; *Navigation Acts*.

Suggested Reading: Frank Kitson, *Old Ironsides* (2004); John Morrill, *Oliver Cromwell and the English Revolution* (1990); James Wheeler, *Cromwell in Ireland* (1999).

Cromwell, Thomas (c.1485–1540). ''Malleus monachorum'' (''hammer of the monks''). He served as a mercenary in the *Italian Wars* from 1504 to 1512. He worked for Cardinal Wolsey by 1514 and was elected to Parliament in 1523. Fawning his way into the king's good graces, he counseled *Henry VIII* to cower the nobility and break the independence of the Church. He advised Henry to resolve the ''great matter'' of his divorce by splitting from Rome, a policy carried through in the Act of Supremacy (1534). He suggested resolution of the king's fiscal problem by dissolution of the monasteries, which he implemented from 1536 to 1539. He was central to the religious terror that cost Thomas More and other men of conscience their titles, property, and lives. His advocacy of Anne of Cleves as wife to Henry, and the general hatred and contempt in which he was held by so many, led to his arrest and beheading on Tower Hill. See also *printing*.

Cropedy Bridge, Battle of (1644). See *Charles I, of England*; *English Civil Wars*; *Waller, William*.

Croquants. ''Country Bumpkins.'' See *Tard-Avisés*.

crossbow. The crossbow was invented in China during its wars of unification, sometime prior to 221 B.C.E. Early crossbows were made from horn, wood, and some small metal parts, with the horn lashed to a wooden stock with cords or animal sinew. Later composite crossbows were heavier and sturdier, with the bow attached to the stock through a mortise and tenon, and held by metal bands in place of cords. The key to all crossbow fighting was that it took both hands (and usually, also both feet) to draw even a simple crossbow, which was done while sitting or standing stooped over the bow. More advanced models could be drawn only with a mechanical aid. Christian Europe at first viewed the weapon as morally ambiguous. A widely perceived diabolical nature was illustrated by placing crossbows in daemons' hands in illuminated manuscripts. At Toulouse cathedral daemon gargoyles were sculpted as having trouble drawing crossbows, which at least got part of the tale right. This early sense that the crossbow was inherently evil led to its condemnation in 1096 by Pope Urban II. The ban was reiterated by the Second Lateran Council (1139). As with most measures of moral condemnation of highly useful and richly rewarding things, these grand proscriptions had no effect: by the end of the 12th century the crossbow was in wide use as both an offensive and defensive weapon, especially in sieges: Richard I (''Coeur de Lion'') was mortally wounded by a crossbowmen while conducting a siege in Limousin. In light of the weapon's popularity the ban was subsequently eased to permit use against Muslims and heretics and in all wars deemed ''just'' by the Church.

Early Muslim crossbows encountered by the Crusaders were shorter, composite types held together with hammered sinew from the neck of oxen, and glue made from boiled fish bladders. The ''Frankish crossbow'' used by the Crusaders was more powerful and greatly impressed Muslims who encountered it in battle. As crossbows became more powerful a ''goat's foot lever'' or rack-and-pinion device was used to draw them. Starting in the late 14th century crossbows were made from tempered steel that made them more powerful as well as lighter. Steel also gave the crossbow a draw weight of over 1,000 pounds, which compelled adoption of a *windlass* to arm the weapon which in turn slowed down the rate of fire from perhaps four shots per minute to just two. Modern experiments have shown that steel crossbows could penetrate heavy plate armor from as far away as 350 yards, though at such extreme ranges accuracy was problematic. By the 15th century there were two major types of crossbow in use. The ''arbaleste'' was mainly deployed in Western Europe. It used either a claw (''graffle'') to draw the bow, or a pulley system, with more powerful models using a windlass. A different type was found mainly in Central Europe and among the Swiss, who employed a windlass called a ''*cranequin*'' to draw the string. For all types, both hands were needed to span the bow and load the quarrel or bolt. Modern experiments have achieved quite rapid rates of fire, up to six bolts per minute where two to four was earlier thought by historians to be the maximum. Such a high rate of fire would have been utterly exhausting in battle, however, and would not have permitted proper aiming.

Crossbows were also widely used in war on the water, particularly in *galley* fighting in the Mediterranean. One highly specialized naval crossbow fired a crescent-headed bolt designed to tear up the rigging and sails of ships. Some Italians became so adept with the weapon they were prized as specialized mercenaries and hired out to armies all over Europe. Many Genoese and Pisans, especially, made their fortunes fighting for the kings of France. They were used to break up enemy ranks prior to the traditional charge of French heavy horse. In all-Italian wars crossbowmen were shielded by *pavisare* while they reloaded, a practice made necessary by the weapon's slow rate of fire and the need to use both hands to draw the string or wind the windlass. The later *Swiss square* incorporated crossbowmen behind the front ranks of pikers, and at times deployed mounted archers as scouts and skirmishers. They would dismount to fight in front of the *Vorhut* (van) before melting into it for protection as it closed with the enemy. Hungarian and Provençal forces also mounted some crossbowmen.

It is probable that the penetrating power of the crossbow is what forced a shift from mail to plate armor during the 13th–14th centuries. A great advantage of the crossbow was the fact it did not require men to be born to arms: the ease with which commoners were trained to use crossbows made it superior even to the longbow, which was harder both to make and master. Also, heavy defensive crossbows could shoot large quarrels with far heavier heads than the longbow could manage, especially once crossbows were made from steel instead of bone and wood. The steel crossbow dominated

battlefield and siege archery in continental armies even after the proven success of the longbow during the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453), and was not finally displaced until the advent of truly effective muskets, departing most battlefields by about 1550. Some later crossbows were built to shoot bullets instead of quarrels, but outside of the German *Schnepper* and some sporting weapons, this idea did not find its way to the battlefield. See also *arbalétriers*; *arceri*; *armories*; *balistarii equites*; *crossbow à croc*; *crossbow à jalet*; *equites*; *goat's foot lever*; *graffle*.

Suggested Reading: Jim Bradbury, *The Medieval Archer* (1985).

crossbow à croc. A crossbow mounted on a wooden rest or support to aid in aiming and firing.

crossbow à jalet. An adaptation of the traditional crossbow that permitted it to fire stones or small lead balls.

cross-staff. Also called ''Jacob's staff.'' A portable astronomical instrument used in maritime navigation. It was probably invented in the early 14th century by a Jewish scholar from Provence, Levi ben Gershon (1288–1344). The cross-staff assessed distance via trigonometry by measuring angles formed by lines drawn to two distant points that diverged along the central line-of-sight of the instrument. Latitude was estimated by measuring the elevation of the noon sun above the horizon, adjusted in accordance with navigational tables that related the varying inclination of the Earth's axis by time of year. The ''back-staff'' was a later model cross-staff that measured from a target, which allowed the user to avoid looking directly into the sun. The cross-staff was used at sea until it was surpassed as a distance-estimator by invention of the telescope.

crouching tiger. A compact, short-range Chinese cannon, no more than two feet long. It had no carriage. Instead, it could be carried on horseback or even by a man (it weighed under 50 pounds). It was fired from the ground, to which it was staked with iron pegs and hoops. It mostly fired *grapeshot*, a favorite Chinese anti-personnel ammunition.

crownwork. In fortification, an outwork made with two full *bastions* connected to each other by a curtain, and to the main *enceinte* by parallel joining walls. It secured advantageous ground that lay outside the enceinte.

cruising. Warship patrols in the modern sense were not possible during most of this period, mainly due to deficiencies in ship design that required large crews on small ships (this was especially true of *galleys*), which placed absolute logistical limits on long-distance ''cruising.'' Most navigation hugged the coasts in the medieval period and even into early modern times. That meant galleys were the principal ship type used in coastal patrols in closed or nearly closed seas, such as the Mediterranean and Caribbean. Long-range oceanic

cruising, whether as *convoy* escort or *privateer*, became feasible only with development of the *galleon* in the 16th century. At first cruising was sharply limited by shipboard diseases born of prolonged exposure to bad food and water in confined conditions, and vitamin deficiency (scurvy) whose effects were felt after much time was spent at sea, which had not been a problem before. Fast *frigates* improved on galleons and cut back on disease by shortening journeys; and a preventive for scurvy, lime juice, was eventually discovered.

crupper. Large plate armor that protected the rear half of a *warhorse*; introduced in Europe in the mid-15th century.

Crusades. The motivations behind the Crusades, which occupied over 200 years of Latin interaction with the Islamic world of the Middle East, were deep and complex. They included economic pressures born of a growing European population and renewed prosperity, regional competition arising from a revival of long dormant trade within the Mediterranean, and the alternately politically shrewd and spiritually sincere movement behind the *Treuga Dei*. The Crusades also represented a historic reversal of 600 years of invasions of Europe by Asiatic, Arab, and Viking non-Christian peoples. The shift to offense was at first led by Medieval Christendom's leading warrior-culture, the *Normans*. Later, German knights and the new *Military Orders* played key roles. The Crusades got underway as Western European societies as a whole were moving from hunkered castellan defense against invasion to aggressive territorial expansion in the name of the Christian faith. Crusading also offered alternate careers to members of the warrior classes no longer needed for domestic defense against pagan or Muslim invaders, but whom Europe still strained to maintain through *feudal* social and economic structures. The Crusades thus may have provided a martial and economic release for societies increasingly wealthy and urban, whose populations were rapidly expanding and desirous of internal peace. It would have been shrewd to send away on "*holy war*" the superfluous and dangerous armed men the countryside continued to produce but who were no longer needed for the homeland defense of Christendom. Yet, it would be an error to overemphasize such material motivations, for the Crusades also bespoke an apocalyptic religious tradition, genuine and deep piety, and a mass penitence movement seeking climactic expiation of sin. Thus, scholars note that it is difficult to tell Crusader from Christian pilgrim until about 1200, so mixed were the populations who moved east and so complex were their material, martial, and spiritual motives. This admixture of godly and godawful impulses helped sustain the crusading spirit for 200 years, sending vast amounts of silver east in the form of donations, legacies, and support for individual knights, along with a thinner and inconstant stream of armed monks and other reinforcements.

Crusading was enormously expensive: to outfit and maintain a knight and his mounts, along with his attendants and armed retainers, might take four

years' income of a reasonable sized estate. It was crucial, therefore, that crusading was made hugely spiritually attractive by the Church, not least so that it might be self-financing. Several popes, and even more the body of the Church and the Latin Christian people as a whole (*res publica Christiana*), embraced crusading. The pious were granted ''remission of sins'' as crusading was licensed by the clergy as a form of penance. Indulgences thus went to holy warriors, while the more brutal among them also enjoyed the fact that the *just war* restrictions of the Church were waived for those fighting ''infidels.'' Reinforcing this sense of religious mission and strategically underlying the Crusades was an even older geopolitical antagonism to Muslim power and interruption of Mediterranean trade, a related hatred for corsairs and ''pirates'' operating from the Muslim emirates of North Africa, and a new antagonism to Islamic revival in Egypt and Anatolia and the consequent military pressure that had brought to bear on fellow Christians, albeit Orthodox, in the *Byzantine Empire*.

The First Crusade was called at the Council of Clermont on November 27, 1095, by Pope Urban II (the ''Clermont Appeal''). Its proclaimed aim was to retake Jerusalem from the Muslims, who had held it since their original imperial surge out of Arabia took it away from older communities of Christians (Armenians, Syrians, Nestorians, and others) in 638. It was a fortuitous year to launch a crusade to the Middle East, for the Islamic world was deeply divided politically and in great religious turmoil at the end of the 11th century: Muslim Syria was under prolonged assault by *Seljuk Turks* and the Fatamid Caliphate in Cairo was collapsing into its terminal stage. Medieval Europe, in contrast, was bursting with martial energy, ascendant societies, confident warriors, and aggressive kings. These facts prompted René Grousset to conclude that the First Crusade should be seen as a victory of ''French monarchy over Moslem anarchy.'' Or at least, Muslim divisions. Whether or not Grousset overstates the case, the fact was that in 1099 the First Crusade took, then sacked, Jerusalem, where Crusaders mercilessly put to the sword thousands of Muslims, Jews, and even eastern rite Christians, whom they did not recognize as co-religionists or whom they disdained. That atrocity is remembered still in the Middle East, a region with more than its share of recalled horrors. Yet, news of the fall of Jerusalem and the ''Holy Land'' to the First Crusade was received in the West as an obvious blessing by God of the effort to recover Christian lands lost to ''infidel'' Islam during that other warrior faith's first *jihad*.

It was a fortuitous year to launch a crusade to the Middle East . . .

In other words, at the strategic level the Crusades were seen as a counterattack by Christians to recover for Christendom lands lost to the Muslim jihad (just as today many Muslims see attacks on Israel or even Spain as a strategic counterattack against usurpers of part of the historic *Dar al-Islam*). A string of Latin (mainly Norman) principalities was established along the coast, linking Antioch, Edessa, and Tripoli to Jerusalem. Initially, the Muslim

response was tepid, as the Islamic world was divided among quarrelsome emirates, rival caliphates, and sectarian factions. In the longer run, however, the greater population and military resource advantages lay with the Muslims. Once the ''Franks'' (as Crusaders were called by Muslims, who did not distinguish Norman from German or English knights) raided and attacked the heart of Islam in the *Hejaz*, the Muslim world was roused to an outraged military response. On the other hand, the Seljuk state was rising at this time in the north to straddle Iraq and Syria, from Mosul to Damascus. This new power warred with the Latin states over access to Egypt, where the Fatamids were collapsing. These Seljuk wars absorbed most northern Muslim energies in fratricidal conflict.

The Second Crusade (1147–1149) was preached by Bernard of Clairvaux, and called by Pope Eugene III in response to the fall of Edessa to the Muslim warlord Nur al-Din in 1144. A mostly German army was led by Emperor Conrad III, while a discrete French army set out under Louis VII. Each army passed overland through the Byzantine Empire, eating out much of the countryside and pillaging the Christian populations. The Byzantines therefore eagerly agreed to provided ships to take the Crusaders to Asia Minor (and thereby, out of their Empire). Once in the Holy Land the Germans were met in battle by a Turkic force against which they fared badly. This induced them to join with the French. This joint army assaulted Damascus in July 1148, but could not take it, in part because of treason by jealous knights resident in the Holy Land. The two kings left for home having accomplished nothing of lasting significance except uniting Muslim Syria against the Latins and irreparably harming Frankish military prestige. Nur al-Din seized effective control of ''Fatamid Egypt'' in 1168. Jerusalem remained in Frankish hands, as the ''Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem,'' until 1187. That year the great *Salāh-al-Dīn*, successor to Nur al-Din (who died in 1174) and Sultan of all Egypt and Syria, destroyed a Latin army at Hattin (July 4, 1187) in Galilee and recaptured Jerusalem for Islam (October 2, 1187). A Third Crusade (1188–1192) was proclaimed and three Western armies set out to retake the ''Holy City,'' led by three great kings: Richard I (Coeur de Lion) of England; Philip II (Augustus) of France; and Friedrich I (Barbarossa) of Germany. The Germans never arrived, Emperor Friedrich having drowned en route in Asia Minor. The Anglo-French armies arrived separately and never fully joined forces. Still, they recaptured Acre in 1191 after Richard's fleet defeated a Muslim navy. (The only other major naval battle of the Crusades was in 1123, when a Venetian fleet defeated the Fatamid navy off Ascalon.) Salāh-al-Dīn asked that Muslim civilians be spared, but Richard massacred men, women, and children. The Crusaders were unable to capture Jerusalem in two attempts, one of which fell short by just 12 miles. Philip returned to France later in 1191 and made war on Richard's possessions. Richard left for home the next year after agreeing to a treaty with Salāh-al-Dīn and selling Cyprus to the Templars.

Several small Crusader kingdoms survived for awhile in the Levant, while others took root on Malta, Rhodes, and Cyprus under the Military Orders.

But the Latin states had lost their defensible borders and stood now as isolated, vulnerable outposts surrounded by larger hostile populations. Reinforcements declined in wake of the failure of the Third Crusade to recover Jerusalem. The Fourth Crusade (1204) never even made it to the Holy Land, instead diverting to Constantinople where it overthrew the Orthodox emperors and sacked the city. A Latin kingdom was set up in Constantinople that lasted from 1204 to 1261. The Fifth Crusade (1217–1221) was recruited heavily among French knights, but it too failed to achieve lasting results. Emperor Friedrich II crusaded in 1228 and secured Christian access to Jerusalem to 1244, when it fell to a Khorasmian assault. Louis IX (''St. Louis'') led the Sixth Crusade in 1248–1250, to Egypt. He fared badly, was captured and held, literally, for a ''king's ransom.'' He returned at the head of the Seventh Crusade (1267–1270), this time attacking Tunis. Again he failed, and this time also died. Two years earlier the Latin Kingdom of Antioch surrendered to the Muslims. In 1289, Tripoli reverted to Berber control and in 1291 Acre fell, ending the era of Crusader states in the Holy Land.

Muslim counterattacks had worn down outlying Crusader states and finally drove the Military Orders to island refuges in the eastern Mediterranean. Conflicts in Europe kept potential Crusaders at home to contest for power in the fractured West. As reinforcements thinned, women donned armor and fought in Crusader garrison defense and field battles. Chronic shortages of men also forced the Crusader states to hunker down inside massive fortifications and pursue a strictly defensive strategy. Few pitched battles were fought toward the end of this long religious war, as for Muslim and Christian alike raiding became both the dominant and preferred mode of warfare. Moreover, both sides faced a new, common threat: the *Mongols*. Mongol invasions of Syria and Palestine did not unite local Muslims and Christians, however. Instead, they were mutually distracted and weakened. The Crusader states thus barely held on after the Third Crusade. Ultimately, their isolation, lack of reinforcements, and greater Muslim population and superior resources led to their demise. The era of crusades to the Middle East ended in military failure in the Holy Land and with secular depression of Europe's population and economy during the 14th century, partly as a result of the *Black Death*. Their principal legacy was not territorial conquest or new military skills learned from distant enemies. It was development of capabilities of military bureaucracy in their home states in the West, where an enormous effort was made to organize, transport, feed and supply over huge distances, large expeditions and campaigns that lasted more than two centuries. It would not be the last time Europe displayed unique, though not necessarily admirable, martial qualities: the Crusades provided an early logistical training ground for later expansion of European empires and global military dominance after 1500.

Christian offensives against Muslims outside the core Holy Lands were more successful than the campaigns in the Middle East. Castilian Crusaders overran the Muslim *taifa* states of Iberia in a ''*Reconquista*'' that was part crusade and part migration that lasted from the 8th century to the fall of Granada in 1492. The zealous religious impulses and material greed that

underlay the Reconquista influenced Spanish policy for another 150 years, sustaining fanatic military opposition to the *Protestant Reformation* and driving conquest and conversion of the Americas and parts of Asia. Southern Russia and Ukraine, where Orthodox Kievan Rus had flourished before falling to Mongol and Tatar armies, was also ''recovered'' from Islam by a martial spirit of crusade that animated Muscovy. The language of ''holy war'' still coursed in Russian foreign policy and propaganda toward Central Asian emirates in the 19th century, and about the Ottoman Empire into the early 20th century. The *Teutonic Knights* and *Livonian Order* forcibly converted or exterminated and expropriated the lands of pagan tribes residing in Prussia and around the Baltic coast. (Centuries later, Crusader talk recurred among German invaders of the Soviet Union in a perverse Nazified-Christian form in 1941, recalling in tones of fascist romanticism prior eastern crusades that were also genocidal invasions of Slavic lands.) The *Albigensian Crusade* in France was fought simultaneously with the Fifth Crusade to the Holy Land, to suppress heresy. Smaller ''crusades'' were proclaimed by popes to punish personal and excommunicate enemies in Italy. On the other side of the ledger, in 1453 the Ottomans captured Constantinople and in general brought a muted form of Muslim ''holy war,'' the jihad, into eastern and southern Europe.

A lasting irony attending the Crusades is that the war with the Latin states in the Holy Land was ultimately won by the Muslims, many of whom never forgot or forgave the ''infidel'' Christian intrusion into the Dar al-Islam. Yet, the Crusades were largely ignored or forgotten in the West even while still underway, as Europeans turned to fight each other with greater intensity culminating in fratricidal wars of religion over fractures in their once common faith in the 16th–17th centuries. See also *Assassins*; *cruzada*; *Cyprus*; *Hospitallers*; *Hussite Wars*; *Inquisition*; *jihad*; *just war tradition*; *Knights Templar*; *Lithuania, Grand Duchy of*; *Livonian Order*; *Mamlūks*; *Nicopolis, Battle of*; *Northern War, First*; *Rhodes, Siege of (1444)*; *Rhodes, Siege of (1479–1480)*; *Rhodes, Siege of (1522–1523)*; *turcopoles*; *Varna, Battle of*.

Suggested Reading: E. Christiansen, *The Northern Crusades* (1980); J. France, *Western Warfare in the Age of the Crusades* (1999); Carole Hillenbrand, *Crusades: Islamic Perspectives* (2000); P. M. Holt, *Age of the Crusades* (1986); T. Madden, *Concise History of the Crusades* (1999); Hans Mayer, *The Crusades* (trans. and rev. ed., 1988); Jonathon Riley-Smith, *The Crusades* (1990) and *A History of the Crusades* (2000); Jonathon Riley-Smith, ed., *Oxford History of the Crusades* (1999).

cruzada. A special tax on Spanish clergy and laity permitted by the pope to finance the *Reconquista* against the Moors of Granada. After 1492 it remained in place, providing the Spanish monarchy as much revenue as it gleaned from the silvermining of its American empire.

cuartel general. An agreement on exchanges of *prisoners of war* first signed by Spain and the Dutch rebels in 1599 and reissued periodically after that. It stipulated that ransom of all prisoners should occur within 25 days of capture. Prisoners were exchanged by rank, with higher officers also requiring cash

ransoms. In 1637 its terms were published in English. Two years later it was also adopted between Spain and France.

cuirass. An armored breastplate with or without matching back piece. It was originally made of *cuir-bouilli*, later of iron and early steel. The breastplate alone was sometimes called a ''half-cuirass.'' See also *lyrnie*.

cuirassier. A term for the new type of ''*heavy cavalry*'' that appeared in Europe during the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). They were lightly armored, often wearing just a helmet and cuirass, but rode a larger mount. They were distinguished from fully armored mounted *knights* and *lancers* or *dragoons.* The latter were even more lightly armored, often wearing just a helmet, and they rode small ponies or nags, rarely a true *warhorse*.

cuir-bouilli. A form of early *plate armor* in the 13th century, made not from metal but of leather hardened by cooking in wax or oil, shaped to fit, then dried.

cuisses (*cuissart*). Plate armor for the thighs.

cuius regio eius religio. ''Whosoever controls the territory decides the religion.'' See also *Augsburg, Peace of*; *Prague, Peace of*; *reservatum ecclesiaticum*; *Westphalia, Peace of*.

culebrina. See *culverin*.

cultellus. A large, dagger-like infantry weapon whose principal use was to kill unhorsed cavalry.

culverin. French ''coulverine,'' Spanish ''culebrina.'' The types of gunpowder weapons covered by this term varied greatly. The main usage referred to cannon, but a secondary meaning was small firearms that evolved into the first handguns (coulverines à main). These fired lead rather than stone or iron shot. Even concerning *artillery* alone, the term was used for guns of greatly varying and imprecise sizes, including light guns less than three feet long with bores as small as one inch (*esmeril*, *demi-saker*, *falcon*, *falconet*, *minion*, *pasavolante*, and *serpentine*). Some early types were small, firing 1/3-pound shot 200 yards or less. Others were medium-sized guns that could throw 6- to 9-pound shot several thousand yards, though just one-tenth that distance with any accuracy or power. The largest were capable of hurling 32-pound stone or iron balls several thousand yards with moderate accuracy. In time, ''culverin'' came to mean fairly large and long, thick-barreled guns designed to throw shot accurately at extended ranges. The French carted two ''coulverines'' to *Formigny*, one of the last battles of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453).

Culverins were useful in sieges to hammer walls and provide covering fire for engineers, sappers, and military laborers engaged in digging or infantry

guarding approaches and mines. A hundred years later culverins were the main gun used in war at sea, as long-range chase weapons or ship-smashers that could cripple a ship if fired broadside at close range. In the early 16th century one type of naval culverin was standardized at a caliber of 140mm. It fired *solid shot* or specialized ordnance up to 8 kilogram in weight. By the start of the 17th century ''culverin'' described a gun 11–12 feet long, that could shoot 18-pound shot to an effective range of 1,700 yards and a maximum range of 6,500. A ''culverin-bastard'' was a 9-foot gun that fired 12-pound shot an effective range of 600 yards and a maximum range of 4,000. A ''demi-culverin'' (''media culebrina'' or ''*culverin-moyenne*'') was also nearly 9 feet long, but fired 10-pound shot to a greater effective range, 850 yards, and a maximum range of 5,000 yards. The ''culverin-royal'' was the monster of the class at many tons deadweight and 16 feet in length. It could hurl 32-pound shot with reasonable accuracy and great effect to 2,000 yards, and had an impressive maximum range of 7,000 yards. Never before had killing been possible at such distances. See also *artillery*; *gunpowder weapons*; *hackbut*; *Invincible Armada*.

culverin-bastard. See *culverin*.

culverin-moyenne. See *culverin*.

culverin-royal. See *culverin*.

curtain wall. In permanent fortified defenses, the straight outer wall formed by the *rampart*. In early works the curtain wall might be uninterrupted except for the town or castle gate. In later times, it was divided into sections by *bastions* and towers. See also *casement*; *castles, on land*; *fortification*.

Cyprus. A *Crusader* kingdom was set up on Cyprus by the *Hospitallers* after the island fell to Richard I of England. They were later joined by the *Templars*, until their Order was persecuted to extinction. In 1364, Cyprus and Rhodes mounted an expedition that sacked and butchered the population of *Alexandria*. The *Mamlūks* struck back in 1426, razing Nicosia and forcing the Cypriots into vassalage. In 1440 the Hospitallers agreed to neutrality in the religious wars of the eastern Mediterranean, leaving Rhodes as the last Crusader outpost. Cyprus became a forward commercial and naval base for Venice in 1489. In July 1570, an Ottoman fleet landed 50,000 invaders who overran the island and besieged an isolated garrison (7,000 men) at Famagusta. Christians in Europe made Crusader-like noises, but sent no relief. Famagusta surrendered on August 3, 1571, whereupon its governor and a few others were murdered by the victors. See also *Lepanto, Battle of (October 7, 1571)*.

Czasniki, Battle of (1564). See *Ivan IV*; *Northern War, First*.

D

dag. English slang for a stubby, short-range pistol commonly wielded by light cavalry.

daggers. Early medieval daggers were little more than iron spikes on handles of wood or bone. Their principal use was to punch through armor in close quarter fighting among knights. Or they were plunged into gaps between armor plates and mail protections, usually at the neck, armpit, or groin. Daggers went by names such as ballock, basilard, and rondel, none of which were uniform in design. See also *Assassins*; *cultellus*; *gomeres*; *main-gauche*; *misericord*; *Schweizerdolch*; *stiletto*.

daimyo. ''great names.'' The *feudal* lords of Japan, the great barons who controlled the countryside; not emasculated court nobles (''kuge''). Late medieval daimyo (''shugo'') were displaced by regional warlords (''Sengoku daimyo'') during the *Sengoku jidai* era. These men exercised enormous power over peasants and household *samurai*, and were effectively independent of emperors and shoguns alike. Among the most important were the Hōjō, Usegi, and Takeda in central Japan; the Ouicha and Mori of western Japan; the Otomo and Ryuzoji on Kyushu; the powerful Shimazu of the south, and the Arima of the Shimabara peninsula. All these and many more were destroyed or coerced into submission by the end of the *Unification Wars*, leaving *Oda Nobunaga*, *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*, and *Tokugawa Ieyasu* as Japan's military hegemons. Subsequently, the daimyo were tamed and remained subservient for over 250 years under the *bakufu* and Tokugawa shoguns.

Danubian principalities. Moldavia and Wallachia, which stood astride the strategic mouth of the Danube River. In the 13th century they were overrun by the Ottoman Empire.

Danzig. This great Pomeranian city (population 50,000 by 1600) was a key entrepôt in the Baltic grain and other trades, and a leading member of the *Hanse.* During the ''*War of the Cities*'' (1454–1466) it appealed to Poland, with which it had ancient ties predating the Teuton conquest, for help in throwing off the economic yoke of the *Teutonic Knights.* Its small but powerful navy defeated a combined Danish-Teutonic war fleet at *Bornholm* (1457). Danzig then accepted a Polish alliance and garrison. From inside its walls Polish troops and Danziger militia sortied to defeat the Teutonic Knights at *Swiecino* (1462). Danzig was annexed to Poland, becoming its major Baltic outlet under terms of the *Second Peace of Torun* (October 19, 1466). In 1576 Danzig rejected the election of *Stefan Báthory* as king of Poland and invited Denmark to support its rebellion. Bathory blockaded Danzig without much success. The city hired mercenaries who helped it push Báthory's army away from its walls. The next year, agreement was reached on autonomy for Danzig in exchange for payment of annual tribute to Poland.

Dar al-Harb. ''Realm of War'' or, literally, ''Realm of the Sword.'' In *Islam*, all territory not occupied or ruled by Muslims. For militant Muslims the term implied that, in the fullness of time, it would be. The idea dated to the original era of Islamic expansion in the first century after the death of the Prophet Muhammad. Over time, its more aggressive implications faded. It is doubtful, for instance, that later Ottoman armies were inspired by fierce religious zeal more than they were by common material desires and interests.

Dar al-Islam. ''Realm of the Faithful'' (Submission), or ''Abode of Islam.'' All territory occupied or ruled by Muslims that must be defended against reversion to pagan or non-Muslim control. The Christian *Crusades*, seen in the West as a strategic counterattack to recover the birthplace of the Christian faith overrun by Muslim invaders in the 7th–8th centuries, were thus viewed by Muslims as an invasion of a region divinely ordained for Muslim rule, as evidenced by the fact that they ruled it.

dastana. See *armor*.

Day of the Barricades (May 12, 1588). In the midst of the eighth of the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629), the long-simmering dispute between *Henri III*'s Royalists and the *Catholic League* came to a head. Angry over Henri's move of 4,000 Swiss guards to Paris, for his own protection, and bestowal of titles and riches on court favorites (''mignons''), the Committee of *The Sixteen* set in motion a long-planned coup d'état. Paris rallied to this revolt against a despised king, spurred on by rising food prices and recent battlefield misfortunes and losses. Fearing a royal massacre akin to the *St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres* of 1572, only this time of Catholics, the population of Paris erected barricades and took up arms. This caused Henri to waver as he waited pensively in the Louvre. By the time he decided to act it was too late: Paris had gone over to the League. The king fled the city in haste and disguise,

leaving Paris under the control of the radical, even revolutionary, bourgeois Committee of The Sixteen. Paris greeted *Henri Guise*, who did not fully embrace the radical agenda of The Sixteen, with wild acclaim. The low point of the monarchy was reached and the Catholic side in the civil wars fatally divided. Next came Henri III's murder of Guise, followed by his own assassination shortly thereafter.

deadmen's eyes. See *rigging*.

dead-pays. Imaginary private soldiers credited to the roster of a company or regiment so that the captain could collect their wages, sometimes for company use but most often for himself. While this was one way of compensating officers, it meant that few units ever mustered at their paper strength. As many as five or six dead-pays per 100 men was not uncommon. The dead-pay ''system'' was normal for most armies in early modern Europe, from England to Poland. Similarly, in the Ottoman Army dead *Janissaries* were kept on the roll by comrades in order for Corp members to collect their much-valued *esame* (pay tickets). See also *choragiew*; *dziesietniks*; *Haiduks*; *rotmistrz*.

dead reckoning. Estimating the position of a ship without benefit of instruments or astronomical observations by calculating how far the ship had drifted or sailed, on what course, from the known port of departure. See also *astrolabe*; *compass*; *cross-staff*.

***Declaratio Ferdinandei*.** A commitment made by Catholic negotiators prior to final agreement on the *Peace of Augsburg* (1555) permitting Lutheran cities or knights to continue in the reformed faith if they had practiced it for some time. See also *reservatum ecclesiaticum*.

"Defenestration of Prague" (1419). Radical Czech priests, furious over the betrayal and judicial murder of *Jan Hus*, led an angry mob to the center of Prague where they threw seven despised members of the Town Council out a high window to fall to their deaths on paving stones below, or onto the pikes of the town militia. This proved to be the opening act in the *Hussite Wars* between Bohemia and the Holy Roman Empire and Catholic Church.

"Defenestration of Prague" (May 23, 1618). Imperial regents representing Austrian Archduke and future Holy Roman Emperor Ferdinand of Styria (later, *Ferdinand II*), a known Catholic fanatic, met with Bohemian Protestant leaders at Hradein (Hradshin) Castle in Prague. The Protestants, led by Count *Matthias Thurn*, engaged in heated argument with the regents, accusing them of abusing the rights of the Bohemian *Estates.* The confrontation in fact had been planned months in advance, to set up murders of the seven regents. Their deaths would shut the door on compromise with Ferdinand, who had in 1617 shut the leading Protestants out in a stage-managed coronation as king-designate of Bohemia. In turn, that would give him the Imperial crown upon

the death of Emperor Matthias. Thurn denounced two of the bluntest regents, William Slavata and Jaroslav Martinic, as traitors and had them and their secretary thrown out a high window, or ''defenestrated,'' whence they landed in a pile of dung and debris that filled Hradein's dry moat. A Protestant mob waiting to complete the murders instead collapsed in applause and laughter. That allowed the regents to escape with their lives, albeit with their Imperial dignity badly stained. Catholic propagandists portrayed their survival as a miracle, circulating prints showing them borne up by angels or the Virgin Mary. Protestant propagandists replied with prints that showed the regents arriving at the dung heap, which grew in malodorous size which each retelling and printing. With this quasi-comic incident Bohemia and Austria started Europe down the road to a general war that ended laughter on all sides. For also left in the dung was any chance for agreement that Ferdinand should be named king of Bohemia. And that was a title he was determined to have, since Bohemia held the decisive vote among the seven *Kurfürsten* in the Imperial Diet who selected the emperor.

A Protestant mob waiting to complete the murders instead collapsed in applause and laughter.

The ''Defenestration of Prague'' thus signaled the revolt of Bohemia, a kingdom with a tradition of bitter dissent against Catholic orthodoxy and Imperial rule dating to the *Hussite Wars*. Thurn and the rebels offered the crown to any prince of Protestantism prepared to defend Bohemia against the Habsburgs. Most demurred, unwilling to face the military might of Austria and Spain. The challenge was finally accepted by 22-year-old *Friedrich V*, Elector Palatine. He raised a small Protestant army, engaged several minor allies, and marched to Bohemia to accept the crown. After a brief flurry of Bohemian offensive action toward Vienna, Spain and Austria were joined by Bavaria and other south German Catholic estates in marching a large coalition army into Bohemia. The decisive clash came at the *White Mountain* (November 8, 1620), where the rebels were crushed. Friedrich was cast out of Bohemia and into history as the ''Winter King,'' whose reign had lasted but a year, to melt with the spring thaw. The great German war which followed was so devastating it is recalled still for unusual barbarity, ideological ferocity, and physical destruction: the flames of rebellion and religious war overleaped all diplomatic fire lines, to roar up the Rhine and burn out Friedrich's Palatinate. From there it fanned out, to lick the walls of fortified Protestant cities in Denmark, the United Provinces, and Germany. In the end, all the Great Powers of Europe were engulfed. Thus from a constitutional ember grew the conflagration of three decades of general war in Europe. See also *Thirty Years' War*; *Uzkok War*.

defilade. In *fortification*, any position or works providing protection against flank or enfilading fire.

Delhi, Sack of (1398). See *Delhi Sultanate*; *Panipat, Battle of (December 17, 1398)*; *Timur*.

Delhi Sultanate (c.1200–1526). The original Muslim sultanate in India. The universal claim of its title notwithstanding, it was but one of several Muslim Indian kingdoms. It was ruled by the Khalji dynasty, then the Saiyids, and finally the Lodi dynasty. It was attacked by *Timur*, but survived a massive defeat at *Panipat* (1398) and the sack of Delhi. It was finally overthrown by *Babur*, who founded the *Mughal Empire* on its ruins. See also *Gujarat*; *Panipat, Battle of (April 21, 1526)*.

demi-bastion. An outwork, a half-bastion with only one face and flank. See also *hornwork*.

demi-cannon. A 16th-century gun weighing about 4,000 pounds that fired 32-pound shot to an effective range of 450 yards and a maximum range of 2,500. See also *cannon*; *cañon*.

demi-culverin. Spanish: ''media culebrina.'' From the later 16th century, a type of cannon that could hurl 10-pound shot to an effective range of 850 yards and a maximum range of 5,000 yards. See also *culverin*.

demi-lancers. French: ''launciers.'' A type of English light-to-medium cavalry, sporting more armor and weapons and riding bigger horses than true *light cavalry*, but not as slow or cumbersome as older *heavy cavalry*. An innovation of the 16th century and forerunner to *Roundhead* cavalry of the 17th, they discarded leg armor in favor of leather boots, dispensed with lower back armor in favor of a cuirass, and discarded *helms* in preference for soft hats. Many favored *wheel lock* pistols as a supplement to their primary weapon, the ''demi-lance'' or short-staffed lance.

demi-lune. In *fortification*, an outwork (detached) *bastion* in shape of a crescent—hence the name—protecting a section of the *curtain wall*.

demi-saker. *Minion*. A medium caliber gun that fired 6-pound shot to an effective range of 450 yards and a maximum lobbing range of 3,500 yards. See also *saker*.

demurrage. Payment made (or only promised) to ship owners when a ship was detained beyond an agreed date upon being *impressed* into the service of the king. See also *Cinque Ports*.

Denmark. Denmark tried to force Sweden into a more unitary monarchy than was envisioned in the *Union of Kalmar*, but lost badly at Brunkeberg (1471). Sweden formally broke away in 1523, under *Gustavus I*. Denmark remained hostile to Sweden's independence. It had a great advantage since it controlled both sides of the *Baltic Sound* and all toll revenue on passing ships—including *Hanse*, Dutch, and English vessels—plying the rich trade between the Baltic and the Atlantic and Mediterranean ports of Europe. Denmark rose in

prominence and became a significant naval power when the Oldenburg dynasty built a large fleet of warships. It overreached, however, in laying specious claim to a *Dominum Maris Baltici*. The Danes also failed to enforce tolls on the Archangel route, which they based on claims to the Faroes and Iceland. During the 16th century the Danish elite converted to *Lutheranism*. Denmark stayed out of the war between *Charles V* and the *Schmalkaldic League* (1546–1547), but fought the *Nordic Seven Years' War* (1563–1570) with Sweden. As a result of the *First Northern War* (1558–1587), under Frederick II (1559–1596), Denmark retained supremacy in the Baltic and even gained some island territories.

Danish soldiers were assigned to farms in an ''allotment system'' (''Tidelning''). They lived on and worked these farms as tenants in peacetime. If Denmark was attacked its kings could exercise their right of ''Opbud'' to call up emergency levies. This was the constitutional right of the kings of Denmark to raise militia levies (one man in every five) to defend the realm when it came under attack. However, this right did not extend to any of the king's wars fought for aggressive ends beyond the recognized borders of the kingdom, which is why *Christian IV* was forced to wage his aggressive wars, and pay for them, not as the Danish king but in his capacity as Duke of Holstein. The Danish infantry conscription system was known as ''Udskrivning'' (''Registration''). For cavalry, Denmark relied on the *Rostjeneste*.

Denmark enjoyed sustained maritime hegemony in part due to Sweden's protracted dynastic struggle with Poland-Lithuania, lasting into the 17th century. Denmark was permanently knocked from its perch of great power pretension by the foolhardy decision of Christian IV to intervene in the *Thirty Years' War*. From 1625 to 1629, the so-called ''Danish Phase'' of that conflict, Danish and Protestant arms suffered a series of unmitigated defeats, even though by 1629 Christian was able to raise 22,000 troops from Denmark, 6,000 in Norway, and 19,000 from Schleswig. No effective Protestant coalition formed around Christian, and after four years of fighting which devastated north Germany and lower Denmark, the Danes were beaten into submission. When war threatened again in 1637–1641, Denmark raised its first ever peacetime army: 16,500 Danes, 6,500 Norwegians, and 11,000 Holstein mercenaries. Altogether with the Rostjeneste, this represented a standing army of 40,000 men in 1642. The Danes were quiet during the climax of the confessional wars in Europe, only venturing into another brief and disastrous conflict in *Torstensson's War*.

Suggested Reading: Paul Lockhart, *Denmark in the Thirty Years' War, 1618–1648* (1996); S. Oakley, *War and Peace in the Baltic, 1560–1790* (1992).

Derbençi. ''Pass guards.'' Ottoman auxiliaries specializing in mountain warfare. They were first recruited in the 15th century among subject Greek, Kurdish, and Tatar populations. They were basically civilians given a semi-military, specialized function. As guns became available the central government tried to stop the Derbençi from acquiring them, fearing rebellion. This policy did not survive the

acquisition of firearms by mountain bandits, against whom the Ottomans opposed the Derbençi at minimal cost.

desertion. Desertion was a chronic problem for all armies in this period. Although especially pronounced among infantry serving under compulsion, feudal nobility was also prone to ''desert'' once their obligation under the *servitium debitum* ran out. Or they might just run, if battle loomed or turned out badly, as when a third of the French cavalry at *Poitiers* (1356) rode from the field without engaging the enemy. English armies suffered high desertion rates in wars in Wales and Scotland, where walking or riding home was relatively easy. There were fewer desertions during the *Hundred Years' War* due to the difficulty of transport back to England, but more because that was at first a popular and profitable war. Garrisons were prone to desertion from want of pay, hunger, or bribery, so that control of whole frontiers might change without combat. English troops in the Netherlands during the *Eighty Years' War* were especially guilty of this. Numerous battles turned partly on the number of troops who deserted in advance. The usual cause of desertion was lack of pay and food. Outside the Dutch and Ottoman armies where pay was plentiful and regular, most troops in this period could expect pay to be several months, and sometimes even several years, in arrears. Withholding pay was sometimes used as an incentive to keep contract armies in the field, but this risked mass desertion or mutiny. See also *Agnadello, Battle of*; *Ankara, Battle of*; *Arques, Battle of*; *Articles of War*; *Dunbar, Battle of*; *fitna*; *Edgehill, Battle of*; *English Civil Wars*; *French Army*; *French Civil Wars*; *impressment*; *Kildare Rebellion*; *La Rochelle*; *Laupen, Battle of*; *Mansfeld, Count Ernst Graf von*; *Mary Stuart, Queen of Scots*; *military discipline*; *Ming Army*; *Mookerheyde, Battle of*; *Nancy, Battle of*; *Nine Years' War*; *Nördlingen, First Battle of*; *Panipat, Battle of (April 21, 1526)*; *Polish Army*; *Prévôt des maréchaux*; *Provost*; *reformadoes*; *Rhodes, Siege of (1479–1480)*; *Rhodes, Siege of (1522–1523)*; *Teutonic Knights, Order of*; *Thirty Years' War*; *uniforms*; *Wars of the Roses*.

Deshima. This small (600' × 200') artificial island in Nagasaki harbor was reserved to foreigners, in order to limit their contact with Japanese. It was prepared for the Portuguese in 1636 but given to the Dutch *Vereenigde Oostindische Compaagnie* (VOC), which was ordered to move there from Hirudo in 1641. Until the late *Tokugawa* era the Dutch were the only Europeans allowed in Japan. Only the VOC factor could leave Deshima and then solely to perform a required annual ceremonial visit to the Imperial Court at Edo. For the Tokugawa, trade with the Dutch was relatively unimportant. Deshima was more valued for its window of key intelligence on the outside world and the access it permitted to European military technology. Nearby was the much larger ''Chinese Quarter'' of Nagasaki where *Qing* merchants and traders resided and conducted the far more valuable Japanese trade with China and Korea.

Dessau Bridge, Battle of (April 25, 1626). *Graf von Mansfeld* moved south with an army of 12,000 mercenaries intent on finding and defeating *Albrecht von Wallenstein*, the great mercenary general in overall command of Catholic and Imperial forces. Wallenstein knew of Mansfeld's plan and moved faster. With 20,000 men he crossed the Elbe and set up a blocking position before the bridge at Dessau, forcing Mansfeld to attack him. The old man fell into the tactical trap set by Wallenstein, who hid the greater part of his force. When the fight was over nearly one-third of Mansfeld's men were dead. He was driven back to Silesia and died soon afterward, whereupon his contract army dissolved.

destrier. The ''magnus equus'' or ''great horse'' of the Middle Ages in Europe that helped give *heavy cavalry* its battlefield preeminence. The name derived from the Anglo-Norman ''destrer,'' which in turn came from the rough Latin ''dexterius,'' or ''dexterarius,'' meaning ''right-handed.'' This large breed was best known across Europe by the French ''destrier.'' First bred in the 12th century, it became the main battle horse of every full-fledged, wealthier *knight*. It was always a stallion, highly spirited, and trained to charge straight toward the enemy. It was led to the fight by hand rather than ridden, being mounted only in training, perhaps in *tournaments*, or for real battle. It was never used for mere transport. The great destriers of the 14th century were huge horses by the standard of the day; probably 16 hands and 1,300 pounds, not the 18 hands sometimes cited, but still 3–4 hands bigger than the average medieval horse. At first these great horses were clad in padded cloth and gaily decorated with personal coats-of-arms. As missile power increased they were given mail trappers. Later, they wore plate armor on their head (chanfron) and chest (peytral). A knight in full armor needed assistance of his attendants to mount a great warhorse (leading to the expression that well-captured a common knightly smugness and assumed superiority, ''mount one's high horse''). These large chargers were hugely expensive, costing from 5 to 35 times the price of a hackney, a horse type used solely for transport of men or goods. This meant they were ridden almost exclusively by the great nobles and wealthier knights, but not by the average man-at-arms. They were taken to the Levant on the *Crusades*, where they sometimes succeeded in ''shock'' defeats of Arab and Turkic armies. But they could be easily blown under heat, which exposed them to Muslim tactics of closing after a failed Crusader charge to fight at close quarters with bows, lance, or sword from fleeter and more maneuverable Arabian mounts. See also *couched lance*; *courser*; *hauberk*; *rouncey*; *warhorses*.

Deulino, Truce of (January 1619). It established a 14-year truce between Poland-Lithuania and Muscovy. Muscovy ceded Smolensk, Seversk, and Chernihiv to Poland.

Deutschorden. ''German Order.'' See *Teutonic Knights, Order of*.

Deutschritter. ''German knight.'' See *knights*.

Deventer, Siege of (1591). See *Maurits of Nassau*.

***dévotes/dévots*.** Devout Catholics who belonged to, or just supported, the *Catholic League* during the protracted *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629), especially after the *Edict of Beaulieu* (1576). Most were petty nobles or bourgeoisie, or monks, nuns, and fanatic laity. Women played a key role in their political and devotional activities. Military and political defeat of the League in 1593–1594 turned dévots away from politics to a renewed concentration on personal piety. Many despised Cardinal *Armand Richelieu* as insufficiently devout, and feared that his anti-Habsburg policy would divide the Catholic world (which was in fact already badly divided) and aid the survival of Protestantism (which it did, but only outside France). Their main foreign sympathies lay with Spain as champion of Catholic causes. They also supported the Habsburgs in Germany, since success for Catholic arms there would help undo the *Edict of Nantes* at home, which was a key goal. However, by the time Richelieu took France into the *Thirty Years' War* on the side of Sweden and against Catholic Spain and the Catholic emperor, the dévots were too internally divided over the acceptability of *Jansenism* to actively oppose the king's war policy. They enjoyed a brief revival of influence at court during the regency of Louis XIV. See also *politiques (France)*.

***Devşirme* system.** "Recruitment of Tribute Children." The recruitment system of accepting levies of boy slaves, ages 8 to 20, taken from the Christian villages of the Ottoman Empire starting in the 1390s. The boys were raised as Muslims and either inducted into the *Janissary Corps* or the state bureaucracy. The system may have had origins in a prior Byzantine system which took one-in-five male Slav children as military slaves. In any case, it sustained the Janissaries for two centuries, though it was stopped for several decades after the incursions of *Timur* at the start of the 15th century. *Murad II* revived it in 1438 and it lasted until 1648 (with one last attempt at a European draft in 1703). The formula was one child every five years taken from a set of 40 Christian households with two or more sons, totaling 5,000–8,000 boys per year. In practice, the numbers taken were often smaller, as the state placed a premium on fiscal prudence and worked to keep the Janissary Corps small, with retired or dead Janissaries replaced with caution and care. Devşirme drafts rotated through the rural areas of the Balkans and Christian villages in Anatolia. Most towns and cities were exempt, as what was wanted was healthy, country youths with the stamina for military training and war. The Greek islands were exempt by the treaty terms under which they entered the Empire. Jews were excluded, as were miners needed to dig the metals and minerals required by early modern war. Also exempt were Christian households which performed garrison duty along strategic roads. Christian villages forced to surrender their children initially seethed over this form of

The formula was one child every five years taken from a set of 40 Christian households with two or more sons . . .

tribute. Later, some volunteered children to what was from any peasant's perspective an affluent and desirable future as an elite soldier in the capital. Some Islamic scholars objected to the Devşirme system as a violation of the Koranic proscription against enslavement of the sultan's own subjects, rather than permitted slavery of non-Muslim enemies or prisoners of war. Proponents argued for the spiritual advantage to boys raised as Muslims rather than in a ''false faith.'' In that claim, they used terms strikingly similar to arguments made by Christians who forced conversion of Iberian Muslims (and Jews) after 1492. The system was abolished in the early 18th century.

dey. The title of Ottoman military commanders in Algiers and Tunis. It was an electoral rather than hereditary office, chosen initially from among the local *corsairs*. See also *Barbarossa*; *bey*.

dhal. A Persian-Mughal style of small, round shield. It was made of beaten and polished steel with a small boss in the center, outlined by four or five smaller bosses. Carried in the left hand or on the arm, it was principally used by swordsmen and javelin troops.

dhow. A generic European term for Arab and Iranian sailing vessels, lateen-rigged, which dominated trade and war in the waters between Africa, Arabia, and the Indian subcontinent until the 15th century. They were largely displaced during the 16th century by the arrival of *caravels* and *galleons*.

dice shot. Anti-personnel ammunition comprised of many small, jagged pieces of iron. It was fired from point-blank range from a ship's rail or swivel guns down onto the crew of an enemy ship.

Diet of Worms (1495). See *Maximilian I*.

Diet of Worms (1507). It set out rules governing ranks, rates of pay, and general organization of the Imperial Army and defined the personal staff permitted to a *colonel*.

Diet of Worms (1521). See *Charles V, Holy Roman Emperor*; *Luther, Martin*.

dirlik yememiş. Ottoman troops paid a regular salary from general revenues. If they performed well in battle they might be promoted to payment from *timar* revenue or, in exceptional cases, from a *ziamet*.

Dirshau, Battle of (October 17–18, 1627). The ''new model'' Swedish army under *Gustavus Adolphus* met the Polish-Lithuanians in another battle for control of Royal Prussia. Gustavus deployed skirmishers to try to lure the Polish cavalry onto his well dug-in musketeers, but the Poles did not budge from their lines. Outnumbered 7,800 to 10,200, the Poles were withdrawing when Gustavus sent in his cavalry in a surprise assault. A hussar counterattack

saved the Polish infantry from being pushed into a bog. Depicted by Swedish historians as the first time the new model Swedish cavalry bested Polish hussars at their own game, it is probably more accurate to say that Swedish infantry firepower again proved master of the cavalry charge, which is why the Poles did not attempt one except to counterattack when facing death and defeat in the bog. Gustavus Adolphus was lightly wounded in the neck during the fighting.

discipline. See *military discipline*.

disease. As in all wars prior to the 20th century, death from disease was far more common among soldiers in the medieval and early modern eras than violent death at the hand of enemies in some now-forgotten siege or vaguely remembered battle. In military camps and among itinerant camp followers, pestilence of all kinds bred and spread. Bad food, worse water, lack of simple hygiene, rotten teeth, common respiratory infections, cold weather, damp clothes, and moldy straw beds, all conduced to febrile suffering, infection, and death. And there was plague, of all kinds. The *Black Death* of the mid-14th century carried away so many lives that death appeared as the Grim Reaper, the great harvester of souls who scythed down humans by the bushel without regard for their age, moral quality, or worldly goods and status. Could anything have more unsettled rigid hierarchical societies and old faiths? The suddenness with which epidemic or pandemic disease wiped out sizeable populations could, and often did, have a devastating impact on military operations. In 1524, for instance, 12,000 Swiss heading home from the *Italian Wars* lost no fewer than two-thirds of their complement to an uncertain plague. Three years later, a Habsburg army that had just raped and butchered its way through Rome was nearly wiped out by ''camp disease,'' a generic for any killing fever. The conquest of the Mezoamerican empires of the *Aztec* and *Inca* cannot be understood in the absence of the work of pandemic disease, which was far more devastating to their defenses than any Toledo steel blade or Castilian arquebus or lance wielded by the unwashed conquistadore who unknowingly infected them. Similarly, the English and French conquest of eastern North America was accomplished more by disease than battle, in which the local Indians were usually markedly superior. The fantastic reduction of the Indian population by disease in the 15th century, while immigration swelled the settler population, meant that the *Indian Wars* of the 16th–18th centuries were hugely lopsided and determined more by demographics than combat. On the other hand, while disease in the Americas preempted effective military opposition to European conquest and domination, African diseases blocked Europeans from settlement beyond a handful of coastal enclaves. As one forlorn Portuguese sailor wrote in the late 15th century: ''God, in all the entrances of this Ethiopia [Africa] we navigate . . . has placed a striking angel with a flaming sword who prevents us from penetrating into the interior . . . whence proceed these rivers of gold.''

Matters were, if anything, worse at sea. Dysentery, known to sailors as the ''bloody flux,'' was so commonplace as to be taken for granted as a normal hazard of a sailor's occupation. Not so with scurvy, a much feared disease of longer voyages and then unknown cause, called by sailors ''plague of the sea.'' It was encountered once new ship designs made long-distance sailing possible, thereby extending time spent at sea beyond the reach of fresh fruits and vegetables. Other illness came from food that rotted during months of storage in the bottom of a ship's hold, or from small beer or wine or water gone bad and scummy in green wooden casks. Waves of sickness swept over whole battle fleets, including the *Invincible Armada* of 1588 on its tragic return voyage, wiping out crews and *military discipline* in tandem. The general lack of potable water at sea, the need to relieve bodily functions below decks during storms or heavy swells, unhealthy companionship of livestock and animal offal in a ship's hold, and ignorance of basic hygiene killed the better part of many a crew on privateers, armed merchants, and warships. When new ship designs permitted long-range voyages to the coasts of West Africa, Brazil, or the Caribbean, a tropical stew of strange new diseases was introduced that further ravaged crews without any natural immunity. See also *Indian Wars*; *mourning war*; *Nine Years' War*; *siege warfare*; *Tenochtitlán, Second Siege of*.

Dithmarscher. A medieval levy available to German rulers who wished to raise peasant infantry. A Dithmarscher call up was made as late as 1500 for a war with Denmark.

Diu. See *Portuguese India*.

Diu, Battle of (February 2, 1509). A small fleet of Portuguese ships under Francisco de Almeida used highboard deck cannon to blow a much larger (at least 15,000 men) but low-lying Arab and Indian fleet out of the water. Victory over the combined *Mamlūk* and *Gujarati* galley fleets off Diu enabled the Portuguese to break the Arab-Venetian monopoly on the East Asian *spice trade*. Within a few years Gujarat was eliminated as an Indian Ocean sea power, replaced by Portugal. The victory was so decisive it secured Portuguese control of Indian Ocean trade routes and coastal markets for decades.

divanî hizmet. See *Kapikulu Askerleri*; *sipahis*.

divine fire-arrow. An early, primitive firearm developed in Ming China, though probably dating to the pre-Ming 13th century, made of bronze and firing an arrow over two feet long. See also *Yongle Emperor*.

dolman. See *hussars*.

do-maru. See *armor*.

Dominum Maris Baltici. ''Dominion over the Baltic Sea.'' This was the claimed right and status of the Danish monarchy, which demanded tolls of all shipping passing through the Baltic Sound. The Netherlands and England were content to pay for access to the rich Baltic trade with Sweden, Muscovy, and the cities of the *Hanse*. As Sweden developed a serious navy it moved to challenge Danish hegemony over the Sound. Denmark and Sweden fought two major wars over this issue, from 1563 to 1570 and 1611 to 1613. The defeat of *Christian IV* in 1629 and the intervention in Germany by *Gustavus Adolphus* the next year secured dominion of the Baltic for Sweden. See also *Northern War, First*; *Sound Tolls*.

Donauwörth. The most westerly Bavarian fortress. It was the site of numerous sieges in the wars of the 14th–17th centuries. *Gustavus Adolphus* took it on April 10, 1632, five days before the fight at *Rain*.

Donauwörth Incident (1607). See *Holy Roman Empire*; *Protestant Union*; *Reichskreis*.

donjon. The inner keep, tower, or stronghold of a castle. During the 12th century the donjon replaced the *motte* in most European castles, as siege techniques improved to the point that earth-and-timber forts were too easily and regularly breached and overwhelmed. During the 13th century donjons were rounded to account for the greater hitting power of the *trebuchet*. Square donjons were only built in outlying and more militarily backward areas after that, such as Ireland.

Don Juan of Austria (1547–1578). Bastard son of *Charles V*; half-brother of *Philip II*. He held commands on land and at sea. In 1568 he led a squadron of Spanish galleys against the corsairs of Algiers. Over he next two years he led a brutal, systematic, and successful suppression of a Morisco revolt in occupied Granada. In 1571 he led the Christian fleet to a spectacular victory at *Lepanto*. The next year he captured Tunis, briefly restoring the Hafsid dynasty. He was sent to the Netherlands in 1576 to subdue the Dutch Revolt. Initially, he lacked troops and money and was forced to acquiesce in the *Pacification of Ghent* as he tried to rebuild royal authority from the ruble that *Alba* left behind. But after a few months Don Juan returned to arms to repress the rebellion. Together with his cousin, the *Duke of Parma*, he routed a Beggar army at *Gembloux* (January 31, 1578). He died of fever in October 1578.

Doppelgänger. ''Counterpart'' or ''dead ringer.'' In a *Landsknechte* company or regiment, recruits passed through a symbolic portal erected in the camp. As they passed, the muster officer called out their name, rate of pay, and the military equipment they were required to possess. Other officers watched to ensure that no ''Doppelgänger'' passed through the portal to collect double

pay, and to prevent recruits wearing armor or carrying weapons borrowed solely for the purpose of the walk-through but whose actual absence would leave the company underarmed for battle. This was important to ensure a company's head count was correct and that all men carried the arms called for in the mercenary contract. See also *Doppelsöldner*.

Doppelhacken. A German wall or hook gun in common use in town defense in the 15th–16th centuries. See also *hackbut*.

Doppelsöldner. ''Double pay.'' An experienced mercenary in a *Landsknechte* company who earned double pay (*Sold*) for standing in the front ranks in battle. In an army of Landsknechte a *Doppelgänger,* in the sense of ''dead ringer,'' was always engaged in scamming the company whereas a Doppelsöldner received honest double pay for assuming extra combat risk. See also *Gevierthaufen*.

Doria, Andrea (1468–1560). Genoese naval *condottieri*. He built a private pirate fleet to capture Barbary and Ottoman ships and raid Muslim ports. In 1528 he retook Genoa from the French. Made an Imperial admiral by *Charles V*, he pushed the Ottomans from the Morea, which provoked *Barbarossa* to counterattack and take the fight to coastal Italy. Doria led the great Imperial assault on *Tunis* in 1534. In 1537 he lifted the Muslim siege of Corfu. He finally forced Barbarossa to fight at *Preveza* (1538), only to lose to the Algerian corsair and dey. Andrea Doria opposed, but led, a disastrous expedition to *Algiers* in 1541. He retired in 1555, handing command to his nephew, *Gian Andrea Doria*.

Doria, Gian Andrea (1539–1606). Nephew of *Andrea Doria*. He inherited command of the Genoese and allied galley fleet from his uncle. His conduct on the Christian flank at *Lepanto* (1571), was less than stellar. His failure to engage the enemy led to speculation that he made a secret deal with the sultan.

Dornach, Battle of (July 22, 1499). This was the third major clash of the *Swabian War* (1499) between *Maximilian I* and the *Swiss Confederation*. The Swiss had already beaten Swabian troops twice that year, at *Frastenz* and *Calven*. On the field of Dornach, south of Basel, the *Swiss square* first met its great imitator, the *Landsknechte*. Marching through the night, the Swiss caught the careless Germans wholly unprepared for battle, startling them awake in poorly protected field works. The fight was short-lived but the slaughter immense, as the Swiss pitilessly ran down and butchered fleeing Landsknechte. The victory at Dornach confirmed the independence of the Swiss Confederation for once and all. Within 15 years Basle, Schaffhausen, and Appenzell all agreed to join, raising the number of unified Cantons to 13. The Swiss were thereafter free of invasions of their homeland for over 200 years.

Dorpat, Battle of (1501). See *Livonian Order*; *Muscovy, Grand Duchy of*.

Dorpat, Sack of (January 1558). *Ivan IV* denounced the *Livonian Order* as criminal heathens who did not follow the true religion and sent a large army to slay its way through Estonia. At Dorpat the Muscovites slew at least 10,000 civilians as an example to inspire terror elsewhere. The tactic worked: they moved on to capture Narva and 20 other cowed and terrified towns.

double cannon. See *cañon de batir*.

double volley. See *volley fire*.

doubling the ranks. Infantry and cavalry were usually aligned in ranks of even number (12, 8, or 6, the latter being the preferred Swedish number introduced by *Gustavus Adolphus*). That meant the frontage of guns they opposed to the enemy could be easily doubled by ordering back ranks forward, each man filling a gap between two men in a front rank. Such a maneuver was called ''doubling the ranks.'' See also *drill*.

Dover, Battle of (August 24, 1217). A large French squadron sailed for England from Calais under Eustace the Monk. The English, under Hubert de Burgh, gained the *weather gauge*, bore up to the French and attacked. The English broke apart the French formation and proceeded to defeat their ships in detail. This was a highly unusual, because mobile, medieval sea battle. It secured England from assayed French invasion for many generations.

The Downs, Battle of (October 11/21, 1639). *Olivares* sent 20,000 Spanish reinforcements north in a grand convoy of 40 Spanish (and a few English) transports and 60 warship escorts, a fleet he built up for years to wrest strategic initiative from the Dutch. The convoy was met by a much smaller Dutch fleet under Admiral *Marten van Tromp*. The fleets engaged briefly on September 16 and again on September 18. While the Spanish regrouped and made for neutral English shores, the Dutch reinforced. Off the mouth of the River Thomas in ''The Downs,'' a small English squadron tried to prevent the fight. Tromp attacked the Spanish fleet after brushing aside the English ships. The highly proficient Dutch navy systematically raked and bombarded the desperate Spanish, sinking, burning, or taking as prizes fully 70 Spanish ships. The defeat was far more thorough and decisive than that of the *Invincible Armada* of 1588, and helped push Spain to the peace table at *Westphalia*. See also *Eighty Years' War*; *Spanish Road*.

. . . bombarded the desperate Spanish, sinking, burning, or taking as prizes fully 70 Spanish ships.

dragoons. Soldiers who rode to battle but dismounted to fight on foot, as opposed to *cavalry*, or soldiers who rode to battle and fought from horseback. Firearms encouraged development of dragoons because it was difficult to fire

a gun with any accuracy, and impossible to reload, from horseback. Firearms dragoons appeared in China by 1429. Within 100 years, light cavalry units that dismounted to fight were to be found all over Asia, the Middle East, and Europe. These troops specialized in scouting, raiding, foraging, devastation of the countryside, and convoying supply trains. In terms of accuracy and firepower, they remained a poor match for horse archers until cartridge-using, breech-loading carbines made firing and reloading from horseback feasible. See also *arquebusiers à cheval*; *Bedouin*; *equites*; *ghulams*; *hobelars*; *petronels*; *pishchal'niki*; *stradiots*; *strel'sty*; *Tüfeçis, turcopoles*.

drake. A 16th–17th century naval gun of varying caliber.

Drake, Francis (1540–1596). ''El Drache.'' English *privateer*. Born to the Devonshire gentry, he was mentored by *John Hawkyns*, accompanying him on his third voyage in 1569 which ended in disaster and defeat at San Juan de Ulúa. Only Drake and Hawkyns escaped, with their ships badly damaged and with bloodied and depleted crews. From 1570 to 1573, Drake preyed on the Spanish, seeking not just profit but also revenge, and cooperating toward those ends with French corsairs. He raided treasure ships of the Spanish *flota*, securing a great fortune while winning lasting fame in England and infamy in Spain. His constant aggressions against the shipping and ports of the New World ensured that Spain enjoyed ''no peace beyond the line'' (of demarcation) set by the pope between Spain and Portugal in the 1494 *Treaty of Tordesillas*. In 1572 he seized Nombre de Dios after a brief skirmish with the town militia in which he was wounded. This forced him to withdraw, leaving the town and its full treasure house to be retaken by Spanish reinforcements. Drake allied with *cimarónes* the next year to carry out a failed ambush of a mule train carting silver overland to Nombre de Dios. He joined *Huguenot* pirates in a second try a few months later, and seized so much treasure his men could not carry it. Already a court favorite and perhaps also a royal lover to *Elizabeth I*, Drake sailed for Peru in December 1577, in the race-built galleon the ''Golden Hind,'' with four smaller ships in tow. He sacked Valparaiso, captured a treasure ship, and decided to return to England via the Pacific. That meant traveling from Peru to Java, but then to Sierra Leone, the last leg covering 8,500 miles without benefit of friendly ports. He arrived back in Plymouth on September 26, 1580, having circumnavigated the globe and proven that ocean-going trade and war were now feasible. In 1585–1586, Drake undertook still wider and more damaging raids against Spanish interests, carrying 12 companies of soldiers armed with firearms to be put ashore by his fleet on amphibious raids. One of the captains in this small fleet was *Martin Frobisher*. On November 17, Drake landed his infantry east of Santiago in Cape Verde. They stormed the city while he bombarded it from the harbor. On January 1, 1586, he used the same drill to capture Santo Domingo. A subsequent attack on well-defended Cartagena was met by stronger resistance and return fire from several harbor galleys, but he carried that town also.

On April 11, 1587, Drake sailed for Cadiz, where he burned a half dozen Spanish warships, desecrated Catholic churches, and generally ''singed the beard of the King of Spain.'' In 1588 he was one of four captains who led the English fleet during running battles in the Channel with the *Invincible Armada*. The next year Drake commanded an English fleet that was supposed to destroy the remnants of the Spanish Armada at Santander. Instead, he sailed to Lisbon, where his marines were repulsed with casualties. Ever the pirate, he took 60 neutral *Hanse* ships as prizes off the Tagus. After sacking Vigo, Drake sailed for the Azores in hope of intercepting the annual treasure fleet en route to Seville, but missed it. With hundreds of men dying onboard ship, he returned profitless to England. This failure kept Drake out of favor with the Queen for the next five years. In 1595, Drake and Hawkyns sailed to plunder the Caribbean with 26 ships and 2,500 men. The two ''sea dog'' captains had a falling out over strategy which was only resolved by Hawkyns' death from fever on November 22, 1595. Drake went ahead with his preferred attack on Puerto Rico, which was repulsed as Hawkyns had warned. Drake took Nombre de Dios (January 6, 1596) landing 600 men in hope of again intercepting the silver mule train from Panama. But he came down with fever and died aboard ship on February 7, 1596.

Suggested Reading: Kenneth Andrews, *Drake's Voyages* (1968; 1970); Harry Kelsey, *Sir Francis Drake: The Queen's Pirate* (1998); John Sugden, *Sir Francis Drake* (1992).

Drang nach Osten. ''Drive to the East.'' See *Teutonic Knights, Order of*.

drekkar/drekki. ''Dragon ship(s).'' A generic term for any very large warship, but notably a *longship*.

Dreux, Battle of (December 19, 1562). The first set-piece battle of the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629). A *Huguenot* army of 11,000 men was led by *Condé* and *Coligny*. They faced a Catholic-Guise army numbering 19,000 under *Anne de Montmorency*, Constable of France. The Catholics crossed the Eure and formed a battle line between two villages south of Dreux. After two hours of hesitation over whether to spill the blood of fellow nobles and Frenchmen, at last some Protestants charged the Catholic line. They were beaten off in part because their hired *Reiters* used the ineffective tactic of *caracole* and fell back in disorder after first contact with enemy artillery. After reforming, the Huguenot cavalry penetrated the Swiss pike ranks on the Catholic left, then routed the Royalist cavalry and captured Montmorency. While the Swiss stood fast, the rest of the left wing of the Catholic line turned and ran. The Huguenot cavalry overpursued, overrunning even the baggage train. As they returned they again engaged the Swiss, who were attacked simultaneously by companies of *Landsknechte* in Huguenot pay. The Swiss repulsed their hated German enemies, then attacked the Huguenot guns. As they fell back from that failing effort German Reiters charged them, thinking the victory secure and hoping to plunder royalist baggage and pick over Swiss

corpses. The Huguenot cavalry was by now badly dispersed. That permitted a counterattack by the right wing of the Catholic army, which had stood fast all through the heavy action on the left. The Catholics now attacked into the exposed Huguenot infantry, bereft of any cavalry screen or flank protection. Great damage was done and Condé was captured. Coligny rallied 1,000 Huguenot horse and sallied from the woods. This prevented a rout of the Protestant infantry, which withdrew protected by Coligny's cavalry. The whole fight had taken just two hours. Each side was badly mauled and neither was sure it had won or lost. At least 6,000–8,000 lay dead, many among them Swiss and German mercenaries. The Swiss had proven their mettle in battle yet again and remained in Royal service, but French monarchs never again hired Landsknechte companies. Among the dead were nearly 1,000 French nobles, a fact that stunned France when it was later learned and hardened hearts against compromise. Catholics claimed victory in the end, but they had paid a huge price: several of their top leaders were dead or taken prisoner, the crown was near bankruptcy, and the rebellion continued.

drill.

In the Infantry

As foot soldiers displaced *heavy cavalry* from the battlefield, men raised to war were replaced with commoners recruited for a season or two of campaigning. Drill became the key to victory in battle for these new armies, as a means of turning inexperienced townsmen or peasants into soldiers. New infantry tactics were developed by Flemings, English, Scots, and Swiss during the 14th century, and mimicked deliberately by everyone after that. These required keeping tight formation above all else, with pikes supporting halberdiers, arquebusiers, and archers. If a square became disordered enemy cavalry could break into it, opening alleys of confusion, panic, searing wounds, and death. On the other hand, if a formation was too tight men could not swing slashing polearms or load guns or shoot bows or crossbows. Drill was developed to teach the new infantry to keep in formation while on the move, and to shift from march order to battle order, and into different tactical deployments. It was crucial to move with alacrity from line or column into pike squares (or later, battle lines), whether on the attack or in defense. Defensive drills were the most important as defense in this era, as in all, was inherently more potent and rugged than offense. Drills were devised to practice fighting from inside or behind palisades or other fortifications, as well as on an unobstructed field of battle. Drill became so important several European rulers tried to outlaw popular games and replace them with military exercises and martial arts. During the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453), France and England both passed laws or issued edicts banning games such as bowls and dice, and ordered plain folk to instead practice archery on Saturdays. *Charles the Rash* of Burgundy, as in all matters related to the theory if not the actual practice of war, took the lead in enforcing rigorous drill. Constant practice in uniform procedures produced unforeseen positive side

effects, notably greater unit cohesion: men who drilled together tended to stay together in battle, to obey unit orders, and to develop an early form of esprit de corps.

The breakthrough to modern firearms drill came with reforms inaugurated by *Maurits of Nassau* in the 1590s. The ''Dutch system'' became the standard for all European and modern armies during the 17th century. It involved a number of discrete areas of infantry training. First was small arms drill, wherein men practiced how to load and fire their muskets in files (small units). Next came practice of maneuvering to the beat of a drum, with the main emphasis on learning drum signals. Some armies used brass trumpets instead, or voice calls, but the low reverberations of drums—like an elephant's trumpeting—carried farthest in battle and was therefore the most widely adopted means of signaling. The next major drill was movement of larger units (*squadrons* and *companies*). This included ''distance marching,'' or practicing various regular spacings between ranks and files. *Open order* drill with wider spaces was permitted for marching to battle, but *close order* drill was required for action during battle. Other large unit drills included ''*doubling the ranks*,'' where ranks in echelon merged by back ranks stepping forward. This was especially important for pikemen. Separation of doubled ranks was also practiced, as was facing left, right, and about on command. Also drilled was double-time marching and counter-marching, the latter a complex maneuver wherein ranks in echelon practiced moving through or around one another in both forward and reverse directions. Wheeling involved movement either at right angles to one end of the line or anchored at the center. Once squad and company drill was mastered, battalion (battle group) drill was practiced. On rare occasions, rehearsed maneuverings of an entire army were carried out.

In the Cavalry

Older medieval weapons training and horsemanship skills learned in *tournament*s gave way during the late 15th century to a variety of new battlefield maneuvers that emphasized not the blunt charge, but quicker wheeling formations designed to bring missile weapons to bear (such as the *wheel lock* pistol), not to try to break through the ranks of a deadly pike-and-arquebus square by force majeure. Such drill was as much about training the horses as training their riders. It was essential to practice deployment from columnar march formation into a battle frontage. Fighting drill usually concerned halving cavalry ranks from eight to four, or later, from six to three, and ''facing about'' to right or left to widen the frontage presented an enemy. Redoubling ranks would produce additional frontage. While this created highly vulnerable flanks of one's own, if properly executed these maneuvers offered the chance of catching a less well-trained enemy cavalry troop in the flank. Against infantry, cavalry practiced the *caracole* until some returned to shock tactics under reforms introduced by *Gustavus Adolphus*. See also *Feldweibel*.

Drogheda, Sack of (September 11, 1649). *Oliver Cromwell* moved against Drogheda, in Ireland, with 10,000 hardened Puritan veterans of the *English*

Civil Wars. Awaiting them were just 3,000 Irish and English Catholics under *Ormonde*. Cromwell blew down the town's thin walls with his artillery and his men stormed and sacked the city. All Catholic clergy were butchered, along with many civilians, in a massacre that embittered Anglo-Irish relations for many decades. See also *Wexford, Sack of*.

dromon. A large *galley* peculiar to the Byzantine navy. It sported two banks of 25 oars each.

drums. See *drill*.

Druse. A small Middle Eastern sect in schism from mainstream *Islam* since the 11th century, and highly secretive and socially closed as a result. The Druse fought the Christian invaders during the *Crusades*, but in later centuries they were mostly left alone in their mountain isolation by the Egyptian *Mamlūks*, and by the Ottomans. See *Ismaili*.

***druzhyna*.** The armed retinue of the princes of Kievan Rus.

Dunbar, Battle of (April 27, 1296). See *Scottish Wars*.

Dunbar, Battle of (September 3, 1650). To put down Scottish support for the exiled Charles II, *Oliver Cromwell* moved north with 16,000 veterans of the English and Irish wars, assisted by *George Monk* and *John Lambert*. The Puritans were met by a Scottish army of 25,000 under *David Leslie*. The Scottish general cleverly maneuvered Cromwell against the coast, even as the English army was reduced by some 5,000 men through harassing attacks, disease, and desertion. Under pressure from Presbyterian fanatics and clerics to crush the English, Leslie gave up his advantage in the heights above Cromwell and moved downslope to attack. It was a mistake: Cromwell smashed Leslie's right flank, then charged across the field to dismantle his center. Cromwell lost few men, but Scottish losses were staggering: 3,000 dead and 10,000 prisoners, most of whom were forcibly deported to the West Indies as indentured laborers.

It was a mistake: Cromwell smashed Leslie's right flank, then charged across the field to dismantle his center.

Dungan's Hill, Battle of (1647). See *English Civil Wars*.

Dupplin Moor, Battle of (1332). See *Edward III*; *Scottish Wars*.

Dutch Army. At the start to the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648) the Dutch relied on their superb urban militia, the *schutterijen*, supplemented by German and other mercenaries. In the 1590s, *Maurits of Nassau* was commissioned to undertake a major modernization and reform of the army. In addition to the

qualitative changes he made in its training, tactics, transport, and weapons, it grew from 20,000 men in 1588 to 32,000 by 1595. By 1607 it was second only to the Spanish in size, at 51,000 men, and first in the world in technical proficiency and advanced tactics and training. During the *Twelve Years' Truce* (1609–1621) it was cut back to 47,000 men, then to a low of 29,000. When the war resumed in 1621 the numbers rose again, to 48,000 in the garrisons alone. At its greatest enlistment, during the late 1620s, the Dutch Army mustered 130,000 (including garrisons). About 70,000 of these were raised directly from the population by the government of the United Provinces, the rest were foreign mercenaries. All troops were paid through a sophisticated tax and war finance system unique in Europe (only the Ottomans were more advanced during this period). In training, equipment, and professionalism, the Dutch Army was the most modern and effective in Europe, unbeatable by the also tough and talented, but badly overstretched and underfinanced Spanish. Note: The figures here do not include the sizeable and powerful Dutch navy, originally run by the *Sea Beggars* and later by the state.

Dutch exercises. See *counter-march*; *drill*; *Maurits of Nassau*.

Dutch musket. See *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *Maurits of Nassau*; *muskets*.

Dutch Revolt. See *Eighty Years' War*.

dziesietniks. ''Tenth-men.'' A low-rank, closer to a modern NCO than a modern officer, in charge of a file of 10 Polish infantrymen inside a *rota* of pikers, shield-bearers, arquebusiers, and musketeers. Given the extent of *dead-pays*, each rota was probably only eight or fewer men. See also *Haiduks*.

E

eagle knight. A class of elite soldier of the *Aztec Empire*. They wore an elaborate eagle mask and headdress decorated with eagle feathers and presenting a projecting beak and feral appearance. On ritual occasions the best warriors were given the thigh or arm of a captured and sacrificed enemy to eat. Eagle knights took in boys for military apprenticeship, training them in the ''Eagle House'' (''cuauhcalli''). The other class of elite Aztec warrior was the *jaguar knight*.

Eastern Army. See *Ōnin War*; *Sekigahara, Battle of*.

Eastern Association Army. The most famous of the regional armies that fought the *English Civil Wars*, because it hosted *Oliver Cromwell*'s regiment of *Ironsides* cavalry and operated in the critical theater around London. It comprised forces from Cambridge, Hertford, Norfolk, and Sussex. It was dissolved in 1645, its veterans joining the *New Model Army*.

Eastern Route Army. See *Hakata Bay, Battle of (1281)*.

East India Company (EIC). ''John Company.'' Ultimately the most successful of several East India Companies, it received a monopoly charter from *Elizabeth I* on December 31, 1600. Dutch, French, and Danish East India companies were founded in 1602, 1604, and 1614, respectively. The EIC was not much active before 1604, when peace with Spain ended profits made close to home (in the Channel) from *privateering*. London's merchants then became more interested in joint stock monopolies to exploit more distant opportunities. The EIC was not an imperial exercise: Asian trade, unlike that with America, was not associated with settlements via crown or charter colonies, but with entrepôts and pure trade unsaddled by settlements. The first EIC expedition to India threaded through the Portuguese-controlled Indian Ocean in 1608.

Its first factory was established at Surat in 1612. In 1622 the EIC allied with *Abbas I* of Iran, ferrying his troops to engage the Portuguese on *Hormuz*. With the Portuguese gone Abbas gave control of trade with western Iran to the EIC. Cleverly, Abbas granted monopoly access to the rest of his empire to the Dutch *Vereenigde Oostindische Compaagnie* (VOC). Thereafter, the EIC employed a factory system of fortified trading posts in competition with the VOC over the *spice trade*, and with the French to penetrate the Indian interior and control nawab allies and armies. It broke relations with the VOC in 1623 after 10 EIC officers were murdered in Amboina. In 1640 it built a fort and factory in southwest India that later grew into the metropolis of Madras. Its glory days lay ahead of this period, in the 17th–18th centuries.

Suggested Reading: Philip Lawson, *The East India Company* (1993).

East Prussia. ''Ducal Prussia.'' The historic base of the Order of the *Teutonic Knights*. It was incorporated into Brandenburg-Prussia during the late Middle Ages. See also *Elbing, Battle of*; *Prussia*; *War of the Cities*.

East Stoke, Battle of (1487). See *Wars of the Roses*.

Ecorcheurs. ''Skinners'' Successors to the *routiers* and *Free Companies*, these murderous, pillaging bands ran amok in France and western parts of Germany in the later part of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). Many were former *Armagnacs*. Charles VII turned some of these dangerous men into frontier garrison troops, taming their wilder and more desperate natures with a constant salary. He placed others in his *compagnies de l'ordonnance*. See also *akutō*; *ashigaru*; *aventuriers*; *Celâli Revolts*; *guerre couverte*; *ronin*; *wakō*.

Ecumenical Councils. General church councils called to consider matters of faith and doctrine and to determine what was orthodox belief and what might be condemned as *heresy*. For the Catholic Church they provided guidance on doctrine in addition to scripture, at least wherever popes decreed conciliar findings to be canon law (or councils so decreed, as during the 15th century). The first seven councils were accepted by the Orthodox Church as authoritative, but from the eighth onward Catholics and Orthodox divided over conciliar authority in a schism which only hardened over the centuries. The main issue in the divide was papal assertion of superior doctrinal and governing authority. Most Protestants accepted the first four councils as ''ecumenical,'' but following the advice of *Martin Luther* they did not consider canon law to be binding in preference to revelations of scripture or even individual conscience. The most important ecumenical councils of the period of concern here, were: First Lateran (1123), which spoke to new issues arising from the *Crusades*; Third Lateran (1179), which condemned the Waldensian and *Albigensian* ''heresies'' and led to savage military suppression of heretics in southern France; it also founded the Medieval *Inquisition*; Fourth Lateran (1215), which marked the peak power of the Medieval Church in Western

Europe; Lyons (1245), which excommunicated Holy Roman Emperor Friedrich II and preached a Crusade that was led by the Louis IX (''St. Louis,'' 1215–1270); Vienne (1311–1313), held during the ''Avignon Captivity'' of the papacy, which repressed the *Knights Templars* and other accused ''heretics''; *Constance* (1414–1418), which ended the *Great Schism* and condemned and executed *Jan Hus*, triggering the *Hussite Wars* in Bohemia; *Basel-Ferrara-Florence* (1431, 1438, 1439), which again dealt with the Hussite rebellion and invasions of Austria, Hungary, and Germany; Fifth Lateran (1512–1517), whose planning for a crusade by the *Holy League* against the Ottomans was interrupted by the initial public protest of Martin Luther and the start of the *Protestant Reformation* in Germany; and *Trent* (1545–1563), which condemned the ''errors'' of Protestantism and set the stage for hard confessional confrontation and the *Counter-Reformation*. See also *Coptic Church*.

Edgecote Moor, Battle of (1470). See *Wars of the Roses*.

edged weapons. See *axes*; *daggers*; *halberd*; *lance (1)*; *mace*; *pike*; *poleax*; *swords*.

Edgehill, Battle of (October 23, 1642). The first major battle of the *English Civil Wars*. Parliament sent an army of 15,000 poor foot and 5,000 horse, under the *3rd Earl of Essex*, to defend London against a *Cavalier* army of about 13,500 led by *Charles I* that was strong in cavalry but weak in infantry. The *Roundheads* deployed in two lines of eight ranks each, Dutch style. The Royalists lined up Swedish style: five blocks with cannon to the front and cavalry on the wings. One troop of Roundheads advanced, fired into the ground and changed sides. The fight really began with a Cavalier charge led by *Prince Rupert*, and another on the far wing that routed both wings of Roundhead horse. But the impetuous Rupert overpursued (a bad habit of English cavalry as late as Waterloo). That left the Royalist infantry exposed. Essex attacked with his infantry and captured the Royalist artillery train. Rupert returned, horses spent, but in time to prevent disaster. About 2,000 were killed or wounded in total, but no decision was reached. Still, Charles went on to occupy Banbury and Oxford and remained in control of Wales and the west of England.

Edict of Alès (June 28, 1629). ''Édit de Grace Alès.'' This royal edict issued by *Louis XIII* established peace between the confessional communities in France following the surrender of *La Rochelle* in 1628. It confirmed the loss by the *Huguenots* of all fortress towns and military rights guaranteed in the royal brevets of the *Edict of Nantes* (1598). While disbanding corporate and military structures, it affirmed the Huguenots as a distinct religious community within the French nation, but one now clearly defined as an island of heresy within a broad Catholic sea, never again a continent apart or a state-within-a-state.

Edict of Amboise (March 19, 1563). First of the ''edicts of pacification,'' this compromise by *Catherine de Medici* and *Condé* formally ended the first of the *French Civil Wars*. It amended the terms of the *Edict of Saint-Germain* to permit *Huguenots* to worship in the suburbs of one town in each bailliage of France. Protestant nobles were additionally allowed to worship in the new fashion within their homes and on their estates. This grant spoke to the prominent military role of Protestant nobles but left the main locus of religious strife, non-noble Protestant communities in the towns, outside the limits of official toleration. Notably, it was sent directly to provincial governors instead of the parlements. In Orléans, Protestants burned churches rather than hand them back to Catholics. While Protestants were disappointed, Catholics were enraged. Most wanted war to drive ''heresy'' from the sacred kingdom and repress rebellion. Paris was especially vigilant in ferreting out and murdering Protestants and preventing the return of pardoned heretics. The effort at Amboise to bypass confessional opposition by imposing peace on nonreligious lines thus failed.

Edict of Beaulieu (May 6, 1576). ''Peace of Monsieur.'' *Henri III* ended the fifth of the *French Civil Wars* with this edict, forced upon him by bankruptcy that denied him an army sufficient to meet the *Huguenot* army and German mercenaries massed in the south. His brother, Francois, also aligned against him. Beaulieu represented an unexpected about turn for Huguenot fortunes following the catastrophe of the *St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres* (1572). It called on Protestants to restore Catholic worship inside towns, forbade Protestant services in Paris, and provocatively referred to the Huguenot faith as the ''religion prétendue réformée.'' Nevertheless, Beaulieu was an affirmation of Huguenot military and political rejuvenation and Henri III's weakness. For the first time since the persecutions of *Francis I,* Protestants were granted freedom of conscience and religion everywhere except within the walls of Paris. The massacres were formally declared a crime and the number of fortified ''surety towns'' (*place de sûreté*) permitted the Huguenots was raised from four to eight. A set of ''secret articles'' not published with the main text granted extensive lands and pensions to leading Protestant princes and Catholic *Malcontents* as a hoped-for guarantee of future quietude. Many of its articles were revived in whole or part by *Henri IV* in the *Edict of Nantes*. See also *devotes/dévots*; *politiques (France)*.

Edict of Châteaubriant (1551). See *Henri II, of France*.

Edict of January (1562). See *Edict of Saint-Germain*.

Edict of Longjumeau (March 1568). ''The Little Peace.'' The peace that ended the second *French Civil War* as mass desertions and shortage of funds and supplies struck both armies. It restored the terms of the *Edict of Amboise*: Protestantism was recognized by the crown and allowed in one suburb of one town in each bailliage, and on the estates of *Huguenot* nobles. Since it was the

failure of Amboise that sparked the Second Civil War, its revived terms in Longjumeau only suffered loathing and opposition from the *Guise* and from most Catholics, inside and outside France. The *Cardinal de Lorraine* secured revocation of the edict in August. Some historians posit that Longjumeau was never intended to keep the peace but was a trap set for the Huguenots, since they partly disarmed but the Catholics did not. Within just six months the third of the *French Civil Wars* broke out.

Edict of Nantes (April 13, 1598). A royal edict issued in four separate documents by *Henri IV*, including a number of secret articles that exempted specific towns and individuals from its terms. It extended legal toleration to the *Huguenots* and established temporary religious coexistence within France. The traditional view was that the Edict of Nantes was intended by Henri to establish religious toleration of *Calvinism* and thereby settle forever the deep confessional division that led to the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629). Recent scholarship stresses instead that the edict was never intended to, and did not, establish a permanent religious settlement. Nor was it a direct anticipation of the 18th-century idea of religious toleration achieved along secular lines, as older histories often argued. What it did was more limited in ambition and effect: call a halt to confessional warfare and active persecution in order to give the nation time to heal in an atmosphere of cold war between hostile confessions. Intriguingly, the edict did not refer to the doctrinal issues that divided the Christian world into warring camps, largely because the religious divide was as much social as doctrinal and the edict wisely aimed to bridge the first by ignoring the second. In its 92 general articles and 56 secret articles, and two royal brevets, the Edict of Nantes drew heavily from the *Edict of Beaulieu* (1576). Its articles allowed freedom of conscience and worship in Huguenot towns and the homes of Protestant nobles, and made provision for Protestant instruction; other articles exempted specific Catholic towns from having to suffer Protestant services. Huguenots were granted full civil rights in education, public offices, and matters of inheritance, but not to levy taxes or raise armies, erect fortifications, or otherwise act as if they were a sovereign republic within France. On the other side, the sacral and Catholic nature of the French crown was affirmed and Catholic worship was to be permitted everywhere, including Protestant areas where it had been banished during the civil wars. Moreover, Huguenots were obliged to keep and respect all Catholic feast days, to marry under the Catholic rite, and to pay tithes to the Catholic Church. This was not a treaty between equals: it was a peace based on a guarantee of limited minority rights for Protestants within a kingdom clearly defined as permanently and fundamentally Catholic.

The Edict of Nantes was not universally well-received, but was especially opposed by the majority Catholics.

The royal brevets were key. They proved effective since they did not have to be registered with provincial parlements (courts), which were still dominated by Catholic militants and which had earlier rejected all royal attempts to

extend limited legal rights to Calvinists. By that same token, the brevets could be (and would be) revoked by Henri's successors. The first granted Protestants a subsidy for the salaries of their pastors, somewhat assuaging the requirement to tithe to Catholic bishops. The second brevet guaranteed limited military rights, including to armed Huguenot garrisons in some 200 fortified towns, with the Protestant militia paid by the crown. This military brevet was to expire in eight years, confirming that Henri expected the Huguenots to abjure and return to the Gallican church, and that even he would not forever tolerate Huguenot demands that they be left as a state-within-a-state. In 1606 he would be forced by circumstance to renew the second brevet for another eight years, but he managed to cut the subsidy in half. His successor would revoke the military brevet entirely, but for the moment it helped secure the Huguenots in their core holdings and hence kept the peace.

The Edict of Nantes was not universally well-received, but was especially opposed by the majority Catholics. What forced acceptance was the understanding that rejection meant resumption of the bloody civil wars, against which even the peasants were now rebelling. Even so, the edict was not formally registered by the Parlement of Paris until February 25, 1599, while radical Rouen did not ratify it until 1609. Still, the edict achieved broad if begrudging support from moderate Catholics, Protestants, and Royalists. The peasants probably did not understand it, but they welcomed anything that ended fighting in the countryside. The edict's main purpose and effect was to bring a 10-year halt to protracted civil wars that had weakened France internationally and led to repeated armed foreign intervention over a period of 30 years. France regained a measure of internal stability that enabled Henri to rescue it from bankruptcy and begin to repair a shattered political and economic order, even as he hoped that in time abjuration by all Huguenots might restore social peace as well. If the military articles of the edict rankled against Henri's assertion of indivisible royal authority and sovereignty, they upset his successor more, and they enraged the *dévots*, spiritual successors to the Catholic League. After a brief Huguenot revolt following Henri's assassination in 1610, with small fighting lasting to 1614, the young *Louis XIII* renewed the amended brevets of the edict. Its main military provisions remained in effect until Richelieu finally crushed the Huguenots militarily and took La Rochelle in 1628. That led to the *Edict of Alès* in 1629 which left the Edict of Nantes' religious terms intact but ended all Protestant military rights. The religious terms were observed until Louis XIV formally revoked them in 1685, 87 years after their promulgation.

Suggested Reading: Janine Garrison, *L'Edit de Nantes et sa révocation* (1985); Mack Holt, *French Wars of Religion, 1562–1629* (1995).

Edict of Restitution (June 1617). See *French Civil Wars*; *Louis XIII*.

Edict of Restitution (March 28, 1629). An imperial edict by *Ferdinand II* ratified on March 6 and published on March 28, 1629, dealing with the

religious question in the Holy Roman Empire. Its assumption of Imperial victory, and tone of Catholic triumphalism, marked the summit of Habsburg power and of *Counter-Reformation* influence over the course of the *Thirty Years' War*, and the beginning of the end for both. It reaffirmed that Calvinist worship remained illegal within the empire and promised in effect to reduce Lutherans to a weak minority, despite the support Ferdinand had received in the war from several important Lutheran princes. It called for restoration to Catholics of ecclesiastical rights, offices, and properties secularized since the *Convention of Passau* (1552). In the view of Catholics this perfected the ''Religionsfriede'' (religious peace) agreed at *Augsburg* in 1555, but for Protestants that peace was illegally invalidated by the new edict. If implemented as written, the edict promised to settle the religious question in the whole empire the way it had been settled in Bohemia after 1621: by stripping Protestants of titles and lands, returning numerous monasteries and bishoprics to control of the Catholic Church, revoking religious toleration that had taken deep root over the preceding 75 years, and driving many Protestants into exile. Moreover, Ferdinand planned to put family members into several of the restored bishoprics, extending Habsburg power into parts of Germany it had never before reached. All this was, in the words of Ronald Asch, ''a political miscalculation of gigantic proportions. If a chance for a concerted religious crusade against Protestantism all over Europe ever existed, it was already gone by spring 1629.'' The reaction came at a meeting of Ferdinand and the Electors at Regensburg in August 1630. Ferdinand was refused election of his son as King of Rome, he was not voted funds for his army in Italy, and the resignation of *Albrecht von Wallenstein* was insisted upon. Seldom has a would-be autocrat fallen so far, so fast. By promoting a Catholic policy above reasons of state, the authors of the edict—Ferdinand, and his lawyers and priests—failed to realize that much of Catholic Europe was already past any willingness to support a ''Catholic'' war. For its own ''raisons d'etat,'' Catholic France was at that moment readying to wage war, if need be, against Catholic Spain and Catholic Austria, in open alliance with Protestant princes and kings and tacitly also with the Sultan of the Ottoman Empire. See also *Arnim, Hans Georg von*; *Edict of Alès*; *Ferdinand III, Holy Roman Emperor*; *Magdeburg, Sack of*; *Prague, Peace of*; *Westphalia, Peace of*.

Suggested Reading: Ronald Asch, *The Thirty Years' War* (1997).

Edict of Saint-Germain (January 17, 1562). ''Edict of Toleration'' or ''Edict of January.'' Issued by *Catherine de Medici*, this edict granted limited but legally recognized toleration of the *Huguenots*. It denied them rights of worship within town walls and forbade them nighttime assembly or the right to bear arms. It permitted peaceful and open preaching of the new faith only in the countryside and in daytime. Nevertheless, it was the first act of formal toleration by the crown since *Francis I* began persecution of French Protestants after the *Affair of the Placards* in 1534. It represented the Queen Mother's effort to avoid civil war by uniting all within the Gallican Church, but it had the

opposite effect: it unhinged the *Guise* and unsettled even more moderate Catholics. The Parlement of Paris initially refused to register it, warning that "every kingdom divided against itself goes to ruin." It quickly proved unenforceable, as Catholics led by the Guise responded to its call for toleration with a massacre of Protestant worshipers at *Vassy*. The shots fired there were the first in the protracted agony known as the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629).

Edict of Saint-Germain-en-Laye (August 8, 1570). This compromise "peace" is normally viewed as a genuine effort by *Catherine de Medici* and the crown to end the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629). Reflecting revived *Huguenot* military fortunes, it reinforced religious privileges previously granted to Protestant nobles and extended the right of public worship more generally inside two towns in each of the 12 "gouvernements" of France. While toleration was not extended to Paris or the Court, the edict was the first to grant civil and judicial protections to Protestants on equality of taxation, restoration of seized property, admission to schools and universities, and holding public offices. It left Catholics bitterly opposed, as the Huguenots secured control of four key fortified towns, *place de sûreté* (La Rochelle, La Charité, Cognac, and Montauban). Therein, they continued to arm and train. On the other hand, Protestants were delivered paper rights that often proved unenforceable in face of Catholic majority opposition. Each confessional community was thus left deeply anxious that the war would resume on terms adverse to its own position. Within two years the Peace failed, as the Queen Mother's effort to bridge the religious divide by marrying her daughter to *Henri de Navarre* instead occasioned the *St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres* (1572).

Edict of Toleration (1562). See *Edict of Saint-Germain*.

Edict of Union (July 1588). Forced on *Henri III* by the *Catholic League* after his flight from Paris on the *Day of the Barricades*, it reaffirmed the harsh terms of the *Treaty of Nemours* and admonished the king to uphold his sacred coronation oath and thus never make peace with heretic *Huguenots*. It also compelled him to call into session the Estates General to raise funds for a final war to exterminate the Huguenots. The Edict of Union recognized Cardinal de Bourbon as the rightful heir in place of *Henri de Navarre*, acknowledged government by The Sixteen in Paris, and placed *Henri Guise* in command of all Royalist and Catholic forces. See also *Estates*; *French Civil Wars*.

Edward I (1239–1307). "Longshanks." See *England*; *Falkirk, Battle of*; *longbow*; *Scottish Wars*; *Stirling Bridge, Battle of*; *uniforms*; *Wallace, William*.

Edward II (1284–1327). See *Bannockburn*; *longbow*; *Scottish Wars*.

Edward III (1312–1377). King of England, 1327–1377. His father, Edward II, was deposed in 1327. Edward III began his reign with an effective coup

three years later, in which he arrested and executed his mother's consort, Roger de Mortimer, and sent his mother back to her homeland, France. He moved quickly to reverse a settlement arranged by the regency in 1328, whereby he had renounced the Scottish throne first claimed by his grandfather, Edward I, in 1296. Edward III's revived hegemonic ambitions for the island of Great Britain were aided by an ongoing civil war in Scotland. His intervention revived the *Scottish Wars*. Aware of the success of Flemish militia against knights at *Courtrai* (1302), and of the Scots against his father at *Bannockburn* (1314), Edward experimented with bold new tactics designed to substitute armored infantry defense for mounted armored attack. His most notable move was to dismount his *men-at-arms* and deploy them as armored infantry in three close formations at the center of his line where they used their lances like pikes. The archers were positioned somewhat forward on each flank, thereby flanking any enemy who chose to attack the men-at-arms in the middle. Edward kept a small cavalry unit in reserve in a wagon park for exploitation and pursuit of the defeated enemy. Or he placed them in a nearby wood, in ambush. The archers shaped the enemy attack and drove it onto the men-at-arms at the center. These tactical innovations were wrapped in a strategic overview in which Edward never offered battle except on ground of his own choosing, which he compelled his enemies to accept by a policy of scorched earth that challenged their legitimacy as sovereigns through deliberate and widespread terrorism against their subjects.

Edward III altered the English way of war and contributed to a general shift in European warfare away from heavy cavalry toward heavy infantry supported by light infantry archers. The new system enabled Edward to win repeatedly against the Scots, including at *Halidon Hill* (1333), a battle that set the mold for his later successes in France during the opening phase of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). In 1339 he led a major *chevauchée*—along with besieging an important town, this was the principal instrument of English terrorism used to provoke enemies to battle—in France, besieging Cambrai and burning out hundreds of towns. The next year he commanded at the naval *Battle of Sluys* (June 23, 1340). He won a substantial and famous victory at *Crécy* (1346), and led a 1346–1347 siege of Calais. His son, the *Black Prince*, used the same infantry tactics to achieve victory at *Poitiers* (1356). Edward was preoccupied to his final days with the Scottish and French wars, which were partly linked by the *'Auld Alliance*. He also had to contend with the ravages of the *Black Death*, which reached England during his reign. Edward's later years were marked by personal and political decline, and a growing quarrel within his faction-ridden court over royal revenues that might be extracted from the Church, and over the degree of papal authority to be exercised over the national church in England. The Black Prince died two years before Edward, but the king's tactical innovations remained the standard for English armies into the mid-15th century. See also *Aljubarrota, Battle*

. . . Edward experimented with bold new tactics designed to substitute armored infantry defense for mounted armored attack.

of; *chevauchée*; *chivalry*; *Free Companies*; *Jacquerie*; *Nájera, Battle of*; *routiers*; *warhorses*.

Suggested Reading: H. Hewitt, *Organization of War under Edward III, 1338–1362* (1966); Clifford Rogers, *War Cruel and Sharp: English Strategy under Edward III, 1327–1360* (2000).

Edward IV (1442–1483). See *Wars of the Roses*.

Edward VI (1537–1553). See *Elizabeth I*; *Henri II, of France*; *Henry VIII, of England*; *Mary Tudor*.

Effingham, Admiral Lord Howard of (1536–1624). See *Howard, Charles*.

Egmont, Lamoral Graaf van (1522–1568). Flemish general. At the head of a Spanish army he defeated the French at *Saint-Quentin* (1557) and, with English naval aid, again at *Gravelines* (1558). Although a Catholic partisan, he preached toleration for Protestants and worked against the persecutions of Cardinal Granvelle, *Philip II*'s much-hated representative in Flanders. A defender of the traditional liberties of the Dutch *Estates*, Egmont was arrested by the *Duke of Alba* in 1567, illegally detained and tried on trumped up charges of treason, then executed in 1568. That hard act helped spark the great Flanders revolt that became the *Eighty Years' War*.

Egypt. Following the fall of the ancient empire of the Pharaohs, Egypt was repeatedly conquered by external powers: first came the ancient Persians and Greeks (under Alexander the Great, who moved Egypt's capital from the Nile to a new city he founded on the Mediterranean coast, at Alexandria); next it was the Romans, followed by their eastern successors the Byzantines. Each of these foreign empires left behind settlers and distinctive cultural contributions which mixed with the culture and populations already there. Additionally, the Greeks and Romans fundamentally changed Egyptian history by reorienting it toward an expansive Mediterranean trading civilization, and away from Egypt's earliest roots in Nilotic Africa. In the 7th century C.E., Arabs (*Bedouin*) rode out of the desert to conquer and convert Egypt to a new world faith: *Islam*. Over time, most but not all of Egypt's *Coptic* population (which had converted to Christianity during the heyday of the Roman Empire under and after Constantine I), was converted to Islam. Along with the Arabs, who settled in large numbers from the 8th century, came a new institution: the *caliphate*. Egypt was thus governed from outside for several centuries, first by the Umayyad caliphs, then by the Abbasids based in Baghdad. A schismatic and rival *shi'a* caliphate, that of the Berber Fatamids, seized control and ruled in Egypt from 909 until 1171. The Fatamids came to rely increasingly on the slave soldiery of the *mamlūks*. Egypt was spared devastation by the Mongols at *'Ayn Jālut* ("The Spring of Goliath") in Galilee in 1260, when a mamlūk army out of Egypt defeated a Mongol advance party, stopping their southward invasion. The mamlūks subsequently blocked

multiple Mongol attempts to conquer Syria, and themselves absorbed Syria as a protected province. During the *Crusades*, Egypt was the base from which the Islamic counterattack was organized. As the Fatamids declined, Egypt's Grand Vizier and effective ruler, *Salāh-al-Dīn*, used its great wealth to gather Muslim armies with which he recaptured *Jerusalem* and confined the Latins to a strip of coastal kingdoms in northern Palestine and Syria. These, too, were eventually overwhelmed and the Crusaders forced to take refuge on various eastern Mediterranean islands (Cyprus, Malta, Rhodes). In 1250 the Ayyubid dynasty that had been founded by Salāh al-Dīn lost control to the Mamlūk general Baybārs. There followed a long contest between the Mamlūks in Egypt and the *Il-Khans* of Iran. A peace was agreed between these rival centers of Muslim power in 1323. Meanwhile, Egypt was ruled by a Circassian-Turk military dynasty, the Bahri (River) Mamlūks, 1250–1382, and then by the Burji (Citadel) Mamlūks, 1382–1517. Thus was established a pattern in which Egypt's great wealth and population enabled ostensibly provincial governors owing allegiance to more expansive empires to nod in the direction of the empire, but rule autonomously in fact. Similarly, after *Selim I* sacked Cairo in 1517 the Ottomans governed Egypt only nominally, through appointed Mamlūk generals.

Eighty Years' War (1568–1648). ''Revolt of the Low Countries.'' The long struggle of the United Provinces for independence from Spain. Confessional warfare broke out in Flanders 13 years after the great religious peace was achieved in Germany, where the *Peace of Augsburg* was agreed to in 1555 by Emperor Maximilian. *Philip II*, an austere Catholic zealot, continued *Charles V*'s campaign against noble liberties and the spread of Protestantism. To meet the first goal he needed to make a ''revolution from above'' that rationalized administration and taxation of the Netherlands. This would save his larger empire from financial collapse. However, his reforms threatened local freedoms with war taxes and new restrictions on commerce, the source of Dutch prosperity. As for religion, Phillip's sense of personal godly and Spanish imperial mission, support for the *Counter-Reformation*, and stern refusal to reign in the northern *Inquisition*, all gave great offense. The crisis arrived in 1559 with the end of the *Italian Wars*. The Netherlands' already-strained finances were taxed again to pay the old war debts of Philip II from the French war and finance a new whole war with the Ottomans. This bad news arrived even as Philip tightened the thumbscrews of the Inquisition in his northern possessions. When the *French Civil Wars* began in 1562, Philip saw the *Huguenot* revolt as a baleful example of what might happen to his own cosmopolitan empire if he did not establish religious conformity and crush any and all signs of heresy and rebellion, which were incestuously linked in his mind. The Eighty Years' War began as an effort led by Netherlands nobles to preserve their traditional liberties from reforms imposed at the top, as well as by the old city-states to return to the golden days of their autonomy from any kings, and not as a radical or nationalist revolution. Nevertheless, due to Philip's hard religious policies and fiscal needs, it soon

became radicalized along confessional lines that also divided Flanders regionally.

Repression and Revolt

Catholics and Calvinists alike saw Philip's reforms as an unprecedented extension of royal power that impinged on local liberties. On April 5, 1566, some 200 nobles took ''The Petition of Compromise'' to Brussels demanding an end to the Inquisition, but not yet to the monarchy or the dominant role of the Catholic Church. They were dubbed ''Beggars'' (''Gueux'') by *Margaret of Parma*, who nevertheless sought real compromise. A delegation she sent to Spain was rudely dismissed, however, by the hard men around Philip II and by the king himself. Rejection of reasonable grievances turned noble petitioners into leaders of a burgeoning national resistance, just as follow-on harsh treatment of bread rioters turned bourgeoisie and urban protesters into armed rebels. Stirred by ''hedge-row'' Calvinist preachers, a wave of violent *iconoclasm* (''beeldenstorm'') broke out in August: Calvinists in Flanders smashed Catholic statues and paintings and stole Church gold and silver plate, even breaking into convents to do so. In Brussels, they were cheered on by excited mobs crying ''Vivent les Gueux!'' (''Long Live the Beggars!''). The ''beeldenstorm'' spread north of the rivers in late August, becoming more systematic as it was organized by local nobles. In Catholic cities, retaliation broke up Protestant services and forced Catholic baptisms on the cowed and unwilling. Wherever local *schutterijen* (militia) did not oppose the mobs, whole towns were protestantized or recatholicized by force. Alarmed, Margaret called in royal troops to suppress Walloon Protestants, but that only provoked nobles north of the rivers to arm and organize. The country was fast dividing on confessional and regional lines.

With royal authority disintegrating in 1567, and against Margaret's advice, Philip sent the *Duke of Alba* north with 10,000 men to reimpose order with fire, blood, and steel. In fact, before he arrived the rebellion had already abated, with some cowed Calvinists reconverting to Catholicism and others fleeing north or to London or into Germany. Rebellion broke out again, in earnest, in 1568 once Alba executed *Egmont* and hundreds of other nobles on trumped-up charges accepted by a toady ''Council of Troubles,'' which Protestants dubbed the ''Council of Blood.'' It did not help that Alba also raised taxes, built citadels, and garrisoned German troops across the Netherlands. The princes of Nassau and Orange led the renewed armed revolt. *Louis of Nassau* beat a small Spanish army at Heiligerlee (May 23, 1568), an early but lonely rebel victory. Two months later, Alba handily beat Louis at *Jemmingen* (July 21, 1568). Louis' brother, *William the Silent* (''Orange''), invaded Brabant with an army recruited in Germany but Alba defeated Orange, too. He followed up with construction of citadels and punitive billeting of troops on disloyal towns, and introduction of the *Tenth Penny* tax by decree on July 31, 1571. Following their Stadholder, and provoked by the new punitive measures, Holland and Zeeland took up arms. Even Catholic Flanders was restless under Alba's hard rule.

With the rebellion stymied on land, initiative passed to the *Sea Beggars*, based in England from 1568 to 1572. Denied ports in England from early 1572, Beggar ships and marines took *Brill* on Walcheren Island on April 1, 1572, then Flushing, on the Scheldt, five days later. The northern Netherlands now rose in full-throated revolt. Spanish garrisons were killed or expelled. Louis of Nassau invaded Hainault with a mercenary army and took Mons. However, the *St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres* in France interrupted plans to send a large *Huguenot* army north to the aid of Calvinist brethren. A second rebel force took Zutphen, as Gelderland and Overijssel also rebelled. A third army invaded Brabant out of Germany in August, and dozens of towns declared for Orange. William tried to keep to the moderate road, but was unable to contain a new wave of iconoclastic, anti-Catholic ''beeldenstorm'' that arrived in his wake, driving Catholic refugees south to loyalist towns. Alba took Mons back in September, then countered the rebellion with wholesale, calculated terror and frontal assaults on rebel cities, including sacks and massacres of Mechlen and Zutphen, towns which had rebelled but not resisted the return of Alba's men. Alba ordered the massacre of the entire population of Naarden, down to the last child (December 2, 1572). The next summer, his troops butchered the rebel garrison of *Haarlem* after a brutal eight-month siege in July 1573. Alba was stopped from carrying out more atrocities only by a lack of money to pay his executioners. That summer, the first of many mutinies began which hamstrung Spain's war effort: between 1572 and 1607 the *Army of Flanders* mutinied no fewer than 46 times. Frustrated, Alba proposed to break the Dutch dams and sluices and flood the rebel areas, but Philip forbade this on moral grounds. Alba was checked by Sea Beggar ships and a handful of schutterijen at *Alkmaar* early in 1573, and again at the Zuider Zee (October 11, 1573), where his fleet and royalist ships from Amsterdam lost to the Sea Beggars. Alba was recalled in November, and replaced by *Luis Requesens y Zúñiga*. He fared little better. In 1574, Zúñiga failed in an attempt to crush the Sea Beggars in a naval battle off Walcheren (January 29, 1574). On land, Zúñiga won a sharp fight at *Mookerheide* in April 1574, killing many Flanders nobles, including Louis and Henry of Nassau. However, he failed to complete the critical *Siege of Leiden* (May 26–October 3, 1574) after Orange daringly broke the dikes on the Maas and floated in a Sea Beggar fleet in relief.

A New State Emerges

By 1575 the northern Netherlands was beyond the physical control of Spain. Yet, Philip would not be reconciled to a negotiated peace that permitted Protestant services and rights. A regional revolt led by nobles in defense of traditional privileges had become a civil war within the Netherlands, and a war of religious ideology between Spain and the Calvinist, northern half of its colony. In late 1575 the fiscal crisis that underlay all Philip's troubles resulted in one of his periodic bankruptcies, leaving the Army of Flanders, 70,000–90,000 troops who cost 30,000 ducats a day to maintain, without pay through July 1576. The troops mutinied, starting just hours after rebel

Zierikzee surrendered to them: they sacked the town, then sacked Aalst three weeks later. The worst was yet to come, at Antwerp. On November 4–5, 1576, in acts of murder and mayhem remembered still in the Low Countries as the ''*Spanish Fury*,'' much of the city was destroyed and 8,000 civilians were butchered. It was a decisive moment in the war: all 17 Dutch provinces, with a population of some three million, united around the goal of removal of Spanish troops and restoration of the medieval freedoms of the old city-states, as codified in the *Pacification of Ghent*. Yet, beneath the surface alliance Catholic–Protestant fissures existed that would ultimately prove unbridgeable, as fresh outbreaks of iconoclasm and religious rioting confirmed. More importantly, deeper and far older cultural differences existed between the regions north and south of the rivers.

And so the provinces divided. The southernmost, Walloon provinces—the major ones were Artois, Drouet, Flanders, Hainault, Liege, Limburg, Luxemburg, and Namur—combined to defend Catholicism in the Union of Arras (''Unie van Atrecht'') on January 6, 1579. In reaction, Holland, Zeeland, and Utrecht formed the Union of Utrecht on January 23, 1579. The Union of Utrecht gained the early endorsement of Orange, who was forced to accept its intolerant Calvinism because the populace rejected his idea of ''Religious Peace'' in the north, while Spanish military success in Flanders and Brabant denied him those rich and populous southern areas as a base for the rebellion. Organized around the growing hegemony of Holland over the north, as well as an explicit Calvinist identity, by 1580 the Union of Utrecht added Friesland, Gelderland, and Overijssel, plus Drenthe (deemed too poor and underpopulated to warrant a vote) and other small territories. In 1594, after the fall of Groningen to Maurits and a purge of the local Raad and all Catholic clergy, it added that city to the surrounding Ommelands as a seventh voting province. This consolidated the core of the ''United Provinces of the Netherlands.'' In theory a loose sovereign confederation, during the 17th century the United Provinces emerged as a strong federal state dominated by Holland and a rising military and economic power. Meanwhile, under pressures of Spanish occupation but also out of mutual attractions of shared language, history, and religion, the Union of Arras declared for Catholicism, and eventually also for Spain. This fateful partition was reinforced by ''ethnic cleansing'' of religious minorities on both sides of the rivers in the early 1580s, and mirrored intolerance of alternate forms of worship.

In the end, Protestants could not accept a king or fellow countrymen who would not tolerate their faith, while Philip would not concede toleration to any part of his empire lest confessional divisions tear apart the whole. As the war proceeded, the Army of Flanders routinely hung Calvinist ministers and church elders, while Beggars butchered Catholic priests, nuns, and prisoners. On land, fighting henceforth was mostly a matter of breached canals and dikes, fortification and slow sieges, long waits in winter quarters, and very occasional battles. Denied the ocean lanes by the Sea Beggars, Spanish supplies and reinforcements had to make the slow crawl up the drawn-out, difficult ''*Spanish Road*.'' Decade after decade, reinforcements from Italy or

Castile wended up this dangerous road through Lombardy, *The Grisons*, and the Rhineland, to spill into the ''Castra Dei'' (''God's Camp'') in the Spanish Netherlands. Often, they detoured to engage in other Habsburg wars in Italy or in the great German war after 1618. Then they resumed the northward trek to lay in sieges and fight an occasional summer battle in the heavily fortified, close-confined, and densely populated Netherlands.

In 1576, Philip sent *Don Juan* of Austria north, the third commander dispatched to quell the ''Revolt of the Netherlands.'' After a year of forced compromises Don Juan and his cousin, the *Duke of Parma*, returned to a policy of military confrontation that would reconquer the south for Philip by 1585. They began by routing a rebel army at *Gembloux* (January 31, 1578), a near-bloodless Spanish victory but a crushing defeat for the rebellion in the south. Parma succeeded Don Juan as governor when the latter died in October, and set out to appease Catholics while reducing all Protestant outposts by force. His troops sacked *Maastricht* in 1579, murdering over 10,000 civilians and thereby ensuring the rebellion continued. Orange proposed the *duc d'Anjou* as sovereign of the Netherlands, and a baleful experiment with this unstable and untrustworthy prince began in January 1581. In July, Philip II was formally renounced in an Act of Abjuration passed by the States General and sworn to by oath. With the north–south split now clearly irreducible and Parma on the march, Orange returned to Holland and the States General transferred from Antwerp to The Hague. With 45,000 local troops at his disposal in 1580 and 61,000 tough *tercio* veterans by 1582 (released by the end of Philip's war with the Ottomans), Parma reduced rebel towns in a systematic campaign. He took Tournai and Breda in 1581, advanced through Gelderland in 1582, and reduced Ieper, Bruges, Ghent, and Ypres in 1584. With the main outposts taken he conducted a successful, 14-month *Siege of Antwerp* (1584–1585). In desperation, a Dutch mission offered sovereignty to *Henri III* of France in February 1585, but he declined out of fear of the fanatics of the *Catholic League* and of the reaction in Spain. Other Frenchmen, in the Catholic League or among the Huguenots, intervened in the Netherlands on occasion, though more often Spanish armies from Flanders intervened in France. Meanwhile, in Delft in May 1584, Orange was assassinated by a Catholic fanatic. In the deed's aftermath Parma rolled up more rebel towns in Flanders and Brabant, leaving only Holland among the major provinces unoccupied. Parma then moved directly north across multiple river barriers and past fortified garrisons, while a second Spanish army attacked from the east toward Utrecht, Holland, and Zeeland. This threat of a Dutch military collapse brought *Elizabeth I* and England openly into the fray. She, too, declined an offer of sovereignty over the Dutch but lent substantial aid in return for real military rights and powers, as agreed in the *Treaty of Nonsuch*. This moved England and Spain from undeclared naval warfare closer to direct military confrontation. Much fighting thereafter took place at sea,

His troops sacked Maastricht *in 1579, murdering over 10,000 civilians . . . ensuring the rebellion continued.*

inaugurating the world's first global maritime war as English privateers and Sea Beggar ships preyed on Iberian and neutral shipping. Philip retaliated with an embargo against trade with the United Provinces from 1585 to 1590, reimposed by *Philip III* in 1598. These embargoes did more damage to the stagnant and overstretched Spanish economy than to the more modern and diverse Dutch economy: Netherlands manufacturing and trade expanded in the 1590s, on the way to becoming the preeminent commercial system in the world in the 17th century.

An ''English Interregnum'' under the *Earl of Leicester*, Elizabeth's chosen commander and court favorite, lasted in the Netherlands from 1585 to 1587. It was marked by tensions between Leicester and the regents of Holland, and between extremist Calvinists and more moderate ''politiques.'' Finally, there were hard frictions between Dutch towns with memories of the *English Fury* of 1580, and unpaid and hungry English troops. The crisis arrived in January 1587, when English garrisons in Deventer and near Zutphen, two key defense points, defected to Parma. The populace reacted with anger and violence against other English garrisons, so that more went over to the Spanish. Leicester attempted a coup in September 1587, entering The Hague with troops, but his plot fizzled and he returned to England, leaving Anglo-Dutch relations in tatters on the eve of the *Invincible Armada*. Parma wanted to continue his steady conquest but Philip was absorbed by the looming invasion and ordered Parma to muster the Army of Flanders for rendevous with the Invincible Armada, a Channel crossing, and a triumphal march on London. When the Armada was instead lost to storms and English fireships and captains, Spain's prestige was seriously damaged and its military reach shortened. The next year Philip again diverted a reluctant Parma, ordering him to intervene in behalf of Catholics in the French Civil Wars. After a brief campaign in France, Parma again advanced in the south and east Netherlands in 1589. The English garrison at Geertruidenberg betrayed itself to him and Dutch troops were pushed back across the IJssel. And yet, everything was about to change in favor of the Dutch Republic, as a military and diplomatic revolution took place with the end of the French Civil Wars that led to new alliances and conflicts that shaped the early 17th century.

Philip's attention was on France from 1590, where the Huguenot *Henri de Navarre* stood to ascend the throne as Henri IV. When the fighting finally stopped in France in the mid-1590s, Henri IV threw military resources behind the Dutch revolt as a counter to Spain. With *Oldenbaarneveldt* skillfully negotiating a fresh alliance with England, and shifting effective political power from the Raad to the Holland regents, the United Provinces enjoyed newfound security. *Maurits of Nassau* now rose to prominence upon his elevation to Stadholder, then through command and reform of the Dutch army. A driving force behind his successful military reforms was the fact that the United Provinces were unable to ''make war pay for itself'' (*bellum se ipse alet*) by billeting troops abroad or forcing *contributions* from a foreign population. Reliance solely on customs and direct taxes was a great incentive to make the most of military resources. In addition to meeting strategic interests, there

was a civil and moral concern arising from Calvinist sexual mores to site the army in garrisons along the frontiers, far away from the main towns. Over time, the reforms undertaken told the tale on land against the Spanish tercios the way Sea Beggar ships already did on the water. In 1590, with his *New Model Army*, Maurits surprised the Spanish and retook Breda. The next year he liberated Zutphen, Deventer, Hulst, and Nijmegen in a series of brilliant sieges. He used the IJssel to move his heavy artillery by barge and paid bonuses to soldiers to dig siege trenches, a rare use at that time of soldiers as military labor in European warfare. In 1592, Maurits took Steenwijk and Coevorden, and he retook Geertruidenberg after a celebrated four-month siege in 1593. These victories opened the IJssel, Rhine, and Waal to Dutch river trade with Germany, further strengthening the economy of the United Provinces. Maurits cleared the Spanish from Groningen in 1594. In a second major offensive that made use of riparian transport to move siege guns, in 1597 Maurits advanced along the Rhine to capture the key fortress of Rheinberg. He then took the garrison towns of Oldenzaal, Enschede, and Grol, before crossing into Germany to capture Lingen and Moers. Maurits then stunned the Spanish in the field at *Turnhout* (September 22, 1597). The end of the Franco-Spanish war, codified in the *Treaty of Vervins* in 1598, freed more enemy troops for the Netherlands. But the same year witnessed the death of Philip II and passing of the Spanish Netherlands to his daughter Isabella and her Austrian husband, Albert, together known as "The Archdukes." In 1599, a year after the death of Philip II, the Army of Flanders mutinied yet again. All these events forced *Philip III* to reconsider Spain's strategy.

Stalemate and Truce (1609–1621)

The flow of military events continued to favor the Dutch as the new century turned: Maurits defeated a Spanish army on the dunes outside the privateer port of *Nieuwpoort* (1600), though no great strategic gain resulted. He took Sluis in 1603, then IJzendijk and Aardenburg. And although he supplied the army from the sea as it fought to relieve the three-year *Siege of Ostend*, the city finally fell to *Ambrogio di Spínola* in 1604. After Ostend and Nieuwpoort, Spínola partly revived Spanish military fortunes by daringly outrunning Maurits into Brabant, taking Oldenzal without a fight. In early 1606, Spínola crossed north of the Rhine. Taking and garrisoning key fortresses as he passed, he moved to the IJssel to threaten Zutphen and Deventer and sow panic in the United Provinces before withdrawing. Maurits counterattacked in the fall but did not reverse all Spínola's gains. A prolonged stalemate ensued in which each side built advanced fortified defenses while the diplomats talked. Philip III had made peace with France at Vervins in 1598 and with England in 1604, following Elizabeth I's death. In 1607 he offered to recognize the Dutch Republic in return for dismantlement of the *Vereenigde Oostindische Compaagnie* (VOC) and return of Iberian outposts in the Indies. But the Dutch balked and instead inflicted great damage to Spanish pride and a Spanish fleet at *Gibraltar* (1607). That forced Philip away from a

lasting peace. In 1609 he instead accepted terms of the *Twelve Years' Truce* with the United Provinces, granting them de facto but not de jure recognition. In effect, Spain finally decided to let the Dutch "heretics" go to hell after their own theological fashion. The war would resume later because Madrid's war aims shifted from religious crusade to more limited secular, but still unachievable, goals: sustaining hegemony in the European states system rather than imposing a religious *monarchia universalis* upon a permanently fractured Christendom. And it resumed because the Dutch were consumed by commercial greed and would not stop aggressing against Iberian interests in Asia.

During the Twelve Years' Truce the Dutch economy continued its remarkable expansion and the VOC continued to predate in the Indies, while other Dutch fleets muscled into the rich Baltic and Russian trades. Meanwhile, Dutch international status soared as the Netherlands became known as the little Protestant country that fought mighty Catholic Spain to a standstill. Even Muslim powers (Algiers, Morocco, the Ottoman Empire) recognized the Dutch republic as sovereign. Prudently, the Dutch did not pose as the champion of Protestantism within Europe—that role would be played in the 1620s–1630s, without much success and at great cost, by the Palatinate, Denmark, and then Sweden. As the end of the truce neared pro-war parties took power in each belligerent. In Spain, the accommodating *Duke of Lerma* was dismissed while the secret *Treaty of Oñate* (1617) cleared the way for an aggressive alliance with *Ferdinand II* of Austria, who was bent on suppressing Protestantism and rebellion in the Holy Roman Empire. In the Netherlands, the United Provinces succumbed to bitter factionalism over matters of religion, trade, and the virtues of resuming the Spanish war. Civil war loomed by 1617 as Holland and Utrecht raised discrete *waardgelder* units which swore municipal, not national allegiance. This provoked Maurits to launch a coup d'état in August 1618, and later to execute Oldenbaarneveldt. The new supremacy of Calvinist "Counter-Remonstrants" under Maurits turned the United Provinces into the champion of confrontational Protestantism, even as Habsburg and Catholic power was resurgent. Then a revolt in distant Bohemia began the *Thirty Years' War*. That general conflagration drew in Spain and the Netherlands because of deep confessional loyalties and hatreds, but also out of old dynastic interests and new reasons of state.

Conflagration (1621–1648)

Once the Twelve Years' Truce expired in April 1621, the Netherlands war and the German war merged. Hoping to detour Spain into Germany, Maurits was deeply complicit in encouraging the brash *Friedrich V* to accept the Bohemian crown, sending subsidies and 5,000 Dutch troops (or Dutch hires) to fight at the *White Mountain* (November 8, 1620), and at Pilsen. The Dutch also paid for 4,000 English troops who set up in the Palatinate. With religious casus belli of diminished importance, economic warfare was the new order of the day. The embargos and river and port blockades resumed in April 1621, ending Dutch trade with Iberia and the Levant and Spanish

trade with Flanders. Privateers reemerged from Dunkirk and Ostend, and Spanish warships attacked Dutch merchants off Brazil and in the Caribbean. The powerful Sea Beggar navy replied in kind. On land, the Army of Flanders expanded threefold from 20,000 men during the truce to 60,000 in 1621. The Dutch army leaped from 30,000 to 48,000 well-trained professionals, almost all deployed in a hard ring of fortresses around the frontier and none paid with foreign subsidies, all of which had stopped in 1609. By 1622, Maurits changed his mind and tried to back out of the war, but now *Philip IV* and *Olivares* took a hard line. Spínola took Jülich early that year, but was forced to abandon his siege of Bergen-op-Zoom after taking sharp losses. Dutch policy in Germany looked defeated after *Stadtlohn* (August 6, 1623), but Spínola failed to take strategic advantage while Maurits played for time by pretending negotiations. Spínola besieged Breda from 1624 to 1625, even as another Spanish army attacked from the east. Plague and butter tax riots broke out across Holland. As Maurits grew ill and died in April 1625, a noticeable malaise spread among the Dutch. Maurits was replaced in command by *Frederik Hendrik*, his half-brother. At first he could not stem the Spanish advance in Brabant or Germany. Fortunately for the Dutch, Spain could not sustain war on several fronts. In May 1625, Madrid cut funds by one-sixth and went strictly on the defensive in the Netherlands, in order to concentrate on its wars in Italy and Germany. England also entered the fight, briefly, in 1625. This pause in offensive action in the Netherlands shifted the military balance of power in favor of the Dutch, who wisely used it to rebuild and rearm as Spain cut back the Army of Flanders from 80,000 to 50,000 men.

In 1628 the fleet of the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC) captured the Spanish treasure fleet off Cuba. This deprived Philip IV of finances for his wars even as it allowed the Dutch to fund a large army of 128,000 men, including thousands from the WIC preparing to invade Brazil. For the first time, the Dutch fielded an army superior in numbers as well as quality to the Army of Flanders. Frederik Hendrik used the army in a sustained offensive that captured Wesel by storm and 's-Hertogenbosch by siege, forcing abandonment of Amersfoort by its Spanish garrison and a pullback across the IJssel from Utrecht and Gelderland. This was the greatest blow to Spanish arms and prestige since the failure of the Invincible Armada in 1588. Over the next two years, with Spain distracted by the *War of the Mantuan Succession*, Hendrik forced out nearly all Spanish garrisons in northwest Germany. The Spanish reached a point of near total military collapse: their river blockade failed and *Johann Tilly* was given control of all remaining forts. However, Tilly was killed at *Rain* in April 1632. The Dutch next moved to drive Spain from southern Flanders. In June, they took Venlo, Roermond, Straelen, and Sittard in rapid succession, then besieged Maastricht, which fell on August 23. The Republic was now secure. Henceforth, it waged war not just to survive but to gain rich overseas markets, and because of intrigue at home.

In early 1635 the United Provinces and France agreed to invade the Spanish Netherlands, granting sovereignty should the southern provinces rise against

Spain but partitioning and annexing them if they did not. Spanish garrisons fought hard against a French invasion in the south while trying to carry the war home to the United Provinces with a counterattack in the north. Spanish arms enjoyed a partial reversal of military fortune in the Maas valley and along the Dutch frontier. This reflected a new aggressiveness following *First Nördlingen* (1634) in Germany. Indeed, Jonathan Israel argues that Madrid made its most massive military effort "in terms of outlay and manpower of the entire Spanish-Dutch war" from 1635 to 1640. Even so, final victory eluded Philip IV. From 1635 the Spanish Road was blocked by the French, who also occupied Alsace, Lorraine, and Trier. And in 1636—the year of the tulip craze—Frederik Hendrik retook the key forts lost to Spain the prior summer. But Frederik was rebuffed with much loss at Kallo in 1638. Despite the victory, Spain remained stymied on land. Olivares therefore tried to resupply the Army of Flanders and to win the war by a concerted effort at sea. That meant facing the French and Dutch navies in the Channel and North Sea. In late 1639, Olivares sent 20,000 reinforcements north in a convoy of 40 transports and 60 escorts, only to have nearly the entire fleet destroyed at *The Downs* (October 21, 1639) by Admiral *Marten van Tromp*. After that, reinforcements reached Flanders only in single ships that ran the gauntlet of French and Dutch naval power as best each could. The loss at sea ended Spain's last hope of imposing hard terms on the Dutch. The *Revolt of Catalonia* began in May 1640, followed by a coup and full-scale rebellion in Portugal in December. Uprisings against Spanish rule also broke out in Naples and Andalusia. Seizing the moment, the Dutch moved to reduce the territory of the Spanish Netherlands, taking Gravelines (1644), Hulst (1645), and Dunkirk (1646).

The loss at sea ended Spain's last hope of imposing hard terms on the Dutch.

Overseas, the WIC lengthened the strip of coastal Brazil it controlled (1638). Expeditions to Africa captured Pernambuco and Elmina (1637), and Luanda (1641). The VOC set up a fortified settlement on the Cape of Good Hope to service ships plying the waters of what was already a transoceanic Dutch empire that rivaled Spain's and overshadowed Portugal's. This had enormous consequences for African and world history. Mostly, it meant that Africa was to be drawn into a dynamic world trading system—mainly via the slave trade, which was soon mostly taken over by merchants and ships from the United Provinces. This rising sea power had far greater capabilities to penetrate the African interior than poor Portugal had ever exerted. Meanwhile, the VOC occupied Ceylon (1638–1641) and Malacca (1641). The Dutch first sent a flotilla around the Horn to raid the west coast of South America in 1624; they did so again, with impunity as well as impudence, in 1643. Authorities in distant Japan correctly read the shifting tide and transferred the Portuguese monopoly at *Deshima* to the Dutch. Meanwhile, Portuguese possessions in East Africa, other than Luanda, and most of India were bypassed. Dutch ships sailed farther south and east, then turned north

to the Spice Islands. As a result, Omani military power and slaving revived in the western Indian Ocean.

The Dutch finally won the Eighty Years' War because of superior finance, their more modern economy and army, their rich overseas commercial empire, an exceptional national political effort, skilled leadership, and highly defensible and heavily fortified terrain where canals and river barriers formed successive lines of natural defense that were easily reinforced with artificial structures and barriers. More important even than the Dutch effort, however, were the problems faced by Spain. The Spanish had to supply and maintain a large army without access to the sea lanes and with the Scheldt estuary and the Flemish ports usually denied to them. That left only the vulnerable Spanish Road, and not even that reliably after France joined the German war in 1635. Despite this enormous difficulty in conducting large-scale military operations in the Netherlands, the Spanish made an extraordinary military effort over eight full decades. But with the rebel cause favored by topography and supported by the key classes in the local population, reconquest of the Netherlands proved impossible. When peace was finally agreed with the Dutch in the *Treaty of Münster* (1648) Spain was beaten, bitter, exhausted, bankrupt, inward-looking, and in terminal decline as a major power. And it was still at war with France, until 1659. In contrast, the Netherlands was self-confident, modernist in outlook, advanced economically and technologically, and enriched by its long war of overseas expansion and empire-building, even if it was abridged in size by the loss of southern Flanders and already peaking in its brief historical moment as a world power. See also *Fleurus, Battle of*; *Jülich-Kleve, Crisis over*; *Portuguese India*; *Taiwan*.

Suggested Reading: Paul C. Allen, *Phillip III and the Pax Hispanica, 1598–1621* (2000); A. Duke, *Reformation and Revolt in the Low Countries* (1990); Jonathon Israel, *Conflicts of Empires* (1997) and *Dutch Republic* (1995); Geoffrey Parker, *The Dutch Revolt* (1977; 1985); Marco Van der Hoevan, ed., *Exercise of Arms* (1997).

einschildig Ritter. "Single-shielded knight." See *Heerschildordnung*.

Elbing, Battle of (September 15, 1463). This naval battle was fought for control of access to the Vistula, whose mouth was guarded by the ancient *Teutonic Knight* fortress at Elbing. Twenty-five Polish warships engaged 44 ships of the Teutonic Knights. Overcoming the adverse odds, the Poles defeated the water-borne Brethren. Elbing, which had been a castle town of the Order since 1237, then fell to Polish land forces. It was followed in due course by most of the other Teutonic towns of Prussia.

El Dorado. The fabled "Kingdom of Gold" of the mythical tribe of "Amazonians." Unfortunately, too many *conquistadores* believed the myth, so thousands of Indians were tortured to death in the belief they were withholding information about its whereabouts. *Walter Raleigh* also looked for it in 1595.

elephants. Elephants as war animals were in common use in ancient Persia and North Africa. Most famously, Hannibal of Carthage crossed the Alps with several war elephants in 218 B.C.E. to descend with them into the north Italian plain on the road to Rome. In this period they were used extensively in warfare in India. Indian war elephants carried ''howdahs,'' or high platforms for as many as a dozen archers or javelin throwers. Swords were sometimes attached to their tusks: as the war elephant swayed his great head from side to side in rage and confusion, these opened terrible slashing wounds in infantry or cut down the horses of opposing cavalry. However, the main use of war elephants was as living rams to smash through enemy formations. The disadvantages of elephants over conventional cavalry were twofold. First, elephants were overlarge and inviting targets for missile weapons. This was an exaggerated form of the same trait—the vulnerable bulk of the great medieval warhorse, or *destrier*—that drove English, and later French, knights to abandon their mounts and fight on foot. Second, elephants were more easily frightened and stampeded than were horses by the noise and smoke of gunpowder weapons. If wounded, they often went berserk with pain and panic, to trample and crush nearby friendly troops as much or more than the enemy. To try to preserve these great beasts in battle, elephant armor was introduced. The main piece was made of plate sewn into a large blanket and hanging to the knees. Other pieces covered the throat (to prevent slashing from beneath by a swordsman), the face and trunk, but not the ears, which though left exposed to injury were not vital. However, plate armor thick enough to stop musket balls proved too heavy even for an elephant to bear, as well as too expensive even for a maharaja or Mughal emperor to provide to his elephant corp. War elephants were also used in southern China and across southeast Asia. In the final campaigns of the *Hongwu* emperor, a Ming army used its superior firearms and cannon to panic or kill a number of war elephants employed by southern rebels. Similarly, a Ming army sent by the *Yongle* emperor into Dai Viet in 1424 used firearms to frighten and stampede enemy troops mounted on the backs of elephants. Elephants were not normally used in fighting in northern China. See also *Akbar*; *carroccio*; *Khanwa, Battle of*; *Panipat, Battle of (April 21, 1526)*; *Panipat, Battle of (November 5, 1556)*.

Suggested Reading: Simon Digby, *Warhorse and Elephant in the Delhi Sultanate* (1971).

Elizabeth I (1533–1603). Queen of England, 1558–1603. Daughter of *Henry VIII* and Anne Boleyn (1504–1536). Given the complexities of the succession and her parentage (her father had her mother judicially murdered), Elizabeth barely survived childhood. Fairly or not, she was suspected of complicity in the plot known as *Wyatt's Rebellion* (1554), which aimed to depose her half-sister and Catholic fanatic, *Mary Tudor*. Elizabeth was for a time imprisoned in the Tower of London, in jeopardy of execution for treason. Instead, in 1558 the childless Mary died and Elizabeth succeeded to the throne. Mary's widower, *Philip II* of Spain, offered to marry Elizabeth in order to keep his

title as King of England. She demurred and played him well—she needed his help against the French—leaving him the first but by no means the last prince and suitor spurned by the "Virgin Queen."

Elizabeth ascended the throne outwardly a faint Catholic. Inwardly, most suspected she was already a Protestant. Her ascension at the age of 25 was therefore greeted anxiously by Catholics but with relief by her mostly Protestant subjects, as whatever her ceremonial trappings she ended the persecutions of Protestants carried out by Mary and was more tolerant of religious difference. Elizabeth generally tacked with winds favorable to Protestantism, recognizing that England was part of an increasingly Protestant northern Europe. In 1559, now more secure in her hold on power, she decreed that overt Protestant rites should displace Catholic ritual in national church services. For that and for establishing Protestantism over the next decade, in 1570 she was excommunicated by Pope Paul IV, who held her succession to be illegitimate in any case.

Excommunication of the monarch ensured that henceforth the cause of Protestantism merged with that of English patriotism and that Elizabeth was seen as champion of both. For centuries, England had allied with Castile against France and Scotland (the "*Auld Alliance*"), a balance of power whose last gasp was the dynastic marriage of Philip to Mary Tudor. Elizabeth's slow revelation of her Protestant sympathies forced a diplomatic revolution of the first order, aligning Protestant England with Dutch rebels waging the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648) against Spain. Serious and responsible as a ruler, almost to a fault, before plunging into Europe's confessional warfare Elizabeth spent a quarter century consolidating her grip on power in face of repeated disloyalty and assassination plots by members of the nobility and a former Queen of France, *Mary Stuart*, also Queen of Scots. Mary was a Catholic with a fair claim to the English throne and enjoyed support from the Habsburgs, France, and the pope. Such plots—over her reign Elizabeth survived more than 20 assassination plots—arose from the confessional wars coursing through Europe. (It should be noted that Elizabeth used assassins as well, to be rid of some of the Gaelic lords of Ireland, for instance.) They also centered on the succession problem, which grew more urgent as Elizabeth aged unmarried and barren of a direct heir; Elizabeth was destined to be last of the Tudor monarchs. Having kept Mary Stuart a prisoner for 20 years, with great public reluctance and much sincere private distress, Elizabeth ordered her fellow monarch's execution. It was carried out on February 8, 1587.

As queen, Elizabeth rationalized England's troubled finances as best a monarch could in an age of limited financial structures or knowledge of economics. She improved the administration of justice, fortified national defenses, and encouraged commerce. She reformed the Church of England, completing the process of making it subordinate to the state in return for establishment by the state. She had the foresight to charter the *East India Company*, and reigned over a tolerant cultural renaissance that witnessed and welcomed the likes of Francis Bacon, Edmund Spenser, and William

Shakespeare, when writers and thinkers elsewhere were harried, hounded, and burned by the *Inquisition* or Protestant confessional fanatics. Still, ''Elizabethan England'' remained a minor power, distinctly disadvantaged vis-à-vis the true Great Powers by its small population and the weakness of its army. Elizabeth compensated for weak territorial defenses by building a first-class navy and commissioning *privateer* ships and captains. She used this naval power to deflect French plans to invade Scotland in support of the Catholic party there (1558, 1560, and 1600). She instructed her privateers in a long though unofficial war at sea with Spain, from which she profited handsomely. With the help of *William Cecil*, she was brilliantly effective at diplomacy. She kept the pot boiling between an ancient foe, France, and a new archenemy, Spain, to keep both distracted and from her shores. She declined a desperate offer of sovereignty over the Netherlands in May 1585, but materially supported the Dutch ''Beggars'' as they stumbled toward near-defeat, exacting hard terms for her aid in the *Treaty of Nonsuch*. She dispatched privateers to the Caribbean to troll for treasure ships and to Newfoundland to harry the Iberian fishing fleets off the Grand Banks. When Philip replied with an embargo on English trade she sent *Francis Drake* to raided the Spanish coast in 1587, ''singeing the beard'' of the king by burning his ships and warehouses. Drake's insouciant desecration of Catholic churches and smashing of shrines in Spain, along with Elizabeth's execution of the Catholic Queen, Mary Stuart, provoked Philip to finally declare war on the ''harlot usurper'' in London.

Added to Elizabeth's mounting blows against Spain's economic interests and her alliance with the Dutch rebels was Philip's belief that it was God's plan that he should annex England to his empire to return it to the Catholic fold. Direct conflict no longer could be avoided. In 1588 the Navy Royale, along with bad weather in the Channel, defeated—or rather, deflected northward—the ''*Invincible Armada*'' sent by Philip to collect an army from Flanders and convoy it to England. That victory, or more accurately that avoidance of defeat, appeared so miraculous that many of Elizabeth's subjects came to see in England the New Israel, defended by God himself and his favorable ''Protestant Wind.'' Her generals pressed the war hard against Catholic rebels in Scotland and Ireland who had accepted Spanish backing. Inflows of troops extended the Elizabethan conquest of Ireland, that dangerous Catholic neighbor and potential strategic backdoor to England, during the *Nine Years' War* (1594–1603). Upon Elizabeth's death in 1603, she left a kingdom more secure and united and more stable and prosperous than she had found it. And she left a realm that was ready to set out on a path of overseas colonization that would culminate in a world-spanning empire. Though her wars left the country financially crippled, that was not a situation of her choosing or a result she might have avoided. It was the common fate of royal finances in an age of chronic confessional warfare and ever expanding armies and navies. Among her

. . . Elizabeth survived more than 20 assassination plots . . .

greatest achievements was recognition that it was in England's interest to oppose any large power that might dominate the Continent, be it Spain or France. She never carried confessionalism in foreign policy to the point of foolish promotion of the unattainable goal of destruction of either Catholic power. Reduction or distraction of the threat they posed to her small kingdom was enough. Besides, it was better that they balance against each other while she prepared the way for England's maritime expansion and later military greatness. To her anguished regret, Elizabeth died a childless spinster, last of the Tudors. She was succeeded by *James I*, son of her archrival Mary Stuart. See also *Essex, 2nd Earl of*; *French Civil Wars*; *Hanse*; *"King's Two Bodies"*; *Knox, John*; *Walsingham, Sir Francis.*

Suggested Reading: Paul Hammer, *Elizabeth's Wars* (2003); A. L. Rowse, *Expansion of Elizabethan England* (1955); R. Wernham, *The Making of Elizabethan Foreign Policy, 1588–1603* (1980) and *The Return of the Armadas* (1994).

embargo. See *Eighty Years' War*; *Philip II, of Spain*; *Philip III, of Spain*; *Twelve Years' Truce*.

emir. A Muslim chieftain or prince.

enarmes. Leather straps securing a *buckler*, or other *shield*, to the arm.

enceinte. A fortified enclosure. This was often a simple *keep* or *donjon* in early fortifications, but grew to become the main defensive perimeter—excluding all *outwork*—in later defensive complexes. See also *hornwork*.

encomienda. "Entrust system." This was the Castilian equivalent of the *commanderies* run elsewhere in Europe by the *Hospitallers* and *Teutonic Knights.* It was basically a military organization of economic life during the *Reconquista*, designed to sustain expansion and control of conquered territory in Iberia. It was subsequently introduced to the New World by Columbus. On Hispaniola it developed into a system of Indian forced labor, in which form in later years and decades it spread throughout the West Indies and much of Spanish America. In this system Spanish settlers obtained rights to compulsory Indian labor for their plantations or mines. This service was formally distinguished from slavery only by a legal veneer which instructed the Spanish "employer" to hold the physical and spiritual welfare (defined as conversion to Christianity) of their Indian laborers "in trust." *Charles V* issued a suppression edict in 1520 but this came too late for the *Aztecs* and other soon-to-be conquered Indian nations of the Central Valley of Mexico: *Hernán Cortés* impressed Mexico's surviving Indians into the encomienda system after 1521, while banning Indian forced labor in mines, work for which he thought Indians were ill-suited. The Dominicans and *Jesuits* opposed Indian enslavement, and won a legal—though in some ways hollow—victory against these practices in "New Laws" promulgated in 1542 following reports to the Court

by the Dominican Bartolomé de Las Casas (1474–1566). These abolished formal Indian slavery while affirming the encomienda system in practice. This rough compromise between Christian conscience and Spanish conquest served to encourage colonial settlement by providing a guaranteed Indian labor force to the settlers. A formal ban on the encomienda system was declared by the Spanish crown in 1559, but was mostly ignored by the settlers in practice.

Since the crown refused to make Indian forced labor legally hereditary, the encomienda system could not evolve into permanent or outright slavery and thus slowly died out in most of New Spain and Peru by c.1600. It survived throughout most of the colonial period in Paraguay and Chile, in the latter partly because of successful Indian resistance to conquest in the southern half of the province. The system was supplanted in practice by a near-feudal enserfment of Indian peasants in a new type of compulsory wage labor called ''repartimiento'' in New Spain and ''mita'' in Peru. This was accompanied by forced purchase of goods at fixed prices for the ''corregidores'' (provincial governors), which ensured pitiable wages led to perpetual indebtedness, and hence effectively hereditary servitude. Even this did not suffice to meet Spanish colonial labor needs, given the rate at which Indians died of exposure to virulently communicable European and African diseases in the 16th century. The complex system of Indian labor was therefore augmented from the 1570s with debt peonage among ''free'' Indians and importation of African slaves, who were not subject to the ''New Laws.'' For ideological and racist reasons, black slaves never engaged the same sympathy from the Iberian clergy that Indians did. See also *requerimiento*.

Suggested Reading: Leslie Simpson, *The Encomienda In New Spain* (1966).

enfilade. Establishing a position to bring sweeping crossfire to bear on the enemy's flanks or at an oblique angle to his front. See also *solid shot*.

engagements. A Royalist *contribution* system, especially in support of supplying *warhorses*, in use during the *English Civil Wars* (1639–1651). In 1644 such ''donations'' were made compulsory.

engineers. Troops specializing as engineers developed primarily out of *siege warfare*, in which mining, earthworks, siege engines, and general field fortification were paramount. *Muhammad II* had engineers (*köprücu*) build bridges to move his guns and level roads. Engineer specialties also grew from the increasing importance of artillery in both offense and defense. The first modern corps of military engineers, specializing in field fortifications and building pontoon bridges as well as town walls, was organized by the United Provinces. It had 25 members by 1598. *Gustavus Adolphus* borrowed and adapted this idea, along with many others he took from the Dutch, deploying field engineers who were critical to the success of the Swedish army. See also *Bureau, John and Gaspard*; *lağimci*.

England. The limit of Roman military control of the island of Great Britain was marked by a series of defensive walls crossing the island at a series of narrow waists. The most famous of these frontiers was Emperor Hadrian's wall, which protected Roman towns and settlements from ''barbarian'' tribes to the north, while also channeling trade with these tribes (and tolls and taxes) through choke-point fortified gates. After the departure of the Romans, who progressively recalled the legions to fight in the protracted civil wars of the later Roman Empire, a progression of fragmented Anglo-Saxon kingdoms succeeded in England. Of these, the most important was Wessex. Next came the Vikings, first as coastal and estuary raiders but later as invaders and settlers. They overran most of the independent kingdoms, leaving only Wessex, which paid tribute to Danish kings resident in the north, in the Danegeld. The rump of Anglo-Saxon England was conquered by the *Normans* under Duke William from 1066 to 1070. Some historians argue that the Normans then replaced a strong, unitary Anglo-Saxon monarchy with a weak *feudal* state and ''Norman ascendancy,'' and that this importantly divided rather than unified the peoples of Great Britain. Norman and Angevin kings of England held vast swaths of territory in France. They also sought to conquer and control Scotland and Ireland, the ''Celtic fringe'' (and also, strategic flanks) of their holdings in England that might serve as forward bases for invasion by a powerful continental enemy. During this period the main threat to England was local rebellion and the chronic low-level feuding and rural warfare that characterized feudal life in the 12th–14th centuries. Thus, the Barons' War (1260s) saw just two significant battles, at Lewes (1264) and Evesham (1265). The next decade opened a new phase in consolidation of English power in Britain. For 200 years following the Norman conquest, would-be invaders of Wales were stymied by the terrain and by Welsh defenses, notably Offa's Dyke. However, coastal Wales lay open to warships and landings. Edward I ''Longshanks'' (1239–1307) seized upon this fact and used the sea route to invade Wales in 1277, also resupplying his army from ships. In his second major Welsh campaign (1282–1283) the superiority of English logistics overwhelmed Welsh defenses. Edward then consolidated his hold over southern Wales by building (some historians think, overbuilding) expensive castles, some on nonstrategic sites. The Welsh rebelled in the north in 1294, forcing Edward to end a campaign in Gascony and shift his naval and land assets to Wales, where desultory fighting continued through 1295.

Norman, then Angevin, England had struggled constantly with France over possession of the rich Atlantic provinces of Normandy and Gascony. This dispute intensified at the end of the 13th century as the regional wine trade grew extraordinarily rich (over 1,000 ships per year left the Gironde) and both monarchies grew more potent. In 1293, France occupied English Gascony to force concessions on other disputes. This interrupted the wine trade, as well as English food exports to Bayonne. Hard-pressed to fight the French in Gascony, the English looked to Flanders and Normandy instead. In 1294

an English fleet landed an army that retook Bayonne. Contemptuously defying the English claim to ''*sovereignty of the sea*,'' in 1295 the French Mediterranean galley squadron came up the Channel, burned Dover and attacked several other coastal towns. Edward organized an alliance with the Flemings, but France invaded Flanders in 1297. A truce was arranged, then a peace in 1299. England's fortunes in France were saved by the stunning Flemish defeat of French chivalry at *Courtrai* (1302). A legacy of hostility remained to erupt again in the 1330s. Meanwhile, the three Edwards were distracted by chronic wars in Ireland and Scotland. Edward I's attempt to conquer Scotland was initially repulsed by *William Wallace*, his son, Edward II was repeatedly bested by the Bruce dynasty, and his grandson, *Edward III* inherited the bitter ''*Scottish Wars*'' that still wracked the British Isles at the end of his reign. In 1337, Edward III plunged England into a much greater fight on the continent: the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). Edward developed a new tactical system that some think amounted to a *revolution in military affairs* in its use of massed infantry archers and dismounted men-at-arms. This innovation won repeated battles in Scotland and France. Nevertheless, England fell behind continental developments in land warfare by the end of the 14th century, and was greatly retarded also as a naval power: in the 14th century, England was attacked by fleets it could not match from Scotland, France, Genoa, Castile, and even Morocco.

Why? Because military advantages gained from Edward III's military reforms were squandered by moral and military complacency in the nation, and by lesser kings. England then descended into a brief civil war, from the deposition of Richard II (1399) to the victory of Henry IV at Shrewsbury (1403). England was a resurgent power, and a highly aggressive one, under *Henry V*. But after his premature death it again suffered from military smugness born of overly easy victories. It lost the Hundred Years' War in the end, along with all of its once formidable continental empire save for the treaty port of Calais. From 1327 to 1485, England also experienced the violent overthrow of three dynasties: the Plantagenets were usurped by the House of Lancaster in 1399; Lancaster was deposed by the House of York (1461–1485). The so-called *Wars of the Roses* ended with a third dynasty, the Tudors, mounting the throne. The civil wars decimated the landed nobility but freed minor gentry and the merchant classes to fill political and economic spaces. Military niches were also opened by the death or exile of nobles, leading to a new type of professional officer in England in the 16th–17th centuries.

The *Protestant Reformation* gripped England next, but took a peculiar form dictated at first by the marital, monetary, and martial interests of *Henry VIII*, rather than being shaped by the divisive issues of doctrine then shaking Germany and continental Europe. The confiscations of lands and wealth integral to Henry's ''reformation'' were used to pay for repeated, and ruinous, wars with France and Scotland, notably in 1528 and 1544. For half a century thereafter, the debts created by Henry left successors in penury. The instability and religious turmoil of the reign of Edward VI kept England out of foreign adventures, but this changed when *Mary Tudor* married *Philip II* and

England briefly joined Spain's war against France. That led to loss of the last Angevin territories on the continent: Calais in 1558 and New Haven (Le Havre) in 1562, as well as defeat at *Gravelines* (1558). As France stumbled through 30 years of civil war, *Elizabeth I* cautiously countered Spanish ascendancy and the *Counter-Reformation* in northwest Europe. She allied with Dutch rebels on land and sea, where she also challenged Spain with commissioned *privateers*. This led to a protracted but undeclared naval war. The crisis came a year after Elizabeth executed *Mary Stuart*. In 1588 Philip dispatched the *Invincible Armada* to escort the *Army of Flanders* to England's shores. Twice more before the 16th century ended England was threatened by Spanish fleets and invasions. Yet, during Elizabeth's last decade merchant companies and *sea dog*s planted the first settlements in the West Indies and North America. These were used as bases from which to attack Spanish shipping and ports, to promote English trade inside the Spanish monopoly zone and as a new source of royal revenue.

This colonial effort increasingly became ''British'' rather than English in the first half of the 17th century, following the union of crowns under *James I*, who also ruled as James VI of Scotland. With the union came peace along the border with Scotland and the proclamation that England and Scotland should henceforth be jointly called ''Great Britain.'' Under the Stuarts the first toeholds of overseas empire were gripped in Virginia (1606), Bermuda (1609), Newfoundland (1610), New England (Plymouth, 1620, Massachusetts Bay, 1628), St. Kitts and Nevis (1924), Barbados (1627), Antigua (1632), and Maryland (1634). Nationalist propagandists and Protestant zealots saw this as fulfilling a providential English mission to uphold the ''true Christian faith'' and spread it to ''heathens'' in the Americas. But they also clung overlong to fear of Spain as an imperial and Catholic enemy—long after that threat subsided in fact. After 1600 England had greatly reduced reasons to fear Spain, which was itself much reduced. In any case, religious zealots did not (yet) speak for England: the government and merchant alliance that backed and oversaw early colonization schemes were moved far more by the promise of profits than by Protestantism, and not yet by the runaway Puritan convictions that would mark English policy at mid-century.

England was only briefly engaged in the *Thirty Years' War*. In the 1620s, James I intervened half-heartedly in behalf of the lost cause of his son-in-law, *Friedrich V*. A few years later *Charles I* sent ill-organized and badly commanded fleets that failed to prevent the Huguenots of *La Rochelle* from surrendering to France. Overall, England stayed out of the war upon making separate peaces with France (1629) and Spain (1630). Nevertheless, it was affected by the German war when thousands of English, Scots, and Irish returned to join in the convulsions and rebellions of the *English Civil Wars* (1639–1651). The outcome of the ''Wars of the Three Kingdoms'' of the 1640s–1650s was social revolution, judicial regicide, *Oliver Cromwell*'s theocratic republic, and the crushing of Catholic Ireland. The Civil Wars formalized the split between the Church of England and dissenters while leaving English, Scottish, and Irish Catholics outside a permanently fractured faith and newly established

Protestant Church. The Civil Wars also established the navy as the principal military arm of an island nation which over the next 200 years would acquire the greatest seaborne empire the world has ever seen. See also *Cromwell, Thomas*.

Suggested Reading: Cyril Falls, *Elizabeth's Irish Wars* (1950); Mark Fissel, *English Warfare, 1511–1642* (2001); Bruce Lenman, *England's Colonial Wars, 1550–1688* (2001); Michael Prestwich, *The Three Edwards* (1980) and *Armies and Warfare in the Middle Ages* (1996); James Wheeler, *Irish and British Wars, 1637–1654* (2002).

English armies. Anglo-Saxon England relied on the *fryd* to raise men for armies and navies alike. The *Normans* replaced this system with enfeoffed feudal military obligations, although the idea of fryd-style ''national'' service and collective obligation survived beneath the Norman surface to influence later attitudes and ease the transition to pay-for-service and large infantry formations. Still, the medieval English army was principally comprised of heavy cavalry recruited on a feudal basis, supplemented with mercenary infantry from as early as the 11th century. Most often, armies were led personally by the king, whatever his military competence. The cavalry was organized into *bannerets*, with larger knightly armies wrapped around a core of *housecarls.* England made the earliest and most successful transition to paid military service, in part because it had a strong monarchy sooner than most other European countries. In 1181, Henry II passed the *Assize of Arms* requiring ''national'' service of all knights (''free and honourable men''). In 1230 ''unfree'' English were added. By 1264 each village was assigned a quota of foot soldiers it had to raise and equip. Units of 100 village infantry were organized, led by mounted *constables*. These troops supplemented the royal housecarls and noble horse of the *servitium debitum*. More noble cavalry and men-at-arms were raised through the feudal levy, last called in 1327. More often, they were paid for with *scutage*.

Most often, armies were led personally by the king, whatever his military competence.

Early in the *Scottish Wars*, Edward I demanded service even from lower propertied orders not bound by vassalage, but who had a specified and substantial annual income. These ''distrained'' men rode to battle as men-at-arms. All told, England could put about 5 percent of its male population under arms by 1300, at least in theory. The use of scutage and the rise of ''bastard feudalism,'' in which the switch to a system of land tenure made it necessary to create new ties of quasi-vassalage to replace lost real ones, along with massive reliance on the nonfeudal levies with skill in the longbow, meant that England was first to abandon the old idea of reliance on unpaid military service by the landed nobility. The infantry that fought for Edward II at *Bannockburn* (1314) was mostly recruited by ''commissions of array,'' in which the sheriffs and clerks of two counties were paired in order to muster a quota of adult freemen. After the *Shameful Peace* of 1328 even most nobles served for pay. By 1334 all of *Edward III*'s men were paid. Scutage slowly faded from use, and was not demanded to raise troops after 1385. Instead, a system of *indentures*, or fee

contracts paid to recruiting officers, was employed that lasted into the 15th century. Scholars estimate that as many as 10–12 percent of English armies at this time were outlaws, recruited to fight in the king's wars in return for a royal pardon in lieu of wages. With defeat in the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453), English armies ceased to be a factor in land warfare in Europe. England also lost its lead at sea, lagging badly behind several continental navies.

Michael Roberts excluded English armies from his consideration of the *revolution in military affairs*, suggesting that there was virtually no progress made toward military modernization during the *Wars of the Roses*, which saw little to no adoption of continental weapons or tactical advances. More recently, Mark Fissel argued that the English military system actually showed high levels of flexibility and absorbed numerous foreign military ideas, though giving them a unique English character in practice. A major difference from the continent was that military development in England relied far more on private interests than the state, and was more closely tied to naval warfare. From 1588 to the start of the *English Civil Wars* (1639–1651) most English soldiers were raised through conscription. For the first years of the Civil Wars men joined up to fight for pay, or for reasons of religious or constitutional conviction, personal honor, or class or ethnic hatred. While the Civil Wars saw major advances, notably in the *New Model Army*, men had to be conscripted by levy to fight in Ireland. After 1660, the smaller army England retained relied on volunteers. It was not until 1689 that England formally established a standing army. See also *Black Prince*; *Cavaliers*; *chevauchée*; *Cromwell, Oliver*; *Eighty Years' War*; *Essex, 2nd Earl of*; *Fairfax, Thomas*; *Henry V, of England*; *Henry VIII, of England*; *Ireton, Henry*; *Manchester, Earl of*; *Nine Years' War*; *Roundheads*; *trained bands*.

English Civil Wars (1639–1651). "The Great Rebellion." From 1629, *Charles I* governed without Parliament, even raising new taxes such as the infamous *ship money* by decree. He was supported by most of the Anglican episcopacy and segments of the nobility. He looked to *Arminianism* and ascendant royal authority to overcome competing confessional cultures that had divided the "Three Kingdoms" of England, Ireland, and Scotland since the reign of *Henry VIII*. In trying to impose a unitary monarchy and conformist religion on the diverse peoples of the British Isles, Charles provoked three discrete oppositions to himself and the monarchy, each defending a distinct confessional-patriotic identity. Nascent Irish patriotism was linked to international Catholicism but divided by ethnic and religious differences among *Old Irish*, *Old English*, and *New English*. Scotland was steered by a radical assembly of the Scottish Kirk, the *Covenanters*, who sought to outmaneuver rather than overthrow the king. Outlying areas such as Cornwall and Wales, and parts of northern England, were staunchly loyal to the crown. But the English south was very different. English patriots were restrained, at first, by a conservative Parliament that emphasized tradition and public order over aspiration to utopian godliness. But in the end, king and Parliament alike would be set aside by zealots who set up an English theocracy, enforced by military dictatorship, in place of what they saw as the twin evils of a corrupt

and heretic monarchy under Charles and moral timidity and an overly compromising spirit in Parliament.

1640–1641

Dissent was everywhere evident in the ''Three Kingdoms'' in 1640. The Covenanters controlled Scotland, except where Highland clans attacked their outposts in the old style of private raids and warfare, while Ireland was plunging toward a confessional insurrection and murderous violence in 1641. English troops had sacked churches on their way to the *Bishops' Wars*, apprentices rioted in London, and payment of taxes was refused. The Long Parliament, which first met on November 3, focused its discontent on Charles' key ministers, the Earl of Strafford and Bishop Laud, impeaching them for recruiting Catholic troops in Ireland and for promoting Arminianism in the English Church. In December the Commons declared ship money illegal and accepted the *Root and Branch petition*. When Charles refused to disband his 9,000-man Royalist army in Ireland, Parliament sharply curtailed his legal authority (February 15, 1641), then executed Strafford for treason (May 12). Peace talks with the Covenanters nearly foundered over religious conformity, with the Scotts offering Presbyterianism and the English arguing for episcopacy, each deeply distasteful to the other camp. Still, a truce was agreed (Treaty of London, August 1641). Then the long-simmering revolt of Catholics against the advance of Protestantism in Ireland erupted in serial massacres of some 4,000 ''Plantation'' Protestants. Local Irish armies were quickly reinforced by tough mercenary captains and soldiers home from the German and Dutch wars. Soon, Catholics controlled most of the countryside while Protestant militia and a Royalist army under *Ormonde* held the major towns of the Pale and Ulster. More than any other factor, the Irish rebellion influenced English and Scottish politics until 1651: neither Parliament nor the Covenanters, both virulently anti-Catholic, could accept a Catholic ascendancy in Ireland, but neither would they pay for or entrust any army to the king for fear he would turn it against them. After his death, they could not trust armies raised by Irishmen or by each other.

1642–1643

The Scots sent a Covenanter army to Ulster to assist the Protestant settler militia. No sizeable English army was sent to Ireland until 1647, however, because civil war now broke out in England. The trigger was Parliament's effort to take control of the Army by introducing *impressment*, which in turn brought confrontation between Commons and king over exclusion of bishops from the Lords, where they could block Acts passed in the Commons. Brash young nobles egged the king to confrontation. He gave in, sending the Sergeant-at-Arms to arrest five members of the Commons on January 4, 1642, then going there himself surrounded by *reformadoes*, only to find the sparrows had flown. The members retired to London under protection of the *trained bands*. Charles moved to Hampton Court and then to Oxford, to raise an army to impose his will on Parliament and the Kingdom. The queen crossed to

France to raise money and allies, while Charles tried but failed to seize the armories at Portsmouth and Hull: this was important, as England had been so long at peace, 1603–1642, it was barely armed. By October each side had scrounged or imported enough arms to field large, if rather poorly equipped and trained armies: the king had 19 regiments of foot and 10 of horse, close to 24,000 men; Parliament had a larger force of mostly trained bands, London apprentices, and most of the navy.

When fighting started the Royalists (Cavaliers) were strong in Wales, the West counties and the Midlands, while Parliamentary forces (Roundheads) controlled London and the south, including most naval assets, officers, and men. The first Royalist attempt to take London led to a skirmish at Powick Bridge, near Worcester, on October 23, 1642, where *Prince Rupert* saw his first action. The larger battle of *Edgehill* was also fought that day. A renewed Royalist advance led to a scuffle at Brentford, 10 miles north of London, on November 12, 1642, after which the victorious Royalists sacked the town. However, an uninspired Cavalier pursuit of the beaten Roundheads allowed *Essex* to join with 12,000 men of the trained bands of London. There followed a standoff "battle" at Turnham Green (November 13–14, 1642), where Essex barred the Royalists with a display of superior numbers. The two sides exchanged desultory cannon fire, but neither attacked and no blood was shed. The first year of the war ended ingloriously, with Charles withdrawing to winter quarters in Oxford. The Royalists had displayed a highly aggressive spirit, compared to much lethargy and tactical caution on the part of Essex and other Parliamentary generals. Frustration with the Army built among harder men of zealous views in Parliament's ranks.

Meanwhile, rebellion broke out in Ireland in 1641. It drew thousands of Irish veterans of the continental wars home, including 1,300 from the Army of Flanders and 1,000 from French or Swedish service. These formed the core of the *Confederate Army* that gathered to support the principles of the *Confederation of Kilkenny*. The Irish rebels never controlled a major harbor in Ulster, and thus had great difficulty supplying their troops with modern artillery and shot or preventing Royalist amphibious operations and resupply. In the south the Confederates held onto Waterford, Wexford, and Limerick. While protecting these ports was a drain on limited resources, they supported naval actions and kept contact open with the Catholic powers of Europe. At sea, about a dozen Confederate 18- or 24-gun "Dunkirk frigates" and other light warships were quite successful in coastal raiding, harassment of English supply lines, and protection of southern Irish ports. In addition, *letters of marque* were issued to over 30 foreign frigates to operate in Irish waters against Protestant shipping, of which they took hundreds of prizes. The Confederate navy peaked at close to 50 warships in the late 1640s. From the outset all sides built *artillery fortresses*, most extensively around Limerick, Dublin, and Belfast. In the country, older castles served as forts, compelling the Royalists to spread overly thin as they occupied too many small garrisons. In turn, that meant field armies in Ireland remained small and battles were mostly indecisive.

During the winter of 1642–1643, Parliament created four ''Association'' armies. The Western Association army was quickly defeated, by *Ralph Hopton* at Braddock Down (January 19, 1643). Then Rupert sacked Birmingham (April 3) and took Lichfield (April 21). The Roundheads struck back as *William Waller* captured Hereford (April 25) and Essex forced surrender of the garrison at Reading (April 26). *Oliver Cromwell* spent a winter training the *Eastern Association Army*, then fought a sharp action at Grantham (May 13) where his *Ironsides* beat a Cavalier force twice their strength: the Royalists no longer enjoyed the advantage of superior cavalry, but not all Parliamentary horse was up to Cromwell's standard. Returning to Oxford from a raid, Rupert met Roundhead cavalry at Chalgrove Field (June 18). He charged, as always, scattering the enemy and killing their commander, John Hampden. Pym ushered the *National Covenant* through Parliament and impeached the queen for raising foreign monies and troops, while Essex only sat while Parliament's army deteriorated from disease and desertion. In Yorkshire, *Thomas Fairfax* was beaten at Adwalton Moor (June 30), but secured Hull for Parliament as he fell back. In the West, Hopton defeated ''*Lobsters*'' from London at Stratton (May 16) and again at Lansdowne (July 5), where he captured their artillery and baggage train. Hopton lost so many troopers at Lansdowne, however, he had to retreat to Wiltshire. He won again at Roundway Down (July 13), killing nearly 1,000 and capturing or scattering Waller's whole army of 4,500. That opened the way for Rupert to take Bristol for the Royalists, which he did on July 26 after hard fighting and the loss of over 500 Cavaliers. A hard fight, but Bristol was a real prize: it gave the Royalists access to commercial wealth, trade, and foreign aid. The next day a cavalry fight at Gainsborough saw Cromwell and 1,800 Ironsides scatter some 2,000 Cavaliers. Still, the king was enjoying real military success. Cavalier armies moved into Dorsetshire and Devonshire in August, took Exeter, and laid siege to Plymouth and Gloucester. It was the apex of Royalist fortunes: Charles was winning in the regions and planned a final assault on the stronghold of London. In near panic, Parliament approved new excise taxes and ordered conscription of 6,500 horse and 10,000 foot for the Eastern Association Army. Reinforced, Essex relieved Gloucester (September 8) while the navy resupplied Plymouth. Essex's route back to London was blocked by Charles and Rupert, so that Essex had to fight at *First Newbury*. There, Charles deployed poorly and lost badly and Essex fought well and won. In October, Parliament agreed to the ''Solemn Oath and Covenant,'' a military alliance with the Scots against ''papists . . . in arms under pretext of serving the king.'' Meanwhile, the Irish Confederates allied with Charles. It was becoming a whole other war.

1644–1645

In early 1644 the *Earl of Leven* led 21,000 Scots, the largest army in Britain, south to fight the king. As they moved, Rupert took Newark, giving the garrison generous terms. Waller won for Parliament at Cheriton (March 29), forcing Hopton to withdraw to Cornwall. There, he was hemmed in until forced to surrender in 1646. On May 28, Rupert sacked Bolton, massacring

1,600 defenders and civilians. On June 11 he took Liverpool and two weeks later Charles won at Cropedy Bridge (June 29), near Banbury. That rout allowed him to release Rupert to relieve the siege of York, where Fairfax, Manchester, and Cromwell had linked forces with Leven, gathering 27,000 men. Charles gave Rupert just 18,000 men and orders to seek battle. The great clash came at *Marston Moor* on July 2, a disaster for the king that lost him the north and much of the center of England. York fell on July 16, and other garrisons followed as Manchester and Cromwell marched south. Meanwhile, Charles caught Essex at Lostwithiel (September 2), in the far west. Over two days Charles surrounded and crushed Essex, who deserted his men and fled, leaving 6,000 prisoners to Charles. The king magnanimously allowed them to leave, stripped only of muskets and cannon. That was foolhardy considering Parliamentary armies now outnumbered the king's, though it is hard to see what else he might have done short of atrocity. He was aided by Roundhead generals falling into bitter quarrels over strategy and the prestige of command. An indecisive clash at Second Newbury (October 27) did nothing to staunch jealousies, or fears, among higher officers about social radicalism brewing in the Parliamentary Army. The core dispute was that Cromwell and the Puritans were determined on victory over Charles, while Manchester, Essex, and the Lords doubted the war could be won if the king, the rightful sovereign whatever his faults, refused to surrender his will.

Over two days Charles surrounded and crushed Essex, . . . leaving 6,000 prisoners to Charles.

Over the winter Parliament funded, and Fairfax and Cromwell officered and trained, the *New Model Army*. The older, *Northern Army* took Shrewsbury by surprise on February 22, 1646. That forced Charles to send Rupert north and delayed operations to clear the southwest, where Waller's unpaid men were near mutiny and Waller himself resigned. But Cromwell scoured the Oxford countryside, scooping up small parties of Royalists and denying Charles the horses he needed to move his armies while the New Model Army completed training. The war in Ireland continued to no real end other than to tie down potential Royalist reinforcements and 10,000 Covenanters in Ulster. In Scotland, the Royalist cause fared better under the inspired leadership of the *Marquis of Montrose*. He led Highlanders to victory over the Covenanters at *Tippermuir* (September 1, 1644), and three more times in 1645, at *Auldearn* (May 9), *Alford* (July 2), and *Kilsyth* (August 15). However, when Montrose moved south at the behest of the king, who was desperate to retake the north of England and for relief from Roundhead pressure, Montrose's highlanders were wiped out by *David Leslie* at *Philiphaugh* (September 13, 1645). Montrose barely escaped with his life, and later went into exile.

All that was peripheral: the decisive battle was fought in England on June 14, when the New Model Army caught up with the Royalists at *Naseby*. That brilliant and decisive victory for Fairfax and Parliament broke Charles' ability to lay siege or wage aggressive war. Among the spoils were the king's papers, proving he was conspiring to bring 10,000 Irish Catholics to fight in England.

That did in the Royalist cause politically, as well. Fairfax and Cromwell moved directly to the southwest, to reduce that core Royalist stronghold. Cavaliers tried to stop them at Langport (July 10, 1645), but were no match for the New Model Army. That fight cleared the way for a siege of Bristol, starting on August 23. Rupert surrendered the town on September 11, to the lasting disgust of the king, who disgraced and banished the talented if impetuous Bavarian.

1646–1651

The last Royalist field army in England, just 1,500 men, was trapped and crushed at Stow-on-the-Wold (March 21, 1646). Charles I was forced to abandon Oxford, and on May 5 he surrendered to David Leslie's Scottish army. His hopes to bring the Scots to his side foundered on his known mendacity and his lack of understanding of the depth of religious feeling loose in the Three Kingdoms. In any case, Montrose was on the run in Scotland. The Royalists in Ireland were ascendant after *Owen Roe O'Neill* crushed the Covenanters at Benburb in 1646, but that was not enough. Royalist rats deserted the king's sinking ship by the hundreds, going abroad or to London to submit to Parliament. With Charles in semi-exile on the Isle of Wight, the Army and Parliament controlled England. Disputes immediately broke out with the Scots over pay-in-arrears for Scottish troops in England, and over gentler *Erastianism* versus rigid Presbyterianism in the Church of England. The king's continuous plotting with the Irish, French, and Spanish, his duplicitous negotiating and easy lies, raised Cromwell's suspicions that the "peace party" in Parliament might surrender in negotiations with the king all fruits of victory won by the Army. As fighting continued in Ireland, Parliament struggled with paying off its war debts and argued with Fairfax and Cromwell about quartering and arrears, as well as Presbyterianism versus Puritanism and who really controlled policy and the government. Inside the Army grumbling increased as *Levellers* agitated for radical social change. Matters came to a head on August 6, 1647, when Fairfax and Cromwell occupied London over objections of Parliament. For the next eight months they were the effective government. In 1648, Fairfax split with Cromwell over the matter of the king. Cromwell then moved to settle for once and all with a stubborn man who refused to recognize in law what had been decided in fact on the field of battle. In December 1648, Charles was charged with treason and tried before Parliament. He was beheaded on January 30, 1649.

While events were moving toward the king's execution, Royalist and Confederate fortunes also deteriorated in Ireland. The papal nuncio, Rinuccini, failed to unite Irish Catholics politically even as the Confederates lost their Leinster army to defeat at Dungan's Hill (August 8, 1647) and their Munster army at Knocknanuss (November 13, 1647). Anti-Parliament riots by London apprentices, a major Army mutiny, a naval mutiny, rebellion in Wales, and Royalist risings in Essex and Kent consumed the first half of 1648. Cromwell marched to Wales in May and put down the rebellion by July, more by offering generous terms than by fighting. Fairfax smashed the uprising in Kent at

Penenden Heath (June 2) and in Essex at Colchester (June 13), the latter one of his harder fights. A Scots-Royalist army of just 10,000 men invaded England on July 8, reopening hostilities ("Third Anglo-Scots War") over the matter of establishing Presbyterianism in England and demands that religious dissenters be ruthlessly suppressed. The Scots-Royalists were destroyed by Cromwell at *Preston* (August 17–20, 1648). In Ireland, *George Monk* seized Belfast, Colerane, and Carrickfergus for Parliament. In August 1649, Ormonde was surprised and routed at *Rathmines* (August 2, 1649). A month later, Cromwell sacked *Drogheda*, butchering all Catholic clergy still alive when the walls fell; he repeated the deed at *Wexford*. Montrose landed in Scotland a year later with 1,500 men, vainly hoping to spark a Royalist uprising. He was surprised, routed, and captured at *Carbiesdale* (April 27, 1650), and executed by Argyll the next month.

Fighting in the island kingdoms continued for several years, but the major issues were decided by 1649. Parliament was established as supreme in law, though the Army was superior to the Commons in fact and deed. England henceforth was overwhelmingly dominant among the Three Kingdoms, with Scotland warily independent but increasingly subservient, and Ireland pressed under the iron heal of foreign garrisons and government. Catholicism would not be established in Ireland; it would be barely tolerated on the margin in England, and repressed in Scotland. Militarily, guerrilla fighting in Ireland and mopping up operations in Scotland were all that remained, and were mostly completed by 1653. From an amateur start, England had developed one of best land forces in Europe and possessed a superior navy. It was prepared to use both against whatever dash of Gaelic romanticism or fatalistic resistance remained within the Three Kingdoms, and to support a burgeoning overseas territorial and commercial empire. See also *Blake, Robert*; *club men*; *Committee of Both Kingdoms*; *Fifth Monarchists*; *Levellers*; *Nantwich, Battle of*; *Puritans*; *redshanks*; *Winceby, Battle of*.

Suggested Reading: John Barratt, *Cavaliers* (2000); Charles Carlton, *Going to the Wars* (1992); R. Cust and Ann Hughes, eds., *The English Civil War* (1997); James Wheeler, *Irish and British Wars, 1637–1654* (2002).

English Fury (April 1580). English troops sent to the Netherlands by *Elizabeth I* to assist *William the Silent* and the Dutch rebels against Spain, ran amok and sacked the predominantly Catholic town of Mechelen. The appellation recalled what had been suffered in Antwerp during the "*Spanish Fury*" in 1574.

Enrique the Navigator (1394–1460). Prince of Portugal. *Mestre* of the *Knights of Christ*. This Portuguese prince was a navigational and maritime pioneer, a key early explorer of Africa and the Atlantic. A devout Catholic, he wore a hair shirt and performed extreme devotions. He was also dedicated to the expansion of Christendom. To this end, he founded an observatory and school of navigation from which later explorers, aided by Jewish cartographers and Muslim pilots, sailed to map the coasts of Africa, India, and South America. Like Enrique, his captains went in search of gold as well as knowledge,

and looked for pagan souls to harvest for ''The Christ.'' Enrique was present at the capture of *Ceuta* in 1415. His explorers discovered Madeira in 1418, en route to the gold fields of *Guinea*. In 1433 his ships reached Cape Bojador and in 1440, Cape Blanco. Enrique settled permanently at Sagres, on Cape Vincent in 1443, and thereafter all his vision and energy was devoted to exploration. In 1427 one of his ships reached the Azores, where Portuguese colonization began in 1439. In 1444 another of Enrique's ships touched shore on uninhabited Cape Verde, and by 1460 other ships made landfall in Sierra Leone, 600 miles farther south along the West African coast. His life's work challenged the scientific—and thus, also certain religious—assumptions of his day and launched Europe into the *Age of Exploration*. His efforts also forced changes in the international law of the sea, and led to the later promulgation of the *line of demarcation* which had such an impact on the fortunes of far-off peoples of whom Enrique and his Brethren as yet knew nothing. Along with Columbus, Enrique is therefore widely considered a key progenitor of the modern age.

Suggested Reading: Peter Russell, *Prince Henry ''the Navigator''* (2000).

enseigne. ''Band.'' A small tactical unit in French armies (Huguenot and Royalist). Several enseignes made up a *company*.

ensign. In an early *Landsknechte* company, this was a large man chosen for his strength and bravery to carry the *Fähnlein*, or banner. Later, once firearms came to dominate the field of battle, young boys of little martial value, who could be easily replaced, were assigned the task. From this practice, a junior rank of ''ensign'' was instituted.

"Enterprise of England" (1588). See *Invincible Armada*.

epaulière. See *pauldrons*.

equine armor. See *armor*.

equitatores. See *lance* (2).

equites. Mounted infantry. See *dragoons*.

Erasmus (1466–1536). See *Luther, Martin*; *Protestant Reformation*.

Erastianism. The argument for state control of the Church (benefices, bishoprics) made by Thomas Erastus (1524–1583), a devout German Catholic who opposed what he thought were Lutheran and Calvinist ambitions and tendencies to local theocracy. Erastus argued for a return to the original condition of the Church, as he imagined it, before the Cluniac and Gregorian reforms of the 11th and 12th centuries expanded papal independence from secular power. Erastian arguments were especially influential in the Protestant Reformation in England. See also *English Civil Wars*; *Gallican Church*.

Ermes, Battle of (1560). An early battle in the *First Northern War* (1558–1583) and last stand of the *Livonian Order*. Several hundred Brethren and 500 auxiliaries foolhardily attacked several thousand Muscovite troops. Half the knights were killed. Most of the were rest captured, taken in chains to Moscow, and executed by *Ivan IV*. The next year, the Order disbanded.

***esame*.** The pay ticket of a *Janissary*. It was the most prized privilege of the Corps. See also *dead-pays*.

escarp. In fortification, the inner face of a ditch that formed a steep bank before and below the *rampart*.

escutcheon. The great shield of a *knight* of the European Middle Ages.

esmeril. By the late 16th century this term described the smallest class of artillery piece, about 200 pounds deadweight and 2.5 feet long. An ''esmeril'' fired shot weighing less than a third of a pound to an effective range of 200 yards. At sea, it was used principally as a man-killer.

***espaliers*.** Armor protection for the shoulders.

esplanade (1). The sloping part, or *glacis*, of the *parapet* that led away from the main fortification toward the countryside and the enemy's forward position.

esplanade (2). An open space between the *citadel* and a town's buildings and walls.

***espringarda*.** Originally, a type of Iberian crossbow, but by the 15th century it referred to a ''hand cannon'' that was closely related to the later *arquebus*.

esquire. Originally, one of the lowborn attendants of a *knight*. From the 13th century, esquires (or squires) accompanied aristocratic masters into battle bearing arms themselves. Over time, martial endeavor earned some of them the right to elevation to knighthood, as commoners who had nonetheless displayed the attributes and skill, and thus earned the social status, of a true gentleman. Alternately, a squire was the second stage of apprenticeship and ascendancy to knighthood for a young noble. It followed years as a *page* and preceded the dubbing ceremony and oath-taking of full knighthood. The terms were not written in stone: Philippe Contamine notes that comparable classes of auxiliary knights were called ''valets'' or just ''boys,'' with corresponding terms in Latin, German, Italian, French, and so on.

Essex, 2nd Earl of (1566–1601). Né Robert Devereux. A court favorite of *Elizabeth I*, and son-in-law to *Leicester*, he fought in the Netherlands, 1585–1586. In 1591 he commanded English forces sent to France to aid *Henri IV* against the Catholic League. In 1596 he captured Cadiz, but the next

year led a disastrous expedition to the West Indies. In 1598 he literally turned his back on Elizabeth and fell out of her favor. He served as Lord Lieutenant of Ireland for half a year, concluding a peace with the Earl of Tyrone during the *Nine Years' War* (1594–1603). He was imprisoned and disgraced by the queen. In answer, he formed a quarter-baked plot to do her in, trying to raise London against her (February 8, 1601). Condemned for high treason, he was beheaded.

Essex, 3rd Earl of (1591–1646). Né Robert Devereux. Elder son of the executed 2nd Earl, he took command of the Parliamentary Army in 1642 at the start of the *English Civil Wars*. He was personally brave, but a mediocre strategist and overly cautious field general. He demonstrated both qualities at *Edgehill*. He joined with and led the *trained bands* of London in the stand-off "fight" at Turnham Green (November 13–14, 1642). In 1643 he took Reading, relieved Gloucester, and showed some real tactical skill at *First Newbury*. He was crushed at Lostwithiel (September 2, 1644) by Charles, losing 6,000 men who were taken prisoner, along with most of his guns. His expedition to Cornwall was a major disaster from which he was forced to flee by ship. He resigned his command in April 1646. He died in September.

Estates. Medieval Europe was traditionally divided into three estates, or orders or classes: the clergy, the warrior class of *knights*, and laborers of town or country. In the early modern period most European monarchies had some "representative" institutions for the Estates of their societies, but nowhere was the distinction between l'état and les l'états ("state" and "estates") as sharp as it would become in the 18th century. The Swedish *Rigksdag* may have come closest to representing the "nation," and as such played a key role in sustaining Sweden's conscription and war tax system and military effort in Germany after 1630. An advanced representative institution was the English Parliament at Westminster. During the *English Civil Wars* it defeated the king in arms, tried and executed him, then raised taxes and governed for a time without him—until the Army decided to govern without Parliament. The *Reichstag* of the *Holy Roman Empire* waxed and waned in importance. Although fatally divided by confessionalism during the *Thirty Years' War*, the German Estates still managed to frustrate the attempt by *Ferdinand II* to monopolize the right to wage war. The Dutch Estates, too, exercised sovereignty on matters of war and peace, and gained full legal status in 1648. Elsewhere, the relative power of Estates and monarchs varied widely. In Poland, the *Sejm* was dominated by the barony and persistently hamstrung the monarchy's ability to wage war. The Danish Estates refused to pay for *Christian IV*'s German war, forcing him to wage it in his capacity as the Duke of Holstein. The Russian "zemsky sobor" had only dim influence on governance, and even then only during the reign of *Boris Godunov* and the "*Time of Troubles*." Its

The Cortes in Castile was limited to the merchant class and hardly influenced the Spanish monarchy . . .

single most important act was to elect Michael Romanov tsar in 1613. The Cortes in Castile was limited to the merchant class and hardly influenced the Spanish monarchy on any issue. In France, the Estates General (États-généreaux) had little power and did not even meet from 1484 to 1560. During the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629) the impecunity of the monarchy forced calling of the Estates in 1560–1561, 1576–1577, 1588–1589, and 1593. After that they did not meet again until 1789. See also *contributions*; ''*Defenestration of Prague*'' *(May 23, 1618)*; *Edict of Union*; *Imperial Diet*; *Louis XIII*; *Osnabrück, Treaty of*.

***étapes*.** A logistical system developed along the *Spanish Road* in which towns were required to store food and fodder at preset rest stations for purchase by arriving Habsburg troops. This was not quite a *magazine* system, but something close to it. During the *Thirty Years' War* local villagers were replaced by *sutlers* under contract to the crown. The French tried to replicate this system for troops moving to the Rhineland or into Flanders. They were not as efficient as the Spanish due to sabotage of the system by French officers who profited from the older method of regimental supply, corruption among sutlers, and lack of central royal funds.

Eternal Peace (1533). A treaty signed by Poland-Lithuania and the Ottoman Empire wherein Poland accepted the loss of Hungary to the Ottomans. In an exaggeration typical of the age, and of peaces in general, it declared that peace between these powers would be ''eternal.'' It actually lasted longer than most such agreements: the Poles and Ottomans remained mostly at peace to 1620, when Poland was held responsible by the Ottomans for *Cossack* raids into the Crimea.

Ethiopia (Abyssinia). An ancient Christian and feudal empire, Ethiopia maintained pilgrimage ties to Jerusalem even after the expansion of Islam in the 7th–10th centuries cut it off from direct links with the Mediterranean world. Also, it sent to the Coptic community of Egypt for Monophysite bishops to head the Ethiopian church. In 1270, when the Solomonid dynasty was founded, Ethiopian power reached its zenith. The Solomonids abandoned ancient capitals in favor of peripatetic military encampments which furthered their ambition for westward expansion at the expense of smaller, pagan kingdoms. Under Emperor Amda Syon (r.1314–1344) Ethiopia also expanded southward, overrunning several Islamic ''Sidama,'' small Muslim slave-trading states, and exacting tribute from others (Ifat). Solomonid Ethiopia enjoyed mostly peace and prosperity in the 15th century. The first Portuguese visited in 1490 when the explore Pero de Covilhã arrived at court, only to be held prisoner for the final 30 years of his life. A Portuguese mission which arrived in 1510 was similarly detained. A third came in 1520, and was finally allowed to leave in 1526. The Portuguese were astonished to discover a large Christian state deep within Africa, and offered military support. In this, they were matched bid for bid by the Ottomans, who sent firearms in

1527 to coastal Muslims battling Ethiopia's Christian rulers. Portuguese aid was important because Ethiopia's position had collapsed suddenly as a result of a radical shift in the balance of power resulting from an invasion of firearms-bearing coastal Arabs, who were supported by the Ottomans who were themselves then expanding into the Red Sea. In 1529 a technologically overmatched Ethiopian army was crushed in a plunder raid by musketeers from the Muslim coastal state of Adal, which had access to Ottoman firearms. Much of the country was ravaged until 400 Portuguese musketeers, under Vasco da Gama's son, responded to an appeal in 1541, marched with the Ethiopian army and defeated the army of Adal (1542). The Portuguese musketeers remained to train Ethiopians on guns they sold them. The *Jesuits* arrived in 1557 along with artillery and more muskets, and enjoyed a brief success by converting King Susenyos to Catholicism in 1612. However, upon his abdication in 1632 the Monophysite (Coptic) Ethiopian Church reasserted its ascendancy and by 1648 all Jesuits were expelled as Ethiopia entered a period of 200 years of radical isolationism.

Suggested Reading: Roland Oliver, ed., *Cambridge History of Africa*, Vol. 3 (1977); Sergew Sellassie, *Ancient and Medieval Ethiopia* (1972).

eunuchs. In 14th–17th-century China, court eunuchs were often placed in command of the *Ming Army* to prevent an untrustworthy general from challenging the dynasty. Production of military equipment was also largely in the hands of eunuchs, and concentrated around the capital. Different groups of eunuchs controlled the Palace Armory, the Saddlery Service, the Armor Service, and the Sewing Service. In addition, eunuchs indirectly controlled the Gunpowder Office and a Wagon Depot, which manufactured cannon and small firearms. Eunuchs were also powerful in the courts of various Muslim caliphs and sultans. See also *banner system (China/Manchuria)*; *Hongwu emperor*; *Janissary Corps*; *Tumu, Battle of*; *Wanli Emperor*; *Zheng He*.

Everlasting League. See *Swiss Confederation*.

Evesham, Battle of (1265). See *England*.

exact militia. An attempt by *James I* and then *Charles I* to modernize English defenses on the cheap, by commanding the *trained bands* and other militia to purchase on their own, and practice with, the most modern weapons available.

expeditio ultra Alpes. See *Holy Roman Empire*.

Exploration, Age of. Arabs, Indians, Vikings, and Polynesians all made impressive voyages of discovery at the height of their civilizations. In 1400, Ming China was the world's greatest naval power. It sent out seven spectacular and enormous expeditions under *Zheng He*, a Muslim eunuch and admiral. These were vast fleets set on expeditions of trade and exploration

which far exceeded anything Europe then mounted, both in size of individual ships and the expeditions as a whole. Yet, having touched the shores of Sri Lanka, Iran, the east coast of Africa, and even distant Australia, the Ming suddenly ceased oceanic travel: Zheng He's expedition of 1433 to the Middle East and East Africa was the last Chinese fleet to sail west. In 1436 a new Ming emperor banned further journeys, dismantled the fleet, and forbade building of blue water ships. It fell to Europe's *carracks* and *frigates*, not to Chinese *Fujian ships*, to map the oceans and force open whole continents to intellectual and cultural intercourse along with economic exploitation and colonization. The ''Age of Exploration'' by Europeans was different from all others, therefore, in having the lasting effect of linking the world's oceans into unified navigational and trading systems. In turn, this permitted a transformation of world affairs in which the center of gravity of world history shifted to Europe over a 400-year period, based largely on command of the sea.

The ''Age of Exploration'' was also the second half of a two-part response to the geopolitical reality and power of Islam. Europe's initial military attempt to reverse the Muslim conquest of the Middle East and North Africa, the *Crusades*, had failed after 200 years of effort and much expenditure of lives and treasure. Now, with an even great Muslim power rising in the east—the Ottoman Empire—Europeans sought a way by sea around the immoveable Islamic world to the markets of India and China. The new approach to an old problem was made possible by key navigational innovations, including the magnetic *compass*, *astrolabe*, and *portolan chart*, stern-mounted rudders, and triangular *lateen sails*. Those technological breakthroughs combined with new astronomical knowledge acquired from Muslims via the Norman conquest of Sicily and Iberian contact with the great scholars of the Emirate of *Granada* to make maps more accurate and ocean-going navigation somewhat less perilous to crews and investors. The effort was also partly inspired by the famous journals of Marco Polo and visions of Asia as a land of vast wealth, by dreams of mythical empires like Atlantis or the lost ''Kingdom of Prester John,'' and by desire to reach the sources of African gold suspected to exist somewhere along the Guinea coast. It is important to understand the extraordinary lure of gold (and spices), the core motive behind European voyages of exploration for which religious mission provided a pretext and justifying propaganda. But it is also worth recalling that some monarchs granted clergy extraordinary powers of administration, which suggests a sincere if secondary religious motive was in play as well.

By 1375 the Portuguese reached Cape Bojador, 1,500 miles south of Ceuta. Concerted voyages of discovery were then made in the African Atlantic by *Enrique the Navigator*, whose ships reached the Azores in 1427 and rounded Cape Bojador in 1434. Ten years later Portuguese *caravels* reached Cape Verde, and by the time of Enrique's death in 1460 they had made landfall 600 miles farther south in what is today Sierra Leone. Meanwhile, *Constantinople* fell to the Ottomans in 1453, cutting off the prosperous city-states of the *Italian Renaissance* from their historic commerce with Asia—except for Venice, which

continued to trade in the eastern Mediterranean under a monopoly agreement negotiated with the Ottoman sultans. The Genoese explorer Christopher Columbus was one of many who sailed in search of an alternate route to the east, but the first to do so by sailing west, where he encountered the New World in 1492. The next year, the pope drew a *line of demarcation* dividing the globe between the Catholic crowns of Spain and Portugal. Meanwhile, in 1488, Bartolomeu Dias had rounded the Cape of Good Hope. Six years later Portuguese ships reached Ethiopia—was this the fabled lost land of ''Prester John''? Vasco da Gama (1469–1524), who explored parts of India's coast, 1497–1498, actually took with him a letter for Prester John which offered an alliance against Islam. In fact, east African shores were reached earlier by Pero de Covilhã, in 1488–1489. As he ended a prisoner of the Ethiopian court, where he spent the last 30 years of his life, his name was lost to fame and almost to history as well. Across the Atlantic another Genoese captain, John Cabot, discovered Newfoundland and Nova Scotia.

In 1500, Pedro Cabral first touched the shores of Brazil, paused to found the town of Veracruz, then continued with his primary mission to bring a Portuguese war fleet to the Indian Ocean to make good on the discoveries of Vasco da Gama. The next year Amerigo Vespucci mapped the east coast of South America, to the La Plata estuary. On the East African coast, Zanzibar was attacked and occupied. Mombasa was sacked in 1505 and once again in 1528, and permanent Portuguese trading forts were set up at Kilwa, Sofala, and in Mozambique, plying trade in east African gold and slaves with the Arabian Gulf states and India. By 1510 small Portuguese war fleets arrived in the Indian Ocean. Employing knowledge of the monsoon winds acquired from local Arab and Indian traders, and with broadside cannon perched on the deck of their ships, they swept much larger Arab and Indian galleys from the East African and Indian coasts and took control of ancient trade routes and markets. On the other side of the Pacific, Vasco Nunez de Balboa traversed the isthmus of Panama in 1513 and became the first European to gaze westward on the Pacific Ocean. In 1514 the pope granted Lisbon the right to any newly discovered lands to the east. The Spanish therefore hurried to cross the Pacific from the west, looking for a route to the Spice Islands from the west coast of Central and South America. Ferñao de Magalhães (Ferdinand Magellan) sailed from Seville in 1519 in search of the Moluccas. He skirted South America and survived mutiny, hurricanes, ship's fever, and scurvy, only to be killed by natives in the archipelago later called the Philippines (1521), which his landfall ensured would become a Spanish conquest and colony. The Pacific was fully crossed, and the world circumnavigated, by his second-in-command, Sebastian del Cano, who returned to Portugal with a single ship and just 18 men from an original complement of 265.

Pacific exploration remained difficult until the 1560s, when the Spanish mapped seasonal circular winds and currents which permitted reliable passage between Asia and the west coast of the Americas, comparable to the seasonal ''trade winds'' which by then were familiar to all ships plying the vibrant and expanding Atlantic trade in slaves, sugar, fish, and furs. A measure of the

difficulty may be seen in the calculation scholars have made of ship losses: of 912 ships Portugal sent to the "Indies" from 1500 to 1635, fully 144 sank before arrival and another 298 never finished the journey home, lost to weather or to pirates. Still, by 1600 Europe's naval powers had charted most of the globe, set up forts and trading posts on—and claimed segments of—the coasts of nearly all inhabited continents, and began to penetrate and colonize the Americas. Portugal had 40 forts and factories (entrepôt) strung out between East Africa and Japan, serving the trade in spices, slaves and gold—and it was already a declining power. Other naval powers soon surpassed those numbers. Lesser voyages of exploration included John Davis in the Arctic in 1586 and 1587, and Henry Hudson's ill-fated Arctic voyage from 1610 to 1611. What followed in the 17th century was a raw era of mercantile exploration and exploitation by divers *East India Companies* and other monopoly trading companies in other regions. Accompanying exploration were mercantilist wars over the lucrative spice and slave trades, but little cultural or military penetration of continental interiors other than in the Americas, and only tentative settlement.

He skirted South America and survived mutiny, hurricanes, ship's fever, and scurvy, only to be killed by natives . . .

Suggested Reading: C. Boxer, ed., *Portuguese Commerce and Conquest in Southern Asia, 1500–1750* (1985); John R. Hale, *The Age of Exploration* (1974); G. V. Scammel, *The World Encompassed* (1981); L. Withey, *Voyages of Discovery* (1989).

expulsion of the Jews (from Iberia). In the mid-14th century civil war in Castile encouraged fanatic persecution of Jews, largely as scapegoats for the nation's troubles and to placate popular sentiment. In June 1391, a Christian mob stirred by a fanatic anti-Semite preacher carried out a pogrom in Seville, killing hundreds of Jews and forcing others to submit to baptism. The violence spread: pogroms were launched in Valencia, Barcelona, and other cities, with many hundreds more deaths (400 in Barcelona alone). Authorities in Aragon and Castile tried to protect Jews from a populace that lusted for blood, led by clerics mouthing the usual blood libels about supposed ritual murders by Jews of Christian children, or opportunistic nobles wanting to be free of debts owed to Jewish moneylenders. These pogroms so changed circumstances for Jews in Spain from 1391 that the majority became *conversos*—real or feigned converts to Christianity. This greatly reduced identified Jews in Iberia. For instance, in Aragon, openly observant Jews dropped to one-quarter the number registered in 1391. However, there was a reversal of misfortune from 1416 when the crown of Aragon protected Jews against popular animosity, mainly because Jews paid special taxes directly to the king, bypassing the Cortes. Aragon also guaranteed autonomy of the Jewish enclave in Saragossa. In the second half of the 15th century, however, the military balance on the peninsula swung decisively in favor of Christians, and *Ferdinand and Isabella* won the civil war over the succession in Castile. Thereafter, they redirected the martial energies of their noble classes into a final crusade against Muslim Granada.

expulsion of the Jews

Jews began leaving Spain semi-voluntarily in large numbers in the 1480s, an exodus spurred by social unrest and violent religious excitement occasioned by the war with Granada, and because of the founding of Castilian and Aragonese *Inquisitions* (as distinct from the Medieval Inquisition, based in Rome) to deal with the ''converso problem.'' In theory, Jews (and Muslims) were legally excluded from the Inquisition into ''error'' because they were theologically excluded from Catholic doctrine. That was moot in practice, however, since Jews were so hounded for their Judaism that most who stayed had to feign conversion, and that exposed them to inquisition into the soundness and sincerity of their newly declared Christian faith. In fact, Jews became the principal target of Inquisitors, who focused on conversos above all others. This led, as severe repression and terror always does, to communal divisions and self-preserving denunciations by frightened conversos of other conversos for supposed backsliding into ''heresy'' or ''secret Judaising.'' In 1487 the Inquisition overturned Ferdinand's protection order for Saragossa and expelled the city's Jews; it could not have done so without his consent. Other cities soon followed suit, pandering to the worst instincts of Christian populations by expelling Jews and, sometimes, also Moors. The crown did nothing to prevent or reverse these deportations, which were paralleled by expulsion of Italian Jews from Parma (1488) and Milan (1491), and a few years later, by expulsions of French Jews from Provence. The Hebrew communities of Spain were by far the largest, wealthiest, and best educated in Europe, and their destruction arose from more vicious inspiration and had greater and wider consequences than the smaller affairs in Italy and France.

In 1490, Grand Inquisitor Torquemada convinced Ferdinand and Isabella that a radical separation of Christians and Jews was essential, as too many conversos were sliding into heresy or, even worse, ''re-Judaizing.'' In January 1492, Granada surrendered to Ferdinand and Isabella and the ''Catholic Crowns'' moved to consolidate and celebrate God's great gift of martial victory. They hesitated over an order for total expulsion of Jews as they were advised that such an order would have deleterious consequences for the economy, and that they would lose a unique source of royal revenue since Jews (and Muslims) were taxed directly by the crown, unlike Christians. Also, several officers in the Royal Treasury were Jews, as were the royal physicians. In the end, their bigotry trumped their banking interests: Ferdinand and Isabella issued an expulsion order giving all Jews a choice of immediate conversion to Christianity or permanent exile from July 1492. Many Jews left for Portugal, raising the Jewish portion of the population there to about one-fifth the national total. Others departed for Navarre. More crossed to North Africa. Smaller numbers of highly skilled and affluent Jewish families moved to France, the Netherlands, and England. The Portuguese profited handsomely from Jewish discomfiture: they charged a ducat per head for the right to reside for six months. In 1497 a Spanish princess married the Portuguese king, an alliance that meant Spanish Jews in Portugal were again faced with a choice of conversion or deportation. In 1498, Navarre, too, demanded conversion or exile. Poorer Jews left right away. Many headed to North Africa,

where they were met with robbery and murder. Tens of thousands of Iberian Jews left for the Ottoman Empire where *Bayezid II* welcomed them. Many settled around Salonika, others in Athens and Constantinople.

Richer Jews purchased extended toleration in Iberia: the Portuguese court granted a 20-year amnesty in exchange for large financial favors and ''loans.'' In 1507, however, Lisbon's Christians conducted their first great pogrom, rampaging and massacring Jews. Officialdom was more tolerant, at least until 1532, when King João III sought to introduce a discrete Portuguese Inquisition modeled on Spain's. This effort was frustrated for a few years by bribes paid by ''New Christians'' to the curia in Rome. However, in 1542, Cardinal Carafa (later, Pope Paul IV), a vicious anti-Semite and fanatic reactionary, established a ''Holy Office'' of the Inquisition in Rome, and the weight of papal influence tipped toward even greater persecution. In July 1547, a papal bull authorized a separate Portuguese Inquisition. The Portuguese and Spanish Inquisitions remained discrete religious courts even after the ''union of the crowns'' of Portugal and Spain effected by *Philip II* in 1580. By 1600 the Grand Inquisitor in Lisbon had overseen some 50 *autos de fe*, hounding fresh waves of religious refugees out of Portugal.

The severity of the Portuguese Inquisition led Spanish inquisitors to express alarm over what they saw as a new cultural and religious threat to Spain: the return of Spanish conversos and Jews driven out of Portugal. On the other hand, Madrid was facing bankruptcy and this exodus presented a chance to squeeze funds from frightened Jews. Jewish refugees, bounced from one Inquisition to the other, were subjected to intense persecution but offered the chance to save themselves from the flames by paying heavy fines and accepting public baptism. At the turn of the 17th century *Philip III* was so desperate for money to finish his father's wars and pay his father's debts that he sought another way. In 1602 the wealthiest of the exiles heavily bribed Spanish officials, offering Philip personally 1,860,000 ducats, to issue a general pardon to ''Judaizers'' that would allow them to return to Spain. Over the objections of his own Inquisitors Philip asked permission of the pope to accept the bribe. On August 23, 1604, the pope issued a pardon that came into effect on January 16, 1605, granted in exchange for ''gifts'' of several million ducats to the king and to the pope raised from Iberian Jewish communities and bankers. The bribe and pardon bought a generation of moderated treatment by the Inquisition, nothing more.

In 1628 an appeal was made by Portuguese ''New Christians'' to be allowed to leave for Spain, or for the Netherlands, Germany, or England, upon payment to *Philip IV* of 80,000 ducats. When Philip declared the first state bankruptcy of his reign in 1626, older Italian banking houses had suffered such losses that Spanish access to the banking operations and lending capital of leading Iberian Jews proved irresistible to the crown, and Philip permitted some Portuguese Jews to resettle in Spain. At last, but too late, the economic loss to Spain of this skilled exile community was noticed. *Olivares* tried to convince other exiled Iberian Jews, in North Africa and the Levant, to return so that Spain could gain access to their unique skills and their capital. This

initiative met with popular hostility, however, and he was compelled to retreat from it. The economic damage done to Spain by the expulsions was considerable. It at least contributed to repeated royal bankruptcy that degraded Spanish credit and wiped out the older Italian (Genoese) banking houses on which the monarchy relied for loans to pay for its old *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648) and its new *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648), and additional wars with the Ottomans and France. While the crown eventually sought to place penury before religious principle, if that term may be applied to institutional bigotry, the Holy Office continued fevered work of murderous anti-Semitism throughout the 17th century, continuing its baleful work against the wider national interest.

Some revisionist historians have tried to paint the Iberian expulsions as national policy rather than the result of religious bigotry or clerical fanaticism. Yet, the persecutions were carried out in the face of economic self-interest and for only short-term economic benefit to the crown from confiscation of forcibly abandoned property. Religious prejudice thus seems the better core explanation. Royal anti-Semitism was reinforced by a renewed confidence in Spain's divine mission, which in turn reinforced an ancient but widespread mystic belief—most prominent in Ferdinand's home of Catalan, and a view he is known to have shared—that the defeat of Islam had been identified in prophesy with simultaneous destruction of the Jews. The official justification given in the order was that ''New Christians'' would be re-Judaized (''seduced . . . from our Holy Catholic Faith'') by contact with unconverted Jews. But money was in play, too: all synagogues and Jewish cemeteries were seized by the crown and families going into exile had to sell everything they could not carry at desperation prices. Those too poor or too frail to leave were forced to choose between baptism and death. The overall numbers involved remain a matter of controversy. Some Jewish historians assert that as many as 200,000 (from a total Jewish population of 220,000) chose exile. Henry Kanem, a sharp revisionist generally sympathetic to the Crown and the Inquisition, claims 80,000 Jews resided in Spain, that fewer than half that number left, and that many returned voluntarily ''to the Christian fold'' [*sic*]. Most historians believe instead that the forced diaspora was large, that it was devastating culturally and economically to Jews and to Spain, and that it caused considerable suffering and not a few deaths. See also *Bayezid II*; *expulsion of the Moors*; *Fifth Monarchists*; *war finance*.

Suggested Reading: J. H. Elliot, *Imperial Spain, 1469–1716* (1964; 1970); Henry Kamen, *The Spanish Inquisition* (1998).

expulsion of the Moors (from Iberia). In negotiations leading to the surrender of Granada in 1492, *Ferdinand and Isabella* agreed to protections for the city's Muslims, Over the next decade, however, agitation by the Holy Office of the *Inquisition* led to a reversal of policy: in 1499 Grenadine Muslims were told to accept baptism or go into permanent exile, following in the footsteps of Iberian Jews. In 1502 a similar order, ''convert or leave,'' was issued to all Muslims remaining in Castile. The Inquisition was then directed by the

monarchs to investigate ''Moriscos,'' former Muslims accused of insincerely converting to Christianity to avoid the expulsion order, heavy fines, or the fires of an *auto de fe*. Even those who had sincerely converted attracted suspicion and investigation by the Inquisition; many more suffered accusations of inconstancy rooted in the confiscatory greed of Inquisitors, or the spite of jealous or vicious neighbors. In addition, there likely was a racist component to Spanish policy toward the Moors. Developing Spanish nationalism did not accept that even converted Muslims, people generally of darker complexion and different ethnicity than Spanish Christians, should or could be assimilated into society. On the other hand, the Moors presented a more complex problem for the Crown than did Spanish Jews. First, there were many more of them. Second, they were concentrated in the Aragon and the south. Their numbers and location suggested a potential for revolt and fed into widespread fear that they might serve as a ''fifth column'' for Ottoman or Berber raids or even more fantastically, a Muslim invasion of Spain. Iberian Jews posed no comparable security problem, not even in the imagination. Anti-Muslim laws proceeded more slowly, therefore, with bans on traditional dress followed after a few years by bans on Arabic education and writing. Only much later were more forceful policies of ''ethnic cleansing'' and physical relocation introduced. In all this the Inquisition operated as a principal weapon of political repression and intelligence gathering for the state concerning the Moors. The final, physical expulsion of the Moors from Spain and Portugal was carried out 1609–1614, by order of *Phillip III*. It was overseen by the *Duke of Lerma* and the Inquisition. Expulsions moved perhaps 350,000 Morisco refugees to North Africa. By then the Inquisition was moved as much or more by racialist motives as it was by religious intolerance in its dealings with the last, lingering Moriscos. See also *expulsion of the Jews*.

Suggested Reading: J. H. Elliot, *Imperial Spain, 1469–1716* (1964; 1970); Henry Kamen, *The Spanish Inquisition* (1998).

Eyâlet Askerleri. The ''Provincial Army'' of the Ottoman Empire, consisting of all troops not in the Sultan's household service (*Kapikulu Askerleri*). It included both cavalry and infantry divisions. Its infantry were local levies, in no way comparable in quality, weapons, or political loyalty to the *Janissaries*.

eyâlet-i Budin. The most strategically important of the four occupied provinces of Ottoman Hungary. It was garrisoned by about 8,000 *Janissaries*.

F

facings. See *drill*.

factory. A fortified overseas base or entrepôt used to carry out trade. See also *East India Company*; *Eighty Years' War*; *Portugal*; *Vereenigde Oostindische Compaagnie*.

Fähnlein. "Small flag." In the *Swiss Army*, below the *Banner*s (great cantonal standards), soldiers were grouped under smaller flags of discrete guilds to which they belonged, or of the towns or rural districts from which they hailed. These "Fähnlein," or companies grouped around a flag, numbered from 50 to 150 men depending on the size of the canton they served. They acted as a large tactical subunit within the *Swiss square*. The majority of Fähnlein were comprised of halberdiers and pikemen, but some developed as specialized units of crossbowmen, arquebusiers, or musketeers. The *Landsknechte* also used this system, though German Fähnlein were larger, from 250 to 300 men. By the mid-16th century regiments of up to 3,000 men were commanded by a *colonel* and organized in 8 to 10 Fähnlein. A key difference from later armies was that Swiss and Landsknechte Fähnlein carried flags in the center of their battle squares, not to the front. These banners were objects of murderous devotion, were therefore highly valued as prizes to be seized from an enemy, and were used to taunt a foe by mistreatment if captured. For example, at *Marignano* one Landsknechte unit cut up and ate a captured Swiss Fähnlein to show contempt for their traditional enemy; more often, they were taken home and displayed as trophies. See also *ensign*; *martial music*.

Fairfax, Thomas (1612–1671). Parliamentary general. He first experienced war in the Netherlands and Germany. He next led a regiment of dragoons for *Charles I* in the bloodless *First Bishops' War* (1639). He raised a Yorkshire army for Parliament when the *English Civil Wars* broke out.

Although a solid cavalry commander, he lost two small skirmishes in 1643 to more skilled Cavaliers, at Seacroft Moor (April 13) and Adwalton Moor (June 30). Fairfax was joined by *Oliver Cromwell* and defeated the Royalists in a sharp cavalry action at *Winceby* (October 11, 1643). He relieved the siege of Nantwich on January 24, 1644, taking 1,500 prisoners. He commanded on the right at *Marston Moor* (July 2, 1644). Fairfax pushed hard for professionalization in the military and was key to setting up the *New Model Army*, which he led to a brilliant victory at *Naseby* (June 14, 1645). To his shame, after the battle he lost control of his men, who murdered hundreds of women taken with the baggage. He later took the lead in pressuring Parliament to meet pay arrears, quartering, and other obligations to the troops. From 1648 to 1649, Fairfax fought in the southeast against Royalist holdouts. United with Cromwell over dealing with Parliament on issues of quartering and payment of arrears to the Army, Fairfax ordered troops to occupy London on August 6, 1647. They marched through the city with swords drawn and matches lighted. Fairfax broke with Cromwell over the great matter of whether to execute the king and on the matter of repressing the Scots. In 1650 he left the military and politics. See also *Levellers*.

falchion. A short, broad-bladed sword with a convex edge introduced in the later Middle Ages. Primarily used by infantry, it caused deep slashing wounds.

falcon. French: ''faucon,'' Spanish ''media falconeta.'' A relatively standardized class of 16th-century cannon weighing about 800 pounds and capable of firing 3-pound *solid shot* or other ordnance to an effective range of 400 yards and a maximum range of 2,500 yards.

falconete. French: ''fauconneaux.'' A ''falconete'' was a smaller version of the 16th-century *falcon*. It fired a one-pound shot to an effective range of just under 300 yards and a maximum throwing range of 1,500 yards.

Falkirk, Battle of (July 22, 1298). Fought early in the *Scottish Wars*, a year after the Scots crushed an English army at *Stirling Bridge*. The Scots were again led by *William Wallace*, the English by *Edward I*. The Scots formed four *schiltrons* of pikemen and repelled several charges by Edward's *heavy cavalry*, which included some *Templars*. However, the king brought forward Welsh longbowmen who cut bloody gaps in the schiltrons until they ran out of arrows. Into the holes English knights charged with lance and sword, winning decisively. It is thought by specialists that the English army at Falkirk was the largest ever raised to that time. This fact reflected the new realities of an emerging money economy and wage-based system of *war finance*, as well as high population levels that preceded the *Black Death*.

"False Dimitri." See *Godunov, Boris Fyodorovich*; ''*Time of Troubles*.''

Famagusta, Siege of (1570–1571). See *Cyprus*.

familia. See *housecarls*.

familiares ad arma. See *palace guards*.

famine, as a weapon of war. See *fortification*; *logistics*; *siege warfare*; *Thirty Years' War*.

Farangi. Mughal term for European artillerymen in the service of Muslim emperors in India. See also *folangji*; *renegades*; *Rumis*.

Farnesse, Alexander. See *Parma, duque di*.

fascine. A faggot of brush or cordwood, usually collected and carried to the siege site by the cavalry or in carts by civilian laborers. They were used to fill in ditches or dry moats around besieged fortifications.

Fastolf, John (d.1459). English soldier, and part-basis for Shakespeare's caricature, Sir John Falstaff. The real Fastolf fought in Ireland, Gascony, and France, under *Henry V*. Most famously, he led a supply column to Orléans, fighting off a French and Scots army at *Rouvray* (February 12, 1429) along the way.

Fatamids. See *Algiers*; *caliph*; *Crusades*; *Egypt*.

fathom. A naval measure of water depth equivalent to six feet.

fauld. A skirt of hinged and crenelated *plate* protecting the waist. It was constructed of three or four ''lames'' of overlapping metal. It might be attached to ''tassets'' that protected the upper thighs. Also called a ''tonlet.''

Feldarzt. ''Field surgeon.'' A rough doctor in a *Landsknechte* or other company or regiment, responsible for amputations of wounded limbs, sewing up gaping wounds, and other crude medical treatments. The Feldarzt supervised those doing the actual cutting and sewing.

Feldobrist. ''Field colonel.'' A much higher rank than *Obrist*, an officer of this stature would command a whole army, one comprised of cavalry and artillery as well as *Landsknechte* infantry. Modern German usage is ''Oberst.''

Feldweibel. ''Field sergeant.'' The lowest rank of *Landsknechte* officer selected by the company or regiment colonel. He was put in charge of all *drill*, including the precise order of battle. This was a crucial assignment, especially when Landsknechte met a *Swiss square* in battle. For this reason the Feldweibel was usually an older, experienced mercenary.

Ferdinand I, Holy Roman Emperor (1503–1564). Archduke of Austria, 1521–1564; King of Bohemia and Hungary, 1526–1564; emperor, 1558–1564. The younger brother of *Charles V*. Ferdinand spent many years in intermittent war with the Ottomans in the *Militargrenze*, but kept the conflict local by also paying tribute to the sultans for lands in Hungary. He put down the peasant uprising known as the *German Peasant War* in 1525, and 10 years later dealt with several rebellious German princes leading into the war with the *Schmalkaldic League*. Ferdinand was an advocate of the *Counter-Reformation*, notably recatholicization of Inner Austria by the *Jesuits*. But he was capable of major compromise on religious issues in the interest of social peace and good order, more so than his more fanatical brother, as was demonstrated at *Passau* (1552) and *Augsburg* (1555). Ferdinand succeeded to the Imperial throne when Charles abdicated because Charles feared softness toward Protestantism of another brother, *Maximilian II*, and to compensate for Ferdinand's being passed over in favor of Charles in 1519. He supported the *Council of Trent*, but hoped for more moderation from the Church than that conclave in fact delivered.

Ferdinand II, Holy Roman Emperor (1578–1637). Archduke of Austria and Styria, 1596–1619; King of Bohemia, 1617–1637; King of Hungary, 1619–1637; Holy Roman Emperor, 1620–1637. He was educated by the *Jesuits* and all his life was a fanatic, as well as devout, Catholic and ardent proponent of the *Counter-Reformation*. He ruthlessly suppressed the *Estates* and Protestants in his hereditary lands, promoting an early ''confessional absolutism.'' He shut out Protestants from his stage-managed coronation as king-designate of Bohemia in 1617, which promised him the Imperial crown upon the death of Emperor Matthias. Bohemian Protestants retorted with the ''*Defenestration of Prague*'' (1618). Ferdinand then dismissed the dying Matthias' chief minister and began to rule the Empire in fact. When Matthias at last died in March 1619, the Bohemian Estates took the final step into rebellion: they deposed Ferdinand from the crown of St. Wenceslaus (August 19, 1619). Nevertheless, he was unanimously elected Holy Roman Emperor nine days later. With that, each side raised armies and what became the *Thirty Years' War* got underway. Ferdinand crushed the Bohemian revolt inside a year, but there was a key moment when he thought he might lose. Besieged in Vienna by a Bohemian army in 1619, he had, or at least claimed he had, a vision in which the Christ figurine on a chapel crucifix said to him: ''Ferdinande, non te deseram!'' (''Ferdinand, I will not desert you!''). He considered that divine promise fulfilled with arrival of a Bavarian army to lift the siege. This deliverance confirmed every Habsburg legend Ferdinand already believed about his own, and the Habsburg, providential mission to restore and defend universal Catholicism. It was thereafter celebrated in Habsburg masses and proclaimed in Jesuit-led *Corpus Christi* processions, in imitation of Constantine if not of Christ.

After Ferdinand's armies won at the *White Mountain* in 1620 he forcibly reconverted Bohemia, expelling or executing nobles who would not switch to

Catholicism and making its kingship hereditary rather than elective. His success in reconversion of the nobility of Austria and Bohemia was not just by coercion: he also used shrewd bribery with lands, offices, and benefices. Stubborn and self-righteous at least, and a political tyrant and religious bigot at worst (as were many, it must be said, on all sides of the confessional wars), Ferdinand had no capacity for empathy toward genuine grievances of his Protestant subjects. He turned instead, hard and often, to the sword and the Inquisition as the solutions to problems of Imperial governance. That was a deeply and inherently flawed policy: Ferdinand could field no army that the Estates refused to pay, and they were confessionally divided. That left his only resort to contract the mercenary captain *Albrecht von Wallenstein*. But the armies he raised, financed, and commanded were loyal to their commander, not to Ferdinand. Schooled as a duke in tiny Inner Austria, Ferdinand never displayed a capacity to rule a vast and complex empire. He tried to impose the Counter-Reformation policies that succeeded in the Habsburg hereditary lands everywhere in Germany, but they could not be instituted in the Empire given opposition in the Estates, the military capabilities of Protestant princes, and the internationalization of the war as Protestants called on outsiders to counterbalance the Emperor. And Ferdinand had a habit of making this situation worse with arbitrary and spiteful gestures that gained him no material advantage but united his enemies. For instance, in 1621 he declared outlaw *Friedrich V*, the foolhardy prince who tried to seize the Bohemian crown in 1618. Friedrich was stripped of all titles and inheritances in the Palatinate without consultation with the Imperial Diet or due process of law. That act of imperial fiat may have been emotionally gratifying for Ferdinand, but, as Tallyrand said of a comparably foolish act by Napoleon, worse than a crime it was a mistake. It clarified that the fulcrum of the balance of power had shifted to the Emperor and away from the Estates, which worried even Catholic princes. And it threatened every Protestant prince with like arbitrary treatment outside imperial tradition and law. It could not stand.

And Ferdinand had a habit of making this situation worse with arbitrary and spiteful gestures . . .

Ferdinand displayed imperial hubris on a grander scale when, again by mere fiat, in 1628 he stripped the Dukes of *Mecklenburg* of all their lands and titles and gave both to Wallenstein, in lieu of cash-for-services rendered. His arrogant confessional intolerance was then codified and announced the next year in the *Edict of Restitution*. This twin assault, on the religious settlement established in the *Peace of Augsburg* in 1555 and against the rights of princes, guaranteed that the war would continue and expand but also that he would face paralyzing opposition within Germany from Catholics as well as Protestants. His power peaked, then began to fade: the princes refused to pay for his proposal to send 50,000 troops to intervene in the *War of the Mantuan Succession* and enticed him to sack Wallenstein. Overconfident as usual, Ferdinand listened to whispering courtiers who hated the upstart Bohemian, and to his own jealousy, and dismissed Wallenstein from command (August 13,

1630). His grand strategy thereafter was blocked by Sweden's king and warlord, *Gustavus Adolphus*, who was supported by Cardinal *Armand Richelieu* of France. Ferdinand did not understand what he had done or what had occurred. He foolishly remarked on Sweden's entry into the war in 1630: ''So, we have another little enemy.'' Sycophants stroked this delusion, telling him that ''the snow king will melt'' as he moved south under the hot German sun (the sun was a cult symbol of the Habsburgs as it would later be for the Bourbons).

Two years later, frantic over the unopposed advance toward Vienna of Gustavus at the head of a Swedish-Saxon army following *First Breitenfeld*, Ferdinand groveled to recall Wallenstein. Then, after Gustavus died in battle at *Lützen* and the tides of war seemed to turn in his favor, Ferdinand had Wallenstein tried in secret then pursued and murdered (1634). Again acting outside the law to kill a powerful vassal, even if a despised upstart Bohemian, was a grave error that frightened his most powerful subjects, the German princes. Ferdinand did it because he was distraught over lack of military success by Wallenstein the prior year; fearful that quartering the Imperial Army in Habsburg provinces might provoke peasant rebellions; believed he could replace Wallenstein's mercenaries with *tercio* veterans on loan from Spain; and was angered by Wallenstein's secret peace negotiations with Saxony, Brandenburg, and Sweden. Ferdinand later pretended the murder was Providential, not political (a view encouraged by Jesuits who put on a political theater in 1635 where Wallenstein was played as an apostate whose death was ordered by the Virgin Mary). As Ferdinand's fortunes declined his fanaticism increased: starting in 1633 he issued edicts ordering all subjects to inform on any person not leading ''a godly life'' or just absent from church services. He ordered religious police to enforce attendance at Easter Mass, and violently suppressed common folk belief in witches and magic, substituting for these sanctioned Catholic belief in saints and miracles. His great dream was of a unified Catholic empire, though perhaps not an absolute monarchy. In any case, the dream failed before his death, and he knew it. To gain the Imperial throne for his son, *Ferdinand III*, he abandoned pretensions to confessional crusade and agreed to the *Peace of Prague* in 1635. See also *Congregatio de Propaganda Fidei*; *Corpus Christi*; *Regensburg, Treaty of*.

Ferdinand II, of Aragon (1452–1516) and Isabella I, of Castile (1451–1504). ''Reyes Católicos'' (''The Catholic Monarchs''). Ferdinand was also King of Naples and Sicily (1502). He reigned as Ferdinand V in Castile. As an 18-year-old prince he married 19-year-old princess Isabella of Castile, a match that united their crowns and kingdoms instead of a union of Isabella with *Alfonso V* of Portugal. But that also meant several years of war to secure the succession, which was challenged by Alfonso and by Isabella's half-sister. The conflict ended with Ferdinand's victory over the Portuguese at Toro (March 1, 1476). The young couple then became joint rulers of a new power formed by their ''Union of Crowns,'' commonly called Imperial Spain. The significance of Ferdinand's legal subordination to Isabella, the senior monarch

in the marriage, may be measured by the fact that of 37 years spent as King of Aragon, Ferdinand resided there for only seven. Religious warfare and persecution of Jews and Muslims marked their joint reign, as it did that of contemporary monarchs who also sought tight religious unity as a means to social and political cohesion of a ''national'' monarchy. Their rough, *conquistadore* armies completed the *Reconquista* on January 2, 1492. The Monarchs then marched in grand procession into Granada, conquerors of the last Moorish state in Iberia. To celebrate, they ordered all Spanish Jews to convert to Christianity by mid-year, then exiled the majority who refused. Nor did they stop with *expulsion of the Jews*. They betrayed their word to the Moors, within seven years breaking the surrender promise of toleration and forcing most Moors to convert (to become ''Moriscos'') or accept impoverished exile in North Africa. Their successors later completed this process of *expulsion of the Moors*.

One revisionist historian, Henry Kanem, argues that neither monarch was anti-Semitic or anti-Muslim, that their policy was general centralization and conformity of everyone within their domain regardless of faith, that it applied as well to nobles, cities, peasants, merchants, Christians, Muslims, and Jews. He also argues that they did not seek religious conformity per se while admitting that the practical effects of royal policy were disproportionately harsh for non-Christians. Nor does this conclusion accord with his curious admission that the expulsion decision was taken by the crowns alone yet ''exclusively for religious reasons.'' While it is likely true that popular animosity toward Muslims and Jews exceeded that of the monarchs personally, they moved faster toward radical intolerance the closer victory over the Moors of Granada approached. Most important, the expulsions were a colossal strategic error which damaged Span's commercial, social, and intellectual life for many decades.

Also in celebration of the victory over Granada, Isabella sponsored the first cross-Atlantic voyage by Christopher Columbus. Her interest (which was greater than Ferdinand's) was to give thanks to God for victory over the Moors, but also to find a strategic back door through Asia by which Christian armies might attack the Ottoman Empire and again ''liberate'' the Holy Lands as they did during the First Crusade. Instead, the trip led to discovery of the New World and to an empire many times the size of Spain, in accord with a papal grant of half the Western Hemisphere along the *Line of Demarcation*. Isabella was more fervent in her Catholicism and strove always to continue the crusade against Islam. After her death, Ferdinand turned Spain's enormous energies northward, into Italy and Germany. He expelled the French from Italy at the start of the *Italian Wars*. Castile and Aragon were formally united under Ferdinand, as King of Spain, in July 1512. That same month he conquered Navarre. Yet, when he died four years later he left no Spanish heir. Instead, *Charles V* of Austria and Burgundy, his grandson but also a distant German prince, succeeded to command of the great empire that Ferdinand spent a lifetime constructing. See also *Cerignola, Battle of*; *Oñate, Treaty of*.

Suggested Reading: J. H. Elliott, *Imperial Spain: 1469–1716* (1963); F. Fernandez-Armesto, *Ferdinand and Isabella* (1975).

Ferdinand III, Holy Roman Emperor (1608–1657). His father, *Ferdinand II*, ordered *Albrecht von Wallenstein* killed and replaced by the young Ferdinand III as supreme commander of all Catholic troops in the Empire. He joined his 18,000 men with 15,000 Spaniards under the Cardinal Infante (also called Ferdinand), just in time to crush 25,000 Swedes at *First Nördlingen* (September 5–6, 1634). After the *Peace of Prague* (1635), he was elected "King of the Romans" in 1636 and elevated to emperor in 1637, upon his father's death. By 1640 it was clear to him that desolation and despair in Germany, and the raw fact that the Habsburgs were losing the *Thirty Years' War* militarily, meant it was past time to make peace. He recalled the *Imperial Diet* for the first time since 1613, readmitted banished Protestant princes, abandoned the *Edict of Restitution*, and in general reversed his father's confessional policy. That did not mean he abjured all war: Ferdinand supported Denmark against Sweden in *Torstensson's War* (1643–1645), sending 20,000 troops north. The intervention ended in total failure: the Imperial Army lost two-thirds of its men and Denmark was still forced to accept humiliating terms. After another disastrous loss at *Jankov* (1645) Ferdinand III had no choice but to accept Franco-Swedish proposals for a comprehensive settlement as confirmed in the *Peace of Westphalia* three years later.

Ferdinand V, of Castile. See *Ferdinand II, of Aragon and Isabella I, of Castile*.

Ferrybridge, Battle of (1461). See *Wars of the Roses*.

feudalism. This term remains highly controversial among social historians, with some rejecting it outright. However, it retains validity in military history as a description of a complex organization of social and economic life to support a martial class in Western Europe in the Middle Ages, and in that sense is also roughly applicable to other societies with land-for-military-service systems. Its central characteristic was the semi-sovereignty of hundreds, even thousands, of principalities with independent military capabilities including, as Philippe Contamine put it, "specific means of attack and defense, the right and power to declare, pursue and terminate war." The collapse of the "Pax Romana" and fall of the western Roman Empire left land as the principal source of wealth in the politically, economically, and demographically shrunken successor states of Western Europe. This situation was exacerbated by the "explosion of Islam" out of Arabia in the 7th century, which broke apart the ancient Mediterranean trading economy and further isolated the West. The small Christian kingdoms of Europe next faced six centuries of barbarian invasions, by Goths, Vandals, Vikings, Magyars, and Arab and Berber Muslims. "Feudalism" was a response to this prolonged security threat: it represented a profound militarization on a land-for-military-service system ("tenere in servitio"), as vulnerable populations retreated from cities and seacoasts to hunker down within or near

castellan strongholds maintained by a new, knightly class. There has been much debate among historians as to whether adoption of the stirrup in the 9th century drove enfeoffment in France and then Europe, as well as debate over the special role of mounted shock combat in general, and knighthood and *chivalry* in particular. Whatever the connections, military mastery in the early Middle Ages was the province of *heavy cavalry*.

In the ''classical'' form spread by the Carolingian monarchs, feudalism emerged as a way for kings lacking cash revenues to raise armies, principally of heavy cavalry. It was marked by large-scale demesne land-holding (that is, possession of land rather than ownership, or ''tenere in dominico''). In this manorial system, which later became hereditary, peasants owed specified numbers of days of farm labor to the lord of the manor lands. Otherwise, most cropped their own strips and shared access to a ''commons,'' usually a pastureland to graze animals. This proved a fairly stable system, resting on loan of lands and jurisdiction to vassals who owed military service in return. ''Feudalism'' also denoted radical political and military decentralization: the whole social and economic system sustained a martial order wherein nobles (military specialists sustained by rural labor) pledged military service that was determined by a complex hierarchy of vassalage in return for title to landed wealth (the ''fief''), which later rigidified into land claims literally fortified by private *castles*. A notable exception to this system was southern Italy, where urban centers and a town militia tradition survived amidst the ruins of fallen empire and declining commercial economy. Another such area was Muslim Spain, where great centers of commerce and learning such as *Granada* survived the more general economic and cultural decline of the Mediterranean world after the fall of Rome.

''Feudalism'' also denoted radical political and military decentralization: . . .

As military technology advanced, when the stirrup and *couched lance* made heavy cavalry shock combat possible, the landed aristocracy adopted equipment, martial techniques, and tactics that further elevated them, literally as well as socially when they mounted great *destriers* to sit above men of town or country. Feudal economic and military structures were overlain by conservative religious sanction under the universal authority of the Catholic Church. Thus, even though the term ''feudalism''—especially if used or defined overly rigidly—is viewed with disdain by some scholars, it remains true that throughout the Middle Ages the military structure in Europe was based on land grants to highly privileged lords, the *belatores*. These men held in bonded military service other men of lesser, but still highly prized, social status and specialized martial skill, with the military class as a whole reserving unto itself the right to use force, including a seigneurial right to raise small armies to wage local war over private grievances.

From the 11th century the highly aggressive military aristocracy of Western Europe began to expand, moving from defense against successive waves of invasion to offense against Muslims in Spain and the eastern Mediterranean,

as well as into pagan and Slav lands in eastern and northeastern Europe. Among the most successful feudal empire-builders were the *Normans*, who conquered the British Isles, Sicily, and southern Italy. To the north there were bloody campaigns by the *Teutonic Knights* against the Wends and other pagans in Prussia, Poland, and along the Baltic coast. The *Black Death* accelerated breakdown of the land-tenure system by making labor scarce and forcing a shift to wages from service. In turn, that led to economic expansion and diversification in Western Europe. New commercial and trading classes and growing urbanization furthered the change, as did a cultural shift from seeking overlordship to attempts at outright conquest and economic development via plantation of agricultural settlers in annexed regions. The English pursued this policy in Ireland; the Teutonic Knights did it in Prussia; and the Saxons did the same in Wagria. In each case the native population was forced off the most fertile land or exterminated. In easternmost Europe and the Russias, the plague years had a different effect than in Western Europe: peasants were pushed back into a harsh system of serfdom in which their freedom of movement and sale of labor was sharply restricted by the regional nobility. Instead of an agricultural labor market, peasants were more tightly bound to the land they worked and the lords who ruled them. In Medieval Poland weak kings continued to struggle against a powerful barony that insisted upon continuation of their landed privileges and military monopoly.

Warfare in Europe in the Middle Ages was messy. There were few set borders; the idea of territorial ''sovereignty'' lay centuries in the future; political allegiances were unclear; and along the numerous frontiers or *marches* that marked off clusters of vague loyalty wars, raids, and rebellions were endemic. This was also true between, across, and within societies. Emperors fought popes and kings; kings fought other kings and each others' powerful barons; nobles fought each other over some slight, real or imagined; and lesser knights fought in ubiquitous private wars that ranged from clashes of hundreds of *men-at-arms* per side to smaller cavalry raids, from skirmishes and burning villages and fields, to feuding knightly families entangled in combat for obscure reasons of honor or revenge. Feudal lords fought rebellious peasants while towns and cities raised militia and formed defensive leagues to hold off attacks or assert traditional rights against the barony. Ordinary folk were swept into forced service as expendable auxiliaries in seasonal armies, or they were swept away by tides of war, famine, disease, and death that coursed over the land. Christian fought Christian; Catholic fought Orthodox and Muslim, who fought with and against each other. Armies of all religions repressed and exterminated ''heretics'' in their midst. Yet, weaknesses of finance, organization, and logistics meant that no one could raise or sustain an army large enough to impose order on a large area, or for long. That forced everyone to seek short-term alliances, pacts among robber-barons and kings who bonded only briefly and by mere convenience for the prospect of shared plunder. Some dynasts sustained longer-term alliances via political marriages, a practice at which the Habsburgs were especially adept. The pace of technological change was slow before the *gunpowder revolution*. The result was a

feudal miasma of overlapping historic, dynastic, and familial claims, ever-shifting local political and military alliances, and chronic betrayal, assassination, rebellion, and small wars.

On the other hand, during the 12th century the literacy rate began to climb, contributing to a breakthrough in the bureaucratic administration of war in Europe. With better record-keeping came political centralization and a marked increase in the ability of monarchs to marshal economic resources—in short, to tax and borrow—in order to make war on an expanded scale. During the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453), kings in France and England used this capability to lessen reliance on feudal military vassals and the clergy. They slowly but certainly displaced servitor classes and peasant levies with military professionals recruited from an expanded population base, and forced taxes on the nobility and towns that allowed them to hire whole armies of domestic professionals or foreign mercenaries. All this military change rested on prior and more fundamental changes in society at large brought about by demographic expansion, a commercial revolution, more efficient and literate public administration, and new sources of royal revenue and capabilities that allowed monarchs to tap into a growing money economy. The rulers of Spain, too, began to establish large-scale standing forces during the 14th–15th centuries, though from a different economic base. By 1500 rudimentary *standing armies* were forming in several of the larger kingdoms, which used their armed forces to devour neighboring duchies, baronies, free cities, and sometimes entire would-be kingdoms such as Burgundy.

Several military systems in the Islamic world were also feudal or semi-feudal at base. The ancient trade with China enjoyed by Rome and Byzantium which was inherited by the Arab empire declined because of internal chaos in China that sharply limited its external trade, and in part because of a steep economic decline of Western Europe that shrank the end-market for Chinese goods. Also contributing to the decline of the Mediterranean economy from c.500 to 1000 C.E. was culturally based hoarding of precious metals throughout the Middle East. That led, as it had in the ancient world before Alexander the Great broke open the treasure rooms of Persia, to a chronic shortage of monetary metals that stifled new capital investment and trade. As the money economy declined land-for-military-service was substituted for pay through plunder or royal revenue. In Egypt and the Levant, however, Turkish and Circassian slave soldiers, *mamlūks*, displaced the Arab tribal levies that sustained the original Muslim caliphate. In Iran and Anatolia another Turkic people, the Seljuks, established a social order based on military service in return for land granted to officers. Some African and Asian societies had extended feudal periods. The *Hausa* of West Africa developed a system of agricultural enserfment that lasted into the 19th century, sustaining in power a Muslim overlord and military class.

Indian and Chinese agriculture and military systems were so different in comparison to Western Europe, and varied so greatly internally, that most historians reject the term ''feudal'' with regard to those civilizations. The most notable difference from Europe was that China was highly centralized

politically and did not support a servitor martial class, but hired armies paid out of cental tax revenues. Conversely, India had no single religious tradition corresponding to Islam or Christianity, or even Confucianism, and no central political authority to impose uniform military or social conditions. Japanese ''feudalism,'' if the term is to be used at all, had the closest parallels to Europe. In Japan as in late medieval Europe, a parasitic warrior class—the *samurai*—dominated because of its skill in making war from horseback (in the case of the samurai, as mounted archers). They wore armor and were organized around castles and fortified towns or on great baronial estates worked by a bonded and servile peasantry. This system survived until the *Unification Wars* of the late 16th–early 17th centuries, and in emasculated form into the second half of the 19th century. It formally ended with the Meiji Restoration in 1868. See also *bannum*; *demurrage*; *Estates*; *Franks*; *Holy Roman Empire*; *itqa*; *knight*; *Ottoman Empire*; *Salic Law*; *servitium debitum*; *war finance*.

Suggested Reading: Kelly DeVries, *Medieval Military Technology* (1992); D. Herlihy, ed., *The History of Feudalism* (1970); F. L. Ganshof, *Feudalism* (1952); Maurice Keen, ed., *Medieval Warfare* (1999); J. W. Thompson, *Feudal Germany*, 2 vols. (1927; 1962); J. R. Strayer, *Feudalism* (1979).

fief. A grant of land to a *knight* or magnate, held in return for military service and political allegiance to a liege lord. This was a form of military service distinct from that of the *bannum*. See also *feudalism*.

fief de chambre. Military wages disguised as feudal obligations. See also *war finance: France*.

field artillery. See *artillery*.

field fortifications and obstacles. See *abattis*; *caltrop*; *chevaux de fries*; *gabions*; *Grünhag*; *Letzinen*; *redan*; *retirata*; *Spanish riders*; *swine feathers*; *tabor*; *trou de loup*; *Wagenburg*.

Field Marshal. A general officer in the Imperial Army, third in rank below Lieutenant General and Generallissimus.

"Field of the Cloth of Gold" (1520). See *Henry VIII, of England*.

Fifteen Years' War (1591–1606). See *Thirteen Years' War*.

Fifth Monarchists. A millenarian intellectual movement, with some popular following, identifying one state or another as the ''Fifth Monarchy,'' or universal empire, identified in the Book of Daniel (2:44) as the last of five prophesied godly kingdoms on Earth and the one immediately preceding the ''Second Coming of the Christ.'' The prophesy was read as promising the conversion of Jews to Christianity and the collapse of the Ottoman Empire and all other Muslim powers. The movement was mostly intellectual and

dynastic in Portugal, where it was employed to glorify the expansion of the whole ''Catholic nation'' overseas, notably the Iberian empires. Habsburg writers identified Spain rather than Portugal as the chosen nation. To purify the country and ready it for divine mission the other chosen people, the Jews, were forcibly converted or expelled, as later were the Moors. In England, ''Fifth Monarchy Men'' were most active during the later *English Civil Wars*, from 1649. Their program pointed to the execution of *Charles I* as a sign the prophesy was about to be fulfilled, with godly England the chosen nation. Many served in the *New Model Army* and supported *Oliver Cromwell* and *Thomas Fairfax*, until they crushed the *Levellers*. Fifth Monarchy Men felt betrayed by Cromwell after he became Lord Protector in 1653, and several tried to assassinate him. A Fifth Monarchist coup against the restored monarchy failed in 1660. See also *Third Rome*.

fire. Fire was, as it still is, a principal weapon of war. At sea the use of fire dated to antiquity, to the extraordinary naval flamethrower of the ancient Greeks and the Byzantine Empire that spewed *Greek fire*. Medieval ship artillery included dangerous *pots de fer*. More spectacularly, entire ships—even small fleets—were deliberately set afire and steered toward the enemy, such as the famous English *fireships* that scattered the *Invincible Armada* in 1588. On land, fire was the main tool of destruction during a *chevauchée* and in comparable practices of ''scorched earth.'' This often provided recruits to armies or marauding bands of *Free Companies*. ''Whose house doth burn, must soldier turn'' was a widely spoken, and true, proverb of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). *Henry V* put it as only an aristocrat could: ''War without fire is as worthless as sausages without mustard.'' In offense, fire destroyed the enemy's economy and resupply, weakened the wooden palisades of his *motte-and-bailey* forts, or cracked the stone foundation of a resisting town or castle wall. To repel attacking soldiers burning oil was pumped through pipes or poured over the wall, or down a *machicolation*. Fire arrows were used by attackers against town roofs and by defenders against counter castles and siege engines. In Europe, fire was seen as ideologically cleansing, as when used to burn ''heretics'' by the *Inquisition* or to rid Protestant society of witches on the order of some local civil authority or preacher. In Japan fire was key to a strategy of reducing regional defenses and dealing with over 40,000 forts (*honjō* and *shijō*) during the century of warfare known as *Sengoku jidai*. See also *aftercastle*; *appatis*; *ashigaru*; *blockade*; *divine fire-arrow*; *fire-lance*; *Jeanne d'Arc*; *Hus, Jan*; *naphtha*; *Ōnin War*; *raiding*; *siege warfare*; *trebuchet*; *witchcraft*.

Suggested Reading: J. F. Finó,''Le Feu et ses Usages Militaires,'' *Gladius*, 9 (1970).

firearms. See *artillery*; *cavalry*; *gunpowder weapons*; *infantry*; *revolution in military affairs*.

fire-lance. ''bomba.'' An early incendiary weapon documented in China in 1132 but almost certainly much older than that in fact. It was a primitive flamethrower formed by slow burning black powder which emitted sparks and

flames from a tube made of paper or bamboo. This was attached to a spear or javelin and either thrust toward or thrown at an enemy. The fire-lance may have been the direct forerunner of the first firearm, as sometimes small projectiles were placed in the tube that flew a short distance upon ignition. Fire-lances approached true firearms more closely when the tubes were formed of metal, c.1100. The fire-lance reached the Middle East by 1294. Evidence of its use in Europe dates only to 1396, though it may have been used before that. Fire-lances were employed in close fighting at sea by Spain into the early 17th century: a two-foot incendiary was mounted on a longer stick, to be ignited and thrust into the faces of enemy crew during boarding actions.

firepots. See *alcancia*; *pots de fer*.

fireships. In the age of wooden walls at sea fire was the deadliest of weapons. Fireships took account of this vulnerability to attack the enemy in the confines of a harbor, where lack of maneuverability promised to cause great damage. Small, broken, or obsolete ships were chosen for the suicide run. Their holds were filled with pitch, tinder, and faggots of dry wood. Cannon left aboard might be double or triple-shotted. Skeleton crews steered toward the enemy harbor, lighted the tinder and oils, and made their escape in the ship's boats, rowing at speed. It was important to abandon ship at the last possible moment and to use the tide to carry the fireship deep into the harbor, as once adrift all control was lost. On April 5, 1585, the *Sea Beggars* launched uniquely dangerous fireships, known as ''Hellburners,'' toward a bridge across the Scheldt held by the Spanish. The ''Hellburners'' were not just packed with the usual combustibles, but with kegs of black powder. Several blew up short of the target but one detonated against the heavily defended bridge, killing over 800 of *Parma*'s men. Unable to stop the *Invincible Armada* at sea even with their superior gunnery, English captains sent eight Hellburners into the densely packed Spanish fleet at Calais, seeding panic and scattering its ships. Then they closed to fight it out in the morning, blasting through the fog and spraying blood and splinters. See also *Lake Boyang, Battle of*; *Rhodes, Siege of (1479–1480)*.

firing on the roll. Firing a ship's guns accurately was highly problematic in any ship-to-ship action. In the absence of scientific aids or mechanical aiming devices strict line-of-sight was all that was available. The best that most ship's gunners could do was to fire at close range while timing ignition to the roll of the ship on the sea's swells. Firing on the down-roll of one's own ship was preferred, as it lessened the chance that the shot would overfly the target. Firing on the up-roll of the enemy's ship, if achievable, improved the chance of holing it below its waterline.

***fitna*.** ''rebellion.'' A Muslim term for the tendency of medieval Islamic military alliances to break down, as loose allegiances shifted when a captain

was bought off by an enemy to pre-arrange a battlefield desertion or to attack his former master. Under the *Mughals*, defectors were seldom harmed but were instead brought into the *mansabdari* system. On occasion, military superiority had to be demonstrated by actually fighting, after which it was normal to revert to military accommodation and assimilation.

flagellants. Self-flagellants annually performed displays of corporal "piety" as a key part of the *shi'ia* tradition within Islam, in pilgrimages to the holy cities of Iraq, site of Caliph Ali's murder in the first century A.H. In Europe, mass processions of flagellants appeared in the late Middle Ages mainly in response to war and plague. Their displays of corporal penitence were intended to expiate widespread sin, including—even especially—that of the clergy, believed to have brought such calamities of divine wrath down on the heads of men. The Catholic Church eventually came to see flagellants as heretics, though in some periods it encouraged and benefitted from their displays (as during the *War of the Eight Saints*). Many clergy participated, often leading processions holding up icons and large crosses. Most monkish orders had long practiced self-flagellation within cloister, officially or not. Mendicant penitential and flagellant processions of the 12th century were wildly popular, until repressed by less excitable elements of the clergy.

The *Black Death* revived flagellation as a devotional and penitential practice. It spread from Italy and Iberia to Germany, France, and hence to northern Europe, though it found little favor in England. In Germany, flagellants organized a sado-masochistic sect, the "Brotherhood of the Cross." They proceeded from town to town in ecstatic, bloody processions that greatly excited a population terrified and decimated by the plague, easily riled by apocalyptic visions, despairing over the war-torn woes of the Age, and shaken by schism and corruption in the Church. Sometimes the frenzy of the flagellants led to murders of Jews. When the flagellants began to develop a crude doctrine higher clergy grew alarmed at their challenge to the Church's monopoly on prescribed corporal punishment for moral transgressions. The doctors of theology of the University of Paris asked Pope Clement VI to condemn flagellants, which he did in 1349. They were thereafter hunted down as heretics. There was a brief flagellant revival in Germany in the 1360s, but it was suppressed by the rigors and tortures of the Medieval *Inquisition*. Over the next century smaller instances of flagellant fervor broke out in isolated areas, in response to later waves of plague or war. The Church also dealt with flagellants by incorporating some of their self-abusive methods into accepted penitential orders. For instance, in France, Black, Blue, Grey, and White brotherhoods of flagellants were set up during the dislocations of the *French Civil Wars*, supported and approved by the Church, the *Catholic League*, and sometimes by the monarchy.

They proceeded from town to town in ecstatic, bloody processions . . .

Suggested Reading: G. Dickson, ''The Flagellants of 1260 and the Crusades,'' *Journal of Modern History*, 15 (1989); Malcolm Lambert, *Medieval Heresy* (2002).

flags. In Medieval European warfare flags bearing a family coat of arms of noble commanders were common. On battlefields such as *Agincourt* or *Marignano*, brightly colored fork-tailed *pennants* were attached to the lances of individual knights, while larger square *banners* displayed the coat-of-arms of some great magnate designating his command as a *banneret* in a larger fighting unit of at least 10 knights called a *constabulary*. Royal standards were also displayed. ''National'' flags were a very late development of the early modern period, and did not appear in medieval warfare, although the radical *Hussites*, or *Taborites*, fought under a goose flag (''hus'') befitting their peasant origins. As warfare emerged from the age of *chivalry*, generic flags and pennants served to identify distant bodies of troops (or warships) to their commanders and to each other. This helped avoid casualties by friendly archery or artillery fire, but did not yet represent truly national ensignia. Signal flags were also used, but were of diminishing utility once gunpowder cannon sent up great volumes of smoke to obscure the view.

The Swiss may have been the first to adopt a national symbol, the white cross, which Swiss troops wore or carried from the Battle of Laupen (1339) onward to identify them to foe or friend alike. Yet even the Swiss remained most devoted to their cantonal standards, or *Banners*. They also deployed ''small flags'' (*Fähnlein*) representing towns or guilds within each Canton. *Charles the Rash* organized the Burgundian army under distinctive tactical pennants, banners, and standards according to whether a unit (*lance*) was made up of men-at-arms, archers, or mixed troops. Polish cavalry carried large, multi-tailed medieval-style banners longer than in the West, where smaller more convenient flags found favor sooner. Polish flags were judged to be important according to sheer size and the number of tails they sported. Many Polish-Lithuanian flags bore heraldic or religious imagery well into the 17th–18th centuries. During the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648) more tactically useful flags appeared. The mercenary entrepreneur *Graf von Mansfeld* pioneered battlefield unit flags, but this reform did not keep his poor-quality armies together or prevent their frequent defeats. *Gustavus Adolphus* identified his regiments by the color of their cloth standards (''The Red'' or ''The Blue''). Like other regimental banners of that war, these were six square feet, in pennant form for cavalry and swallow-tail for infantry.

Outside Europe the use of battle flags was more complex and important. The reorganization of the Manchu (Qing) armies by *Nurgaci* in 1601 was based on four-colored flags (blue, red, yellow, and white), with four bordered flags added later for Han and Mongol regiments. The Qing *banner system* survived to the end of the dynasty in 1911. In Japan, the *horo* signified arrival of a courier, while the colored streamers of the *hata jirushi*, *nobori*, and *sashimono* played an important role in unit designation and deployment. They also painted the battlefield with extraordinary shapes, motions, and colors not seen elsewhere in the history of war. The spectacle they made was

vividly recreated in Akira Kurosawa's fictional masterpiece *Ran* (1985). Other interesting variations on flags include the Seljuk Turks habit of tying horsetails (''tugh'') to their battle standards. The Ottomans used crescent-shaped finials instead. Muslim troops appear to have put a crescent moon on their green battle flags as a representation of Islam only after encountering Christian armies bearing the cross on shields and battle standards during the *Crusades*. Aztec banners were flown attached to baskets strapped to the backs of notable warriors. On the march, they usually took a center position in a long strung-out formation (most Mesoamerican roads accommodated no more than two walking abreast, as the wheel and cart were unknown in the Americas). See also *ancient*; *cornet (1)*; *knight*; *siege warfare*; *uma jirushi*; *uniforms*.

flagship. The ship in a fleet that bore the commanding admiral or the king, and flew his pennant.

flails. See *mace*; *military flail*.

flanchard(s). Plate armor for *warhorses* that covered the flanks, fitting around the saddle and into the *crupper* to the rear. It was developed in Europe around the mid-15th century.

Flanders. Flanders was among the first areas in Europe to emerge from *feudalism*, during the latter 13th century. By the 14th century the city-states of Flanders, notably Bruges, Ghent, and Ypres, fielded militia organized by guild. They were highly disciplined, wore distinctive uniforms, and fought wearing gauntlets, helmets, shields, and some plate. They were armed with bows, crossbows, and *goedendags*, a specialized Flanders short-pike. Flemish infantry impressed all of Europe with their victory at *Courtrai* (1302), won by shrewd use of terrain that exploited gross overconfidence on the part of charging French *heavy horse*. However, the Flemings were beaten by the French two years later, at *Mons-en-Pévèle* (1304). A treaty was negotiated the next year that surrendered most French-speaking towns to Philip IV (''The Fair''), but left the rest of Flanders autonomous of its erstwhile overlord. However, France was not beaten as easily as its knights. When *Philip VI* ascended the throne in 1328 he raised an army to suppress the Flemings and scored a signal victory at *Cassel* (1328). In the 1380s the Flemish towns allied with England, with which they had close commercial ties and which was then at war with a common enemy, France. A major clash came at *Roosebeke* (1382), where the Flemish infantry were slaughtered by French horse. The next year, Flanders was ceded to Burgundy. By 1385 the dukes brutally crushed the last vestiges of Flemish independence.

Flanders prospered from the Baltic trade in herring, forest, and mining products. It also enjoyed a rich trade with England that underlay its 14th-century military alliances. Blessed with excellent harbors, Flanders led Europe in shipping in the 14th–15th centuries: great merchant fleets (the ''Flanders

Fleets'') formed annual convoys from Venice and Genoa and smaller Italian cities and sailed to Bruges, carrying an expanding trade between older states of the Mediterranean and rising Atlantic economies. The last ''Flanders Fleet'' sailed in 1532. Flanders was on the front line in the long war between the great dynastic houses of Valois and Habsburg, and again between the Dutch and the Spanish during the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648), when it suffered lengthy blockades by the *Sea Beggars*. With independence of the United Provinces recognized by all in 1648, the Catholic half of Flanders that remained tied to Spain became known as the ''Spanish Netherlands.''

Fleurus, Battle of (August 29, 1622). Following the Catholic-Habsburg invasion of the Palatinate and the near disaster for Protestants at *Höchst* in June, an Imperial army invaded the Netherlands to aid the Spanish against Dutch rebels. *Graf von Mansfeld* and his mercenaries, and *Christian of Brunswick* and a second Protestant army, moved against the Imperials. The armies met at Fleurus. Christian charged headlong with his cavalry and was initially repulsed. Repeated charges broke the Spanish lines, though at a high cost in Brunswick infantry (nearly 50 percent casualties). Fleurus was one of the first battles to link the *Thirty Years' War* with the *Eighty Years' War*, which had resumed following expiration of the *Twelve-Years' Truce* in 1621.

flintlock. The first flintlock mechanism for firing guns was introduced in Germany in the mid-15th century, but it did not catch on for another hundred years. Around 1547 primitive flintlocks appeared in Florence and Sweden. More advanced models were made in France, but not outside it until the 1640s. By the 1660s knowledge of the flintlock had diffused throughout Europe. Still, this new lock device did not displace the *matchlock* as the preferred firing mechanism for the infantry musket until the 1680s in most advanced armies, and later still among marginal peoples engaged in border and frontier warfare. ''Flintlock'' was first used about any gun in which the lock mechanism deployed a spring that snapped a piece of flint against steel, creating sparks that fired the fine powder in the pan, which in turn ignited the main charge. ''True'' flintlocks had the steel striker and pan cover made in one piece, and could be both ''half-cocked'' and ''full-cocked.'' This mechanism made pistols far more dependable and popular.

Flodden Field, Battle of (September 9, 1513). ''Battle of Branxton.'' The young *Henry VIII* sent an army of 25,000 under the Yorkist Earl of Surrey to secure his northern border against a Scottish army of 50,000 that had invaded Northumberland, an act urged on the equally young and reckless Scottish king, James IV (1488–1513), by Louis XII of France. James took the French lure against the advice of his council. Henry was preoccupied trying to reclaim territories in France lost during the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). The clash in the north opened with an artillery exchange. Then the English charged poorly armed and ill-led Scottish foot dug in atop a small hill, but otherwise badly deployed. The Scots made a fatal error of leaving their

trenches to engage hand-to-hand with outmoded weapons. In bloody close-quarter fighting the Scots were dislodged, encircled, and slaughtered. Through all this their reserve inexplicably held back from any fighting. The young king, many Scottish lairds (at least 8 earls and 20 lords), and thousands of clansmen were put to the sword.

Florence. See *condottieri*; *Francis I*; *Giornico, Battle of*; *Italian Renaissance*; *Italian Wars*; *Italy*; *Lodi, Peace of*; *Marignano, Battle of*; *Sforza, Maximilian*; *Swabian War*; *Venice*.

Flores, Battle of (1591). A fleet of seven English warships looking for Spanish treasure ships in the Azores was met by 15 Spanish warships. The action is most famous for the fight of the ''Revenge,'' in which Captain Richard Grenville fought a suicidal rearguard action alone against the whole Spanish fleet for over half a day, sinking two of his tormentors before surrendering the burning wreck of his ship.

flota. ''fleet.'' The primary reference was to the Spanish treasure fleet which sailed yearly from Seville. Once it arrived in the Caribbean it split into smaller flotas that sailed off to collect the treasure brought to the coast from the great Potosi silver mine in Peru, and from smaller mines throughout New Spain to the ports of Nombre de Dios, San Juan de Ulúa, Santo Domingo, Cartagena, and Vera Cruz. The small fleets reassembled into a single flota at Havana to make the journey back to Seville under armed escort. Additional protective measures included fortification of the major Caribbean ports and attacks against hostile settlements, such as the massacres of *Huguenots* in Florida (1565). See also *convoy*; *Fort Caroline*; ''*galeones*.''

flower wars. See *Xochiyaoyotl*.

fodder. Food supply for horses, cavalry mounts, and draught animals, was a major constraint on military operations throughout this period. Steppe ponies were grass fed, but for settled peoples from China to Europe grave problems with provision and cartage of fodder usually determined the ability of an army to remain in the field. On average, even a small packhorse consumed 14 pounds of hay and 7 more of straw per day, along with 1½ pecks of peas, oats, or other grains. This meant that a good portion of a pack animal's burthen was taken up by its own food requirements. See the main discussion under *logistics*. On related matters see *baggage train*; *chevauchée*; *contributions*; *coureurs*; *étapes*; *gun carriages*; *Le Tellier, Michel*; *magazines*; *requisition*; *warhorse*.

Foix, Gaston de, duc de Nemours (1489–1512). French general. His father was killed at *Cerignola* (1503). In January 1512, at age 22, he carried out skilled maneuvers that positioned him to lift the Spanish-Papal siege of Bologna. Then he stormed and sacked Brescia. His only set-piece battle came

at *Ravenna* (April 11, 1512), where he won the field but threw away his life in a reckless pursuit.

***folangji*.** A small breech-loading *swivel gun* manufactured in China starting in 1524. The design was copied directly from more than 20 Portuguese cannon captured in a firefight in 1521. The name appears to derive from the Ottoman "*pranği*" and/or the Mughal "farangi," both breech-loading swivel guns of European origin but non-European manufacture with which the Chinese may have been already familiar.

Fontainebleau, Treaty of (May 1631). A defensive alliance signed between *Maximilian I* of Bavaria, and France. It aimed to counterbalance Habsburg power in Germany following the *Edict of Restitution* and France's escape from the *War of the Mantuan Succession* in Italy. In that respect, it was a Catholic counterpart to the *Leipziger Bund*.

Fontaine-Francaise, Battle of (June 5, 1595). See *Franco-Spanish War*.

food. The crucial facts about food and war in this period are discussed under *logistics*. On strategy, tactics and other considerations related to food, see: *Ayn Jālut, Battle of*; *baggage train*; *Barbados*; *Black Death*; *chevauchée*; *civilians*; *contributions*; *coureurs*; *cruising*; *desertion*; *disease*; *étapes*; *fodder*; *galleon*; *galley*; *gun carriages*; *Indian Wars*; *Invincible Armada*; *Le Tellier, Michel*; *logistics*; *magazines*; *ordu bazar*; *prise*; *purveyance*; *quartermaster*; *rations*; *requisition*; *siege warfare*; *Spanish Road*; *sutlers*; *Swiss Army*; *Tatars*; *Treuga Dei*; *victualer*; *warhorses*; *Werben, Battle of*.

foot ropes. See *rigging*.

forecastle. See *castles, on ships*.

Foreign Contingent. See *Polish Army*.

Forest Cantons. Schwyz, Unterwalden, and Uri. They were known collectively as the "Waldstätte." See also *Kappel, Battle of*; *Laupen, Battle of*; *Morgarten, Battle of*; *Swiss Confederation*; *Zwingli, Huldrych*.

forged guns. See *hoop-and-stave method*.

Forlorn Hope. The wings of a *Swiss square*, often comprised of crossbowmen or arquebusiers without protective cover of the pikemen in the strong center of the formation. At *Grandson* (1476), the Forlorn Hope was comprised mostly of crossbowmen and arquebusiers deployed as a skirmish line in front of a massive (10,000-man) pike square. At *Nancy* (1477) a larger Forlorn Hope decoyed the Burgundians out of defensive positions, setting them up for an attack by the *Vorhut* in the flank.

Formigny, Battle of (April 15, 1450). One of the closing battles in the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). An English army of 2,500 men landed at Cherbourg in mid-March 1450, and advanced down the Cotentin peninsula. The landing was made in reaction to a sweeping, three-pronged French assault on remaining English holdings in Normandy. With reinforcements from English garrisons that already had been abandoned this force increased to 4,000. Two smaller French armies, one of 2,000 the other of 3,000 men, maneuvered against the English. After marches and several small skirmishes the English met the first body of French, led by le compte de Clermont, at Formigny, west of Bayeux. Some 75 percent of the English troops were longbowmen. They took positions behind a crop of *Spanish riders*, backed by a small creek. The French probed but were repulsed by the usual English arrow storms. Clermont then brought forward two long-range *coulverines* on wheeled carriages, enfilading the English line. These guns fired into the dense pack of archers, out of range of return longbow fire but with a rate of fire and accuracy of their own rapid enough to tell heavily against limbs and lives. In desperation, the longbowmen charged and overran the coulverines. But terrible casualties had been inflicted and the French had other cannon with which to pound the English position. The second French army now arrived: 1,200 horse trailed by 800 crossbowmen. These reinforcements forced English survivors into a defensive arc so dense that it inhibited firing by many longbowmen, while the French assaulted from two directions at once. The English line collapsed under intense crossbow and gun fire; the whole English army was killed, captured, or fled the field (the latter ran all the way to Caen) in utter panic. The defeat left England without a field army to support its few remaining holdings in Normandy, almost all of which soon fell to the French, including Falaise and Cherbourg. Formigny also ended forever the continental reputation for superiority of the longbow. Henceforth, while the longbow was used in England through the *Wars of the Roses*, elsewhere infantry with handguns predominated along with long-range artillery.

. . . the whole English army was killed, captured, or fled the field (the latter ran all the way to Caen) in utter panic.

Formula of Concord (1577–1578). An anti-Calvinist declaration drawn up by Lutheran theologians. It was so rigid in its doctrine that it made forever impossible any reconciliation of the two main branches of reformed religion. This reflected a view among some Lutheran clerics and princes that the Calvinists were worse confessional enemies than Catholics.

Fornovo, Battle of (July 6, 1495). Early in the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559), Charles VIII was forced to retreat from Naples. South of Milan the path of his army of just 10,000 French and Swiss was blocked by 20,000 Venetians and Mantuans led by the *condottieri* captain Giovanni Gonzaga. Instead of the usual feckless and nearly bloodless affair then common in Italian condottieri warfare, the French opened with an artillery bombardment, intending to kill

as many of their enemy as possible. Then they charged with *heavy cavalry*, destroying and scattering the disordered Italian ranks in just minutes. The fight was perhaps most memorable for the ineffectiveness of artillery on either side, other than the psychological effect achieved by the French guns: of the 100 French and 3,500 Italian dead, one eyewitness estimated that fewer than 10 men were killed by cannon fire.

Fort Caroline. A Huguenot *privateer* colony was established at Fort Caroline, Florida, in early 1564. The following September the settlement was attacked by a Spanish military expedition led by Admiral Pedro de Menendez, who was determined to protect the annual *flota* and end Huguenot desecrations of Catholic colonies and churches. The Spanish overwhelmed the defenders inside an hour and killed every man in the Fort, though the few women and children were repatriated to France. The fort was renamed ''San Mateo.'' In 1568 a Huguenot fleet returned and hanged every Spaniard in the garrison.

fortification.

Asia

Fortified *citadels* and walled cities were part of warfare in thickly settled areas of China from ancient times. The most spectacular fortification system was the *Great Wall*, dating in some areas to the Han dynasty though importantly upgraded and extended by 700 miles of new walls built by the *Ming* dynasty starting in 1474, to fortify the frontier against *Mongol* raiders. The Ming wall system involved hundreds of watchtowers, signal-beacon platforms, and self-sufficient garrisons organized as military colonies. China's large cities were also walled, but private castles akin to those of feudal Europe or the *daimyo* of Japan were uncommon. Smaller forts beyond border posts or to guard mountain passes in the south did not matter much when China faced great cavalry armies of steppe invaders such as the Mongols or Manchus. Nor was Chinese fortification technology pressed hard by such invaders, since they lacked siege engines or effective artillery. In Chinese civil wars control of the cities was usually key, and siege operations more common. In the later Ming period rebel Chinese armies acquired gunpowder cannon capable of smashing older city walls, and during the first half of the 17th century Manchu invaders captured or bought a siege train they then manned with Chinese gun crews and engineers. Once the Ming field armies were beaten, cities rapidly fell to rebel and Manchu assault.

Japan underwent a period of extensive, even frantic, fortification in its anarchic 16th century (*Sengoku jidai*). Some elaborate *yamajiro*, and perhaps 40,000 lesser forts of the *honjō* and *shijō* type, were erected. Arson was a widespread tool in countering these weaker structures. The Sengoku period also saw proliferation of *jōkaku* (mountaintop forts). In the second half of the 16th century substantial stone castles and full *jōkamachi* (castle towns) were

built. *Oda Nobunaga* was a notable castle builder, but from 1580 forward most of Japan's older fortifications were destroyed by decree of *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*. His intent was to facilitate central political and military control and effect national unification under the shogunate, and daimyo forts stood in the way of this just as baronial castles did of centralization in Europe. Late Japanese castles were more elaborate in construction and far more decorative, paralleling a late shift among English gentry and in certain Rhine castles in Germany away from military structures to merely boastful homes.

Korean cities and towns had high, thin walls. Just as in medieval Europe, this impeded scaling but did not stand up against modern siege artillery, which was first brought to Korea by Hideyoshi in the 1590s. Older Korean forts and walled cites fell quickly and easily to Hideyoshi, who used his artillery effectively to breach the defenses of Pusan, Seoul, and Pyongyang. Even where bombardment failed, Korean forts lacked bastions and most had no dry ditches or moats. As a result, Japanese infantry were able to reach the walls with relative ease to overwhelm defenders by storming through even small breaches made by siege cannon.

The Ottomans did not fortify overmuch during the early centuries of their expansion. When they did, they were mostly content with simple *çit palankasi*, or reed palisades. Once their frontiers reached the outer limits of logistical support in the second half of the 16th century they paid more attention to fixed defenses and built more *kale*, or moated stone fortresses. Ottoman builders were especially adept in the ''Horasani'' (''rose colored'') brick technique, which used lime and brick dust instead of sand for mixing mortar. This lent enhanced strength to thick brick or stone walls that were impregnable by most artillery of the day, partly because terracing of kale forts trapped solid shot. The Ottomans adopted the ''trace italienne'' shortly after it spread into Europe from Italy. Due to their great expense, the Ottomans only built the new bastioned forts in strategic locations such as Baghdad and Mosul in the east, and in key sites in the Balkans. That was military and fiscal prudence, not the product of any putative military ''backwardness'' of the Ottoman Empire. Ottoman and other Muslim fortification methods had some influence on *Mughal* practices in northern India, arriving along with gunpowder artillery. In Hindu India gunpowder weapons led not to the downfall of fixed fortifications but a revival of forts built by new military elites, the *Marathas*, *Rajputs*, and *Nayakas*.

Europe

Castles appeared in large numbers in Europe during the early Middle Ages, with a shift in the 11th century in Britain, France, and Spain to more expensive and lasting stone fortifications where earlier *mottes* and simple *donjon*s had sufficed, or were all that could be afforded. A variation on this change occurred in Flanders, the Netherlands, and lands controlled by the *Teutonic Knights* in Poland and along the Baltic coastline. There, brick was used in the absence of good building stone, supported by more extensive water barriers.

The move to stone (and brick) fortification reflected a vast increase in expenditure on war by societies growing in wealth and population. Stone walls were also more militarily effective when opposed by ancient or medieval siege weapons comprised of *catapults*, battering-rams, and related torsion weapons. Infantry attack and scaling of the walls became the main threat, with the obvious solution of building walls and towers ever higher, until scaling became impracticable. This trend accelerated in the 12th century after introduction of the counterpoise or torsion *trebuchet*. Facing a stone castle attackers usually concluded that assault or bombardment were too dangerous or likely to be ineffective. Instead, they relied on starvation. That too was difficult: the trick was to avoid starvation oneself, a difficult task in an age of primitive *logistics* where armies needed to move and forage just to eat. Still, sieges often lasted weeks or months; from the late 16th century, some lasted years. This core fact, that a fortified position was a tremendous strongpoint out of which defenders could foray or sit and wait for relief, colored the nature of war in the West until the advent of *gunpowder artillery*.

Early gunpowder artillery was relatively easily deflected: the first cannon were too inaccurate for shots to hit the same target twice, which was critical to cracking stone, and fascines of wood and wool wadding hung over walls absorbed much of the impact of stone cannon balls. As guns grew more powerful and cast iron cannonballs increased impact power, the old high thin walls began to tumble. Cannon did not make castles wholly obsolete, but they forced major changes. High walls and towers fell too easily, so lower walls (''countersinking'') were built and insulated with earthworks to absorb iron shot. Cutaway gun ports were added to the *curtain wall* and the base of towers to allow cannon to shoot back at enemy batteries or siege engines or spray sappers and miners with *grapeshot* at point-blank range. To prevent scaling of the lower walls and squat gun platforms by attacking infantry, defenders built bastions that supported each other with enfilading fire from arquebusiers, musketeers, and archers shooting through slits or *merlons*. This forced attackers to counter with siege trenches and armored engines like *cats*, and so on.

By the second half of the 14th century many older castles had gun embrasures cut into their walls, and new ones were designed to accept cannon. However, big defensive guns weakened stone walls through their recoil vibrations. This, too, recommended a move to lower and thicker walls. A major breakthrough in design, which most historians agree caused nothing short of a military revolution, was the *alla moderna* or *trace italienne*: low polygonal forts and bastions fitted with gun emplacements for heavy defensive artillery. The defenders could now shoot down kill zones created by the bastions and further prepared by clearing obstructions and sloping the perimeter to allow unobstructed defensive fire by canon and small arms. Ditches were widened to obstruct and slow defenders, and bastions were further protected by adding a *counterscarp*. Dirt removed from the ditch was thrown against the counterscarp to make a sloped *glacis*, which further slowed infantry trying to fight their way up, keeping them exposed longer to defensive fire. Dutch innovators, notably Adriaen Anthonisz (1541–1620), worked in this

basic style while adding features from their special expertise in field works that incorporated dikes and canals and other watery perimeters. The United Provinces established a permanent corps of military engineers, numbering 25 in 1598, that exerted wide international influence in both the new style in fortification and the siegecraft needed to overcome it.

Bridges and Towns

In addition to castles, bridges might be fortified. Large forts protected major bridges across the Seine and the Elbe, for instance. Within riverine towns bridges connecting the halves of a city were usually fortified and garrisoned. The fight led by *Jeanne d'Arc* in Orléans in 1429 was over a heavily fortified bridge spanning the Loire, protected by a *bastille* hosting 500 English troops. Urban fortification in Europe kept pace with castellan developments in wall height and girth, use of towers, *donjons*, citadels, and the like. The key difference was that town fortification took place on a much larger scale and was financed as a form of public defense, unlike castles built for a private purpose with baronial or knightly funds and feudal labor. As towns grew in size and population much longer walls were needed to enclose new suburbs. Even small cities had extensive walls: provincial York's walls stretched for 4,800 yards and some very small towns in France or Germany had walls thousands of meters in circumference. City walls might be 11–12 meters high. They supported defensive artillery, watchtowers, archer and arquebus walkways, and armored and heavily defended gates. An aesthetic yearning for height and civic competition comparable to that seen in cathedral building, especially of towers, has been suggested as reinforcing the general skyward trend in medieval military architecture in Europe. Fortification of towns also produced counter tactics of scorched earth and *chevauchée*, which sought to lure defenders out by destroying all of value outside the walls. To stop Magyar raiders, whole fortress towns in Germany were built from scratch, radiating outward from a citadel position at the center (for example, Brandenburg and Magdeburg). Similarly, the *Hausa* city-states of West Africa were surrounded by high, thick, baked-mud walls. Cities in India, too, were fortified. Some were defended by walls of colossal girth, so strong and wide they withstood bombardment hundreds of years later by 19th-century artillery firing high-explosive shells. Constantinople had three concentric rings of walls, some sections over 1,000 years old. Baghdad had 211 defensive towers and 52 crenels fixed in 25-meter-high walls that were 15 meters thick at the base and 7 meters at the top, built of hard brick in the Horasani mode favored by the Ottomans.

The fight led by Jeanne d'Arc *in Orleans in 1429 was over a heavily fortified bridge spanning the Loire . . .*

Some medieval and early modern sieges were so spectacular they changed the world, in fact and in psychological and political perception and historical legacy. That was especially true of the Muslim *Siege of Constantinople* in 1453 by *Muhammad II*. His innovative use of heavy bombardment to reduce triple walls that had withstood twenty prior sieges over a thousand-year period

demonstrated the new power of gunpowder artillery. Yet, the majority of town defenses built to withstand sieges in Europe or the Middle East or India or China did their intended job of deterrence; they were never attacked at all. Instead, fortifications guarding strategic points or routes or mountain or river passes took the brunt of warfare, suffering assaults or sieges year after year, one campaign following another, decade upon decade, even century after century. See also *abatis*; *artillery towers*; *barbican*; *bastion*; *boulevard*; *cavalier (2)*; *chemin de ronde*; *counter-guard (1)*; *covered way*; *crownwork*; *defilade*; *demi-bastion*; *demi-lune*; *escarp*; *esplanade*; *front*; *gabions*; *hornwork*; *Indian Wars*; *lines of circumvallation*; *lines of contravallation*; *lodgement*; *outworks*; *parapet*; *rampart*; *ravelin*; *redan*; *redoubt*; *retrenchment*; *sap*; *tabor*; *technology and war*; *tenaille*; *terre-plein*; *torre alberrano*; *torre del homenaje*; *trou de loup*.

Suggested Reading: A. Chatelain, *Architecture militaire mèdiévale* (1970); Maurice Keen, ed., *Medieval Warfare* (1999); B. H. O'Neil, *Castles and Cannon* (1960); R. Ritter, *L'architecture militaire mèdiévale* (1974).

foundries. See *casting*.

Fra. Abbreviation of the Latin ''Frater'' (''Brother''), used in reference to a fully professed *knight* of one of the *Military Orders*. The equivalent Spanish address was ''Frey.'' Among Brethren the abbreviation ''Fr.'' was used. In modern times ''Fra'' became the more common usage to avoid confusion with the English abbreviation of ''Father,'' meaning Catholic priest.

franc-archers. Regiments of archers armed at first with ordinary bows, not *longbows* or *crossbows*, set up by Charles VII in 1448 in an effort to counter the English advantage in archery. A reserve of some 8,000 men was established utilizing an amended *arrière-ban*. Over time the units came to include pikemen, crossbowmen, and handgunners as well as ordinary archers. *Louis XI* doubled the size of the reserve. However, he subsequently completely disbanded the franc-archers when he became convinced that Swiss infantry victories over *Charles the Rash* had exposed comparable and dangerous weaknesses in his own army. Louis replaced them with Swiss mercenaries who emphasized the pike and halberd as the principal infantry weapons, in preference to archery. His successors reinstated some franc-archers units in the 1490s, rather than pay wages to the Swiss.

France. In 987 Hugh Capet succeeded the last Carolingian king and began the long process of Capetian construction of the state that eventually became France: Capetian monarchs ruled France, descending through several branches, from 987 to 1792 and 1815 to 1848. From Charlemagne's old capital at Aachen, the early Capetians expanded against fierce opposition from feudal barons and rival powers based in Normandy, Aquitaine, and Burgundy. With the *Norman* conquest of England in 1066 the land-owning and martial classes in France and England were entangled in a mailed web of overlapping vassalage, a fact that importantly contributed to entanglement in each other's

wars over several centuries. These two emerging polities, each slowly centralizing under royal authority, were at war more often than not for four centuries. That fact compelled France to become a sea power: during the first half of the 13th century the Capetians acquired ports in Normandy (1204) and Poitou (1224) on the Atlantic, and a Mediterranean port at Aigues-Mortes (1240). Capetian France reached the peak of its power and prestige under Louis IX (1226–1270), and so dominated the armies of the *Crusades* that Muslims called all Latin knights in the east ''Franks'' regardless of their actual origin. French knights also fought bloody, even genocidal, crusades against ''heresy'' within France—most notably the *Albigensian Crusade* in the Midi. During the 13th century roving bands of mercenaries (*routiers*) were thrown up by incessant internal conflict and protracted fighting with England. To deal with the anarchy they threatened, the merchant classes agreed to levels of taxation that permitted French kings to raise royal armies and later, also the best gunpowder artillery train and park in the world. They used these forces to smash the armed nobility and begin to forge a ''French'' identity and nation.

The long conflict with England climaxed in the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). The 14th century in France was marked by baleful military defeats and decline, political fragmentation, and nearly endless war fought almost exclusively on French soil with a succession of aggressive English kings. The dynastic and territorial disputes that gave rise to the Hundred Years' War triggered succession crises and civil wars in both kingdoms. For most of the Hundred Years' War victory by England and Burgundy looked to be the most likely outcome. Then France rallied behind *Jeanne d'Arc* in 1429, and later around the king she crowned, Charles VII. Royalists armies used artillery to expell English garrisons from Guyenne, Gascony, and Normandy, indeed all of France except *Calais*. France thus emerged victorious from the long war and under a powerful king, Louis XII (1423–1483). It was one of the first states in Europe to move out of the Middle Ages and assume an early modern form: its great feudatories were beaten into submission politically and militarily, and their interests, titles, and fortunes tied to service to the crown. This resulted in good measure from military reforms implemented by French kings. They replaced old feudal levies raised by barons and comprised principally of mounted knights, with a new army built around the best artillery train in the world and professional infantry, much of it foreign mercenary. The royal army retained nobles as officers but professional gunners and infantry, and even some mercenary heavy cavalry alongside its noble horse. Paid formations dealt with England's archers and dismounted men-at-arms more effectively, and finally expelled English power from the Continent. The monarchy then used its newfound military power to launch the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559). France enjoyed some early success, as in 1515 when *Francis I* defeated the famed pike squares of the Swiss at *Marignano*. Francis did not do so well, however, at *Pavia* (February 23–24, 1525). On the whole, the Italian Wars were a financial drain and distraction for France that lasted seven decades.

In the 16th century, beginning with the Italian Wars, France faced a powerful continental enemy who replaced England in French military imagination and attention until 1660: the *Habsburgs*. The long struggle between the Houses of Valois and Habsburg pitted military giants against each other for 160 years, though with an important interregnum: for over 40 years after 1562, France was torn apart by serial ''wars of religion,'' or the *French Civil Wars*. The *Guise* and *Catholic League*, sometimes in alliance with the crown, sometimes not, warred with the *Huguenots* for four decades. The civil wars ended with the coronation of *Henri IV*, who abjured his Protestantism to ascend the throne and unite a nation. France thereafter reemerged as principal rival to Spain to the middle of the 17th century, supplanting Elizabethan England in that role. France benefitted enormously from the inspired statecraft of *Cardinal Armand Richelieu*, who bribed, cajoled, and maneuvered other powers and other kings' armies to fight the Habsburgs in place of France. Meanwhile, Richelieu and *Louis XIII* finished with France's ''Huguenot problem'' and girded for the final showdown with the Habsburgs. By the time France overtly entered the *Thirty Years' War* in 1635 it could call upon a rich resource base, a growing and modernizing urban economy, and a swelling population: 16 million in 1600, or four times that of England. By 1635, French finances were in order, the Huguenots had been eliminated as a military factor and threat to internal peace and stability, and the Spanish and Austrians were near military and fiscal exhaustion from over-extension in wars in Germany, the Netherlands, and with the Ottomans. Although the first battles went badly for France, in 1643 a French army crushed the Spanish at *Rocroi*. That victory, and several others, set the stage for peace talks that culminated in the *Peace of Westphalia* (1648). There, French diplomats ensured the continuing division of Germany and the preeminence of France as the dominant military power in Europe. See also *Agincourt, Battle of*; *Cassel, Battle of*; *chevauchée*; *chivalry*; *Courtrai, Battle of*; *Crécy, Battle of*; *feudalism*; *Francis II*; *Free Companies*; *Henri II, of France*; *Medici, Catherine de*; *Poitiers, Battle of*; *Roosebeke, Battle of*.

Suggested Reading: P. S. Lewis, ed., *The Recovery of France in the 15th Century* (1972); Victor-Louis Tapié, *France in the Age of Louis XIII and Richelieu*, D. Lockie, trans. (1975).

Franche-Comté. An Imperial territory for most of this period, it was acquired by Spain under the terms of *Cateau-Cambrésis* in 1559. It was a contested region with France during the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648).

Francis I (1494–1547). King of France, 1515–1547. He inherited an army fundamentally reshaped after defeating England in the *Hundred Years' War*. It no longer relied on feudal levies commanded by barons. It was still strong in *heavy cavalry* but it also led the way in gunpowder artillery and expanded infantry. In 1515, Francis took this army back into Italy, where it performed well in a new round of the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559), defeating the

pike squares of the *Swiss Confederation* over two days at *Marignano* (September 13–14, 1515) and taking Milan. But the next foe Francis faced was the most powerful monarch in Europe since Charlemagne: *Charles V*. Altogether, his Habsburg territories encircled France on three sides. It was a strategic dilemma that dogged Francis his entire reign. Francis won at *La Bicocca* (April 27, 1522), but then the war in Italy turned against him. There followed an invasion of southern France by *Charles de Bourbon*. The climax came at *Pavia* (February 23–24, 1525), where Francis was defeated, captured, taken to Madrid, and held until he surrendered all claims in Italy and Burgundy, a false promise he renounced immediately upon his release in 1526. Francis spent the next 20 years conspiring against the Habsburgs, but achieved few successes in the continuing Italian Wars despite signing a formal alliance with the Ottoman Empire in 1536. In 1534 he ordered formation of seven ''legions'' of 6,000 men, each raised within France, to reduce his dependence on the Swiss for infantry and in mimicry of the Spanish *tercio*. These were to be all pike, halberd, and arquebus units. They never challenged the tercio effectively, however, since they were badly officered and ill-trained. In religious matters Francis was a supporter of Christian humanism and scholarship, notably that of Erasmus. He embraced Catholic orthodoxy as defined for the *Gallican Church* by faculty of the Sorbonne. He was among the first major Catholic monarchs to denounce *Lutheranism* and *Calvinism* as heresy. His response to conversion of French nobles to Calvinism was active repression, starting with the *Affair of the Placards* (1534). See also *Corpus Christi*; *Henry VIII, of England*.

Suggested Reading: Robert Knecht, *Francis I* (1982); Desmond Seward, *Prince of the Renaissance* (1973).

Francis II (1544–1560). King of France, 1559–1560. A sickly child, he was married as a youth to *Mary Stuart*. He reigned briefly but never ruled after his father, *Henri II*, was mortally wounded in a jousting accident. His wife's uncles, the militant Catholics *François, duc de Guise* and *Charles, Cardinal de Lorraine*, seized effective power from his mother, *Catherine de Medici*. The Guise brothers arrested and executed many Protestants for heresy, aggravating confessional tensions so that in March 1560, the ''*conspiracy of Amboise*'' took form around a plot to kidnap Francis and depose the Guise. In the middle of the crisis he died suddenly, from an ear infection. His early death so soon after his powerful father's passing unsettled the affairs of France and its ally, Scotland, and thereby also of England and Spain. In 1562, during the opening skirmishes of the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629), Huguenot rioters sacked his tomb in Orléans, fed his entrails to dogs, and mutilated his heart.

François I. See *Francis I*.

François II. See *Francis II*.

Franco–Spanish War (1595–1598). Even as the eighth of the *French Civil Wars* was drawing to a close, *Henri IV* declared war on Spain. He had discovered yet another in a long line of plots by *Philip II* to invade France, or at least occupy several of its strategic Atlantic ports. More importantly, the Spanish were supporting *Mayenne*, then in Burgundy with a dwindling but defiant army of the *Catholic League*. Henri intended to push over the tottering League by exposing its alliance with foreign powers against France's legitimate king, while assuring newly suspicious Huguenots that his reconversion to Catholicism had not bound him too closely to a purely Catholic policy. With another of his political master strokes Henri thus converted the League into an association of traitors while uniting and redirecting most of France's martial energy outward, against a hated foreign foe. In May 1595, a Spanish army 10,000 strong moved to Dijon and joined Mayenne. Henri met the enemy at nearby Fontaine-Française on June 5. The fighting was desperate, with Henri leading several cavalry charges, the last French king to personally lead cavalry into battle. His reckless but effective tactics bested the numerically superior Catholic force. General Velasco, the Constable of Castile, then fell out with Mayenne with the result that Henri's enemies divided their forces. Mayenne retreated to Chalon while Henri secured Burgundy with short, sharp sieges, and by bribing the master of the citadel in Dijon to submit. In 1596 the new Spanish governor of Flanders, General Fuentes, invaded from the north and seized Le Catelet, Doullens, and Cambrai (the latter after a fierce bombardment). Henri looked to Italy for Catholic allies but found none willing or able to rise up, while Protestant powers trusted him no more. Another Spanish army took Calais in early 1597 while Spanish troops disguised as French peasants entered and seized Amiens. When Henri moved to retake the city even his old Huguenot comrades-in-arms refused to help him. Still, the king managed to raise an army with which he invested Amiens from April to September 1597. On September 25, mounted and holding his scepter and looking every inch the warrior king, Henri reviewed withdrawal of the Spanish garrison to which he had granted terms. Several thousand enemy troops filed past, pulling hundreds of carts loaded with dead and wounded Spaniards while their officers saluted a conqueror. Henri garrisoned Amiens with a citadel and loyal troops then moved on and subdued Brittany, where the last great Catholic rebel, the duc de Mercoeur, submitted in early 1598. Henri made peace with Spain at *Vervins* and settled with the Huguenots in the *Edict of Nantes*. France was at peace for the first time since 1562.

His reckless but effective tactics bested the numerically superior Catholic force.

Franco–Spanish Wars (1494–1559). See *Italian Wars*.

Frankenhausen, Battle of (1525). See *German Peasant War*.

Frankfurt-an-der-Oder, Storming of (1631). See *Thirty Years' War*.

Franks. Originally, the Germanic conquerors of Gaul (6th century). They later fended off the Muslim invasion of Gaul, established the empire of Charlemagne, and gave their name to the early medieval kingdom of France. From the late 11th century "Franks" was the Muslim name for all Latin Crusaders, regardless of their actual origin in the divers states of Western and Central Europe. The Byzantines also called Westerners "Franks," though sometimes the Greeks used the still older Roman term, "Celts." See also *Crusades*; *lance (3)*; *Normans*.

Frastenz, Battle of (April 20, 1499). The first battle of the *Swabian War* (1499), in which the Swiss defended their frontier against encroachment by *Maximilian I*, Holy Roman Emperor. His mixed Swabian and German mercenary army took up position hear Frastenz. The Swiss split their force of 10,000 men into two groups. When the *Vorhut* (or van) arrived it attacked the German center. Meanwhile, the second square scaled a small cliff that was left undefended, which allowed it to attack into the German flank. The Swiss "push of pike" was unstoppable: the Germans broke and ran, leaving their wounded to be slaughtered by the merciless Swiss.

free cities. "Reichsstädte." See *Holy Roman Empire*; *Prague, Peace of*; *Schmalkaldic League*; *Westphalia, Peace of*.

Free Companies. The earliest bands of 12th-century "free companions" were small (seldom more than 1,000 men), mostly infantry, and fought under regionally identifiable names such as "Aragonais" or "Navarais." That reflected the tendency of recruits to come from poorer rural areas of southern France, or the fringes of Flemish society. Close bonds formed among these men of violence, many of whom were highly skilled with bows and crossbows. Their independence and knight-killing weaponry competed with the feudal bonds of older, Church-sanctioned social and military relations. Other Free Companies emerged out of mixed bands of mercenaries formed to survive through extortion during lulls in the fighting (and pay) during the 13th–14th centuries. When in royal employ, Free Companies might be as loyal or disloyal on the field of battle as other professional troops. But no duke or baron or even king could pay them year-round, so they resorted to living off the land in winter, and they reverted to existence as military locust whenever peace broke out.

Recruitment into Free Companies broadened during the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453), when the fully mercenary character of the companies became clear. More than 100 "Free Companies" appeared after the *Peace of Brétigny* (1360), which let them loose on the people and the land while temporarily ending fighting between the monarchs of France and England. Several of these companies were mixed formations: French and English joined together,

out of pay and out of service. They seized strongholds as bases from which to ravage towns and the countryside, extorting *appatis* and terrorizing peasants and good burghers. They were far rougher than the *routiers*, who at least enjoyed the legal (and to a degree, also moral) cover of fighting in the name of kings of England. That the Free Companies recognized and celebrated their rogue status was made apparent in the personal motto of one captain: ''Everyone's Enemy.'' Clifford Rogers makes a key point differentiating routiers from Free Companies: whereas routiers did the dirty work of economic attrition commissioned by *Edward III*, the Free Companies ''must be considered as a result of the Hundred Years' War rather than an element of its prosecution.'' Once they had ''eaten out'' France some drifted to Iberia; others left for the warm climate and rich vineyards and olive groves of Italy. From 1340 to 1380 the majority of members of Free Companies in Italy were foreigners: mostly English, French, and German *condottieri*. By the end of the 14th century Italians regained majority membership in the condottieri and even foreigners in Free Companies became more settled and semipermanently attached to one city-state or another. This was the case, most notably, with the English mercenary captain *John Hawkwood*. See also *Armagnacs*; *ashigaru*; *Catalan Great Company*; *Celâli Revolts*; *Ecorcheurs*; *ronin*; *routiers*; *Saracen*; *White Company*.

Suggested Reading: N.A.R. Wright, *Knights and Peasants: the Hundred Years' War in the French Countryside* (1998).

freedom of the seas. A fundamental principle of international law holding that the principle of national sovereignty ends at the edge of the delimited ''territorial sea,'' and therefore that all shipping may by right sail the ''high seas'' without interference in peacetime and with only limited interference in wartime. Its acceptance and codification was much advanced by the great work *Mare Liberum* by *Hugo Grotius*. Although often associated with England, the eventual rise of British naval mastery actually involved abandonment of older notions of free seas and *sovereignty of the sea* in favor of an incipient policy of continental blockade and commerce raiding, evident as early as the Elizabethan war with Spain.

free quarter. A variation on forced *contributions* used during the *English Civil Wars* (1639–1651), in which a promissory ticket was given in exchange for boarding and feeding soldiers. See also *club men*.

Freiburg, Battle of (August 3–10, 1644). A Bavarian force of 15,000 under *Franz von Mercy* besieged Freiburg, in Baden, from June 17, 1644. A French relief army 16,000 strong, led by the *Great Condé*, with *Turenne* in command of the cavalry, arrived on August 3. The first French attempt to take the city failed, at a cost of 5,000 infantry casualties during a blunt, bloody frontal assault on the German trenches. These were overrun, but too late in the day to exploit fully. That allowed Mercy to fall back on a second line of

fortification. Taking advantage of shorter and superior lines of supply and reinforcement the French pressed the attack for a week, finally compelling Mercy to withdraw to Rothenburg.

French armies. Traditional feudal military obligations, and a large population, permitted France to raise armies comprised almost exclusively of knights and men-at-arms, supplemented by occasional peasant and town levies. However, after the crushing defeat and slaughter of the French nobility at *Courtrai* (1302), Philip IV (''The Fair'') and the monarchy claimed a right to summon all and sundry physically fit to bear arms under the *arrière-ban* (until 1356), without making the old and legally and socially accepted distinctions as to whether such men were subjects of the crown, other liege lords, or the Church. Also, a tax was offered to those who wished to substitute cash payment to the crown for personal military service. This allowed the crown to hire more professional soldiers, mainly infantry, and the wealthy to avoid risks in battle. During the first half of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453) France developed a recruitment scheme known as ''lettres de retenue'' that paralleled English ''indentures for war.'' This allowed French kings to engage military contractors for set sums in exchange for provision of agreed numbers and types of troops. Overseeing the national muster were two Maréchals of France, assisted by eight lieutenants, who were charged with ensuring that the terms of contracts were met, appointment of captains, inspection of arms and equipment, and payment of the king's coin to the contracted soldiery. In France to a greater extent and later date than in England, feudal recruitment under the *servitium debitum* was still enforced. For instance, in garrisoning frontier posts or when serving as auxiliaries town militia were paid only from the forty-first day of enlistment, affirming the traditional obligation to provide 40 days of free military service to the crown.

A national French army emerged from the great trials of the Hundred Years' War as one of the most powerful in Europe. For most of the war the French defended fortified positions well, but suffered bloody and humbling battlefield defeats. In the field, the French Army remained a medieval force overly dependent on heavy cavalry. For this it paid a huge price in blood at *Crécy* (1346), *Poitiers* (1356), and remarkably, as late as *Agincourt* (1415). From 1444 to 1448, Charles VII brought roving mercenary bands under control by organizing *''compagnies de l'ordonnance du roi''* (1439). These gave the best soldiers royal pay, and swore all officers to personal service to the crown. Charles paid for these troops with the ''taille,'' a central tax that became the basis of royal military control over what became under his successors one of the great armies of Europe. What was most remarkable was that the French added a corps of permanent infantry (''camp du roi'') in form of the *franc-archers* to the previously established permanent *heavy cavalry* and artillery corps. By 1500 the royal army totaled about 25,000 men. French reforms were paralleled in Burgundy under *Charles the Rash*, who organized his army around *lances* with

accompanying reforms in drill, officering and equipment. However, Charles rolled the ''iron dice of war'' far too often, and eventually lost everything—including his army—on the field of battle against the French and Swiss.

The French army that invaded Italy to begin the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559) has been appropriately described as the first modern army, since it sought to use advanced artillery, cavalry, and infantry in a ''combined arms'' manner and had specialized units of engineers and other troops in its companies and lances. In peacetime the king maintained 64–70 companies in 2,500 lances, or just over 7,000 men. In 1558, *Henri II* inspected the army in Picardy, where it mustered 11,000 cavalry and 29,000 infantry, a vast force for the day. However, over 70 percent were foreign mercenaries. This exposed the great military weakness of France, as of all early modern states: its system of *war finance*. On the eve of the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629) the core of the Royalist army was still the ''gendarmerie,'' comprised of noble heavy cavalry. These troops were scattered across France, though with the greater concentration in the northeast. The wide geographical dispersal of more than 90 companies of gendarmerie, each comprised of 200 gendarmes, militated against effective mobilization, while the preeminence of cavalry and lack of native infantry made Royalist armies ineffective against Huguenot fortified towns. The crown thus continued to import specialist mercenaries (up to one-third of the army). During the Civil Wars the national component of armies on both sides grew, to over 60 percent for the Royalists in 1562, due to the fiscal strains involved as the ability of either side to raise mercenaries was reduced as fighting dragged on. Nevertheless, many *Landsknechte* and Swiss saw service in France.

The *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648) stretched the French Army to maximum limits, progressively shrinking it over 10 years through death, disease, desertion, and a fundamental failure of foraging and logistics. Recent research suggests that a maximum of 125,000 men served in French armies in 1639 (including garrison troops) but just 80,000 in 1643, with average annual attrition rates from all causes about 30 percent. One estimate of French military casualties from 1635 to 1659 claims one-half million, not including deserters. Most other historians are sharply critical of that figure as highly exaggerated. See also *arquebusiers à cheval*; *chevaux-légers*; *Francis I*; *Freiburg, Battle of*; *Henri III, of France*; *Henri IV, of France*; *Louis XI*; *Louis XIII*; *pioneers*; *Richelieu, Cardinal Armand Jean du Plessis de*; *Rocroi, Battle of*.

Suggested Reading: James Wood, *The Army of the King* (1996).

French Civil Wars (1562–1629). ''French Wars of Religion.'' Older histories dealing with the French Civil Wars pointed to core material interests as their primary cause, depicting professions of faith by participants (especially nobles) as mostly cynical cover for more mundane concerns. It is clear that underlying this protracted conflict were complex class, economic, and regional fissures within French society, not least between restlessly expanding urban classes and older and more conservative powers in the countryside. Also clearly, the coals of civil conflict were fanned by general discontent among the

old ''nobility of the sword'' and competitive ambitions of specific noble families, especially the *Valois* and *Bourbon*, *Guise*, and *Châtillon*. All that was intensified by serial succession crises and the always strained politics of long regencies. A drawn-out contest for royal power aggravated the much deeper confessional divide due to the uniquely intimate relationship of Church and crown in France, which was reflected in the oath proclaimed during the coronation ceremony (*sacre*) and venerable royal title (*Rex christianissimus*). Notwithstanding material causes, recent scholarship has persuasively demonstrated that the central issue in the civil wars was, as contemporaries said it was, confessional antagonism. The French ''wars of religion'' engaged distinct communities of faith, each of which saw the other body of believers (rather than body of doctrines) as a vile pollutant within the national body politic, so that each set out to purge the other by inquisition, burnings, persecution, and force of arms. This clash between opposing ''godly cultures'' was not resolvable by secular compromise: Catholics saw Huguenots as irredeemable heretics and rebels, while Protestants viewed Catholics as priest-ridden, corrupt, and superstitious idolators beyond hope of spiritual recovery. Each side believed with matching fervor that the poison of heresy, or of rank superstition, had to be bled from the community of faithful if civic and religious peace were to be restored. Mack Holt summarized the problem thus: ''There was a religious foundation to 16th century French society that was shared by elites and popular classes alike, and it was the contestation of this essential religious fabric of both the body social and the body politic that led to the French civil wars taking the shape they did.''

This clash between opposing ''godly cultures'' was not resolvable by secular compromise . . .

The key facts in prolonging the fighting, once it began, were: decentralization of the Royalist army; political impotence of the French monarchy due to serial regencies and ducal and *Catholic League* interference; the inability of 16th-century battle to produce decisive outcomes even though many noble officers were killed (twinned facts which led to smaller fights as the ''wars of religion'' progressed); the defensive strength of Huguenot-fortified towns capable of withstanding the cavalry-heavy ''gendarmerie'' that comprised the core of Royalist armies; the sheer size of France, which made decisive defeat and occupation costly and difficult given the scale of forces involved; direct and indirect intervention by external powers that kept the embers of civil and religious strife stoked with new fuel over several decades; and a perennial lack of funds available to the crown, a frailty worsened by a royal debt of 60 million livres held over from the *Italian Wars* with Spain that ended in 1559. Weakness at the center, especially chronic royal debt, led to repetition of the military dilemma experienced by Spain in the Netherlands: final victory was forestalled because royal companies mutinied or deserted in large numbers on numerous occasions, for want of supplies and pay. Moreover, after each ''peace'' and before the onset of renewed civil war, debt and ongoing military expense compelled the monarchy to

demobilize the army, only to have to remobilize it a few months or a few years later. In contrast, the Huguenots were able to stay in the fight despite their smaller resource base because, after 1572, they mostly stayed inside their fortified towns and thus were better able to concentrate available forces to defend selected sites along a limited frontier. And they drew recruits from a highly motivated population, right out of the pews of their churches and from special militia formed all over France before the civil wars began to guard open-air Protestant services from Catholic interference. Pastors and churches were also used to mobilize revenue collection from the faithful, which ensured regular pay for troops foreign or domestic. More often than not, Huguenot generals were also superior strategists and tacticians to their Catholic counterparts.

First Civil War

In 1559 the *Treaties of Cateau-Cambrésis* finally ended the Italian Wars between Valois and Habsburg. That same year, *Henri II* was killed in a jousting accident. Real power now passed to two brothers, the duc and the Cardinal of Lorraine, masters of the House of Guise and uncles to a suggestible 15-year old heir, *Francis II*. The young king was also tied to the Guise as husband of *Mary Stuart*, daughter of Mary of Guise and herself niece to the duc and the cardinal. The known extreme intolerance of the Guise, along with their sudden rise to power at Court, immediately raised confessional tensions. The Huguenots then appeared to confirm the worst fears of Catholics by mounting the ill-advised *conspiracy of Amboise*. When Francis II died suddenly, his mother, *Catherine de Medici*, seized the moment and power at Court by proclaiming herself regent for another minor son, Charles IX. Dismissing the Guise, she moved to end persecution of the Huguenots and restore internal peace by uniting all Frenchmen within the *Gallican Church*. She also released religious prisoners and ended heresy trials and executions. This effort failed, however, as her toleration agitated more radical Catholics who feared that she would concede overmuch to Protestants, even as French Calvinists moved into the open and embarked on campaigns of violent *iconoclasm*, breaking into Catholic churches to smash statues, crucifixes, and altars. Catholics were whipped into hysterical frenzy and counter-violence by accusations and agitations that Huguenot conventicles were really daemonic orgies. Massacres of Protestants ensued in several towns. Catherine's overarching royalism and dynastic interest were thus undermined by her pose of tolerance, which left her holding a weakened center that was unsupported by either side in the brewing confessional confrontation. In this climate, in 1561 the Guise joined *Anne de Montmorency* in an armed Catholic alliance (''Triumvirate'') that also sought outside aid from *Philip II* of Spain for a campaign to ''extirpate all those of the new religion,'' including the hated Bourbons. Meanwhile, the Queen Mother called the ''Colloquy of Poissy'' which wrung fiscal concessions from the clergy but failed to provide a national alternative to the hard terms of the *Council of Trent* for which she had hoped. In January 1562, she tried once more to grant limited legal toleration of the Huguenots in the *Edict*

of Saint-Germain. Again, the intemperate Guise but also nearly all Catholics rejected her initiatives.

In July 1562, some 2,000 Protestants were expelled from Dijon, not least because of rank superstition that their heresy had caused withering of the rich vineyards of the region. The first major act of violence came at *Vassy* (March 1, 1562), where the duc de Guise had his men fire on and hack to death dozens of Protestant worshipers. The massacre pushed Protestants into armed defense, while thrilling most Catholics with its cleansing ruthlessness. The confessions were now fully politicized, with local noble interests displacing clerics in the leadership on either side and the ancient rivalry of Bourbon and Valois newly linked to Protestant or Catholic martial fortune, respectively. The Guise marshaled a Catholic army at Paris, which remained a center of radical Catholicism throughout the civil wars. *Condé* quickly raised a small Protestant army and took Orléans (April 2), then called upon the militia of the colloquies of the Midi to assemble. This raised his numbers to 2,000 horse, the core of which was four former *compagnies de l'ordonnance*. He also had 6,000 foot. Money and mercenaries poured in from Germany, some at Jean Calvin's behest: 3,000 *Reiters* and 4,000 *Landsknechte* joined Condé, paid for with private resources, confiscated Catholic property, and royal taxes expropriated in the Midi and Huguenot towns. The Royalists took longer to assemble: the gendarme cavalry were scattered across the north, while bands of *aventuriers* had to be mustered and equipped and teamsters secured to cart the royal artillery train from Paris to the southern theater. A further 6,000 Swiss were hired to stiffen the Royalist infantry. Meanwhile, Condé carried out an urban strategy, taking major towns astride key inland waterways and roads in the Loire valley, then occupying Guyenne, Dauphiné, and Normandy. A dozen large cities went over to him within three months, some by siege or taken from within by Protestant fifth columns, but most by persuasion or from confessional conviction. The Mass was abolished in all captured towns while orgies of iconoclasm and desecration followed, with chalices and bells melted down to make Protestant coins and cannons. Catholic refugees streamed out of the fallen towns, further widening the confessional chasm dividing the French.

After meeting with Condé and other Huguenot leaders, the Queen Mother moved reluctantly to put down what was now a large-scale revolt, threateningly led by a prince of the blood with a legitimate claim to her son's throne. Each side also looked for aid outside France, setting a pattern that would prolong and internationalize the French Civil Wars. Huguenots sought aid from Protestant German princes and imported German and Swiss mercenaries, and they looked to *Elizabeth I* and England for relief. Elizabeth sent some early aid in exchange for a right of occupation of Le Havre and Dieppe (Treaty of Hampton Court), which she planned to hold pending a permanent return of *Calais* to England. Despite Calvin's earlier meddling in French affairs, Geneva remained neutral; it even forbade Huguenot captains from raising troops there or buying arms or horses (though in the usual Swiss style, many arms sales were made anyway). French Catholics turned to the pope, who sent

2,500 men, and the Duke of Savoy. But mostly they looked to *Philip II* for men and money, and they hired religiously indifferent Reiters and Landsknechte.

The fighting that ensued was mainly over control of France's towns, with each side enjoying successes and both engaging in reprisal atrocities. Towns were sacked after surrendering; whole populations had their throats cut or were drowned en masse. Refugees were indiscriminately attacked outside several towns by peasants, animated by much older grievances than the new confessional divisions. From May 28 to October 26, Rouen was besieged by the main Catholic force of 30,000 men. A few hundred Scots and English mercenaries tried to reach the city but failed to bring much relief. In the end, the city was sacked for three days at a cost of 1,000 lives. As part of the Royal army disbanded for the winter, Condé moved on Paris. That forced Guise to force march to reach the city first. On December 10, Condé broke camp outside the capital and marched on Chartres. This move led to the only set-piece battle of the First Civil War (April 1562–March 1563), at *Dreux* on December 19. The Catholics won a close but short-lived victory: each army overran the other at one point in the fight; each thus captured the other side's top commander, Condé and Montmorency, respectively. The Huguenot army withdrew to Orléans. The duc de Guise was assassinated outside Orléans a few months later, while besieging the city. That left three of the top four Catholic generals dead or captured while Protestant towns rested secure. The Queen Mother arranged for Condé and Montmorency to be released once they agreed to the terms she set out in the *Edict of Amboise* (March 19, 1563).

This inconclusive outcome to the First Civil War set the mold for a protracted conflict. Neither side could defeat the other decisively on the battlefield, which forced a search for foreign allies to tip the military balance. Meanwhile, a weak monarchy wished to put down rebellion without succumbing to a total Catholic victory, but could not enforce periodic pauses in the fighting that it arranged. Each lull thus masqueraded as a peace settlement but was in fact a mere truce that allowed all to rearm, rebuild defenses, and ready for the next round of fighting. Not even a joint expedition to expel the hated English from La Havre, a feat accomplished on July 30, 1563, could bridge the deeper national divide.

Second Civil War

The Edict of Amboise proved unenforceable: the Parlement of Paris and several provincial parlements refused to register it, many towns would not enforce it, and murders and atrocities were carried out by both sides. All that compelled Catherine to take extraordinary constitutional measures and embark on a two-year royal tour with her son, Charles IX, to enforce the edict. This helped keep the peace for a few years, but despite her efforts the letter and spirit of the Edict of Amboise were ignored. The growing power of *Charles Guise, Cardinal de Lorraine*, and the radical Catholic faction within France frightened Protestants and drove them back into arms. Their fear was matched by Catholic anger over iconoclastic riots and desecration of Catholic places of worship by radical Dutch Calvinists, spiritual and political allies of

the Huguenots. Hard winters and grain shortages aggravated urban unrest. When *Alba* marched up the *Spanish Road* in 1567 with a Catholic-Habsburg army intent on exterminating Calvinism in the Netherlands, unfounded—but reasonable—Huguenot fears of a Spanish–Guise alliance and invasion of France provoked a second Protestant plot to kidnap a Catholic king. Charles IX unwittingly contributed to Protestant fears by contracting 6,000 Swiss guards to protect his person and palaces, also against the chance that Alba might invade France in alliance with the Guise. The Second Civil War (September 1567–March 1568) broke out when a Huguenot army, striking preemptively, failed to capture Charles but went on to seize numerous fortified towns. Coligny and Condé—reinforced by Landsknechte companies—pursued the king to Paris, where he took refuge and which they besieged. The only significant battle took place at *Saint-Denis* (November 10, 1567), where Montmorency beat Condé and Coligny, but later succumbed to his wounds. His death deprived the Queen Mother of any major field commander not loyal to the Guise, leading to a period of unsuccessful collective command of Royalist forces. Meanwhile, the defeated Protestants only withdrew to Lorraine in hopes of joining with mercenary reinforcements from Germany. The Royalists pursued with the largest army fielded during the civil wars: 38,000 men with another 12,000 camp followers, swelling to over 60,000 within a few weeks. The Protestants linked with the Germans on January 11, 1568. Despite their much superior numbers, the Royalists balked at another bloody battle that might kill hundreds of nobles. Instead of attacking, they ravished the land. The more nimble Huguenot army marched on to Orléans, then besieged Chartres. Both sides soon ran out of funds: the Germans in the Protestant army went home, as did the Swiss on the Royalist side. The Second Civil War thus ended in stalemate like the first, producing another false peace in the *Edict of Longjumeau* (March 1568).

This helped keep the peace for a few years, but despite her efforts the letter and spirit of the Edict of Amboise were ignored.

Third Civil War

The Third Civil War (September 1568–August 1670) started six months later, arising from a conspiracy headed by the Cardinal de Lorraine and Philip II to overturn the terms of Longjumeau. The plan was to capture key Huguenot towns while also murdering Coligny and Condé. But the generals escaped on August 23, 1568. They galloped for La Rochelle in an epic flight that gathered Huguenots to their banner as they rode, until they arrived at the head of an army of thousands. Tens of thousands more Protestants mobilized in the weeks that followed. International events also impinged, as news arrived that Alba's ''Council of Blood'' had executed hundreds of Calvinist nobles in the Netherlands, including Coligny's cousin. This pushed the Dutch rebels against Spain into alliance with France's Huguenots, a key factor in the wars and politics of both countries over the next 16 years. In addition, England moved more clearly into the Protestant camp, as did Scotland following

Mary Stuart's flight into English exile in May 1568. There was extensive fighting from 1568 to 1570, in which the Huguenots were joined by the usual German mercenaries, but also by Dutch "Beggars" led by *William of Orange* and *Louis of Nassau*. Even so, the Protestants fared badly at first. At *Jarnac* (March 13, 1569) a Catholic army nominally led by the future Henri III defeated the Huguenots. Condé was one of many Protestants murdered as they lay wounded on the field. That left Coligny the preeminent Protestant general. He led the army back to Cognac, where it resisted a Royalist siege. Meanwhile, an army of Dutch Protestants briefly crossed into northern France. Unpaid and unruly, its men soon forced it home. An army of German mercenaries, hired with a loan secured by the crown jewels of Navarre, crossed into France from the east and joined the main Huguenot force. Emboldened, Coligny broke camp and crushed a small Royalist army at La Roche-l'Abeille. Blood revenge for Jarnac was taken when Coligny ordered Catholic prisoners, along with hundreds of peasants, slaughtered. Coligny briefly besieged Poitiers before moving to engage another Royalist army at *Moncontour* (October 3, 1569), where he suffered a stiff defeat.

The remnant of the Huguenot army retreated from Moncontour to Languedoc, where it was reinforced by local troops and soon regained a strength of about 12,000 men. Coligny, believing like Robert E. Lee that he had to invade to bring the war home to his larger northern enemy, marched the Huguenot army into Burgundy in the spring. Accompanied by *Henri de Navarre*, he threatened Paris. Coligny easily defeated a hastily raised Catholic army at Arnay-le-Duc (June 26, 1570), near Dijon, then resumed his march on Paris. However, he lacked the strength or siege guns to take the city. All this maneuvering gave the Third Civil War a different character from the first two: rather than a contest of sieges and relief battles, more men were mobilized and fought actively over a much wider area, killing more civilians and destroying more of the countryside in the process. This brought peasants into the fight in larger numbers, as murder and massacre flowed from religious zeal, pent up rural grievances, or simple opportunity. The *Edict of St. Germain-en-Laye* ended the Third Civil War by confirming the military facts on the ground with a generous settlement of Protestant grievances: the Huguenots won conditional religious freedom commensurate with their battlefield success. Thereafter the question was: Could the terms of St. Germain be enforced on a resistant Catholic majority dedicated to purging heretic-rebels from the New Jerusalem called France?

Fourth Civil War

The rising magma of pietism and bloody-minded zeal of the French masses in the early 1570s confirmed the fundamentally religious nature of the conflict, while also distinguishing the Fourth Civil War (August 1572–July 1573) with an eruption of popular violence unknown to the earlier clashes of confessional armies. Popular and spontaneous religious violence became commonplace, provoked by mocking words or a procession by one side that was seen as sacrilegious by the other. Catholic confraternities carried out violent

purges of Protestants. Meanwhile, Huguenot pamphleteers proclaimed new theories of popular sovereignty and a right of rebellion against tyrants. This was important, as Huguenot rejection of the sacral traditions of the French monarchy were seen by even moderate Catholics as undermining the bedrock of social order and peace. The Queen Mother tried to settle the issue at the highest level by marrying Charles IX to a Habsburg princess, daughter of Philip II, and his sister to a Habsburg prince. She also sought a grand reconciliation of Valois and Bourbon via the marriage of her daughter, Margaret de Valois, sister to Charles IX, to Henri de Navarre. Instead, this intrigue at the top brought to a boil popular animosities. Adding fuel to the confessional fires, the *Sea Beggars* took Brill and William of Orange and Louis of Nassau, cousins of the French king, declared war on Spain. In support, excited Huguenots mustered to join the Dutch Calvinist army and others seized Mons and Valenciennes. Coligny urged an alliance with Orange and raised an army of 14,000 men while a second Huguenot army moved to relieve Mons, which was under Spanish siege. It is still disputed among historians whether this moved the Queen Mother to plot against his life. In any case, a failed attempt to assassinate Coligny during the royal wedding celebrations in Paris—most likely by the Guise for reasons of family vendetta—set off the *St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres* in the early hours of August 24, 1572. The capital, where hatred for the Huguenots had built for years, exploded into three days of communal, even ritual, violence. More butchery of Huguenots in provincial towns took place over the following six weeks. Whether planned or spontaneous, the massacres were highly effective: they immediately and severely crippled the Huguenot movement by eliminating much of its noble leadership and reducing its military power and territorial grip. Longer-term, the slaughter undercut via terror the attractiveness of Protestantism to prospective converts and led many more to undertake prudential reconversion to Catholicism. The massacres thus marked the beginning of the end of the Huguenots in France and the key turning point in the French Civil Wars.

The weakness of the monarchy permitted Huguenot armies and fortified ''surety towns'' (*place de sûreté*) to survive for several decades more, but merely as heretical enclaves not as an alternative godly community. Huguenots also became more clearly political rebels and enemies of the crown, in their own eyes and the king's. To this point the Huguenots had, in Jean Delumeau's felicitous phrase, retained an ''underlying conservative royalism.'' Now, as the Fourth Civil War got underway, Protestant towns for the first time openly rejected the authority of the king, spurned his governors, refused to pay his taxes, and acted in relations with foreign Protestant powers as if they were themselves sovereign. In strictly military terms, after the massacres fewer battles were fought as most Huguenots took refuge in fortified towns in the Midi. Also, as fighting shifted south of the Loire, Royalist capabilities were strained by the great distance from recruiting bases across the north and the royal artillery depot in Paris. The main military event of the Fourth Civil War was the siege of La Rochelle from February to June 1573. Carried out by over 25,000 men, it was the single largest military effort of all the French Civil

Wars. It began after much delay caused by the usual ineptitude of Royalists commanders and the hard realities of 16th-century logistics. With an ill-led and expensive army that Charles could not afford floundering outside La Rochelle's walls, he called off the siege. He had lost 20,000 men to death, disease, and desertion, to no great end. Still, the Peace of La Rochelle (July 2, 1573) reflected deeper post-massacre realities: Huguenot freedom to worship was restricted to noble homes and just three towns—La Rochelle, Montauban, and Nîmes. Everywhere else the reformed religion was outlawed. This ban was ignored in practice wherever Protestants were dominant, a continuing defiance that undermined the young king's authority with his Catholic subjects. In addition, the disaster at La Rochelle prolonged the civil wars by stripping the Royalists of irreplaceable officers and leaving the monarchy once more on the edge of bankruptcy. It also demonstrated the defensive power of large Huguenot towns and the inability of the crown to overcome them. All that set the table for 15 more years of siege warfare, feckless maneuvers, and small battles. Charles was spared further military and political humiliations by his death, at age 24, on May 30, 1574.

Fifth Civil War

Charles' younger brother, Henri Valois, duc d'Anjou, had been elected King of Poland a few months earlier. Upon receiving the news of his brother's death Henri abdicated his Polish title (after just 118 days in Cracow) to mount the French throne as *Henri III*. He returned, very slowly through Italy, to a nation deeply cloven by intense confessional hatreds, threatened by foreign powers, and girding for another round of civil war. As for the Huguenots, after the catastrophe of the massacres they were nearly leaderless on the national stage for several years: Coligny was dead and Henri de Navarre a captive, while Henri and the young *Condé* (Henri I, de Bourbon) had been forced to publicly abjure Calvinism. Local leaders of Huguenot fortress towns therefore filled the leadership vacuum with an urban league, a radical republican alliance that rejected the royal system and elected the young Condé commander of the Protestant army. The Huguenots had moved emphatically and self-consciously toward a new political status and claim: they were now avowedly a state-within-a-state, separate and distinct from old, Catholic France. It was a fundamental challenge that Catholics and the monarchy were fiercely determined to meet and crush. The rebellion posed an even greater threat when Henri III proved unable to keep his greatest enemies prisoners at Court. In September 1575, his brother François, the new *duc d'Anjou*, escaped and fled south to join the rebels. Five months later Henri de Navarre escaped and also joined the rebellion. Meanwhile, Condé signed an alliance with Frederick III of the Palatinate that brought 20,000 German mercenaries into France. Henri III, in contrast, was broke and could not raise a countervailing Catholic army. As a result, during the usual maneuvering of opposing forces only small skirmishes between small armies took place in the near-bloodless Fifth Civil War (November 1574–May 1576). Little serious fighting occurred beyond raids and ambushes and a handful of sieges. Even these were restricted as

hungry, unpaid troops deserted Henri's armies by the thousands, scourging the peasants as they fanned over the countryside. In September 1575, some 1,000 noble *Malcontents* rallied against the war in Paris. In October, 20,000 Reiters invaded the Champagne district from Germany. Humiliated and desperate, the king disguised another truce as peace. He sent the Queen Mother in secret to appease the Malcontents and bought off the Germans with all that was left in his treasury, and more. Then he issued the *Edict of Beaulieu* (''Peace of Monsieur'') on May 6, 1576, granting nearly all demands made by French Protestants since the onset of the religious wars. Lastly, he brought his renegade brother François back into the Valois fold.

Sixth Civil War

Beaulieu was the apex of paper political advances made by the Protestant movement and the nadir of Catholic legal concessions forced by military weakness. Yet, the underlying fact remained that the massacres of Huguenots four years prior had so severely weakened them that such gains could not be held. Catholic opinion refused to sanction the terms. The Parlement of Paris, the Guise, and militant clergy led ferocious opposition to the edict and now also to the king. Membership in confraternities and Catholic ''defense leagues'' surged. More moderate Catholics, the so-called *politiques* who favored at least a temporary peace, were shouted down by demands that the king make war on all rebel-heretics, even as the deputies of the Third Estate meeting at Blois refused to vote him the taxes needed to prosecute a successful campaign: bourgeois mouths yelled for war but bourgeois purses stayed clamped shut. This ensured that the Sixth Civil War (December 1576–September 1577) was short and indecisive. An ill-equipped and badly led Royalist army gathered in March, then moved south. It took and sacked two fortified towns after brief sieges, La Charité on April 25, 1577, and Issoire on June 12, 1577. Both were attacked in violation of their security grant to the Huguenots in the Edict of Beaulieu, with Issoire razed to the ground on the personal order of the king. Henri de Navarre—recognized by this time as the Huguenot leader—along with Condé kept a Protestant army in the field. With aid from Elizabeth I they took Brouage on the coast. Once more, royal impecunity forced Henri III to end a war he could not afford in search of a peace he could not sustain. The Peace of Bergerac (September 17, 1577) outlawed all confessional leagues while whittling down toleration of Protestant freedoms to one town in each gouvernement (administrative district). The princes had again agreed on peace despite the fact most Catholics still opposed even limited concessions, while most Huguenots no longer trusted a king who signed serial pacification edicts only to break their terms when the spring rains stopped and the next campaign season arrived. France continued to dwell in a purgatory of confessional conflict half-way between peace and war. In the Midi, local warlordism and regional anarchy were the order of the day. The king was no longer master in Paris, the Catholic League controlled most of the north, and bored courtiers and mignons engaged in stupid duels involving hundreds of restless nobles playing at war.

Seventh Civil War

From 1575 to 1580 further suffering flowed from peasant revolts in Province, Dauphiné, and Vivarais. These were occasioned by the economic dislocations and privation caused by the civil wars, but had nothing to do with the confessional divide in France. Thus, peasants in Provence formed cross-confessional armed bands (*Razats*) that murdered hundreds of nobles and raised the usual grievances of the "Jacques." The response of the Catholic nobility and urban bourgeoisie was to demand the same harsh treatment of the peasants—using comparable methods and displaying similar fervor and savagery—that they demanded against Protestants. No one was permitted to disrupt the sacral social order. Even as the peasant revolts wound down or ended in bloody massacres, the Seventh Civil War (May 1580–November 1580) broke out, provoked by the personal ambitions for office of the young Condé. The shortest and least important of the French wars of religion, the seventh saw fighting that lasted only a few months during the campaign season of 1580. This time it was the Protestants who broke the peace, when Henri de Navarre besieged and took the Catholic stronghold of Cahors, ostensibly in payment of the dowry owed him by virtue of his marriage to Margaret of Valois. Otherwise, neither side had the strength nor money to defeat the other, so that most soldiers remained in barracks or were dismissed from the ranks. This near-farcical conflict was ended by the Peace of Fleix (November 26, 1580), which simply reiterated the terms set at Bergerac.

Eighth Civil War

Such political and military indecision did not guarantee peace so much as set the table for the Eighth Civil War (1585–1589), the most destructive of them all. The spark was the death of the duc d'Anjou. With the monarchy seen to be weakened, the *dévots* increasingly supported the Catholic League, which the Guise formally allied with Philip II in the *Treaty of Joinville* (December 1584). Eight months later the League forced the radically intolerant *Treaty of Nemours* on Henri III, effectively banning Protestantism and stripping Huguenots of legal and military protections. Confused fighting, attempted town coups, and general disruption coursed over the south and the Atlantic coast of France. In January 1585, Pope Sixtus V excommunicated Henri de Navarre and Condé to remove them from the line of succession. Even Catholics were shocked at this foreign intervention in the Gallican Church, but the king was too weak to retaliate. All these events provoked the so-called "War of the Three Henries" (1587–1589). The young *Henri Guise*, the new duc de Lorraine, took the lead military role on the Catholic side, taking control of much of the north out of the hands of the king, Henri III. Supported by Spanish gold, Guise and the League prepared to meet the third Henri, Henri de Navarre, and the Huguenot army. In mid-1587 the Huguenots were reinforced by Palatine

All these events provoked the so-called "War of the Three Henries" (1587–1589).

mercenaries bought with 50,000 English gold crowns sent by Elizabeth I, herself girding for war with Spain (see *Invincible Armada*) and in great need of distraction of potential Catholic enemies in France. Henri de Navarre failed to link with German Reiters hurrying to France under John Casimir, regent of the Palatinate. These mercenaries were instead defeated in two sharp engagements with Guise's army. Surviving Germans were simply bought off by the king and went home. Meanwhile, Navarre aligned with two Catholic Bourbon princes and moved into Maine and Normandy before falling back to winter in Guyenne. He won handily against a small Royalist army at *Coutras* (October 20, 1587).

In the wake of the *Day of the Barricades* (May 12, 1588), a coup d'état in Paris carried out by *The Sixteen* (a radical bourgeois council), and Henri III's murder of Guise in December, the League moved to make war on the king. Most fighting shifted north of the Loire once a truce and alliance was agreed between Henri de Navarre and Henri III, signed on April 3, 1589. A joint campaign to retake Paris from the League followed in the summer, but was interrupted by assassination of the king on August 1, 1589. After that, Royalist troops refused to serve Navarre, reducing his force within days from 40,000 to just 18,000. Henry turned to mercenaries instead, selling off his patrimonial lands in Béarn and Navarre to pay them. Huguenots looked to his coming coronation as their salvation, but despite the *Salic Law* that made Henri the rightful heir, the Catholic League rejected the idea that a heretic and excommunicate could ascend the sacral throne of France. League cells seized control of the cities across the north, bringing to them a fresh League terror and ensuring that the civil war would continue.

Finally, significant battles were fought. On September 21, 1589, the League lost 10,000 men to Henri at *Arques*, despite outnumbering his army 4:1. Reinforced by 5,200 Scots and English, making his army 18,000 strong, Henri marched on Paris and attacked into its suburbs on November 1. Lacking siege guns he could not breach the city's inner walls, and lacking money to pay his troops neither could he starve Paris into submission. He met Mayenne in battle and crushed him, and the last large-scale Leaguer military opposition, at *Ivry-la-Bataille*. The League still backed his uncle, a Bourbon Catholic cardinal (whom they called Charles X) for Henri's throne, but he died in 1590 while in Henri's custody. That gutted the League's confessional hopes and its political program. Meanwhile, supported by 5,000 English troops, Henri leisurely besieged Paris (April 7–August 30, 1590). The city held out, but 13,000 starved to death. Only the intervention of the Duke of Parma with an army of 20,000 Spanish foot and 7,000 horse from the Netherlands saved the French capital from its king. Even after the siege, inside Paris fear and terror governed as The Sixteen purged and murdered ''politiques'' and ''traitors.'' Mayenne occupied the city (November 28, 1591) and executed several of The Sixteen in their turn.

Pope Gregory XIV now interfered in French affairs, excommunicating Henri IV for a second time in March 1591. A Spanish force landed in Brittany that same month, a fact that frightened Elizabeth I into sending Henri still

more men, money, and warships. Her clear interest was to prevent a Leaguer victory that could mean a Franco–Spanish alliance against England. From November 1591 to April 1592, Henri conducted the *Siege of Rouen*. He was forced away only when Parma intervened again from the Netherlands. Papal usurpation of Gallican privileges and Spanish troops on French soil rallied the country's tired nobles for one last hurrah. Henri gathered 24,000 men and moved to trap and destroy Parma. But the irascible old Spaniard crossed the Seine and burned his barges behind him, leaving Henri stranded on the far bank but satisfied to see a foreign army depart in haste. Only a small Spanish garrison in Paris remained and some scattered League resistance in Brittany, Provence, and Dauphiné. In any case, foreign intervention had come too late. By 1592 most Royalist Catholics accepted Henri as their legitimate king. Without an alternate French candidate after the death of Charles X, some Leaguers looked to foreign Catholic princes to displace Henri, but the majority of French balked at renunciation of the traditions and rights of the Gallican Church and the primacy of the Salic Law even over Catholicity. A majority of Catholic delegates in the Estates General reaffirmed this position on June 28, 1593. A month later, on July 25, Henri formally abjured Calvinism and submitted to formal instruction in Catholicism. With a single brilliant stroke he removed the last obstacle to his acceptance by most Catholics. With the country exhausted by war and the majority on both sides reconciled to the monarchy, over the next two years League bitter-enders were run down or driven into exile. On February 27, 1594, Henri was crowned at Chartres (Leaguers still held Reims). Paris submitted on March 22. Its Spanish garrison was given safe passage out of the city and left with arms shouldered and colors intact. Most, though not all, League towns submitted in due course as Henri shrewdly and amply rewarded those which surrendered without violence: he spent over 30 million livres forgiving taxes or bribing nobles and councils to accept him.

During 1594, *Tard-Avisés* peasant revolts broke out in Agenais, Burgundy, Limousin, and Périgord, in part in reaction against economic deprivations of protracted civil war in whose largely urban quarrels and arcane doctrinal disputes peasants in France's 30,000 villages never had much stake or interest. Henri wisely appeased the peasants, as he had Spanish troops and Leaguer garrisons. The next year he declared war on Spain (January 17, 1595), upon discovery of another plot by Philip II to invade France, and to undermine Mayenne and the League bitter-enders by exposing their alliance with a foreign power. That brought about the *Franco-Spanish War* of 1595–1598. Meanwhile, Huguenots became uneasy as Henri became evermore overtly Catholic in his royal persona and public displays of religiosity. Mayenne ritually submitted before his king in 1595, with Henri paying the duc's war debts and restoring him to a provincial governorship. All other great nobles submitted soon thereafter, except the duc de Mercoeur. He did not submit until Henri invaded Brittany in early 1598, gave him a bribe of four million livres, and married Mercoeur's daughter to his own illegitimate son. The Treaty of Ponts de Cé formally ended the eighth war of religion. Henri settled

the outstanding Huguenot issue, at least temporarily, with issuance of the *Edict of Nantes* (April 13, 1598). He then made peace with Spain at *Vervins*. Peace in France was born of weariness with protracted war, weaned on famine and massacres, reared on economic hardship and decline, and finally seduced into bed with the king by baubles and bribery. Still, it was peace, at last.

Ninth Civil War

France enjoyed peace under Henri IV for another 12 years, until his assassination by a mad Dominican monk unsettled the realm, plunged it into another divisive regency, and thus raised the specter of renewed civil war. The Huguenots prepared by holding an assembly at Saumur (1611) at which they appointed a young militant, Henri, duc de Rohan, as their commander. In 1614 there was a court revolt against the regency's marriage plans for young *Louis XIII*, with the rebels led in name by the new Prince de *Condé* (Henri II, de Bourbon). As Catholics divided between factions supporting Condé and the Regent, *Marie de Medici*, each side looked to the Huguenots for military aid should it come to a fight. In the midst of this crisis the clerical estate called for an end to the settlement of Nantes and suppression of all Huguenots. In April 1617, the revolt of the princes climaxed in Louis XIII seizing power from his mother and declaring an intention to ruin and reduce the Huguenots. The 16-year-old king issued an Edict of Restitution for Béarn in June, and launched his first military campaign to restore Catholic rights in Béarn and Navarre. His march south and assault on Béarn was bloodless, as the governor capitulated, restored Catholic churches, and allowed Catholics to worship. In November, Huguenots met in assembly in La Rochelle to plan a response. Louis declared the assembly illegal and all participants guilty of high treason. The Huguenots now revived their ''republic'' in the south, based on their eight place de sûreté, with Henri de Rohan as commander. Events were swirling out of control abroad, as well. In Bohemia the *Battle of the White Mountain* shook the Holy Roman Empire, and soon thereafter all of Europe. With France not yet drawn into the great war looming over Germany, Louis launched a campaign against the Huguenots in 1621 that led to two extended sieges, at La Rochelle and Montauban, along with a handful of skirmishes. Louis was forced to abandon the sieges when a quarter of his army fell ill with ''camp disease,'' and his treasury ran out. Still, more Huguenot notables abjured as La Rochelle was isolated. A second campaign was conducted in 1622, with Louis under intense pressure from dévots and clergy at Court to crush the last Protestant resistance. After the Huguenots lost badly at *Poitou* (April 15, 1622), dozens of smaller fortified towns surrendered as soon as the king reached the outer walls, without a shot fired in anger. The next year a third southern campaign culminated in a great siege of Montpellier and devastating defeat for the Protestant cause. In the Peace of Montpellier (October 19, 1622) over 100 fortified Huguenot towns surrendered to Louis, who then announced that the military brevet of the Edict of Nantes would expire in 1625. Not all Huguenot walls came down as agreed, but the end was in sight.

There followed a slow reduction of the last Huguenot stronghold at La Rochelle. In 1625 much of the coast around La Rochelle and several key islands were captured by the Royalists, despite pledges of English military aid from *James I*, then *Charles I*. Louis allowed a respite in the internal war as he marshaled forces to fight Spain in northern Italy. Even so, in 1626 he landed a royal garrison on *Ile de Ré*. In 1627 the *War of the Mantuan Succession* broke out in Italy, draining money and men from the fight over La Rochelle. The Huguenots were nearly spent in any case. Louis and *Richelieu* began the final siege in August 1627. After 14 months of bombardment and the grinding effects of slow starvation, after a humiliating English failure to raise the siege, the Rochelais capitulated on October 28, 1628. The king and Richelieu led the army into the city, and the rest of the Midi surrendered in short order. The walls of Huguenot towns were demolished, a number under direct supervision by Richelieu. The victory in the civil wars was more Royalist than Catholic, though such distinctions were less than clear at the time. This fact was personified by Armand Richelieu, the ''éminence rouge'' who was cardinal and general all at once. The conclusion is also supported by extension of limited religious toleration to the surviving Huguenots in the *Edict of Alès* (1629), even as all their military rights and capabilities—which most threatened the monarchy—were demolished. This pragmatic settlement contrasted starkly with the arrogant, reactionary Catholicism of the *Edict of Restitution* proclaimed by *Ferdinand II* in Germany that same year. Nor were Huguenot commanders executed or exiled. They were instead pardoned and many entered royal service, just in time to partake in the ''Great War'' of the 17th century in Germany. See also *flagellants*.

This pragmatic settlement contrasted starkly with the arrogant, reactionary Catholicism . . .

Suggested Reading: Denis Crouzet, *Les guerriers de Dieu* (1990); H. Heller, *Iron and Blood* (1991); Mack Holt, *French Wars of Religion, 1562–1629* (1995); Robert Knecht, *The French Civil Wars* (2000); James Thompson, *Wars of Religion in France* (1958).

Frey. See *Fra*.

Friedrich I (c.1125–1190). ''Barbarossa.'' See *Crusades*; *Knights Templar*; *Teutonic Knights, Order of*.

Friedrich V (1596–1632). Elector Palatine; King of Bohemia, 1619–1620. Son-in-law of *James I* and brother-in-law of *Charles I*; nephew of *Maurits of Nassau*; head of the *Protestant Union*. A pleasure-seeking mediocrity, he rashly accepted the Bohemian crown offered by rebels to any Protestant prince in Europe who would defend it, an offer made after the ''*Defenestration of Prague*'' (1618) and intended to deny Bohemia to *Ferdinand II*. Friedrich's decision ultimately cost him the Palatinate as well as Bohemia. More importantly, it helped bring on the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). Where James I feared a general war and warned Friedrich not to accept, Maurits urged him on in the

faux-Machiavellian hope of deflecting Spain's martial energy into the German war, since Maurits was planning to resume the Dutch war with Spain upon expiration of the *Twelve Years' Truce* in 1621. Friedrich hesitated until Maurits sweetened the offer with a large loan and 5,000 Dutch troops. Friedrich moved south and was elected ''King of Bohemia'' on August 16, 1619. He was glorified by a neo-Platonic Protestant cult, the ''Brotherhood of the Rosy Cross'' (Rosicrucians), who, appealing to his vanity, acclaimed him as the fulfilment of Biblical prophesy. The glory did not last long: his army and allies were crushed at the *White Mountain* (November 8, 1620) and Friedrich was driven from Bohemia, to be remembered derisively for his brief sojourn there as the ''Winter King.'' He was also soon hounded from the Palatinate, as Habsburg armies brought the war up the Rhine. He was officially declared ''outlaw'' by the Empire in 1621. He took refuge in the Netherlands, temporarily in 1622 and permanently the next year. Until his death, his court-in-exile in The Hague was a center for Protestant dissenters from across Europe. In the *Peace of Prague* (1635) his heirs were banished from the Palatinate in perpetuity: their lands, rights, titles, and Palatine Electorship were ceded to Bavaria.

frigate (1). A small Mediterranean *galley* of the 16th century.

frigate (2). A fast 17th-century ship of fighting sail, with rows of cannon on a single deck numbering between 20 and 40 guns, with the most common type sporting 24 cannon. It was smaller and faster than a *man-of-war* but larger and better armed than a *sloop-of-war*. It proved ideal for *privateering*, *piracy*, and for long-distance patrols and *cruising*.

Frobisher, Martin (1539–1594). English *privateer* and Arctic explorer. Born in Yorkshire, he grew up in London under the tutelage of an uncle engaged in ''discriminating piracy'' in the English Channel. He accompanied *Francis Drake* on his 1585–1586 extended raid against Spanish holdings from Cape Verde to Cartagena, and fought as one of four English commanders in the *Invincible Armada* campaign of 1588. He died from wounds delivered by the Spanish during a raid on Brest.

front (1). In fortification, a section of *curtain wall* located between a pair of *bastions*.

front (2). In a line of battle, the first rank of soldiers. In this period, ''front'' had not yet acquired its modern meaning of a theater of war or long boundary between two or more engaged armies.

fryd. An early, Anglo-Saxon general mobilization of freemen. A ''select fryd'' was a more limited levy for small campaigns, normally calling up just one freeman in five. The Saxon kingdoms also used the fryd to construct and crew warships by laying a levy on the coastal population. Along with Anglo-Saxon

knighthood, the fryd was defeated at Hastings (1066) at the onset of the *Norman* conquest of England. The select fryd survived under the Normans for several decades, as infantry support to Norman heavy cavalry. It was called on a few occasions to fight in Norman wars on the continent. The first English settlers in Virginia revived a version of the fryd in the early *Indian Wars*. See also *English armies*.

Fugger, House of. A Catholic merchant and banking house from Augsburg, Germany, which along with the Welsers and Hochstetters financed most *Habsburg* wars in the 16th–17th centuries. Johannes Fugger (1348–1409) was a master-weaver whose three sons married well and helped build the family business, which profited especially from investment in mining at the dawn of the gunpowder age. The Fuggers made a great deal of money from trade in raw copper and bronze guns manufactured at their family foundry in Fuggerau, near Willbach. The Fuggers dominated international finance in southern Europe by the 16th century, underwriting most wars of the popes, Holy Roman Emperors, and of Habsburg monarchs, notably *Charles V* and *Philip II*. In 1527, Charles V pledged revenues confiscated from all the Iberian *Military Orders* as collateral for Fugger loans. The Fuggers eventually controlled the finances of much of eastern Europe as well. And they made fortunes from the *spice trade* and the wider misfortunes of war which stoked international trade in copper, tin, saltpeter, and cannon. The Fuggers were fiercely opposed to the *Protestant Reformation*, not least because it threatened sales of indulgences and benefices, which were the effective collateral for loans to the popes and emperors. Fugger influence peaked under Charles V then waned along with the fortunes of his heirs in Austria and Spain. See also *Knights of Alcántara*.

Fujian ships. Large, two-masted Chinese *junks* capable of blue water voyages. They carried a crew of about 100. While they sported numerous *swivel guns*, *muskets*, *bows*, *fire lances*, and other anti-personnel weapons, their weak planking could neither support nor withstand large-caliber broadside artillery.

Fulbe (Fulani). Hausa: Fulani; French: Peul. The nomadic pastoralist Fulbe were pagans (Animist) allowed to move with their cattle among settled Muslim towns and empires of West Africa for several centuries after most of the region converted to Islam (c.11th century). By the 16th century they were concentrated around Futa Jalon and the Niger Valley west of Timbuktu, with some found in the *Hausa* lands and as far east as *Bornu*. For the most part they remained distinct from the peoples among whom they moved. Some Fulbe settled in the western towns of Futa Toro (Takrur) and Futa Jalon, and became known as Tukolor; they would found a new Muslim empire in the mid-19th century. Others settled as ''town Fulbe'' in lands farther east and south, reaching to Lake Chad. The majority remained nomadic. Town Fulbe converted to Islam while most of the nomads stayed Animist, though more were converted to Islam by *marabouts* in the 16th–17th centuries. This

late conversion endowed the nomadic Fulbe with a religious fervor which had long since subsided among most urban West African Muslims. The wide dispersal of Fulbe permitted a vast network of contact which played a key role in diffusion of fevered political and religious ideas once these began to grip the Fulbe at the end of the 17th century.

Funj Sultanate. See *Sudan*.

Fürstenberg, Count. See *First Breitenfeld*.

Fürstenverschwörung. ''Conspiracy of princes.'' See *Passau, Convention of*; *Schmalkaldic League*.

Fürth, Battle of (1632). See *Alte Feste, Siege of*.

fuses. See *shells*.

fusiliers de taille. Irregular French mounted soldiers who accompanied war tax collectors (''intendants'').

fusta. An oared warship smaller than a *galliot* and much smaller than a war *galley*. It had just 15 banks of oars in bireme formation, and 60 crew at two men per oar. Fustas carried 40 infantry sharpshooters and boarders. See also *Lepanto, Battle of (October 7, 1571)*.

G

gabions. Wicker cylinders, usually four or five feet high, filled with earth and stones to make field fortifications for musketeers or artillery or to reinforce permanent walls. Wicker was easily portable and the shot-absorbing barrier it made had real strength. A major problem was getting overly proud mercenaries to do the spade work needed to fill the gabions. Until the reforms of *Gustavus Adolphus* made entrenchment an accepted part of a soldier's job most spade work in European armies was done by women and children camp followers.

gadlings. Iron spikes attached to the knuckles of a *gauntlet*.

gaff. See *spar*.

Gainsborough, Battle of (1643). See *English Civil Wars*.

"galeones." The Spanish fleet that sailed yearly for Panama from Seville. See also *convoy*; *flota*.

galets. Cast iron cannonballs.

galleass. A hybrid warship with oars and sails and a high forward *castle*. See also *Constantinople, Siege of*; *Great Galley*; *Invincible Armada*; *Lepanto, Battle of (October 7, 1571)*.

galleon. From the late 15th century, but especially preeminent in the 16th century, a revolutionary new sailing ship of war appeared that made oceanic trade a reality and far-flung commerce raiding possible. It had a narrow waist (''fine lines''), two or more gun decks housing *ship-smasher* cannon, and batteries of *chase guns* fore and aft. The galleon essentially added the forepart

of a *galley* to the afterpart and fighting castle of a *carrack*, with the additional strength of a *clinker-built* hull. This gave the galleon its trademark crescent shape. It was a fast, powerful warship quickly favored by *pirates* and *privateers*. Its preeminence flowed from several key advantages. First, it combined greater hull capacity and a small crew that consumed less food and water than a galley crew, allowing more goods to be carried farther than ever before. Next, its clinker-built hull was strong enough to mount broadside cannon for defense against pirates and enemy warships. This, too, displaced crew as cannon, not men, became the main fighting instrument in war at sea. Third, the galleon sported full rigging; that is, a combination of square sails for power and lateen sails to aid maneuvering. Along with the new sternpost rudder, this rig gave the galleon unmatched maneuverability. Finally, the long, narrow hull of race-built versions made the galleon sleeker and faster than any warship of comparable size. A galleon was not as powerful as the late-17th-century, full-fledged *man-of-war*, but it was bigger than a *sloop-of-war* and could serve as a *ship-of-the-line*. It excelled in long-range *cruising* and prize-taking and drove galleys and dhows from all but closed, shallow seas. *Francis Drake*'s ship, the ''Golden Hind,'' was a typical race-built galleon. That reflected the fact that it was the English and Dutch who perfected and best exploited this ship type. See also *Arsenal of Venice*; *Gibraltar, Battle of (April 25, 1607)*; *Great Ships*; *Invincible Armada*.

galley. The galley, or oared warship, was an extraordinarily successful ancient ship design that lasted millennia rather than centuries. In one form or another oared warships dominated all coastal waters up to the 15th century, and into the early 17th century in the Mediterranean and other shallow or enclosed seas. Galleys were used far less in the rough waters of the North Atlantic. An important exception was the Viking *longship*. Most longships were used as coastal and riverine raiders but larger models were capable of ocean crossings. In the Middle Ages many areas had native oared ships to which the term ''galley'' was later, somewhat indiscriminately, applied. Most northern oared ships were descendants of the Viking longship, not copies or derivatives of Mediterranean-style galleys. English kings built dozens of oared warships in the 13th–14th centuries, but these were small *balingers* and *barges*, not true galleys. The Scots and Irish built a few large ''Highland galleys'' (longships), but far more *birlins* and *lymphad*s, some of which still operated in the western isles in the late 17th century. Other than Viking or Highland longships, war galleys in northern waters were confined to a *Great Galley* commissioned by *Henry V* (which was actually a *galleass*); armed Venetian and Florentine ships that made annual voyages north through the English Channel to the Dutch and Baltic ports; some Italian galleys hired by France for its wars with England; other French galleys built in the ''Clos des Gallées'' at Rouen, with Genoese assistance, active in the 14th century; and a handful of 15th-century Burgundian galleys. The French used coastal galleys into the 18th century but these were local transports or prison ships rowed by criminals sentenced to hard time at the oars, not warships. The Spanish deployed fleets of true war

galleys in the Caribbean to protect their settlements and patrol among the islands. The Portuguese used galleys to service factories and forts along the coasts of East Africa, India, and in Southeast Asia. Malays substituted copies of Portuguese galleys for Chinese *junks* starting in the 16th century. All such galleys preferred calm waters and hugged the coastline. In those conditions they were unmatched as fighting ships and more reliable on patrol than ships of sail.

Most galleys were single, double (''bireme''), or triple (''trireme'') oared. A few had four or five racks of oars but size and additional weight of ship and crew set sharp upper limits to galley size and speed. Three men to an oar was normal. Later hybrid oar-and-sail ships such as the *xebec* used as many as eight men per oar because they had a high freeboard requiring longer oars; this caused great energy loss for each oarsman. These were mongrel, dead-end ship designs representing a transition from the true galley to the true ship of sail.

The basic features of a war galley were these: they lay low in the water so that shorter oars could be used, saving crew energy; they were long and narrow to seat the maximum number of oarsmen and reduce drag; they had collapsible masts and lateen sails. Wind power was their primary mode, with human muscle saved for short bursts of battle speed or in becalmed waters. Galleys could be built quickly, as the Ottomans showed by replacing their massive losses at *Lepanto* (1571) in just a few years. By the same token, their hulls rotted easily if left in water and more rapidly if beached and exposed on a tidal flat. This meant building expensive dry docks to preserve a galley fleet. They were also fragile and prone to sink in storm-tossed seas: several entire Roman fleets were lost to storms during the Punic Wars with Carthage. Such frailty meant that safe havens had strategic importance. To make long-range expeditions one needed to control ports and islands along the way. This was hard to do, which helped set the outer limits to seaborne empires. In addition, galleys could not stay at sea for long periods for logistical reasons: they were heavy in crew but severely limited in storage space for food and water. They operated by hugging a coastline, stopping frequently to reload food and potable water. To defeat a galley fleet one thus had to capture and hold its multiple island or coastal bases, so that the deeper one proceeded into the enemy's seas the fewer ships and troops remained to penetrate farther. That was why Malta, Rhodes, Sicily, and Cyprus had strategic importance during the *Crusades*, continuing through the 14th–17th-century trade wars of Western powers with the Ottoman Empire.

A typical war galley had 24 banks of oars served by 144 oarsmen and carried 40 more soldiers, sailors, and officers. A galley with close to 200 crew, marines and officers, consumed about 90 gallons of water per day; food was less important. The oarsmen were sometimes slaves or convicts, but more often in the early modern period they were professional troops who would join boarding parties or fight as missile troops when their ship entered combat. In either case, limited storage space for food and water kept galleys to a maximum of 10–14 days voyaging before they had to put ashore to resupply. That was a sharp limitation which made them useless as ocean-crossing

vessels (with the remarkable exception of Viking longships). From c.1500 new types of sailing warships armed with broadside cannon—*carracks*, *galleons*, and *frigates*—repeatedly defeated galleys, even when swarmed by vastly greater numbers. Portuguese, Dutch, French, and English ''Fighting Sail,'' not galleys, explored the coasts of Africa and traded with India and in the Far East. During the first half of the 16th century they also blew the galley navies of Iran, India, and later the Malay kings, out of the water. Only in the Mediterranean and Caribbean did fleets of war galleys survive for another century.

Galley warfare in the ancient world had involved ramming, burning, or boarding. Burning was done with *Greek Fire* or other incendiaries. Since the sides of galley hulls had to accommodate tiers of oars but keep weight down, they were lightly timbered and vulnerable to ramming, a basic tactic in sea fights in the ancient world. But ramming all but disappeared by the early modern period, as did the ancients' use of fire at sea. The ram was abandoned for economic reasons: successor states to ancient Rome were too poor to sustain navies of specialized warships. And once the galley had to double as an armed transport the front half of the ship where the bulky base and bracings of a ram once sat was instead filled with cargo. The surviving spur on the Renaissance galley was a boarding bridge rather than a ram, and just before Lepanto even this was cut off Spanish galleys. The recipe for Greek Fire was lost upon the sack of Constantinople in 1453, and other incendiaries were too dangerous to use from a wooden warship. As a result, all Mediterranean navies abandoned rams and fire. Boarding became the sole method of attack for another reason: it offered opportunities for rich rewards. In this regard pirates and navies had the same objective: capture the enemy ship by killing its crew or taking them prisoner. Boarding required direct contact to enable grappling with hooks and spiked planks, so that an assault could be made over the prow: about 95 percent of the deck of a galley was devoted to oars and benches, which left only the prow (beak) for assaults. This made Renaissance galley fights essentially infantry battles at sea, carried out by shipboard marines. As ships grappled archers and gunmen fired into the enemy ship while other attackers hurled *caltrops* onto the deck to hobble defenders; if the wind was right, lime was thrown, blinding men so they could be more easily killed. Then the assault was made by leaping from the spur or running across a plank bridge.

A running fight between unequal fleets—as so often happened with ships of sail—was nearly impossible for galleys because galley fleets in the early modern period nearly always fought prow-to-prow. Galleys arrayed for battle in *line abreast* (with the flagship in the middle) but with no intention of turning *line ahead* or *line astern* upon contact. A battle line of 60 galleys abreast became the standard formation. Beyond that number the line proved too hard to maintain, as turns at the center or on one flank led to a ''crack-the-whip'' effect for ships on the other end of the line; that only exhausted crews who were forced to pull hard at the oars to maintain relative position. And exhaustion was fatal in a galley fight. Besides, line abreast was a powerful defensive formation: it was impossible to attack other than with an opposing

battle line, since any smaller attack by just a few galleys would be encircled by the defenders. Usually, as at Lepanto, reserve lines stayed close, ready to row into any gap left by a burning or badly bloodied ship. Also, from the rear they could be lashed to a friendly galley already engaging the enemy to feed in marines to replace the first ship's casualties, whose dead bodies were tossed overboard to make way.

Most galley actions were head-to-head jousts, with some ships firing and veering while raising oars at the last second to sheer off an enemy's oars. Most often, a prow-to-prow collision was effected by both sides that resulted in vicious hand-to-hand fighting. Flank attacks were rare, except during a mêlée. If a galley was taken in flank it was game over for ship and crew. Why fight prow-to-prow? Because in the 15th century, Venetian shipwrights put *culverins* in the prows of galleys (the sides could not support artillery), later adding *demi-cannon*, *sakers*, and *swivel guns*. That was a dramatic change in offensive firepower that was quickly copied by every competing navy. Prow guns made the galley a totally offensive weapon: like a mid-20th-century fighter, the gunpowder galley always faced its enemy. Naval artillery was still too inaccurate in the 16th century for long-range stand-off duels between ships or fleets. Galleys had to close range for their guns to be effective. Head-to-head, each galley line rowing at battle speed covered about 200 yards per minute. That meant only a single volley could be fired before the fleets collided. Reloading was impossible under fire, even of breech-loaders, as galleys had almost no shelter from marine marksmen on enemy ships. The result was that captains held fire to maximize effect until point blank range; even until the prow crashed into the enemy ship (hopefully, riding over his prow to give one's own sharpshooters, marines, and boarders the advantage of height). Nor was there much advantage to firing first as big guns were seldom knocked out by ammunition intended to kill men rather than sink ships. It was better to wait to be sure to kill large numbers of the enemy, whatever damage his guns might do first.

As with a flank attack, offering the stern in a galley fight was an invitation to destruction: if a galley turned to run it was naked before the big guns of its pursuer, who would fire from just feet away. Chase guns would devastate a running crew with *grapeshot* and *canister* (Ottoman gunners loaded such anti-personnel ammunition almost exclusively). One galley taken from the rear this way recorded 40 men killed or laid low from a single enemy discharge. If retreat was required the best method was for a ship or the whole battle line to row backwards, always showing iron teeth to the enemy. One could not outrun a pursuer this way, but once ashore (galleys were easily beached) prow guns could be reloaded and fired from a far more stable position than the enemy's guns, as he still roiled on the water. Or survivors could just run away, leaving easily replaceable ships to be taken or burned. Of course, not all could get away: some men in every fight between galley fleets were slaves chained to the oars. For them the romantic exhortation ''victory or death!'' had a hard, literal meaning. See also *Calicut, Battle of*; *chaiky*; *cruising*; *dromon*; *galley slaves*; *galliot*.

Suggested Reading: John Guilmartin, *Gunpowder and Galleys* (2003); J. Morrison, ed., *Age of the Galley* (2003).

galley slaves. Slaves were used as oarsmen by all the main galley powers of the Mediterranean. The Ottomans preferred free oarsmen because they doubled as marines once a boarding action began. Often, these were Christian mercenaries from Greece and the Balkans who dropped oars and took up weapons in a fight. Most Ottoman ships also had a minority of Christian slaves chained to the oars. Venice also preferred freemen at the oars of its galleys for tactical reasons: it was rich but had a tiny population relative to its enemies, which forced it to hire mercenaries as oarsmen who could double as marines. Venice used a few slaves, usually criminals or prisoners of war. The Barbary Corsairs used all freemen in galliot raids, in which on-deck combat power was the primary concern. In fleet actions they used Christian slaves at the oars. They captured most of these poor fellows in raids on Sicily, Italy, and Spain, but sometimes as far afield as England, Wales, and Ireland. Most captured Christians preferred the hard life of a pirate to the harder life of a slave. Some were skilled seamen and were allowed to leave the oars if they converted to Islam. Some of the most dangerous Muslim captains were therefore Englishmen. Among the Mediterranean powers Spain was the most reliant on slave oarsmen. This held down costs, a concern for a country overcommitted on many fronts against too many enemies in the 16th–17th centuries. Slaves on Spanish galleys were a mix of North African and Ottoman prisoners of war, and religious convicts (*conversos* and *moriscos*) sentenced to the oars after falling afoul of the *Inquisition*. Other Italian powers, including the warrior popes of the Papal States, kept small fleets of galleys rowed by a mix of slaves and mercenaries. The Scots and Irish used galleys that descended from Viking longships. These were rowed by all-warrior crews who took part in raids, not by slaves. The French used coerced oarsmen in coastal galleys into the 18th century, but these were convicts condemned to prison galleys, not slaves per se.

Most captured Christians preferred the hard life of a pirate to the harder life of a slave.

Gallican Church. The Catholic Church in France, which fiercely defended its traditions and liberties from Ultramontane interference by Rome. It rooted its position in the "Pragmatic Sanction of Bourges" (1438), which deprived popes of rights of appointment and taxation (*annates*) and affirmed the supremacy of general councils over the papacy. During the 15th century this became a self-conscious doctrine affirming traditional practice. See also *French Civil Wars*.

Gallican crisis. See *Henri II, of France*.

galliot. A small *galley*.

galloglass. Gaelic: ''gallóglaigh'' or ''foreign warrior.'' Armed retainers of Celtic chieftains normally depicted wearing armor and armed with a battleaxe. ''Foreign'' usually meant Scots warriors from another chieftaincy or one of the smaller isles which supplied these mercenaries. During the 14th century hereditary galloglass kinship and retainer groups became more attached to given Irish lords, and probably more Irish in composition. Their reputation improved accordingly. In the Scottish Highlands, ''galloglass'' could also mean ''henchman'' or ''armored bodyguard.'' See also *kerne*; *redshanks*.

galloper gun. A small caliber brass field gun mounted on a two-wheeled *gun carriage* and towed by a single horse. They were probably modeled on field artillery pioneered by *Gustavus Adolphus*. The *Cavaliers* deployed them during the *English Civil Wars*.

gambeson. A coat of *mail armor* that was cheaper and less prestigious than a *hauberk*. It was mostly worn by infantry, among whom it replaced cumbersome shields.

Gambia. The mouth of the Gambia River was reached by Portuguese explorers in 1455. The interior of this riparian territory was thereafter penetrated by a variety of European traders, explorers, and slavers, all eroding the traditional tributary relationship to the distant power of *Mali*. From 1618 the British sought a monopoly on Gambia trade. They secured this with a fort on James Island, built in the river's estuary in 1664. The French fortified nearby, at Albreda.

ganimet. The Ottoman pay system for irregulars and auxiliaries (*Voynuks* and *Tatars*) which offered a share in the spoils of the campaign. It was little more than the usual approved plunder, a feature of *war finance* common to all early modern armies.

gardebraces. Add-on armor plates attached to the backside of *pauldrons* from c.1430.

Gardetal. The Swedish system of raising peasant levies by homestead. See also *Swedish Army*.

Garigliano River, Battle of (December 28, 1503). *Gonzalo di Córdoba* led a Spanish army across the Garigliano River and caught a Franco-Swiss army still in its camp. In sharp, close fighting, the Spanish killed several thousand of their enemies and captured the French artillery train. The victory convinced Louis XII to surrender Naples to Spain in return for recognition of his control of Milan, and to sue for peace. This brought a brief respite in the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559).

garrisons. During the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453), each side used garrisons not merely to hold territory but to carry out a prolonged war of

economic attrition against the enemy. *Edward III*'s garrisons included not just regular troops but also freely operating formations of *routiers*, who savaged the French economy and significantly depopulated whole provinces. The French played this game as well. Their garrisons along the border with English Guienne carried out 100 years of raids and extortions. In Japan during the *Unification Wars* (1550–1615) the loyalty of garrisons was seldom assumed and never guaranteed: garrisons switched sides, sometime more than once, as a result of bribery or threat far more often than as an outcome of siege or battle. The *Janissaries* began by rotating troops into garrisons for nine months, after which they returned to Constantinople. As the Ottoman Empire expanded, permanent garrisons of Janissaries and other troops were established that played a large role in local government as well as regional defense. These troops sometimes took on such a local perspective that they opposed control from the center; that was especially true in Iraq and Syria, and to a lesser degree in Egypt after defeat of the *Mamlūks*. The North African provinces of the empire were virtually independent of Constantinople and raised their own garrisons of local Janissaries and other troops. See also *Akbar*; *Alba, Don Fernando Álvarez de Toledo, duque de*; *amsār*; *appatis*; *Army of Flanders*; *arquebusiers à cheval*; *Baghdad, Siege of*; *banner system (Japan)*; *besonios*; *castles, on land*; *Cebicis*; *citadel*; *çit palankasi*; *contributions*; *desertion*; *Ecorcheurs*; *Eighty Years' War*; *English Civil Wars*; *fortification*; *French Civil Wars*; *guerre mortelle*; *Hongwu emperor*; *Hundred Years' War*; *Indian Wars*; *kerne*; *logistics*; *magazines*; *mercenaries*; *Militargrenze*; *military discipline*; *Ming Army*; *New English*; *Normans*; *place de sûreté*; *Razats*; *ribat*; *schiopettari*; *servitium debitum*; *Spanish Army*; *Spanish Road*; *sutlers*; *Thirty Years' War*; *waardgelders*; *war finance*; *Yongle Emperor*.

garrots. Any of several types of early gunpowder weapons that hurled quarrels rather than stone or iron balls. A synonym was "carreaux." From this primary usage, a secondary usage was large quarrels or bolts that were fired from *pots de fer* or other primitive gunpowder cannon.

gauntlets. Armored gloves made of leather and articulated plate. They replaced mail mittens during the 13th century. Some had iron spikes (gadlings) attached to the knuckles.

Gazi. See *ghazi*.

gekokujō. "The lower overthrowing the higher." A standard reference in Japanese military and political history to the century of *Sengoku jidai* that followed the *Ōnin War* (1467–1477). Peasants and townsfolk (*ashigaru*) took up arms and directly challenged the *samurai*, and abnormal careerism and greed is said to have motivated warriors to betray their honor code along with their *daimyos*.

Gembloux, Battle of (January 31, 1578). *Don Juan* and his cousin, the *Duke of Parma*, routed a Dutch army at Gembloux. The Spanish killed or captured

several thousand rebels for a loss of fewer than 100 of their own men. The outcome rendered Brussels unsafe for *William the Silent* and signaled the revival of Spanish military power in the southern Netherlands.

gendarmerie. See *chevaux-légers*; *French Army*; *men-at-arms*.

gen d'armes. Mounted *men-at-arms*. See also *French Army*.

general. A military rank superior to colonel but below field marshal.

General at Sea. See *Blake, Robert*.

Generalfeldobrist. A senior commander of the main Imperial Army. The title was usually reserved to major princes who took personal command in the field, such as Emperor *Maximilian I*.

Generality. The government of the United Provinces formed by its seven constituent member provinces. See *States General*.

Generallissimus. The highest ranking commander in the Imperial Army, above both lieutenant general and field marshal.

Generalobrist. A commander of a German army comprised of several companies or regiments.

general officer. Any military rank or command above colonel.

genitors. Spanish *light cavalry* of the late 15th–16th centuries.

Genoa. This Italian city-state founded a seaborne empire on the ruins of Pisa's sea empire, after the Genoese naval victory at *Meloria* (1284). The Genoese empire nearly equaled that of Venice, its great rival for the lucrative trade of the eastern Mediterranean. From the 13th century the Aegean Sea was divided between the Genoese and Venetians who controlled alternate routes to Constantinople, with the Genoese running via Chios. Genoese trading interests extended as far as outposts on the Black Sea. Genoa controlled Sardinia until 1353 when it lost that large but poor island to Aragon. Genoa's internal politics were violent and forced into exile several noble families, notably the Grimaldis, who set up a powerful private galley fleet at Monaco that allied with France. Genoa taught the French how to build galleys at the ''Clos des Gallées'' at Rouen. The Genoese were granted a merchants' quarter in the Byzantine capital, a favor they repaid with only minor aid when *Constantinople* fell to the Ottomans in 1453. To the west, Genoa competed with the Iberian states, particularly Catalonia and Aragon, while to the south it fought against the *Barbary corsairs*. See also *Italian Renaissance*.

genouillières. Articulated armored knee-caps.

Gentili, Alberico (1552–1608). Italian jurist. A Protestant, he fled Catholic Italy for England (1580), where he was welcomed and made regius professor of law at the University of Oxford. He specialized in the rapidly developing field of international maritime law, on occasion acting as advocate for Spain and other powers in English *prize courts*. His two greatest works, *De legationibus* (1585) and *De jure belli* (1598), helped shape the diplomatic and legal practices of states in peace and war at a critical historical moment—just as they were moving into the climactic phase of ''wars of religion'' from which they would emerge with a newly secular understanding of sovereignty and international law in 1648. The themes he broached greatly influenced the writings of *Hugo Grotius*, and through him the legal structure of the emergent state system was shaped.

Georg, Johann (1611–1656). Elector of Saxony. Although a Lutheran prince he maintained an unusually close relationship with *Ferdinand II* and refused to back the bid of *Friedrich V* to take power in Bohemia. In the aftermath of the Protestant defeat at the *White Mountain* (1620), Georg imposed a relatively tolerant settlement on Lusatia and Silesia, at least as compared to what *Maximilian I* did in Bohemia and Moravia. He formed the *Leipziger Bund* to represent a third way, a neutral force in Germany between the Habsburgs and Sweden. He was pulled back into the war by *Gustavus Adolphus*, the impact of the sack of *Magdeburg*, and the move by *Johann Tilly*'s army into Saxony (September 4, 1631) to eat out that country as he moved north to meet the Swedish invasion. Within a week, he allied the Bund with Sweden. However, he fled the field of battle at *First Breitenfeld* (1631). He was always deeply suspicious of Sweden: he saw himself, not Gustavus, as the natural leader of Germany's Protestants. He was also convinced that the best way to remove foreign armies from his lands was to make peace with the Emperor. And he was deeply influenced by the pro-Imperial Count Schwarzenberg. After *Nördlingen* (1634) he abandoned the Swedish alliance and reconciled with Ferdinand. Some of Georg's early commitments to preserve the traditional liberties of the Silesian *Estates* were incorporated in the *Peace of Westphalia* (1648). See also *Arnim, Hans Georg von*; *Prague, Peace of*.

Georg Wilhelm, of Brandenburg (1619–1640). See *Altmark, Peace of*; *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *Thirty Years' War*.

German brigade. See *Bernhard von Sachsen-Weimar*.

German Peasant War (1525). A revolt of German peasants—the latest in a long line of uprisings—began in mid-1524 in Stühlingen and Thuringia, spreading from there to the Black Forest. What began as unconnected local revolts in aid of petitions against serfdom, market prices, and other grievances quickly spread over large parts of southern Germany and into Austria, Tyrol,

and Styria. Underlying economic grievances included demands for abolition of serfdom, the uncertain legal status of peasant land holdings, compression of the forests and reduction of the commons, rising local and imperial taxes related to the expanding costs of war, and a price revolution in daily staples brought on by increased population and the influx of monetary metals from the Americas that was aggravated by bad harvests in 1523 and 1524. Political grievances included noble and town demands for institutional reform of the Holy Roman Empire. Religious grievances flowed from ferment over the new ideas of *Martin Luther* and older anger over corruption and clerical abuses in the Catholic Church. Several priests, peasants themselves or only recently removed, joined and led peasant bands. Others looked to the dramatic rhetoric of social leveling of the radical preacher, Thomas Müntzer. Miners and guildsmen also joined in, as the ''common man'' in town and village rose in general revolt.

The ''peasant army'' was a polyglot affair. It started with bands of peasants organized regionally, notably around Lake Constance and in the Black Forest, armed with farm implements, long knives, or boar spears which they used to hunt and kill landlords and local nobles. These bands were soon joined by artisans, town militia, some nobles, robber and poor knights, radical preachers inspired by Luther, and *Landsknechte* and *Reisläufer* mercenaries. Some large towns were coerced into the uprising, others joined willingly. Several of the largest German cities barred their gates and denied arms to the peasants. The peasant army swelled to over 40,000 by mid-summer, almost all infantry. While it always lacked sufficient cavalry it acquired some artillery by hiring or capturing guns from smaller cities: Rothenburg hired out two bombards, complete with carts and gunners, while the towns of Marktdorf and Meersdorf were overrun, whereupon they surrendered 13 guns of various calibers along with tons of black powder and shot. In July a peasant band captured intact the entire artillery train of Habsburg Styria. Other arms and armor were looted from sacked castles, monasteries (also plundered of grain and wine stores), and towns along the line of march. Lastly, the peasants employed primitive *Wagenburgs* made from farm carts and hay wagons, not the sturdy *Hussite* type that was purpose-built for war. As a result, these provided little defense when facing *Rennfahne* cavalry of the *Great Swabian League*. Because the ''peasants'' had no central command the war was characterized by serial uprisings rather than a planned or coherent campaign. This was typical of peasant revolts nearly everywhere, and a key reason why most ended in defeat and savage reprisals carried out by frightened nobility and priests.

Because the ''peasants'' had no central command the war was characterized by serial uprisings . . .

On the other side, many nobles were away serving in the army of Emperor *Charles V* fighting the *Italian Wars* with France. Charles asked his brother, *Ferdinand I*, then Archduke of Austria, to take command of Imperial forces in Germany. Georg of Waldburg commanded the separate army of the Swabian League. Meanwhile, the dispossessed and exiled Ulrich of Württemberg

raised a private army of Landsknechte and Swiss to retake his ducal lands and marched on Stuttgart. However, news of the Swiss defeat at *Pavia* caused the Swiss part of his force to depart while releasing thousands of Landsknechte to fight against him for the Swabian League. The main advantage of the Swabian Leaguers was their cavalry, which they repeatedly used to flank, chase down, and butcher the peasants. Also, the disciplined pike formations and gunners of the Landsknechte inflicted terrible damage on peasants armed with shorter polearms or clubbing weapons. Joining the Leaguers were contingents of men-at-arms and infantry supplied by various petty territorial German princes, the real enemies of the peasants.

In December 1524, a peasant band formed at Baltringen. In January 1525, Tyrolean miners and Kempton peasants rebelled. The Swabian League sent in negotiators in order to buy time to organize a countering army. In February a third peasant band formed in Allgäu and the next month a fourth band was set up around Lake Constance. The Allgäu, Baltringen, and Lake Band then joined to form the ''Christian Brotherhood,'' a loose confederacy in arms. The Brotherhood had a radically egalitarian command structure but borrowed ranks and unit organization from the Landsknechte. On March 26, the Baltringen Band rejected compromise and stormed the castle at Schemmerberg; a week later the Allgäu Band stormed the monastery at Kempten. Also in April, the peasants of Würzburg formed a new band; a band was established in the Neckar Valley; several small bands joined to form the Tauber Valley Band; other bands were formed in Alsace and Odenwald, and so on. On April 4 the army of the Swabian League met and defeated the Baltringen peasants at Leipheim, killing over 1,000, of whom 400 drowned in the Danube. On April 15 the Lake Band, numbering some 12,000 peasants, town militia, and a leavening of Landsknechte, faced down the Swabian Leaguers and forced them to withdraw. On April 17 a truce was called in Swabia while a court heard grievances and a settlement took Upper Swabia out of the fight. But the revolt had by then spread like wildfire through late summer pastures: a fresh revolt broke out in Limburg and another band, the Werra, was formed in Thuringia. On April 23 fighting broke out in the Rhineland-Palatinate. The next week, Stuttgart and Erfurt fell to peasant bands and revolt spread to several Swiss cantons. On May 5, despite some sympathy for the cause, Luther denounced the peasants, admonishing them from the comfort of a castellan sanctuary where he lived under the protection of a powerful prince and benefactor. ''It is not for a Christian to appeal to law, or to fight, but rather to suffer wrong and endure evil,'' he told the peasants.

Three days later, a peasant band took Würzburg and rebellion broke out in Tyrol. Then the tide turned. On May 12 the Swabian League defeated a peasant band at Böblingen, after which peasant leaders who had sanctioned the execution of nobles were roasted alive. In a two-day fight a noble army of 2,300 horse and 4,000 foot—with contingents from Brunswick, Hesse, and Saxony—smashed the Frankenhausen Band, butchering 5,000 peasants and militia, including 300 beheaded in the town ''pour encourager les autres.''

The next day Alsatian bands were defeated at Zabern by an army of Lorrainers; many hundreds of peasants were massacred after they gave up the fight. A week later, 12,000 peasants surrendered at Freiburg (May 24), which they had only just taken. The next day Mühlhausen in Thuringia fell and Müntzer was captured, tortured, and beheaded—much to the satisfaction of Luther, who despised the man. On June 2 the Odenwald Band was beaten by the Leaguer army at Königshofen. Two days later the revolt in Franconia was crushed. A prolonged fight with dug-in peasants took place along the Leubas River during July. When key Landsknechte ''comrades'' left the trenches and defected to the Swabian League, the survivors were starved and blasted into surrender by July 23, whereupon they were slaughtered to a man. Thus ended the ''Peasant's War'' in Germany.

In Austria, however, the fight lasted into 1526. A rare peasant victory came at Schladming on July 2, 1525, where Salzburg miners and peasants beat back an overconfident Austrian army. This forced concessions from Ferdinand and led to a truce signed in September. The princes reneged on their word, leading to renewed fighting in the spring with bands of peasants who took refuge in inaccessible alpine valleys. The death toll for the war as a whole was 80,000 to 100,000, mostly peasants and townsfolk. Defeat left serfdom in place (though in fact, conditions somewhat improved after 1525), the Empire unreformed, and a bitter residue of confessional and class anger across Germany. See also *Anabaptism*; *Croquants*; *Jacquerie*; *Karsthans*; *Razats*; *Tard-Avisés*.

Suggested Reading: Janos Bak, ed., *The German Peasant War of 1525* (1976); R. Scribner and G. Benecke, *The German Peasant War, 1525* (1979).

Germany. See *Holy Roman Empire*.

Gevierthaufen. A pike square formed by German *Landsknechte*. It consisted of anywhere from 3,000 to 10,000 men, with the front ranks filled by *Doppelsöldner* followed by newer recruits, all surrounding and protecting the company *Fähnlein*. The square moved to the beat of a fife-and-drum band and to shouted and trumpeted signals. More Doppelsöldner took up the rear to ensure tactical discipline and keep raw recruits in line and from running. The flanks were herded by sergeants on the outer corners.

Gewalthut. See *Swiss square*; *tactics*.

ghaz. Jihad for Islam. See also *ghazi*; *''holy war.''*

ghazi. ''Warrior for the Faith.'' A religious-military title of Muslim warriors embarked on ''*holy war*.'' Many of the first ''Turkish'' converts to Islam, before the founding of the Seljuk or Ottoman states, became ghazi in the Arab or Iranian Muslim armies. That lent the term an additional meaning of border or frontier warrior. On the controversial thesis that the later Ottoman Empire remained a ''ghazi state'' in its expansionist motives, see *Ottoman warfare*.

ghulams. ''Slaves'' (of the shah). At the start of the 17th century *Abbas I* reformed Iran's military, replacing traditional reliance on tribal recruitment (especially in the cavalry) with professional soldiers drawn from communities of former Christian slaves or prisoners or their descendants. Most came from Armenia, Circassia, or Georgia. Upon conversion to Islam these men could join the ranks of ''ghulams.'' Although ghulam units started as infantry, over time they evolved into *dragoons*. As was the case with the *Janissaries* of the Ottoman Empire, ghulams were more trustworthy soldiers in the shah's eyes because they lacked connection to Iran's tribes or any social standing. Tribal leaders resented being displaced from the cavalry with its attendant loss of status and income. But there was little to be done.

Gibraltar. ''The Rock.'' This strategic ground guarding the entrance (and exit) from the Mediterranean into the Atlantic was known to the ancient Greeks, along with Jebel Musa in North Africa, as one of the ''Pillars of Hercules'' marking the edge of world beyond which few dared sail. It was fortified by the radical Muslim Almohads of *al-Andalus* in 1260 to secure the link between the African and Iberian halves of their empire. In 1350, Alfonso XI (1312–1350) tried to take Gibraltar but died of the *Black Death* en route. The waters around Gibraltar were extremely dangerous. Pirate-infested, they could be safely traversed only in *convoy* or by paying protection money to the corsairs. Gibraltar was taken for Spain by the Duke of Medina Sidonia in 1462.

Gibraltar, Battle of (April 25, 1607). While peace negotiations to end the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648) were underway between *Spínola* and *Oldenbaarneveldt*, a Dutch fleet of 26 small and mid-sized warships sailed into Gibraltar harbor and took by surprise a Spanish fleet of 21 ships, all at anchor, including 10 first-rate *galleons*. Although outgunned, the Dutch blocked egress from the bay then blew the startled and unready Spanish ships out of the water, destroying all 10 galleons and many of the smaller warships in a fight that lasted four or five hours. For the loss of a few hundred Dutchmen and Admiral Jacob van Heemskerk, the ''Dutch Nelson,'' an enemy fleet was destroyed and several thousand Spaniards killed. Many were shot in the water as they swam away from burning hulks. However, the victory proved counter-productive: such a humiliating defeat led Madrid to back away from its offered peace terms and to accept only the more limited *Twelve Years' Truce* (1609–1621).

Giornico, Battle of (December 28, 1478). Following the defeat and death of *Charles the Rash* in the *Burgundian Wars*, the Duchy of Milan tried to invade the *Swiss Confederation*. This was unwise. The Milanese were met by veteran pikemen, arquebusiers, crossbowmen, and halberdiers, hardened in earlier battles and now unmatched experts at ''push of pike.'' Although outnumbered, the Swiss formed their usual lethal pike square and overran and slaughtered the Milanese.

gisarmes. A generic term for hacking *staff weapons* ranging from battleaxes mounted on stout poles to *bills*, *halberds*, and *poleaxes*. See also *glaive*.

Giza, Battle of (April 2, 1517). See *Mamlūks*.

glacis. In fortification, the sloping face of the *parapet* of the *covered way*, reaching to the ground so that the entire face was exposed to defensive fire from the parapet. See also *hornwork*.

glaive. A term used confusingly during the Middle Ages in reference to three distinct weapon types: the *halberd*, *sword*, and *lance* (the latter in English only). Which usage is correct may be determined only by reference to the surrounding context, and even then is not always clear. This probably results from the fact that the glaive was essentially a single-edged sword-blade attached to a long haft, and hence might be called a sword by one writer, a halberd by another, or even a lance (as in England). See also *gisarmes*.

Glyndŵr's Rebellion (1401–1406). A Welsh rebellion against English rule. It drew in the French, who landed several small armies in Wales and signed a formal alliance in 1404. Led by Owain Glyndŵr, the Welsh obtained naval support from the Scots, then from France and the Bretons. In 1404 some 120 allied ships landed French troops at Milford Haven from where they walked near to Worcester (all their horses had died of thirst during transport) while the fleet advanced up the Bristol Channel. This and later fleets were attacked by royal ships in alliance with English pirates, who were commissioned as privateers. In 1406 the French army was beaten and withdrew. It took 10 more years of campaigning and hard repression of guerillas led by Glyndŵr, who was never captured, before Wales was subdued.

Goa, Seizure of (1510). See *Portuguese India*.

goat's foot lever. A cloven lever fitted under the bowstring of an early *crossbow* to aid in drawing it.

Godunov, Boris Fyodorovich (c.1552–1605). Tsar of Russia, 1598–1605. A Tartar and *boyar* by ethnic and class origins, after the death of *Ivan IV* he served as regent (1584–1598) for Feodor I, Ivan's imbecilic older son and Boris's brother-in-law. Boris Godunov continued many of Ivan's policies, expanding farther into Siberia and the Crimea and seeking to implement administrative and other reforms to keep the boyars from regaining high office or power over the provinces. This done, an assembly of tamed boyars chose Boris to succeed as tsar in 1598. With the old patriarchate of Constantinople ensconced within the Ottoman Empire, Boris elevated the Russian Orthodox Church to an independent patriarchate (1589), thereby advancing its emergence as the major national church in the Orthodox world even as he rendered it subservient to the Russian state. A great famine from 1602 to 1604 underwrote

superstitious suspicions that Godunov had murdered his way to the throne and raised popular mistrust that led ultimately to widespread rebellion. Military opposition to Boris Godunov gathered behind the ''False Dimitri,'' a pretender claiming to be the lost son of Ivan IV whom Boris Godunov had banished to the upper Volga and probably also murdered in 1591. The armies of the ''False Dimitri'' invaded Russia, to wide popular acclaim, in 1604. Tsar Boris died just before the rebellion reached Moscow, where it would surely have both deposed him and disposed of him. Until 1613, there followed a deepening of this ''*Time of Troubles*'' (''Smutnoe Vremia''), marked by a continuation of the dynastic struggle, widespread unrest, famine, uprisings, ever more harsh repression, and Polish and Swedish military intervention.

. . . Gudunov had murdered his way to the throne and raised popular mistrust that led ultimately to . . . rebellion.

goedendag. ''Good day'' weapon. A specialized short pike used by the town militia of Flanders. It was made of a thick staff some four or five feet long, ending in a lethal steel spike and sometimes also an attached mace. It was used to hook a knight off his horses then punch through his armor with the long spike or smash in his helm and skull with the mace. It was used to enormously bloody effect this way by the Flemings against French *heavy cavalry* at *Courtrai* (1302). Its use did not spread far from Flanders since the longer *pike* was preferred elsewhere. Even in Flanders, the goedendag was abandoned at the start of the 15th century.

Golden Bull (1356). See *Holy Roman Empire*.

Golden Bull of Rimini (1223). See *Teutonic Knights*.

Golden Horde. See *Ivan III*; *Mongols*; *Timur*.

gomeres. Black warriors allied with, though more often slave soldiers of, *Berber* and Granadine armies fighting Christians during the *Reconquista*. Their preferred weapon was a long knife, whose use required that they charge rapidly and engage in close-quarter fighting.

Gonzaga, Giovanni (1466–1519). See *condottieri*; *Fornovo, Battle of*.

gorget. A small piece of *plate* positioned to protect the throat.

Grace of Alais (1629). See *Edict of Alès*.

graffle. A claw device used to draw the string on an early model *crossbow*. See also *windlass*.

Granada. Long home to advanced cultural and intellectual life, including a great madrassa where Latin and Greek texts were kept alive in Arabic

translations, Granada was the last *taifa* state to fall to the centuries-long Christian "*Reconquista*." By 1264, Granada was already alone facing the Christian onslaught. It adapted by moving from light to heavier, European-style cavalry and armor, and attacking in dense formation rather than the traditional *Berber* style of envelopment. The Granadine heavy horse units were supported by *jinetes*. The last effective emir was Muley Hacen (d.1484), who expanded Granada's frontiers in the 1470s. But the building power of the Christian north was too much to hold back. The final offensive began when a Granadine civil war between Muley Hacen, his brother (Abdullah al-Zagel), and his son (Boabadil) split the kingdom and gave *Ferdinand and Isabella* the opportunity to divide and conquer the last Muslim emirate in Iberia. The first Christian offensive culminated in a successful assault in 1482 against the main outer fortress, the Alhama de Granada. In 1486, Ferdinand took the other guard fortress, at Loja, just 21 miles north of the city. That left only Málaga in the path of the Christians, and it fell following a siege in 1587, after which most of its Moorish population was sold into slavery. As Spanish armies closed around Granada, troops on both sides hurled religious insults across the siege lines. These included tying Christian or Muslim relics or scriptures to the tails of donkeys or swine, respectively, and dragging them in the dirt and muck. The Christians also played hymns endlessly on carillons (an early form of excruciating "psychological warfare"). Granada negotiated surrender terms, including a promise of toleration of the Muslim faith, and opened its gates to Ferdinand and Isabella on January 2, 1492. Partly in celebration, Isabella agreed to finance Christopher Columbus on his search for a new route to India and Cathay and, she hoped, a back door through which to smite the Muslims and retake the "Holy Land." Forcible conversions and *expulsion of the Jews* were ordered immediately, followed after a few years by *expulsion of the Moors*. From 1502 there began burnings of books in old Granada, then of people, by the *Inquisition*.

Grand Parti de Lyon. See *war finance: France*.

Grandson, Battle of (March 2, 1476). After defeat of his relief army at *Héricourt*, Burgundy's Duke *Charles the Rash* moved against Berne. The Bernese reinforced their garrison at Grandson but Charles overran it. He allowed his troops to massacre the garrison, which provoked the Swiss Confederation to rage. A confederate army moved to intercept the Burgundians near Concise, a village south of Neuchâtel a few kilometers from Grandson. The Swiss moved in their standard formation of three pike squares: the "Vorhut," "Gewalthut," and "Nachhut." In the early hours of March 2, 1476, an advance column of Swiss foragers unexpectedly stumbled into the Burgundian camp set up in a shallow valley of small copses and vineyards. Charles hastily formed up his men while more Swiss arrived to take command of the sloped high ground above the camp. Some minor skirmishing by Swiss handgunners provoked Charles to order part of his infantry to attack up the valley side. Archers and gunners of both armies began to inflict casualties,

but neither side gave ground. Then the Swiss Gewalthut arrived, raising the number of Swiss on the field to some 10,000. At mid-morning, the Swiss decided to move downslope toward the Burgundians. They formed a single massive square at whose center fluttered the great *Banner* of the Swiss Confederation along with cantonal standards and *Fähnlein*. Charles ordered his artillery to open a bombardment and sent his cavalry to attack directly. The Swiss set a *Forlorn Hope* of 300 crossbowmen and arquebusiers in front of the square to act as a light skirmisher screen. At their rear, atop the slope just descended, canon were manhandled into position and opened fire.

At first the Burgundian canon had the better of it, cutting gaping holes—as much as 10 or 12 files deep—in the Swiss ranks. Burgundian cavalry charged the Forlorn Hope, which scrambled for cover under the pikes in front of the square. Charles led a second charge of *lancers* from which he emerged sans horse and barely in possession of his life. Another company of cavalry tried to flank the Swiss, but could not navigate the steep slope. The result was sharp combat with lance, halberd, crossbow, pike, pistol, and arquebus. The fight lasted several hours, until the Swiss ran out of quarrels, shot, and powder. Charles' artillery was still well-supplied and kept up a deadly bombardment while his cavalry rested and reformed. But then he repositioned the artillery and moved his infantry back, hoping to draw the Swiss off the sloping vineyards. This was a grave error, as at that moment two more Swiss squares arrived. Upon blowing of a Harsthörner (''Great War Horn''), all three squares advanced at once. This movement, along with the disorder of the retreat Charles' men were attempting, spread panic in the Burgundian ranks. Particularly unruly were his German mercenaries. The flight of most of his foot left Charles exposed with only artillery and cavalry, and neither arm could hold the field against the Swiss ''push of pike.'' Charles considered the situation then wisely fled with his army, in part to save himself and partly in an effort to regroup his infantry. The Swiss fell upon the Burgundian camp and looted it, foregoing any advantage they might have had by pursuing a defeated enemy. On the other hand, they captured Charles' superb artillery train of nearly 400 cannon along with many more supply carts. Given the duration of the fight, casualties were relatively low on both sides.

Grand Vezier (*Vezir-i Azam*). The direct deputy to an Ottoman sultan. They enjoyed extraordinary powers over other *kuls* and were the main recruiters (and dismissers) of the Ottoman military. They used their power of dismissal or reinstatement to control the *timariots*, but even more the *Janissary Corps* and *sipahis*, especially the elite administrative sipahis regiments barracked in the capital. Some Grand Veziers took personal command of field armies in the absence of the sultan—after 1596, Ottoman sultans seldom accompanied armies on campaign. The office of Grand Vezier was much sought after and therefore held insecurely in face of constant court intrigue, schemes, and betrayal. Deputies to the Grand Vezier were called ''kaim mekam.'' Some

actively campaigned to unseat their master, others coveted his position and tried to seize it upon his death. See also *bey*; *Thirteen Years' War*; *Yeniçeri Ağasi*.

Grantham, Battle of (1643). See *Cromwell, Oliver*; *English Civil Wars*.

grapeshot. French: ''mitaille.'' By the 13th century an early form of grapeshot comprised of a cloth sack of 100 or more lead balls fired from a cannon was in use in China. This ammunition arrived much later in Europe. An early advantage of grapeshot was that the powder charge in unreliable *hoop-and-stave* cannon could be increased without increasing the risk of lethal (to the crew) explosion of the gun barrel. When it finally matured, grapeshot was comprised of musket balls spaced around a wooden spindle and covered by a cotton bag. When fired from a cannon the flame and force of exploding powder consumed the bag and scatter-shot the musket balls (weighing from a half-ounce to one ounce each) into the enemy ranks. A 24-pounder cannon fired grapeshot containing about 300 balls. This was devastatingly effective at close ranges against massed infantry or cavalry. See also *canister*.

Graubünden. See *The Grisons*.

Gravelines, Battle of (July 13, 1558). With the marriage of *Philip II* and *Mary Tudor*, England briefly joined Spain's drawn-out war with France. A Spanish *tercio* of 10,000 men, under *Graaf van Egmont*, moved into northwest France. Supported by a bombardment from a squadron of English warships off Gravelines, Spanish cavalry smashed through French shoreline positions. Some 2,000 French were killed, half of whom drowned when they were forced into the sea by the Spanish horse.

Gravelines, Battle of (August 8, 1588). See *Invincible Armada*.

Great Apostasy. See *Teutonic Knights*.

Great Condé. See *Condé, Louis II, de Bourbon*.

Great Enterprise (1521–1522). See *Henry VIII, of England*.

Great Galley. A hybrid warship which may have first appeared in Venice in 1295. It combined *sweeps* of elongated oars with the higher hull construction of *roundships* and could carry from 30 to 50 guns. A specific ship by that name, actually a *galleass*, was launched by *Henry VIII* in 1515. It had 60 oars, 70 brass cannon, and 147 iron guns. It was broken up in 1523.

Great Helm. See *bascinet*; *helm*.

Great Interregnum (1250–1273). See *Holy Roman Empire*.

Great Schism (1378–1417). ''Schism of the West.'' The ''Avignon Captivity'' of the papacy lasted from 1314 to 1362, after which the possibility of intervention by France was still felt as a constant threat by the city-states of Italy. In 1378 the last ''French'' Pope, Gregory XI, died at the end of the *War of the Eight Saints*. Romans insisted that he be succeeded by an Italian. Urban VI was elected, but he soon alienated several powerful church factions. A council of cardinals was held at Agnani that vitiated Urban's pontificate and elected in his place a Genoese pope, Clement VII. Urban refused to step down, however, and Clement was compelled to withdraw into exile at Avignon. Each claimant and faction denied the others' legitimacy, asserting that they alone embodied the apostolic succession claimed by the papacy. As these men died their place in the Great Schism was taken by successor rivals. In Rome, Urban VI (1378–1389) was followed by Boniface IX (1389–1404), Innocent VII (1404–1406), and Gregory XII (1406–1415). At Avignon, the longer-lived Clement VII (1378–1394) was succeeded by Benedict XIII (1394–1417). And so the scandal of the papacy continued to bitterly divide, humiliate, and undermine respect for the Catholic Church. For a time the *Gallican Church* rejected both lines. There was an effort to revive conciliar authority at the Council of Pisa (1409), but this resulted in election of a third line of claimant pontiffs, Alexander V (1409–1410) and his successor, John XXIII (1410–1415). In 1414, John convened the Council of Constance to decide the issue. Having lost most of his support Gregory XII resigned, but John XXIII and Benedict XIII refused to follow suit. The delegates at Constance resolved the dispute by decreeing (''Sacrosancta'') that councils were superior to popes, then deposed the contending popes in favor of a new one they elected, Martin V.

And so the scandal of the papacy continued to bitterly divide, humiliate, and undermine respect for the Catholic Church.

Despite this tortuous rivalry and sequence, the Catholic Church maintained that an unbroken line of popes proceeded in uninterrupted ''apostolic'' succession to Peter, apostle of Jesus of Nazareth. The claim was upheld by the sophistry of a retroactive agreement that the line from Urban to Gregory was the true, canonical, and authoritative succession. Catholic historians have reinforced this argument by insisting that the schism was merely political in character and so never touched on matters central to papal authority or Church doctrine. The Great Schism helped open the door to the political revolution of the *Italian Renaissance* by whittling down the universalist claims of popes during the formative period of Italy's emergent city-state system. Still, during the 15th century doctrinal disquiet was still treated as heresy, as in the two challenges to papal authority and Catholic doctrine and practice that did make headway during the Great Schism: *Lollardism* in England and the *Hussite* movement in Bohemia. More widely and longer term, the schism exposed the sordid political role and decadence of the papacy in its capacity as a temporal power and undermined for many its spiritual claims as well. This

stirred unrest among the faithful that would contribute to demands for reform that fed into the *Protestant Reformation* and the Catholic *Counter-Reformation* in the 16th century.

Suggested Reading: M. Gail, *The Three Popes* (1969); J. H. Smith, *The Great Schism* (1970).

Great Ships. Huge 16th-century ships mounting many guns, with gay decoration and ornate *castles*. They were more waterborne fortresses than true ships of war as they were not fast or handy. Their main purpose was to garner prestige to the king and kingdom that built them. Competitive construction of Great Ships was something of an early modern substitute for medieval cathedral building, this time in wood and canvas, rivets, and rigging. (Would-be sea powers all over the world did this again during the steam battleship craze of the 1890s.) Henry VII of England cannibalized the old ''Grâce Dieu'' in 1486 and used her parts to build the ''Royal Sovereign,'' armed with 31 big guns and over 100 *serpentines*. By the early 16th century even small nations built at least one Great Ship. Scotland built the ''Great Michael'' in 1511. *Henry VIII* laid down the ''Henry Grâce à Dieu'' in 1514, an ungainly and massive vessel that sported 384 guns (counting rail and swivel guns) that was later rebuilt to carry 21 brass cannon, 130 iron cannon, and 100 rail-mounted hand guns. The Maltese Knights built a great carrack, the ''Santa Anna,'' in 1523. France built the ''Grande François'' in 1527. Sweden launched the ''Elefant'' in 1532, and two years later Portugal sent to sea the gigantic ''São João,'' replete with 366 guns (counting small pieces). Yet, the ''Great Ships'' were a design dead end. By the mid-16th century they gave way to the *galleon* as the dominant fighting vessel in actual war at sea; a century later more moderate and functionally designed *men-of-war* were built that carried serious broadside armament. Thus, England launched a 100-gun ship also christened ''Sovereign of the Seas'' in 1637; France commissioned the comparably powerful ''Couronne'' the next year. See also *Great Galley*; *Henry V, of England*; *Royal Navy*.

Great Swabian League. See *German Peasant War*; *Swabian League*; *Swabian War*.

Great Wall. Construction of defensive walls began during the reign of China's ''First Emperor,'' Qin Shi Huang, in 221 B.C.E. These connected sections of preexisting border fortifications of Qin's defeated and annexed enemies, dating to the Warring States period, from which the Qin empire had emerged as victor. The building technique of this remarkable structure was the ancient method of stamped earth that employed masses of slave laborers as well as military conscripts. Some parts of the wall stood for nearly two millennia and were incorporated into the modern ''Great Wall'' built by the Ming dynasty following the humiliation of defeat and capture of the Zhengtong Emperor at *Tumu* (1449). After he regained the throne in 1457, the Ming court decided on a purely defensive strategy and began building 700 miles of new defensive

walls starting in 1474, fortifying the northern frontier against Mongol raiders. The Ming system involved hundreds of watchtowers, signal-beacon platforms, and self-sufficient garrisons organized as military colonies. Infantry were positioned along the wall to give warning. But the main idea was for cavalry to move quickly to any point of alarm and stop raiders from breaking through. In that, the Ming strategy emulated Mongol practices from the Yuan dynasty. It was also reminiscent, though not influenced by, the Roman defensive system of ''limes'' which in Germania alone were 500 kilometers long.

The Great Wall was meant to reduce costs to the Ming of garrisoning a thousand-mile frontier by channeling raiders and invaders into known invasion routes to predetermined choke points protected by cavalry armies. This strategy was mostly ineffective. The Great Wall was simply outflanked in 1550 by Mongol raiders who rode around it to the northeast to descend on Beijing and pillage its suburbs (they could not take the city because they had no siege engines or artillery). The wall was also breached by collaboration with the Mongols of Ming frontier military colonies, which over time became increasingly ''barbarian'' through trade, marriage, and daily contact with the wilder peoples on the other side. Some Han garrisons lived in so much fear of the Mongols they were militarily useless; others lost touch with the distant court and hardly maintained military preparations at all. Finally, the Great Wall could always be breached by treachery or foolhardy invitation. Either or both occurred when a Ming general allowed the *Manchus* to enter China via the Shanhaiguan Pass to aid in the last Ming civil war in 1644, which brought the Ming dynasty to an end and put the Qing in power.

China never built a defensive wall along its Pacific sea frontier, as it felt no threat from that quarter. And yet, the main threat to its long-term stability and independence came across the Pacific in the form of European navies and marines. As with the 20th century Maginot Line in France, building the Great Wall in some ways signaled Ming defeatism rather than advertised Ming strength. The overall historical meaning of the Great Wall is ambiguous. To some, it signifies the worst features of China's exploitative past; to others, it celebrates the longevity of China's advanced, classical civilization.

Suggested Reading: Sechin Jagshid and V. J. Symons, *Peace, War, and Trade Along the Great Wall* (1989); Arthur Waldron, *The Great Wall of China* (1990).

"Great War" (1409–1411). See *Poland*; *Prussia*; *Tannenberg, Battle of*; *Teutonic Knights, Order of*.

Great Zimbabwe. A stone-building, gold-producing, cattle-rearing, and Indian Ocean–trading East African civilization, usually dated to about 1150 C.E. Some 200 distinct ruin sites have been found, of which the most important was ''Great Zimbabwe,'' probably a royal palace or temple complex. Its stone foundations spread over 60 acres. It clearly achieved real prosperity in the early 13th century, mostly from cattle and farming but also from trading gold with Arab merchants along the Sofala coast. The Shona capital at Great

Zimbabwe was abandoned as the kingdom migrated north, probably in the late 15th century. The Portuguese arrived in the region in the 1560s and set up slave trading stations. The Mwene Mutapa governed the area from the north in the face of rising interference from the Portuguese and growing pressure from surrounding tribes.

greaves. Leg armor comprised of *plate*, usually in front and back pieces linked by leather ties. By the 15th century, in a full armor suit, they were hinged.

Greece. See *Byzantine Empire*; *Ottoman Empire*.

Greek fire. The chemical recipe for this weapon, which reputedly ignited on contact with air and was inextinguishable by water, was a technological secret of the ancient Greeks and closely guarded also by the Byzantine Empire. In the final hours of the *Siege of Constantinople*, defenders poured pots of Greek fire on attacking *Janissaries* and *Bashi-Bazouks*, after which the recipe was lost to history. Modern historians think that Greek fire was mainly petroleum, pumped through pipes and ignited as in a modern flamethrower. Its oil base allowed it to burn atop water, the feature so often wondered about in awe by contemporary observers who lacked the recipe.

grenades. Small hand bombs may have been used in China from the 10th century. They were first clearly used in Europe only in 1382, when hollow cast iron balls were filled with black powder to be set off by a lighted wick. They were sometimes used in land battles but were most effective in marine combat. Much improved grenades were available from 1536 and were used at the siege of Arles. Within 60 years, the invention of stubby *wheel lock* grenade-launchers gave hand bombs much greater range. Primitive portable mortars followed. All such weapons were highly dangerous to users due to unreliable fuses that might result in premature detonation. See also *alcancia*.

Grenville, Richard (1542–1591). English sea captain. He fought against the *Invincible Armada* in 1588. At *Flores* (1591) he fought off 15 Spanish warships for half a day, allowing the rest of his fleet to escape before he finally surrendered the wreck of the ''Revenge.'' He died a few days later. He is most famously remembered in a rather strained, even turgid, verse by Lord Tennyson: *The Revenge*. See also *Mountjoy, Baron of*.

Grey, Lady Jane (1537–1554). See *Elizabeth I*; *Mary Tudor*; *Wyatt's Rebellion*.

The Grisons. ''Graubünden'' was governed as a bishopric from the 9th century but came under Habsburg control in the 12th century. It was repeatedly drawn into the Swiss wars of the 14th and 15th centuries, ending in the *Swabian War* (1499) which cut The Grisons free of the Habsburgs and gained it protection of the Swiss Confederation. The *Protestant Reformation* sharply

divided the population along confessional lines, a rift not healed until well after the *Thirty Years' War*. Throughout the late 16th to early 17th centuries the lower end of the *Spanish Road* cut through The Grisons, making it a strategic territory much coveted and fought over by the Great Powers of Austria, France, and Spain. In 1601 the French secured a treaty reserving The Grisons ''for her alone'' in terms of military transportation. Yet, in 1603, Venice signed a comparable agreement. The Grisons refused passage to Spanish troops in 1603. That led Spanish engineers to build a fortress, The Fuentes, to guard access to the valleys and mountain passes. There was heavy, if intermittent, fighting over control of the passes, the Protestant Grisons, and Catholic *Valtelline* from 1607 to 1617, involving Spain, Savoy, Venice, and France. In 1618, Grisons troops invaded the Valtelline. In 1620, Madrid moved troops into the Valtelline in support of a Catholic uprising against The Grisons. After the locals massacred 600 Protestants, Spain garrisoned The Grisons with 4,000 men. In 1624, France took over The Grisons and surrendered it to papal control two years later. Until 1634 The Grisons remained hotly contested territory. After that, the French occupation of Lorraine and ascendant French military power in the Rhineland prevented further Spanish overland reinforcement of its armies in Flanders.

Grotius, Hugo (1583–1645). Né Huig van Groot. Dutch jurist, humanist, and diplomat in the Swedish service, 1635–1645, at the French court. His early work sought to frame a republican constitution for the United Provinces that, as in classical antiquity, preserved liberty though rule by an oligarchy of regents. He was similarly conservative in religious matters, personally leaning toward *Arminianism*. His ambition for a moderate political compromise was wrecked by the dispute between *Oldenbaarneveldt* and *Maurits of Nassau*. Grotius was arrested along with Oldenbaarneveldt and others during Maurits' coup d'état of August 1618. He was convicted of treason in May 1619, and sentenced to life in prison (Maurits had Oldenbaarneveldt executed). Grotius escaped in March 1621, concealed by his wife in an empty book chest and smuggled past guards used to seeing crates of books coming and going from a scholar's cell. The couple fled to Paris. The next month, all hopes for domestic and international religious peace were dashed when the princely vanity of Maurits of Nassau united with bloody-mindedness in Catholic Spain to cause resumption of the *Eighty Years' War* upon expiration of the *Twelve Years' Truce*.

Grotius' later and greater works dealt with international affairs: *Mare Liberum* (''Freedom of the Seas'') published in 1609, and *De jure belli et pacis* (''On the Law of War And Peace''), published in 1625. The latter was written while in political exile in Paris. Grotius' writings are widely regarded as major landmarks in the development of international law as well as the *just war* tradition. They drew deeply from the well of natural law theory, the prior legal work of *Gentili*, and the new idea of ''social contract'' that was still germinating in his day and would not flower fully until mid-century, in the great work of Thomas Hobbes, *Leviathan*. Most of all, Grotius' work

responded to the awful experience of religious warfare which culminated in decades of conflict that dominated his life, thinking, and writings. Grotius devised from varied sources several general and rational principles, which he put forward as the basis for a system of law among nations. His work was an essential rejection of the international anarchy of his times, especially the unlimited form the wars of religion were taking. Yet, he did not propose legal abolition of war as the solution, knowing full well that was a utopian pipedream. Rather, he argued carefully for moderation in accepted methods of fighting, a more limited notion of conquest, more humane behavior by generals and troops when living off an enemy's land, and more law-governed treatment of the civilian population in countries passed through or occupied.

Grotius bequeathed three key ideas to legal and political discourse about war. First, states ought not to seek to impose their national or religious ideologies—in his day and corner of the world, Catholicism and variants of Protestantism—upon each other; they should instead abstain from interference in each others' ''internal affairs.'' Grotius maintained a theoretical but highly circumscribed exception for ''armed humanitarian intervention'' to this general rule. Second, he posited that a ''law of nature'' exists separate from and higher than human affairs but that this natural law is knowable by human intellect through the application of reason. He saw general elaboration and acceptance of this natural law by statesmen and nations as the only path to eventual escape from international anarchy. Finally, he called for an ''assembly of the nations'' to enforce these laws drawn out of nature by human reason and encoded in treaties and the common practices of states. Grotius profoundly influenced thinkers as diverse as Thomas Hobbes, John Locke, and Immanuel Kant. His works became the foundation for all later thinking about the law of nations and about the character of international relations as a society of states bound by practical requirements of social existence and the balance of power rather than allegiance to a putatively superior religious authority. In his own day his writings were widely influential, affecting the worldview even of a warlord king such as *Gustavus Adolphus*.

Grünbag. An earthwork palisade. See also *Morat, Battle of.*

Grunwald, Battle of (1410). See *Tannenberg, Battle of.*

Guangdong. A large Chinese *junk*, built tougher and stronger than the *Fujian* class and used for coastal and oceanic trade. They were well-armed with a variety of anti-personnel weapons, but given their weak hull design they could not support heavy, ship-killer broadside artillery. Some had long oars (''sweeps'').

guardas reales. See *Palace Guard*.

guastatores. See *wasters*.

Guelphs and Ghibellines. Terms of art for two German houses with opposing dynastic and territorial claims in Germany and Italy: the Guelphs (''Welf''), originally based in Saxony and Bavaria, and the Ghibellines (''Waiblingen'' or ''Waibling''), from the town and castle of that name near Stuttgart. The terms took on far wider significance as ''Guelph'' came to stand for the papal party and ''Ghibelline'' for supporters of local autonomy for the Hohenstaufen dynasty and the rights of the Holy Roman Emperor. Each represented leagues of rival lords, cities, and feuding families, including the family of Dante Alighieri, who served in the Guelph army. The two parties engaged in a protracted struggle for supremacy within the *Holy Roman Empire*. Long after the great contest between popes and emperors ended the Guelphs and Ghibellines fought over the baser material interests that had always divided them. See also *corpus mysticum*.

The two parties engaged in a protracted struggle for supremacy within the Holy Roman Empire.

***Guerra Arciducale* (1615).** See *Uzkok War*.

guerra dels segadors. See *Catalonia, Revolt in*; *Spain*.

guerre couverte. Private warfare, as distinct from wars waged by the crown or state. This form of warfare was progressively, but never entirely, suffocated by the emergence of the modern state. On land it marked and even defined the *feudal* eras in Europe and Japan. At sea, it took the form of *privateering* and outright *piracy*. An important distinction was that devastation was not permitted in *just war* theory. However, utilizing the same logic as the *chevauchée*, it was often committed in practice in order to force one's enemy to come out of his fortifications and fight. See also *ashigaru*; *castles, on land*; *castles, on ships*; *Free Companies*; *Ireland*; *Militargrenze*; *ronin*; *routiers*; *wakō*.

guerre d'usure. See *attrition*.

guerre guerroyante. A style of war common to frontiers or *marches*, such as the Inner Asia–China frontier; the Steppe frontier between Russia, Poland, and the Cossacks; the Scottish Highlands; the Gaelic lordships outside the Dublin Pale; the mountains of Hungary and the Balkan *Militargrenze*. In such areas, protracted wars of attrition were fought but on a reduced scale of raids, ambushes, counter-sallies, burnings, and small massacres. Occurring over a long period, attritional conflict took on an incoherent and seemingly disconnected character that approached anarchy more than it reflected strategy. See also *kerne*; *Montrose, Marquis of*; *pillage*; *plunder*; *raiding*.

guerre mortelle. In medieval *siege warfare* proclamation of ''guerre mortelle'' was permissible against a town or garrison which refused to surrender after some lengthy, but indeterminate, time under assault. This declaration allowed the

attacking army not merely to lay waste or pillage property, but legally and morally to forfeit most or all defender lives—whether soldier or civilian. It was a status much abused in order to sanction wanton plunder and slaughter by cruel or disreputable commanders. See also *Albigensian Crusade*; *just war tradition*; *quarter*.

guerriers de Dieu. See *Catholic League (France)*.

guerrilla warfare. See *Glyndŵr's Rebellion*; *guerre couverte*; *Indian Wars*; *Ireland*; *Korea*; *Martolos*; *Militargrenze*; *raiding*; *Razats*; *Scottish Wars*; *"skulking way of war"*; *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*; *Wallace, William*; *William I, of Nassau*.

Guinegate, Battle of (1513). "Battle of the Spurs." See *Henry VIII, of England*.

guisarmes. See *gisarmes*.

Guise, Charles, Cardinal de Lorraine (1524–1574). Practical church reform interested him far more than doctrinal disputes. He was, therefore, initially a seeker after dialogue with the *Huguenots* who thought peace might be restored by their abjuration within a *Gallican* framework. Yet, he became a leading figure in the anti-Huguenot movement of radical Catholics during the first four *French Civil Wars*. He represented France at the *Council of Trent*, whose spirit of militant intolerance he is usually, but wrongly, said to have embodied. In fact, he hoped for German and English Protestant attendance and was dispatched to Trent by *Catherine de Medici* with explicit orders to secure Gallican liberties from papal or conciliar interference. Still, at Trent he cemented the ties of the Guise to foreign Catholic power in Rome and Madrid. Known as the "minister of mischief" by his enemies, he succeeded his brother, *François Guise*, as leader of the increasingly radical Catholic faction from 1563 to 1574. In his last years Charles had two great desires: to crush the Huguenots as a class and confession and to destroy Admiral *Coligny*, blood enemy of the Guise family. To those ends, in 1568 he conspired to revoke the *Edict of Longjumeau*, thereby starting the Third Civil War. He also plotted to place *Mary Stuart*, his niece, back on the throne of Scotland and raise her to the English throne as well. He thus joined in plots with *Philip II* and the pope to overthrow *Elizabeth I*.

Guise, Charles de Lorraine (1554–1611). See *Mayenne, duc de*.

Guise, François, duc de Lorraine (1519–1563). A militant Catholic and key opponent of the spread of *Calvinism* among the French nobility and population. A noted soldier, he was badly wounded at the siege of Boulogne (1545), after which he was known to his men as "la Balafré" ("Scarface"). Guise held the fortress of Metz during a two-month siege by *Charles V* in 1552, forcing the German emperor to pull back after losing 30,000 men. Guise took *Calais* from the English after a five-day siege in 1558. He dominated policy during

the brief reign of *Francis II*, who was married to his niece, *Mary Stuart*. He was a powerful noble and one of the principal persecutors of the Huguenots. Along with his brother *Charles, Cardinal de Lorraine*, he headed the Guise family and led the most radical Catholics in France. The Guise lost power to *Catherine de Medici* when Francis died suddenly and she proclaimed a regency for *Charles IX*. When she tried to end the religious divide with an act of legal toleration (*Edict of Saint-Germain*), Guise chose war instead, firing the first shots of the *French Civil War*s against Protestant worshipers at *Vassy*. Received as a hero in Paris for this deed, Guise was raised to lieutenant-general in wake of the capture of *Montmorency* at *Dreux*. While besieging the Huguenot citadel at Orléans he was shot in the back by the Protestant nobleman, Poltrot de Méré, who was a paid spy for Coligny. Guise died after several days. Poltrot was tortured and executed and his corpse torn apart by a Catholic mob. The murder of Guise added to the vitriol in France by framing a blood feud between the noble families of Guise and Châtillon that played out in the horrors of the *St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres* (1572), and after.

Guise, Henri, duc de Lorraine (1550–1588). Son of *François, duc de Lorraine*. Head of the Guise family at a precocious age, once he achieved his majority he assumed leadership of the radical Catholic party in France and of the *Catholic League*. He directly and continually challenged *Henri III*'s authority after 1584. His great popularity among the Catholic mobs of Paris on the *Day of the Barricades* (May 12, 1588) forced the king to flee to Blois. The *Edict of Union* then named Guise overall commander of all Catholic and Royalist forces. That December, Henri III lured Guise to Blois and had him murdered.

Guise family. The most powerful, and reactionary, Catholic family in France during the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629). Among the "foreign princes" of France, the family was founded by Charles de Lorraine who became duc de Guise in 1527. The Guise had their main client power base in Champagne, but branches of the family controlled much of Brittany, Maine, Normandy, and Picardy. See also *dévotes/dévots*; *Francis II*; *Guise, Charles, Cardinal de Lorraine*; *Guise, François, duc de Lorraine*; *Guise, Henri, duc de Lorraine*; *Henri III, of France*; *Henri IV, of France*; *Mary Stuart, Queen of Scots*; *Richelieu, Cardinal Armand Jean du Plessis de*; *St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres*.

Gujarat. An Indian principality on the Malabar coast of India. A bastion of Jainism until the 12th century, it was overrun by the *Delhi Sultanate* in 1298. In 1390, Gujarat broke free of the Delhi sultans and declared itself an independent Muslim sultanate. It was extraordinarily wealthy, largely due to its strategic position in the Indian Ocean trades in spices and slaves with *Mamlūk* Egypt and other states in the Middle East, and more rare but lucrative exchanges with China. It is known to have used guns no later than 1421, and probably had the technology much earlier than that. Into the early 16th century it was the dominant sea power of coastal India. In 1509, at *Diu*, the Gujarat galley navy was utterly destroyed by a small Portuguese fleet using

broadside artillery. Gujarat lost Diu to Portuguese marines in 1536, then failed to retake it in the face of Portuguese fortification and defensive cannon. It never recovered Diu, despite military assistance from the Ottomans. Gujarat was also under pressure from the *Mughals* to its north. Although it briefly recovered after the mid-century mark in its long contest with this Muslim rival, the loss of Diu fatally weakened its economy. In 1572, Gujarat was conquered and annexed to the Mughal Empire.

gun carriages. Early cannon were not held in carriages but either fixed to boards or angled on a sloped mound of earth. The French and Burgundians introduced four-wheeled and two-wheeled carriages toward the end of the 15th century. By 1500 many towns had multi-barreled, small bore guns mounted in shielded carts (*ribaudequins*). In the early 17th century *Gustavus Adolphus* finally introduced small two-wheeled carriages pulled by one or two horses that allowed deployment of the first true field artillery. While this improved battlefield firepower, it also increased the logistical challenge, as more horses to pull more carts filled with power and shot increased the demand for fodder for the horses and food for the gun crews. At sea, the difference between English truck-wheeled carriages and the heavy Spanish two-wheeled carriages made a great difference during the *Invincible Armada* campaign of 1588, giving the English a clear advantage. Because English guns could be run closer to the *gun port* they protruded further out and could be *bowed* and traversed over a greater range. That increased the number of aimed shots which could be fired while passing Spanish ships in broadside *line astern*. Also, English guns could be reloaded and wheeled back into firing position much faster than their Spanish counterparts, an advantage increased by use of blocks-and-tackle which halted full recoil and facilitated rapid return of the gun to the port. In contrast, the Spanish lashed their big guns to the hull and needed a huge crew to manhandle each gun back into position after every shot. Finally, the English truck carriages were smaller and lacked the long tail of the Spanish carriages. This allowed easier handling, and reduced weight and the size of each gun crew. In combination, modern estimates are that the English enjoyed a 3:1 rate of fire advantage. See also *"crouching tiger"*; *galloper gun*; *pots des fer*; *trunnion*.

gun-deck. Whichever deck of a warship supported the main battery of the heaviest guns. In a multi-decked *ship-of-the-line*, this was always the lowest deck. See also *gun port*.

gun metal. Bronze or brass or sometimes iron, but of sufficient strength to cast large gun barrels capable of containing the explosive forces produced by *corned gunpowder*. See also *ship-smashers*.

gunner. On land, a skilled artillery man. At sea, an assistant to the *master gunner* on a warship. Alternately, any infantryman sporting a firearm, of any type.

Gunner's Mark. See *gunner's rule*.

gunner's quadrant. A right-angled instrument held in the mouth of a gun as it was raised, until a plumb line showed the correct muzzle elevation for the estimated range to target. It may have been invented by *Niccolò Tartaglia*.

gunner's rule. Invented in England in the early 17th century, this slide rule aided gunners in finding the proper range, weight of shot, and size of charge. The 1146 mark on the rule became generally known as the ''Gunner's Mark.''

gunnery. See *artillery*; *broadside*; *fortification*; *galley*; *gun carriages*; *gunner's quadrant*; *gunner's rule*; *linstock*; *mattross*; *powder scoop*; *quick match*; *ramming*; *shot*; *siege warfare*; *sling*; *sponge*; *stiletto*; *Tartaglia, Niccolò*; *teamsters*; *trunnion*; *worm*; *wounds*.

gun port. A small door cut in the side of a ship to permit firing of cannon closer to the waterline of an enemy vessel. Initially, guns were mounted in *castles*. As cannon grew heavier they were shifted to the main deck and fired over the bulwarks. At the start of the 16th century (by convention, 1501) cutting gun ports in the hull was introduced to allow a ship to carry many more and bigger guns by better distributing their weight. The heaviest guns always went on the lowest deck in the ship. This made round ships more seaworthy as well as more stable gun platforms. See also *galley*; *junk*; *port piece*.

gunpowder empires. The rise of large Muslim empires in the 14th century (*Mughal*, *Ottoman*, and *Safavid*) was attributed by historians Marshal Hodgson and William H. McNeill to military adaptation to gunpowder. Just as in Europe, they said, new artillery and infantry formations helped rulers expand and control vast domains that hitherto had seen only cavalry armies and *feudal* politics and military systems. Other historians pointed to the *Ming* and *Manchu* empires in China and Inner Asia as further examples; or Japan during the *Unification Wars* and under the *Tokugawa shoguns*; or to *Muscovy*'s expansion into Central Asia and Siberia. At sea, they noted the Portuguese empire and, greatest of all in terms of global girth and influence, the Spanish Empire. Some historians objected that the term was misleading in its identification of technology as the principal determinant of such vast historical outcomes. For one thing, as late as the mid-17th century the effective range of field artillery was only about 300 meters, and it took weeks to prepare trenches and cover and move heavy siege guns into position. Given constraints of transportation and logistics and the shortness of campaign seasons, critics argued, guns did not provide a sufficiently decisive strategic advantage to supply an explanation for all the military and political success of the major 14th–17th century empires. See also *gunpowder weapons*; *technology and war*.

gunpowder revolution. See *artillery*; *cavalry*; *fortification*; *gunpowder weapons*; *infantry*; *revolution in military affairs*; *technology and war*; *war at sea*.

gunpowder weapons. Gunpowder—an admixture of charcoal, saltpeter, and sulphur—was first fabricated by the Chinese, possibly as early as the 9th century C.E. The first known written instructions on how to compose gunpowder date to a Chinese book on war from the mid-11th century, the *Wujing zongyao* (1044), though its recipe would produce only an incendiary, not an explosive. The Chinese used early gunpowder in public festivals but also—and contrary to widespread belief—extensively in warfare. In addition to noisemakers to frighten less civilized and more superstitious invaders from Inner Asia, the Chinese built hand-thrown bombs, mines, rockets, *fire-lances*, and primitive flamethrowers, graphic representations of which survive from the 9th century. The best available evidence confirms that, contrary to what was long thought, the Chinese also invented the first guns (defined as projectile weapons using chemical combustion to produce explosive propellant gases inside metal tubes). By the late 12th to early 13th centuries Chinese engineers were designing small cannon, some sculpted to appear as fire-breathing dragons. The technology spread from China, though the exact routes and time lines are not clear. Perhaps travelers brought gunpowder and early firearms along the Silk Road to India, the Middle East, and Europe. Or maybe gunpowder made the journey in saddle pouches of swift Mongol war ponies. In either case, there is linguistic evidence of Chinese origins of the technology: in Damascus, Arabs called the saltpeter used in making gunpowder ''Chinese snow,'' while in Iran it was called ''Chinese salt.'' Whatever the migratory route of the technology, the remarkable fact is that within just 20 years of the first definitive record of gunpowder weapons in Italy they appeared in every major European country. Manufacture of gunpowder soon became a matter of high importance, demanding government attention and regulation. Saltpeter production from animal manure became a major industry in England, where it was also extracted from human feces and urine collected daily from the doorsteps of the residents of London.

The Chinese used early gunpowder in public festivals but also . . . extensively in warfare.

Early Gunpowder

Gunpowder made a huge impression on the leading minds of the day in science and religion in Europe. Roger Bacon (1214–1294) learned of ''black powder,'' experimented with it and secretly recorded the results in his notes in 1267. The Catholic Church remained deeply suspicious and far too quickly decided that gunpowder (called ''serpentine'' in apparent reference to Satan) made daemon fire and thus must be daemons' work. The Church declared its use in war anathema. Although the ban failed the sentiment lingered. Ben Jonson, war veteran turned playwright, expressed a widely held view about the daemonic genesis of artillery when he wrote: ''From the Devil's arse did guns beget.'' The Puritan poet, John Milton, veteran of the *English Civil Wars* (1639–1651), likewise put guns in the hands of Satan's minions in *Paradise Lost* (1667). Such judgments were ignored on the battlefield in part because

the influence of the Church and religious restraint on war in the West was waning, but more because gunpowder promised military advantages that could not be neglected by kings or the warrior classes. Thus, while the gun was invented in China it was perfected in Europe. From there the technology migrated in the reverse direction, spreading directly or indirectly from Europe into the Muslim lands to displace older Asian designs. It reached the Turks, Tartars, Iran, and penetrated northern India no later than the 15th century. Improved, European-style guns were imported to China in the early 16th century, others were taken from the Portuguese in 1521 after a sharp firefight. The return of guns to China in improved models, and with more powerful black powder, closed the circle of global technology migration and diffusion. There were two important exceptions to this pattern: Koreans obtained firearms directly from China in the 14th century while Japan acquired guns from European traders only in the mid-16th century. Thereafter, Europe, the Ottoman Empire, China, and Japan (briefly, to 1615) were the principal regions producing guns of all types.

Gunpowder was refined and became more reliable as a result of numerous experimenters adjusting the proportions of its three ingredients to improve its projectile force (modern gunpowder is normally 75 percent saltpeter, 15 percent charcoal, or carbon, and 10 percent sulphur). Then it was married to advances in metallurgy and ballistic science to form weapons capable of hurling heavy stone balls at increasing range and great destructive impact, although accuracy considerably lagged other properties. The first painted record of handguns in Europe dates to Italy in 1340. The first written reference to firearms, ''guns with handles'' (''gunnis cum telar''), dates to c.1350. The middle of the 14th century, therefore, is a reasonable marker for the advent of handheld personal firearms in Europe. The first documented use of guns in Poland was 1383, but it was another century before Polish troops used gunpowder weapons extensively. Muscovite troops used guns by 1380, but not effectively until 1481. Hereditary warrior classes were slow to take up guns, which caught on more quickly among mercenaries and rebels: the Swiss first used handguns at *Sempach* (1386) and as early as 1419 the *Hussites* of Bohemia poked guns out firing-slits in their heavy war-wagons (*tabor*) and brought leaden death to Austrian and Imperial troops who charged them with pikes and swords. Yet, some aristocrats were more far-sighted than others. Already by 1411, John the Good, Duke of Burgundy, had a store of some 4,000 infantry firearms and within 40 years Royal French armies were using cannon and arquebuses to destroy English garrisons and even field armies in the last battles of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453).

Gunpowder was expensive, dangerous to use, and easily affected by adverse weather. Gusts of wind might carry sparks from a slow match or wick—which needed to remain lighted at all times—into exposed powder pans or worse, sacks or kegs. Alternately, rain and humidity dampened powder, rendering it unusable. On the road to battle coarse grains of early gunpowder separated as a result of hard jogging in pouches or unsprung wagons. Heavy saltpeter settled to the bottom, sulfur sought the middle, while the light carbon rose to

the top. This meant gunpowder had to be remixed before use, which reduced its potency if not done right. Unready powder might leave guns and cannon useless just when they were most needed, as when a column stumbled into the enemy on the march or tripped an ambush. Social inertia, superstition, technological unfamiliarity, and the superiority of nonchemical missile weapons also ensured that guns did not instantly dominate battle. Older arms and armaments, from armored knights with lances and swords, to arrays of crossbowmen or longbows, to squares of pikemen—retained real utility and killing power for over 200 years after the first guns appeared. A major battle was not arguably decided by guns until *Cerignola* in 1503. And it was not until *Marignano* in 1515 that *Swiss squares*, dominant for 200 years, were decisively broken by pistol wielding cavalry and still more, by point-blank cannonades into their ranks. It was at Marignano that gunpowder weapon superiority was finally proven, and even then it was a close-run thing with guts as much as guns deciding the issue. After Marignano older weapons systems survived on the battlefield for many decades. This is best explained by cultural rather than technological factors: the old ways were still favored by the conservative warrior nobility whose exceptional status on and off the field of battle was threatened by the leveling power of musketry. A slower, but comparable, pattern of incremental penetration of older military cultures by gunpowder weapons was repeated in the Middle East, Central Asia, India, China, and Africa, but not Japan, where adoption and adaptation was remarkably rapid and the battlefield results were spectacular.

Social Consequences

Guns shook the social dominance of all warrior classes who ruled from armored equine perches supported by land-for-service feudal military systems. Along with killing large numbers of knights in battle, gunpowder weapons knocked down their castellan strongholds. Armed with ever larger artillery pieces, kings and emperors battered down provincial castles of rebellious, or just defiant, vassals. Once internal enemies fell to their knees before the throne, or were sent sprawling into graves, powerful kings enlarged the royal domain. Guns played a crucial role in this process: nearly everywhere, except in the great sand deserts or on the vast Eurasian steppe where cavalry still moved like ships on the sea, guns facilitated and accelerated the demise of older warrior classes from positions of social privilege. Everywhere, power increasingly concentrated at the center. Guns rendered obsolete and anachronistic military horse cultures of lance and sword by eliminating the need to spend a lifetime acquiring equestrian warrior skills. They eroded the *servitium debitum* by throwing up large numbers of militia or professional infantry who were quickly trainable and reasonably lethal. In sum, guns did not require the skills, weapons, or tactics of established warrior classes and thus undermined entrenched privilege. The dehorsed old aristocracies were bound to royal service as officers of the crown, no longer proud and independent warlords. Or they were emasculated entirely, turned into silken fops desperate to join feckless court societies like the Order of the Garter or the Golden Fleece.

The transition to the new era of socially leveling weapons actually took centuries to complete, proceeded at variable rates in different lands, and began not with guns but with the even earlier ''infantry revolution'' of massed archers and dismounted men-at-arms. And it should be recalled that aristocratic officers, along with their peculiar values and habits, noble-only military units, and elitist military preferences and prejudices, survived on the battlefield throughout the 16th–17th centuries in Europe, and even into the 19th century in some cases. The cluttered pace of this transition is recorded in diaries, letters, and eyewitness accounts, in etchings and battle paintings. A particularly dramatic painting of *Henri IV* at *Arques* (September 21, 1589) captures this well. It shows Henri and veteran Huguenot fighters wearing leather and cloth and wielding pistols and swords. Arrayed against them are Catholic noble cavalry in full armor and armed with lances. In the background wave groves of pikes upheld by the new style of infantry, supported by musketeers. In the distance stands an undefended castle, toward which all combatants appear utterly indifferent. It is worth noting that this extraordinary painting was composed to represent a battle fought at least 200 years into the ''Age of Gunpowder'' in Europe. And yet, it remains true that in time the new weaponry overthrew the old moral order as surely as it made for drastic social and political change. The early modern worldview displaced the medieval as it became ever more clear to men that God did not decide the outcome of battles, not even those fought in his name. Only raw military power and skilled generalship did that. God was not yet dead for kings and warriors, but *Machiavelli* and the artilleryman stood pointing to his gaping tomb.

Gunpowder and the State

Gunpowder weapons gave all older, settled societies an enhanced ability to fend off invasion by powerful nomad nations still organized mainly to raid and make war. Gunpowder thus contributed to the final victory of Russians, Iranians, and Ottomans—all descendants of earlier invading armies—over the age-old scourge of those countries: invasion by fierce warrior peoples chased out of Central Asia by even fiercer peoples behind them. These long-settled and advanced areas now expanded into previously unreachable lands, subduing or exterminating nomads as opportunity or policy suggested. Only in this sense, rather than from technological determinism, can it be fairly said that ''gunpowder empires'' emerged, including the French, Russian, Ottoman, and Mughal (and later, American), while other states succumbed because they were unable to make the wrenching social adaptations necessary to incorporate guns into their military culture. The *Mamlūks* of Egypt, for instance, were overly wedded to a centuries-old but too rigid slave-recruitment and cavalry system which led them to disdain firearms. They fell under Ottoman control not just because they were defeated by the firearms corps of the *Janissaries*, but because of the larger resource base of the Ottoman Empire that could sustain a protracted war of attrition they could not. In sub-Saharan Africa firearms shifted the balance from medieval cavalry and slaving empires based in the savannah to rising and expanding states of previously subservient coastal and

forest peoples but who had first come into contact with European traders. Thus, *Songhay* relied far too long on armored cavalry while the military balance shifted to coastal infantry bearing muskets bought from Portuguese, Dutch, and English traders. Songhay was itself overrun in 1591 by Moroccan gunmen known from their weapons as the *arma*, or ''gunmen.'' In Japan gunpowder weapons arrived (1543) in the middle of the ongoing chaos of *Sengoku jidai* warfare among dozens of feudal warlords (*daimyo*). Unquestionably, guns helped *Oda Nobunaga*, *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*, and *Tokugawa Ieyasu* conquer the daimyo and centralize power in Japan during the final decades of the *Unification Wars*. The *Battle of Nagashino* (1575), for instance, witnessed radical military change as mounted Takeda samurai were destroyed by *volley fire* from 3,000 of Nobunaga's musketeers.

In Western Europe topography and local history combined to produce a uniquely decentralized state system by the 17th century, as feudalism was progressively replaced by *new monarchies*. In this process, gunpowder artillery was used to smash baronial opposition—because it brought down castle keeps, towers, and walls that in some cases had withstood catapult and trebuchet assaults for centuries. Adjustments were made by defenders, of course, such as building lower walls and earthen breastworks that better absorbed high impact shot. Still, the balance swung irrevocably in favor of kings since only they could afford the powerful new weapons and expensive professionals who operated them. With this literally elemental force the barony was harried from power and position. Instead of a unitary gunpowder empire, gunpowder kingdoms arose in Europe that asserted independence from the old idea of a single *res publica Christiana*. That ideal had been marked by a medieval muddle of overlapping vassalage, and always was nearer in fact to anarchy than to God. The hard reality of the European balance of power replaced it.

The late medieval *revolution in military affairs* stimulated a frantic search by everyone—princes of the blood and the Church, free cities, duchies and baronies, petty kingdoms, great lords from ancient houses, and Holy Roman Emperors—for short-term military advantage against all the other rapacious cities, states, armed popes, and rising kingdoms. This gave European military and political culture a deeply pragmatic, empirical, and competitive impulse and edge over more staid military cultures. An extraordinary military dynamism was revealed in France and England during the final phase of the Hundred Years' War, again and more clearly among the city-states of the *Italian Renaissance*, and in Germany during the wars of the *Protestant Reformation*. The wars of religion masked more basic military and cultural changes that soon spilled out of Europe into naval campaigns conducted thousands of miles away, stimulating and shaping world exploration and commerce. Such martial and commercial vigor was not enjoyed—or perhaps suffered—by more rigid, hierarchical, and intellectually conservative societies in China, India, and the Americas. After 1500, European militaries slowly pulled away from all others, until by 1700 even smaller European powers had sophisticated and advanced military systems and cultures. Europe was armed to the teeth by

1700, and on its way to eventual global military, political, and economic dominion though overseas conquest and colonial settlement.

These processes were most advanced where the ''gunpowder revolution'' went to sea, where it mated with advances in oceanic navigation to develop rich trade routes that spurred merchants to arm and rulers to pay for permanent national navies. Europe's navies were far more potent than its armies, relative to non-European military systems. They launched massive ships sporting hundreds of cannon that served as mobile artillery platforms the like of which the world had never seen, and wondered at. Navies gave Europe's monarchs (and one republic, the United Provinces) the ability to project military power and national cultures hundreds and even thousands of miles away. Meanwhile, the obsolete navies of Africa, Arabia, Egypt, India, and Southeast Asia were swept out of their home waters and barred from oceanic trade. By 1650 the only threat to a European-built and -crewed *man-of-war* on the high seas was another man-of-war built and crewed by other Europeans. One sea power after another—Portugal, Spain, the Netherlands, France, and England—rose to global dominance starting in the 15th century, a pattern of naval dominance not broken until the 20th century when two non-European powers, Japan and the United States, challenged Europe's naval supremacy. See also *carreaux*; *Constantinople, Siege of*; *corning/corned gunpowder*; *garrots*; *hoop-and-stave method*; *mining*.

They launched massive ships sporting hundreds of cannon that served as mobile artillery platforms . . .

Suggested Reading: Brenda Buchanan, *Gunpowder: The History of an International Technology* (1996); J. Guilmartin, *Gunpowder and Galleys* (1974; 2003); Robert Held, *The Age of Firearms* (1967; 1970); Marshall Hodgson, *The Gunpowder Empires and Modern Times* (1974).

gun tackle. Blocks and tackle used to move or restrain a *gun carriage* aboard ship.

Gur states. Five slave-raiding and heavily militarized West African states of the 14th–15th centuries, located in the ''middle belt'' between savannah and the forested south of the great bend of the Niger: Dagomba, Fada N'Gurma, Mamprussi, Wagadugu, and Yatenga.

Gustavus I (1496–1560). Also known as Gustav I, Gustav Vasa. King of Sweden. During patriotic disturbances over Sweden's ties to Denmark, Gustavus was taken hostage in 1518. A year later he escaped to Lübeck. He wandered as an outlaw with a price on his head, doing menial work to stay alive while failing to rouse his fellow Swedes to revolt. After the ''bloodbath of Stockholm'' (1520) many Swedes finally joined him. He led an army that took Stockholm in 1523, broke the *Kalmar Union* with Denmark and Norway, and drove Danish forces out of the country. That same year Gustavus was

elected king. Domestically, he allied with the merchants and lesser gentry against the entrenched power of the great nobility and the Catholic Church. He attempted extensive centralizing reforms but met stiff resistance within the ranks even of his noble supporters in the provincial Estates, and among peasants. His most significant reform was establishment of Lutheranism. His main accomplishment was to give Sweden several decades of peace, guaranteed by a full treasury. He also left Sweden a modernized army for when war later broke out with Poland.

Gustavus II Adolphus (1594–1632). ''Lion of Midnight'' (that is, of the North). Also known as Gustav II and Gustav Adolph. King of Sweden, military reformer, statesman, and greatest general of the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). Gustavus was crowned at age 17 when his father, *Karl IX*, died prematurely in the midst of the bitter *War of Kalmar* with Denmark. Gustavus immediately proved a brilliant organizer, innovator, and diplomat. Later, he would prove an even more able battlefield commander: Napoleon actually compared him to Alexander. For the first 10 years of his reign he was preoccupied with consolidating Sweden's territory against Danish and Polish encroachment. He negotiated a peace with Denmark that permitted Swedish goods and copper, largely carried on Dutch ships, to pass through the *Baltic Sound*, in exchange for payment of a burdensome indemnity. He ended Sweden's wars with Poland and Muscovy temporarily so that he could modernize Sweden internally and militarily, largely on the Dutch model. He compromised with the Swedish nobility, agreeing to a constitutional Charter that promised to uphold Lutheranism as the state religion. He did all this in order to clear the way for Sweden's rise as a Great Power in the north, but also because he was a sincere Lutheran: he led troops in singing hymns as they marched to war, ordered prayers twice daily by the whole army, and assigned pastors to every regiment. This blend of prayer and black powder made the Swedish army feared and respected. It also gave Swedish troops unusual discipline and character on the battlefield.

Key to Gustavus' political success was his thoroughgoing reform of the Swedish military. He professionalized the army, changing it from a semi-feudal levy whose formations consisted of ill-trained peasants recruited locally to a national force of well-trained regulars secured through conscription. He emphasized *drill*, *military discipline*, and *volley fire* by regiments freed from the old formation of infantry squares and reorganized instead into flexible linear formations. Most of these changes had been advanced already by *Maurits of Nassau*. Gustavus took the best Dutch innovations out of the waterlogged and canalized environment of the Netherlands to maximize their revolutionary battlefield potential on the broad plains of Poland and Russia. This made the Swedish Army one of the first and the finest *standing armies* of the era. This well-drilled and disciplined army, infused with a conjoined spirit of martial patriotism and fervent Protestantism, was uniquely able to shift from offense to defense with a speed and efficiency unmatched by any other army in

Europe, or the world. Gustavus then elevated Sweden to the first rank of powers by taking his new model army, strategic vision, and advanced and well-drilled tactics to Germany, where he decisively intervened in the ''Great War'' of the 17th century.

Artillery

Gustavus understood the role of *shock* in combat and sought to maximize it by hauling genuine field artillery to the field of battle to support his infantry while it maneuvered, and in firefights, rather than having the big guns follow in a cumbersome siege train to be deployed mainly against fortifications or solely in static position in battle. This achievement of massed, mobile cannon fire was made possible by long experimentation with shortening and thinning the extremely heavy barrels of the cumbersome *Murbräcker* cannon that then dominated Swedish (and German) service. This reduced weight, cut back the number of horses or oxen (and fodder) required to move the guns, and thus greatly improved their mobility. While Gustavus' experiment with ''*leather guns*'' failed, he produced 4-pounder iron cannon that could be towed from place to place according to the dictates of battle. In 1629 he ordered a series of small caliber, short-range pieces cast. They were pulled by a pair of horses using a two-wheeled *gun carriage* and hence were capable of off-road maneuvers. Some pieces were so small ($1\frac{1}{2}$- and 3-pounders, sometimes called ''regiment guns'' or ''regementsstycke''), they could be towed by a single horse or manhandled by a crew of two or three men. Several of these small cannon achieved rates of fire that exceeded the best rates of musketeers.

Swedish light pieces were supported by heavies, which Gustavus standardized at 6-, 12-, and 24-pound calibers. The heavy cannon traveled with the siege train, each piece hauled by large teams of draught animals, or he moved them by barge, marching the army alongside the guns along riverine routes. The light pieces always traveled ahead, along with his infantry and cavalry for quick deployment. Gustavus also refined and standardized gunpowder charges for each caliber of gun. Bagged powder in pre-measured cartridges improved rates of fire and increased accuracy. His main tactical innovation was to reorganize the heavies into batteries to concentrate fire at selected targets. This was a highly effective and then still novel battle tactic. His light pieces were deployed in front of his infantry lines to provide harassing fire. In sum, changes in size and weight and standardization of caliber and ammunition permitted Gustavus to deploy the first true field artillery of the gunpowder era. In the view of some historians, this feat represented nothing short of a *military revolution*. If it did, that was not universally recognized by contemporaries: after his death even the Swedish Army sometimes reverted to using larger guns that were best suited to the siege operations that dominated mid-17th-century war in Europe. It was not until the innovations of Frederick the Great, who studied and appreciated the Swedish example of the previous century, along with more frequent battles of encounter in the mid-18th century, that field artillery became standard in all modern armies.

Infantry and Cavalry

Gustavus reformed the infantry by increasing the proportion of musketeers to pikemen to two-to-one (with variations), so that more men in each formation were able to bring fire to bear on the enemy, giving each brigade—the main Swedish formation—greater punching power. He adopted *wheel lock* muskets that were smaller and lighter than the Spanish *matchlock* and did not require a forked rest, which made his musketeers more mobile. He shortened the pike to just 11 feet, making his pikemen just as light and maneuverable as the musketeers they protected and drilled with. Brigades were divided into three ''squadrons'' of about 500 men each. More importantly, Gustavus reduced the ranks to six, so that interior and back ranks had clear fields of fire (after firing, the front ranks knelt), while at any given moment a brigade was confident that half its men (three back ranks) stood ready to repel an attack with muskets loaded. Gustavus developed new divisional tactics to overcome the solid and less mobile Spanish *tercios*. He shifted from dense infantry squares to linear formation, wherein three or four brigades formed a flexible, articulated and extended battle line. The thinner ranks of his line infantry gave the Swedish Army a tactical maneuverability denied to heavy squares. Gustavus placed his smaller iron cannon before the infantry, adding to firepower in attack or defense. When flanked, Swedish infantry quickly articulated their line to bring musket volleys and light (1½-pounder) field artillery to bear on their tormentors. The cavalry was deployed more traditionally on the wings of the infantry, from where they might attack the enemy's cavalry and exploit exposed enemy flanks or rear. But the weight of a Swedish attack came from the infantry. The mobile field guns raked the enemy square or line with *canister,* punching bloody gaps in the ranks. Then the infantry closed to about 40 yards to maximize the effect of their musket volleys. After firing two or three salvoes, at most, the front ranks charged with pikes level and muskets reversed and used as clubs. Through all this, the back three ranks stood ready to exploit a breakthrough or pivot to defend the brigade's flanks, or to counterattack if arrayed in defense.

Gustavus modeled his cavalry on the superb Polish horse that was still dominant in East European warfare but largely unknown in Western Europe. He stripped armor from men and mounts and replaced the wheel lock pistol, used to such little effect in the *caracole*, with the saber. Horses were retrained to trot and gallop rather than cantor toward the enemy. In sum, as Michael Roberts has shown, Gustavus returned to cavalry shock and speed in place of firepower. This took advantage of a widely noted Swedish military ferocity and ability to pursue a defeated enemy, whereas other cavalry deployed in overly dainty and largely ineffectual columns to perform the caracole. In battle, the first obligation of Swedish horse was to block enemy cavalry from taking offensive action, and secondly to exploit gaps or exposed flanks or other opportunities created by the superior firepower of the Swedish infantry and artillery. In strategy and tactics Gustavus stressed preparation,

deliberation, and an offensive spirit that sought always to carry war to the enemy. He was among the first to employ recognizably modern techniques of combined arms by coordinating attacks by mutually supporting infantry, artillery, and cavalry units. Similarly, he pioneered fire and movement, and reverted to and restored the ancient principle of concentration of force at a chosen point of local superiority on the field of battle. The changes Gustavus wrought stunned more staid and conservative enemies and set their armies and generals reeling. These reforms took many years to implement, however, even in the Swedish Army: more recent research than Roberts' has shown that Swedish cavalry never entirely abandoned the caracole before the 1680s.

At War

While Gustavus honed the Swedish military and replaced its old guard of senior officers with new professional officers he personally trained and promoted, he relied more on diplomacy than battle to consolidate and protect his northern realm. He thus recovered Sweden's Baltic provinces by appeasing Denmark with a huge indemnity that ended the Kalmar War in 1613. In a sharp war with more backward Muscovy, he added parts of Finland (1617) to the Swedish empire, and he continued to fend off Polish territorial and dynastic claims on Sweden. His power rested solidly on his successful reform of the bureaucracy, the education system, and a national military. Since Sweden was a poor and sparsely populated country he went to war to enrich it with new lands. Like all commanders of his era, he sought to "make war pay for war" by battening and billeting his army on other people's estates and cities. He briefly made peace with Poland in 1620, only to regroup the next year and capture Riga in the first real use of his reformed army. By 1626 he added most of Latvia to the Swedish empire. Next, he campaigned to take Royal Prussia, driving amorphous Polish forces before him. He won in the forest at Wallhof (January 17, 1626) in a surprise dawn attack on an ill-sited camp. At Mewe (September 22–October 1, 1626), Swedish infantry firing volleys with heavy "Dutch muskets" overmatched Polish infantry armed with arquebuses. Shooting from behind field fortifications, they devastated Polish hussars, taking a measure of revenge for the slaughter at *Kirkholm* (September 27, 1605). In 1627, Gustavus attacked *Danzig*. At *Dirshau* (August 17–18, 1627) he was seriously wounded in the neck but won the battle. This was one of many occasions where he led bravely but recklessly from the front, and not the last: he was nearly killed or captured, as well as badly beaten, at *Stuhm* (June 17/27, 1629). As Gustavus withdrew to prepare defenses, Cardinal Richelieu arranged the *Truce of Altmark* with *Sigismund III*, who finally renounced his claim to the Swedish throne. That freed Gustavus to enter the *Thirty Years' War*.

. . . he sought to "make war pay for war" by battening and billeting his army on other people's estates and cities.

The Imperial defeat and humiliation of *Christian IV* in 1629 ended the Danish phase of the German war and opened to door to Swedish intervention.

Geopolitics, piety, princely ambition, fear of Habsburg domination of the Baltic, and long-standing Swedish ambition to control the mouths of major Baltic rivers and the Baltic trade combined to shape Gustavus' fateful decision to intervene. Yet, he would not move until assured of rich financing from the deep coffers of France. Despite that alliance with Catholic power, Gustavus was received by ordinary Protestants as the great, indeed prophesied, champion of the Reformed Faith come to rescue the cause at the apex of Catholic-Habsburg triumph. He was widely seen as nothing short of a Protestant Joshua marching at the head of an ''Army of God.'' Singing Lutheran hymns on the march only reinforced this popular image. Protestant princes were not nearly so enthusiastic: Saxony and Brandenburg alike refused his initial entreaties to form an alliance of northern powers. As a result, Gustavus landed at Peenemünde, on Usedom, in July 1630, with just 14,000 men. He brought with him 80 field pieces along with larger siege guns. The ratio of nearly 10 artillery pieces per 1,000 men in the Swedish Army compared to just one cannon per 1,000 men for the Imperials. Bogged down by the need to secure provisions for the Imperial Army, the Habsburg General Conti failed to concentrate against Gustavus at this, his most vulnerable moment. Yet, supply problems—which were endemic to the age—along with Gustavus' great caution about securing a strategic base in north Germany also delayed any decisive move on the Swedish side.

Instead, Gustavus moved slowly and in force from Straslund to Stettin in search of food and fodder. This took the Swedish Army beyond Pomerania which had already been eaten out by prior invasions and other armies. As he moved along the major river routes, Gustavus subjugated and garrisoned the largest towns, securing lines of supply and building a buffer between Sweden and its enemies in Poland and the Habsburg lands. Then he settled down for the winter months, during which he recruited and trained tens of thousands of Germans and other mercenaries in the Swedish way of war. This grew combat strength but exacerbated logistical problems and so forced him onto the road with the spring thaw of 1631. Gustavus marched into Brandenburg to expand his base and force the Elector to join the war. Insofar as he took a strategic direction it was south to capture the fortress at Küstrin, then west to Berlin to take Spandau. This move secured the confluences of the major navigable rivers in north Germany, which Gustavus needed to move his heavy artillery closer to the Habsburg heartland and bring in follow-on supplies. While he was thus engaged *Magdeburg* fell to *Johann Tilly* and was sacked, before the Imperial siege could be relieved by Gustavus, who was unable to move his artillery or army without negotiating with Elector Georg Wilhelm for unimpeded access down the riverine routes of north-central Germany. Gustavus belatedly engaged Tilly at *Werben* (July 22–28, 1631), inflicting a hard and punitive defeat on the Catholic army.

At the peak of his power Gustavus commanded a coalition army that exceeded 100,000 men and was supported by river barge supply lines drawing resources from half of Germany. By 1632 this host was no longer made up of disciplined Swedish conscripts but of largely non-Swedish mercenaries,

including 10,000 Scots. It was reinforced by several untrustworthy Saxon regiments supplied by a most reluctant ally he essentially forced into the war. With this polyglot force he won at *First Breitenfeld* (September 17, 1631) over the combined Imperial Army and the army of the *Catholic League*, led by Tilly. The defeat scattered Habsburg and Catholic forces. Once again, logistical problems slowed Gustavus so that he was unable to pursue the Imperials or the advantage won in battle. In the autumn of 1631 he moved farther south, to Erfurt, thence west to winter in Frankfurt. For the 1632 campaign he hoped to raise a force of 200,000 men with which to invade the Habsburg heartland from multiple directions, coordinating attacks by five armies. This strategic ambition was admirable, but also technically and logistically impossible in his day (war on such a scale would not be achieved until Ulysses S. Grant managed multiple invasions of the Confederacy using railways and the telegraph in 1864). Nor was he able to raise the forces envisioned. The lands he traversed could not sustain so large an army, and by 1632 even allies feared what the great Swede might attempt and achieve with such a force. Might not the Empire itself fall to him if he drove *Ferdinand II* from Vienna? Gustavus instead sought a decisive battle of encounter with the Imperial Army. In March 1632, he moved southeast to Nördlingen, then stormed the Bavarian fortress of Donauwörth. He again defeated the Imperials, mortally wounding Tilly, at *Rain* (April 5, 1632). That left the Catholic armies scattered and leaderless. Gustavus was free to eat out Bavaria or move on to Vienna; he chose Bavaria. He received huge *contributions* from Nuremberg and Augsburg. Even so, he was once again impelled by logistical need to keep moving his men, who ate out the country as they meandered through it following the course of the Danube.

With Tilly dead Ferdinand had no choice but to recall *Albrecht von Wallenstein*, who raised a new army of 70,000 mercenaries from his own resources which he hired to the desperate Ferdinand. Meanwhile, some Protestant cities and princes were restless as the Swedish Army moved through Germany for a second season, eating out whole regions like so many locust. They had reason to be suspicious: it was likely the Swedish king's plan to make Germany a forward base to defend his enlarged Swedish empire, to include large parts of northern Germany. Through deliberate depredations, Gustavus tried to compel Wallenstein to move into Bavaria to protect its Catholic population and towns. Instead, Wallenstein marched into Bohemia to drive out the Saxon Army. This might look to modern eyes like an effort to cut off the Swedish *lines of supply*, reinforcement, and communication, but those were minor considerations in 17th-century warfare. Instead, as Basil Liddell Hart argued, Wallenstein was employing a strategy of ''indirection.'' By taking Leipzig and despoiling Saxony he looked to break the fragile Swedish–Saxon alliance and draw Gustavus north, away from Vienna. It worked: Gustavus swung north with 20,000 men, arriving at Nuremberg in May and moving to Naumburg in October, capturing crucial crossings over the River Halle. North of the river, near Leipzig, he caught up with Wallenstein's army of 33,000 men. The two great captains and armies fought a desperate battle at *Lützen* (November 6,

1632). Gustavus was brought low while leading a cavalry charge, shot off his horse by three musket balls: one struck his arm, a second hit him in the back, the fatal third opened his skull. The Swedes won the battle but Gustavus was dead before it ended. The Swedish warlord-king and champion of the Protestant cause was just 38 years old.

What Gustavus proved in his battles was that the old tactic of standing on the defensive behind a wall of pikes no longer assured victory. He showed that superior mobility, combined with rapid rates of musketry and field artillery, could dislodge and defeat even a numerically superior force in prepared defensive positions, such as behind the double ditch line at Lützen. This put another nail in the coffin of late-medieval-style warfare. No more was it sufficient to raise lumbering armies of pikemen protected by a few musketeers. That was the style of Tilly and Imperial tercios. Modified by the contribution system, it was also Wallenstein's before he saw the Swedes in action. After Lützen, Wallenstein and other generals and militaries imitated to the degree they were able the new Swedish way of war, emphasizing drill, professionalism, firepower, and mobility. So influential were Gustavus' reforms and reputation as a field commander that, 70 years later, Peter I of Russia, and 50 years after him, Frederick II of Prussia, emulated the great Swede's reforms in their own armies so that they, too, could ride a military tiger into the upper ranks of the Great Powers. See also *Alte Feste, Siege of*; *baggage train*; *Bärwalde, Treaty of*; *brigade*; *buff coats*; *Chodkiewicz, Jan Karol*; *engineers*; *Haiduks*; *Grotius, Hugo*; *Hague Alliance*; *military discipline*; *New Model Army*; *Oxenstierna*; *Prague, Peace of uniforms*.

Suggested Reading: Nils Ahnlund, *Gustavus Adolphus the Great* (1940); Michael Roberts, *Gustavus Adolphus and the Rise of Sweden* (1973) and *Gustavus Adolphus* (1992).

H

Haarlem, Siege of (December 11, 1572–July 12, 1573). The *Duke of Alba* sent 30,000 Spanish and Imperial troops to take Haarlem, defended by just 4,000 militia. An initial bombardment and direct assault failed. As the Spanish dug entrenching lines the Hollanders frequently sortied, damaging the works and killing Alba's engineers. There was little mercy on either side: the Dutch hanged Spanish prisoners in full view of the besiegers in retaliation for sacks and massacres carried out at Mechlen, Zutphen, and Naarden. When Haarlem finally surrendered on July 12, 1573, its 1,800 surviving militia were butchered by the Spanish, along with hundreds of burghers. Haarlem's resistance did much damage to Spanish arms and prestige and gave the rebellion time to take root in other towns.

habergeon. A small mail coat. It was lighter, shorter, and less expensive than a full-length *hauberk*.

Habsburgs. The great dynastic house founded by Albert in Swabia in 1153, which expanded as often by marriage as by war to rule large parts of Europe from 1282 to 1918, including most of Germany for four centuries, and for a time also Spain and its vast overseas empire. The original family lands were absorbed by the *Swiss Confederation*, 1386–1474. The dynasty thereafter was centered on its holdings in ducal Austria and its reign over the *Holy Roman Empire*, 1438–1740, and again, 1745–1806. The marriage of *Maximilian I* to Mary of Burgundy connected rich lands in northwest Europe with the Austrian heartland. Their son, *Charles V*, governed all Habsburg territory, including Imperial Spain from 1519 to 1556. The Habsburgs were intricately involved with the great banking house of *Fugger*, which financed their wars over many decades. Charles fought France for much of the *Italian Wars*, the Ottoman sultans intermittently, and against German princes and cities of the *Schmalkaldic League*. He was hampered in pursuit of his Imperial and Catholic

causes by the fact little linked the scattered Habsburg lands except a union of crowns and his person: they shared no single army or navy, no common language or economy or currency, no uniform code of law, and after 1517 and the *Protestant Reformation*, no common faith. When he abdicated in the Empire in 1555 and in Spain in 1556, the succession was divided between his brother, *Ferdinand I*, and his son, *Philip II*, into Austrian and Spanish branches, respectively. Even divided, these remained the two great centers of Catholic power in Europe for another century. Governed by discrete branches of the House of Habsburg, they did not always cooperate closely or well as they faced a shifting coalition of German princes, France, the Ottoman Empire, and despite Habsburg championship of Catholicism, sometimes one or other of the popes (a Habsburg army sacked Rome in 1527 and another starved the Papal States into submission in 1556–1557). The compromise *Peace of Augsburg* (1555) brought confessional peace in Germany in reflection of the reality that Habsburg emperors were too weak to reimpose Catholicism on all their Protestant subjects.

Things changed in the last decades of the 16th century as the Habsburgs successfully reimposed Catholicism and imposed the *Counter-Reformation* on Austria, Carinthia, Carniola, Styria, and other core areas. In several cases Habsburg troops backed Catholic bishops in repression of Protestantism, closing parishes, burning books, and exiling reform clergy. As the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648) approached, the Austrian Habsburgs had already remade their core territories Catholic. Their policies thus stood as a warning to other Protestants of what might be in store should the Catholic-Habsburg powers win the German war, and the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648) with The Netherlands. On the other hand, the Habsburgs came close to collapse from 1606 to 1612. *Rudolf II* was by then gravely mentally unbalanced and his powers were progressively stripped from him by his brother, Matthias, though not without a threat of a Habsburg civil war over Hungary and Bohemia in 1606 and again in 1611. This weakness at the center permitted militant Catholics to gain influence at Court even as Protestant Estates forced concessions on toleration that reached their apogee in 1611. That set the stage for crisis and war once *Ferdinand II* (then Ferdinand of Styria) moved to claim the Imperial throne and fanatically advance the Counter-Reformation everywhere he could reach.

Meanwhile, Spain was led into long, losing wars with the Netherlands and England by Philip II. His reign saw both the launch of the Eighty Years' War and the despair of the *Invincible Armada*. Upon his death his son, *Philip III*, made a humiliating peace with England in 1604 and then agreed to the *Twelve Years' Truce* (1609–1621) with the Dutch. Ferdinand II and *Philip IV* took Austria and Spain, respectively, into the Thirty Years' War, which the Habsburg lost. All these Habsburg rulers were religious zealots convinced that the family had an Imperial as well as a Catholic mission. There were also chronic wars with the *Barbary States* to the south and the Ottomans to the east, including the *Thirteen Years' War* (1593–1606) in the Balkans. For those reasons and others, an anti-Habsburg coalition won the Thirty Years' War

while the Dutch won the Eighty Years' War, both outcomes codified at *Westphalia* in 1648. Spain then bowed to a final defeat by France in 1559 from which it never recovered.

The Habsburg drive for dominance was never an effort to achieve *monarchia universalis*, despite that charge leveled by their enemies (and some historians). Habsburg policy was limited to seeking hegemony within an emerging system of independent powers. Even so, it was an ambitious failure. Principally, this was due to the balance of power which arrayed most of Europe and the Ottomans against the Habsburgs. The rise of new Atlantic economies in the Netherlands, France, and England lay beyond Habsburg reach and eventually gave those northern powers a far greater capacity to sustain protracted war than Austria or Spain could achieve. Misunderstanding and mismanagement of Imperial economics was severely damaging—the Spanish Habsburgs declared bankruptcy in 1557, 1575, 1596, 1607, and 1647, while debasement of the currency contributed to the ''*price revolution*'' of the 17th century which fatally undermined their grand strategic plans. The intervention of Sweden in the German war presented the Habsburgs with a whole new enemy which they seriously underestimated. The situation was made worse by confessional and imperial hubris such as Ferdinand II's stripping princes of lands and titles by fiat and his confessional overreach in the *Edict of Restitution*. The limits to Habsburg power in Central Europe were set by 1630. After that, the Habsburgs fought more to retain what they held than to add to their German estates. Finally, the revival of France after 1600 under the fiercely anti-Habsburg *Henri IV*, and later the brilliant anti-Habsburg diplomacy of *Cardinal Richelieu*, confirmed that not even the combined populations and resources of Austria and Spain could overmatch the new balance of power in Europe. These powerful facts were compounded by Habsburg failure to match any of their major enemies in war at sea, where the Dutch, English, and French all surpassed Habsburg naval power by the mid-17th century. All that occurred as a *revolution in military affairs* dramatically raised the costs and expanded the scale of war, which the new urban and market economies of the north could sustain but the conservative dynasts and rural economies ruled by Madrid and Vienna did not understand and could not emulate. See also *German Peasant War*.

Suggested Reading: R. W. Evans, *The Making of the Habsburg Monarchy* (1979); R. Kann, *The History of the Habsburg Empire, 1526–1918* (1974); V. S. Matmatey, *The Rise of the Habsburg Empire, 1526–1815* (1978); Robin Okey, *The Habsburg Monarchy* (2000); A.J.P. Taylor, *The Habsburg Monarchy* (1948); Andrew Wheatcroft, *The Habsburgs* (1996).

hackbut. ''hook gun.'' Also aquebute, hackbush, hakenbüsche, haquebut, harqbute. A handheld *culverin* usually operated by two men, though smaller versions could be fired by one man. The ''hook'' was a small metal pin at the base of the front of the barrel that allowed the gunman to rest the barrel on a battlement or atop a *pavise* to prevent recoil. This did not so much improve aim as lend support in place of a bipod or tripod rest.

hackbutters. An English corruption of ''harquebusiers'' used in reference to mounted gunmen (more dragoons than cavalry) armed with *arquebuses*. It probably did not, as it might otherwise seem, refer to infantry troopers armed with *hackbuts*, though both meanings may have been in use. Sometimes spelled and pronounced in the German manner, as ''hagbutters.''

hackney. A nag. A cheap horse good for packing goods or carrying a retainer or mounted infantryman. Not a true *warhorse*.

hagbutters. See *hackbutters*.

Hague Alliance (December 9, 1625). In the mid-1620s *Cardinal Richelieu* was moving toward an alliance with Spain (*Treaty of Monzón*) that would permit him to finish off the Huguenot rebellion. England, Denmark, and the Netherlands were thus left without France as their main anti-Habsburg ally. They formed this truncated, all-Protestant alliance instead, opposing *Ferdinand II* and the *Catholic League* in the war in Germany. Sweden declined membership once *Gustavus Adolphus* learned of the paucity of the military contribution actually made by *Charles I* of England. Joining the allies more as a supplicant than partner was *Friedrich V*, who had already lost Bohemia and the Palatinate to Ferdinand. See also *Thirty Years' War*.

Haiduks. ''Marauders.'' A style of infantry that originated in Hungary, but became famous in Poland where they were the core infantry from 1569 to 1633. They were nearly exclusively musketeers, although their *dziesietniks* (''tenth-men'') carried staffs as well, possibly as a device to signal and time *volley fire*. They fought in standard square formations of 10 × 10 ranks and files (or more likely, 8 × 10 if one discounts the usual *dead-pays*). Unusually, these squares were not protected by pikemen. Instead, the vast Polish cavalry detached troopers to guard the infantry. That proved successful against some Western pike formations in the 16th century, but whenever the cavalry screen failed in the east Haiduks were left utterly exposed to Cossack or Tartar horsemen. In several battles with Sweden the combined arms approach taken by *Gustavus Adolphus* demonstrated the need to add pikemen to the front ranks of Haiduk infantry. Westernizing reforms that followed the clash with Sweden signaled terminal decline for the all-firearms Haiduks. They lingered as ceremonial troops into the 18th century, with the last serving as mere decorations in the palace guards of wealthy Polish nobles.

hail shot. A type of *small shot* comprised of many small pellets, akin to shot fired from a modern shotgun. So-called because it was said to fall like hail on the enemy.

Haiti. See *Hispaniola*.

Hakata (Hakozaki) Bay, Battle of (1274). In 1268 the Mongol lord Kublai Khan (1214–1294) was refused tribute by Japan. Each side marshaled forces for

a coming invasion. In Japan the *samurai* made ready while commoners were inspired by the charismatic but doctrinaire prophet and reformer, *Nichiren Shonin* (1222–1282) and his *Buddhist* followers. In 1274 some 50,000 Mongols, along with forced Chinese and Korean auxiliaries, embarked on 900 *junks* and barges and crossed the Sea of Japan. After capturing Tsushima Island the invasion fleet moved to Hakata Bay on the northwestern shore of Kyushu. They seized Hakata after a fierce fight with local samurai. Mongol horse archers were highly effective against the Japanese infantry along the shore. The Mongols also employed a catapult, almost certainly captured from the more technologically advanced Chinese, that shot a primitive, exploding gunpowder shell. The combined effect of these blows drove the Japanese into prepared earthworks as night fell. To escape exposure to a great storm rising on the horizon many Mongols reboarded the invasion junks. During the night they were blown to sea by the storm, where as many as one-third of the Mongol army drowned. Korean pilots then led surviving ships back to the Asian mainland.

Hakata (Hakozaki) Bay, Battle of (1281). Kublai Khan (1214–1294) finished repressing the Southern Song in China in 1279 and began planning a second invasion of Japan. He correctly concluded that his first attempt in 1274 was not repulsed by the Japanese so much as blown away by forces of nature. He planned to return with a *Mongol* army three times the size of the one lost in 1274. In the meantime, the Hojo dynasts in Japan fortified the shoreline and harbor at Hakata Bay and built up a small, coastal navy with which the *bakufu* hoped to hinder the Mongol's impressed Korean and Chinese junks. Kublai Khan assembled two invasion fleets, the first utilizing Korean junks and pilots (''Eastern Route Army''), the other using captured Song junks (''Southern Route Army''). Over 3,000 junks and barges may have been assembled to transport 100,000 Mongols and their horses, along with tens of thousands of Korean and Chinese auxiliaries. The smaller Eastern Route Army arrived at Hakata on June 21, landing to the north of the town on a small peninsula where the Japanese had not finished the defensive wall. Local *samurai* and some peasants threw themselves into the gap, trapping the Mongols along the shore. At night stealthy Japanese boats carried samurai into the harbor to slip aboard invasion junks and kill the Mongols and Korean crews. This tactic drove the ships of the Eastern Route Army back to Tsushima. The far larger Southern Route Army arrived in mid-July. By early August the full invasion force was assembled and readied to move inland. But on August 15 a cyclone struck the coast of Japan. Over several days it battered the exposed fleet at Tsushima Island and in Hakata harbor, severely damaging or destroying most of the junks. The majority of Kublai Khan's vast army drowned. Those stranded ashore were butchered by the Japanese, who alternately slaughtered or enslaved thousands of prisoners. The Japanese later called the storm ''kamikaze'' (''divine wind'')

At night stealthy Japanese boats carried samurai into the harbor to slip aboard invasion junks . . .

out of belief that the Deity had intervened to save them from the Mongol scourge.

Suggested Reading: Theodore Cook, ''Mongol Invasion,'' *Military History Quarterly*, 11/2 (1998); Stephen Turnbull, *The Samurai: A Military History* (1977).

hakenbüsche. See *arquebus*; *hackbut*.

haketon. A hardened leather jacket reinforced with, or worn over, a mail surcoat.

halberd. An elongated axe in which an ash handle five to six feet long was tipped with a cutting blade that ended in a forward-aiming spike, with the metal head attached by metal straps to the wooden shaft or by a two-eyed socket. Later halberds added a bill, or hook, which protruded horizontally just below the forward spike. This was used to great effect in pulling armored riders off their mounts. Still later versions, made famous by the Swiss at *Sempach* (1386), trimmed or even eliminated the cutting blade, substituting two horizontal iron spikes faced in opposing directions at right angles from the shaft. This gave the weapon three lethal spikes, two of which also served as hooks. Late-14th-century halberds were also much stronger by virtue of rivets that replaced the older eye/socket attachment of blades and spikes to the shaft. In whatever form, the halberd was the favorite weapon of nearly all late medieval infantry. In China a trident-halberd was in wide use during the Ming dynasty. It had a half-yard steel blade-head fitted with a crescent-shaped crossbar attached to a haft seven to eight feet long. Variations went by such names as ''gilded halberd,'' ''dragon-beard,'' ''ox-head,'' ''swallow-wing,'' and so forth. All could be used to club an enemy or to thrust at and penetrate his armor. Defensively, the head and heavy staff were used to deflect blows. See also *Ahlspiess*; *brown bill*; *chauve-souris*; *couseque*; *gisarmes*; *glaive*; *lochaber axe*; *Mordax*; *partisan*; *rawcon*; *Swiss square*.

halberdiers. See *Appenzell Wars*; *Arbedo, Battle of*; *brown bill*; *Fähnlein*; *Giornico, Battle of*; *Grandson, Battle of*; *halberd*; *Laupen, Battle of*; *La Bicocca, Battle of*; *Marignano, Battle of*; *mercenaries*; *Morat, Battle of*; *Morgarten, Battle of*; *Näfels, Battle of*; *Nancy, Battle of*; *pike*; *Sempach, Battle of*; *St. Jacob-en-Birs, Battle of*; *Swiss square*; *uniforms*.

half-pike. A short pike, eight to nine feet in length. It was used mainly in ship-to-ship actions, especially by the Spanish.

Halidon Hill, Battle of (July 19, 1333). A late battle in the *Scottish Wars* prompted by *Edward III*'s siege of Berwick. Having adapted English tactics from lessons learned from prior defeats at Scottish hands, Edward dismounted his *men-at-arms* and split the army into three formations: heavy infantry at the center with the flanks protected by longbowmen deployed slightly forward. The Scots charged headlong and were cut down at long range

by Edward's archers, then finished off by the men-at-arms who remounted to pursue when the Scots turned to flee. This tripartite deployment was Edward III's signature tactic. The *Black Prince* also used it to win several battles in the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453) and in Portugal. See also *Agincourt, Battle of*; *Aljubarrota, Battle of*; *Crécy, Battle of*; *Poitiers, Battle of*.

Hamburg, Treaty of (March 15, 1638). Signed reluctantly by *Oxenstierna* for Sweden and more eagerly by *Cardinal Richelieu* of France, it provided a French subsidy to the Swedish army in Germany for three years but gave France control of alliance policy. Most importantly, both parties foreswore any separate peace with the Holy Roman Empire. The treaty also called for a general settlement based on a *Normaljahr* of 1618, with "satisfaction" for France and Sweden in territory and indemnities. The treaty was extended in 1641 and lasted the duration of the war.

han. The ruler/commander of the *Tatars*.

hand cannon. See *arquebus*.

hanger. A short sword originally used in hunting that was taken to sea in the 14th–16th centuries for use in boarding actions. It was later replaced by the cutlass.

Hansa. See *Hanse*.

Hanse. "Hanseatic League." A medieval association of Baltic coastal cities from the late 12th century that dominated the Baltic end of trade with the rich Mediterranean cities and economies. They had limited defense arrangements but were capable of raising war fleets when necessary. They were more likely to employ bribes, punitive tariffs, and embargoes than arms in a conflict. Only if pushed too hard did the Hanse resort to naval blockade. Although active from the 12th century the Hanse was not formally organized until 1367, in response to a threat from Denmark to curtail the independence and privileges of Baltic merchants and towns. It eventually grew to include over 200 large towns and cities, most prominently Bremen, Brunswick, Breslau, Cologne, Cracow, Danzig, Hamburg, Lübeck, Magdeburg, Memel, Straslund, and Riga. It backed England, where it was granted special diplomatic and trade privileges, during the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). By 1400 the Hanse was in decline as a result of a sharp drop in trade related to the *Black Death*, as well as military decline of the *Teutonic Knights* and *Ordensstaat*. In 1425 the Scanian herring fisheries failed, further undercutting the Hanse. Its dominance was challenged in the Baltic by the rise of Danish, Dutch, and English traders and pirates, and later also the expansion of Muscovy toward the Baltic coast, as its very success in developing the Baltic trade attracted competitors. The Hanse towns were outmatched in war with the Dutch, 1438–1441. In 1467 cities in Livonia and Prussia abandoned the Hanse, and in 1493, *Ivan III* expelled Hanse traders from Novgorod. Dutch naval and merchant fleets accelerated Hanse loss of control of

the key herring trade, and it was expelled from the London Steelyard by *Elizabeth I* as she moved to consolidate English naval and commercial power. As the Hanse declined, Antwerp, then Amsterdam and London, replaced Baltic seaports as the great entrepôts and banking centers of northern Europe. See also *Drake, Francis*; *Olivares, conde-duque de*; *Straslund, Siege of*.

Suggested Reading: P. Dollinger, *The German Hansa* (1964; 1970).

Hanseatic League. See *Hanse*.

Hara Castle, massacre of Christians at (1638). See *Japan*.

haramaki. See *armor*.

Harfleur, Battle of (1416). See *Henry V*; *Hundred Years' War*.

harness. An archaic term for *armor*, as in Shakespeare's "Blow, wind! come wrack! At least we'll die with harness on our back." *Macbeth*, act 5, verse 51.

harquebus. See *arquebus*; *hackbutters*.

Harsthörner. "Great War Horn." The Swiss used these large and resounding alpine horns for military signaling. Their low reverberations, similar to an elephant's trumpeting, carried much greater distances than high-pitched notes of brass trumpets. Harsthörner were borne into battle by the Swiss, often at the cantonal level and almost always by large Confederate formations. In a mature *Swiss square* Harsthörner players stayed close to the senior commanders, usually beside the well-guarded cantonal *Banners*. The Great Horns served two main purposes: they were used to rally troops and to signal—well beyond the normal range for shouted commands—the general advance of squares toward the enemy. A valuable side effect was that they inspired fear, and on occasion induced panic, among enemy troops. See also *Grandson, Battle of*; *Swiss Army*.

Hashemites. A line of Arabian emirs claiming direct descent from Muhammad. They served for generations as sharifs in Mecca under the Ottomans.

Hastings, Battle of (1066). See *England*; *fryd*; *Normans*.

hata jirushi. Colored streamers used in early Japanese warfare to signify positions of units of *samurai*. They were later supplemented by *nobori* and *sashimono*.

hatamoto. See *banner system (Japan)*.

hauberk. A knee-length *mail* shirt dating to the 11th century. It was slit in front and back to facilitate mounting a *destrier* or other charger, and slit at the

hip to take the knight's sword. It weighed 25 or more pounds, and was made in one piece from between 25,000 and 40,000 individual rings. The hauberk was worn over a quilted undercoat such as a *gambeson* or *aketon*. So labor intensive was the production of such ring mail, a single hauberk might cost the equivalent of the annual wealth of a fair-sized village. The term was sometimes also used for later ''suits'' of lamellar-style plate armor. See also *habergeon*; *surcoat*.

Haudenosaunee. ''Great League of Peace and Power.'' Called by the French the ''Five Nations,'' this Iroquois confederacy was formed by the Cayuga, Mohawk, Oneida, Onondagas, and Senecas. They were joined by the Tuscaroras in 1714, to form the ''Six Nations'' that played such a key role in the wars of North America in the 18th century. See also *Indian Wars*.

Haufen. ''Heap'' or ''company.'' See *Swiss square*.

haul close. On a warship or other sailing vessel, to steer as near the direction of the prevailing wind as the sails would allow and the ship would go. See also *weatherly*.

haul wind. On a warship or other sailing vessel, to change course into the prevailing wind.

Hauptmann. ''Headman.'' A late medieval rank in a German mercenary company, equivalent to captain.

Hauptstuke. A class of *bombard* cast for the Habsburgs in their Austrian foundries.

Hausa. An agricultural people long-settled between the southern Sahara and the great rainforest of the coast of West Africa. They developed advanced manufacturing centuries prior to most of their neighbors and were renowned as early as the 13th century for leather production, dyed cloths, and vibrant markets. They were organized in a complex city-state system (comprised of Kano, Katsina, Kaduna, Gobir, Daura, and Zaria) which pre-dated the arrival of Islam. The governing class was converted to Islam during the 15th century, likely by Dyula traders and teachers from Mali. The Hausa also adopted cavalry and armor in the 15th century, on the Turkish model, and began to expand. They conducted slave raiding among tribes farther south, settling captives in slave villages which supported with forced farm labor the growing sophistication of Hausa urban life. They fended off invasion by *Songhay* in c.1515 and absorbed a mass migration from Kanem which began in the late 14th century. They were great indirect beneficiaries of the defeat of Songhay by the Moors, seeing a real expansion in their trade and power.

havoc radius. See *chevauchée*.

Hawkwood, John (d.1394). Commander of the *White Company* and *condottieri* captain of the first order. He entered Italy to sell his services as a mercenary officer in 1362. He fought against Florence initially, then against the Papal States and Holy Roman Emperor Charles IV. In 1372 he left the White Company and raised another to fight for the pope against the Visconti of Milan. When the Papal States and Milan made peace he turned his men—who were always most deeply loyal to his purse—against Florence, savaging its lands and outer villages. He returned to papal service in 1375, invading Tuscany in behalf of the pope. Florence bought him off and he entered its employ with a salary guaranteed for life, and titles and lands that made him one of the wealthiest men in Italy. Despite taking Florentine gold he fought again for the popes against Florence in the *War of the Eight Saints*. In 1377 he ordered a massacre of some 5,000 innocents at Cesena. In 1387 he made the first undisputed use of gunpowder field artillery in European warfare. He returned to Florentine service as ''Captain-General.'' Florence's lifetime guarantee of a large salary and awards of lands and titles was designed as much to tame and control him as to reward service. Hawkwood was for two decades the most powerful and feared military man in Italy. See also *ribaudequin*.

Hawkyns, John (1532–1595). Elizabethan *sea dog*. Born into a Plymouth merchant and shipping family, Hawkyns made his fortune running cargos of slaves to the Spanish Main in 1563. This breached the Spanish trade monopoly but met the interests and enjoyed the connivance of local slave dealers and planters. Queen *Elizabeth I* joined other investors in financing his 1565 slave run to the port of Borburata. On his third voyage in 1567 he was accompanied by *Francis Drake*, whom he mentored in the ways of piracy and the sea. The voyage was dogged by trouble from the start. Hawkyns took a raiding party onshore to join a local war in Sierra Leone and to capture enough slaves to fill his holds. He later met armed resistance when he tried to dock in the Caribbean port of Rio Hatcha, but took the town and managed to sell some of his human cargo at Santa Maria. When he reached Cartagena the governor refused to deal with him, so Hawkyns bombarded the town. On September 16, 1569, he seized the port of San Juan de Ulúa, near Veracruz, Mexico. The next day a 12-ship *flota* arrived and docked alongside Hawkyns' small fleet. On September 23 fighting broke out and Hawkyns was chased away, losing many men and suffering great damage to his ships. Hawkyns struggled back to England with few men left alive, and no profit. This ended his active sea career: he was instead made navy treasurer in 1573. In 1595, Drake and Hawkyns sailed to plunder the Caribbean with 26 ships and 2,500 men. The two ''sea dog'' captains had a falling out over strategy which was only resolved by Hawkyns' death from fever on November 22, 1595.

Hawkyns made his fortune running cargoes of slaves to the Spanish Main in 1563.

Suggested Reading: Harry Kelsey, *Sir John Hawkins: Queen Elizabeth's Slave Trader* (2002).

heave to. On a warship or other sailing vessel, to stop moving forward by backing the sails (''drop the wind'').

heavy cavalry. Cavalry wearing heavy or full armor and mounted for battle on a *destrier*. Heavy cavalry began a rise to preeminence under the Carolingian kings of France in the 8th and 9th centuries with adoption of nailed horseshoes, the stirrup, and a saddle with pommel and cantel that kept a horseman mounted and upright as he collided with an enemy. The era of heavy cavalry dominance of warfare in Europe is said by some to have dawned at Civitate (June 17, 1053) in southern Italy, where *Norman* heavy horse rode down German and Italian infantry in the service of Pope Leo IX, who was captured as a result. Some historians dispute that conclusion, arguing that Lombard infantry ran away before the fight began, leaving just 700 Germans to fight several thousand mounted Normans, a superiority in sheer numbers that renders meaningless any judgment as to which was the superior arm that day. In any case, heavy cavalry thereafter rose in importance throughout Western Europe to culminate as a full horse-and-warrior culture of *chivalry* and *knights*. By the 11th century heavy cavalry was clearly the dominant battlefield arm, though that did not mean it was always and everywhere victorious. Its primary role was *shock* using the *couched lance*. The roles of escorting land convoys, ambush, and scouting were left to *light cavalry* that supplemented heavy cavalry during the 14th century. In response to the imposing defense of a pike square, archers (and later, arquebusiers) were sent forward to harry enemy infantry and open gaps in the front ranks through which the heavy horse could charge. Heavy cavalry in the old style was made obsolete by the steel crossbow and heavy, armor-piercing *musket*, the latter from 1570 onward. Once knights discarded their armor and shifted to lighter horses the principal difference from light cavalry was that heavy cavalry still made occasional *close order* charges, whereas light horse were used nearly exclusively to scout, forage, ambush, and skirmish. Unlike European cavalry, most Chinese, Mongol, Central Asian, and Indian cavalry throughout this period was light to medium in its mounts, armor, and weapons. See also *Agincourt, Battle of*; *armor*; *arrière-ban*; *Bannockburn*; *Boroughbridge, Battle of*; *Cassel, Battle of*; *Courtrai, Battle of*; *Crécy, Battle of*; *Crusades*; *cuirassier*; *demi-lancers*; *drill*; *Falkirk, Battle of*; *Fornovo, Battle of*; *fryd*; *hussars*; *Laupen, Battle of*; *Mohács, Battle of*; *Mons-en-Pévèle, Battle of*; *Morgarten, Battle of*; *Mughal Army*; *Poitiers, Battle of*; *Roosebeke, Battle of*; *Spanish Army*; *Stirling Bridge, Battle of*; *warhorses*.

Hedgely Moor, Battle of (1464). See *Wars of the Roses*.

Heemskerk, Jacob van. See *Gibraltar, Battle of*.

Heerschild. The body of armed retainers of a German prince or abbot, comprised mainly of mounted *men-at-arms* of one or another class, of which there were at least seven.

Heerschildordnung. The ''Knightly order,'' or ranking system, of feudal classes of German knights. At the top was the Kaiser. The lowliest rank were known as ''einschildig Ritter'' (''single-shielded knight'') and were not permitted to sub-infeud other knights.

Heilbronn, League of. An alliance formed by *Oxenstierna* in April 1633, to secure Sweden's interests in Germany after the death of *Gustavus Adolphus*. It sought to secure Sweden to its main allies among the German princes. The tug of Imperial ties and possibilities for a separate peace with the emperor rendered the League a hollow vessel. Saxony soon pulled out and other princes followed suit, leaving the Swedes exposed and overly reliant on their main alliance with France. Its nominal field commander was *Bernhard von Sachsen-Weimar*.

Heiligerlee, Battle of (1568). See *Eighty Years' War*; *Louis of Nassau*.

Hejaz. The religiously and historically important region within Arabia which hosts the holy cities (for Muslims) of Mecca and Medina and was the scene of most of the Prophet Muhammad's life. See also *Islam*.

Hellburners. See *fireships*; *Invincible Armada*.

helm. The early helm in Europe (11th–12th centuries) was flat-topped and had a fixed visor, posing the ancient problem of the trade-off between vision and protection. The visor was mainly a defense against missiles and was probably lifted during close combat. For the same reason, *knights* often fought back-to-back, protecting each others' blind spots. Even so, the obliteration of clear vision by the visored helm made identification of friend and foe difficult, a fact which encouraged wearing of heraldic devices. The ''Great Helm'' was a heavy, full-cover helmet (in various styles) adopted by European knights in the early 13th century, and was most often complemented with gaudy decorations and worn in *tournaments*. In battle, plainer versions of the Great Helm were worn over a skull plate, or *arming cap*, with a mail coif that protected the neck. Little more than a cylinder in its earliest form, it deflected glancing sword blows and missile strikes but did not protect well against a crushing blow on its flat top. Later models tapered the top and added deflecting surfaces. See also *bascinet*; *chapel-de-fer*.

helmets. See *armet*; *arming cap*; *barbuta*; *bascinet*; *cabasset*; *celata*; *chapel-de-fer*; *helm*; *ichcahuipilli*; *kabuto*; *kettle-hat*; *kulah*; *mail-tippet*; *morion*; *salade*; *sallet*; *secret*.

Helvetian Confederation. See *Switzerland*; *Westphalia, Peace of*.

Hemmingstedt, Battle of (1500). See *Landsknechte*.

Hendrik, Frederik (1584–1647). ''Frederick Henry.'' Prince of Orange; Stadholder and Captain-General of the United Provinces. His father, *William*

the Silent, was assassinated the year Frederik was born. He was a *politique* by instinct and experience who evinced little interest in religion or spirituality and none in confessionalism. He succeeded as head of the army when his half-brother, *Maurits of Nassau*, died in April 1625. Hendrik's initial command went badly: he failed to relieve Breda and lost most of Brabant to *Spínola*. From 1628 to 1629 he took full advantage of Spanish distraction with the *War of the Mantuan Succession*, and of the growing strength of the Dutch army, to launch a grand offensive that broke the ring of Spanish fortresses that encircled the United Provinces. He retook so many towns, starting with 's-Hertogenbosch and Wesel, he was soon called ''stedendwinger'' (''city-taker'') by admirers. After that, for two decades he dominated Dutch politics and warfare. Still, things did not always go his way. In 1631 he invaded Flanders with 30,000 men and an artillery train of 80 big guns, all moved and supplied via 3,000 riverboats and barges. However, arguments with civilian authorities over whether to risk the army forced him to turn back without making any strategic gains. The next year he promised toleration of southern Catholics who surrendered to the *Generality*, and again invaded Flanders with a large army. He took Venlo, Roermond, Sittard, and Staelen in quick order, securing the Maas valley. He then besieged *Maastricht* while calling on all Catholics to rebel against Spain. Some did, but most did not. Still, when Maastricht fell the whole strategic situation changed in favor of the Dutch, never again to reverse. From 1633 he was in constant conflict with the regents of Holland, over the invasion and occupation of coastal Brazil and the governance of the United Provinces. Against his will, Holland forced drastic cuts in army size (to 35,000) and finance in the 1640s. In this and other ways, Holland whittled away at princely power and regained control of the United Provinces. Although his son, William, married a daughter of *Charles I* of England, Frederick Hendrik made no effort to intercede in the *English Civil Wars* (1639–1651). Long ill, he died on March 14, 1647.

Henri de Navarre. See *Henri IV, of France*.

Henri II, of France (1519–1559). King of France, 1547–1559. Son of *Francis I*, from whom he inherited a war with Spain and growing confessional division at home. A ferocious fanatic for Catholicism, he severely persecuted French Protestants from the beginning of his reign, when he introduced the infamous *chambre ardente*. Yet, he also opposed the popes, against whom he defended the traditional liberties of the *Gallican Church*. French–Papal relations reached their nadir in the ''Gallican crisis'' when Henri ordered French bishops not to attend the *Council of Trent*. He was nearly excommunicated by Pope Julius III, who threatened to replace him with Prince Philip of Spain. That was at most a hollow threat—the popes had long since lost power to effect such changes in Europe's governing classes—but it could have caused Henri still more diplomatic and military difficulties. The definitive split of England from Rome under *Henry VIII*, and the succession of Edward VI in 1547, brought Henri II and the pope together again in the interest of avoiding

a further weakening of the Catholic Church. In June 1551, Henri issued the "Edict of Châteaubiant" comprehensively banning Protestantism in France, and with it the danger he saw of fissures in the body politic that might lead to rebellion. The Edict proscribed publication or dissemination of Protestant ideas, banned Protestant gatherings, set up a system of paid informers, and prohibited Protestants from holding public offices or teaching posts. He followed this with the Edict of Compiègne (1557), sharply increasing the penalties for persistent heresy.

Henri oversaw some important military reforms, notably standardization of French artillery into six calibers. In 1555 he tried to reform France's system of *war finance*, but within a few years was deeper in debt and then went officially bankrupt. On the field of battle he was even less successful in the continuing *Italian Wars* (1494–1559). While Henri was fighting in Italy, an army under *Montmorency* lost badly to an invading Spanish force at *Saint-Quentin*. Henri was forced to concede formal surrender to Spain of all French claims to northern Italy in the *Peace of Cateau-Cambrésis* (April 2–3, 1559). On June 30 he was severely wounded in a jousting accident, taking a lance though the eye during a tournament celebrating the Peace. He died 10 days later, struck down by God for his great sins and repression of the Huguenots, said his Protestant subjects. He was succeeded by his minor son, *Francis II*.

Suggested Reading: Frederic Baumgartner, *Henri II* (1988); I. Cloulas, *Henri II* (1985).

Henri III, of France (1551–1589). Duc d'Anjou; King of Poland (1574); King of France (1575–1589). Refined to the point of effeminacy and prone to extravagant penitent gestures that even devout Catholics thought oddly out of place in their king, Henri III was also an intelligent reformer who tried to unite and serve France during its civil wars but who lacked the political, financial, or military means to do so. As a young prince he fought at *Jarnac* and *Moncontour*, earning an early military reputation that he failed to match in later years. With his older brother ensconced as Charles IX of France, and in the midst of a siege of *La Rochelle*, in May 1573, Henri accepted election to the Polish throne. He swore the oath in Notre Dame Cathedral and left for Cracow. He abdicated after just 118 days when Charles died unexpectedly, at age 24. Henri returned to France at leisure, through Italy. He was crowned at Reims on February 13, 1575. His younger brother François, the new *duc d'Anjou*, escaped from Court on September 15, 1575, after three years of captivity following the *St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres*. François embraced the rebellion in the south, where he was joined by *Henri de Navarre* after he, too, escaped from a Court prison in February 1576. Facing bankruptcy as well as a powerful alliance of Protestant princes and foreign mercenaries, Henri III tried to end the *French Civil Wars* by granting unprecedented legal rights to the Huguenots with the *Edict of Beaulieu* (May 6, 1576). As had been the case with his mother, *Catherine de Medici*, the effort to extend toleration to Protestants provoked deep suspicion and active hostility among the Catholic majority and brought Henri III into protracted—and ultimately,

mortal—conflict with the *Guise* and the *Catholic League*. Unable to wage the war of suppression that Catholics demanded, Henri was also too weak to sustain the peace that Protestants sought. As a result, he dwelled throughout his reign in a shadow-land of confessional conflict, rising violence, and weakening authority. Thus, in 1585 Henri was forced by the League to agree to the *Treaty of Nemours* which banned Protestantism in France and precipitated the Eighth Civil War.

A pious Catholic, Henri's very piety and genuine religious humility undercut his following among Catholics of the militant Leaguer persuasion, who objected to the king's personal fasting and participation in rituals that abdicated royal symbols of the sacral nature of the French monarchy. Henri was forced to flee Paris in haste and humiliation on the *Day of the Barricades* (May 12, 1588), after which *Henri, duc de Guise* entered the city to wild acclamation. *The Sixteen* and Guise forced the king to issue the *Edict of Union* (July 1588), reaffirming the harsh terms of Nemours and abjuring from ever again making peace with Huguenots. When the clergy and the Catholic bourgeoisie split in December over the issue of new taxes to pay for a final crusade against the Huguenots, Henri finally acted: he called the duc to Blois on December 23, and had him murdered by the ''Forty-Five,'' the king's hand-picked royal guards who also killed the *Cardinal de Guise* the next day. The bodies of the Guise brothers were hacked apart and burned to deny them status as holy relics. The king also had the mother and son of the murdered duc arrested, as well as many leaders of the Catholic League. Then he went to Christmas Mass, exuding a rare royal contentment. But Henri's belated boldness came much too late: *Charles, duc de Mayenne* took over command of the army of the League, enraged Catholics in Paris went back to the barricades, and the League made a radical call for Henri's deposition as a tyrant, something that all Leaguers had found repugnant and treasonous when earlier preached by Protestants. The Sorbonne declared Henri excommunicate, Parisians whispered he was the Antichrist, and all good Catholics were exhorted to rise in rebellion. A Leaguer army was raised against Henri and entered Paris on February 12, 1589, led into the city by Mayenne.

Isolated from his people, absent from his capital, and opposed by the Gallican Church to which he was personally devoted, Henri III agreed to an alliance with Henri de Navarre (April 26, 1589). They joined forces and besieged Paris, but their assault plans were interrupted by an assassin. On the morning of August 1, 1589, Henri III was stabbed in the stomach by a zealous Dominican monk, Jacques Clément, acting out the call of the Catholic League to bring down the tyrant. Before Henri collapsed he drew his knife and slashed open the young monk's face; his retainers did the rest, cutting Clément to pieces and throwing the corpse out the palace window (it was later drawn and quartered). Before expiring, Henri III recognized Henri de Navarre as his legitimate heir. Rather than stopping Henri de Navarre from mounting the throne as the League hoped, assassination of the last and childless Valois king instead cleared the way for a blood enemy of the Leaguers to ascend as Henri IV. Henri III's heart was interred at St. Cloud with his other bodily

remains stored in an abbey at Compiègne; the parts were reunited upon a final entombment in St. Denis in 1610.

Suggested Reading: Jacqueline Boucher, *La cour de Henri III* (1986); K. Cameron, *Henry III* (1978); Robert Sauzet, ed., *Henri III et sons temps* (1992).

Henri IV, of France (1553–1610). King of Navarre; King of France (1589–1610). Henri was born to a zealous Calvinist mother who raised him in the *Huguenot* religious and political faith. In 1569 she took him to the Protestant fortress port of *La Rochelle*. He first stood at the head of a Huguenot army at age 16. He was a born fighter rather than thinker and, while a good tactician, no strategist at all, political or military. He acquitted himself well at Arnay-le-Duc (June 26, 1570), leading a cavalry charge into the Royalist ranks. Following the Third of the *French Civil Wars* the Queen Mother, *Catherine de Medici*, tried to effect a religious and dynastic compromise by arranging the marriage of Henri de Navarre, a Bourbon prince, to her daughter, Margaret of Valois. The marriage took place on August 18, 1572, but was quickly followed by an assassination attempt against *Coligny* and then the *St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres* (August 24, 1572). Henri barely survived and was forced to abjure his Calvinist faith. He was held prisoner at Court for over three years, until he escaped in February 1576. Henri then renounced his conversion to Catholicism and resumed command of the Huguenot army in the south of France, leading it throughout the Fifth, Sixth, and Seventh Civil Wars. By 1584 a sequence of royal deaths ending with the death of the *duc d'Anjou* left Henri presumptive heir to the throne. To forestall his claim the *Guise* and *Catholic League* forced the *Treaty of Nemours* on Henri III while Pope Sixtus V excommunicated Henri de Navarre to remove him from the line of succession.

Henri III had the Guise brothers murdered just before Christmas and the League declared war on the king.

Henri won his first real battle convincingly at *Coutras* (October 28, 1587), then he squandered the result by tending to his mistress rather than his army. Fortunately, his Catholic enemies fell out in the wake of the *Day of the Barricades* (May 12, 1588) and a coup d'état in Paris by the Catholic League and Guise. Henri III had the Guise brothers murdered just before Christmas and the League declared war on the king. This led to a remarkable alliance between Henri de Navarre and Henri III signed on April 26, 1589. A joint campaign to retake Paris from the League followed in the summer, but was interrupted by the assassination of Henri III by a Catholic monk on August 1, 1589. Henri de Navarre's blood claim to the throne was clear but his path remained blocked by his Protestant faith, which offended too many of his countrymen. He quickly assured the country that he would protect its dominant Catholic faith, but still faced the conundrum of swearing a pending coronation oath to repress heresy that would put him at odds with his old companions, the Huguenots. The League rejected Henri's claim regardless, which delayed his decision by ensuring that the civil wars would continue. At

the head of the Royalist army, Henri pushed aside the last Catholic military opposition at *Arques* in 1589 and *Ivry-la-Bataille* in 1590. Political considerations still barred him from the throne, even though Pope Sixtus V—to whom he was reconciled—invalidated his 1572 forced conversion so that he could not be charged by fanatic Catholics with being a ''lapsed heretic.'' On May 16, 1593, Henri announced his intention to abjure Calvinism. After submitting to several weeks of Catholic instruction, on July 25, 1593, Henri abjured, made a public profession of Catholic faith, and was formally absolved by the French bishops.

Henri did these things to end the civil wars and restore the luster and authority of the crown, but also as a sincere—if sometimes indifferent and sinful—believer. He probably never said ''Paris is worth a mass'' (''Paris vaut bien une messe''), a charge of coarse cynicism that was hurled against him by embittered propagandists from the Catholic League. He was in fact broadly accepted and embraced by the nation as a unifying, sacral king. An exhausted, bleeding, and demoralized France turned to Henri to restore social peace because his conversion met the condition of preservation of the Catholicity of the throne, and he was trusted by the Calvinist minority which he had led for so many years in war and peace. Besides, neither party had much choice. The military and political power of the League was spent while the Huguenots knew that they had been sharply reduced by war, abjurations and emigration, and that while they had not been defeated in the civil wars neither could they ever win them. On February 27, 1594, Henri was consecrated with holy oil and crowned at Chartres (the League still held Reims). Paris submitted peacefully on March 22; Henri let the Spanish leave with full military honors, then attended mass at Notre Dame. Other League cities followed, as Henri offered conciliation to Catholic moderates rather than threats, and hurled at them bribes instead of bullets. In September 1595, he received absolution from Pope Clement VIII, as much to serve the papacy's interest in lessening its dependency on Spain as for sincere religious purposes. In return, Henri helped the pope secured Ferrara for the Papal States in 1598 and agreed to publish the articles of the *Council of Trent*.

Henri was not wholly devoted to the arts of peace. During his reign he made much love but also war. On January 17, 1595, he declared war on Spain, inaugurating the *Franco-Spanish War*. He did so mainly to undercut *Mayenne*, who was still holding out in Burgundy, and other League bitter-enders allied with the ideologue in Madrid, Philip II. Henry made peace within France in April 1598, by extending legal toleration to the Huguenots in the *Edict of Nantes*. The next month he made peace with Spain at *Vervins*. He married *Marie de Medici*, princess of Savoy, securing all territory west of the Rhône for France in the Treaty of Lyon (1601). But why did he oversee a wholesale reconfiguration of French artillery, ordering castings which totaled 400 field pieces for the royal artillery park before his death in 1610? It is likely that he was preparing to resume the old wars between France and Spain, not for religious reasons this time but in favor of the new idea of the balance of power: he needed to break what many French perceived as Habsburg strategic

encirclement. To that end, Henri built a system of alliances across confessional lines that he hoped would counter-balance and contain Spanish influence in Germany, Italy, the Rhineland and Flanders. That is also why he supported the *Protestant Union* as it intervened in the crisis in *Jülich-Kleve*. Just before his death he was poised to attack Spain on three fronts: at Milan, along the Meuse, and in the Rhineland. He also looked to cut the *Spanish Road*. But while prepared to fight Spain over specific interests, Henri did not want unlimited war: his effort to gain influence over the Protestant Union aimed at preventing an all-out international religious war, the outcome he feared most.

In just a dozen years, assisted by superb administrators such as Maximilien de Béthune, duc de Sully, Henri set France on the road to recovery and even to greatness. That was not recognized by many in his lifetime. The country still seethed with religious fears and hatreds and Henri was not fully accepted by all: no fewer than 20 assassination attempts were made against him during his reign. The work of this tolerant king was cut short when one assassin finally got through. Henri was stabbed to death through the window of his coach by a pious, deranged Catholic, François Ravaillac. The murderer heard voices telling him to kill the king because he had failed to convert the Huguenots and was secretly planning to slaughter Catholics. Ravaillac was terribly tortured, drawn and quartered, but confessed no wider plot. It was a testament to Henri's success at national reconciliation that, despite the fact he was succeeded by an 8-year-old, *Louis XIII*, under the regency of Marie de Medici, the French Civil Wars did not immediately resume. On the other hand, the assassination showed that no French king could pursue a purely secular foreign policy when Europe had not yet burned out all the fires of Reformation and Counter-Reformation. The best that could be done was to retreat into isolation from the religious war that was about to break out in Germany, which is just what the regent Marie de Medici did. And although *Cardinal Richelieu* de facto, and Louis XIV de jure, undid Henri's legal toleration of the Huguenots by revoking the Edict of Nantes, it was still thanks to Henri that France emerged from the French Civil Wars intact and a powerful rival to Spain as the dominant power in the European states system.

Suggested Reading: Henry Baird, *The Huguenots and Henry of Navarre* (1886; 1970); David Buisseret, *Henry IV* (1984); Mark Greengrass, *France in the Age of Henry IV* (1995); Michael Wolfe, *The Conversion of Henri IV* (1993).

Henry the Navigator. See *Enrique the Navigator*.

Henry V, of England (1387–1422). King of England, 1413–1422. While still Prince of Wales he began to collect warships. He was the only English king to own a true Mediterranean galley. He also spent royal revenues to build a fleet that included the usual English oared vessels, *balingers*, and *barges*, but also *Great Ships* that modified and advanced the design of *carracks*. Henry tried to enforce the idea of England as *safeguard of the sea* with only limited effectiveness. He was more successful in his larger effort to exploit the strategic advantages of mobility provided by sea power to wage the *Hundred*

Years' War (1337–1453) in a way that prior English kings had not. Where *Edward III* and his successors struck overland from distant but friendly bases, rarely achieving sustainable successes, Henry used sea power to invade and occupy nearby Normandy. This was the start of the great quest of his reign: the attempt to conquer France, to which end he reasserted England's old claim to the French crown in 1414 and revived major fighting in France after a period of dormancy. He used his fleet not just to escort armies across the Channel or to Gascony, but to destroy French seapower in the Atlantic as a prelude to stripping France of its Atlantic ports and establishing permanent English naval dominance in the Channel. He invaded in August 1415, taking Harfleur on September 22 after battering its walls with his artillery. A month later he won a spectacular victory at *Agincourt*. His fleet won at Harfleur (August 15, 1416), and again at the Bay of Seine (July 25, 1417). In 1417 he invaded France again, conquering Normandy by the end of 1418. In the Treaty of Troyes (1420) he appeared to achieve complete victory: he was recognized as ''heir of France'' and secured the title by dynastic marriage to a daughter of the House of Valois, even though his claim was rejected in fact by many Frenchmen. Henry died at age 35, leaving an expanded but unconsolidated empire to an infant son. The long war with France thus intensified after his death as the French rejected the inheritance provision of the ''perpetual peace'' of Troyes. The regents and Henry's successor lost most of his conquests during the 1430s and 1440s. English seapower also dissipated upon his death as most of his royal ships were sold off by the regency. See also *fire*; *piracy*; *uniforms*.

Suggested Reading: Christopher Allmand, *Henry V* (1992); M. Labarge, *Henry V: The Cautious Conqueror* (1975).

Henry VIII, of England (1491–1547). King of England. The young, virile Henry ascended the throne in 1509 but took little interest in government, much preferring hunts for wild game or women. Politics he left to his chief minister, Cardinal Thomas Wolsey (1471–1530), Archbishop of York, the most powerful English cleric since Thomas à Becket. In matters religious Henry was a loyal Catholic who wrote a scholarly treatise arguing against *Martin Luther*'s ideas. For this the pope granted him the honorific: ''Defender of the Faith.'' Along with the hunt Henry enjoyed a good war. In 1513 he invaded France in a vain attempt to recapture territories long since lost by his forebears, winning a meaningless skirmish against a handful of French knights at Guinegate, or the ''Battle of the Spurs'' (August 13, 1513). He also sent armies north to secure his border against a Scottish invasion. At *Flodden Field* the Scottish king, James IV (1488–1513), was killed, after which the frontier was pacified for a generation. Henry used the time for self-absorbed splendor and indulging his lusts, while Wolsey governed the realm with an extraordinary free hand. In 1521–1522, Henry launched the foolhardy and ill-fated ''Great Enterprise,'' an invasion of France for which he was preposterously ill-prepared. His ally was *Charles V*, Holy Roman Emperor and King of Spain. With the aid of Pope Leo X, Charles took Milan from France in 1521. When

Charles won his great victory over *Francis I* at *Pavia* (1525) without Henry's aid, England was denied any spoils of war. Henry proposed that the captive French king be executed, portending his later solution to all thorny issues of legitimacy. Charles refused and also declined Henry's proposal to partition and annex large parts of France. Henry never forgave the slight or what he thought was a lost opportunity. He became a lifelong enemy of the German emperor.

Though always concerned with affairs of the heart, or at least the bedroom, Henry now took a closer interest in affairs of the realm. Wolsey was dismissed from all civil offices and had his property seized by the king (1529), dying in disfavor and disgrace in 1530. The Cardinal was treated with such rank ingratitude for failing to secure an annulment of Henry's marriage to Catherine of Aragon from Pope Clement VII. Henry claimed the marriage was illegitimate, unlawful, and immoral, since he had bedded his brother's widow. The real reasons for seeking annulment were Catherine's failure to produce a male heir and the king's rising lust for Anne Boleyn. But a princess of Aragon was not lightly discarded in a world where the Habsburgs ruled much of Europe. Charles V was Catherine's nephew, and he intervened with the pope to deny Henry's annulment request. Henry's blood was up—Anne held him at sexual bay until he delivered on his courtship promise to make her Queen. Breaking with the pope and the wider Catholic world, Henry divorced Catherine by fiat. He married Anne on January 25, 1533, thereby conceiving the *Protestant Reformation* in England. In 1635, to his lasting disgrace, Henry carried out the execution of his erstwhile chancellor, Sir Thomas More. The legally and morally murky circumstances by which Henry married Anne left a cloud of illegitimacy over their daughter, *Elizabeth I*, which would plague her entire reign. Easily bored once his lusts were satisfied and still without a male heir, Henry had Elizabeth's mother executed on May 19, 1536, on trumped-up charges of treason.

Henry claimed the marriage was illegitimate, unlawful, and immoral, since he had bedded his brother's widow.

While this domestic drama played out Henry was busy at serious governmental reform. He called the famous ''Reformation Parliament'' in 1529, instructing it to pass a series of extraordinary statutes that reshaped the governmental and religious face of England over the next several years, not least because Parliament declared the sovereign supreme in all matters ecclesiastical (May 15, 1532). By asserting royal supremacy in religion through these Acts, Henry gave the unfolding English Reformation a legal basis and confirmed its moderate character (most changes affected ritual rather than dogma). He also ensured that the coming struggle over a divided faith in the Three Kingdoms centered on succession to the English throne and the crown's relation to the English Church. The English Reformation retained its moderate character until the question of which sovereign in England was supreme—Parliament or the king—led to the enormous religious and constitutional upheaval of the *English Civil Wars* of the mid-17th century. Henry cemented the Reformed Religion in place by dissolving the great monasteries

of England to seize their wealth, which he took mostly for himself but shrewdly also distributed among the higher nobility to buy loyalty. Most of this treasure was wasted in serial small wars, for which bronze bells ripped from the monasteries were literally recast as cannon. In his final years Henry descended into ever more sordid personal and dynastic acts, just as he grew more corpulent and corrupt in his person. Jane Seymour followed Anne Boleyn to Henry's bed and in time gave birth to *Edward VI*, a male heir but a sickly youth. Three more wives followed: Anne of Cleves (divorced), Catherine Howard (beheaded), and Katherine Parr (who outlived him). *Thomas Cromwell* also went to the block for having recommended Anne of Cleves to Henry and otherwise serving his king, and himself, too well.

In his early years Henry had sought to catch up with continental rivals militarily. His enemies and allies alike were far ahead of England in the growing professionalization of their militaries, and in use of *gunpowder weapons*, especially artillery. Henry's most significant military move came not in battle but in setting up royal armories and gun foundries and promoting cast iron cannon manufacture. In this he was aided by England's exceptional iron ore deposits and rich forests (for making charcoal). To these resources he added imported and highly skilled foreign gunsmiths. He had *sakers* and other smaller cannon cast in England but imported large *bombards* and siege *mortars* from Germany and Flanders. He built expensive but ineffective artillery forts along England's southeastern coast to ward off an invasion that was not really threatened during his reign. In 1543 he again waged wasteful war in France, to no lasting gain beyond a mere technical feat of arms at *Thérouanne*. In 1544 his army besieged and took *Boulogne*, but it was sold back to France after his death. And in 1545 he had Edinburgh burned in a failed effort to reduce Scotland. In naval affairs, Henry added several "*Great Ships*" to the Navy Royal. In general, he lacked the strategic sense of his predecessor, Henry VII, and the diplomatic skill of his daughter and ultimate successor, Elizabeth I. They both understood in ways that escaped Henry VIII's ken that England was a minor power and best served by a policy of cautious isolation from the struggle underway between the titans of Valois and Habsburg. A light touch of nuisance-making in increasingly Protestant northern Europe might be all that was needed to deflect those Catholic giants away from England into entangling wars with each other. Instead, Henry pursued rash but spectacular interventions for which he lacked proper military means and which worked against England's strategic interests. See also *artillery*; *Henri II, of France*; *Kildare Rebellion*; *"King's Two Bodies"*; *Mary Tudor*.

Suggested Reading: H. M. Smith, *Henry VIII and the Reformation* (1948); D. Starkey, *The Reign of Henry VIII* (1986).

herald. In ancient and medieval diplomacy a herald was a minor official who announced the arrival of peace envoys and invoked religious sanction and the protections of diplomatic immunity. In war, heralds formally notified a castle or town that a siege had begun, arranged truces and parlays, and negotiated ransoms for prisoners. In Medieval Europe heralds were also

responsible for interpreting and upholding aspects of the chivalric code. Heralds were displaced by the creation of permanent diplomatic missions during and after the *Italian Renaissance*. However, as late as the *Thirty Years' War*, on May 19, 1635, a French herald was sent to the marketplace in Brussels to read out a formal declaration of war against Spain.

Herat, Battle of (1221). See *Mongols*.

Herat, Battle of (1598). See *Abbas I*; *Uzbeks*.

heresy. See *Affair of the Placards*; *Albigensian Crusade*; *Anabaptism*; *Arianism*; *Arminianism*; *Assassins*; *Buddhism*; *caliphate*; *Calvinism*; *Catholic Church*; *chambre ardente*; *Ecumenical Councils*; *Eighty Years' War*; *English Civil Wars*; *expulsion of the Jews*; *expulsion of the Moors*; *Ferdinand II, Holy Roman Emperor*; *flagellants*; *Francis I*; *French Civil Wars*; *Henri II, of France*; *Hussite Wars*; *Index Liborum Prohibitorum*; *Inquisition*; *Islam*; *Ismaili*; *Knights Templar*; *Lollards*; *Luther, Martin*; *Nichiren Shoni*; *Orthodox Churches*; *Philip II, of Spain*; *Philip III, of Spain*; *Philip IV, of Spain*; *Protestant Reformation*; *Richelieu, Cardinal Armand Jean du Plessis de*; *sacre* (2); *Safavid Empire*; *Savonarola, Girolamo*; *Seljuk Turks*; *shi'ia Islam*; *Thirty Years' War*; *sunni Islam*; *witchcraft*; *Zwingli, Huldrych*.

Héricourt, Battle of (November 13, 1474). This first field battle of the *Burgundian Wars* resulted when a Swiss army, supported by minor allied contingents from Austria and Alsace, besieged the Burgundian garrison town of Héricourt. A column of some 12,000 mercenaries was sent to relieve Héricourt by *Charles the Rash*, who was engaged besieging the Lower Rhine town of Neuss. The Burgundians built a large *Wagenburg* outside the Swiss lines, then forayed cavalry toward Héricourt to draw out the Swiss. But the Swiss had heard of the Burgundian Wagenburg and were already on their way to attack it. The Burgundian horse turned back toward their field fortification but were caught between two bodies of Swiss. The highly effective tactics of the mature *Swiss square* combined with the usual ruthlessness and aggressiveness of Swiss infantry to overwhelm the Burgundians. The Swiss suffered few casualties but nearly annihilated the entire relief column. Charles did not learn much from this encounter, however: he would again overestimate his strength, blunder, and lose even more severely to the Swiss at *Grandson*.

Hermandad(es). "Civic Brotherhood(s)." Town-based militia in medieval Iberia. The Hermandades were the backbone of military organization of the Christian armies of the late *Reconquista*. They organized as militias in imitation of the successful Muslim *rabitos*. They supplemented Castilian and Aragonese men-at-arms and the knights of the Iberian *Military Orders*. The martial skills of these town brethren did not suffice during the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559), where they soon were replaced by the tougher, better armed and armored men of the *tercios*. See also *Spanish Army*.

hermangildas. Small groups of Iberian farmers banded together for self-defense against raids (*razzia*). These served as a model for later town militia, the *Hermandades*. In addition, two frontier hermangildas evolved into full *Military Orders*: *Alcántara* and *Calatrava*.

Herrings, Battle of the (1429). See *Rouvray, Battle of*.

hetman (*otaman*). The armies of Poland-Lithuania were commanded by hetmans, a military office held for life and enjoying wide powers. Given reliance on *contributions*, the office of hetman was also highly lucrative to its holder. Hetmans participated in Commonwealth politics, though usually only as a potential rival to a weak monarch or a rally point for the political opposition. Poland and Lithuania each had a Grand Hetman nominally in charge of all their military operations. In fact, these officers usually were resigned to giving out loose strategic directions. On the march or during a siege a Field Hetman made the key maneuver, tactical, and other operational decisions.

Hexham, Battle of (1464). See *Wars of the Roses*.

Highland galley. See *birlin*; *galley*; *lymphad*.

hijra. See *Islam*.

Hinduism. An umbrella term for the varied beliefs of 80–85 percent of medieval India's population, as well as significant historic populations in Java, Nepal, Burma, and Indochina. Ancient India was conquered by the ''Aryans,'' Indo-European, Sanskrit-speaking tribes which spilled out of the Caucasus and Central Asia around 2000 B.C.E. Their migration was multifaceted, fracturing into Greek, Germanic, Italic, Celtic, Iranian, Sanskritic, and Hindi peoples who moved in nearly every direction and remade the history of Europe and the Mediterranean as well as India. The Aryan migration-cum-conquest of India is conventionally dated to c.1500 B.C.E., when their cavalry armies overran less militarily proficient Indian city-states. The Aryan conquerors subsequently intermingled with the indigenous population to form a new ruling elite, while also absorbing much from the peoples they had mastered. It was long thought that the Aryan conquest destroyed India's ancient urban civilizations, but that thesis is now widely disputed; catastrophic ecological and economic changes have been offered as competing explanations. Aryan contribution to the rise of classical Indian civilization is also moot. Some evidence suggests that—contrary to the conclusions of earlier historians who saw the Aryans as having civilized a more primitive India—they were in fact semi-barbarians, the Mongols of an distant age, organized for war but inferior in cultural terms to the more advanced city-dwellers and cultures of Gangetic India which they overran. On the other

hand, the Aryans were singularly responsible for writing the *Vedas* (magical incantations and hymns with assumed scriptural form, reverence, and veneration) and they thus contributed importantly to the development of Brahman Hinduism. That syncretic religion combined pre-Aryan indigenous cults of worship with the institution of Aryan priesthood and Aryan traditions of sacrifice and elaborate ritual (''Brahmanas,'' or ''manuals of ritual''). And Aryans composed the *Upanishads*, key texts of secret knowledge of the path to salvation. These deeply influenced Indian systems of belief and contributed to the reformation of Hindu society, along with a new rigidification of the caste system. Also, the Aryans introduced Sanskrit, giving license to an efflorescence of much wider Indian literature, poetry, and spiritual speculation.

Recognizable Hinduism emerged many centuries after the Aryan conquest but before the rise of the Gupta kingdoms. It, too, was a highly syncretic belief system drawing from Buddhism, Jainism, and even early Christianity, with strong influences from the *Vedas* and Brahmanism of Aryans. Hinduism's main books of scripture were settled as the *Vedas*, the *Upanishad*, and the *Bhagavad-Gita*. These works and the intellectual tradition they recorded established formal law and taught broad tolerance and respect for all life. Also finding expression in Hinduism were pre-Aryan Indian myths, devotional cults, and many local folk beliefs. Yoga, one of six ''schools'' (''darshana'') of classical Hindu philosophy, probably antedated the Aryan conquest of the subcontinent in some form. The other schools of Hindu thought were Samkhya, Nyāya, Vassesika, Pūrva-mīmānsa, and Vedānta. All of these traditions emerged more fully developed during and after the 6th century C.E. Hinduism is only quasi-polytheistic: at the elite, if not at the local folk level, it always had a strong monotheistic principle at its core, as reflected in the view that all sub-deities were really different aspects of the trinity of Brahma, Vishnu, and Shiva. It suggested that spiritual learning through reincarnation was a pathway to perfection of the spirit and eventual unity with the deity (godhead).

Hindu scripture and practice also supported and underwrote an elaborate caste system. This originated in an idealized Vedic class division of Hindus by Aryans according to skin color (''varna'') and social status. The four broadest varnas (color categories or castes) were brahman, kshatriya, vaishya, and shudra, each ranked morally and socially by the degree of ''pollution'' which attached to its members at birth. The class of ''untouchables'' (''harijan'') developed later, as a lower-ranking ''fifth caste'' or ''out caste'' (''panchamas'') for those shudra (or ''dasas'') in the most menial occupations, which were considered wholly ''unclean'' by all the higher castes. The caste system thus arose not just from socio-economic forms and conquest, though both played a role, but also from Hindu-Aryan ritual and ideas of religious and racial taboo. Thus, an even older, pre-Aryan ''jati (birth group) system,'' which determined one's occupation, worked to subdivide each varna class into many hundreds of sub-castes. This complex socio-economic and political arrangement, sustained in religious guise and with ritual sanction, varied even further in India's diverse regions. Although there was some social mobility

among castes, overall the caste system hobbled economic development by decreasing incentive and erecting barriers to upward mobility based upon occupation and merit. This kept a large portion of India's population restricted to subsistence agriculture and other forms of menial, unproductive labor. In turn, that limited their purchasing power as consumers and retarded development of a merchant/middle class and service sector. Those problems were only compounded by a deeply rooted misogyny in Indian society, whether Hindu or Muslim.

Hinduism developed complex theories of ''karma'' (action) and samsāra (metaphyschosis), in which every good or evil action has repercussions at some point: the sum of past karma determined the course and stature of one's present lifetime. This evolved into a profoundly negative view of material life, in which cyclical suffering predominated and accidents of birth and caste position were instead seen as incarnations of moral judgment on one's past deeds. On the other hand, much of Hinduism in practice—as was also the case with medieval Christianity—derived not from points of scripture or elaborate theology but from local folk traditions and cults of worship. Bhakti Hinduism, for example, involved deep devotion to Shiva and Vishnu and their various incarnations (Avatars). In its early form in southern India, it was greatly intolerant and led to widespread violence against Buddhists and Jains. Members of both those older, rival confessions were slaughtered or driven from large areas of India they had historically occupied.

. . . the sum of past karma determined the course and stature of one's present lifetime.

Suggested Reading: A. L. Basham, *The Origins and Development of Classical Hinduism* (1989); Jeaneane Fowler, *Hinduism: Beliefs and Practices* (1997); Burton Stein, *A History of India* (1998).

Hispaniola. This large Caribbean island was inhabited by Arawak Indians when discovered by Columbus in 1492. As the Arawak died off from disease and mistreatment African slaves were imported in large numbers to work a growing plantation economy located mainly on the eastern part of the island. From this base *conquistadores* fanned out to conquer the other islands of the Caribbean, and then the *Aztec* and *Inca* empires. In the 16th century French ''boucaniers'' (*buccaneers*) so harried Spanish trade and shipping that in 1603 all Spanish settlers on the north coast of Hispaniola were resettled elsewhere. The buccaneers then moved in, transposing their language onto the slave population during the course of the 17th century in a French colony known as St. Domingue (Haiti), which was only formally ceded to France by Spain in 1697.

hobelars. A class of lightly armed and armored horse archers and lancers peculiar to medieval England, though actually Irish in origin. They were named for their ponies, or ''hobelins.'' Their first recorded appearance was in

the early *Scottish Wars*, under *Edward I*. They did not fight from horseback but rode to battle as early *dragoons*. This required that they own a cheap nag or hackney, but not a *warhorse* out of their financial and social reach such as a *rouncey* or *destrier*. Hobelars were deployed as inexpensive auxiliaries to English *heavy cavalry* and in marcher wars in Ireland and Scotland where terrain made longbowmen and heavy horse ineffective. See also *stradiots*; *turcopoles*.

Hochmeister. The commanding officer of the *Teutonic Knights*.

Höchst, Battle of (June 20, 1622). The army of the *Catholic League* under *Johann Tilly* and an allied Spanish army moved north from the Palatinate to Main to block *Christian of Brunswick* from linking forces with *Graf von Mansfeld*'s mercenaries. Christian was caught at the bridgehead at Höchst with about 12,000 men and little artillery, trapped by a much larger force under Tilly. Under heavy fire, Christian held a tight defensive perimeter with a blocking force while his main body crossed. He lost most of his baggage train and nearly 2,000 men, but managed to escape with the rest and join Mansfield. Two months later their conjoined armies beat the Catholics at *Fleurus*.

Hofkriegsrat. The Imperial War Council of the *Holy Roman Empire*. It controlled, at the maximum, about 25,000 Imperial troops. These were mostly called up from the ''armed provinces'' of the Empire and were in fact controlled by the electoral princes. These were impossibly divided during the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648), rendering the Hofkriegsrat ineffectual.

Hohenzollern. A north European dynasty with roots traceable to 9th-century Swabia. In 1165 the house split into two lines. The Franconian line received the electorate of Brandenburg from Holy Roman Emperor *Sigismund* in 1415, and later founded the rising state of Brandenburg-Prussia. It acquired East Prussia in 1618.

Holk, Heinrich (1599–1633). Mercenary field marshal. He fought for Denmark in the 1620s and withstood the siege of *Straslund* (1628) by *Albrecht von Wallenstein*. In 1630 he went over to the Imperial side, taking a cavalry command (''Holk's Horse'') under Wallenstein. He was an enthusiastic collector of *contributions*, ravaging Protestant Saxony especially hard. He was chased from the field at *Lützen* (1632) by the Swedish horse under *Gustavus Adolphus*. Holk died ingloriously, of the plague.

Holy Lands. See *Crusades*; *Hejaz*; *Holy Places*; *Jerusalem*; *Military Orders*.

Holy League (France). See *Catholic League (France)*.

Holy League (Italy). ''Sacra Ligua.'' An anti-French coalition formed in 1495 in response to the French invasion of Italy. It was comprised of Spain, the

Holy Roman Emperor, the pope (as ruler of the *Papal States*), Milan, and Venice. Later, Venice was excluded out of papal enmity and territorial jealousy. See also *Italian Wars*; *Cambrai, League of*; *Novara, Battle of*; *Preveza, Battle of*.

Holy Office. See *Inquisition*.

Holy Places. Sites of spiritual importance to one or other of the three main faiths that originated in the Middle East: Christianity (Catholic, Orthodox and Protestant), Islam (sunni and shi'ia), and Judaism. They included the Dome of the Rock mosque, the Church of the Holy Sepulcher, the ''Wailing Wall'' (the surviving remnant of the Temple of Solomon), the Tomb of David, and other tombs of divers prophets.

Holy Roman Empire (of the German Nation). A mostly Germanic empire, but at times including also parts of northern Italy, Bohemia, Flanders, the duchies of Schleswig-Holstein, and some Swiss cantons. It was established in 962 C.E. by Otto I, ''the Great'' (912–973). It was self-consciously modeled on the empire of Charlemagne, which also maintained the fiction that it was the linear successor to the Roman Empire in the West. Otto succeeded in uniting most of Germany, Italy, and Burgundy into a medieval empire of overlapping vassalge. From the beginning the Empire was at odds with France: Otto invaded France, then ruled by Louis IV, in 942 and again in 948. For centuries emperors competed with the popes for primacy within Latin Christendom while also cooperating with the papacy to prevent the rise of challengers to either from among the barony and minor kings of Germany. Emperors were crowned by popes and claimed supreme temporal authority over all Christians in greater Germany. During this period the defenses of the Empire, which was still a frontier state facing multiple barbarian threats, were organized into eight military districts known as *Marches*. These were, north to south: Billungs, Nordmark, Lusatia, Misnia, Ostmark (Austria), Styria, Carinthia, and Carniola. The main military activity was fending off Slavic raiders, along with larger campaigns over the Alps into Italy called the ''expeditio ultra Alpes.''

In the 11th century, papal–imperial relations were rent by the ''Investiture Controversy'' over whether popes or secular rulers should appoint local bishops. This was crucial since several sees hosted Imperial electors who chose the emperors. Investiture itself was a feudal ceremony that granted a fief or clerical office to a vassal, and few fiefs in Europe were as valuable as bishoprics and abbeys which were held by lords both temporal and religious. The emperors had long asserted a right of ''lay investiture,'' and as the Church entered one of its cyclical convulsions of reform enthusiasm, those seeking to eliminate corrupt practices focused on lay investiture. In 1075, Pope Gregory VII forbade the practice, but Emperor Henry IV (r.1084–1105) refused to accept papal appointees. For this ''disobedience'' he was excommunicated in 1076. In theory, that dissolved all bonds of vassalage binding barons, dukes,

and princes of the Empire to the emperor. This was a radical papal challenge to Imperial power and it launched the ''Wars of Investiture'' (1077–1122). The excommunication initially proved a near fatal blow to the emperor's perceived legitimacy, forcing Henry IV to ''go to Canossa'' in 1077 to perform public penance before Gregory. He groveled and gained absolution and lifting of the interdict on Church services and sacraments that accompanied the excommunication. War came anyway, during which Henry—who did not regain Gregory's favor but did recover enough legitimacy in the eyes of his subjects that he saved his crown—organized a conclave to elect a more friendly pope, Clement III. In 1084, Henry took Rome and installed Clement. However, Clement was chased from Rome by Norman knights from southern Italy, rough allies of Pope Gregory who reinstated him after sacking his city. The sack of Rome left the populace so opposed to Gregory that it quickly became prudent for him to withdraw. Henry was then forced to abdicate (1105) by relatives and other members of the Imperial party who feared a long-term breach with the papacy would undermine the dynasty's claim to the throne. Thus began a battle between popes and emperors that would last several centuries. Ultimately, the Investiture controversy severely undermined the temporal and spiritual authority of popes and emperors, in time helping to clear the way for the rise of local monarchs across Europe.

In 1156 the dukes of Austria were granted the ''Privilegium minus,'' which excused them from long-distance military expeditions. In 1212, Bohemia was dispensed from its military obligations by payment of a lump sum of silver. These territories remained part of the Empire in name, but grew more distant and independent in fact. An imperial succession crisis from 1250 to 1273, ''The Great Interregnum,'' reduced parts of the Empire to military anarchy after 1250. At its close Count Rudolf of Habsburg was elected ''King of the Romans.'' Thereafter, secure control of the Holy Roman Empire was the central preoccupation of the Habsburgs, who brought mystical imagery and belief in a Catholic mission to their reign in Germany. The affairs of central Europe and the Balkans were another Habsburg concern, as myriad German-speakers migrated into once Slavic lands as far east as the Vistula, led by a powerful but fractious nobility and warrior monks such as the *Sword Brothers* and *Teutonic Knights*. The murder of Albert I in 1308 led to ascension of a Luxemburg dynasty to the Imperial throne, causing high tension between Habsburg designs in Germany and Luxemburg dependence on Bohemia for electoral support. In 1356 the ''Golden Bull'' was forced on Emperor Charles IV. This recognized local rights and established election procedures by which seven ''*Kurfürsten*'' (''Elector Princes''), three bishops, and four territorial princes chose the emperor. These electors were autonomous rulers acting through representatives who met in the *Reichstag* (Imperial Diet) at Ratisbon, with representation also for hundreds of large and petty dukedoms, bishoprics, baronies, fiefdoms, and free cities. To many, the Empire seemed to be in terminal decline at the start of the 15th century. However, in 1438 the Habsburgs united the Austrian, Hungarian, Bohemian, and German crowns through a series of dynastic marriages. From 1504 to 1508, Emperor

Maximilian I instituted modernizing military reforms, including setting up a royal foundry in Innsbruck and lesser foundries elsewhere. These cast iron and bronze cannon of various quality and caliber, from great *bombards* known as ''Hauptstuke'' to small ''falconettes'' and other early field artillery which could be pulled by just one horse.

With the ascension to the throne of *Charles V* in 1519 it seemed to many that a great military and imperial revival might be underway centered on events in the Holy Roman Empire. At that moment, Europe was sundered by the first soundings of the *Protestant Reformation*. In Germany this led to confessional division and then warfare between the emperor and some territorial princes, culminating in war with the *Schmalkaldic League* from 1546 to 1547. A general truce was achieved on the religious issue in the *Peace of Augsburg* (1555), which instituted partial religious toleration for Lutherans. Charles left the Imperial stage that year, dividing his vast inheritances between Austrian and Spanish branches of the Habsburg dynasty. In Germany, Augsburg helped avoid war over the religious question for 60 years. Under *Maximilian II* and even the erratic and actively anti-Protestant *Rudolf II*, Germany was relatively peaceful into the early 17th century. This was the case even though France descended into religious civil war and Habsburg cousins in Spain, *Philip II* and *Philip III*, conducted a protracted Catholic crusade against Protestantism in northern Europe. However, beneath the surface peace debate over the emperor's constitutional position was unresolved and had become fixed to permanent religious conflict. Protestant princes were deeply loyal to the Empire, but felt the tug of reform subjects who demanded defense of their religious and legal rights against emperors and courts increasingly devoted to the *Counter-Reformation*. The stage was thus set for a great struggle, and eventually a great war, to reinterpret constitutional meanings in an ancient empire newly split by tri-confessionalism. Perhaps only war could resolve the attendant question of whether Germany's territorial princes, Catholic and Protestant alike, were merely *Estates* of a larger and far more powerful monarchy, or themselves sovereign, joined in a voluntary confederation of over 1,000 polities, which in 1600 contained 20 million souls. Of the Empire's component polities, eight large and populous principalities were key: Bavaria, Bohemia, Brandenburg, Hesse, the Palatinate, Saxony, Trier, and Württemberg. None could dominate the Empire, but neither could the Habsburgs of Austria. And all efforts to establish a joint *standing army* were frustrated by refusal of the Imperial Diet to vote the necessary funds.

The great crisis of 1618–1648 had roots in the paralysis of Imperial institutions (the *Imperial Diet*, *Hofkriegsrat*, *Reichskreis*, Chancery, Aulic Council, and Imperial Tribunal). Erosion of the great religious and constitutional compromise of the Peace of Augsburg accelerated as all Europe headed toward war. Institutions and principles alike fell into disuse and disdain without being fundamentally challenged on grounds of legitimacy. Instead, they unraveled from the 1580s as Rudolf II supported the Counter-Reformation and the Chamber Court of the Empire repeatedly ruled to restore secularized estates and benefices to the Catholic Church. In 1588, Catholic bishops in the

Court refused to sit the Protestant bishop of Magdeburg. In 1600, Protestant princes paralyzed the ''Deputationstag,'' a subunit of the Diet, by abstaining from its deliberations. The first overt military move was Imperial occupation of the free city of Donauwörth in 1607, in behalf of a Catholic minority at war with the Protestant majority and town council. This violated the traditional right of each of the Reichskreis to maintain internal peace, and that provoked the founding of the *Protestant Union* in 1608. Bavaria and southern Catholics responded by founding of the *Catholic League* in 1609. Both steps further divided the Empire on confessional lines and moved it closer to war.

From 1609 to 1614 inability to resolve a succession crisis in *Jülich-Kleve* demonstrated the Empire's precipitous fall from real authority on the ground, and dangerous connections between German princes and external allies and interests. Within four more years these would propel Germany into the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). That great conflict began with a crisis over who would succeed as king of Bohemia, and thus exercise the deciding vote for the new emperor as an Imperial elector. An awful war was extended and widened by the fanatic Catholicism of *Ferdinand II*, whose overreach united the princes against him, prolonged the war, and ensured that outside powers intervened in German affairs. The primary beneficiary of the effective demise of the Holy Roman Empire by 1648 was France, which emerged as first among equals among the Great Powers of the European state system as ratified by the *Peace of Westphalia*. Lacking any standing army, permanent corps of state officials, or central organs of government—at a time when other monarchies in Europe were beginning to build centralized nation-states—the Holy Roman Empire was thereafter a mere constitutional shell. It was kept in place by component members because this appeared to protect their freedoms from the larger powers which surrounded Germany, but it also allowed external powers to control parts of Germany, keeping it divided and weak as they added bits of its latent strength to theirs. See also *German Peasant War*; *Imperial Army*; *Livonian Order*; *Reichsgrafen*; *Reichsstädte*.

Suggested Reading: James Bryce, *The Holy Roman Empire* (1892; 1978); John R. Hale et al., *Europe in the Late Middle Ages* (1965); Friedrich Heer, *The Holy Roman Empire* (1968); R. E. Herzstein, ed., *The Holy Roman Empire in the Middle Ages* (1966).

Holy Union. See *Catholic League (France)*.

"holy war." The notion that war is imbued with religious purpose was a persistent approach to armed conflict in many eras and societies. For a ''holy warrior'' (soi-dissant), one's own cause was seen as perfectly just and oneself as entirely moral, while the enemy was perceived as the personification of evil and battle as an all-out contest between forces of light and forces of darkness. Many faiths have engaged in ''holy war,'' though under various names. The most prominent historically were the warrior faiths of Islam and Christianity. For Muslims the doctrine of ''jihad'' dates from the founding of the Faith, to the teaching and leadership of the Prophet Muhammad. Jihad is translated as ''striving [in the path of God],'' by some modern Islamic scholars, who

interpret it as a moral command to individual self-improvement rather than a collective obligation to armed defense of the Faith. Historically, however, the majority of Islamic jurists considered jihad—identified as one of the five fundamental duties or ''pillars'' of Islam—as armed struggle against pagans, infidels, and apostates and ''heretics.'' As a core obligation, this more militant understanding was codified in the sharia (Islamic law), which explicitly delineated when force could be used, against whom, and under what circumstances, as well as detailing when mercy in war should be offered. If a jihad was offensive in character (intended to spread the Faith), it was deemed the responsibility of the whole community of the Faithful. In practice, that meant military volunteers who expected, and enjoyed, broad public support. If the jihad was one of defense of Islamic lands or people against external enemies, which was its main meaning, it became the obligation of all able-bodied Muslim males (women were strictly forbidden to participate in military jihad).

The original jihad of the 7th century, led by the Prophet Muhammad himself, was waged against the pagans of the Arabian peninsula. Launched from Medina, it gained control of the traditional holy places in Mecca, uniting them in the territory called the Hejaz. It was underwritten by sincere spirituality as well as material greed and took place within a context of historic unification of the Bedouin tribes into an Arab nation. For Allah and booty, desert warriors riding under the green banners of Islam swarmed out of Arabia into Syria and Anatolia, through Egypt, across North Africa, and into Iberia. Only at the *March* of the Franks was the high tide of the first Islamic jihad stopped, in 732 C.E., by a cobbled-together Frankish army under Charles Martel (''The Hammer,'' c.688–741), whose heirs headed the Carolingian dynasty. Eastward, the Arab jihad washed over Iran, converting that ancient civilization to Islam with the sword and with word of its success elsewhere. The Muslims later expelled the Crusaders from the Holy Land and pushed the failing *Byzantine Empire* out of Anatolia. As Bedouin power declined *Seljuk Turks* converted to Islam and renewed its *ghazi* expansion with the enthusiasm of fresh converts. Successive ''Turkish'' or slave (*Mamlūk*) dynasties adopted Islam and dominated the Middle East for the next 1,000 years.

If a jihad was offensive in character, it was deemed the responsibility of the whole community of the Faithful.

After converting to Islam the Ottomans defeated the last serious *shī'a* challenge to orthodoxy, confining the shī'a to Iran and isolated mountain valleys scattered across the Middle East. The Ottoman tide then washed into the Balkans and against the walls of Constantinople. That great fortress was finally overwhelmed by *Muhammad I* in 1453. The Ottoman surge carried to Vienna in 1529 before subsiding. Was this grand advance of the Ottoman Empire motivated primarily by jihad transmuted into rank imperial aggrandizement? For the most part, no. From the 16th century, the Ottoman Empire was a sophisticated and complex state in many ways more materialist and secular in its functioning than most states in Europe prior to the 18th

century. The sultans routinely employed Christian troops, notably in the *Militargrenze* along the frontier with the Habsburgs. While they used violent religious rhetoric concerning Christian enemies, this was more exhortation and propaganda than base motive that was (and is) common to most wars. And although they fought heterodox shī'a Muslims in Iran they did so mostly reluctantly and without railing about crushing ''heresy,'' lest they open religious fissures within their own Empire. Lastly, they tolerated a wide range of Islamic beliefs and practices as well as large communities of Christians and Jews. Rhoads Murphey is therefore right to conclude that ''Ottoman sultans, unlike the contemporary rulers of Reformation Europe, studiously avoided embroilment in what is often termed 'wars of religion.' ''

Second only to Islam historically in its penchant for ''holy war'' was Christianity. In the Christian world the tradition dates to the time of the Roman Emperor Constantine the Great (c.274–337 C.E.). He claimed a vision in which the Christian cross appeared in the heavens before a great battle in a Roman civil war, accompanied by the message ''In hoc signo vinces'' (''In this sign you shall conquer''). That remained the motto of repression of heretics in early Medieval Europe, the Crusades against Islam and for *Outremer*, the *Reconquista* in Iberia, and all 16th- to 17th-century wars between Catholic and Protestant. Latin Crusaders invaded the Muslim Middle East in the late 11th century, retaking Jerusalem during the First Crusade (1099). Christian invaders established several Crusader states in Palestine and Syria, some of which survived for nearly two centuries. They faced constant Muslim counterattacks organized by the main Islamic power in Egypt, and by the fanatic *Ismaili* sect of *Assassins*. Savage wars of Christian conquest were also waged by the *Teutonic Knights* against the pagan tribes of the Baltic region, to exterminate Wends and native Prussians, and to wipe out or convert pagan Lithuanians and Poles. The crusade in Iberia (the Reconquista) was a ''holy war'' as protracted migration-cum-invasion of Muslim *taifa* states. Drawn out over centuries, it concluded when the walls of the last emirate, the magnificent scholarly and trading city-state of *Granada*, fell before a Spanish gunpowder siege in 1492. The campaign provoked several jihads out of North Africa—Muslim counterattacks against the Christian counterattack. Granadine troops were assisted, but also swept aside, by powerful dynasties like the Almohads and Almoravids, Berber radicals from North Africa intent on retaking the fabled gardens of ''al-Andalus'' for Islam. In the end, Iberian Christians triumphed when *Ferdinand and Isabella* besieged Granada and accepted its negotiated surrender on January 2, 1492.

All that notwithstanding, one should not exaggerate the motive power of ''holy war'' for most ordinary soldiers, whether Muslim ghazis or Christian Crusaders. With rare exceptions, foot soldiers or sailors fought not for God but for money, or advancement, or their families and comrades, after their homes and farms were burned, or because they were forced to fight by more powerful men. In this era, as in most others, soldiers displayed a mix of motives ranging from vulgar and venial to the most ideal and romanticized. In short, the motives of warriors in the era of ''wars, of religion'' resembled those

of most soldiers in most countries in most other wars, including those of secular ages and civilizations. See also *Chaldiran, Battle of*; *Dar al-Harb*; *Dar al-Islam*; *just war tradition*; *Ottoman warfare*.

Suggested Reading: James T. Johnson and John Kelsey, *Cross, Crescent and Sword* (1990); P. Murphy, ed., *The Holy War* (1976).

Holy Water Sprinkler. A *staff weapon* of the late medieval period combining the main features of a multi-headed *mace*, or spiked flail, with the longer reach of a *lance*.

Homildon Hill, Battle of (1402). See *Scottish Wars*.

homosexuality. See *Henri III, of France*; *Knights Templar*; *Mary Stuart, Queen of Scots*; *military discipline*.

Homs, Battle of (1281). See *Mongols*.

Honganji fortress, Siege of (1570–1580). *Oda Nobunaga* had already occupied Kyoto and was well on his way to winning the first phase of the *Unification Wars* in Japan. To take the fortress headquarters of the *True Pure Land* Buddhist sect in Osaka he sent 20,000 troops, including 3,000 musketeers as well as *sōhei* from the *Negora Temple*. Honganji was protected by its position at the end of the Inland Sea. The defenders resisted Nobunaga for 10 years, holding out against his bombardments and assaults behind moats and dry ditches filled with straw fascines. The sectarians had guns, but far fewer than Nobunaga's men. In the end, Nobunaga forced Honganji to surrender via a sea blockade supporting his envelopment.

Hongwu emperor (r.1368–1398). ''Vast Military emperor,'' né Zhu Yuanzhang. Zhu was a peasant who rose to power through rebellion and sheer military exploits to become the founder of the Ming dynasty. His path to power was leveled by two decades of social, political, and military chaos in China following the ravages of the *Black Death* from c.1331 and a sudden change of course in the Yellow River in 1344, a colossal tragedy for China that also killed Zhu's whole family and left him a destitute beggar. He began his astonishing climb to the throne as a minor bandit, then a warlord fighting the Mongol (Yuan) dynasty as part of a radical ''White Lotus'' Buddhist sect know as the ''*Red Turbans*.'' Squat and famously ugly, he governed from his capital at Nanjing, which he captured in 1368 after breaking with the Red Turbans. In 1372 he sent several armies across the Gobi Desert to cut out the heart of Mongol power. In 1373, Hongwu sent 150,000 men into Mongolia some 600 miles north of Beijing. The Ming caught the Mongol horde encumbered with its women, children, and herds, defeated the fighters, and took nearly 80,000 Mongols prisoner as well as 50,000 horses. The Mongols were beaten by the Ming at the Tula River, but two months later a Mongol horde caught a Ming army strung out and exposed in the desert and savaged

it. It was another 15 years before the Ming again tried to quell the Mongols on the northern frontier and then they struck at Mongols in Manchuria, not Mongolia proper. Once again, as the campaign closed and the Ming withdrew, a pursuing Mongol force ambushed and destroyed a Ming detachment.

To hold the north Hongwu copied from the Yuan dynasty a system of frontier garrisons comprised of resident troops and their families, military colonies located at eight strategic choke points. He planned, and to some degree he succeeded in creating, a self-sufficient system of military-agricultural colonies that transferred the expense of border defense to the frontier itself. Meanwhile, he used a powerful *standing army* to prosecute the Ming conquest of southern China, though fighting continued throughout his reign: Ming armies pacified Sichuan province by 1371 but did not control all of Yunnan until two years after Hongwu's death. Hongwu was ferocious and intense by nature. He may have had good governing intentions to begin, but as his long reign passed he grew ever more cruel, suspicious, despairing, and bitter. In his later years swelling suspicion led to frequent bloody purges reminiscent of Josef Stalin in motivation, even if carried out on a 14th-century, nonindustrial scale: not only his enemies but their entire extended families, even whole communities, were wiped out. The usual method was beheading. In 1380 alone Hongwu butchered 40,000 people, most of whom were only nominally and distantly associated with a conspiracy against him led by a former prime minister. In his deepening isolation and paranoia Hongwu deliberately hamstrung the Chinese bureaucracy in order to concentrate all power in the Imperial Court (again, reminiscent of Stalin). Over time, that Imperial precedent and governing legacy meant that successive Ming courts became profoundly corrupt, detached from the people, and eunuch-dominated. Hongwu was succeeded, but only after four years of Ming civil war, by the *Yongle* emperor. See also *elephants*; *Great Wall*; *Tumu, Battle of*.

Honigfelde, Battle of (1629). See *Stuhm, Battle of*.

honjō. Japanese forts, mainly wooden and often supported by branch forts called *shijō*. They were prevalent in the *Sengoku* era. During the *Unification Wars* and under *Toyotomi Hideyoshi* most were razed by fire.

hook gun. See *hackbut*.

hoop-and-stave method. In the early days of gunpowder weapons in Europe small artillery pieces such as *"pots de fer"* were directly cast from iron, or more rarely, from expensive bronze (brass was not available until the early 16th century). Longer-barreled guns were beyond medieval casting ability. If their size and weight did not surpass the skills of gunsmiths they exceeded the technical capabilities and temperatures of existing forges. An alternative method was required to make larger cannon. It was found by adapting the practice of coopers, who made wooden barrels by fastening staves together with hoops. Cannon were assembled in a similar fashion: billets of heated iron were welded

together by placing them around a central wooden form (''mandrel''), then hammering hot hoops around the billets to fix long iron bars in place. When two dozen or more rings of iron were assembled around lengths of iron in this way they created a type of simple tube, termed a ''barrel'' from its manufacturing origin in cooping. This type of ''forged gun'' manufacture permitted breech-loaders to be built, although by the start of the 15th century most cannon were made as muzzle-loaders. There is strong evidence that this early method of assembling large cannon was used in China as well as Europe by the 13th century, but none to say which area was first, if one learned from the other, or if the inventions were wholly independent. A major problem with hoop-and-stave guns was that the smallest imperfection in a hammered weld or billet permitted violently expanding gasses to escape the barrel when the gun was fired, which meant it was liable to explode with deadly results for the crew. Even if a gun worked at first, repeated firings would in time open hairline fractures and imperfections in the metal or welds. Therefore, as casting methods and capabilities improved for larger pieces, the hoop-and-stave method was slowly abandoned. See also *bombard*; *corning/corned gunpowder*; *strategic metals*.

. . . the smallest imperfection . . . permitted violently expanding gasses to escape the barrel . . .

Hopton, Ralph (1598–1652). Cavalier general. He was mainly active in the southwest of England, especially in Cornwall, from 1642 to 1646. He won four small actions in 1643, at Bradock Down (January 19) and Stratton (May 16); he won again at Landsdown Hill (July 5), and beat *William Waller* a week later at Roundway Down (July 13). Hopton was beaten by Waller at Cheriton (May 29, 1644), where his 6,000 Royalists were pushed off the high ground by 10,000 Roundheads. He managed to keep his little army together and in the field for another two years, until he was defeated by *Thomas Fairfax* at Torrington. He went into exile in Flanders, where he died.

***Horasani* technique.** See *fortification*.

Hormuz. This island sited in the Strait of Hormuz was for centuries a key port in the rich Indian Ocean trade in spices, slaves, gold, and other goods. It was attacked by armed Portuguese led by *Alfonso de d'Albuquerque* in 1507. The assault was repulsed, but Hormuz fell to a second Portuguese attack in 1514. The Ottomans failed to retake it in several expeditions launched from 1551 to 1554. For over a century it served as a gateway to the Portuguese empire in India and East Asia. In 1622 it was captured by Emperor *Abbas I* of Iran in alliance with the *East India Company* (EIC). Abbas granted monopoly trade privileges to ''John Company'' but moved the main trading station to the mainland, sending Hormuz into terminal decline.

hornwork. In fortification, an outwork made of two *demi-bastions* joined by their own curtain wall, in turn connected to the main fortification by two

connecting walls. It took advantage of ground left outside the main *enceinte*. See also *crownwork*.

***horo*.** A cloth stretched over a wicker frame and bearing the insignia of a *daimyo*. It inflated as the horse and rider moved. It was the signature flag of a courier in Japanese warfare.

***hors de combat*.** ''Beyond battle.'' In *just war* doctrine this referred to a wounded enemy incapable of further fighting, who therefore reverted to the moral status of a civilian and was protected from further harm. This status also applied in theory to the clergy, unarmed lay folk, and any nonresisting townsfolk during a siege. It could even apply to religious edifices, mills, or other places of gainful but nonmilitary employment. In practice, the status was observed as much in the breach as the observance.

horse. Military idiom for *cavalry*, as in ''a thousand French horse advanced toward the English line.''

horse armor. See *armor*.

horseman's axe. See *axes*.

horses. See *barded horse*; *cavalry*; *destrier*; *dragoons*; *hackney*; *hobelars*; *logistics*; *palfrey*; *rouncey*; *sumpter*; *warhorses*.

Hospitallers. ''Order of the Hospital of St. John in Jerusalem.'' An international *Military Order* originally comprised of male nurses devoted to providing succor to Christian pilgrims in the ''Holy Land.'' It was founded in 1070 by Italian merchants from Amalfi. Following the capture of Jerusalem by the *First Crusade* the nursing brothers hired a number of *knights* with crusading experience in Iberia to protect pilgrims journeying to nearby holy sites and shrines, a service already offered by the *Knights Templar*. The Order of the Hospital was recognized by the papacy in 1113 and was much pampered by successive popes. Its first military action was in 1136, when the Order was given land to fortify and defend at Beit Jibrin, between Gaza and Hebron. In the 1140s the Brethren fended off Muslim raids into the Crusader states, after which more Hospitallers took up arms and accepted contracts to protect Latin castles and pilgrims. Soon this military function overshadowed the original nursing purpose of the Order: by 1187 it held over 20 key strongholds in the Holy Land, including the spectacular Krak des Chevaliers. However, the Brethren always took their hospital duties seriously. Perhaps that was because, unlike the rival Templars, Hospitallers permitted women in the Order. Like other military orders, they had four classes of Brethren: knights, sergeants, serving brothers, and chaplains. They also allowed *confrère knights*. Any knight catching leprosy was required to leave the main Order to join the Knights Hospitaller of St. Lazarus. Although few in number, the ''Lazars''

founded many leper asylums in Europe (200 in England alone), supported by *commanderies* in the Holy Land. In 1134 defense of Aragon itself was left to the Hospitallers and Templars. As Iberian Hospitallers were drawn more into the *Reconquista* fewer left as Crusader reinforcements for the Middle East. Still, the main concern of the Order remained *Outremer*.

When Jerusalem was recaptured for Islam in 1187 by the great warrior-prince *Salāh al-Dīn*, the Knights Hospitaller retreated to Acre. In the Muslim storming and sack of Acre in 1291 every Knight Hospitaller, Lazar, Knight of St. Thomas, and Teutonic Knight (except the Hochmeister) died fighting. Upon the loss of that last Crusader state in 1291, the Hospitallers withdrew to island strongpoints from which their long-established navy continued to fight ascendant Muslim power in the eastern Mediterranean. Along with other defeated Latins, surviving Hospitallers settled on Cyprus (1291) then Rhodes (1306). Although they benefitted hugely from persecution of the Templars, fear of similar treatment confirmed the Hospitallers in their decisions to make Rhodes their headquarters (1310) and to reorganize as a federation of national associations. From Rhodes they remained active as pirates (''Sea Brothers'') against Muslim and Christian ships alike. In 1344, in alliance with *Venice*, they captured Smyrna. In 1365 they captured Alexandria. In neither case could they hold what they took, and Muslim counterattacks soon retook both cities. In 1440 and 1480 the Hospitallers repelled two Muslim sieges of *Rhodes*. In 1522 they were finally defeated by the Ottomans; survivors were allowed to depart Rhodes (January 1, 1523). Already well-established and respected in Austria and Germany, in 1530 *Charles V* granted the Order sovereignty over Malta. It held that island as a Christian outpost in the Muslim eastern Mediterranean for several centuries. A much different and distant outpost was on St. Croix in the Virgin Islands. The *Protestant Reformation* led to suppression of Hospitaller branches in most Protestant countries, and confiscation of their great estates, although the Lazars continued a quiet, almost underground, existence in France and Italy. Attenuated in all ways, the Hospitallers remained in control of Malta until Napoleon dispensed with them in 1798. See also *battle cries*; *Johannitterorden*; *wounds*.

Suggested Reading: E. Bradford, *The Shield and the Sword* (1973); Helen Nicholson, *The Knights Hospitaller* (2001); Desmond Seward, *The Monks of War* (1972; 1995); Jonathon Riley-Smith, *The Hospitallers* (1999).

hostage-taking. Taking hostages as a means of enforcing peace terms or of deterrence against rebellion was an ancient practice, still common in medieval warfare, and not unknown in early modern warfare in Asia and Europe. The term ''a king's ransom'' meant literally the price of recovery of a king, whether taken by treachery or dehorsed in battle. In the late 16th century *Tokugawa Ieyasu* was given to a rival *daimyo* by his father at age 4 and served as a hostage until age 18. To ensure compliance with their overlordship the *Inca* took hostage the sons and families of rulers of conquered cities. In Europe hostage-taking and killing was upheld as legal and proper by leading jurists, including Johann Moser and Emerich de Vattel, well into the early

modern period. See also *Gustavus I*; *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*; *Poitiers, Battle of*; *siege warfare*.

Hotin, Battle of (1621). See *Khotyn, Battle of*.

hot shot. Heated shot, made of stone early on but of cast iron later. It was used in *siege warfare* to set fire to towns or fortifications. Less common and more dangerous in war at sea, it was nevertheless used to set fire to enemy rigging and decks, or in hope of exploding exposed powder beside the guns. A tripod holding a pan of hot coals heated the shot; these coals could also be used to light the slow match or heat a wire primer used to set off the cannon.

housecarls. The king of England's personal, household troops. Before the *Norman* conquest they were known as ''gesiths'' and later as ''thegns.'' The Norman term was ''familia.'' The housecarls formed a near-standing army that was tied to the king by blood or intimate family, or by oaths of loyalty, or tenancy on the king's lands. Some were foreign *knights*. Others were children of defeated rebels who sought to earn back the king's favor. Their numbers varied from a peacetime low of perhaps 40 to a wartime peak of several hundred or more. They formed the core of English royal armies in the medieval period.

Howard, Charles (1536–1624). Admiral Lord Howard of Effingham. Son of a Catholic, though displaying no sign of that faith himself, he was raised to Lord High Admiral by *Elizabeth I* in 1585. He was the overall commander of the English fleet that sailed to meet the *Invincible Armada* in 1588. He commanded the 1596 raid-in-force on Cadiz, accompanied by the *2nd Earl of Essex* and *Walter Raleigh*. For that successful undermining of Spanish naval power and prestige he was elevated to Earl of Nottingham. In 1601 he quashed Essex's abortive rising against Elizabeth.

howdah. A high platform perched on the back of a war *elephant*, carrying archers or javelin throwers.

Hsiang-Yang, Siege of (1268–1273). See *China*; *Mongols*.

Huguenots. French Calvinists. They formed a separate body of believers in an age and country where orthodoxy was associated with loyalty and ''heresy'' with sedition and rebellion. *Henri II* and his contemporaries, and numerous historians, believed that most Huguenots came from the lower social orders. This has been disputed in more recent studies. On the eve of the ''Wars of Religion'' in France they numbered about 1.8 million, or 10 percent of the population. Some communities were scattered over the north, particularly in Normandy where they enjoyed noble protection, but the majority were south of the Loire. There, traditional regional autonomy and animosity to northern rulers became linked to Protestantism and resistance to rising royal taxation

in several provinces. Almost no Huguenots lived in Brittany, Burgundy, Champagne, or Picardy. Significantly, in recently annexed Burgundy the question of local autonomy was associated with royal protection of Catholicism, not Protestantism, in large measure because the rich vineyards of the region were mostly owned by cathedral towns and monasteries and peasants were closely tied to the vines. Early on, Protestantism was most successful in the towns among literate classes of artisans and the professions. These communities were protected by local nobility, among whom Protestantism made early and disproportionate numbers of converts. Huguenots were predominant among French *boucaniers* in the Caribbean, with some based locally and others sailing from as far away as *La Rochelle*. In the 1540s Huguenot pirates attacked Havana and Santiago, Cuba. The Canary Islands were raided in 1552, as were many ports along the Spanish Main over the following decade. In 1555, Havana was taken by the Huguenot captain Jacques de Sores, who looted and burned the town and tortured and murdered all priests he found. Sores made smaller but similar raids against coastal towns of the Spanish Main for another 15 years. Most Huguenot corsairs took special pleasure in attacking the shipping and settlements of Catholic Spain, whatever the state of war or peace between Spain and France. They did not just plunder, rape, and kill; they desecrated Catholic churches in orgies of violent *iconoclasm*, killed priests and nuns, and burned out whole towns. The Spanish responded with two massacres of Huguenots, at *Fort Caroline* and *St. Augustine*.

The real test of Huguenot arms came inside France. Calvinist piety and independence presented a threat to the French crown and patronage interests, as the king controlled all Church appointments. Even more dangerous, Huguenots represented a threat of social and political heterogeneity which neither the crown nor the bulk of the French population was prepared to accept. *Jean Calvin* launched a mission to France in 1555 that aimed at recruiting nobles, and this made much headway in the Midi. Several Bourbons from Navarre converted, led by Queen Jeanne, daughter of *Francis I*. She raised her son, Henri de Navarre, the future *Henri IV*, in the reformed faith. Also converting were such key military men as Louis de Bourbon, Prince of *Condé* (killed at *Jarnac*), and *Coligny*, Admiral of France. Conversion of militarily skilled nobles—up to one-third of all French provincial nobility converted—was crucial to Huguenot hopes once fighting broke out in 1562, when the ''massacre'' at *Vassy* led Condé to issue a call to arms that began the protracted *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629). In 1574, in the wake of the *St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres* of 1572, a Huguenot federation was established in the Midi (''United Provinces of the Midi''). After the massacres, sharply reduced Huguenot numbers (many more abjured from fear than were killed or exiled) led to a change in tactics: Huguenot armies tended to use forests for cover and to set ambushes; they lived directly off the land and set up forts from which they sallied to eat out the countryside in Catholic areas.

A second low point in Huguenot fortunes came with the *Treaty of Nemours* in 1585. Huguenot fortunes improved once Henri de Navarre became king in

1589, even though he was not initially accepted by Catholics and ultimately was compelled to abjure five years later in order to actually mount the throne. Henri delivered peace of a sort to the Huguenots in the *Edict of Nantes*, but fighting resumed after his assassination in 1610. The end of Huguenot claims to be a distinct godly community and their ability to sustain a state-within-a-state came under *Louis XIII* and *Cardinal Richelieu*. They took the Huguenot capital of La Rochelle in 1628 and crushed all military resistance to royal authority, ending forever Huguenot military power and political independence within France. Survivors subsequently were driven out by Louis XIV, who finally and fully revoked the religious and civic toleration clauses of the Edict of Nantes in 1685. Some Huguenot refugees joined the militaries of adopted countries to fight France. Others migrated to the Americas or South Africa, where they blended with other refugee and Protestant populations.

They took the Huguenot capital of La Rochelle in 1628 and crushed all military resistance to royal authority . . .

Suggested Reading: Henry Baird, *The Huguenots and Henry of Navarre* (1886; 1970); Janine Garrison, *Protestants du Midi, 1559–1598* (1980); N. M. Sutherland, *The Huguenot Struggle for Recognition* (1980).

hulk. ''*Urca*.'' In the 15th–17th centuries, a class of three-masted, *clinker-built* merchant ship as big as 650 tons. A hulk or urca was usually armed and could serve as a warship. It was a later development from the original *cog*. It was widely used in the Baltic in the 16th century. The Spanish took a number of urcas along as supply ships with the *Invincible Armada*. Several wrecked off the west coast of Ireland.

Hunderpanzer. ''Dog armor.'' Armor for dogs of war was developed and used in Germany, Italy, Spain, and the Netherlands. In some places, armored war dogs wore ''Hunderpanzer'' into the 17th century. It usually consisted of heavily padded linen or hardened leather plates, often with a spiked collar. Some fully articulated suits of steel dog armor were produced in Germany, but probably for court display rather than battlefield use.

Hundred Years' War (1337–1453). In 1328 the young French king, Charles IV, ''The Fair'' (1294–1328) died. Two claimants to the throne stepped forward: England's *Edward III*, whose mother was sister to the deceased king; and *Philip VI*, ''The Fortunate,'' representing a competing dynastic line, the House of *Valois*. Under the *Salic Law*, which barred succession to women and to descendants in the female line, Edward's claim was denied in favor of Philip. In the long-running conflict between England and France that ensued the main issue was a contest for control of Normandy. The war was also stoked by discontent of Flemish cities with their French overlords and English attempts to monopolize the Flanders trade, and French aid to Scotland aimed at tying down English armies there. Still, the main casus belli was a raw territorial quarrel over Normandy and other provinces of France. The political

and dynastic conflict broke into open warfare in 1337 when Edward agreed to pay simple homage but not liege homage to Philip of France, as required of Edward as a feudal vassal of Philip with regard to holdings in Guyenne. Philip seized on this breach of formal obligation to proclaim all English territories in France forfeit, and moved to occupy them militarily. The war that followed greatly aggravated the suffering and dislocation of population caused by epidemics that raged wildly in the second half of the 14th century in nearly every country in Europe.

In 1339, Edward III crossed the English Channel with a largely mercenary army (partly paid for by the *Hanse*) to prosecute his claim to the French crown in the first of many great *chevauchées* that desolated large parts of France in a deliberate war of scorched earth and economic attrition. After losing a series of skirmishes the French wisely avoided further battle, retreating instead into fortified ''surety towns'' (*place de sûreté*). Edward brought with him some 15 cannon and about 40 kilograms of gunpowder, but this early artillery was not powerful enough to break stone defenses and was too clumsy and unreliable to use to any real effect on the battlefield. Repeated attempts to invade northern France failed due to the usual causes of poor logistics, insufficient finances, and unreliable weather, weapons, and troops. Indeed, English forays are best thought of not as efforts at conquest but as futile, indeed reckless, military parades by outnumbered English armies through the French countryside. On some occasions the French moved a field army to intercept and block English withdrawal. But these moves did not lead to what many anticipated would be catastrophic English defeat. Instead, spectacular English victories were won over a far more numerous enemy, partly due to the *longbow* deployed in support of new infantry tactics devised by Edward and earlier tested in his Scottish Wars. The longbow far outranged the crossbows wielded by mercenary Genoese serving the French. More importantly, English commanders took advantage of their enemy's inferior frontal assault tactics and obsolete weapons to draw French knights down upon longbowmen protected by terrain and *Spanish riders*. Thus, Edward's archers devastated great numbers of heavily armored French knights and men-at-arms at *Crécy* (1346). The year after that victory Edward besieged and took *Calais*. Then the war settled into a pattern of intermittent raids and sieges, as each side was ravaged by the arrival of a far greater foe, known in France as ''le morte bleue'' and in England as the *Black Death*.

In 1352 the quaintly chivalric ''Battle of the Thirty'' was fought, in which 30 French knights challenged and defeated 30 English knights in a lethal exhibition of mostly archaic tournament skills. That demonstrated knightly courage, but even more the rooted backwardness of the military culture of Europe's aristocratic warrior caste. In fact, knights were becoming irrelevant on the battlefield as combat was increasingly decided by armor-piercing missiles from longbows and crossbows deployed in ever larger numbers, joined later in the war by the arquebus, musket, and cannon. Facing these powerful projectile weapons an armored noble mounted on an armored warhorse became as militarily obsolete as he was overly expensive, socially

privileged, and politically reactionary. Even so, several crushing defeats of French chivalry would be needed to drive that point home, and drive *heavy cavalry* from the battlefield. A second great victory of English longbowmen over French heavy horse and mercenary Italian crossbowmen came at *Poitiers* (1356). There, King Jean II (''The Good,'' 1319–1364) was taken prisoner, held for a ''king's ransom,'' and compelled to sign a draconian peace with England (*Treaty of Brétigny*, 1360). There followed a decade of English dominance in which *routiers* accepted English silver to hold down hundreds of strongpoints and continued Edward's war of economic attrition against France even more brutally and successfully than in the great chevauchées of 1339–1360. English rule and taxes sat poorly with most French, however, and large-scale fighting resumed in 1369, once Charles V (r.1364–1380) reconstructed much of the government of France and its army. By the mid-1370s he won back much that had been lost at Poitiers, forcing numerous English garrisons and castles to capitulate.

By 1380 the burden of a protracted war fought mainly on French soil meant that financial and social strain reached crisis point. Bertrand the Guesclin, the ''Eagle of Brittany,'' led a sustained guerrilla resistance and forced the garrison at Châteauneuf-de-Randon to surrender (1380), but this did not drive the English from the country. France was only saved by England's distraction during the minority of Richard II (1367–1400), and the attendant succession struggle leading to Richard's dethronement and probable murder by Henry IV (1367–1413). In addition, a peasant revolt rocked England in 1381 while complications related to the *Great Schism* unsettled much of Europe from 1378. The 1380s saw a short period of French ascendancy in alliance with Castile against England. In 1387, however, an English fleet destroyed over 100 French and Castilian warships in the Channel, ending a French threat to land an army in England. Thereafter, both monarchies hovered near bankruptcy and fought only limited campaigns in France. It was not until the ascent of a vigorous and aggressive new king, *Henry V*, that England reasserted with strong force its old claim to the throne of France. Henry resumed chevauchées, leading one in 1415 that resulted in the fight at *Agincourt* where he won an extraordinarily lopsided victory over a superior force of French knights and Genoese crossbowmen. That fight on St. Crispian's Day, 1415, devastated the French aristocracy. Before the battle the flower of France's chivalry (and its *Armagnac* allies) expected an easy victory over a boxed-in, tired, hungry and smaller English army. At the end of the day 5,000 Frenchmen lay dead or dying on Agincourt's rain- and blood-soaked field. Adding injury upon injury, an English fleet won at Harfleur (August 15, 1416), and again at the Bay of Seine (July 25, 1417). These multiple defeats on land and water were far worse than the French losses at Sluys, Crécy, and Poitiers in their combined demoralizing and strategic effects. Henry was free to conquer Normandy in a two-year campaign from 1417 to 1419 (Rouen fell in January 1419). Shaken and defeatist, France agreed to the ''perpetual peace'' of Troyes (1420) in which Henry was recognized as ''heir of France'' and large territories were ceded to England and smaller lands granted to

Henry's Burgundian ally. France looked to be decisively defeated. And yet, Troyes actually guaranteed that the war continued since it disinherited the Dauphin, the future Charles VII, left the Armagnacs wholly outside the peace settlement, and pushed all of France south of Gascony into opposition to a shameful peace with the English aggressor.

The great war thus lasted for 40 more years. When it finally ended England was expelled from lands in France it had held since the heyday of the Angevin Empire. How did this extraordinary reversal happen? It came about because the French reshaped a feudal muddle of knights and retainers into a semi-professional and disciplined army that effectively combined cavalry with infantry, with both supported by mobile artillery. It happened because France overcame the longbow with more advanced military technology: cannon and effective hand guns. It helped greatly that the English rested cocksure on old laurels won with the longbow by fathers and grandfathers in battles past, and thus failed to adapt to the rising black powder face of war. First, the French used cannon to bash down English castles and fortified towns, consolidating and extending central control of the countryside. Next, arquebusiers protected by ranks of pikemen appeared in large numbers in French ranks, where they proved the equal and then the better of longbowmen. An early indication of the shift in military fortunes to come was seen at *Beaugé* (March 21, 1421). The French cause was also helped by accidents of death and birth, notably as the early expiration of Henry V in 1422, the same year Charles VI died. Henry VI (1421–1471) was anointed at less than a year old and although the English crushed the French (and the *Scots Archers*) at *Verneuil* (August 17, 1424), during his long minority most English holdings in France were lost.

For decades the war had been marked by one indecisive siege leading to the next. But in the late 1420s the French asserted a new forcefulness and offensive spirit and capability. There is no doubt they were inspired by *Jeanne d'Arc*, ''The Maid.'' On May 8, 1429, she raised the English siege of Orléans; on June 12 she led the storming of the fortress at Jargeau; on June 18 her army slaughtered a fleeing English column at Patay before it could deploy archers. This precipitated a strategic collapse of the English military position north of the Loire. In the last two weeks of June, garrisons at Meung and Beaugency surrendered. *John Talbot* gathered in most remaining garrisons and retreated to the Seine, where he was taken prisoner by Jeanne d'Arc. She then persuaded a reluctant Dauphin to lead the army to Reims. On July 17 she watched in religious ecstasy and adoration as he was elevated to the throne as Charles VII. French military and political fortunes subsequently improved dramatically. As for Jeanne d'Arc, she was repaid with martyrdom by fire at English Catholic hands without any succor from the French Catholic army she led to victory and without an offer of ransom from Charles.

The Maid burned but after her death French armies remained on the permanent offensive. Final French victory had nothing to do with divine intervention, though faith in that idea was a great spur to morale and there can be no doubt that France's fortunes were turned decisively by The Maid and her ''Voices.'' Victory came primarily from feats of French arms made possible by

gunpowder troops organized by a centralized bureaucracy: France won the war because it undertook essential military reforms that led to basic reorganization away from a feudal military culture and social order in favor of a modernizing, bureaucratic, centralized monarchy and state. This shift to a gunpowder/fiscal-state entailed more than accepting new technologies into the order of battle. It meant core reform of the king's finances and tax collection; royal determination to elevate his forces above all baronial rivals; reducing resistance of provincial castellans to the royal will; and taming of the rough warriors of the *''Free Companies''* who were running amok, occupying French towns, ravaging the countryside, and forcing peasants into desperate rebellions reminiscent of the infamous *''Jacquerie''* of 1358. In carrying out this great reform French kings were aided by an early, pre-modern form of ''nationalism,'' an emerging sense of ''Frenchness'' separate from the old *res publica Christiana*. That was what Jeanne d'Arc had tapped into, furthered, and deeply inspired. Her martial successors then rode this proto-nationalism to final victory over the English and Burgundians.

By 1435 it was clear that the tide had turned irreversibly. And so, England's ally Burgundy switched sides (Treaty of Arras) and its duc restored long-occupied Paris to France (1436). Other than Bordeaux and Bayonne, Gascony fell to the French by 1442. During these advances and contributing to them, *Jean and Gaspard Bureau* made major strides in casting field cannon. With these guns, Charles VII retook Normandy from the English in 1449. Rouen surrendered on October 19, 1449, Harfleur in December 1449, and Honfleur in January 1450. Two months later the French took Caen. In 1450 came another major blow to English fortunes as a field army of some 4,000 men—three-quarters of them still armed with longbows—was trapped and decimated at *Formigny*. Winning the field that day were French cannon, arquebusiers, musketeers, but only a few bowmen, who together broke up the ranks of English archers with a bloody barrage of shell and shot. Once the English ran, the job was finished with lance, sword, and dirk. The French went on to reconquer all Normandy and Guyenne, often without firing a shot as English garrisons capitulated out of fear of the new French artillery. Bordeaux fell on June 30, 1451. The final battle was fought at *Castillon* on July 17, 1453, marking the failure of an English counter-invasion of Guyenne, where Gascons had risen to preserve a long-standing trade relationship with cross-Channel English overlords as against new lords closer at hand. French cannon great in number, power, and accuracy pounded the last English and Gascon resistance into agony, death, and surrender. Once Bordeaux submitted the war was over. In the end, France overmatched an overly confident but less prepared enemy with greater firepower and a more efficient marshaling of superior economic and military resources. When fighting subsequently broke out in England over yet another succession crisis, starting the bloody torment romantically disguised by the name *Wars of the Roses*, the English at last abdicated their long cross-Channel war and agreed to reduce their hold on the continent to the single port of Calais, which they controlled until 1558.

The Hundred Years' War was also fought importantly at sea. Each of the English chevauchées required an extraordinary naval effort, especially to transport the horses. The French replied with raids into England and efforts to intercept invasion fleets. In 1338 they chartered 20 Genoese galleys and 17 more from the Grimaldi family fleet in Monaco. They also built a fleet of their own, with Genoese technical advice, at the ''Clos des Gallées'' at Rouen. England had no effective naval reply to French galleys in the Channel, which burned Portsmouth and raided Jersey while the Genoese took Guernsey. These ships arrived too late to intercept Edward III's crossing of the Channel but they burned Southampton, sending southern England into a state of panic. In 1339 the Genoese entered the North Sea and attacked Harwich. On the return journey the Genoese entered the Bristol Channel, destroyed Hastings, and captured a number of ships at Plymouth. The English finally responded by organizing a *convoy* system for their armies and merchants trading with Gascony. Henceforth, each side preyed on the other's merchants, with escorts fighting a few sharp though indecisive actions. Eventually, the Genoese mutinied over lack of pay and rowed back to Italy.

At sea, the English were always less disciplined: their *privateers* constantly raided neutral shipping, costing England much financially and diplomatically. In 1340 the *Cinque* Ports sent a fleet to Boulogne harbor that burned 18 galleys and 24 merchantmen, as well as a large part of the town. Other English raids hit Dieppe and Le Tréport. The climax of the opening phase of the naval war came at *Sluys* (1340), the major sea battle of the 14th century and a devastating—but still not decisive—defeat for France. Within a month of Sluys the French navy—which was always more professional and better administered in this period than the ad hoc English navy—cut 30 ships out of a wool convoy. Three months later the French raided Portland and attacked Plymouth. The next year a French fleet cut off Gascony from England, and in 1342 another fleet burned Portsmouth. In 1345 a French galley fleet took Guernsey again. In 1346 a fleet of 32 large galleys from Genoa, Monaco, and Nice moved north, but failed to intercept Edward's crossing and chevauchée through Normandy. Moving overland, Edward took Caen, where he burned over 100 ships built to replace the French fleet lost at Sluys. A Castilian fleet allied to France ran the English Channel but was intercepted by Edward and the Black Prince, leading to a fight at Winchelsea called ''Les Espagnols sur Mer'' (August 29, 1350), a modest English victory. A civil war in Castile prevented further naval battles for another 20 years. The next major raid on England was in 1360, when a French fleet burned Winchelsea. Throughout this period, England's armies were unmatched on land, but it had no fleet to compare or contend with the professional forces of Castile, France, or Genoa—a rare moment in England's military history where its army surpassed its navy in value and effectiveness.

Edward took Caen, where he burned over 100 ships built to replace the French fleet lost at Sluys.

In 1364 civil war in Castile drew in England and France, leading by 1369 to most Castilian galleys pulling oars for France (this distraction delayed

resumption of the *Reconquista*). That same year Denmark and Scotland allied, posing a major new naval threat to England in the north. The English response was to mandate archer practice for all freemen and to ban all other Sunday sports (including football), a deeply unpopular effort to reinforce homeland defense. Undeterred, French raiders burned Portsmouth in 1369 and the next year sent a small galley fleet into the Channel to take prizes. Two years later 12 Castilian galleys intercepted a fleet at La Rochelle, took on board a huge amount of English gold, and burned all ships in the harbor. In response, England at last set out to build a ''Navy Royal.'' By 1375 this new force led to an uneasy naval truce with Castile and France (though mere legalities did not prevent a Castilian fleet later capturing 37 merchants, the largest loss of English shipping in the century). On June 24, 1377, just days after the death of Edward III, a massive galley fleet attacked and destroyed seven English coastal towns, including Folkestone, Portsmouth, and Plymouth. More amphibious raids followed, in both directions. Coastal towns were deserted and English prestige plummeted, only to be saved by a new French king, Charles VI, who did not appreciate France's naval advantage. Also tipping the balance was Portugal, already an important naval power that now allied with England in opposition to Castile. Portuguese raids on Castile forced its galleys home in 1381. Domestic and dynastic unrest in England and France quieted the war for a decade, though France made a Scottish alliance, briefly invaded Kent (1383), and planned but did not carry out a massive amphibious invasion in 1384. Three years later an English fleet was beaten off Dieppe, but another French invasion plan failed. In 1389 a truce was agreed, and the war at sea declined to little more than chronic piracy until 1406. An exception was a Welsh-Bretagne-French naval threat to England, and several French troop landings, related to ''*Glyndŵr's Rebellion*'' in Wales (1401–1406). Piracy and privateering—at which the English were more adept than any other sea nation—thereafter became the main form of naval conflict. French pirates also fared well, operating under Scottish protection while English pirates acted independently or under licence from the crown. Hundreds of prizes were taken and dozens of coastal towns were raided and burned. Still, the English monarchy failed to see the strategic advantage of seapower or develop the ability to finance it, so that by the time Henry V prepared to invade France the state of English shipping had sunk so low that the majority of ships carrying his horses, cannon, and troops were Dutch or Flemish hires.

France's ultimate victory in the ''Great War'' of the Middle Ages ended England's military importance for many decades. It also set the stage for a new round of dynastic conflict, this time between the houses of Valois and Habsburg, centering initially on control of northern Italy as in the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559), and continuing with the complex 17th-century struggle over Germany and northwest Europe generally known as the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). A major effect of the long war over Normandy and Gascony was to propel both France and England far down the road toward powerful centralized monarchies, decades ahead of most other powers in

Europe. Finally, and most importantly, the war clearly demonstrated that lower-class folk protected by nothing more than plain cloth, but quickly trained to deploy lethal projectile weapons, could unhorse the chivalric order of Europe. By defeating the old warrior nobility in battle, the only sphere of activity which justified the social and economic privileges enjoyed by Europe's landed aristocracies and upheld by law and the Church, the way was cleared for radically egalitarian ideas about reordering society. Most of all, the way was freed by war for political reforms that looked to represent the interests of rising classes of urban professions who made up the new infantry. No place was this change more evident than in Italy, where the wars and ideas of the *Renaissance* continued some and adapted other changes that began during the Hundred Years' War. See also *Black Prince*; *drill*; *flagellants*; *Rouvray, Battle of*; *safeguard the sea*; *War of the Breton Succession*.

Suggested Reading: Christopher Allmand, *The Hundred Years' War* (1988); Alfred H. Burne, *The Crécy War* (1955; 1999); and *The Agincourt War* (1999); Anne Curry, *The Hundred Years' War, 1337–1453* (2003); J. Favier, *La Guerre de Cent Ans* (1980); Frances Gies, *Joan of Arc: The Legend and the Reality* (1981); Robin Neillands, *The Hundred Years' War* (1990; 2001); Édouard Perroy, *The Hundred Years' War* (1951); N.A.M. Rodger, *Safeguard of the Sea* (1997); Jonathon Sumption, *The Hundred Years' War* (1990; 1999); Malcolm Vale, *English Gascony, 1399–1453* (1970).

Hungarian Army. The protracted threat to Hungary from the advancing Ottoman Empire led King Mathias (1458–1490) to set up the first *hussars* as a permanent, mobile force to protect the frontier. He supplemented these with mercenaries of the *Black Company* and levies of wilder troops from Wallachia and Moldova. But Hungary was not as wealthy as Austria, France, or the Ottomans, and could hardly afford all the mercenaries it actually needed to defend its frontiers. Its forces thus were not so much a standing army as an ad hoc frontier defense screen in front of a still medieval land-for-service army.

Hungary. This former Roman province was settled in the 9th century C.E. by Magyar nomads from out of Central Asia. Others arrived after being driven south from Germany by the *Teutonic Knights* and hemmed into Hungary by Otto I, founder of the *Holy Roman Empire*. Hungary became a Christian kingdom during the 11th century. In 1222 its nobility forced the "Golden Bull" on its kings, establishing effective government by the aristocracy. In 1241 the *Mongols* invaded, defeating the Hungarians decisively at Mohi. That defeat opened Hungary to repeated Mongol depredations and to social chaos. In the 14th century it slowly recovered, expanding to the Dalmatian coast and into Poland. János Hunyadi led Hungarian resistance to the Ottomans, but also suffered major losses at *Varna* (1444) and *Kosovo Polje* (1448). The core of Hungarian armies was still mailed cavalry, supplemented by lighter horse archers in the form of auxiliaries drawn from fierce but minor Steppe peoples such as the Cumans, Pechenegs, and Szeklers. From this system the first *hussars* originated under King Mathias (1458–1490), who deployed them as a mobile force to protect his endangered frontier with the Ottoman Empire.

Mathias also assembled a permanent artillery park and hired Serbian and Bohemian mercenaries (the ''Black Company'') to supplement his feudal heavy cavalry. The Hungarians were greatly aided by inhospitable terrain: northeast Hungary was almost impenetrable by Ottoman armies, with other regions of the country crisscrossed by rivers or hosting large areas of marsh and bog that impeded cavalry.

Nevertheless, the Ottomans brought large armies into Hungary, notably under *Muhammad II*, who was repelled by Hunyadi, and *Suleiman I*, who crushed the Hungarians at *Mohács* (1526). *Charles V* sent Habsburg forces to Hungary's aid. Still, after the capture of Buda and annexation of central Hungary in 1541, the Ottomans were well-ensconced. They garrisoned their new province with a peak force of 22,000 men paid with revenue from Egypt. In 1552 the Ottomans unsuccessfully besieged the fortress of Eger (Eğri), but added territory in northern Hungary to their empire. From 1593 to 1606 much of the ''Long War,'' or *Thirteen Years' War*, was fought in and over Hungary. Eger fell to Muhammad III in 1596. For most of the 17th century Hungary was divided between its erstwhile ally and its great enemy, as Austrian emperors paid tribute to the Ottomans in return for a share of Hungarian territory and peace along the *Militargrenze*. Hungary avoided total conquest less due to its own military efforts than because the two contending empires preferred that it remain a buffer between them. Religious differences began to impinge on Hungarian affairs as they did everywhere in Europe in the 17th century, though in odd ways: from 1604 to 1606 Stephen Bocskay led a Hungarian revolt in alliance with the Ottomans against an effort by *Rudolf II* to reimpose Catholicism. Hungary thereafter was a *marcher* state, with the dominant player the Ottoman governor in Buda. The main pattern of warfare was small scale border raiding carried out by local forces. Hungary remained militarily quiet as the Ottomans completed their long wars with Safavid Iran, and the Austrian Empire was sucked deep into the *Thirty Years' War* in Germany. Thus, from 1606 to 1660 there was no large-scale war on the Hungarian frontier.

Suggested Reading: J. M. Bak and R. Király, eds., *From Hunyadi to Rakoczi* (1982); Géza Perjés, *The Fall of the Medieval Kingdom of Hungary*, Mario Fenyó, trans. (1977; 1989); K. Péter et al., eds., *A History of Hungary* (1990).

Hung Taiji (d.1643). See *China*; *Manchus*; *Nurgaci*.

Hunyadi, János (c.1407–1456). Hungarian patriot; Transylvanian knight; Habsburg general. Governor of Hungary, 1446–1452. He led the Hungarians in many battles against the Ottomans, including sharp losses at *Varna* (1444) and *Kosovo Polje* (1448). In his last year he organized resistance to the invasion of the Balkans by *Muhammad II*, routed the Muslim army before Belgrade, and lifted the Muslim siege of the city. It remained in Christian hands until 1521.

Hurenweibel. ''Whore sergeant.'' In a *Landsknechte* company or regiment this officer was responsible for overseeing the *baggage train*. The train included

women, many of whom were prostitutes, which gave the position its unusual name. He was charged with making sure fights among the men did not get out of hand, but his most important duty was to maneuver the train out of danger when contact was made with the enemy. It was important not only to prevent the train from interfering with field maneuvers but to reduce the likelihood that an enemy threat to the women of the baggage train would entice fighting men to abandon their positions in order to save their wives and children, and other valuables.

Hus, Jan (1369–1415). Bohemian reformer. He was born into a peasant family in Husinetz, the village for which he was named. In his study at the University of Prague he was deeply influenced by the reformist teachings of *John Wycliffe*. Hus was named rector of the University in 1402. In 1409 the Archbishop of Prague began an inquisition into his writings and preaching, even as Pope Alexander V consigned all books by Wycliffe to be burned as heretical texts. In July, Hus was excommunicated. Riots ensued throughout Bohemia. This popular support among the common people and nobility kept Hus in place at the University. In 1411, Prague was placed under papal interdict for protecting Hus. By 1413 his thinking was more radical: he published scathing critiques of scandalous and immoral practices among the clergy, high and low, from concubinage to preying on the superstitions of the ignorant and simple. In addition to protesting abuses by the clergy Hus parted company on doctrine by upholding the *Utraquist* position that lay folk be allowed to take the sacrament of the Mass *sub utraque specie* (''in both kinds''). This undermined his support at the University. He was advised by King Wencislaus to leave Prague and took refuge in a castle of one of his noble supporters. Hus was ordered to appear before the *Council of Constance* (1414–1418), to which he was given a ''safe conduct'' pass by Emperor *Sigismund* (r.1411–1437). Within three weeks the safe conduct was broken and he was arrested and imprisoned, in violation of the Imperial promise. At his trial he was not permitted to speak in his own defense, not given a defense counsel, and was ordered to recant in full on pain of torture and death. He refused. He was burned at the stake for ''heresy'' on July 6, 1415. This enraged his followers and launched the *Hussite Wars*. A century later, *Martin Luther* remarked: ''We are all Hussites without realizing it.''

hussars. The term originates either from the Hungarian ''husz,'' meaning ''twenty,'' or more likely from Slavonic ''gussar,'' meaning ''bandit.'' In either case, hussars were light cavalry that originated in the Balkans and took formal shape in Hungary's hybrid system of mailed feudal cavalry supplemented by mounted archers on faster, smaller mounts. Hussars were recruited by King Mathias (1458–1490), who saw that Hungary needed a frontier force to face the Ottoman threat. These wild horsemen were deployed as fast reinforcements for a barrier of permanent fortresses and watch posts that guarded Hungary's southern frontier. On the offense, they conducted harassing and punitive raids into Muslim lands and participated in rare battles fought in the

mountains. They held the Hungarian flanks at the losing fight with the Ottomans at *Kosovo Polje* (1448). As the battlefield dominance of purely *heavy cavalry* faded everywhere other armies adopted the Hungarian hussar model. That included their famously elaborate dress: hussars were distinguished by brilliant colors and ornate embellishments, notably the long, Turkish-style dolman with loose-hanging sleeves and a tall fur cap with attached cloth bag or busby.

Polish hussars were originally modeled on Hungarian hussars, except for the important difference that most Polish horsemen ultimately hailed from the upper reaches of the *szlachta*. Polish hussar units were comprised of one ''comrade'' (''*towarzysz*'') and four retainers (''pacholeks''). This was reduced to two ''pacholeks'' in the late 17th century. Early Polish hussars were mainly foreign mercenaries known as ''Racowie'' (or ''Serbs,'' from their locale of origin, Ras). Over time, Poland's hussars grew heavier in horses and weapons to become medium cavalry, whereas Hungarian hussars remained true light cavalry, and Polish nobles replaced foreign mercenaries. Polish hussars were primarily lancers, but also carried two swords: a short saber (''szabla'') worn on the belt, and a long, rapier-like sword (''koncerz'') carried astride the saddle and wielded almost like a lance. Many also carried bows, and from 1576 all were required to carry two pistols holstered to the saddle. Hussars were the mainstay of Polish cavalry by the time of *Stefan Báthory*, but fell to just 20 percent of the cavalry force by 1648. Famously, they attached great ''wings'' to the back of their armor in the Serbian and Turkish manner. These were in evidence from the mid-16th century. Tremendously elaborate versions appeared early in the 17th century. They were made from a wooden frame covered in velvet and brass. Each brace held a row of large feathers that might rise two or three feet above the rider's head. No one knows why this was done. Theories range from a rear defense against swords (unlikely), to a display of trophy tokens from prior battles (but why so unwieldy?), to psychological intimidation of infantry (the most likely reason). Any psychological benefit—and wings made hussars appear as angels of death to superstitious, foot bound enemies—was reinforced by every cavalryman's normal vanity, accentuated in Poland by his haughty noble origins. See also *Pancerna cavalry*; *Polish Army*.

Many also carried bows, and from 1576 all were required to carry two pistols holstered to the saddle.

Hussite Wars (1419–1478). This prolonged conflict was provoked by the trial and burning at the stake of *Jan Hus* by the *Council of Constance* in 1415, in violation of an Imperial ''safe conduct'' issued to coax him to travel to Constance. His followers rebelled against the Catholic Church and Emperor *Sigismund* (r.1411–1437). Their reasons were doctrinal as well as ''nationalistic'' and constitutional: they were *Utraquists* in doctrine who opposed the episcopalian structure of the Church as well as the German constitution of the *Holy Roman Empire*. The Hussite revolt was the largest religious rebellion in Europe since the rising of the Cathars of France and the *Albigensian Crusade* of

the 13th century. The conflict began when the Hussites carried out the first ''*defenestration of Prague*'' (1419). Fighting began after King Wenceslaus died, shortly after the defenestration. The main aim of the Hussites was to prevent the hated Sigismund mounting the throne of Bohemia, but fighting between Bohemian Hussites and Catholics spread into Moravia. Hussite armies would later carry the war beyond these core areas to terrorize the nobility of much of Central Europe. Masses of peasants organized into Hussite bands and joined with militia from Hussite towns. The Hussite army was officered by nobles and knights who embraced the teaching of Jan Hus, though not always with the same passion as the burghers and peasants. Still, this cross-class support gave the Hussite Wars a tripartite and even ''national'' character unusual for the age, and a religious and social unity of purpose, faith, and hate.

The experienced mercenary *Jan Žižka* quickly emerged as the top Hussite commander, winning an initial victory at Sudomer (March 25, 1420). He then organized the defense of Prague in which the Hussites bolted the city's gates and fortified and defended the nearby Hill of Vítkov with 9,000 men. On July 14, 1420, a large Imperial and Catholic army attacked the Hussite hill fort, only to be repulsed with heavy casualties by the unmatched firepower brought to bear by the military genius of Žižka and the fanatic ferocity of the Hussites. Žižka subsequently cleared all remaining Imperial forces out of Bohemia. At the Diet of Nuremberg (1422), Sigismund and the German territorial princes agreed to raise two armies to put down the Hussites. The first was sent to raise a Hussite siege of Karlstein; the second was commissioned to pursue the Hussite field army until it was utterly destroyed. Instead, Žižka led the Hussite army flying a goose flag (''hus'') to a major victory over the Imperials at *Kutná Hora*, and beat them again just four days later at *Nêmecký Brod*. In each rout Žižka and the Hussites employed their soon-to-be-famous *Wagenburg* (mobile fort) from behind which they fired hand culverins, early arquebuses, and several small cannon. This devastated the surprised Imperial cavalry at close range. Two unexpected victories for the Hussites ended the first Imperial and Catholic attempt to crush the Bohemian ''heretic rebellion.''

However, civil war broke out among the Hussites that split them into a radical Taborite sect named for their mobile war camps (*tabor*) and drawn mostly from the lower social orders, and a more moderate and predominantly noble Utraquist faction. The Tabor were not merely religious dissenters. Their actions and demands spoke to a radical social and even proto-socialist agenda that alienated and frightened the Utraquists, who had doctrinal differences with the Catholic Church but were propertied, social conservatives. Žižka was killed (October, 11, 1424) in fraternal fighting that ensued between the factions. Pope Martin V preached a crusade against the Hussites in 1427, calling especially on England to provide knights to put down, as Martin put it, the ''awful heresy'' for which he held the English heretic Wycliffe responsible. Most English nobles were too busy besieging Orléans and fighting Frenchmen to participate, but German Catholic knights and princes formed another army to crush what they regarded as an army of upstart peasants. The

Germans engaged the Hussites at *Ustí nad Labem* (1426). Once more, Taborite peasants prevailed over the armored knights and men-at-arms of the Holy Roman Empire. After their third defensive victory over the best that German chivalry offered, the Hussites went on the offensive. They attacked into Austria, Hungary, and Germany, everywhere enjoying success and everywhere pillaging and killing the ungodly. What stopped them was not German arms but another outbreak of doctrinal argument and Hussite civil war.

A Hussite army invaded Germany again in 1429–1430, reaching deep into Franconia. As before, the late-medieval tactics of their militarily conservative enemies failed to beat the mobile fortification and firepower of the Wagenburgs. The *Council of Basel* then offered an olive branch that was accepted by moderate Hussite nobles but was rejected by the Taborites. This renewed the civil war between Taborite and Utraquist factions, leading to fratricidal carnage at *Český-Brod* (1434). The blood of confessional brothers left on that field so weakened the Taborites they were forced to accept Sigismund as King of Bohemia in 1436. A desultory peace ensued until the *War of the Cities* in the 1450s, when Hussite Wagenburgs raided deep into the *Ordensstaat* in mercenary service. There followed another uneasy peace to 1462, until the pope revoked the ''Compactata'' agreed at Basel 30 years earlier. The Hussite Wars thus broke out again in 1466. This time they took on the character of an Utraquist revolt against papal and Imperial authority, not a war of radical Taborite ''heresy'' against Catholic orthodoxy. They thus lacked the bitter hatred and uncompromising positions of the first war. A peace was agreed in 1478, after which Hussite bands again hired out as mercenaries well beyond Bohemia. The Hussite motto, ''Truth Prevails,'' became a powerful nationalist slogan for all later generations of Czechs, including Catholics after 1620.

Suggested Reading: F. Bartos, *The Hussite Revolution* (1986); F. Heyman, *John Zizka and the Hussite Revolution* (1955); H. Kaminsky, *A History of the Hussite Revolution* (1967).

I

ichcahuipilli. Aztec cotton *armor* formed of a knee-length padded jacket, with a cotton helmet. It was useful against Mezoamerican obsidian-blade weapons, but did not protect against Tuledo steel blades or arquebus-fire by the *conquistadores.*

iconoclasm. Smashing of holy images and statuary thought to be conducive to idolatry, heresy, or rank superstition. Iconoclasm had an ancient pedigree within the Byzantine Empire and under Islam. In the 8th century, for instance, fanatic Muslim invaders of India smashed Buddhist and Hindu statuary and images. In Latin Christendom it was more a phenomenon of the *Protestant Reformation,* usually carried out by fresh converts to Protestantism against Catholic imagery and statuary, crucifixes, and altars. Protestant mockery of Catholic icons extended to roasting crucifixes over bonfires, feeding the eucharist to dogs or pigs, fouling altars with excrement, and scattering bones from the reliquaries of Catholic saints. Clergy who resisted were beaten; some were killed. *Martin Luther* opposed these practices but many Calvinists and all followers of *Zwingli* were fanatic iconoclasts. Waves of violent iconoclasm (''beeldenstorm'') across the Netherlands were part of the essential prelude to the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648), as what began as spontaneous violence became organized repression of Catholic worship in the northern Netherlands in 1566, 1576–1579, and 1580–1581. In Holland, the Mass was no longer allowed anywhere after 1581, partly for iconoclastic reasons. See also *Anabaptism*; *French Civil Wars*.

Ifriqiya. A North African kingdom comprising much of *Tripoli* and *Tunis.* In 827, Muslims from Ifriqiya began the conquest of Sicily, which they completed in 969. Sicily was divided into emirates sustained by an imported *itqa* system of military recruitment. Its ruling Hafsid dynasty broke away from the Almohads of Morocco from the 13th century onward. Centered on Tunis

at one terminus of the trans-Saharan trade, Ifriqiya conducted maritime trade with *Mamlūk* Egypt and overland trade with *Kanem*. It reached its peak in the 15th century as a major naval power in the western Mediterranean, employing Christian galley-slaves captured from Italy and the Dalmatian coast. It expanded during the 15th century at the expense of neighboring Tlemcen, which it made a tributary. From 1504, Muslim ''pirates'' infested the Ifriqiya coast, leading to Spanish occupation of Tripoli in 1511. The Ottomans tried to impose their writ over Tlemcen and Ifriqiya, causing a turn by those smaller Muslim powers to Spain for protection. The Hafsids were briefly chased from Tunis in 1534 by *Algiers* corsairs working for the Ottomans, but returned with Spanish help to rule for 40 more years. Expelled again in 1569, and again restored by Spain after 1571, the Hafsids were ousted for good by the Ottomans in 1574. Ifriqiya thereafter remained an Ottoman province.

Ikkō-ikki. See *Odo Nobunaga*; *True Pure Land.*

***Île de Ré,* Siege of (July–October, 1627).** An ill-fated English naval expedition, badly organized and commanded by the *Duke of Buckingham*, was sent by *Charles I* to support the Huguenots at *La Rochelle.* When the French Protestants refused Buckingham permission to bring his ships and 8,000 soldiers into the harbor, he disembarked the troops on nearby Île de Ré. In desultory fighting, the English failed to take the citadel held by Royalist forces since their defeat of the Rochelais in February 1626. The English suffered many casualties in an incompetent military misadventure that brought Buckingham to disgrace, Charles into disfavor, and lasting embarrassment to English arms.

Il-Khans. The Mongol rulers of Iran; they converted to Islam in 1295.

***imam*.** In the majority *sunni* tradition of *Islam*, the head of a mosque and a prayer leader. In the minority *shī'a* tradition of Islam, a Muslim leader said to descend from Muhammad's family (Alid candidate) and, therefore, a divinely appointed guide and the sole rightful ruler of the Faithful, to be upheld above all secular authority. A quasi-messianic variant of this tradition, called ''Twelfth-imam shī'a,'' or just ''Twelvers,'' recognized eleven anointed imams but asserted that the rightful succession stopped in 765 C.E. with the death of the sixth *caliph*, Ja'far al-Sādiq, the last true caliph visible to earthly eyes. Ultimately, they held that the succession rightly fell to his son, Musa, and awaited his return as the 12th or ''Hidden Imam.'' *Ismailis* (Fatamids) are sometimes called ''Seveners'' because they believed the succession fell immediately to Ja'far al-Sādiq's other son, Ismail. Similarly, the Nizari sect followed the rightful succession only to the fourth caliph.

Imperial Army (of the Holy Roman Empire). ''Landesabwehr.'' The emperor traditionally had the right, as a German king, to issue a ''*bannum*'' in times of extreme need. In theory, this and other edicts applied to all subjects of military

age, excepting only women, shepherds, and clergy. In fact, the bannum mostly called on the feudal service obligations of German knighthood (the *''Ritterstand''*). In some cases, peasant militia were called up as foot soldiers while townsmen served as auxiliaries, usually, as archers or crossbowmen. The old feudal military order, dating to Charlemagne, required enfeoffed nobles and retainers to serve free for three months, which was significantly longer than the *servitium debitum* in France and England. This rule was invoked as late as the mid-13th century, but otherwise was eroded by the rise of service-for-pay arrangements even among German nobility. Still, as late as the early 15th century the idea of mandatory feudal service survived in the Empire: in 1401 German towns and nobles were summoned to an Imperial campaign in Italy by region (''Landesaufgebot'') and by individual fief (''Lehnsaufgebot''). While noble ''officers'' were paid a set fee, town militia received nothing. In the late 1480s, Emperor *Maximilian I* organized *Landsknechte* companies to mimic, and hopefully to best, the *Swiss squares.* In 1500 he gave responsibility for regional defense and recruitment to the *Reichskreis*.

In the 16th century the *Hofkriegsrat*, or Imperial War Council, controlled 25,000 Imperial troops, but only on paper. Real control rested with the Imperial princes, and with commanders responsible for regional military order appointed by discrete Reichskreis. The Landsknechte were strictly mercenary troops. That meant in a shooting war the emperors relied principally on military contractors to raise mercenary armies to supplement noble heavy cavalry. There was no serious attempt to raise a conscript Imperial force because the emperors had no funds to pay for it outside revenues from their hereditary lands. Once the *Protestant Reformation* took hold in Germany it was next to impossible for emperors to obtain necessary funds and authorization from divided princes to raise and maintain Imperial troops, a problem made evident during *Charles V*'s desultory war with the princes of the *Schmalkaldic League.* Just before the outbreak of the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648) the Imperial princes divided openly into confessional associations that briefly fielded their own armies: the *Catholic League* and *Protestant Union.* As a result, most Imperial troops from 1618 to 1648 were mercenaries raised by military entrepreneurs and sustained not by taxes but by forced *contributions*. On Imperial commanders, battles, wars, and related matters see: *Alte Feste, Siege of*; *armories*; *Breitenfeld, First*; *Breitenfeld, Second*; *Dessau Bridge, Battle of*; *Ferdinand II, Holy Roman Emperor*; *Ferdinand III, Holy Roman Emperor*; *Fleurus, Battle of*; *Freiburg, Battle of*; *The Grisons*; *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *Höchst, Battle of*; *Holy Roman Empire*; *Italian Wars*; *Jankov, Battle of*; *Kutná Hora, Battle of*; *Lützen, Battle of*; *Maximilian I*; *Mercy, Franz von*; *Nêmecký Brod, Battle of*; *Nördlingen, First Battle of*; *Nördlingen, Second Battle of*; *Pappenheim, Graf zu*; *partisan* (2); *Tilly, Count Johann Tserclaes*; *Wallenstein, Albrecht von*; *war finance*; *White Mountain, Battle of*; *Zusmarshausen, Battle of.*

Imperial Diet. The assembly of all territorial rulers of the *Holy Roman Empire*, divided into three colleges: Electors, Princes, and Towns. It met at Regensburg. The Diet called for 1541 by *Charles V* to heal the breach

between Catholics and Protestants failed miserably. The Diet met just six times from 1555 to 1603. It was paralyzed by *confessionalism* in 1608, when Protestant princes refused to attend. It was suspended in 1613 in the run-up to the *Thirty Years' War*, and was never convened during the long reign of *Ferdinand II*. However, *Ferdinand III* recalled the Diet from 1640 to 1641 to raise taxes for the final phase of the war and strengthen the negotiating position of the Empire in coming peace talks. In return, he was forced to agree that all territorial princes should be separately represented at the peace conference. This principle was extended in 1645 to allow all *Estates* to participate in the talks leading to the *Peace of Westphalia* (1648). See also *contributions*; *Imperial Army*; *Prague, Peace of.*

impressment. In England, county authorities and the central government encouraged impressment of local vagrants, masterless men, the lame or diseased, and local criminals. Since the attrition rate from disease or combat was extremely high and most men sent overseas never saw England again, this was seen as a useful way to rid the country of ''undesirables'' while sparing its favored sons. For war at sea, most impressment was of whole ships and crews. Carpenters and shipwrights were also impressed to build or repair the king's ships with little or no recompense, but at least they served in major ports where most already lived. The king's prerogatives did not just concern war: impressment was a traditional right that extended to his household services, fishing and gaming for the king's table, and construction of his palaces. As the Middle Ages waned, so too impressment of skilled craftsmen was slowly replaced by paid labor. However, impressment was revived by *Charles I* to replace politically unreliable *trained bands* during the *Second Bishop's War.* When Parliament turned to impressment in 1642 as a means of whittling away the king's control of the Army, the move provoked a national division and the first skirmishes of the *English Civil Wars* (1639–1651). See also *Cinque Ports*; *club men*; *''coat-and-conduct'' money*; *demurrage.*

Inca Empire. ''Tahuantinsuyu'' or ''Land of the Four Quarters.'' In c.1200 C.E., the central Andes was politically fragmented with one concentrated but declining power, Tiahuanacu, presiding over the region south of Lake Titicaca. As Tiahuanacu decayed each mountain valley hosted an irrigation-based microstate, usually involved in violent competition for arable land and potable water with neighboring valley-states. Around 1440 a hitherto little-known mountain tribe, the Inca of the Cuzco valley, took advantage of this situation in the Andes highlands to expand along the west coast of South America. From this process emerged the Inca Empire, the largest Indian state created in the Americas. It was managed by forced resettlement to break up resistance after conquest, and political assimilation of neighboring tribes. The Inca Empire boasted populous cities sustained by high-calorie crops of potatoes and maize. It governed most of the 20–25 million who lived in the Andes region, making it one of the larger states in the world at that time. The

Inca domain was assembled and ruled by a powerful military headed by a warlord called the ''Sapa'' (''Sole'') Inca. It was sustained by a sophisticated bureaucracy which included an elaborate system of runners (''chasquis'') and imperial roads, the latter providing for communication, political and military intelligence, and rapid military reinforcement throughout an empire thousands of miles long. The main founder was Pachacutec (né Cusi Yuanqui), who as Sapa Inca from 1438 to 1471 expanded the state 1,000 miles from Cuzco. His successor, Túpac Yupanqui (r.1471–1493), overcame a rival empire, Chimor. He thereby added the most territory of any Sapa Inca, though he sometimes did this by negotiation and treaty rather than military conquest. Under Huayna Capac (r.1493–1525) the Inca pushed out of northern Peru into modern Ecuador, to Quito. At its greatest extent the Inca tribute empire stretched 4,500 miles along the Pacific coast of South America, nearly the full length of the Andes range. Yet, it was rapidly conquered by a small group of brutal Spanish *conquistadores* led by a reckless adventurer, *Francisco Pizarro.* How?

Politics in the Inca Empire were marked by frequent violent rebellions and by ''caesarism'' and palace revolt in Cuzco. This gave the Spanish an opportunity to divide and conquer. Afro-European diseases had already reached the northern Inca lands, traveling overland from Mexico through Central America, by the time the Spanish arrived. The demographic collapse these virgin diseases caused aggravated an Inca civil war already underway over the succession. The Spanish entered the Inca domain just as it was consumed by demographic devastation and divided by a major civil war. They were thus able to form alliances with oppressed or recently conquered tribes before moving against the center of Inca power at Cuzco. Also, the advancing wave of disease appeared to the Inca to be a divine scourge. The Spanish agreed with this thesis, seeing outbreaks of plague, smallpox, and other epidemic diseases as God's just punishment of non-Christian Indians: natural phenomena caused one society to lose religious confidence while giving the other an ideological swagger and renewed enthusiasm for martial adventure. Atahualpa, the last Sapa Inca to rule, gravely underestimated the technological advantages of Spanish horses, firearms, and cannon, none of which his legions possessed. He was captured by surprise and murdered by Pizarro in July 1533, possibly in deliberate imitation of how the Spanish thought *Hernán Cortés* toppled the Aztecs. A climactic battle between warring factions of conquistadores took place after Pizarro's death, at Ayacucho (Huramanga), on September 18, 1542. The losers were beheaded. Surviving conquistadores in Peru refused to submit to the authority of the royal viceroy who was trying to limit the excesses of the *encomienda* system they had introduced, and to impose Imperial rule from Spain. Pizarro's half-brother Gonzalo led an attack on Lima in 1546 and won a victory over the viceroy,

Politics in the Inca Empire were marked by frequent violent rebellions and by ''caesarism'' and palace revolt in Cuzco.

whom he beheaded. Some rebels urged Gonzalo to proclaim a Peruvian kingdom with himself as monarch. However, a replacement viceroy suspended the ''New Laws'' protecting Indians and offered pardons to most rebels. This caused the rebellion to collapse and led to the beheading of its leaders, including Gonzalo (April 1548).

Upon direct contact with the Spanish, the Indians of the Andes suffered a catastrophic population decline from a witches' cauldron of epidemic diseases of European or African origin: typhus, tuberculosis, bubonic plague, but especially smallpox, and killer ''childhood'' diseases such as measles, whooping cough, mumps, dysentery, meningitis, influenza, and jaundice, which also wiped out Amerindian adults who lacked the slightest natural resistance. Within 50 years of the conquest the native population of the Andes had been reduced by 90 percent. This had more than a physical impact: it fundamentally demoralized Amerindian civilization, reducing the will to rebel against Iberian overlordship imposed during the 16th century and conducing to mass conversions to Christianity by populations made docile and compliant by too much death and despair, and perhaps by priest-obeying habits learned under the Inca. Further south, small tribes of nautical migrants known as ''sea nomads'' and Araucanian Indians remained independent into the 19th century. From 1541 to 1664 fighting was heavy and bloody, with the Araucanians forcing the Spanish to remain north of the Bío Bío.

Suggested Reading: Geoffrey Conrad and Arthur Demarest, *Religion and Empire* (1984); Richard Keatinge, ed., *Peruvian Prehistory* (1988); Thomas C. Patterson, *The Inca Empire* (1991).

incastellamento. See *castles, on land.*

incendiaries. See *fire*; *fire-lance*; *Greek fire*; *gunpowder weapons*; *naphtha.*

indentures for war. A type of military contract. With England waging the *Scottish Wars*, then involved in the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453), the old system of *feudal* levies no longer sufficed. *Scutage* also failed to raise funds to recruit enough of the new types of specialized infantry and archery *dragoons* needed by warlord monarchs like *Edward III*. Instead, contracts for military service farmed out recruitment to a contractor (''conductor'') who brought groups of ''retainers'' to camp in return for a fee drawn from land tenures or other royal revenues. Such ''indentures for war'' were used starting in the 14th century and survived into the 15th century. Indentures also served naval recruitment. During the *Wars of the Roses* indentures were used by both sides, though when loyal troops were needed personal recruitment among ''clients'' and tenants of the great magnates was the mainstay.

Index Librorum Prohibitorium. Cardinal Carafa (later, Pope Paul IV) established the ''Holy Office'' of the *Inquisition* in Rome during the Catholic *Counter-Reformation*. As pope, in 1559 he revived a little used medieval practice of

listing on an ''Index'' books prohibited to the faithful. Since most Catholics still could not read, this measure aimed mostly at clergy and the lay upper classes.

India. In the early 8th century plundering Muslim invaders swept into India from the northwest. Fanatic iconoclasts, they smashed *Hindu* and *Buddhist* temples. The Ghaznavids (originally based in the Afghan town of Ghazi, southwest of Kabul) were the first of several Turkic-Afghan Muslim peoples to raid north India, riding on an Indian military revolution all its own—the *warhorse*. The Ghaznavids overran the Punjab, to which they brought *Islam* in its early and highly militarized form. They caused much bitterness with a policy of forced conversions of Hindus, but succeeded in planting the new religion deep in the soil of northern India. Islam also attracted many voluntary converts, especially among the lower Hindu castes and ''untouchables'' who were drawn to its doctrine of moral and spiritual equality among all believers. Others were attracted to the ability of Muslim emirs to protect local areas militarily and provide law and public order. As so often in world history, religious change followed migration and conquest, then took deeper root with peacetime trade, assimilation, and state support. The Ghaznavids were followed by the Ghurids, who captured and plundered Delhi in 1193. In 1202, Ghurid persecutions scattered most of India's remaining Buddhists to Nepal, Tibet, and beyond, so that already by the 12th century north India was divided among Muslim kingdoms. The most important of these was established by Turkic invaders in 1206 in Delhi, employing *mamlūk* slave soldiers to ensure elite and military loyalty. The ''*Delhi Sultanate*'' lasted from 1200 to 1526 under various dynasties. Afghan in origin, it sought an ethnic identification of elite troops as the path to dynastic security, which left it exposed to rebellion by the excluded majority. A third wave of Central Asian invaders, the Khaljis, took over in Delhi in 1290. All these invasions were opposed by Hindus, notably the warrior *Rajputs*, themselves probably descended from earlier Central Asian invaders. The Muslim states were in turn subjected to assault by pagan *Mongols*. A Mongol horde moved into India from Afghanistan in the first decade of the 14th century. The earlier Turkic-Muslim invaders of India thus probably preserved it from still worse depredations by the Mongols, deflecting that appalling scourge instead into Ukraine, southern Russia, and Anatolia and Iraq.

Sultan Ala-ud-din (r.1296–1316) turned Muslim military attention south, overrunning the Rajputs and invading the ancient Tamil states for the first time. The Tughluqs, a Muslim dynasty founded by a slave soldier, followed Ala-ud-din to the throne of Delhi, ruling much of the north from 1320. However, a terrible famine from 1335 to 1342 spawned rebellions by Muslim and Hindu chieftains alike, in Madura, 1335; Vijayanagar, 1336; Bengal, 1338, which remained independent to 1576; and the Deccan Sultanate in 1347, where the vaguely Turkic Bahmāni dynasty ruled independently of Delhi until 1528. The ''Lords of the Horse'' in Vijayanagar fought the Bahmāni Deccan Sultanate in 10 indecisive wars over the following 150

years, with Vijayanagar progressively adopting imported Arabian horses and Ottoman cavalry tactics along with Muslim advisers and mercenaries. It thus survived as the major non-Muslim state on the subcontinent. The chronic nature of Indian wars reflected the *March* character of the ''inner frontiers'' of India's states, with most fighting occurring in the frontier zones. Campaigns were launched to coincide with the end of the monsoon season in October, once the mud dried and rivers receded from their crest and became fordable. They ended before the high heat of March or April.

Adding new torments to already great suffering born of India's internal conflicts, *Timur* took advantage of the lack of a single center of power to invade. He sacked Delhi in 1398 but was drawn away by his own restless nature and rebellion elsewhere in his sprawling, incoherent, and not-fully subjugated empire. For another hundred years, into the early 16th century, India remained badly fragmented, at war internally, and laid open to Central Asian raiders. Into this vacuum of power stepped the Timurids (descendants of Timur), out of Afghanistan. They brought with them imported firearms from 1400 and European and Ottoman *renegade* gunsmiths. Only much later did they import the technology needed to produce guns and cannon locally. *Mughal* rule over most of northern India was established in 1526–1527 by *Babur*. He beat the army of the Delhi Sultanate at *Panipat* (1526), and defeated the Rajputs at *Khanwa* (1527). Thereafter, the Mughals shrewdly used marriage ties to forge alliances with leading Rajputs and consolidate their hold on northern India. See also *Akbar*; *artillery*; *corning/corned gunpowder*; *fitna*; *fortification*; *Marathas*; *mansabdari*; *mulkgiri*; *Portuguese India*; *Sher Khan*.

Suggested Reading: John Keay, *India: A History* (2000); Dirk Kolff, *Naukar, Rajput, and Sepoy* (1990); J. Sarkar, *A Military History of India* (1970); Stanley Wolpert, *A New History of India*, 6th ed. (2000).

Indian (subcontinental) armies. See *Akbar*; *artillery*; *Babur*; *elephants*; *infantry*; *Khanwa, Battle of*; *Marathas*; *Mamlūk*s; *Mughal Empire*; *Panipat, Battle of (April 21, 1526)*; *Rajputs*; *Timur*.

Indian Wars (Mexico, Central and South America). See *Alvarado, Pedro de*; *Aztec Empire*; *Brazil*; *Charles V, Holy Roman Emperor*; *conquistadors*; *Cortés, Hernán*; *disease*; *encomienda*; *Inca Empire*; *Jesuits*; *Moctezuma II*; *Otumba, Battle of*; *Pax Hispanica*; *Peru, Viceroyalty of*; *Philip II, of Spain*; *Pizarro, Francisco*; *real patronato*; *requerimiento*; *Spain*; *Tenochtitlán, First Siege of*; *Tenochtitlán, Second Siege of*.

Indian Wars (North America). In 1492 the Indian population of North America probably numbered several million (estimates range wildly, from one to twelve million). But European and African *diseases* ravaged all Indian nations which came into contact with settler populations. Half or more of most tribes died; up to 90 percent of Great Lakes Indians perished. More than any other factor, mass death from disease assured the eventual military defeat

of the Indians of eastern North America. As the European and African populations significantly increased in the late 17th and early 18th centuries, demographics multiplied settler military resources while disease divided those of the Indians. Thus, New England Indians decreased from over 100,000 in 1600 to 8,600 seventy years later, while immigration and natural increase raised the settler population to 50,000. Comparable shifts occurred in other regions of European–Indian conflict. On first contact, the Iroquois *Haudenosaunee*, the ''Five Nations,'' had about 25,000 members divided among the Cayuga, Mohawk, Oneida, Onondagas, and Senecas (they were joined by the Tuscaroras in 1714). Despite the Iroquois practice of assimilating captives into their own nations, disease and casualties from chronic warfare with settlers over land, and even more with neighboring tribes over control of the fur trade, ensured that Haudenosaunee numbers did not rise significantly over the next 200 years. The Huron of Upper Canada were similarly devastated, losing half their numbers to epidemic diseases and still more to death or capture at the hands of Iroquois war parties. These reductions were compounded by cultural factors, notably internal contention over the conversion of some Indians to Christianity. Many Huron were converted to Catholicism by *Jesuits* who astutely controlled access to European trade goods as an inducement. In New England, Puritan preachers converted ''praying Indians'' among some tribes, while others refused all entreaties and most converts retained many traditional beliefs. Besides, conversion was no guide to Indian loyalty or participation in settler wars: Christian Indians fought for and against Europeans, just as those who retained native faiths allied, or not, with the English or French. Indians, in short, looked to their immediate interests in deciding when to make war and whom to make it alongside or against.

In an older historiography marked off by the works of Francis Parkman, the technological, organizational, moral, and cultural superiority of European settlers was assumed; the ''frontier'' was portrayed as the cutting edge of civilization shearing through barbaric and pagan regions; and the level and effectiveness of Indian military resistance was underrated and portrayed as primitive and savage. Some later writing moved to the other extreme, wrongly portraying Europeans as uniquely murderous and rapacious and engaged in a deliberate genocide of all Indians. Setting aside the important fact that much peaceful trade and other interaction occurred between settlers and Indians, more recent military histories have placed the Indian Wars of eastern North America in a proper global context. In so doing, historians have uncovered a remarkable martial adaptability of settlers, but especially of natives, as compared to European regulars, and told a far more complex tale than either earlier version of events.

The long conflict began with arrival of English settlers in Virginia in 1607 and the French in Québec in 1608. Thus was initiated what amounted to a series of invasions of Indian lands and nations that mixed cooperation with hostility and crossed trade with religion and war. The actors were many and the play complex: American settlers, English regulars, French regulars,

French-Canadians, and some Spanish fought other white troops or allied with multiple Indian nations, including the Algonquian, Huron, Iroquois, Mohawk, Mohican, Narragansett, Pequot, Powhatan, and Wampanoag. Also, the military balance of power was far more even than the later history of the continent suggests. Indeed, in this era Indians showed great ability to adapt and adopt imported technology, while Europeans and settlers were slow to appreciate that native irregular tactics were far better suited to a land of thick forests and strange topography than the set-piece formations and tactics then in vogue in Europe. It was, in fact, only those settlers and imported European regulars who adapted to the Indian "*skulking way of war,*" and who appreciated and used the special military virtues of Indian allies (notably their extraordinary woodcraft and high skill as scouts and skirmishers), who succeeded and survived when fighting Indians or even other Europeans in eastern North America. So what did Europeans bring that was new to North American warfare? Horses, steel weapons, gunpowder, muskets and cannon, and stronger fortifications. Yet, these new technologies did not assure settler military dominance prior to the late 18th century. Before then, it was Indians who remained masters of the "skulking way of war," and who were more than the equal in battle of regular troops or settler militias.

Samuel de Champlain (1567–1635), French explorer and soldier, is usually identified as the first to provide matchlock firearms to Indian allies (Mohawks). Forming an alliance with the Huron, from 1608 to 1609 Champlain led several French-Indian expeditions against the Iroquois. In 1615 he led another mixed French-and-Indian war party against the Iroquois. Later, as governor of Québec, he cemented the French alliance with the Huron nation based on the fur trade that set the stage for a century of French-Indian wars with the English and their key Indian allies in the Iroquois Confederacy, a native military alliance formed in response to the new pressures of 17th-century eastern warfare. Regulars were scarce before the 1660s, so that settlers formed and relied on local militia for defense or aggression, including black slaves and white indentured servants (many former rebel soldiers deported from Ireland) at first, but not later. Militia played a role from the founding of Jamestown, Virginia, when fighting with the Powhatan nation began there in 1609. The settlers were led from 1610 by regular officers with experience in anti-guerilla tactics learned in the Elizabethan conquest of Ireland. They built out-garrisons and scorched the Powhatan food supply to force pitched battles where superior firepower and steel armor told the tale against braves armed as yet only with bows and arrows (this would not be repeated in later decades, once Indians adopted and became expert in firearms). In addition, the English secured the waterways of the Chesapeake with armed boats, progressively squeezing the Powhatan into defeat and surrender by 1614.

Samuel de Champlain . . . *is usually identified as the first to provide matchlock firearms to Indian allies.*

Although natives soon outmatched even frontier settlers as expert rifle marksmen, Europeans maintained a monopoly on artillery before 1660. This

meant that Indian pre-artillery fortifications were useless, or worse, became death traps for entire settlements. Thus, Pequot villages were assaulted and massacred in New England in the *Pequot War* (1636–1637). This led to a new defense: native women and children scattered into the forest when a European army approached while braves set ambushes, picked off stragglers, and sent war parties to counter-burn white farms and kill white families. As for the reputed greater savagery of Indian warfare, in fact both sides indulged. Some Indian tribes *scalped* to collect battlefield trophies; others did not. Some indulged cannibalism; others did not. Or they gave up the practice, as did the Huron after 1550. Some Europeans accepted the full humanity of Indians, others did not (this was also true in reverse). Some settlers murdered Indians on sight and massacred whole villages, others sought peaceful trade and comity. Whites and Indians fought each other, but also as allies against other whites and Indians. War and politics, in short, pretty much ran their normal course in North America as elsewhere in the 16th–17th centuries. See also *armor*; *beaver wars*; *mourning war*.

Suggested Reading: W. J. Eccles, *The French in North America, 1500–1783* (1998); J. Ferling, *A Wilderness of Miseries* (1980); N. Salisbury, *Manitou and Providence* (1982); A. Starkey, *European and Native American Warfare* (1998); Ian Steele, *Warpaths: Invasions of North America* (1994); B. Trigger, *Children of Aataentsic* (1976); A. Vaughan, *The New England Frontier* (1965).

indulgences. See *Council of Trent*; *Fugger, House of*; *Luther, Martin*; *Protestant Reformation*.

inermis. ''unarmed.'' See *civilians*; *just war tradition*.

infantry. The first organized and drilled, offensive infantry formation of note was the Macedonian phalanx, which devastated much larger armies of the ancient world with its extraordinary discipline. Similarly, the core of all Roman armies was highly organized infantry armed with stabbing weapons and shields for close fighting, intensely drilled and disciplined and capable of highly sophisticated battlefield tactics and maneuvers. The basic formations of the cohort and legion remained intact and dominant for over a millennium, to the end of the Roman Empire. In India, in contrast, massive infantry armies were usually deployed yet they appear to have been ineffective when facing cavalry, which remained the principal Indian arm into the 18th century. As Jos Gommans frames it, given its ''almost limitless supply of superior cavalry, India lacked the inducement to develop disciplined and drilled infantry.'' A huge peasant population enabled Chinese armies to field large formations of infantry, but these did not fare well against peoples born to war and to horses, such as the *Mongols* or other nomadic invaders who made *light cavalry* their principal arm.

It is events in Europe that most military historians identify with the ''infantry revolution'' that had such a lasting impact on world history. Throughout the Middle Ages *heavy cavalry* still predominated in Europe. As

army sizes increased after 1200, infantry began to specialize into ''light infantry'' (missile troops such as crossbowmen, longbowmen, or arceri and pavesari) and ''heavy infantry'' (wearing armor and wielding pikes, halberds, and other staff weapons). Most infantry units were organized by county or town. Town militia tended to be much better trained and disciplined, especially in Flanders. The Swiss cantons produced superb rural units as well as town *Banners*, and proved the most effective offensive infantry for over 200 years. Infantry broke the dominance of heavy cavalry progressively, starting with defeats of England's mounted chivalry by Scots infantry at *Stirling Bridge* (1297) and *Bannockburn* (1314), which bracketed the stunning Flemish militia defeat of the French heavy cavalry at *Courtrai* (1302). That was a special feat of arms widely admired, studied, and imitated. Yet, the Flemings lost badly to the French just two years later at *Mons-en-Pévèle* (1304), where they did not have the advantage of terrain they had exploited so well at Courtrai. It was instead the Swiss who emerged as the dominant force in the ''infantry revolution'' of the 14th century, beginning with a series of progressively greater victories over Austria's mounted nobility at *Morgarten* (1315), *Laupen* (1339), *Sempach* (1386), and *Näfels* (1388). The rule (though not the role) of the armored knight on a heavy horse, armed with lance and sword, drew to an end during the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). *Edward III* dismounted his *men-at-arms* against the Scots at *Halidon Hill* (1333), to great success. He took his new tactical ideas and thousands of Welch and English archers armed with longbows to France, where he deployed them to unhorse and slaughter the flower of French chivalry at *Crécy* (1346). The *Black Prince* repeated his father's feat at *Poitiers* (1356), where French knights dismounted as well. On the grand *chevauchées* Edward III and the Black Prince conducted, their archers traveled on horseback as mounted infantry rather than true foot. To the end of the period most infantry were best deployed behind natural or prepared obstacles such as ditches, sunken roads, or artificial forests of *caltrops*, *Spanish riders*, or *chevaux de frise*.

The shift to mass infantry led to changes not just in battle but in wider society, as new classes of men fought in wars that had previously passed them by. Commoners could be made into soldiers cheaply and quickly because they were armed and trained with inexpensive and simple weapons such as the *pike* or *halberd*. Even the skills needed to use the *crossbow* or *arquebus* could be taught in weeks or months, rather than years. Thus, large numbers of lightly armored and inexpensive commoners slowly replaced the hugely expensive warrior aristocrats, armed with weapons that took years to learn, clad in costly armor and mounted on great *destriers* that required a small fortune to purchase and maintain and also took years to train. Now, man and mount were vulnerable to impalement or slashing by a cheaply raised, lightly armed and unarmored peasant or townsman. Infantry, not cavalry, was fast becoming the principal source of military power in Europe. This new infantry went about the business of war with less concern for the life or limb of nobles than had been the case earlier, when aristocratic warriors expected the price of defeat to be paid in gold rather than blood. The Swiss rarely took prisoners,

and *Henry V*'s lowborn infantry disabused the highborn of France of the old conceit when they massacred over a thousand prisoner knights at *Agincourt* (1415) after English men-at-arms refused to carry out the deed. In return, when aristocratic warriors gained the advantage they did not spare common soldiers who could not pay a ransom and were not worth feeding or keeping alive. In short, rage trumped ransom and class conquered chivalry on the sanguinary battlefields of the 15th–17th centuries. It was also harder to take prisoners when most men were packed into disciplined formations wherein any break in the line either to take or guard prisoners—whether prompted by motives of pity or greed—threatened all one's comrades in the ranks with wounds or death.

From the 14th century it was common for veteran mercenary infantry to be recruited from areas of endemic frontier warfare such as the Pyrenees, Flanders, Scotland and northern England, Ireland, or the Balkans. Also in the 14th century the Cantons developed a deadly new formation, the *Swiss square*, comprised of pikemen protecting halberdiers, and later *arquebusiers*. The Swiss became the most deadly and feared infantry in Europe by the end of the 15th century, a reputation secured by decisive victories over the Burgundians at *Grandson* (1476), *Morat* (1476), and *Nancy* (1477). Swiss pike infantry were the most admired and feared until they met defeat in 1515 at *Marignano*, where they were beaten not by cavalry but German *Landsknechte* infantry and especially *Francis I*'s artillery and gunmen. Similarly, the French finally won the Hundred Years' War when their superb artillery, rather than noble cavalry, tore apart English archers on the field of battle and breached the stone walls of English and Burgundian castles and fortified garrisons. A pattern was developing of artillery as the answer to infantry, as infantry had earlier proved the answer to cavalry. As infantry took more and more arquebuses and *muskets* into battle they further displaced cavalry to supporting roles—scouting, foraging, and pursuit. Also contributing to the rise in the importance of infantry were improvements in fortification and a general drift into *siege warfare* in which cavalry was virtually useless (except in Poland, where tactics were developed by which cavalry effectively blockaded besieged sites). This shift had an enormous impact on society and politics over time. It helped break down the old monopoly on force of the feudal knighthood—a narrow aristocracy based on exclusive and lengthy weapons training and skill and tied to monopoly control of land and enserfed rural labor. Reliance on knights was eased by a move to cheaper and far more numerous town militia. This also promoted a decline in social standing for aristocrats and a concomitant elevation of townsfolk who served as militiaman. As J.F.C. Fuller famously put the argument in its most extreme form: ''The musket made the infantryman and the infantryman made the democrat.'' A nice phrase, but the ''infantry revolution'' actually predated the use of firearms. Besides, since the adoption of muskets foot soldiers have raised up and sustained terrible tyrants far more often than they ever midwifed democracy.

Whether armed with an early arquebus or with later *smooth-bore* muskets, the accuracy of infantry gunpowder weapons was so poor that European

armies in this period usually closed to within 50–90 yards of each other before firing. Weapons utilizing unreliable matchlock firing mechanisms also had slow rates of fire. This led infantry to organize ranked formations many men deep. As lock technology improved the rate of fire of muskets by 1600 the number of ranks declined: *Maurits of Nassau* deployed just 10 and *Gustavus Adolphus* reduced the number to six. This trend would continue in the next era, that of the fusil or *flintlock*, dropping to four ranks in the mid-18th-century system of Frederik the Great and just two or three during the Napoleonic Wars of the early 19th century. The new power of commoner infantry at first made it easier for small nations to assert themselves in arms, as did the Flemings, Portuguese, Scots, and Swiss. It also made it possible for regions of large nations to rebel more successfully and more often. There was a further impact of infantry on warfare: as its role expanded, so too did the size of armies and the corresponding destructive scale of the wars they fought. During the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629) armies rarely exceeded 25,000; a few decades later *Cardinal Richelieu* raised nearly 100,000 to intervene in the *Thirty Years' War*, with the additional levies mostly made up by infantry; by the 19th century infantry armies counted millions of men and by the mid-20th century, tens of millions. See also *arceri*; *ashigaru*; *Azaps*; *Aztec Empire*; *balestrieri*; *Charles the Rash*; *compagnies de l'ordonnance*; *conquistadores*; *countermarch*; *drill*; *franc-archers*; *fusiliers de taille*; *galloglass*; *Inca Empire*; *Janissary Corps*; *kerne*; *Kur'aci*; *lanceri*; *levend/levendat*; *Martolos*; *peones*; *picchieri*; *rotularii*; *schiopettari*; *Sekban*; *targhieri*; *Tüfeçis*; *Voynuqs*; *Yaya infantry*.

Inner Asia. A wide, sweeping plateau region outside classical China from Manchuria, Mongolia, and Turkestan to Tibet, forming a grand crescent embracing the historic Han lands and bordering also on India and eastern Russia. From the time of the Aryans through to the *Mongols* and *Manchus*, Inner Asian nomads played crucially important roles as raiders and conquerors of settled peoples, deeply affecting the history of India, Iran, Russia, the Middle East, the Western Roman Empire, the Byzantine Empire, North Africa, and Europe. Inner Asia's history was especially linked to that of the Han (Chinese) and northern India. Inner Asian peoples organized for war repeatedly raided China and India, and for several centuries ruled both regions through imposed dynasties. They did this despite China and India being settled civilizations that were technologically far more advanced. Ultimately, nomadic and semi-nomadic invaders were assimilated into the larger and far more deeply civilized agrarian societies they overran. The *Ming* tried to reverse the process by incorporating parts of Inner Asia into their empire and subordinating its minority ethnic groups. However, the *Qing* eventually overran China from Manchuria, forcing the final collapse of the Ming. The *Mughals* enjoyed slightly more success in counter-invading Afghanistan.

Suggested Reading: *Cambridge History of Early Inner Asia*, Denis Sinor, ed. (1990); Sechin Jagchid and Luc Kwanten, *Imperial Nomads: A History of Central Asia, 500–1500* (1979); Morris Rossabi, *China and Inner Asia from 1368* (1975); Svat Souchek, *A History of Inner Asia* (2000).

Innocent III (1198–1216). See *Albigensian Crusade*; *Knights of Calatrava*; *Knights of Santiago*.

Inquisition (1478–1834). The ''Medieval Inquisition'' into dissent (''heresy'') from Catholic orthodoxy dates to Pope Gregory IX (r.1227–1241), who instituted it as a special court of inquiry in 1231. Its initial purpose was to aid in suppression of heresy, specifically the bloody campaign in southern France to extirpate the *Albigensian* and Waldensian heresies. Inquisitors used interrogation into faith and morals, including torture and threats of excruciating execution, to ferret out and purge heretical belief among Catholics. The court also spread its inquiries to include charges of witchcraft, divination, demon-worship, blasphemy, and other religious crimes, and acquired extraordinary powers to summon accused. A distinct Inquisition was established in Castile by *Isabella* in 1478 with the approval of the corrupt Pope Sixtus IV (1414–1484, r.1471–1484). It had a high degree of involvement and control by the monarchy. In 1483, *Ferdinand* revived the Medieval Inquisition in Aragon after a long dormancy. With the union of the crowns of Aragon and Castile the Iberian variant became known, infamously, as the ''Spanish Inquisition.'' A separate Inquisition was set up in the Netherlands by *Charles V* in 1522. The Inquisition was formally established by *Philip II* throughout the vast overseas Spanish empire, which included Portugal and its empire from 1580. It expanded to the New World in 1565 and was in place by 1570 in Lima and Mexico City. It drew many an unfortunate colonial Spaniard or Creole into dark and bewildering chambers of canonical law and torture. Indians were exempt: their faith (or faithlessness) was left to inquiry by the local bishops of the *real patronato*. In accordance with the ban issued by the *Council of Trent* on vernacular translations of scripture, in 1576 the Inquisition seized and burned texts translated into native languages. The main focus of the assault was on Franciscans, the leading translators of the day.

The court also spread its inquiries to include charges of witchcraft, divination, demon-worship, blasphemy . . .

All non-Christians were theoretically exempt from jurisdiction of the various Inquisitions. However, in Spain that amounted to a distinction without a difference as the Court applied itself principally and ruthlessly against Jews and, to a lesser extent, Muslims. Persecution accelerated after the fall of *Granada* in 1492. Isabella celebrated the victory by dispatching Christopher Columbus on his first voyage to the New World but also by coerced conversion and the *expulsion of the Jews* from her kingdom. Forcible conversions of Granadine Moors from 1502 were accompanied by a similar *expulsion of the Moors* and violent persecution of all refusing to convert. This included a public ban on ''non-Christian'' (that is, Moorish) dress. For many ''Moriscos'' (converted Moors) this persecution forced a retreat across the water to join co-religionists in North Africa. For the Jews, Isabella's edict led to yet another diaspora which scattered hundreds of thousands across Europe and the

Mediterranean. Some ultimately settled in faraway Russia, Poland, and Ukraine; others went north, where in later decades they played a role in bankrolling Dutch resistance to Spain; many settled in Ottoman Greece, welcomed by Sultan *Bayezid II*. Subsequently, the Spanish Inquisition investigated former Jews and Muslims thought to have insincerely converted to Catholicism to avoid the expulsion orders. Such converts, known as ''New Christians,'' swelled the ranks of older ''converso'' communities of Jews and Muslims who had been baptized, often forcibly, during the *Reconquista*. Some inquisitors doubted the sincerity of mass conversions, others were moved by anti-Semitism, while a great many were more basely interested mainly in confiscated Jewish or Moorish property or imposing large money fines. Those New Christians who admitted to ''secret judaizing'' (practicing their real faith in private, as a matter of conscience) were heavily fined and faced a second choice of conversion or exile. Under such pressure Jewish life was driven underground and largely out of the country as New Christian communities were severely eroded over time by a combination of fear, death, and exile. By the 1530s conscientious Jews who remained in-country lived completely hidden religious lives in constant danger of betrayal to the avaricious savagery of the Inquisition by some other of its frightened victims, or by a covetous neighbor or business competitor. Ultimately, even those who honestly converted did not escape suspicion and accusations of inconstancy. And despite conversion, early in the 17th century many New Christians were expelled anyway by *Philip III*. This was not merely religious or racial prejudice, though it was that in good measure, too. It had much to do with consolidating royal control of Spain as one of the ''*new monarchies*'' in an Age that believed only religiously homogenous societies were sustainable.

The Inquisition and monarchical absolutism together ended centuries of vibrant and civilized life for the Jews and Moors of Iberia. This had two major consequences for the long-term future of Spain as a Great Power. First, forcing abroad many of Spain's most skilled and entrepreneurial subjects left the economy in the hands of a rude country gentry, and over-reliant on the heavily protected and traditional wool industry they controlled. Moreover, this happened just as the ''*Age of Exploration*'' introduced competitive fabrics such as calico to the European marketplace. Over the next 150 years not even American gold and silver would make up for Spain's lack of a modernizing economy, without developed banking and commercial sectors, the very areas where Jews and Moors had predominated and excelled before 1492. Second, Spain's enemies in the Netherlands, north Germany, Denmark, and England welcomed exiled Jewish scholars, and more important, embraced the secular and classical knowledge which had been kept alive for centuries in Arabic translation in Spain. Meanwhile, the Inquisition denied these same works to Catholic scholars.

As the once vibrant intellectual and commercial life which Muslim and Jewish scholars and communities had provided in Spanish cities was lost, a long night of repressive religious orthodoxy descended. A deep cultural and intellectual isolation from the mainstream of Europe set in from which Spain

arguably did not truly emerge until the last decades of the 20th century. Lest this vision be overdone, however, it is important to recall—as the latest scholarship does—that the Spanish Inquisition was never a large or pervasive affair and was almost wholly confined to the cities where most conversos and Moriscos lived. That meant it left largely untouched the majority of the Christian population, which was predominantly rural. Which is to say, the Inquisition in Spain was a fairly typical instrument of early modern repression: it was limited in its reach and capability, though not its intent, to produce conformity through pervasive fear. That said, some of the worst inquisitors—notably the Dominican Torquemada (1420–1498)—would have done far worse than they did if they only had the means. True mass terror was simply beyond the capability of a 15th- or 16th-century state or Church. It awaited the mass industrial technologies and exterminationist ideologies and hatreds of a later age.

Outside Spain, after 1500 the Inquisition had twin purposes: to oppose heresy and to bring the weight and authority of the Catholic Church down upon all political and military enemies of the popes, who were secular rulers in their own right (of the *Papal States*). It also acted in behalf of key papal allies, notably the *Habsburgs*. In 1542, Cardinal Carafa (later, Pope Paul IV) established a ''Holy Office'' in Rome. This ''Roman Inquisition'' was to advance an inquiry into the new heresies of *Lutheranism*, *Calvinism*, *Anabaptism*, and others. More intellectual and tightly controlled than either the Medieval or Spanish Inquisitions, the Holy Office in Rome served principally as an instrument of the Catholic *Counter-Reformation* against the burgeoning *Protestant Reformation*, as did the militant new order of the *Jesuits*. To a lesser extent, it was also a weapon in the Habsburg effort for hegemony under Charles V and Philip II, whose armies were heavily engaged in war with Protestant princes in Europe through most of the 16th century. In 1559, Carafa, a true fanatic and one of the original cardinal Inquisitors, instituted the infamous *Index* of books prohibited to literate Catholics. It was the Roman Inquisition which in 1616 first censored the work on Copernican motions of the planets by Galileo Galilei (1564–1642), then condemned it as heretical after a trial in 1632. ''And yet, it does move'' (''Eppur si muove''). In 1992, 360 years later, the Catholic Church formally acknowledged that it, not Galileo, had erred.

As the wars of religion faded in intensity and from living memory, as the secular settlement of the *Peace of Westphalia* took hold, as Spain fell precipitously from the ranks of the Great Powers and the Habsburgs of Austria were beaten back from Germany in the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648), the influence of the Spanish and Roman Inquisitions also waned and their activity abated. Heavy restrictions were placed upon Inquisitors in Spain in the 1760s and the Jesuits were expelled from Iberia and France. The Spanish Inquisition was formally ended by decree on July 15, 1834. As an instrument of internal Church governance on issues of ''error,'' the Roman Inquisition survived to be replaced (or rather, renamed) by a new doctrinal body, the ''Congregation for the Doctrine of the Faith,'' in the early 1960s. It was long headed by Cardinal Joseph Ratzinger, who was elected Pope Benedict XVI in 2005. See also

casting; *chambre ardente*; *Henri II, of France*; *Henri IV, of France*; *Hus, Jan*; *Hussite Wars*; *Jeanne d'Arc*; *Knights Templar*; *Kakure Kirishitan*; *Kirishitan Shumon Aratame Yaku*; *Lollards*; *Savonarola, Girolamo*; *witchcraft*.

Suggested Reading: J. H. Elliot, *Imperial Spain, 1469–1716* (1964; 1970); B. Hamilton, *The Medieval Inquisition* (1981); Henry Kamen, *The Spanish Inquisition* (rev. ed., 1998); Albert C. Shannon, *The Medieval Inquisition* (1991).

intelligence. Ancient and extensive empires such as China or the Ottoman and Byzantine Empires were practiced in the art of spying, and incorporated political and military intelligence into their planning of major military campaigns. More primitive governments gathered intelligence on an ad hoc basis, buying information—good and bad—from foreign merchants and other travelers where and when they could. Medieval Europe had only peripatetic ambassadors who rarely were able to gather operational intelligence and did not even see that as a legitimate function of their office. The city-states of Italy set up more substantial intelligence operations during the wars and intrigues of the *Italian Renaissance*, attaching these to the staffs of the first resident ambassadors and permanent diplomatic missions. Otherwise, armies on the march sent out a screen of scouts and foragers before them. Some, like the Austrians and Ottomans, had specialized troops for this function. Most just made do. *Philip II* and *Elizabeth I* had spies at the highest levels of each others' courts and diplomatic service, but it was *Cardinal Richelieu* who established and maintained the first large and permanent espionage bureau, an innovation other European states copied during the latter part of the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648), and after. Poor military intelligence was bad enough in land warfare, but it was the major reason that sea battles were few and far between in this period: navies, such as they were, seldom knew the whereabouts of enemy fleets. Most major clashes, such as *Sluys* (1340), happened because enemy fleets accidentally collided at sea or moved deliberately just outside known and likely target ports. See also *Akbar*; *Cecil, William*; *Cortés, Hernán*; *Deshima*; *Inca Empire*; *Inquisition*; *maps*; *military discipline*; *Mary Stuart, Queen of Scots*; *Moctezuma II*; *Mongols*; *Nagasaki*; *ninja*; *Twelve Years' Truce; Walsingham, Sir Francis.*

interior lines (of operations). See *lines of operations*.

Inverlochy, Battle of (February 2, 1645). See *Montrose, Marquis of*.

Invincible Armada (1588). "Spanish Armada." Dispatch of a large fleet by *Philip II* of Spain to escort an invasion army against England was a decision long in the making. In 1585, Pope Sixtus V called on Philip to launch a crusade in behalf of the *Counter-Reformation* to restore England to the Catholicism it enjoyed when Philip was wed to *Mary Tudor*. Philip demurred, as he was preoccupied with the *Eighty Years' War* in the Netherlands and protracted conflicts with the Ottomans and Barbary corsairs. When *Elizabeth I* finally executed *Mary Stuart* in 1587, a 20-year cold war between Protestant England

and Catholic Spain finally went hot. At age 53, the shrewd and cautious ''Virgin Queen'' would never have provoked so powerful an enemy as Philip if she thought peace could be preserved. But she knew the dice were down the moment Mary's head landed in the executioner's basket. Therefore, striking with bold preemption, she ordered *Francis Drake* to the Galicia coast to burn Philip's ships and dockyards to reduce any fleet he might send against her. This was escalation, but not the first shot of the war. For decades English and Dutch pirates had raided Spanish colonies and taken Spanish prizes in the Caribbean. Elizabeth had personally financed and profited from several *privateer* expeditions. However, the judicial murder of a Catholic queen by a heretic strumpet tipped the balance for Philip (who neglected to recall his own plotting with Mary Stuart to assassinate Elizabeth). He dusted off invasion plans tinkered with for over a decade, took money offered by the pope, and ordered an invasion. His weak private code for the project of conquest and reconversion of the island kingdom was ''Enterprise of England.''

Methodical as always, years earlier he had commissioned a study of previous invasions and learned that since the Norman conquest of 1066 England had seen nine governments fall or be seriously weakened by invasion from the sea, seven more landings of armies in Britain, and dozens of successful large-scale coastal raids. After his usual vacillation, Philip settled on a plan of attack that involved bringing together all his ships into a grand armada. This would be sent to collect the *Army of Flanders* and escort it to England. An armed host of 40,000 tough *tercio* veterans led by *Parma* would then march on London, topple the harlot usurper, and restore the ''one true faith'' (in place of the other one). Knowing what was coming from well-placed spies, from 1685 Elizabeth had intrigued with the sultan of the Ottoman Empire (though to little avail), supported the Dutch rebellion to keep Philip tied down in the Netherlands, commissioned new royal warships, and embargoed all merchant vessels which might be converted into warships from leaving English ports. It was only then that she sent Drake to Spain with a squadron to destroy all shipping he found there that might be used in Philip's invasion. On April 29, 1587, Drake entered the harbor at Cadiz and destroyed or captured 24 Spanish ships and burned the docks and warehouses. He then cruised the coastlines of Spain and Portugal, burning whole towns, taking hostages, and desecrating every Catholic church he found. The religious hatred was real and cannot be subtracted from explanation of the Armada campaign: men of the 16th century did not fight merely for economic or rational causes; they sincerely believed in religious war. Even a cut-throat like Drake wrote in his notes as he left for Cadiz that Philip was the Antichrist. Among all the major players, perhaps only Elizabeth was a mild skeptic at heart. In any case, the Cadiz raid steeled Philip's determination to deal once and for all with England. The cost of his grandiose invasion plan was so fearsome he had to sell his wife's jewels to finance it; his righteousness caused him to do so.

For decades English and Dutch pirates has raided Spanish colonies and taken Spanish prizes in the Caribbean.

Elizabeth, too, was feeling stretched: she had one army guarding the Scottish frontier and another she could ill-afford in Flanders. Unbeknownst, her ambassador in Paris, Sir Edward Stafford, was actually a spy for Philip and fed him much accurate information. Her spies were similarly well-placed—one delivered an exact copy of Philip's plans. But the sheer disparity of forces was truly intimidating. Elizabeth knew she could not stop Parma's veterans on land with her ill-equipped and outnumbered *trained bands*. She and her captains therefore decided to stop the Spanish at sea. That is why, as she laid the keels of new fighting *galleons* and converted armed merchants to full-fledged warships, she sent Drake to reduce the size of the coming Armada even before it assembled. Upon his return Drake told her: ''I have singed the beard of the King of Spain.'' He had done much more: Philip could stand the loss of a few ships, but neither he nor Drake yet knew that the real damage had been done when Drake's crews burned thousands of barrels and barrel staves stacked in warehouses waiting to be filled with potable water for the Spanish fleet. These had to be replaced with fresh-cut, green staves which would slowly poison their contents and later, Spanish crews.

Philip's plan called for a fleet of 50 royal galleons and 100 more ''great ships,'' plus 40 *hulks* to carry supplies. Parma's men would cross on 200 flat-bottomed barges being built in Flanders. By the spring of 1588, Philip had gathered only 13 galleons, 6 galleasses, 40 galleys, and a dozen small cargo ships. To these he added a motley crew of 70 hired or commandeered merchants, many of them rotten and slowed by cracks, bilge water, and barnacles. Worse, Spain did not have the skilled sailors to man even these ships. Men were hurriedly pressed from all over Iberia, and not just the sea towns. This produced seamen but not seamanship. When his top admiral, the *Marques de Santa Cruz*, died before the Armada was ready to sail Philip gave the task to Medina Sidonia on short notice. Sidonia hailed from a respected Castilian family but had no experience of either the sea or war, told Philip this, and begged to be relieved. He was denied. Sidonia arrived in Lisbon, where the Armada was assembling, to find utter chaos. Guns and powder, barrels of fresh water, casks of ship's biscuit, had all been loaded in haste. And Philip kept some ships at the ready all winter: crews and marines had eaten the stores and many were already sick with ''ship's fever.'' There were no reliable records as to what was stored on any given ship. Some had cannons but no shot or the wrong shot (the Spanish failure to standardize calibers would cost many lives); some had shot but no guns; other ships had guns and shot buried so deep in their holds they were effectively lost. Sidonia set about redistributing guns and stores and buying new supplies to replace those rotten or eaten: bacon, fish, hard cheese, rice, beans, vinegar, olive oil, and water by the hundredweight stored in new, green barrels. He doubled the powder order and raised the rounds of shot to 50 for each gun, for a total of 123,790 cannonballs (Sidonia and Philip kept excellent records, which have survived). Everyone in command thought that was plenty of powder and shot. In fact, the supply would prove woefully short. Smartly for a man with no sea

experience, Sidonia ordered rotten timbers replaced and had ships careened, scraped, and tallowed. Still, in the nature of a convoy, the Armada would sail at the speed of its slowest ships.

As these preparations were underway Philip agreed to lend the Armada great ships from his India fleet, eight huge galleons from Portugal, which he had annexed in 1580, and more from the Caribbean. Other ships straggled in from Naples or Sicily. On May 25, 1588, Sidonia attended mass in Lisbon Cathedral. Every man on every ship was confessed and took communion; each captain read warnings of severe punishment for blasphemy and cursing; each ship was searched to ensure no women were aboard; and 180 priests boarded the fleet, to tend to its crews but more, expecting to land in England to do God's work of reconversion of a heretic land, where they expected to be received by English Catholics as liberators. Each ship was freshly painted, though in too many the new paint merely hid rotten decks and creaky, unsound hulls. In the Cathedral the Archbishop gave Sidonia a great banner with the Arms of Spain and Christ crucified on one side and the Virgin Mary on the other. In Latin, it read: ''Arise, O Lord, And Vindicate Thy Cause.'' It was not just Philip who thought God fought on Spain's side: most everyone in Lisbon and Madrid believed the Armada was Invincible. Later, the name ''Invincible Armada'' stuck, not as a boast but as tragic irony remembering a terrible national disaster.

In contrast, the English fleet stayed at the half-ready over the winter with most crew ashore and thus with ship's stores intact. Its sailors were men and boys who had grown up to the sea and knew their home waters. Also, where the Spanish fleet took 20,000 marines onboard, expecting an infantry battle at sea, English ships had only a few dozen sharpshooters each. The English plan was to stand off and use long-range *ship smashers*, not grapple and fight in galley-fashion as the Spanish, with a long history of Mediterranean naval warfare, intended. Yet, even the English would be surprised at what actually happened when the battle fleets met in the Channel. Never before, and never again until the great carrier battles of World War II, had so many warships put to sea with so little knowledge of their own or their enemy's real capabilities. It was, after all, the first fleet-to-fleet battle of the ''Age of Fighting Sail.''

The Armada sailed by national contingent: 10 galleons of Castile paralleled by 10 more from Portugal; next came 4 galleasses from Naples; then 40 armed merchants in squadrons of 10; plus 34 small and fast ships to serve as couriers, scouts, and dispatch carriers. Bringing up the rear were 23 hulks and 4 galleys. Flitting and darting among the larger ships were a squadron of *zabras* and *pataches*. All together 143 ships, 8,000 sailors, and 20,000 soldiers, among them 12,000 raw recruits, moved out of the harbor that fine May day. Sidonia had salted renegade English and Dutch pilots into each squadron to guide his captains through unknown Channel waters, but his crews were mostly green and lacked seamanship. It thus took 13 days for the Armada to move just 150 miles up the Portuguese coast. Then the crews were sorely

tested by a great storm. When it was over it took Sidonia four days just to find and gather his ships and another month to repair them. The Armada did not set out again until July 21.

The English commander waiting to meet it was Admiral Lord *Howard of Effingham*. His top captains were all once and future privateers: *John Hawkyns*, *Francis Drake*, and *Martin Frobisher*. They set sail with Elizabeth's fleet on July 29. The next night, Saturday, having weathered a second storm in which four galleys were lost along with another ship, the Armada moved into the Channel. It was spotted from shore and beacon fires lighted. Quickly, a line of fires hopscotched from hilltop to hilltop until the entire south coast of England was awake and warned from Plymouth to Dover. A second string of signal fires raced inland faster than man or horse or ship, to London, York, and as far north as Durham. The queen and militia were alerted and England readied to repel invasion.

From the moment the Spanish entered the Channel they lost the *weather gauge*, as English ships pulled in behind them out of Bristol and Portsmouth. Because winds held steady westerly for the next nine days, the English kept the wind advantage throughout. Moreover, the best English galleons were race-built and had skilled crews while too many Spanish ships were ponderous, leaky hulks or crewed by inexperienced sailors. Unable to outrun his more agile pursuers, Sidonia formed a great crescent with his strongest fighting ships at the tips to ward off the English and protect his weakest and slowest ships at the center. Howard and his captains followed at a distance while much of England gather at the coast to watch the fleets slowly pass. If the English were astonished at the size of the Armada the Spanish wondered at the speed and handling of the English race-built galleons, and at their number. No one had seen fleets like these before. This was something entirely new in the world: great battle fleets of Fighting Sail. Although no one knew it then, these ships and their descendants would dominate war at sea for the next 300 years, until the advent of steam and armor plate.

The first battle in modern naval history, fought by broadside navies, began on July 31, 1588, with an old chivalric gesture: an exchange of defiant notes delivered by each admiral's pinnace (ship's boat). Howard then formed a *line astern* and moved to attack the north tip of the Spanish crescent while Drake and Hawkyns attacked the southern wing. Each side's tactics failed. Sidonia wanted to force a mêlée in which his ships would close and grapple and his marines overmatch the English. But even his best ships were not fast or handy as the enemy, so he was forced instead to hold formation and crawl northeast at one or two knots per hour. Howard wanted to stand off and hammer away with his long-range ship-smashers, a tactic never before used in a fleet-to-fleet action at sea, to avoid tangling with Spanish boarders and thousands of shipboard marines. English long-range gunnery was accurate, scoring many hits, but to Howard's surprise his great *culverins* did not fire or sink any enemy ships. He moved his line in to 300 yards range to pound away some more. English gunners were again faster and more accurate than the Spanish, partly due to a difference in *gun carriages*. Hundreds of Spaniards died and Spanish

sails flapped uselessly in the wind as rigging and spars were shot away at close range. Still without sinking one of Sidonia's ships, Howard finally turned away at 1:00 P.M. Sidonia immediately broke the tips off his defensive crescent and sent his best warships in columns after the fast-fading English. Howard simply outran them, refusing to close for boarding actions with ships that overmatched his in upper deck small arms firepower and the number of their marines. After three hours the Spanish gave up, turning back north to rejoin the crescent that became their signature formation. That ended the first day.

The Spanish had been bloodied and were frustrated, but not seriously hurt. If this was all Howard and ''El Draque'' could do, they would soon join Parma's army and escort it to English shores, and the invasion would succeed. The English ships were hardly hurt at all, but the English captains were deeply alarmed. They had scored hundred of hits with their big guns, yet the Armada still moved in unbroken order toward its rendezvous with Parma, and England's bane. The first real losses came not from English gunning but when two Spanish capital ships fell to accident: one lost to a collision that forced her into a French port, the other blown up by ignition of its magazine. With the English closing, the burning wreck was left behind. So close were the English, in fact, that Howard was startled to discover on the second night that he was following the poop lantern of Sidonia's flagship, not one of his own galleons in *line ahead* as he thought. Finding himself deep inside the curve of Sidonia's crescent, Howard silently tacked away. The English pursuit lines broke up overnight in the foggy dew and had to reform in the morning. On the third day Drake, ever the pirate, broke away to take a 46-gun Spanish straggler and prize into port, for his personal profit. And so it went for a week, the Spanish crawling north hugging their vulnerable hulks; English ships following to pick off the wounded and stragglers, but not slowing the herd. There was also one skirmish in which a Spanish galleon dropped its topsails in the classic invitation to a boarding action, only to have English galleons race in to fire point-blank broadsides as they passed her in a tight battle line.

A second big fight took place off Portland Bill, 170 miles south of Calais. It went much the same as the fight on the first day: men died and ships were damaged, but somehow struggled on. The English were learning that only close-in broadsides did real harm to the thick beams of Spanish galleons. And there was something else: both fleets were out of shot, or nearly so. Howard restocked with cannonballs brought out to the fleet by fishing boats from nearby English ports. More ammunition was rushed to the coast from all over England. Soon, even this supply would run low. The Spanish were in worse shape: many ships were almost out of shot; others discovered they still had the wrong sizes, rendering their guns useless. Deep into hostile waters against a fleet that showed itself equal or better than their own in seamanship and fire power, all Spanish thoughts turned to Calais. For all the dash and daring of experienced English captains, however, nothing they did stopped the slow progress of the Armada. When it hove to at the safe harbor of Calais on August 6 it looked like the ''Enterprise of England'' might well succeed despite English skill. Fortunately for England, Sidonia was still 30 miles from

Dunkirk where the invasion army and its 200 barges were blockaded by small but deadly warships of the *Sea Beggars*, then allied to England. Parma refused to load men on the barges without Sidonia dealing with the Dutch ships. He might have walked his men to Calais but he could not get the barges there, unescorted through the Dutch blockade. This was a major flaw in Philip's grand design all along. As so often, Philip had trusted to God to find a way that he could not see yet. Now it was God's favor the Spanish could not find.

As matters turned out Parma's dilemma did not matter: Howard sent eight *fireships* two-by-two into Calais harbor that night, riding brilliantly toward more than 100 tightly packed Spanish vessels. These were not the usual ship's boats or burning rafts: they were ''Hellburners,'' copies of explosive fireships the Dutch used to blow up 800 of Parma's men on a fortified bridge over the Scheldt three years earlier. Tall ships culled from the weaklings of the fleet, soaked in tar, loaded down with faggots of oil-soaked wood, with barrels of black powder on their decks and in holds, they floated in with the wind and on a rising tide. Their iron cannon were loaded with double or triple shot, each a time bomb waiting for flames to lick its barrel and explode the gun into deadly shrapnel. These were fireships that might blow up the harbor. Beyond them, waiting in line along the horizon, curved the English battle fleet readying to blast away at all who sought escape. To his credit, when the little lights appeared over the distant water Sidonia did not panic. He sent out pinnaces with grapples to tow the fireships ashore shy of the harbor. Brave Spaniards got the first two, but then white-hot cannons on the second pair went off and all hell broke loose. Panic swept through the suddenly vulnerable ships of the Armada. Captains slipped or even cut their cables and scattered in utter disorder as the four remaining Hellburners floated into the harbor, double-shotted guns exploding at random, burning rigging and spars falling onto the wooden decks and rolled canvas of trapped ships and men desperate to live another day.

When dawn came, the Spanish were completely disordered. Some captains ran before the wind and the English battle line; others had floundered onto rocks in the night. Regardless, they were set upon by English sail and guns. This was the ''Battle of Gravelines.'' Through collisions at sea, shot off rudders and random groundings in night fog and unknown waters, the Spanish lost several capital ships. The fighting was ship-to-ship rather than fleet-to-fleet as all order was lost in a tangled, swirling fight in which all were carried by heavy winds farther up the Channel toward the North Sea. The Spanish fought bravely, desperately trying to close and board—the only fight left in their ships. The English fought ferociously, standing off and blasting men and ships into surrender or the sea. The English ships came in close, to 50 yards or less, not to board but to make every shot and broadside count. English crews and captains were proving fast learners of this new way of war at sea. At Gravelines they sank one Spanish ship-of-the-line and forced two Portuguese galleons to run aground, losing no ships themselves in any engagement beyond the eight small suicides they had expended the night before. The key was superior gunnery: the Spanish lacked heavy naval artillery and had much

inferior gun carriages, which made even their smaller guns cumbersome to reload and fire. And they carried a motley crew of calibers. That may well have befitted the convoy escort assignment for which Philip intended the Armada, but it ill-served a battle fleet engaged with the well-trained and better-armed Elizabethan navy, commanding large caliber weapons and enjoying possibly a 3:1 greater rate of fire. Nor did any of the 20,000 soldiers the Spanish ships carried in order to close and board the enemy actually manage to do so: not a single English ship was boarded, and while Spanish marines killed English sailors with volley musket fire the English killed far more with grapeshot and snipers.

Sidonia gave no more thought to the invasion. All his thinking was of getting home with as many ships and men as he could. He shepherded survivors back into a ragged defensive crescent and looked to escape. He had few choices: prevailing winds and the English fleet blocked the Armada from the direct route back to Spain. It would have to go the long way around the British Isles, with English guns barking at its heels. The two fleets thus resumed their northward passage and sedate chase. When the Armada was off the shores of Scotland Howard at last turned away, confident Sidonia could not now meet with and escort Parma. It was now that Spanish suffering really began. The fleet spent many days rounding Scotland and the Orkneys, through frigid and unfamiliar seas without even portolan charts for guidance. Then it was south past the west coast of Ireland: more days of struggling through vicious Atlantic storms, shipwrecking on unseen Irish rocks or promontories, tending to 3,000 horribly wounded and burned sailors and marines, sick with hunger or from spoiled fish and bad water, days upon nights of despair and death. On the voyage home though Gaelic waters dark to Spanish ken or experience, the Armada lost fully one-third of its complement: 50 ships and 15,000 men. In all this misery military discipline at last broke down. Sidonia removed and condemned 20 captains and actually hanged one, a neighbor of his from Castile. The corpse dangled from the yardarm of a pinnace which Sidonia paraded through the fleet ''pour encourager les autres.''

. . . while Spanish marines killed English sailors with volley musket fire the English killed far more with grapeshot and snipers.

There was no fresh food and the salt fish and pork were rotten in the casks. Far worse, there was almost no unspoiled water. It was only now that the full import of Drake's raid on Cadiz was understood and felt. To save potable water for the men Sidonia had all horses and mules thrown overboard. The strange sight of thousands of poor beasts swimming in open ocean with no land or ship to be seen was later reported by English and Danish fishing boats. Besides those men dying of battle wounds, burns, and impalements by huge wooden slivers blasted out of the wooden walls of the Spanish ships, hundreds more fell deathly ill daily from disease. When the tattered fleet rounded the bitter coast of Galway it must have seemed that God had abandoned Spain: two weeks of storms ensued and thousands of Spaniards drowned in cold Irish waters as ships wreaked almost daily. Hundreds more had their brains caved

in by Irish bounty hunters or English troops as they lay exhausted on rocky beaches. A few made it inland and were given shelter, but most died or were murdered. What is remarkable is that Sidonia got as many ships home as he did: 44 straggled into Spanish harbors, though some of these never sailed again. Nor did the suffering stop even then. For weeks men kept dying, victims of fevers or wounds and of neglect. They died in droves in England, too, from the same causes: medical ignorance and military backwardness that made no provision for plain folk, victor or defeated.

What was won and lost? England remained Protestant and independent. The Eighty Years' War burned on for another 60 years, leading ultimately to independence also for the Calvinist Netherlands. Yet Spain remained so militarily dominant that it sent two more armadas north against England in the coming decades, and still fought several wars at once against mightier enemies than Elizabeth. But Spain's reputation for invincibility was lost forever and its confidence was deeply shaken. Imperial Spain was not yet the decrepit and delusional old man it was portrayed to be by one of Philip's own soldiers, not yet the Don Quixote of Miguel Cervantes' gentle and affectionate mocking. But it was a wounded and shaken power. The evidence of that change was not long in coming: the very next year Elizabeth sent Drake and a fleet of 126 English warships to Santander, to destroy at anchor what was left of the Spanish Armada.

Suggested Reading: J.F.C. Fuller, *A Military History of the Western World*, Vol. 2 (1954; 1955); David Howarth, *Voyage of the Armada* (1981); Colin Martin and Geoffrey Parker, *The Spanish Armada* (1988); Geoffrey Parker, *The Grand Strategy of Philip II* (1998).

invincible generalissimo. A Chinese-designed, muzzle-loading cannon of the mid-15th century. It was essentially a *bombard*, massive in size and served by a crew of several dozen men who were needed to reposition it after each firing and to cart its ammunition and shot. By the mid-16th century the term was applied to a smaller breech-loader that came with a towable cart and a crew of just three or four gunners.

Iran. In the 8th century Zoroastrian Iran was forcibly converted to *Islam* by Arab conquerors. This was a key period for the Iranian nation and for Islam. Within a generation of the Prophet Muhammad's death a succession crisis had divided Islam into *sunni* and *shī'a* branches. Most Iranians cleaved to the minority shī'a faction. This split deepened over the centuries, adding to the ethnic differences which divided Iran from the dominant Arab, and later Turkic, nations of the Muslim world. In the 12th century the *Mongols* overran Iran, an interregnum which actually gave the country some internal stability and even prosperity without much influencing or changing its unique Islamic culture or people. The Mongol ruling class was slowly assimilated to the majority culture, with the Il-khans converting to Islam in 1295. The main contest of these years was with *Mamlūk*-governed Egypt, though a peace was agreed in 1323. Islamicized Mongols divided Iran into

small states upon the death of their Il-Khan in 1336. This weakening opened the door to later conquest by *Timur* and his Turkish-Mongol followers. After Timur's death in 1405 his "Timurid" successors ruled eastern Iran from militarized capitals at Herat, Samarqand, and Bukhara. They were followed by Turkic overlords until 1502, when the *Safavid* dynasty was founded by Shah Ismail I (1486–1524, r.1502–1524) in partnership with the *Qizilbash*. Shī'a Iran thus regained its political independence from foreign (and sunni) rule. Under Ismail, shī'ism was established as the state religion. This aggravated tensions with the Uzbeks and Ottomans, both sunni peoples. In 1510, Ismail pushed the Uzbeks back but chronic warfare along the frontier continued throughout the 16th century. In 1514, Safavid Iran was attacked by Ottoman Emperor *Selim I*. Conservative Safavid military elites had not yet adapted to the gunpowder revolution, viewing firearms—as did the Mamlūks of Egypt—with distaste and as dishonorable and disruptive of their preferred social order and feudal levies. The Iranian Army was still comprised mostly of mounted archers. These were overwhelmed by musket-bearing *Janissaries* and some 200 cannon which the Ottomans mustered for battle at *Chaldiran* (1514). Only a mutiny in the Ottoman ranks afterward prevented Selim from occupying and destroying the Safavid regime in Iran.

Chaldiran initiated a century of violence along the Iranian border arising from a potent mixture of religious, ethnic, and imperial divisions and ambitions. The shahs learned from Chaldiran and began to adopt gunpowder weapons along with imported military advice from Venetian, Portuguese, and English *renegades* and some Ottoman deserters. Within a year of Chaldiran 2,000 muskets were manufactured in Iran along with 40 cannon copied from a broken and abandoned Ottoman gun found in a river bed. Still, this was merely ad hoc and supplementary, not a true reform of the Safavid reliance on mounted archers. The Safavids were additionally handicapped by numbers: in the mid-16th century they could field only about 20,000 troops, far fewer than the Ottomans. Fighting continued along the frontier despite the *Peace of Amasya* (1555), which ended the Ottoman–Safavid war by recognizing Ottoman rule over Iraq and eastern Anatolia and Iranian suzerainty over Azerbaijan and parts of the Caucuses. Iran used the respite to rearm. By the 1570s the Iranians were manufacturing larger numbers of handguns with imported machinery. Nevertheless, Iran was so weakened by internal dissent under Muhammad Khudabanda (1578–1587) the Ottomans launched an offensive into the Caucasus in 1578. The threat from the Ottomans caused the Safavid capital to be moved from Tabrīz to Qazwin in 1555, then to Isfahan in 1597.

During most of this period the Iranian Army was still an almost exclusively tribal cavalry force armed with bows, swords, and some firearms. It was not until truly radical military reforms were instituted by *Abbas I* that the Iranian Army became an infantry-heavy and predominantly firearms-using force. When it did, it emerged as an even match for the Ottomans as war resumed in 1603, while the latter were distracted by the *Thirteen Years' War* (1593–1606) with the Habsburgs in the *Militargrenze*. The shift in the military balance was

made clear at *Sis* (1606), where Iranian guns left 20,000 Ottoman dead on the field. Safavid capture of the key fortresses of Tabrīs (1603) and Erivan (1604) quieted the Caucasus frontier for several decades. But from 1623 to 1638 the rival Muslim empires struggled over Iraq, after the Ottoman garrison in Baghdad went over to the Safavids in 1623. Iranian offensives were launched into Iraq in 1624, 1629–1630, and 1638. After the death of Abbas the Ottomans made gains as the division of Europe by the *Protestant Reformation* freed troops and resources to retake Iraq from Iran. The Safavids lost Kandahar, then Baghdad to the Ottomans. Iraq returned to the Ottomans and the balance of power was restored in 1639, as codified in the *Treaty of Zuhab*, or Qasr-i Shirin. The settlement left each empire intact and reasonably secure. The Iranians held their own against other regional enemies during the 17th century even as the Safavid regime itself went into terminal decline. Iran had avoided being absorbed into the powerful Ottoman Empire. That meant creating a key and lasting historical distinction to add to the cultural and religious differences from the Arab and Turkic areas of the greater Middle East, and the wider Muslim world.

Suggested Reading: Charles Melville, ed., *Safavid Persia* (1996); David Morgan, *Medieval Persia, 1040–1797* (1988); A. T. Olmstead, *A History of the Persian Empire*, 2nd ed. (1969); Said Arjomand, *The Shadow of God and the Hidden Imam* (1984); Roger Savory, *Iran Under the Safavids* (1980).

Iraq. Iraq was overrun by the Arab conquest of the 7th century, which brought with it a new language, military elite, and religion (*Islam*). During the first centuries of the Islamic era Baghdad was home to the Abbasid *caliphs*, to great universities (madrasa), and a florescence of ancient science and learning. Baghdad fell to the *Mongols* in 1258. It was sacked and burned and the caliph and his family slaughtered in a gory public spectacle. As the regime collapsed so too did the great irrigation works that sustained high civilization along the Tigris and Euphrates. The Mongols chose to rule from distant Azerbaijan (Tabrīz), leaving Iraq so weakened that the desert Bedouin were emboldened to raid its southern reaches. Unlike in Iran, therefore, Mongol rule had a devastating impact on Iraq. In the early 17th century the Ottomans and Safavids fought several times over possession of Baghdad and greater Iraq. In 1623 the Ottoman garrison in Baghdad defected to the Safavids, provoking a sustained Ottoman campaign to recover Iraq. After three *sieges of Baghdad* the city was recovered by the Ottomans in 1638. Iraq was then secured permanently to the Ottoman Empire by the *Treaty of Zuhab* (1639).

Ireland. Ireland was formally annexed by Henry II (1133–1189) of England. Between 1169 and 1175 it was invaded by the *Normans* under ''Strongbow'' (Earl Richard de Clare). This was part of the larger Norman attempt to conquer the ''Celtic fringe'' of the British Isles. Norman castles and garrisons soon controlled Irish towns but the bog country and forests remained Irish, home to guerillas and ambushes. The Normans stayed inside their castles or

retreated into ''*The Pale*'' around Dublin, while small war became a way of life. This period of Irish history was not marked by national differences from England, Scotland, and Wales so much as by the shared ''Norman Monarchy'' that was rooted in England but had branches in the Gaelic areas of the British Isles (except for Scotland). An attempted invasion of Ulster from Scotland, 1315–1318, was beaten back. Thereafter, war in Ireland was marked by skirmishes and raids typical of frontier zones, or *Marches*. This was not fundamentally changed until the mid-17th century when the main currents of European military advances in artillery, fortification, infantry firepower, and naval armaments finally reached Ireland's shores. Until then the *Old English* remained in control of most Irish towns, outside of which there were few roads, many impassible bogs, and a ''bandit-ridden'' countryside dominated by *Old Irish* Gaelic warlords and clan wars. In fighting the English these lords usually avoided pitched battle but were expert at ambush and ruse and other elements of *guerre couverte*. It was thus topography more than technology, along with appropriate tactics, that kept the Irish and English military worlds separate and in rough balance.

Although Irish labor migrated across the Atlantic as an integral part of the Anglo-Scottish colonization of the New World, and some Irish prospered as landlords and plantation owners in the West Indies, in general Ireland was more a target of colonization than a source of colonists prior to the 18th century. Successive waves of Anglo-Scottish colonization, the so-called ''plantations'' of the 16th–17th centuries, aimed at securing England's strategic rear from foreign invasion and to enforce a Protestant ascendancy over Ireland's stubbornly Catholic population. The key event was the *Kildare Rebellion*, a violent response by Catholic Ireland to Protestant reforms in England. Over the next 70 years the Tudor conquest was completed, but it would be misleading to say that Ireland was constantly at war. Prior to the 1590s most conflicts were local and sporadic and not always against the government in the Pale. The masters of the Lordship had only 1,200 men available to them in 1560, rising to 3,000 in 1570 but falling thereafter to 1,500 in 1593. Fortunately for the Tudors, Shane O'Neill's battles of the 1560s were mainly against Scots and other Irish, not the ''English garrison.'' A revolt in Munster from 1569 to 1573 was but a sporadic guerilla affair. Besides, many lords, notably those of Ulster, actively supported the Crown until the great revolt of the 1590s. The major English military effort was thus made from 1598 to 1603 to put down the one truly national revolt that threatened Tudor governance: the *Nine Years' War* (1594–1603). The victory of 1603 established English rule unchallengeably over the whole island for four decades, broke the old Gaelic aristocracy, and opened the door to a further and deeper ''Plantation of Ulster.''

Ireland remained nearly as religiously divided as contemporary Poland or Germany. Catholics were split between a Gaelic peasant underclass and a ruling class of Catholic Old English and Old Irish, both divided from the Protestant *New English*. Constitutionally, too, Ireland was a confused domain falling part way between colony and kingdom. In October 1641, a religious

rebellion broke out in Ireland led by Old English and Old Irish landowners who feared the success of the *Covenanters* in England and Scotland would lead to massive plantation of radical Protestants. Starting in Ulster in December, some 4,000 Protestants across Ireland were massacred. That was far fewer than alleged in Protestant propaganda at the time, but about as many as died in the *St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres* in France in 1572. The massacres and repeated efforts of *Charles I* to raise Catholic Irish armies to put down Parliamentary and Protestant rebellion in Scotland and England meant that Ireland was swept into the *English Civil Wars* (1639–1651) that engulfed the Three Kingdoms in the 1640s.

Throughout these wars Gaelic Irish were seen by plantation Protestants, and by the merchant-monarchical alliance in England that dispatched them, as barbarous and backward, on a social and moral par with New World "savages." They would surely benefit from enforced subservience to the "true religion" and superior culture and law of the Anglo-Scots, it was thought. As Gaels were progressively dispossessed of lands and legal rights, like New World Indians they rose in rebellion in the mid-17th century. Their rising was met with ferocious military, legal, and political retaliation by the Anglo-Scots, leading to additional dispossession and efforts at furthering Protestantization through plantation. The military-settlement technique used in the plantations of Ireland resembled the Roman and Norman models of expansion by colonization, and the Iberian *Reconquista*. Irish plantations later became a model for methods used by Anglo-Scots colonizers overseas: stark military assertion of authority over the native population, expropriation of land, and marginalization of the native elites. *Oliver Cromwell* later dragooned thousands of Irish as forced laborers sent to the Bahamas. Other Irish dispossessed "voluntarily" joined the flow of conquered Celtic peoples to England's overseas colonies. This migration of cheap indentured Irish labor "was the largest single flow of white immigrants to the 17th century West Indies." The loss of population was not made up by Protestant inflows as from the 1660s Ireland proved less attractive to potential settlers than the brave new worlds opening in America. Even some former planters uprooted to seek greater fortune across the Atlantic. See also *Confederation of Kilkenny*; *Confederate Army*; *galloglass*; *hobelars*; *kerne*; *March*; *Ormonde, 1st Duke of*; *redshanks*; *Wars of the Roses*.

. . . cheap indentured Irish labor "was the largest single flow of white immigrants to the 17th century West Indies."

Suggested Reading: T. Bartlett and Keith Jeffrey, eds., *A Military History of Ireland* (1996); Nicholas Canny, *Making Ireland British: 1580–1650* (2001); Pádraig Lenihan, ed., *Conquest and Resistance* (2001).

Ireton, Henry (1611–1651). Roundhead general. His first military experience came after he raised a troop of cavalry for Parliament. He fought at *Edgehill* (1642), Gainsborough (1643), *Marston Moor* (1644), and Second Newbury (1644). When the *New Model Army* was organized by *Thomas Fairfax*, Ireton

was appointed Commissary General of Horse under *Oliver Cromwell*. He was bested by *Rupert*, wounded, and taken prisoner at *Naseby* (1645). In 1646 he married Cromwell's daughter. A close ally of his father-in-law, he was among those who signed the king's death warrant. He served with Cromwell in Ireland, 1649–1650, and took command when Cromwell departed for England. He was especially cruel to civilians during the siege of Limerick (October 1651), but merciful upon the town's surrender. He died of fever in Ireland. In 1660 his corpse was exhumed and displayed by the king's men, marked as that of a traitor and regicide. See also *Levellers*.

Ironsides. Originally, a Royalist appellation for *Oliver Cromwell*. Later, it was used for all *Roundhead* troopers but especially Puritan devouts. Ironside cavalry abandoned most armor, which offered little protection against heavy *muskets* and *calivers*. Instead, they wore *buff coats* and buff leather thigh-high boots to protect against slashing swords and bills. They had a rough merit system in which troopers who proved mettle in battle, whatever their social origin, might rise to command. They were well-trained, well-armed, highly disciplined, and devout ''soldiers of the Lord.'' Cromwell said of his Ironside cavalry: ''I raised such men as had the fear of God before them, and made some conscience of what they did; and from that day forward . . . they were never beaten.'' See also *English Civil Wars*.

Iroquois Confederacy. See *Haudenosaunee*; *Indian Wars (North America)*.

Isabella I (1451–1504). See *Ferdinand II, of Aragon, and Isabella I, of Castile*.

ishan. Cash bonuses given to *Janissaries* and other Ottoman troops by the sultan or his *serdar*. They were usually distributed ritually, to mark important political milestones or reward service in battle.

Islam. ''Submission'' (to the will of Allah). The prophetic revelation to Muhammad (570–632 C.E.) is traditionally dated to 609 C.E. Persecuted in Mecca by its polytheistic community, in 622 Muhammad and a handful of monotheistic followers moved 220 miles north to the oasis town of Yathrib (later called Al-Madīna, or ''The City''), which promised them the protection of a political and military alliance. This ''Hijra'' (migration) of the first Muslims was key to Muhammad's apostolate and to Muslim military success. In recognition of this, it marks the first year of the Muslim calendar (A.H.). Muhammad soon wielded supreme military and political power as well as religious authority within the ''Umma'' (community of the faithful). Proclaimed as the ''Seal'' (last) of the Prophets, he suppressed idolatry and polytheism, proclaimed Allah's final revelation, and waged *holy war* against surrounding pagan communities. Conversions came through persuasion but also by way of the sword, as pagan *Bedouin* were defeated and absorbed into the Umma and their desert power made subservient to Muhammad's urban leadership. At Medina the first Muslims thus gained valuable experience in

desert warfare. They not only fought and subdued nearby pagan tribes, they campaigned as well against the rich caravans and more substantial armies of the pagan rulers of Mecca. After eight years of *razzia* and some set-piece battles, Muhammad led his Muslim followers in the conquest of Mecca. He expelled from that great crossroads city all idol-worshipers who would not convert, and enacted Muslim law and rule. This made the Umma the most powerful religious and political community in Arabia. The faith was then spread throughout the desert peninsula by the sword of ''jihad'' and by devout preachers and prosperous Muslim traders. Within a few generations of Muhammad's death on June 8, 632, the Umma had expanded far beyond his Arabian homeland to become one of history's great empires, shaped and sustained by a major world religion.

The ''explosion of Islam'' out of Arabia in the 7th century C.E., was one of the seminal and spectacular events of world history. Along with prospects of plunder the new faith inspired, or at least justified, conquest of non-Muslim areas by Arab armies. Islam spread with Allah's promise to desert armies of sure conquest of fertile, irrigated lands beyond Arabia. And what a conquest it was: Arab armies overran the Middle East, North Africa, Spain, Iran, Anatolia, Central Asia, northern India, and reached into parts of what is today western China. A new world power had arisen that was Arab in its military organization and rulership and Muslim by faith. Its emergence cut off the Byzantine Empire and Western Europe from their ancient and rich trade with the Far East. As it spread, Islam attracted the genuine loyalty of conquered populations, and especially of opportunistic elites. Many traders were drawn to Islam as a means of gaining access to the markets of the new Arab *amsār* (garrison) towns, which soon became the foci of political and economic power in a transformed region. Some converted out of sincere piety, others to avoid special taxes on non-Muslims or to improve social standing: Arab military-governing elites kept themselves separate and upheld sharp social distinctions concerning even non-Arab Muslims. This situation lasted until a set of great social reforms were implemented during the second century A.H. (ninth century C.E.). Thereafter, Arabs played an ever-decreasing role in leadership of the Muslim world, assimilated into or displaced by converted local elites and later by Islamicized dynasties and empires founded by various Turkic peoples.

The location and power of this new empire, and direct military pressure from Muslim armies, helped push Byzantium on the path toward terminal decline and, though less directly, helped move Western Europe down the road to impoverished, castellan *feudalism*. Within the conquered areas of the Mediterranean world older communities of Christians and Jews were tolerated as ''dhimmîs'' (''peoples of the Book [of God]''), who earlier had received partial prophesies from Abraham, Moses, and Jesus, among others. Some peoples were classified as pagans (''infidels,'' or ''*kaffirs*'') and might be put to the sword if they refused conversion, though this practice proved impracticable on a large-scale in densely populated Zoroastrian Iran and Hindu India. Those who persisted in faiths that were acceptable but inferior (because

prior) to Islam, Christians and Jews, were subjected to the *jizya*, a tax imposed on non-Muslims. Taxes were lower for any who converted while broad religious tolerance of those who did not preserved civic peace. In the ancient world Alexander had overrun the Persian Empire and unintentionally freed enormous stockpiles of gold and silver hoarded for centuries, which thereafter stimulated an economic renaissance. So, too, the Arab conquest freed vast amounts of wealth that had been underutilized in pre-Islamic economies by nonproductive and highly privileged aristocracies, or locked up as bequests to monasteries and churches. The economic boom which followed additionally facilitated acceptance of foreign Arab military aristocracies and their new religion, laws, and language.

As Islam expanded into areas of large non-Muslim populations exceptions to persecution of adamant nonbelievers were allowed. Persia's Zoroastrians and India's Hindus, who each proved too numerous to wholly convert or annihilate, in time achieved de facto status as dhimmîs. Indeed, Iranian influences importantly reshaped Islamic culture and government, as that nation's highly talented ruling classes worked from within to hold onto what they could. By the 10th century, in many lands Islam had discarded its original Arabian character through absorption of local influences from older, much more established and literate civilizations in Egypt, Iran, India, and across North Africa (for example, ''sufi'' mysticism was deeply rooted in pre-Islamic Iranian practices). Relations with the Christian world were permanently damaged by centuries of warfare with the Byzantine Empire, and several centuries more war with Latin Christians who joined the *Crusades* or fought the *Reconquista* in Iberia. Islam's political capital moved several times after the 8th century: from Medina to Damascus, and thence to Baghdad, with important outposts in Egypt, North Africa (*Ifriqiya*), and Iberia (Córdoba and *Granada*). Much of the eastern and central Mediterranean became a Muslim lake with the conquest of Malta, Sicily, Corsica, and Sardinia. However, Muslims had to fight constantly to retain those islands from assaults by Pisans, Genoese, Venetians, Byzantines, and the *Normans*. The loss of these island outposts, mainly during the 11th century, ruined the Muslim sea empire.

By about 1000 C.E., the dominance of the original Arab-Bedouin conquerors drew to a close. From the 11th through the 20th centuries, almost without exception, every major Muslim dynasty and empire from India through Central Asia to the Middle East was established by converted *Turks* or *Mongols* or intermingled groups of both. The first major Turkic conquerors were Islamicized Ghaznavids, who ruled Afghanistan and the Punjab until displaced by the *Seljuk Turks* in 1040. Starting in the early 13th century Mongol hordes invaded and overran successive Muslim lands. By mid-century all of Central Asia and Iran succumbed. In 1258 the Mongols captured Baghdad and murdered the last Abbasid caliph (though a branch captive to the *Mamlūks* reigned, without ruling, for some time still in Egypt). This precipitated a succession crisis within Islamic civilization that marked a major turning point in Muslim history: long moribund, the caliphate was finally

buried by a non-Muslim military power. Sultanates now replaced it in distinct power centers of a fractured Islamic world: Egypt, Iran, and what is today Turkey. This new political fact—the Umma was permanently fractured and broken—was accommodated to religious tradition by most Muslim jurists and holy men, though fundamentalist purists still looked to a restored, unitary caliphate at some future date. From this point onward the dominant Muslims were not Arabs but converted Slavic or Turkic tribes: the Mamlūks of Egypt and the Ottomans. The latter claimed the caliphate only much later (a claim not universally accepted), and governed Arab Muslims (and many non-Muslims) in a vast empire run from Constantinople after that city was captured from the Christian Orthodox in 1453. In sum, Islam controlled the eastern Mediterranean and was firmly established in the northern third of Africa by c.1400, controlled the northern half of India (under the *Mughals*) by c.1500, and was still expanding into West Africa, Central Asia, Southeast Asia, and western China during the 16th–17th centuries. In short, it had become a principal world religion and power.

Historically and doctrinally Islam is closely related to *Judaism* and *Christianity*. All three religions are apocalyptic in their eschatology, all originated in the Middle East, and they share variations of certain core beliefs. For Muslims, these are: monotheism; a succession of revelatory prophets with Muhammad the last and greatest of these; social justice based upon the radical equality of (male) persons in a single brotherhood of the faithful (''umma''), which is open to all who accept Allah; and for some, a recessed messianism in the form of latent expectation of arrival of the *mahdi*. All Muslims are enjoined to embrace the great monotheistic credo: ''There is no god but Allah and Muhammad is his Prophet.'' They are expected to give alms to support the poor; to pray five times per day while facing Mecca; to fast during the daytime in the ninth lunar month (Ramadan); and, if feasible, to make the pilgrimage (*haj*) to Mecca. Islam's scripture is *al Qur'an* (the *Koran*) revealed to Muhammad from the true book of law written by Allah and resting in Heaven, declaimed on Earth by Muhammad and copied in earthly form, for the edification of men. Islam's jurisprudence (fiqh) is enshrined in a legal code (sharia) drawn from the Koran and the Sunna, or accepted interpretations by leading religious scholars (ulema) of the meaning of the model life and practices of Muhammad. No new interpretation was permitted after the first two centuries of debate on the meaning of the Sunna. Still, until the 14th century, Islam was among the most progressive cultures and civilizations in the world. Prohibition on fresh interpretation subsequently produced a rigidity in Islamic customs and public institutions, notably banking, that gravely handicapped Islamic civilization when faced with competition from early modern Europe. In its most fundamentalist guises Islam offered a distinctly lesser place to women in public and even in family life. Purist, or reactionary, Islam was thus propelled into direct conflict with cosmopolitan conceptions of

. . . until the 14th century, Islam was among the most progressive cultures and civilizations in the world.

social and political organization as well as the practical needs of early modern market efficiency. Yet, much the same could be said of contemporary Christian societies, several of which were less modern in other ways in comparison to Islamic countries. In addition, because Islam offered equality to all believers it was and is still a greatly attractive faith to the socially disadvantaged and anyone trapped in rigid hierarchical cultures. And so it continued to make converts in sub-Saharan Africa and southeast Asia, especially in the 16th–17th centuries. Moreover, while in theory Islamic societies did not accept the separation of religion and state, the standard for international order established in the *Peace of Westphalia*, in practice Ottoman rulers subsequently adapted with their usual pragmatic realism to newly secular principles of international law and state conduct. See also *Assassins*; *ayatollah*; *caliph*; *Druse*; *Fulbe*; *imam*; *Ismaili*; *mullah*; *zakat*.

Suggested Reading: F. Gabrielli, *Muhammad and the Conquests of Islam* (1968); Marshall Hodgson, *The Venture of Islam*, 3 vols. (1958–1961); Hugh Kennedy, *The Prophet and the Age of the Caliphates* (1986).

Ismaili. A sect of radical *shī'a* Muslims who split with other shī'a over the succession of the 7th caliph (Ismail). They emphasized the sufi (mystic) tradition. They tended to be extremists not just doctrinally, but also politically, seeking to erect a radical theocracy over the whole Islamic world. They established an early base in Yemen from which they attacked North Africa, where they set up the Fatamid *caliphate*. From there they conquered Egypt in 969, building a new capital at Cairo. Thereafter they assumed some characteristics and pretensions of the ancient Pharonic power. Out of Egypt they conquered Palestine, Syria, and parts of Arabia; to the west they invaded Sicily but traded peacefully with the rising city-states of Medieval Italy. From the 11th century the Fatamids were governed in fact by generals though still in name by local caliphs. Sub-sects or offshoots of the Ismaili movement included the original *Druse* and the infamous *Assassins*. Ismailis eventually concentrated in the Indian subcontinent and Central Asia, with smaller communities scattered across the Middle East and Africa. See also *imam*.

Italian armies. In the urban north of Italy feudal military service never took a deep hold, and paid military were more often recruited to wage the endless small wars of the peninsula. For instance, by the end of the 13th century Milan could raise a militia of 25,000 from its population of about 200,000. Florence, which had a population of 400,000, could raise 17,000 troops, including 2,000 *heavy cavalry*. Of these, only 1,500 were mercenaries. In the 14th–15th centuries, *Free Companies* and *condottieri* dominated Italian recruitment and warfare. Cities always kept some militia on hand for core defense and to man the walls, but Italy's rich urban elites generally preferred to hire expensive mercenaries rather than perform military service themselves or arm the general populace. On other matters relating to Italian armies and warfare see *Italian Renaissance*; *Italian Wars*; *Machiavelli, Niccolò di Bernardo*; *Papal States*; *trace italienne*; *Venice*.

Italian Renaissance. A profound intellectual and cultural efflorescence, as well as a political and diplomatic revolution away from the *res publica Christiana* toward the modern secular state, which began in Italy but influenced all Europe and even all the world. It can be traced as far back as the life work of Francesco Petrarch (1304–1374), among others in the high Middle Ages, but reached its vital and brilliant peak in the late 15th century. Some consider it to have spread beyond Italy, lasting through the life of René Descartes (1596–1650). The Italian Renaissance is closely identified with events in Venice and Florence and other northern Italian polities, but affected most of the peninsula before spreading over the Alps to influence all Europe and shape the character of the emerging modern age. Culturally, it was distinguished by a revival of classical learning—in particular in the natural sciences, but also in theological criticism and moral philosophy—inspired in part by recovered or newly translated Greek and Roman texts acquired from Muslim middlemen in such great centers of Islamic scholarship as Sicily, Granada, and Seville. Its profound impact on cultural life arose from an empirical ideal and spirit of celebration of humanism and rationalism, if not yet full secularism. The Italian Renaissance is justly famous, though historically less important, for its extraordinary advances in the fine arts and literature. Commercially, it marked a dramatic expansion of commerce by credit in which the Medici political and banking family of Florence played a central role as the single most important financial center in Europe from the late 14th century until 1494, the year of the French invasion of Italy by the brash young king, Charles VIII (1470–1498). That brought on a Habsburg counter-intervention and the protracted woes for Italy of the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559).

The most world-changing influences of the Renaissance concerned war and diplomacy. Italian thinkers changed perceptions of the political realm forever, away from the ideals of *chivalry* and the *just war* toward more realistic assessments of base material motivations and the requirements of *raison d'état*. Italian diplomats and contract soldiers (*condottieri*) fanned out into Europe after the French invasion of 1494, selling their martial services to powerful foreign monarchs along with new ideas about resident diplomacy, Machiavellian state ethics, and close coordination of espionage with sovereign representation. Europeans flocked to Italy to study the ''Italian school'' of war, fortification (the *alla moderna*), and diplomacy, as much or more than to study the new Italian styles in painting, poetry, and sculpture. The Renaissance witnessed the ''golden age'' of the Italian system of city-states, whose unique political patterns later were copied and helped supplant more general feudal relations in Western Europe, and helped overturn the old sense of universal community in Christendom in favor of more narrow definitions of political loyalty to individual secular states. Italy gave Europe a more lusty exercise of power by new ''princes'' who governed through exciting, and often also illicit, new political relations. It was these city states which first explicitly formulated and practiced as a mutual policy the concept of the balance of power, following agreement on the *Peace of Lodi* (1454). Beginning as an

empirical description of the actual state of affairs in Italy, it evolved into a theoretical justification for sustaining an interstate equilibrium among the five largest Italian powers: Venice, Florence, Milan, Naples, and the Papal States. The machinations and wolf-like relations of this insulated sub-system, isolated by Alpine borders and the distant preoccupations of the Great Powers with other wars during most of the 15th century, gave rise to the central ideas of early modern ethical and political theory. That included a revival of interest in constitutional republics and civic militias.

The new diplomacy of the Italian Renaissance took form roughly between 1420 and 1530. It would become the model for all subsequent diplomacy. When the movement passed north of the Alps it reinforced a shift in the European balance of power already underway from the Mediterranean to the Atlantic states, from Byzantium and the Holy Roman Empire to England, France, and the Netherlands. In sum, the Renaissance marked the transition from the ancient and feudal eras to modern times, not just in culture but also in war and diplomacy, and not just for Europe but through the subsequent expansion and global dominance of Europe in the age of imperialism, for the entire world. Its rational curiosity, core empiricism, and impulse toward creative change in economics, politics, religion, philosophy, and technology, echoes familiarly to modern hearing. See also *Art of War*; *Machiavelli, Niccolò di Bernardo*; *Muhammad II*; *Savonarola, Girolamo*; *spice trade*.

Suggested Reading: Thomas F. Arnold, *The Renaissance at War* (2001); Jerry Brotton, *The Renaissance Bazaar* (2002); G. Gash, *Renaissance Armies* (1975; 1982); John R. Hale, *War and Society in Renaissance Europe, 1450–1620* (1986) and *Machiavelli and Renaissance Italy* (1960); Niccolò Machiavelli, *The Prince* (1532); M. E. Mallett, *Mercenaries and Their Masters* (1974); Garrett Mattingly, *Renaissance Diplomacy* (1955).

Italian traces. See *alla moderna*; *trace italienne*.

Italian Wars (1494–1559). A series of sharp but also intermittent conflicts broke out over control of Italy at the close of the *Italian Renaissance*, shattering the peninsular balance of power system achieved in the *Peace of Lodi* (1454). The main antagonists were no longer Italy's city-states, but two rival dynasties: the *Valois* of France and the *Habsburgs* of Austria and Spain. Northern Italy—occupied by small and fractious states—was vital to Habsburg security, and secondarily to their control of Burgundy and the Netherlands: it was both a base for the strategic *Spanish Road* and a recruitment area for reinforcements for the Army of Flanders. Open warfare began when France's young king, Charles VIII (1470–1498), invaded Italy in 1494 with an army of 25,000, including a cohort of Swiss mercenaries. With a siege train of 40 smaller and mid-sized mobile cannon he blasted through and captured, in just days, fortified towns that had stood against prior sieges for months or in some cases for years. His powerful artillery astonished Italian observers, including *Machiavelli*. The French penetrated as far south as Naples, entering the city in February 1495. That provoked formation of an anti-French coalition (''Holy League'') comprised of Spain, the Holy Roman Emperor, the pope,

Milan, and Venice. But Charles won at *Seminara* in June and still held Naples. Under Louis XII, in 1499 the French took Genoa and seized Milan, where they deposed the *Sforzas* (1499). A brief respite from fighting resulted from the Peace of Trent (1501) between Louis XII and *Ferdinand II* of Spain, who agreed to partition Naples but leave the French in occupation of northern Italy. A quarrel soon broke out over details of the Milanese partition and the war resumed in 1502. The Battle of Barletta (1502) was indecisive, but the Spanish won definitively at the *Garigliano River* (1503), where French and Swiss troops suffered sharp reverses at the hands of the new Spanish *tercios*, even though French artillery sometimes ripped bloody lanes in the Spanish ranks. France accepted the permanent loss of Naples to Ferdinand of Aragon in the *Treaties of Blois* (1504–1505), in return for confirmation of French control of Milan. In 1508, Pope Julius II (1443–1513) arranged an aggressive alliance, the *League of Cambrai*, nominally aimed at the Ottomans but in fact intended to reduce or at least contain Venice. That city-state had taken advantage of the chaos in the peninsula engendered by the Italian Wars to expand its holdings within Italy, not least at papal expense. The Venetians were bested by a French army at *Agnadello* (May 14, 1509). Meanwhile, armies and populations alike were decimated by epidemics of syphilis and typhus directly related to the spread of fighting, and therefore of infected soldiers, flowing from the Italian Wars. Syphilis notably infected the ruling House of Valois in France, and spread as well into the harems and blood streams of the rulers of the Ottoman Empire, weakening both royal families.

French success broke up the League of Cambrai, as Venice appeased the pope and emperor with fresh concessions. The renowned army of the Swiss Confederation then intervened, taking Milan from the French in 1512. At *Ravenna* (April 11, 1512), the French destroyed a sizeable Spanish army, but at *Novara* (1513) the Swiss routed the French to take control of Lombardy. The young French king, *Francis I*, crushed the Swiss at *Marignano* (1515), regaining Milan and most of Lombardy for France. The Peace of Noyon (1516) essentially partitioned Italy between France and Spain until a vigorous young Emperor, *Charles V*, united all Habsburg power in a single pair of hands in 1519. Fighting recommenced in 1521. Francis was defeated at *La Bicocca* (April 22, 1522), and trounced and taken captive at *Pavia* (February 23–24, 1525). That forced him to sign the Treaty of Madrid renouncing French claims in Italy. Francis denounced this coerced concession once he was ransomed and set free. He assembled an anti-Habsburg alliance, the ''League of Cognac,'' that included England, Florence, Venice, and the Papal States. Charles responded to the pope's perfidy by sending an army to take Rome, which it did with real ferocity, running amok there in May 1527. Francis besieged Naples but could not take the city. In September 1529, Charles and the Austrians were briefly distracted by the first Ottoman *siege of Vienna.* This may have been coordinated in secret with Francis to draw the Emperor east. If so, the plan failed: Charles stayed in the west and forced France to terms in the Treaty of Cambrai (1529), which reconfirmed renunciation of French claims to territory in northern Italy.

War between the Valois and Habsburgs over control of Italy resumed from 1542 to 1544. Battles, such as the French victory at Ceresole (April 14, 1544), were indecisive: neither victory nor defeat led to permanent political change. In any case, France was militarily incapable of matching its Habsburg enemies or displacing them by force from north Italy. A final try to push back the French frontier in the south came in 1556–1557. At *St. Quentin* (August 10, 1557) the French lost 14,000 men out of a 26,000-man army and *Coligny* and *Montmorency* were both captured. This time the defeat was complete: the supremacy of *Philip II* and the Habsburgs in Italy was codified in the *Peace of Cateau-Cambrésis* (1559). It was then sanctified by royal marriages between and among the various warring houses. The end of the Italian Wars and the start of the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629) then together opened the door to the Spanish effort to crush rebellion in the Netherlands during the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648). See also *Alba, Don Fernando Álvarez de Toledo, duque de*; *Carafa War*; *disease*; *Fornovo, Battle of*; *Savonarola, Girolamo*; *Swabian War*.

Suggested Reading: J. R. Hale, *Renaissance War Studies* (1983); Bert Hall, *Weapons and Warfare in Renaissance Europe* (1997); F. L. Taylor, *The Art of War in Italy, 1494 to 1529* (1921).

Italic League (1454–1494). See *Lodi, Peace of*.

Italy. After the fall of the Western Roman Empire the Catholic Church remained fixed in Rome, radiating doctrinal authority and cultural and legal influence across the Latin world. This state of affairs lasted until doctrinal and other disputes shattered agreement with the Orthodox of the Byzantine Empire, most notably over the authority of *Ecumenical Councils*. An irreparable schism with the Orthodox Church cut the Latin Church off from the Christian communities in the old Eastern Roman Empire. The explosion of *Islam* out of Arabia in the 8th century then cut Italy and the Catholic Church off from the historical birthplace of Christianity in Middle East, as well as from formerly Christian areas in North Africa and Iberia.

The *feudal* military system of the Carolingians was not adopted in Italy, as it was elsewhere in the *res publica Christiana* that succeeded Rome in the West. Instead, economic and military life remained centered on towns and cities, which survived post-Roman economic and demographic contraction in Italy to a greater degree than elsewhere in the Christian West. As a centuries-long contest was waged between popes and the Holy Roman Emperors, between *Guelphs and Ghibellines*, each camp drew external military forces into Italy. The Wars of Investiture continued even as new barbarian tribes attacked from the east. By the 12th century Magyars and Muslims alike had been repulsed, although coastal raiding by *Barbary corsairs* remained a common affliction. The *Norman* conquests of Sicily and southern Italy were slowly assimilated into a monarchical system. Elsewhere, Italian politics and wars remained communal, as hundreds of towns and cities fought for control of trade routes, for access to agricultural regions and hinterlands, and to control and tax markets. In 1200 there were nearly 200 warring city-states in Italy. The

Italian countryside became the most heavily encastellated region of Europe, and in the 13th and 14th centuries also the most war-ridden. The basic cause of conflict was the richness of the land and the large towns, which justified the cost of stone defenses as well as town militias and intercity wars for control of the sources of wealth. The richest families built castles in the countryside to protect their private agricultural holdings, and also built stone towers inside the towns. Historian John Gillinham noted: ''city governments tried to set legal limits to the height of towers. Aggrieved neighbors took more direct action, bringing up their own siege artillery.'' In Medieval Italy, good cannon made better neighbors.

Within the Italian communes (the early form of the central and northern city-states) the military was highly organized and specialized. Each ''sesto'' (''sixth'') of an Italian commune provided both infantry and cavalry, with the latter coming from the ''consorterie'' (aristocratic clans). As each growing city tried to enforce control of the surrounding grain-producing areas and markets, areas from which it also drew manpower for its civic militia and taxes to pay for it, conflict grew apace. Outside powers, notably the Holy Roman Empire in the 12th and 13th centuries, tried to gain control of Italy. However, heavy fortification and the ability of cities to form coalitions and to contract *condottieri* kept Italy mostly free of external interference. Italians used this liberty to fight each other all through the 14th and 15th centuries. Italy's relative isolation was reinforced by Iberian preoccupation with the *Reconquista*, and France's and England's long and distracting *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). On the other hand, republicanism declined as the ''Signorie,'' or urban magnates, rose to power in several key cities in the latter 13th century. In the last third of the 14th century the larger cities consolidated surrounding territories under powerful military leaders: the Visconti controlled Milan and much of Lombardy; the Medici dominated Florentine politics and war in Tuscany; Venice used its sea-bought wealth to extend its influence into eastern Lombardy; and the Avignon popes began to plot a return from French captivity. That provoked the *War of the Eight Saints* (1375–1378), sparked by disagreement over the conditions of the papal return to Rome. This dispute also contributed to the *Great Schism* that so scandalized the devout of the Christian commonwealth. In the south an Angevin-Aragonese conflict for control of Naples ended in 1442 with the triumph of Alphonso V of Aragon. Meanwhile, war broke out between Florence and Milan from 1423 to 1445. It was fought by the condottieri captains Niccolò Piccinino in behalf of Milan and Francesco Sforza for Florence (except for the three occasions when he switched over to fight for Milan). Venice allied with Florence until 1427, with the Papal States and Naples drawn into the war during the 1440s. The conflict ended with the *Peace of Lodi* (1454).

In Medieval Italy, good cannon made better neighbors.

Much of Italy remained fragmented and either at war or preparing for it through most of the period known as the *Italian Renaissance*. That

extraordinary outburst of economic, intellectual, and martial energy gave Europe its modern diplomacy, including the idea of the ''balance of power,'' and its first generation of resident ambassadors. Italy in the 15th–16th centuries incubated the remarkable political thought of *Machiavelli*, and many new ideas arising from unbound scientific inquiry. And of course, Renaissance Italy produced much of lasting cultural and artistic value in the visual and musical arts. Not all of this was interrupted when the French invasion of 1494, the *Habsburg* counter-invasion, and the onset of the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559) ended the independence of most of the Italian city-states. Continual internecine warfare (the last all-Italian conflict was the Castro War, 1642–1644) and serial foreign invasions left Italy fatally weak vis-à-vis the Great Powers of Europe, especially France and Austria, over the next three centuries.

Suggested Reading: Jacob Burkhardt, *The Civilization of the Renaissance in Italy* (1995); J. R. Hale, *Machiavelli and Renaissance Italy* (1960); Bert Hall, *Weapons and Warfare in Renaissance Europe* (1997); M. E. Mallett, *Mercenaries and Their Masters: Warfare in Renaissance Italy* (1974).

itqa. A form of *feudal* military recruitment common among the Muslim states of North Africa, who also extended it to Sicily and parts of Iberia. It blended feudal features of the European *fief* with aspects of contract akin to the Italian *condottieri*, though it predated both. Essentially, emirs contracted out land grants known as ''itqa'' to tribal chiefs, who in turn recruited mercenaries for the emir. The caliphs in Córdoba employed this system to supplement their central reliance on imported *mamlūks*, their lesser supply of *jihadis* from North Africa, and the weak militia of *al-Andalus*. See also *Ifriqiya*; *taifa states*.

Ivan III (1440–1505). ''The Great.'' Ivan III was the Grand Duke of Moscow when he threw off the ''yoke of the *Tatars*'' from Muscovy and united the Orthodox peoples of the surrounding steppes into a powerful and aggressively expansionist Slavic dukedom. He launched Muscovy on a historic trajectory of imperial expansion, tripling its size in his lifetime and setting it on the path to creation of a vast continental empire. As a young man he led an expedition against the Tatars in 1458. Upon becoming Grand Duke in 1462 he set about the defeat of the ''Golden Horde,'' the vestige of the Mongol empire which held Muscovy and other Rus states in vassalage for 200 years. He struck in 1467–1469, liberating Muscovy from Mongol overlordship in a series of brilliant victories. He next conquered the surrounding Rus city-states which lay within reach, including Tver, Yaroslavl, Rostov, and most importantly, Novgorod. From that long-time military-commercial rival to Moscow he expelled the traders of the *Hanse* and all Germans. There followed a bitter contest with several of his brothers, two of whom allied with *Poland-Lithuania*.

In his wars Ivan made use of large cannon as siege weapons. The biggest was cast from bronze in 1502. It was a gigantic *bombard* over five meters long, which Ivan called ''King of Cannon.'' This monster could fire a huge stone ball some 1,000 kilograms in weight. More importantly, he reformed the

Muscovite military around "*servitor cavalry*" whom he seeded throughout the countryside to control his conquests. These military vassals helped him keep order locally, while owing him several months riding service each year, aiding greatly in his wars of expansion. At his death Ivan had converted Muscovy into a rising empire which would one day dominate much of eastern Europe and expand deep into the Caucasus, Central Asia and Siberia.

Suggested Reading: Ian Grey, *Ivan III and the Unification of Russia* (1964).

Ivan IV (1530–1584). "The Terrible." Grand Duke of Moscow (1533–1584). He ended his regency at age 17, then moved quickly to tame the *boyars*, transferring their traditional powers to a bureaucracy and governing council he controlled. He set up the *strel'sty* palace guard in 1550. Ivan conquered the *Tatar* khanates of Kazan (1552) and Astrakhan (1556), which he held against an invading Ottoman army in 1569. Ivan also beat back Polish and Lithuanian assaults, including by the *Livonian Order*. In 1558 he sent an army into Estonia that slashed and slew, massacring 10,000 at *Dorpat*, sacking 20 other towns, and launching the *First Northern War* (1558–1583). In 1559 he sent 130,000 men to devastate Livonia. These brutal advances opened access to the Baltic trade long closed to Muscovy. Trade contacts were even made with England, from where sailors arrived in strange ship types unknown to Russians, selling and buying goods out of Archangel. Ivan suffered defeats, too: in 1564 the Lithuanians crushed his armies at Czasniki and the Ula River, driving him into mad revenge against the boyars whom he blamed for his setbacks. Evermore paranoid and subject to wild and violent rages, he launched a reign of brutal terror known as the *Oprichnina*. His main targets were boyars and subject cities he suspected of rebellious intent, with or without evidence. From 1564 to 1572 he earned his infamous sobriquet "The Terrible" by stripping boyar families of land holdings, crushing their traditional liberties, then taking their lives with horrible torments and sadistic methods of execution. In one fit of rage he killed his own son, an act that shocked his countrymen and haunted him in his final days. The chaos permitted the Crimean Tatars to sack Moscow in 1571. Then Ivan killed the oprichniki who had carried out his orders to kill the boyars—no wonder or accident that Ivan IV was Joseph Stalin's favorite tsar. In 1583, Ivan lost the First Northern War to Poland and Sweden, returning to those Baltic powers what he had earlier gained in the north. In the interim, he had begun a creeping annexation of Siberia, where he used *Cossack* cavalry and peasant conscripts to overwhelm sparse native resistance.

Suggested Reading: Hugh F. Graham, *Ivan the Terrible* (1981); R. G. Skrynnikov, *Ivan the Terrible* (1981); Henri Troyat, *Ivan the Terrible* (1984).

Ivry-la-Bataille, Battle of (March 14, 1590). Fought six months after *Arques* (1589) about 40 miles west of Paris, this was the last significant battle of the eighth of the *French Civil Wars*. The *duc de Mayenne* raised 20,000 troops for the *Catholic League*, who were joined by some 2,000 Spanish arquebusiers sent by *Philip II*. Most of the Leaguer host were poorly armed pikemen or light

horse deploying lances. In opposition, *Henri IV* had 12,000 men, of whom 9,000 were veteran Huguenot infantry, Swiss pikemen, or mercenary musketeers. Fully 3,000 were disciplined and experienced Huguenot cavalry skilled in Henri's patented *pistolade* tactics. Henri formed a line of six cavalry squadrons screened by light infantry, with blocks of heavy infantry interspersed between two squadrons of cavalry. He put his artillery at the center. Right away, both sides opened with their big guns. The Catholic horse then charged the Huguenot infantry, whose natural defenses were reinforced with field fortifications, while the Huguenot cavalry charged the Catholic infantry. Protestant musketeers firing in volley, along with supporting cannon, cut bloody swaths in the Catholic ranks. Some 6,000 Leaguers were killed to just 500 dead Protestants, and thousands more were captured. Determined not to repeat his mistake of failing to pursue after Arques, Henri marched on Paris immediately after the battle. But once more, he had too few men to storm or besiege that great capital. He broke off the siege after learning that *Parma* was approaching with part of the *Army of Flanders* out of the Netherlands. After Ivry-la-Bataille, Mayenne's reputation went into permanent decline even as Henri's soared, both facts conducing to a quicker end to the long civil wars in France.

J

jack. A coat made from canvas or other cloth into which were sewn iron plates. It was worn by Elizabethan soldiers as well as American colonists. Although outdated for war in Europe, the ''jack'' served well enough against Indian archers in North America.

Jacob's staff. See *cross-staff*.

***Jacquerie* (1358).** A violent peasant uprising named for the French sobriquet ''Jacques Bonhomme.'' It was particularly bloody and ferocious in Champagne, Picardy, and the Beauvaisis. It was underlain by the economic dislocations and privations of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). Peasant anger aimed at occupants of the chateaux, excessive royal taxation, and hated tax collectors. They resented making payments in labor or kind to a privileged warrior class and a distant king (Jean II, taken prisoner at *Poitiers* and held for ransom by the English) who did not provide them with protection from the appalling *chevauchées* of *Edward III* and the *Black Prince*. A secondary symptom of this fundamental problem was their suffering from excesses and exploitation by freelance mercenary bands, the *Free Companies* who marauded across France as social and military order broke down. These bands of mixed French and English veterans continued depredations and extortions long after the fighting stopped between the main armies. The direct trigger for the rebellion was a demand for forced labor to rebuild chateaux damaged in the war or by Free Companies. The rising was extensive and bloody but initially unorganized. A leader then emerged, Guillaume Cale, who gathered a large peasant army near Clermont, 40 miles from Paris. The peasants were routed there, and nearly 1,000—including Cale—beheaded or otherwise butchered by local nobles. The rising was squashed everywhere within a few weeks. Like most peasant armies, the ''Jacques'' lacked cohesion, strategic planning, and a precise and articulate agenda of reform. They were, as a result, savagely

repressed by the crown and nobility, which set aside all differences when faced with rebellion by armed "Jacques." See also *Croquants*; *German Peasant War*; *Razats*; *Tard-Avisés*.

Jagiello dynasty. A powerful family whose members ruled Bohemia, Hungary, and Poland-Lithuania, and were related by marriage to the Wittelsbach and Habsburg dynasties. It was founded by a grand duke of Lithuania who became Wladyslaw II Jagiello, King of Poland-Lithuania in 1386. The family also sat on the thrones of Hungary (from 1440), and Bohemia (from 1471). The most important of the Jagiellon monarchs was *Casimir IV* of Poland. After Casimir, and in part because of him, the dynasty lost real authority to the untamed and unruly Polish-Lithuanian nobility. The dynasty lost control of Bohemia and Hungary in 1526. The last Jagiellon king was *Sigismund II* of Poland (r.1548–1572). Anna, a Jagiellon princess, was then twice compelled to marry princes chosen for her by the Polish nobility and elected to the kingship: Henri Valois (later, *Henri III* of France) and *Stefan Báthory*, Duke of Transylvania.

jaguar knight. A class of elite soldier of the *Aztec Empire* who dressed in a jaguar-skin-and-fur suit, with the dead cat's head cut and sewn to wear as a headdress. The other class was *eagle knight*.

jamber. Pieces of plate armor protecting the shins. Also called *schynbalds*.

James I and VI (1566–1625). James VI of Scotland, 1567–1625; James I of England, 1603–1625. He was crowned king of Scotland five days after his mother, *Mary Stuart*, abdicated in 1567. He grew to despise the Calvinist teachers of his boyhood for their dour doctrines and because they helped depose his mother. He succeeded *Elizabeth I* in 1603. Raised a Protestant, as monarch he avoided religious conflict fairly well, despite ruling three kingdoms divided by deepening confessional argument. In 1603 he was asked by German princes to head an international Protestant alliance. He declined, and thereafter showed little interest in German affairs. His domestic policies were helped by a quiet international scene prior to 1618. James was initially popular but slowly lost support by excessive partiality to court dandies and favorites, especially *Buckingham*. Puritans looked to James as a righteous king who would act with just force against heresy at home and aid and succor the "True Protestant Faith" abroad to preserve it from pernicious popery and superstition. James gravely disappointed them when he instead pursued policies tolerant at home and mostly peaceful abroad.

Why he did this is crucial to understand. Some historians agree with contemporary critics that his basic policy of appeasement of Spain was foolish and dangerous. Yet, England was in no position to wage war against any Great Power in the early 17th century. And if James appeared to veer the other way, toward a Protestant policy after 1610 in his support of intervention by the *Protestant Union* in the crisis over *Jülich-Kleve*, and by signing a

treaty of assistance with the Union in 1612, he likely did so to counterbalance the rising influence of *dévots* in France following the assassination of *Henri IV*. Similarly, his 1620 dispatch of just 2,000 troops to aid his foolhardy, overreaching son-in-law, *Friedrich V*, Elector Palatine and would-be King of Bohemia, did as little as possible to assuage Protestant demands without leading to all-out war with the Habsburgs. In 1621 James rejected Parliament's demand to declare war on Spain. Just before his death he made a feeble military gesture against Spain to symbolically avenge a marriage slight to his son and heir, *Charles I*, which had no chance of harming Spain or restoring Friedrich. James used his meager funds to finance a meaningless expedition by *Graf von Mansfeld* in Germany, which only backfired by worsening England's relations with France. In matters administrative and fiscal James was neither shrewd nor successful, and this severely undercut his effort to conduct a more military foreign policy late in his reign. He tried to get by on the cheap with *exact militia*; let the *Royal Navy* fall into disrepair and abject corruption; refused to issue *letters of marque* even though other nations still supported *privateering*; and failed to protect merchants from Dunkirk and Barbary pirates who operated with impunity in the Channel. See also *Raleigh, Walter*.

Jamestown. See *Indian Wars (North America)*.

Jand, Battle of (1240). See *Iran*; *Mongols*.

Janissary Corps. Turkish: ''jeniçeri'' (''new militia'' or ''new army'') ''Ocak'' (''corps''). They were the heart of the *Kapikulu Askerleri*, the sultan's personal or household troops. Janissary infantry at first included enslaved prisoners of war. They began as infantry archers, though they also used javelins and swords, but they ended as a premier firearms corps. Starting under *Murad I* in 1438 the Ottomans raised an annual levy of boys from the corps from subject Christian populations, through the *Devşirme system*. By the 1470s there were nearly 10,000 Janissaries, far surpassing any palace guard maintained by European rulers (only the tsars came close), and thereafter forming an elite infantry rather than a mere household guard. Greek and Slavic boys inducted into the elite Janissary Corps underwent years of training. The *Bektaşi* dervish sect had considerable influence over their education as Muslims, with Bektaşi often living in barracks with the recruits and enjoying an honored place in parades and other public occasions. Recruits were raised and lived in barracks as strict Muslims, forbidden alcohol and gambling, banned from marrying before reaching pensioner (''Oturak'') status, and barred from inducting their children into the Corps. That rule was intended to prevent the rise of a hereditary military caste. After six years of religious indoctrination, another six years of military training followed under instruction by adult eunuchs. While most boys entered the ordinary infantry, the brightest—Janissaries received an excellent education at state expense, and were tested on it—served in the administration as effective ''staff officers'' for the army and navy. Other promising candidates went to

the technical corps: the ''*Cebicis*'' (''armorers''), ''*Topçu*'' (''gunners''), or ''*Top Arabacs*'' (''gun-carriage drivers''). Drawn from the large Bostanci (''Gardener'') division were two more elite units: the ''Hasekis'' (personal bodyguard of the sultan) and ''Sandalcis'' (personal rowers of the sultan). All Janissary units had a highly sophisticated system of unit flags, emblems, and badges, well beyond anything then extant in European armies. Some cleaved to the strong Muslim preference for geometric or astrological symbols; most, however, had culinary themes.

To avoid concentrating wealth where military power also resided, Janissaries were not allowed to engage in commerce of any sort. Trained from an early age solely for war, and sporting a white felt cap (''Börk'') that distinguished them from regular Ottoman troops wearing red headgear, Janissaries were the most professional and tactically disciplined troops of their time. As such, they formed the stable core of one of the first and finest *standing armies* of the early modern age. Given each sultan's primary reliance on this body of elite infantry, the feudal masters of the outer provinces of the widespread Ottoman Empire seldom rose to become regional warlords. The sultans thereby avoided the baronial problem posed by feudatories in Europe. On the other hand, sultans were exposed to danger flowing from Janissary disgruntlement: at Buçuk Tepe in 1446, anger over arrears in military pay delayed the ascent of *Muhammad II* to the throne until 1551. Into the 17th century Ottoman lords made up a solid cavalry force that augmented the Janissary infantry; politically, however, they remained a loose aristocracy that seldom challenged central authority. This military system guaranteed that the sultans could always deploy a crack infantry corps with a cavalry auxiliary always available that could be expanded quickly when needed.

No other army that the Ottomans fought, whether in Iran, North Africa, Central Asia, or Europe, could field units even close to a match for the first-rate Janissaries and the flexible military organization that produced them. The Janissaries were also the first Ottoman troops trained in firearms, and hence formed the paramount military corps during the first decades of adoption of gunpowder weapons by the Ottoman army. In the wake of the Janissaries strike of 1446–1451 Muhammad II increased their pay, improved their weapons, and expanded their numbers. He also disbanded several of the original *Orta*, replacing them with three new divisions drawn in inspiration and original membership from the sultan's Royal Hunt: ''Sekban'' or ''dog-handlers,'' further subdivided into elite guard units; ''Doğanci'' or ''falconers''; and somewhat later, ''Bostanci'' or ''gardeners.'' The latter were responsible for defense of Constantinople and dozens of imperial estates scattered over the Empire. By 1475 there were 6,000 Janissaries compared to 40,000 *sipahis* and another 3,000 household cavalry. Fifty years later Suleiman I had nearly 38,000 household troops, including the Janissaries. By that time their principal weapon was a ''log-barrel'' wheel lock musket made by *renegade* German gunsmiths in Ottoman foundries. Older, ''pensioner'' Janissaries served as marine archers on the sultan's galleys and as amphibious assault troops in the Black Sea. Over the 16th century the Janissary barracks in

Constantinople usually housed about 14,000 boys and men, but at their peak in the 17th century they contained 40,000 troops organized into 196 companies. Another 14,000 Janissaries served in garrisons in strategic provinces such as *eyâlet-i Budin* in Hungary, bringing peak Corps numbers to about 54,000 by 1650.

The first major Janissary battle was against the Karamanian Turks in 1389, where they fought as archers. They were defeated with the rest of the Ottoman army by *Timur* at *Ankara* (July 20, 1402), even though the Corps fought well. The Janissaries began the switch from bows to *arquebuses* in the 1440s, having felt the sting of these new weapons in frontier fights in Hungary. Thereafter, the Corps became most renowned as an elite firearms unit. Janissary musketeers were unique in that they did not deploy pikemen in square for protection as they reloaded. Instead, in a trick learned fighting the Hungarians, who learned it from fighting *Hussites*, Janissaries made wagon-forts (*Wagenburgs* or *tabor*) by chaining together heavy carts. This was so successful they set up a specialized ''gun wagon corps'' that accompanied musketeers to battle. From behind these war wagons Janissaries fired muskets and cannon while larger formations of *timariot* cavalry attacked the enemy's flanks. If a break in the enemy line appeared a common Janissary tactic was to fire all guns at once, form a wedge, and charge into the breach swinging swords and maces. This was the closest the Corps came to *volley fire*: their strength was instead individual marksmanship, which they practiced and emphasized to a degree unknown in Europe, where unaimed fire remained standard.

. . . a common Janissary tactic was to fire all guns at once, form a wedge, and charge into the breach . . .

In 1514 the firearms discipline and superiority of the Janissaries utterly destroyed a *Safavid* army, made up mostly of mounted archers, at *Chaldiran* (August 23, 1514). Over time Janissary political power grew. From 1550, like the Roman Praetorian Guard which once made and unmade emperors, the Corps sometimes elevated or deposed sultans. This led to a shift in 1568 toward allowing sons of older Janissaries into the Corps, and from 1582 to permitting free men to enlist so that by the start of the 16th century the Janissaries were a mostly hereditary outfit. In 1594 the wealth and political power of the corps so attracted Muslim recruits eager for political advancement that the Devşirme system was effectively phased out, disappearing entirely by 1648. The Janissaries remained influential within the empire throughout this period, though near its end their military effectiveness was already fading. After their defeat and humiliation by the Poles and Cossacks at *Khotyn* in 1621, a Janissary revolt deposed and killed Sultan Othman (Osman) II. By mid-century, recruitment was kept low as the expense of the Corps no longer led to commensurate battlefield reward for the sultan. See also *Çorbasi*; *ishan*; *Kazan*; *levend/levendat*; *rations*; *Saka*; *sekban*; *Serdengeçti*; *Thirteen Years' War*; *uniforms*; *Varna, Battle of*; *Yeniçeri Ağasi*.

Suggested Reading: Ahmed Djévad, *Etat Militaire Ottoman*, Vol. 1: *Les Corps des Janissaires* (1882); Geoffrey Goodwin, *The Janissaries* (1995).

Jankov, Battle of (March 6, 1645). ''Jankau.'' Even as talks dragged on at Westphalia, fighting continued where the *Thirty Years' War* first broke out, in Bohemia. *Lennart Torstensson* led a Swedish mercenary army 15,000 strong against Prague. It was met at Jankov by an Imperial-Bavarian force of comparable size. The heavily forested terrain broke up formal battle lines, which disadvantaged the heavier Imperial units. When Torstensson's cavalry chased its Austrian counterpart from the field the Imperial infantry turned and followed. Abandoned, the Bavarians could not stand alone and fell back toward Prague. Torstensson besieged the city but could not sustain the effort due to a failure of logistics. He moved on Vienna but was again too undermanned and ill-equipped to take the city. The major effects of Jankov were to break the military power and will of Bavaria and conduce it to peace, to compel *Ferdinand III* to accept the Franco-Swedish proposal for a comprehensive peace to be negotiated in Westphalia, and to ensure that the settlement would be unfavorable to the Habsburgs, who had no army left with which to fight since the entire Imperial ''general staff'' (or rather, its cruder 17th-century equivalent) was captured and held for a ransom of 120,000 thalers.

Jansenism. A Catholic mystic movement following the teaching of the Holland theologian Cornelis Jansen (1585–1638), Bishop of Ypres. His major work was the four-volume *Augustinus*, completed just before his death and published in 1640. It caused an immediate firestorm of theological controversy. It was placed on the *Index Librorum Prohibitorium* by the *Inquisition* in 1641 and condemned in a papal bull issued by *Urban VIII* in 1642. Jansen's core and austere contention, which was aimed squarely at the *Jesuits*, was that salvation depended on ''divine grace'' not good works or predestination, and that the gift of ''interior grace'' was irresistible but received only if one abandoned selfhood before the majesty of God. Such pessimistic, inwardly directed pietism directly challenged traditional Catholic devotion, and implicitly joined in Protestant criticism of the veneration of images and saints. Politically, Jansen opposed France's leadership of the anti-Habsburg coalition during the final phase of the *Thirty Years' War*. *Cardinal Richelieu* held in contempt all *dévots* who embraced Jansenism. The controversy was most acute in France, where occasional violent clashes between Jansenists and Jesuits occurred over nearly a century, until most French Jansenists migrated to the United Provinces. The *Missio Hollandica* sharply divided over Jansenism, with Jesuits leading the opposition. Yet, Jansenists in Utrecht were in fact such strict Catholics that Dutch Calvinists knew them as ''Oude Roomsch'' (''Old Roman'').

Japan. By the start of the 13th century Japan was already on a descending path from aristocratic-emperor rule to fragmented provincialism under warlord clans, to protracted civil war and anarchy. The *Mongols* twice tried to invade Japan but were repulsed at *Hakata Bay* in 1274 and 1281. The Kamakura *shogunate* ended in violence in 1333. The Ashikaga shogunate

(1333–1603) was born into chaos and bloody strife as rival military houses backed rival imperial lines, and as turmoil in China spilled over into destabilization and civil war in Japan. This ''War Between the Courts'' lasted from 1336 to 1392. As central power collapsed Japan's coasts and outer islands were preyed upon by *wakō* (pirates). In the mid-15th century more decades of civil war climaxed in a shogunal succession dispute, leading to the *Ōnin War* (1467–1477). Thus began a period known as the *Sengoku jidai* or ''Warring States,'' during which power shifted to the ''Sengoku daimyo,'' or military houses of the regions, and Ashikaga shoguns ruled only on paper. Several emperors despaired and fled ruined Kyoto; others were assassinated. This era of so-called *gekokujō* saw general anarchy, widespread arson (a favorite weapon of the *ashigaru*), a plague of *ronin*, and ubiquitous civil warfare marked by endless small battles. One defense against this anarchy was the growth of *jōkamachi* (''castle towns''). A better defense would have been unification and pacification, but before 1560 no one among the daimyo could provide this.

The arrival of firearms in Japan changed all warfare and politics. Samurai faced gunpowder weapons (small rockets) at Hakata Bay, but not guns. Korea acquired firearms from China around 1300 but kept the technology secret from the Japanese for over 200 years. Some primitive Chinese firing tubes were used during the Ōnin War, but did not catch on. Japan acquired its first true guns not from China but from Europe, when several Portuguese merchants shipwrecked at Tanegashima. Portuguese records set the date as 1542; Japanese histories say 1543. What is important is that they brought with them two matchlock arquebuses. These merchants, the first Europeans to visit Japan, were followed by *Jesuits*, experts in forging guns and peddling Catholicism. Spanish traders arrived in 1581 with more guns and cannon, by which time some Japanese daimyo were manufacturing their own firearms and were already using them to overwhelm more traditional neighbors (in battle, perhaps as early as 1549). This is when large infantry formations first appeared in *daimyo* armies, partly in response to the breakdown of *samurai* loyalty during Sengoku, but also due to the introduction of peasant levies armed with arquebuses.

The last half of the 16th century saw the unification of Japan by three great warlords, each effectively using guns in combination with older arms to wage and win the *Unification Wars*. The first was *Oda Nobunaga*, who put an end to the Ashikaga shogunate and the old daimyo order. He conquered the most advanced and heavily populated third of Japan, crushing daimyo and Buddhist opposition by 1582. The second unifier was *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*, who rose from modest origins to rule much of Japan from behind the imperial throne. Hideyoshi twice sent massive armies into Korea. He planned this as the start of an empire to include Indochina, Siam, the Philippines, and China, but was not able to conquer even Korea. In 1587 he ordered Christian missionaries to leave Japan. Ten years later he oversaw mass executions of Japanese Christians, whom he feared as a fifth column and as adherents of a subversive cult. In 1600, Dutch traders arrived and Western trade interests and influence looked set to make headway. The last of the unifiers, *Tokugawa Ieyasu*, triumphed at

Sekigahara in 1600 and became shogun in 1603. His successors, the Tokugawa shoguns, chose a path of isolation from the West trod by Japan for 250 years. Having overcome endless civil wars and the arrival of strange and perhaps threatening foreigners, the Tokugawa steadfastly resisted externally induced change. This policy was undertaken at a time when China was overrun by the *Manchus* and penetrated by Europeans, India was conquered by the *Mughals*, and Europe itself was wracked by sectarian wars. However, the price of the Tokugawa ''great peace'' was suppression of creative social forces and a self-imposed technological and military inferiority to the West. The Tokugawa shoguns gave Japan political stability and domestic peace, albeit harshly enforced, along with seclusion from Western and Christian influence. Isolation was not as extreme toward Korea and China, however. Ieyasu restored relations with Korea in 1609 and during the Tokugawa shogunate Korea sent twelve major missions (tsūshinshi) to Japan. Westerners, on the other hand, met harassment and were forbidden to take up permanent residence. Thus English traders who arrived in 1612 left in frustration in 1623, while the French established no trade links with Japan in this period.

After 1613, Buddhism—its martial monks now disarmed and so mostly harmless—was reestablished as the state religion, while ''Kirishitan'' (Japanese Christians) were sharply persecuted. In 1614 all Catholic clergy were expelled. In 1618 other Christian missionaries were killed or forced to leave. A ferocious persecution of Christianity followed, including a series of ''seclusion decrees'' passed from 1633 to 1641. These aimed at tightening control over the daimyo, among whom a handful were ''Kirishitan,'' and ending all Christian subversion of Japan's putatively homogenous religious and social order. Under pressure from enforcement of anti-Christian edicts by the Tokugawa inquisition, the Kirishitan Shumon Aratame Yaku, in 1637–1638 the Kirishitan of Shimabara rebelled. Mostly converted peasants supported by a few samurai, and with some aid from Europeans in the area, they were brutally crushed: some 35,000 were butchered in their last stronghold at Hara Castle. With the rebellion ended, survivors went underground as *Kakure Kirishitan* (''Hidden Christians''). Western trade also fell away: England's *East India Company* left in 1623, the Spanish were expelled in 1624, and the Portuguese were thrown out in 1639. That left only the Dutch *Vereenigde Oostindische Compaagnie* (VOC), and it was confined to the single entrepôt of *Deshima*. Chinese merchants were more welcome, but they too were controlled in their movements and trade. Additional ''seclusion decrees'' by Shogun Tokugawa Iyemitsu forbade any Japanese from leaving the home islands and enforced execution of all who returned from abroad, even shipwreck survivors. Shipbuilders were ordered not to construct vessels capable of ocean travel, trade with Europe was limited to regulated and authorized goods through Deshima, and all Korean and Chinese junks were directed to the confined port of *Nagasaki*. Korea retaliated by limiting Japanese traders to Pusan while China banned official trade with Japan, though an extensive private trade (smuggling) flourished that was permitted by the shoguns as a valued source of intelligence on the wider world.

There has been a fierce argument among military historians as to whether or not the Japanese ''gave up the gun'' during the long Tokugawa shogunate. At one level, they clearly did not: firearms were still produced in Japan and gun militia were maintained under strict shogunate and bakufu control. Yet, prohibitions on anyone other than samurai owning firearms (but also any other deadly weapon, including bows and swords) were enforced by occasional gun and ''sword hunts'' in the spirit of Hideyoshi's 1588 decree banning ownership of military weapons by commoners. The main argument in favor of the ''Japan gave up the gun'' thesis is that after the isolated rebellion of 1637–1638 it saw no more battles for 200 years, not until 1837. But it would be more accurate to say that Japan gave up civil war rather than guns. Once Japanese made war again in the second half of the 19th century they took guns out of storage, bought modern models from the West, and took to battle again with real gusto. See also *jōkaku*; *Nichiren Shoni*; *sōhei*; *True Pure Land*; *yamajiro*.

Suggested Reading: W. G. Beasley, *The Japanese Experience: A Short History of Japan* (2000); J. Hall et al., eds., *Japan before Tokugawa* (1981); George Sansom, *A History of Japan, 1334–1615* (1961); R. Toby, *State and Diplomacy in Early Modern Japan* (1984); Conrad Totman, *Early Modern Japan* (1993).

Jargeau, Battle of (1429). See *Hundred Years' War*; *Jeanne d'Arc*.

Jarnac, Battle of (March 13, 1569). The future *Henri III* nominally led a Catholic army to victory over the Huguenots at the start of the third of the *French Civil Wars*. For several days the armies held fast on opposite banks of the Charente river, then the Royalists crossed over to offer battle. The Huguenot army was divided between *Condé* at Jarnac and *Coligny* several miles off. The Catholics attacked Coligny first. He was quickly reinforced by the main Protestant battle under Condé, who led a foolhardy charge in which he was dehorsed then murdered after he was taken prisoner (other Protestant noble prisoners also had their throats cut at Jarnac). After the loss of Condé the Huguenots withdrew to Cognac, nursing their casualties. The Royalists pursued but failed to take Cognac since their siege artillery was still en route from Paris.

Java. In the 7th century C.E., a mixed Hindu-Buddhist kingdom was founded on Java. The Sailendra dynasty (760–860) then unified Java with Sumatra, governing an archipelagic empire from Java. An invasion attempt by the *Mongols* was repulsed in 1292. There followed several centuries under a Hindu kingdom (Majapahit), which expanded throughout the Indonesian archipelago and part of the Malay Peninsula. Islam made inroads from the 13th century. In the 16th century a Muslim state, Mataram, was established in Java. Portuguese traders arrived toward the close of the 16th century, followed closely by the Dutch *Vereenigde Oostindische Compaagnie* (VOC) and English *East India Company*. The Dutch displaced the Portuguese and slowly took over the Javanese interior, ruling harshly and imposing a forced-labor system that by the mid-17th century amounted to effective slavery.

Jeanne d'Arc (1412–1431). ''La Pucelle'' (''The Maid''). Jeanne, daughter of the shepherd Jacques d'Arc, was born at Domrémy in Lorraine in 1412. According to her testimony delivered to the *Inquisition* that burned her, at age 13 she began hearing voices which she believed were those of the Saint Queens of France, Margaret and Catherine, and Archangel Michael. At age 17 they told her she was appointed to break the siege of Orléans by the English, and to escort the Dauphin Charles from Poitiers to Rheims (the French did not then hold Paris) to be crowned King of France. She traveled to Vaucouleurs, where her renown and reputation took flight and great merchants outbid each other for the honor of arming and armoring her. It was late in the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453), and France had known nothing but defeats for several decades. Word of her mission reached the Dauphin, and fanned over a country emiserated by war, long desolate of hope of victory, and fervently ready to believe that God would send help to punish the cruel English occupiers of their ravished homeland. This was normal for an age that took for granted angelic interposition in everyday affairs, a belief enthusiastically encouraged by the Catholic Church, which also taught that diabolical spirits vied directly for the will and souls of men and women. Thus, everyone—friend and foe—accepted that Jeanne d'Arc was inspired by incorporeal creatures. Where the French, like Jeanne herself, believed these to be saints and angels, the English and Burgundians feared that ''The Maid'' was in league with daemons who had taught her Satan's enchantments. Even the Dauphin rigorously tested her faith, fearing that she might prove to be a sorceress. When satisfied, and noting the patriotic and martial passion she inspired in the army and the common people, he agreed to let her try to relieve Orléans. Henceforth, she normally appeared clad in *white armor* and mounted on a white horse. She was armed with a small battle axe inscribed with small crosses and devotions and a lance, the weapon of choice of the warrior class. Her lance was white and topped by a white pennant embroidered with fleurs-de-lis and the words ''Jhesus Maria.'' She held it aloft as *Crusaders* had, assuring the French that God was on their side and that in his sign they would conquer (''In hoc signo vinces,'' as in Emperor Constantine I's vision). This was critical, as France was deeply defeatist. Jeanne d'Arc's promise of divine assistance was essential to shake off decades of torpor and make the soldiery believe again in the possibility of victory.

. . . at age 13 she began hearing voices . . .

On April 25, 1429, the 17-year-old Jeanne d'Arc rode from camp at Blois, co-commander with the duc d'Alençon. She rode at the head of a supply and relief column, a mere girl untested in war yet welcome in the company of, indeed adored by, most of the veteran soldiers and captains of France. Three days later, under cover of night, this column slipped past lax English guards and entered Orléans. Jeanne d'Arc rode through the city in the morning, inspiring a religious rapture in many who saw her, for she looked the part to fulfill an old prophesy which foretold that a maid from Lorraine would save

France. Preferring a bloodless victory over fellow Christians, Jeanne d'Arc rode out to address the English soldiery at the great armored gate (Tourelles) on the main bridge over the Loire that prevented relief of the city. She was met with coarse sexual mockery and defiant contempt by the English captain, and told to go home and mind her cows.

The next day an assault was launched against English garrison troops barricaded into one of eight fortified siege towers, some connected by earthworks, that blockaded Orléans. ''The Maid'' was absent at the start of the attack, which was repulsed. She rode to the fight to rally the bloodied and retreating French, who turned to follow her and took the tower. On May 5, Jeanne d'Arc led the French across the Loire in boats to attack two more English positions. In close fighting, during which she was wounded slightly in the heel, they captured two small forts. Word was received in town that English reinforcements were on the way so it was decided to assault the Tourelles—manned by some 500 English archers and men-at-arms—without delay, on May 7. While climbing an assault ladder Jeanne d'Arc was pierced in the shoulder by a crossbow quarrel, helped down, and carried to the rear. Shaking off the wound, which was slight, she returned to battle. This inspired the French to heroic efforts. The victory came with an attack into the rear of the English position by a separate group of French led by a wily, veteran captain. The next day the English lifted the siege and abandoned two military camps across the Loire. After burning their stores, they departed. She forbade pursuit in favor of prayers of thanks, banished prostitutes from the company of camp followers, banned swearing by all soldiers of France, and gave personal thanks to her God for victory. It was barely three months since she had promised the Dauphin to relieve Orléans and already she had changed France forever.

After Orléans volunteers flocked to Jeanne d'Arc's banner. She and the army quickly took back Jargeau, Meung-sur-Loire, Beaugency, and other French towns and fortresses. Troyes and Rheims, held by the Burgundians, surrendered to her without resistance. Her army defeated an English force at Patay (June 18, 1429). Within just three months of the relief of Orléans she fulfilled the rest of her mission by escorting the Dauphin to liberated Rheims, where she watched in rapture as he was invested as Charles VII, heir to St. Louis, on July 17, 1429. Jeanne d'Arc asked leave to go home to Lorraine, but she was far too valuable to the king, the army, and France to permit her departure. Reluctantly she took up arms again and captured Compiègne. She led a failed attack on Paris in September, where she was seriously wounded and found herself bereft of the comfort of her Voices, which fell silent.

With premonitions of defeat and her own death, she campaigned for Charles again in 1430. Jeanne d'Arc was with the army when it captured Laon, Soissons, Beauvais, and other fortress towns. She next rode to relieve a Burgundian siege of Compiègne, where she was captured while making a sally from the town. The Burgundians took her to Arras and then into Flanders. In November she was sold to the English, who took her to Rouen. There she was tortured, recanted, relapsed, and was formally tried before an English Catholic court of Inquisition. During her ordeal Charles made no effort to aid the

girl who put him on the throne; he proved more rousable by the tickles of his mistress, Agnes Sorel, than by the torments of The Maid. Abandoned by her king and her Voices, Jeanne was condemned to death for witchcraft and heresy by the English court. On May 30, 1431, age 19, she was burned at the stake. In 1456, three years after the French finally retook Rouen, a court of the *Gallican Church* reheard the witnesses against her and revoked the verdict as fraudulent and malicious. From witch she was elevated to martyr, reclaimed for the Faith. Five centuries removed from the passions of her day the Catholic Church canonized her (1920). In death she became a supreme martyr of France, whose story riveted and helped shape its national imagination. It was no accident or coincidence that Free French forces in World War II wore as the symbol of their patriotism and willingness to sacrifice for France her Cross of Lorraine. See also *chivalry*; *Talbot, John*; *Verneuil, Battle of*.

Suggested Reading: Edward Creasy, *Fifteen Decisive Battles of the World* (1851; 1992); Kelly DeVries, *Joan of Arc: A Military Leader* (2003); J. Glénisson, ed., *Jeanne d'Arc, une èpoque, un rayonnment* (1982); M. Gordon, *Joan of Arc* (2000); H. Guillemin, *Joan, Maid of Orleans* (1973); Bonnie Wheeler and Charles Wood, eds., *Fresh Verdicts on Joan of Arc* (1996).

Jemmingen, Battle of (July 21, 1568). A Spanish army under the *Duke of Alba* smashed a Dutch rebel army of 15,000 led by *Louis of Nassau*, brother of *William the Silent*. The rebels lost over 7,000 men, most of them pursued and slaughtered by Alba on the German side of the River Ems, whose banks and waters literally ran with rebel blood. The victory freed Alba to turn to meet an invasion by William with a mercenary army out of Germany, in Brabant.

jeniçeri Ocak. See *Janissary Corps*.

Jerusalem. Capture of Jerusalem was the main objective of the Latin *Crusades*. The First Crusade captured the city in 1099 and sacked it, butchering thousands of inhabitants, Muslim, Christian, and Jew. Once the blood was washed from the paving stones of the *Holy Places*, the Crusaders erected the "Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem." The city was recovered for Islam in 1187 by *Salāh al-Dīn*. It remained in Muslim hands (Arab, Mamlūk, then Ottoman) into the second half of the 20th century.

Jesuits. "Society of Jesus." A highly disciplined, rigorous, militant Catholic religious order founded in 1540 by the Spaniard Ignatius Loyola (1491–1556), under the authority of Pope Paul III. Loyola had served in the Spanish Army in the *Italian Wars* from 1517 to 1521, and was severely wounded in both legs. Military surgeons badly set the breaks, leaving a bone protruding, and he was later racked to stretch one leg back to its original length. It was during convalescence from this excruciating ordeal that Loyola experienced visions of saints and underwent a spiritual epiphany, that he should become a "soldier of Christ." He made a pilgrimage to Montserrat, reputed resting place of the Holy Grail,

where after fasting and acts of self-abnegation he dedicated his crippled body to a lifetime of spiritual knighthood. This formerly proud and lusty youth, infused with romantic visions and histories of chivalry, henceforth would limp though the world of ordinary men, a monastic and saintly presence commanding others to join his ''holy army'' on a new crusade for Christ. At least, so Loyola convinced himself. Like medieval *Military Orders* the Jesuits ran hospitals, orphanages, missions, and schools, and bound members by oaths of rigid obedience, including the infamous 13th rule of Loyola's *Spiritual Exercises*: ''I will believe that the white that I see is black, if the hierarchical church so defines.''

Reflecting its origins in Loyola's romanticized missionary militarism, the Society of Jesus was headed by a ''General'' chosen for life. Its initial goals were to serve the *Counter-Reformation* by combating the *Protestant Reformation* on intellectual grounds, but still more to make Catholicism appealing to laity by inculcating an activist spirituality to match the raw energy that made reformed religion so appealing to so many. The Jesuits conducted missionary work in Old World areas such as Inner Austria where Protestantism had made inroads in Catholic-governed lands. They also went abroad. In 1540 the first Jesuits arrived in Goa to begin centuries of proselytizing work in Asia. Jesuit missionaries worked in India, the Philippines, Japan, and China, all through New France (where they were known as the ''Black Robes''), Brazil and Spanish America (c.1570), and wherever else Iberian or other Catholic wood might carry a priest. They showed their Counter-Reformation iron teeth at the intermediate session of the *Council of Trent*, 1551–1552, and remained adept casuists ever after. In 1580 the Jesuits sent a mission to England, stirring the already boiling pot of religious conflict in Great Britain leading to *Philip II*'s dispatch of the *Invincible Armada*. They remained keen supporters of Irish Catholic rebellion for many decades more. They were intensely devoted to the cause of indoctrination through religious education. Jesuits tutored many of Europe's leaders, including *Albrecht von Wallenstein*, though the course did not take at all with him. Close to the popes, whose ear they had and to whom all Jesuits were deeply loyal by conviction and oath, the Order was correspondingly unpopular and distrusted by Catholic opponents of excessive papal power and by all Protestants.

During the 16th century the Jesuits expanded their overseas mission along with the Portuguese empire into east Africa, coastal India, and Southeast Asia, and with the Spanish empire into the Americas and Philippiness. In Europe, however, its area of operations contracted during the 17th century: the Order was expelled from Venice, traditional enemy of the popes, in 1607. They were banned in Bohemia in 1618 when that kingdom's Protestants rebelled and the *Thirty Years' War* began. That same year, they were tossed out of Ethiopia at the urging of Coptic bishops. Jesuits returned to Bohemia to impose the Counter-Reformation after the defeat of the Protestant army at the *White Mountain* (1620); they were not allowed back into Ethiopia. They were a major influence on *Ferdinand II*. In 1634 they agreed to say 1,000 masses calling for divine favor for him and for Habsburg arms. More important and just as profitable, they were successful in recatholicizing Austria

and southern Germany: where there were four Jesuit colleges in the Habsburg lands in 1550, by 1650 there were 50, and nearly a thousand priests.

The Jesuits were stern and unbending, rigid, and legalistic. In Asia, on several occasions Jesuit fathers capitalized on the intense interest of local rulers in firearms and cannon to trade knowledge of European military secrets for a monopoly foothold in the Court or better, a right to open Catholic missions. This was especially the case in Ming China, where these ''soldiers of Christ'' were the chief instrument of the transfer of Western gun technology, including on occasion to enemies of the Ming. During a Dutch attack on the Portuguese at Macau in 1622 an Italian Jesuit commanded the artillery that blew a Dutch ship apart and ended the assault. Nor were some Jesuits loathe to turn guns on fellow Catholics: also at Macau, Jesuit gunners blew up a mission of their rivals, the Dominicans. A German Jesuit built a large cannon foundry near the Imperial Palace in the 1640s. Other Jesuits built cannon for the new Qing court in the 1670s, easily adapting their service to the destroyers of their former Ming patrons. In this way, as a Chinese scholar put it: ''While Buddha came to China on white elephants, Christ was borne on cannonballs.'' See also *Ferdinand I, Holy Roman Emperor*; *Indian Wars (Mexico, Central and South America)*; *Jansenism*.

Suggested Reading: John Aveling, *The Jesuits* (1982); Robert Bireley, *Jesuits and the Thirty Years' War* (2003); Philip Carman, *Lost Paradise* (1976); John O'Malley, ed., *The Jesuits* (1999).

Jews. See *anti-Semitism*; *Bayezid II*; *Black Death*; *civilians*; *Cossacks*; *Crusades*; *Devşirme system*; *expulsion of the Jews*; *flagellants*; *Inquisition*; *Jerusalem*; *Reconquista*; *Seljuk Turks*; *Swiss Confederation*; *Thirty Years' War*.

jihad. The Muslim obligation to armed struggle against pagans, infidels, apostates and ''heretics.'' See also *Assassins*; *ghazi*; ''*holy war*''; *Islam*; *mujahadeen*; *Ottoman warfare*.

jinetes. Lightly armed and armored, highly mobile mounted warriors who served as dragoon auxiliaries to the *heavy cavalry* in Christian armies and *Military Orders* during the *Reconquista*. They were meant to match Muslim light cavalry in speed and style of fighting. They were drawn from towns or supplied at the expense of rural magnates in return for land from the crown. They rode in distinctive low saddles upon fleet thoroughbred breeds introduced to Iberia by the Muslims of Sicily and North Africa. Jinetes were clearly distinguished from ordinary infantry, who were called *peones*. See also *Granada*.

jizya. A traditional poll tax on all non-Muslims (''dhimmîs'') in strict Muslim societies. It was a source of conflict wherever non-Muslim communities were ruled by strict Muslim regimes, especially within the Christian areas of the Ottoman Empire and among subject Hindus in Mughal India. See also *Akbar*; *zakat*.

Johannitterorden. Protestant *Military Orders* in Germany, known together as the ''Alliance Orders of St. John,'' which descended from the *Hospitallers* of Brandenburg. An amicable settlement with the Catholic Maltese Knights was reached in the *Treaty of Osnabrück* in 1648.

John Company. See *East India Company (EIC)*.

Joinville, Treaty of (December 31, 1584). By this treaty *Philip II* supported the *Guise* and the *Catholic League* in opposing the ascension to the French throne of *Henri de Navarre* or any other ''heretic'' prince, and the Guise and League agreed to collaborate in crushing Protestantism in the Netherlands. France was bound to end its alliance with the Ottoman Empire and stop privateering against Spanish and Portuguese shipping out of Dunkirk. Philip subsidized the Guise thereafter in their war with the Huguenots in return for minor Spanish claims against the territory of Navarre and a promise of enactment as part of the fundamental laws of France of decrees issued by the *Council of Trent*, which until then had been resisted by Gallican Catholics. Joinville kept Spain involved in the *French Civil Wars* for more than 10 years.

jōkaku. Mountaintop forts that proliferated in Japan from the 14th century. Their great remove and use of extreme topographical features enabled defenders to withstand sieges even by large armies.

jōkamachi. ''Castle towns.'' During the anarchic *gekokujō* period in Japan, outer walls were added to enclose buildings that lay outside the perimeter of existing castles, converting the castle into a *citadel*. As merchants and ordinary folk sought refuge inside the new walls, markets, and fortified towns grew up protected by the outer wall and citadel. Several grew into considerable cities. By 1600 many *samurai* had taken up permanent residence in the castle towns of their *daimyo*.

Juan of Austria. See *Don Juan, of Austria*.

Jülich-Kleve, Crisis over (1609–1614). This small Rhineland duchy strategically located on the border of the Spanish Netherlands and the Dutch Republic became a focus of diplomatic intrigue when its last duke, long mentally unfit, died in 1609. The main claimants to the succession were Sigismund of Brandenburg, the Count Palatine, and the Elector of Saxony, but also pressing a claim was Holy Roman Emperor Matthias. The Netherlands, Spain, and France all had interests in the outcome. When *Henri IV* intervened an international crisis ensued. The *Catholic League* and *Protestant Union* also intervened, with the latter opposing an effort to govern the duchy through an imperial commissioner in the name of *Rudolf II*. In July 1609, the Archbishop of Strassburg occupied the Imperial fortress town of Jülich. The Protestant Union, with Dutch and French support, took the fortress in 1610 and attacked the Archbishop's holdings in Alsace. Then

Henri IV was assassinated in France and the Protestant princes of Germany argued over division of the spoils. The two confessional alliances now gave way before the intervention of larger powers, as the Dutch and Spanish made clear that no settlement was acceptable that gave the other side control of the duchy. In 1614 the duchy was partitioned in the Treaty of Xanten, mediated by France and England after Spain and the Netherlands had intervened militarily (the Spanish took Wesel and the Dutch occupied Jülich). This compromise split the duchy between a Catholic, the pro-Spanish Wittelsbach Prince of Pfalz-Neuburg, and a Protestant, the pro-Dutch Johann Sigismund of Brandenburg, who converted to Calvinism in 1613.

Although it took five years to settle the succession and required some force to do so, the dispute was not permitted to break the *Twelve Years' Truce* (1609–1621) between the Spanish and Dutch that temporarily suspended hostilities during the *Eighty Years' War* (1566–1648). This ability of the diplomats to isolate a serious local conflict strongly suggests that neither the outbreak of the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648) four years later, nor its swift spread across Europe, was ''inevitable.'' The dispute over Jülich-Kleve revealed that religious differences and confessional alliances were not of themselves sufficient to provoke a general war, not least because neither Catholic nor Protestant solidarity could be assumed. On the other hand, the crisis also showed that the Holy Roman Empire was impotent, no longer master of its internal affairs. And it demonstrated that the various powers and princes of Germany were closely linked to external allies and hence tied to external interests and initiatives. Under these circumstances, any major change in Germany would affect overall international relations and vice versa, which is exactly what happened from 1618 to 1648. Once war broke out the Dutch held the fortress of Jülich only until 1622, when it was taken by storm by the Spanish.

. . . the Dutch and Spanish made clear that no settlement was acceptable that gave the other side control of the duchy.

Suggested Reading: Alison Anderson, *On the Verge of War* (1999).

Julius III (r.1549–1555). Pope. See *Council of Trent*; *Henri II, of France*.

junk. A variety of highly seaworthy sailing ships of Chinese origin and design, widely employed in war and commerce in Asia. From the 10th century Chinese junks displaced Arab and Indian ship types on the Sino-Islamic trade routes, voyaging as far west as southern India. Junk warships protected against pirates on the Huai and Yangzi Rivers and in the East China Sea, at least from the Song dynasty. The *Mongols* took control of the junk fleets of Korea and south China to launch two invasions of Japan that met defeat at *Hakata Bay*, in 1271 and again in 1284. War junks were designed for ramming and boarding actions. They had high *castles* for archers, but their hulls were too thin to take *gun ports* or heavy cannon. Some Asian nations stopped building them once they encountered Western ships. The Malays, for

example, no longer built war junks after the Portuguese arrived. But instead of copying Portuguese *galleons* they built European-style *galleys*, which they as well as the Portuguese used effectively in coastal waters. In 1565 a Portuguese *carrack* was attacked by several dozen Japanese junks but fought them off with its broadside guns. This helped discourage further building of war junks. For other reasons, after the voyages of *Zheng He* the Chinese no longer built junk war fleets (or blue water fleets of any kind). However, they still built ships for trade, including such large types as the *Fujian* and *Guangdong*. See also *tribute*.

Junkers. See *Preussische Bund*; *Prussia*; *Thirteen Years' War*.

jupon. A short, tight-fitting coat of armor peculiar to England. It replaced the *surcoat*.

Jürchen. See *banner system (China/Manchuria)*; *China*; *Manchus*; *Nurgaci*.

jus ad bellum. ''Law of going to war,'' or right to wage war. It incorporated notions of just cause, right intention, right authority, proportionality and the requirement that the decision for war be taken as a last resort. Fundamentally, jus ad bellum said that one could go to war only for just reasons, such as self-defense or last resort resistance to great evil. It was never morally permissible to make war for bad reasons, such as conquest or other collective theft. In practice, this principle was observed more in the breach than the observance. The right to embark on a war was limited to legitimate secular authorities to whom *knights* were bound or, for those embarking on a *Crusade*, to the Church itself. As primitive and self-serving as this system of religious law was, it nonetheless represented a sustained effort within the limits of the day to morally restrain warriors and subject war itself to the rule of law. It is also worth noting that moderns seldom fared better than medievals in later legal efforts to limit or restrain war.

jus armorum. ''Law of arms.'' See *jus ad bellum*; *jus in bello*; *just war tradition*.

jus emigrandi. The legal right within the Holy Roman Empire, established by the *Peace of Augsburg* in 1555, to leave towns and villages where one's religion was persecuted. It extended beyond princes to the humblest subjects of the emperor, which was an extraordinary advance in law for that time. On the other hand, leaving one's home was exceptionally hard for most people so that in practice the jus emigrandi could be as much or more a punishment for religious dissent as it was a legal right.

jus in bello. ''Law of making war,'' or the law of combat. Its cardinal principles were noncombatant immunity (immunity of *civilians*), with only combatants constituting morally permissible targets. Note that causing ''collateral damage'' to civilians or property was permitted if targets were selected with

"right intent" and the violence done respected the principle of "proportionality" wherein retributive violence was proportionate to the original injury suffered. The jus in bello sought to restrain the extent of harm done by combatants even in a just war and further, to limit the violent and destructive means by which even permissible harm was carried out. In practice, jus in bello limitations were even less regarded that those of the *jus ad bellum*. Even most theorists paid it little attention once it became clear it was wholly unenforceable and that most men thought judgment of warriors' actions should only be made by God.

jus pacis et belli. "Law of peace and war." The legal right to declare war or make peace, to build fortifications and maintain garrisons, to raise and field armies, and to levy war taxes or billet troops. Originally a right of all *belatores*, by the mid-17th century it was increasingly limited to recognized sovereigns. See also *Grotius, Hugo*; *Westphalia, Peace of*.

justification by faith. See *Calvinism*; *Counter-Reformation*; *Luther, Martin*; *Protestant Reformation*.

just war tradition. A centuries-old tradition of moral reasoning about war that waxed then waned during the Middle Ages and "wars of religion," to wax again in more secular form in the mid-17th century. It drew on the writings of Augustine of Hippo (354–430 C.E.) and Moses ben Maimun, or Maimonides (1135–1204), but was most importantly extended and elaborately codified by Thomas Aquinas (1225–1274). Aquinas and other medieval theologians were interested in expanding moral and religious restraints on war already found in the *Pax Dei* and *Treuga Dei*. The just war school thus sought to make all private war illegal and to limit violence to acts necessary to the prosecution of a just or good war. The just war doctrine of the Catholic Church was challenged during the *Italian Renaissance* by the new military theories and overtly pagan political ethic of *Machiavelli* and other thinkers. In turn, that intellectual challenge provoked an effort to save the tradition by adapting it to emerging secular international law and the looming reality of the end of the *res publica Christiana*. Despite being rooted in religious thought (not only Christian, but also Jewish and Islamic traditions), the just war gained an international legal, secular, and rationalist pedigree when adapted by secular jurists such as *Hugo Grotius*, who hoped thereby to limit the horrors of the great wars of the first half of the 17th century, the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648) and the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648).

The just war tradition required moral distinctions to be drawn between aggressor and victim which obliged third parties to aid the victim of an unjust war, unjustly waged. Practitioners of the tradition, clerics and the first international lawyers mostly, asked key questions to arrive at reasonable judgments in specific cases. These were: Was the cause just (did it proceed from self-defense, protection of prior legal rights, reparation of injuries, or punishment of wrong-doers)? Was it declared by "right authority," a legitimate sovereign

power, or merely by a raw de facto power? Was it marked by ''right intention'' on the part of kings and warriors? Were soldiers using force to promote the general good, or was the force used merely self-serving and egoistical? Was the violence used and the physical and moral damage done in close accord with the moral ends sought? That is, was the principle of ''proportionality'' between cause and consequence, provocation and response, respected? Finally, was care taken to minimize damage and casualties among the innocent (''collateral damage'')?

On the other hand, medieval thinkers also saw war as a valid tool of statecraft and even as essential in the resolution of disputes among kings and to preserve the general good of the Christian Commonwealth (res publica Christiana). Destruction of lives, livelihoods, and property in a *bellum hostile*, and just war waged by a just ruler, was even seen as the correct punishment by God of sinful men. War was a scourge brought down on the wicked not by the hand of other men but by sinfulness that moved the ''Hand of God'' to correct injustice on Earth. In practice, most rulers neither learned about nor cared for such fine moral reasoning about the military instrument of kingship. For them war was the blunt force of their political will. It sustained all power, privilege, and prestige. If some bishop or abbot scribbled an objection to a king's acts of war, well, priests and monks were bribed easily enough. And if that failed, they could be held prisoner until they agreed to grant absolution to the king, or hard men would be found to rid the king of some ''scurrilous priest.'' Even so, the just war was a sophisticated yet practical approach to the problem of war. Even for theologians it was concerned far more with practical application than abstract dogma or doctrine. This was its great strength and real contribution.

In its later secular form, the just war continued to reject pacifism but added rejection of the idea of ''*holy war*.'' A core moral presumption was held against war, but the just war school recognized that secular powers would nonetheless resort to violence to advance their material interests. The tradition did not bemoan this fact. It sought instead to lend guidance as to when war was morally or legally permissible. It asked: ''What are the exceptional cases which overcome the core moral presumption against war?'' It sought the answer in sophisticated historical casuistry. Rather than railing ineffectually against reality, the just war looked to limit the occasions when war was accepted as a legitimate recourse for civilized men and states. It sought formal agreement on the *jus ad bellum*, or the legal right to make war under specified conditions and within an overarching moral context. It proposed that no war could be just on both sides and allowed that some might be unjust from all points of view. It sought to limit the killing and destruction which accompanied even a just war. That aspect of the doctrine was the *jus in bello*, or the search for mercy and justice in the conduct of warfare, which emphasized restraint in the force used and respect for innocents (civilian immunity). For a war to be just both jus ad bellum and jus in bello requirements had to be met. Hence, it was possible to wage war unjustly, in terms of means, even in a just cause. In this rational form the just war tradition entered the secular realm,

infusing its principles and formal reasoning into the laws of war of the modern states system. See also *chivalry*; *Crusades*; *German Peasant War*; *guerre couverte*; *guerre mortelle*; *jihad*; *knights*; *Lipsius, Justus*; *Luther, Martin*; *Magdeburg, Sack of*; *prohibited weapons*; *requerimiento*; *siege warfare*.

Suggested Reading: James Turner Johnson, *Just War Tradition and the Restraint of War* (1981); Maurice Keen, *The Laws of War in the Late Middle Ages* (1965); F. H. Russell, *The Just War in the Middle Ages* (1975).

K

kabuto. A spectacularly ornate and fierce Japanese armored helmet and mask (the ''men gu,'' replete with oversized silk mustache) dating to the 14th–16th centuries. It was worn over a padded skull cap, holed at the top to allow the *samurai*'s queue an exit.

kaffir. In *Islam*, an ''infidel'' or nonbeliever. This usually meant a pagan, but for extremist Muslims the term also embraced Christians and Jews who were otherwise considered by most Muslims to be ''people of the book'' of divine revelation by a succession of recognized prophets, of whom Muhammad was the last, or ''Seal of the Prophets.''

kaim mekam. A deputy *Grand Vezier*.

Kakure Kirishitan. ''Hidden Christians.'' Japanese Christians who went underground to survive anti-Christian edicts, persecution, and the inquisition (''Kirishitan Shumon Aratame Yaku'') pursued by the *Tokugawa Shogunate*. There were about 300,000 left after the failed Shimabara rebellion (1637–1638) and attendant massacres. Some survived 250 years of Tokugawa seclusion of Japan from contact with the West by outward conformity with Buddhism and Shinto observance.

kale. Ottoman stone fortresses surrounded by several wide moats. They were built in more strategic locales where simple *çit palankasi*, or reed palisades, proved inadequate.

Kallo, Battle of (1638). See *Eighty Years' War*.

Kalmar, Union of. See *Union of Kalmar*.

Kalmar War (1611–1613). The immediate cause was Sweden's wish to escape payment of the *Sound Tolls* claimed by Denmark by opening a new, northern trade route. Denmark responded by invading Sweden. Fighting commenced along the border with each side enjoying small victories and suffering modest defeats. Denmark prevailed at sea while Sweden—engaged also in Muscovy—fielded contingents of raw conscripts to fight it out in the arctic Finnmark. On August 26, 1612, at Kringen, a force of 500 Norwegians intent on revenge for an earlier Swedish massacre ambushed 300 Scottish mercenaries who were cutting across Norway to reach employment with Sweden. After the fight the Norwegians massacred all their prisoners. With the unexpected death of Sweden's *Karl IX*, the young *Gustavus Adolphus* needed to end the war quickly. He did so in the *Peace of Knäred* (1613), which favored Denmark and forced Sweden to pay a large indemnity.

kamikaze. See *Hakata Bay, Battle of (1281).*

Kandurcha, Battle of (1391). See *Timur.*

Kanem. A large medieval state in the central sudan, north of Lake Chad on the southern fringe of the Sahara. It was governed by martial nomads whose range straddled one of the trans-Saharan trade routes between Tripoli and Tunisia on the coast and *Hausa* lands to the southwest. It sold slaves to *Ifriqiya* and Egypt and was extant in some form from the 9th century C.E., when references to it first appear in Arab chronicles. The kings and much of the population of Kanem converted to Islam in the 11th century, and thereafter Kanem helped channel Islam into the southern sudan and to *Bornu*. From the 10th to the 19th centuries Kanem was ruled by some faction of the Saifawa dynasty, though with interruptions. These Muslim kings claimed a Yemeni origin. They may actually have had one, but just as likely this was a propaganda device to attain greater legitimacy within the wider Islamic world of which Kanem was an integral part. In the 13th century Kanem extended its control to areas south of Lake Chad, then entered upon three centuries of near-constant internal quarreling among its ruling class and dynasty. In the late 14th century Kanem's military elite (Mais) retreated into eastern Hausaland, and Kanem went into steep decline as its northern provinces were conquered by a rising cavalry power, the Bulala. In the 16th century a new Saifawa kingdom arose in Bornu. It made the Bulala rulers of Kanem its tributary. Still, even in reduced form Kanem remained among the most advanced sudanic states into the 18th century, a time when it still raided for slaves among less advanced areas and stateless peoples to its south and east.

Kapikulu. ''Slave of the Porte.'' *Devşirme* employed in the Ottoman military or in the sultan's palace.

Kapikulu Askerleri. ''The Sultan's Army.'' The permanent, household troops of Ottoman sultans. They were salaried and comprised both infantry and

cavalry, as distinct from provincial levies (*Eyâlet Askerleri*) of *timariots*, seasonal cavalry tied to land revenues in exchange for military service. At first, household regiments were merely palace guards, with many recruited among military slaves or prisoners of war. The combination of *Janissaries* and *sipahis*, who otherwise maintained a deep inter-service rivalry, along with *silahdars*, greatly enhanced the power of sultans within the Empire. From the late 16th century the Kapikulu Askerleri formed the core of Ottoman armies fighting on the frontiers even when the sultan was not present, which was most often the case after 1596. Kapikulu Askerleri troops were extremely well-trained and highly specialized, dividing into various technical units (armorers, engineers, gunners, wagoners, training units), while retaining units of regular infantry and cavalry. Kapikulu Askerleri were paid quarterly and well, with active units receiving an additional campaign bonus (*sefer bahşişi*). This meant the sultan's armed *kuls* rarely refused to fight for want of pay, though they were known to refuse long service in the harsh eastern deserts. Six richly paid regiments of sipahis (''alti bölük sipahileri'') held noncombat, military administration posts (''divanî hizmet''). It was the ambition of *Serdengeçti* Janissaries to receive, as a permanent reward, elevation to the higher paid ranks of these pampered sipahis regiments. See also *askeri*; *Devşirme system*; *magazines*; *Thirteen Years' War*.

Kappel, Battle of (October 11, 1531). The teachings of *Zwingli* held sway in Zürich but not in the Catholic *Forest Cantons* of Switzerland. The latter formed an alliance in 1528, supported by Ferdinand of Austria. Zürich declared war in 1529 following the burning of a reformed preacher who had been seized on neutral territory. The ''war'' lasted only 16 days, as fighting was avoided when Zürich marched out and demonstrated its army. Two years later 8,000 men from the Forest Cantons made a surprise assault on Zürich, which could only muster 2,000 men to meet them, at Kappel. Both sides fought with high religious zeal, but raw numbers told the tale. Zwingli was found among the wounded after the battle and was killed. His corpse was burned, his ashes mixed with dung and scattered.

Kapudan-i Derya. The grand commander (admiral) of an Ottoman fleet.

kapu kulu. See *Kapikulu Askerleri*.

karacena. A Polish term for what was otherwise known as *sarmatian* armor.

Karl IX (1550–1611). King of Sweden, 1604–1611. He deposed the Catholic king of Sweden, *Sigismund III*. That provoked a long and costly war with Poland in which Swedish arms, which were still semi-feudal, were closely tested. Sigismund landed at Kalmar with a Polish-Lithuanian army in 1598, but was met by Karl and defeated at Stangebro (Stegeborg), on September 8/18, 1598. In 1600, Karl invaded Livonia, launching an intermittent but six-decade-long struggle with Poland for control of that territory (to the Peace of

Oliwa). He beat Sigismund III at Linköping (1598), south of Stockholm. Fighting with Poland over the succession in Sweden continued to the end of his reign. Despite a private leaning toward elements of Calvinism, at the national level Karl reaffirmed the Lutheran profession of Sweden. From an early age he educated his son, *Gustavus Adolphus*, in the arts of war and governance. His death in the midst of the *Kalmar War* thrust on his young son the full demands of making war and negotiating peace.

Karrenbüchsen. Czech: ''houfnice.'' Medium-caliber, mid-14th-century guns mounted on carts. The *Hussites* used them to defend gaps in their *Wagenburgs*.

karr-wa-farr. A common Muslim and light cavalry tactic (also used by Mongols and *jinetes*). It was based on the ancient ruse of a feigned retreat from the enemy designed to draw overeager pursuers out of position into a trap, whereupon the simulated flight was terminated as erstwhile retreating horsemen turned to envelop and destroy their pursuers, usually with the aid of additional ambushers.

Karsthans. From ''Hans Karst,'' the German caricature of peasant life and manner represented by ''Hans,'' a crude bumpkin and political equivalent to the ''Jacques Bonhomme'' figure of France. It was a widely used term of contempt for peasant rebels during the *German Peasant War* (1525).

Katzbalger. ''Cat's claw.'' A short sword with a double-edge and a sharp, though rounded tip. It was a favorite close combat weapon of the *Landsknechte*.

Kazan. A large copper cauldron that was the prized possession of every Janissary unit. It was used to prepare the single meal per day promised by the sultan (''The Father Who Feeds Us'') to every Janissary. *Ortas* (companies) carried it in military parades and protected it in battle. To tip over the Kazan was the accepted signal to begin a mutiny. An Orta that lost its Kazan in battle was disgraced before all.

Kazan, Conquest of (1552). See *Ivan IV*.

keel-haul. A rare, brutal naval punishment that entailed hauling a man by ropes beneath a ship from one side to the other. If done slowly this could lead to drowning. More often, it led to death from severe loss of blood caused by scraping against the sharp encrustation of marine life that adhered to the hulls of all wooden ships.

keep. The inner *donjon*, tower, or stronghold of a castle. See also *keep-and-bailey*; *shell-keep*; *torre del homenaje*; *tower-keep*.

keep-and-bailey. An early form of stone castle built from the 12th century to replace the *motte-and-bailey* fort. It combined a new stone *keep* built atop the

old *motte*, while either retaining the existing wood *bailey* or replacing it with a stone perimeter.

***kenshin*.** The *samurai* belief in total self-sacrifice as a vassal to his lord (*daimyo*).

Kephissos, Battle of (1311). The *Catalan Great Company* learned from the victory of Flemish infantry over French knights at *Courtrai* (1302), and adapted their infantry tactics when fighting against the so-called ''Frankish'' Duke of Athens at Kephissos. Specifically, the Catalan infantry took position behind a marsh that impeded the cavalry of their enemy, as the Flemings had done at Courtrai.

Keresztes, Battle of (1596). See *Thirteen Years' War*.

kerne. Gaelic: ''ceithearnach.'' An Irish light infantryman, though sometimes also used to refer to Scottish infantry. They had a reputation for ill-discipline and atrocity that earned them hatred from Irish peasants and townsfolk, but not from Irish poets. This reputation probably reflected Church propaganda and distaste for the pagan origin of kernes, as well as their actual deeds. After the *Kildare Rebellion* Irish kerne were employed by English armies in Scotland and France and to garrison the *Pale*. The end of the Tudor conquest of Ireland in 1603 rendered kerne unemployed, since private warfare was banned, and most became outcast or were deported to overseas colonies. See also *galloglass*; *redshanks*.

kettle-hat. A conical infantry helmet with a wide brim in common use in the 14th–15th centuries. In appearance, essentially the same helmet as worn by British and Commonwealth troops in World War I.

Khanua, Battle of (1527). See *Khanwa, Battle of*.

Khanwa, Battle of (March 16–17, 1527). ''Khanua.'' A clash in north India between *Babur*, who founded the *Mughal Empire* in Delhi the year before, and a coalition army of seven *Rajput* rulers. The Rajputs were nominally generaled by one of their greatest warrior heroes, Maharana Sangram Singhi, better known as *Rana Sanga*. His army enjoyed a huge numerical advantage, deploying 80,000 men and some 500 war *elephants*. Moreover, Babur's army of just 20,000 Afghans, Mongols, and Turks was virtually surrounded, in unfamiliar territory, unused to the oppressive Indian heat, and most of its men wanted to go home after more than a year of campaigning in India. Only the promise of more plunder of India's wealth kept the men from returning to cooler homes around Kabul. At Khanwa, as also happened to the army of the *Delhi Sultanate* at *Panipat* (1526), the marked superiority in musketry and artillery of Babur's men told the tale against superior Indian numbers. Babur also displayed exceptional leadership. When the clash came the Rajputs overwhelmed by sheer numbers a Mongol van of just 1,500 men. The

advantage gained by Rana Sanga was dissipated, however, by dissent among his confederate generals over how to proceed and who would command. In the interim the Afghans entrenched, forming a strong defensive line and securing their position as they had at Panipat by lashing together wagons to make a field fortification (*tabor*). They left strategic gaps among the wagons through which artillery could fire and their cavalry sally forth. Rajput warriors repeatedly hurled themselves against the center-right of Babur's line, making furious charges and fighting hand-to-hand over several hours. Sanga, who was wounded several times, then sent his elephant corps forward. Babur's cannon killed a number of the beasts and panicked and stampeded the rest. This swung the battle for the Afghans. Seeing this, part of Sanga's army crossed over to join Babur. After his victory Babur decamped for Agra, 60 miles away.

Rajput warriors repeatedly hurled themselves against the center-right of Babur's line . . .

Khotyn, Battle of (September 21–October 9, 1621). The Christians of Moldavia rebelled against Ottoman suzerainty in 1621 and allied with Poland. The Ottomans responded with an invasion of Ukraine with a huge army, led by Othman (Osman) II. *Jan Chodkiewicz* rode to meet the invaders at Khotyn (Chocim), astride the Dniester River. The Poles were badly outnumbered until reinforced by 40,000 Ukrainian Cossacks. Chodkiewicz won the battle but was killed. The fight was notable for the breaking and panicked flight of the *Janissary Corps*. The sultan was forced to return in defeat and disgrace to Constantinople, where the Janissaries revolted and killed him.

kieko. See *armor*; *samurai*.

Kievan Rus. See *Crusades*; *Lithuania, Grand Duchy of*; *Livonian Order*; *Muscovy, Grand Duchy of*; *Sweden*; *Ukraine*.

Kildare Rebellion (1534–1535). A rebellion in the Lordship of Ireland arranged by Gerald Fitzgerald, Ninth Earl of Kildare, but provoked by the evolving religious policies of *Henry VIII*. Most fighting was in or around the *Pale*. The Archbishop of Dublin was murdered (July 27, 1534) and the city besieged by 15,000 men, including reluctant Pale landowners forced to take part in the siege. The rebellion was so dangerous that Henry dispatched the largest expedition to Ireland in 140 years. Once it landed at Dublin most ''Englishery'' found their courage and deserted Kildare to rally to the Crown. After a 10-day siege of Maynooth the rebel garrison surrendered, only to be summarily executed. Similarly, Kildare was promised mercy but executed in the Tower on February 3, 1537. This rendered the ''Pardon of Maynooth'' a bitter phrase and memory of English military justice that inspired generations of later Irish rebels. Once the last Irish *kernes* and *galloglass* were suppressed the ascendancy of the *New English* Protestant military class was established. The New English were dedicated to the Tudor project to end medieval disunity in

Ireland and unite it under the Crown. They became major landlords in the process.

Kilsyth, Battle of (August 15, 1645). The Royalist *Marquis of Montrose* continued his successful Scottish campaign which led to victories at *Auldearn* (May 9) and *Alford* (July 2). At Kilsyth he again beat a *Covenanter* army. Several thousand Covenanter infantry were wiped out, perhaps as many as 6,000. That left Montrose militarily supreme in Scotland. See also *English Civil Wars*.

"King's Two Bodies." An English legal doctrine developed under *Henry VIII*. It sought to reconcile England's deeply fractured religious and political communities under the doctrine that the people and Church were alike subsumed in the king's ''royal body'' (his ''body politic'' rather than his ''body natural''). After Henry's death there was misogynist opposition to allowing his daughters, *Mary Tudor* and *Elizabeth I*, to make the same claim. In the end, Elizabeth settled on the title ''governor'' rather than ''head'' of the Church of England. The doctrine was vehemently repudiated by Parliament when *Charles I* tried to uphold it before and during the *English Civil Wars*. See also *corpus mysticum*; *Rex christianissimus*.

Kinsale, Battle of (1601). See *Nine Years' War*.

Kirishitan. Japanese Christians. See *Japan*; *Kakure Kirishitan*; *Kirishitan Shumon Aratame Yaku*; *Tokugawa Ieyasu*; *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*; *Unification Wars*.

Kirishitan Shumon Aratame Yaku. The office of inquisition set up under the *Tokugawa Shogunate* in 1640 to enforce anti-Christian edicts and seclusion decrees. See also *Japan*; *Kakure Kirishitan*.

Kirkholm, Battle of (September 27, 1605). A Swedish army, led, trained, and newly equipped by *Karl IX*, met a smaller Polish-Lithuanian cavalry army under *Jan Chodkiewicz*. The Swedes had 8,500 foot and 2,500 horse against fewer than 4,000 Poles and Lithuanians. The Swedes made a rash, frontal cavalry assault which the Poles met with a fast counterattack that dispersed the Swedish horse on either wing. Then they attacked the abandoned Swedish infantry, breaking through their pike defenses and massacring foot soldiers where they stood. The Swedes lost 75–85 percent casualties, or nearly 9,000 men. The Poles and Lithuanians suffered just 100 dead.

kizilbash. See *Qizilbash*; *Safavid Empire*.

Klozbüchse. A German multi-shot gun dating to the early 16th century. The barrel was loaded with several charges and balls in succession so that as the first charge at the front of the muzzle fired it ignited the second, the second ignited the third, and so on.

Klushino, Battle of (1610). See ''*Time of Troubles*.''

Knabenschaften. ''Band of (young) companions.'' See *Landsknechte*.

Knäred, Peace of (1613). This treaty put an end to the *Kalmar War* (1611–1613) between Denmark and Sweden allowing the young Swedish king, *Gustavus Adolphus*, time to consolidate his hold on power and complete crucial internal political and military reforms. It permitted Swedish goods and copper to pass through the Baltic Sound without triggering the *Sound Tolls*, in exchange for a burdensome but not crippling indemnity paid to Denmark. The Swedes also withdrew their forces from northern Norway, allowing the Danes to add Lappland to their empire.

Knechte. See *Landsknechte*.

knight. French: ''chevalier,'' German: ''Ritter.'' Knights were mounted, armored, aristocratic warriors who enjoyed a special or even exclusive right to use force, and who constituted the hard core of any *battle* in a Medieval European army. The martial class of Europe was raised within a literary tradition, which matured during the 12th century, that emphasized a code of *chivalry*. They also participated in a cult of honor that emphasized personal courage, strength, skilled horsemanship, mastery of a variety of (mainly edged) weapons, and ferocity in battle. This code was presented and accepted as a Christian vocation, an idea promulgated by the Church and reinforced with social privilege matched to the critical function of a hereditary military *Estate*. Still, as late as the 11th century European knights did not enjoy full mastery over infantry on the battlefield. They gained supremacy during the 12th century when the *couched lance* was more widely adopted. This was not a wholly new weapon or fighting technique, but its spread proved decisive as cavalry tactics were developed to accommodate the lance. These were practiced in tournaments where bodies of knights jousted while infantry was elsewhere engaged, or even sat on the sidelines watching. Knighthood was the principal role and aspiration of the noble fathers and first sons of Europe, and carried great social prestige as a result. In many areas the old rule of inheritance by primogeniture coupled with general population growth in the 11th century to create a class of landless nobles—second, third, or fourth sons of landed nobles. These were knights by class, name, and training but had no title, land, or vassals and thus made up a body of rootless armed warriors. Some sought to shelter in one or other of the *Military Orders*. Others went on *Crusade*. Hence, while some knights were great magnates and the wealthiest men of the age, whose armor, steeds, and retainers boasted wealth, power, and social dominance, others were landless and near-penniless men-at-arms who fought for pay or the chance to get rich through plunder and holding one of the richer knights for ransom.

All knights were distinguished in battle by their *armor*, *weapons*, *warhorses*, attendants, and the *pennants* on which they displayed their family's or liege

lord's coat-of-arms. Costs of knighthood varied by country and century but a rough guide would be that it took about a year's landed income, or the equivalent in *scutage*, to outfit a knight. Regardless of wealth, knights wore expensive armor. They started out with *mail* protection, usually a *hauberk*, which was supplemented from the 14th century by heavy *plate*, usually worn over the mail as ''double armor.'' Later plate displaced mail, with the full ''suit of armor'' donned only with great difficulty and assistance, from the feet up. Further protection came from the *escutcheon* that knights carried. The *sword* was the preferred weapon of warrior-aristocrats in all ancient and medieval martial cultures, from Japan to Roman Britain, to India or Medieval Europe. Alternately, the mace or some other clubbing weapon was acceptable. In the 12th century the couched lance was widely adopted as the main weapon, which greatly increased the shock value of *heavy cavalry*. Most knights disdained missile weapons for reasons of cultural and class prejudice, but also from practical concerns: bows and crossbows were difficult to aim and shoot from horseback while rattling and bouncing inside cumbersome armor; and they were impossible to reload without leaving go the reins. Early firearms faced the problem of wind extinguishing a *slow match* or blowing powder out of the firing pan. Again, reloading guns was impossible on horseback while in the midst of combat.

On the way to and during battle knights were accompanied by retainers: *esquires*, *pages*, *valets*, and personal servants. The page or a trusted commoner was assigned the task of holding the reins of the knight's *destrier* and of any additional horses. A valet helped the knight mount (a fully armored knight could not do this unaided), and followed behind to assist him regain the saddle should he fall or be wounded. The esquire carried his weapons and escutcheon (heavy shield), and handed these up to the knight prior to, or even during, combat. A fourth attendant might follow with a packhorse in expectation of collecting armor from the dead or shepherding noble prisoners back to camp to be ransomed another day. Socially important and wealthier knights were escorted and protected in battle by several armed retainers, mounted or on foot as men-at-arms. Such an enfeoffed knight flew his own banner. If he had paid knights and armed retainers serving under him he was known as a ''knight banneret.'' A lowlier knight serving under the enfeoffed knight's banner or alongside him was known as a ''knight bachelor.''

There was once great debate over whether medieval knights fought as disjointed bodies of individuals or as cavalry. Hans Delbrück, writing during World War I, argued that knights were not cavalry, which replaced them rather than evolved out of medieval equestrian warfare. Later research showed that while most knights did not drill anywhere near the extent that later cavalry did, they fought in sufficiently coordinated ways—as tactical units rather than as individual warriors—to qualify as true cavalry. See also *Agincourt, Battle of*; *Assize of Arms*; *Bannockburn*; *Bornu*; *camino francés*; *Cassel, Battle of*; *cavalry*; *confrère knights*; *Courtrai, Battle of*; *Crécy, Battle of*; *daggers*; *eagle knight*; *einschildig Ritter*; *estates*; *feudalism*; *Grandson, Battle of*; *Héricourt, Battle of*; *housecarls*; *jaguar knight*; *Johannitterorden*; *Knights Templar*; *Laupen, Battle of*; *Livonian Order*; *milites*; *Morat, Battle of*; *Morgarten, Battle of*; *Näfels, Battle of*;

Nancy, Battle of; *Order of the Golden Fleece*; *Poitiers, Battle of*; *Reconquista*; *recruitment*; *Roosebeke, Battle of*; *routiers*; *salute*; *samurai*; *Schlegelerbund*; *Sempach, Battle of*; *servitium debitum*; *Sickingen, Franz von*; *tabard*; *Teutonic Knights, Order of*; *valet*; *wheel lock*.

Suggested Reading: Andrew Ayton, *Knights and Warhorses* (1994); G. Duby, *The Chivalrous Society* (1978); Maurice Keen, ed., *Medieval Warfare* (1999); R. E. Oakeshott, *A Knight and His Armour* (1961) and *A Knight and His Weapons* (1964); Nigel Saul, *Knights and Esquires* (1981); J. F. Verbruggen, *The Art of Warfare in Western Europe during the Middle Ages* (1977).

knighthood. See *chivalry*; *knight*.

knight marshal. The effective commander of the English garrison army in Ireland, though not necessarily the formal commander.

Knights Hospitaller. See *Hospitallers*.

Knights in the Service of God in Prussia. A small crusading order that waged a war of conquest and forcible conversion against the native pagans of Prussia, but failed to make much headway. Their place was taken by the *Teutonic Knights*, who succeeded with ''Sturm und Drang'' to spread ''Gottesfurcht'' (''fear of God'') where the Brethren of Dobrzyn failed.

Knights of Alcántara. Named for the Roman bridge over the Tagus River, this Iberian *Military Order* originated in 1170 out of a local *hermangilda* on the frontier of Léon. Originally called ''Knights of San Julián de Pereiro,'' it was chartered by the pope in 1176, at first in association with *Calatrava*. It was integral to the *Reconquista* in Portugal. Over time, the Brethren were drawn into secular politics. Then *Pedro the Cruel* murdered the Order's *Mestre* and intimidated some of the Brethren. Thus, at *Najera* (1367), Alcántara knights fought on both sides. In 1394 the Mestre proclaimed a new crusade against the Moors of Granada, but led the Brethren into a mountain valley ambush and massacre. Until the reign of *Ferdinand and Isabella* they were larger and better equipped than royal armies, which they accompanied in the final conquest of *Granada*. Then they gave way to the new *terclo* infantry. In 1523 *Charles V* took over all Iberian Military Orders and in 1527 pledged their resources as collateral for *Fugger* loans. Thereafter, they lost all military function but retained social prestige as a court list.

Knights of Aviz. See *Aviz, Order of*.

Knights of Calatrava. The fortress of Qalat Rawaah (''Castle of War'') was a forward base for Muslim *razzia* against Toledo. It was captured by a Christian army in 1147, given to the *Templars* to hold, and renamed Calatrava. In 1157 the Templars quit Calatrava under pressure from new *rabitos* and razzia. From 1158 to 1164 the fort was held by armed monks and volunteer soldiers from a

nearby *hermangilda*. This became the foundation of a new *Military Order*, named for the castle. They wore black armor, kept monkish rules of silence, and lived in fortified barracks. In 1179 they expanded to Aragon. In 1195 they were overwhelmed by the Berber invasion, losing Calatrava and most of the Brethren. A counterattack retook Calatrava on July 1, 1212. The knights marched out to fight at Las Navas de Tolosa two weeks later, wining a victory that opened the crucial Guadalquiver Valley to a Christian advance into Córdoba. In 1218, Calatrava transferred its Portuguese holdings to *Aviz*, to reconcentrate in Castile. The Order held a large expanse of land which it worked with *mudéjar* slaves. The Masters of the Order evolved into great landowners who hired secular mercenaries to reinforce the ranks of knights. After the death of Alfonso XI in 1350 the Brethren were drawn into secular politics and thereafter more often fought rebellious Christian barons than enemy Moors. *Pedro the Cruel* murdered the Order's *Mestre*, which cleft its command and loyalties. In 1366 one of the rival Mestres of Calatrava murdered the Archbishop of Santiago, then joined the invasion of Spain by the *Black Prince*. As a result, at *Nájera* (1367) the Order saw its members fight on both sides. By the 15th century Calatrava was wholly decadent: Brethren did not keep vows and commanders were viewed as, and were, petty tyrants. In 1476 the Mestre was thrown out a window by angry townsfolk, landing on a hedge of pikes upheld to greet him by a mob of women. On the battlefield, however, during the last phase of the Moorish wars the Brethren remained formidable. Into the reign of *Ferdinand and Isabella* they were larger and better equipped than the royal armies which they accompanied in the conquest of *Granada*. The centralization of state power under the Catholic Crowns replaced them with tough veterans of the new *tercio* infantry. In 1523, *Charles V* took over all Iberian Military Orders and the next year pledged their resources as collateral for a *Fugger* loan. Thereafter, they lost all military function but retained a certain social status.

In 1476 the Mestre was thrown out a window by angry townsfolk, landing on a hedge of pikes upheld to greet him . . .

Knights of Christ. Suppression of the *Templars* led to creation of this new *Military Order* in Portugal in 1318 and its installation in confiscated Templar *commanderies* under a former Brother of *Aviz*. It remained a minor order in Portugal relative to the dominant *Hospitallers* and Aviz. In the early 15th century their *Mestre* was *Enrique "the Navigator."* Under him, the Brethren colonized Madeira (1425) and the Azores (1445). In 1437 they mounted a raid on Tangier, only to suffer defeat and death. But they grew rich off growing overseas trade for which they manned African and Atlantic entrepôts. In 1460 Enrique granted his Order 5 percent of all African revenues. From 1496 the knights were allowed to marry, mainly to mask extant widespread concubinage. In 1523, *Charles V* took over all Iberian Military Orders and in 1527 pledged their resources as collateral for *Fugger* loans. The Brethren were reduced to an honorary society of no military importance.

Knights of Malta. See *Hospitallers*.

Knights of Our Lady of Montesa. An Aragonese *Military Order* created upon the ruination of the *Templars*. It was given control of several confiscated Templar *commanderies* and charged with putting down *mudéjar* piracy and rebellion. It was unusually poor, which meant it upheld less demanding recruiting standards. In 1400 its penury drove it to join with the Order of Alfama.

Knights of Our Lady of Montjoie. A 12th century *Military Order* in *Outremer* named for the location of their castle in the mountains outside Jerusalem where pilgrims reputedly cried out in joy upon first seeing the Holy City. The Brethren swore an oath to fight the Saracens and dedicated special funds to this end. Unlike the *Templars*, the Brethren of Montjoie were permitted to take prisoners for ransom. Founded by a former *Knight of Santiago*, over time they accrued lands in Castile and Aragon. The Order withered when recruiting fell as Iberian knights joined the *Reconquista* Orders instead. In 1187 the last Montjoie knights in the Middle East retired to Aragon under the name Order of Trufac.

Knights of San Julián de Pereiro. See *Alcántara, Knights of*.

Knights of Santa Maria. A Portuguese *Military Order* founded in 1162. In 1169 they were promised one-third of any lands they reconquered from the Moors. This gave them their major fortress at Thomar.

Knights of Santiago. Founded in Léon in 1171 to protect pilgrims headed for Iberian shrines, this *Military Order* quickly spread throughout Aragon, Castile, and Portugal, and later drew recruits from England, France, Hungary, Italy, and Outremer. Each *commandery* housed thirteen Brethren. Unusually among Military Orders, knights of Santiago were allowed to marry. By 1287 the Order separated from the *Knights of Calatrava* with whom it was initially associated. Over time, Santiago knights were drawn into secular politics. With the treachery and murders of *Pedro the Cruel* the Order was so divided that at *Nájera* (1367), Santiago knights fought on both sides. In 1523, *Charles V* took over all Iberian Military Orders. The next year he pledged their collective resources as collateral for a *Fugger* loan. Thereafter, Santiago lost all military function. See also *Alvarado, Pedro de*.

Knights of Santo Stefano. A Tuscan *Military Order* that maintained a small navy on Elba. It was active until 1684, usually in cooperation with one or other ''Holy League'' arranged by the popes.

Knights of St. George. A late-founded *Military Order* that claimed a Byzantine origin but was actually formed by Greek exiles from Albania. The popes recognized it as the rightful inheritor of the lost Greek empire in Constantinople. Some of its Brethren fought at the siege of Vienna in 1683.

Knights of St. James of the Sword. See *Knights of Santiago*.

Knights of St. John of the Hospital. See *Hospitallers*.

Knights of St. Lazarus. See *Hospitallers*.

Knights of St. Thomas Acon. A *Military Order* with a preceptory in Cyprus through the 14th century, and 30 *commanderies* in England, including Hampton court, with others in Wales and Ireland. Its Grand Commandery was at Kilmainham, Ireland. In the Muslim storming and sack of Acre in 1291 every defending St. Thomas knight died fighting.

Knights of the Sword. See *Livonian Order*.

Knights of Trufac. See *Knights of Our Lady of Montjoie*.

Knights Templar. ''Knights of the Temple of Solomon,'' or ''fratres militiae Templi.'' Also known as the ''Poor Knights,'' ''Red Friars,'' or just as the ''Templars.'' One of the three major *Military Orders* of the Middle Ages, along with the *Knights Hospitaller* and *Teutonic Knights*. The Templars took early form c.1119 under the guidance of their Burgundian founder, Hugues de Payens. In effect military Cistercians, they took vows of poverty, chastity and obedience; lived together in humble barracks; and undertook to aid and protect pilgrims en route to Jerusalem. In 1120, King Baldwin II gave them the captured al-Aqsa mosque, built atop part of Solomon's Temple. From this central locale they derived the popular name ''Templars.'' They were also called ''Red Friars'' by common folk. In 1128 they received the rule of their Order from the towering intellectual of the Church Militant and 12th-century Latin renaissance, the Cistercian Abbot Bernard of Clairvaux. This made them holy warriors of the *Crusades*. Their rule precisely defined the equipment each warrior monk was expected to maintain, from his armor to shields and weapons (spears, swords, clubs, and daggers), and his three warhorses. This was an expensive kit. Fortunately, the role of Templars in protecting pilgrims in the ''Holy Land,'' along with military service to Crusader states, gained endowments from charitable beneficence, alms, and private wills, and attracted volunteer knights to fill the places of the fallen. The growing wealth of the Templars in Europe enabled them to equip knights in the Middle East, expand their military and economic activities, and led to a large part of the Order's personnel remaining in Western Europe to manage estates and assets. In 1134 the protection of Aragon itself was left to the Hospitallers and Templars, and Iberian Templars were increasingly drawn off into the *Reconquista*.

The Templars in *Outremer* fought hard and often. In their first century five Masters died in combat, and several times the whole order was nearly wiped out in battle. Of 22 Masters in the history of the Brethren, five fell in battle or died in sieges, five more died later of wounds, and one starved to death in a Muslim prison. In battle they did not request or offer quarter, and were not

permitted to take prisoners for ransom. They waged a protracted war with the *Assassins*. The Templar objective, in the words of Bernard of Clairvaux, was ''killing for Christ.'' Like their fiercest Muslim opponents, Templars viewed death in battle as the path to martyrdom. In all, 20,000 Templars died in 200 years of fighting, and not always against Muslims: Templars at times allied with Turks to fight the Hospitallers after 1201. After the fall of Jerusalem to *Salāh al-Dīn* (''Saladin'') in 1187, the Templars fell back to Acre. In 1242 the Poor Knights captured Nablus and massacred the whole population, including many Arab Christians. In 1243 they retook the Temple but within months they were turned out by Kwarismian Turks fleeing the Mongols. At La Forbie (October 17, 1244), Templars, Hospitallers, and other ''Franks'' were all crushed. Lax and corrupted far from their rule and vows—they no longer lived in barracks and hardly a knight kept his vows of poverty and chastity—the Templars were also a much reduced military force. When Acre was overrun and sacked by a Muslim army in 1291, the last Templars left the Holy Land for Cyprus.

While the Templars lost their bases in the Middle East other than Cyprus, they retained vast wealth in Europe. This was put to use in money-lending: the Paris Temple was banker to kings and emperors, financing secular wars. The ''Poor Knights'' became widely unpopular because their Temples were more splendid than their hospitals, which were notably few, and avaricious knights too often enforced claims to benefices left the Temple by dead husbands or fathers with brutal violence against widows and children. Rumors spread that the Templars (and other Military Orders) reached secret treaties with the Muslims to abandon the Holy Land. The fall of Acre thus opened floodgates of suspicion. Philip IV of France coveted Templar wealth for his fight with Rome and the Empire, even though in 1306 he took refuge in the Paris Temple in fear of the pope's wrath. Aided by a Chancellor whose parents had been burned as heretics during the *Albigensian Crusade*, and thus who had little love of the papacy, Philip moved against the Templars. His was mainly a campaign to expropriate Templar wealth for the French monarchy, but also reflected the fact that no one, least of all a king, loves their banker. On October 12, 1307, he struck: within a week 15,000 Templars were arrested. Some were the richest men in France but many were ordinary folk. The Templars were always an association mainly of common folk rather than the nobility or clergy, which is a main reason it was unable to defend itself when the wolves of monarchy and church, already red in tooth and claw, circled for more.

Templars were charged with denying Christ, worshiping cats, idols, and daemons, ''indecent kisses'' and sodomy, spitting on the crucifix, ritual child murder, and similar tired but useful falsities of the Dominican ''Hounds of Heaven'' who conducted the Medieval *Inquisition* in France. Thousands were tortured into forced confessions; over 100 were burned for heresy. Sensational ''discoveries'' of demon-relics and forged ''secret documents'' followed. Pope Clement V, who initially baulked at arrest of the Templars and how this would enhance the French monarchy, was persuaded to issue a Bull confirming the arrests. This spread the persecution outside France, across the *res publica*

Christiana. Proud Aragonese Templars made last fighting stands in several commanderies while Templars on Cyprus were allowed to negotiate surrender terms. English Templars were sent to the Tower but most Scottish Templars were quietly allowed to escape, though without their property. In Castile, Cyprus, and the Holy Roman Empire, bishops reported urgently to the pope that the Templars were innocent. Clement would not listen. Instead, he ordered lay rulers to use torture to extract confessions from all Templars who denied their dark acts. Before a grand commission of the Church in Paris in 1309 hundreds of Templars, momentarily free of the tongs or rack or wheel, retracted their forced confessions. Of these, 120 were burned as lapsed heretics, and the rest of the retractions were soon retracted. On April 3, 1312, the Templar Order was condemned for harboring heretics, almost certainly unjustly and without canonical evidence, and was formally disbanded by Clement. A second bull issued on May 2 dispossessed the Templars and gave all their wealth to the Hospitallers. In fact, their ancient rivals only got half, as the rest had already been seized kings or bishops, and by the pope. The last Master of the Temple, Jaques de Molay, was roasted to death slowly over low-burning coals by officers of the Inquisition. See also *Art of War*; *confrère knights*; *Falkirk, Battle of*; *Knights of Calatrava*; *Knights of Christ*; *Knights of Santiago*.

On April 3, 1312, the Templar Order was condemned for harboring heretics . . .

Suggested Reading: M. Barber, *The New Knighthood* (1994); Edward Burman, *The Templars* (1986; 1990); Piers Read, *The Templars* (2000); Desmond Seward, *The Monks of War* (1972; 1995).

Knights' War (1522–1523). See *Sickingen, Franz von*.

knocking. Fitting an arrow or bolt onto the drawstring.

Knocknanuss, Battle of (1647). See *English Civil Wars*.

Knollen. See *corning/corned gunpowder*.

knot. One nautical mile per hour sailing or rowing speed.

Knox, John (c.1513–1572). Scottish reformer. In 1535, at age 22, he was ordained a Catholic priest. He became an enthusiast for *Martin Luther* by the mid-1540s but thereafter was most impressed by *Jean Calvin*. He preached briefly at St. Andrews until taken captive by the French, who held him for 18 months on a prison galley. He rose in prominence under Edward VI and helped shape English Protestantism. Upon the failure of *Wyatt's Rebellion*, which he supported, and the ascension of *Mary Tudor*, he fled to Dieppe. From there he moved to Geneva where he came under the direct influence of Calvin. Knox's singular contribution to Protestantism was to devise justifications for the overthrow of unjust and ungodly rulers, whom he saw as those

failing to uphold ''true religion,'' the definition of which he abrogated to people such as himself. In this he parted company with Calvin, who disapproved of any association between religion and rebellion. In 1558, Knox was summoned back to Scotland by the *Covenanters*, to become the key figure in establishing Protestantism in Scotland from August 1559. Thunderous in his misogyny and hatred for Catholicism alike, he vehemently objected to private Masses said for *Mary Stuart* and was instrumental in turning her out of Scotland. *Elizabeth I* never forgave Knox, even as she received his principal victim into prison exile within her realm.

Suggested Reading: Jasper Ridley, *John Knox* (1968).

Komaki-Nagakute, Battle of (1584). See *Tokugawa Ieyasu*; *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*.

Konfessionalisierung. See *confessionalism*.

Kongo, Kingdom of. In 1400, Kongo, a tributary empire spanning the great Congo River, was the largest state in Central Africa. In 1482 the first Portuguese ships reached the mouth of the Congo. Upon their return they carried Kongo emissaries to Lisbon. These Kongolese were baptized in Portugal and in 1491 returned to Kongo along with several Portuguese *Jesuits*. They quickly converted Kongo's king. Portuguese mercenaries and guns then helped Kongo fight border wars from which Portuguese ships carted away enemy captives into slavery. This slaving partnership, along with patronage of Christianity, lasted to 1543 and the death of Afonso I. By then Portugal had shifted its main trading interests southward into *Ngola* (Angola). In 1556 a Kongo army was defeated by Ngola, which was supplied with firearms by Portugal. Kongo thereafter went into decline, passed over by the main currents of the slave trade and itself raided rather than raider. The main slavers were Ngola and *Yaka*, hunting for the São Tomé and Principe slave markets. In 1569 the eastern half of the kingdom was overrun by Yaka and many Kongolese sold into slavery. An appeal to Lisbon secured Portuguese military intervention, 1571–1574, in behalf of Kongo's Christian monarchy. However, the permanent Portuguese military presence in Ngola eventually led to large-scale slaving wars which helped break up Kongo. At Ambuila (1665) a large Kongo army was destroyed by the Portuguese and their African allies and Kongo broke into provincial factions governed by rival dynasts.

Königshofen, Battle of (1525). See *German Peasant War*.

Konitz. See *Chojnice, Battle of*.

köprücu. Ottoman military *engineers* who specialized in bridge and road repair.

Korea. ''The Hermit Kingdom.'' Throughout this period Korea was the most stable of all tributaries of China. The *Mongols* invaded in 1231, conquering

Korea by 1259. Koreans obtained their first firearms from China sometime in the early 14th century. Records also show a request to the Ming in 1373 for a large shipment of guns, powder, and shot. Once Koreans discovered the secret of extracting saltpeter they began manufacturing small arms from 1377, including arrow-firing "hand cannon." They made cannon from 1445, if not earlier. Guns proved useful in warding off raids by *wakō* which continued to the end of the 15th century. In 1392 the Koryo dynasty (918–1392) was displaced by the Choson dynasty (1392–1910), which valued guns even more highly and manufactured them on an expanded scale. The Koreans kept guns secret from Japan for some 200 years. In that they mimicked the Chinese, who kept their most modern designs secret from Koreans and Japanese alike. In 1545 shipwrecked Chinese and their guns fell into Korean hands and were quickly copied. Secrecy about gun technology did not help in the long run because Japan obtained even better guns and cannon from the Portuguese in 1543. When *Toyotomi Hideyoshi* twice sent Japanese armies to invade Korea the Japanese outgunned the Koreans and the Ming. Japanese troops in the 1590s were better armed, better drilled, and more tactically disciplined than the Koreans. As a result, the Korean army had great difficulty holding back the ferocious *samurai* and *ashigaru* in set-piece battles. The Koreas were more effective when they resorted to resilient guerilla resistance outside the fallen cities. At sea it was a different tale. The Korean navy, always the country's main strength, performed exceptionally well. Admiral Yi Sun-Sin's ironclad *turtle ships* destroyed much of Hideyoshi's war fleet and sank many of his resupply junks.

The Ming intervened in Korea to prevent Hideyoshi from conquering one of their tributaries and to protect their own border. An initial Ming force of just 3,000 was quickly crushed, but by the end of 1592 some 40,000 Ming and 10,000 Koreans marched together against the Japanese at Pyongyang. After a three-day siege in which the Chinese and Koreans deployed fire-arrow artillery as well as more modern cannons, the allies took Pyongyang back from the Japanese. The Ming–Korean coalition army moved on Seoul where the Japanese came out to meet them, presenting a battle front outside the city walls. The main Chinese attack was blunted, demoralizing Ming commanders and troops. The Japanese then turned on the Koreans who fought back with fire-arrows and rockets as well as hand guns and more traditional weapons. Their second attack frustrated, the Japanese returned to the safety of the city. The Ming and Koreans could not take it, but neither were the Japanese strong enough to drive them away.

The war was effectively stalemated on land, so it was decided at sea. Admiral Yi Sun-Sin cut off Hideyoshi's army from resupply from Japan by continuous aggressive actions against convoys of supply junks. Running out of food and ammunition, Hideyoshi agreed to a truce early in 1593. The Japanese withdrew to Pusan while the Ming agreed to remove their army from Korea. A formal treaty was not agreed for some years, however, as each side demanded the other perform ritual submission without fully understanding

that was what the other was also asking. A diplomatic trick left both persuaded the other had conceded the ritual point and a treaty was finally signed in 1596. But no treaty could decide the main issue of Japan's ultimate position in Korea and the fate of the Japanese garrison in Pusan. Only another war could provide an answer to that question.

In 1597, Hideyoshi realized he had been duped and, in one of his more prolonged rages, re-invaded Korea with a second massive army. This time he brought fewer traditional samurai cavalry and more of the invaluable musketeer infantry. The Ming counter-intervened immediately. Knowing the terrain and the enemy better than in 1592, the Japanese moved across Korea like a tsunami. They washed over by storm or battered down thin-walled Korean fortresses incapable of withstanding bombardment from late 16th century gunpowder cannon. The Japanese overwhelmed several Korean garrisons and cities, annihilating their civil populations. Savagery abounded: mounds of Korean and Chinese ears and noses were collected and sent to Kyoto as symbols of Hideyoshi's victory. As matters turned out, he proclaimed victory prematurely. The Japanese were beaten in a major battle fought at Chiksan, south of Seoul, in late 1597. Their northward advance was halted. With a week the Korean navy won a major naval battle at Myongnyang, and once again Hideyoshi was cut off from his bases of supply and left to face winter in a hostile and scorched land. He had an impossible logistical problem and therefore fell back to a defensive perimeter around Pusan. The Koreans and Ming followed and attacked him there over the winter of 1597–1598. After a failed frontal assault, a siege was instead undertaken for which the Japanese were most ill-prepared. However, the Chinese and Koreas were little better off. As each side settled in both were afflicted by slow starvation and epidemic disease. When Hideyoshi died in 1598 the second invasion of Korean ended. The Japanese army pulled out with the Korean navy harrying them even as they boarded transports and sailed for Japan. The years of Japanese invasion left Korea weakened military, fiscally, and demographically; much of the land and most of its cities were ruined. The war also inflicted huge Chinese casualties, possibly to the point of fatally undermining the Ming military and dynasty. Forty years later, as Japan entered its *Tokugawa* isolation, a new enemy rode out of the north to overrun China and Korea: the *Manchus* conquered Korea in 1637–1638. Once they conquered northern China in 1644 Korea became once again a Chinese tributary, only of the Qing rather than the Ming dynasty.

Kosovo, Battle of (June 20, 1389). Under Sultan *Murad I*, the Ottoman Empire expanded deep into the Balkans. In 1365, Adrianople fell and was made into the second Ottoman capital, the first inside Europe. In 1389, Lazar I of Serbia marshaled a multi-ethnic, Balkan army of perhaps 25,000 to face the advancing Ottomans, led by the sultan. Despite the Serbs deploying cannons, Ottoman horse (*sipahis* and *timariots*) and the *Janissary Corps* decisively defeated the Serbs and their allies, capturing and later executing Lazar I. However, on the

night of his victory Murad was assassinated, run through with a sword inside his own tent by a disguised Serb. Kosovo was a turning point in Serb and Balkan history. Along with *Maritza*, it shifted most of the Balkans under Ottoman control for the next 500 years.

Kosovo Polje, Battle of (October 16–17, 1448). Four years earlier the Hungarians were badly defeated by the Ottomans at *Varna*. Their leader, *János Hunyadi*, gathered a new army 25,000 strong, including *knights* from Transylvania, *hussar* cavalry, and *Landsknechte* infantry. Hunyadi inflicted major casualties on a much lager Ottoman army led by Sultan *Murad II*. The key to initial Hungarian success was deployment of arquebusier infantry, which held the field on the first day. However, the next morning Hungarian lightly armed and armored hussars were overmatched by Ottoman *sipahis* (heavy mailed cavalry) on the flanks of Hunyadi's infantry. That allowed the sheer weight of massed Ottoman forces, infantry and cavalry, to overwhelm the Hungarian and German infantry at the center of the line, which bent backward under heavy assault, then broke. Casualties were enormous: half the Hungarian army never rose from the field while over a third of Ottoman troops were dead or wounded by the end of the second day. But the Ottomans could more readily absorb such loss. The battle thus allowed completion of the Ottoman conquest of much of the Balkans and opened the way for Murad's successor, *Muhammad II*, to conduct the *Siege of Constantinople* in 1453.

kote. A Japanese armored sleeve made of *mail* and *plate*.

Kreise. See *Reichskreis*.

Kreisoberst. The commander of a *Reichskreis*. See also *Christian IV*.

Kremlin. "The Citadel." The exceptionally ornate *citadel* of Muscovy surrounded by churches, living quarters, and barracks. It was designed and built for Muscovite princes by Italian engineers. In addition to serving as a palace and seat of central government, it was used as an *armory* and stored the Muscovite artillery train.

Krevo, Union of (1385). See *Union of Krevo*.

Kriegskasse. See *war chest*.

Kringen, Battle of (1612). See *Kalmar War*.

kubi jikken. "Inspection of heads." See *samurai*; *scalping*; *swords*.

Kublai Khan (1214–1294). See *China*; *Hakata Bay, Battle of (1274)*; *Hakata Bay, Battle of* (1281); *Mongols*.

kul. ''Slave of the sultan.'' Top servants of the Ottoman sultan, including the *Grand Vezier*. Competition for favors and office was intense, and sometimes deadly, among senior kuls.

kulah. A conical-shaped, Persian-Mughal spiked helmet. It had sliding bars that could be positioned over the nose. It fully covered ears and neck, ending on the shoulder. They were often decked out with bird plumage, especially large peacock feathers.

Kulikovo, Battle of (1380). See *Muscovy, Grand Duchy of*.

kumade. ''bear claw.'' A rake-like weapon used by infantry grooms who accompanied *samurai* into battle.

Kur'aci. ''Conscripts.'' Regular troops conscripted for service in the armies of the Ottoman Empire.

Kurds. Ottoman Sultan *Selim I* (r.1512–1520) granted limited autonomy to the ''Black Nation'' of southeast Turkey, thus uniting an eclectic group of Turkomen, Assyrians, Arabs, and other tribes under the name ''Kurd.'' This new ''nation'' lacked a common culture or religion (most were sunni Muslims, but some were Christian). The Kurds retained a chieftain system and clan military organization for centuries. Although they often enjoyed de facto independence in their mountain strongholds and valleys, they never attained sovereignty or much affected the larger ebb and flow of military affairs in the region.

Kurfürsten. The seven ''Elector Princes'' who formally elected and crowned the emperors of the *Holy Roman Empire*. In theory they selected and closely advised the emperor; in practice, they usually thwarted attempts by strong emperors who sought to concentrate power at the center. Just before the onset of the *Thirty Years' War* (1618) three Kurfürsten were ''Princes of the Church'': the Catholic Archbishops of Cologne, Mainz, and Trier. They were offset by three Protestant territorial princes: the Duke of Saxony, a Lutheran, and two Calvinists, the Count Palatine of the Rhine and the Margrave of Brandenburg. The King of Bohemia thus held the decisive seventh vote, from the confessional point of view, and in 1618 the Bohemian throne was vacant. That is why the Empire was thrown into deep crisis and then war following the *''Defenestration of Prague''* (1618). In 1630 the Kurfürsten played the key role in opposing enforcement of the *Edict of Restitution* in Germany and subsequently forcing *Ferdinand II* to dismiss *Albrecht von Wallenstein*. The Imperial dignity of the Palatinate was ceded to Bavaria during the war, after *Friedrich V* was declared outlaw within the Empire. His heirs sought its return when the war ended but instead, in the *Peace of Westphalia* (1648), an eighth Imperial dignity

In theory they selected and closely advised the emperor; in practice, they usually thwarted attempts by strong emperors . . .

was created and granted to the Palatinate so that Bavaria might retain the seventh.

kurofune. "Black ship." Japanese term for European *carracks*, and later a generic for all European ships of sail.

Kutná Hora, Battle of (January 6, 1422). An early battle in the long *Hussite Wars*. The Hussite army was led by *Jan Žižka* who expelled the Imperial Army from Bohemia in 1420 that was sent to crush the rebellion by Emperor *Sigismund* (r.1411–1437). The next year Sigismund took direct command of the Imperial Army, intending to again invade Bohemia to crush the Hussites. In the interim, Žižka developed the Hussite *tabor*, a system of mobile wagon forts that protected Hussite archers and arquebusiers. The two armies clashed at Kutná Hora, about 45 miles southwest of Prague, in a rare winter battle. Žižka had about 25,000 men to face a much larger, but less tactically disciplined, Imperial Army. Žižka assembled and deployed his tabor as a field fortification and assumed a defensive stance. The cocky Imperials attacked in their usual manner, with cavalry charges and push of pike, and were cut down in droves by heavy fire from arquebuses, crossbows, and small cannon from within the tabors. As the Imperials fell back in bloody confusion Žižka ordered his men out from gaps deliberately left in the circle of wagons. The Hussites, filled with religious zeal and a bitter taste for revenge for the judicial murder of *Jan Hus*, commenced a pursuit and slaughter of the badly beaten Imperials. Four days later Žižka and the Hussite army met and severely defeated Sigismund a second time, at *Nêmecký Brod*.

L

La Bicocca, Battle of (April 27, 1522). During the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559) *Francis I* assembled an army of 25,000, including thousands of Swiss mercenaries, and marched to take back Milan which he had earlier lost to *Charles V*. Waiting to meet him with 20,000 Spanish and Italian troops, supported by German mercenaries, was *Marchese di Pescara*. The Habsburgs were positioned behind a sunken road and were well dug in. Their musketeers stood in four ranks partially concealed by heavy hedges and unusually, with pikemen to the rear. The Swiss in French employ charged with their usual ferocious abandon only to see a third of their number fall to the massed Habsburg gunmen. Each rank fired in turn, then retired, a *countermarch* tactic developed to maximize the fire effect of the new "Spanish musket." That heavier weapon had been used in a siege at Parma in 1521 but this was its first test in a field battle. It was devastating: 3,000 Swiss fell dead or wounded inside 30 minutes. No more would the Swiss used outdated pike and halberd tactics in the face of opposing firearms. Henceforth, the Spanish *tercio* was admired as the best infantry formation in Europe, ahead of the suddenly outdated *Swiss square*. Francis withdrew toward Venice, his ally. See also *Pavia, Battle of*.

La Forbie, Battle of (1244). See *Knights Templar*.

***lağimci*.** Ottoman *engineers* who specialized in sapping and mining. See also *beldar*.

Lake Boyang, Battle of (1363). Zhu Yuanzhang (*Hongwu*), former leader of the *Red Turbans*, sent his Ming fleet to do battle with the Han fleet on this hundred-mile-long lake. His men fired off their early firearms, then switched to crossbows and bows. The battle waxed and waned over four days, with heavy casualties. In the end, Ming use of *fireships* turned the battle in their favor.

lamellar armor. Armor made from scales rather than mail *rings* or *plate*. See also *armor*; *waist-lames*.

lance (1). A long cavalry spear used for thrusting at the enemy. It was not a javelin, which it replaced among the Franks in the late 9th century. Early medieval lances were 8 to 10 feet long, usually carved from a sturdy wood such as ash or apple. Reliance on the lance by medieval cavalry began under Charlemagne (r.768–814), who ordered all knights to use lances in his 792–793 edict ''Capitulare missorum.'' Frankish armies continued to use the lance as a thrusting weapon, and did not yet unite weight of warrior and warhorse in combined mounted *shock* combat. That development only arrived with the *couched lance*, probably around 1100 (the date of introduction remains controversial). It established battlefield dominance by 1150. The heavy lance thereafter served as the principal weapon of cavalry in the Middle Ages, and the main weapon of specialized units of lancers into the gunpowder era.

Since shock and not thrusting was the new method of attack, cavalry lances became heavier, sturdier, and longer: up to four meters of hardened wood with a solid iron tip (usually leaf-shaped to cut deeply into mail and flesh), and a *pennon* to prevent its passing right through an enemy soldier. When full plate armor became common for rider and warhorse in the 15th century the ''*arrêt de cuirasse*'' was used to bracket the lance against the breastplate. This allowed a still heavier lance to be used. However, this change came just as heavy lancers were being shuffled off the battlefield by gunpowder weapons, which led to abandonment of the lance in favor of alternate cavalry weapons and tactics such as the *pistol* and *caracole*, and a reduced assault combat role for cavalry in favor of large infantry formations. It has been argued by Claude Gaier and other French military historians that what finally drove the heavy lance from the battlefield, or at least from French battlefields, was ''not infantry but mounted pistoleers.'' That is not the dominant view in more general military histories.

lance (2). A late medieval cavalry formation first set up in the mid-14th century. It consisted of a single heavily armed and armored *knight* on a heavy *warhorse*, surrounded by horse archers on spry mounts. Lances required many horses to operate: two or more *rounceys* to carry the knight to and from battle; a *destrier* to carry him in battle; and various *sumpters* for attendants, as carters of armor and weapons, and to haul away any captured armor or other plunder he might secure. This basic unit of heavy cavalry later varied in size according to country, with a tendency toward increased numbers and specialization during the 15th century when the man-at-arms was suppoted at the center of the lance by several mounted specialists, sometimes called ''equitatores.''

lance (3). The core organizational element of the Burgundian army set up by *Charles the Rash*. In 1470 he created a force of 1,250 lances subdivided into 100 lance units. Each lance included a man-at-arms and three infantrymen: a crossbowman, an arquebusier, and a pikeman. In his ordinance of 1473, Charles

set up ''compagnies de l'ordonnance'' of four uniformed squads each comprised of five lances. He added innovations in drill, officering, and equipment. The French Army also used lances as its basic unit into the 16th century. A lance at the start of the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629) consisted of a man-at-arms and four mounts, two archers with two horses each, and two pages. French lances were in companies that varied from 40 to 100 men, with about 50 arquebusiers added by c.1550. Introduction of the *wheel lock* permitted cavalry to fire pistols while mounted, so that lances were discarded as the principal weapon of Western European cavalry by the end of the 16th century. See also *Cossacks*; *lancers*; *poczet*; *tournaments*.

lance-rest. A bracket in the center of an armor breastplate that supported a *couched lance*.

lanceri. Italian infantry of the late 15th century, armed with either long or short lances.

lancers. During the Middle Ages most European *heavy cavalry* used the *couched lance* as their primary weapon. Later, medium cavalry using lances as their principal weapon also arose. Uhlan light cavalry lancers may have originated in Hungary, but the style was also adopted by the Poles and from there it spread throughout northeastern Europe and Muscovy via contact with Polish armies. Uhlans may have spread to Western Europe via Poland's close military contacts with France. *Stradiots* from the Balkans hired out as mercenaries to Venice were also light cavalry lancers. They doubled as mounted infantry, dismounting to use crossbows. Similarly, English *hobelars* could fight with lances or dismount and fight on foot with bows. Lancers survived in Eastern Europe and Russia as a cavalry mainstay into the 18th century. They were still an important part of Western European cavalry in the 19th century and appeared in battle as late as World War I and even World War II. See also *demi-lancers*; *hussars*; *knights*; *Mamlūks*.

Landesabwehr. ''Territorial defense.'' The army of the *Holy Roman Empire* in the feudal period. See *Imperial Army*.

Landesaufgebot. ''Territorial recruitment.'' See *Imperial Army*.

Landsdown Hill, Battle of (1643). See *English Civil Wars*; *Hopton, Ralph*.

Landsknechte. ''Companions of the country.'' French: ''lansquenets.'' Mercenary infantry originally formed in the late 15th century from petty war bands (''Knabenschaften'') of wild youths. These were unemployed older apprentices overflowing from the highly restrictive Guilds, or other surplus young males produced by a time of demographic expansion. Such ''lads'' (''Knechte'') waged private wars that usually amounted to little more than rural banditry against unarmed peasants; or they sometimes banded together to threaten

extreme violence to extort money from vulnerable towns. In the 1470s all Europe was deeply impressed by the stunning defeat of the ''rational'' and ''modern'' army of *Charles the Rash* by the lowly Swiss during the *Burgundian-Swiss War* (1474–1477). Desire to emulate the Swiss fighting for France led to creation of Landsknechte infantry that drew in the ''Knechte'' of the country and trained them in service to the *Holy Roman Empire*. These ''lads'' were supplemented, and eventually replaced by, veteran mercenaries from Alsace and the Rhineland, the Low Countries and Scotland. Landsknechte were trained (initially, by Swiss *renegade* instructors) in the tactics of the *Swiss square*. Hence, they were mainly pikemen and halberdiers, though most also carried short swords (*Katzbalger*). Like the Swiss, many Landsknechte fighting behind the front ranks of the square wore little body armor so that they could better wield 18-foot pikes, swing their halberds, and fire crossbows and muskets. This origin in imitation contributed to an intense hatred the Landsknechte had for the Swiss, an animosity that was wholly reciprocated and which lasted many decades.

The first Landsknechte unit was formed in Bruges in 1487. The next year, the ''Black Guard'' was formed in Friesland by Emperor *Maximilian I*, who gave them special license and exemptions from civil law that the Landsknechte exploited to the hilts of their swords. For over a decade his ''Black Guard'' fought a savage frontier war around the North Sea, until it was wiped out by a large peasant army at Hemmingstedt (February 17, 1500). Other Landsknechte units fought in Hungary, but they mutinied and abandoned the campaign once they collected sufficient booty. To counter this tendency to indiscipline Maximilian seeded Landsknechte companies with noble officers (the Emperor himself set an example by marching like a common foot soldier, pike on shoulder) and imposed strict *military discipline*. Rather than replacing the old service nobility, later German emperors persuaded or compelled nobles to join Landsknechte units, thereby reinforcing aristocratic control of the new infantry. Finally, although many Landsknechte were northern Protestants they remained loyal to Catholic emperors because the latter did not try to catholicize the troops, even permitting them Protestant chaplains. Also, they paid well. As for the emperors, they tolerated religious dissent in the very armies that they used to fight prolonged wars to repress *confessionalism* in German and European society.

The Landsknechte first encountered the hated Swiss in battle during the *Swabian War*, at *Dornach* (1499). They fought hard but were defeated and then massacred by the ferocious Swiss. About 9,000 Landsknechte under *Francis I* fought and helped defeat the Swiss at *Marignano* (1515). Landsknechte fought for *Charles V* against Francis I at *Pavia* in 1525. Afterward, many returned to Germany to fight for the *Swabian League* in the *German Peasant War* (1525), against peasant bands sometimes led and stiffened by other Landsknechte in their ranks. It was Landsknechte mercenaries who sacked Rome in 1527. However, at *Dreux* (1562), they fared so badly in comparison to Swiss mercenaries that the French crown never again hired Landsknechte. See also *Bestallungbrief*; *Doppelgänger*; *Doppelsöldner*; *ensign*;

Feldarzt; *Feldobrist*; *Feldweibel*; *Generalfeldobrist*; *Generalobrist*; *Gevierthaufen*; *Hurenweibel*; *locumentems*; *martial music*; *Moncontour, Battle of*; *Nachrichter*; *Northern War, First*; *oberster Feldhauptmann*; *oberster Feldweibel*; *Obrist*; *Pfenningmeister*; *Pluderhosen*; *Provost*; *Reisläufer*; *Rottmeister*; *Schultheiss*; *Sold*; *Trabanten*; *uniforms*; *Vienna, Siege of*; *Wachmeister*; *wounds*.

Landstrum. See *Swiss Army*.

Landwehr. See *Swiss Army*.

Landwere. German militia. Although they were primary used in local defense and so were ill-equipped and poorly trained, they were sometimes mustered by the Holy Roman Emperor for major offensive campaigns.

Langport, Battle of (1645). See *English Civil Wars*.

Langside, Battle of (1568). See *Mary Stuart, Queen of Scots*.

***"Lanowa"* infantry.** See *Polish Army*.

Lansdowne, Battle of (1643). See *English Civil Wars*.

lansquenets. The French term for *Landsknechte*.

Lanze. See *lance* (3); *men-at-arms*.

lanze spezzate. Rudimentary *standing armies* (permanent forces) maintained by several of the major Italian city states, including Milan, Naples, and Venice, from the mid-15th century. They were mainly militia but included mercenaries under long-term contract. This reserve greatly reduced reliance on more seasonal *condottieri*, some of whom were tamed by accepting the new form of salaried service.

La Rochelle. This French port was a key locale of fortified land power, as well as of marauding sea power, from the 13th to 17th centuries. In the 13th century it was a historic rival of Gascony, whose army did heavy damage to the town in 1293 and killed many of its inhabitants. La Rochelle was long a base for pirates preying on the Baltic–Mediterranean trade. Castilian *galleys* allied to France also operated from La Rochelle during the *Hundred Years' War*. In 1372 their ships intercepted and overpowered a passing fleet of armed English merchants. In other years they ravaged English shipping and raided southern England's seaports, adding to damage done by French pirates. During the *French Civil Wars*, La Rochelle was the main base of the *Huguenots*, servicing privateers and pirates and withstanding several Catholic-Royalist sieges. The siege of February–June 1573, was the single largest military effort of the entire civil wars. It was begun by 25,000 Royalist troops who received

many thousands more reinforcements as the fight continued, along with royal ships prowling the outer harbor. It saw multiple assaults and miles of mining and countermining, but was decided by a steady diminution of the Royalists by desertion and disease. The king's army suffered at least 12,000 dead and perhaps as many as 22,000 total casualties, leaving just 7,500 survivors still outside the walls. Among the dead were 73 percent of royal captains. The effect of these losses was to significantly prolong the civil wars. La Rochelle's quasi-independence was guaranteed in the settlement brokered by *Henri IV* and affirmed in the *Edict of Nantes*. As Huguenot numbers and military power declined, La Rochelle became a final refuge for hardliners, then an isolated military anomaly that could no longer be tolerated by France. It was besieged by an army sent by *Louis XIII* and *Richelieu* in 1627. It surrendered on October 28, 1628, after repeated failures by English fleets to raise the siege and once *Charles I* abandoned the city by signing the Peace of Susa (April 1629) with France. See also *Buckingham*; *Castillon, Battle of*; *Edict of Alès*; *Henri III*; *Île de Ré, Siege of*.

The king's army suffered at least 12,000 dead and perhaps as many as 22,000 total casualties, leaving just 7,500 survivors . . .

Suggested Reading: David Parker, *La Rochelle and the French Monarchy* (1980).

Las Navas de Tolosa, Battle of (1212). See *Knights of Calatrava*; *Reconquista*.

last. A measure of gunpowder on an English warship: 2,400 pounds divided among 24 barrels.

lateen sails. Large triangular canvases hoisted to mastheads by long yards secured to the deck with rope and tackle. Originating in the Mediterranean, they were adopted by Atlantic and Baltic shipbuilders during the 15th century and made already "weatherly" northern ships handle even better. Lateen sails were integral in development of the great hybrid ships of sail. See also *caravel*; *carrack*; *galleon*; *galley*; *masts*; *rigging*; *sails*; *sternpost rudder*; *zabra*.

launciers. See *demi-lancers*.

Laupen, Battle of (1339). Here, rather than at *Morgarten* (1315), Europe first witnessed the unfolding superiority of the *Swiss square* as it routed a numerically superior army of mounted knights on ground favorable to cavalry, and thus presaged the eventual demise of *heavy cavalry* in European warfare. The tactics used grew mainly from Swiss experience but may also have owed something to the lessons of the famous Flemish victory at *Courtrai* (1302). The battle resulted from the struggle of the plains city of Berne to break away from the growing menace of Burgundy, then allied with Fribourg. Berne struck preemptively by attacking and occupying the fortified city of Laupen. Its enemies responded with an allied army of some 12,000, which laid siege to Laupen. Berne appealed to the *Forest Cantons* for aid, and was sent

about 500 men. Other cantons sent another 500 for a total of 6,500 Swiss. For the first time the troops of the cantons wore the white cross on their weapons or clothing that became the signature of the *Swiss Confederation*.

Outside Laupen the Swiss formed two columns with their backs to a nearby forest. The Forest Cantons and other allied contingents formed a van that faced the Burgundian heavy cavalry, while the Bernese militia faced mainly infantry from Fribourg. The Bernese immediately suffered desertions from rear ranks into the nearby woods, but front ranks held on both sides. Soon, Bernese skill with *halberds* began to tell: deep and bloody defiles were cut into the Fribourg ranks and the Fribourg infantry broke and ran. Instead of pursuing, the Bernese wheeled to attack across the flank of the badly outnumbered Forest Cantons. The Swiss were still mainly armed with halberds (the *pike* had not yet become a main weapon). Even so, they pinned the Burgundian knights between the Forest men and the Bernese. The Burgundian line was broken and scattered by a sudden onslaught: ferocious axe men and halberdiers pierced the enemy's warhorses with the iron spikes of their weapons, while others opened up a gut or hacked off the legs of horses, turtling riders to the ground. Still others went for the riders, using their hooked halberds to pull bewildered and frightened knights from their saddles to finish them off on the ground with axes and daggers. The battle ended in a swirl of spraying blood and screaming horses, shattered and splintered lances, the metallic clang of axe meeting helmet and breastplate, and the curses and screams of terror from men who knew there was no escape from great pain and death.

Laws of Olèron. A code of Atlantic maritime law promulgated c.1150–1339. The code was probably devised to govern the rich wine trade that flowed between Gascony and England, on which passage merchant ships passed the Ile d'Olèron. The laws forbade a ship's master from directly punishing a member of his crew for a major infraction of ship's rules. Instead, they granted the accused a right to trial by an admiral (in those days, often a land-based official in overall charge of naval affairs). The Laws of Olèron further specified that if ship's master struck one blow against a sailor this should be suffered without retaliation, but that if the master struck further blows the sailor had a right to physically defend himself without fear of punishment or accusation of mutiny.

laws of war. See *Articles of War*; *bellum hostile*; *chivalry*; *civilians*; *guerre couverte*; *guerre mortelle*; *"holy war"*; *Laws of Olèron*; *prisoners of war*; *prohibited weapons*; *requerimiento*; *siege warfare*; *"skulking way of war."*

league. Generally, three miles (of varying national lengths) on land. At sea, a league was one-twentieth of a degree of longitude, an inexact measure subject to disagreement among medieval and early modern navigators.

League of Public Weal. An anti-French noble alliance headed by *Charles the Rash*. It joined the ducs de Alençon, Berry, Bourbon, Burgundy, and Lorraine

against *Louis XI* of France. At Montihéry, just south of Paris, the ducs beat Louis, forcing him to agree to major concessions (Treaty of Conflans). However, Louis mostly ignored the terms because he knew that the conflicting ambitions of each great duc militated against continuing alliance.

"leather guns." An experiment to reform the Swedish artillery undertaken by *Gustavus Adolphus* early in his reign led to these unique field guns. They were cast from iron but lined with brass or copper and reinforced with alloy. The barrel was bound with wire and rope splints, wrapped in canvas secured by wooden rings, and hard leather was nailed to the exterior. They weighed about 600 pounds and could be pulled by two horses (or just one, in a pinch). All-metal castings ultimately proved far more successful, especially the 3-pounder Swedish ''regimental gun.'' In 1640, Scots mercenaries home from the German war, usually from service with the Swedish Army, used a version of ''leather guns'' to effect to cover their crossing of the River Tyne. However, by the 1640s leather guns were long discarded in Sweden in favor of cast iron cannon. Some Irish armies also tried to deploy leather guns, mostly to disastrous effect.

Lech, Battle of (1632). See *Rain, Battle of*.

legharnesses. Leg armor. See also *cuisses*; *poleyns*.

Lehnsaufgebot. See *Imperial Army*.

Leicester, Earl of (c.1530–1588). Né Robert Dudley. Arrested in the aftermath of *Wyatt's Rebellion* in 1554, Dudley was tried for treason but pardoned by *Philip II*; his father was not so fortunate. Dudley joined Philip in his war with France but returned to England when *Mary Tudor* died. Tactless and vain about his aristocratic breeding, he was nevertheless a favorite of *Elizabeth I*. Many at court thought that he was her lover. In 1563 she made him an earl and he remained a close advisor. A well-known patron of English Calvinists, in 1585 he was sent to the Netherlands to lead English troops dispatched there under the *Treaty of Nonsuch*. Nominally, he was also head of the *Raad*. In April 1586, Leicester instituted a blockade of the Flemish coast and other Spanish occupied areas, extending this as far south as the Somme in August. He also fought at *Zutphen*. In 1586, Leicester backed the most radical Calvinist factions in Dutch internal political wars. He earned the ire of Holland by plotting a failed coup against its regents in September 1587. He returned to England a failure and disgrace and soon died of a fever.

Leiden, Siege of (May 26–October 3, 1574). Leiden was first besieged by the *Duke of Alba* in 1573. Ultimately, it was under siege for 20 months, one of the longest and hardest sieges of the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648). It was defended by *schutterijen* (militia) who held out until the Spanish withdrew in March 1574, to fight *William the Silent* who had invaded from Germany. The

Spanish came back in May and surrounded Leiden with 8,000 men. In a act of desperation (Leiden was key to survival of the revolt), William ordered *Oldenbaarneveldt* to cut the dikes along the Maas south of the city on August 3, and sent a *Sea Beggar* relief fleet on flat-bottomed boats over the flooded plain. The waters did not rise high enough, however, and for weeks the Dutch ships could not reach the city. After a heavy rain the waters rose and finally lifted the Beggar boats, which fought off Spanish infantry who came out on barges to attack the relief fleet as it moved. The Dutch ships had taken two months to work up to the city walls, but they finally broke the Spanish lines at a dash to deliver food and supplies to Leiden's skeletal defenders. This was a crucial event in the Dutch Revolt as after the failure of its siege at Leiden the *Army of Flanders* evacuated Holland and Zeeland.

Leipheim, Battle of (1525). See *German Peasant War*.

***Leipziger Bund* (1631).** A defensive alliance of the Protestant princes of north Germany who opposed *Ferdinand II*'s radical confessional and imperial policies but were reluctant to see *Gustavus Adolphus* intervene in the *Thirty Years' War*. It was formed on April 12, 1631, to resist further recatholicization and warn off the Swedes. On paper it created an army of 40,000 to be raised by the *Reichskreis* to advance these ends. However, *Johann Tilly*'s sack of *Magdeburg* in May 1631, and the strength of the Swedish Army in Germany, forced the princes to side with Gustavus. Its Catholic counterpart was created by the *Treaty of Fontainebleau* (1631).

Lens, Battle of (August 2, 1648). The last battle of the *Thirty Years' War*. As peace negotiations dragged on in Westphalia a Habsburg army of 15,000 men under Leopold Wilhelm, younger brother of *Ferdinand III*, attacked toward Arras in France. *Condé* feigned retreat, then doubled back on the Austro-Spanish force. He caught it strung out in line of march and annihilated it. The Spanish lost 8,000 dead and 30 field guns. This final defeat helped persuade Ferdinand to sign the peace accords, ending the great and terrible war in Germany.

Leonardo da Vinci (1452–1519). Florentine inventor, painter, scientist, sculptor and gun maker. He moved to Milan in 1482 under commission to the *Sforza* dukes, first Ludovico, then Maximilian. He pursued mostly the peaceful arts in Milan for some 16 years, achieving unparalleled brilliance in multiple fields, most especially the fine arts. He also turned his unmatched genius to designing machines of war. He built various siege weapons for the dukes and drafted more fanciful, yet brilliant designs for what centuries later would become tanks, submersible warships, and even a helicopter. In the early 1490s he published *Codex Madrid II*, a highly influential and reliable guide to gun types and gunpowder recipes. He was forced to leave Milan upon the overthrow of the Sforzas in 1499 at the start of the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559). In 1502 he accepted service under Cesar Borgia as a military engineer

and spent a year in the field with the army. In 1506 he returned to Milan in the service of its French conqueror, Louis XII, whom da Vinci served as architect as well as military engineer. He closed out his remarkable life in the service of the French King *Francis I*, who allowed him to live and work undisturbed in the royal chateau at Amboise. Leonardo da Vinci knew *Niccolò Machiavelli*, but while enigmatic his varied and superficially mercenary career had far more to do with the turbulence of Italian finance and politics than any personal bent for Machiavellian intrigue.

Lepanto, Battle of (July 28, 1499). A climactic fight in the long naval struggle for supremacy in the eastern Mediterranean between Venice and the Ottoman Empire. *Bayezid II*'s large, new galley fleet won handily over the smaller Venetian fleet. As a result, Venice gave up some Greek island bases and came to an understanding on trade with the Ottomans, who henceforth controlled the eastern Mediterranean.

Lepanto, Battle of (October 7, 1571). In the eighth decade of the 16th century some 500 war *galleys* operated in the Mediterranean. Of these, 450 met in the last great galley fight in history, off the coast of Greece in the Gulf of Lepanto. On one side was an allied fleet of Spanish and Venetian galleys, supported by a few more ships sent by the pope, Malta, Genoa, and other minor powers. On the other was the Ottoman galley navy and the *galliots* of the Barbary corsairs. The Christian fleet was commanded by *Don Juan* of Austria, a cocky 24-year-old and half-brother of *Philip II* of Spain. It numbered 220 galleys and six Venetian *galleasses* and was crewed by 50,000 men; it carried another 30,000 marines on its decks. Sultan *Selim II* put 230 galleys and 70 Barbary galliots into the water, carrying 90,000 men, including thousands of marines and 6,000 of the sultan's crack *Janissary Corps*. The Muslim fleet was commanded by Ali Pasha. This staggering commitment of men and resources gathered to fight for the usual reasons of territory, trade, and the vanity of sovereigns. But they were also there to decide on whose side God truly fought in a long war of civilizations by then into its eighth baleful century. Thus, both sides indulged the usual rhetoric of "*holy war*": the Christians fought as the "Holy League" and sailed to war with the pope's blessing; the Ottomans rowed to battle confident that theirs was the superior civilization and that the green flag of Islam would soon fly over Venice and Rome, and once more over Córdoba, Granada, and Madrid. There were also men on each side of more worldly views, however. Among the Ottomans the normal cynicism of sultans nestled easily alongside ascendant imperial power, while sailing with the Christians were hard-headed Venetian merchant captains. Also present was a young Spaniard who would later famously mock Spain's tired crusade in the greatest novel of his age and culture: Miguel Cervantes, future author of *Don Quixote*.

Also present was a young Spaniard who would later famously mock Spain's tired crusade . . .

The majority of the Muslim galleys were lighter and lay lower in the water than Western ships, especially the oversize Spanish galleys. To counter this, Don Juan ordered ships to cut off their spurs so that the centerline guns were not blocked from firing down into the lower Muslim ships. With the enemy spotted, he anchored his left near the north shore of Lepanto Bay, putting his fastest ships (the Venetian galleys) there out of fear that Muslim advantages in speed and shallow draft might lead to his left being flanked and becoming disordered. He put the heavy Spanish galleys at the center, with galleasses in front to disorder the Muslim line. His right was supposed to hold the Muslim left while the heaviest action was fought at the center. It was a straight-ahead, no nonsense plan. The Christian line of battle was: Right, 38 galleys and 2 galleasses; Center, a front line of 62 galleys and 2 galleasses, with a Reserve of 54 galleys; Left, 53 galleys and 2 galleasses.

The problem for Don Juan, and the opportunity for Ali Pasha, was along the north shore where shallow-draft Muslim galleys might outflank the Christian line and force a general mêlée. This was indeed the essence of Ali Pasha's plan—to get his faster ships in among the heavier Christian galleys and wreak havoc on them with his more numerous and highly skilled marines. Ali Pasha lined up his galleys in a near-mirror image of the Christian line of battle: standard formation on the right, heavy in the center, and standard on the left. His reserve was pre-committed behind his center. Each battle plan correctly assumed the main action would take place at the center. The difference was that the Muslims hoped for, while the Christians feared, a secondary flanking action along the north shore. The Muslim line of battle was: Right, 60 galleys, 2 galliots; Center, front line of 62 galleys and a second line of 25 galleys and 8 galliots, with a Reserve line of 8 galleys, 22 galliots, and 64 smaller *fustas*; Left, 61 galleys, 32 galliots.

The fleets spotted one another just after dawn. Over the next few hours they formed parallel *lines ahead and astern* and slowly approached, prow facing prow, each ship waiting for a signal from the commander at the center for the whole line to break into battle speed. This was crucial, because once it was given a signal to engage could not be rescinded: commanders committed the fleet to all-out battle or backed away from the fight, iron teeth bared to the front. There was no middle choice. The opening shots were fired around 11:30 a.m. on the north flank where a squadron of fast Muslim galleys broke into the shallows to outflank the Venetians. The Muslims, under Mehemet Suluk, were partially successful: five ships got around the north flank, sinking eight Venetian galleys in the process. The Venetians skillfully pivoted their line by backing water in unison, avoiding disaster by presenting a new front to the Muslims. All other ships on the north flank then closed at battle speed, firing all guns when prows touched, or even after, into the faces of the enemy crew. Survivors of the crashing cannon volley shifted to crossbows, muskets, swivel guns, and fought hand-to-hand with sword, knife, and pistol. The five Muslim ships free on the Venetian flank poured musketry into the unprotected sides of several enemy galleys, as all around a hundred galleys collided in a frenzy of intimate murder and bloody mayhem. The two galleasses played

a crucial role, turning the fight with unmatched firepower from deck-mounted broadside cannon and their reloadable bow guns (galleasses could reload on high, protected decks while low-lying galleys could not). The whole northern wing of the battle now disappeared from view by both commanders at the center, concealed beneath rolls of cannon and musket smoke and darker clouds rising from burning ships and men. The fight on the north flank ended when surviving Muslim galleys were deliberately grounded so that their marines and officers could run away. Thousands of Christian slaves were rescued from the abandoned ships, which were then burned. More drowned as broken galleys went to the bottom, or died screaming chained to their oar and unable to escape the flames.

Don Juan and Ali Pasha remained calm throughout the fury and confusion on the north flank. The fight in the center started at mid-day, 30 minutes after firing broke out to the north. The thunder of heavy cannon at the center was immense, as the main battle fleets closed and loosed thousands of big guns at point-blank range along four heavy lines of over 200 galleys charging headlong and together. The cannon spent, the fleets locked and sent marines at each other. Fighting was ferocious around the two flagships, Don Juan's ''Real'' and Ali Pasha's ''Sultana.'' The commanders locked prows, blasted raw holes in each other's crew with bow guns, and sent streams of men forward to have at each other with pistols, axes, knives, and swords. Twice, boarding parties from the ''Real'' pushed forward to the mast of the ''Sultana,'' but twice they were pushed back by Muslim reinforcements fed in from the stern by ships of the reserve. The Christians reinforced the same way, so that the piles of bodies clustered around the masts of the ''Sultana'' grew by the minute. Meanwhile, other galleys closed in from the sides. Again, Muslim ships proved more maneuverable but also more vulnerable to action by the galleasses. The greater weight of firepower, including from better model pistols and muskets, lay with the Spanish. As the fight continued superior volume of hot metal from the Christian side carried the hour and began to win the battle at the center. Height advantage of the Christian galleys and galleasses allowed the tough veterans of Spain's *tercios* to fire down into the Janissaries and other Ottoman marines. The Muslims could not win this battle of crude attrition. Still, the outcome remained in doubt during more than an hour of hand-to-hand combat. Dozens of damaged and burning galleys drifted together, locked at the prow or grappled from the side, as their crews fought to the last man. Some men dived over board to flounder and drown in their armor or were shot in the water as they swam for their lives.

At first, things went better for the Ottomans on the southern flank where the Christian galleys stretched away from the Center. Their commander, *Gian Andrea Doria*, was either duplicitous or, more likely, feared another flanking maneuver like the one that nearly succeeded on the northern flank. His line kept stretching toward the south shore of Lepanto Bay to prevent flanking. But this opened a wide gap from the Christian center. The Muslim wing commander, Uluj Ali, ordered his galleys into the open water to fall on Don Juan's now exposed inner flank. Fifteen galleys broke ranks with Andrea

Doria to try to reinforce the Christian center. Before they arrived the situation was recovered by the *marques de Santa Cruz* in command of the Christian reserve, already positioned at the center. He moved forward and trapped Uluj Ali's squadrons between two lines of more powerful Christian ships.

Back on the "Sultana" a musket ball passed into Ali Pasha's eye, killing him instantly. A third boarding party, this time led by Don Juan himself, rushed the deck of the Muslim flagship under cover of volleys of musketry and killed its last defenders. With the Muslim commander dead and the Sultana taken, panic visibly rippled through the Muslim battle line. It suddenly burst apart as individual galleys broke formation and tried to run for shore. Only a few escaped a vigorous Christian pursuit and the immense slaughter that followed. Men were killed and ships burned without mercy. When it was over, Lepanto saw more death than any battle would for another 350 years: more died in the Gulf of Lepanto in two hours than died at Lützen, Blenheim, or Waterloo; more than at the Nile or Trafalgar; more than any battle on land or at sea anywhere prior to the failed British attack on the German trenches at Loos in 1915. The list of dead at Lepanto numbered no fewer than 50,000 fathers, brothers, and sons, all gone in an afternoon. The Christian side had lost dozens of galleys and about 10,000 men. Muslim losses were 40,000 dead and over 200 galleys sunk, burned, or captured. Thousands of heavy guns were forever lost to the sultans.

Selim II did not fully appreciate his loss. He said: "The infidels only singed my beard; it will grow back again." He was right in that the Ottoman Empire quickly replaced all galleys lost. Longer-term, he was wrong: among the dead were nearly all the Janissaries and *sipahis* who put to sea and more important, thousands of irreplaceable Ottoman pilots and sailors. Thousands more taken prisoner would never see home or family again. Most were sold into slavery, but some were murdered: the next year the Council of Ten in Venice polled its prisoners from Lepanto to identify galley pilots among them, pulled them out and put them to death. The Council secretly advised Philip II to do the same; he replied that he already had. This loss of skilled seamen, more than the loss of the ships and guns, crippled the Ottoman navy for decades. It did not recover for a generation, and when it did it found that galleys were obsolete, overtaken by great *galleons* that only Atlantic Europe built and which launched the "Age of Fighting Sail." Within just 17 years of the last great battle among galleys the first great battle of the Age of Sail was fought in the English Channel when the *Invincible Armada* sailed north from Lisbon in the summer of 1588.

Suggested Reading: J.F.C. Fuller, *Military History of the Western World*, vol. 1 (1954); John Guilmartin, *Gunpowder and Galleys* (2003).

Lerma, Duke of (1553–1625). Né Francisco Gómez de Sandoval y Rojas. First minister to *Philip III*, 1598–1618. He sought to maintain Spain's dominant position in Europe by shoring up through dynastic marriages what was being lost in battle with too many enemies. He negotiated peace with England in 1604 and agreed to the *Twelve Years' Truce* (1609–1621) with the Netherlands. Lerma was a strong supporter of *expulsion of the Moors*, which he oversaw during

the Truce. He focused on war in the Mediterranean but tried to stay out of all conflicts brewing north of the Alps, and in the mind of *Ferdinand II*. This policy was reversed over his objections in the secret *Treaty of Oñate* (1617). Sensing the end was near Lerma obtained a cardinal's hat from Pope Paul V in March 1618. In October he was stripped of all offices by Philip and forced to retire. He is not to be confused with *Olivares*, also Duke of Lerma.

Les Espagnols sur Mer, Battle of (1350). See *Hundred Years' War*.

Leslie, Alexander. See *Leven, Earl of*.

Leslie, David (1601–1682). Scots general in the *English Civil Wars*. He fought under *Gustavus Adolphus* in the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648) and as lieutenant-general to the *Earl of Leven* early in the *English Civil Wars* (1639–1651). He fought alongside *Oliver Cromwell* at *Marston Moor*, and beat *Montrose* at *Philiphaugh* (1645); he took the surrender of *Charles V* at Newark on May 5, 1646. He joined the *Whiggamore Rising* in 1648. He took over command of the *Covenanter* army from his uncle, the Earl of Leven, and led it to disaster at *Dunbar* against Cromwell in 1650. He was beaten again by Cromwell at Worcester in 1651, where he was taken prisoner. He was imprisoned in the Tower of London until the end of the Commonwealth.

Leslie, Walter (1606–1667). Scots mercenary in Austrian service. He ingratiated himself with *Ferdinand II* by participating in the assassination of *Albrecht von Wallenstein*, whom he served under for years. He later secured the release of *Prince Rupert*, though it seems he wanted him to fight in the Palatinate rather than venture to serve *Charles I* in England. In reward for his years of service to the Habsburgs, Leslie accumulated titles, huge estates, and a vast fortune. He was promoted to Field Marshal, named an Imperial Count, and later appointed ambassador to the Sublime Porte. He died one of the most richly successful mercenaries of a mercenary age.

Le Tellier, Michel (1603–1685). Appointed Intendant to the Army of Italy (September 6, 1640), Le Tellier developed a system of standardized supply that ultimately included extensive use of *magazines*. This innovation was further advanced and completed by his son and successor, the marquis de Louvois (François Le Tellier). The idea of maintaining reserves of food, cloth, fodder for the transport and cavalry horses, dry powder and shot, and so forth was an old one. But the primitive levels of bureaucracy in the early modern state meant that most armies through the end of the *Thirty Years' War* relied on an admixture of plunder, and its handmaiden *contribution*, to supply field armies. No European army had its own transport corps. Instead, all leased civilian wagons and teamsters, or requisitioned wagons on the march (with or without compensation). Starting with the French Army in Italy, Le Tellier imposed tight contracts on merchants, insisting that they actually maintain at the ready all wagons and draft animals leased, even during the

winter when little to no campaigning was undertaken. Appointed Secretary of War by *Louis XIII* in April 1643, Le Tellier set about fundamental reform of the French military supply and transportation system. For the first time a study of the matériel requirements of the French Army was made. This reduced corruption by contracted *sutlers* and royal officials long used to padding bills. It also led to standardization of food, armaments, uniforms, and equipment provided to the troops. Le Tellier even regulated the number of carts and teams allowed officers, strictly according to rank, of course.

Once the basic list of requirements was established, Le Tellier drafted standardized contracts through which he better controlled expenses. To further reduce corruption, all contracted goods were delivered not as before to commanders or regimental officers, but to central depots where they were checked by royal agents (''général de vivres''). Transport was arranged through major sutlers given special powers to draft wagons and teams, laborers, millwrights, cooks, and bakers. Le Tellier set aside a reserve of government owned wagons and horses which carried the first few days of supplies whenever an army moved into the field. In 1643 he set up a series of magazines along the usual routes used by the army when it moved out of its base area toward the Rhine; that is, at Metz, Nancy, and Pònt-à-Mousson. The next year he built a fodder magazine for the cavalry during the siege of Dunkirk, and in 1648 he set up more magazines at Arras and Dunkirk while a French army was besieging Ypres. In short, Le Tellier created the first true Ministry of War to set standards and protect merchants who cooperated with the royal system (including exempting their convoys from local road and river tolls). Most of all, he ensured that soldiers received good working equipment and regular pay, food, clothing, and shelter. Le Tellier further advanced this early magazine system during *Turenne*'s 1658 campaign of successive sieges against Dunkirk, Brégues, Oudenaarde, and Ypres. Le Tellier's system ultimately altered the conduct of logistics for the next 150 years. Yet, in his lifetime the changes made had only a modest effect on specific campaigns. Real progress toward a permanent magazine system was made by his son during the wars of Louis XIV.

Le Tellier created the first true Ministry of War to set standards and protect merchants who cooperated with the royal system . . .

Suggested Reading: Louis André, *Michel le Tellier et l'organisation de l'armée monarchique* (1906; 1980).

letters of marque. A license given by a state or monarch to a *privateer* designating the captain and ship as a warship of the realm. This permitted private warships to capture or destroy enemy shipping in time of war. Captures were adjudicated by a *prize court*, and the monarch always took a share. See also *Sea Beggars*.

letters of reprisal. A license given by a state or monarch to a *privateer* permitting capture of enemy shipping from a foreign power, an act justified by some

insult or injury whether real or imagined. The high margins and profits of privateering often led to deliberate misreading of innocent remarks or gestures as slights requiring a campaign of reprisal. And reprisals often far outstripped the original insult or injury in numbers of prizes captured or the time covered by the letter, which rendered otherwise piratical acts by the privateer permitted and legal. Such authority might be granted generally against the shipping of a foreign power or be given as a commission to a single ship.

lettres de retenue. See *French Army*.

Letzinen. Earth and log palisades and earthworks employed by the Swiss in defense. They were used to great effect at *Morgarten* (1315), *Näfels* (1388), *Vögelisegg* (1403), and *Stoss* (1405). See also *Mordax*.

Levellers. Democratic agitators and proponents of radical social reform in England. Their concentration in the *New Model Army* in 1646–1647 meant the political balance at a crucial moment in the *English Civil Wars* (1639–1651) teetered on Leveller demands. Their program called for a secular republic with universal male suffrage, abolition of the Lords, free speech, and religious toleration. This alarmed the Lords and Commons, the gentry and episcopacy, Presbyterians in England, Covenanters in Scotland, and the Army high command of *Fairfax*, *Cromwell*, and *Ireton*. In March 1647, the generals sat with the rank and file to discuss political change, and did so again in December 1648. What kept the movement alive were issues of arrears of pay, impressment, and veterans' relief. Renewal of the war in Ireland undercut Leveller influence. When some mutinied at Corkbush Field in November 1648, Fairfax and Cromwell had three ringleaders draw lots and one shot. Then they demobilized several regiments suspected of Leveller, Presbyterian, or Royalist infection, ending the threat to their own leadership of the Army and the Army's command over the country. See also *Fifth Monarchists*.

Leven, Earl of (c.1580–1661). Né Alexander Leslie. Protestant field marshal. A Scot by birth, he fought for the Netherlands at *Straslund* in 1628, and under *Gustavus Adolphus* in Germany. In 1630 he went to Moscow as a military adviser. Leslie saw action at *Lützen* (1632) and continued fighting in Germany to 1636. He then brought his skills home to Scotland in 1638 and led the *Covenanter* army in both *Bishops' Wars*, after which Charles elevated him to Earl of Leven. He fought with brutal cruelty against Catholics in Ireland from 1642 to 1644. Recalled to Scotland, he led the Covenanters in the difficult struggle against *Montrose* in the Highlands, then commanded the large Scots army that intervened in the *English Civil Wars*. He took Charles' surrender at Newark in 1646 and was the king's jailor to 1647. He joined the *Whiggamore Rising* in 1648. He later resigned his command to his nephew, *David Leslie*.

levend/levendat. ''levents.'' The term, originally meaning ''landless ones,'' applied to temporary Ottoman recruits used as irregular infantry and

provincial troops from the 14th century. Some also served as marines. They were recruited at first among the bandits of Anatolia, but later from the wider *Raya* (general population). By the 16th century levendat auxiliary infantry expanded in numbers as the Ottomans looked for inexpensive musketeers to supplement the well-paid, professional *Janissary Corps*. Unlike the latter, a levend unit was demobilized at the end of a campaign. This made them less reliable.

Lewes, Battle of (1264). See *England*.

Liegnitz, Battle of (1241). See *Mongols*; *Teutonic Knights, Order of*.

lieutenant. On land: A junior officer who assisted the commanding officer of a body of troops. At sea: In the 16th century, an army officer in command of soldiers aboard a warship. In the 17th century, a new rank for younger naval officers who assisted the *captain*.

Lieutenant-General (Germany). A general officer in the Imperial Army, second in rank; above a Field Marshal but below Generallissimus.

***Lieutenant-général du royaume* ("of the kingdom").** The second in command of royal armies, after the Constable of France. During the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629) the title was held by *François, duc de Guise* (1557); *Antoine de Bourbon* (1561); *Henri, duc de Guise* (1588); and the *duc de Mayenne* (1589).

***Liga*.** See *Catholic League (Germany)*.

light cavalry. Cavalry wearing less than full armor and mounted on small, swift ponies, not the *destriers* of medieval *heavy cavalry*. Their primary roles were to escort land convoys, set ambushes, scout ahead of the main body, forage, and raid. They could also serve as auxiliary cavalry in battle. They went by many names: *genitors* in Spain; *chevaux-légers* in France; *demi-lancers* in Medieval England, and ''prickers'' and ''scourers'' during the *Wars of the Roses*. See also *Bedouin*; *cavalry*; *chevauchées*; *hobelars*; *jinetes*; *lancers*; *Mongols*; *samurai*; *stradiots*; *Turcopoles*.

limacon. See *caracole*.

line abreast. A naval formation in which all ships in a line sailed parallel to each other as they approached the enemy's line. This offered the narrowest profile (the bow) to the enemy's guns while allowing the attacker to turn all ships in his line at once, either ahead or astern, to engage with broadside cannon as each ship sailed along the enemy line. It is important to appreciate that while these orders and formations were used late in the period they were not fully mature until the late 17th or even early 18th century. See also *galley*; *Lepanto, Battle of (October 7, 1571)*.

line ahead. A key naval tactic of the later Age of Sail used primarily by *ships-of-the-line* of the Atlantic nations, it had loose origins in the Elizabethan era. In line ahead a fleet of warships sailed not in the Spanish crescent or Ottoman scimitar-like broad front, but in single-file columns ahead of the flagship or designated captains, with all following ships mimicking maneuvers of the lead ship. This avoided an inconclusive but potentially damaging and unpredictable mêlée in which individual ship-to-ship actions took place, while maximizing the power of broadside fire of the whole fleet. See also *line astern*.

line ahead and astern. A naval formation in which the flagship occupied the center of the line so that all other ships were either ahead or astern of it.

line astern. A naval formation in which all ships in line of battle followed the flagship. See also *line ahead*.

line of battle. Any fighting formation in which warships formed a line and imitated the movements of the lead ship or carried out uniform orders from the flagship. See also *line abreast*; *line ahead*; *line ahead and astern*; *line astern*; *ship-of-the-line*.

Line of Demarcation (May 4, 1493). With breathtaking arrogance, Pope Alexander VI issued a papal bull (''Intervention cetera divina'') on May 4, 1493, dividing the non-Christian, non-European world between the empires of Spain and Portugal. (There was minor precedent for this in a 1479 papal mediation of a dispute over the Canary Islands.) The division ran along a nautical line 100 leagues west of Cape Verde and the Azores. Spain received the Western Hemisphere containing the newly discovered Americas; Portugal was granted the Eastern Hemisphere, including most of Africa where the Portuguese were already established. The Treaty of Tordesillas (June 1494) moved the line to 370 leagues west, securing West Africa for Portugal and giving the whole Caribbean to Spain. But the move meant that the great bulge of Brazil (then unknown to Castile, but probably known in secret in Lisbon) would fall within Portugal's sphere. Pedro Cabral landed on the Brazilian coast in 1500, securing the claim. With the Spanish discovery of the Pacific on the other side of the Panamanian isthmus in 1512, the line was extended into the new ocean. In 1514 the pope granted Portugal the right to any new lands discovered while sailing east from Africa. This spurred Spain to sail west across the Pacific from its base in the Americas, as both powers raced to reach and claim the *Spice Islands*. The Philippines thus went to Spain despite lying inside Lisbon's sphere because that archipelago was discovered by Ferdinand Magellan while he was in service to *Charles V*, King of Spain. In 1529 the Treaty of Zaragoza finalized the Tordesillas settlement by extending it into the Pacific at 145° East. All these ''lines of demarcation'' were ignored by other maritime powers from the start, and still more with the *Protestant Reformation*. As early as 1497 the Genoese explorer John Cabot claimed Newfoundland and Nova Scotia for England. In later decades explorers from

Protestant England and the Netherlands and from anti-Habsburg Catholic France mapped and settled much of eastern North America without regard for Spain's claims to the entire hemisphere. In addition, French, English, and Dutch *privateers* not only ignored Iberian claims, they preyed regularly on Spanish and Portuguese merchants, fishing, and treasure ships.

line of march. See *chevauchée*; *Le Tellier, Michel*; *lines of supply*; *logistics*; *magazines*.

line of metal. A gunner's line of sight, looking straight from the base down the muzzle.

lines of circumvallation. Making an entrenchment around an enemy position was a preliminary move in *siege warfare*. The parapet and accompanying ditch thus formed around the besieged place, or around the besieging army, was called the line (or lines, as plural trenches were often dug) of circumvallation.

lines of communication. Since *lines of supply* were weak to nonexistent in this era, lines of communication were similarly unimportant: movement of armies was determined far more by the requirements of foraging for basic supplies than by strategic direction or concern for communications. A rare exception was *Gustavus Adolphus* in Germany during the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648).

lines of contravallation. An entrenchment comprised of redoubts, earthworks, and a ditch—with or without a connecting *parapet*—engineered by a besieging force to protect their base camp against sallies by the besieged garrison.

lines of investment. Siege trenches dug toward the defending walls, until the terminus of the trench was close enough to serve as a sally point for *storming*.

lines of operations. There were two kinds of environmental lines along which any military operation was conducted and by which it was constrained in this period: ''natural'' markers such as mountains, rivers, plains, or oceans; and artificial barriers raised by fortifications, trenches, roads, or canals. Political barriers were far more pliable than in later eras. ''Interior lines'' (of operations) were created when a military force found itself between enemy armies, which happened rarely in this period. For some theorists, this created an advantage of shorter lines of reinforcement and supply, which derived from occupying the ''interior'' position. Many modern military theorists dismiss the idea of lines of operations as narrowly technical. The idea survives, however, as a familiar term of art among military historians.

lines of supply. Roads and wagon transport used by 16th- and 17th-century armies were rudimentary at best. Transport by river or along the sea coast was more efficient and did not require fodder (the most bulky item among all essential supplies) since horse-drawn transport was left on the bank or shore. However, rivers limited military maneuver to lines paralleling their course,

while ocean transport was subject to interception by *pirates* or enemy warships. These facts meant that field armies simply could not be adequately supplied and therefore had to resort to plunder or some version of *contributions*. In turn, that meant armies tended to move constantly, eating out each area before moving on. While this freed armies from any sort of base of supply and made it next to impossible to isolate them strategically, it limited their usefulness since most time, energy, and motivation was devoted to endless foraging rather than strategic maneuver or battle. Armies of this era thus did not march on their stomach, as Napoleon later famously said his did, so much as march to fill their stomachs and the bellies of their horses. See also *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *logistics*; *magazines*; *Maurits of Nassau*; *Wallenstein, Albrecht von*.

Armies of this era thus did not march on their stomach, . . . so much as march to fill their stomachs . . .

Linköping, Battle of (1598). See *Karl IX*; *Sigismund III*.

linstock. A gunners' tool formed of a long pole with curved arms at the top end. These held the *slow match* which gunners used to light their *quick matches*, which in turn were used to touch off charges in nearby loaded cannon. Usually, one linstock was placed between two guns and used by both crews. At sea shorter linstocks were used, often with a carved hand grip and sometimes with the head also carved to resemble a dragon or other mythical beast. The slow match was wound around the handle while the jaws gripped the burning end. Otherwise, the basic actions of firing guns were the same as on land.

Lipany, Battle of (1434). See *Český-Brod, Battle of*.

Lipsius, Justus (1547–1606). Neostoic Dutch philosopher at the University of Leiden. He was a great admirer of *Machiavelli*, on whose work he based his own contribution to the *art of war*, "De Militia Romana" (1596). He was a key mentor to *Maurits of Nassau* from 1583 to 1584. Lipsius argued for a rational understanding of war as an instrument of state policy, not merely as feral violence. This led him to embrace *just war* notions of right authority and limited force correlated to limited goals. Drawing on the *Italian Renaissance* and Machiavelli's rediscovery of Graeco-Roman virtues and military systems, Lipsius promoted *drill*, unit cohesion, *military discipline*, and a new professional ethic among officers that tied their loyalties to the state rather than the old reliance on lordship, client systems, or personal gain. Responding to the confessional divisions of the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648), he tried to develop a universal ethics based on secular principles. In this he lost out in his homeland to Catholic reactionaries in the south and Calvinist fanatics in the north. He was a poor judge of more practical and political men: he was bitterly disappointed by the *duc d'Anjou*, then by the *Earl of Leicester*, eventually returning to a vaguely pro-Habsburg romanticism.

Lisowczyks. ''Lisowczycy Cossacks.'' Polish cavalry named for their commander, Aleksander Lisowski (d.1617). This unit was formed into a single *pulk* for service in Muscovy during the *''Time of Troubles''* (1604–1613). As an unofficial adjunct to the *Polish Army*, it conducted a sustained border war against Muscovy. The Lisowczyks were unpaid but were given license to plunder freely. This backfired on Poland whenever they returned from campaigning, as they did not cease their habit of brigandage on the Polish side of the border. Although no longer led by their founder and first commander after 1617, they still fought under his name in the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648), to which they were sent as a secret contribution from the Polish king to the Catholic emperors of the Holy Roman Empire. They saw action in France, Germany, Hungary, Italy, and the Netherlands, earning everywhere a reputation for ferocity and pillage unusual even in an age of merciless confessional warfare.

Lithuania, Grand Duchy of. Early medieval Lithuania was a pagan land that consolidated politically in response to *crusades* launched against its Slavic population by several German *Military Orders*. Once the knights of the *Livonian Order* and the *Teutonic Knights* merged in 1237, they sought to follow the earlier conquest of Prussia (1230) with new crusades into the Slav lands. A protracted war thus broke out between the *Ordensstaat* and pagan Lithuania. Medieval Lithuania remained a major regional power in Central and Eastern Europe and parts of modern Belarus and Ukraine. It even competed for dominance in the region while Muscovy still labored under the ''Mongol Yoke.'' Lithuania expanded into what is today western Russia, beyond Smolensk, reaching toward Moscow in the east, south to Starodub and north to Courland and Livonia. As Muscovy threw out the Golden Horde and as *Cossack* raiders attacked from the Ukraine, thinly populated Lithuania required military assistance to hold onto its far-flung lands. The solution was a dynastic marriage of the *Jagiellon* to link Lithuania with Poland in a 14th-century ''union of crowns.'' Most Lithuanian nobles thereafter spoke Polish and converted to Catholicism, which distanced them from Ruthenian-speaking peasants who remained Orthodox. In 1410 a combined Polish-Lithuanian army defeated the Teutonic Knights at *Tannenberg*, finally ending that threat from the west. Over the next century Lithuania expanded into Ukraine, where the end of Kievan Rus left a fragmented, militarily weak state. In 1452, Volhynia was incorporated as a province of Lithuania; Kiev was annexed in 1471. The next existential danger to Lithuania came from the east with the rise of Muscovy. Poland-Lithuania faced an aggressive and expansionist Muscovite empire led by the brutal tyrant *Ivan IV* during the *First Northern War* (1558–1583). Unable to defend itself, Lithuania fused fully with Poland in the *Union of Lublin* (1569).

By the middle of the 17th century the sprawling Union of Poland-Lithuania occupied nearly one million square kilometers, making it larger than Muscovy or the Holy Roman Empire and twice as big as France. Its population stretched thinly over a vast plain that presented no natural frontiers before the Carpathian Mountains to the south. It was, therefore, easily invaded and

difficult to defend. Moreover, following annual spring rains Poland and Lithuania were divided from each other by vast flooded marshlands and swollen rivers. This reserved military action to the winter season when frozen rivers were crossed easily by the great cavalry armies that dominated Eastern European warfare. This was the obverse of the Western European experience where winter brought campaigning to an abrupt halt. The Lithuanian army was about one-half the size of Poland's. It contained a high proportion of Tatars, and thus fought with less tactical discipline and in looser cavalry formations than their partners in Poland. The army was raised in ''grand'' and ''small'' levies, with the former reserved for national emergencies. In most other military matters, such as organization and terminology, the Lithuanians followed Polish practice. The quality and morale of this army was extremely poor due to its combination of overly proud nobles and peasant conscripts who were nearly worthless in battle. Tactical indiscipline led it to panic more easily than most armies, as happened most spectacularly at Pilawice in 1648 when the entire Lithuanian army scattered in face of a mere rumor that a Cossack host was approaching. See also *Livonia*; *Poland*; *Ukraine*.

living off the land. See *bellum se ipse alet*; *contributions*; *logistics*.

Livonia. Between 1198 and 1263 this Baltic region north of Prussia was attacked by smaller German *Military Orders* then conquered by the *Livonian Order* or ''Knights of the Sword.''After 1237 further conquest was carried out in tandem with the *Teutonic Knights* who absorbed the Livonian Order and ruled Livonia into the 16th century. From Livonia the Teutonic Knights crusaded against pagans of Prussia and Slavs in Poland. They built stone castles to mark and hold territorial conquests, notably at Königsberg (1254) and Ragnit (1275), as they expanded their *Ordensstaat*. Native tribes rebelled against the Teutonic Knights in 1240 and 1269. By 1340 the Brethren had completed the conquest of Prussia, but in 1525 they lost the long struggle with Poland-Lithuania. In the ''Peace of Cracow'' the Brethren surrendered much of territorial Prussia while a new ''Duchy of Prussia'' was created, becoming one of the first Lutheran states in Europe. That caused the Catholic knights of the old Livonian Order to break their association with the Teutonic Knights and return to Livonia. They arrived in time to face a Muscovite invasion that year, which they helped fight off. Given Muscovy's expansion and annexationist intentions, the Livonian Brethren sought and received Polish protection in 1557. A Muscovite invasion led by *Ivan IV* ensued from 1558 to 1561, marked by the opening atrocity of the *Dorpat massacre* that launched the ''Livonian War,'' or *First Northern War* (1558–1583). The Livonians received assistance from Denmark, Poland, Sweden, and what remained of the Teutonic Knights. After four years of fighting Livonia agreed to become a Polish protectorate. The few Teutonic Knights left disbanded and Livonia was divided between Poland-Lithuania and a new ''Duchy of Courland.'' Muscovy continued to covet Livonia and Poles and Swedes also fought over it from 1600 to 1611.

Livonian Order. ''Brothers of the Knighthood of Christ in Livonia,'' or ''Knights of the Sword,'' or ''Sword Brothers.'' An ethnically German *Military Order* founded in 1202 at Riga by the Bishop of Livonia. Intensely zealous initially, the Livonian Brethren launched a crusade to Christianize the Baltic region. They enjoyed spectacular success in forcibly converting local pagans (Livs and Prussians), not least by killing those who refused. The territory the Order carved out in the east included what came to be called Livonia and Courland. In 1236 the Brethren were defeated by a pagan Lithuanian army, and in 1242 they were checked in their advance into western Russia by Alexander Nevsky (1220–1263), Prince of Novgorod. That also prevented further penetration of Kievan Rus. The Livonian Order merged with the *Teutonic Knights* in 1237. By the 15th century recruits were scarce as the Sword Brothers came under intense Muscovite assault by troops led by *Ivan III*, 1501–1503. Still, they bested an army of 40,000 Muscovites with just 12,000 Brethren and auxiliaries at the Seritsa River (January 1501). Three months later, 100,000 Russians and 30,000 allied Tatars annihilated the Livonian Knights at Dorpat. The Order did not become independent of the Teutonic Knights until a split between Catholic and Protestant Brethren in 1525. In 1558 the last territorial holdings of the Livonian Order were overrun by the Muscovite armies of *Ivan IV*. The last battle of the last crusade came on August 2, 1560, at *Ermes*, where the Order was utterly broken and humiliated. It was disbanded the next year. Its collapse destabilized northeastern Europe, contributing to prolongation of the *First Northern War* (1558–1583).

Livonian War (1558–1583). See *Northern War, First*.

Lobsters. A loosely contemptuous term for *Roundhead* cavalry in the *English Civil Wars*. It originally referred to a unit of London cuirassiers who wore full armor. It was later transposed to British redcoats.

lochaber axe. A Scottish infantry weapon falling some way between a *halberd* and a *bill*.

locks (on firearms). See *flintlock*; *matchlock*; *miquelet*; *wheel lock*.

locumentems. ''Lieutenant-colonel.'' An officer second in command of a *Landsknechte* or comparable mid-16th-century regiment numbering about 3,000 men.

Lodewijk, Willem (1560–1620). English: William Louis of Nassau. Dutch military reformer. See also *Maurits of Nassau*; *New Model Army*; *volley fire*.

lodgement. In *siege warfare*, when the attacking force secured a position on the *covered way* and used part of the broken defensive structure to set up a temporary fortified position of their own.

Lodi, Peace of (1454). This treaty settled a round of war between Venice and Milan and for a time stabilized the political and military situation in Italy. This was possible because a balance of power had in fact been established by the mid-15th century. Lodi was followed by the founding of an ''Italic League,'' a sophisticated security arrangement which helped keep peace among the main city-states (Florence, Milan, Naples, the Papal States, and Venice) for 40 years. This system gave early modern Europe, and later the world, a great part of the daily machinery and terminology of modern diplomacy. Also contributing to temporary stability, many *condottieri* had been bought out or otherwise tamed by salaried positions, or by taking power as in Milan. The city-states were financially exhausted by a half-century of inconclusive warfare and the Ottomans had taken Constantinople the year before, gravely threatening papal and Venetian interests in the eastern Mediterranean. With the once contested buffer spaces separating the five major city-states absorbed and annexed by one or another, a real and durable balance of power came into being. The peace lasted, with exceptions, until the French invasion of 1494 ignited the *Italian Wars* that lasted to 1559.

Suggested Reading: Garrett Mattingly, *Renaissance Diplomacy* (1955).

logistics. The problem of logistics, or supply of armies on the move, had an enormous impact on the strategy of medieval and early modern warfare and the makeup of armies. The problem was greatly exacerbated by a tremendous expansion in the size of armies brought about by the so-called ''infantry revolution,'' which saw a shift from *heavy cavalry* to far larger armies of peasant foot soldiers and town militia armed with missile weapons, from bows to firearms. Also straining military supply was erosion of feudal military service systems in favor of mercenary and other professional soldiery. Whatever its form, no army in this period solved the core logistics problem by carrying all its needed supplies with it. Primitive transport, poor conditions of what few roads there were, and reliance on draught animals whose fodder needs made up a large share of whatever load they pulled or carried, all militated against a solution. The basic method of supplying an army on the move thus was to steal the food needed along the line of march, preferably through enemy lands that could be ''eaten out'' as a means of damaging his interests far beyond battle. This dictated that most wars were fought in densely populated areas sufficient to produce the food and fodder that all armies needed to steal to survive.

Not even the Ottomans, with their advanced system of internal supply depots (*menzil-hane*), could overcome the harsh limits imposed by fodder and food requirements. These forced all campaigns onto strict timetables that seldom exceeded 180 days. Thus, the traditional Ottoman campaign start date was May 3 with an end date usually in late October and no later than November 5 (New Style), on pain of risking destruction of the entire army. Troops were called up 40 days in advance of the departure date so that horses could fatten on rich spring grasses; there was no such leeway at the other end. By the mid-16th century the frontiers of the Ottoman Empire were, not

wholly coincidentally, at the outer logistical reach of a single season's campaign march from Constantinople, or some other major assembly point within the Empire. In eastern and northern Europe winter campaigns were more common, even preferable. There, winter froze rivers that were unfordable in summer and allowed the vast and fast-moving cavalry armies maintained by all steppe powers to traverse frozen fields that in warmer weather were impassable bogs. Muscovy even deployed ski troops by the 1560s. This region was the exception, however, as everywhere else winter placed sharp limits on military operations.

Limits of Burden

Certain core logistic facts remained the same for all early modern armies. They were: (1) An average soldier consumed 3 pounds of food per day but could only carry about 65–80 pounds of equipment, weapons, and supplies. That irreducible fact limited soldiers to about 10 days' food supply (30 pounds) at the beginning of a march, and less if any food spoiled. (2) A normal packhorse ate 10 pounds of hay and another 10 of grain per day. Mongol ponies were grass fed, which gave them much greater range and utility. Most Chinese and European packhorses ate only grain. Each horse could carry about 250 pounds burden of which 100 pounds were devoted to its fodder. If a man rode the horse, even with additional packhorses in tow cavalry could move only 10 or 12 days before exhausting its portable food supply, which meant it had a return range of just five to six days without foraging. Camels were hardier than horses and carried a greater burden at about 400 pounds. Still, as many as 50,000 were needed to support a modest Ottoman field army for just three months. And even camels had to carry fodder along with their load of human food. Supply wagons improved these ratios but also reached a maximum dictated by fodder demands. The heavier a wagon, the greater the number of draught animals needed to pull it, which meant devoting still more space in the wagon to fodder. Oxen and water buffalo pulled much heavier wagon loads or heavy guns but were limited to certain climates and terrain and had high replacement costs. In any case, there were few passable roads in most of Europe. There were better road systems within China, and the Ottoman Empire was able to use excellent roads dating to the Roman and Byzantine Empires, but everywhere there were places of military interest carefully sited on hard terrain that were inaccessible by wheeled transport. Barges were the most efficient means of transport of bulk food and fodder, but using them limited lines of march to the route taken by a river for reasons of its own.

The need to carry potable water posed even greater problems of weight and range. Essential to man and beast but a terrible dead weight, fresh water was a major logistical worry. There was really no solution other than to drink from streams, ponds, and wells that one passed, all of which exposed troops to water-borne diseases. The problem was aggravated if an enemy poisoned wells as he retreated. Most non-Muslim soldiers preferred to drink small beer (a watery brew) or wine, which was far more healthy than taking a chance with

an unknown water source. Nomads did much better at water rationing than armies of more settled peoples. Bedouin camels were famously capable of longer voyages in the desert. The small steppe ponies of the Mongols and Turkic peoples of Central Asia drew moisture from the grass they ate and certainly needed less water than a *destrier*. Chinese and European cavalry, on the other hand, faced a nearly absolute water barrier when they reached the edge of the steppe, which lacked both grain and potable water required by their mounts. The *Yongle Emperor* discovered this harsh reality on five campaigns he launched across the Gobi Desert into Mongolia. Each time the Mongols avoided battle until the Chinese were forced to turn back by a logistical wall, then they attacked. The key geographical determinant of Asian logistics in this period was thus proximity to the steppe: steppe nomads could survive and fight on the great ocean of grass because to their enemies it was closer to a desert.

Similarly, in Arabia and other desiccated regions nomad armies had a huge logistical advantage over neighboring populations of settled peoples. If the Bedouin chose not to fight a numerically or technologically superior foe they retreated to the desert and waited until their enemy's supply system failed. Then they pursued demoralized forces or stayed safely home in tent and oasis cities. Either way, the choice was invariably theirs. In the Americas, despite the absence of wheeled vehicles or large domesticated pack animals (with the partial exception of the llama), the *Aztec* and *Inca* created huge territorial empires. Still, it must be asked whether they had in fact reached the outer limits of logistically sustainable expansion before the arrival of Europeans. Great civil wars within, and unrepressed opposition at the edges of, each empire well before the first Spanish boot touched their land suggests that they may well have been near realistic territorial limits.

Each time the Mongols avoided battle until the Chinese were forced to turn back by a logistical wall . . .

Plunder

Given fundamental transportation problems compounded by weak state finances, the basic rule for all armies was essentially to steal (''requisition,'' ''forage for'') food and fodder along the line of march, even if this left civilians on farms or in towns stripped bare of the necessities of life to starve to death, as it frequently did. In Europe logistical systems adopted by expanding infantry armies amounted to little more than organized plunder of the countryside—preferably, though not always, of provinces belonging to an enemy prince. Commanders relied on, and thus were tied to, a huge ''logistical tail'' comprised of an extended *baggage train* and large numbers of sundry *camp followers*. In good times and friendly territory local merchants might join a military column for a short time as it passed through their area, bringing goods for sale to what amounted to a traveling market place equivalent in population to a good-sized city. Wealthier and well-supplied *sutlers* would be engaged by a commanding general to supply bread and other basic necessities

to the troops. As large as some sutler land convoys were, under the primitive road and vehicle restrictions of the day they could not support the swelling ranks of the new armies. This left armies no choice but to live off the land they passed through. Seizing field supplies from local peasants or markets was often disguised as legal requisition: promissory notes were dutifully passed out but almost always proved irredeemable later.

A mass of soldiers, along with their women and children in the baggage train, quickly consumed all there was in any area no matter how rich the fruits of its vines and fields. That often left the local population in such dire straits that many abandoned their homes to join the passing army, to eat out the next lush valley or province in turn. Without new sources of supply mutiny and chaos was a pressing danger to any army, but especially to one comprised of mercenaries. In short order, the impulse to move mustered troops out of one's home country and into enemy territory became a logistical imperative, and an alternative way of war to offering risky battle. Beyond the first days or weeks of the campaign season, which usually began after the spring rains, plunder of the peasantry and of small and mid-sized towns (walled and well-defended cites were less readily extorted) remained the mainstay of supply in early modern warfare. In truly hard times and always in enemy territory, armies and camp followers had the character and effect of a swarm of locust, eating out whole regions then moving on to consume the next.

The basic fact of 16th- and 17th-century logistics of European land warfare—that no army could bring with it on the march supplies sufficient to its needs beyond a few days—framed all strategy. Monarchs and commanders naturally sought to feed their unruly hordes at enemy expense by eating out his lands and billeting troops on his territory. The smartest converted this logistical necessity into an offensive strategy in which the main purpose of an invasion was economic dislocation rather than victory in battle. Large armies made up mostly of battle-shy mercenaries avoided combat in favor of destruction of an enemy's economic base by physical consumption of wealth in food and fodder, and by burning and plunder of portable goods. When enough damage was done the prince whose lands hosted the swarm would sue for peace to bring about removal of enemy troops. This suited the invading monarch as much as his troops, who went contentedly fat into winter quarters.

Plunder of basic supplies was an ancient solution to an age-old problem, but it no longer worked as a reliable system by the mid-16th century. What changed was the sheer size of the forces involved. Where an army of 10,000 was an impressive host in 1500, a century later armies were quadruple or quintuple that size: by 1600 European armies numbering many tens of thousands of men were on the move, a several fold-increase over the prior century. By the middle of the *Thirty Years' War* just three decades later, the Habsburgs and their enemies put armies into the field that exceeded 100,000 men. In the last years of the war, however, the armies shrank to less than half or even a quarter that size, and only resumed their secular growth trend during the reign of Louis XIV. Why? Because the destruction, depopulation,

and length of the Thirty Years' War meant that in its closing decade most of Germany was already eaten out several times over, and could no longer supply either the military manpower or the food and fodder needed by large armies. In addition, plunder as a system of supply led to a loss of command and control by generals. Even the best generals had to bend to the sheer physical demands of foraging, which meant that their armies frequently deteriorated into little more than marauding bands of armed, hungry, and vicious men. Rape, murder, and pillage thus became the order of the day. These horrors so impressed themselves upon the German and European mind that, worse horrors and 350 years later, the dark years of the Thirty Years' War are still widely recalled and lamented.

Innovation

In trying to overcome this appalling situation commanders began to adjust the basic relationship between an army and its men. Instead of relying on soldiers who were themselves reliant on plunder more than on battle to make their living, far-sighted generals began to provide for the basic needs of the troops. In this they mostly followed the example of the mercenary general *Albrecht von Wallenstein*, who first introduced *contributions*. As should be expected, reform came about first in the two major powers of the Age: Spain and France. (China and the Ottoman Empire already had sophisticated internal magazine systems; the real changes came in European warfare, which shifted rapidly from primitive to modern.) Arms, food, fodder, and cloth were provided to the troops by a central cashier. The costs of items were deducted from a soldier's pay, but at least he no longer had to wander far from camp pillaging peasants just to keep body and soul together. And that meant the commander controlled an army which was increasingly professional rather than an armed rabble.

Even so, with the exception of the capital-rich Dutch Republic, states in early modern Europe were usually unable to pay their men as promised (arrears was a chronic problem) or supply expanding armies. Deficit financing of war leading to royal or state bankruptcy and to mutiny in the field was almost the standard of the day. This had a major impact on strategy, as it meant that other than garrisons attached to towns, in order to keep an army together it had to be kept constantly on the move. Strategic forays into enemy territory by bloated but mostly ineffective field armies resulted in economic catastrophe for peasants and towns along the line of march. Martin Van Creveld summed up the situation: ''The fundamental logistic facts of life upon which seventeenth-century commanders based their strategy were . . . First, in order to live, it was indispensable to keep moving. Second, when deciding the directions of one's movements, it was not necessary to worry overmuch about maintaining communications with base. Third, it was important to follow the rivers and, as far as possible, dominate their courses.'' All that made it impossible for armies to fix defensive lines and reduced most warfare to extended raids into enemy territory that could not bring about strategic victory

but which were indulged in, year after year, to the dismay and destruction of the population, towns, and countryside. This situation was only slightly relieved by the development of an early and fairly primitive magazine system by France toward the end of the Thirty Years' War. Outside the interior lines of the Ottoman Empire and China, a true logistical revolution awaited the wars of the 18th century. See also *artillery*; *artillery train (1)*; *bellum se ipse alet*; *bedel-i nüzul*; *chevauchée*; *Edward I*; *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *Le Tellier, Michel*; *lines of supply*; *maneuvers*; *Maurits of Nassau*; *Ottoman warfare*; *prize*; *purveyance*; *raiding*; *Scottish Wars*; *siege warfare*; *Spanish Road*; *trebuchet*; *warhorses*.

Suggested Reading: John Childs, *Warfare in the Seventeenth Century* (2004); Martin Van Creveld, *Supplying War* (1977).

Loja, Battle of (1486). See *Reconquista*.

Lollard Knights. English nobles who initially endorsed the teachings of John Wycliffe and the *Lollards*, but later abandoned the movement.

Lollards. Middle English, from the Dutch "Lollaerd" or "mutterer." A Christian sect with a distinct pacifist tendency that grew out of the teachings of the Oxford teacher (Master of Balliol College) and reformer John Wycliffe (1320–1384). He made sharp criticism of widespread scandals of the clergy and of mechanical substitution of public ritual in the Church for true inner piety. He upheld the right of the secular arm to control the clergy, an idea later called *Erastian*. That attracted elements of the nobility ("Lollard Knights") but alienated the episcopacy and papacy. The Church hierarchy mobilized to condemn the Lollards as "heretics." In 1377, Pope Gregory XI issued a papal bull calling for Wycliffe's arrest. But when Gregory died in 1378 a papal succession crisis led instead to the *Great Schism* that produced two, then three rival popes and deeply undermined Church authority. Wycliffe and the Lollards used the respite to assault the constitution of the Church as well as the clergy's moral failures. He called for an end to the papacy and all episcopalian structures. He was one of the first reformers to publish in English, including a translation of the Bible. He sent out "poor priests" to spread the Lollard message. Doctrinally, in 1380 he rejected the central Catholic doctrine of transubstantiation during the Mass and rejected the claimed right and ability of priests to absolve sin. The theological faculty of the University of Oxford condemned Lollardism, as did the English Church in 1382. The Lollards were thereafter hunted, arrested, and forced to recant by torture and threat of execution, so that Lollardism was driven underground. Its influence remained dormant in England until a reform spirit broke out again during the *Protestant Reformation*. In Bohemia, *Hussites* were inspired by Wycliffe's teachings and rode out to do physical as well as spiritual battle with Catholic kings and popes.

Suggested Reading: G. M. Trevelyan, *England in the Age of Wycliffe* (1904; 1975).

lombarda. See *bombardetta*; *port piece*.

longboat. The largest of a ship's boats, useful for towing the mother ship on a becalmed sea, landing shore parties to gather supplies, and communicating with other ships in a fleet.

longbow. A six- to seven-foot (''two ells'') yew bow with a plump ''belly'' and heavy draw. It took a strong man to ''knock'' the bow—pull the 36-inch ''cloth yard'' arrow on the drawstring and fit it into precut notches. The yew was critical: after it was boiled, bent, and sanded smooth with the scales of a dogfish, it presented a hard front yet a supple underside that imparted firing characteristics comparable to a composite bow made from different woods. Loosing three-foot arrows fitted with ''bodkins'' (metal-tips), the longbow could penetrate plate when shot directly from 20 paces, punch through chain mail at 100 paces when fired at the level, and could kill or maim an unarmored man or horse at 200–300 paces with plunging fire. At longer ranges longbows fired parabolic flocks of arrows (''arrow storms''). These took just a few seconds to reach the target, usually a mass of milling armored horse or a block of infantry arrayed beyond the range of their own cutting or thrusting weapons or of *crossbows*. A skilled longbowman kept two or even three arrows in the air simultaneously and could fire 10 or more per minute before fatigue set in.

. . . the longbow . . . could kill or maim an unarmored man or horse at 200–300 paces with plunging fire.

This exceptional weapon probably originated with the Welsh (some historians disagree), who used it to such great effect against English armies in the 13th century that the traditional English short bow was discarded in favor of longbows. Edward I (''Longshanks'') buttressed his armies in Scotland and France with over 10,000 Welsh and English archers. They helped him win at *Falkirk* (1298). His son, the military incompetent Edward II, lost at *Bannockburn* in 1314 despite deploying longbowmen. Major victories over French *heavy cavalry* that were greatly aided by longbows came under *Edward III* and his bastard son, the *Black Prince*, during the opening decades of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). The first of these was fought at sea. At *Sluys* (1340) longbowmen won the greatest naval victory of the 14th century, slaughtering the crews of enemy ships at long range before they could close and board. On land the longbow destroyed French armies at *Crécy* (1346), *Poitiers* (1356), and *Agincourt* (1415).

The longbow had an effective killing range of between 250 and 400 yards (or meters). This greatly exceeded that of mercenary crossbowmen, usually Genoese, found in the French ranks as an adjunct to the standard French reliance on men-at-arms and heavy horse. Yet, range was not the real secret of the longbow. It was the fact that under Edward III the English began to use such large numbers of archers with a superior rate of fire (starting at 8–10 arrows each per minute, declining thereafter with rising muscle fatigue) that they created an ''arrow storm'' on the field of battle that devastated enemy formations, especially the large and relatively unprotected *warhorses* of the French knights. Recent research suggests that the direct killing power of

the longbow was not what proved decisive in these battles. Instead, it was the ability of longbowmen to harass and break up enemy formations at extreme ranges that forced disordered French charges into waiting lines of English men-at-arms, where they were also exposed to level flanking fire from archers on each wing. So important were longbowmen to English fortunes in the Hundred Years' War that fletchers and bow-makers were impressed into the army, and football and golf were forbidden as common holiday pastimes in favor of compulsory archery practice.

The demonstrated ability of longbowmen to devastate ranks of French knights as late as Agincourt made the English smug about their putative weapon superiority and overconfident that it would last. But defeat—the greatest teacher in military affairs—forced the French to change tactics. They incorporated more numerous and powerful hand guns and artillery into their armies and these proved a more than effective counter to longbowmen. Now it was the turn of long-range French cannon to break up longbow concentrations before the arrow storms could be launched, so that the French horse could then drive into the bleeding English infantry, ruining them with charges of lance and sword. The first such battlefield defeat of English archery by the new French tactics and weapons took place at *Formigny* (1450). A more definitive display of the mastery of gunpowder over the bow came at *Castillon* (1453), which ended the battlefield dominance of the longbow and closed out the Hundred Years' War all at once. Only in England's small wars in Ireland and during the *Wars of the Roses* (1455–1485) were longbows still used. And even in England's little wars a shift was underway to firearms and cannon. Still, English armies did not finally and completely replace the longbow with guns until 1595, and then only after a comical experiment in fitting longbows to pikes. See also *uniforms*.

Suggested Reading: R. Hardy, *Longbow: A Social and Military History* (1976); T. McGuffe, "The Longbow as a Decisive Weapon," *History Today*, 5 (1955); Clifford Rogers, "The Efficacy of the Medieval Longbow," *War in History*, 5/2 (1998).

longship. A sleek, northern *galley* pioneered by the Vikings, with descending versions used in Irish and Scottish waters for centuries thereafter. "Longship" was a generic term for all northern warships from the 9th to 13th centuries. Some were capable of oceanic travel, though at great risk to the crew. They were called snacca ("snake" or "serpent") by victims of the fierce raiders they bore. The reference was to their unusually elongated frames, and to the fear inspired when these ships appeared out of the fog along some quiet seashore, disgorging barbarian raiders intent on rapine and plunder; or when they worked hundreds of miles inland along a river way to appear suddenly outside the walls of Paris or a dozen other towns.

Long War (1593–1606). See *Thirteen Years' War*.

Lord High Admiral. See *admiral*.

Lordship. See *Ireland*.

Lorraine. See *Burgundian-French War*; *Burgundian-Swiss War*; *Catholic League (France)*; *Guise family*; *Jeanne d'Arc*; *League of Pubic Weal*; *Morat, Battle of*; *Nancy, Battle of*; *Richelieu, Cardinal Armand Jean du Plessis de*; *Spanish Road*; *Thirty Years' War*.

Lorraine, Charles, Cardinal of (1524–1574). See *Guise, Charles, Cardinal de Lorraine*.

Lorraine, Charles, duc de Mayenne (1554–1611). See *Mayenne, duc de*.

Lose-coat Field, Battle of (1470). See *Wars of the Roses*.

Lostwithiel, Battle of (1644). See *English Civil Wars*.

Loudon Hill, Battle of (1307). See *Scottish Wars*.

Louis de Bourbon. See *Condé, Louis de Bourbon*.

Louis of Nassau (1538–1574). Dutch rebel. Brother of *William the Silent*. He won a lonely rebel victory at the onset of the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648) at Heiligerlee, on May 23, 1568, but was defeated two months later by *Alba* at *Jemmingen* (July 21, 1568). Once the *Sea Beggars* took *Brill* (April 1572), Louis followed by taking Flushing, then invaded the southern Netherlands with an army of Dutch Calvinists, French Huguenots, and hired Germans. He was killed in battle at *Mookerheyde* (April 14, 1574).

Louis XI (1423–1483). King of France. He benefitted greatly from the military reforms of his father, *Charles VII*, who established a standing army under terms of the *compagnies de l'ordonnance*. Under Louis XI France emerged as the first early modern state in Europe. Its great feudatories had been beaten into submission, politically and militarily, during the final phase of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). This required Louis to replace the old feudal levies commanded by barons and other liege lords and *knights* with a new army built around trained *artillery* and *heavy cavalry*, a formation designed to deal with England's infantry archers and men-at-arms. In all this he gained from a burst of commercial prosperity in France that constituted a national "peace dividend" after 150 years of war, and royal protection given to commercial centers such as Bordeaux, Lyons, and Rouen, and the higher bourgeois families in general. In 1465 he was defeated by the *League of Public Weal* at Montihéry. *Charles the Rash* of Burgundy had him arrested and imprisoned in the middle of negotiations in 1468. But Louis had the final word: four years after the crushing defeat of Burgundy by Swiss mercenaries at *Nancy* (1477) Louis hired 6,000 Swiss for his own army. By the end of his reign he stretched

the borders of France to the Pyrenees and annexed the original Duchy of Burgundy.

Louis XII (1462–1515). King of France. See also *Agnadello, Battle of*; *Blois, Treaties of*; *Cambrai, League of*; *Counter-Reformation*; *Flodden Field, Battle of*; *Foix, Gaston de, duc de Nemours*; *Francis I*; *Garigliano River, Battle of*; *Italian Wars*; *Leonardo da Vinci*.

Louis XIII (1601–1643). ''The Just.'' He succeeded to the throne upon the assassination of his father, *Henri IV*, in 1610. When his mother, Queen Marie de Medici, betrothed him in 1614 to Anne of Austria, daughter of *Philip III* of Spain, the Court split with each Catholic faction seeking military aid from the *Huguenots*. Louis seized power from his mother in 1617, at age 16, after he had her favorite adviser assassinated. He reaffirmed the *Edict of Nantes* while also vowing to reduce the Huguenots. Then he called into session the ''États généreaux'' (*Estates*) for the last time in 160 years. Louis was at first sympathetic toward *Ferdinand II* concerning the revolt of Protestant subjects in Bohemia and the Palatinate, not for confessional reasons but as a sovereign dealing with comparable rebellion by a religious minority. He issued an Edict of Restitution for Béarn in June 1617, rolling back church property transfers since 1569, and intervened militarily in 1620 to restore Catholic worship in Béarn and Navarre. He was more concerned with Huguenot military and political infringements on his royal prerogatives than with their conversion, which he said was best left to God.

Louis thus reacted to a Huguenot assembly called in La Rochelle in November 1620 with a pronouncement not that those involved were heretics but that they were rebels and traitors. He led a military campaign against them the next spring which petered out when most of his soldiers fell ill. Confessional pressure on Louis came from the *dévots* in 1622. To placate the Catholic majority he adopted a more confessional stance in public. But his displays of piety gained little support from the more fanatic dévots. So he turned to *Cardinal Richelieu*, whom he appointed chief minister in 1624, to eliminate autonomous Huguenot military power within France without sweeping the monarchy or the country into the religious conflagration in neighboring Germany or succumbing to Spanish and papal influence. To Richelieu the king surrendered some royal will and much power, in return for which the ''eminence rouge'' expanded and deepened the powers of the French monarchy vis-à-vis French society. Richelieu also led an anti-Huguenot military campaign that culminated in the fall of *La Rochelle* in 1628, completing the military defeat of French Protestantism. This victory was capped by a return to religious and social toleration with the *Edict of Alès* (1629), a settlement that contrasted hugely with the *Edict of Restitution* in Germany that same year. With the home front secured, Richelieu and Louis embarked on the *War of the Mantuan Succession* in Italy, and war with Spain in alliance with the Netherlands. But they only actively entered the *Thirty Years' War* in 1635.

Suggested Reading: Lloyd Moote, *Louis XIII* (1989).

Lübeck, Peace of (July 7, 1629). This settlement between the Holy Roman Empire and Denmark, that is, between *Ferdinand II* and *Christian IV*, ended the ''Danish phase'' of the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). It followed four years of repeated military failure by the Danes and *Hague Alliance*, culminating in occupation of Jutland by the Imperials. Christian IV was allowed to keep possessions outside the Empire and north of the Elbe, namely Holstein, Jutland, and Schleswig. In return, he foreswore all engagement in Imperial affairs by direct military action or in the ''*Reichskreis*'' (Lower Saxon Circle).

Lublin, Union of (1569). See *Union of Lublin*.

Ludford, Bridge, Battle of (1459). See *Wars of the Roses*.

Luther, Martin (1483–1546). Religious reformer. A Saxon by birth, he was schooled at Erfurt before joining an Augustinian monastery in 1505. He lectured in moral philosophy and theology at Wittenberg, 1513–1515. Luther was scornful of all with whom he disagreed, including the gentle Erasmus, and angrily intolerant of any who valued religious tranquility over doctrinal principle and conformity. He thus grew evermore outraged by the crass sale of ''indulgences'' (promissory notes of time off in Purgatory, a realm he denied existed, in exchange for giving money to the Catholic Church in this life) and other fiscal and moral corruptions of the clergy. In 1517, at age 34, he nailed to a church door in Wittenberg a statement of 95 theses protesting sales of indulgences and taking reform positions on salient moral and doctrinal issues then roiling the Church. Moving him to protest was his new theology of ''justification by faith,'' a broad critique of scholastic theology (especially that of Thomas Aquinas), and total rejection of Aristotelian ethics as the ''worst enemy of grace.'' Drawing instead from the writing of Duns Scotus and William of Ockham, Luther defined the central promise of theology as the certainty of salvation. He denied as unimportant Thomistic proofs of doctrinal positions, substituting for scholastic rationalism a theology of covenant with the word of God.

As for Church practices, Luther rejected the authority of clergy, mere men, to forgive sin in the name of God in exchange for donations; denounced clerical concubinage; railed against petty clerical fees; and raged against toleration of folk superstitions. Catholic authorities responded by publicly burning Luther's scroll. Reciprocal burning of competing lists of theses carried the argument into 1518. Then Luther was summoned to Rome by the Medici Pope Leo X (1475–1521), to answer to his critics. However, the Elector of Saxony and his University intervened to block the subpoena. In 1519, Luther expanded his protest into an all-out assault on papal power and doctrinal authority. In 1520 he published ''The Babylonian Captivity of the Church,'' repeating to the German nobility his earlier protests but also denouncing the papacy as the ''whore of Babylon.'' Rome answered with a papal bull

condemning Luther's ideas and threatening excommunication should he not recant. With studied impudence he burned the papal bull in public on December 10, 1520, to the delight of his growing and increasingly fervent following. Luther was excommunicated and declared ''heretic'' by the pope on January 3, 1521.

Habsburg Emperor, and devout Catholic, *Charles V*, convened the Diet of Worms in 1521 to contend with the religious revolt in Germany. Although a condemned heretic under papal ban, Luther attended the Diet under safe conduct (which had not protected *Jan Hus* a century earlier). He defended his propositions and departed, closing with the famous statement: ''I cannot do otherwise, here I stand, may God help me, Amen.'' The Diet banned all Luther's writings and ordered his books burned, declaring war on what was beginning to be called ''Lutheranism.'' As always when one burns books to stop the spread of ideas, before long people were also burned, denounced as heretics by one side or the other. The Catholic Church reintroduced and ramped up the powers of the *Inquisition* and turned to the mighty Habsburgs to enforce doctrinal orthodoxy in Germany. Lutherans looked to the swords of secular princes in Germany and northern Europe to protect and defend reform communities and preachers from Catholic armies and courts.

Luther was in grave danger after Worms but was taken into protective custody by the Elector of Saxony. During a year of pleasant castellan living, he translated the Bible into German and advanced and deepened his critique of Church practices and dogma. Most famously, he emphatically defended ''justification by faith,'' the idea of a ''priesthood of all believers,'' and the primacy of scripture over papal and episcopal authority. The hardest divide from Rome came in his proclamation on justification by faith: salvation depended on God's grace alone, he argued, unsupported by the Medieval Church's encouragement of good works and charity. Luther denied the existence of Purgatory and hence the need to sell ''indulgences.'' For good measure he denounced Catholic devotion to the Virgin Mary and intercession by the ''community of saints.'' In 1525, Luther broke openly with Erasmus, the great Christian humanist scholar who advocated reform from within the Catholic fold. Schisms of a different sort broke out within the reform movement as well, notably when Luther split with *Zwingli* over the question of the sacramental nature of the Mass (which Luther declared ''an evil thing that must be abolished''). Also in 1525, Luther abandoned clerical celibacy and married a former nun. The German Reformation, and the permanent Lutheran split from Rome, took a giant step forward in 1530 with promulgation of the *Augsburg Confession* of basic principles of reformed belief.

In more mundane affairs, Luther was a political and social conservative with no desire to shake kings from their thrones, not even Catholic ones. For him religion was about faith: it had nothing to do with ethics or social justice, however great the good one sought. Instead, Luther looked to the German princes to act as bulwarks to preserve virtue against the assaults of wickedness and the Devil. At no time was this more clear than in his reaction to the *German Peasant War*, which he denounced in a tract published on May 5,

1525, enjoining rebellious peasants to suffer and endure evil and injustice just as Christ had done. This calculated distancing from social radicalism probably ensured the survival of Lutheranism in Germany, which partly explains why Luther took the position. More tellingly, his opposition to revolution and regicide simply reflected the majority opinion of his class and of his day: like Thomas Hobbes a century later, and like most educated men of the 16th century, Luther much preferred tyranny to anarchy. Nevertheless, the ferment his ideas caused revived old debates about the power of episcopal appointments and the relative authority of secular princes versus the Church that had so troubled Medieval Christendom. Where Luther denied the just use of force to foment radical social change, he had fewer objections to secular magistrates using swords to defend religious truth. And so, for much of the rest of his life, Luther and Germany plunged into deepening confessional conflict that ultimately led to open religious warfare. See also *Augsburg, Peace of*; *Henry VIII, of England*; *Maximilian I*; *printing*.

. . . like Thomas Hobbes a century later, . . . Luther much preferred tyranny to anarchy.

Suggested Reading: Richard Marius, *Martin Luther* (1999); Heiko Oberman, *Luther* (1989); Stephen Ozment, *The Age of Reform* (1980).

Lutheranism. See *Augsburg, Peace of*; *Augsburg Confession*; *Calvinism*; *Charles V, Holy Roman Emperor*; *confessionalism*; *Corpus Evangelicorum*; *Counter-Reformation*; *Declaratio Ferdinandei*; *Denmark*; *Ecumenical Councils*; *Formula of Concord*; *German Peasant War*; *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *Holy Roman Empire*; *Inquisition*; *Luther, Martin*; *Maximilian II*; *Netherlands*; *printing*; *Protestant Reformation*; *reservatum ecclesiaticum*; *Sweden*; *Teutonic Knights, Order of*; *Thirty Years' War*; *Utraquists*; *Westphalia, Peace of*.

Lutter-am-Barenberg, Battle of (August 17/27, 1626). The 18,000-man army of the *Catholic League* under *Johann Tilly*, reinforced by 8,000 Imperial troops, pursued a Danish-German Protestant army of 15,000 commanded by *Christian IV*. Tilly caught Christian at Lutter-am-Barenberg, just 20 miles shy of the Danish safe haven at Wolfenbüttel. The Danes faced about, blocking the main road, and the fight commenced. Tilly attacked the center with his infantry, who overran the main Danish battery of 20 field guns after hard fighting. With that the Danish flanks broke and ran. Some 6,000 Danes were killed and 2,500 were captives, accounting for half of Christian's army. The Lower Saxon Circle (*Reichskreis*) collapsed and Denmark was opened to Catholic and Imperial invasion.

Lützen, Battle of (November 6, 1632). As the campaign season began in 1632, *Gustavus Adolphus* was in Bavaria at the head of a Swedish and Protestant army, threatening to move into the core Habsburg lands. Perhaps he might even capture Vienna itself. *Johann Tilly*, who had commanded the combined army of the *Catholic League* and the *Imperial Army*, had been killed in April

trying to prevent Gustavus from crossing the River Lech. That left Emperor *Ferdinand II* with no choice but to recall the great mercenary entrepreneur he had dismissed from command in 1630, *Albrecht von Wallenstein*. No one else could save Vienna. Wallenstein dictated extraordinary terms to Ferdinand even as he raised an army of 70,000 men. Soldiers of fortune from across Europe—Croats, Czechs, English, Germans, Irish, Italians, Scots, Swiss, and men like Wallenstein himself, of no faith or nation—rallied to the Great Captain and the prospect of wages of war and opportunity for plunder. Inside a month an army took form in Moravia.

Wallenstein marched north in a set of brilliant maneuvers designed to draw Gustavus away from Austria. He resisted calls to turn east and relieve the beleaguered Elector of Bavaria, *Maximilian I*, who was frantic over the Protestant horde eating out his country. Instead, Wallenstein moved into Bohemia where he attacked and defeated the weak Saxon Army which was reluctantly allied to Gustavus. Wallenstein next threatened Saxony, cutting Gustavus' lines of supply and blocking the Swedes from their base area of recruitment in north Germany. Joined by a small Bavarian force, Wallenstein was capable of directly threatening the Swedes, who therefore prudently withdrew to Nuremberg. When Wallenstein arrived he did not attack a force he knew to be superior in training and firepower, though inferior in numbers, to his own. Instead he dug in, as did the Swedes across from the Imperial lines. The two armies formed a series of parallel fortified trenches where they remained for the next several weeks. Wallenstein used light horse to harass Swedish foraging parties while the Swedes probed the Imperial lines, provoking minor skirmishes. Finally, moved by the hunger of his men, warlord hubris, and desire for decisive battle, and provoked by Wallenstein's *hussars*, Gustavus attacked. For the first time he was repulsed. While the action was not militarily significant, this first check to the great Swede's advance in Germany cracked his reputation for invincibility.

The effect reverberated through the strategic calculations of Europe. Because this made the Swedish position less secure politically, and therefore ultimately also militarily, Gustavus felt compelled to draw Wallenstein out of his trenches and defeat him in an open battle between the main armies. He thought he could entice Wallenstein from his fortified earthworks by moving south into Bavaria to once more ravage territory allied to the Habsburgs and threaten a dash toward Vienna. This was the moment when Wallenstein showed superior strategical ability. He declined the bait Gustavus dangled in the south and instead struck out northward, into Saxony. This move recreated the dilemma faced earlier by the Protestant alliance: Gustavus was again halted by a brilliant campaign of maneuver that avoided battle yet twice pulled his army back north by threatening its strategic rear. Next, it was the turn of the ''Lion of the North'' to display advanced command skills. Making use of the markedly superior training and maneuverability of his Swedish regiments, joined now by thousands of mercenaries and allies he had trained to make war in the Swedish way, Gustavus moved north to intercept Wallenstein. He did so with far greater speed than any contemporary army could achieve or

commander imagine. The two forces thus met at Lützen on November 6, 1632.

Wallenstein had partly adopted Swedish tactics, marginally increased the flexibility of his *tercios*, and significantly increased their firepower by multiplying the number of musketeers within them. While the Swedes retained a clear qualitative edge, they were a reduced force in numbers and quality from the crisp professional army that crossed the Baltic two years before. In fact, Gustavus' army was no longer really "Swedish." Two years of fighting and Sweden's limited reserves and small population meant Gustavus now commanded an army close to 80 percent foreign mercenary. It had been trained to make war in the Swedish style, however, and the critical field artillery was still Swedish by nationality and command, and fiercely Lutheran by confessional temperament. The odds were also evened by a heavy fog that shrouded the battlefield during the most critical hours of combat, reducing the ability of Gustavus to take full advantage of his army's greater maneuverability and increasing the comparative fighting value of fixed Imperial heavy infantry. Still, Gustavus remained a master of tactical thrust and parry, and much to be feared.

The morning of the battle broke with the armies concealed from one another by a thick fog. Wallenstein chose the ground, placing his 35,000 troops in a broken line protected by a natural double ditch which he had deepened into full trenches. These he lined with ranks of musketeers. He thought this obstacle would blunt Gustavus' cavalry, obviate the superior training of Swedish troops, and deliver victory. Gustavus breakfasted, then led the troops in singing a Lutheran hymn. Next, he set in motion an attack plan that rested on superior maneuvers to dislodge the Imperials from their trench line. He sent a small cavalry force to attack Wallenstein's right, which was anchored on the small village of Lützen. He led the overweight Swedish cavalry on the right in a long ride right around the Imperial extreme left. This cut Wallenstein's lines of resupply and retreat. The main Swedish infantry was positioned at the center, deployed in their usual six ranks per line, two lines deep. As usual, the field artillery was placed before the mass of infantry at the center of the Swedish line. As the Swedish cavalry enveloped each Imperial flank, the infantry moved toward the tight ranks of Imperial musketeers awaiting them in the line of double ditches. The heavy fog concealed the movement of the Swedish infantry until they reached close quarters. As their formations broke through the fog and came into view of the Imperial musketeers both sides opened at close range. Then they slid into a heavy, prolonged small arms fight.

The Swedish regimental field guns were maneuvered into an enfilade position, to support the capture of the immobile Imperial artillery train by the cavalry. Under this threat many Imperial guns were *spiked*. Overrunning the Imperial artillery exposed large blocks of pikemen standing in rigid tercio formation, but with little of their usual firearms support because most musketeers were already lost to artillery fire or tied down by the fight over control of the line of double ditches. In the face of deadly fire, the overmatched pikemen retreated, pressed by ferocious charges by Swedish and Finnish

cavalry on either flank of the Imperial line. In addition, the Swedish rate of musket and cannon fire was likely three times that of the Imperial side. Volley after volley tore into the static tercios. On the right, Gustavus led from the front, crashing into and through Croat light cavalry at the head of a Swedish charge with *arme blanche*. That brought him barging into Austrian cuirassiers, with whom a close fight ensued as the wider battle dissolved into a desperate struggle among clusters of men oblivious to all else but the enemy in front of them.

Wallenstein counterattacked with his surviving tercios, rolling up the Swedish left and retaking part of the ditch line. Meanwhile, *Pappenheim* led 8,000 Imperial horse in a successful attack against the Swedish cavalry which had become strung out and entangled with the Imperial baggage. Unprepared to receive this counterattack, the Swedish horse took heavy casualties. It was *Bernhard von Sachsen-Weimar* who saved the hour. He marshaled the rapid-firing Swedish artillery and cut down Imperial troopers and horses with volleys of canister, turning survivors away in disorderly retreat and killing Pappenheim. Bernhard then broke the Imperial line by rallying a Swedish charge that carried the main Imperial battery and captured the whole artillery train. Triumphant shouts quickly caught in Protestant throats as word went out that Gustavus was being carried bloody and dead from the field. He had been pistoled off his horse, then holed with three musket balls by the Austrian cuirassiers; one shot took off part of his skull. The reserve line of Swedish infantry now showed its mettle: it swept forward, retook the part of the ditch line Wallenstein had recovered, firing musket volleys and fighting furiously hand-to-hand. Wallenstein's last tercios wobbled and broke under this assault, then turned and fled. At least one-third of the Swedish Army, about 10,000 men, were dead or wounded. They lay intermingled with 12,000–15,000 Imperial dead.

Lützen was a sharp defeat for the Catholic cause. It shattered the Imperial military system built up by Wallenstein and ensured the survival of the major Protestant states of Germany. It was in that sense a decisive battle, the only one of the Thirty Years' War. Yet, even Lützen was determinative only in the immediate sense, for it did not directly shape the final settlement. The death of its warlord did not force Sweden out of the war, but it robbed the Protestant cause of its most dynamic champion. Never again would a Protestant prince alone decide the strategy of the anti-Habsburg coalition. After Lützen, Sweden remained in the German war, but it was *Cardinal Richelieu* of France, Prince of the Catholic Church, who henceforth took the lead in setting alliance policy, controlled the larger course of the war, and shaped its final outcome. The victory for Swedish arms at Lützen was most important for making it probable that a military stalemate would be the final result in the long confessional contest between Catholic and Protestant in Germany. That is what was agreed at the negotiating tables in Westphalia, though not until many more years of bloody murder and mayhem drove the point home to both sides. Lützen marked the high tide of the Protestant cause. Another 13 years of fighting lay ahead, and three more after that of desultory skirmishing

while peace talks dragged on in the Rhineland. With the historian's privilege of hindsight it can be seen that Lützen was probably the last chance to unify Germany prior to the mid-19th century. For over 200 years afterward unification lay beyond the imagination or capability of Germans to realize and outside the will of an ascendant France to permit, but within the ability of Paris to prevent.

Suggested Reading: J.F.C. Fuller, *Military History of the Western World*, vol. 2 (1954); Golo Mann, *Wallenstein* (1976); Michael Roberts, *Gustavus Adolphus* (1992).

lymphad. A small oared warship descended from the Viking *longship* and in use for over 1,000 years, into the 17th century. Their main role was in lightning coastal raids and amphibious assaults in the isolated West Highlands and outer islands of Scotland.

Lyon, League of (February 1623). An alliance of France, Venice, and Savoy that aimed to expel the Habsburg garrisons from *The Grisons* and attach Genoa and Montferrat to Savoy as a buffer against Spain. See also *Spanish Road*; *Valtelline*.

Lyon, Treaty of (1601). See *Henri IV, of France*; *Spanish Road*.

M

Maastricht, Siege of (1579). The *Duke of Parma* began his new command in the Netherlands by besieging Maastricht. The city was defended by just 2,000 militia, against whom Parma hurled 20,000 veteran Spanish troops. The townsfolk flooded the surrounding plain and put up a stiff resistance that killed over 4,000 of Parma's men but only delayed the final assault. After four months of siege the Spanish stormed Maastricht's gates and wall. Once inside the city they slaughtered nearly 10,000. See also *Eighty Years' War*.

Maastricht, Siege of (June–August 1632). *Frederik Hendrik* invaded Flanders with 30,000 Dutch troops. On June 8 he invested the fortress city of Maastricht. The Spanish panicked, fearing another in a series of major humiliations inflicted by Hendrik. They recalled an army from the Palatinate and sent another under *Pappenheim*. Both assaults were beaten off by the Dutch. Meanwhile, Hendrik mercilessly bombarded the city while his engineers dug siege trenches and prepared a mine. On August 20 the mine was set off, blowing apart a segment of city wall. Three days later the surviving defenders surrendered. See also *Eighty Years' War*.

Macao. A Portuguese colony on the south China coast established as a trading outpost by Portuguese merchants in 1557. The Kangxi Emperor ordered all Chinese to leave Macao during the 1660s, then blockaded it to prevent their return. He tried to ban the Portuguese from Macao, but local officials connived at their continuing presence so that it remained their main base in China.

mace. Any of a variety of flails or spiked clubs, either made entirely of metal or with a metal head attached to a wooden shaft directly or by a chain. Their principal use was to defeat shields and armor by breaking bones with crushing

concussive blows, rather than by penetration with a sharpened point. Some had flanges or spikes which permitted heavy blows and penetration, especially of the *helm*. Multi-headed maces were called ''mace of arms'' (from the Middle French ''masse d'armes''). Lighter, nonlethal maces were widely used in *tournaments*. They carried great symbolic importance and may have been precursors to the scepter as symbol of royal authority. The popular idea that maces were the preferred weapon of clerics appears to be apocryphal. See also *Holy Water Sprinkler*; *knight*; *masse*; *military flail*; *Morgenstern*.

Machiavelli, Niccolò di Bernardo (1469–1527). Florentine political thinker. Like Jonathan Swift he was more often misinterpreted and vilified for his brutal honesty rather than understood or appreciated for his shrewd insight. Machiavelli's is surely the only name of a mere mortal used by Christians as an adjective to depict the moral character of Satan, often qualified as a great demon of ''Machiavellian'' cunning, duplicity, and low morality. Machiavelli lived in turbulent and violent times. Italy was torn by clashing armies of the city-states and then overrun by foreign armies, first from France, followed by Spain and the Swiss. Diplomacy was an instrument of statecraft in a battle for survival ''red in tooth and claw,'' to paraphrase Tennyson. When the Medici, the ruling family of Florence, fled in 1493, the path of opportunity opened to Machiavelli. He was appointed secretary of the *Council of Ten*, the governing council of the Florentine Republic. He held that position until 1512, time he spent organizing the Florentine militia. He paid a great deal of attention to the problem of citizen militia versus mercenary forces and military problems in general. He undertook lesser diplomatic missions, including one to Caesar Borgia in 1502. Upon the restoration of the Medici he was arrested, imprisoned and tortured (1513). Machiavelli spent the remainder of his adult life seeking public office and longing to return to the practical exercise of power, but was not trusted by the Medici and was given only minor historiographical and diplomatic missions after 1519. Machiavelli's thinking reflected those realities. His most famous, and still widely read, works were: *De Principatibus* (*The Prince*, published after his death and later condemned by Pope Clement VIII and other clerics), the *Art of War*, and *Discourses on Livy*. These were among the first works to rediscover classical military virtues and recommend their revival for early modern states. Machiavelli thus emphasized *drill* and *military discipline*, the importance of a professional officer corps and a strict chain of command, all of which he gleaned from study of the ancient Roman legion.

Machiavelli lived in a transitional time between the agrarian-based *feudal* structures and armies of Europe and newly professional formations. This involved incorporation of *''condottieri''* into the armies of the Italian states. Machiavelli held condottieri in a deep contempt he did not extend to Swiss mercenaries, but he recognized that military reform of this sort was made possible (and then necessary) by the expansion of money economies—the ''commercial revolution'' in Italy and the Mediterranean. Fundamental transformation of the social and economic basis of military power lay at the

heart of his conception of the emerging state, and thus of his political thinking as well. As a military theorist and organizer Machiavelli was determined to displace the unsteady and untrustworthy condottieri, whose uselessness he seriously exaggerated. He hoped to replace foreign mercenaries with a civic militia whose greater military virtues (which he simply assumed, based on classical models) and political reliability would permit Florence more independence in the conduct of its diplomacy and further stabilize its polity. He tried out his theories in a drawn-out siege of rival Pisa, with only mixed success. Empirically, he was wrong about militia versus mercenaries. Or at least, he was centuries ahead of the times: in his lifetime and for another 300 years after that, mercenaries dominated European battlefields, not the conscript militia armies he envisioned and proposed which only arrived in fact with the wars of the French Revolution.

Machiavelli's frank writing about the nature of early modern warfare—he disassociated thinking about war from ethics or high religious purpose, concentrating instead on its factual bases in economics and politics—startled and shocked his contemporaries. Most were not aware, as he was, that an end had already come to the old moral order of the *res publica Christiana*, so they were not prepared for his brutally honest disregard for abstract military and political ideals which had long only covered baser interests of princes and popes. Machiavelli did not waste praise defining the ideal condition of peace, that assumed universal good of the ancien régime of Medieval Europe, or on ritual incantations of old doctrines about *just war*. He wrote instead of more pagan, that is of Roman, qualities in war: courage, ferocity, duty, and love of country. Machiavelli thus moved European discourse about armed conflict away from medieval preoccupation with the idea of the Christian way of war, combat as the instrument and revelation of God's purposes on Earth as divined by the Church or at least the good conscience of a Christian knight. He advanced it toward the modern idea of republican or secular war, of war for and by the sovereign state (''prince'') rather than for high ideals, of wars fought for what *Cardinal Richelieu* would later call ''raisons d'état'' (''reasons of state'').

Antedating Thomas Hobbes, Machiavelli laid out an understanding of politics rooted in profound fear of anarchy. He upheld expedience by rulers in choice of means as a regrettable but unavoidable requirement of successful political action, dictated by the underlying wickedness and venality of the governed. He accepted the equivocal nature of public as opposed to personal moral judgment, maintaining what Max Weber would later call an ''ethic of consequences'' as the true political ethic, much to be preferred and indeed admired. What Weber called an ''ethic of intentions,'' or right regard, Machiavelli thought weak and foolish (imprudent). He wrote: ''Since love and fear can hardly coexist . . . it is far safer to be feared than loved.'' This emergent nature of the modern state as based fundamentally on its capacity to make war first became apparent in Renaissance Italy in his lifetime, and he was the first to apprehend it. Less widely recognized, Machiavelli wished for the successful exercise of power not for its own sake or in a vacuum of values. Instead, he yearned to see princely power advance specific causes he regarded

as having inherent moral content, ruthlessly if need be, including republicanism and the liberation of Florence—and even all Italy—from foreign control. He is justly famous for his depiction of the workings of power in the real world: his understanding of the balance of power, and his intuitive recognition of how the lust for power curls naked and expectant beneath the covers of the most silken idealism, was instinctive, instructive, and brilliant. See also *Grotius, Hugo*; *Italian Renaissance*; *Leonardo da Vinci*; *Lipsius, Justus*; *Swiss Army*.

Suggested Reading: John R. Hale, *Machiavelli and Renaissance Italy* (1960) and *War and Society in Renaissance Europe, 1450–1620* (1986); Peter Paret, *The Makers of Modern Strategy* (1986).

machicolation. An opening (covered with a trap door or not) in a *barbican* or other projecting structure on a castle or town wall, through which stones could be dropped and burning oils or boiling water poured onto the heads of attackers below.

Madrid, Treaty of (1526). See *Italian Wars*.

madu. A small left-hand shield in wide use in Medieval India. It had two exterior horns or spikes that allowed it to be used offensively in close action.

magazines. For most of this period the idea of magazines prepositioned along the line of march of armies was widely contemplated, but the limited bureaucratic capabilities of medieval or even early modern states in Europe, Central Asia, and India, militated against it in practice. In Europe, the French army was perhaps the most advanced. It took along field ovens and bakers. Similarly, in 1620, Maximilian of Bavaria set up several supply depots. But bakers still needed supplies of flour and the Bavarian depots were only local in effect. The Habsburgs set up the *étapes* system along the *Spanish Road* that presaged the eventual development of full magazines. The first explicit effort to set up magazines in Europe came under *Michel Le Tellier* in the last years of the *Thirty Years' War*, but real progress was only achieved under his son during the wars of Louis XIV. In contrast, Ming China's sophisticated bureaucracy built forward magazines to address the logistics problem Chinese armies faced every time they struck at the Mongols across the Gobi Desert, into the also unforgiving Inner Asian steppe. In the early 15th century the Ming built a base at Kaiping 150 miles north of Beijing, to which they sent many hundreds of supply wagons in advance of northern campaigns into Mongolia in 1410 and 1414. They also set up supply depots, armories, and granaries within their borders more generally, and experimented less successfully with self-sustaining agricultural garrisons along the frontiers.

The Ottoman Empire also far surpassed European logistics in this era. The Ottomans built food depots filled with dried biscuit and grain, preset ammunition dumps, and prepositioned pontoon bridges along their invasion route into Hungary up the valley of the Danube River. Comparable magazines and

dumps lined traditional routes of march to the east and south. The Ottomans maintained a sophisticated internal supply depot system (''nüzul'') with food, fodder, and firewood for the sultan's household troops and horses (*Kapikulu Askerleri*), using the superb road system they inherited in Anatolia and Iraq from the Romans, Byzantines, and Seljuks. This ''menzil-hane'' (depot) network was supplied by pack horse and bullock in the temperate west and dromedary in the parched east. Depots had well-stocked granaries, military bakeries, and fodder barns along the regular routes of march leading to the frontiers. In addition, the Ottomans supported field armies with riparian supply systems linked by barge to centralized imperial granaries. This system was a unique military accomplishment for the age. Still, it did not extend past the frontiers, where the hard rules of 16th–17th century logistics applied also to Ottoman armies. Moreover, large numbers of seasonal troops such as *timariots* and *sipahis*, all peasant levies, and tens of thousands of Tatars were excluded and had to forage and fend for themselves.

Magdeburg, Sack of (May 20, 1631). The city of Magdeburg was a key fortress on the Elbe, and one of the few towns to resist the armies of *Charles V* in the religious wars in Germany in the mid-16th century. In 1631, Magdeburg again defied the Empire by refusing to restore its Catholic bishop. It was therefore besieged by a Catholic and Imperial army 22,000 strong, starting in April 1631. *Johann Tilly* arrived on May 18 just as the Imperial sappers reached the city's walls. He demanded that Magdeburg submit to restoration of its bishop, invoking both the despised *Edict of Restitution* of 1629 and the older *reservatum ecclesiaticum*. To the north, *Gustavus Adolphus* was still negotiating with *Georg Wilhelm* for access to key riverine routes through Saxony which he needed to transport his artillery train if he was to relieve the city and fight in the south. Tilly sent in negotiators while Imperial cavalry general *Graf zu Pappenheim* sent in troops to breach the defenses. They succeeded in undermining a section of wall and stormed the city. Magdeburg was then sacked in the single greatest atrocity of the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). Perhaps 20,000 of its 30,000 townsfolk were butchered or burned—man, woman, and child, without distinction—and the city was razed to the ground. Only the cathedral still stood, aspirational spires rising over the smoking ruin of ''Christian mercy,'' giving silent mock to the ideals of *just war* upheld by Fathers of the Church and paid impious lip service by the armies of wrath that waged this awful confessional war. The atrocity forced the hand of the *Leipziger Bund*, pushing those German princes who had sought a middle way into the Swedish camp, and hardening Protestants across Europe with thoughts of bloody revenge. Protestant propagandists made much of the event and Protestant soldiers remembered it in their *battle cries* and when they gave ''Magdeburg quarter!'' to Catholics, meaning none at all. Historian Geoffrey Parker agrees with contemporary Catholic apologists,

Perhaps 20,000 of its 30,000 townsfolk were butchered or burned—man, woman, and child, without distinction . . .

defending the sack as in accord with ''the Laws of War reinforced by strategic necessity'' and accepted practice in which a city that refused surrender could be, and usually was, denied quarter. Yet, even by contemporaries the treatment of Magdeburg was seen as beyond the pale and failing to temper law with mercy.

Maghreb. ''al-Maghrib'' (''The West''). The western half of North Africa, populated mainly by *Berber* peoples. It included Algiers, Mauritania, Morocco, Tripoli, and Tunis, as well as Ceuta and Melilla. Its life revolved around major coastal cities supported by interior hinterlands which sustained nomadic tribes. In the 12th century it was united under the Almohad Caliphate, which also ruled Muslim Spain. However, it subsequently broke into three parts under rival Berber dynasties: the Hafsids, Wadids, and Marinds. The city-states of the Maghreb were termini of the trans-Saharan slave trade and buyers of sudanese military slaves well into the mid-19th century. See also *Barbary corsairs*; *Ifriqiya*; *Tripoli*.

maghribis. See *mangonel*.

magnus equus. See *destrier*; *warhorses*.

mahdi. ''Divinely Guided One.'' A title taken by numerous historical figures claiming to be the embodied fulfillment of the messianic tradition in *Islam*, especially but not solely within the *shī'a* branch. The tradition looked to a temporal—but divinely anointed—ruler, a foreordained leader who would bring a final reign of righteousness to the world through revelation of the ''hidden imam'' and a final social transformation. This eschatological vision of history kept the Faithful constantly on the lookout for a sign of the arrival of the mahdi and the beginning of the transformation to a more just and godly society.

mail. Armor originally made from thick cloth or leather onto which were sewn strips or scales of metal, and later interlinked rings of metal. It was worn from the earliest days of European *knighthood*. By the 11th century this earliest form of mail was displaced by the *hauberk* of all-ring construction, under which a padded garment, or ''*gambeson*,'' was worn. In the late 12th century ''mail mittens'' were added to the knight's kit, and ''mailed fist'' became a synonym for power and authority reliant on force majeure. ''*Chausses*,'' or mail leggings, were worn to protect this dangerously exposed extremity when a mounted man faced a foot soldier wielding a slashing weapon. Mail was effective against slashing weapons such as swords and bills. It could not stop thrusting weapons such as lances, arrows, quarrels, or roundshot, all of which drove links of mail and cloth into the wound that often led to deadly infection even if the wound was not itself fatal. To defend against improving missile weapons mail was supplemented by plate. Over time it was displaced altogether by fully articulated suits of armor for wealthy knights, but was

still worn by poorer knights and infantry. See also *aventail*; *bascinet*; *brayette*; *crossbow*; *lamellar armor*; *longbow*; *mail-tippet*; *miles*; *shields/shielding*; *sipahis*; *swords*.

mail-tippet. A medieval infantry helmet, often a simple *kettle-hat*, with a mail coif attached to it. See also *aventail*; *bascinet*.

main-gauche. A left-handed dagger used as a secondary weapon in close combat, particularly in naval boarding actions.

maître de camp. A French camp master whose main task was to communicate the colonel's orders to the ranks. Not the same as a German *mestres de camp*.

Majapahit. A syncretic Hindu-Muslim kingdom established on Java during the 14th and 15th centuries. It maintained extensive claims on several of the larger islands, including Kalimantan and Sumatra, and was a substantial regional naval power. It was the major state in the Indonesian archipelago encountered by European traders.

make sail. A command on a sailing ship to hoist and spread canvas to catch the wind.

Malacca. A small Muslim state founded in the 14th century. It was captured for Portugal in 1511 by *Alfonso de d'Albuquerque*, after which it became a center of the world *spice trade*. When the Portuguese arrived they discovered over 3,000 firearms of non-European origin, probably from Pegu or Siam. Malacca came under Spanish control with *Philip II*'s assumption of rule over the Portuguese Empire in 1580. *Aceh* made a supreme effort to take it in 1629, but lost its whole army and its fleet in the attempt. Malacca was captured by the Dutch in 1641.

Málaga, Siege of (1487). See *Granada*; *Reconquista*.

Malaya. The Malay peninsula was dominated by Hindu kingdoms in the second half of the first millennium, including the Kingdom of Langkasuka centered on Kedeh. The Sri Vijaya state dominated much of the peninsula, in rivalry with Kedeh, from the 8th to 13th centuries. For the next several centuries Malaya was a locale of divers minor states, a crossroads of Hindu, Muslim, and Chinese cultures, and a battleground for more powerful foreign invaders from Java, Aceh, and Siam, and from the mid-17th century from the Netherlands' colony at Batavia (Jakarta). See also *Malacca*.

Malcontents (Flanders). Catholic nobles in Flanders and Brabant who rebelled against *Philip II* and the States General starting in 1578. They later reconciled with the king. See also *Edict of Beaulieu*.

Malcontents (France). French nobles organized on nonconfessional lines during the fifth of the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629), intent on reform of the monarchy and an end to social discord. They were angry over the huge loss of noble lives at the siege of *La Rochelle*, the resumption of a lead role of clergy in the civil service, and the presence of too many Italian fops and other ''mignons'' at the Court of *Henri III*.

Mali Empire. This great inland Muslim empire ruled a huge swath of West Africa for centuries. It was founded by Mande peoples who expanded all through the 13th century, conquering non-Mande peoples. It reached to the termini of the trans-Saharan trade route at Timbuktu and Gao. Mali's Islamicized ruling class relied on a large army of perhaps 100,000 infantry and 10,000 cavalry. Mali exacted slaves and tribute from *Songhay*, which it cut off from access to the main trans-Saharan trade routes, and from the Wolof of Senegal and other neighboring areas and peoples. Mali's capital, Timbuktu, hosted a great Muslim ''university'' (madrassa). After 1360 the Keita dynasty which governed Mali fell prey to internal rivalry and a resurgence of Songhay power, and Songhay and the Wolof alike stopped paying tribute. Timbuktu fell to the *Tuareg* in 1433, while Songhay pushed Mali's frontiers back to the Gambia. Mali survived, but in truncated form and as a much poorer and less powerful state. In the late 16th century Moroccan power was ascendant. Morocco utilized early access to firearms to expand deep into the desert and seized control of the ancient caravan (salt, gold, and slave) trades. A major expedition, 1590–1591, conquered Songhay, including portions of the old Mali empire. Thereafter, the *arma* governed a vast desert and tributary and slave-raiding empire stretching to Timbuktu and Jenne. Mali was thus ruled from far-off Morocco until the 19th century.

Suggested Reading: J.F.A. Ajayi and Michael Crowder, eds., *History of West Africa*, 2 vols. (1974); N. Levtzion, *Ancient Ghana and Mali* (1973).

Malinche, La (c.1505–1529). A young Tabascan girl called Malintzin, later baptized as ''Doña Marina'' and known to the Spanish as ''La Malinche.'' She was one of 20 young women given as slaves in tribute to the *conquistadores* who landed with *Cortés* and quickly bested the coastal Tabascans in battle. Cortés took her as his interpreter; she later became his confidante and mistress and bore him a son, Don Martin. She was gifted in languages, including the Nahuatl of the Central Valley spoken by the Aztecs, a distant tyranny feared and hated among her people. She also spoke a Mayan tongue understood by one of the Spanish, who had been shipwrecked on the Yucatan peninsula two years earlier. And she quickly learned Spanish. La Malinche's judgement and abilities were a key to early efforts at diplomacy between Cortés and *Moctezuma* and between the Spanish and the Tlaxcalans and other enemies of the Aztecs. Even more important, she helped Cortés develop the acute insight into Aztec and tributary Indian politics and strategy which allowed him to bring down the *Aztec Empire*. Her memory is reviled by some Mexican nationalists, who employ the epithet ''malinchista'' to mean ''a lover of foreigners, a traitor.''

Despite the genuine horrors of the conquest such disparagement neglects how hated the Aztecs were by other Mesoamericans.

Malta. This island state is strategically located in the middle of the Mediterranean. As such, it was successively part of several ancient Mediterranean empires, including the Phoenician, Greek (ancient and Byzantine), Carthaginian, Roman, and Arab. The *Normans* conquered Malta in the late 11th century. It was a base for Christian armies and pilgrims heading for the ''Holy Land'' during the *Crusades*. When the Crusaders lost Jerusalem, and then Acre, the defeated *Hospitallers* retreated to Cyprus, then Rhodes. Eight years after Rhodes fell to the Ottomans (1522), *Charles V* resettled the Hospitallers on Malta, where they were known as the ''Knights of Malta.'' From 1564 to 1565, some 9,000 knights and retainers resisted a siege by 20,000 of *Suleiman I*'s assault troops, later doubled to 40,000. The fortress of St. Elmo fell but Valletta held out until disease and hunger wore down the Ottomans. Most of the defenders were also killed, with just 500 or so knights surviving. In later decades the Maltese Knights lived as pirates operating slave galleys. Styling themselves ''Armies of the Religion on the Sea'' they preyed on Muslim trade and cut Muslim throats under banners of the Virgin Mary and John the Baptist, and the famous red cross of their Order. They even acquired three island colonies in the Caribbean (Tortuga, St. Barthélemy, and St. Croix). The Grand Master was made a prince of the Empire in 1607 and in 1630 he gained rank in Rome equivalent to a Cardinal Deacon. The Knights remained in Malta until expelled by Napoleon in 1798 as he stopped off on the way to Alexandria. See also *Johannitterorden*; *Osnabrück, Treaty of*.

Mamlūks. ''Mamlūk'' meant ''owned,'' or ''slave,'' with the special connotation of ''Caucasian military slave.'' This was because most early Mamlūks were Central Asian-Turkic or Caucasus slaves who were imported to Syria and Egypt by the Abbasid *caliphs* of Baghdad to reinforce Arab tribal levies which were losing their military edge, and reputation, within the Arab empire. By convention, ''Mamlūk'' refers to the dynasty and military elites while ''mamlūk'' is used for ordinary slave soldiers. By the 9th century the Abbasids accepted annual shipments of mamlūks as tribute. A major expansion of mamlūk service followed as Turks displaced Arabs and Iranians from military service within the caliphate. As the Muslim states became increasingly military rather than civilian-religious empires, Turkic-speakers and soldiers became the predominant political class—a position they retained in the Middle East for a thousand years. In 868 a Mamlūk dynasty was founded in Egypt, the first breakaway state from the unified empire of the caliphs. In Iran, too, Turkic-speaking slave soldiers dominated, culminating in the military slave dynasty of the Ghaznavids (962–1186). The Umayyad Caliphate in al-Andalus, with its capital at Córdoba until the early 11th century, employed northern and western European slaves captured as boys, castrated, and trained as mamlūks. A Mamlūk dynasty ruled large parts of northern India for a time after 1206, but it was always weaker than its Middle Eastern counterparts as it lacked a

ready source of new recruits. Training fell by the wayside and the Indian Mamlūks were compelled to share power with local civilians. A new bevy of mamlūks were brought to Egypt by *Salāh al-Dīn* (Saladin, 1137–1193), who pushed aside the last Berber Fatamid caliph to rule in his name, then put his family on the sultan's throne as the Ayyubid dynasty. He relied heavily on loyal mamlūk soldiers. After crushing a *Crusader* army under Louis IX, a rebellion led by the Mamlūk general Baybārs overthrew and murdered the Ayyubid sultan, Turan Shah. The Ayyubids tried to elevate a female sultan—Shajar al-Durr—as a replacement but this garnered wider support for the rebels from Muslims who could not conceive of being ruled by a woman. Mamlūk-governed Egypt is conventionally periodized as the Bahri (River) Mamlūk era, 1250–1382, and the Burji (Citadel) Mamlūk period, 1382–1517.

In 1260 the Mamlūks defeated the Mongols in Galilee at *Ayn Jālut*. The next year the remnant of the Abbasid caliphate moved to Cairo (from Baghdad, which succumbed to the Mongols in 1258). This did not alter the fact of rule by Mamlūk sultans over Egypt and Syria. The Mamlūks actually benefitted from Mongol disruption of northern trade routes, which diverted goods into mamlūk ships plying the Indian Ocean and Red Sea. The Mamlūks crushed the last Crusader state, besieging and storming Acre (including with suicide squads) in 1291. After that defeat, the Latins surrendered Tyre and all other strongholds without further fighting. To the south, the Mamlūks expanded into *Alwa* in southern *Nubia*, pushing that Christian state to relocate deeper south after 1316. Having tamed the last of the Crusaders, the Mamlūks governed Palestine and Syria until 1400, when they were beaten at Aleppo by *Timur* and Syria was lost to them. It was not recovered until Timur's unstable empire fell apart after his death.

. . . heavier mamlūk armor and weapons and superior discipline and training meant they usually prevailed.

Since the children of mamlūks were originally forbidden to become knights, the Mamlūk dynasty continually drew fresh supplies of Turkish-Russian slaves to renew military formations. This meant that the language of the Mamlūk ruling class was Turkic, with many slave soldiers also unable to speak Arabic. The later Mamlūk system was semi-feudal: an officer was granted land from which he drew revenue (he still lived in barracks in Cairo) to sustain himself and perhaps some soldiers, too. By this time recruitment had changed, so that Mongols, Circassians, Greeks, Turks, and Kurds were also to be found in mamlūk barracks. After 1383 the Mamlūk sultans were usually also the main commanders. Although they sometimes trained as lancers and could fight as medium-to-heavy cavalry, the mamlūk military specialty was mounted archery. They were trained to hit a small circular target at 75 yards' range, five shots out of five, and to loose arrows at a pace of 6 to 8 per minute. They were originally formed to fight nomadic light cavalry and trained to equal or best the *Bedouin* in the skills of mounted archery. When fighting was hand-to-hand, heavier mamlūk armor and weapons and superior discipline and training meant they usually prevailed. This militarily conservative system was superb and effective

against the normal threats faced by Egypt: Bedouin from the desert, North African nomadic warriors, and distant Nubians. It remained to be tested against more modern forces gathering to the north in the Ottoman Empire.

Mamlūks are often cited as having failed to adapt fully to the ''gunpowder revolution,'' viewing muskets—as did the *Safavids* of Iran before the reign of *Abbas I*—with distaste, as dishonorable and disruptive of their settled social order. While generally true, this was almost certainly more a product of their lack of need for firearms than any rooted ''cultural'' rejection of guns. Like other Muslim armies, mamlūks had been so dominant in field battles for so long they did not feel a strong need for the new weapons, which were still inefficient as field artillery in any case. David Ayalon has documented that ''horsemanship and all it stood for were the pivot round which the whole way of life of the Mamlūk upper class revolved.'' Since early guns required one to dismount to fire and reload they were disdained and left to black slave soldiers, a pattern common to European heavy cavalry, which also declined early guns. Finally, mamlūks did not abstain from using cannon or muskets (the latter in the hands of Syrian and other auxiliaries) when they conducted sieges or fought enemies more attuned to the new weapons than they were. In their first war with the Ottomans in 1485–1486, a mamlūk army took Aleppo, paused there to cast a number of cannon to supplement their traditional catapults, then marched on to besiege Ramadan. They bombarded the city with artillery of both kinds, then turned to defeat an Ottoman relief army. The Mamlūks again recruited Syrian musketeers as auxiliaries and retook Ramadan in 1488, defeating a second Ottoman relief force. That led to a temporary peace with the Ottomans in 1491. Sultan al-Nasir tried to use the pause to supplement his mounted archers with a regular body of firearms infantry, to which end he trained a regiment of black slaves to use muskets. However, this breaking of the mamlūk military monopoly provoked the average mamlūk to a murderous rage: in 1498 the black musketeers were attacked and slaughtered in a running battle in the streets of Cairo. Survivors were dispatched by the sultan to fight far away from the capital in the empire's Indian Ocean territories.

The Mamlūks lost Syria after their defeat at *Marj Dabiq* (1516), where the sultan died among his troops (possibly of natural causes). Now that the conflict was a life-and-death struggle, no ''cultural aversion'' to guns was evident. Instead, a crash effort was made to build a firearms army that could stand against the *Janissaries*, including musketeers semi-protected by wagon forts or wooden shields that were borne to the field of battle by camels. Some light cannon were even mounted on camels. But this virgin force faced a superior Ottoman army of experienced firearms troops who fought exceptionally well from behind sturdy wagon-forts. From within their mobile fortresses Janissaries fired superior muskets and bronze cannons and destroyed the hastily raised Mamlūk army, not once but twice, at al-Raydaniyya in January and at Giza in April 1516. Egypt was lost.

Surviving Mamlūks proved useful to the pragmatic Ottomans and were kept in place in Cairo as sworn vassals, governing Egypt in the name of distant

sultans. The lingering claims of the old Abbasid caliphate, reigning but not ruling in Cairo since the fall of Baghdad to the Mongols, also came to an end (1517). Though numbering just 10,000 to 12,000 at their peak, and despite their military conservatism, the mamlūks remained one of the feared militaries of the Middle East for another two centuries. Moreover, as Ottoman power declined Mamlūk rule revived in fact if not in name. Cut off from their supply of Turkic and Circassian slaves Egyptian mamlūks evolved into a hereditary military caste that remained in power until 1798, when their last cavalry charge was blown away inside an hour at the ''Battle of the Pyramids'' by French muskets and artillery directed by Napoleon Bonaparte. See also *itqa*; *naphtha*; *taifa states*.

Suggested Reading: David Ayalon, *The Mamluks and Naval Power* (1965) and *Islam and the Abode of War* (1994); Thomas Phillip and Ulrich Haarmaan, eds., *The Mamluks in Egyptian Politics and Society* (1998).

Manchester, Earl of (1602–1671). Né Edward Montagu. English general. He was one of a few nobles to back Parliament in his war with *Charles I*. The first *English Civil War* was sparked when the king sent troops to arrest Manchester and four others sitting in Parliament in 1642. Manchester commanded a foot regiment and saw early action at *Winceby* (1643). He then besieged and took Lincoln. However, his ultimate loyalties and his martial energy were alike suspect: he remained an amateur in an emerging age of professional soldiers and a Parliamentarian who could see no way around the king. While in nominal command of the army, in practice he lost battlefield control to more aggressive officers. He fared badly at *Marston Moor* (1644) and did no better at Second Newbury (October 27, 1644), after which *Oliver Cromwell* brought charges against Manchester that forced him to resign. He opposed execution of the king and hence was spared execution by the Restoration (1660).

Manchuria. The historic homeland of the *Manchus*, and three northeastern provinces of Imperial China—Liaoning, Heilongjiang, and Jilin. Manchuria was home to semi-nomadic Jürchen peoples who repeatedly invaded China. Part of Manchuria was briefly occupied by the Han Empire. From 1122 to 1234, Jürchen warriors ruled northern China (''Jin empire''). After their retreat they took subsidies from Ming China and remained mostly quiet inside Manchuria. Bridging the 16th–17th centuries, *Nurgaci* laid the foundation for an explosion of Manchu aggression and for the Manchu conquest of China as he consolidated Manchuria and reorganized it as a martial state. His descendants, the Qing emperors, forbade ethnic Chinese settlement in Manchuria, marking the forbidden zone with a willow ditch that ran the length of the border.

Manchus. An Inner Asian people originally known as Jürchen (''Jin Empire'') when they ruled north China in the 12th century, but renamed ''Manchu'' by *Nurgaci*. They numbered fewer than two million at the mid-17th-century mark but had learned advanced bureaucratic skills from the Chinese of Liaodong, and had a superior military organization (the *banner system*) that

channeled the ferocity of their clan society into external aggression. Nurgaci organized the tribes in the first quarter of the 17th century into a mass army and powerful empire. His son, Hung Taiji, renamed the state "Qing" ("Pure") in 1636. Under that name, a Manchu dynasty governed China until 1911. See also *mutiny*; *Sarhu, Battle of*.

mandate of heaven. The central Chinese Imperial governing doctrine, probably originating during the Zhou dynasty (1040–256 B.C.E.), arguing from *Confucian* principles that even an autocrat is bound by moral forces and the social compact that guides an entire community. In turn, that idea sustained the core myth of Chinese political theory (that is, of autocracy); to wit, that notwithstanding the absence of representative institutions in China the emperors governed from a mandate given by the people which demanded personal virtue and benevolent administration from rulers. Dynasties maintained the mandate by having the emperor ("Son of Heaven") ritually observe an imperial cult of ancestor worship and undertake other complex rituals on a daily basis, erecting temples, maintaining an effective and established state religion, keeping domestic order and upholding the laws, and by securing the frontier from barbarian invasions. The mandate was claimed by each new dynasty and even later secular regimes. Each claim was contested, but also usually accepted once "confirmed" by the fact that overt resistance was finally crushed.

mandrel. See *hoop-and-stave method*.

maneuvers. Much warfare in the 16th–17th centuries in Europe involved complicated maneuvers and strategic positioning rather than pitched battles of encounter. This was partly a consequence of primitive *logistics*, which forced armies to remain on the move eating out whole regions of the enemy's territory before moving on to winter in some as yet unravaged area. Maneuvering also reflected the interests of *mercenaries* on all sides in avoiding combat as long as possible. See also *chevauchée*; *condottieri*; *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *Lützen, Battle of*; *Mansfeld, Count Ernst Graf von*; *Thirty Years' War*; *Wallenstein, Albrecht von*.

mangonel. Any of several mid-sized medieval siege engines that hurled stones to break castle walls or smash siege or town fortifications. They could also throw heavy darts or body parts or offal. In India and Iran they were called "manjaniq maghribis" ("western mangonel"). Mangonel was essentially another name for *catapult*. See also *siege warfare*.

Mannschaftsrodel. See *Swiss Army*.

man-of-war. In this period, a generic term for whatever was the largest fighting sail (not a *galley*). First used about modified, multi-masted *carracks* built by the Portuguese, it later applied to *galleons*. From the late 17th century it referred

to a separate class of very large fighting sail, a mobile artillery platform that brought to bear multiple decks of cannon in a devastating broadside. See also *Great Ships*.

mansabdari. The *Mughal* imperial and military system which employed extensive symbolism about traditional ideals of warrior honor while actually professionalizing the military by setting up complex ranks and salaries. See also *fitna*.

Mansfeld, Count Ernst Graf von (1580–1626). Mercenary general. Although a Catholic he fought for pay on the Protestant side throughout the *Thirty Years' War*. He was commissioned by *Friedrich V* to raise an army of 20,000 to intervene in Bohemia, alongside local forces under *Matthias Thurn* and *Christian of Anhalt*. Manstein took Pilsen (November 1, 1618) after a day's fighting. He was surprised and beaten badly at *Sablat* (June 10, 1619). His army was destroyed in less than an hour by *Johann Tilly* and *Bucquoy* at the *White Mountain* (November 8, 1620). He made a long retreat north where he raised a new army of 40,000 men in Alsace to defend the Palatinate. He fought Tilly twice more in the spring of 1622, at *Wiesloch* (April 22) and *Wimpfen* (May 6), campaigned in the Netherlands and fought a third battle at *Fleurus* (August 29). In these early years his reputation rose as a contractor who could recruit large mercenary armies at a low price and in great haste. However, his reputation as a field commander soon sank. Even though he never offered battle where he could avoid it, fearing wastage of his precious regiments, desertion rates among his recruits exceeded even the extraordinary levels of the age. Mansfeld's armies were also prone to scatter on first contact with the enemy. He was dismissed by Friedrich after the fiasco at *Höchst* (June 20, 1622) and retreated into the Netherlands. Despite his ineffectiveness, Mansfeld was considered the best at raising large, cheap, mercenary armies—at least until *Albrecht von Wallenstein* was hired by Ferdinand. From 1625 to 1626, Mansfeld was paid by the Dutch to raise an army to support intervention in Germany by *Christian IV*. As Wallenstein moved north to meet the Danes Mansfeld tried to intercept him on the Elbe, but was completely fooled and decisively defeated at *Dessau Bridge* (April 25, 1626), losing three-fourths of his 20,000 men. With the remnant, he fled into Saxony. From there he was driven to Moravia by Wallenstein's hot pursuit. Mansfeld hoped to link with the Transylvanian general Gabriel Bethlen, but when that rebel agreed to terms with Ferdinand in December, Mansfeld's rump army was stranded. The old man fled, but died before reaching Sarajevo. What was left of his abandoned army surrendered the next year. See also *flags*.

manteletes. Lightly and quickly built, mobile, roofed, wooden forts generally used for approaching fortifications during a siege. They could house up to 25 men, usually arquebusiers and crossbowmen who fired from gun ports in the

sides. *Cortés* used them in reverse to try to break out of a city during the *first siege of Tenochtitlán* (1520).

Manzikert, Battle of (1071). See *Byzantine Empire*; *Seljuk Turks*.

maps. Chinese mapmaking skills far exceeded those in Europe in this period. In China land maps were reasonably accurate as well as numerous. Even coastal maps were detailed and accurate, a fact that helped *Zheng He* make his extraordinary long-distance voyages while the Portuguese still clung tight to coastal Africa and English and Dutch ships fearfully hugged the Channel and North Sea coastlines. European sailors had only rudimentary coastal maps before *Enrique "the Navigator"* began to chart the African coastline. After 1500, Iberian, French, and English sailors surpassed the Chinese in map accuracy and charted the coasts of the Americas, eastern Africa, India, the South Sea islands, and China itself, which had abandoned oceanic navigation. Military maps for land use in Europe were minimal to nonexistent during the Middle Ages, greatly restricting strategy and even hampering tactics. Commanders were forced to rely on spies, scouts, and paid guides, or locals terrified into cooperation. Only in the late 14th century were decent land maps drawn up on anything like a systematic basis, and even then this was mostly done by private commercial interests. Most early modern governments classified maps, and often also destroyed them, out of security fears. Nor was this unreasonable: stealing or copying accurate maps that might prove of military or commercial value was a major goal of spies of the day.

Commanders were forced to rely on spies, scouts, and paid guides, or locals terrified into cooperation.

In the 16th century the Spanish Habsburgs sought to systematize military cartography, and to control it. *Philip II* commissioned a major map for his own use in 1555 and had a more extensive atlas made based on a national survey in the 1580s, including 21 maps of the Iberian peninsula. A good map of Portugal was made in 1560, and in 1570 an atlas of Italy (an early center of mapmaking) and Spain was published in Flanders. Far more numerous and more detailed maps were produced by the protracted fighting in Flanders, including an atlas of the Holy Roman Empire and numerous maps of military roads and fortifications. Publication of these was highly restricted under orders of the *Duke of Alba*. Gerard Mercator published a map of England in 1570 which the Spanish used to plan their proposed invasion in 1588, but Mercator found few maps of Iberia to include in his atlases published serially but intermittently after 1585. By the early 17th century most mapmakers had migrated north of the rivers to the rebel Netherlands, so that Spain had to import foreign made maps of territory it claimed and spent blood and treasure to retain. See also *astrolabe*; *compass*; *dead reckoning*; *Exploration, Age of*; *portolan chart*; *technology and war*.

Suggested Reading: David Buisseret, ed., *Monarchs, Ministers, and Maps* (1992).

marabout. A Muslim holy man—often, a former hermit or sharif—of the *Maghreb* and Sahara. In the 16th–19th centuries marabouts preached jihads (*holy wars*) to purify the religious life of coastal cities such as Algiers, and to plunder their wealth. In Morocco divisions among holy men fed into a sustained succession struggle and civil war which invited a Portuguese invasion and led to the ''Battle of the Three Kings,'' or *Alcazarquivir*, in 1578. See also *Fulbe*.

Marathas. The term most often used about a new military elite that arose in Maharashtra in the Deccan, outside *Mughal* control. Many were armed migrants from more marginal areas who had settled in Maharashtra in earlier centuries, exchanging contracted military services for protected status and rights, and acquired lands. They secured their territory with much new fort construction from the 15th century. In battle the Marathas deployed Hindu cavalry using the long *pata* sword-spear, among other weapons. Their position in the Deccan assisted Hindu resistance to southward expansion by Muslim powers. See also *Portuguese India*; *Rajputs*.

March. A frontier defense zone lying between two larger powers with discrete local militaries providing defense and engaging in chronic small wars. For instance, Charlemagne established a March in northern Spain, based in Barcelona (801). The early Holy Roman Empire had eight Marches along its Slavic frontier: Billungs, Nordmark, Lusatia, Misnia, Ostmark (Austria), Styria, Carinthia, and Carniola. Marches separated Christian and Muslim forces in Iberia (the comparable Muslim term was ''thughur''). The *Teutonic Knights* fought and slaughtered pagans in the March of Livonia. England had two Marches on its home island, on its Scots and Welsh borders, and others along its continental holdings within France and in Ireland (*The Pale*). France had a March in Brittany, another at the Calais Pale, and a third in the Rhineland. In a sense, China's entire frontier with Inner Asia was a vast March, or series of marches, even though the *Great Wall* and Qing willow ditch on the Manchurian border meant that China's borders were more defined than most. Medieval and early modern India's states had very few fixed frontiers, and therefore wide marches. These tended to be in regions where climatic zones shifted, separating peasant farming societies from nomadic pastoralists in more arid regions. See also *Cossacks*; *Hungary*; *Ireland*; *Marathas*; *Militargrenze*; *Rajputs*; *Scottish Wars*.

maréchal de camp. A senior officer in the French Army who assigned men a place in camp.

maréchal de logis. The *quartermaster* in a French Army.

Mared, Battle of (1564). See *Nordic Seven Years' War*.

Margaret of Parma (1522–1586). Illegitimate daughter of *Charles V*; half-sister of *Philip II*. Regent of the Netherlands, 1559–1567. Although in fact

broadly tolerant, she fed the mood of rebellion with impolitic remarks, including calling the Dutch nobles who presented a petition of grievances ''Beggars'' (''Gueux''), a name that stuck. She warned Philip against the savage repression later carried out by *Alba*. Her son was Allesandro Farnesse, *duque di Parma*.

Margate, Battle of (1387). See *Hundred Years' War*.

Marienburg (Malbork), Fortress of. The capital and central fortress of the *Teutonic Knights* in Prussia. It held out against the Poles during the ''Great War'' of 1409–1411. During the ''*War of the Cities*'' (1454–1466), it was besieged by Prussian conscripts and Bohemian mercenaries. In 1456 its Bohemian garrison sold the fortress to the Poles after the Brethren failed to meet their payroll.

Marignano, Battle of (September 13–14, 1515). ''Melegnano.'' One of the largest and bloodiest battles of the age. It was fought over a day and a night about 10 miles southeast of Milan between an army of the Swiss Confederation on one side, and the French Army and supporting Venetian cavalry on the other. Although the main antagonists of the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559) were France and Spain, in 1512 the Duchy of Milan was occupied by the Swiss in the name of a ''restored'' Duke *Maximilian Sforza*. With the Swiss blocking the Alpine passes into Italy the 20-year old French king, *Francis I*, divided his army into three columns and sent them through the Alps along unmarked shepherd trails. He ordered an advance party of sappers to blast a wider trail for his cannon and ammunition carts to pass over. Five days later the columns emerged and descended to the north Italian plain to take a small Swiss force by surprise. Due to superior training and by virtue of its greater firepower from *arquebusiers*, the French Army was more up-to-date than the *Swiss squares*. Even so, Francis did not command a truly modern army so much as a traditional force armed with many more cannon (perhaps as many as 140) and handguns and arquebuses than was then usual. However, its mainstay was still armored *heavy cavalry*, the principal military legacy of *feudalism*. The knights were supported by ranks of lesser nobles and poorer men-at-arms. These were more lightly armed and armored mounted heavy infantry. They were organized around great dukes and barons of the French feudatory system. There were also poor knights of small title and no land, fighting to make their fortune in war. Francis also controlled a royal bodyguard comprised of Scottish ''archers'' (a misleading term, as most members of the long-serving Scots regiment in France had discarded bows in favor of pistols and other firearms). The French artillery was the best in Europe, but it suffered from the normal restrictions of the age: it was extremely heavy and could not be repositioned once emplaced for battle. The French infantry was actually about half German by origin: some 9,000 *Landsknechte* filled in the center of the line, alongside 10,000 French. Some of the latter sported crossbows, a weapon still nearly as deadly as an arquebus.

For several weeks the French Army encamped outside Milan, eating out the country, while Francis tried to bribe the Swiss to leave peacefully. On September 8 captains from three cantons signed an accord with Francis, accepted his gold, and led some 12,000 men home. Still, about 20,000 tough, veteran Swiss remained in the city and prepared for an all-out fight.

Five days later the Swiss marched out the old Roman Gate of Milan to offer battle. They fell first on the French vanguard breakfasting at Marignano and isolated from the main body of French encamped several miles away with the king. The Swiss—among them, a young *Zwingli*, who would later shape the *Protestant Reformation* in the Swiss Confederation—formed as usual into three squares, at Marignano numbering some 6,000 to 7,000 men apiece. Famous and terrifying all at once, the Swiss front ranks leveled pikes, the halberdiers and crossbowmen fell in behind, and the squares moved into a trot-in-unison toward the French position. The French horse scattered before onrushing groves of Swiss pikemen, impelled forward by the sheer weight of their numbers and momentum, and with the inner ranks blind to anything but the backs of their comrades to the front, on which they pushed hard and close. But the well-practiced Swiss cadence was suddenly slowed and their famous tactical discipline and battle order partly broken by a stumble into a shallow ditch the French had dug across the expected Swiss line of advance. The squares recovered, but the stagger disrupted formation, reduced their speed, and thus lessened the shock of collision. Still, with ''push of pike'' they slammed into the Landsknechte.

The Germans stood their ground in the center of the line, stabbing into the front ranks of the Swiss with pikes of their own while men on both sides swung halberds or shot quarrel, bolt, or bullet into the dense pack of humanity opposite. Men fell in droves on both sides, piked or clubbed or axed or slashed to death, or into terrible agony at the feet of their fellows. The forward thrust of the Swiss pikes—still propelled by the great mass of men pushing from the rear of the three leading ranks of each square—pushed the Germans back. A number of French cannon were overrun in their fixed positions as the Landsknechte slowly gave up bloody ground. Then the main body of French cavalry arrived, led by the king. Knights in full armor and lesser men-at-arms slammed into the Swiss flank. A mêlée ensued in which little quarter was asked or given by either side. Around the tangled mass of bloody infantry the French cavalry pranced in *caracole*, firing pistols at point-blank range into the mass of Swiss or thrusting lances into the mass of flesh. Swiss halberdiers stabbed and hacked ferociously at their tormentors while crossbowmen fired at point-blank ranges with more than their usual skill and accuracy. The French guns could not move, but whenever a line of fire cleared they opened up, tearing gaping holes in the Swiss ranks and files. And so the carnage went. Men locked in close combat and neither side gave ground nor quarter. The fight lasted into the night, until exhaustion cloaked with darkness forced a pause. Men clustered in small islands of comradeship and protection, surrounded by the dying, alert with fear and kept awake by screams and groans from severely wounded men and horses.

As dawn broke on September 14 exhausted infantry on both sides rose in place. The Swiss blew their famous ''Harsthörner'' (''Great War Horn''), their captains gathered survivors into shortened lines and the fighting resumed. French cannon and arquebusiers tore more holes in the lightly armored Swiss. The few arquebusiers deployed by the Cantons did little damage by comparison. So the Swiss formed a square and charged, pikes at the level. The French center held but the right gave way before the push of another square. The battle was nearly lost for Francis when, just after 8:00 A.M., 10,000 allied Venetian cavalry arrived. These fresh troopers fell on the exhausted Swiss, forcing them to disengage from the main body of French and Germans. About 400 men of Zurich formed a sacrificial rearguard, behind which the remaining Cantons withdrew to Milan, harried by French cavalry all the way. As many as 5,000 French and Landsknechte lay dead or dying, and some Venetians, but more than twice that number of Swiss never rose from the field of Marignano. This sharp defeat of what was until then regarded as the most lethal infantry in Europe stunned the political world. France's military reputation rose to unfamiliar heights, that of the Swiss fell precipitously, never to recover. While dominance of the battlefield by gunpowder weapons was not yet indisputable and the ascendancy of the pike was not quite over, Spanish *tercios* nevertheless soon displaced the Swiss as the most feared infantry. Recognizing the import of what had happened the Swiss surrendered Milan and Lombardy to Francis and a year later signed the *Perpetual Peace*. After Marignano the French and Swiss did not fight again for 300 years. And while individuals and smaller groups of Swiss still hired out as mercenaries, the Swiss national army never fought again outside the home cantons. See also *Fähnlein*.

As many as 5,000 French and Landsknechte lay dead or dying . . .

Suggested Reading: Douglas Miller and Gerry Embleton, *The Swiss at War, 1300–1500* (1979); Desmond Seward, *Prince of the Renaissance* (1973).

Marind dynasty. See *caliph*; *Maghreb*; *Morocco*; *Tangier*; *Tunis*.

marines. Naval troops as opposed to regular land infantry. However, in this period there was little distinction made between infantry serving on land or on ships. Most marines were regular troops posted to ships to serve as snipers or boarders. See also *Azaps*; *galley*; *Invincible Armada*; *Janissary Corps*; *Lepanto, Battle of (October 7, 1571)*; *levend/levendat*; *sipahis*.

Maritza River, Battle of (September 26, 1371). A large Serbian army invaded Ottoman territory and was met by an Ottoman force under *Murad I*, at the Maritza River. The Sultan crushed the feudal Serb levies with his *Janissary* infantry and *sipahis* heavy cavalry. Serb historians lament the Ottoman victory at *Kosovo* 18 years later as a catastrophic national defeat that ended Serbian independence. Ottoman and modern Turkish historians point

instead to the fight at the Maritza River, which they term ''Serb Sindin'' (''Serbian Defeat''), as the decisive victory.

Marj Dabiq, Battle of (August 24, 1516). A *mamlūk* army led by the Mamlūk Sultan, al-Ghawri, and supplemented by Syrian infantry auxiliaries, was met at this site near Aleppo by an Ottoman army led by *Selim I*. Sultan al-Ghawri was either killed or had a heart attack during the battle, in which his troops were soundly beaten by Selim's firearms-bearing *Janissaries*. As a result, Syria and Palestine as far south as Gaza were annexed by Selim, with Aleppo and Damascus serving as capitals of his new Arab provinces.

maroons. See *cimarónes*.

marshal. In most armies, the top ranking officer. However, in France a ''maréchal'' ranked below the *Constable of France*. Under *Henri II* there were three officers of maréchal rank. In Germany the rank was usually associated with *provost* duties. In some countries the title was hereditary in the medieval period and covered political as well as military rights and duties. The ''Marshal of Ireland,'' for instance, governed from *The Pale* and commanded the English army in Ireland. In the 16th century a distinct military office of ''marshal of the king's army in Ireland'' was revived by the Tudors. The Navy Royal also used the title, as in ''Marshal of the Admiralty.''

Marston Moor, Battle of (July 2, 1644). *Prince Rupert*, who had never yet lost a battle, marched to relieve the Anglo-Scottish siege of York with 18,000 men, his infantry and guns moving behind a cavalry screen. He ran into the allied cavalry rearguard at Marston Moor and deployed for battle behind a long ditch. Seeing this, *Fairfax*, *Manchester*, and *Oliver Cromwell* agreed to send word to the *Earl of Leven* to return with the allied infantry. Both sides were set by mid-afternoon, each in the new style of deployment: infantry in discrete blocks two or three lines deep at the center, with cavalry on either wing. The Royalist cavalry was lightly sprinkled with dragoons, while Cromwell on the Parliamentary left concentrated his two regiments of *dragoons*. The fight opened at long distance with a three-hour mutual cannonade. At 7:00 P.M., Rupert and other Royalist captains retired for dinner, thinking the Parliamentarians would not fight that day and planning themselves to attack in the morning. Leven seized the moment and ordered an attack.

Cromwell's dragoons advanced on the left, deploying as skirmishers to clear out Royalist musketeers. Then Cromwell attacked with his Ironside horse, taking a wound and losing his mount during the charge. Rupert, roused by the noise, immediately counterattacked with a single regiment into Cromwell's strung-out horsemen. *David Leslie* led three full regiments of Scots in an attack on Rupert's flank, which had become exposed in turn. Cromwell and Leslie sent some troopers in pursuit of the broken and fleeing Cavalier horse, but turned their main force back toward the fighting underway at the center. There, allied infantry had crossed the ditch and pushed the Royalists back,

capturing some of Rupert's cannon then turning to link with Cromwell's Ironsides. On the right, Fairfax's did badly. His cavalry was beaten and fled in disorder, and while his Scots infantry stood fast his English units were mauled by the Royalists. Fairfax was personally cut off, discarded his command sash, and rode behind the Cavalier lines to join Leslie and Cromwell on the left flank. Now Leslie and Cromwell attacked with foot and horse into the Royalist infantry occupying the center-right position taken earlier from Fairfax. Many Royalists refused quarter and were killed. Rupert had lost his first battle, along with 4,000 dead and 1,500 captured. He escaped with just 6,000 horse and no artillery. The king lost the north and center of England and his best army. Royalist morale and prestige plunged. See also *English Civil Wars*.

martial music. Music and war are ancient companions, on the march, in camp, or on rig lines when hoisting sail on a wooden warship. The *Janissaries* marched to the constant beat of drums and fought with the sounds of ''Mehterhane'' bands playing all during a battle. This made the Ottomans the first to incorporate military bands into their permanent ranks and the model that European armies imitated in the 18th century. In addition to large bands that played for the sultan and another for the *Yeniçeri Ağasi*, each Janissary regiment (Orta) had its own small war drum and pipe band. The instruments included large and small kettle drums (with the largest played while slung from a camel). Polish Catholics went into battle singing religious hymns, especially ''O Gloriosa Domina!'' The *Hussites* made a bloodthirsty hymn their main *battle cry* when killing Catholics. Lutheran Swedes sang Protestant hymns as they marched through Germany with *Gustavus Adolphus*. In France, *flagellant* fanatics of the *Catholic League* sang and whipped themselves bloody to accompaniment of chants and hymns. Beating drums and playing fifes was a common recruiting device in England, and among German *Landsknechte* companies. The latter were also accompanied by a ''Speil,'' a small fife-and-drum band that took position near the *Fähnlein* in the middle of a square battle formation. Japanese armies marched to the beat of drummers (''taiko yaku'') and used conch shell trumpeters (''kai yaku'') to send battle signals, but did not travel with musicians per se. The *Mughal* emperors, in contrast, went on *mulkgiri* attended by their full court, including many artists, dancers, and musicians. See also *Harsthörner*.

martinet. See *trebuchet*.

Martinique. The Spanish discovered and chartered this West Indies island but disdained settlement in order to concentrate on their more profitable possessions. It was occupied and settled by France in 1635.

Martolos. Byzantine irregulars who later served the Ottoman Empire, mainly fighting mountain bandits and otherwise preserving public order in the wilder areas of Greece. In the 16th century they adapted to firearms and expanded their role as frontier troops into other parts of the Balkans and southern Hungary.

Mary I (of England). See *Mary Tudor*.

***maryol taifesi*.** Emergency troops forcibly recruited from the Ottoman peasantry. They were employed in the Balkans during the *Thirteen Years' War* (1593–1606) and other conflicts.

Mary Stuart, Queen of Scots (1542–1587). Daughter of James V of Scotland who died within days of her birth, and Mary of *Guise*, the most powerful Catholic family in France. There is still no consensus about the meaning of Mary's life. Modern historians are nearly as divided by confessional opinion about Mary as were her contemporaries. Then as now, most Catholics see her as a heroine-martyr while many Protestants view her as treasonous and a frustrated regicide. At least all agree that she was impetuous and deeply flawed in her political and marital judgments as she tossed on religious and dynastic waters far more troubled and treacherous than she, or perhaps anyone, could control. The core problem of Mary's life was that her blood lines and marriages connected too many crowns: she was Queen of Scotland by birth; Catholics everywhere saw her as the rightful heir of an English throne usurped by a Protestant bastard, *Elizabeth I*, after the death of *Mary Tudor*; and she was Queen Consort of France by virtue of betrothal at age 6 to the 5-year-old future François II, followed by their marriage in 1558. Through Mary Stuart the ruthlessly ambitious Guise sought to create a Catholic empire in the British Isles, a plot opposed for 30 years by Elizabeth's chief minister, *William Cecil*. When François died in 1560, leaving Mary a 19-year-old widow and all power in France in the hands of the regent, *Catherine de Medici*, she returned to Scotland (August 19, 1561). She ruled for just six years before falling prey to what her finest modern biographer, John Guy, aptly calls Scotland's rough tribal politics "based on organized revenge and the blood feud." All that was further complicated by the growing hatreds of confessional division.

In Scotland, as a Catholic queen of an aspiring and increasingly Protestant people, Mary at first navigated confessional waters quite well. It was her choice of husbands that triggered tribal warfare and political chaos and gave *John Knox* and his ilk the opportunity to turn her out of office. Her politically fatal deed was a 1565 marriage to a descendant of Henry VII, Lord Darnley (né Henry Stuart), a feckless bisexual and, what was far worse from the point of view of the Lairds and the Scottish Kirk, a Catholic. This soon provoked a minor uprising known as "Moray's Rebellion" that was easily quashed. Darnley's debauchery disgusted Mary and they quickly grew apart. His ambition to be king in more than name was revealed, along with his cruelty, when he arranged the murder of her close friend and adviser, the Italian David Rizzio. The deed was done before her eyes with Darnley holding her rigid to see. He then took Mary prisoner and tried to rule in her name. She escaped and pretended a reconciliation, but Darnley had too many enemies due to his impolitic betrayal of nearly all sides in Scotland's struggle over the throne. That led a clutch of Lairds to conspire to blow him up in his sickroom (he had smallpox) at Kirk o'Field, just outside the walls of Edinburgh on February 9, 1567.

Mary's third unsuccessful marriage was to Lord Bothwell, the principal behind Darnley's murder. She probably was not involved in the plot but nevertheless was heavily suspected at the time. Innocence did not matter: marrying her husband's murderer three months after weeping at the burial was just too much for Scotland's nobles, even her erstwhile backers. It did not help Mary's cause or reputation that the wedding was preceded by a preposterous faked kidnaping, then a royal pardon granted to the kidnapper, Bothwell. A serious rebellion broke out. Mary sent an army to put down the uprising but it deserted early in the so-called "Battle of Carberry Hill" (June 15, 1567). She was taken prisoner and forced by the Lairds to dismiss Bothwell, who was then executed. She abdicated on July 24, 1567. Her infant son was crowned *James VI* at Stirling five days later. Mary was imprisoned by the rebels but escaped on May 2, 1568. A new army of 6,000 rallied to her at Langside, outside Glasgow. A larger rebel army met it there on May 13, 1568. Mary's defenders were quickly blown from the field by a cavalry charge and she fled, this time across the Solway to England.

Instead of receiving asylum Mary was imprisoned by Cecil and Elizabeth, first at Carlyle then in a long series of isolated castles, to end her days at Fotheringhay. During 18 years of arrest she engaged in numerous plots with Catholic ambassadors and monarchs, including *Philip II* of Spain, to kill the "Virgin Queen" and claim the English throne in her stead. As there was a large Catholic minority in England still, this posed a real threat to Elizabeth, who yet abjured approving juridical regicide of her less sensitive rival. However, one of Mary's plots was uncovered by the ever-watchful Cecil and *Francis Walsingham*, whose spies intercepted Mary's secret "casket letters." She went on trial for her life in September 1586. She was convicted of treason and plotting regicide on October 25. Still, Elizabeth would not sign the death warrant. Finally, Cecil persuaded her to do so for reasons of state and the great queen reluctantly signed on February 1, 1587. Mary's ascent to the block on February 8, resplendent in martyr's red, may have been her finest hour: she made an extraordinary speech of calculated religiosity that entranced Catholics ever after. As soon as Philip II heard the news he declared war on Elizabeth, took down dusty old invasion plans called his "Enterprise of England," and ordered forth his *Invincible Armada* to strike in the name of righteousness and restored legitimacy. In 1612, Mary's reputation was rehabilitated and her body re-interred in Westminster Abbey by her son, who had been crowned James I of England upon the death in 1603 of the barren Elizabeth.

Suggested Reading: John Guy, *Queen of Scots* (2004).

Mary Tudor (1516–1558). Mary I, Queen of England, 1553–1558. Daughter of *Henry VIII* by Catherine of Aragon. When her father divorced her mother he made Mary sign a statement affirming that she was illegitimate, which gave the throne to a boy-king, Edward VI, upon Henry's death. A devout Catholic from an early age, Mary sat out her sickly brother's short reign in apolitical quietude, only refusing to assent to his reforms and further establishment of

the Reformed Faith. When her brother died Mary ascended the throne in place of her half-sister, *Elizabeth*, with full consent of Parliament and in accord with her father's last testament. She set out quietly, but with real determination, to re-establish Catholicism in England. She reinstated dismissed bishops and arrested firebrand reformers, but drew back from public affirmation of papal ascendancy as more radical Catholics in her Court wanted. The crisis of her reign, as it was of her father's, concerned the royal marriage and succession. Mary stunned Protestants by choosing *Philip II* of Spain, son of *Charles V* and the most powerful Catholic prince in Europe. This provoked *Wyatt's Rebellion*, which Mary cooly put down, she then married Philip (July 1544). Now she moved to fully restore Catholic supremacy, received a papal legate (Pole, who became Archbishop of Canterbury), and formally reconciled the realm with the pope. Her political vengeance for the rebellion and her religious persecutions took some 300 lives, including prominent reformers. For this Protestant subjects called her ''Bloody Mary.'' They deeply resented her taking England into Philip's war with France, which cost it *Calais*. After suffering two hysterical pregnancies Mary was left in misery and depression by Philip, who sailed away from Dover. She died childless, abandoned and unloved, at age 42. Her death and the succession of her half-sister Elizabeth, along with the death of *Henri II* of France in a freak accident, were twinned chance events that greatly shaped the confessional wars that shortly thereafter broke out in France and the Netherlands. See also *Gravelines, Battle of*.

Masaniello. See *Naples revolt*.

masnada. A company of *condottieri*.

masse. A Turkic club (*mace*). It was also carried by Christian knights, along with a dagger, as an auxiliary weapon to supplement their primary weapons of sword and lance.

masse d'armes. See *mace*.

master. In the 16th–19th centuries, the commanding officer in charge of piloting and navigation of a warship, but not necessarily the officer in charge of fighting the ship. He was assisted in handling the ship by a petty officer, the *quartermaster*. Under the *Laws of Olèron* an English master was more a partner of his crew than their overlord, expected to make peace and resolve disputes rather than punish.

master carpenter. On a wooden warship, a highly skilled and experienced craftsman whose position by the 17th century was at the rank of *warrant officer*. He had carpenters and carpenter's mates and other crew assigned to aid in his key tasks of keeping the ship weatherly and ready for action and effecting repairs during and after combat.

master gunner. The ''officer'' mainly responsible for maintenance, loading, and firing of a ship's guns.

master's mate. On a warship in the 15th–17th centuries, a petty officer who assisted the *master*.

masts. Any vertical *spar* on a ship whose purpose was to support *yards*, *rigging*, *tackle*, *sails*, and smaller vertical or horizontal spars. A 14th-century *cog* might have a ''made mast'' (built from sections, not a single piece of wood) some 3–4 feet in diameter at the base and 100 feet high. The *Grace Dieu* built for *Henry V* in 1418 had a mast seven feet in diameter and 200 feet high. To hoist sail on such monsters was beyond simple human muscle power. Instead, it was done with help from a mechanical device: a ship's windlass. Until the 15th century even the largest ships were single-masted. After experimentation with double-masted ships a standard three-masted rig was settled on by most shipwrights. Square sails were set on the two forward masts with the spars of the main mast holding aloft most of the ship's canvas. A lateen sail was usually rigged on the mizzen mast. This rigging system permitted easier tacking and more rapid course changes. With the addition of footropes divided sails became feasible. That led in turn to divided masts that were lighter and cheaper than the huge single masts they replaced. Multiple light composite masts and spars made ships faster and more stable, which meant they performed even better as big gun platforms. During the 16th and 17th centuries the customary English terms for the main rig of a standard three- or four-masted warship were: ''bonaventure,'' or the aftermost mast (aft even of the mizzen) on a four-master; ''foremast,'' or foremost vertical spar; ''main mast,'' the tallest and thickest mast on any two-, three-, or four-masted ship; and ''mizzen,'' or the aftermost mast on a three-masted ship but the next to last (rigged to the fore of the bonaventure) on a four-masted ship. In addition, a ''topmast'' was a small mast used to extend vertical reach and add canvass. It was fitted to any of the lower masts, thereby earning the prosaic appellations ''foretop,'' ''maintop,'' and ''mizzentop.'' A ''topgallant'' was a yet smaller vertical mast fitted to, and extending upward from, any of the afore cited topmasts. See also *top*.

Multiple light composite masts and spars made ships faster and more stable, . . . they performed even better as big gun platforms.

match. See *linstock*; *quick match*; *slow match*.

matchcord. See *slow match*.

matchlock. A firing mechanism for early *muskets* and *pistols* invented sometime before 1411, but with the first reliable versions appearing between 1450 and 1470. It was the first major improvement in firearms from early ''hand cannon'' that were little more than metal tubes fixed to boards with a drilled touch hole. The matchlock permitted the gunman to fire while steadying the

stock and barrel with both hands, instead of using a forked rest or a second man to apply *slow match* or a heated wire to the touch hole. The matchlock gripped several feet of slow match in a lock that descended into a pan of priming powder when a *serpentine* was lowered, at first by hand but later when a trigger released a spring-and-tumbler that moved the serpentine and match to the pan. The powder in the priming pan set off the main charge in the barrel, providing the signature two-step ignition of early firearms. The matchlock was one of three essential parts—''lock, stock, and barrel''—that turned primitive ''hand cannons'' into recognizable guns that could be aimed and fired while holding them against the chest or shoulder.

The term ''matchlock musket'' attained common usage even though the first matchlock firearms were actually *arquebuses*, a term itself subsumed under ''*musket*'' during the 16th century. Matchlock firearms were not practical for use by cavalry because of the tendency of the match to go out. Modern estimates are that a good matchlock musketeer could fire one shot every two minutes, though in the expectation that 50 percent of his shots would be misfires. Most musketeers retained matchlocks after invention of the overly delicate *wheel lock*, preferring a more robust mechanism. Other improvements were made that kept pace with the wheel lock by forming ''snap matchlocks'' in which the cock was fitted separately from the serpentine to better ensure ignition of the powder in the firing pan, with the entire mechanism attached to a metal plate that was recessed into the stock. It was this type of advanced matchlock musket that the Portuguese brought to Japan in 1543. The improved matchlock served throughout the 17th century and was only displaced in more advanced armies beginning in the 1680s by a clearly superior *flintlock* musket. Some matchlocks were used into the 18th century by poorer states and armies, and in less advanced frontier and border war zones. See also *Indian Wars (North America)*.

mate. See *boatswain's mate*; *master's mate*; *mattross*; *quartermaster's mate*.

Matthias (1458–1490). King of Hungary. See also *Hungary*; *standing army*.

Matthias (1557–1619). Holy Roman Emperor, 1612–1619. See also *''Defenestration of Prague'' (1618)*; *Ferdinand II, Holy Roman Emperor*; *Habsburgs*; *Jülich-Kleve, Crisis over*; *Rudolf II*; *Thirty Years' War*.

mattross. A gunner's mate, or second to the master gunner in a gun crew.

Maurice of Nassau. See *Maurits of Nassau*.

Maurits of Nassau (1567–1625). Dutch military reformer and commander, eldest son of *William the Silent*. He lived on the Nassau lands in Germany until 1577. He was greatly influenced by the thought of *Machiavelli*, as channeled through Maurits' mentor, *Justus Lipsius*. At age 21, already preening and self-conscious about his status as Stadholder of Holland and Zeeland, he was

elevated to Admiral-General of the Netherlands (*Generality*) and Captain-General of Brabant and Flanders. Vengeful and lusty, but also calculating and pragmatic, he maneuvered with cautious skill through the maze of Dutch political and religious disputes. With Willem Lodewijk, Maurits was entrusted by the States General with organizing a ''new model army,'' a professional force to go beyond the *schutterijen* (town militia) and end reliance on foreign mercenaries. This army was to contest against the veteran Spanish *tercios* on land the way *Sea Beggar* ships already did on water. Drawing on study of classical infantry models, Maurits broke up large units into smaller, more flexible formations. He reduced infantry ranks to just 10, which meant lines rather than squares were his preferred tactical formation and that musketeer firepower replaced pike and shock as the main means to victory. These new formations were capable of quick battlefield maneuvers. They could fight separately or join to present a solid wall of muskets, while leaving measured spaces between infantry blocks. Maurits filled these spaces with cavalry and field artillery.

Maurits drew directly on Roman manuals to develop new methods of *drill* and introduce a system of effective *countermarch*. Even foreign troops accepted his hard but just *military discipline*, not least because they were paid well and on time. Maurits trained his ''new model army'' relentlessly in small unit battlefield maneuver, musketry, and the countermarch. This did not just practice new tactics, it instilled unit cohesion. He and Lodewijk also reintroduced *volley fire* by missile troops, which they recovered from descriptions of Roman javelin and archer tactics. To accommodate firing by volley Maurits standardized bores and patterns of muskets: his new ''Dutch musket'' was soon widely copied and adopted. Maurits also standardized artillery, eliminating excess and odd bores in favor of four calibers, each matched to standardized ammunition. This significantly improved rates-of-fire and assured that big guns hauled on campaign would actually have powder and shot measured and ready to use. And he limited the design and type of *gun carriages* that hauled his artillery. Among his most notable reforms was enhanced use of river barges to supply field armies and move siege guns, an area of logistical skill in which he excelled beyond any contemporary commander. He normally moved his massive artillery train along the great interior routes carved out by the Lek, Mass, Rhine, and Waal Rivers. This enabled him to bring big guns to a siege or battle site that was unreachable by road and to do so with a speed that surprised Spanish garrisons who thought him occupied elsewhere. Still, the basic limitations of early 17th-century logistics imposed sharp restrictions on his campaigns. Where Maurits made his most influential contributions was siege warfare. Besides expanding the siege train he gave a permanent role to military engineers and logistics officers. And he made his troops dig, even issuing entrenching spades as a regular part of their kit. By providing extra pay he overcame traditional mercenary prejudice against such military labor, thereby setting a new standard of troop behavior and enabling his armies to throw up good field works whenever necessary and in record time.

With a highly proficient and tactically disciplined force of 10,000 foot and 2,000 horse and a set of superb siege guns, in 1590 Maurits retook Breda in a rapid assault that stunned the Spanish and surprised all military thinkers and observers. The next year he captured Zutphen after seven days, took Deventer in eleven days, and received the surrender of Nijmegen in just six, all by quick sieges won as much by offering generous terms to the garrisons as by clever or novel tactics. In 1592–1593 he had more field successes but ran into real political restraints. He retook Geertruidenberg after a celebrated four-month siege that ended in June 1593. In 1594 he cleared the Spanish from Groningen. In 1597 he took the garrison towns of Oldenzaal, Enschede, and Grol. After a forced march of 20 miles in under nine hours, a remarkable speed for the time, he stunned the Spanish in a rare field battle at *Turnhout* (1597), inflicting 3,000 casualties. In his only other battle, at the privateer port of *Nieuwpoort* (1600), Maurits drove the Spanish from among the dunes with heavy casualties. During the *Siege of Ostend* (1601–1604) Maurits kept the city supplied from the sea for three years but failed to lift *Spínola*'s siege. In 1602, Maurits took an army of 19,000 foot and 5,400 horse on a campaign he planned as a sweeping strategic maneuver to liberate Brabant and Flanders. He loaded 700 wagons with flour, mill stones, and ovens to bake bread for his men, and arranged for more flour to follow by barge. His artillery train was comprised of 13 massive cannon, 17 half-cannon, and five smaller field pieces, most of which he also transported by canal and river. His advance, typical of the period, consisted of several periods of five or more days march broken by periods of three or four days in camp baking bread. He failed to force the Spanish to battle and was forced to retreat to the Maas by exhaustion of his food supply and unusually hot weather. He resupplied by river, but the Generality grew tired of his maneuvers without a battle of encounter and forbade him an invasion of Flanders. He besieged Grave instead, which did little to advance either his original strategy or victory in the war.

Maurits opposed the *Twelve Years' Truce* (1609–1621). Then, as the United Provinces descended into factionalism and neared civil war, Maurits led the ''war party'' in opposition to a ''peace party'' led by *Oldenbaarneveldt* and *Grotius* that wanted to extend the Truce. Maurits launched a coup d'état in August 1618, arresting Oldenbaarneveldt and disbanding the *waardgelders* (militia) of Holland and Utrecht. He had Oldenbaarneveldt executed in 1619 for treason, ostensibly for trying to reduce the influence of the army by raising waardgelder units. (Grotius was jailed, escaped in 1621, and went into exile.) That left Maurits the most powerful man in the Netherlands since the death of his father. Alone at the helm, he goaded *Friedrich V* to claim the throne of Bohemia in 1618, sending him money and 5,000 Dutch troops. He led the United Provinces back into war with Spain upon expiration of the Truce in 1621, but already regretted the decision by 1624. Thereafter, the Dutch war merged with the great war in Germany, the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). Maurits backed the Protestant princes with subsidies and troops, but with little success before his death. Sickly from 1623, Maurits died of a fever while trying to relieve the siege of Breda in 1625. See also *baggage train*; *brigade*;

Gustavus II Adolphus; *revolution in military affairs*; *Torstensson, Lennart*; *Turenne, Henri de*.

Maximilian I (1459–1519). Holy Roman Emperor, 1493–1519. He married Mary of Burgundy after her father, *Charles the Rash*, was killed at *Nancy* (1477). This brought most Burgundian lands under Habsburg control. Their son, *Charles V*, united even more of Europe in his person, under many crowns. Maximilian reorganized the army after witnessing repeated defeats inflicted on the Burgundians by the Swiss. He organized *Landsknechte* units in imitation of the *Swiss square*. He sometimes shouldered a pike himself and served in the front ranks. Then he made nobles serve with the infantry, providing the Landsknechte with officers. At the Diet of Worms (1495) he tried to impose a new land tax on the *Holy Roman Empire* to finance an expanded Imperial Army. The Swiss baulked at this and launched the *Swabian War* (1499) when Maximilian seized a border monastery from the Swiss Confederation. He set up territorial defense institutions within the Empire (*Reichskreis*) in 1500. He banned the *wheel lock* by edict in 1517, probably because he loathed its effect on knights and chivalric warfare, of which he was one of the last champions. His death may have saved *Martin Luther* by drawing attention to the Imperial succession just as the powers of the Catholic world were preparing to crush the German monk and his followers. See also *Agnadello, Battle of*; *Imperial Army*.

Maximilian I, of Bavaria (1573–1651). Bavaria was in an odd position within the *Holy Roman Empire*: it was rich and powerful in its own right but overshadowed by the Habsburgs in southern Germany. To enhance his power and prestige Maximilian adopted a radical Catholic policy that drew in other princes to his *Catholic League* and made Bavaria the most important ally of the emperor other than Spain. He contributed troops to the Imperial cause that lifted a Protestant siege of Vienna and later drove *Friedrich V* from Bohemia following defeat at the *While Mountain* (1620). After dissolution of the *Protestant Union* in 1621, Maximilian intervened in Bohemia and Moravia to damp down potential social revolution and peasant unrest in the wake of three years of war. Once Friedrich V was outlawed by *Ferdinand II* and the Palatinate overrun by *Johann Tilly*, in 1623, Maximilian was invested with the title "Elector" taken from Friedrich and the Palatinate. Despite long alliance with the emperor, some of Ferdinand's advisers considered Maximilian a secret enemy of the Habsburgs. There was some evidence of this, or at least of his independence of mind and desire to leave the German war at different points. In 1630 he led opposition among German princes to Ferdinand's plan to send 50,000 men to intervene in the *War of the Mantuan Succession*; he also opposed the *Edict of Restitution* and compelled Ferdinand to sack *Albrecht von Wallenstein* and reduce the size of the Imperial Army. In May 1631, Maximilian signed a defensive alliance (Treaty of Fontainebleau) with France to counterbalance Habsburg power in Germany. Maximilian took on a military role after Tilly's death, in command of the army of the *Catholic League*

at *Alte Feste* and *Lützen* in 1632. Like other German princes he hoped the war would end with the *Peace of Prague* (1635) but was forced to keep fighting for another 13 years by the French intervention. He withdrew from the war early in 1647 under a separate peace, then re-engaged the fight in the autumn. This brought an immediate Franco-Swedish invasion of Bavaria and a crushing and final defeat at *Zusmarshausen* (May 17, 1648).

Maximilian II (1527–1576). Holy Roman Emperor, 1564–1576. He was so sympathetic to Lutheranism that his rigidly Catholic brother, *Charles V*, passed over Maximilian to leave Austria and the Empire to *Ferdinand I*, and urged that Maximilian not succeed Ferdinand. To assuage Catholic concerns, before ascending the throne Maximilian swore to remain Catholic (1562) and agreed that his heirs undergo Catholic education in Spain. He raised an Imperial army to fight the Ottomans but did not press ahead with war. Instead, in 1568 he agreed to pay tribute to *Selim II* for suzerainty over part of Hungary. From 1568–1571 he signed ''Toleration Edicts'' that legalized the Protestant parishes of Lower Austria and even approved their reformed prayer book and liturgy. He was more tolerant of Protestantism than his successors, but was so weak personally that he proved unable to stand against fanatic imposition of the *Counter-Reformation* in Bohemia and Austria later in his reign. He was elected King of Poland in 1575 but died while still readying to invade and claim the crown, which went instead to *Stefan Báthory*. Maximilian was succeeded by *Rudolf II*.

Mayenne, duc de (1554–1611). Né Charles of Lorraine. Younger brother of *Henri, duc de Guise*. He became head of the Guise family and commander of the army of the *Catholic League* upon the murder of his brothers, the duc and cardinal, by *Henri III* on December 23, 1588. Mayenne led the League as it struggled unsuccessfully to prevent the ascension of Henri de Navarre to the throne as *Henri IV*. As Marshal Ney would later promise Louis XVIII about Napoleon, Mayenne promised to kill Navarre or bring him back to Paris ''in an iron cage.'' He was instead beaten by Navarre at *Arques* (1589), after which Mayenne was more dependent on aid from Spain and less admired within France. He was beaten by Henri again at *Ivry-la-Bataille* (1590). He entered Paris on November 28, 1591, and deposed the radical *Sixteen*, a rival to the League among Catholics. After that, he was the undisputed leader of the League and Catholic cause. He tried to rally support to continue the civil wars after 1593. However, his reputation never recovered from the defeats of 1589–1590 and this denied him many followers. Also, Henri's abjuration of Calvinism gained him acceptance as the legitimate king among most French Catholics, while Mayenne's alliance with Spain during the *Franco-Spanish War* (1594–1598) won him no admiration in most of France. After losing Dijon and all Burgundy to Henri, Mayenne looked to recover his governorship

Mayenne promised to kill Navarre or bring him back to Paris ''in an iron cage.''

(which he had held for 22 years before 1595), but Henri refused to return it. Instead, in 1596, Mayenne was made governor of Ile-de-France and three fortified towns while Henri also paid off his war debts. Several weeks later, Mayenne ritually submitted before his shrewd and victorious king.

Mazarin, Jules (1602–1661). French statesman. Educated by *Jesuits*, he began his diplomatic career as papal nuncio for *Urban VIII* at the French court, 1634–1636. He became a naturalized French subject and joined the French diplomatic corps. Mazarin was elevated to cardinal through the influence of *Cardinal Richelieu*, whose anointed successor as advisor to *Louis XIII* he became in the final years of the *Thirty Years' War*. When Richelieu and Louis XIII died, Mazarin effectively ruled during the regency of Louis XIV. He likely was, but may not have been, the queen-regent's lover. He oversaw the triumph of French arms from 1643 to 1648 and the success of French diplomacy in permanently weakening and dividing Spanish from Austrian Habsburg power, an achievement enshrined in the *Peace of Westphalia*. He also began the prolonged French policy of supporting the rising state of Brandenburg as a counterweight to Sweden in northern Germany. Mazarin was the central target of the divers "frondes" that followed the end of the German war in 1648 and played a key role shaping French policy toward the Anglo-Dutch wars during the 1650s.

Mecklenburg, Duchy of. Mecklenburg, a duchy from 1348, was forced into the *Thirty Years' War* in 1625 because the Danes occupied parts of it. In 1628, with *Christian IV* driven from the war, *Ferdinand II* declared the lands and title of the Mecklenburg dukes forfeit by cause of treason, and handed both to *Albrecht von Wallenstein*. This was an act of revolution by constitutional standards: as with the *Edict of Restitution* by which he bungled religious affairs, Ferdinand hugely overreached his authority on matters political and dynastic. Henceforth, no prince of the Empire felt save from Imperial fiat and their anger focused on getting rid of Wallenstein to reduce the great captain's independence and, indirectly but more importantly, also to constrict and constrain the excessive ambition of Ferdinand.

media culebrina. See *culverin*; *demi-culverin*.

media falconeta. See *falcon*; *falconete*.

media sacre. See *minion* (2); *saker*.

Medici. The wealthiest and most powerful family in Florence during the *Italian Renaissance*. Medici money came from banking and political power from intrigue, assassination, and intimate intelligence about Florentine politics. Outside Florence, the family produced two French queens and four popes, and dominated much of the political and cultural life of Italy and France. See also *Henri IV, of France*; *Luther, Martin*; *Machiavelli, Niccolò di Bernardo*; *Medici, Catherine de*; *Medici, Marie de*.

Medici, Catherine de (1519–1589). Queen of France, 1547–1559; Queen Mother, 1559–1589. After the accidental death of her husband, *Henri II*, she exerted great influence behind the scenes during the reigns of three sons, *Francis II*, *Charles IX*, and *Henri III*. Her daughter Elizabeth was Queen of Spain by virtue of marriage to *Philip II*. When Francis II died in 1560, leaving *Mary Stuart* a 19-year-old widow, power in France was seized by the *Guise* over Catherine's opposition. She fought for influence over Francis, who was more attuned to his Guise uncles than to his mother, then again with Charles. Although a believing Catholic, she was a pragmatist in politics who opposed radicalism and intolerance, whether among the *Huguenots* or as practiced by the Guise and *Catholic League*, as detrimental to national unity and domestic peace. Following the premature death of Francis she declared herself regent for 11-year-old Charles and released *Condé*, whom the Guise had marked for death in wake of the "*conspiracy of Amboise*." Pursuing a policy of moderation, Catherine sought to prevent the outbreak of the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629) by appointing the King of Navarre lieutenant-general of France, releasing all religious prisoners, and ending heresy trials and executions. Her efforts to reconcile all French within the Gallican Church failed, and in 1562 the first of the French Civil Wars broke out. It is likely her tolerance was eroded and her policy changed after the failed Huguenot attempt to kidnap Charles IX in 1567.

Catherine's role in the events leading to the *St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres* have been much misunderstood. Generations of historians portrayed her as madly jealous of *Coligny*'s influence over her son. She was accused of organizing the murder of Coligny and slaughter of the Huguenots to forestall a plan by Coligny to persuade the king to invade the Netherlands and make war on Spain in support of Dutch Protestant rebels. More recent research has shown that, in fact, she was a would-be peacemaker whose plans for national and royal reconciliation fell foul of popular religious hatred and violence, at least until the night of August 23 when she joined in the decision of a royal council to strike at the Protestant leadership gathered in Paris. This was a gross political miscalculation and despite her efforts at peacemaking her consent to the council's decision that night lays the lion's share of blame for the bloodshed that followed at her feet, along with her weak-willed son and other Catholic grandees.

Catherine lost most of her power upon the ascension to the throne of a third son, *Henri III*. Older and less easily influenced than his brothers, Henri shared his aging mother's preference for toleration and a return to social tranquility. Catherine was therefore shocked at Henri's impolitic murder of Guise and arrest of leaders of the Catholic League on December 23, 1588. She scolded him for foolhardiness just before she died on January 5, 1589. She was quickly proved right: things fell apart, the Catholic League turned against the king, and Henri was himself assassinated in August 1589. His death ended the Valois line.

Suggested Reading: R. Knecht, *Catherine de Medici* (1998); N. M. Sutherland, *Catherine de Medici and the Ancien Régime* (1968).

Medici, Marie de (1573–1642). Second wife of *Henri IV* (from 1600); mother of *Louis XIII*. In 1614 she betrothed Louis to Anne of Austria, daughter of *Philip III* of Spain. That Catholic alliance provoked a court rebellion nominally led by *Condé* (Henri II, de Bourbon). Each side sought alliance with the Huguenots, which had the effect of tumbling the Protestants back into rebellion. When Louis seized power from Marie de Medici in 1617 he had her favorite adviser murdered, recalled his father's advisers to Court, and exiled his mother to Blois. Although Marie's influence thus was sharply curtailed during the reign of her strong-willed son, she yet played a key role in elevating *Cardinal Richelieu* to power.

Medina Sidonia, duque de (1550–1615). Né Alonso Perez du Guzman. See also *Invincible Armada*.

Mediterranean system (of war at sea). See *galley*; *war at sea*.

Mehemet I. See *Muhammad I*.

Mehemet II. See *Muhammad II*.

Melegnano, Battle of (1515). See *Marignano, Battle of*.

Melilla. A Spanish *enclave* inside Morocco captured by Castile in 1497. See also *Ceuta*; *Morocco*.

Melo, Francisco di (1608–1666). Portuguese general. He fought for Spain in Flanders in 1639, and against the French. In 1643 he led a Habsburg army into France but was defeated at *Rocroi* by the *Great Condé*, and was captured.

Meloria, Battle of (1284). In this naval battle the Genoese fleet bested the Pisans, dropping Pisa from the front rank of Italian and Western Mediterranean naval powers, with Genoa and Venice taking its place. Vast numbers of Pisans were taken to Genoa as prisoners of war.

men-at-arms. ''homme d'armes,'' ''homines armati,'' ''Lanze.'' A third category of armored men, usually but not always lesser in wealth, status, armor, and arms to *bannerets* and *knights*. In England they included *sergeants*, *esquires*, and *valets*. In France they were more usually called sergeants early in the 13th century but esquires after its close. Generally, they could not afford to themselves keep esquires or large clutches of retainers. It is important to note, however, that there was no single, standardized type of ''men-at-arms.'' The status was sometimes determined by social pedigree, but more often by the quality of armor a man could afford to wear into battle and the number and quality of *warhorses* he owned or was allowed to take on expeditions. The main battle mount of most men-at-arms was seldom a true *destrier*, which was so expensive only great nobles and the wealthiest men-at-arms could afford one.

A humbler man-at-arms might take possession of a destrier from a dead or captured enemy, along with all his armor, so that some were better mounted and armored than higher knights. But the usual mount was a simple *rouncey* or *courser*. This did not mean that men-at-arms were light cavalry like *Turcopoles*. They are more accurately described as medium-to-heavy cavalry, clearly distinguished by their mode of mounted combat from mounted archers such as *hobelars* and from all infantry. Starting in the 13th century it became more difficult to distinguish men-at-arms from full knights (*milites*). This was because many minor nobles began to refuse the dubbing ceremony so as not to incur the obligation of 40 days free military service that accompanied full knighthood. This shift in attitude marked an important stage on the road from a feudal-service military to paid systems of military recruitment. Beginning in the 14th century—in the armies of *Edward III* from the 1330s and French armies from the 1350s—men-at-arms dismounted to fight, primarily as a defense against skilled archers. They would remount to charge if an opportunity for shock action was presented, or to pursue a broken and fleeing enemy. France had a surfeit of men-at-arms, many thousands more than any other country. They therefore made up the majority of French soldiers (and casualties) in such battles as *Crecy* (1346), *Poitiers* (1356), and *Agincourt* (1415). Other kingdoms more often used men-at-arms as the mandrel of an army, around which they wrapped less expensive town militia and peasant or yeoman levies. The individual man-at-arms provided the core of the mid-14th century *lance* on which a new-style army was built. See also *condottieri*; *White Company*.

mendum. See *warhorses*.

***menzil-hane* supply system.** See *logistics*; *magazines*; *Ottoman warfare*; *Tatars*.

mercenaries. Professional soldiers (or sailors) who fought for pay or plunder, not for any national or religious cause or because they were conscripts. Mercenaries have been found garrisoning forts or on the battlefield almost as long as men have made war: they marched alongside Roman Legions as auxiliaries, and fought against them; Song emperors deployed mercenaries in China in distant garrisons and used them in field armies from the 12th century; they guarded the great trans-Saharan trade routes for the African slave empires of *Mali* and *Songhay*; they fought for the Crusader states of the Holy Land, as well as against them in several Muslim armies. The *Aztec Empire* was built in blood by a ruthless people who began as tributary soldiers in the paid service of a more advanced and wealthy city-state, Tepaneca, in the Central Valley of Mexico. In parts of Medieval Europe primogeniture ensured that many young men were forced to turn to arms to earn a living. This produced the necessary forces to eventually defeat the great waves of invasions over some 600 years by Vikings, Mongols, Arabs, and other warlike raiders. A growing surfeit of warriors produced by a whole society structured for war but with a newly rising population was then sent off to fight the

Crusades, while others went mercenary and fought ever closer bound to the king's war chest at home.

The collapse of the monetary economy in Western Europe following the fall of Rome left just two areas where gold coin was still used in the 10th century: southern Italy and southern Spain (*al-Andalus*). Ready gold drew mercenaries to wars in those regions as carrion creatures draw near dead flesh. Also able to pay in coin for military specialists and hardened veterans was the Byzantine Empire, along with the Muslim states it opposed and fought for several centuries. The rise of mercenaries in Western Europe in the 11th century as a money economy resumed disturbed the social order and was received with wrath and dismay by the clergy and service nobility. Early forms of monetary service did not necessarily involve straight wages. They included fief money and *scutage*. But by the end of the 13th century paid military service was the norm in Europe. This meant that local bonds were forming in many places and a concomitant sense of ''foreignness'' attached to long-service soldiers. Mercenaries were valued for their military expertise but now feared and increasingly despised for their perceived moral indifference to the causes for which they fought. Ex-mercenary bands (*routiers, Free Companies*) were commonplace in France in the 12th century and a social and economic scourge wherever they moved during the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). Their main weapon was the crossbow, on land and at sea. In the galley wars of the Mediterranean many Genoese, Pisan, and Venetian crossbowmen hired out as specialist marine archers. Much of the *Reconquista* in Spain was fueled by the mercenary impulse and concomitant necessity for armies to live off the land. The hard methods and cruel attitudes learned by Iberians while fighting Moors were then applied in the Americas by quasi-mercenary *conquistadores*. Mercenaries—''*condottieri*,'' or foreign ''contractors''—also played a major part in the wars of the city-states of the *Italian Renaissance*.

French ''gen d'armes'' and Swiss pikemen and halberdiers fought for Lorraine at *Nancy* (1477). By the start of the 15th century Swiss companies hired out with official Cantonal approval or as free bands who elected their officers and went to Italy to fight as condottieri. With the end of the wars of the *Swiss Confederation* against France and Burgundy, Swiss soldiers of fortune formed a company known as ''das torechte Leben'' (roughly, ''the mad life'') and fought for pay under a *Banner* displaying a town idiot and a pig. Within four years of Nancy some 6,000 Swiss were hired by *Louis XI*. In 1497, Charles VIII (''The Affable'') of France engaged 100 Swiss halberdiers as his personal bodyguard (''Garde de Cent Suisses''). In either form, the Swiss became the major mercenary people of Europe into the 16th century. ''Pas d'argent, pas de Suisses'' (''no money, no Swiss'') was a baleful maxim echoed by many sovereigns and generals. Mercenaries of all regional origins filled out the armies of *Charles V*, and those of his son, *Philip II*, as well as their enemies during the wars of religion of the 16th and 17th centuries. By that time Swiss mercenaries who still used pikes (and many did) were largely employed to guard the artillery or trenches or supplies. Similarly, by the late 16th century German *Landsknechte* were still hired for battle as shock

troops but they were considered undisciplined and perfectly useless in a siege.

In Poland in the 15th century most mercenaries were Bohemians who fought under the flag of St. George, which had a red cross on a white background. When Bohemian units found themselves on opposite sides of a battlefield they usually agreed that one side would adopt a white cross on a red background while their countrymen on the other side used the standard red-on-white flag of St. George. In the Polish-Prussian and *Teutonic Knights* campaigns of the mid-15th century the Brethren—by this point too few to do all their own fighting—hired German, English, Scots, and Irish mercenaries to fill out their armies. During the ''*War of the Cities*'' (1454–1466) German mercenaries were critical to the victory of the Teutonic Knights at *Chojnice* (September 18, 1454). When the Order ran out of money, however, Bohemian soldiers-for-hire who held the key fortress and Teutonic capital of *Marienburg* for the Knights sold it to a besieging Polish army and departed, well paid and unscathed by even a token fight.

The social and economic dislocations caused by confessional ferocity during the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648) forced many men into the profession of arms, especially if they came from the fringe peoples of Europe or borderlands such as Scotland, Ireland, or the Balkans, where wars of raid and counter-raid were endemic. Thus, when a ''Swedish'' army assaulted Frankfurt-on-the-Oder a Scots Brigade made the attack against a defending ''Imperial'' Army made up wholly of Irishmen under Colonel Walter Butler. In fact, the great bulk of European armies during the first half of the 17th century were comprised of mercenaries who owed little ethnic, class, or religious loyalty to the causes for which they fought. This was because kings and great captains owed such men little more than pay, out of which soldiers were expected to buy their own food, weapons, clothing, and provide shelter. In some armies musketeers were even expected to buy their own black powder, so of course they were loathe to spend it on combat. Even this primitive system was subject to great abuse and corruption as quartermasters and colonels skimmed payrolls, troops exposed themselves to minimal danger, and captains used their tactical skills to escape rather than win battles. One result was a tendency for armies to maneuver constantly, eating out enemy territory rather than seeking out combat. The mercenary presence on the battlefield thus led to fewer pitched battles but much longer wars, conditions which best satisfied the interest of military professionals in prolonged but also cautious and relatively nonsanguinary service. During the Thirty Years' War many top officers were mercenaries, notably on the Habsburg side under *Wallenstein*. Not all were Catholics—Wallenstein himself was an agnostic mystic. They came from Scotland, England, Ireland, the Swiss cantons, and the many overrun and warring German states. In 1500 most European armies contained about one-third mercenary troops. Shortly after *Gustavus Adolphus*

Not all were Catholics—Wallenstein himself was an agnostic mystic.

intervened in the Thirty Years' War 130 years later his "Swedish Army" had become, through casualties and new recruitment, 80 percent foreign mercenaries wrapped around a core of Swedish veterans.

Among the most important effects of large numbers of greatly skilled, highly mobile, and utterly disloyal mercenaries, combined with the lethality of the cannons and firearms they employed, was to so threaten any self-respecting sovereign that it became essential to establish *standing armies* to protect the dynasty and realm. The answer to the anarchy, terror, and destruction caused by "Free Companies" of heavily armed and homeless men all over Europe thus became the law of kings. This was then enforced by soldiers in royal service who dressed in the king's colors, were paid regularly and sheltered year-round in barracks, who had stables for their mounts, magazines full of shot and powder, and national foundries and small arms industries to supply military needs. In short, the answer to mercenary anarchy was the modern state. See also *appatis*; *Armagnacs*; *baggage train*; *Bashi-Bazouks*; *Bernhard von Sachsen-Weimar; Bestallungbrief*; *Black Company*; *Catalan Great Company*; *galloglass*; *Hawkwood, John*; *Holk, Heinrich*; *itqa*; *kerne*; *Leslie, Walter*; *Mansfeld, Count Ernst Graf von*; *redshanks*; *Saracen*; *siege warfare*; *stradiots*; *Trabanten*.

Suggested Reading: S. Brown, "The Mercenary and his Master," *History*, 74 (1989); K. A. Fowler, *Medieval Mercenaries*, Vol. 1 (2001); M. E. Mallett, *Mercenaries and Their Masters* (1974); J. F. Verbruggen, *The Art of Warfare in Western Europe During the Middle Ages* (1977); David Worthington, *Scots in Habsburg Service, 1618–1648* (2004).

Mercy, Franz von (1590–1645). Imperial general. He joined the Austrian army at age 16 and rose through the ranks. He saw action at *First Breitenfeld* (1631) where he was wounded. Afterward, he fought *Bernhard* in the Rhineland. In 1638 he joined the army of the *Catholic League*. He defended Bavaria against the French in 1643 and won at *Tüttlingen*. He was pushed back from *Freiburg* (1644) by the *Great Condé* and *Turenne*. Mercy bested Turenne at *Mergentheim* (1645). He was defeated and killed three months later at *Second Nördlingen*.

Mergentheim, Battle of (May 2, 1645). One of the last major battles of the *Thirty Years' War*. It was sparked by *Turenne*'s marauding into Bavaria, as far south as the Tauber River. There, his men demanded a halt, made camp, and many went in search of fresh provisions. A Bavarian army under *Franz Mercy* caught the camp unprepared and poorly defended, at dawn. A short fight gave all of the baggage train and the French artillery to the Bavarians. Turenne fled with the survivors, to rejoin the *Great Condé* on the Rhine, preparatory to another drive south.

merlon. The solid block between two *crenels* on a castle or town wall providing protection to defenders firing on besiegers below or in an opposing *bastille* or *belfry*.

Mesopotamia. See *Iraq*.

Mestre. "Master." In the Iberian *Military Orders* the Mestre was the senior commander, with powers to call out the Brethren for combat or assign them to other duty.

mestres de camp. A German rank comparable to *colonel*. Not the same as the French *maître de camp*.

Methven, Battle of (1306). See *Scottish Wars*.

Metz, Fortress of. See *Cateau-Cambrésis, Peace of; Guise, François; Thirty Years' War*; *Westphalia, Peace of.*

Mewe, Battle of (1626). See *Gustavus II Adolphus*.

Mexico. See *Aztec Empire*; *conquistadores*; *Cortés, Hernán*; *disease*; *Moctezuma II*; *real patronato*; *requerimiento; Tenochtitlán, First Siege of*; *Tenochtitlán, Second Siege of*.

Mezókeresztes, Battle of (1596). See *Thirteen Years' War*.

midshipman. One of several classes of petty officers on an English warship in the 17th century.

Mikata ga Hara, Battle of (1572). See *Tokugawa Ieyasu*; *Unification Wars*.

Milan. See *armor*; *artillery train (2)*; *condottieri*; *expulsion of the Jews*; *Francis I*; *Giornico, battle of*; *Italian Renaissance*; *Italian Wars*; *Italy*; *Leonardo da Vinci*; *Lodi, Peace of*; *Marignano, battle of*; *palace guards*; *Sforza, Ludovico*; *Sforza, Maximilian*; *standing army*; *Swabian War*; *Venice.*

miles. A medieval warrior of the noble class or his armed retainers; a mounted and armored warrior, the ultimate soldier of the Middle Ages, not a peasant or town militiaman. While they formed a military and social elite, they were not a wholly closed class or order. Men of lower status could rise on their merits as soldiers to become miles, if they displayed rare courage in battle. This was solely an individual matter: the class as a whole excluded lower social orders in order to maintain a monopoly on military profits and prestige. Miles were fundamentally distinguished by wearing expensive *armor*. They wore mail to begin, but later plate or a combination of both. From the 11th century many wore conical helmets and used the *couched lance*, in addition to a double-edged sword and a mace or other clubbing weapon, and carried a shield. Their armor, weapons, and skills thereafter evolved with more general changes in war in Europe. See also *cavalry*; *knight*; *men-at-arms*.

***Militargrenze* (*vojna krajina*).** "Military frontier." In 1527, *Ferdinand I* of Austria established a frontier zone of land-based military obligations for Serbs

and Bosnian Vlachs migrating northward, away from the territorial advance of the Ottoman Empire. These were not so much feudal ties as a form of frontier garrisoning using local troops that did not draw down the treasury while redirecting bandit energies back against the Ottomans. To this end, the newcomers were left undisturbed to practice their Orthodox faith. Troops of the Militargrenze elected officers (''vojvode'') who led them on plundering expeditions. On the other side of the frontier the Ottomans also employed local Christian troops, so that each empire fought the other (or kept a long, hostile peace) via Vlach and Serb proxies. The Militargrenze grew in time into a band of territory that ranged from 20 to 60 sixty miles in width and over 1,000 miles in length. See also *Thirteen Years' War*; *voivodes*; *Voynuqs.*

military colonies. See *amsār*; *arma*; *Bedouin*; *commandery*; *conquistadores*; *Crusades*; *Great Wall*; *Hongwu emperor*; *Ireland*; *Livonian Order*; *Military Orders*; *Ming Army*; *Morocco*; *Normans*; *Ordensstaat*; *Saracen*; *Spain*; *Teutonic Knights, Order of.*

military discipline. There was almost no punishment in any medieval army in Europe for mistreatment of *civilians*, even if a soldier's crime included rape or murder. On many occasions, such as *Edward III*'s great *chevauchée* of 1339, even a king's order to spare a town from plunder and sack might be ignored by men whose interest in the campaign was just such profits and illicit pleasures. Outright disobedience even of the king in such matters did not usually incur punishment. As for infractions against company rules, most armies of the period could ill-afford to house or guard men who transgressed against their brother soldiers. As a result, whenever military punishment was applied it was swift, harsh, brutal, and physical. The *Janissary Corps* had to instill obedience in slave boys from the age of 6, raising them in all-male barracks far from their families with men as old as 40. A common penalty was beating the soles of their feet. After suffering a beating the offender was expected to kiss the hand of his beater to signal contrition and gain reacceptance into his unit. Janissary officers could be demoted, beaten, or executed, according to their particular crime. Execution methods were beheading or strangulation.

Maurits of Nassau tightened discipline in the Dutch ''new model army,'' publishing a modern code of military conduct in 1590 and setting up special tribunals inside garrisons to enforce it. The new code was read out to all recruits upon enlistment and annually to every unit in the army. For serious breaches capital punishment was the norm, notably hanging for rape or murder. So effective were these efforts, so sure the application of Dutch military justice, and so well and regularly paid were the troops, that well-behaved garrisons proved highly profitable for local traders in everything from foodstuffs to beer, clothes, nursing, and sexual services. By the early 17th century Dutch towns competed to host garrisons—an extraordinary request in an era where most everywhere else in Europe soldiers were feared, for excellent reasons, and loathed as the dregs of humanity with no place in civil society.

Gustavus Adolphus was a severe disciplinarian who punished for religious offenses as well as military ones. The punishments he employed, which spread from the Swedish Army to other armies in Germany from 1630, included *running the gauntlet*, putting men in stocks, public whipping, dunking offenders in icy ponds, and execution by firing squad. Unusually, like Maurits of Nassau, the great Swede punished for transgressions against civilians—the main sources of labor, provisions, and intelligence on enemy movements and operations—by assigning additional sentry or other tedious duty, or for more serious offenses, public humiliation, and flogging. Across the valley in the Imperial Army, *Albrecht von Wallenstein* had men decapitated for cowardice in battle while officers were executed for desertion of their posts or undue haste in surrendering strongpoints. The *New Model Army* in England encouraged internal and personal spiritual discipline, pointing to the example of the Lutheran piety of the Swedes. But Puritans took spiritual idealism to a new level of expected decorum that was close to the virginal rules imposed by the näif girl, *Jeanne d'Arc*, on French soldiers 200 years earlier, and beyond what might be reasonably expected of any company of men, let alone soldiers. Copies of the Puritan ''Laws of War'' were read out to each Roundhead regiment upon enlistment. Duly warned, men were thereafter punished for blasphemy, swearing, drunkenness, homosexual acts, adultery, unauthorized plunder, and avoiding religious services, along with the more usual military crimes of cowardice, rape, murder, theft from fellow soldiers, *mutiny*, and *desertion*. Punishment ranged from shaming, flogging, and the stocks to hanging. This level of zeal was only possible—leaving aside whether it was desirable—because the New Model Army was an unusually homogenous and mostly volunteer force united by confessional allegiance and political ideology. See also *Art of War*; *drill*; *Invincible Armada*; *Ivan IV*; *keel-haul*; *Laws of Olèron*; *Nachrichter*; *samurai*; ''*skulking way of war*.''

The punishments he employed . . . included running the gauntlet, *putting men in stocks, public whipping . . .*

military flail. A *staff weapon* of the late medieval period combining the best offensive features of a *mace* with the greater reach of a *lance*.

military fork. A *staff weapon* of the late medieval period. Two or three iron prongs were mounted on a stout staff along with iron hooks for snagging and unhorsing riders. It was used to stab through armor while the enemy was mounted or after he was pulled off his perch to flounder on the ground.

military labor. See *askeri*; *Baghdad, Siege of*; *beldar*; *camp followers*; *casting*; *culverin*; *gabions*; *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *Janissary Corps*; *lağimci*; *Maurits of Nassau*; *Ottoman warfare*; *war finance*.

military medicine. See *disease*; *wounds*.

Military Orders. In the latter half of the 11th century charitable Orders of lay Brethren were organized to run hospitals and alms houses to assist Christian pilgrims arriving in the ''Holy Land'' in the wake of the early success of the *Crusades*. Major hospitals were founded (in Jerusalem, and later on Cyprus, Malta, and Rhodes) in which the Brethren succored the ill and wounded, even as they learned and employed the advanced medical knowledge of the Muslim world. Through their hospices scattered across Western Europe they helped conduct this knowledge to the Latin world. Naïve and vulnerable pilgrims also needed protection from robbery, rape, murder, or kidnaping for ransom or sale into the slave markets of the Middle East. This prompted some nursing Brethren to arm. Once armed, the chronic need for military aid by the undermanned and thinly populated Crusader states encouraged formation of full-scale Military Orders. These each took their ''rule'' from an established monastic order (Cistercian and Augustinian were the most popular), and some received charters from the pope. This made them members of the clergy—''warrior monks''—within the tripartite feudal system of warriors, clergy, and laity. Members of Military Orders took vows of poverty, chastity, and obedience, venerated the cults of the ''Virgin Mary'' and the ''Immaculate Conception,'' and rode forth to convoy Christian faithful to and from the Holy Land. As a result the Military Orders were swept up into a greater Latin armed migration eastward, and quickly became the steel tip of the spear of the Latin *holy war* which aimed at conquest and occupation of Palestine and Syria. In the words of historian Desmond Seward, the Military Orders were also ''the first properly disciplined and officered troops in the West since Roman times.''

The three most important Military Orders to emerge out of the wars of the Middle East were the *Hospitallers*, *Templars*, and *Teutonic Knights*. Other truly international Military Orders were *Montjoie* and *St. Thomas*. More Brethren organized knightly Orders on regional lines, especially in Iberia. Most of these also crossed borders (which meant little in the time of the *res publica Christiana*) and had overseas *commanderies* but to a lesser extent than the major Orders. While such local Orders sent a few knights on crusades to the Middle East or the Baltic they usually fought against Muslims, pagans, or ''heretics'' closer to home. Several large Iberian Military Orders headed the *Reconquista*: the Knights of *Alcántara, Calatrava*, and *Santiago*. These knights manned fortified strongpoints in defense at first, but later conquered, occupied, and protected and cultivated lands that unarmed Christian peasants could not till for fear of Muslim *razzia* and *rabitos*. The Iberian Orders protected the valley approaches to Toledo and other urban centers of Christian rule and power. The *Order of Avis* rose to ultimate authority in Portugal, setting its head on the throne in 1385 as Juan I, and ruling Portugal until 1580 as the Aviz dynasty. Smaller independent Orders included *Monte-Frago, Santa Maria*, and *Turgel*; *Montesa* and *Christ*, made up of fragments of the broken Templars; *Knights in the Service of God in Prussia* (''Brothers of Dobrzyn''); and the Knighthood of Christ in Livonia (*Livonian Order*). Military Orders spread throughout the Latin world until members of the ruling elites of all Western countries that

counted themselves Christian were well represented in one or another. Society at large supported the Orders into the 15th century by sending them postulant knights, sergeants, clerics, and huge sums of money raised from dedicated lands, pious bequests, and wills. See also *Art of War*; *Johanniterorden*; *Knights of Santo Stefano*; *Ordensstaat*; *professed*; *Schlegelerbund*.

Suggested Reading: A. Forey, *Military Orders* (1992); Desmond Seward, *Monks of War* (1995).

military revolutions. See *artillery*; *broadside*; *Edward III*; *fortification*; *gunpowder weapons*; *infantry*; *revolution in military affairs*; *trace italienne*.

military slavery. See *Berbers*; *Devşirme system*; *galley slaves*; *ghulams*; *Janissary Corps*; *Maghreb*; *mamlūks*; *slavery and war.*

milites. *Knights* or mounted *men-at-arms*, not ordinary foot soldiers (''pedites''). See also *belatores*; *miles*.

militia. Town (or ''commune'') militia were especially important in this period in wars fought in Italy and Flanders, regions that hosted large towns and cities throughout the Middle Ages and early modern era. French monarchs drew heavily on militia to supplement *heavy cavalry* from the 13th century forward. Most raising of militia resulted from the need of towns to defend themselves from marauding bands of *Free Companies*. Large towns might raise several thousand during the 13th century, rising to tens of thousands by the 15th century. See also *arrière-ban*; *Brustem, Battle of*; *Cassel, Battle of*; *cavalry*; *Charles the Rash*; *condottieri*; *Courtrai, Battle of*; *Dithmarscher*; *Dutch Army*; *exact militia*; *feudalism*; *Flanders*; *French Civil Wars*; *German Peasant War*; *goedendag*; *gunpowder weapons*; *Hermandad*; *Indian Wars (North America)*; *infantry*; *Italian Renaissance*; *Italy*; *Landwere*; *lanze spezzate*; *Laupen, Battle of*; *Leiden, Siege of*; *Lipsius, Justus*; *Machiavelli, Niccolò di Bernardo; partisan (2); Pequot War; Piyadeğan militia; Prussia; Roosebeke, Battle of; routiers; Rumania; Saint-Denis, Battle of; schutterijen; standing army; St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres; Swiss Confederation; Tenth Penny; ''Time of Troubles''; trained bands; Treuga Dei; uniforms; waardgelders; war finance.*

militia Sancti Petri. ''Army of St. Peter.'' See *Papal States*.

milling. See *corning/corned gunpowder*.

Ming Army. The Ming dynasty (1368–1644) early on employed hereditary troops who lived in self-supporting military colonies on large grants of land straddling the Inner Asian frontier. They were organized into brigades of roughly 5,600 men, subdivided into 5 battalions of 10 companies each. Forty men in every company were designated as spearmen, 30 as archers, 20 as swordsmen, and 10 were armed with early handguns. The Ming also maintained

several training divisions. Three were located near Beijing with others outside Nanjing. One of the Beijing divisions conducted special training in firearms, a second taught tactics, and a third was for reconnaissance. Ming officers were often court eunuchs or trusted bureaucrats, a measure designed to prevent some general repeating the warlord's path to power taken by the Ming founder, *Hongwu*. An exception to this was the northern frontier, where the constant threat of *Mongol* raiding forced the Ming to commission generals attached to frontier garrisons. Eunuchs also controlled much military production—including of cannons and personal firearms—along with the central Ming armory, although a separate Weapons Bureau made mail, armor, swords, and spears. Strong in infantry, to counter the Mongol light horse the Ming hired Mongol auxiliaries to serve as light cavalry. By 1400 the Ming Army numbered over 1 million troops, making it by far the largest *standing army* in the world in sheer numbers, though not by proportion to available population. However, a century later many Ming soldiers had deserted while military families had died out or moved away from the frontier military colonies. By 1500 the Ming Army probably numbered fewer than 250,000 men, with many of dubious quality. See also *mutiny*.

Ming dynasty (1368–1644). See *China*; *Ming Army*.

Mingolsheim, Battle of (April 22, 1622). *Graf von Mansfeld* tried to prevent a Bavarian army under *Johann Tilly* from joining forces with a Spanish army. At Mingolsheim, Mansfeld successfully blocked and defeated Tilly, but this action merely delayed the junction of the Catholic armies the next month and did not prevent their ultimate conquest of the Palatinate. See also *Thirty Years' War*.

mining. Tunneling under the walls of a castle or town to undermine the foundation and allow gravity to open a breach. *Mottes* were especially susceptible to mining since they were usually surrounded by a dry ditch rather than a moat. When undermining a stone wall fires were lighted in a cavity dug below the base, with dead swine or other animal carcases added to bring fat to the fire and increase the heat to levels that cracked stone. Once gunpowder arrived at siege sites the hollow under the wall could be packed with black powder and exploded. This was quicker than fire but much more expensive, and not as common in Europe as it was in medieval Indian warfare, where powerful fortified cities presented much greater obstacles to the attackers. If a breach was opened the defenses might be taken by *storm*. The best defense against mining was to counter-mine, or tunnel under the attacker's tunnel to make it collapse before it reached the wall. To this end defenders placed bowls of water atop drums on the ground or on stretched skins on pegs, to observe ripples caused by disturbance of the earth by enemy miners. If countermining failed one could always drop boiling oils and water or heavy stones on the heads of attackers, or build a secondary wall behind the breach to shoot

them as they climbed through. See also *Constantinople, Siege of*; *fortification*; *Maastricht, Siege of*; *siege warfare*.

minion (1). A small early cannon or even ''handgun.'' These were ultra-light pieces that fired small stone balls or darts or arrows. They were a design dead end that gave way to the *arquebus* and *musket*.

minion (2). ''demi-saker,'' or ''media sacre.'' A 16th-century medium class of cannon that fired 6-pound shot to 450 yards effective smashing range and 3,500 yards maximum lobbing range.

miquelet. The most popular lock mechanism for *muskets* in Spain for over two centuries, beginning in the 17th century. It was preferred even to the advanced *flintlock* used elsewhere in Europe. Although it employed a flint, because of a distinct design and firing action it is not generally classified by historians with other flintlock weapons.

misericord. A short, double-edged dagger carried by *knights* during the latter Middle Ages. It was used mainly to deliver the coup de grâce to a fallen enemy by piercing his armor or plunging into unarmored zones such as the armpit or groin, or through the visor and eye into the brain.

missile weapons. See *arquebus*; *artillery*; *catapult*; *crossbow*; *longbow*; *muskets*; *pistols*; *trebuchet*.

Missio Hollandica. The Catholic political and confessional revival in Holland. It made substantial gains during the *Twelve Years' Truce* (1609–1621), peaking again in the late 17th century. See also *Jansenism*.

missionaries. See *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*; *Jesuits*; *jihad*; *Kongo, Kingdom of*; *Nagasaki*; *requerimiento*; *Sofala*; *Tokugawa shoguns*.

mitaille. See *grapeshot*.

mitrailleuses. Primitive, multi-barreled cannon or handguns. They were more commonly known as *ribaudequins*.

mizzen. See *masts*; *top*.

moat. A water-filled barrier surrounding a *castle* or a fortified town, principally to impede attackers from reaching and scaling the walls. They were less common than dry ditches. See also *fortification*; *motte-and-bailey*.

mobility. See *armor*; *artillery*; *Bedouin*; *cavalry*; *Cortés, Hernán*; *fortification*; *galleon*; *galley*; *gun carriages*; *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *infantry*; *logistics*; *Maurits of Nassau*; *Mongols*; *revolution in military affairs*; *Wallenstein, Albrecht von*; *warhorses*.

Moctezuma II (c.1470–1520). ''Montezuma'' or ''Motecuhzoma.'' Emperor of the *Aztec Empire* (r.1502–1520). From the beginning of his reign he continued the Aztec (Mexica) expansion of an already vast theocratic empire via conquest of neighboring Mezoamerican cities and tribes, and added new levels of authoritarianism to Aztec governance. This continued right up to his fateful encounter and dealings with *Hernán Cortés* and the *conquistadores*, including four unsuccessful wars with Tlaxcalan which ripened the hate of the Tlaxcalans for Tenochtitlán just before the Spanish arrived. The nature of Moctezuma's rule helps explain why the Spanish were able to muster so many anti-Aztec allies. Mesoamericans hated the Aztecs for their theocratic tyranny, arrogance, and enormous demands for human sacrifice and other tribute, and were happy to see Moctezuma and his empire fall. They used Cortés to that end as much or more than he used them. Moctezuma initially greeted Cortés with cautious diplomacy. Contrary to popular stories, he probably did not believe that Cortés was an incarnation of the Aztec god Topiltzin Quetazalcoatl, whose return out of the East (the traditional direction of authority among Mesoamericans) was prophesied for that year (''1 reed'' of the Aztec calendar, which codified a powerful religious belief in a recurring cycle of historical events). Moctezuma's military option was instead bound to the harvest season which was underway and which kept most of his army in the fields. And he needed to gather intelligence about the strange little army around which too many of his vassal tribes and enemy cities were already rallying in rebellion and opposition.

Moctezuma was probably murdered on the order of Cortés. Or he may have been killed by accident . . .

Moctezuma next tried the stratagem of luring the Spanish into the center of Cholallan, a nearby Aztec vassal city, where he planned a lethal ambush by troops hidden on the rooftops. The idea was a good one, but it was betrayed to Cortés by rebellious Indians and the Aztec ambush was instead itself ambushed by the Spanish. Moctezuma then made the fateful decision to allow Cortés to enter Tenochtitlán. He likely did this out of a pragmatic military motivation as well: he probably hoped to trap his enemies in an even larger and more hostile city. However, within two weeks Cortés sprang his own trap, seizing Moctezuma and holding him prisoner for six months. Moctezuma's failure to call for an immediate assault on Cortés was his major and ultimately fatal error. In early 1520 he formally declared his vassalage to *Charles V*. The Aztecs were enraged by Moctezuma's call for peace after so much bloodshed and the desecration of their most important shrines by the Spanish, and deposed him in favor of his brother Cuitláhuac. Moctezuma was probably murdered on the order of Cortés (the Aztec version). Or he may have been killed by accident during the *First Siege of Tenochtitlán* by missiles thrown by his own people out of contempt for his failure and appeasement of Spanish and Tlaxcalan occupiers (the Spanish version). One of his descendants later served as Spain's viceroy, 1697–1701.

Mogul Empire. See *Mughal Empire*.

Mohács, Battle of (August 29, 1526). The Hungarians were led by King Lajos (Louis) II against a huge Ottoman army under *Suleiman I*. To disrupt the alliance between Lajos and *Charles V*, and to expand his European provinces, Suleiman attacked up the Danube Valley starting in June 1526. The Hungarians, with about 25,000 men, chose to stand at Mohács. The Ottomans reached the field with about 60,000 men, having left tens of thousands behind as garrisons or strung out as stragglers. The sharp and bloody fight that ensued lasted only a few hours. Ottoman units arrived piecemeal, so that they were initially devastated by the concentrated Hungarians. Once the *Janissaries* and *timariots* arrived along with the main body, however, the Hungarians were badly overmatched not just in manpower but in martial skill and weaponry. The Hungarian right advanced enthusiastically but without proper support and was soon isolated. The Hungarian line was then broken by skilled Ottoman musketry and artillery, in which they had a great advantage since the Hungarians had only about 20 cannon to reply to Suleiman's nearly 300 heavy guns. The main event came when the Hungarian *heavy cavalry* was stopped cold by Janissary firepower, their devastating musketry well-supported by accurate artillery. Thousands of Hungarians were killed in just two hours of combat. When the fighting stopped thousands more were taken prisoner, then summarily beheaded. Ottoman losses were high but were more readily absorbed by a richer and more populous state. Mohács finished, in death and despair, the medieval army of Hungary. It also eliminated the last opposition to Ottoman control of the Balkans. Suleiman proceeded to conquer much of the region with the best trained, equipped, and financed army of the early modern world. The fight also made immediate military operations by Charles V in Germany against Lutheran princes impossible, thereby helping survival of *Martin Luther* and the *Protestant Reformation*.

Mohi, Battle of (1242). See *Hungary*; *Mongols*.

Moldova. This territory was progressively absorbed by the Ottoman Empire from the 15th century, and thus became an active frontier between the Ottomans, Austria, Poland, and the rising power of Muscovy. See also *March*.

monarchia universalis. "Universal Monarchy." A key motif of anti-*Habsburg* propaganda, especially during the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648) and the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). It argued that the Habsburgs were intent on restoring, or imposing, "beastly Spanish servitude" and Catholic orthodoxy over all of Europe. While this view was often sincerely held by contemporaries, research on Spanish foreign policy does not sustain the argument for a conscious drive for Spanish hegemony, certainly not past the reign of *Philip II*. See also *Lerma, Duke of*; *Olivares, conde-duque de*; *Philip III, of Spain*; *Philip IV, of Spain*.

Moncontour, Battle of (October 3, 1569). Following the Huguenot defeat at *Jarnac*, Moncontour was the second Protestant battlefield calamity in as many

engagements during the third of the *French Civil Wars*. Movement of the Royalist army enticed *Coligny* to lift his siege of Poitiers and offer battle. He met the Royalist force of some 26,000 men at Moncontour, in Poitou. The Huguenots were reinforced by German and Swiss mercenaries, but they were still heavily outmatched by the Catholics. A Royalist cavalry charge dispersed the Protestants with heavy losses. In hard fighting, some 5,000 Huguenots and German *Landsknechte* were killed (many of the later by the Swiss after they had surrendered). About as many more were wounded or captured. Most of Coligny's baggage train was lost in a panicky retreat. The Royalists lost but a few hundred men. The future *Henri III* was nominally in command on the Royalist side, thus gaining an early military reputation that he later failed to secure. On the Huguenot side, the young *Condé* earned his spurs while taking a slight wound to his face.

Mongols. The most expansive land empire in world history (Chinggisid Empire) was carved out by Mongol khans during the 12th–14th centuries. Their unparalleled martial success derived from superb mounted archers, superior battlefield communications and tactical coordination, and utter ruthlessness in dealing with all who resisted their cavalry "Blitzkrieg." It did not derive from the higher arts of civilization, which the Mongols, a people without permanent cities or great works of writing or science, did not possess. Mongols led hard, unforgiving nomadic lives. Males were fitted to the saddle with ropes by age 3, and most were skilled with a small bow at age 5. This turned every boy who survived (not all did) into a tough and resourceful horseman and every horseman into a warrior, while leaving equally tough and skilled women and children to handle the tents and herds. The Mongols thus mobilized a huge percentage of their otherwise thin population (about two million in 1200) for war. Horsemanship and superb mounted archery—the Mongols used short stirrups that allowed them to stand and shoot accurately while at a gallop—were key to Mongol success, both as hunters and as predatory raiders and conquerors.

Mongol warriors could survive on dried milk and meat, horse blood when necessary, and whatever they secured by the hunt while on the move. This made them remarkably mobile and often gained complete tactical surprise over more plodding armies of foot or armored *heavy cavalry*. Mongol warriors were armed with composite bows and several quivers of arrows, and they carried hooked lances to dehorse enemy riders. Some used scimitars (curved swords) for close-in work. As mounted archers they could not carry shields, so they made speed and accuracy of arrows their best defense. They had a superb command and control system that rested on wide scouting and advance intelligence, brought to commanders via a steppe "Pony Express" of couriers and fresh horse stations. And they enjoyed the great advantage of the steppe as a safe haven: on their grass-fed ponies they could raid and strike, or retreat, when and where they chose, living off the fat of the rich lands of China, India, the Middle East, and Russia. Their settled enemies employing grain-fed horses could neither adequately supply their own cavalry armies nor survive long if they ventured too deep into the Mongols' natural domain.

Expansion and Empire

For centuries the tribes of Mongolia were disunited and involved in petty civil wars. They only realized their latent military power when united in 1206 by Temüjin (1162–1227), better known by his warlord title of Chinggis (or Ghengis) Khan, which meant ''Mighty Ruler.'' By 1218, Chinggis subdued all Mongol rivals and some Turkic and Siberian nomads. One of his generals overran Kara-Khitay that same year. The next spring Chinggis led an army across the Jaxartes, invading Muslim lands for the first time. In 1220 he split his force into four armies. He circled around Bukhara with 40,000 horsemen, then took it by surprise from the west. He had the population butchered as an example to all who would resist him, then razed the city before returning to his tents. This was normal practice: the Mongols often sacked and plundered cities, but they had no taste for them otherwise and no intention to reside in them. Meanwhile, lieutenants took Samarkand and other great Muslim centers of learning and civilization, and more slaughter followed. The Mongol invasion thus permanently depopulated much of Central Asia by murder and pillage, two trademarks of Mongol warfare against settled civilizations. The next year commenced the Mongol conquest of eastern Iran.

Chinggis overran most of northern China 1217–1223; successors completed the Mongol conquest of the Jin Empire in 1234. The election of Kublai Khan (1214–1294) was contested, a fact that pulled many hordes back into Mongolia to fight out a succession war. This may well have saved Muscovy and even Central and Western Europe from invasion, defeat, and occupation. After Kublai Khan was secure in power he completed the conquest of China. The Southern Song held out for five years during the siege of their fortress city, Hsiang-Yang (1268–1273). The end of the Song dynasty came swiftly, however, after a final naval battle off Guangzhou (Canton) in April 1279, during which the last Southern Song child-emperor drowned. Thereafter, the Mongols ruled all China from Beijing as the Yuan dynasty, until they were ousted by *Hongwu* and the Ming in 1368. In the span of three generations after Chinggis the Mongols had conquered much of Eurasia, overrunning most of Russia, Central Asia, and large parts of the Middle East. They deeply frightened Western Europe and interrupted the long wars between Muslims and the Crusader kingdoms.

In 1234 the Mongols did what no sultan had been able to: they drove the *Assassins* from their mountain fastness at Alamut. In 1240, Mongol armies defeated the Iranians at Jand and added western Iran to the empire of the Great Khans. In April 1241, a Mongol army defeated the Poles at Cracow, then the *Teutonic Knights* at Liegnitz. A year later a horde wiped out the Hungarians at Mohi. In 1243 the Mongols crushed the *Seljuk Turks* in Anatolia. At mid-century they attacked into Georgia and Armenia and scouted northern Iraq. Now began a concerted effort to conquer all the Islamic lands of the Middle East. In 1258 an Asian horde reinforced by the Golden Horde of Russia and led by Hulagu, a Buddhist convert married to a Christian, moved against the Abbasid caliphs in Baghdad. In the greatest

humiliation suffered by Islam they breached Baghdad's walls and sacked the city for a week, putting most of the population to the sword. They captured caliph al-Musta'şim and his family and entourage, and put them all to death. That closed the classical age of Islam and ended the preeminence of Baghdad and Iraq in the Muslim world as the remnants of the Abbasids fled to Egypt.

Even so, the destructive impact of the Mongols on Islam can be exaggerated. Recent scholarship suggests that while occupied Muslim lands suffered greatly, in Syria, Egypt, and North Africa Islamic regimes and societies held their own. Indeed, at *Ayn Jālut* (''The Spring of Goliath'') in Galilee a *mamlūk* army out of Egypt defeated the Mongols in 1260, forestalling a planned invasion of Egypt and North Africa. The mamlūks subsequently blocked multiple Mongol attempts to invade Syria, annexing it themselves as a protected province of their slave soldier empire. Also, the Golden Horde Mongols eventually converted to *sunni* Islam. That divided them from other hordes and encouraged a semi-alliance with the Mamlūk overlords of Syria and Egypt. The Golden Horde then clashed with an Asian horde at the Terek River in 1262. This horde suffered a second defeat in Syria at mamlūk hands at Homs (1281). Meanwhile, the governing Mongols (Il-Khans) in Iran converted to *shi'ia* Islam in 1295 and governed fairly well thereafter through the literate Iranian elite.

Although the Mongols were the dominant land power of the 12th–14th centuries, they were not so adept at sea. Kublai Khan sent vast armies to invade Japan, carted there by Chinese and Korean junks and pilots. These attempts were repulsed at *Hakata Bay* in 1274 and again in 1281 by a combination of bad weather and determined defenders. The Mongols also tried amphibious invasions of Burma, Java, Siam, and Vietnam during the 13th century, and failed in every case.

A wave of Turkic invaders conquered north India ahead of the Mongols: the Khaljis took control of Delhi in 1290. The Muslim state they established there beat back a Mongol invasion out of Afghanistan during the first decade of the 14th century, though not without seeing Delhi partially sacked and plundered. These Turkic invaders may thus have preserved India from worse depredations by the Mongols, deflecting the hordes instead into Ukraine and southern Muscovy. Various Mongol regimes ruled parts of Central Asia until defeated by *Timur*. The Mongol ''Khanate of the Golden Horde,'' a sunni Muslim and largely Kipchack state, ruled the Caucasus, Ukraine, and southwestern Russia from the 13th to 15th centuries. It was pushed onto the defensive after a defeat by Muscovy in 1380. In the mid-15th century Mongolia revived after a century of depression of its population due to the *Black Death*. Extensive raiding of Ming China followed and provoked a Ming invasion of Mongolia itself. That led an entire Ming army to be outmaneuvered and wiped out at *Tumu* in 1449. After 1474 the Ming concentrated on adding hundreds of

In the mid-15th century Mongolia revived after a century of depression of its population due to the Black Death.

miles of *Great Wall*, behind which they huddled in fear of the Mongols (and Manchus). A Ming army sallied against the Mongols and won in 1517 and in 1522 Mongol trade privileges were revoked, but that only led to annual border warfare through the 1540s as Mongol warlords tried to force a restoration of trade. In 1550, Altan Khan skirted the Great Wall to the north then raced south to savage the suburbs of Beijing for three days, unchallenged by the city's frightened garrison.

Legacy

What was the Mongol legacy? Modern scholarship has revised the older view that in all places barbarism, cruelty, and the fundamentally parasitical nature of Mongol warrior culture worsened local despotic traditions and held back ideas and social forces which might have advanced civilization and hastened modernity. This more extreme view was succinctly put by the Russian poet Alexandr Pushkin, who contrasted medieval Muscovy's misfortune under the Mongols with the more fruitful encounter between Islam and Western Europe. The Mongols, he said, were ''Arabs without Aristotle or algebra.'' In Iraq, this older view of devastation and decline of classical Islam under the Mongols holds true. Elsewhere, while Mongol warfare was terrifying and destructive, their regimes did not significantly alter classical Islamic or Chinese civilization. There were even some positive results from the Mongol conquest, albeit effects not intended by the Great Khans. For instance, Iran enjoyed relative peace and stability after it was overrun, though a cultural renaissance only occurred in the post-Mongol era (13th–14th centuries). The Mongols actually restored long-term order in several lands previously disrupted and opened to repeated invasion by local tribal feuds and endemic nomad and clan warfare. Finally, the unity of the Mongol empire facilitated a revived trade along the old Silk Road and led to diffusion of civilian culture and military technology alike from Asia to the Middle East and Europe, and thence back to Asia. This had far-reaching effects on those parts of the Islamic world the Mongols occupied. And it afforded Christians in Europe more contact with Asia by eliminating Muslim middleman regimes that had previously blocked direct travel overland to China. See also *Bedouin*; *Inner Asia*; *Ming Army*.

Suggested Reading: S. Adshead, *Central Asia in World History* (1994); R. Amitai-Preiss and David Morgan, eds., *The Mongol Empire and its Legacy* (1999); Nicola Cosomo, *Warfare in Inner Asian History, 500–1800* (2002); Leo de Hartog, *Ghengis Khan, Conqueror of the World* (1989); Luc Kwanten, *Imperial Nomads* (1979); J. Langlois, ed., *China Under Mongol Rule* (1981); David Morgan, *The Mongols* (1986); Paul Ratchnevsky, *Ghengis Khan* (1992); Morris Rossabi, *Khubilai Khan* (1988).

Monk, George (1608–1670). English general. He was an experienced soldier, fighting in Flanders and Germany from 1629 to 1638 well before the outbreak of the *English Civil Wars*. A pragmatist isolated among confessional and class fanatics, he began on the Royalist side but switched to fight for Parliament after being taken prisoner. He fought in Ireland from 1646 to 1649, and at

Dunbar (1650). His most important exploits occurred during the later Anglo-Dutch Wars and in English domestic politics during the 1650s–1660s. He also played a key role in the Restoration. See also *Art of War*.

Mons-en-Pévèle, Battle of (August 18, 1304). Just two years after the spectacular Flemish militia victory over a French army of *heavy cavalry* at *Courtrai* (1302), Philip IV (''The Fair'') sent another chivalric army into Flanders to reassert his overlordship. This time the Flemings did not have the advantage of marshy ground, though to their rear they lashed together disabled wagons with chains. For several hours the two sides did nothing. Hoping to provoke the French, the Flemings finally advanced. Although when the clash came the Flemings held as steady as they had at Courtrai, the French horse this time broke their formation, allowing men-at-arms to come among them with lance and sword. As the Flemings ran the terrible armored men on *destriers* rode them down, killing as many as 6,000 in a blood revenge taken without mercy.

Monsieur, Peace of (1576). See *Edict of Beaulieu*; *French Civil Wars*.

Montecuccoli, Raimundo (1609–1680). Habsburg general. He first saw action in 1625 at age 16. He fought in the Imperial defeats at *First Breitenfeld* (1631) and *Lützen* (1632), and the Imperial victory at *First Nördlingen* (1634). He was taken prisoner by the Swedes at *Wittstock* (1636) and held to 1642. He defeated a Swedish army at Troppau (1642). From 1644 to 1646 he fought in Hungary. In 1647 he beat the Swedes again, at Triebel; however, he was defeated at *Zusmarshausen* (1648). His more famous military exploits were performed after 1648, when he also composed his even more influential writings.

Montezuma II. See *Moctezuma II*.

Montfort, John. See *War of the Breton Succession*.

Montfort, Simon de (d.1218). See *Albigensian Crusade*.

Montiel, Battle of (1369). See *Pedro the Cruel*.

Montihéry, Battle of (1465). See *League of Public Weal*; *Louis XI*.

Montijo, Battle of (1644). Four years after regaining independence from Spain, Portugal invaded western Spain in retaliation for continuing Spanish plots against the Portuguese monarchy. With Spain still bogged down in the *Eighty Years' War* with the Netherlands and another long war with France, the Portuguese won an easy victory that secured them from further interference for a dozen years, though it did not bring formal peace.

Montjoie, Knights of. See *Knights of Our Lady of Montjoie*.

Montmorency, Anne, duc de (1493–1567). Marshal of France; Constable of France. He fought in the *Italian Wars* for *Francis I*, who raised him to the rank of maréchal in 1522. Along with his king he was captured at *Pavia* (1525). In 1538 he was made Constable of France, de facto head of the French Army. At *Saint Quentin* (1557) Montmorency was again bested by the Spanish and taken prisoner. He was a close friend of *Henri II*, a fact that initially led the radical Catholic *Guise* to shut him out of power after Henri's accidental death in 1558. Setting aside old differences, Montmorency joined the Guise in 1561 in a grand Catholic alliance that sought to drive armed Protestantism from France. He was a leading figure on the Catholic side in the first *French Civil War*, despite the fact that three of his nephews from Châtillon fought against him as fresh converts to the Huguenot faith, most notably *Gaspard de Coligny*, Admiral of France. Montmorency was captured for a third time at *Dreux* (1562). Five years later, at age 74, he was fatally wounded in the midst of his victory at *Saint-Denis* (1567). Shot in the spine during a mêlée, he was carried from the field by his sons and died two days later.

Montpellier, Peace of (1622). See *French Civil Wars*.

Montrose, Marquis of (1612–1650). Né James Graham; Scottish soldier. A *Covenanter* in 1638, he served under *Alexander Leslie* in the *Bishops' Wars*. He was hounded out of the Covenanter army by his lifelong enemy, the *Marquis of Argyll*. Montrose turned coat and led the Royalists in Scotland. He was always able to strike fast and boldly (he took Aberdeen four times), but never had the resources or men to hold what he took and was repeatedly compelled to retreat to the Highlands. A desperate *Charles I* named him Captain-General in Scotland in 1644. Montrose bested a Covenanter army at *Tippermuir* (September 1, 1644). At Inverlochy (February 2, 1645) he crushed a force of Campbells, and three times in the summer of 1645 he beat superior Covenanter forces: at *Auldearn* (May 9), *Alford* (July 2), and *Kilsyth* (August 15), where he bested Argyll. Glasgow and Edinburgh both submitted. That was as much success as should have been expected, but Charles wanted far more. He called Montrose south to invade England, a move far beyond his meager resources. Montrose obeyed only to meet disaster at *Philiphaugh* (1645), after which Charles characteristically repudiated him in a vain effort to make peace with the Scottish Covenanters. Montrose left for five years in exile. He returned to Scotland in 1650 with 1,500 men to fight for Charles II. Some Highlanders rallied to his flag; most of his countrymen did not. Montrose was taken by surprise and routed at *Carbiesdale* (April 27). He was betrayed out of hiding and hanged by Argyll at Edinburgh (May 21), his corpse dismembered and scattered. A master of *la guerre guerroyante*, Montrose was a faithful servant of faithless masters who paid with his life for serial political misjudgments.

Monzón, Treaty of (May 1626). As *Huguenot* rebellion broke out again in January 1625, *Cardinal Richelieu* turned away from potential alliance with

Protestant England and the Netherlands to seek a temporary rapprochement with Catholic Spain. He negotiated this treaty surrendering the strategic alpine valley of the *Valtelline*, permitting Spanish troops and supplies to again move between the Tyrol and Milan along the *Spanish Road*. As he regained strength in the early 1630s, he again moved to block Spanish movements and oppose Madrid's ambitions and policies.

Mookerheyde, Battle of (April 14, 1574). Fought near the River Meuse early in the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648). *Louis of Nassau* led a mixed Dutch, Huguenot, and German mercenary force 7,500 strong. The Spanish opposed with 6,000 men, about 90 percent tough *tercio* infantry fighting under *Luis Requesens y Zúñiga*. At the start of the battle the Germans deserted Louis of Nassau and the Dutch troops were routed with heavy casualties. Louis and Henry of Nassau were both killed.

Moors. Berber and Arab peoples of the Maghreb and Muslim Iberia. See also *Castile*; *expulsion of the Moors*; *Granada*; *Inquisition*; *mudéjar*; *Philip II, of Spain*; *Philip III, of Spain*; *Philip IV, of Spain*; *Spain*.

Morat, Battle of (June 9–22, 1476). "Murten." Swiss lack of cavalry contributed to a failure to pursue and finish off the Burgundians at *Grandson* (March 2, 1476). That allowed *Charles the Rash* to withdraw and to reform an army of 22,000 ducal, Milanese, and mercenary troops (including English longbowmen and *Landsknechte* infantry). He also cobbled together a new artillery train to replace the 400 guns lost at Grandson. Within three months he was ready. On June 9, 1476, he besieged the garrison town of Morat. There he faced his old Grandson guns which the Bernese had emplaced atop the walls. Several rash Burgundian assaults were repelled by the guns, but Charles was able to get his largest siege pieces into position by June 17 and these blew great gaps in the city's defenses. Into these breaches he sent infantry to take the city by storm. After a full day of hand-to-hand fighting the Swiss still held, guarding the smoking gaps. Meanwhile, a relief column of 25,000 tough troops from the *Swiss Confederation* and another 1,800 Lorrainer cavalry made for Morat. Learning this, Charles personally chose the ground for the coming battle and fortified it with a "Grünhag" (earthwork palisade) paralleling a forward-lying ditch. His rear rested securely at the foot of a wooded hill. For a week the Burgundians manned the Grünhag and waited as Charles grew ever more impatient with each false alarum. He sent out scouts to locate the Swiss encampment then rashly repositioned the bulk of his army in fields in front of the Grünhag, leaving just 3,000 men to hold the earthworks.

Seeing this, the Swiss seized the initiative. They sent a 5,000 man *Vorhut* forward to pin the Burgundians down with harassing fire from crossbows and arquebuses. The Vorhut was supported by a 12,000-man *Gewalthut* moving in echelon, which was highly unusual for the Swiss, on the left. Free to maneuver to either flank or to assault the rear of the Burgundian position was a third square,

a 7,000-man *Nachhut*. The Vorhut, along with allied cavalry from Lorraine, attacked the Grünhag directly. The advance was slowed by sharp casualties inflicted by longbowmen and Charles' artillery, which was in fixed position behind the Grünhag. The main square recovered and with ''push of pike'' swept over the earthworks, killing most of the defenders. This released the Vorhut to continue its advance toward the main Burgundian force. When the Vorhut collided with Charles' men neither side was in tactically disciplined formation: the fighting was disorderly, hand-to-hand, and extremely bloody. Also charging into the Burgundians was the oversized Gewalthut, supported by hundreds of allied horse from Lorraine. In the interim, the smaller Nachhut completed a planned encirclement of the main Burgundian position aided by a distracting sortie by the Swiss garrison out of Morat. A mêlée ensued during which most of the Burgundian foot were slaughtered with the usual Swiss efficiency and ignorance of quarter. Many men-at-arms were driven into the water of nearby Lake Morat, where they drowned under deadweight of their own armor. Or they were cut down along the shoreline after discarding armor and weapons to better run from the pursuing Swiss foot and ruthless Lorrainer cavalry. Confederate casualties ranged between 400 to 500 men, whereas Burgundian dead reached close to 12,000. And Charles had again lost his artillery train, further weakening him even as its capture strengthened the Swiss. After Morat came the climactic battle of the Burgundian Wars, at *Nancy* (1477).

Moray's Rebellion (1565). See *Mary Stuart, Queen of Scots*.

Mordax. A small Swiss battle axe, cousin to the *halberd*. It was mainly used by the close guard of the *Banner* in the midst of a *Swiss square*. It was swung or thrown as need and opportunity dictated. It also proved useful in felling trees and rough construction of defensive earthworks and palisades (*Letzinen*).

More, Thomas (1478–1535). See *Cromwell, Thomas*; *Henry VIII, of England*.

Morgarten, Battle of (November 15, 1315). The battle was provoked by a raid made by men of the Canton of Schwyz against a neighboring abbey at Einsiedeln, which was under Habsburg protection. Duke Leopold I led an Austrian force of 2,000 knights and 7,000 foot to punish Schwyz. The Swiss numbered only 900 ''oath brothers'' (''eidgenossen'') from Schwyz, plus 300 auxiliaries from Uri and 100 more from Unterwalden, the other ''Forest Cantons.'' They took position behind earthen fortifications built across a narrow alpine valley blocking the pass at Morgarten. The Austrians made a fatal mistake; they advanced up the narrow valley in column, with knights in the van. Obstacles on the trail forced the Austrians onto a narrow path between the mountain and Lake Aegeri, one not easily navigated by *destriers* and armored men. The steep terrain made it impossible to form for a charge, the standard tactic of medieval *heavy cavalry*. When the van reached a preselected clearing a detachment of Swiss blocked its advance, harassing the knights with crossbows fired from behind earth-and-log barriers. With the

column fixed, follow-on knights clogged the clearing. More Swiss felled trees to block the way back and took up firing positions behind the van, cutting it off from the Austrian infantry strung out along the mountain path and well out of the fight.

The main body of Swiss attacked the confounded knights, running downslope into an ill-formed and confusedly milling body of armored horsemen. Some Swiss rolled logs and boulders into the clearing, breaking the legs of warhorses and unseating riders. Others hurled stones at the knights or fired crossbows at close-range from behind the cover of trees. Finally, the Swiss closed for the kill swinging *halberds* and battle-axes, wreaking bloody mayhem among the Austrians. Panic set in as knights turned to flee the clearing but found themselves trapped. Many floundered in reeds of a broad marsh that abutted nearby Lake Aegeri. As the knights and their mounts struggled to escape the mud Swiss peasants and townsmen from the Forest Cantons cooly dispatched hundreds, showing no mercy as they pulled nobles from aloof saddle perches and butchered them on the ground. Hundreds were hacked and stabbed to death; some had their hearts cut out as trophies by the ferocious Swiss. About 1,500 to 2,000 Austrian knights were killed while the Swiss suffered only modest losses. As all this was happening the Austrian infantry fled the pass and retreated from the valley.

Finally, the Swiss closed for the kill swinging halberds *and battle-axes, wreaking bloody mayhem . . .*

It remained to be seen whether the Swiss could handle heavy horse on open plains, but in their mountain homes henceforth they were unassailable. And when they next met knights in battle halberdiers and axemen would be protected by more pikes and crossbows and the emerging tactics of the *Swiss square*. Politically, the Swiss victory at the pass of Morgarten strengthened ties among the cantons and advanced consolidation of the Swiss Confederation. Some scholars think that Swiss tactics owed something to the lessons of the famous Flemish victory at *Courtrai* (1302), but the difference in terrain (mountains versus marshland) and the offensive posture of the Swiss ambush militate against that conclusion.

Suggested Reading: Douglas Miller and Gerry Embleton, *The Swiss at War, 1300–1500* (1979).

Morgenstern. ''Morning Star.'' A staff weapon of the late medieval period in Germany. It combined hitting characteristics of the *mace* with the greater reach of a *lance*.

morion. A 16th-century, open-faced steel helmet with a broad outer rim and cheek pieces. It was roughly descended from the *chapel-de-fer*. It was lined, with a chin strap and plume holder. Because they offered an unobstructed view they were the favored helmets of musketeers and archers. A fancy variant was the ''comb morion,'' which had a drooped brim and upturned peak, like a rooster's comb. See also *cabasset*.

Moriscos. Iberian Muslims who converted to Christianity either sincerely or more often to avoid expulsion, fines, or the fires of an *auto de fe*. See also *conversos*; *expulsion of the Moors*; *Inquisition*; *mudéjar*; *Philip II, of Spain*; *Philip III, of Spain*; *Philip IV, of Spain*.

"Morning Star." See *Morgenstern*.

Morocco. From the 11th to mid-13th centuries, North Africa and southern Spain were ruled by a *Berber* dynasty (Almohads) based in Morocco. The Marinds succeeded the Almohads in 1248 and moved the Imperial capital to Fez. By the 15th century Morocco entered a long decline related to, and paralleling, the rise of rival Portuguese naval power which circumvented its erstwhile monopoly on the trans-Saharan trade in gold, salt, and slaves. In 1415 the Portuguese took *Ceuta* and in 1471 they captured *Tangier*. In 1472, Wattazid viziers seized the sultanate from the Marinds. At the start of the 16th century Portugal took control of several Moroccan ports. Morocco might have become a mere coastal colony of Portugal had not radicalized Muslims from the desert, led by *marabout* sharifs of the Atlas Mountains, expelled the Portuguese and Wattazid "usurpers" by 1550. The sharifs later divided, as holy men in power are wont to do. Some allied with Christian Portugal while others sought aid from the Ottoman Empire. This provoked a long civil war that ended only when a Portuguese invasion led to the "Battle of the Three Kings," or *Alcazarquivir*, in 1578. The winner of the struggle died shortly after the battle; his brother, Mawlai Ahmad al-Mansur (r.1578–1603), then seized power. He proved a spectacular success: he introduced firearms and mercenaries to the army, moved the capital to Marakesh, and expanded into the desert, seizing control of the caravan trade. He sent a large military expedition through the deep Sahara, 1590–1591, to conquer distant *Songhay*, taking Gao, Jenne, and Timbuktu. Songhay's medieval army succumbed to the Moroccans' superior military technology despite outnumbering them by 20:1. Morocco thus gained a vast desert and tributary empire stretching as far as Timbuktu and Jenne. The tie was broken in 1618, however, when the continuing fruits of conquest and occupation failed to meet expectations and most Moroccans lost interest in their distant military colony. The "Moors of Timbuktu" held onto power deep inside the desert, de facto independent while still governing de jure in the name of Morocco. Even that ended when the *arma* broke the imperial tie. Meanwhile, Morocco fell into yet another succession crisis and did not regain internal stability until the 1660s when the Alawids, a new dynasty of marabout sharifs, seized power.

Suggested Reading: Weston Cook, *The Hundred Years' War for Morocco* (1994).

Morozov riots (1648). See *Muscovy, Grand Duchy of*.

mortar. A stubby, short-range artillery piece with thin barrel walls designed to lob heavy solid shot or shells at high angles (45° or more) on a parabolic

trajectory, so as to bring indirect fire down beyond the walls of fortified enemy positions. Another use was shore-to-ship fire, though this can hardly have been successful other than by occasional luck or accident. Early mortars were little more than small pots fixed to boards or dug into the earth. Later, in Germany, multiple mortars mounted on a turntable were cast, allowing for rapid firing at the same target. Next came the pedrero class, which fired a stone ball as far as a cannon might fire an iron one. An ''average'' pedrero weighed 3,000 pounds and could lob a 30-pound stone ball to 500 yards effective range and 2,500 yards maximum range. ''Heavy mortars'' (the term referred to the weight of shot, not the gun, which weighed five tons or more) were used exclusively in siege warfare. They took whole bales of black powder to throw 200-pound stone shot to 1,000 yards effective range and 2,000 yards maximum range. At the siege of *Constantinople* in 1453 the Ottomans deployed a heavy mortar to lob ordnance over the triple walls of the city, landing incendiaries and crushing living quarters. See also *bombard*.

Mortimer's Cross, Battle of (1461). See *Wars of the Roses*.

Mossi states. Ouagadougou, Tengkodogo, and Yatenga. From the 11th century, like other desert and Sahel polities, they relied primarily on armored cavalry to conduct slave raids into neighboring lands. The Mossi states held off the more powerful *Mali* and *Songhay* empires into the 16th century. Then the whole region was buffeted by larger imperial clashes stemming from the slave trade, the gunpowder revolution finally reaching West Africa, and a fundamentalist revival of *Islam* in the deep desert.

motte. See *castles, on land*; *motte-and-bailey*; *Normans*.

motte-and-bailey. A motte was an artificial earthen mound (though often sited on a natural rise) built up as a basic *castle* (or *fortification*). Its sloped face aided defense against cavalry and gave a height advantage to missile troops. Mottes have been measured at 50 or 60 feet high and 90 to 100 feet in diameter, but most were smaller than that. They were normally surrounded by a *bailey*, a ringwork timber fort on the other side of a moat or dry ditch dug around the motte while building up its height. The motte and the bailey were then connected by a small bridge or a drawbridge that could be broken or burned in the event the bailey was stormed and a last stand was called for from the motte. The bailey permitted livestock and villagers to take refuge inside a basic fort and allowed stockpiling of supplies. Additional baileys were added as need arose or population grew. The motte-and-bailey fort probably originated in Anjou, where Duke William of Normandy (''The Conqueror'') first learned of them. When he launched the Norman conquest of England in 1066 he built a motte-and-bailey fort as soon as he landed, at Pevensey, and another at Hastings two days later, before the arrival of the Wessex army under King Harold. As the Normans moved inland they dotted the countryside with at least 500 motte-and-bailey ''castles.'' These acted in an

offensive as well as defensive role, securing ever more territory with small garrisons. The great weakness of motte-and-bailey forts was their high susceptibility to breach of the bailey by *mining* or *fire*. Still, they were so cost-effective that it was only much later that a stone *keep* was built atop the motte and the simple wooden bailey replaced by a stone enclosure. Motte-and-bailey forts were built from Scandinavia to Italy and Iberia, as well as in Anjou, Normandy, and England. They were still being built in militarily backward Ireland and Scotland and other fringe areas in the 13th century, well after stone castles replaced them most everywhere else. See also *Bergfreid*; *donjon*; *keep-and-bailey*.

mounted shock combat. See *shock*.

Mountjoy, Baron of (1562–1606). Né Charles Blount. English general. He fought for *Elizabeth I* in Flanders and was in the squadron which *Richard Grenville* saved by his sacrifice in the Azores. In 1598, Mountjoy was appointed to lead the Queen's armies in Ireland fighting the *Nine Years' War* (1594–1603) against the rebellious Earl of Tyrone and his Spanish allies. Mountjoy trounced the Irish-Spanish armies at *Kinsale*, on Christmas Eve, 1601. Later, he urged clemency for his defeated enemies.

mourning war. A practice of the Indian nations of eastern North America wherein the emphasis in war was placed on taking prisoners who were then adopted into the tribe. This was one way of maintaining population levels critical to military success in face of extraordinary rates of death from new epidemic diseases that arrived with European settlers and African slaves.

moyen/moyenne. A cannon of intermediate size. It was one of six standard French guns from the mid-16th century.

Mozambique. See *Sofala*.

mudéjar. Muslims subjected to Christian rule as the *Reconquista* advanced over Iberia. Many were used as agricultural slaves on the estates of the Christian *Military Orders*. See also *Ferdinand II, of Aragon and Isabella I, of Castile*; *Inquisition*; *Knights of Calatrava*; *Moors*; *Philip II, of Spain*; *Portugal*; *Spain*.

mufflers. Sleeves of *mail* that covered the outer hands; usually worn in combination with a *hauberk*.

Mughal Army. The great Muslim empire in India maintained the second largest *standing army* in the world in this era, in terms of sheer numbers of men and beasts (horses, bullocks, and camels). Tens of thousands of permanent troops were maintained, along with an *elephant* corps. From the 15th century the Mughals attached an artillery train. The bulk of the army was poorly trained infantry, so that its real striking power remained *heavy cavalry*

well into the 17th century. See also *fitna*; *mansabdari*; *mulkgiri*; *Panipat, Battle of (November 5, 1556)*; *warhorses*.

Suggested Reading: W. Irvine, *The Army of the Indian Mughals* (1903).

Mughal Empire (1526–1857). ''Mughal'' is a corruption of ''Mongol,'' which accurately referred to the *Timurid* origins of its founder, *Babur*, King of Kabul. Mughal rule was established on the ruins of the *Delhi Sultanate* a decade after Babur was forced to retreat from Samarkand to Kabul by the *Uzbeks*, in 1512. Restless in barren Afghanistan, he looked to fragmented, ill-defended northern India to seize a rich new patrimony. Babur defeated and killed the last Delhi sultan at *Panipat* (1526), and erected the Mughal Empire in place of the older Muslim state, which he secured by victory over the *Rajputs* at *Khanwa* (1527). Consolidation of this new *''gunpowder empire''* took from 1526 to 1555, with extensive fighting against *Sher Khan*'s rival empire based in Bengal, until Sher Khan chased Babur's son Humayun into Iran and mounted the Mughal throne from 1540 to 1545. The Empire reached its southern limits at the Deccan where Mughal artillery was harder to move and deploy and resistance to conquest by the *Marathas* more effective.

The *sunni* Mughals ruled most of northern India for 200 years. In 1572 they conquered and annexed *Gujarat*. With the conquest of Bengal the Mughal Empire straddled northern India and controlled its rich seaborne commerce. Humayun's son, *Akbar*, seized power from his regent in 1562. He encouraged broad tolerance of *Hindus* and other non-Muslims, and thereby ruled effectively a huge state of perhaps 100 million souls which was stable as well as fabulously wealthy and powerful. While broadly tolerant of various religious groups, the Mughal state was harsh, inequitable, and often cruel in its treatment of individuals. And it was extravagant: Emperor Shah Jahan (1592–1666) commissioned assembly of the Peacock Throne and built the Taj Mahal as a tomb for his wife, Mumtaz Mahal (d.1631). This took 20 years and 20,000 laborers, all to indulge a latter-day Pharonic display of unchecked power, exploited labor, and expropriated wealth. The main threat to Mughal power at first was *Safavid* Iran. Intermittent warfare continued along the northwest frontier for many decades. The Hindu Deccan was also a *March* of war. Its independent warrior societies revolted repeatedly against the Mughals. Opposition might be provoked by famine but drew as well on a resilient Hindu resistance to Muslim overlordship. In 1646, Shah Jahan dispatched a two-year expedition to capture the dynasty's ancestral capital, Samarkand. It failed. See also *fitna*; *mansabdari*; *mulkgiri*; *Panipat, Battle of (November 5, 1556)*.

Suggested Reading: M. Alam and S. Subrahmanyan, *The Mughal State, 1526–1750* (1998); John Richards, *The Mughal Empire* (1993); Douglas Stresusand, *The Formation of the Mughal Empire* (1999).

Muhammad I (r.1413–1421). Ottoman sultan. His father, *Bayezid I*, committed suicide after his capture by the Tatar-Mongol army that sacked Damascus and Baghdad and then was led to victory by *Timur* at *Ankara* (1402). There

followed an 11-year war of succession among Bayezid's several sons, with Muhammad finally winning over his brothers in 1413. His reign was always troubled by internal rebellions, however. It was left to his successor, *Murad II*, to restore stability and resume the Ottoman march of conquest.

Muhammad II (1430–1481). ''Fatih'' (''The Conqueror''); ''Mehemet'' (in Turkish); Sultan, 1451–1481. *Janissary Corps* disgruntlement over pay led to a mutiny at Buçuk Tepe in 1446 that delayed the planned ascent of Muhammad to the throne until his father's death in 1551. Muhammad was a military reformer of great note. He expanded the Janissary Corps, adding whole divisions, improving weaponry, and making these professional troops central to his military system. He then deployed the reformed Ottoman army to achieve a long-desired goal of the Ottoman Empire and of all prior Islamic empires in Anatolia: he besieged and took *Constantinople* in 1453 and extinguished the last embers of the Byzantine Empire. To accomplish this he transferred a fleet of warships overland to avoid Byzantine naval defenses on the Bosphorus. He ordered construction of a greased plank road over a mile long, along which his ships and guns were towed until they deployed into the Golden Horn, behind its chain boom. The fleet bombarded the city from one side while his land-based artillery pounded it from the other with 70 big guns. Several were huge *bombards* such as ''Elipolos'' (''City-Taker''), a monster with a 26-foot barrel, weighing 20 tons that hurled 600-pound stone shot at the city walls. The bombardment lasted 55 days. When the city fell there ensued merciless taking of life, including hundreds butchered inside the 1,000-year-old Orthodox cathedral of Hagia Sophia (''Church of the Holy Wisdom''). Muhammad stopped the killing only after it had nearly run its full bloody course. His use of bombards earned him wide recognition as the first great artillery captain in the history of the gunpowder age. It should be noted, however, that he was greatly aided by a Hungarian master gunner known as ''Urban'' and that the city was actually taken by stealth, through a small open gate, not by artillery breach of its triple walls.

When the city fell there ensued merciless taking of life, including hundreds butchered inside the . . . Hagia Sophia.

Having given the Ottoman Empire a commanding position on the Bosphorus that would last half a millennium, Muhammad invaded the Balkans, where he laid siege to Belgrade in 1456. He was beaten back by the Hungarian general *János Hunyadi*. Muhammad reinvaded the Balkans in 1458, overrunning Serbia by the end of the year. He then turned his highly aggressive attentions to Greece and the Aegean Islands, which he conquered from 1458 to 1460. He took over Bosnia, 1463–1464, while starting what proved to be a long naval and island war with Venice. He penetrated Croatia and Dalmatia in 1468, the same year he conquered Albania. In 1470 his fleet and marines took Negroponte from Venice, but in 1473 he was counterattacked on both strategic flanks by armies and fleets of an Iranian–Venetian alliance. After dealing with Iran he rolled up several Venetian

colonies along the Dalmatian coast and threatened to invade northern Italy. That brought much fear to the divided city-states of Italy, and panicky rather than convincing talk from the pope about proclaiming another anti-Muslim crusade. Muhammad was intent to secure the entire eastern Mediterranean as a Muslim sea and watery highway between his Arab and Balkan provinces, where he was still stymied in his attempt to capture *Rhodes* (1479) by stout resistance from the *Hospitallers*. However, he took Otranto in 1480. Muhammad died while campaigning in Iran, leaving that problem as well as final conquest of the Balkans to *Suleiman I*. In addition to Muhammad's martial success and territorial conquests he oversaw an important codification of Ottoman law.

Suggested Reading: Franz Babinger, *Mehmed the Conqueror and His Time* (1978).

Mühlburg, Battle of (1547). The *Duke of Alba* won a major victory for *Charles V* when he crushed the Protestant rebel army in this climactic battle of his war with the *Schmalkaldic League* (1546–1547). After fording the Elbe, Alba marched on Leipzig with 13,000 Imperial troops. At Mühlburg he was met by and bested a smaller princely army made up mainly of Saxon troops.

***mujahadeen*.** Muslim fighters who were, or thought they were, or who just said they were, engaged in jihad. See also *Assassins*; *ghazi*; "*holy war*."

***mukai-jiro*.** "facing fort." In Japanese warfare, an earth-and-wood palisade built opposite a besieged fort.

Muley Hacen (d.1484). "Abdul Hassan." See *Granada*.

***mulkgiri*.** A military expedition in India. They usually began in October after the monsoon passed and the fall harvest was collected, and ended in March or April before the onset of high heat. *Mughal* mulkgiri were enormous affairs in which the entire Court—tens of thousands of people and animals—migrated along with the army.

***mullah*.** In Muslim nations, a title of respect for persons learned in sharia (Islamic) law.

Münster, Siege of (1534–1535). See *Anabaptism*.

Münster, Treaty of (January 30, 1648). The peace treaty between Spain and the Netherlands ending the "Revolt of the Netherlands," or *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648). It followed a 1647 truce. In part, its terms reflected growing unease among the Dutch about French plans for expansion in Flanders and domination of Germany. But mostly it codified the fact that Spain could not defeat the Netherlands after eight decades of trying. With signature of the treaty Dutch independence was formally accepted by Madrid. Limited freedom of religion was granted to Spaniards conducting business in the

Netherlands, and vice versa, reestablishing trade relations between the former belligerents. See also *Westphalia, Peace of.*

Münster, Treaty of (October 24, 1648). One of two major peace treaties (the other was *Osnabrück*) signed simultaneously on October 24, 1648, ending the *Thirty Years' War* in Germany. Münster was signed by the Holy Roman Empire and France, as well as other Catholic princes and German *Estates*. See also *Westphalia, Peace of*.

Müntzer, Thomas (c.1490–1525). See *German Peasant War.*

Murad I (c.1326–1389). He was the first Ottoman ruler to claim the title "sultan." During his reign (1362–1389) he continued expansion into southern Europe. He overran Macedonia, planted it with his vassals, and moved his capital to Adrianople (1360). In 1373 he compelled the much weakened Byzantine Empire to pay tribute to the Ottomans. His reign witnessed the beginnings of the *Janissary Corps* as newly conquered Christian populations were drawn into Ottoman military service by selective enslavement and conversion of male children. He defeated the Serbs twice, decisively at the *Maritza River* (1371) and definitively at *Kosovo* (1389). Murad was assassinated by a disguised Serb soldier following his victory at Kosovo. He was succeeded by his son, *Bayezid I*.

Murad II (r.1421–1444; 1446–1451). Ottoman sultan. He resumed the Ottoman march of conquest that had been severely set back by the capture and suicide of *Bayezid I* at *Ankara* in 1402. Murad II's main theater of operations was southeastern Europe. There, he took territory from the remnants of the *Crusader* knightly orders, and from Greeks, Hungarians, and Serbs. He defeated the Hungarians at *Kosovo Polje* (1448), but his army took heavy casualties that day from the superior and more numerous gunpowder weapons of the enemy. Murad II's thirst for conquest was eventually slaked and he settled into patronage of advanced Islamic arts and sciences and the daily life of his Court. His successor, *Muhammad II*, resumed Ottoman conquests starting with the great siege of *Constantinople* in 1453.

Murbräcker. "Wall-breaker." Large caliber siege guns. They were in use in Germany much longer than elsewhere. Barrels were often inscribed with boasts of special prowess in knocking down fortifications, praise for their royal owners, or religious pieties. See also *artillery*; *basilisk*; *Gustavus II Adolphus.*

murder holes. Small holes cut in the roof above the passageway running from a castle gate to the interior of the castle proper. Through them defenders dropped large rocks on attackers who breached the outer *portcullis*, or poured down on their heads heated sand, quicklime, burning oils, or boiling water.

Muret, Battle of (1213). See *Albigensian Crusade*.

***murtat*.** Serbian infantry archers of mixed Christian-Muslim stock in the Ottoman army. Some were hereditary soldiers descended from fathers or grandfathers once held as prisoners of war.

Muscovite Army. See *Muscovy, Grand Duchy of*; *pishchal'niki*; *Pomest'e cavalry*; *servitor classes*; *strelt'si.*

Muscovy, Grand Duchy of. The *Mongols* ruled what later became Russia for two centuries, under the Golden Horde and several independent khanates in the southern steppes. Mongol *light cavalry* remained unchallenged as the dominant military force even into the era of firearms. They took everything from the subject Slavic populations, but gave almost nothing in return during the time of social chaos known as ''Appanage Russia'' (after the splintered landholding, or ''udel,'' or appanage system which kept each local prince weak but also independent of the others). A strong state slowly emerged in the north around the fortified city of Moscow, under Alexander Nevsky (1220–1263). Moscow's Prince Dimitri first beat the Mongols at Kulikovo, on the Don (September 8, 1380). During the 15th century Muscovy absorbed all other north Russian principalities, reaching 2.8 million square kilometers by 1533. When Muscovy broke the ''Mongol yoke'' 100 years after Kulikovo, in 1480, its people and leaders looked to the past glory of Orthodox Byzantium as a model of cultural and religious guidance. Yet, Muscovy was a harsher state and society for its many decades of subjugation by the Mongol khans. As it shifted from Dukedom to Empire, it would be ruled by tsars instead of dukes for over 400 years, from the renunciation of vassalage to the Mongols in 1480 to the end of the Romanov dynasty in 1917.

Muscovites took to gunpowder artillery late, not casting their own cannons until the end of the 15th century when *pishchal'niki* first appeared. That was likely because the main threat to Muscovy was fleet horsemen of the divers steppe peoples on the southern frontier, who could not be stopped by immobile early cannon. To counter the cavalry threat from *Tatar* and *Cossack* hosts who entered the Russias at will on extended raids, Muscovy built a complex defensive system of earthworks, log forts, and trenches. The defensive line these formed was garrisoned and patrolled by *servitor cavalry* established by *Ivan III* (1440–1505). It was their job to move rapidly to reinforce threatened positions upon receiving warnings by sentries in hundreds of guard posts built at six- to eight-mile intervals. Later, bribed or cowed *Cossacks* were brought into the system and helped buffer Muscovy from the *Tatars*. During the first quarter of the 16th century the Muscovite army was organized into five regiments comprised largely of cavalry and named according to their predetermined position in battle: the Advanced (the van), Left Wing, Right Wing, Main, and Guard (rearguard). A smaller Reconnaissance regiment was available by 1524, joined subsequently by Transport and Artillery regiments. Specialized troops who drilled and fought under

instruction and command of Western military advisers were called ''New Formation Units.''

Muscovy expanded westward during the reign of Ivan III and under his successor, Vasily III (1479–1533, r.1505–1533). It lost an army of 40,000 to a force of just 12,000 Brethren of the *Livonian Order* and auxiliaries at the Seritsa River (January 1501). Three months later, 100,000 Muscovites and 30,000 allied Tatars annihilated the Livonian Knights at Dorpat. However, the Muscovites suffered another major defeat at Smolino River (September 1502) and in 1503 a truce was agreed upon. By 1510, Muscovy had advanced deep to the south, while acquisition of Novgorod and Pskov made it a Baltic Power. Under *Ivan IV* (1530–1584), Muscovy's *appanage* princes were brought to heel through terror and murder. Muscovy next expanded northward and then in all other directions: south against the Tatars, where successor khanates to the Golden Horde of Kazan (1552) and Astrakhan (1556) were overrun; east into the vast expanses of Siberia; and west during the *First Northern War* (1558–1583) against Livonians, Poles, and Lithuanians. The western thrust was the least successful because it was the most heavily resisted by equal or superior military forces. Indeed, it was still possible in 1600 that Poland rather than Muscovy might emerge from a century of war and palace intrigue as the dominant power in ''The Russias.'' Even to the far south, wrongly thought tamed by 1510, Muscovy faced powerful enemies: Crimean Tatars sacked Moscow in 1571 and again in 1591.

From 1604 to 1613 came the ''Time of Troubles,'' *characterized by social unrest . . .*

Worse awaited. From 1604 to 1613 came the ''*Time of Troubles*'' (Smutnoe Vremia), characterized by social unrest, famine, peasant uprisings, and harsh repression. All that was aggravated by dynastic struggles among several claimants to the throne, starting with the ''False Dmitri'' during the reign of *Boris Godunov*. Poland also invaded twice, in 1610 and 1612. This baleful period for Muscovy ended with establishment of a new dynasty under *Michael Romanov* in 1613. More war with Sweden and Poland over Livonia and the eastern Baltic ports followed, 1617–1618, as Wladyslaw tried to claim the Muscovite throne his father, Sigismund III, first claimed for him. There was also fighting with Poland from 1632 to 1634. Otherwise, Michael I's reign restored the old religion, politics, and social order. Under Michael, Muscovy could field over 92,000 men in its armies. Of these, 28,000 were strel'sty, 27,000 were servitor cavalry, 11,000 were Cossacks, 10,000 were Tatars, 4,300 were artillerymen, and the rest were foreign mercenaries. In 1648, just as religious peace broke out in Germany, the Morozov riots broke out in Moscow as outbursts of rabid and violent piety directed against the boyar retainers of Tsar Alexis frightened him into undertaking a bloody purge. Muscovy did not resume its drive to the west until the second half of the 17th century. See also *Oprichnina*.

Suggested Reading: Gustave Alef, *Ruklers and Nobles in 15th Century Muscovy* (1983); R. Crummey, *The Formation of Muscovy, 1304–1613* (1987); R. Hellie,

Enserfment and Military Change in Muscovy (1971); Lindsay Hughes, ed., *New Perspectives on Muscovite History* (1993); J. L. Keep, *Soldiers of the Tsar* (1985); C. B. Stevens, *Soldiers on the Steppe* (1995).

musketeers. See *Haiduks*; *infantry*; *Janissary Corps*; *musket*; *revolution in military affairs*; *strel'sty*; *tercio.*

muskets. The musket was a later and much heavier weapon than the *arquebus*, which led the first generations of musketeers to be recruited among big men (who also received more pay). It was first used effectively by a Spanish army at the siege of Parma in 1521. The early ''Spanish musket'' was six feet long, weighed at least 15 pounds (more often 18–20 pounds), took two men to carry and load, and could only be aimed and fired using a fork rest stuck in the ground or hooked to a wall or *pervase*. Still, it could shoot a heavy ball (1½ ounces) with sufficient force to pierce plate armor out to 240 yards, making it the anti-tank weapon of its day. While this punching power greatly exceeded that of any other missile weapon, muskets were extremely poor weapons in several regards. They were too heavy and inaccurate, with an effective sniping or aimed range barely passing 50 yards. They were difficult and very slow to load and reload, with a poor rate of fire; one 1607 English military manual depicted 28 discrete steps needed to reload a musket. Powder and match did not work well in damp weather and not at all in rain. And muskets could not be reloaded while on horseback or easily held or fired by a cavalryman even if preloaded. By comparison, archers had few weather restrictions beyond high wind, a very high rate of fire and much greater maximum killing range (especially the *longbow*). Normal bows, though not *crossbows*, might be shot from horseback (though mounted archery as practiced by the Mongols or other horse peoples was virtually unknown in Europe). Nor did muskets equal composite bows in accuracy until the 18th century, or match a bow's rate of fire until the 19th century. And yet, tactical systems using musketeers evolved from a support role for pikes and archers to equality with those arms, to displacement of both from the battlefield with invention of the plug bayonet in the second half of the 17th century.

Why would any army adopt the arquebus or musket over bows, given such facts? The answer is that they did not, at least not immediately. Instead, they mixed arquebusiers and musketeers into existing pike-and-bow or pike-and-halberd infantry formations, initially at the outer edges as in the Spanish *tercio*. Other experiments put musketeers inside the pike square for protection, or in front, where they lay or knelt under the bristling hedge of pike points during an enemy attack. A desire for more firearms among the infantry grew with incremental improvements in musket design, *locks*, and firing characteristics. A strong preference for firearms also grew from the fact that it was easier and far quicker to train an inexperienced peasant or town boy to use a musket than a bow. This suited non-noble armies such as the Swiss or the town militia of Flanders. It also pleased kings and magnates who fielded larger armies of lower class troops that were cheaper and more easily expendable

politically and socially than feudal levies. Specific national or cultural circumstances also dictated the pace of change: English armies adopted the musket later than most because of a romance about the longbow that lasted in places to 1595. After the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453) England ceased to be a major military power on land, saw little action in continental wars, and thus was not pressured to reform by being defeated by better-armed foreigners. All this inhibited weapons or tactical innovation as the old missile weapons repeatedly proved ''good enough'' in fights with Scots or Irish or fellow English.

Another effect of introducing muskets was to put an end to most battlefield armor because not even the heaviest plate could stop the penetrating power of a musket ball cut at 12 to a pound of lead. By 1570 such a heavy ''Spanish musket'' firing a 1½-ounce ball with refined *corned* powder could penetrate 4mm of plate at 100 meters range. As muskets multiplied on the battlefield armor was discarded, which in turn obviated the need for heavy muskets so that these were replaced by smaller, shoulder-fired weapons that shot a 1-ounce ball (cut 16 to a pound of lead). These guns were closer in size to the original arquebus though with improved firing mechanisms and faster reloads. As differences in size and weight among personal firearms eroded, the term ''musket'' came to be used for all shoulder-fired *smoothbore* infantry weapons. The standardized patterns and bores of ''Dutch muskets'' set by *Maurits of Nassau* in the 1590s were widely copied by other armies. As this was still a heavy gun, later versions reduced weight by shortening the barrel. In addition to the weight of his gun, a musketeer was burdened with several yards of *slow match*; a flask of fine priming powder; a horn filled with coarser gunpowder for the main charge, fitted with a nozzle to measure each charge; a small sack of lead bullets; a pouch of lead bars and cutting tools for making new bullets; and various stabbing weapons and personal comforts. During the early 17th century the powder flask or horn was replaced by a bandolier that contained premeasured charges in wooden plugs. Later, the invention of fixed *cartridges* made from paper and kept in a side pouch eliminated both the bandolier and the bars of lead.

The Chinese obtained European-style muskets—which they called ''bird-guns''—before the mid-16th century, and replaced their own models soon thereafter. The Japanese acquired mid-16th-century guns from Portuguese merchants blown ashore in 1543. Within a few years thousands of Japanese-made muskets were in use and over the next 50 years changed the face of warfare in Japan. See also *bastard musket*; *breech*; *caliver*; *child-mother gun*; *gunpowder weapons*; *heavy cavalry*; *infantry*; *Janissary Corps*; *mamlūks*; *matchlock*; *revolution in military affairs*; *rifled-bore*; *strel'sty*; *wheel lock*.

muster. At sea: assembling the men needed to man a war fleet; alternately, calling the roll of sailors and fighting men that made up a ship's company. On land: calling fighting men to order; alternately, raising and counting troops prior to a military expedition.

mutilation. See *atrocities*; *Aztec Empire*; *samurai*; *scalping*; *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*; *Tenochtitlán, First Siege of*; *Tenochtitlán, Second Siege of*; *wounds.*

mutiny. Mutiny was more common in the early modern than the medieval period. This was due to the shift to money economies and a new and heavy reliance of sovereigns on *mercenaries* instead of *servitor* classes or broad feudal levies. Primitive war finance and the poor quality bureaucracies of early modern states could not meet the *logistics* challenges they faced or pay the arrears of wages promised to restless companies of hardened, well-armed men. This tendency to mutiny over pay in arrears had a direct effect on battle and on whole wars. For example, the *Teutonic Knights* won at *Chojnice* in 1454 with German mercenaries, but their inability to meet the huge payroll that military professionals demanded led to disaster: two years later unpaid Bohemian mercenaries mutinied and betrayed the Teutonic capital Marienburg to the Poles without a shot or arrow fired. In 1515, Ottoman troops mutinied after defeating the Safavids and refused to invade Syria for *Selim II*, though mainly because it was just too hot and too late in the campaign season rather than over issues of pay.

The *Army of Flanders* mutinied 46 times between 1572 and 1607, mainly over arrears of pay caused by Spain's repeated bankruptcies. This led to the *Spanish Fury* in Antwerp in 1576 that made it impossible for the rebel Dutch to see Spanish rule as any longer legitimate. Mutinies were common in all armies during the *Thirty Years' War*. Even military reformers such as *Gustavus Adolphus* and *Cromwell* faced occasional mutinies, while *Oxenstierna* was held captive by mercenaries in his own army after *First Nördlingen* (1634), until he agreed to pay all arrears. In 1641 no fewer than 20 mercenary colonels of regiments in the Swedish Army refused to fight until arrears were paid.

A drought in northern China in 1628 triggered *Ming Army* mutinies that spread to central China and deeply undermined Ming prestige and control. A related mutiny in Shandong in 1631 led to internecine fighting the next year that wiped out an entire *war wagon* brigade the Ming had just organized with the aid of several dozen Portuguese advisers, which they hoped to use to stop the *Manchus*. In 1642 a Ming mutiny in the south rolled into a more general peasant uprising, and several powerful warlords and rival armies emerged that collapsed Ming power at the center. In 1644 one of these mutinous warlords took Beijing, where the last Ming emperor hanged himself in despair. See also *contributions*; *Kazan*; *Laws of Olèron*; *Levellers*; *Provost*; *round robin*.

muzzle-loader. Any gunpowder weapon that was loaded via the muzzle (mouth) of the gun, rather than through the end or *breech*. See also *artillery*; *casting*; *chamber*; *corning/corned gunpowder*.

Myongnyang, Battle of (1597). See *Korea*; *Toyotomi Hideyoshi.*

Myton, Battle of (1319). See *Scottish Wars.*

N

Nachhut. The smallest and rearmost of three formations in the traditional deployment of a *Swiss square*.

Nachrichter. The official executioner in a *Landsknechte* company or regiment. Some dressed in red and carried a two-handed executioner's sword and a noose, the latter serving as symbol of their office.

Näfels, Battle of (1388). As they had done in several earlier battles, at Näfels the Swiss waited behind earthwork palisades (*Letzinen*) and let the enemy come on. But this time the Austrians broke through with relative ease. The Swiss were rescued by a tactically cunning withdrawal to nearby high ground by a contingent from the Canton of Glarus, from where they used stones and other missiles to harass the Austrians. They followed with a downhill charge that broke the Austrian attack and carried the field.

Nagakute, Battle of (1584). See *Tokugawa Ieyasu*; *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*.

Nagasaki. From the 16th century this ancient port served as Japan's "window on the West." Iberian traders were followed by *Jesuits*, Dominicans, Augustinians, and other missionaries. In 1597 *Toyotomi Hideyoshi* turned on the missions and had 26 Franciscans crucified at Nagasaki. In 1635, Chinese traders were confined to Nagasaki, which thereafter remained the hub of an important China trade for two centuries. After 1641, all Westerners were strictly confined to the artificial island of *Deshima*.

Nagashino, Battle of (1575). *Oda Nobunaga* brought 3,000 *arquebusiers* to this battle and fought to aid his ally *Tokugawa Ieyasu*, who was under assault by Takeda Katsuyori. Nobunaga placed his musketeers front and center, behind wooden palisades. They were trained in *volley fire* and armed with

European-style *muskets*. The Takeda mustered 15,000 men for the battle and their confident *samurai* cavalry attacked straight at the musketeers. Like the French *knights* at *Agincourt*, brave Takeda samurai charged again and again only to be cut down by missile troops. The slaughter of the Takeda was immense.

naginata. A Japanese *polearm* consisting of a stout staff with a large curved blade attached. It was an infantry weapon used by ''grooms'' of the *samurai*.

Nájera, Battle of (April 3, 1367). ''Navarrete.'' *Pedro the Cruel*, King of Castile and León, and the *Black Prince* used infantry tactics developed by *Edward III* to win this fight against a Franco-Castilian army that outnumbered their own 3:2. Most of the *routiers* who took part were killed. The English-Gascon intervention was provoked by a challenge for the throne by Pedro's half brother (later, Henry II of Castile), who was supported by France. That drew in the Black Prince as ruler of neighboring Aquitaine. Although Pedro and the Black Prince won the battle, their opponents won the civil war in Castile within a few years. In addition to routiers, *knights* of the Iberian *Military Orders* fought on both sides. See also *Hundred Years' War*.

Nancy, Battle of (January 5, 1477). Following the catastrophic defeat of the Burgundians at *Morat* (June 22, 1476), the fortunes of *Charles the Rash* declined as his enemies moved to take advantage of weakness. He had lost his army and *artillery train*, the latter for the second time. And now his finances, always strained, also failed. Unpaid *mercenaries* mutinied, deserted en masse, and one by one handed over his garrison towns to a regional rival, Duke Renatus of Lorraine. The garrison at Nancy surrendered to the Lorrainers on October 6, 1476. That was a loss Charles could ill afford. He managed to assemble a small army of 12,000–13,000 men, and moved with his usual recklessness against Nancy, despite the winter cold and snows. The *Swiss Confederation* declined to fight directly for its sometime ally Duke Renatus, but allowed him to recruit mercenaries within the cantons. He was able to raise an army of over 26,000—including 5,000 horse—comprised of ducal troops from Alsace and Lorraine and 10,000 Swiss.

Charles made the first move, away from his siege of Nancy toward the approaching Swiss and Lorrainers. He set up a blocking force in pike squares across a narrow valley, supported by the few-dozen artillery pieces he had left from the once magnificent and unrivaled Burgundian train. He placed his cavalry in standard position on either flank of his concentrated infantry and guns. The Swiss sent a large *Forlorn Hope* forward as a decoy, to disguise a pincer move into flanking positions by the main bodies of their *Vorhut* (van) and *Gewalthut* (center). An unusually small *Nachhut* (reserve) of just 800 men, armed mainly with arquebuses, followed behind the Forlorn Hope at the center, ready to move as reinforcement toward either of the main squares, working their way stealthily through snow and forest-covered hills. By mid-afternoon, the Gewalthut was in position above the Burgundian right flank.

Supported by Lorrainer cavalry, the Swiss formed a pike-and-gun wedge and moved smartly downslope into the right flank. Charles' immobile canon could not traverse to break up the attack, which crashed into the Burgundian squares in a great shock of gunfire, impalement, splinters, and spraying blood. The Vorhut overran Charles' artillery and scattered his cavalry on the left flank. The Burgundian foot was now exposed and outnumbered. Men broke formation and fled, uncovering their comrades to a merciless assault and slaughter. To the rear, fleeing men were held by a minor noble allied in the morning to Charles, who turned coat in the afternoon and handed erstwhile comrades-in-arms to the savage Swiss in a treacherous parlay of their lives for his. Charles also tried to flee, but was hooked down from his horse by a halberdier and hacked to death on the ground. Thus ended the *Burgundian-Swiss War* (1474–1477).

Nantes, Edict of (1598). See *Edict of Nantes*.

Nantwich, Battle of (1644). See *Fairfax, Thomas*.

nao. A Spanish merchant ship of the *carrack* class. Columbus' flagship, the *Santa Maria*, was a nao.

naphtha. Arabic: ''naft.'' A Middle Eastern oil-and-sulphur-based incendiary comparable to *Greek fire*. It was not much used after 1200 except by the *Mamlūks*. See also *Alexandria, Siege of*.

Naples revolt (1647). A revolt of peasants and lower bourgeoisie whose origins were local grievances directed at the nobility and Church. A Neapolitan republic was declared with an ordinary fisherman, Tommaso Aniello (Masaniello) pushed forward as quasi-messianic leader (''Captain-General of the People''). He lasted just nine days in ''power.'' Within six weeks he was murdered by a conspiracy of grain merchants anxious to return to religious and mercantile normality. The defeated rebels were treated with brutal severity that included public beheadings.

nariada. A late-14th-century Muscovite cannon that was essentially a metal tube affixed to a wooden block or sledge.

Narrow Seas, Battle of (1588). See *Invincible Armada*.

Naseby, Battle of (June 14, 1645). *Charles I* started north with 9,000 men on June 12, 1645, but could not elude the pursuing *New Model Army* under *Thomas Fairfax*. Some 15,000 Roundheads caught up to the King at Naseby and deployed in the dead of night along an east-west ridge. *Oliver Cromwell* commanded 3,500 *Ironsides* on the right, cavalry and dragoons, and *Henry Ireton* 3,000 more on the left. Fairfax commanded the main body of Roundheads in the center. The Royalists also deployed blocks of infantry in

line at the center and cavalry supporting either wing. *Prince Rupert* attacked prematurely, opening himself to a counterattack by Ireton. However, Ireton botched the assault and Rupert skillfully recovered and smashed the Roundheads. Typically, Rupert overpursued a fleeing enemy; he soon got bogged down fighting with defenders of the Parliamentary supply train. Meanwhile, at the center the Royalists beat off an attack by Fairfax and counterattacked to good effect. While Fairfax reinforced the center, Cromwell rode around to the left—thinking the situation desperate there—and found dragoons in good order, holding steady and engaging enemy infantry. Cromwell joined the attack, scything toward the center of the battlefield to meet Fairfax coming from the right and to collect surrendering Royalist infantry. Rupert returned from the baggage just in time to join a general withdrawal forced on Charles by the weight of Parliamentary numbers and the collapse of his center. The Royalists lost 4,000 foot that day, and 300 more horse killed over 13 miles of pursuit; the Roundheads lost fewer than 300 dead. The King lost his baggage train and a fair number of cannon, along with any realistic hope of continuing the war. After the fight, Fairfax's men murdered several hundred women they called "Irish whores," out of several thousand traveling with the baggage. Most of the rest were later deported overseas as indentured servants.

Nassau, William of. See *William the Silent*.

National Contingent. See *Polish Army*.

National Covenant (England). Passed by Parliament under the guidance of John Pym in 1643, in the wake of a failed Royalist coup, it bound all Parliamentarians by oath to stand against *Charles I* as long as any "papists" (Catholics) remained under arms within the "Three Kingdoms."

National Covenant (Scotland). See *Covenanters*; *Knox, John*.

naval warfare and tactics. See *war at sea*.

Navarre. A small, independent kingdom straddling the Pyrenees between France and Spain. It backed the Cathars during the *Albigensian Crusade* and participated in the *Reconquista*. After 1500 Navarre was squeezed between the expanding and feuding powers of France and Spain. It was a center of *Huguenot* and Bourbon military power, and gave French Protestants their great champion in Henri de Navarre. The Parlement of Paris would not permit Henri to rule Navarre as a discrete kingdom after his coronation as *Henri IV* of France, so it was instead annexed. See also *French Civil Wars*.

Navarrete, Battle of (1367). See *Nájera, Battle of*.

nave. See *nef*.

Navigation Acts. Laws compelling national trade to make use of the home country's merchant marine. Most seafaring nations passed such laws, but the most important historically were a series of acts by the English Parliament that were crucial in developing the early law of the sea as a support for English naval and commercial predominance. The first was passed in 1382 and the second in 1463. Each of these early acts sought to restrict trade between English ports on either side of the Channel to English ships alone, but neither was enforceable in the absence of a permanent navy or a coherent sense of national maritime policy. The Tudors added to the legislation but the truly historic Navigation Act was not passed by *Oliver Cromwell* until 1651. It gave voice to a self-conscious idea of Great Britain as a world sea power, which justified and required construction of a powerful and permanent navy.

. . . the truly historical Navigation Act was not passed by Oliver Cromwell *until 1651.*

navy royale. See *Royal Navy*.

Nayakas. Local Hindu military elites that dominated the deep south of India well beyond *Mughal* control. Elsewhere such groups were called *Marathas* or *Rajputs*.

nef. ''Nave.'' A two-masted medieval roundship rigged with *lateen sails*, native to the Mediterranean.

nefer-i am. The Ottoman conscription system. See also *Devşirme system*; *Janissary Corps*; *sekban*.

Negora Temple. A key site of the martial arts in medieval and early modern Japan and a center of the *sōhei* (warrior monks). It trained mercenaries and in 1543 manufactured copies of Portuguese muskets, powder, and shot, the first modern weapons to be produced in Japan.

Negroponte, Battle of (1470). *Muhammad II* sent his fleet and marines to storm this Venetian outpost in 1470. The Ottomans won a quick and decisive victory.

***Nemçe* (*Nemse*).** ''Germans'' (or ''Austrians''). The generic term used by the Ottomans in reference to their *Habsburg* enemies, whether Austrian, German, or the Christian Balkan peoples of the *Militargrenze*.

Nêmecký Brod, Battle of (January 10, 1422). ''German Ford.'' An early battle of the long *Hussite Wars*. It was fought just four days after *Kutná Hora* (January 6, 1422), where *Jan Žižka* led the Hussites to a spectacular victory over Catholic troops under Emperor *Sigismund*. Žižka had pursued the Imperials, who regrouped fifteen miles from Kutná Hora at Nêmecký Brod, about sixty

miles south of Prague. Žižka had 12,000 men against 23,000 Imperials. Once again the Hussite *tabor* and gunpowder weapons told the tale: the Imperials were confused, stunned, and bloodied by the firepower coming from the tabors. By the end of the fight nearly 10,000 Imperial troops had fallen. Sigismund fled, barely escaping personal capture and a likely cruel revenge for his betrayal of *Jan Hus*.

Nemours, Treaty of (July 1585). Increasingly weak as a result of royal bankruptcy and *Guise* influence among French Catholics, *Henri III* capitulated to the *Catholic League* by revoking all prior concessions to the *Huguenots*. Nemours forbade all Protestant preaching and denied even freedom of conscience, as it ordered abjuration from heretical belief within six months on pain of death or exile. Huguenot fortified towns were to be surrendered, their army disbanded, and none could hold public office. The effort of the League to impose the treaty by force brought on the eighth of the *French Civil Wars*. Nemours' terms were reaffirmed and extended in the *Edict of Union* (July 1588).

Netherlands. Two-thirds of the Netherlands was land reclaimed from the sea after 1200, using dikes, dams, and polders; hence, the folk saying, ''God made the world but the Dutch made Holland.'' Holland then expanded, overtaking Zeeland in the 13th century, then conquering parts of Friesland in the early 15th century. The *Black Death* only lightly touched the area as it emerged as a center of shipbuilding and trade. In 1428, the Low Countries were linked to *Burgundy*. Holland fought the rival *Hanse* from 1438 to 1441, displaying a latent capacity to raise funds and field armies and navies it would demonstrate again in protracted war with Spain. After *Charles the Rash* was killed at *Nancy* (1477) the Netherlands fell under Habsburg rule through a dynastic marriage that linked Burgundy to Austria. Holland rebelled against Habsburg control and the ''Grand Privilège'' secured by the southern provinces of Flanders and Brabant. A major anti-Habsburg revolt lasted from 1487 to 1492, led at first by Ghent and Bruges in alliance with France, but not supported by the Netherlands nobility. Rotterdam was starved into surrender in June 1489; Ghent held out until July 1492. Gelderland was invaded in 1504–1505 but still would not submit. Intermittent fighting also took place within Holland and Friesland until *Charles V* mounted the Spanish throne in 1517 and the Netherlands was placed into regency under Margaret of Austria (1517–1530). Charles did not return to the north until 1531 when he made his ineffectual sister, Mary of Habsburg, regent (1531–1540). Charles set in motion administrative reforms in the 1530s that aimed at suppression of confessional divisions even as he cooperated in further Netherlands expansion. From 1516 to 1549, lesser and outer provinces were attached to the larger states of the Netherlands (Brabant, Flanders, and Holland), unifying it ''north of the rivers.'' In turn, Gelderland, Utrecht, Overijssel, Friesland, Groningen, and Drenthe were overrun. In this military-political effort, Holland's interest in regional hegemony aligned with Charles V's interest in unifying his northern domains with Habsburg holdings in the south.

The Netherlands was highly urbanized. During the *Protestant Reformation* many townsfolk north of the rivers converted to reformed religion. The countryside and most of the south remained Catholic. In 1521, Charles V and the *Diet of Worms* banned all Lutheran writings. That led to book burnings in the Netherlands and in July 1523, the first burning of ''heretics.'' There followed many more burnings, particularly of *Anabaptists*. In 1550, the *Inquisition* defined new punishments for heresy: men were to be beheaded, women drowned, and the unrepentant or relapsed burned. From 1523 to 1565, some 1,300 were executed, provoking deep opposition to the Habsburgs. From the 1540s, the Netherlands were drawn into the Habsburg war with France, hitherto confined to Italy. Many new *trace italienne* fortresses were constructed along the frontiers. Netherlanders thus suffered from new war taxes (a sevenfold increase), along with billeting of foreign troops. The key political change came in the 1550s when much of the noble and intellectual elite switched to Calvinism. This process began in the Dutch refugee communities in Germany and London, and was not at first connected to Calvinist communities in Geneva or France. The crisis built from 1559 to 1566, just as the *Italian Wars* ended, aggravated after 1562 by the start of the *French Civil Wars*. That freed *Philip II* to concentrate on suppressing Protestantism in the Netherlands, and moved him to do so by the baleful example of the *Huguenot* revolt in France. *William the Silent* assumed the leadership role in the early phase of the ''Netherlands Revolt'' that followed, and which evolved into the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648), a bitter and protracted conflict few foresaw. From 1582, the United Provinces became a republic, though they were still governed by a hereditary aristocracy and embraced a courtly political and military culture.

War and confessionalism divided the Netherlands: the Catholic *Union of Arras* formed in the south in early 1579. In reaction, the anti-Spanish and Protestant *Union of Utrecht* took shape in the north. The ten provinces of the Union of Arras remained tied to Spain within a truncated ''Spanish Netherlands.'' The seven provinces of the Union of Utrecht became the ''United Provinces'' when their tie to Spain was formally repudiated in 1581. The region had long been a sanctuary of free thinking (and free trade), and welcomed religious and political refugees from across Europe: Jews from Spain after 1492, Protestants from Bohemia and Germany after 1520, Huguenots from France after 1562, Calvinists from the Spanish Netherlands in the 1580s, and divers German and other Protestant nobles from deposed dukes to pauper princes in the 17th century. For this reason and out of considerations of the balance of power, the United Provinces emerged as a major opponent of the hegemonic ambitions and religious policies of Spain under the three Philips. In the process it became a close ally of Protestant England under *Elizabeth I* and a more wary ally of Catholic France. The key internal struggle from 1600 to 1618 was between *Maurits of Nassau* and a dogged Calvinist war party on the one hand, and *Johan van Oldenbaarneveldt*, *Hugo Grotius*, and a moderate *Arminian* peace party on the other. With Holland—which had assembled and effectively governed the United Provinces—thus bitterly

divided, princely power emerged as a viable alternative to the *Generality*. In 1618, Maurits launched a coup d'état, diminishing the role of Holland and the Generality until a revival of Holland's power during the final years of the Stadholderate of his half-brother, *Frederik Hendrik*. With Maurits in charge the war with Spain resumed in 1621 when the *Twelve Years' Truce* (April 1609–April 1621) expired. Fighting quickly overlapped with the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648) because of Maurits' support of *Friedrich V* against *Ferdinand II*. When the fighting finally stopped in 1648, the United Provinces were recognized by Spain as fully sovereign. By that time the Netherlands had acquired a world empire and was the dominant commercial, shipping, and naval power in the world. See also *Alba, Don Fernando Álvarez de Toledo, duque de*; *d'Anjou, duc*; *Army of Flanders*; *Don Juan of Austria*; *Dutch Army*; *English Fury*; *iconoclasm*; *Leicester, Earl of*; *Louis of Nassau*; *Margaret of Parma*; *Nonsuch, Treaty of*; *Parma, duque di*; *Raad van State*; *schutterijen*; *Sea Beggars*; *"Spanish Fury"*; *Spanish Road*; *Tenth Penny*; *Vereenigde Oostindische Compaagnie*; *waardgelders*.

Suggested Reading: W. Brake, *Regents and Rebels* (1989); Jonathon Israel, *Conflicts of Empires: Spain, the Low Countries, and the Struggle for World Supremacy, 1585–1713* (1997) and *The Dutch Republic: Its Rise, Greatness and Fall, 1477–1806* (1995); Jan De Vries and Ad Van Der Woude, *The First Modern Economy* (1997); Charles Wilson, *The Dutch Republic* (1969).

Neville's Cross, Battle of (October 17, 1346). See *Scottish Wars*.

Nevsky, Alexander (1220–1263). See *Livonian Order*; *Muscovy, Grand Duchy of*.

Newburn, Battle of (1639). See *Bishops' War, Second*.

Newbury, First Battle of (September 20, 1643). *Essex* lifted the siege of Gloucester by *Charles I*, but his path back to London was blocked at Newbury, northwest of Reading. The Royalists failed to secure the key high ground on the battlefield, Round Hill, so Essex planted his artillery and some infantry there. While fighting took place on the flanks, the main action was at Round Hill, where the Royalists suffered heavy casualties as they struggled upward and were met by withering Roundhead fire. *Prince Rupert*, as he often did, attacked prematurely and impetuously. This time the *trained bands* stood their ground, bristling with pikes and pouring deadly musketry into the Cavaliers. Essex then advanced the main Parliamentary infantry against the Cavalier flank, where they poured volleys into densely packed troops. Casualties were heavy on both sides and Essex expected to renew the fight in the morning. But Charles, nearly out of gunpowder, left during the night.

Newbury, Second Battle of (October 27, 1644). See *English Civil Wars*.

New England. See *Indian Wars (North America)*.

New English. An ascendancy of Protestant military men sent to Ireland to help suppress the *Kildare Rebellion*, some of whom remained to officer the new English garrison army established in *The Pale* after 1535. They became part of the landowning elite with estates granted them by the Tudors and Stuarts from confiscated Irish lands. While that joined their economic interests to the Catholic *Old English* and *Old Irish* they remained separated from those older landowning groups by confessional differences. See also *English Civil Wars*; *Ireland*.

New France. See *Indian Wars (North America)*.

New Model Army. The term was applied to several early modern armies patterned on the army of the United Provinces imagined by *Justus Lipsius* and Willem Lodewijk, equipped with standardized weapons by the *Generality*, and drilled and commanded by *Maurits of Nassau*. The Swedish Army reshaped by *Gustavus Adolphus* on the Dutch model was also widely regarded as a ''new'' and ''model army.'' In English historiography, the term is applied to the army founded on February 17, 1645 by Parliamentary ordinance, trained in the Dutch and Swedish fashions, and infused with Puritan zeal. It was principally the creation of *Thomas Fairfax*, its first commander, who pushed for it over objections from *Manchester*, the *3rd Earl of Essex*, and the House of Lords. *Oliver Cromwell* was responsible for the *Ironsides* cavalry. In place of regional association armies it formed a single command of 12 regiments of foot (1,200 men per regiment) and 10 troops of 600 cavalry each. Another cavalry troop was added later, so that the New Model Army boasted nearly 15,000 foot and 7,000 cavalry and dragoons. Its first battlefield test was *Naseby*. Two other Parliamentary armies, the Northern and Western, were subordinated to Fairfax's overall command. See also *countermarch*; *drill*; *Eastern Association Army*; *Eighty Years' War*; *English Civil Wars*; *Fifth Monarchists*; *Ireton, Henry*; *military discipline*; *regiments*; *Thirty Years' War*; *volley fire*.

New Monarchies. A term employed about the centralizing national monarchies of Europe, which first took shape in England and France during the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453); and in Spain by 1500. The ''New Monarchies'' are said by historians who favor the term to have shared a novel sense of royal authority, and a more effective and centralized bureaucracy and systems of taxation and law, while also institutionalizing the medieval principle of royal governance by consent. That may well have been true of Europe, but globally there was nothing particularly new or modern about centralization: the conservative empires of China, the Mughals, and the Ottomans long had fairly centralized military administrations and highly capable bureaucracies. See also *Augsburg, Peace of*; *gunpowder empires*; *Holy Roman Empire*; *res publica Christiana*.

New Ross, Battle of (1643). See *Ormonde, 1st Duke of*.

New Spain, Viceroyalty of. A composite colony of the Mexican and Central American conquests of Spain formed in 1535. It hosted one of just two viceroys in the New World in Mexico City (the other was in Peru). It stopped short of modern Panama (then part of Gran Colombia) and excluded all holdings in South America. However, the Philippines fell into its jurisdiction. See also *Aztec Empire*; *Black Legend*; *conquistadores*; *Council of the Indies*; *real patronato*; *requerimiento*.

Ngola. Portugal's partnership with *Kongo* and patronage of Christianity lasted only to the death of Afonso I in 1543, by which time Portugal had shifted its slaving interests south to Ngola (Angola). In 1556, a Kongo army was defeated by Ngola troops using Portuguese firearms. Kongo thereafter went into decline, itself raided by Ngola armies and *Yaka*. The first Portuguese settlers landed on Luanda Island in 1575. There followed a century of armed penetration of the interior in pursuit of slaves for the markets of Brazil, usually in partnership with Imbangala slavers. The Dutch took and held Luanda from 1641 to 1648, during the final years of the *Eighty Years' War*.

Nichiren Shonin (1222–1282). Né Zennichimaro. A Tendai monk who launched the national strand of Buddhism known as ''Nichiren Shu,'' or ''Nichiren Shoshu,'' which helped inspire part of the population of Japan to resist two attempted *Mongol* invasions (1274 and 1281). He insisted on a reformed and unified national faith (Buddhism with Japanese characteristics) based on ''Lotus Sutra.'' This reform version of Buddhism made some of the higher meditative practices of classical Buddhism available to the common people, greatly increasing its popularity among the lower social orders. His major reform was to suggest that salvation via the Buddha lay more in individual ethical action than purity of faith.

Nicopolis, Battle of (September 25, 1396). Seven years after the *Battle of Kosovo* (June 20, 1389), Pope Boniface IX proclaimed a crusade against the Ottomans. *Sigismund* of Hungary gathered a Christian coalition at Buda, which may have totaled 50,000 knights and men-at-arms from across Europe. This horde ate out the Christian lands as it moved toward Nicopolis, which it besieged for two weeks. Meanwhile, Sultan *Bayezid I* broke off his siege of Constantinople and marched to lift the Christian siege. A body of 2,000 French knights did not wait for Sigismund's order; they charged the Muslims headlong and were overwhelmed. Bayezid ordered a massive counterattack that overran the whole Christian position. Many thousands died on the field; more drowned in the Danube. Afterward, Bayezid had 10,000 prisoners slaughtered. Nicopolis ended the Latin Christian adventure in the eastern Mediterranean dating to the *Crusades*.

Many thousands died on the field; more drowned in the Danube.

Nieuwpoort, Battle of (July 2, 1600). *Maurits of Nassau* led 11,000 foot and a small force of cavalry to forestall the *Siege of Ostend* (1601–1604). He was met along the shoreline by *Albert, Archduke of Austria* at the head of a veteran Spanish army. Maurits' well-drilled troops, new flexible formations and tactics, and "Dutch muskets" gave the Netherlanders a rate-of-fire advantage over the Spanish. Albert's heavy *tercios* also found it difficult to maneuver over a broken terrain of dunes and drifts. The smaller Dutch formations adjusted and moved with relative ease, not least because they deployed wooden mats developed by Maurits for conducting siege warfare in a water-soaked theater of war. The mats supported the Dutch artillery on the shifting sands so that their guns could be repositioned quickly after firing, whereas recoil of the Spanish guns drove them crookedly into the soft dunes. After exchanges of infantry volleys, the Dutch cavalry brushed aside the Spanish horse, which had the sun in its face. Supported by advancing infantry, Maurits' cavalry smashed right through the Spanish infantry lines and the full rout was on. The victory brought no strategic gains, however, as Maurits dawdled and failed to prosecute sieges of the *privateer* bases at Nieuwpoort or Dunkirk, and then withdrew.

Nijmegen, Siege of (1591). See *Maurits of Nassau*.

Nine Years' War (1594–1603). In the mid-1590s, the great lords of Ulster, Red Hugh O'Donnell, Hugh O'Neill, and Hugh Maguire formed a rare alliance of their private armies and quickly drove the English from Ulster. By 1598, the war spread across Ireland to become a genuinely national rebellion. At its outbreak, the English garrison in Ireland numbered just 1,500. This swelled to 10,000 men by 1598 and peaked at over 20,000 in 1601. The key figure on the Irish side was Hugh O'Neill (1540–1616), Earl of Tyrone, head of the O'Neill clan. In 1594, Tyrone and the other Ulster lords moved into effective rebellion against *Elizabeth I*. The fighting was sporadic before 1598, broken by parlays and local truces and paced to the cautious strategy pursued by the undersized English garrison. At the "Battle of the Biscuits" (1594), an English supply column was attacked and routed by the rebels. A more significant rebel win came against a relief column at Clontibret (1595). Tyrone's major victory took place outside Armagh at "Béal Atha Buí" (or Yellow Ford or the Blackwater River) on August 14, 1598. The English garrison was forewarned of an ambush but marched out anyway in a heavily armed column. Tyrone's musketeers and artillery fired point-blank into the English from behind well-prepared and partly concealed positions. English casualties surpassed 2,000 killed and wounded, plus 300 more who deserted to the rebels. This stunning victory prompted fresh rebellions all over Ireland.

The Tudor state massively reinforced its Irish garrison, sending the *2nd Earl of Essex* over the Irish Sea with 17,000 reinforcements. But Essex would not fight. Instead, he signed a humiliating truce while allowing thousands of men to die in barracks from typhus and other camp diseases. The *Baron of Mountjoy* replaced the disgraced Essex (who returned to England to plot treason against

Elizabeth's life). Mountjoy penetrated rebel holdings in Ulster with surprise amphibious landings, and he scorched the countryside. The major fight came once Spain intervened in support of the rebellion, landing troops in Ireland in 1601 at Kinsale, in Cork. Mountjoy besieged the Spanish in Kinsale, forcing Tyrone to march south to relieve his allies. On December 24, 1601,Tyrone led 8,000 Irish and *redshanks* Scots, supported by 4,000 Spanish veterans attacking from the other side, against an English army of just 6,500, many of whom were deathly ill, but who were most ably led by Mountjoy. Tyrone attacked and suffered a bloody repulse from the tactically skilled Mountjoy. The Irish lost nearly 3,000 casualties. The Spanish surrendered and were shipped home. The loss at Kinsale ended Spanish interest in the Irish rebellion while dispiriting Irish lords and troops alike. The Irish army broke up as men disbanded to defend their homes with the traditional Irish *guerre couverte*, or went into hiding or exile. Famine then struck as a delayed result of English scorched earth tactics in Ulster. O'Donnell went into exile while O'Neill fought on until March 30, 1603, a week after Elizabeth I died. He surrendered to Mountjoy and was given generous terms by *James I*.

Suggested Reading: Nicholas Canny, *Elizabethan Conquest of Ireland* (1976); John McCavitt, *Flight of the Earls* (2004); Hiram Morgan, *The Battle of Kinsale* (2004).

ninja. Little that is historically reliable is known about the ninja of *Sengoku* Japan. Most likely, they were spies and assassins rather than the super warriors of popular culture. Almost certainly, they did not dress in all black but blended in with the local people of the garrison or town on which they were spying.

Noblesse d'epée. ''Nobility of the Sword.'' In France, the hereditary nobility that traced its rank and privileges to military prowess and service.

Noblesse de robe. ''Nobility of the Robe.'' Nobility acquired through holding an office from the French king. This was usually a privilege of the clergy in the medieval period, but the literate bourgeoisie later moved into its ranks as they joined the civil service of the early modern state.

nobori. Long, narrow, colored flags carried vertically on poles and used in early modern Japanese warfare to signify unit positions and rally points. See also *flags*; *hata jirushi*; *sashimono*.

***"Noche Triste"* (1520).** See *Otumba, Battle of*; *Tenochtitlán, First Siege of*.

Nonsuch, Treaty of (August 20, 1585). It was agreed between *Elizabeth I* and the *Raad van State* of the United Provinces, the first treaty entered into by the new Dutch Republic. Elizabeth provided money and troops to aid the Dutch rebellion, then on the point of defeat at the hands of the *duque di Parma*, in exchange for input into rebel strategy. It was agreed that she would nominate the top commander and be represented in the Raad. In return, she sent 6,350

foot and 1,000 horse to the Netherlands and paid half their expenses, on condition that her favorite, the *Earl of Leicester*, both command and receive high public office. See also *Oldenbaarneveldt, Johan van*.

Nordic Seven Years' War (1563–1570). Fought between Sweden and a Danish-Lübeck alliance. Each side initially fielded just under 30,000 men, but much reduced numbers later. Denmark also deployed a large fleet from the outset; Sweden built one during the war. The Danish army was comprised of German and other mercenaries and some poorly trained Danes. Poorer Sweden fielded a more ''national'' force of native levies, led by the mad Erik XIV, supplemented by mercenary officers. Some historians describe Erik as a military genius, citing his early experimentation with pike-and-musket tactics, deployment of smaller units, and fewer ranks. However, he had few chances to try these ideas in the field: there was a skirmish among a few thousand men at Mared (1564), and just one sizeable battle, at Axtorna in 1565, where the Danes prevailed. Along with the usual sieges, much of the war consisted of small *chevauchées* that destroyed the Swedish countryside. Denmark captured Älvsborg in 1563 after four days of bombardment by land and sea. The cost of foreign mercenaries and their mutinous mutterings forced the Danes to pare back, allowing Erik's levies to take Trondheim in 1564 and Varberg the next year. Sweden then returned to defensive warfare. Sweden did better in the war at sea from 1565, winning two naval battles and drawing a third that summer. Still, it regained Älvsborg only by payment of a large indemnity under terms of the Peace of Stettin (1570). Little was changed by this war on the fringe of Europe's burgeoning struggles over religion and empire, beyond ruining villages, towns, and lives. Meanwhile, the *First Northern War* (1558–1583) continued.

Nördlingen, First Battle of (September 5–6, 1634). An Imperial army of 20,000 infantry and 13,000 cavalry besieged a large Swedish garrison in Nördlingen. A Swedish relief army of 16,000 infantry and 9,000 cavalry attacked the Imperial left, which was anchored on high ground, at dawn on September 5. The fight on the left lasted nearly eight hours before the attacking Swedes withdrew, crossing the rear of the Protestant center. Seeing this, the Imperials attacked directly into the Swedish center. They broke the line, pushing survivors back on top of the withdrawing left wing. Carnage followed: the Swedes lost 17,000 dead and wounded and another 4,000 captured out of 25,000 engaged, along with 80 guns. They lost mainly due to poor execution of tactics that had served them exceptionally well under *Gustavus Adolphus* two years earlier at *Lützen* (November 6, 1632). This was partly a result of the heavy casualties they suffered before and at Lützen, which meant that the *Swedish Army* at Nördlingen was no longer the premier force that landed in Pomerania and marched through Germany singing Lutheran hymns with Gustavus. Death, wounds, disease, and desertion had long since eroded veteran formations. And replacements were fewer and not of the same quality as those who fought so brilliantly for the dead king, and no longer met the stringent training and skill requirements demanded by Gustavus. Disastrously,

at Nördlingen they still went into battle thinking they were superior to their opponents. Overconfidence thus was the second reason they lost the battle. The remnant of the army was marched away by *Bernhard von Sachsen-Weimar*, to shelter with the French until they entered the war in 1635. See also *Olivares, conde-duque de*; *Richelieu, Cardinal Armand Jean du Plessis de*.

Nördlingen, Second Battle of (August 3, 1645). *Turenne* and the *Great Condé* (Louis II) jointly invaded Bavaria with 12,000 men. An Imperial-Bavarian army of comparable strength under *Franz von Mercy* and *Johann von Werth* moved to met them at Nördlingen. Mercy entrenched there, barring access to the Danube. When Condé arrived he attacked directly into the Catholic lines, driving them back until they reached the river. With casualties approaching 50 percent on each side, mutual exhaustion caused the armies to separate and forbade any pursuit.

Normaljahr. ''Normative year.'' In conferences and treaties such as the *Peace of Prague* (1635) and the several treaties of the *Peace of Westphalia* (1648), which abolished the *reservatum ecclesiaticum*, this was the temporal marker for resolving disputes over prior secularization of ecclesiastical lands and benefices. In the *Treaty of Hamburg* (1638) France and Sweden demanded 1618 as the Normaljahr. At Westphalia, radical Protestants insisted on 1618, rolling the settlement back before the recatholicization of Bohemia and the Palatinate; fanatic Catholics demanded 1630, the apex of *Habsburg* martial success and subsequent to the *Edict of Restitution* (1629). It was finally agreed to use January 1, 1624.

Normans. ''Northmen.'' The Normans were descendants of pagan Scandinavian invaders (Vikings) who conquered, settled among, and were subsequently Christianized by the Gothic and Frankish peoples of northwestern France. During the 11th century, the Normans emerged as the most aggressive, dominant warrior-people of Europe, a position they kept for 200 years. Duc William (1027–1087), ''William the Conqueror,'' led an extraordinary amphibious operation across the Channel to England in 1066, winning the bloody Battle of Hastings against King Harold of Wessex and seizing the crown. William completed the conquest by 1070 with ruthless massacres and suppression of rebellion, but mainly with creeping encastellation of town and countryside. England thereafter was the main base of Norman power, from which they conquered parts of Ireland and Scotland. Yet, the Norman monarchy they established may have led to a prolonged partition of Great Britain rather than its early unification.

Other Normans took Malta, raided the Adriatic provinces and commerce of the *Byzantine Empire*, and ripped portions of southern Italy away from Byzantine control, including Sicily. Their reputation for rapine and brutality was so great even among fellow Christians, and their aggression so successful, Pope Leo IX (r.1049–1054) organized an expedition by Byzantine, Lombard, and Swabian troops to drive the Normans from Italy. The effort failed at

Civitate (June 17, 1053), where papal, allied Italian, and German soldiery were destroyed by the *heavy cavalry* of the Normans. Gains in Italy (Apulia and Calabria), as well as the conquest of Muslim Sicily made by the magnates Robert and Roger Guiscard, owed much to the military pressure that *Seljuk Turks* exerted against the eastern borders of the Byzantine Empire. Palermo fell in 1072 and the rest of Sicily by 1099. It is notable that in these conquests it was not the Normans' heavy horse that won but their expertise in naval blockade and amphibious invasion. At the end of the 11th century, Norman knights were in the van of the *Crusades*. It was their military architecture, with regional modifications, that built the great Crusader castles of the Middle East such as Krak des Chevaliers (in modern Jordan).

Norman strategy and tactics combined in a typical pattern of aggression. Wherever the Normans invaded they first built *motte-and-bailey* castles of mounds of earth and timber, only later adding stone *keeps* and towers and walls. From 1066 to the death of William I in 1087, it is thought the Normans built as many as 500 castles with which to hold England, starting at the Channel ports and concentrating on river fords and other strategic sites, notably London and Coventry. From these bases Norman cavalry sallied to drive the region into submission through raids of calculated terror and burning of surrounding towns and villages. This was also a way of paying for military service, as lands taken from the Anglo-Saxon aristocracy who were slaughtered or fled were redistributed to Norman barons who built more motte-and-bailey garrison forts to hold their domain and subjugated population. By 1100, *subinfeudation* settled a new aristocracy, ruthless and armed to the teeth, over most of England. In time, crusading and other military misadventures overstretched the Norman social and recruitment system. They adapted somewhat by bringing larger numbers of the lower social classes to the battlefield to supplement the armored cavalry of their landed nobility and knights. These troops were armed with new weapons, most notably the Welsh-English *longbow*, but also with *pikes* and *crossbows* and an English variation on the *halberd*, the *brown bill*. Such Norman innovations did not prevent Normandy itself being overrun by Geoffrey of Anjou and his successors from 1136 to 1144. See also *feudalism*; *Franks*; *fryd*; *Holy Roman Empire*.

. . . in these conquests it was not the Normans' heavy horse that won but their expertise in naval blockade . . .

Suggested Reading: Marjorie Chibnall, *Normans* (2001); David C. Douglas, *The Norman Achievement, 1050–1100* (1969); C. W. Hollister, *Military Organization of Norman England* (1965); John Le Patourel, *The Norman Empire* (1976); Jack Lindsay, *Normans and Their World* (1974).

Northampton, Battle of (1460). See *Wars of the Roses*.

Northern Army. After founding the unified *New Model Army*, Parliament retained two other armies, a Western and a Northern. These, too, were under the overall command of *Thomas Fairfax*.

Northern War, First (1558–1583). Also known as the ''Livonian War.'' In 1558, *Ivan IV* invaded Estonia. His army massacred 10,000 at the *sack of Dorpat* (1558), went on to sack 20 more towns, and captured Narva. The *Livonian Order* brought in *Landsknechte* with guns, but were unable to staunch the assault. The Order fought its last battle at *Ermes* (August 2, 1560), then disbanded. This collapse of the Brethren in face of Ivan's *strel'sty* and *servitor* cavalry opened Livonia to partition as Poland-Lithuania, Muscovy, Sweden, and Denmark all looked to gain territory. The Muscovite invasion marked the end of the wars of crusade in the Baltic region, but not the end of wars of imperial ambition. These would continue, almost uninterrupted, to 1667.

Despite initial success, Ivan was unable to take other key towns: Reval and Riga held out with Swedish and Polish aid. In 1563, the war spread: Denmark and Sweden fought each other at sea and Ivan attacked into Lithuania. In 1564, the Lithuanians won huge victories over Muscovy at Czasniki and the Ula River, driving Ivan farther into a madness that triggered gross excesses and terror against his own *boyars*. This *Oprichnina* lasted to 1571, temporarily taking Muscovy out of the war. The end of the *Nordic Seven Years' War* in 1570 threatened Ivan with fresh enemies in the west. He responded by ending the terror at home and invading Livonia in 1572–1573, leaving much fire and destruction in his wake. Then he turned to defend against the Ottomans and *Tatars* in the deep south of his huge empire. In 1575, a Muscovite army besieged Reval unsuccessfully then ravaged the surrounding lands. The next summer's campaign was the largest and most destructive of the entire war. In 1577, Ivan personally returned to attack Reval with 30,000 men, then Dünaburg and Kokenhausen. He was nearly killed by a cannonball at Wenden. Enraged, he threatened terrible punishment against the whole town. Whether by accident or with the suicidal intention of escaping the tsar's wrath, 300 men, women, and children blew themselves up. But Ivan was defeated at Wenden by September 1578 and offered to make peace. He was rebuffed by *Stefan Báthory* at the head of an army of the new union of Poland-Lithuania (*Union of Lublin*). Báthory led three expeditions into Russia in 1579, 1580, and 1581–1582, forcing Ivan to surrender his earlier Livonian conquests. This only ensured that fighting over the carcass of Livonia continued in future northern wars in the 17th century.

Suggested Reading: Robert Frost, *The Northern Wars, 1558–1721* (2000).

Novara, Battle of (1500). See *Sforza, Ludovico*.

Novara, Battle of (June 6, 1513). In the second decade of the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559), Swiss mercenaries fighting in service of the *Holy League* defeated a French army under Louis de la Trémoille, forcing France to abandon its effort to hold onto the Duchy of Milan. The Swiss nominally restored Duke *Maximilian Sforza*, but remained in effective occupation of the Duchy themselves, then milked it with oppressive taxation and the burden of upkeep of their 20,000-man army. French fortunes were reversed two years later when *Francis I* won a crushing victory over the Swiss at *Marignano*

(1515), where the future reformer *Huldrych Zwingli* served as a chaplain in the Swiss ranks.

Noyon, Peace of (1516). A temporary halt in the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559), partitioning north Italy between France and the Habsburgs. It did not long survive the further ambitions of either party.

Nuremberg, Congress of (June 26, 1650). This follow-on conference to the *Peace of Westphalia* (1648) set the demobilization plan and schedules carried out after the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648).

Nurgaci (1559–1626). ''Nurhaci.'' A dynamic *Manchu* leader who united the Jürchen clans of *Manchuria* into a single martial culture and state. In 1601 he instituted major military reforms, shaping the *banner system*. Formally a Ming vassal, in 1610 Nurgaci shook off this status. Six years later he proclaimed himself ''khan'' and his Manchurian domain an empire in its own right, the ''Later Jin,'' a title that deliberately echoed the ''Jin'' (''Golden'') empire that ruled northern China out of a Manchurian power base from 1122 to 1234. In 1619 Nurgaci launched a protracted war against the Ming with an initial force of 60,000. China mobilized 100,000 men and moved into Manchuria to oppose him. At *Sarhu* (1619), Nurgaci devastated the ill-led and divided Ming infantry, defeating each of four columns in turn. By 1621 he had conquered all Liaodong and Shenyang. In 1625 Nurgaci set his capital at Shenyang (Mukden). Nurgaci now made up for Manchuria's small population by absorbing into his army many Chinese and Mongolian prisoners, who were made to shave their foreheads and adopt the Manchu ''queue'' as an act of formal submission. They added crucial firearms and siegecraft expertise to what until then was a cavalry army. This enhanced Manchu military prowess once Nurgaci trained his cavalry to collaborate with artillery in an effective, early-modern combined-arms system. Still, the Ming were not defeated. In fact, Nurgaci was beaten in 1626 by a Ming counterattack. It was left to his eighth son, Hong Taiji, and his heirs to conquer Inner Mongolia (1632), make Korea a tributary state (1638), overthrow the Ming and establish Qing rule over northern China (1644).

nüzül. The internal supply system of the Ottoman Empire. See also *logistics*; *magazines*.

O

Oberster Feldhauptmann. A commanding officer of Swiss cantonal troops. See also *Banner (Swiss)*; *Swiss square*.

Oberster Feldweibel. The officer responsible for setting the order of battle in a *Landsknechte* company.

Obrist. ''Colonel.'' In predominantly German-speaking mercenary companies, the officer appointed to command. Directly comparable to ''colonel'' in other companies. Modern German usage is ''Oberst.''

Obrona Potoczna. ''General Defense.'' See *Polish Army*.

ocak. An Ottoman regiment.

Oda Nobunaga (1534–1582). Japanese warlord. Born in Owari during a period of chronic warfare (*Sengoku*) and perfidy among *samurai*, in the 1540s and 1550s Nobunaga trained in the martial arts and prepared for a life of war. He won a major victory in 1560 at *Okehazama*, securing his eastern flank with *Tokugawa Ieyasu*. These two warlords formed an enduring alliance, with Nobunaga occupying the senior position. Together they waged the key early battles of the *Unification Wars*. In addition to innovative use of firearms, Nobunaga introduced a 20-foot pike to Japanese warfare to protect his arquebusiers and infantry archers. He also seized key centers and towns that manufactured guns, gaining an early lead on opponents by fielding a trained corps of arquebusiers. Utterly ruthless (one specialist historian called him ''a cruel and callous brute''), he used bribes, threats, killing of hostages, maniacal massacres, burnings of towns and forts with hundreds still inside, and other terror methods to advance his unification by conquest. It was his policy to kill

defeated *daimyo*, then to kill their entire extended family. He had his brother-in-law's head pickled and displayed at banquets.

Nobunaga occupied Kyoto in 1568, but did not claim the shogunate; he intended to hollow it out instead. In 1570 a league of northern daimyo formed to oppose him, but in alliance with Tokugawa he defeated these enemies at *Anegawa* (July 22, 1570). Nobunaga treated all enemies with great brutality, but he was specially ruthless in persecuting *Buddhists*. In 1571 he burned down the Tendai monastery on Mt. Hiei, massacring thousands of monks and blotting out a major center of Japan's medieval life and economy. Two years later he encircled and burned Kyoto to punish and depose the last Ashikaga shogun, who had not understood the limits of his allowed power. His most ferocious opponent was the *True Pure Land* sect of Buddhists. He exterminated many with great savagery in Nagashima and besieged the survivors for 10 years in their exquisitely sited fortress (at the narrow end of a lake) of *Honganji* at Osaka. At *Nagashino* (1575), Nobunaga used a corps of some 3,000 arquebusiers to rout the army of an enemy daimyo. With fire and firearms, he conquered one-third of Japan by 1580. Death came in 1582: trapped in a Buddhist temple in Kyoto by the troops of a treacherous vassal, he either died in the fiery climax of the attack or committed seppuku. His destruction of Buddhist and monkish military bastions and his reduction of daimyo fortifications and power greatly advanced the unification of Japan that was later completed by *Toyotomi Hideyoshi* and Tokugawa Ieyasu. See also *castles, on land*.

Suggested Reading: Jeroen Lamers, *Japonius Tyrannus: The Japanese Warlord Oda Nobunaga Reconsidered* (2000).

odoshi ge. See *armor*.

officer. Any person holding a commission or warrant to command in a regularly constituted military force. The term derives its modern meaning from the great military reform in France of 1444, in which the problem of untrustworthy mercenary leaders was partly solved by appointing men who served at the pleasure of the king. These new commanders were ''office-holders,'' or officers, in the royal service. The idea that officers should also be nationals of the state which employed them arose much later, and was still not general practice before the French Revolution. With some exceptions, during the medieval and early modern periods most officers were nobles, still considered the outstanding warrior class.

On naval ranks and related matters, see *admiral*; *boatswain*; *boatswain's mate*; *captain*; *constable*; *coxswain*; *general*; *Kapudan-i Derya*; *lieutenant*; *master*; *master carpenter*; *master gunner*; *master's mate*; *midshipman*; *patron*; *petty officer*; *purser*; *quartermaster*; *quartermaster's mate*; *rear admiral*; *standing officer*; *tarpaulin*; *vice admiral*; *warrant officer*.

On army ranks and related matters, see *alferes*; *banneret*; *captain*; *Cebici başi*; *cihuacoatl*; *colonel*; *constable*; *Constable of France*; *Çorbasi*; *cornet* (1); *corporal*; *Cossacks*; *dead-pays*; *dirlik yememiş*; *dziesietniks*; *ensign*; *Feldobrist*; *Feldweibel*; *Field*

Marshal; *general*; *Generalfeldobrist*; *Generallissimus*; *Generalobrist*; *general officer*; *Grand Vezier*; *Hauptmann*; *Hochmeister*; *Hurenweibel*; *kaim mekam*; *knight*; *knight marshal*; *Kreisoberst*; *lieutenant*; *Lieutenant-général du royaume*; *Lieutenant-General (Germany)*; *locumentems*; *maître de camp*; *maréchal de camp*; *maréchal de logis*; *Marshal*; *Mestre*; *mestres de camp*; *Ming Army*; *Oberster Feldhauptmann*; *Oberster Feldweibel*; *Obrist*; *Ordensmarschall*; *otaman*; *Pfenningmeister*; *podestà*; *porucznik*; *Prévôt des maréchaux*; *Prior Mor*; *Provost*; *provost marshal*; *quartermaster*; *ransom*; *rota*; *rotmistrz*; *Rottmeister*; *sanack bey*; *Schultheiss*; *serdar*; *sergeant*; *Shogun*; *shugo*; *"skulking way of war"*; *starosty*; *starshnya*; *subashi*; *Swiss Army*; *uniforms*; *vintenar*; *Wachmeister*; *Yeniçeri Ağasi*; *Zeugherr*.

Oikoumene. "The inhabited lands." A world historical term for the densely populated, interconnected landmasses of northern Africa, Europe, the Middle East, and continental Asia. Its dominant civilizations were Arabic, Roman (Latin), Hellenistic, Sanskrit, and Chinese. The major religions produced by these civilizations, overlapping one another in frontier zones, were *Christianity*, *Islam*, *Hinduism*, *Buddhism*, and *Confucianism*. What justification for the term there is derives from the fact that most of the world's population lived in the Oikoumene and that technology as well as political, military, economic, and religious ideas spread rapidly there among diverse cultures, more so than in isolated areas such as sub-Saharan Africa, the Americas, Southeast Asia, or Australasia.

Okehazama, Battle of (1560). In 1560, a massive army of 45,000 was sent by a powerful *daimyo*, Yoshimoto Imagawa, to invade the domain of the warlord *Oda Nobunaga*. The latter kept his battle plan secret from his captains, fearing treachery and even betrayal on the battlefield. (In later campaigns, Nobunaga used offers of protection and vassalage to win over enemy daimyo and gain victories.) With only 5,000 men Nobunaga daringly attacked Yoshimoto's camp and won overwhelmingly over his more tactically staid, and utterly surprised, enemy. This remarkable victory inspired generations of Japanese officers, including those who launched the Pacific War in 1941, to believe in the superiority of will and daring over material reality and enemy numerical advantage. More immediately, the victory secured Nobunaga's eastern flank with *Tokugawa Ieyasu*.

okka. The standard Ottoman measure of *artillery* caliber: 14 okka guns fired the equivalent of 40-pound shot; 11–22 okka guns fired 30–60-pound shot; a 24-okka gun fired the equivalent of 68-pound shot.

Oldenbaarneveldt, Johan van (1547–1619). "The Advocate." Dutch statesmen and reformer. Although a diplomat by profession, he was strangely lacking in diplomatic skills. He came from a family with long anti-*Habsburg* credentials and for 30 years was the leading official in the *States General*, rising to hold the office of "landsadvocaat." He was an early supporter of *William the Silent*. With long experience in dike supervision and engineering, he oversaw

the flooding of fields around Leiden to permit *Sea Beggar* boats to relieve the siege of that city in 1574. He helped negotiate the *Treaty of Nonsuch* with *Elizabeth I*. He was instrumental in securing hegemony for Holland in the Union of Utrecht and over the United Provinces. He played a lead role in launching the *Vereenigde Oostindische Compaagnie* (VOC). He supported the *Twelve Years' Truce* (1609–1621), but over its course he lost power and influence to hardline Calvinist preachers (he leaned to the *Arminian* side in the religious disputes of the period), and *Maurits of Nassau*, with whom he was increasingly at odds from 1600. What ultimately doomed Oldenbaarneveldt was opposition of the regents and Dutch merchants to overseas commercial concessions he made to Spain to secure the Truce in 1609. This issue came to a head in 1617, as he led the ''peace party'' that hoped to extend the Truce or perhaps even arrive at a permanent peace. He was also opposed by fervent Calvinist refugees from France, Flanders, and Brabant, who tended to be more rigid in their religiosity than most Dutch. In August 1618, Maurits had the Advocate arrested. His trial for treason dragged on into 1619. He was convicted on May 12 and executed the next day, much to his surprise.

Old English. The Catholic ruling and landowning class descended from the *Norman* conquest of Ireland and later medieval migrations. They were dominant in *The Pale* where they acted for the crown, but did not rule outside it where the *Old Irish* lords held sway. After the *Kildare Rebellion* (1534–1535), the *New English* Protestant military class challenged both older groups for leadership. In 1641, the Old English joined the Old Irish in rebellion against the possibility that *Covenanter* success in England and Scotland might lead to further Protestant ''plantations'' in Ireland. Old English control of ports in Wexford and Waterford was crucial to the logistics of sustaining the Irish rebellion, and for *Confederacy* naval attacks against English shipping. See also *English Civil Wars*.

Old Irish. Gaelic lords, survivors of the *Norman* conquest of the 12th century. Hardline Catholics, they included most clerics and viewed any peace with Protestants after 1641 as obtainable only at the price of their religious liberty, and so voted consistently for war. They were prominent in the *Confederation of Kilkenny* (May 10, 1641), expelling any Catholics from the Confederacy who wanted the peace offered by *Ormonde*.

Olivares, conde-duque de (1587–1645). Né Gaspar de Guzmán y Pimentel. Also duke of Lerma and ''Valido'' (chief minister) to *Philip IV* from 1622 to 1643. He headed the ''Junta Grande de Reformación'' that sought to reform all Spanish government from banking to royal finance to military affairs. Like so many centralizers of the era, notably his great sparring partner, *Cardinal Richelieu*, Olivares sought to give his king one country under a single faith. To that end he supported purging activities of the *Inquisition* and proposed a ''Union of Arms'' wherein all parts of the Spanish kingdom and empire were allotted a military tax and recruitment contribution. This was not welcomed

outside heavily burdened *Castile*, but its intent and structure revealed a long-term plan for centralization under a powerful monarch. Olivares core military strategy from 1625 was to shift the long war against the Dutch rebels to sea, because on land little progress was possible and Spain's costs were unsustainable. Hence, he reduced the *Army of Flanders* until it could no longer fight a major offensive campaign unaided, even though it was still asked to blockade Dutch overland trade in support of the war at sea that aimed to smash *Sea Beggar* fleets and strangle the Dutch economy. Olivares could not get the Austrians to agree to this strategy, which entailed their assault on several Baltic ports that handled the Dutch northern trades. *Albrecht von Wallenstein* tepidly invested *Straslund* and began to build a Baltic fleet, but he never fully supported Olivares' project either.

Olivares was personally devout and served a devout Catholic king in domestic affairs, but he did not pursue an exclusionary Catholic foreign policy: he was not a confessional fanatic or even idealist when it came to raisons d'état. He thus supported the *Huguenots* against the Catholic kings of France because he thought war with France was unavoidable as long as Cardinal Richelieu was in power. That led Olivares to make a major mistake in 1629: he involved both branches of the *Habsburgs* in a losing war with France in northern Italy, the *War of the Mantuan Succession* (1627–1631). That left *Johann Tilly* undermanned and alone in Germany to face *Gustavus Adolphus* and the German Protestant powers. Olivares seems to have envisioned a short war against France in which such heavy blows would be landed by Spain's putatively superior *tercios* that Richelieu would be toppled. He was wrong, and Spain was thereafter drawn more deeply into the German war, on top of its Dutch war, in addition to protracted war with France, as well as ongoing naval wars with the Ottomans and the Barbary emirates. Olivares was extremely worried by Richelieu's steady advance of French garrisons across the Rhine from 1632 to 1634. Once the Habsburgs won at *First Nördlingen* (1634), he took aggressive measures designed to lure France into the German war (after the *Treaty of Regensburg* in 1630, he no longer trusted *Ferdinand II* as an ally). This was part and parcel of his long-term policy of mobilizing Austrian Habsburg resources to advance the interest of Spain, in this case by tying down and fighting the French in Germany.

In 1639 Olivares sent 20,000 reinforcements north in a convoy of 100 ships . . .

In 1639 Olivares sent 20,000 reinforcements north in a convoy of 100 ships, only to have nearly the entire fleet destroyed at *The Downs* (October 21, 1639). The defeat was strategically worse than the disaster of the *Invincible Armada* of 1588. The defeat gutted Olivares' naval strategy. Then the *Revolt of Catalonia* began in May 1640, provoked by his high war taxes. That was followed in December by a coup and rebellion in Portugal. Uprisings against Spanish rule also broke out in *Naples* and Andalusia, Philip was sorry to see Olivares go; but the country was not and Queen Isabella saw that he did. Olivares was never as abstract as Richelieu and had to contend with a vast

overseas empire that did not burden the Cardinal. He did not seek to reshape the European order so much as to preserve Spain's position in it. Given the long-term decline of Spain vis-à-vis France, this he could not do.

Suggested Reading: J. H. Elliott, *The Count-Duke of Olivares: The Statesman in an Age of Decline* (1986).

olive line. See *Castile*; *Reconquista*.

Oliwa (Oliva), Battle of (November 28, 1627). A small naval battle in which 10 Polish ships, some crewed by experienced Dutch sailors and Scottish mercenaries, defeated six Swedish ships near Danzig. The Swedes were trying to impose a blockade against Danzig that affected Polish and Dutch mercantile interests in the eastern Baltic. The Poles lost fewer than 50 men, but that figure included their admiral who was killed by a cannonball. The Swedes lost 350 killed and 70 captured.

Oñate, Treaty of (March 1617). A secret treaty between Spain and Austria negotiated by the Spanish ambassador, Count Oñate. It was intended to clear the way for resumption of war with the Netherlands upon expiration of the *Twelve Years' Truce* in 1621. Oñate committed *Philip III* to waive his formal pretensions to the crowns of Bohemia and Hungary in exchange for *Ferdinand II* ceding an Austrian claim to Alsace. This cleared the way for Ferdinand to receive Spanish military aid in his war with Venice, but also pulled Spain into the *Thirty Years' War* after 1621. It thus reversed *Lerma's* policy of staying clear of war north of the Alps.

O'Neill, Hugh. See *Nine Years' War*.

O'Neill, Owen Roe (c.1583–1649). Irish Confederate commander. He served in the Spanish *Army of Flanders* for 40 years before returning to Ireland aboard a ''Dunkirk frigate'' with a regiment of tough veterans to join the great rebellion in 1642. He fought mainly in Ulster, winning one of the most signal Irish victories ever over a British force at Benburb on June 5, 1646. This gave the Catholic Irish armies superiority for the first time and thereby greatly extended the rebellion. See also *Confederation of Kilkenny*.

Ōnin War (1467–1477). It began the period in Japanese history generally known as *Sengoku jidai* or ''Warring States.'' It was rooted in the failed balance of power between the Ashikaga *shoguns* and their *shugo* and *daimyo* even in the central provinces, or Kantō region. The trigger was resignation of a weary emperor, which set off an intense succession struggle between the Yamana and Hosokawa daimyo and their *samurai* retainers, each with great compounds within the Imperial capital. Most of the fighting took place in Kyoto between an ''eastern army'' and a ''western army,'' coalitions named for the location of their base camps within Kyoto. The city was destroyed by a decade of combat and arson carried out by hordes of *ashigaru* who joined with

samurai in the protracted fight. With the succession decided by 1473, and the city reduced to ashen ruins, samurai drifted away. All fighting stopped inside Kyoto in 1477. In the interim the fighting had spread, merging with local conflicts across Japan. For that reason, some historians view the Ōnin War as merely the first decade of the *gekokujō* and a ''Japanese Hundred Years' War.''

Suggested Reading: H. Varley, *The Ōnin War* (1994).

Opbud. See *Denmark*.

open order. In the cavalry, a spacing of one horse length (about six feet) between ranks in a troop. In the infantry, a loose formation used on the march. Units moved into *close order* for battle. See also *drill*.

Oprichnina. ''Government apart.'' Originally this referred to the quixotic decision by *Ivan IV* (''The Terrible'') to divide the administration of *Muscovy* into the ''Oprichnina,'' a territory free of troublesome nobles which he governed directly, and the rest of Muscovy, or ''Zemshchina'' (''The Land''). However, the term is more commonly used about his reign of terror, torture, and arbitrary arrest and executions. The anarchy lasted seven years (1565–1572), taking Muscovy temporarily out of the *First Northern War* (1558–1583) while encouraging Poland and Lithuania to form the *Union of Lublin* in 1569. Ivan's ''oprichniki''—quasi-warrior monks who dressed in all black and carried dog's heads and broomsticks to sniff out and sweep away evil—purged and slaughtered with abandon. In 1570, four thousand were killed in Novgorod alone and the city was gutted. The chaos was so extreme that the ranks of the *Cossacks* swelled with new recruits and the Crimean *Tatars* reached and sacked Moscow in May 1571, destroying large parts of the city. They also sacked Tula, Riazan, and several other cities. The combination of depredations by the oprichniki and the Tatar raid left large parts of the Oprichnina desolate and fallow. In 1572, Ivan liquidated the liquidators. That was a model of political terror and control that appealed to an admiring Joseph Stalin nearly 400 years later.

Orange, Principality and House of. See *Eighty Years' War*; *Hendrik, Frederik*; *Maurits of Nassau*; *William the Silent*.

Ordensmarschall. The commanding officer and spiritual leader in a German *Military Order*.

Ordensstaat. The lands of the *Teutonic Knights*, stretching at their greatest extent from the Baltic coast of Prussia into western Poland and Russia, nearly to the area occupied by modern St. Petersburg. It was the main product of the most successful West European colonization project of the Middle Ages. It had no archbishop, instead combining internal administration and foreign policy under the Hochmeister. Towns were guarded by huge citadels and *commanderies* speckled and controlled the countryside.

Order of Aviz. See *Aviz, Order of*.

Order of the Garter. A decadent order of *chivalry* founded in 1348 by *Edward III*. It had more to do with tame tournaments than the battlefield, with the later pretend ideals of Thomas Mallory's *Le Morte d'Arthur* than with Edward III's real life slaughter of Scots and Frenchmen. Its emasculating purposes and effects were later closely paralleled by the Burgundian *Order of the Golden Fleece*.

Order of the Golden Fleece. Founded by Philip of Burgundy in 1430, it was a decadent mimicry of the older ideal of *chivalry*. Its ''knights,'' all leading nobles, might once have set out as Crusaders or at least as warriors of the realm. Instead, they became feckless courtesans and courtiers fawning for favors from the dukes. Its purpose was twofold: to celebrate the sovereign and emasculate the old landed aristocracy. It met 23 times from 1430 to 1559.

Order of Trufac. See *Knights of Our Lady of Montjoie*.

Order States. States founded or sustained by one or other of the *Military Orders*. See also *Lithuania, Grand Duchy of*; *Livonia*; *Livonian Order*; *Malta*; *Ordensstaat*; *Prussia*; *Rhodes, Siege of (1444)*; *Rhodes, Siege of (1479–1480)*; *Rhodes, Siege of (1522–1523)*; *Teutonic Knights, Order of*.

Ordinary. In the English navy in the 16th–17th centuries this was a fixed sum supposed to cover the cost of the routine (peacetime) activities of the king's/queen's ships.

ordu bazar. An Ottoman army market where food was bought from local villages at fair prices and craftsmen repaired boots, fixed weapons, or cut hair, all inside large tents.

Orgelgeschütz. ''Organ gun.'' German term for small bore, multi-barreled pieces that elsewhere were known as *ribaudequins*.

Orléans, Siege of (1428–1429). See *Fastolf, John*; *Hundred Years' War*; *Jeanne d'Arc*; *Rouvray, Battle of*.

Ormonde, 1st Duke of (1610–1688). Né James Butler. Anglo-Irish soldier and statesman. Made commander-in-chief of English forces in Ireland in 1640, within a year he faced a major rebellion. He led Royalists in relieving sieges of Dublin and Drogheda in 1641, and to victory at New Ross (March 18, 1643). In 1644 he was made Lord Lieutenant of Ireland. In that role he contended with the miasma of Irish civil war, papal intrigue, and the sordid political machinations of *Charles I*. Bowing to reality, and never a fanatic, he accepted that most of Ireland was controlled by the *Confederation of Kilkenny*. He tried to restore peace in 1646 (''First Ormonde Peace'') by offering the

Confederates religious toleration. The *Old Irish* rejected the offer in June 1647. Ormonde surrendered Dublin to the *Confederate Army* and left for France. Many in Parliament thought him too closely associated with the king, whom he attended in his Hampton Court captivity. Returning to Ireland, Ormonde arranged the ''Second Ormonde Peace'' (January 17, 1649) that secured Catholic rights and linked the Confederate Army with his Royalists. When Charles I was executed two weeks later (January 30, 1649), Ormonde declared against Parliament and for Charles II. When *Oliver Cromwell* arrived in Ireland with 12,000 men of the *New Model Army* in August, Ormonde—who had failed to secure Dublin—again went into French exile.

Orta. A large unit within the *Janissary Corps*, roughly akin to a battalion. See also *wounds*.

Orthodox Churches. National churches of the Balkans, Eastern Europe, and Muscovy followed the Byzantine rite and Nicene creed, a statement of fundamental principles set out at the *Ecumenical Council* held in Nicene in 325 C.E. After centuries of contention that began in the 8th century, a full schism with the Latin *Catholic Church* came about in 1054. The divide was confirmed by the sack of Constantinople, the capital of the Orthodox faith, by Latin knights during the Fourth Crusade (1204). Kiev became a holy site for Slavic Orthodox when it hosted Prince Vladimir's conversion in 988. The Muscovite Orthodox Church grew more independent of the Greek Church once *Constantinople* was captured by the Ottomans in 1453, a pattern followed in Bulgaria, Cyprus, Georgia, Rumania, and Serbia. The Muscovite Church was made thoroughly subservient to the tsars and the state, markedly so even as it was elevated to a full patriarchate independent of Constantinople. It remained a close servant of tsarist autocracy, inculcating among the peasantry the claim of tsars to a unique legitimacy based in divine grace and holiness. In short, in a land of mass illiteracy tamed priests served as powerful propagandists for the regime, as they did also among Catholics in Spain. A similar role was played by sunni mystics in the Ottoman Empire and the *Qizilbash* in Iran. See also *Militargrenze*; *Union of Brest*.

Suggested Reading: J. M. Hussey, *The Orthodox Church in the Byzantine Empire* (1986).

Osaka Castle, Siege of (1615). Toyotomi Hideyori, son of *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*, gathered the last opponents of *Tokugawa Ieyasu* at Osaka Castle in 1614: Toyotomi clan loyalists and retainers, defiant *samurai* left over from earlier defeats in the *Unification Wars* (1550–1615), soldiers of fortune, and civilians brought there by misfortune. Ieyasu surrounded Osaka with a huge army of 200,000 men and began the first ever bombardment of a Japanese stone fortress with modern cannon (*culverins* and *sakers*). The defenders could reply only with old-style Chinese cannon (early model breech-loaders) and torsion catapults. Hideyori led his troops outside the castle defenses to fight on the field at Tennoji (June 3, 1615). The fighting was intense and the slaughter

immense. The battle lost, Hideyori retreated into the burning castle and committed seppuku (ritual suicide). His eight-year-old son was murdered to prevent a later political claim against Ieyasu's heirs.

Osman I (1259–1326). Founder of the Osmanli dynasty for which the *Ottoman Empire* was named. The *Seljuk Turks* awarded him for military service with lands they wanted him to hold for them along the frontier with the *Byzantine Empire*. From there he raided constantly into rich Byzantine provinces. As the Seljuk state collapsed Osman moved into the political and military vacuum. He was a successful border warlord so he attracted freelance fighters to his banners, including many former Seljuk warriors. He failed to take Nicaea or Nicomedia in a two-year campaign, 1302–1304. In 1317 he began a nine-year siege of *Bursa*. He died before the city fell. Orkhan, his son and successor, moved the Ottoman capital there once it did.

Osnabrück, Treaty of (October 24, 1648). The second of the major treaties of the *Peace of Westphalia* which, together with the *Treaty of Münster* signed on the same day, brought peace to Germany and most of Europe and ended the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). Osnabrück was a heavily detailed agreement which resolved hundreds of long-standing religious and territorial disputes within Germany. For instance, it clarified the legal standing of the Protestant branch—*Johannitterorden*—of the Knights of St. John, as distinct from the still-Catholic Order of Malta, and returned five *commanderies* to the Maltese. More generally, it clarified the titles and claims of various German princes and bishops, reformed the election provisions of the constitution of the *Holy Roman Empire*, and confirmed as sovereign some 300 political entities in greater Germany. In that it carried forward recognition of the German *Estates* agreed in the *Imperial Diet* at Regensburg in 1641. It also granted Sweden an indemnity of five million Taler that was crucial to Sweden agreeing to withdraw its unpaid army from Germany.

Ostend, Siege of (1601–1604). After losing at *Nieuwport* (July 2, 1600), *Archduke Albert of Austria* laid siege to Ostend. An initial effort to storm the defenses failed and the Spanish settled in for a siege that became known throughout Europe as the "new siege of Troy." In 1602 *Ambrogio di Spínola* took charge of the Spanish trenches but fared no better than his predecessor. *Maurits of Nassau* brought in troops to relieve the siege, supplying them and the city via the sea. This enabled the Dutch to continue to resist long after traditional limitations of supply would have forced a surrender. However, Spínola likewise made use of the sea for resupply. The result was that both sides were able to last for three years—a record for sieges of that time—until the city fell to Spínola on September 22, 1604. Most of its Protestants departed along with surviving defenders and settled in other garrison towns along the Scheldt. Ostend was important in spreading new military technologies and siegecraft to other lands, as hundreds of young nobles and more military engineers made their way to Ostend to observe the new methods firsthand.

otaman. Leader of a *Cossack* host. See also *hetman*.

Otterburn, Battle of (August 15, 1388). After decades of minor border raids and skirmishing, and with England tied down in the *Hundred Years' War* with France, the *Scottish Wars* flared up again in 1388. A combined French-Scottish army crossed into northern England to conduct a raid-in-force. The English, hoping to literally catch the allies sleeping, attacked their camp at night. But an alarm was raised and the fighting was sharp. About 2,000 English were killed by Scots pikemen and their French allies, and many English nobles were captured and held for ransom. Untamed by English military power, Scottish raiding continued unabated across the border into the 15th century.

Ottoman Army. The sultans had a *standing army* of real size before most European states: the *Kapikulu Askerleri*. At its core was a professional firearms-bearing corp of military slaves, the *Janissary Corps*, who added expertise in gunpowder weapons in the early 15th century to their original skill as archers. They were supported by quasi-feudal levies of *timariot* light cavalry, and six regiments of elite household *sipahis*. In 1527 the Ottoman army boasted some 11,000 musketeer infantry, 5,000 auxiliary light cavalry, 2,000 artillerymen, and 90,000 timariot horse (seasonal troops). By 1609 the force swelled to 47,000 Janissaries plus irregular peasant infantry, 21,000 cavalry, 8,000 artillerymen, and 140,000 timariots. During the 16th century the Ottomans boasted a large early modern army that was more than a match for any army in Europe, a fact proven by continued conquests of new provinces carved out of western Iran and southeastern Europe. In any discussion of the period it should be noted, as does Geoffrey Parker, that it was Ottoman armies that besieged European cities such as Buda, Belgrade, and Vienna and not Europeans who besieged Constantinople (Istanbul). See also *Acemi Oğlan*; *akincis/akinjis*; *Azaps*; *Beyliks*; *Bostancilar*; *camp followers*; *cavalry*; *Cebicis*; *Cecora, Battle of*; *Celâli Revolts*; *Dar al-Harb*; *dead-pays*; *desertion*; *Hungary*; *Kazan*; *Khotyn, Battle of*; *Kosovo Polje, Battle of*; *Kur'aci*; *magazines*; *Marj Dabiq, Battle of*; *Militargrenze*; *Mohács, Battle of*; *murtat*; *ocak*; *ordu bazar*; *Ottoman Empire*; *Ottoman warfare*; *Piyadeğan militia*; *revolution in military affairs*; *Rhodes, Siege of* (1444); *Rhodes, Siege of* (1479–1480); *Rhodes, Siege of* (1522–1523); *Sekban*; *Sis, Battle of*; *Tatars*; *Thirteen Years' War*; *Top Arabacs*; *Topçu*; *trace italienne*; *Tüfeçis*; *Voynuqs*; *Yaya infantry*.

During the 16th century the Ottomans boasted a large early modern army . . .

Ottoman Empire. The Ottoman Empire arose from, and was centered on, successor Turkic military power in Anatolia. The first Turkic empire, in the 6th–7th centuries, was based in Turkestan, from where Turkic-speaking nomads dominated Inner Asia for centuries. They mounted raids into China and north India, and overran Central Asia and most of the Middle East. The

Seljuk Turks helped pave the way in Anatolia for the later Ottomans by a decisive victory over the *Byzantine empire* at Manzikert (1071). That catastrophe started the Greek empire on the path to degradation and extinction. The Ottomans expanded out of their base in western Anatolia along the Byzantine border region of Bithynia, with the founding conventionally dated to 1300. The Ottomans moved into a vacuum of power and *overlordship* left by the defeat of the Seljuks by the *Mongols*, aided by *Crusader* occupation of Constantinople from 1204 to 1261. The Empire was ruled by the Osmanli dynasty, named for its founder *Osman I* (or Othman, 1259–1326). Its expansion proceeded from the 13th century through the 16th century, with its outer limits in Europe only made clear late in the 17th century. Some historians depict the rise of the Ottomans as a leading example of a *gunpowder empire* made possible by the willingness of martial classes to harness black powder technology to territorial expansion. Others see that as an overly technologically deterministic thesis.

Expansion

The Ottomans captured *Bursa* in Anatolia in 1326 after a nine-year siege of that Byzantine city. They made it their temporary capital as they moved on to assault and take Nicaea (1331) and Nicomedia (1337). They acquired their first territory in Europe at Gallipoli in 1354, which they followed with the conquest of Adrianople in 1360 under *Murad I*. That ancient Roman town became their new capital and major military base in Europe from 1362. Constantinople was encircled by conquering the lower Balkans, an advance marked by key victories over the Orthodox Serbs at *Maritza River* (1371) and *Kosovo* (1389). These martial successes were followed by political and territorial absorption of much of Greece. Byzantium's second largest city, Thessalonika, fell in 1387. Next came conquests in Bulgaria, Macedonia, and Serbia proper. *Bayezid I* (r.1389–1402) completed the conquest of Anatolia, incorporating all smaller Turkic states there into the Ottoman Empire. The Ottomans final surge against the defenses of Byzantium was interrupted by an advance into their strategic rear in Anatolia by the last of the great Mongol-Turkic hordes, led by *Timur*. Bayezid was defeated and taken prisoner by Timur at *Ankara* (1402). There followed a decade of civil war among Bayezid's sons, until *Muhammad I* emerged as sultan in 1413. He was followed by *Murad II*, who retread the Ottoman path of conquest by capturing parts of Anatolia lost to the *Timurids* and taking new territory in Greece, Hungary, and Serbia.

Around 1390 the Ottomans initiated a new recruiting system for their *Janissary Corps*. The *Devşirme system* drew boy slaves from newly conquered Christian subjects in a ''levy of tribute children.'' The system was not wholly unpopular among Christian peasant families. In addition, the relative tolerance of the Ottoman state for religious minorities, along with tax incentives to convert to Islam, meant the old Greek and Slav military elites found a niche in the Ottoman military. After Murad came the spectacular reign of *Muhammad II*, ''The Conqueror,'' usually ranked among the greatest of sul-

tans. He took *Constantinople* in 1453 and moved the capital there from Adrianople, where it remained as the center of power in the Islamic world into the 20th century. Muhammad conducted sweeping campaigns into southern Europe, overrunning the last holdout territories in Greece and finally subduing all of Serbia and Bosnia: northern Serbia was overrun in 1459, Bosnia fell between 1463 and 1466. What is now Albania was invaded in 1468 and the Negroponte was wrested from Venice in 1470. Muhammad put down a Turkoman revolt in eastern Anatolia and Iraq in 1473 and landed troops in Italy, at Otranto, in 1480. From this point the Empire moved away from its older, overt religiosity and Muslim ideology as justification for expansionist wars. It assumed a more mature internationalism in foreign policy and cosmopolitan toleration at home, such that *Bayezid II* welcomed tens of thousands of Jewish refugees from Christian persecution in Iberia and Italy after 1492.

After the Timurid dynasty in Iran collapsed, the Ottomans conquered most of the older Islamic lands directly west of the new *Safavid Empire* in Iran, and penetrated deep into the southern Arab lands of Syria and Palestine. The first half of the 16th century saw enemies consolidate in the east (Safavid Iran) and the west (singular union of Spain and Austria under *Charles V*). In 1514 *Selim I* reversed his father's toleration and ordered a mass slaughter of dissident Muslims (*shi'ia*) within the Empire. He followed up with an aggressive campaign against Iran. Following victory over the *Mamlūks* of Egypt at *Marj Dabiq* (1516), Selim set up Damascus and Aleppo as administrative capitals of two new provinces carved from Syria. In the first months of 1517 Janissary musketeers twice more defeated the conservative, firearms-abjuring mamlūks: at al-Raydaniyya in January and Giza in April. This led to the conquest of Cairo itself. Control of Egypt also made the Ottomans masters of the *Hejaz* (and hence, of Mecca and Medina) and provided a crucial stream of revenue used to support garrisons in Hungary.

The Ottomans next embarked on a prolonged curl of expansion around the south shore of the Mediterranean basin. If the long contest between Spain and the Ottoman Empire in the Western Mediterranean ultimately left the *Barbary corsairs* of North Africa—based in *Algiers*, *Tunis*, and *Tripoli*—only nominally under Constantinople's control, still these *Berber* states were mostly loyal and useful allies, especially in naval warfare. Another opportunity lay due west, against the *Nemçe* (*Habsburgs*) in Europe. As the *Protestant Reformation* split the Latin West it opened confessional fissures that might be exploited with Ottoman arms and diplomacy. The first moves came with the conquest of Belgrade (1521) and *Rhodes* (1522). Some Protestants looked to Constantinople to counterbalance Catholic Vienna, even as the former challenged the latter for physical control of the Balkans and Hungary. The Ottomans found an eager anti-Habsburg ally in Catholic France, under *Francis I*. Overall, after the fall of Buda in 1541 the Ottomans were mostly preoccupied with consolidation and defense of their Trans-Danubian territories and naval wars with Venice and Spain.

Consolidation

The cultural peak of Ottoman civilization came under *Suleiman I* (r.1520–1566), who ruled a population of nearly 20 million and an empire over 800,000 square miles in size. However, Suleiman was succeeded by thirteen weak and ineffectual sultans. His son, *Selim II*, lost the Ottoman galley fleet to a Western alliance at *Lepanto* in 1571. He also lost an Ottoman army in Astrakhan to *Muscovy*, a dangerous new enemy and rival empire encroaching on the northern frontier. Under a progression of bumbling sultans the Ottomans began to lag Europe in military technology and cultural and scientific innovation, though the gap was not large before c.1680. Some historians suggest that Ottoman social cohesion began to fray and economic productivity lagged from the end of the 16th century. If so, such long-term decline was well disguised by Ottoman military strength, which abided well after Lepanto and Astrakhan. The size of the empire brought strength and security, not just more hostile borders and vulnerability. And even with relative economic decline, Ottoman wealth was still immense and the military more self-sustaining from local resources than the new militaries of Europe or Muscovy.

The *Thirteen Years' War* (1593–1606) broke out with the Habsburgs over local quarrels in the *Militargrenze*. It ended in stalemate partly because neither side was really committed to the fighting, but also because in 1603 the Ottomans were distracted by renewal of war with a reformed and revived Safavid Iran led by *Abbas I*. The Ottomans were stunned by the new Safavid army at *Sis* (1606), and during the next quarter century lost considerable ground in the east, including Iraq after the Ottoman garrison in *Baghdad* switched to the Safavids. The Ottomans concentrated on retaking Baghdad, which they besieged three times (1625–1626, 1630, and 1638). Iraq was restored and accommodation reached with Safavid Iran in the *Treaty of Zuhab* (1639), which more or less kept peace to the end of the Safavid regime in 1722. Despite protracted Ottoman-Safavid wars, it should be noted that there were also long periods of peace, compromise, and a spirit of mutual recognition by the orthodox and heterodox Muslim empires. Similarly, while Paris and Constantinople found a common enemy in the Habsburgs during the first half of the 16th century, a military-political equilibrium in the west was established with Austria by the end of the Thirteen Years' War that both sides respected until 1660.

In the first half of the 17th century the Ottomans were mostly relieved of war in the west by the agonizing and destructive descent of Austria and the Holy Roman Empire into the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). In addition, by 1650 the Ottoman Empire reached the outer logistical and administrative limits of expansion and became increasingly devoted to defense of immense territory already gained. It is a grand irony that this was precisely the moment Europe began to view the Ottoman Empire as a lasting security threat. Note: Although contemporary Europeans and later historians called the Ottomans "*Turks*," the term is inaccurate. For instance, reflecting the great cosmopolitan basis of the Ottoman Empire, no sultan after 1362 was ethnically Turkish; most were Slavs, Georgians, or Circassians. See also *Amasya, Peace of*;

artillery; *askeri*; *Azaps*; *Chaldiran, Battle of*; *Derbençi*; *dirlik yememiş*; *Ethiopia*; *Eyâlet Askerleri*; *ganimet*; *Kapikulu Askerleri*; *Kur'aci*; *levend/levendat*; *magazines*; *Martolos*; *Raya*; *Sekban*; *sipahis*; *terakki*; *timariots*; *Voynuqs*; *Yaya infantry*; *Yeniçeri Ağasi*; *ziamet*; *Zsitva Torok, Treaty of*.

Suggested Reading: Jason Goodwin, *Lords of the Horizons: A History of the Ottoman Empire* (1999); Marshall Hodgson, *Gunpowder Empires and Modern Times* (1974); Colin Imber, *Ottoman Empire, 1300–1650* (2002); H. Inalcik, *The Ottoman Empire: Conquest, Organization and Economy* (1978); C. M. Kortepeter, *Ottoman Imperialism during the Reformation* (1992); Justin McCarthy. *The Ottoman Turks* (1997); V. J. Parry, *History of the Ottoman Empire to 1730* (1976); A. Stiles, *The Ottoman Empire, 1450–1700* (1989).

Ottoman-Safavid Wars. See *Abbas I*; *Amasya, Peace of*; *Chaldiran, Battle of*; *Iran*; *Muhammad II*; *Ottoman Empire*; *Ottoman warfare*; *Safavid Army*; *Safavid Empire*; *Selim I*; *Sis, Battle of*; *Suleiman I*.

Ottoman warfare. The medieval and early modern Western image of the Ottoman soldier as motivated principally by fanatic Muslim (*ghazi*) belief, and the *Ottoman Empire* as driven by a core mission of *"holy war"* (jihad), is a gross caricature that has nonetheless been purveyed by generations of historians. For one thing, jihad applied principally to defense of the *Dar al-Islam* ("Abode of Islam"), and the central Ottoman lands were almost never under threat. More recent work has shown that Ottoman imperialism operated out of a complex web of secular as well as religious motivations and interests, with the former more prominent than the latter after 1600. Also, it must be remembered that Ottoman armies were highly heterodox in terms of religious affiliation and that the Ottomans were far more tolerant in religious matters than contemporary states in Europe which engaged in decades of confessional war. Ottoman armies operating in the Balkans were comprised of local Christian soldiers; Crimean scouts and foragers of dubious, if nominal, Islamic belief; professional *Janissaries* taken as boys from Christian families and raised to *Islam*; traditional sunni *heavy cavalry* from Anatolia; and other Muslim troops drawn from tolerated sufi or regional sects. It is difficult to see how such religiously cosmopolitan armies were driven by a supposed fanatic devotion to Islam. It seems far more likely that they were moved by more normal interests in martial glory, imperial expansion, and especially greed for land and plunder.

. . . Ottoman armies were highly heterodox in terms of religious affiliation . . .

By the end of the 16th century the distance of the western frontier from Constantinople meant that local raiding and private wars in the *Militargrenze* prevailed, sometimes even against the wishes of the sultan. Large armies and prolonged campaigns were still fought into the mid-16th century, though during the first half of the 17th century there was mostly peace along the frontier with Christian Europe as the Ottomans dealt with a revived and reformed *Safavid* Iran. The pattern of Ottoman warfare was also different in the east where greater distances from supplies and harsher climate and

rougher terrain conditions, along with widespread public disapproval of making war on fellow Muslims, placed sharp limits not just on Ottoman generals but on the capacity of their armies to sustain military operations. A second hoary myth—that the Ottomans progressively fell behind the West in military technology and capabilities after c.1500—also has been exposed. Most historians of Ottoman warfare now agree that significant technological divergence did not begin until c.1680. Moreover, before the 18th century the Ottomans were more advanced than Europe in military organization and specialization. In addition to the universal specialization of all early modern militaries into infantry, cavalry, and artillery, the Ottomans had a sophisticated commissariat and supply system (''menzil-hane''), a transportation service, and even special assault commandos (*Serdengeçti*). And far more Ottoman troops were well-trained professionals rather than last-minute seasonal conscripts, as was so often the case in Europe.

Rhoads Murphey has identified important material and fiscal constraints on Ottoman warfare. Materially, military technology was the least-constraining factor as the Ottomans imported *renegade* military engineers and generally kept pace with developments in the West prior to the late 17th century. *War finance* was more restrictive, as it was in all early modern warfare. Yet, the Ottomans had major advantages over their enemies in the Christian West and in Safavid Iran in this arena, too: they were less involved in expensive naval warfare; they had a vast empire and productive economy that allowed them to avoid special war taxes, debasement of currency, or periodic bankruptcy; they had self-sustaining allies (*Tatars*), freelance auxiliary cavalry (*akinci*), and unpaid frontier troops (*Voynuqs*), all financed mainly through a share in plunder. They also used regular troops as military laborers, thereby reducing fortification costs, where European troops disdained spade work before the 1590s. A greater constraint on Ottoman operations was climate, especially the heat of the eastern deserts of Iraq and Iran. Limited fodder for huge *timariot* cavalry armies along with difficult terrain restricted operations in the Balkans. Seasonal rains and the cycle of the growing season placed sharp logistical limits on military operations, as they did on all early modern armies, confining activity to the six months between May and November. All in all, the early modern Ottoman military was more Habsburg than Prussian in its military and ethnic diversity and internal divisions, its size and ineluctable clumsiness, and the costs and distractions of multiple fronts and wars. But then the Habsburgs, too, governed a successful cosmopolitan empire that was often underestimated in its military and organizational capabilities by outside observers and later historians. See also *armories*; *artillery*; *askeri*; *Azaps*; *Baghdad, Siege of*; *Chaldiran, Battle of*; *Derbençi*; *dirlik yememiş*; *Eyâlet Askerleri*; *fortification*; *ganimet*; *Hormuz*; *Kapikulu Askerleri*; *Kur'aci*; *Lepanto, Battle of (October 7, 1571)*; *levend/levendat*; *magazines*; *Martolos*; *Militargrenze*; *rations*; *Raya*; *sekban*; *siege warfare*; *sipahis*; *Sis, Battle of*; *standing army*; *terakki*; *Yaya infantry*; *Yeniçeri Ağasi*; *zarbzens*; *ziamet*.

Suggested Reading: Rhoads Murphey, *Ottoman Warfare, 1500–1700* (1999).

Otumba, Battle of (July 2, 1520). *Hernán Cortés* and the bloody and wounded survivors of the *''Noche Triste''* (June 30, 1520) who escaped from the *first siege of Tenochtitlán* were caught on the open plain on July 2, partway through their flight to the Tlaxcalan capital. Possibly as many as 40,000 enraged Aztec warriors, led by the newly proclaimed Emperor Cuitláhuac, caught up to and surrounded the staggering Spanish and their remaining Tlaxcalan allies. Outnumbered as few armies have been in the history of warfare, the small *conquistadore* and Tlaxcalan force fended off repeated attacks for more than six hours. The decisive action came, according to Spanish accounts, when Cortés led a charge of the last lancers right at the *cihuacoatl* (commander) of the main Aztec formation. The brittle military-theocratic hierarchy of the Aztecs worked to their disadvantage as once the cihuacoatl and his lieutenants fell and regional musters of Aztecs scattered, leaderless and demoralized. This allowed the surviving Spanish and Tlaxcalans to escape to Tlaxcala, where Cortés regrouped prior to embarking on the *second siege of Tenochtitlán* (1521).

Outremer. Also ''Oultremer'' (''over the sea''). The Crusader states in Palestine and Syria. These took different shape at different times, but for nearly two centuries some territory survived as a Latin Christian military burr in the side of Arab-Muslim civilization. In 1187, as *Salāh-al-Dīn* approached Jerusalem, the full complement of Outremer's *knights* (600) and *sergeants* (20,000), along with its *Turcopoles* and infantry, moved to meet him. Most of them by that time were native to the area, not Europeans. It was the last time Outremer fielded such a force. See also *Crusades*.

outworks. Defensive structures built outside the main *enceinte*. See also *crownwork*; *hornwork*; *redan*; *redoubt*.

overlordship. In many pre-modern societies from Europe to the Ottoman Empire, overlordship was the key relationship holding together not just armies but society itself. Men were bound to their lords in complex ways, including obligations of military service. Their lords were bound in turn to overlords—kings or emperors—through the retinue system of the major magnates. Even kings and whole states might be bound to others by subservient relations of *tribute* that arrayed in complex patterns crafted by conquest or dynastic marriages and inheritance. See also *bushidō*; *Crusades*; *feudalism*; *Holy Roman Empire*; *Hundred Years' War*; *samurai*; *Scottish Wars*; *servitium debitum*; *servitor classes*; *Teutonic Knights, Order of*; *tribute*.

Oxenstierna (1583–1654). Swedish Chancellor from 1611 to 1654. He assumed a dominant position on the death of *Karl IX* in 1611, with the boy-king *Gustavus Adolphus* still just seventeen. He assisted Gustavus during the *Kalmar War* (1611–1613) with Denmark and a series of wars with *Sigismund III* of Poland. By 1627–1628, Oxenstierna determined that Sweden would

have to enter the *Thirty Years' War* to clear the Baltic coast of the *Imperial Army* ensconced there under *Albrecht von Wallenstein*, and to block plans by *Olivares* of Spain to pursue a maritime war against the Netherlands in the Baltic. Crucially, Oxenstierna sought to preempt a *Habsburg*-Polish alliance. Finally, he and Gustavus were devoted Lutherans. Their confessional interest in the war was real and influential on their decision-making, and was reinforced by the connection between the Vasa dynasty and the success of Lutheranism in Sweden (as against the rival Catholic claims of Sigismund III). Oxenstierna thus encouraged Gustavus to sign the *Truce of Altmark* in 1629, freeing him to make his key intervention in Germany from 1630 to 1632.

Following the death of Gustavus at *Lützen* in 1632, stewardship of Swedish armies and interests in Germany fell to Oxenstierna as head of the regency council that governed Sweden. The death of the aggressive, ambitious Gustavus changed Sweden's war aims from imperial expansion and *overlordship* to peace, but not at any price or on any terms. Oxenstierna retrenched, withdrawing all-Swedish units from central Germany to the Baltic coast in 1633, but he hoped to fight on through proxies in the manner of *Cardinal Richelieu*. That came down to substituting France for the *Heilbronn League* as the fulcrum of Sweden's diplomatic and military efforts. But Oxenstierna and Sweden lost badly at *First Nördlingen* on September 5–6, 1634, severely undercutting his negotiating position. A few months later, Oxenstierna was taken prisoner at Magdeburg by non-Swedish mercenaries who by then made up the bulk of the ''Swedish Army,'' and who demanded arrears of pay Sweden did not have the ability to meet. The gap in prestige evident between Oxenstierna and the dead king, and Sweden's weakened finances, was such that further mutiny was forestalled only with major concessions of lands and plunder so that the Swedish Army, too, became a plague even to the lands and Protestant peoples it had liberated. Moreover, only France's intervention in the war in 1635 permitted Sweden to make a slow recovery after Nördlingen. To speed this process, Oxenstierna made peace with Poland at Stuhmsdorf (September 20, 1635). To forestall Denmark's re-entry to the German war in 1643, Oxenstierna launched a preemptive attack (*Torstensson's War*). He then presided over Sweden's interests in the negotiations leading to the *Peace of Westphalia* in 1648. See also *Hamburg, Treaty of*.

o-yoroi. See *armor*; *samurai*.

P

Pacification of Ghent. Following the "*Spanish Fury*" of November 4–5, 1576, delegates from Catholic Brabant and Protestant Holland and Zeeland agreed, at Ghent, to join Utrecht and *William the Silent* in driving out all Spanish troops and forming a new government for the Netherlands. *Don Juan of Austria*, the new Spanish governor, was forced to concede initially, but within months returned to active hostilities.

pacifism. See *Albigensian Crusade*; *Anabaptism*; *Arianism*; *Lollards*; *Pax Dei*; *Tartaglia, Niccolò*; *Treuga Dei*.

Pacta Conventa. Charters limiting royal constitutional and military powers sworn by the monarchs of Poland-Lithuania. They codified the weakness of the monarchy vis-à-vis the *Sejm* and noble classes.

page. In the later Middle Ages, the son of a noble became a *knight* in stages. As a page he learned how to tend to the great *destrier*, to clean and keep weapons, and began to imbibe the mores of *chivalry*. The next step in a knight's apprenticeship and military education was *esquire*.

palace guards. Early medieval monarchs in Europe used extended family members and trusted retainers as personal guards. In England this was the function of the *housecarls*. Monarchs and magnates hired elite palace guards of professional troops starting around 1350. Their main function was still to act as bodyguards, but an important secondary role was to display the grandeur of the prince or king. Such units should be seen as part of the long process of developing *standing armies*, since they were well-armed personal troops of the sovereign. In time, purely ceremonial functions were served by various courtiers, sergeants-at-arms, and the like while palace guards took on an important military role. In battle, *Edward III* employed Cheshire mounted

archers dressed in green and white as his bodyguard. The Avignon popes had a personal guard (not yet Swiss) of over 100 armed men; the Visconti of Milan kept a palace guard of 700 cavalry during the 1420s, which later grew to more than 2,000 ''familiares ad arma.'' In England, the ''Yeoman of the Guard'' was established in 1486 with an initial complement of 200, rising to 600 by the coronation of *Henry VIII*. In Spain the royal bodyguard, the ''guardas reales,'' numbered 1,100 *men-at-arms* and another 130 *jinetes* (light cavalry) in the 1490s. In France the household or palace guard was made up of nearly a thousand men in 1500, including 200 *knights*, 100 Scots Archers, 100 *franc-archers*, 200 ordinary archers, and the famous ''Les Cent-Suisses.'' *Charles the Rash* outdid French kings in this, as in all things pompous, retaining 2,000 armed men as a personal guard, including eight companies of English archers and another eight companies of infantry. When *Henri III* hired Swiss guards for his Paris residence he so alarmed the citizenry that they rebelled on the *Day of the Barricades* (May 12, 1588), driving the king from Paris. See also *eunuchs*; *Haiduks*; *Kapikulu Askerleri*; *strel'sty*.

palanka. See *çit palankasi*.

The Pale. The key administrative area of Ireland under Norman/English rule from the 12th to the 16th centuries. It centered on Dublin but included parts of the modern counties of Louth, Meath, and Kildare.

palfrey. A cheaper breed of horse that carried knights or men-at-arms to battle; not a charger. See also *warhorses*.

***Pancerna* cavalry.** In Polish, ''jazda pancerna.'' Before 1648 they were known as ''Cossack cavalry'' (''jazda kozacka''), and in their earlier days had been raised in fact from *Cossack* hosts. Later, the term Cossack meant any horseman, registered or not, armed with saber, bow, and spear. From 1648, ''Pancerna'' was used for Polish medium cavalry to distinguish them from the Zaporozhian and Cossack light cavalry. They used sabers in preference to lances but also bows and short spears; many wore little or no armor. They were thus much cheaper to raise and maintain than *hussars*, whom they progressively replaced over the course of the 17th century until the Pancerna constituted 80 percent of Polish cavalry. By 1650 they were no longer predominantly Cossack by origin but were mainly Poles who rode and fought in the Cossack style. They sometimes employed the *caracole* in battle and generally rode on the flanks or in front of infantry columns on the move. The same style of cavalry in Lithuania was known as ''Petyhorcy.''

Panipat, Battle of (December 17, 1398). *Timur* invaded north India in September 1398. On the strategic plain of Panipat, 90 miles north of Delhi, his Timurid army crushed the host of the *Delhi Sultanate*. That left Delhi open to sack and burning. For ten days the Timurids ran amok, killing, raping and looting, in accord with Timur's normal cruelty and habits.

Panipat, Battle of (April 21, 1526). A major battle fought between an invading army under *Timur*'s grandson, *Babur* (1483–1530), and the *Delhi Sultanate*, whose forces were led personally by Sultan Ibrahim Lodi. Delhi's army included nearly 1,000 elephants. Its 40,000 infantry and horse cavalry far outnumbered Babur's 10,000–15,000 Afghans, Mongols, and Turks. The Indian army was armed in the manner traditional to the subcontinent, with swords, javelins, and bows. Babur's troops carried those weapons but also had cannons and muskets. Babur formed a defensive line with his right wing abutting the town of Panipat and protected by cavalry. On his left his troops felled trees to form field obstacles parallel to his flank, where he placed some cavalry. He concentrated musketeers and artillery at the center behind field works made from hundreds of overturned wagons lashed together to form a *Wagenburg*. Babur placed his cavalry reserve to the rear, ready to exploit breaks in the Indian lines. The battle would turn on action at the center where Babur's firepower was concentrated. Knowing this, Babur ordered harassing fire and cavalry forays to provoke an Indian attack on his strong defensive position. But for a week the lumbering Indian army refused the bait, and in fact did little, if anything, as its commanders argued over strategy and who should exercise command authority.

On April 19 Babur ordered a night attack in force. Although it became disoriented and was largely ineffective, it finally provoked the Sultan to attack. At sunrise on April 21 Ibrahim ordered his host to advance toward the Afghans. His elephant corps did little, either because Ibrahim held them back as a reserve or due to the elephants' fear and indiscipline in face of the unfamiliar noise of cannon and musketry. This left the Indian infantry to advance alone in three columns, line abreast. Ibrahim aimed at Babur's right in an effort to flank the Afghans with his main force. Babur's right held, musketeers and artillery doing severe damage to the Delhi infantry. As the Indians were strung out across the center-right, Babur attacked into their semi-exposed flank. Meanwhile, he ordered cavalry on the left to encircle the Indian rear areas while his cavalry reserve charged through gaps left in the wagon line into the floundering Indian infantry. Musketeers, cannon, and now cavalry made a great slaughter of the Indian ranks. When it was over perhaps 20,000 Delhi troops were dead, carpeting the path to a new empire in north India. After the battle most of the Sultan's elephant drivers switched sides and swore allegiance to Babur. Within the week he took Delhi and established the *Mughal Empire*.

Panipat, Battle of (November 5, 1556). Troops loyal to the teenage emperor *Akbar*, grandson of *Babur*, defeated an Indian army at Panipat north of Delhi, preserving Mughal rule in India. Once more, a vastly numerically superior (100,000) Indian army was bested by a smaller (20,000) Mughal force that had superior discipline and more and better gunpowder weapons. Akbar's army used modern artillery obtained from the Portuguese to support mobile Mughal cavalry and smash the elephant and infantry corps of the forces trained and once led by *Sher Khan*. After the battle Akbar shrewdly incorporated many prisoners into the Mughal army, thus consolidating Mughal rule in north India.

papacy. See *Albigensian Crusade*; *Cambrai, League of*; *Catholic Church*; *Charles V, Holy Roman Emperor*; *corpus mysticum*; *Counter-Reformation*; *Crusades*; *Ecumenical Councils*; *Elizabeth I*; *Great Schism*; *Guelphs and Ghibellines*; *Henri IV, of France*; *heresy*; *Holy Roman Empire*; *Hus, Jan*; *Hussite Wars*; *Index Librorum Prohibitorium*; *Inquisition*; *Italian Wars*; *Italy*; *just war tradition*; *Line of Demarcation*; *Lollards*; *Pax Dei*; *prohibited weapons*; *Protestant Reformation*; *real patronato*; *res publica Christiana*; *Thirty Years' War*; *Treuga Dei*; *two swords, doctrine of*; *Urban VIII*; *War of the Eight Saints*; *Westphalia, Peace of*.

Papal States. The Catholic popes controlled significant territories in central Italy under land grants dating to a succession of Carolingian kings of the Franks in the 8th century. Their more expansive territorial claims were based on a title rooted in a clear forgery: the infamous ''Donation of Constantine.'' This parchment purported to document a 4th-century grant of vast central and south Italian lands to the popes by the Emperor Constantine I, the first Christian ruler of the Roman Empire. Papal power over temporal affairs inside Italy thereafter waxed with the talents and fortunes of several powerful popes during the early decades of struggle with the German emperors of the *Holy Roman Empire* over ''Investiture'' of clergy and related issues, a contest that occupied much of the 11th–12th centuries. Gregory VII (1073–1085) set the marker for superior papal claims and was the first pontiff to envision a papal army (militia Sancti Petri) to enforce them. Warrior popes were heavily engaged during the wars of *condottieri* in Italy. Along with the influence exercised by popes over devout and powerful Catholic princes, the papacy was a significant secular as well as spiritual authority. The nadir of medieval papal authority and influence was reached in 1303 when a protracted dispute with France led Philip the Fair to send an army to Rome to kidnap Boniface VIII, who had threatened to excommunicate the French king. This began the ''Avignon Captivity'' of the popes, a period which saw a dramatic weakening of ecclesiastical—not just papal—authority throughout Europe and left the Papal States rudderless within Italy.

This baleful episode was followed by the *Great Schism*, by the end of which no fewer than three popes claimed Peter's crown and struggled to control the See of Rome and the Papal States. During the *Italian Renaissance* the Papal States were expanded by successive warrior popes who made war and intrigue with the same fury and disdain for personal morality and restraint as secular princes. Like other Italian city-states, the Papal States were swept into conflict between outside Great Powers known as the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559), during which Rome was sacked and occupied (1527) by troops sent to punish the pope by *Charles V*. Five hundred years of Guelph instinct and policy strained to oppose this powerful emperor, but to do so could only weaken the Catholic cause in Germany at the outset of the *Protestant Reformation*. Also, popes were forced to maneuver between Catholic France on one side and Catholic *Habsburg* power in Austria and Spain on the other. It was a balancing act they performed with ever greater difficulty in the 16th century and at which they failed entirely during the great religious wars of the first half of the

17th century. See also *Cambrai, League of*; *Carafa War*; *Catholic Church*; *Henri IV, of France*; *Italy*; *Philip II, of Spain*; *Urban VIII*; *War of the Eight Saints*.

Suggested Reading: Owen Chadwick, *Popes and European Revolution* (1981); J. A. Thompson, *Popes and Princes, 1417–1517* (1980).

Pappenheim, Graf zu (1594–1632). Imperial and mercenary cavalry general. Raised a Lutheran, Pappenheim converted to Catholicism and served the Catholic side in the *Thirty Years' War*. Like *Gustavus Adolphus* Pappenheim was a student of Polish cavalry tactics, preferring their aggressive shock techniques to the overly dainty *caracole*. He taught Polish skills to his regiment of cuirassiers. He fought in Bohemia and the Rhineland from 1618 to 1622, and in Italy. At the head of a Bavarian army he savagely repressed a peasant uprising in Upper Austria (May–November 1626). This accorded with a general reputation throughout his career for brutality, pillaging, and rough enforcement of *contributions*. It was Pappenheim who stormed and sacked *Magdeburg* (May 20, 1631), butchering its population in the worst atrocity of an atrocious war. At *First Breitenfeld* (1631) a precipitous charge by his cuirassiers unsettled the Imperial lines, but then his troopers broke and ran before Gustavus' musketeers and a counterattack by Finnish horse. He nearly won the day with a late charge into disarranged Swedish horse at *Lützen* (1632), but was instead killed by a cannonball. His men galloped off and the battle was lost. See also *Maastricht, Siege of (June–August 1632)*.

Pappenheim . . . sacked Magdeburg, *butchering its population in the worst atrocity of an atrocious war.*

parapet. Earth or stone defense works raised to screen defenders from enemy observation and provide extra cover against hostile fire. In permanent fortifications it protected against missiles, whether arrows or shot, and so was raised on top of the main wall or earthen rampart. In field works it was no more than a bank of earth quickly made by piling dirt removed from the trench along the side of the trench facing the enemy. It hid defenders while absorbing shot, especially from artillery. At its foot was a raised firing step called a "banquette."

parcq en champ. A siege camp.

"Pardon of Maynooth." See *Kildare Rebellion*.

parias. Tribute paid by the *taifa states* of *al-Andalus* to Iberian Christian states. "Parias" was paid in place of annual *razzia* that Christians otherwise inflicted on Muslim cities of the south. Among the Muslim cities that paid this protection money were Badajoz, Granada, Seville, Toledo, and Zaragoza.

***Parlement* (of Paris).** The highest court under the French king; not a representative assembly. A prime function was to register royal edicts, which it frequently

refused to do during the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629) when it was dominated by radical Catholics. There were also seven provincial ''parlements.''

Parliament. See *Charles I, of England*; *Cromwell, Oliver*; *English Civil Wars*; *Estates*; *New Model Army*.

Parma, duque di (1545–1592). Né Allesandro Farnesse. Son of *Margaret of Parma*. The fourth in a line of Spanish commanders sent north by *Philip II* to crush the Dutch revolt. Under his cousin, *Don Juan of Austria*, Parma led the Spanish cavalry in routing a Dutch army at Gembloux (1578). When Don Juan died, Parma replaced him as governor and set out to moderate Spanish policy in Catholic Flanders while reducing Protestant outposts by force. This policy backfired. In 1579 his troops sacked *Maastricht*, murdering over 10,000 civilians. He took Tournai in 1581 and Bruges, Ghent, and Ypres in 1584. With the outposts taken he conducted a *Siege of Antwerp*, which fell in 1585 after holding out for 14 months. *Zutphen* surrendered to his siege in 1586. He failed to join his army with the escorts of the *Invincible Armada* in 1588, a plan he opposed from the start. The next year Parma reluctantly intervened in the *French Civil Wars* on Philip's orders, again a plan he opposed in preference for using his military resources against the Dutch rebels. See also *Eighty Years' War*; *Netherlands*.

Parthian shot. ''Parting shot.'' Firing a bow to the rear while fleeing on horseback. The light cavalry of the ancient Parthian Empire, which also deployed heavy armored cavalry, was noted for this skill. Few later cavalries, other than those of steppe nomads such as the *Mongols*, could make the shot.

partisan (1). A *halberd* type marked by a long central spike flanked by double side blades of various forms. Closely related to the *gisarme*, it was used mainly by foot soldiers in the 16th and 17th centuries. Also used in reference to militia or other soldiers armed with this weapon.

partisan (2). A lightly armed irregular soldier used to forage, scour and scorch the countryside, lay in ambush, and to attack and harrass isolated outposts. The term originated in the German ''Parteigänger'' or ''Partisanen,'' irregular troops employed by Austrian dukes and emperors. They were mostly Croats, Serbs, and Greeks who fought the Ottomans in the 16th–17th centuries along the *Militargrenze* frontier where cross-border raids were common and warfare was endemic, even a way of life. The modern meaning of volunteer fighters resisting a foreign occupation, or guerilla warriors, did not apply in this period.

pasavolante. A 16th–17th century standardized gun of the *culverin* type. It weighed about 3,000 pounds and fired 6-pound *shot* to an effective range of 1,000 yards and a maximum range of 4,500 yards.

Passau, Convention of (1552). A treaty between *Ferdinand I* in behalf of his brother, *Charles V*, and the Protestant princes of the so-called ''Fürstenverschwörung'' or ''Conspiracy of Princes.'' Charles conceded partial religious toleration for Lutherans in northern Germany. Passau left unresolved key questions such as the secularization of church lands, control of disputed bishoprics, and rights to consecrate Protestant bishops. See also *Augsburg, Peace of*; *Edict of Restitution*; *Schmalkaldic League*.

pata. A long Indian sword with attached gauntlet that grasped an iron bar as a handle. It was wielded like a lance or spear as well as serving as a cutting weapon. It was used primarily by *Maratha* cavalry.

patache. A small Spanish reconnaissance ship. They were an integral part of most treasure fleets. The type was closely related to the *zabra*.

Patay, Battle of (1429). See *Hundred Years' War*; *Jeanne d'Arc*; *Talbot, John*.

patis. See *appatis*.

patron. In Mediterranean *galley* warfare, the commander of a single galley. See also *captain*.

pauldrons. French: ''epaulière.'' Also called ''spaudlers.'' Plate armor for the shoulders. As they grew in size *gardebraces* were sometimes added to their back side.

Paul IV (1476–1559). Né Giovanni Pietro Carafa. *Counter-Reformation* pope. See *Carafa War*; *Elizabeth I*; *expulsion of the Jews*; *Index Librorum Prohibitorium*; *Inquisition*; *Philip II, of Spain*.

Pavia, Battle of (February 23–24, 1525). The climactic battle of the opening half of the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559), and one confusing and obscured to historians by the dense fog in which it was fought. In January 1525 *Francis I* led a combined force of 24,000 French and 4,000 Swiss into northern Italy and laid siege to Pavia. The local militia of 6,000 held out until an Imperial army of 23,000 arrived to relieve it, led personally by *Charles V*. The Imperials failed in an initial effort to break through the French trenches. They dug *lines of circumvallation* around the French lines and each side deployed artillery. Francis had about 50 cannon of various types and calibers; Charles had fewer than twenty. Neither bombardment had much effect on dug-in positions. In a daring night attack, partly concealed by wild weather and a fresh bombardment, Imperial troops crossed a small river and caught the left of the French position by complete surprise. Three thousand Spanish under the *Marchese di Pescara*, victor of *La Bicocca*, used their ''Spanish muskets'' to great effect. Maneuvering independently of pike protection but sheltering behind trees and hedges, they poured fire into the French flank, joined by 1,500 Basque

crossbowmen. The garrison in Pavia saw its chance and attacked the few French left in the siege trenches, showing no mercy. In an action that took less than two hours, musketeers and archers killed 8,000 French.

French cannon proved of little use since their rate of fire was too slow to turn the tide of the assault. Francis I was captured, and held in Spain until he agreed to end his claims in Italy and Burgundy (a promise he renounced immediately upon his release). It is often written that Pavia ended the era of armored lancers on heavy horses. That is not so. Noble cavalry units remained active all through the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629), for instance. Pavia shook their reputation for effectiveness, but it did not eliminate them from battle. What Pavia decided was the fate of Italy for several generations, ensuring that it remained an Imperial protectorate to be exploited for decades as a source of revenue and a recruiting ground for Habsburg *tercios* thrown against the enemies of Spain and the Empire. Although the long and mutually impoverishing Italian Wars continued for another three decades, there was almost no change in territorial holdings or in the regional balance of power after the French defeat at Pavia, nor was there another major set-piece battle for nearly a generation. This was because opponents of Charles V, an excellent cavalry soldier who showed his mettle at Pavia, were unwilling to meet the deadly tercios on the field of battle. Instead, they cleaved to cautious campaigns of maneuver or hunkered down inside stout fortifications defended by artillery towers and skilled musketeers. See also *Alba, Don Fernando Álvarez de Toledo, duque de*; *German Peasant War*; *Henry VIII, of England*.

Suggested Reading: Angus Koustam, *Pavia 1525: Climax of the Italian Wars* (1996); Catherine Whistler, *The Battle of Pavia* (2003).

pavisade. A large but movable wooden shield wall employed on warships from the 13th to the 15th centuries. While they blocked arrows and other early missile weapons, the advent of effective *arquebuses*, *swivel guns*, and other gunpowder *cannon* overwhelmed them and made all wooden shielding obsolete.

pavisare. Shield-bearers who were tasked to protect crossbowmen with their ''pavois'' (great bucklers) or ''*pavise*'' while the archers reloaded.

pavise. A large, oblong, convex shield made of wood and hide and used at sea as well as in land warfare. Possibly originating in Pavia, the land versions were about five feet high and just over two feet wide, and had wood braces and spikes along the lower edge that enabled them to stand unaided in soft ground so that archers could fire from behind cover. Some *pervase* had ring-and-stave assemblies that allowed them to be propped at an angle like a modern picture frame. Late models had a firing slot cut out of the top edge enabling crossbowmen or arquebusiers to fire at shoulder height. See also *hackbut*; *pavisade*.

Pax Dei. ''Peace of God.'' Efforts by the Medieval Church, supported by a broad lay movement to protect lands, property, and persons (clergy and nuns,

but also widows and the poor) in time of war by placing such persons and property under protection of the Church. It began in the 9th century and grew thereafter into a powerful social movement. It included an effort to end feuds as these led to local private wars that were destructive of public peace. In extreme cases of unrepentant marauding by magnates or kings, the Church might impose penalties of excommunication and interdict. In the same year that Pope Urban II preached the First Crusade at Clermont in 1095 against the Muslims of the Holy Land, he endorsed the Pax Dei in Europe. See also *Crusades*; *Treuga Dei*.

Suggested Reading: T. Head, and R. Landes, eds., *The Peace of God* (1992).

Pax Hispanica. ''The Spanish Peace.'' The condition of demilitarization and relative absence of warfare in Italy after 1560 which resulted from the policies of *Philip II* and his successors. A second meaning was the period of retrenchment of Spanish power after his death which resulted from peace treaties or truces signed by *Philip III* with France (1598), England (1604), and the Netherlands (1609–1621). Finally, the term is used with respect to the absence of war in most of the territory of Spain's American colonies for several centuries after colonization. While those areas saw violent Indian rebellions and political repression, there were no interstate wars (because there were no states) such as were common in European affairs. The ''Spanish Peace'' would break down in the early 19th century with, and following, the wars of Latin American independence. The antonym of Pax Hispanica in meaning and in historiography of the colonial era was the *Black Legend*.

Peace of God. See *Pax Dei*.

peasants. See *Alcántara, Battle of*; *appatis*; *ashigaru*; *Aztec Empire*; *Black Death*; *Bondetal*; *Bonnets Rouges*; *Catalonia, Revolt of*; *Český-Brod, Battle of*; *Chojnice, Battle of*; *chevauchée*; *chivalry*; *Confederation of Kilkenny*; *Counter-Reformation*; *contributions*; *Cossacks*; *Devşirme system*; *Dithmarscher*; *drill*; *Edict of Nantes*; *encomienda*; *feudalism*; *Free Companies*; *French Civil Wars*; *Gardetal*; *gekokujō*; *German Peasant War*; *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *Hongwu emperor*; *Hundred Years' War*; *Hussite Wars*; *infantry*; *Jacquerie*; *Karsthans*; *kerne*; *Landsknechte*; *logistics*; *maryol taifesi*; *muskets*; *Naples revolt*; *petering*; *pioneers*; *Polish Army*; *''Poor Conrad'' revolt*; *price revolution*; *Protestant Reformation*; *pulk*; *quarterstaff*; *Razats*; *Sengoku jidai*; *Sufism*; *Tard-Avisés*; *taille*; *taillon*; *Teutonic Knights, Order of*; *timariots*; *''Time of Troubles''*; *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*; *Treuga Dei*; *True Pure Land*; *war finance*; *War of the Cities*.

pedites. Foot soldiers, not *milites*.

pedrero. A short-barreled, breech-loading *swivel gun* in common use on Spanish warships. It fired stone *shot*. Also used in reference to a *mortar* that lobbed stone shot. The English term was *perrier*.

Pedro the Cruel (1334–1369). King of Castile and León. He came into his inheritance as a boy of sixteen. He murdered his female regent the next year, which provoked her sons to rebellion. Pedro had few troops and little money for the fight so he turned to the *Military Orders*, deposing their *Mestres* until he found suitable sycophants. His reign was marked by more murder (of his brother, in 1358), treachery, cruel tortures, and endless wars with Aragon and Granada. He allied with the *Black Prince* and used the infantry tactics of *Edward III* to win at *Nájera* (1367). However, he lost the trust of his foreign allies and was routed at Montiel (1369). When he tried to kill another brother he was tipped over by a page, his belly armor was raised as he turtled on the ground, and he was stabbed to death through the stomach.

. . . his belly armor was raised . . . and he was stabbed to death through the stomach.

penal settlements. Colonies initially peopled by convicts or exiled religious or political dissidents. While usually maintained by naval empires, some land powers—Russia and China—settled convicts in penal colonies in distant and unpleasant corners of their empires. São Tomé and Principe were settled by *transportation* of Portuguese convicts in the 1490s; Cape Verde also received criminal deportees from Portugal. In the 17th century England shipped criminals and political prisoners to Virginia where they were sold as indentured laborers or servants. The latter category included Irish and Scots rebels and hundreds of women captured at *Naseby* (1645). Alternately, some Scottish felons served as penal conscripts in regiments in Germany during the *Thirty Years' War*, including women prisoners.

Penenden Heath, Battle of (1648). See *English Civil Wars*.

pennant. ''Pennon.'' At sea: A triangular or split-tailed *flag* flown by warships as a unit or royal or national designation. On land: A fork-tailed personal ensign flown by a *knight* on his lance to designate his status as a chevalier or bachelor. Larger versions were later flown by whole units of *heavy cavalry*. See also *banneret*; *Jeanne d'Arc*; *tournaments*.

pennon. A crossbar below the lethal tip of a lance to limit its penetration of an enemy's body by making contact with his ribs. This permitted it to be more easily extracted and used again.

peones. Spanish foot soldiers, as distinguished from *men-at-arms* and *jinetes*.

Pequot War (1636–1637). Imperial, racial, and religious tension led to individual atrocities by Pequot Indians and English colonists against one another in 1636. This turned into open, communal war in 1637. Settler *militia* and Mohican Indian allies, and some Narragansetts, launched a punitive expedition in May. On June 5 they took a stockaded Pequot settlement near

Stonington (Mystic), Connecticut, by surprise and overcame the defenders. The Connecticut militia proceeded to slaughter nearly 600 Indians, including women and children. Most Mohican braves departed, refusing to murder the women and children. The few survivors who escaped were hunted down and killed on July 13. The settlers lost just two killed and 20 wounded. Further expeditions, along with Indian slavery, subsequently destroyed the Pequot nation.

permanent navies. The third Ming emperor, *Yongle*, commissioned transoceanic voyages by Admiral *Zheng He* from 1405 to 1433 in ships that outclassed all others in the world. However, in 1433 the Xuande emperor dry-docked the fleet, forbade overseas trade, and banned new construction of ocean-capable ships. Some Italian city-states had small but permanent navies from the 13th century. Venice maintained a navy that peaked at about 300 ships in 1450 (with some hulls and guns kept in storage in peacetime in the Venice Arsenal). This galley fleet protected and carried out Venice's vital trade with the dangerous eastern Mediterranean. The Ottomans began to acquire a permanent navy under *Bayezid I* from 1390. Under *Bayezid II* a century later they expelled the Venetians from the eastern Mediterranean. While the Atlantic states had large fleets of ocean-going vessels (the United Provinces had 1,800 by the 1560s), they only deployed true permanent navies in the 16th–17th centuries. See also *Armada Real*; *Barbarossa*; *charter company*; *Cinque Ports*; *convoy*; *cruising*; *flota*; *galleon*; *Great Ships*; *Invincible Armada*; *Lepanto, Battle of (October 7, 1571)*; *piracy*; *privateer*; *Royal Navy*; *Sea Beggars*.

"Perpetual Peace." Following a crushing defeat of the Swiss confederate army at *Marignano* (1515), the Cantons agreed to the Peace of Noyon with France establishing a ''perpetual peace'' between the two nations. It lasted 300 years, until the wars of Napoleon Bonaparte.

perrier. A 16th-century, large-caliber *artillery* piece that fired only stone *shot*. Its thin barrel meant it was often undercharged by gunners to reduce risk to themselves. This meant it hurled stone at low velocity. The Spanish term was *pedrero*.

Persia. The European name for *Iran*. More exactly, Persia (Persis) was the name of the province of Fars (Pars), lying along the southwest ''Persian Gulf'' coast.

Peru, Viceroyalty of (1544). The Spanish administrative area from 1544 to 1739. It encompassed all Spanish possessions in South America, including Brazil from 1580 to 1640 (when Portugal and its empire were annexed to Spain), and what is today Panama but was then part of Colombia (or rather, ''Peru''). The other Viceroyalty was *New Spain*. See also *Black Legend*; *conquistadores*; *Council of the Indies*; *encomienda*; *Inca Empire*; *Jesuits*; *Pax Hispanica*; *real patronato*; *requerimiento*.

pervase. See *pavise*.

Pescara, marchese di (1490–1525). Né Fernando de Avalos. Imperial general. Trained as a *condottieri*, he fought in the *Italian Wars* for *Charles V*. He won at *La Bicocca* in 1522, and was the great victor of *Pavia* in 1525. He was a competent general who knew how best to use his high-quality Spanish veterans to good effect by taking advantage of position and terrain, as at La Bicocca, or novel tactics, as at Pavia.

petering. Making crude saltpeter from animal or human manure. It became a major peasant industry in Europe, which lacked large saltpeter deposits and so had to import expensive supplies from China.

petite mottes. See *corning/corned gunpowder*.

petrariae. See *petrary*.

petrary. A generic term for any medieval stone-throwing siege engine, though sometimes excluding the well known *catapult* and *trebuchet*.

petronels. Mounted *arquebusiers*, originally firing stone ammunition.

petty officer. A senior rating on a warship.

peytral. Equine *plate armor* that protected the chest of a *warhorse*. See also *armor*; *chanfron*.

Pfenningmeister. ''Penny master.'' The officer in charge of a *Landsknechte* company's common funds.

phalanx. See *drill*; *infantry*.

Philip II, of Spain (1527–1598). Son of *Charles V*; king of England, 1554–1558; king of Naples, 1554–1598; king of Spain, 1556–1598; king of Portugal (as Philip I), 1580–1598; son-in-law to *Catherine de Medici*. Philip first exercised power as regent in Spain at age sixteen. As his father declined, despaired, and was defeated in Germany, Philip was made king of Naples in 1554 and the next year sovereign in the Netherlands. In 1556 he succeeded his father as king of Spain and thus also of most of South and Central America. His conquest of the Philippines in 1565 would make him ruler of the first true globe-spanning empire, albeit one superficially united at best and lacking geographical, legal, or cultural cohesion. He invaded and seized the vacant crown of Portugal in 1580, adding its vast overseas empire—coastal Brazil and key African and Indian coastal enclaves—to Spain's. He resided in Portugal only from 1580 to 1583. The aggressive spirit of his imperialism was captured in his motto ''Non sufficit orbis'' (''The World Is Not Enough''). He

anchored one end of his grand strategy in the reserves of wealth and strength of Castile; he failed completely to anchor the other end in the rising modern economy and human capital of the Netherlands. His main hope was to consolidate that rich *Habsburg* province as a bulwark of Catholic and Spanish power, via thorough re-Catholicization, military occupation, and suppression of Calvinist and other ''heresy'' through the *Inquisition*. Instead of adding to Spain's strength his policies provoked the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648) that slowly bled Spain white, drained its coffers, and fatally eroded its power and prestige.

Limits of Absolutism

The Spanish Empire was a vast undertaking and its complex finances Philip's main concern. Somehow, he had to find the money to maintain a hugely expensive standing army of 90,000 fighting in Flanders fields. Reinforcing these troops from Italy and Castile was done via the *Spanish Road*, which meant keeping thousands more troops in garrisons. Another 70,000 troops manned the overseas empire. He also needed to build and maintain an immense navy required to hold together a seaborne empire that at his death girdled the globe. He was usually at war on several oceans and continents at once. That meant not merely building warships, but harbors, warehouses, overseas bases, and all the paraphernalia of world naval power and empire. And since he lost several fleets in battle in whole or part, he had to rebuild more than once. The best recent scholarship argues that Philip indeed pursued a ''grand strategy'' of empire, and that he well might have succeeded but for the independent and chance course of events. Also intervening were the restraints of his personality. Fortune and character allowed lesser powers—in particular, the Netherlands and England—to frustrate his grand design and defeat his ambitious plans. Among his negative personal traits was an inability to let go the minutest detail of administration: Philip spent the greatest part of his adult life diligently reading and signing in person literally hundreds of petitions and itemized bureaucratic orders each day. In the end this tendency to micro-management overwhelmed him psychologically and badly hampered Spain's responses to mounting crises on multiple fronts.

Like most monarchs of his day, Philip did not really understand state finance. As a result, and despite the flow of treasure ships carrying New World gold and silver to his coffers, he faced constant money worries and serial bankruptcies which undermined his strategic plans and led to repeated mutinies. Spanish troops mutinied in 1576, then sacked Antwerp with such wanton murder and mayhem their depredations are remembered still as the ''*Spanish Fury*.'' The *Army of Flanders* mutinied no fewer than 46 times between 1572 and 1607. The main grievance was the inability of Philip II or his son and successor, *Philip III*, to pay soldiers' wages many months in arrears. This situation was not helped by Philip II's naval policy, where he imposed embargos on all trade with the United Provinces from 1585 to 1590 and on English trade from 1585 to 1604 (the latter period including continuation of the embargo by Philip III from 1598 to 1604). At times money concerns so

overwhelmed Philip that he took recourse in feigned illness and prolonged convalescence: consumed with fiscal and strategic worries and fretting over details of his plans for dispatching an armada to invade England, he stayed in bed from February to July, 1587.

A devout Catholic, with all that meant on the part of a 16th-century monarch, Philip believed he had a divinely anointed mission to crush Protestantism in Europe and that God would aid him directly in this effort. He spent state funds lavishly on devotional edifices such as El Escorial, his great monastery-like palace and retreat which cost as much as the 1588 Armada. He spent more endowing or building churches, pilgrimages, mausoleums, reliquaries, and shrines. Such pious projects importantly underlay his chronic penury, but were inseparable from why he made policy as he did. As much from piety as politics, he launched Spain on a perpetual crusade to crush the Calvinist rebellion in Flanders, later reaching out to cower heretic England as well. His messianic faith led him to rely on miracles where he knew his resources were actually insufficient to meet his military goals. This led to baffled interpretation of his military defeats as an expression of divine judgment on his statecraft. He once chided an official whose zealotry was less than his own: ''You are engaged in God's service and in mine—which is the same thing.'' To pious ends, he encouraged the terrible persecutions of the Spanish Inquisition at home, sent rude Inquisitors north to scour Flanders, supported *Jesuit* missions throughout his overseas empire, and established courts of Inquisition in Lima and Mexico City by 1570. This devotion to the *Counter-Reformation* did not mean that Philip always got on well with popes. Far from it: in 1557, Pope *Paul IV* excommunicated Philip and declared war on Spain. The pontiff was tamed within a few months when Philip cut off Rome from its Sicilian grain supplies as a demonstration of whose sovereign writ really ran in Italy. Thenceforth, Philip was deeply involved in wider church politics and in the affairs of the *Papal States*, intervening with money and threats to prevent the election of popes who opposed him.

''You are engaged in God's service and in mine—which is the same thing.''

Grand Strategy

Philip's ''grand design'' was encouraged by a paralysis of French diplomacy resulting from forty years of confessional civil war between *Huguenots* and Catholics. That left Philip free to intervene in France when he chose, rather than face the stratagems of a powerful once and future foe of his and other Habsburg designs. France's misfortune was also Spain's external opportunity: Philip was thus free to prosecute a long war against the Dutch rebels in Flanders. Even as that crisis deepened and a naval war expanded to all the world's oceans, in Granada a major rebellion by the ''Moriscos'' broke out and in 1570 the *Ottoman Empire* resumed a naval war in the eastern Mediterranean when it attacked Cyprus. Yet, Philip failed to take full advantage of the *French Civil Wars* to hamstring France permanently. He was instead

repeatedly drawn into futile conflict with the Ottoman Empire, as his father had been, and with the *Barbary States*. At *Lepanto* (1571), Philip's galley fleet destroyed the Ottoman galleys and killed 40,000 men. That was the great victory in the eastern Mediterranean which for decades had eluded his father. Did Philip follow up with occupation and fortification of the eastern islands, and a Mediterranean alliance? His attention was instead drawn to wars in other parts of his empire. The triumph of Spanish naval forces was thus ephemeral as the Ottomans remade their ship losses remarkably quickly and forced a truce on Philip in 1578. Philip had appeared a colossus, but rapid Ottoman rebuilding of their Mediterranean fleet and catastrophic loss of his own armada in the Atlantic in 1588 eliminated any geostrategic advantage to be gained from Lepanto. All that was worsened by his serial bankruptcies and the continued success on land and growing success at sea of the Dutch ''beggars.''

In 1554 Charles V arranged a dynastic marriage of Philip and *Mary Tudor*. Philip spent fourteen dreary months in England but never learned to love his wife or win over suspicious Protestant subjects. He abandoned Mary to a hysterical-pregnancy depression and a lonely death in 1558. When the outwardly Catholic but inwardly Protestant *Elizabeth I* ascended the throne Philip offered to marry her to continue the alliance of England and Castile. She demurred. At first Philip supported her, but as she moved to establish Protestantism a diplomatic revolution occurred that aligned Protestants in Scotland and England with Dutch rebels against Philip. During decades of cold war between England and Spain Philip indulged a mounting messianism that it was God's plan that he annex England. To that end he plotted against Elizabeth's life and throne with *Mary Stuart*, whom Elizabeth had under close arrest. (Similarly, he paid for the assassination of *William the Silent*). These plots were discovered by *William Cecil* and, as an eminent historian put it: they ''turned England from a neutral observer into a covert enemy.'' Several times Philip thought of invading England, but pulled back. However, when Elizabeth finally executed Mary Stuart in 1587, he made the decision for war. In his mind the conquest of England—like his invasion of Portugal seven years earlier—was essential to the security of Spain, a form of defensive imperialism. In the spring of 1588 the *Invincible Armada* sailed on a mission to carry out what in weak private code Philip called ''my Enterprise of England,'' which he saw as the solution to all his military problems. Instead, the Armada was scattered and broken by English fireships and the ''Protestant Wind'' that blew from the Channel to the North Sea. The next year, an Anglo-Dutch fleet burned surviving ships and put ashore landing parties to wreak stores and terrify Philip's subjects. He rebuilt the fleet at great cost and planned to try again, even as he was drawn into the climactic battles of the French Civil Wars.

Tragedy

Now God, too, failed Philip: his fleets were wrecked, his armies dashed and defeated, his treasury as empty as his hopes, and a lifetime of pious service

rewarded only with personal tragedy (he buried several wives and children) and political and military failure. These were crushing blows, for Philip genuinely believed in direct divine intervention in the affairs of nations and sovereigns. He had no truck with Machiavellian ''fortuna,'' instead believing that ''God will find a way'' where material resources were lacking and men proved wayward. Yet, battles had been lost to heretic armies and fleets sunk as storms blew unpredictably on God's high seas. What did God want from him? How was it that he had failed his Lord? His last years were consumed with these thoughts. In 1597 his armies in France and the Netherlands mutinied yet again, as did his navy; both refused to fight and he had not the will or the money to make them. In the famous imagery of one of Philip's soldiers, Miguel de Cervantes (1547–1616), a lifetime spent tilting at Protestant windmills had emptied Philip and ruined Spain. Nor was it over: Philip set Spain on a course that led to another fifty years of losing war in Flanders, and more decades of war with the Ottomans and unbowed Barbary emirates, and with France. Philip's wars were so costly in blood, treasure, goodwill, and trust that Spain never recovered: throughout the caldron of confessional and Great Power warfare to the mid-17th century, his son and grandson cast new failures from the molds Philip set for them. See also *Alcántara, Battle of*; *Augsburg, Peace of*; *Catholic League (France)*; *Gravelines, Battle of*; *Guise family*; *Joinville, Treaty of*; *Netherlands*; *Pax Hispanica*; *real patronato*.

Suggested Reading: Henry Kamen, *Philip of Spain* (1997); Geoffrey Parker, *The Grand Strategy of Philip II* (1998).

Philip III, of Spain (1578–1621). King of Spain and Portugal, 1598–1621. From his father, *Philip II*, the 20-year-old Philip III inherited a nation and empire already past its fiscal and military prime and badly overcommitted to too many wars on too many fronts. The *Duke of Lerma* was Philip's ''Valido'' (first minister) from 1598 to 1618. They started badly by confirming the embargo against England (to 1604) and reimposing an ill-advised embargo on the United Provinces (1598–1609). The embargos damaged the Spanish economy far more than they did England or the Dutch Republic, which were spurred to build more ships and overseas entrepôts. Yet Philip also made peace: with France in 1598, England in 1604, and the Dutch in the *Twelve Years' Truce* (1609–1621). Recent scholarship contends that the embargos reflected real policy and that peace was a ruse forced on Spain by debt and exhaustion with war and intended to allow it to recover only to fight again. Yet, Philip simultaneously weakened the economy by forcible *expulsion of the Moors* from 1609 to 1614. Like his father, Philip III believed in Spain's Catholic and imperial mission and that to serve both the Dutch must be forced back into the Spanish Catholic fold. Yet, most European and even several Muslim states saw this would never happen and recognized the United Provinces as independent from 1609. Philip agreed to the *Treaty of Oñate* (1617) with the Austrian Habsburgs to set the stage for Spain to resume its war with the Netherlands and enter the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648) in Germany, repeating his father's key error of military overextension. In addition

to the Dutch and German wars, Philip took Spain into war with Savoy and Venice (1615–1617). None of these problems were resolved by the marriage of his daughter, Anne of Austria, to *Louis XIII*. See also *Nine Years' War*.

Suggested Reading: Paul C. Allen, *Philip III and the Pax Hispanica 1598–1621: The Failure of Grand Strategy* (2000).

Philip IV, of France (1285–1314). ''La bel.'' See *Courtrai, Battle of*; *Knights Templar*; *Philip VI, of France*.

Philip IV, of Spain (1605–1665). King of Spain, Naples, and Sicily, 1621–1665; king of Portugal, 1621–1640. Son of *Philip III* and grandson of *Philip II*. He was styled ''rey planeta'' (''Planet King''), claiming with an Aristotelian metaphor the central place in the political universe, presaging Louis XIV's later use of a Copernican metaphor to claim the same position, from which France had by then displaced Spain. Philip appointed *Olivares* as ''Valido'' (first minister), leaning on him heavily from 1621 to 1643. That was a mistake, as Olivares had overly ambitious plans that greatly exceeded Spain's ever diminishing military, economic, and diplomatic resources. Philip was a devout Catholic, raised from his first thoughts and words to sustain Spain's divinely appointed Imperial mission and the Catholic faith. He was seldom seen in public outside appearances at Mass, though in theatrical imitation of Jesus of Nazareth he washed the feet of thirty poor men each year. He oversaw war with France over the *Valtelline* in 1622 and the *War of the Mantuan Succession* (1627–1631). He presided over the last three decades of the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648) with the Dutch and recklessly took Spain into the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648) against France and Sweden; the Spanish-French war continued to 1659. In 1640 began the *Revolt of Catalonia* and the ''guerra dels segadors'' that lasted to 1652. Portugal also broke away in 1640 after 60 years of Spanish occupation. In 1647 Naples revolted unsuccessfully against his rule. Philip finally agreed to end the Dutch war and recognize the United Provinces in the *Peace of Westphalia* (1648). While a disastrous foreign policy leader, he is well-remembered in portraiture by some of the greatest artists of the Spanish school, including Velázquez.

Suggested Reading: J. H. Elliot, *Count-Duke of Olivares* (1986).

Philip VI, of France (1293–1350, r.1328–1350). ''The Fortunate.'' Immediately upon his ascent to the throne, which he gained with aid from a narrow interpretation of *Salic Law*, he moved to crush the Revolt of Flanders that had gained ground with the Flemish militia victory at *Courtrai* (1302) over the knightly army of Philip IV. Philip VI's army defeated the Flemish militia at *Cassel* (1328), and he restored his vassal as Count of Flanders. His dispute over feudal vassalage with *Edward III* was a casus belli of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453).

Philiphaugh, Battle of (September 13, 1645). The *Marquis of Montrose* had taken Glasgow and Edinburgh with a Highland army. At the behest of

Charles I he moved south to try to rescue the lost Royalist cause in *England*. He was met by 4,000 *cavalry* under *David Leslie* at Philiphaugh. Betrayed and surrounded, the Scots were to a man put to the sword immediately or secured as prisoners to be executed later as traitors. Montrose, at the head of his cavalry, barely escaped with his life. Less fortunate were Irish prisoners and 300 Irish women captured with the baggage: all were murdered by *Covenanters* and locals.

Philippines. Starting in the 14th century, *Islam* arrived with the trade winds from India and perhaps also directly from the Arabian Gulf, making inroads in Mindanao and other southern islands. Possession of the Philippines was disputed by Portugal and Spain during negotiations over Pacific extension of the *Line of Demarcation*. The archipelago was granted to Madrid despite lying inside Lisbon's sphere. That was because it had been discovered in 1521 by Ferdinand Magellan (1480–1521) while in service to *Charles V*, King of Spain. The islands were occupied in 1565 by *Philip II*, for whom they were renamed. In 1577 Philip quashed wildly fanciful proposals by local factors, Jesuits, and a governor to use the Philippines as a base for invasions of China and Japan. And he rejected requests by settlers to expel all Muslims from the archipelago. An ''audiencia'' (royal court) was established at Manila in 1583. The town was fortified in 1585 and became the Spanish legal, administrative, and military forward base in Asia.

Piatka River, Battle of (1591). See *Ukraine*.

picchieri. Italian infantry of the late 15th century. They were armed with *pikes*.

Piccolomini, Ottavio (1599–1656). Italian general. He was a loyal servant of *Habsburg* masters. He fought for *Ferdinand II* in Bohemia in 1618 and as a cavalry commander in Hungary in 1619. *Albrecht von Wallenstein* made Piccolomini his aide and captain of his bodyguard in 1627. He was loyal to the Czech mercenary even after the Emperor turned against him. At *Lützen* (1632) he fought well and bravely, receiving multiple wounds. As Wallenstein flirted with treason, Piccolomini moved to the opposite camp, conspiring to do in the Czech and perhaps replace him in command. He fought in several small actions against France in the latter 1630s. He also fought at *Second Breitenfeld* (1642), losing many men and the battle. After 1648 he retired to enjoy his great wealth and many titles.

picorreurs. French light infantry used as scouts and skirmishers.

pike. An infantry spear with a deadly (to armored man or horse) three-foot iron point mounted on an eighteen-foot wooden shaft. The pike probably originated in Italy (Turin), but was most famously deployed in the *Swiss square* and Spanish *tercio*. The Swiss made the pike the principal weapon of their infantry after a near defeat of halberdiers and axemen in square at *Arbedo* (1422). But they came to the choice only slowly, after more than a century of

fighting mainly with *halberds* and axes. After Arbedo the Swiss Confederation ruled that other weapons should take second place to the pike, which came to dominate their tactics and occupy the front ranks of all their squares. During the late 15th century, Swiss pike infantry upset the military balance in Europe when they formed tightly disciplined and ferociously aggressive squares (''Haufen'') to block, and then to defeat and destroy, the *heavy cavalry* of *Charles the Rash*. They did this twice in 1476, at *Grandson* and *Morat*, and again at *Nancy* in 1477. Imitative pike formations developed as offensive infantry in 15th- to 17th-century warfare in Europe, based on these Swiss successes. Most notably, the German *Landsknechte* became direct competitors. Later-period pikes grew to monstrous lengths. In 1486 German troops were recorded as carrying ash-wood pikes 24 feet long; pikes up to 30 feet long were carried by some Swiss against the Burgundians. Such ponderous weapons were unwieldy if carried on the shoulder when marching: they vibrated badly with each rhythmic footfall. Instead, they were dragged on the ground behind each pikeman, or they were bundled and hauled to battle in carts.

In combat, pikes were held with both hands, a fact that left pikemen unshielded and vulnerable to archers and other missile infantry. Normally, the first four ranks extended their pikes at varying angles calculated to hit man or horse in the waist, chest, neck, or face. All horses and most men were bright enough not to charge headlong toward impalement on a hedgehog of deadly iron-tipped spears. That many died this way, nonetheless, resulted from being pushed from behind by the forward rush and momentum of the back ranks of their own side. To avoid this, some cavalry thinned their lines. More often, it became standard tactics to move archers or *arquebusiers* forward to break up the defending pike formation so that the heavy cavalry could charge into gaps created in the ranks and files and break it up further with lance and saber. In the typical new-measure-prompts-countermeasure pattern of all tactics and war, that device was countered by placing archers and musketeers inside the pike squares, or at its corners as in the Spanish tercio, or on its wings, from where they ran to the back of the square after firing off their weapon at the enemy's missile troops. Such changes were incremental during the 16th century as missile weapons improved and more specialists were added according to battlefield experience.

Offensively, individual pikemen were next to useless because of the sheer unwieldiness of their weapon and their immobility and vulnerability if caught in the open. Pikemen therefore drilled in moving together, leveled pikes to the forefront with back ranks holding their spears vertical. Squares formed tightly packed hedges that bristled with ranks of lethal spears. Densely packed formations then moved on command into a forward trot, and kept pace to a chant or beaten drum. This presented the enemy with an unstoppable frontage of iron-tipped spears that combined *shock* with deadly momentum and penetration (''push of pike''). Facing a massed square of several thousand men, rear ranks pressing and pushing with shoulders down against the backs of men in front, the whole body moving as one, no cavalry could stand and few tried. Only another pike square might hope to hold its place in defense,

pushing back after the stunning initial collision. Modern recreations have demonstrated that pike formations of 10,000 men could compress into an essentially impenetrable square 60 feet by 60 feet. Such formations pushed aside whatever resistance they met from archers or slow-firing fixed artillery, which they usually overran. Axe men and halberdiers in the back ranks then hacked apart any wounded enemy, as the square literally rose over and trod on the bodies of their enemies. Pikes were used in European warfare until the invention of the socket bayonet (1687) made every musketeer his own piker.

Pikes were also used in war in Asia. They were incorporated in Japanese armies to protect infantry archers and defend against cavalry from about 1300. However, in Japan and on the steppe, mounted archers remained the dominant arm into the 16th century. Once firearms were introduced to Japan in 1543, the pike was readily adapted to protect musketeers as well, notably by *Oda Nobunaga*. See also *Bannockburn*; *Breitenfeld, First*; *brown bill*; *Courtrai, Battle of*; *drill*; *Falkirk, Battle of*; *Frastenz, Battle of*; *Gevierthaufen*; *goedendag*; *Haiduks*; *half-pike*; *Halidon Hill, Battle of*; *La Bicocca, Battle of*; *Laupen, Battle of*; *Marignano, Battle of*; *mercenaries*; *Morgarten, Battle of*; *Näfels, Battle of*; *picchieri*; *Sempach, Battle of*; *Stirling Bridge, Battle of*; *St. Jacob-en-Birs, Battle of*.

pike court. See *run the gauntlet*.

pikemen. See *Landsknechte*; *pike*; *Swiss square*; *tercio*.

pillage. See *attrition*; *bellum se ipse alet*; *chevauchée*; *contributions*; *guerre guerroyante*; *logistics*; *raiding*; *razzia*; *requisition*.

Pilsen, Battle of (1618). See *Thirty Years' War*.

Pinkie Cleugh, Battle of (September 10, 1547). An English army of 12,000 foot and 4,000 horse crossed the Tweed into Scotland on September 1, 1547. Most were armed in the old English style, with *longbows* and *brown bills*. They were accompanied by a contingent of mercenary mounted *arquebusiers*, or "hackbutters" as the English called them, and a large *artillery train*. Offshore, a naval force added its guns to the English arsenal. A large force of Scots, perhaps 25,000, awaited them. Among them were some light cavalry, but most were infantry armed with pikes, halberds and axes, bows and *crossbows*, and handguns and claymores. On September 9 the Scottish horse was overmatched by English demi-lancers in a running fight and played no great role the following day. The English fleet, everything from *galleys* to great *galleons*, bombarded the Scots position without effective reply. The Scots infantry formed like the Swiss, into three *battles* bristling with pikes level and forward, supported by other arms. They also pushed a number of *arquebus à croc* mounted on heavy wagons toward the English position.

. . . most were infantry armed with pikes, halberds and axes, bows and crossbows*, and handguns and claymores.*

English offshore batteries broke the first infantry charge, then the English heavy horse were committed—regiments of ''Gentlemen Pensioners'' and other *men-at-arms*. As the main armies locked, the artillery did bloody work with solid and hail shot. The Scots broke, scattering as they could. English dead numbered around 500, but more than 5,000 Scots died and another 2,000 were captured. The political effects of the battle were minor: the English advanced deeper into Scotland, but met there stiff Scottish resistance reinforced by French military advisers. Troubles at home led to a desultory English departure in 1550 from Edinburgh. This was the last major battle in centuries of feudal conflict fought between national armies from England and Scotland; thereafter, war in the north had more the character of rebellion and occupation than a clash of nations. Long ignored as politically inconsequential, more recent research suggests that Pinkie Cleugh was the first ''modern battle'' fought in Britain, with both sides deploying new weapons and combined arms tactics imported from the wars of the continent. That was certainly true in part, but the overall reliance on traditional weapons and the relative paucity of guns, other than artillery, speaks against the further conclusion that Pinkie Cleugh was the spearpoint of the continental *revolution in military affairs* penetrating the British Isles.

pinnace. A small warship—the largest were 60 tons—but capable of *cruising*, especially maneuvering in jagged coastal waters from which larger ships steered clear. The smallest of these auxiliary warships were not much more than a large ship's boat. Some were towed to the Caribbean by *galleons* or *frigates*, where they were used in close shoreline actions and to pursue fast merchant *prizes* that might otherwise escape the slower mother ship. Some employed oars as well as sails. See also *bark*.

pioneers. Poorly paid, unskilled peasant laborers who accompanied the *artillery train*. On the march they mended roads over which the big guns passed. In a siege they dug trenches (*saps*) and mines. They were viewed as the bottom of the barrel in any early modern army and not usually counted among its regular company or considered soldiers. See also *uniforms*.

piracy. Due to the difficulties of long-distance *cruising*, in this period even more than later pirates congregated around narrow channels which other ships were forced to use: the Taiwan strait, where *wakō* lurked and preyed; the Straits of Dover, where English pirates swooped down on the trade of the *Hanse* and the ''Flanders fleets'' that went to and from the Mediterranean, and French pirates raided the rich Gascon wine trade with England; the Strait of Otranto off Italy's rich eastern coast; around Gibralter, where *Barbary corsairs* waited to pounce on poorly defended or unescorted ships; the Skaggerak between Denmark and Norway, through which moved heavy *cogs* and other roundships carrying the rich herring trade; and the Sicilian Channel, the only seaway that bypassed ''Scylla and Charybdis'' in the Strait of Messina. Medieval jurists recognized piracy as a crime in theory, but in

practice there was little distinction among piracy, *war at sea*, and even ''peaceful trade'' prior to the mid-17th century. Until the work of *Alberico Gentili* and *Hugo Grotius* was adopted in secular international law, the law of the sea was crude and virtually nonexistent. The oceans thus remained ''Hobbesian'' in their legal and daily character, a realm of ''war of all against all'' in which the ruthless barbarity of pirates was matched in kind by royal warships, privateers, and armed merchants.

Merchants, pirate ships, and royal warships looked and fought more or less the same prior to 16th century specialization in warship design. Pirates and navies both attacked without warning, often tortured captured officers to extract information, and drowned ordinary crew or passengers who did not warrant a ransom. Peacetime piracy was tolerated in part because it produced wartime seamen useful to kings, but mostly because medieval and early modern states lacked the strong navies to counter piracy. *Henry V* was unusual in using his battle fleet to suppress English and other piracy, but the practice revived after his death as the fleet was sold off during the regency of Henry VI and as West Country pirates adopted the new *caravels*. English pirates were feared all over Europe. They were financed by merchant interests, protected by bought judges and juries, and accepted by seaside towns, where generations of pirate families lived and spent their booty. At least one ''Admiral of England'' owned a pirate barge. This corruption reflected the fact that Admiralty Courts provided income in the form of shares of *prizes*. Royal officers thus had a direct financial interest in tolerating piracy and the disorder at sea it created, even if that ran counter to the ''national interest'' by creating hostility among neutral nations and potential allies. At one time or another precisely that happened concerning Aragon, Brittany, Castile, Denmark, the Hanse, and the Netherlands. Neutrals were frequently taken on the thin excuse that they failed to acknowledge England's ''*sovereignty of the sea*'' by some gesture of submission. In 1449, piratical seizure of the Hanse's annual salt convoy though the Channel led to counter-seizure of all English property in the Baltic and a naval war costly to both sides. Four years later, hostile navies from *La Rochelle*, Brittany, and Castile cut off England from reinforcing its garrisons in Gascony, which the French then overran. That conclusively ended the *Hundred Years' War*. The oscillations in later English sea power and national prosperity corresponded closely with the rise and fall of the fortunes of English pirates. For instance, in the three years that followed the Armada campaign of 1588 English ships captured 299 Spanish and Portuguese prizes, an equivalent value of a full year's national income.

Sovereigns sometimes paid compensation when subjects they could not control attacked neutral shipping. But just as often monarchs profited from piracy more than from its suppression. Famously, *Elizabeth I* invested in the piratical and *privateer* adventures of the *sea dogs*, while the *corsairs* of North Africa engaged in state-supported piracy and slave trading for centuries. States did not build modern, permanent navies to be rid of pirates but to fight other states. Nevertheless, a beneficial side effect of the new navies was slow constriction of private warfare at sea beginning in the late 15th century. Even

so, piracy was still endemic in the 16th and 17th centuries in select areas. In the Carribean, most pirates were Dutch, English, or French by origin, or *cimarónes* (free blacks, mainly escaped former slaves). They preyed on Spanish colonies and ships of the annual *flota*. In Jamaica, Henry Morgan (c.1635–1688) was so successful as a pirate he was knighted and made governor, which was more cost-effective than hunting him down. The Mosquito Coast of Central America was infested with English pirates from the 1630s, along with colonies of cimaroons. In times of war between Spain, England, and the Netherlands, the usual state of affairs from c.1570 to 1648, English and Dutch pirates sailed as privateers with official support from their home governments. See also *junk*; *Malta*; *Sea Victuallers*; *Zheng He*.

Suggested Reading: Angus Konstam and Angus McBride, *Elizabethan Sea Dogs, 1560–1605* (2000); James G. Lydon, *Pirates, Privateers, and Profits* (1970); So Kwan-wai, *Japanese Piracy in Ming China during the 16th Century* (1975).

pishchal. An early-16th-century Muscovite small *cannon* or heavy harquebus. It was the signature weapon of the original *pishchal'niki*.

pishchal'niki. The first Muscovite firearms troops. They were garrison artillery troops named for the small cannon they operated, the ''pishchal,'' a heavy harquebus fired as a wall hook gun or from a stand. They evolved into mobile infantry using these guns as shoulder-borne ''hand cannons'' or harquebuses. Some pishchal'niki were mounted and served as *dragoons*. Others later graduated into the *strel'sty*.

pistolade. A tactic invented by *Henri IV* for the *Huguenot* cavalry. It involved riding toward enemy infantry en masse to discharge pistols at close range, then charging home with sword and *arme blanche*.

pistols. Ottoman: ''tabanca.'' Czech: ''pistala'' or ''firing tube.'' Primitive *matchlock* pistols came into use as early as matchlock *arquebuses* and *muskets*, as all developed from the same early ''hand cannons.'' The first true pistols were made utilizing the *wheel lock*. This made them available to *cavalry* since the problem of keeping the match alight while riding was solved by discarding the match altogether. However, the effective range of these short-barreled hand guns remained just six to ten feet, so the only cavalry tactic available to pistol troops was the elegant but rather feckless *caracole*. It was widely noted by contemporary observers that pistol-bearing cavalry tended to fire while out of effective range because of the longer range of the infantry weapons they faced. Ottoman cavalry began carrying pistols in the 1600s but only as a supplement to their sabers. Design experimentation continued throughout the period, including several multi-barreled designs. A famous effort was the so-called ''duck-foot pistol'' which had five or more barrels fixed to a single stock in a splayed pattern. Some ship's captains were drawn to such designs, thinking they might be handy in a mutiny. Otherwise, they proved to be mere novelties. See also *hussars*; *pistolade*.

***Piyadeğan* militia.** Turkish urban militia, often run by associations of dervishes. On occasion, they reinforced the *Seljuk* armies as well as those of minor Muslim states (*Beyliks*). Their more usual roles were to keep order in larger cities and to patrol and protect the roads and caravan routes.

Pizarro, Francisco (c.1478–1541). He was part of expeditions to coastal Colombia in 1509 and to Panama in 1519. He first encountered *Inca* outposts in northern Peru in 1528. He returned to Spain to gain a royal contract for the conquest. In 1531 he led an expedition to Peru, departing from Panama with 183 *conquistadores*, including several brothers, 37 horses, and some small cannon. He moved with caution, not advancing down the Andes until September 1532. Unbeknownst to him, but of fundamental importance in explaining his subsequent success, the Inca were in the midst of a major civil war and succession struggle. On November 16 Pizarro surprised and seized the Sapa Inca, Atahualpa, who had invited him to a parlay. The Spanish slaughtered 2,000 Inca guards with their cannon, muskets, swords, and pikes, protected from lethal wounds by their Toledo steel armor, which Inca weapons could not penetrate. Pizarro extorted a massive ransom for Atahualpa's release (a large room literally filled with gold), then murdered him anyway (July 1533). Pizarro then marched on the Inca capital at Cuzco. Reinforced with new arrivals, the Spanish fanned out from Cuzco to conquer the rest of Peru and most of northern Chile. One Pizarro brother, Juan, was killed in an Inca insurrection in 1537. Another conquistador, Diego de Almagro, who led an expedition into Bolivia and Chile, lifted an Inca siege of a small Spanish garrison in Cuzco and re-occupied the city. Pizarro sent his other brothers to defeat this rival, whom he had garrotted and beheaded (1538). Pizarro was himself killed in his home in Lima in 1541 by rebellious conquistadores allied to Almagro and enraged at his murder.

placard. Or ''plackart.'' A thin sheet of supplementary *armor* worn over the lower *cuirass*.

***place d'armes*.** A parade ground or concentration area for troops preparing an assault, especially if enclosed by the works and trenches of a besieging army.

***place de sûreté*.** ''Surety towns.'' Legally recognized fortified towns which the *Huguenots* were permitted to garrison starting with four towns named in the *Edict of Saint-Germain-en-Laye* (August 8, 1570): *La Rochelle*, La Charité, Cognac, and Montauban. The number rose to eight in the *Edict of Beaulieu* (May 6, 1576), and to nearly 200 in the *Edict of Nantes* (April 13, 1598). Thereafter, they were reduced by *Louis XIII* and *Cardinal Richelieu*, culminating in the siege of La Rochelle and revocation of the military brevets of the Edict of Nantes.

plantations. See *Cromwell, Oliver*; *Ireland*; *James I*; *New English*; *Old English*; *Ulster*.

plate armor. Shaped slabs of iron or steel worn to protect against penetrating missile weapons, and to deflect glancing blows of *swords* and spears. Plate armor only slowly supplemented *mail*. The earliest plate was the roughest iron or just hardened leather (*cuir-bouilli*), shaped to protect the critical joints at elbow and knee. Articulated plate fingers replaced ''mail mittens'' much later. Plates covering the lower legs were called *greaves*. Over time, plate covered the feet, calves, then all extremities. The transition started in the mid-13th century and was not completed until the late-15th-century development of the fully articulated ''suit of armor.'' The shift away from mail was initially a response to the penetrating power of the *couched lance*. Later plate responded to missile weapons, as improved bows and crossbows and then handguns appeared on the field of battle. Its adoption was also affected by technological and economic factors. Early medieval forges were limited to making small iron blocks which were then hammered into plates that were attached to a cloth or leather garment to form a ''coat of plates.'' Slow advances in forging technology, notably mastery of temperature-controlled forging, made larger pieces of plate possible by the 14th century. And once large pieces of plate were ''mass-produced,'' at least by the standard of the day, in addition to offering greater protection they proved far less expensive than the labor-intensive methods required to make mail. The early *surcoat* of multiple small plates was thus replaced with a solid breastplate by the 14th century. The entire complex armor system was held together by ''leathers,'' a generic reference to any number of leather belts and rivets which attached the various plates to each other. See also *arquebus*; *besegaws*; *bodkin*; *bracers*; *couters*; *crossbow*; *cuisses*; *elephants*; *fauld*; *gauntlets*; *gorget*; *lance* (1); *longbow*; *muskets*; *poleyns*; *sabatons*; *sarmatian armor*; *schynbalds*; *shields/shielding*; *tassets*; *vambraces*.

. . . small iron blocks . . . were then hammered into plates that were attached to a cloth or leather garment . . .

Pluderhosen. Outlandishly torn or heavily pleated trousers and stockings worn from the mid-16th century by *Landsknechte* infantry. They were part of an overall trend among the Landsknechte to appear tattered and wildly unconventional and became a signature feature of these German *mercenaries*.

plunder. See *Bedouin*; *chevauchée*; *conquistadores*; *contributions*; *Cortés, Hernán*; *''holy war''*; *lines of supply*; *logistics*; *magazines*; *mercenaries*; *Mongols*; *pillage*; *piracy*; *raiding*; *razzia*; *Sempach, Covenant of*; *Teutonic Knights, Order of*; *Thirty Years' War*; *Wallenstein, Albrecht von*.

poczet. ''Post.'' The smallest unit in the *Polish Army*, equivalent to a *lance*, the medieval unit from which it evolved. It was centered on a *knight* or ''comrade'' (''towarzysz''), supported by retainers (''pacholeks'') numbering anywhere from one to as many as twenty soldiers.

***podestà*.** The chief executive, and therefore also the commander, of one of the communal armies of the central and northern city-states of Italy in the 12th–14th centuries.

point-blank range. Extremely close range, preferred by early gunners so that there was minimal fall of shot (due to gravity and ballistic trajectory) before it smashed into the target. This lent much greater accuracy to the most elemental aim and to correspondingly high velocity and impact force when the shot made contact. Later, the term applied to the firing range determined technically by the point at which the line of flight of a cannonball cut across the ''line of metal,'' the gunner's line of sight looking straight down the muzzle from the base.

poison. See *Akbar*; *Assassins*; *Invincible Armada*; *logistics*; *prohibited weapons*; *rations*; *siege warfare*; *Ukraine*.

Poissy, Colloquy of (1561). See *French Civil Wars*.

Poitiers, Battle of (September 19, 1356). A key battle of the first phase of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). The English again used the tactic of the *chevauchée* to force the French to battle, this time cutting a wide swath of destruction through to the Ile-de-France. On the field at Poitiers, the *Black Prince* repeated the tactics of his father, *Edward III*, at *Crécy*: he set a defensive trap to lure the French *heavy cavalry* into range of carefully positioned and well-protected longbowmen set in flanking ''V'' formations. The English *men-at-arms* again fought dismounted, protected by natural obstacles on ground parallel to an old Roman road. A small cavalry detachment was held back in a nearby wood, a hidden reserve to exploit and pursue should the French files and ranks break and run. Outnumbered over two to one (13,000 French to some 6,000 English), the Black Prince remained on the tactical defensive, as his father taught him. He feigned flight of his right wing, a ruse that lured several hundred foolhardy French knights forward, accompanied by numerous German mercenaries. Most met death hissing down in flights of goose-grey arrows shot by archers aligned along the flanks. The longbowmen concentrated on the horses, using *broadhead arrows* to carve great wounds in flank or leg or chest, bringing them down and unseating their riders. The French made desperate charges, each broken by arrow storms that killed and maimed men of rank indiscriminately with common soldiers and writhing, gravely wounded *destriers*.

The French at last took account of the extreme vulnerability of their horses, dismounted and advanced on foot. That only made them slower and easier targets for the archers, who leveled their bows and fired plate-piercing shots at *point-blank range*. Once the longbowmen exhausted their arrows they drew stabbing weapons and joined the English men-at-arms in hacking and slashing at the dismounted French. The third French *battle* had not yet engaged. Observing the carnage it fled, abandoning comrades to death or capture. The

infantry and dismounted men-at-arms of the first two battles who stayed, or who could not flee because of the press of their own dead and dying fellows, fought bravely but without hope. Their courage began to tell as the number of English dead mounted, too. Finally, some French broke through their swarming enemies and ran. The Black Prince now committed his cavalry reserve. His small force emerged from a nearby wood and tore into the rear of the fleeing French. As they rode down stragglers, what began as a battle turned into a bloody rout, then a gory slaughter. King Jean II (''The Good,'' 1319–1364) was taken prisoner. Around him the common wounded were dispatched with dirk or sword while knights were made prisoner, to be stripped of arms and armor and held for ransom. Some 1,900 French men-at-arms were taken that day. Another 2,500 knights, *sergeants* and *esquires* lay dead or dying on the field. The king was later paroled, literally for a king's ransom: France paid the equivalent of two years' national income to recover Jean II. In 1360 he was forced into a peace entirely favorable to England, the *Treaty of Brétigny*, which gave the Aquitaine as a personal fief to the Black Prince. English occupation did not sit well with the French, however, and the great war resumed in 1370. See also *Jacquerie*; *routiers*.

Suggested Reading: David Green, *The Battle of Poitiers, 1356* (2002).

Poitou, Battle of (April 15, 1622). A rare battle during the last of the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629), the *Huguenot* loss of 2,000 men, and even more the loss of the revenues and defensible towns of Poitou, was the beginning of the end of the Huguenot state-within-a-state in southern France. Within a few years *La Rochelle* was besieged on all sides. It held out a few more years, but without hope.

Poland. Most of the population in Poland, primarily of Slavic origin, was converted to Catholicism in the 9th century. Poland formed a widely recognized if loosely organized and ephemeral kingdom from the 11th century. Poland numbered among the larger powers of the Middle Ages, expanding across the great plain between the *Holy Roman Empire* to its west and the fractured chaos of ''Appanage Russia'' in the east. It reached new heights under Casimir III, the Great (1310–1370, r.1333–1370), who made peace with Bohemia and the *Teutonic Knights*, consolidated the monarchy, codified Polish laws, and improved the lot of Jews and peasants in a reign that was unusually just and benign by the standards of the Age. He also invaded Ukraine, shifting Poland's strategic frontier from west to east. Following the Union of Krevo (1385), the *Jagiello dynasty* took power on condition of acceptance of Catholicism. The dynasty cemented control with a historic victory over the Teutonic Knights at *Tannenberg* (1410). During the *War of the Cities* (1454–1466), *Casimir IV* hired Bohemian mercenaries to counter the numerous Bohemian and German mercenaries in the pay of the Teutonic Knights. This greatly strained his treasury. Worse, Casimir's call-up of peasant levies could be filled only by making major concessions to noble demands for a devolution of power from the center, fatally weakening the

monarchy for the long term. For the moment, however, Poland added ''Royal Prussia'' to its huge land holdings after securing victory in 1466.

From the middle of the 15th century a new threat appeared in the south: the advance of the *Ottoman Empire* into southeastern Europe and the Balkans. The threat drew closer with the Ottoman occupation of Hungary in 1526, severing that land's long connection to Poland-Lithuania. The *Eternal Peace* was signed with the Ottomans in 1533, formally surrendering Hungary. Four years later, Poland lost Smolensk to the *Grand Duchy of Muscovy*. In 1548 the last Jagiello king ascended the throne, *Sigismund August II* (r.1548–1572). During his reign religious tolerance was permitted and the tie to *Lithuania* was elevated to a full constitutional union (*Union of Lublin*) in 1569. Polonization of Ukraine was also advanced. Poland fought Muscovy for control of *Livonia* during the *First Northern War* (1558–1583). It came under pressure from the expanding Ottomans in the latter 16th century, and though scoring some defensive victories entered a long, tortuous military and political decline. Sigismund II's death ended the Jagiellonian line. From 1573, Polish kings were no longer hereditary but elected: the first elected king was Henri Valois, who left Poland after 118 days to become *Henri III*, of France. He was succeeded by *Stefan Báthory* of Transylvania.

Since the Polish nobility comprised 10 percent of the population compared to 2–3 percent in most of Europe, and since most nobles were fiercely egalitarian within their own ranks while highly oppressive of their peasants and disdainful of the bourgeoisie, their predominance guaranteed national weakness in a new era of increasingly powerful monarchs. Noble resistance to political centralization under the crown fatally disabled Poland when it came time to face powerful and aggressive centralized monarchies in Sweden in the 16th–17th centuries, then Russia and Prussia in the 17th–18th centuries. In 1595 the *Union of Brest* joined with the Catholic Church all Orthodox in Ukraine who objected to the claims of religious authority by the new patriarchate in Moscow. From 1606 to 1609 Protestant nobles rebelled out of fear of Catholic *confessionalism* as promoted by the Jesuits. This opposed a minority of Calvinist nobles, and some who adopted *Arian* views, against the majority of Catholic Poles. Religiously more diverse and fragmented than any other country in early modern Europe, Poland was also physically vulnerable to invasion. Essentially a broad plain dissected by several major but fordable rivers (Dnieper, Nieman, Vistula) and tributaries, it was cut off from Lithuania by marshland that formed each year after the spring rains.

The main story of 17th-century Poland is usually depicted as decline, but there were moments of expansion and renewed hope as well. *Sigismund III* occupied Moscow from 1608 to 1613 and elevated his son as would-be tsar. The Muscovite expedition failed, however, when he refused to accept *boyar* demands that Crown Prince Wladyslaw convert to Orthodoxy in order to keep the throne. Instead, it went to *Michael Romanov*: Moscow, unlike Paris, apparently was not worth the Mass. Fighting in the east continued to 1619. From 1621 to 1629 Poland fought with Sweden, losing Riga but not every battle to *Gustavus Adolphus*. The 1630s to 1640s were quieter. By 1648

Poland, a sprawling empire of eleven million souls, was twice the size of France and bigger than the European holdings of Muscovy. As Robert Frost noted: ''A confederal, consensual, decentralized, multi-ethnic state had waged almost constant warfare. . . . It had coped with the constant threat of *Tatar* raids, and had significantly extended its borders.'' It also fended off invasions by Muscovy, Sweden, and the Ottoman Empire. In fact, along with Sweden, Poland was a victor in the *First Northern War* (1558–1583) with Muscovy the major loser. Given that record it is hard to accept the usual portrait of 16th- to 17th-century Poland as failing to adapt to the challenge of the *revolution in military affairs* and the centralized fiscal-military state as it developed in Western Europe, even if the 18th century would tell a different tale. See also *Sigismund I*; *Sigismund August II*.

Suggested Reading: J. K. Fedorowicz, ed. *A Republic of Nobles: Studies in Polish History to 1864* (1982); K. Friedrich, *The Other Prussia: Poland, Prussia and Liberty, 1559–1772* (2000); Robert Frost, *The Northern Wars, 1558–1721* (2000); Norman Davies, *God's Playground: A History of Poland*, vol. I (1981).

polearm. Polearms went by many names including *brown bill* and *poleax*. They were widely employed by infantry facing cavalry in Europe, the Ottoman Empire, the Mughal Empire, Central Asia, China, and Japan. Dismounted cavalry started to use them in Western Europe in the late 14th century. A polearm was any cutting or thrusting staff weapon whose lethal top spike and blade were mounted on a wooden shaft of varied length. Polearms were cousin to *halberds*, though usually mounting a smaller blade and sporting a war hammer rather than a rear-facing iron spike. They gave the wielder the option of using the top spike to punch through armor or crushing an opponents skull or breaking bones with the hammer. The blade was used to slash at infantry or the exposed legs and flanks of horses. Period fighting manuals describe polearms as good for jabbing, leveraged moves, and hacking axe blows. See also *kumade*; *naginata*.

poleax. A medieval weapon combining the features of axe and hammer, with a spike or cue on the end for repeated jabbing into the flesh of the enemy. The killing devices were mounted on a stout staff or handle. From the 14th century poleaxes were used by infantry in preference to the traditional battleaxe. They were equally effective against cavalry or infantry. See also *axes*; *halberd*; *polearm*.

poleyns. *Plate armor* shaped to fit the knees above the *schynbalds*. They were attached to *cuisses*.

Polish Army. The Polish infantry in the 14th and 15th centuries was composed of conscripts (townsfolk and peasants). These were organized by clan or region and commanded by ''szlachta,'' noblemen bound by hereditary service obligation to the king. Large numbers of *mercenaries* were also hired, mostly Czechs and a few Silesians. Polish infantry were placed on a firm

footing by *Stefan Báthory* in 1578 to supplement the predominant notable cavalry with peasant levies. Báthory set up ''drafted'' or ''chosen infantry'' (''Piechota wybraniecka''). These soldiers were freed from labor-service demands, which allowed them to develop professional military skills. Each was armed with axe, saber, and musket, and sustained by the serf and peasant population of Poland's royal estates at a tax ratio of one soldier to every twenty households. The wybraniecka had to be supplemented by traditional peasant infantry levies, as only about 2,000 were raised in any year and many of these deserted at the first sign of real fighting. Still, this system served Poland's infantry needs until the mid-17th century. Báthory also reduced the number of pikemen, halberdiers, and axemen, in favor of massed musketeer firepower. While early firearms were deployed (siege cannon, bombards, pistols, and arquebus), the main weapon remained the crossbow. Pikes, axes, and other thrusting, hacking, and slashing weapons were also in wide use among Polish infantry.

The core of the Polish Army, as befitted the feudal structure of the kingdom, was *heavy cavalry*. *Hussar* units were added as early as 1500. Starting in 1511, the Poles set up a force of 3,000 cavalry and a few hundred infantry for ''General Defense'' (''Obrona Potoczna''), to deal with *Tatar* raids along the southern frontier. While permanent and professional, the Obrona Potoczna was not a true *standing army* as its soldiers were part-timers who owed local lords or the king labor service. From 1566, it was known as the *Quarter Army* (''wojsko kwarciane''), from the fraction of crown income devoted to its maintenance until 1652. The revenues came from Poland's royal lands, though in practice the ratio was hardly reached. The predominance of cavalry spoke to much greater requirements for mobility in the east as compared to France or Germany due to vast distances, fewer fortified towns, and flatter topography. Polish cavalry was variegated: until 1648, medium cavalry, regardless of ethnicity, were known as ''Cossack cavalry'' (''jazda kozacka''). These units painted their horses with red dye, dressed in wildly irregular ways, and used many types of weapons. They liked sabers in preference to lances but also used bows and short spears. After 1648, they were known as ''jazda pancerna'' or *Pancerna* cavalry.

. . . ''Cossack cavalry'' . . . dressed in wildly irregular ways, and used many types of weapons.

The tension in the Polish Army between cavalry and infantry reflected a strategic dilemma faced by Poland: the *light cavalry* it needed to deal with the Tatars in the south were mostly useless against Swedish infantry, artillery, and field fortifications in the north, while Polish infantry and artillery needed to fight Swedes were highly vulnerable when facing Tatars. Starting in the 1630s, the army was divided into two parts: the ''National Contingent'' (''autorament narodowy'') was sustained by the ''towarzysz'' system; the second part of the army, the ''Foreign Contingent'' (''autorament cudzoziemski''), was originally made up mostly of Tatars and Ukrainians, including *Cossacks*, but later came to include many Germans. Later, while the Foreign Contingent always employed

some non-Polish mercenaries, most of its troops were in fact recruited within the vast lands of Poland-Lithuania. From 1613 to 1635 the *Sejm* steadily increased direct taxes to pay for the new army as Baltic customs duties declined. This force was tested after mid-century by a huge Cossack rebellion and war: the Khmelnitsky Uprising (1648–1654). See also *Cecora, Battle of*; *choragiew*; *Dziesietniks*; *Haiduks*; *hetman*; *karacena*; *Lisowczyks*; *poczet*; *porucznik*; *pulk*; *sejmiki*.

Suggested Reading: R. Brzezinski, *Polish Armies, 1559–1696*, 2 vols. (1987).

Polish-Lithuanian Commonwealth (*Rzeczpospolita*). See *Jagiello dynasty*; *Lithuania, Grand Duchy of*; *Poland*; *Polish Army*; *Union of Lublin*.

Polish-Muscovite War (1609–1619). See *Sigismund III*; *"Time of Troubles."*

Polish-Swedish War (1600–1611). See *Karl IX*; *Sigismund III*.

Polish-Swedish War (1621–1629). See *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *Sigismund III*.

***politiques* (France).** In most older and some recent French historiography, "politiques" were presented as secular men of power who first appeared in the wake of the *Edict of Beaulieu* (1576), and who later looked to *Henri IV* and the *Edict of Nantes* to impose a "modern"—that is, national and non-religious—solution to the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629). For contemporaries the term was actually a pejorative used by the *Catholic League* for any other Catholic who disagreed with their radical intolerance. The politiques are thus better understood to have been moderate Catholics who sought compromise with Protestantism for the sake of short-run peace and social order, not some early version of secular humanists. Most recent scholarship argues that the politiques sought a respite from confessional wars but not religious toleration in the modern sense. Instead, they hoped to reconvert *Huguenots* to Catholicism and thereby restore confessional and social unity to France in accord with the ancient maxim of the Gallican Church: "un roi, une foi, une loi" ("one king, one faith, one law"). Nevertheless, many were violently purged by the radicals of the League during the siege of Paris by Henri IV in 1590. When their later efforts to convert the Huguenots failed, under *Cardinal Richelieu* and *Louis XIII* most politiques abandoned their limited toleration of Protestantism in favor of a policy of national unity through suppression and enforced exile of remaining confessional dissenters.

***politiques* (Netherlands).** Leading Dutch nobles, notably *William the Silent* and his sons *Maurits of Nassau* and *Frederik Hendrik*, who opposed repression of individual conscience on religious matters. This stance drove the politiques into political rebellion once the *Habsburgs*, starting with *Alba*, executed hundreds of nobles for "heresy" and crushed the traditional liberties of the Netherlands Estates.

Pomerania. See *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *Thirty Years' War*; *Wallenstein, Albrecht von*; *War of the Mantuan Succession*; *Westphalia, Peace of*; *Wolgast, Battle of*.

***Pomest'e* cavalry.** In the Muscovite system, *servitors* (''pomeshchiki'' or ''pomest'ia'') held land from the tsar in exchange for a lifetime of military obligation. Such men usually supplied their own mounts and served as the tsarist cavalry. Their numbers grew greatly with acquisition of Novgorod and redistribution of its lands. Still more served and were rewarded during campaigns in Lithuania. Unlike the Polish *hussars* who were mainly medium cavalry, the Muscovite pomest'ia remained a light force. See also *soyughal*.

"Poor Conrad" revolt (1514). ''Armer Konrad.'' A peasant revolt centered on the Rems Valley near Stuttgart. It was sparked by imposition of new and heavy taxes by Duke Ulrich of Württemberg, with an additional grievance of government cheating of the peasants using falsified weights and measures in assessing taxes-in-kind. The revolt was brutally and swiftly repressed by the Duke's *men-at-arms* and followed by over 1,000 retaliatory beheadings of peasants. The underlying grievances were not resolved by this repression and fed into the still more violent and widespread *German Peasant War* of 1525.

Poor Knights. See *Knights Templar*.

port. See *gun port*; *port piece*.

portcullis. An iron or wood grill or grate hanging from the interior roof of the passage behind the gate of a castle or fortified town. It would be dropped to block inward passage of attackers who breached the outer gate, whereupon defenders speared the enemy or shot crossbows or handguns into them as more enemy pushed from the rear, pinning comrades against the portcullis. See also *castles, on land*; *murder holes*.

port fire. An alternate term for *quick match*.

Portland Bill, Battle of (1588). See *Invincible Armada*.

portolan chart. Sailing directions based on the collective experience of a community of maritime navigators, compiled in graphic form. Portolan charts for various coastlines were available from the late 13th century, with the first known use aboard ship in 1270. See also *maps*.

port piece. A breech-loading *swivel gun* frequently mounted on 16th-century warships and merchants. The Spanish term for this gun was *bombardetta*.

Portugal. Portugal emerged as a distinct country during the *Reconquista* (1071) and became a separate kingdom in 1143. In the early 13th century it completed conquest of the Algarve. From 1383 to 1411 it fought off neighboring Castile. It was united under the *Aviz* dynasty, beginning with Juan I, (r.1385–1433). In the 15th and 16th centuries it was the leader among all maritime powers, capitalizing on its location near Africa with easy access to

the Mediterranean. The initiative was taken by *Enrique the Navigator* (1394–1460). He captured Ceuta in 1415 and founded a school of navigation from which later explorers graduated to map the coasts of Africa, India, and South America, all in search of gold, spices, and slaves. These expeditions of exploration were followed by traders, missionaries, soldiers, and settlers, as the barely one million people of Portugal—which had been ravaged by the *Black Death*—built an overseas empire on the coasts of three continents. Madeira was colonized in 1419; the Azores from 1439. Portugal again fought Castile from 1474 to 1479, with the war ending in agreement to leave the Azores and Madeira with Portugal and give the Canaries to Castile. Portugal's king might have formed a union of the crowns with Castile had not *Ferdinand* of Aragon won Isabella's hand instead. That union survived a Portuguese attempt to overthrow it, and catapulted Aragon-Castile (''Spain'') to the forefront of the Reconquista and beyond Portugal in power and prestige. This trend continued with Spain's acceptance of the surrender of *Granada* in 1492. Still, the Portuguese controlled the early Atlantic slave trade and broke into the spice trade running from Cape Verde to Mozambique, India, China, and Japan.

In 1493 the pope granted Portugal a monopoly on trade in the eastern half of the globe marked by the *Line of Demarcation*, amended the next year in the Treaty of Tordesillas. In 1500 Portugal discovered and claimed Brazil, but over the next 150 years Portuguese settlers barely penetrated beyond a long strip of coastline on which they thinly settled. Portugal was never a major European or imperial power. Even against minor North African states it quickly found its military limits. A Portuguese invasion of Morocco was defeated at *Alcazarquivir* (1578), where Portugal lost its king. Two years later, it was itself invaded by *Philip II*, following betrayal by its noble class and defeat of a commoner army at *Alcántara*. During its overseas expansion Portugal became a major market for imported cannon, as ship-building, commercial expansion, and colonial fortification increased its need for artillery even as Imperial profits provided the means to buy guns in the booming cannon markets of Europe (principally Flanders and Germany). The problem was that not enough cannon could be cast in Lisbon due to a shortage of skilled labor. Portugal thus became dependent during the 16th century not just on foreign guns but on foreign gunners; to the end of the 17th century it was chronically short of artillery, a situation exacerbated by its absorption by Spain, which cut Portugal off from the Flanders cannon market during the *Eighty Years' War*. That led to establishment of local foundries in India and Macao, where indigenous materials and labor were used to cast guns for the Asian fleets and forts of the Portuguese Empire. After it regained independence in 1640, Portugal was free to again buy guns from the Dutch, who extracted a high price from their old foe and new ally against Spain.

Hampered by a small population, Portugal did not deeply penetrate or settle the interior of its African or Asian claims prior to the 19th century. Instead, it concentrated on control of sea lanes and sought a monopoly on ocean-borne trade. The interiors of Africa and Brazil were viewed as locales

from which to take slaves and draw tropical products for sale in European markets. The Empire was a thinly settled, coastal archipelago of heavily fortified entrepôts scattered over three continents, not an empire of permanent settlement and colonization. From these forward bases armed merchants and warships conducted a lucrative trade in gold, spices, and slaves. In southern Africa the Portuguese destroyed virtually every native state into which they came in contact, including *Kongo*, not by conquest but through participation in local wars and especially by sponsorship of expanded slaving. From the moment Portuguese *caravels* first appeared in the Indian Ocean at the turn of the 16th century they enjoyed a huge military advantage over the Arab and Indian *galley* fleets they encountered. In 1501 a fleet of five Portuguese caravels and three smaller ships destroyed an Indian galley fleet off Calicut. In 1507 the Portuguese took *Hormuz*. Two years later a small Portuguese fleet decimated a far larger *Mamlūk* and *Gujarat* galley fleet at *Diu* (1509). After that, Portugal enjoyed a monopoly on the spice trade of the Indian Ocean and cut sharply into Venice's share of the overland trade—through Iran and the Ottoman Middle East—by going directly to the Asian sources of valuable spices. They maintained control of the Indian Ocean for most of the 16th century, defending Hormuz from several Ottoman attacks from 1551 to 1554. In 1589 Portuguese ships destroyed an Ottoman galley fleet that slowly sallied down the coast of East Africa, taking from 1585 to 1588 to make the voyage. It was long-distance Portuguese traders who first brought advanced European firearms to China and Japan and established trade relations with the Far East in the mid-16th century. But already by the early 17th century the Portuguese were displaced from most of Southeast Asia and from Japan by the Dutch.

. . . English, Dutch, and French privateers . . . burned overseas settlements and entrepôts.

From 1580 to 1640 Spain pulled Portugal into all its wars: with England, France, the Netherlands, over northern Italy, and with the Ottomans and Barbary emirates. The cost to Portugal was high: English, Dutch, and French privateers took Portuguese *prizes* and burned overseas settlements and entrepôts. From 1620 to 1640 the Portuguese Empire shrank even more quickly than it had expanded. Military pressure came from the English and Dutch, who supported Muslim and Hindu enemies of the Portuguese and carried out direct attacks. Portugal lost a series of key overseas bases and entrepôts: Hormuz fell to the *Safavids* (aided by the English *East India Company*) in 1622; from 1631 to 1640, it lost Pernambuco, Elmina (Gold Coast), Luanda (Mozambique), Ceylon, Malacca, and *Deshima* to the Dutch. It also had to fight off a Dutch occupation and several English amphibious raids along coastal Brazil, a war waged mainly by local settlers. By 1640, Spain faced internal unrest and rebellion in several provinces over high war taxes and too many defeats. In early 1640 the *revolt of Catalonia* broke out. Portugal, too, struck for independence in 1640. As with the Catalans, Portuguese were resentful of high taxes that were of so little benefit to themselves: the Dutch had

stripped them of many overseas bases and occupied parts of coastal Brazil, yet Spain paid little attention to the defense of Portuguese overseas territories. During the 1630s there had been a series of minor tax revolts within Portugal, each put down by Spanish troops. Now a coup in Lisbon was backed by the nobility and merchant classes and received secret French aid. The rebellion, or ''Restauracão'' (''Restoration''), was nearly bloodless. Lisbon was seized and the Duke of Bragrança elevated as King João IV on December 15, 1640. Spain refused to accept dissolution of the 1580 forced union and attacked. The Portuguese fought off the Spanish at *Montijo* in 1644, after which they were de facto independent even if it took fighting until 1668 for Spain to recognize this status. See also *d'Albuquerque, Alfonso de*; *Aviz, Order of*; *expulsion of the Jews*; *Portuguese India*.

Suggested Reading: B. Diffy and G. Winius, *Foundations of the Portuguese Empire* (1977).

Portuguese India. ''Estado da India.'' The first Portuguese foothold in *India* was Goa, seized in 1510 by the architect of Portugal's Indian empire, the religious fanatic and skilled admiral Viceroy Dom *Alfonso de d'Albuquerque* (1453–1515). He took the port from Bijapur with just 1,500 men, losing under 100 to Indian losses in the thousands. In 1509 the Portuguese bested an Arab navy at *Diu*, but they did not take Diu for another 22 years. In 1531 they directly assaulted Diu and took it from Gujarat, despite the latter receiving some artillery and musketry aid from the Ottomans. In 1541 Gujarat tried but failed to retake Diu. The next year the first *Jesuits* arrived in Goa, where they introduced the *Inquisition* in 1560. In 1580 *Philip II* of Spain took control of all overseas Portuguese territories. In 1638 Goa was nearly lost to the *Marathas* but was held with aid from the Mughal emperor. Portugal recovered these bases from Spain after 1650.

porucznik. In the Polish Army, a junior officer (lieutenant) serving in a *choragiew* under the *rotmistrz*.

pots de fer. ''Fire pots.'' Bell-shaped, primitive gunpowder artillery. They were cast by bell makers. Because they were fired from a ground board rather than a stabilizing *gun carriage*, they were wildly inaccurate. Contemporary etchings and descriptions suggest that they shot thick arrows wrapped in leather to fit the mouth of the vase and seal in propellant gasses. The powder was placed in the rounded end and touched off by a heated wire or match. These weapons were unreliable and probably served as little more than noisemakers. There is a record from 1338 suggesting that the French used pots de fer from ships, an extraordinarily risky tactic, during a raid on the English coast. Once it became possible to manufacture large cannon with the *hoop-and-stave* method the term pots de fer shifted in meaning to refer to pre-loaded breeches or pots that contained the charge, wadding, and cannonball inserted as one into breech-loading *bombards*. Neither sense should be confused with a still later incendiary sometimes also called a ''firepot.'' See also *alcancia*.

powder scoop. A common gunner's tool. Powder scoops on land were long handled. Aboard ships they were short handled because of limited room. Some were made from copper alloy, but more normally they were wooden to eliminate the chance of striking stray sparks that might set off the black powder. They were used to load loose, unpacked gunpowder into the guns.

Powhatan War (1609). See *Indian Wars (North America)*.

Powick Bridge, Battle of (1642). See *English Civil Wars*; *Rupert, Prince*.

Prague, Battle of (1420). See *Hussite Wars*.

Prague, Peace of (May 30, 1635). Mutual exhaustion brought a number of German territorial princes to terms with Emperor *Ferdinand II* in an effort to end the *Thirty Years' War*. An armistice (''Preliminaries of Pirna'') was agreed on November 25, 1634, wherein a reluctant Ferdinand accepted to weaken the *Edict of Restitution*. His dynastic interest trumped his fanaticism: he needed the German princes to elect his son, the future *Ferdinand III*, as ''King of Rome,'' the traditional stepping-stone to the Imperial throne. On the other side, *Johan Georg* of Saxony led a cluster of Protestant princes who were either unhappy with Swedish domination of the war or eager to end its expense and destruction. Georg broke with the Swedes in 1634 after they lost at *First Nördlingen*. Peace talks opened in Prague on April 2, 1635, with an accord reached on May 30 declared binding on Ferdinand, the *Estates*, and any prince willing to accept its terms. These included a 40-year suspension of the Edict of Restitution and an end to the *reservatum ecclesiaticum*. Instead, there would be restoration of lands Ferdinand seized from Protestants based on a *Normaljahr* set at November 12, 1627. That protected northern princes while leaving the south solidly Catholic. The bishoprics of Halberstadt, Bremen, and Verden taken from *Christian IV* in 1629 would remain under Imperial control. An amnesty was offered to rebel princes who agreed to abide by the Peace of Prague in return for which they accepted Imperial military obligations. This reflected a growing proto-nationalism in Germany in reaction against prolonged tramping and trampling of foreign armies on German soil. A key exception to the amnesty was any prince at war with Ferdinand prior to the landing of *Gustavus Adolphus* in Germany in 1630. That was intended to ban in perpetuity the heirs of *Friedrich V*, whose lands, rights, titles, and Electorship were granted to *Maximilian I of Bavaria*.

Excluded from the peace were most Calvinist princes, including the Landgrave of Hesse-Kassel, who was also dispossessed. The Calvinist Elector of Brandenburg was too important to bar, and was explicitly admitted. Only one Lutheran, the Duke of Württemberg, was excluded. Rights of Lutheran worship were confirmed in specified states and Saxony gained significant territory. In the Habsburg hereditary lands Catholicism was confirmed as the established and sole legal religion, while elsewhere in southern Germany traditional rights of *Reichsritter* (knights) and *Reichsstädte* (free cities) were

severely truncated in favor of Catholic princes. Finally, the *Catholic League* was dissolved and all other internal or external princely alliances declared null and void. Most princes acceded within six months. The Peace of Prague did not resolve all confessional issues in Germany, but the religious question was sufficiently abated after 1635 that internal calm returned to large parts of the Empire. Some Lutheran princes even supported Ferdinand III in the general war that continued with France and Sweden. Prague failed in the short run—the great German war continued—because it never took account of the conflict's international dimension, which was predominant by 1635. No peace made solely by Germans for Germans could stand given the facts of powerful foreign armies and interests engaged in the war. The Peace of Prague may even have prolonged the war by moving the fulcrum of anti-Habsburg opposition outside Germany into the hands of powerful foreign sovereigns. Fighting thus continued until the general European settlement of the *Peace of Westphalia* in 1648, which in its German treaties and clauses confirmed many of the details agreed at Prague. See also *Arnim, Hans Georg von*; *contributions*; *Imperial Diet*.

Prague, Siege of (1645). See *Thirty Years' War*.

Prague, Siege of (1648). See *Thirty Years' War*.

prangi. An Ottoman breech-loading *swivel gun*. It was widely used in Mediterranean *galleys*.

predestination. See *Arminianism*; *Calvinism*; *Luther, Martin*; *Protestant Reformation*; *Zwingli, Huldrych*.

Preliminaries of Pirna (1634). See *Prague, Peace of*.

Presbyterianism. See *Bishops' War, First*; *Bishops' War, Second*; *Covenanters*; *English Civil Wars*; *Knox, John*.

press gang. See *impressment*.

Prester John, Legend of. See *Crusades*; *Exploration, Age of*.

Preston, Campaign of (August 17–20, 1648). An army of 10,000 Scots and English Royalists invaded England on July 8, 1648. *Oliver Cromwell* advanced north from Wales gathering *trained bands* as he moved. He surprised 3,500 Royalists (the enemy had badly divided his forces) on August 17, quickly routing their horse but facing tough resistance from the infantry. Cromwell advanced his infantry to Preston, mauling the Scots' rearguard and seizing control of a key bridge, cutting off the main body of Scots from a return to Scotland and separating them from their ammunition wagons and stores. The Scots-Royalists were forced to retreat south, away from home and safety,

closely pursued by Cromwell. The armies fought again at Winwick on August 19, where Cromwell killed or captured 3,000 enemy. The next day he caught up with the survivors at Warrington, where 4,000 Scots surrendered. As Scottish stragglers wended their way back north local countryfolk attacked and murdered many more.

Preussische Bund. ''Prussian Confederation.'' A corporation founded in 1444 at Marienwerder by Prussian burghers and Junkers. It grew to include 21 towns and to rival the *Teutonic Knights* within Prussia. In 1454 the Bund was ordered to submit by the Holy Roman Emperor, but refused. In 1455 the *Holy Roman Empire* banned the Bund and the pope threatened to excommunicate its officers, members, and allies. It defiantly renounced allegiance to the Hochmeister of the Sword Brothers, and all Prussia rose with it against the Knights. The Bund captured over 50 castles inside two months and offered the crown to Poland. These events set off the thirteen-year *War of the Cities* (1454–1466).

Preveza, Battle of (1538). A naval fight opposing yet another ''Holy League,'' this time comprised of Venice, the Papal States, and *Charles V* against the Ottoman Empire. *Andrea Doria* led the Christian fleet to Greece where it engaged the Ottomans under *Barbarossa*, only to lose seven *galleys* without sinking a single Muslim ship.

Prévôt des maréchaux. A military magistrate whose task was to police deserters and stragglers.

price revolution (of the 17th century). A spectacular, prolonged inflation which beset all economies in Europe from the discovery of the New World through the climactic confessional wars of the period, peaking in the 17th century. While many of its causes and effects remain subject to intense academic debate there is agreement on two main causes. First, the influx of gold and silver from Spain's American colonies vastly increased Europe's supply of monetary metals. Second, decades of deficit financing of protracted wars encouraged debasement of most currencies. The 17th century thus witnessed a steady climb in commodity prices aggravated by a rising population logistic and a corresponding decrease in real wages. The price revolution undermined the political and social position of landed aristocracies and impoverished peasants, whose lot was declining with population growth and agricultural changes anyway. Inflation benefitted urban merchant classes but especially debt-ridden monarchs, allowing them to pay off old loans with debased currency. On the other hand, it destabilized industries and entire economies, aggravated social, religious, and international conflicts, turned the expanding city populations into deep pools of immiseration and therefore potential revolution, and in significant measure underlay the larger political, social, military, and religious crisis of the 17th century that wracked European civilization. See also *mutiny*.

prickers. Yorkist term for *light cavalry* used during the *Wars of the Roses* in England.

printing. Moveable type (letterpress printing) was invented in Germany by Johannes Gutenberg (1400–1468), probably in 1454. The new method meant that Bibles were printed and circulated en masse where previously a single copy had required 300 sheepskins. By 1500, Paris boasted 75 presses and most other large towns in Europe experienced a similar printing boom. This had a huge impact on religious affairs, as it did on all realms of human activity. Permanent records and the transmission of new ideas in printed form led to wider diffusion of practical knowledge and a concomitant change in metaphysical outlook. Printed bibles and tracts greatly aided the spread of Protestant ideas, adding to confessional divisions across Europe. From 1517 to 1520 *Martin Luther* wrote 30 tracts that were printed in over 300,000 copies. His translation of the Bible into German was circulated in printed editions. The English translation of the Bible by William Tyndale (who was strangled, then burned, for heresy in 1536) was widely circulated by *Thomas Cromwell*, who believed that ''enlightened religion'' among the people was conducive to patriotism. In fact, it conduced to sectarian conflict and indirectly to religious civil war.

Printing also had direct military effects. Among the first and most important military outcomes was translation and reproduction of artillery tables and manuals which hitherto were written out in limited, and often also secret, editions. These manuals reproduced what otherwise existed only in the heads and private notes of master gunsmiths: alloy ratios and methods for bronze casting; recipes for gunpowder, including advanced techniques of *corning*; and tables of inclination and weight-of-powder-to-shot. Standardized knowledge of the latter greatly increased accuracy and professionalized the role of *bombardiers*. Printing also improved government record keeping. This greatly enhanced central administration, which led to more efficient systems of taxation that were essential to meeting the growing burden of *war finance*. And printing contributed to standardization of major languages, strengthening development of ''national'' identities and hostilities in the early modern world. See also *Art of War*.

Prior Mor. In the Iberian *Military Orders*, the officer below *Mestre*. His duties were largely ceremonial and internal to the workings of the Order.

prise. In 13th-century England, this was a system of compulsory purchase of food for military purposes at prices set by the state. It was deeply unpopular. The later term for this practice was ''purveyance.''

prisoners of war. During the knightly era, as endemic warfare threatened men of property and title with death or capture that would lead to catastrophic losses, a convention arose within the code of *chivalry* whereby wealthy prisoners taken in battle were held for ransom rather than killed. While this helped

preserve the hereditary class structure it provided a new incentive for raiding and war: profit through ransom. Protection did not extend to ordinary soldiers who were hacked, stabbed, and bludgeoned to death with happy abandon by their armored and lawfully protected social superiors. This attitude was reciprocal: neither Flemish militia nor Swiss country lads took nobles captive. The Flemings massacred French *knights* at *Courtrai* (1302) while the Swiss butchered and mutilated young nobles at *Morgarten* (1315), *Laupen* (1339), *Sempach* (1386), and *Näfels* (1388). In 1444 Zurich tried to restrain its more passionate soldiers from ripping out the hearts of dead enemies as trophies and dismembering corpses. In the other direction, Lucerne passed an ordinance in 1499 stipulating that no prisoners were to be taken at all. Irish peasant *kernes*, too, had a reputation for ferocity and routine murder of prisoners.

The medieval ideal of the *jus in bello* could lead to strange results. During the *Scottish Wars* England regarded Scots soldiers as rebels and often butchered prisoners, whereas the Scots felt they were fighting nation-to-nation and felt bound by the laws of war to protect English prisoners. Similarly, the English regarded France as a legitimate sovereign enemy and therefore respected high-class French prisoners and held them for ransom (though they killed commoners and Genoese mercenaries in French service). A notable exception occurred at *Agincourt* in 1415 where *Henry V* ordered a massacre of French knights, possibly because he feared they would attack his rear. His own knights refused to do the deed, but his lower-class archers were happy to cut some 1,000 noble throats. Large numbers of casualties in battle were almost always suffered by the losing side, usually after the outcome was made clear by a formation being broken and the men in it running or riding for their lives. This exposed their backs to pursuers who more easily cut them down. In the Middle East the *Catalan Great Company* slaughtered all Ottoman males over the age of ten. The Ottomans also killed prisoners of mature ages, but kept able boys to be converted to *Islam* and raised as military slaves. Overseas, small and isolated European armies engaged in colonial conquest, such as the *conquistadores* in the Americas, usually took few prisoners and slaughtered those they did in order to even the military odds. On the other warrior side, the *Aztec Empire* avoided direct killing in order to take large numbers of prisoners to be slaughtered in ritual sacrifice.

. . . Zurich tried to restrain . . . soldiers from ripping out the hearts of dead enemies . . .

In general, prisoners were killed or roughly treated in situations where one side felt secure from retaliation by the other. Thus, *Alba* routinely hanged all captured Dutch rebels, but only until 1573 when one of his favorites was captured by the Dutch. This led to a reciprocal agreement on regular prisoner exchanges. During the *Thirty Years' War* the large number of *mercenaries* in all armies meant that ordinary soldiers taken prisoner were usually afforded the opportunity to change sides, and did so. Officers would be released upon payment of a ransom to the commander of the enemy regiment. But this

could be financially ruinous to the captured officer. In France, the king paid ransom for any captured ''maréchal de France.'' To reduce his personal risk, *Bernhard von Sachsen-Weimar* negotiated similar treatment in the event of his capture. By the end of the war it was common for monarchs to pay ransoms for all their captured troops, national or mercenary. The sum to be paid was set by rank and governed by formal agreement between opposing armies. For example, a *Field Marshal* was worth 20,000 florins. This system reduced personal financial risks for officers while redirecting the spoils of war out of their purses into the *war chest* of rising territorial princes. An exception to this was the ''War of the Three Kingdoms,'' or *English Civil Wars*, fought within and among England, Ireland, and Scotland. These wars were intensely religious in character. As a result, Irish soldiers serving in England were subject to summary execution while Royalist, Confederate, Scots, and Parliamentarians in Ireland all killed prisoners unless a ransom or exchange proved possible. See also *Albigensian Crusade*; *Charles I, of England*; *Constantinople, Siege of*; *cuartel general*; *Dunbar, Battle of*; *German Peasant War*; *guerre mortelle*; *infantry*; *Knights Templar*; *Mohács, Battle of*; *mourning war*; *murtat*; *Nicopolis, Battle of*; *Philiphaugh, Battle of*; *piracy*; *Salāh al-Dīn*; *''skulking way of war''*; *stradiots*; *Tannenberg, Battle of*; *Vienna, Siege of*; *Wallace, William*; *Worcester, Battle of*.

privateer. A privately owned warship and/or its captain issued *letters of marque* or *letters of reprisal* by a monarch authorizing capture or destruction of enemy shipping. Taking ships captive as *prizes* was the preferred action. Privateers usually carried large crews, useful for boarding actions and from which skeleton crews could be split off to sail captured ships into ports with *prize courts*. The Prussians hired privateers to fend off more powerful ships of the *Teutonic Knights* during the *War of the Cities* (1454–1466). French (*Huguenot*) and Dutch (*Sea Beggar*) privateers preyed on Spanish commerce through the 16th and 17th centuries, while Flemish privateers in Spanish service and based in Dunkirk and Ostend from the 1620s preyed on the rich Dutch trade that bottlenecked in the Channel. By far the most wide-ranging privateers were English *sea dogs*, sailing under such reckless and daring captains as *Francis Drake*, *John Hawkyns*, *Walter Raleigh*, and *Martin Frobisher*. During *Elizabeth I*'s protracted war with *Philip II*—undeclared before 1588 but open after that—100 English privateers were given letters of marque to prey on Spanish ships from the Channel to the Caribbean, off the coast of Spain and Portugal, and along the treasure and supply lanes of the several Atlantic passages. Dutch and English privateers carried the war even to Asia, where they preyed on Iberian ships in the Indies but also on Chinese junks and other local traffic. Historian Kenneth Andrews argues that privateering was ''the characteristic form of Elizabethan maritime warfare.'' That was because no permanent navy was available beyond a few ''royal ships'' and there was no consistent naval policy or doctrine that appreciated the advantages to England of pursuing sea power in a more modern sense (''command of the sea''). In general, sailors much preferred to serve on a privateer where they shared in the *prize money*

than on a royal ship owned by the monarch which paid poor or even no wages. See also *Confederation of Kilkenny*; *Glyndŵr's Rebellion*.

Suggested Reading: Kenneth Andrews, *Elizabethan Privateering* (1964).

Privilegium minus. See *Holy Roman Empire*.

prize. Any enemy merchant ship or warship taken on the sea and returned for sale of the ship and its cargo in a *prize court*. See also *booty*; *privateer*.

prize court. An ad hoc naval court established to decide conflicting claims over what was, or was not, contraband. Prize courts were originally established to assess the competing claims of *privateers* and merchants and to give the monarch a stake in any *prize* or goods seized during privateering or naval warfare.

prize money. Enemy goods or vessels seized or captured at sea in wartime were sold in a *prize court*, from which monarchs always took "a piece of the action." In 14th-century England, prizes were divided thus: one-quarter to the king, one-quarter to the warship's owners, half to the captain and crew (with the lion's share going to the captain) that captured the prize. There was, of course, much concealment and cheating in order to reduce the monarch's share. See also *booty*.

Procopius the Great (d.1434). Czech: Prokop Holý. Radical priest and *Hussite* general. He served under *Jan Žižka* and fought at *Kutná Hora* (1422) and *Nêmecký Brod* (1422). He replaced Žižka as overall Taborite commander when Žižka was killed in the first Hussite civil war (1424). He won a major victory over the Imperial Army at *Ustí nad Labem* (1426). He then led the Hussites on a prolonged offensive into Austria, Hungary, and Germany, 1429–1430. When the *Council of Basel* offered an olive branch to moderate Hussites, Procopius and the radical Taborite rebels again faced civil war with Utraquists, who were allied this time with Bohemia's Catholics. Procopius commanded at *Český-Brod* (1434) where he was killed in a losing fight in which the Taborites took heavy casualties.

Procopius the Little (d.1434). Czech: Prokupek. *Hussite* general. He served under *Jan Žižka*, seeing action with the Taborite army at *Kutná Hora* (1422) and *Nêmecký Brod* (1422). He then served with *Procopius the Great*, fighting at *Ustí nad Labem* (1426). He led a somewhat more moderate group of Taborites (Orebites) in an unsuccessful siege of Pilsen (1432–1434). Like his greater namesake he was killed while fighting at *Český-Brod* (1434).

professed. A warrior monk of one of the *Military Orders* who took full vows of chastity, poverty, and obedience.

prohibited weapons. The effort to prohibit certain weapons from use in warfare is ancient. The Greeks banned poisoning of a besieged city's water supply and poison-tipped arrows, though Romans, Byzantines, and Ottomans

saw nothing wrong with either method of killing. During the *Crusades* Christians first encountered the *crossbow* and recoiled from the devastation it wrought among *knights*. In 1139 Pope Innocent II declared a ban on crossbows in fighting among Christians (though he granted a dispensation for use against Muslims or pagans). But the crossbow was simply too effective a weapon to suppress and was soon in wide use in Christian armies and wars. Similarly, when the *longbow* appeared on the continent during the *Hundred Years' War* it cut down the flower of French chivalry. This led to another useless papal ban: the longbow was also far too efficient a killing system to suppress for merely metaphysical reasons, even in an age of faith, and was deployed in bloody-minded defiance of the papal ban. When gunpowder first became known in Europe in the late 13th century, the *Catholic Church* tried to ban all weapons that employed it, proclaiming them to be the product of daemonic arts and purposes. So valuable did "black powder" weapons prove in battle no one other than a few theologians paid any attention to protests from Rome. See also *serpentine*; *wheel lock*.

propaganda. See *Affair of the Placards*; *Antichrist*; *Black Legend*; *Calvinism*; *Congregatio de Propaganda Fidei*; *Counter-Reformation*; *"Defenestration of Prague" (May 23, 1618)*; *Ferdinand II, Holy Roman Emperor*; *Fifth Monarchists*; *French Civil Wars*; *iconoclasm*; *Inquisition*; *Jesuits*; *kerne*; *Luther, Martin*; *Mali Empire*; *monarchia universalis*; *Philip II, of Spain*; *printing*; *Protestant Reformation*; *Songhay*; *"Spanish Fury"*; *Suleiman I*; *Third Rome*; *Thirty Years' War*; *Vienna, Siege of*; *witchcraft*.

Propositions. A Parliamentary *contributions* system especially important for the supply of cavalry mounts during the *English Civil Wars* (1639–1651). In 1643 "donations" were made compulsory.

Protestant Reformation. A great 16th-century shattering of the unity of Latin Christian civilization (the larger Christian world had split into Catholic and Orthodox branches centuries earlier). It was both an extension of trends flowing from the *Italian Renaissance* and a reaction against them; it was a call for basic reform of clerical abuses and corruption and a partial rejection of the claimed authority of the clergy. Christian humanists such as Erasmus and Lefèvre d'Etaples were active within the *Catholic Church* before the great theological divide of the 16th century. They rejected scholasticism, arguing for direct textual study of the Bible and new approaches to devotion, piety, and theology. Yet, they insisted on the essential unity of the Church and hence were not "proto-Protestants." The term Protestant was first attached to the followers of *Martin Luther*, more specifically to all who registered protests against resolutions of the *Imperial Diet* of 1529 called by *Charles V* to deal with the confessional split and religious rebellion in Germany.

Genesis

Clerical in origin and mostly confined to the towns at first, the Reformation took varying shape in certain core areas before spreading unevenly across

the ''Christian Commonwealth'' (*res publica Christiana*). It took early and deep root in Germany where Luther led lower clergy and regular orders in opposition to widespread corruption in the Church and to medieval penitential practice, but even more in protest against scholasticism and Aristotelian ethics. The goal of scholastic theology was rational exposition of a ''faith seeking understanding'' (''fides quaerens intellectum''), within the context of divine love (''caritas'') rather than faith as the cardinal religious idea. Lutherans and other Protestants instead championed a highly individualistic piety that spoke to popular longing for religious emotion left unsatisfied by mere habitual public observance and hollow rituals. They proposed a new theology developed using the textual and critical tools of humanism and an ethics rooted in ''justification by faith'' alone (''sola fides''). In thus committing theology, under another name the reformers continued the scholastic search for ''true doctrine,'' or revelation affirmed by reason. This set the stage for later all-out war over which doctrines were true and whose were false.

Alternate reform communities gripped parts of Switzerland. *Huldrych Zwingli* led the revolt in Zurich which moved into the open in 1522 with defiant eating of sausages during the Lenten fast. Jean Calvin fled France and took up residence in Geneva, where he pushed too hard too soon for political control. After five years away from Geneva he returned and became master of the city. From Geneva, *Calvinism* spread to the Netherlands, Scotland, France and the Rhineland. Other charismatic preachers proclaimed and wrote tracts promulgating new doctrines and distributed bibles for direct study by the laity. In this way subsidiary reform doctrines and movements inevitably arose that were evermore distinct from the original Lutheran protest. In France, too, early conversions occurred mainly among the clergy, notably of Cordelier, Jacobin, many Augustinian monks, and several bishops who declared their conscience and surrendered their sees to go preaching or into hiding. Missionaries sent by Calvin from Geneva after 1555 made inroads among the French nobility of the Midi and their clients, setting the stage for the protracted tragedy of forty years of the ''Wars of Religion'' in France. The Reformation took a much different path in England, driven at first by the carnal lusts and dynastic and financial interests of *Henry VIII* rather than any doctrinal disputes. Only slowly did the English Church move away from Catholicism in matters of faith, doctrine, prayer book, and ritual, consolidating England as a Protestant country under *Elizabeth I* and making it an enemy of Catholic power.

Everywhere the Reformation was fundamentally occasioned by demographic, economic, social, and political changes which presented an opportunity to offer an alternative lay piety to the spiritual and intellectual dominance of the Catholic clergy. The impulse to reform was rooted in widespread disgust over the rank secularism and corruption of higher clergy, and open concubinage and raw spiritual and doctrinal ignorance of most lower clergy and parish priests. There was widespread resentment over large and small fees charged by clerics for everything from blessings at weddings to

candles at funerals, to absolution for rape, infanticide, and murder. More deeply, there was widespread emotional dissatisfaction with a mere ''religion of habits'' among the multitudes, who were instructed in external and often spiritually hollow ritual observance while being stripped of money by unscrupulous hucksters playing on superstitions at shrines, festivals, and on pilgrimages. Still, many challenges to Catholic orthodoxy and Church practices had been made before 1500, including some where doctrinal revolt took intense political and social form. In order for demands for reform to become actual revolution and religious warfare it was necessary for spiritual disquiet to marry political unrest, and together conceive military conflict.

Martin Luther

The most intense phase of religious ferment and demand for institutional and moral reform, which led directly to permanent division of Latin Christianity, began in 1517 when Martin Luther nailed a scroll of 95 theses to a church door in Wittenberg. These protested corrupt clerical practices, especially sale of ''indulgences'' (promissory notes on reduced punishment in ''Purgatory,'' Catholic antechamber of the afterlife). By 1521 significant elements in the German church were in de facto schism from Rome. They broke openly with promulgation of the ''*Augsburg Confession*'' of Lutheran principles nine years later. While watchful and concerned, Charles V was unable to venture into his Empire before 1530, so preoccupied was he with wars with France and the Ottoman Empire. When he did turn to the religious revolt in Germany the reformed faith was already deeply rooted. Given translation of the Bible into vernacular languages (the German translation was made by Luther himself), its mass production on the new Gutenberg press, and chronic scandal among the clergy, reference by the laity to the direct authority of scripture had wide appeal. Punching through the barrier of the priesthood clung to by Catholics, reformers offered direct access to scripture. In reform congregations laity needed no priest to instruct them in correct dogma, paid no petty clerical fees, and were freed in their daily practices and piety from the conjoined asceticism and puritanism of clerical spiritual and sexual ideals. Radicals went much further, reviving and reveling in ancient apocalyptic traditions that painted the Catholic Church—with its many attachments to secular power—as the ''whore of Babylon'' and every reigning pope as the *Antichrist*.

Radicals . . . painted the Catholic Church . . . as the ''whore of Babylon'' . . .

For all the vitriol and rhetoric, the reformed faith spread almost solely in the towns during its first seven decades, mainly among clergy and literate laity in the professional classes. Some historians thus regard the Reformation as essentially a bourgeois movement. While that seems extreme, it is true that reform barely touched the vast peasant masses during the 16th century other than by wars and forced migrations it suffered or provoked, or in villages tied economically to a nearby Reform town. In part, indifference to *confessionalism*

on the part of the majority reflected the arcane complexity of the doctrinal disputes at issue, championed by theologians on either side who felt little need to make their points more plainly for plain folk. Most peasants thus continued to visit reliquaries, go on pilgrimages, join in sometimes wild religious processions and festivals, wait sullenly in coerced attendance at services, accept spiritual tutelage from the mouths of priests as illiterate and ignorant as themselves, and uphold folk practices and beliefs alien and repugnant to Protestant and Catholic elites alike.

Jean Calvin

That is why Calvin was so important. He made Protestant theology comprehensible and teachable to the many, if not quite the multitude, by producing a reform catechism for "Everyman." His *Institutes of the Christian Religion* was first published in 1536 and thereafter printed and reprinted in several revised versions and on a truly vast scale. Calvin's lucidity as a writer, along with his early legal training, permitted him to make complex theological arguments with a direct simplicity and clarity rare for disputants of the day. This made his work accessible to lay folk who could read it themselves or, more often, who listened to readings from his pamphlets and texts. The immediacy of his writings made them far more powerful than Zwingli's or Luther's distant, arcane, and angrily polemical treatises. (The Catholic Church recognized the challenge this posed. It finally matched Calvin's catechism with one of its own, the simplified *Roman Catechism* produced by the *Council of Trent*.) Despite the fact that on most issues of doctrine Calvin agreed with Luther, militant "Calvinists" came to reject Lutheranism and Catholicism in near-equal measure, not least because their contempt was returned in full measure by Catholics and Lutherans who joined in rare union to deny formal legal protection to Calvinists in Germany that they afforded to each other in the *Peace of Augsburg* (1555). As Catholicism concentrated and consolidated after Trent, Protestantism divided to became a multi-colored cloak, adding new swatches with the rise of some charismatic preacher in the Netherlands or Scotland or Bohemia who fixed on this or that narrow scriptural passage and worried it into an extreme claim held above all others, and around which gathered a fanatic following utterly convinced that only he, and they, possessed God's truth.

So what united Protestants? Devotion to individualistic piety framed in the core tenet that no third person was needed as intermediary between oneself and God: no corruptible priesthood with a monopoly on interpretation of scripture, no hierarchy of doctrinal or administrative authority, and no pope. Protestants also rejected the notion of the intercession of saints and despised cults of veneration of saints organized around reliquaries or shrines and represented in images and statuary in churches, many of which were smashed by furious Protestant mobs. Where Catholics looked to the pantheon of Christian saints as models of godliness worthy of respect and emulation by the masses, overly fervent Protestants expected the masses to be saints. Not all Protestants were so radical in the changes they sought or the doctrines they

preached. But there was a shared and fierce rejection of the Catholic view that there were two distinct paths to holiness and salvation. The first, chastity, self-abnegation, and ''mortification of the flesh'' guided by prayerful devotion, was a life of holiness designed for the clergy but imposed during the Middle Ages as the ideal held out for the laity as well. The alternative was personal, familial, and social conformity with Church teachings, along with participation in certain sacraments and observance of holy and feast days and other public rituals. This path was of lower spiritual value but was provided to laity, including all nobles and kings, as a poor but acceptable second to the truly godly life of clerics. What united Protestants was rejection of this notion of alternate lay and clerical paths to salvation. They instead upheld the idea of a unified piety, or a ''priesthood of all believers.''

Political Effects

This had an unforeseen yet powerful political effect. Protestants persecuted by Catholic kings, as in the Netherlands and France, moved toward denial of the old idea of the *corpus mysticum*, eventually rejecting the notion of a unique physical holiness for kings as they already did the unique spiritual holiness of despised Catholic clergy. In place of veneration of the king's ''divine body,'' an even older medieval idea took hold in new form: kings ruled by consent or they ruled by mere force of arms. The latter case gave rise to the modern idea, first opposed by all Protestant theologians but later endorsed by some, that a king who ruled unjustly via the sword could be justly pulled from his throne by the people. In different ways in different countries at varying times this intellectual revolution of the first order found expression in pamphlets and arguments, then in riots, civil wars, and revolutions. *Huguenots* in southern France, Calvinists in the Netherlands, English Puritans and Parliamentarians, all came to the same conclusion by different historical paths: ''godly men and true'' had no more need of kings than they did of priests or popes. Elsewhere, in Lutheran Denmark and Sweden and much of northern Germany, monarchs converted to Protestantism and so were not challenged. Instead, they became the main protectors of the reformed religion, which thereby took on a territorial and national aspect. The enemy, in caricature and in reality, became the Habsburg ambition to hegemony that was tied to the *Counter-Reformation*.

From the middle of the 16th century to the middle of the 17th century bloody wars of religion ensued as every side dug in doctrinally. Protectors among the monarchs and great princes of Europe were secured, towns fortified, armies raised, and a ferocious military struggle began. Even more sharply, the fight was over confessionalizing the still largely uninvolved and uncaring masses. Radical ideas, men, and policies found ready hearings in the highest courts as Protestants and Catholics together burned the last bridges connecting them to one another as Christians; then they burned each other. Fanatics took the lead most everywhere, condemning the enemy not just in this life but more deliciously also in the next, as a ''heretic'' on some ferociously debated arcana of angelic, apostolic, catechistic, or doctrinal interest. As the

Counter-Reformation won back whole countries for Catholicism (Bohemia, Inner Austria, Flanders), Protestantism rushed to marry regional and secular autonomy, in some places also sheltering constitutionalism as a mistress. Wherever Protestantism survived it did so because it was defended by territorial princes when confessional conflict led to religious wars and bloodletting widened confessional divides. Not all wars of the period were caused by disputes occasioned by the Reformation: the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559), for instance, were waged by Catholics against Catholics and the *Nordic Seven Years' War* (1563–1570) was fought exclusively among Lutherans. Yet, the names of the greatest wars of the era point to the intractability of their causes, rooted in religious passions and hatreds: the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648) and the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). Other great nations were torn apart from within by religious fissures: France during the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629); and England, Scotland and Ireland during the ''War of the Three Kingdoms'' or *English Civil Wars* (1639–1651). European civilization as a whole was violently tossed and tumbled for more than a century. Old alliances were discarded and new ones took shape; old balances of power were broken and new ones arranged. When it was all over, Europe was unrecognizable diplomatically, politically, militarily, or spiritually.

The wars of the Reformation and Counter-Reformation also drove parties outward, to engage the wider world in a search for profits and martial advantage to be used in mortal combat at home in Europe. The Americas saw scenes of battle between Iberian Catholics and English and Dutch Protestants and their navies, and religious massacres of native and colonial populations from Florida to New England. The coasts of Africa and India were scouted by rival traders and the interiors penetrated by missionaries. Storm-tossed conquerors eager to deny any advantage to enemies thousands of miles away made deals with local Muslim potentates in the Gulf and Indian Ocean. Coastal China was brushed by Reformation winds when European *privateers* attacked trade junks, while company diplomats strove to persuade Ming emperors to deny China's trade to their confessional and commercial rivals. The *Jesuits* fanned over the Americas and across Asia in a fierce competition for converts, protecting Indians in the Amazon from slavers or turning master gunner for a Chinese or Manchu emperor. The *Inquisition* reached into Mexico, Peru, and the Philippines, looking for signs of Protestant infection and heresy. In Japan, Catholic missionaries and Protestant traders vied for favor from the profoundly suspicious warlords *Oda Nobunaga* and *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*, and the more calculating *Tokugawa Ieyasu*. Hundreds of thousands converted only to be left behind when the missionaries were ordered out, and then slaughtered in the 1630s by the Tokugawa shogunate. *Kirishitan* survivors were hunted and driven underground into secret devotions until the 19th century, a communal island of memory of Europe's long-forgotten wars of religion.

Yet, when European states and empires finally emerged from the religious wars they were flush with extraordinary commercial, military, and political energy. Where did it come from? From the concentration of mind and power

caused by 150 years of the prospect of being hanged in the morning by some other European state or empire. Masters of parts of five continents, armed with navigational, technological, and commercial innovations born of decades of cutthroat warfare and ferocious economic competition, flush with wealth from the springtime of capitalism, a newly secular Europe's appetite for still more overseas profit and land would grow with the eating.

Conclusions

Wilhelm Dilthey and Jacob Burkhardt saw the great changes of the Reformation as reinforcing the intellectual openness first seen in the *Italian Renaissance*. Georg Hegel was also an admirer, especially of Luther, depicting the Reformation as part of an unfolding of greater historical self-consciousness. Max Weber famously proposed a thesis linking Protestantism in its Calvinist and Puritan forms with the rise of capitalism. In his *The Protestant Ethic and the Spirit of Capitalism* (1904), Weber argued that piety and asceticism (''the Protestant ethic'') made Calvinists more ''thrifty'' than others, leading to a higher savings rate. Then, worldly success was read into the doctrine of predetermined salvation to produce a virtuous economic circle of savings, investment, and prosperity, leading to more saving. But the thesis does not stand up. Many early capitalists were not Calvinists, and many Calvinists were never capitalists. It is more likely that the special connection between Calvinism and capitalism, insofar as there was one, had more to do with the urban concentration of Calvinists. Thus, they were disproportionately involved in the expansion of commerce which matured first in the larger cities of northeastern Europe, rather than in the economically declining states of the Mediterranean where most people remained rural and Catholic. Even then, Weber's thesis failed to account for the fact that recognizable capitalism was first evident in the city-states of the (Catholic) *Hanse* in the 14th century and in (Catholic) Italy before and during the Renaissance. Secular critics of Dilthey's and Burckhardt's positive view of the Reformation, most notably Ernst Troeltsch, saw it as more medieval than modern, replacing outward observance with inward piety to be sure, but stuck still in a false claim to revelation over reason while invoking new dogma and superstitions to replace the old. That said, secularists praised the Reformation for its modernizing rejection of monastic spiritual and sexual idealism, its promotion of natural law and the modern state (discounting too readily, perhaps, a notable impulse in practice to theocracy and support for authoritarianism), and Protestantism's embrace of humanistic reforms and lay education. Catholic critics disputed positive interpretations as well, though on much different grounds.

Judged in terms of its departure from medievalism rather than from the secular vantage point of the 21st century, the Reformation achieved a great deal. First, it was a genuine religious revolution in an age and civilization where religion informed all aspects of human endeavor, from birth to death, in private and in public affairs. In some regions it conduced to social and political revolution as well as religious upheaval, but this was not its intent or main effect. In most locales, whether defiantly Protestant or stubbornly

Catholic, the dominant elites were notably changed in their spiritual outlook but not in their persons. In spite of all the wars and dislocations associated with the Reformation, despite utopian religious projects and dystopian reality and mass suffering, there was no social or political equivalent in Europe of the 16th century *gekokujō* in Japan. The tripartite medieval social order remained in place; where it was challenged in cities and towns that had more to do with commerce than confessionalism. On the other hand, the Reformation left a rich legacy of nonconformism with religious tyranny and took tentative steps toward nonconformity with political tyranny as well. There was still an enormous distance to travel from the ''priesthood of all believers'' to the sovereignty of the common man, but history had been nudged closer to that destination—against the will and intention of reformers—by the Reformation. Yet, for all that, judged in terms of its own declared aspirations to uplift people to new levels of spiritual engagement and capacity, the Reformation singularly failed. As do all utopian schemes.

Globally, the Reformation was a key act in the play of world history, not just a localized religious struggle in Europe in the 16th–17th centuries. The wars of the Reformation and Counter-Reformation reframed Europe as a state system instead of a ''res publica Christiana'' and gave its states a uniquely sharp separation of church and state. This idea was enshrined as the core principle of interstate affairs and international law in the *Peace of Westphalia* (1648). That great settlement brought confessional peace to Germany and Europe not though the triumph of one sect over the others but by elevating secular powers to a near absolute authority over subject populations (thus, balefully perhaps, burying the feudal ideal of consensual monarchy), while rejecting claims to supranational religious authority. That shift away from ''The Christian Commonwealth'' toward a new world order of competing Leviathans had much to do with the ideas and events of the Protestant Reformation. See also *Anabaptism*; *Cromwell, Thomas*; *Erastianism*; *Habsburgs*; *Henry VIII, of England*; *Holy Roman Empire*; *Hus, Jan*; *Hussite Wars*; *iconoclasm*; *Knox, John*; *Lollards*; *Mohács, Battle of*; *Philip II, of Spain*; *Prague, Peace of*; *Savonarola, Girolamo*.

. . . the Reformation . . . took tentative steps toward nonconformity with political tyranny . . .

Suggested Reading: Thomas Brady, *The Protestant Reformation in German History* (1998); Owen Chadwick, *The Reformation* (1972); A. Duke, *Reformation and Revolt in the Low Countries* (1990); G. Elton, *Reformation Europe* (1963); H. Gelder, *The Two Reformations of the 16th Century* (1961); Mark Greengrass, *The French Reformation* (1987); C. Haigh, ed., *The English Reformation Revised* (1987); R. P. Hsia, ed., *The German People and the Reformation* (1988); Richard Marius, *Martin Luther* (1999); Steven Ozment, *The Age of Reform, 1250–1550* (1981); James Tracy, *Europe's Reformations, 1450–1650: Doctrine, Politics, and Community*, 2nd ed. (2002).

Protestant Union. A mutual-defense alliance of German Protestant princes agreed for ten years on May 12, 1608. It was a reaction against Imperial

occupation of Donauwörth in violation of the traditional rights of the *Reichskreis*. Its membership included nine princes and 17 Imperial free cities. It was held together to wage war by the ''godly against the Antichrist,'' but beyond that useless slogan it had no political program. Thus, the effort of *Christian of Anhalt-Bernburg* to take it to war as part of his policy of brinkmanship with the Empire failed. In addition to promoting *confessionalism*, the Union increased princely autonomy from the Empire. Not all Protestant princes joined (most notably, Saxony remained outside the Union). Its formation provoked founding of the *Catholic League* in 1609. The Protestant Union signed alliance treaties with England (1612) and the Netherlands (1613) during its failed intervention in the *Jülich-Kleve* crisis. The Catholic League signed a treaty of neutrality with the Protestant Union at Ulm in 1620, in a joint effort to limit the fight that ultimately became the *Thirty Years' War* to just Bohemia and Austria where it had begun in 1618. Protestant disunity and the early defeat of the armies of *Friedrich V* led to formal dissolution of the Union in May 1621.

Providence Island. A zealous and overly ambitious English colony was established on this island, off the shore of the Mosquito Coast (modern Nicaragua), from 1630 to 1643. It was intended as a base from which Spanish-Catholic holdings in the Americas might be raided and challenged, but it failed in that purpose. Some investment was recovered and applied by *Oliver Cromwell* to Protestant plantations in Ireland.

Provost. The officer responsible for maintaining *military discipline* in a company or regiment. In a *Landsknechte* regiment or army he was often the most outlandishly dressed man in a company of men famous for strange and flamboyant attire. He was responsible for what today would be called ''military policing'' of the camp. This included not merely prevention of *desertion* or *mutiny* but keeping the men happy by overseeing markets set up by *sutlers*, in return for which he got a piece of the sutler action. The Provost also profited from a percentage of the business done by the *baggage train*, including laundry, gambling, whoring (a duty shared with the *Hurenweibel*, or ''whore sergeant''), and sometimes nursing. See also *Prévôt des maréchaux*; *provost marshal*.

provost marshal. The executive officer, reporting to the *knight marshal*, of the English garrison army in Ireland. The office was first appointed in 1570 and confirmed in 1583.

Prussia. The early history of Prussia was linked with that of Livonia and conquest by the *Livonian Order* in association with the *Teutonic Knights*, from 1237. The ''Sword Brethren'' built stone castles to mark and hold territorial conquests in Prussia, most notably at Königsberg (1254). The native tribes of the *Ordensstaat* rebelled in 1240 and again in 1269, but by 1340 the Brethren completed the conquest of Prussia. The Ordensstaat was then heavily colonized by immigrant German *knights*, nobles, and free peasants. There

followed a sustained war with Lithuania. By the 15th century the Ordensstaat's affluent cities and local nobility chafed at the economic restrictions imposed by the Brethren and the rights and monopolies they kept for themselves. They looked to Poland as a model of constitutionally protected civic and noble freedoms. But the Brethren would not go easily or peaceably from power, until they were beaten by a huge Polish-Lithuanian army at *Tannenberg* (1410), during the "Great War" of 1409–1411. After that defeat many Prussian estates pledged allegiance to the *Jagiello dynasty*. However, the Poles failed to consolidate their victory by capturing the Teutonic stronghold and capital of *Marienburg* (Malbork), and the Knights thereafter forced Prussia back into submission. Formation of the *Preussische Bund* meant that by 1440 Prussian cities, the Junkers, and other Estates were moving toward rebellion. In 1453 legal relief was sought from the Holy Roman Empire for grievances against the Teutonic Knights, but the Prussians were flatly denied help. That pushed them into the arms of the Polish king, *Casimir IV*, whom they asked to incorporate Prussia into Poland. He agreed, and Poland and the Bund declared war on the Teutonic Knights in 1454, commencing the *War of the Cities* which lasted to 1466.

At the time, Prussia mounted a small army comprised mainly of conscripts with core units raised as militia from the larger towns and cities. The largest militia was about 750 men. All told, Prussia's towns yielded an army of 16,000 partially trained and reasonably well-armed militia, supported by several thousand ill-trained and poorly armed but inexpensive peasant infantry. The great strength of the Prussians was a sizeable artillery train, outstripping even that of Poland, along with well-defended castles, fortresses, and fortified towns. Once the war began the Prussians also quickly proved able to raise a decent-sized and effective navy by arming their merchant ships and hiring *privateers* from the fleets of neutral Baltic cities. "Royal" (or Polish) Prussia was lost to Poland as a result of the War of the Cities. The Teutonic Knights formally converted their remaining lands into the secular duchy of Prussia in 1525, which became an effective fief of the Polish monarchy. The small north German state that remained was called "Brandenburg-Prussia" upon the acquisition of Brandenburg and *East Prussia* by Albert of *Hohenzollern* in 1618. A rising power after 1650, it was only a minor and impoverished Baltic state at the end of the *Thirty Years' War*.

Suggested Reading: F. L. Carsten, *The Origins of Prussia* (1954); H. W. Koch, *History of Prussia* (1978).

Prussian Confederation. See *Preussische Bund*; *Prussia*; *War of the Cities*.

psychological warfare. See *battle cries*; *Granada*; *siege warfare*.

Pubei rebellion. See *Wanli Emperor*.

pulk. A large tactical unit of the *Polish Army* equivalent to a medieval *battle*. It was formed out of anywhere from 2 to 20 or more *choragiew* (or "*banners*").

It was an ad hoc unit without permanent structure of command or staff. It differed from the medieval battle by combining several arms, from peasant levies to professional infantry to noble cavalry. It was capable of independent maneuver and fighting, if necessary.

punishment. See *military discipline*.

Puritans. Austere English Protestants opposed to all traces of Catholicism in the Reformed Church. Persecuted under *Charles I*, Puritan emigrants founded religious colonies in New England. Those who remained to fight the *English Civil Wars* rose to prominence in the officer corps of the *New Model Army* and later, in the Commonwealth government of *Oliver Cromwell*. Their bans of Christmas, Maypole dancing, and other folk traditions went a long way to revive royalist sentiment in the 1650s and newly linked the king to popular customs. See also *Arminianism*; *Calvinism*; *"Root and Branch" petition*.

purser. On a wooden warship, one of four *warrant officers* and later *standing officers*. His main job was to secure victuals (edibles, beer, and wine) for the crew and to distribute ship's pay. Both responsibilities were matters of crucial importance in that if they were not carried out promptly and well they could and did cripple ship and fleet actions and cause naval missions to fail.

purveyance. In 14th-century England this was a system of compulsory sale of food to the army at prices set by the state. This term replaced the earlier "*prise*."

push of pike. See *pike*; *Swiss square*.

Pym, John (1583–1643). See *English Civil Wars*; *National Covenant*.

Pyongyang, Battle of (1592). See *Korea*; *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*.

Q

Qing dynasty. See *banner system (China/Manchuria)*; *China*; *Manchus*; *Nurgaci*.

Qizilbash. ''Redheads.'' So named because they wore red turbans. This was a radical *shi'ia* movement that embraced the theology of the Sufi mystic Sheik Safi al-Din (1252–1334). The Qizilbash raised the *Safavid* regime to power in Iran when it supported the candidacy of Shah Ismail I (1486–1524) in 1502. The Qizilbash order controlled provincial governorships and the military, resisting modernization and reforms that might disturb the Safavid social order during much of the 16th century. This ended with the reforms introduced by *Abbas I*. Thereafter, the Qizilbash sustained the Safavid regime by giving religious legitimation to its rule, but also giving its policies a zealous character and keeping the fires of religious war (the *ghazi* spirit) burning on two fronts with the rival *sunni* regimes of the Ottomans and Uzbeks.

quarrel. A thick-shafted short arrow fitted with a square head and fired from a *crossbow*. A synonym was *bolt*. Large quarrels were sometimes fired from *pots de fer* or other primitive cannon, but the practice was a design dead end. Most quarrels were made from yew or ash and had a quadrangular head. Three stiff fletchings, about half the quarrel length, were made from wood or hardened leather or metal. More rarely, fletchings were stiff feathers from an older bird.

quarter. Mercy, or abstaining from killing an enemy who was clearly trying to surrender or had already done so. This was an expectation of the *just war tradition*. However, there were permitted exceptions: where no quarter was offered none was required to be given; and no one was obliged to offer quarter twice. If a foe indulged in a *''ruse de guerre''* such as faking surrender to gain advantage in combat, killing could be legitimately resumed and continued until the enemy was utterly repressed. See also *battle cries*; *guerre mortelle*.

Quarter Army. ''Wojsko kwarciane,'' from the Polish ''Kwarta'' (''Quarter''), which referred to the share of rent from royal lands taken as tax to sustain these troops. This system allowed Poland to maintain a small, but permanent, cavalry force from 1566 to 1652. In practice, the sums raised were closer to one-fifth of revenues. The troopers were lightly armed and hardly armored at all, with an increasing reliance on firearms in the 17th century. They peaked at about 3,000–5,000 light-to-medium cavalry. See also *light cavalry*; *Polish Army*.

quarter deck. A small deck erected above the main deck in the aft of a ship.

quartermaster. A petty officer (usually a *warrant officer*) tasked to help the *master* oversee the general handling of a warship. On land this was the officer (or contractor) in charge of riding ahead of an army to arrange food and quarters (lodging). In the French Army his title was *maréchal de logis*.

quartermaster's mate. A subordinate of the *quartermaster*.

quarterstaff. A six-to-eight-foot-long stout pole. One end was usually wrapped in hammered iron to give it a killing weight. It served as a cheap and easily manufactured peasant weapon. See also *staff-weapons*.

quarto-cannon. A 16th-century medium-sized gun that weighed about 2,000 pounds and could launch 12-pound *shot* to an effective range of 400 yards and a maximum range of 2,000 yards.

Québec. See *Indian Wars (North America)*.

quick match. Also called ''port-fire.'' A metal tube holding rapidly flammable materials. They were usually made from threads of cotton wick soaked in a solution of gunpowder and gum arabic, dried and rolled in *corned* powder. A quick match was lighted by touching it to the *slow match* held in place in a *linstock*. The quick match was then applied directly to fine powder in the vent (touch hole) of the cannon. When a given firing action ended or guns needed to be repositioned, the burning end of the quick match was snipped off, while the slow match remained lighted and secure in the linstock. Using quick match to set off the main charge significantly improved safety for gun crews.

R

Raad van State. ''Council of State.'' The body that took control of government in the United Provinces following the death of *William the Silent*. It oversaw military operations and finance and administration of the navy and army. Under terms of the *Treaty of Nonsuch* (1585), *Elizabeth I* gained representation in the Raad, to which she named the *Earl of Leicester*. In the 1590s the Raad lent important support to the military reforms of *Maurits of Nassau*. Later, it lost effective political power to the Holland regents.

rabito. A border patrol by troops from an Iberian Muslim *ribat*. They were cousins to the *razzia*. Christians mimicked their success with formation of more formal *Hermandades*.

race-built. See *galleon*; *Invincible Armada*.

rachat. The purchase of domestic slaves for use in military formations. It was an ancient practice among slave empires such as the *Mamlūks* in Egypt.

raiding. Wherever an economy of plunder and tribute existed or strong government was absent, as throughout most of Europe during the Middle Ages, for a thousand years around the Mediterranean following the collapse of Roman power, and for two millennia along the Inner Asian frontier with China, raiding thrived as the principal form of warfare. Raids were conducted by land and sea, by small parties or large forces, according to time, place, and expected opposition. Raiding became systemic as sedentary populations paid protection money to fend off raiders. For example, the ''Danegeld'' was paid to reduce Viking raiding into Saxon England. Unintentionally, raiding circulated and redistributed wealth in the form of precious metals and captured slaves and livestock. Where tribute was late or refused raiders might burn rather than carry goods away, ''pour encourager les autres.'' Most raiders

traveled light, the better to carry off plundered goods or herds of cattle or slaves. Raiders relied on surprise and speed and hence tended to be horse soldiers (except the Vikings, whose longships could stealthily navigate hundreds of miles of inland waterways). Such cavalry raids were so preeminent and memorable special terms for them were embedded in different languages: *cavalgada*, *chevauchée*, *razzia*. Foot soldiers also raided, of course, but only cavalry had the mobility to conduct the true chevauchée or razzia. Raiders generally tended to run rather than fight when met by stout defense or a solid *fortification* that was not taken by a raid unnoticed and unannounced by careless watchers. If an alarm was raised, armed men in the fields would escort civilians and livestock to a prepared place of defense, a *motte-and-bailey* fort in the 12th century or a more substantial stone or brick castle after that. This resulted in running fights between the escort and the raiding party, with the latter unimpeded and able to move to attack with superior speed while the former herded old people, women, and children while running and fighting themselves. Combat was sharp and deadly, as one group of armed men tried to steal a living in harsh times while the other fought desperately to protect families, flocks, and fields. See also *civilians*; *Crusades*; *Inner Asia*; *March*; *Militargrenze*; *prisoners of war*; *slavery and war*.

Rain, Battle of (April 15, 1632). Following his victory at *First Breitenfeld* (September 17, 1631), *Gustavus Adolphus* took his army of 25,000 out of winter quarters and invaded Bavaria. He crossed the Danube on April 7 and next looked to ford the River Lech, where *Johann Tilly* was positioned to stop him with 20,000 Imperial and Bavarian troops. Gustavus employed a novel tactic: at a carefully chosen bend of the Lech his main army forded while hidden by a smokescreen made from burning straw and covered as they crossed the river by Swedish artillery fire. This secured a beachhead into which he next crossed over the artillery and from where it hammered the Imperial lines. The Catholic position, which once seemed unbreachable, broke down in confusion as men fell back through their camp that was now part of a battlefield. During this action 4,000 Imperial troops were killed and Tilly was mortally wounded (he died five days later). The victory at Rain allowed Gustavus to take Augsburg and Munich and his troops to eat out unprotected Bavaria.

Rajputs. From ''rajaputra,'' or ''son of a chief.'' A martial caste of *Hindu* warriors who established themselves under local potentates in various locales, with a concentration in northwestern India. Their precise origin is disputed. Some assert they arose from original clan/communal formations (traditionally, there were 36 Rajput clans) which climbed to local prominence through warfare and offering protection to the peasantry, to then found discrete states and kingdoms. These histories ascribe to the Rajputs what they claimed for themselves: a vedic pedigree as the ''first kshatiyas'' in the caste system. Others argue they descended from early Central Asian invaders of India (Hunas). If so, these peoples and the states they founded in western India

were subsequently Indianized and Hinduized, possibly with the aid of hired Brahman scribes, and thereby transmuted into ''Rajputs'' who laid claim to the vedic tradition. ''Untouchables'' were drawn to the Rajputs as military service enabled them to rise above their assigned station in the caste system.

Whether homegrown or imported, Rajput states and chiefs strenuously resisted later invasions of India from the 8th to the 13th centuries by Turkic, Mongol, and mixed Muslim warrior peoples. They held out against invasions by the Ghaznavids, Ghurids, *Mamlūks*, and Khaljis, with the latter overrunning Delhi in 1290. Sultan Ala-ud-din (r.1296–1316) of the *Delhi Sultanate* for a time overran the northern Rajput states, and therefore was able to invade even more ancient Tamil states they had buffered to the south. The Rajputs acquired cannon sometime in the mid-14th century, and gunpowder weapons were in wide use in Rajput wars by the 1360s. Conflict with the later *Mughals* could be horrific: in 1568, when *Akbar* threatened to conquer the Rajput states, some Rajput warriors responded with massacres of their own women and children rather than allow them to fall into Muslim hands. Other Rajput chiefs allied with Akbar since he showed that any who resisted would be exterminated. This lesson had been taught when Akbar razed the Rajput city of Chitor and ordered the slaughter of 30,000 of its inhabitants. Others allied with the Mughals because there were huge rewards available in the *mansabdari* system. See also *Khanwa, Battle of*; *Rana Sangha*.

Suggested Reading: Dirk Kolff, *Naukar, Rajput, and Sepoy* (1990); R. Saxena, *Army of the Rajputs* (1989).

rake. Firing along the length of a flanked position of enemy troops or line of ships. This avoided exposing oneself to a volley of ship's guns, or *broadside*, while bringing maximum fire to bear on the enemy. This became a key tactical objective when in *line ahead* or *line astern* formations.

Rakoczy, George (1593–1648). Prince of Transylvania; king of Hungary, 1630–1648. His lands were a region of *guerre guerroyante* between the *Habsburgs* and the *Ottomans* to the end of the *Thirty Years' War* in 1648. He allied with Sweden from 1630 against the common Habsburg foe, continuing the practice of his predecessors of aligning with Protestant enemies of the Habsburgs. In 1644 he declared war on *Ferdinand III* and forced a peace on the Empire at Linz (1645) that was favorable to Hungarian political and religious liberties.

Raleigh, Walter (1552–1618). Raleigh was born into the Devonshire nobility, which had longstanding investments in the rough trades of *piracy* and *privateering*. At age 15 he fought for the Huguenot cause in France. In 1580 he served in Ireland and participated in a massacre at Smerwick. His decision to become a ''gentleman adventurer at sea'' was thus an almost natural transition from family life. In 1585, after the fall of Antwerp to the Spanish, Raleigh sailed to harry the Iberian fishing fleet off Newfoundland. His subsequent expedition to what later became North Carolina was a failure, with

the colony he founded at Roanoke eventually abandoned and lost. He did not take an active part in defense against the *Invincible Armada*, and in 1589 left court and settled in Ireland. He organized a privateering expedition in 1592 but fell out of favor with *Elizabeth I* over his secret marriage in late 1591 to one of her maids of honor, Bess Throckmorton, and was sent to the *Tower of London* along with his bride as the ships sailed. He was released when they returned with a rich prize of a fully loaded Portuguese *carrack*. In 1595 he sailed to find ''El Dorado'' in the Amazon. In 1596 Raleigh led one squadron of an assault by 30 Anglo-Dutch warships and 8,000 men against Cadiz, led by *2nd Earl of Essex* and *Charles Howard* of Effingham. The English burned or took as prizes 40 Spanish ships and held Cadiz for six weeks. Raleigh fell out with *James I* after a whispering campaign at court poisoned the king against him. He spent years in the Tower upon being convicted of high treason. He was released in 1616 and sailed for South America to again search for El Dorado. He was ordered not to disturb James' peace with Spain on pain of death, but one of his captains attacked and captured a Spanish port, during which Raleigh's son was killed. The Spanish ambassador demanded restitution. Raleigh tried to flee to France but was arrested and beheaded on James' order in 1618.

Suggested Reading: Paul Seaver, *Sir Walter Releigh* (2004).

ramming (of guns). Wooden rams were used to force the powder charge, wadding, and *shot* down the muzzle of *cannon* so that it reached the *breech* and the charge lay under the vent (touch hole). Whether in big guns or *muskets*, early charges were served as loose powder; by 1560 powder and wadding were bagged in a *cartridge* or sack. In either case, the powder and shot had to be rammed. Shot for muskets was generally a lead ball about one-half ounce in an *arquebus* (cut 32 to a pound of lead) and 1 ounce for a musket (cut 16 to a pound of lead). Ottoman firearms and the ''Spanish musket'' fired balls weighing 1½ ounces (cut 12 to a pound of lead). For cannon, shot could be any of a stone or iron cannonball or a variety of specialized naval bar shot, or it might be *canistershot*, *case shot*, or *grapeshot*. Wooden ramrods slowed the rate of fire of big and small guns, as if not used carefully they jammed weapons or broke inside the barrel. Nevertheless, the simple solution of switching to iron ramrods did not catch on until the second half of the 17th century. Ramming was faster and cleaner in a *smoothbore* than a *rifled-bore* barrel, which conduced to infantry preference for less-accurate smoothbore muskets that had a higher rate of fire. See also *sponge*.

ramming (of ships). See *galley*.

rampart. A raised earthen structure forming the main defense line shielding defenders from enemy artillery fire. It was usually topped by a stone *parapet* and was often wide enough for troops and guns to move along to reinforce other areas of the defense perimeter. In the absence of *artillery towers*, ramparts supported the main defensive artillery. See also *casemate*; *casement*; *chemin de ronde*; *curtain wall*; *terre-plein*.

ramrods. See *ramming (of guns)*.

Rana Sangha (r.1509–1527). Né Maharana Sangram Singh. *Rajput* king of Mewar. His expansionist wars against neighboring states gained him recognition by most Rajputs, but his consolidation of power was interrupted by the invasion of north India by *Babur*. After Babur overthrew the *Delhi Sultanate* in 1526 the Rajputs united under Rana Sanga and fielded a confederate army. At *Khanwa* in 1527 superior Moghul artillery and musketry firepower defeated the much larger but politically divided Rajput army.

ransom. Ransom was an essential part of war in the Middle Ages in both Christian and Muslim societies. The practice also extended well into, and indeed past, the early modern period. Captured monarchs such as Richard I (''Coeur de Lion'') of England, or the French kings Jean II and *Francis I*, were held literally for a ''king's ransom.'' Holding nobles and officers for ransom, while killing commoners, was so commonplace that to avoid bankruptcy of wealthy prisoners regular schedules of payment were agreed; mercenary captains even took out insurance contracts in which their employers were obliged to pay their ransom as part of the service agreement. During the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648) mutually agreed tariffs for captive officers were published that ranked the worth of a general at 25,000 thalers and a captain at just 100, with rankings in between for colonels, princes, and other ranks. See also *Agincourt, Battle of*; *Brétigny, Treaty of*; *chevauchée*; *chivalry*; *condottieri*; *Crécy, Battle of*; *Crusades*; *cuartel general*; *herald*; *hostage-taking*; *Hundred Years' War*; *infantry*; *Italian Wars*; *Jacquerie*; *Jankov, Battle of*; *knight*; *Knights of Our Lady of Montjoie*; *Knights Templar*; *Military Orders*; *Otterburn, Battle of*; *piracy*; *Pizarro, Francisco*; *Poitiers, Battle of*; *prisoners of war*; *Salāh al-Dīn*; *Scottish Wars*; *shock*; *Torstensson, Lennart*; *Yellow Waters, Battle of*.

. . . to avoid bankruptcy of wealthy prisoners regular schedules of payment were agreed . . .

Rathmines, Battle of (August 2, 1649). *Ormonde* led an Irish army against the *Roundhead* garrison in Dublin, but while he was still preparing to assault the Parliamentarians attacked his camp at Rathmines. Several thousand of Ormonde's men were killed or taken, and most of his artillery was captured.

rations. During the medieval and early modern periods staple foodstuffs in Europe and Asia were few in number and difficult to preserve. This was especially a problem for war at sea. Various grains were used to bake bread or hard biscuit. Some historians think biscuit formed 70 percent of a sailor's diet, supplemented by cheese and beer, cider, or wine, according to local custom. Horses also traveled by sea, often great distances. They were generally fed oats. Meat (cattle, pigs, chickens, sheep) sometimes traveled live, but more often animals were butchered and their salted meat was stored in the ship's hold. Fish was always available, but usually salted in casks rather

than caught fresh. Fruits and vegetables were virtually unheard of, other than onions, especially in northern latitudes. Scurvy was not a great problem prior to the 16th century, however, because few ships made long-distance voyages. It was some time after the discovery of the New World that a connection was noticed and understood between eating fruits and avoiding scurvy. By the 17th century ships sailing to or in the Caribbean had access to fresh fruits, sugar, and barrels of rum.

Food and drink supplied to soldiers varied greatly by national custom, diet, and locale. Ottoman *Janissaries* were guaranteed one meal per day—boiled cracked wheat and butter—cooked in the *Orta*'s large copper kettle (which also served as the unit icon), the *Kazan*, and plentiful hardtack when bread was not available. But they usually ate much better than that owing to a sophisticated commissary system that was the envy of Europe, through which victualing was carefully organized and funds dispersed. In addition to basic rations, each Janissary company received extra cash to buy bread and meat. While on campaign additional allowances were dispersed and tens of thousands of animals from the Imperial herds were slaughtered. Ottoman troops were (mostly) sober, unlike those of European or Asian armies. English soldiers expected salt meat, butter, hard biscuit, cheese, and small beer, even if they had to steal it themselves. The beer was important for more than recreation: water supplies in foreign lands were unmapped and possibly unsafe or poisoned. French armies took large ovens and supplies of grain with them on the march, pausing every several days to bake thousands of loaves of fresh bread. Wine, rather than small beer, was the French or Burgundian or German soldier's preference, and he drank it in huge quantities. Danes, Dutch, and Portuguese expected large quantities of fish in their rations.

Globally, soldiers' diets varied widely. North American forest Indians could march 30–50 miles in a day, for days on end, subsisting on acorns and small nuts, animal entrails, squirrels, skunks, or hares, marrow sucked from old bones, small snakes, and river or lake trout. If fortunate and not being pursued, they might bring down and feast on a deer. Mongols were expert huntsmen who picked up game along the way to supplement a basic diet of beef and bovine cheese washed down with cow's blood mixed with milk. Chinese, Viet, and other Asian troops subsisted on rice, which traveled further than most Western foods. *Aztec* warriors fed on supplies sent to Tenochtitlán as tribute before the campaign season: maize cakes and meal, beans, chile, pumpkin seeds, local fruits, and salt. Following a victory, they consumed roasted human flesh. During the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648), the standard ration in most European armies was 1 kg of bread, ½ kg of meat, and 2 liters of wine or beer. Of course, that measure was not always met. All soldiers in all wars—whether African, Ottoman, English, German, Spanish, or Chinese—supplemented daily rations with opportunistically plundered food and drink. In the 16th–17th centuries, that fact of military life was systematized by *Albrecht von Wallenstein* in the *contributions* system that epitomized the early modern principle that "war should pay for itself" (*bellum se ipse alet*).

ravelin. A small defense structure, triangular or arrow-headed in shape, set between two *bastions* in front of the *curtain wall*.

Ravenna, Battle of (April 11, 1512). Fought during the early phase of the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559), Ravenna was a clash of two armies in transition from the *feudal* to the modern. Perhaps 20,000 French under *Gaston de Foix*, along with 8,500 Swiss and German mercenaries, met 18,000 Spanish led by *Pescara*. Each side brought cannon to the field, with the French artillery outnumbering the Spanish by 50 guns to 30. The French artillery pounded the Spanish heavy horse but the Spanish infantry remained protected in well dug-in positions along the Ronco River. The French manhandled several guns across the river and began to fire into the rear of the Spanish position. The Spanish fled their suddenly exposed trenches in panic but could only flee from the guns to their rear by advancing into the teeth of the main French position. As French horse and infantry closed on breaking Spanish ranks a terrible slaughter commenced. The Spanish lost nearly half their men. French casualties were also heavy, totaling over 4,000 dead. Among them was the impetuous Foix.

Ravenspur, Battle of (1471). See *Wars of the Roses*.

rawcon. A late-medieval *halberd* type with a long central spike flanked by double side blades.

Raya. Or ''Reaya.'' The tax-paying, strictly civilian population of the *Ottoman Empire*. Sultans and the *Janissaries* tried to keep Raya disarmed by law (as did the *samurai* concerning townsfolk and peasants in Japan). As the Empire's military needs grew and infantry displaced traditional *heavy cavalry*, segments of the Raya were allowed to own bows or guns and some were recruited into Ottoman auxiliary corps.

al-Raydaniyya, Battle of (1517). See *Mamlūks*; *Ottoman Empire*.

Razats. French peasants in Provence who rebelled against royalist forces from 1578 to 1580. Comparable peasant rebellions broke out in Dauphiné and Vivarais. The Razats formed armed bands with complete indifference to the confession of their members, despite the raging of confessional conflict all around them. They were driven by the deprivations of chronic warfare—especially the practice of billeting troops in peasant homes and at their expense. In addition to the usual violence and atrocities of a peasant rising against the local seigneury and royal tax collectors, the Razats specially targeted local military garrisons as the main authors of want and misery. In Dauphiné the end came when over 1,000 peasants were slaughtered by royalist troops at Morains on March 26, 1580. Throughout the southeast of France, after the main revolts died down peasant guerillas remained active in the forests and mountains. See also *French Civil Wars*; *Jacquerie*; *Tard-Avisés*.

razzia. ''Raid.'' A traditional style of *Bedouin* warfare in which small units of *light cavalry* swept into a town in search of plunder or as a form of ritualized warfare intended to humiliate and demonstrate the weakness of the enemy. It was widely mimicked by the Christian states of Iberia in their own dealings with the Muslim *taifa states* of the south. See also *parias*; *rabito*; *raiding*; *tribute*.

real patronato. ''Royal patronage.'' This was a grant of extraordinary governing powers by Spanish monarchs to the *Catholic Church* in Latin America, but nowhere else in the Spanish Empire. It intertwined the politics of Catholic monastic and priestly orders—notably, Augustinians, Dominicans, Franciscans, and *Jesuits*—with the interests of the crown. Also at stake were raw politics of settlement, Indian conversion and the matter of Indian slavery, and other troublesome issues raised by extension and adaptation of the crusading system of *encomienda* to conquest and control of the Americas. The Church's ''Christianizing mission'' among the Indians was deepened, broadened, and subjected to more clear hierarchical authority under instructions issued by *Philip II* in 1574. In return, the crown reserved the right to name bishops and other high clergy and thereby control the social, class, and racial make-up of the colonial Church.

reaming. An early modern (c.1550) method of making barrels for iron or bronze *cannon*. The barrel was cast as a solid piece then laboriously slow-bored by a mechanical device called a ''reamer'' that was powered by animal treadmills or water wheels. A touch hole was later drilled at right angles to the reamed bore. This method made much stronger barrels, and made casting of barrels with *trunnions* and other innovations much easier.

rear admiral. In the 16th–17th centuries among the Atlantic nations, an admiral who was the third ranking commander in a fleet, behind the *admiral* and *vice admiral*.

Reconquista. ''The Reconquest.'' In 711 C.E. an army of Islamicized Moors crossed from North Africa and began the Muslim conquest of Visigoth Iberia. Within twenty years they reached the Frankish frontier, across which they raided in force on several occasions. Behind this army tens of thousands of civilian Moors migrated into Iberia while many Visigoth serfs converted and lent support to the Muslim displacement of the old Visigoth aristocracy. This migration-cum-conquest threatened the Frankish lands (formerly Roman Gaul) as well. The Moors' northward advance was not stopped until they suffered defeat, c.732–737, and were forced to stay south of the Pyrenees by an army of Franks led by Charles Martel, ''The Hammer'' (c.688–741). The Muslims united under a powerful *caliphate* (the Umayyads) based in Córdoba until 1008, while petty Christian kingdoms (Aragon, Castile, Galicia, Léon, Navarre, and Barcelona) in the north fought each other as well as the Moors. For centuries the quality of Muslim civilization in *al-Andalus* far surpassed that of the Christian states to the north. Muslim societies were more urban,

more prosperous, and considerably more literate and learned, especially in Córdoba and *Granada*. Muslim universities (''madrassa'') here and in Sicily were major conduits for the transmission of Graeco-Roman classical knowledge to Europe, via Arabic translation.

A long Christian ''reconquest'' began under Alphonso II (866–911). As each new territorial gain was secured by construction of town-fortresses, the Reconquista took on its essential character of a slow migratory advance, with progressive extension of Christian principalities and kingdoms at the expense of Muslim power and control. The pattern included frequent interruptions by successful Muslim counterattacks. Still, on the whole the Christians advanced at Muslim expense. Asturias migrated southward to be reorganized around a new capital at Léon; Navarre emerged as a discrete kingdom early in the 10th century; and Castile arose as a Christian territory by 950, a half century before the caliphate in Córdoba broke up into several weak and warring emirates. Portugal was a distinct principality by 1071 and a kingdom by 1143. Into this long and multi-faceted war were drawn ''foreign'' fighters at different times: *Berber* and *Tuareg* tribesmen, *jihadis* from Muslim Africa, and Frankish and other Christian *knights* from all over Europe. The military exploits and volunteerism of the latter prefigured and foretold the coming *Crusades* to the Middle East.

While it might seem that for over 700 years Christians and Muslims waged war for control of Iberia, in fact for much of the period the situation was more politically confused. Muslim and Christian sometimes allied with each other to fight coreligionists over such material interests as land, trade, and *parias* (forced annual tribute). The emirs of Córdoba imported Berber warriors from North Africa and *mamlūk* slave soldiers from the east, but they also employed Christian mercenaries. The most famous Christian warrior of the Reconquista, ''El Cid'' (né Ruy Díaz de Vivar), once served the emir of Zaragoza. Christian kings allied with Muslim rulers against fellow Christians or to raid and plunder some third Muslim power. This changed as *Norman* invaders captured Sicily from its Muslim masters and Latin Christendom launched the First Crusade to the ''Holy Land.'' Christian warriors-cum-bandits, stirred by religious zeal, committed to an Iberian crusade depicted as a reconquest of the peninsula from Islam, but also richly rewarding in land and serfs. Christians benefitted from Muslim division into dozens of petty and rival *taifa states*, even taking Toledo in 1085.

Almoravids and Almohads

The Almoravid caliphs of North Africa intervened at the behest of taifa Muslims, riding in on a wave of Berber and Tuareg jihadis from Africa. Castile was defeated at Badajoz and at Sagrajas (1086), and Christian borders were pushed back by a newly united and militant Muslim power. A short-term turning point came in 1094 when El Cid captured Valencia for Castile following a sustained and terrible siege. But the city was retaken by the Almoravids in 1102; Zaragoza fell in 1106, then Majorca and Ibiza in their turn. By 1117 the Almoravids had themselves overrun and annexed all the

taifa states, which had angered Emir Yusuf ibn Tashufin by their failure to unite with him against the Christians. Some taifa states had even sought Christian protection from the radical Almoravids. As the sole Muslim power left in Iberia, the Almoravids settled in to govern their extended empire from Córdoba. Neither side could establish military dominance; a temporary balance of power in Iberia was attained.

The Almoravid homeland in Africa was still peopled by tough, desert jihadis. They remained fanatically puritanical, compelled by the moral aesthetic of the desert, while their Almoravid cousins in Córdoba settled into a comfortable urban and semi-assimilated existence that looked decadent when viewed from the dunes of North Africa. And so the Empire began to pull apart, as an African revivalist challenge raised up a radical challenger, the Almohads, to oppose Córdoban doctrinal softness and toleration. A second set of fourteen taifa states thus emerged between 1144 and 1146, as Muslim fragmentation returned to Iberia with the Almohad assault on the Almoravids in Africa. This fatally undermined the Almoravids across the Gibraltar Strait. A Christian coalition led by Castile took advantage to capture Almeria while the Portuguese took Lisbon, assisted by English and Flemish Crusader knights. In reaction, Almohad jihadis rode out of the desert and crossed over the water to Iberia in 1148, tossing aside the last Almoravid resistance. They came prepared for a long campaign, with pack camels and swift Arabian ponies in tow, intent on cleansing Iberia of the Christian infection. They began by overrunning the taifa states, then retook Almeria from Castile in 1157. By 1172 Almohad fighters were in full control of all the Muslim lands of Iberia. In 1195 the full strength of the African-Andalusian martial empire of the Almohads was directed against Castile. In a major battle at Alarcos (July 18, 1196) Castile's main army was crushed by the Almohads. In 1203 Majorca fell.

. . . the Portuguese took Lisbon, assisted by . . . Crusader knights.

Turn of the Tide

Despite these defeats, Iberia's Christians retained three significant military advantages. First, their social-military culture and organization of knights and retainers provided a semi-professional edge, and a deeper recruiting pool, compared with the less-efficient Muslim system of tribal levies. Second, new *Military Orders* were founded to take up the fight—the *Knights of Calatrava* in 1164 and the *Knights of Santiago* in 1170—in response to proclamation of an Iberian crusade by Pope Innocent III (1161–1216). Their strategic role was to hold exposed cities and key valleys. The knights and retainers of the Military Orders, holy warriors in their own right, provided an effective and efficient counter to the Muslim jihadis. They gave Christian rulers a large force of well-trained, highly disciplined, religiously inspired troops. This was first made clear when a large number of knights from all over Europe gathered at Toledo in the spring of 1212. The clash with the Almohads occurred at Las Navas de Tolosa (July 16, 1212). The Christian victory there opened up the crucial

Guadalquiver Valley. Muslim losses were so great, especially among the Moorish aristocracy, that the defeat marked the beginning of a terminal decline of the Almohads. Las Navas de Tolosa was thus the most important battle in the 700 year history of religious warfare in Iberia. After it, Ferdinand III (1217–1252) united Castile with León in 1230 and, in alliance with James I (''The Conqueror'') of Aragon (1208–1276), sent Christian armies to capture a sequence of important territories from the Muslims: the Balearic Islands (1229–1235), Majorca (1229), Córdoba (1236), Valencia (1238), Murcia (1243), Jaen (1246), and Seville (1248). Portugal took advantage of these multiple blows to Muslim power to conquer territory along the Algarve coast.

All this enhanced the third Christian advantage: interior lines. Once the central plain of Iberia fell to Castile-León, Christians controlled the headwaters of the major rivers of a parched land and the main roads critical for trade and war, all of which traveled through the river valleys. Moorish *razzia* slowly petered out over fifty years while Christian raiding correspondingly increased. This strategic shift drained Muslim wealth and manpower and eroded Muslim territory. By the end of the 13th century Castile crossed the ''olive line'' to control Toledo and its hinterland, while Muslim Seville was forced into tributary status. Castile tended to strip conquered Muslims of all land and forcibly remove them from cities, pushing tens of thousands of refugees toward Granada. Aragon was more tolerant, leaving a large Muslim population in Valencia, for example. Alfonso XI (1312–1350), whose people feared his autocratic ways more than they feared the Moors, decisively defeated a combined Iberian and African Muslim army at Río Salado (October 30, 1340). The follow-on *Siege of Algeciras* destroyed much of the city before it fell to *conquistadores* from Castile and Léon in 1344. Self-governing Muslims were thereafter confined to mountainous, and therefore defensible, Granada. Despite chronic border warfare the main ''Reconquista'' now stalled. The *Black Death*, Christian civil and inter-kingdom wars, and Castile's involvement in the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453) all slowed its march. A long peace of mutual toleration therefore followed, with much social, intellectual, cultural, and economic interaction between the major faiths, with Jews also broadly tolerated by Muslims (though less so by some Christians).

Intense religious hostility increased again in the 15th century as the final conquest of Muslim Spain was launched following the union of Aragon and Castile under *Ferdinand and Isabella*. The campaign began on February 28, 1482, with a surprise assault on the garrison fortress of Alhama de Granada, two dozen miles southwest of Granada. There was a new spirit of barbarism infecting Spanish arms in the final push on Granada and even a new savagery in Iberian Christianity. This was noted at the time by Italians who saw it firsthand in the Aragonese conquest of Sicily and Naples and by Europe as a whole as Spain besieged, conquered, and enslaved the entire population of Málaga in 1487. After the fall of Granada it was evident in rapacious behavior by conquistadores in the New World, and later in *Alba*'s brutal mistreatment of the Netherlands and the *''Spanish Fury''* in Antwerp. In Iberia this mood took the form of a new ferocity in treatment of Jews and Muslims before and

after the fall of Granada, which finally negotiated its surrender after a 10-year siege. There followed a military procession led by Ferdinand and Isabella into the city on January 2, 1492, an event read as a divine blessing by the monarchs and by many of their subjects. Queen Isabella, a rather dim Catholic ideologue, celebrated by expelling Jews from Castile, forcibly converting Muslims, and financing the first voyage of Christopher Columbus.

The Reconquista poses an interesting counterfactual: had its course gone otherwise, South and Central America could well have been conquered by a Muslin power based in Iberia rather than the two Christian states which colonized them in fact. The effect on the native populations of the Americas likely would have been broadly similar: mass death from African and European diseases, enslavement and displacement of survivors by a self-regarding superior civilization that thought itself specially favored by God and was comfortable with slavery. The effects on world history, however, would have been enormous, though wholly unpredictable. See also *Catalan Great Company*; *jinetes*; *Santiago Matamoros*.

Suggested Reading: P. Cachia, *A History of Islamic Spain* (1965); Hugh Kennedy, *Muslim Spain and Portugal* (1996); L. Lomax, *The Reconquest of Spain* (1978).

recruitment. How a society recruits soldiery is of fundamental importance to its politics, social order, class structure, and military-political success. The recruitment systems of the societies covered in this work paralleled in diversity the great range in the forms of medieval and early modern societies themselves, from tiny city-states and fortified medieval towns to fragmented feudal orders in Europe and Japan where the ''state'' per se hardly existed, to monarchies with advanced bureaucratic systems, to the huge empires of the Ottomans and Chinese. For most of Western Europe during the Middle Ages the *servitium debitum* dictated who owed military obligations and under what conditions. This was paralleled by the *itqa* system of smaller Islamic emirates. In other Muslim societies slave soldiers (*mamlūks*) occupied a prominent place. In general, during the 13th century the medieval idea in Europe slowly gave way to paid military service, including for the knightly orders, and a greatly expanded recruitment base. Recruitment was determined by much more than the shape or strength of the state, however. Culture and technology played key roles, especially once the ''infantry revolution'' took hold and warring societies and military elites adapted to the arrival of new social classes on the field of battle. See also *beat the drum*; *''coat-and-conduct'' money*; *Cossacks*; *dead-pays*; *Denmark*; *Devşirme system*; *dirlik yememiş*; *Dithmarscher*; *Doppelgänger*; *English armies*; *French armies*; *ghazi*; *ghulams*; *Grand Vezier*; *Imperial Army*; *Janissary Corps*; *Kur'aci*; *maryol taifesi*; *men-at-arms*; *Military Orders*; *militia*; *Ottoman Army*; *Ottoman warfare*; *Polish Army*; *Raya*; *rusttjänst*; *schutterijen*; *sekban*; *sipahis*; *Spanish Army*; *Swedish Army*; *Swiss Confederation*; *Swiss square*; *timariots*; *war finance*; *Yaya infantry*; *ziamet*.

redan. An elementary fieldwork of right-angled faces so emplaced as to present a series of ''teeth'' to the enemy. In permanent fortifications they were used to

cover weak points in the main structure or where it was feasible to use them in place of more expensive *bastions*.

"red barbarian cannon." A Chinese term for European-style *cannon* recovered by the Portuguese from a sunken English (or Dutch) ship in 1621, delivered to Ming gunsmiths who made copies for use in the ongoing Ming war with the *Manchus*.

redoubt. An isolated outwork defending an important position forward of the *enceinte*. Alternately, a small self-contained fort built within a larger structure as part of its layers of defense.

redshanks. Scots *mercenaries* who hired out seasonally for wars in Ireland from the early 15th century. The term may have derived from their tendency to sunburn. Their terms of service were more flexible than the expensive, hereditary *galloglass* and they were far more numerous. During the Tudor conquest of Ireland thousands crossed the water. Some also fought in Ireland during the *English Civil Wars*.

Red Turbans. Actually, the ''turban'' in question was a topknot of hair tied with a red cloth. This gave a distinctive appearance to soldiers of a military offshoot of the millenarian White Lotus, a *Buddhist* sect which challenged the Mongol (Yuan) dynasty in the wake of the ravages of the *Black Death* in parts of China from c.1331, and the catastrophic southward shift of the course of the Yellow River in 1344. Their rebellion broke apart the Mongol Empire in China, reducing the country to warring provinces. They were not able to secure either power at the center or broad enough popular support to take control themselves. However, one of their generals, the squat, famously ugly Zhu Yuanzhang, captured Nanjing in 1356. He split from the Red Turbans and upon ousting the Yuan from central China proclaimed a new dynasty with himself at its head: the *Ming* (1368). He took the reign name *Hongwu*. See also *Lake Boyang, Battle of*.

reflex bow. A composite bow whose tips were curved back against the direction of the draw, which imparted additional velocity and penetrating power to the arrow.

reformadoes. Originally, unemployed officers who organized in 1641–1642 to intimidate Parliament into giving them military commissions; some accompanied *Charles I* to bully the Commons and arrest five leaders of the Parliamentary opposition. In 1647 reformadoes and deserters were brought into regiments in London loyal to Parliament in its losing argument with the *New Model Army*.

Reformation. See *Protestant Reformation*.

regard. A military bonus paid to *knights* in service on campaign with their king.

regementsstycke. ''Regiment guns.'' See *Gustavus II Adolphus*.

Regensburg, Treaty of (1630). A peace treaty between *Ferdinand II* of the Holy Roman Empire and *Louis XIII* of France in the midst of the *War of the Mantuan Succession*. It isolated the Spanish *Habsburgs* while also convincing *Olivares* that Ferdinand was an untrustworthy partner in war or peace.

Regensburg Diet (1640–1641). See *Imperial Diet*.

regiments. European armies shifted to a regimental from a *company*-based administrative and tactical system following the successful Dutch military reforms of *Maurits of Nassau*. The English lagged behind, maintaining no standing regiments through the 1630s. That sharply hampered the effectiveness of English intervention in the early part of the *Thirty Years' War*. During the *English Civil Wars* of the mid-17th century, regiments were formed in one of two ways: the *New Model Army* organized regiments in seven small companies of 100 men each plus larger companies of 140, 160, and 200, under a sergeant-major, lieutenant-colonel, and colonel respectively. The Royalists deployed smaller regiments of 1,000 men divided evenly among ten companies. See also *uniforms*; *wounds*.

Reichsgrafen. Counts of the *Holy Roman Empire*.

Reichskreis. ''Imperial Circles'' of the *Holy Roman Empire*. Regional defense associations set up in 1500 by *Maximilian I* and given responsibility for policing a specific territorial jurisdiction. They elected their own military commanders (almost always a prominent local prince), issued coin, and were responsible for raising troops and regional defense. The original Imperial Circles were: Bavaria, Swabia, Upper Rhine, Lower Rhine-Westphalia, Franconia, and Lower Saxony. In 1512 four new circles were added: Burgundy, Austria, Upper Saxony, and the Rhine Electorate. Excluded from the system were Bohemia, Switzerland, and Reich territory in Italy. Attempts at cooperation among the circles were few, and by 1600 they were incapable of defending their members. This system was directly violated in 1607 with the Imperial-Bavarian occupation of Donauwörth. German territorial princes then broke the system apart by forming confessional alliances: the *Protestant Union* and the *Catholic League*. Further violation by *Ferdinand II* of the tradition of regional courts and policing was part of the constitutional struggle within the Empire that led to war in 1618. See also *Christian IV*; *Leipziger Bund*; *Lübeck, Peace of*.

Reichsritter. German *knights*. See *Prague, Peace of*; *Westphalia, Peace of*.

Reichsstädte. ''Free cities.'' See *Holy Roman Empire*; *Prague, Peace of*; *Schmalkaldic League*; *Westphalia, Peace of*.

Reichstag. The *Imperial Diet* of the *Holy Roman Empire* which met at Ratisbon and was comprised of representatives of the seven *Kurfürsten*, along with those of some 300 dukedoms, bishoprics, baronies, fiefdoms, and free cities which made up the *Estates* of the Empire.

Reisläufer. A Confederate (Swiss) mercenary. By the late 15th century they were often decked out in multi-colored hose, puffed sleeve shirts, and ostrich-plume hats. The *Landsknechte* made fun of them, but imitated and carried their sartorial extravagance to still further extremes of flamboyant disdain and display. See also *German Peasant War*.

Reiters. ''Riders.'' French: ''reîtres.'' Italian: ''raitri.'' German *light cavalry* in the wars of the 16th–17th centuries, armored with at least a *cuirass* and helmet and from the mid-16th century deploying *wheel lock* pistols while fighting in the *caracole* style. A Reiters' great advantage was that he could shoot on the move, and did not have to stop and dismount like a *dragoon* or stop and stand in his stirrups to fire. Like their *Landsknechte* countrymen, however, Reiters were widely thought to be undisciplined and unreliable. See also *Black Riders*; *Dreux, Battle of*; *French Civil Wars*; *Thirty Years' War*.

reîtres. See *Reiters*.

Religionsfriede. ''Religious peace.'' See *Augsburg, Peace of*; *Passau, Convention of*; *Westphalia, Peace of*.

Renaissance. See *Italian Renaissance.*

renegades. Arms dealers, master gunsmiths, and other military advisers who sold strategic goods and skilled services to lords other than their own, especially if they crossed confessional lines. Many Christians did so despite royal or church bans on arms sales and papal threats of excommunication. Muslim and Christian renegades sold their services in India, and Dutch, German, Italian, and other Europeans sold military expertise to the Ming and to the warlords of Japan. See also *armories*; *artillery*; *Barbarossa*; *bombard*; *Farangi*; *folangji*; *India*; *Invincible Armada*; *Iran*; *Janissary Corps*; *Landsknechte*; *Ottoman warfare*; *Rhodes, Siege of (1479–1480)*; *Rumis*; *Shirley, Anthony*; *Shirley, Robert*; *technology and war*; *Urban*.

Rennfahne. Noble *light cavalry* of the *Swabian League*. See also *German Peasant War*.

requerimiento. Following morally baleful encounters between *conquistadores* and Mesoamericans in the Caribbean, *Ferdinand II* of Aragon summoned a panel of Spanish theologians to advise on the status of natives facing conquest in the New World. The panel drew up the ''requerimiento'' based on the Book of Deuteronomy (20:10–16), demanding that all natives accept the spiritual

authority of the *Catholic Church* and the political authority of the United Crowns of Castile and Aragon (Spain). Further, the document demanded that they permit Catholic missionaries to move and preach freely anywhere in their lands. The requerimiento was to be read aloud by all would-be conquistadores prior to making war on Indian nations in the Americas. If its ''reasonable demands'' were refused or ignored the conquistadores might, with full religious and legal sanction, commence slaughter and conquest unimpeded by qualms of conscience. The requerimiento was first read out in 1514 to a group of utterly baffled Indians who did not understand its exotic foreign language, let alone its alien religious doctrines, and who did not foresee its profound import for the looming destruction of their freedoms and societies. See also *just war tradition*.

requisition. A basic *logistics* wherein an invading army demanded billets and food from the civilian population. In this period what distinguished requisition from simple *plunder* was that it was usually done under the pretense of payment in the form of promissory notes. These usually proved worthless.

rerebrace. Upper arm armor. See *bracers*.

reservatum ecclesiaticum. An amendment to the *Peace of Augsburg*, added without the approval of the Protestant *Estates*, which mandated that any ecclesiastical prince who converted to Lutheranism must resign all Church offices and benefices (that is, was not afforded the right of ''*cuius regio eius religio*''). This reservation guaranteed survival of Catholic communities while leaving open the possibility of reconversions to Catholicism whittling away Protestant positions. Thus, when the Archbishop of Cologne converted to Lutheranism in the 1580s and refused to give up his offices and income he was forcibly chased away from his bishopric by Spanish and Burgundian troops. Protestants largely ignored the reservatum, which thereby importantly contributed to confessional animosities leading to the *Thirty Years' War*. During the war, the issue of the reservatum came up with tragic consequences at *Magdeburg*. The reservatum ecclesiaticum was abolished in the 1635 *Peace of Prague*, clearing the way for a final religious and political settlement in the *Peace of Westphalia* (1648). See also *Declaratio Ferdinandei.*

During the war, the issue of the reservatum came up with tragic consequences at Magdeburg.

resfuerzo. A Spanish supply ship. They were used between colonies as well as between Spain and its overseas holdings. They also accompanied the great armadas and treasure fleets.

res publica Christiana. ''Christian Commonwealth.'' A medieval European concept expressing an admixture of pride in the putative Roman heritage of

Latin Christian law and civilization, and genuine faith in the existence of a single godly community (''Corpus Christianum'') of all Latin Christians. The Christian Commonwealth overarched feudal and dynastic ties, in theory. It began to break down with the ''Avignon Captivity'' of the papacy (1314–1362) and the *Great Schism* (1378–1417). Still, it provided deep cultural resistance to the emergence of the *new monarchies* and later, secular nation-states. It did not survive, other than as a romantic memory and papal pipe dream, the political and intellectual storms of the *Italian Renaissance*, the breakup of Latin Christianity during the *Protestant Reformation*, and the attendant rise of self-seeking states and absolutist monarchs. The great legacy of the res publica Christiania was a common body of law, both natural and canon, much of which was incorporated by secular legal theorists into modern international law. See also *Grotius*, *Hugo*; *Machiavelli, Niccolò di Bernardo*.

Suggested Reading: Garrett Mattingly, *Renaissance Diplomacy* (1955).

restaur. See *warhorses.*

retirata. A freestanding rampart made from dug earth and used as a field obstacle to break the momentum of an attacking infantry square or a cavalry charge. It was developed early in the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559).

retrenchment. An interior fortification within a larger fortress to which a defending force retreated if the outer walls were breached; an inner line of defense. Alternately, an emergency trench dug by defenders behind a pending or existing enemy breach.

"Revenge," Fight of. See *Flores, Battle of.*

Revolt of the Netherlands (1487–1492). See *Netherlands.*

Revolt of the Netherlands (1568–1648). See *Eighty Years' War*; *Netherlands*.

revolution in military affairs. The academic theory of a ''revolution in military affairs'' in early modern Europe was first broached by Michael Roberts in 1954 and has since become generally, though not universally, accepted. What remains in dispute is when the ''military revolution'' occurred and what drove it. Roberts pointed to the period from 1550 to 1650, and especially to reforms undertaken in the Netherlands and Sweden. Subsequent studies, notably by Geoffrey Parker, stretched the term to cover the period 1450–1800. Other historians demurred, contending that any historical process which took a century or more to gestate could not in any meaningful way be termed a ''revolution.'' That was not an inconsiderable point: was ''military evolution'' a more appropriate descriptor than ''military revolution''? In its original form, the thesis identified an expanded utility and deployment of mass *infantry*, a new emphasis on *drill* and professional discipline, adoption of

firearms and *artillery* through the full flowering of *gunpowder weapons*, and a corresponding counter-adoption of new techniques of *fortification.* Battle again was mobile and decisive, in contrast to the static and indecisive form that preceded the military revolution. Above all, a vast expansion in the size and cost of armies and navies put enormous new fiscal, technical, bureaucratic, and cultural demands on early modern states and societies. Standing armies and permanent navies were seen as the key change. Also, commanders were forced to make tactical adjustments to new technologies employed on the battlefield and states had to devise new methods of garnering revenues needed to sustain expanding forces. In the end, most military historians came to accept Roberts' thesis in modified form, recognizing that even if the processes of change in military doctrine, technology, and institutions were mostly evolutionary in the 16th–17th centuries, they still resulted in truly revolutionary effects.

To encompass the new armies, emerging nation-states of early modern Europe were compelled to undertake a wholesale reorganization of their societies and economies. They often did so in ways that concentrated and centralized power without regard to the surface constitutional form of the state, or longstanding traditions of civic liberty or noble privilege. This was necessary to raise the vast sums the new armed forces consumed on a year-round basis and to sustain the bureaucratic organization that so distinguished modern states and militaries from their Medieval predecessors. The great exemplars of the change were the Netherlands during the regime of *Maurits of Nassau* and the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648); Sweden under *Gustavus Adolphus* in the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648); and the *New Model Army* in England under *Thomas Fairfax* and *Oliver Cromwell* during the mid-17th century *English Civil Wars* (1639–1651). Other noteworthy features of the revolution in military affairs pointed to by historians were an inexorable trend toward establishment of national *standing armies* under centralized state control; heavy financing of artillery by monarchs, in places leading to royal monopolies on the manufacture, export, and possession of cannon; and commissioning hugely expensive royal warships to supplement *privateers*, leading ultimately to permanent professional navies.

The trend toward more massive, firearms-bearing armies culminated in the first half of the Thirty Years' War. Whereas in 1567 the *Duke of Alba* marched to repress the Revolt of the Netherlands with just 10,000 men—three infantry *tercios* of 3,000 men each, and supporting cavalry—by the end of the 16th century the *Army of Flanders* was 60,000 strong, yet it was but one of several armies maintained by Imperial Spain. Just three decades later armies as large as 100,000 fought in and over Germany. In the latter years of the German war, however, army size decreased considerably due to the logistic inability of lands already eaten out several times over to sustain such large forces. In addition, there had been a dramatic general decline in population in Germany and a specific decline in men and boys of military age, caused mostly by death from exposure to plague and other highly contagious camp diseases, and by starvation, rather than massacres or death in battle. This

mid-17th-century drop was only a temporary downturn, however, in a long-range secular trend: 18th-century armies in Europe surpassed 150,000; nearly all major 19th-century armies exceeded several hundreds of thousands of men (for instance, Napoleon took 620,000 men into Russia in 1812); in the 20th century millions would fight for the belligerents of World War I and tens of millions wore uniforms of the major armies of World War II. The trend line did not break until after World War II when the mass killing technologies made such enormous concentrations of soldiers and material militarily foolhardy, as well as unnecessary.

It is noteworthy that early debate over the military revolution was confined to developments in Western Europe where military technology was said to evolve dramatically over two centuries via progressive adaptation of winning weapons systems and tactics. At first scholars did not note or notice the same changes elsewhere. Even concerning so closely related a military arena as eastern Europe, the old ways were said to have remained largely intact. This was mainly, it was argued, because the dominant military power for most of the period—Poland—enjoyed such success with its traditional cavalry against still more ''backward'' armies such as that of Muscovy, that battlefield incentive to change was minimal. This condition supposedly lasted until the Poles were bested by the reformed Swedish Army under Gustavus Adolphus in the 1620s. Yet, topographical factors and the nature of the enemy faced, *Tatar* and *Cossack* light cavalry armies, almost certainly played a greater role in Polish deployment of large cavalry forces than any putative military primitivism in eastern Europe.

Nor, it was said, did the *Ottoman Empire* adopt new ways. There, too, scholars saw short-term victory as the handmaiden of long term military stagnation and ''backwardness.'' Throughout the period it was the armies of Constantinople that were on the march, and usually winning, against European armies in the Balkans and southeastern Europe. That is why there was no obvious need or effort by the sultans to undertake socially disruptive military reforms. Or so said the academic theory. Yet, that view grossly underestimated the adaptability of Ottoman armies. Recent research suggests that significant divergence in adoption of new military technologies from those employed in Europe did not occur until the 1680s. Up to that point it is almost certainly more accurate to say that the Ottomans had the most advanced commissary and logistics system and a sounder basis of *war finance* than any state in Europe. And the Ottomans (and Safavid Iran, too) imported *renegade* master gunners and cast cannon and made muskets broadly comparable to anything in the West to the end of the 17th century.

As for great empires further afield, Mughal India absorbed some firearms technology but did not shift to European-style military recruitment, organization, or tactics. Imperial China, whose wealth and advanced civilization should have enabled it to follow suit with ease, forewent the advanced naval artillery encountered aboard visiting European ships in favor of retention of the old methods of ramming the enemy, followed by grappling and boarding by marines. On land, on the other hand, both *Ming* and *Manchu* readily

adopted Portuguese and *Jesuit*-made cannon and muskets. In Japan the military revolution triggered such profound changes in warfare it contributed to vast political upheaval. The introduction of firearms to Japan in 1543 upset centuries-old military traditions and the internal balance of power among the *daimyo*. During the bloody *Unification Wars* this led to an end to fractious political divisions which had for centuries torn that island realm. In place of the ravages of *ashigaru* and the chaos of the *Sengoku jidai*, a political and social revolution took place under the *Tokugawa Shoguns* which rendered Japan at internal peace for over 250 years.

In Africa the introduction of firearms by Portuguese, Dutch, Danish, and English coastal traders tipped the balance of military power away from the armored cavalry of the Sahel and desert peoples, who had dominated the tribes of the coastal forest zone for over 1,000 years, in favor of their longtime victims. Why? Because it was the forest tribes who hugged the West African and Angolan coasts of Africa who first encountered European ships and traders, from whom they acquired firearms. With guns they drove back the horse-borne knights of the sword and spear of the old desert empires and began to build large states and empires of their own. Thus, *Songhay* and *Mali* fell to the *arma* of Morocco. In the southeast *Ngola* bought Portuguese muskets and decimated *Kongo*. This did not happen in North or South America, however, where other factors—disease, population loss, and rapid external conquest of the major Indian states—utterly destroyed pre-Columbian military regimes and military culture. There, *conquistador* and later firearms armies overthrew old Indian political orders and displaced the pre-gunpowder elites socially and economically as well. See also *armor*; *contributions*; *Edward III*; *English armies*; *rifled-bore*; *smoothbore.*

. . . firearms . . . upset centuries-old military traditions and the internal balance of power . . .

Suggested Reading: Brian Downing, *The Military Revolution and Political Change* (1992); MacGregor Knox and Williamson Murray, eds., *The Dynamics of Military Revolution, 1300–2050* (2001); Geoffrey Parker, *The Military Revolution*, 2nd ed. (1996); Clifford Rogers, ed., *The Military Revolution Debate* (1995).

Rex christianissimus. ''Most Christian King.'' The ancient title of French kings denoting ordination by God, reinforced in the *sacre*, and surpassing in age and prestige newer appellations given by popes to England's *Henry VIII* (''Defender of the Faith'') or to *Ferdinand and Isabella* (''Catholic Crowns''). See also *corpus mysticum*.

Rheinfelden, Battle of (March 2–3, 1638). *Bernhard von Sachsen-Weimar* led a Protestant investment of Rheinfelden, near Basil. As he was maneuvering for the siege he was met by a surprise attack by the Bavarian army under *Johann von Werth.* This caught Bernhard's men strung out while crossing the river. During the night Bernhard moved upstream those men already across the river, crossed back over, marched downstream to Rheinfelden, and took the

Bavarian army by surprise from the rear. The victory was total, with even Werth taken prisoner.

Rhodes, Siege of (1444). The *Hospitallers* had operated as ''Sea Brothers,'' or pirates, out of Rhodes for decades. In 1440 Cyprus submitted to Egypt, leaving Rhodes the last outpost of the *Crusades* still facing ascendant Muslim power in the eastern Mediterranean. The *mamlūk* navy first attacked in 1440. Hospitaller *galleys* met the Muslims ships in the outer harbor with hymns and cannon fire, and again along the coast, and the Muslims fled. In 1444 the mamlūks returned with 18,000 men and laid siege. They pounded Hospitaller defenses with 3,500 cannonballs over six weeks. With the walls of the citadel breached late in the evening, the Brethren gathered overnight and in the morning they charged into the astonished besiegers. The mamlūks bolted for their galleys and rowed away, leaving their entire *artillery train* behind.

Rhodes, Siege of (1479–1480). The *Hospitallers* mustered 600 Brethren and hired 1,500 mercenaries to face an invasion force of 70,000 Muslims led by *Muhammad II*. The Muslims landed on May 23, and blockaded the main port with 50 *galleys*. When the Muslim assault troops landed they were massacred by gunfire from the walls. The Christians also sent *fireships* into the harbor to chase away the Muslim galleys; other galleys were sunk by fortress artillery firing incendiaries. Muhammad had several large *bombards* cast on the island and set up as a battery to pound the defenses of the main citadel with heavy stone balls. The casting and firing of this artillery was directed by a *renegade* German gunner, Meister Georg. When he feigned desertion to the Knights, possibly to spy out weakness in the walls for his guns to smash, they hanged him for his troubles. On July 28 thousands of Muslim troops stormed through a partial breach. Street fighting ensued. The Knights pushed the attackers back, pursued to their camp, and chased the survivors back to their galleys. The Muslims hurriedly burned their supplies and left.

Rhodes, Siege of (1522–1523). The siege began on July 28, 1522 as *Suleiman I* landed some 80,000 men on Rhodes to face walls rebuilt after the siege of 1479. These first arrivals were later supplemented by many tens of thousands more Muslim troops. It took a month for engineers to sap trenches and set up the Ottoman siege artillery, which was numerous and powerful. Thousands of cannonballs, incendiaries, and other projectiles were fired at the garrison's walls and bastions. Receiving this fire were about 700 *Hospitaller Knights* and sergeants and 6,000 mercenaries. Casualties were extremely heavy on both sides from mutual bombardment and repeated assaults. But it was mining with gunpowder, not bombardment, that breached the walls of the outer bastions and allowed the siege to creep inward. Repeated attempts to storm the citadel were beaten back. As the Knights ran low on saltpeter to make more powder, fear and hunger also began to tell; desertions, military and civilian, rose. On December 16 a *galley* filled with Cretan archers ran the blockade, but it was not enough: on December 21, 180 surviving Knights and 1,500 infantry

surrendered and were given safe passage off the island with all their goods. They paraded out of the ruble and left for Crete on January 1, 1523, some carried there on the Sultan's ships. Suleiman had won the fight and made a magnanimous peace even though he had lost half his army to combat or disease. *Charles V* said of this last act of the *Crusades*: ''Nothing in the world was so well lost as Rhodes.''

ribat. A fortified outpost of Muslim warriors. They were almost miniature monasteries whose garrisons lived ascetic lives, patrolled the borders of the *taifa states*, and carried out much-feared ''*rabitos*'' or raids.

ribaudequin. Latin: ''ribaldi.'' Also ''ribauld'' or ''ribaude'' or ''ribaudiaux.'' Originally, any mean gun of cheap quality. Later, small multi-barreled *cannon*. They first appeared in Flanders in the 1330s and were always best known and most widely used there. Some had up to twelve barrels, others six or seven. Most ribaudequins could be fired singly or in volley; some were fired in multiple volleys of three or more barrels at a time. When the Veronese fought the Paduans under *John Hawkwood* at Castagnaro (March 11, 1387), the former deployed ribaudequins in carts that held 144 guns in three banks of 48 barrels each, of which 12 could be fired in volley. The Veronese still lost the fight. By the 1380s some were mounted on wheeled carts, a feat which was a significant innovation for early *artillery*. By 1500 ribaudequins were usually mounted on a *gun carriage* and thus formed an early light field artillery, but they were not very effective and never decisive. The real solution to massing firepower in battle was the musketeer.

Richard III (1452–1485). See *Wars of the Roses*.

Richelieu, Cardinal Armand Jean du Plessis de (1585–1642). ''Éminence Rouge.'' Cardinal of Luçon, statesman, molder of the French state and much modern diplomatic practice. Richelieu trained for military service but also at the Sorbonne, where he became interested in reform of the *Gallican Church*. He entered the clergy to secure his family's hereditary claim to a French bishopric, and was made bishop in 1607 at age 22. From the court influence of *Marie de Medici*, in 1616 he was made secretary of state for foreign affairs. He wore a cardinal's hat from 1622 and was made *Louis XIII*'s first minister two years later, serving in that capacity to his death in 1642. Richelieu's first goal was to centralize authority and administration under the monarch. He did this through a system of direct rule by royal officials (intendants) who were sent into the country but reported directly to the crown. Provincial courts and medieval towns previously governed by free charters came under the authority of his intendants. Like most royalists and Catholics, he identified ''heresy'' with sedition, treason, and social disorder. He and Louis thus revoked the special political and military privileges enjoyed by the *Huguenots* under the *Edict of Nantes*, launched southern campaigns against the Huguenots from 1622 to 1625, and finally starved the last Protestant stronghold,

La Rochelle, into submission in 1628. That victory was tempered by a return to religious toleration with the *Edict of Alès* (1629), a settlement that contrasted starkly with the *Edict of Restitution* in Germany that same year.

When Richelieu was done consolidating the home front the monarchy was nearly unchallenged and able to pursue a new concept in governance and statecraft: raison d'etat. This 17th-century equivalent of the ''national interest'' became the mark of Richelieu's policy. Hence, he objected to the involvement in national politics of so many women among the *dévots*, viewing them as responsible for the devotional and confessional excesses he so despised. For Richelieu, piety and religious conformity was good for domestic tranquility and conduced to a more peaceful world, but only if religion was not indulged to excess by the governing classes. His tastes were most inclined to a monarchy of grandeur and classical harmonies, and he much preferred the ''natural hierarchy'' of aristocratic rule to the disruptive confessional politics of dévots, Huguenots, or troublesome *Estates.*

Keeping the Peace

The conventional view is that Richelieu built up a powerful national army and navy to break the *Habsburg* ''encirclement'' of France, destroy Louis XIII's enemies, and make France preeminent in Europe. Further, he is said to have done this without regard for the ideological content of the great struggle between Catholics and Protestants then driving the politics and wars of all surrounding powers. It has been said that Richelieu was a ''Father of the Church'' but no Catholic ideologue: Paris, not Rome, hosted his cathedral and commanded his deepest loyalties. Besides, he viewed the ostentatious Catholicism of the Habsburgs as a fig leaf concealing raw secular ambition. He thus beat them at their own best game with court intrigue, ruthless diplomacy, and clever dynastic marriages. Richelieu could also use force with rapier-like skill, waging war-by-proxy as an adjunct and instrument of his diplomacy. That is why he subsidized *Christian IV* and *Gustavus Adolphus* in their successive interventions against Habsburg power in the *Thirty Years' War*. While there is much truth in this view, other interpretations abound. Many French, and not just foreigners, hated and thought the worst of Richelieu in his own day, attributing to him base personal, material, and family motives in place of high policy. Some historians, especially Germans, call him overly aggressive and warlike and portray his reign as a disaster for France and Europe. Most French historians see him as dedicated to ''la grandeur'' of France, even as sacrificing selflessly to that goal. He is also depicted as the great practitioner of the balance of power, a coldly calculating realist of the thoroughly modern sort. Still others view him as informed by a sense of high religious duty, as a sincere Catholic and not just a French statesman, who tried to bring a universal and just peace to all Europe. A few English historians paint him as instead driven by coarse material gain for himself and his family rather than high principle, whether religious or secular.

Out of all this disagreement this much is clear: From 1625 Richelieu began to ready France for a definitive war with the Habsburgs which he thought

inevitable, a view shared by his Spanish counterpart, *Count Olivares*. From then until his death, Richelieu accrued enormous power and powerful enemies as a result of this policy, especially the dévots. Many hated his war taxes and resented his nepotism, influence with the king, and his court favorites. Richelieu's initial moves were to arrange the marriage of Louis XIII's sister to *Charles I* of England and to ease relations with the Dutch. However, when the Huguenots rebelled in January 1625, Richelieu was compelled to forge a temporary alliance with Spain instead, in the *Treaty of Monzón* (1626). The next year he intervened against Spain in Italy. From the *War of the Mantuan Succession* (1627–1631) until he died, he and France were at war continually with Spain, undeclared before 1635 and openly after that. In 1630 he led a French army into Italy to occupy and annex Savoy when France was also indirectly at war with the Austrian Habsburgs.

A consensus view is that after the Mantuan war ended in 1631 Richelieu sought to avoid an all-out confrontation with Spain. He had learned that the *tercios* were superior to French troops in battle (as they remained until the sharp French victory at *Rocroi* in 1643), while at home any war with the Habsburg powers threatened conflict with radical Catholic dévots. As was then happening also in England, where Charles I faced opposition from "The Godly" (soi-dissant), in the 1630s Richelieu and Louis XIII faced confrontation with dévots whose hysterical piety turned them into political zealots. In short, Richelieu's humanist authoritarianism clashed with a pietistic mass movement convulsing French Catholicism that made overt opposition to the Habsburgs difficult and open alliance with Protestant powers near impossible. Fortunately, a third option appeared in the north where the Swedish king stood to be played as the greatest of Richelieu's anti-Habsburg champions, saddled with French gold and sent to fight in Germany; but the great Swede also turned out to be the proxy the Cardinal least controlled. Richelieu shrewdly mediated the *Truce of Altmark* to free Sweden of its war with Poland then subsidized its entry into the German war by paying Gustavus Adolphus 400,000 Taler (rix-dollars) under the *Treaty of Bärwalde* (1631). If domestic constraints meant he could not fight the Habsburgs with French troops then he would fight to the last Swede or mercenary that French gold could buy.

. . . he and France were at war continually with Spain, undeclared before 1635 and openly after that.

Making War

Following the death of Gustavus Adolphus at *Lützen* (1632), Richelieu sought to stay out of the German war by finding another anti-Habsburg champion to finance. None was up to grade. While the Swedes fought on under *Oxenstierna*, Richelieu garrisoned the Rhine frontier. Brilliantly combining foreign and domestic interests, he forced Lorraine to accept French troops in 1632: that threatened to cut the *Spanish Road* militarily while politically undercutting both the *Guise* and Gaston d'Orléans, brother of

Louis XIII, the French heir presumptive (to 1638) and husband to Marguerite of Lorraine. Richelieu also sent troops to occupy the bishopric of Trier. Alsatian free cities and small principalities were occupied in 1634–1635. Most importantly, Richelieu took the fortresses of Ehrenbreitstein and Philippsburg. In December 1634 he marched into Heidelberg in the Palatinate. Defeat of the Swedish Army at *First Nördlingen* (September 5–6, 1634) and a mutiny in the Swedish Army that took Oxenstierna captive convinced Richelieu that France had to enter the war directly, that his policy of confrontation of Habsburg power through subsidized allies was no longer sufficient to achieve France's vital interests. In 1635 he committed France wholesale to the war in Germany and against both branches of the Habsburgs in Italy and Flanders, and also at sea. Thus began the ''French Phase'' of the Thirty Years' War.

It did not start well: a series of peasant rebellions broke out protesting the spectacular rise in taxes resulting from Richelieu's multiple wars, and through 1636 little of note was accomplished in Germany by French arms, despite massive expenditure. And there were assassination attempts against the Cardinal supported and financed by the Guise. All opposition was put down with ruthless military and juridical violence, with even nobles going to the block. When a Spanish army threatened Paris, Richelieu actually strapped on a sword and personally led a force of 30,000 infantry and 12,000 cavalry to do battle. His advance pushed the Spanish back and out of Picardy. In 1638 the French finally won a field victory at *Rheinfelden* (March 2–3, 1638). By 1640 France's advantages in population and wealth were brought to bear and its armies had learned how to fight by fighting. Fissures now appeared in the enemy camp. Spain's economy groaned to supply overstretched armies and fleets, and its disparate peoples grew war weary and rebellious: first Catalonia then Portugal rebelled. The French began to win in Germany, too, by 1642.

If Richelieu had by then set France on a path to hegemony, or at least to preeminence and ''greatness,'' he did not live to see it: he died in December 1642. Nevertheless, his influence survived the grave: before he departed this Earthly coil he drafted the principal instructions later used by French envoys in negotiating the *Peace of Westphalia* in 1648. His legacy was complex but at the least included a newly centralized crown and powerful French state, army and navy, and predominance within the European state system. He also began a critically important codification of the new, secular international law. He reformed and advanced the forms and practices of modern diplomacy and set state espionage on a permanent footing. It is probably wrong to say, however, that he sought a just and universal peace for all Europe. His core motives appear to have been a mix of accrual of personal and family power along with attaining a preeminent position for France in the new, postwar order. He was, in sum, a man and a statesman. See also *Castelnaudary, Battle of*; *Jansenism.*

Suggested Reading: Joseph Bergin and Laurence Brockliss, eds., *Richelieu and His Age* (1992); Henry Bertram, ed. and trans. *Political Testament of Cardinal Richelieu* (1961); M. Carmona, *Richelieu, L'Ambition et le pouvoir* (1983); W. Church, *Richelieu*

and Reason of State (1972); J. H. Elliott, *Richelieu and Olivares* (1984); David Parrott, *Richelieu's Army: War, Government, and Society in France, 1624–1642* (2001).

Riddarhus. ''House of the Knights.'' Established as a reform measure by *Gustavus Adolphus* in 1626. The Riddarhus reform marked the formal creation of the Swedish national nobility, thereby cementing the loyalty of the noble classes to the *House of Vasa* and to an expansionist foreign policy.

rifled-bore. A gun or cannon with a grooved and spiral bore. This spun the bullet as it traversed the barrel, giving it greater accuracy and range by a factor of five over comparable *smoothbore* weapons. The first rifles were made about 1500 for hunting or sport, not war. *Louis XIII* and the Landgrave of Hesse introduced rifled *muskets* to their armies, but insufficient advantage was gained while rates of fire dropped, so that the experiments were ended. As late as the end of the 17th century rifles were rare in battle. The main reasons for the lack of interest in rifles were first, the tight fit of the bullet in a muzzle-loading rifle made it much harder to ram, which in turn reduced its rate of fire. It was necessary to service the gun through the muzzle since muskets were welded shut at the breech to prevent the highly pressurized gasses produced by *corned gunpowder* escaping into the face of the musketeer. Second, musketry tactics had already evolved a strong preference for reloading speed over accuracy or range. The opposite was true in Japan at the start of the 17th century, but once that nation dropped out of international conflict under the *Tokugawa* shoguns in the 1640s innovations to gun design ceased and developments in Japan did not affect the wider world. Most weapons of the era covered in this work remained smoothbore and highly inaccurate at anything beyond *point-blank ranges*. Rifled guns remained the weapon of choice of hunters, who needed an accurate single-shot musket rather than a fast reloader. See also *artillery*; *gunpowder weapons.*

Riga, Siege of (1621). See *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *Sigismund III*.

rigging. The complex system of ropes and pulleys that supported and controlled a sailing ship's *masts*, *spars*, and *yards*. Footropes—or ratlines, ropes looped through holed wooden blocks called ''deadeyes'' or ''deadmen's eyes''—were introduced during the 15th century. This reduced the size of the crew needed to raise, lower, and handle the huge sails of new ship designs, thereby making *carracks*, *caravels*, and other ships of sail more valuable as long-distance armed transports or warships. Also, footropes allowed for divided sails to be rigged to divided masts, reducing the cost of rigging. See also *cruising*; *sails*.

"right to the bells." See *strategic metals*.

Rigksdag. The assembly of the four Swedish *Estates*: Lutheran clergy, nobles, burghers, and peasants.

Rigsdag. The assembly of Danish *Estates*, sometimes including representation for the peasantry.

Río Salado, Battle of (1340). See *Algeciras, Siege of*; *Reconquista*.

Ritter des Deutschordens. See *Teutonic Knights, Order of*.

Ritterstand. The lower nobility of the *Holy Roman Empire*; the knightly order, that class of nobles and armed retainers owing feudal military service to the Holy Roman Empire in the Middle Ages. After the *Battle of the White Mountain* (1620) the Ritterstand in Bohemia was marginalized by redistribution of their lands to those most loyal to *Ferdinand II*. There and in Moravia and Austria they were displaced by a Catholic class of noble magnates, many of foreign (German, Italian, Irish, and Spanish) origin, united by religious and political ties to the Imperial court. See also *Imperial Army*.

robinet. A class of relatively standardized early-16th-century small *cannon*. While size and caliber could vary within this class, most had a 37mm caliber and could fire *solid shot* up to one-half kilogram in weight.

rockets. War rockets were employed in China almost from the discovery of gunpowder. They were also used in Indian warfare from the 13th century, if not earlier, where they constituted the first *gunpowder weapons*. They were seldom if ever used in Europe in this period. The British learned of war rockets from the Indians in the 1700s and thereafter used them in various theaters (most famously, in an attack on Fort McHenry during the War of 1812 that is remembered in the American national anthem).

Rocroi, Battle of (May 19, 1643). Led by *Francisco di Melo*, an Imperial army of 19,000 foot and 8,000 horse comprised of Italians, Germans, Walloons, and Spanish, besieged the French fortress town of Rocroi. They were met by the *Great Condé* (Louis II), then just 22 years old and yet to earn his famous nom de guerre. He marched to lift the siege with 16,000 infantry and 7,000 horse. Each side deployed traditionally: infantry to the center, cavalry on either wing. Condé opened the fight with a charge on the right, moving Spanish cavalry on that flank off the field. The Spanish cavalry on the left flank did the same to the French, driving their horse backward. Condé turned and rode daringly across the entire battlefield, right through the Imperial infantry at the center. This split solid Spanish veterans from less-reliable *Habsburg* infantry, many of whom turned and ran. Emerging on the other side, Condé's troopers fell on the rear and flank of exposed Spanish cavalry. Seeing this, the surviving French on that flank turned, so that the Spanish were trapped between two bodies of French horse, slashing and stabbing at them and firing pistols into their faces. As the last Spanish horsemen fled from this trap the Spanish *tercios* were left standing alone at the center and were quickly assaulted from all sides by French horse and foot. The Spaniards

fought bravely, in many cases to the death of whole companies. Their casualties reached 7,000 dead and 8,000 captured from the tercio infantry alone, compared with 4,000 French casualties. Rocroi was so complete a victory it is often cited as marking a transition point: the moment France displaced Spain as the dominant land power in the European system. Even if true, that had as much or more to do with the earlier closing of the *Spanish Road*, which meant that Spain could not make good its losses at Rocroi.

Rohan, Henri, duc de (1579–1638). The main *Huguenot* military leader during the last of the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629). He submitted to *Louis XIII* upon the fall of *La Rochelle*.

Romanov, Michael (1586–1645). Tsar, 1613–1645. His election as tsar closed the ''*Time of Troubles*'' (''Smutnoe Vremia''), which had seen defeat of several pretenders and an invasion by *Sigismund III* of Poland. Two new wars with Poland followed, 1617–1618 and 1632–1634. Otherwise, Michael I's reign saw restoration of the traditional religion, politics, and social order of *Muscovy*. It was most marked by the powerful Orthodox patriarchy of his father, Philaret (d.1633), and deeper enserfment of the peasantry.

Rome, Sack of (1527). See *Charles V, Holy Roman Emperor*; *Cognac, League of*; *Italian Wars*; *Landsknechte*.

rondel. See *daggers*.

ronin. Wild *samurai* unbound to any lord, usually because of the death or disgrace of their *daimyo*. They were comparable in low social status and high brigandage to *routiers*, *Free Companies*, and *Ecorcheurs* in Europe.

Roosebeke, Battle of (November 27, 1382). ''Rozebeke.'' The revolt of Flanders against French overlordship revived in the 1380s as France bogged down in the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453) with England, key commercial ally and military supporter of Flemish independence. Unfortunately for the Flemings, their militia were not the same tactically disciplined force that faced the French at *Courtrai* in 1302. At Roosebeke, an army of ill-trained Flemish militia was supplemented by peasant levies and led by Philip van Artevelde. This patchwork force was met by French *heavy cavalry* and *men-at-arms* under Olivier de Clisson. Pinned by repeated charges and cut off by the superior mobility of the French horse, the Flemings were cut down without mercy and slaughtered almost to a man. Louis II (de Malle) was restored as Duke of Flanders. Within three years the Flemish revolt was crushed and Flanders passed to Burgundy by agreement with France. The point of long memory, class hatred, and revenge was driven home when the 500 sets of spurs taken from dead French *knights* at Courtrai were recovered to France after Roosebeke.

"Root and Branch" petition (December 1640). A petition against episcopacy circulated by Puritan clergy, signed by over 15,000 people and presented to Parliament. It blamed discontent in England on toleration of prelates (Presbyterianism), identifying the path to peace as a godly government—or rather, government by the self-proclaimed godly—which would strictly enforce public morals and inculcate sound commercial values. See also *English Civil Wars*.

***Rostjeneste*.** The feudal military obligation of the Danish nobility to serve in the cavalry, or provide substitutes, as part of their service obligation to the monarchy.

***rota*.** The roster of a company of infantry or troop of cavalry, notably in the *Polish Army*, where units of 100 men were subdivided into files of 10 led by *dziesietniks*. A "rotamaster" was the officer in charge of the rota (roughly, a captain). The term went out of favor in the late 17th century. See also *rotmistrz*; *Rottmeister*.

***rotmistrz*.** "Rotamaster." The rotmistrz was the military contractor who agreed to raise a quota of men and lead them to the muster under his flag. In battle he commanded a *choragiew* or *banner* (company) of men. In the *Polish Army* the *poczet* ("post" or "lance") of a rotmistrz was larger than most others because it included a number of *dead-pays* used to pad the income of the whole unit, to the extent that as many as 10 percent of names on the paper muster might be fictitious.

***Rotte*.** A squad of ten *Landsknechte* mercenaries. It was the basic tactical unit of a *Fähnlein* or company.

***Rottmeister*.** "Rotamaster." A minor officer in a *Landsknechte* company. When in pike square or *Gevierthaufen* formation each Rottmeister was in charge of a file of about 20 men.

***rotularii*.** Italian infantry of the late 15th century armed with small, round shields and a variety of hand weapons.

Rouen, Siege of (1418–1419). See *Hundred Years' War*.

Rouen, Siege of (1449). See *Hundred Years' War*.

Rouen, Siege of (November 1591–April 1592). *Henri IV* undertook a siege of Rouen supported by 5,000 English troops sent to him by *Elizabeth I*. Although *Parma* was suffering from gout and his men were mutinous from want of pay, he invaded Picardy with a large Spanish army out of the Netherlands. Henri left his trenches to interdict the Spanish en route. Leading a raiding party of

just 1,000 horse, he was cut off and slightly wounded. Parma approached Rouen in late February but failed to lift the siege, instead moving on Neufchâtel and into Picardy. Henri's Dutch allies cut off Rouen from the sea, provoking its population to riot for food. Parma finally marched to relieve the siege. He and *Mayenne* entered Rouen on April 21, 1592.

rouncey. An average *warhorse* that bore the bulk of the armored *cavalry* of the European knightly class. It was neither as large nor as expensive as a *destrier* nor as fleet as the small *courser* that was preferred by most riders on a *chevauchée*. It was an average animal of average price, as little as one-twentieth the cost of a prime destrier, and thus affordable to poorer *knights*, *men-at-arms*, and other armed retainers.

roundel (1). A small, round shield.

roundel (2). A round turret in a fixed fortification.

Roundheads. The sobriquet of the Parliamentary forces in the *English Civil Wars* (1639–1651). See also *Cromwell, Oliver*; *drake*; *English armies*; *Ironsides*; *Lobsters*; *New Model Army*.

round robin. A petition of grievances drawn up by a naval crew in the form of a complete circle. This was done to prevent the ship's officers from determining which man had signed first and was the likely ringleader, who could then be singled out for rough punishment. Round robin petitions were often, but not always, precursors to outright mutiny.

roundship. Round-hulled sailing ships, as opposed to flat-bottomed ships used in shallow coastal waters or the sleek hull of a *galley*. See also *balinger*; *barge*; *clinker-built*; *cocha*; *cog*.

Roundway Down, Battle of (1643). See *English Civil Wars*; *Hopton, Ralph*; *Waller, William*.

routiers. Rootless, roving, impoverished, unemployed mercenary ''routes'' (bands) that lived off the land by intimidating the peasantry of medieval France. They came mostly from the towns of Flanders and Brabant or from Provence and Navarre, regions where poor soil and overpopulation drove men to desperation and banditry. They were notorious for harassing and robbing religious houses and terrorizing civilians. They organized in bands of several thousand heavily armed men, which made some bands of routiers as large as major armies commanded by the greatest kings of the period. Their depredations provoked formation of a vigilante group known as the ''White Hoods'' (''Capuciati''), a band of pious warriors drawn mostly from the towns and peasantry to fight off the routiers. It later became a radical religious sect. In 1185 the social radicalism of the White Hoods frightened the nobility more

than the threat from routiers and they were crushed by a combined force of nobles and hired routiers. So many routiers were killed at Bouvines (1214) and in the *Albigensian Crusade* (1208–1229) that France enjoyed a long domestic peace, reinforced by eight decades of cross-Channel peace with England. Both factors encouraged a shift from traditional claims by the great magnates to a right of private warfare to limiting that right to the king. A leading medieval military historian, Philippe Contamine, therefore called this ''the great peace of the 13th century.''

Routiers reappeared during the 14th century as France was devastated by the terrible English *chevauchées* of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). Their ravages were supplemented by still worse atrocities committed by *Free Companies*, violent gangs who adopted names like ''Smashing Bars'' and ''Arm of Iron.'' In the 1350s–1360s routiers and Free Companies spread chaos through most of France, including the Île-de-France less than 15 miles from Paris. These ''Anglo-Navarrese'' companies took and held towns, monasteries, and other strongpoints. Between 1356 and 1364 more than 450 strongholds were held by various bands of routiers or Free Companies. Occupation could last a considerable time, as long as 15 years in the case of the Abbey of Louroux. These routiers were different from earlier bands in that they did work of destruction and conducted a war of economic attrition in the name of the kings of England, though not necessarily in their pay. They used terror to extort *appatis* and had almost unobstructed freedom to ravage the French countryside, especially after the disaster for French chivalry at *Crécy* (1346) and *Poitiers* (1356). With the nobility dead or in despair, routiers roamed the country, seizing whole towns and holding them as bases for exploitation of surrounding lands. That this was part of English policy was confirmed by the fact that many routiers gave up their strongholds upon signature of the *Treaty of Brétigny* (1360). The legal cover afforded by *Edward III* gave routiers status as soldiers under the *just war tradition* instead of that of the criminals and bandits most of them were. Clifford Rogers has therefore aptly called routiers the *privateers* of 14th-century land warfare, reserving the even greater opprobrium of ''pirates'' to unlicenced Free Companies. See also *akutō*; *ashigaru*; *aventuriers*; *Ecorcheurs*; *guerre couverte*; *Nájera, Battle of*; *ronin*; *wakō*.

With the nobility dead or in despair, routiers roamed the country . . .

Suggested Reading: Philippe Contamine, *War in the Middle Ages*, Michael Jones, trans. (1984; 1990); L. Siméon, *Histoire de Bertrand du Guesclin et de son époque* (1867).

Rouvray, Battle of (February 12, 1429). ''Battle of the Herrings.'' *John Fastolf* commanded 1,000 longbowmen and 1,200 Burgundians escorting a supply convoy heading to the English army besieging Orléans when it was attacked by the French. He formed a *Wagenburg* from the carts, behind which his archers delivered arrow storms against the French, who charged repeatedly but could not overcome this novel obstacle. Fastolf went on to deliver his

cargo of salt fish and flour to Orléans. His tactic was innovative but not strategically important as *Jeanne d'Arc* lifted the siege later in the year.

rowbarge. A small, 16th-century oared warship peculiar to England; not a flat-bottomed barge of the modern type. They were square-rigged for sail, with 16 oars per side. They fought in the 1545 Anglo-French war, opposing French *galleys*.

Royalists. See *Cavaliers*; *Charles I, of England*; *English Civil Wars*.

Royal Navy. Naval forces played an important role in successive English invasions of Scotland, Ireland, and Wales, and in the defense of those lands by their Celtic populations. Ships were also essential to English fortunes in the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453), which had a crucial naval component that is too often overlooked. English monarchs back to the 11th century purpose-built fleets of warships, but each time the effort to sustain a navy lapsed and the ships were sold off to private interests. Even the "*Great Ships*" commissioned by *Henry V* were left to rot by his successors, sold off after his death, or burned by accident. In the 14th century a rudimentary naval administration was set up under the "Clerk of the King's Ships." Naval financing was managed within the royal household through accounts in "The Chamber" and "The Wardrobe" (later, "Great Wardrobe"), which eventually took responsibility for naval gunnery and small arms, delivery of ships and crew, repair and resupply. The state of "royal ships," or warships owned directly by the crown, from the 14th to the 17th century reflected the state of the monarchy: the "navy royal" waxed under the vigorous later Tudors but waned under the maladroit early Stuarts. Upon the death of *Henry VIII* in 1547 the Royal Navy had 53 warships of all types and sizes. The fleet declined briefly under Edward VI and *Mary Tudor* but building and repair resumed under *Elizabeth I*, with special attention paid to *galleon* construction and *cruising* warfare. In J. R. Hill's words, the Royal Navy finally arose "through a blend of fear, ambition, curiosity, and trial and error." A consensus among naval historians assigns the pedigree of the modern Royal Navy to the fleet of warships assembled by Elizabeth. At its height the Elizabethan navy consisted of 34 royal ships, 13 of which exceeded 500 tons displacement, with many more *privateers* sailing under *letters of marque*, along with impressed and armed merchant ships.

The Royal Navy deteriorated spectacularly under the early Stuarts. *James I* and a tepid House of Commons laid up the royal ships or sold them off or allowed them to rot in port. Great corruption returned to naval administration and privateering was abolished by James (who actually beheaded *Walter Raleigh* for it), even though the English merchant marine was exposed to predations by Dunkirk and Barbary pirates operating from the Newfoundland and Iceland fisheries to the Narrow Seas. This shift surely came about in large part because, except for pirates, there was no continental threat to England during this period: Europe was exhausted by war, embraced the

Twelve Years' Truce (1609–1621), then plunged into the first years of the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648) with indifference to England. *Charles I* and *Buckingham* did no better in terms of management and much worse in combat, bringing humiliation to English seamanship and England's naval tradition.

Despite the Royal Navy's Elizabethan heritage, most naval historians date England's true permanent navy, and especially its conscious national policy of pursuit of sea power, to the *English Civil Wars* (1639–1651) and Commonwealth era. The victory by Parliament, which most navy men supported, put naval finance on a sound footing for the first time. From 1649 to 1660 Parliament built or purchased 207 new warships, adding these to an original fleet of just 39 ships. The Puritan revolution also raised to power men opposed to the monopoly charter companies favored by the monarchy. These new men wanted naval protection from Channel pirates and foreign privateers which the Stuart kings failed to provide. They were devoted to radical Protestantism, colonialism, and the self-conscious idea of England as a major sea and world power. They supported financing for a permanent navy to be used to block Catholic nations from overseas expansion while protecting their, and England's, commercial and colonial interests. The Commonwealth navy subsequently demonstrated professionalism, seamanship, and martial superiority against a comparably fine Dutch navy during the Anglo-Dutch Wars. Reconstituted as the Royal Navy upon the Restoration, sea power took a special place in English national consciousness and policy ever after. See also *Cinque Ports*; *convoy*; *Drake, Francis*; *Edward III*; *Flores, Battle of*; *Frobisher, Martin*; *fryd*; *Hawkyns, John*; *Howard, Charles*; *ship money*; *Sluys, Battle of*; *"sovereignty of the sea"*; *tarpaulin*; *Tower of London*; *war at sea*.

Suggested Reading: J. R. Hill, ed. *Oxford Illustrated History of the Royal Navy* (1995); David Loades, *The Tudor Navy* (1992); N.A.M. Rodger, *The Safeguard of the Sea: A Naval History of Britain*, vol. 1 (1997).

Royal Prussia. See *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *Poland*; *Teutonic Knights, Order of*; *Torun, Second Peace of*; *War of the Cities*.

royal ships. See *privateer*; *Royal Navy*.

Royal Touch. See *corpus mysticum*.

Rudolf II (1552–1612). Holy Roman Emperor, 1576–1612. He was not as tolerant of Protestantism as his father, *Maximilian II*: he had greater interest in alchemy than transubstantiation. His direct support to the *Counter-Reformation* in Germany helped harden confessional positions. He suffered bouts of deep depression and even insanity, and progressively lost power to his brother, Matthias. He faced a rebellion in Transylvania in 1604 backed by the Ottomans, just as his powers declined. In 1606 Matthias signed the *Treaty of Zsitva Torok* ending the *Thirteen Years' War* (1593–1606). He responded to the Bocskay Rebellion in Transylvania (1604–1606) and civil war in Hungary by conceding toleration to Protestants, including Calvinists. In 1608 Rudolf

ceded governance of Austria, Hungary, and Moravia to Matthias. In 1609 Rudolf decreed toleration in Bohemia, but was forced to cede that province to Matthias in 1611 after a threatened civil war was averted. The tempest and ineptitude of his reign in Bohemia, Hungary, and the Empire greatly contributed to the grave crisis that led to the *Thirty Years' War* after his death.

Rumania. Rumania was a province of the Roman Empire (known as Dacia) until the 3rd century C.E. Like most outlying provinces of Rome, over the next seven centuries it was alternately overrun and settled by barbarian tribes. In the 13th century, the *Mongols* reached and raided Rumania. The Ottoman Empire conquered Rumania only with difficulty, as local warlords raised effective infantry from urban militia, stiffened the ranks of townsmen with Italian, Bulgarian, or Polish mercenaries, and fortified against conquest. In time, Muslim armies overran the ''Danubian Principalities'' of Moldavia (Moldova) and Wallachia, which remained Ottoman provinces into the late 19th century. See also *Militargrenze*; *Thirteen Years' War*.

Rumelia. The largely Christian and exclusively European territories of the Ottoman Empire, as distinct from the core Muslim lands of Anatolia and Arab lands to the south. Rumelia included most of modern Albania, Bulgaria, Croatia, Bosnia, Greece, Macedonia, Thrace, and Serbia.

Rumis. A Mughal term for Turkish or other Ottoman artillery specialists in the service of their emperors. See also *Farangi*; *renegades*.

run the gauntlet. From the Swedish ''gantlope,'' a military punishment introduced to Europe during the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648) by *Gustavus Adolphus*. An offending soldier was made to run between files of men who beat him as he passed. It was always brutal and sometimes fatal. The *Landsknechte* had an earlier version of this punishment, the ''pike court,'' which may explain why the Swedish variant spread so quickly through Germany. The Landsknechte pike court made an offender run between two files of pikemen who stabbed him as he passed. Almost no one survived, as any man refusing to stab the offender would be sent to take his place.

Rupert, Prince (1619–1682). Cavalry general and admiral. Nephew of *Charles I*, son of *Friedrich V*, Elector Palatine. He went to war as a teenager for the Dutch against the Spanish in the Netherlands. Captured by the Spanish in 1638 he was released to Charles I in 1641 upon the intervention of *Walter Leslie*. Rupert took command of the *Cavalier* cavalry immediately upon the start of the *English Civil Wars*. He had trouble making professional soldiers of the continental style out of the stubborn English noblemen he commanded, but in the early years they were still the superior of any horsemen Parliament could raise. He thus beat a small enemy force at Powick Bridge (October 23, 1642), his first action. He could not restrain his own high spirits or those of his men, however, which often led him and them to disastrous overpursuit, as

at *Edgehill*. In 1643 he took Bristol, a major supply point for the whole Royalist cause, but he behaved badly at *First Newbury*. The next spring he advanced north in a protracted *chevauchée* and also lifted the siege of York. On May 24, 1644, he sacked Bolton, massacring 1,600 soldiers and civilians. At *Marston Moor* (1644) once more his Cavaliers overpursued, this time costing the Royalists the battle. In the aftermath, Charles nevertheless named Rupert overall commander (at age 25). He led the Royalists into the fight against the *New Model Army* at *Naseby* (1645), where yet again his Cavaliers dispersed beyond hope of recall while the Parliamentarians stood firm and destroyed the rest of the Royalist army. Rupert retreated to Bristol, which he later surrendered to *Thomas Fairfax*. His enemies at court used this to turn Charles against him: he was stripped of command, humiliated and exiled, with no thanks given for his many acts of military service to the king. He subsequently revived Royalist naval fortunes, displaying genuine skill in making war at sea.

ruse. See *Forlorn Hope*; *karr-wa-farr*; *Mongols*; *Morgarten, Battle of*; *ruses de guerre*; *Swiss square*; *Uzbeks*; *Wittstock, Battle of*; *Yongle Emperor*.

ruses de guerre. Within the *just war tradition*, ''ruses de guerre'' had a special meaning of deceptions or tricks in the course of combat viewed as illegitimate because they abused the norms of war that were designed to protect noncombatants. They included false surrender or firing from protected places. See also *quarter*.

Russia. See *Muscovy, Grand Duchy of*.

rusttjänst. ''*Knight* service.'' The *feudal* military obligation of the Swedish nobility to serve in the cavalry, or provide substitutes, as part of their *servitor* obligation to the monarchy.

Ruthven, Patrick (c.1573–1651). English general. He served under *Gustavus Adolphus* in Germany during the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). Back in England, he joined the *Cavaliers* in support of *Charles I*. In 1643–1644 he served his king as overall commander of the Royalist armies. He was overshadowed for Charles by the early exploits of *Prince Rupert*.

S

***sabatons*.** Broad-toed foot armor made from articulated pieces of *plate*. It first appeared in Europe around 1320. Sabatons left only the heel exposed and most versions accommodated spurs.

Sablat, Battle of (June 10, 1619). In the second year of the *Thirty Years' War*, a contract "Protestant" army of 20,000 mercenaries under *Graf von Mansfeld* moved against the Catholic fortress of Budweis (České Budějovice) in Bohemia. It was intercepted en route by *Bucquoy* at Sablat. In a day-long fight, Mansfeld lost over 1,500 men along with his baggage train. See also *White Mountain, Battle of*.

Sachsen-Weimar, Bernhard von. See *Bernhard von Sachsen-Weimar*.

sack (of a city). See *Alexandria, Siege of*; *Ankara, Battle of*; *Byzantine Empire*; *Charles V, Holy Roman Emperor*; *chivalry*; *civilians*; *Cognac, League of*; *Constantinople, Siege of*; *Delhi Sultanate*; *Dorpat, Sack of*; *Drake, Francis*; *Drogheda, Sack of*; *Eighty Years' War*; *English Civil Wars*; *English Fury*; *French Civil Wars*; *Haarlem, Siege of*; *Holy Roman Empire*; *Hospitallers*; *Ivan IV*; *Jerusalem*; *Knights of St. Thomas Acon*; *Knights Templar*; *Maastricht, Siege of (1579)*; *Magdeburg, Sack of*; *military discipline*; *Mongols*; *Northern War, First*; *Papal States*; *Pappenheim, Graf zu*; *Parma, duque di*; *Rupert, Prince*; *Selim I*; *siege warfare*; *"Spanish Fury"*; *Tatars*; *Timur*; *Tunis*; *War of the Mantuan Succession*; *Wexford, Sack of*.

***sacre* (1).** See *saker*.

***sacre* (2).** The coronation ceremony of French kings, dating to Charlemagne, which emphasized the sacerdotal and consecrated nature of the monarchy (as against secular constitutional understandings). The ceremony was usually held at Reims and bound the "Most Christian King" of France to defense of

the Catholic faith as well as the realm. The coronation oath to ''expel from my land . . . all heretics,'' greatly aggravated the confessional struggle and search for peace during the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629).

Safavid Army. Iran had an available force that seldom exceeded 20,000 before 1600. Defeat is the true teacher in all war, however, and Iranian armies were regularly defeated in the 16th century by more modern and regular Ottoman troops. *Abbas I* therefore fundamentally reformed Iran's military, importing Ottoman technology and Western advisers (the *Shirley* brothers, and others) to set up a *standing army* comprised of firearms troops supported by artillery with ancillary cavalry. With this force Abbas retook most of Iraq from the Ottomans in the first quarter of the 17th century. See also *Baghdad, Siege of*; *Chaldiran, Battle of*; *ghazi*; *ghulams*; *Qizilbash*; *Sis, Battle of*.

Safavid Empire. The Safavid Empire was a successor state to Timurid Iran, the prior dynasty descended from *Timur* (Tamerlane). It was founded in Tabrīz in 1502 by Shah Ismail I (1486–1524, r.1502–1524). It was militantly *shī'a* in orientation and religious ideology, a *ghazi* stance kept fresh by the *Qizilbash*. It warred constantly with the Uzbeks and Ottomans, both orthodox sunni states. The more advanced *Ottoman Army* crushed the Safavids at *Chaldiran* (1514). The Iranians remained overly reliant on traditional cavalry archers for most of the 16th century, despite this defeat by Ottoman firearms infantry. An accommodation with the Ottomans was reached in the *Peace of Amasya* (1555). That same year, the Safavids removed their capital to Qazwin from Tabrīz. Peace lasted until an Ottoman offensive in 1578, timed to take advantage of a period of weak Safavid rule under Muhammad Khudabanda (r.1578–1587). Safavid military and political fortunes changed with the brilliant, expansionist, modernizing reign of *Abbas I* (r.1587–1629). Abbas moved the capital again, to Isfahan (1597), reformed the Safavid Army, won at *Sis* (1606), and took Iraq temporarily from the Ottomans. After his death the dynasty went into long-term decline, losing Iraq in 1638. It reigned in name only after 1722. That it lasted and excelled militarily before that was remarkable given that it was smaller and weaker than its great Ottoman enemy and had to fight on the Uzbek front as well.

safeguard the sea. ''Keeping the sea.'' An early attempt to build a battle fleet and use warships not just for escort but for patrolling sea lanes, notably the English Channel (the ''Narrow Sea'') and the key trade route from England to Gascony. It could also entail bringing an enemy fleet to decisive battle. Either by patrolling or battle, the essential idea was to preserve England and its seaborne trade from hostile attack. This was a largely unachievable goal until the creation of a permanent *Royal Navy* in the 16th and 17th centuries. See also *Henry V, of England*; *Hundred Years' War*.

sail. A count of ships, as in ''eighty enemy sail were sighted.''

sails. By the late 16th century, standard English terminology for sails was well-established, dividing them into two classes: square sails, set outside the *rigging* and hung across the ship; and ''fore-and-aft'' sails, set inside the rigging and lying along the centerline, moving side to side with the wind. The ''foresail'' was the lowest rigged square sail, held aloft by the foremast; the ''headsail'' was set on a *spar* forward of the foremast; the ''mainsail'' was the lowest and largest square sail, rigged to the main mast; the ''studding'' was a lightweight sail rigged outside the mainsail, or the topsail, to take extra wind on light days; the ''topsail'' was a square canvas rigged to the topmast; the ''topgallant'' was a smaller square sail, rigged to the topgallant mast, above the topsail. ''Stay sails'' were rigged between masts. Most ''square rig'' sails were actually rectangular, with their broad sides fitted along *yards* running horizontal to the mast. Yards rotated on the masts at right angles to the centerline of the ship, which allowed tacking into the wind. ''Fore-and-aft'' sails were subdivided into lateen sails, gaffsails, spritsails, and lugs.

Lateen sails, which greatly improved handling, were large triangular canvases hoisted to mastheads by long yards (or gaffs or sprits) secured to the deck with rope and tackle. Originating in the Mediterranean, they were adopted by Atlantic and Baltic shipbuilders during the 15th century and made already ''weatherly'' ships handle even better. Thereafter, lateen sails were integral in development of the great hybrid ships of sail: *galleons*, then *frigates* and the *man-of-war*. The ''spritsail'' was set below the bowsprit of a large ship, secured with ropes called bowlines. The spritsail-topsail was a signature rig of major warships by the first half of the 17th century. Spritsails were deployed solo in river barges. Staysails were lateen or lug in shape but fitted without yards beneath the stays. Lugs were square sails hung obliquely on their yard. In Europe, they were commonly used in ship's boats. In China, lugs were the main sail type on all *junks*. See also *make sail*; *masts*; *shorten sail*; *tackle*.

Suggested Reading: R. C. Anderson and Romola Anderson, *A Short History of the Sailing Ship* (1926; 2003).

Saint-Denis, Battle of (November 10, 1567). The only major battle of the second of the *French Civil Wars*. Under *Montmorency*, a Royal army of 3,000 horse and 16,000 foot (10,000 Parisian *militia* and volunteers, and 6,000 Swiss) moved out to fight a smaller *Huguenot* force that was blockading Paris. Led jointly by *Condé* and *Coligny*, the Protestants had just 2,000 horse and 4,000 foot, including some Scots mercenaries. The Huguenots formed a single line between two small villages, with Condé heading the cavalry on the right and Coligny commanding the van. Montmorency lined up his Parisians on the left, Swiss infantry and gendarme cavalry of the *compagnies de l'ordonnance* in the center under his direct command and more French infantry on his right. He began the fight with a bombardment. He then ordered an attack without assessing the damage, if any, done by his guns. The enthusiastic but inexperienced Parisians were easily repelled by Coligny's line of

arquebusiers. Then Condé charged the Royalist center, passing right through it. During the mêlée, Montmorency was fatally wounded. This loss greatly diluted the Catholic victory even though the Protestants were compelled to retreat south to link up with German mercenary reinforcements.

Saint-Quentin, Battle of (August 10, 1557). *Graaf van Egmont* invaded northern France out of the Habsburg Netherlands at the head of a Spanish army. *Montmorency* hurriedly raised a force of 26,000 and rushed to stop Egmont. He and *Coligny* tried to sneak around Egmont's flank but were caught fording the Somme. In a sharp action, the French lost 14,000 men and Montmorency and Coligny were taken prisoner. *Henri II* was forced to terms and Spanish military prestige soared across Europe. *Philip II* was now free to resume his twin crusades against Islam and Protestantism.

Saka. ''Water carriers.'' A specialized support unit within the *Janissary Corps* responsible for bringing water to fighting men on the battlefield and doubling as a hospital corps tending to wounded Janissaries.

saker. ''Sacre.'' An early, light *artillery* piece. Size and range varied considerably, but by the late 15th century, saker generally referred to a gun capable of throwing stone or iron five-pound *shot* to a maximum range of 350 meters. Accuracy was low, but sakers had the advantage of mobility and could be employed on carts for field combat. By the end of the 16th century, saker referred to a bigger gun class that was reasonably standardized at 1,600 pounds weight and capable of firing nine-pound shot to an effective range of 500 yards and a maximum range of 4,000. A *demi-saker* (or *minion*) was a smaller version of this type, which fired six-pound shot to an effective range of 450 yards.

salade. A light, globular infantry helmet. See also *sallet*.

Salāh al-Dīn (1137–1193). Né Yusuf ibn Ayyub. ''Saladin.'' Sultan of Egypt and Syria. His father was a Kurd and provincial governor at Tekrit under the *Seljuk Turks*. In the service of Nur al-Din, emir of Syria, Salāh al-Dīn served in Egypt from 1167 to 1168. He became G*rand Vizier* in 1169, under the tottering Fatamid *caliphs*. He deposed the *shī'a* dynasty of the Fatamids in 1171 and proclaimed himself sovereign in Egypt, at the head of the *mamlūk* slave soldiery imported from the north. He signaled the return of Egypt to *sunni* orthodoxy by nominally recognizing the Abbasid caliphs in Baghdad, a gesture which cost him nothing in terms of power but helped pacify the sunni majority in Egypt and consolidate his family's claim to the sultanate. From his base in Cairo he expanded westward across North Africa and eastward into the Arabian peninsula. After Nur al-Din's death he incorporated most of Syria and Palestine (but not the mountain fastnesses held by the *Druse* and *Assassins*) into his empire, along with Mesopotamia (Iraq). The Seljuks in Syria paid him homage and tribute as the leading prince of the Muslim world.

Salāh al-Dīn next turned to face the Christian threat, in the form of the *Crusader* states. The direct provocation was Christian castle rustling (*raiding*) and attacks on trade caravans. In 1187 Salāh al-Dīn inflicted a massive defeat on a Crusader army at Hattin, near Tiberias in Galilee. After the battle he ordered all *Hospitaller* and *Templar* prisoners killed. On October 3 his troops overwhelmed the remaining defenders of Jerusalem and recaptured the city for Islam. Subsequently, he battered down Crusader castles along the Syrian coast, earning respect among the Latins for his military skill and *chivalry*. A Christian counterattack, led in person by King Richard I (Coeur de Lion, 1157–1199) of England and King Philip of France, retook Acre in 1191, but was unable to retake Jerusalem in two advances against it. Richard defeated Salāh al-Dīn at Caesarea and Jaffa, exacted from him a three-year treaty and departed the Holy Land (to be later captured and held for ransom in Germany at Christian hands). Salāh al-Dīn is remembered not merely for his conquests but for wise and benevolent government, and for promoting economic prosperity through rebuilding of roads and canals. His Ayyubid dynasty ruled Egypt until 1250, when his successors were overthrown by the Mamlūk general Baybārs.

. . . Salāh al-Dīn inflicted a massive defeat on a Crusader army at Hattin, near Tiberius in Galilee.

Suggested Reading: M. C. Lyons and D. Jackson, *Saladin: Politics of the Holy War* (1982).

Salic Law. From ''Salian Franks.'' The Salic Law governed the succession in France from the 7th century, restricting it to male inheritance of ''Salic land,'' or the royal inheritance. This was thought critical to avoid infighting in a *feudal* society divided among military *fiefs*. Yet, only after the original Salic lands ceased to exist was the old law opportunistically cited by rival dynasts to deny the inheritance of the crown to one royal family as against another. The most important episode concerned rival French and English claims that contributed to the outbreak of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). The issue was again important during the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629). To deny the throne to the *Huguenot* prince, Henri de Navarre, the *Catholic League* asserted a radical doctrine that Catholicity trumped the Salic Law. However, in June 1593, the paramountcy of the Salic Law was reaffirmed by a majority of Catholic deputies in the Estates General. That, and Henri's abjuration of his Calvinist faith a month later, cleared the way for acceptance of Henri de Navarre to mount the throne as *Henri IV*, the legitimate king of France.

sallet. An open-faced helmet in wide use toward the end of the European Middle Ages. It was a German redesign of the Italian 'celata' or *barbuta* style. It could be worn with or without a visor.

salute. The origin of the military salute appears to be the raising of a *knight*'s visor to permit identification of opposing knights in *tournaments*. Once the

armored helm disappeared only the ghost of the gesture remained as a tribute to a fellow warrior.

salva guardia. ''Safe conduct'' passes sold to merchants or nobles wishing or needing to pass through a region controlled by an occupying army. A lucrative variant was a guarantee of protection offered by the commanding officer to specified buildings placed off limits to plundering upon receipt of a set fee. Entire fortified towns might buy protection for themselves and for outlying villages this way.

samurai. ''Those who serve.'' The warrior class of *feudal* Japan. At their height, hundreds of thousands served as retainers and vassals of the *daimyo*. They were elite warriors who fought as *light cavalry*, firing bows with deadly accuracy while riding small ponies. They were accompanied by ''grooms,'' the rough equivalent of *pages* or *esquires*, running on foot and armed with a *kumade* or *naginata*. Samurai were richly armored and decorated. Their battles were fought at arrow range until the supply was exhausted. Then they closed to fight with *swords*, trying to unhorse an opponent then dismounting to kill him and take his head. After battle an ''inspection of heads'' (''kubi jikken'') of enemies was carried out to determine individual rewards, usually a parceling of lands of the dead. Samurai were dedicated to a romantic ideal of self-sacrifice (''*kenshin*'') and code of honor (''*bushidō*''), that in the extreme denied surrender and called for ritual suicide by disembowelment (''seppuku'') to honor one's fallen daimyo or avoid the disgrace of capture, or when ordered to do so as a military punishment. This honor code and samurai loyalty broke down badly during the *Sengoku jidai* period. During the *Unification Wars*, especially under *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*, some samurai served as a de facto rural constabulary barracked in *jōkamachi* (castle towns) that were built along the inland roads. At this time many samurai shifted to spears from bows and the mounted charge against *ashigaru* arquebusiers was introduced. Reflecting the shift to guns and cannon in Japanese warfare, *Tokugawa Ieyasu* elevated skilled gunners to the rank of samurai. The last stand of the old samurai took place at *Osaka Castle* in 1615. Later, separation from the land and the long peace under the Tokugawa shoguns slowly reduced the samurai into a parasitic social class. Samurai had broad rights and legal exemptions and were kept at state expense, but many sank into decadence and poverty over time as they became militarily obsolete and socially useless. See also *Anegawa, Battle of*; *armor*; *gekokujō*; *Hakata Bay, Battle of (1274)*; *Hakata Bay, Battle of (1281)*; *Honganji fortress, Siege of*; *Nagashino, Battle of*; *Okehazama, Battle of*; *ronin*; *Sekigahara, Battle of*.

Suggested Reading: William Farris, *Heavenly Warriors: The Evolution of Japan's Military, 500–1300* (1992); K. Friday, *Hired Swords: The Rise of Private Warfare in Early Japan* (1992); Stephen Turnbull, *The Samurai: A Military History* (1977).

sanack bey. An Ottoman commander of local troops; not a major general.

Santa Cruz, marques de (1526–1588). Né Alvara de Bazán. Spanish admiral. In command of the reserve line at *Lepanto* (1571), his quick action saved the Christian center from a flank attack by Muslim *galleys* and helped turn the battle. He led an Atlantic fleet in support of *Philip II*'s conquest of Portugal (1580). Two years later he decisively defeated a French fleet off the Azores at *Terceira*, and fended off a second French fleet the next year. He was the leading proponent of a Spanish invasion of England from an early date. As the leading Spanish sailor of the day, he was given command of the king's great ''Enterprise of England'' but died before the *Invincible Armada* sailed. He was replaced by Medina Sidonia.

Santiago, Knights of. See *Knights of Santiago*.

***Santiago Matamoros*.** ''St. James the Moor Killer.'' The patron saint of the *Reconquista*, believed by Iberian Christians to have descended from heaven to lead the crusade against the Moors. His shrine at Compostella was among the most visited by pilgrims in Medieval Europe.

sap. In *siege warfare*, a tunnel and pit dug toward or underneath a *curtain wall* or other defensive work to undermine its integrity. ''Sapping'' was the process of digging covered trenches, usually zig-zagging in direction, leading ever closer to the enemy works to position offensive artillery or close with the wall to carry out *mining*. Saps were usually covered to provide protection from missiles.

Sapa Inca. ''Sole Inca.'' See *Inca Empire*.

sapper. A military engineer or laborer employed in undermining trenches or fortifications. See also *mining*; *sap*; *siege warfare*.

Saracens. Originally, Syrian nomadic tribes encountered and conquered by the Roman Empire. Later, a generic *Crusader* term for any Muslim warrior, especially the grand coalition assembled at the end of the 12th century by *Salāh al-Dīn* which retook *Jerusalem* and held off the Christian counterattack led by the *Norman* Crusader King, Richard I (''Coeur de Lion''). Saracens also fought as mercenaries for Christian rulers. *Friedrich II*, Holy Roman Emperor, planted a colony of some 35,000 Saracens near Lucera, Italy. For many decades this colony provided German emperors with 5,000 archers per year. This unit was wiped out in fighting with the Angevin monarchy at Benevento in 1266. See also *surcoat*.

Sardinia. In the 12th century, the Dorias of *Genoa* took control of Sardinia. In 1353 *Aragon* landed a force on the north of the island. In the campaign that followed the Aragonese forced the Genoese onto their *galleys* and off Sardinia. The island remained securely controlled by Aragon for 400 years.

Sarhu, Campaign of (1619). After suffering a deep *Manchu* (Qing) raid in 1618, the *Ming* organized a punitive expedition into *Manchuria*. The Ming made a basic mistake of advancing in four columns, whereas the Qing Army, led by *Nurgaci*, concentrated to achieve local superiority and defeat its enemy in detail. The first Han (Ming) column lost its war-wagon brigade at an unfordable river crossing; it was destroyed near Sarhu. As the Manchu van made contact with a second Ming column the next day, the Han troops panicked and ran, offering no resistance. The third Ming column withdrew on hearing news of the loss of the first two, but the fourth ran into an ambush and was wiped out. Manchu cavalry closed quickly in face of slow-loading Han gunmen and slaughtered the Chinese infantry. The loss finished the Ming in Manchuria. That had the odd and unintended effect of shortening Ming defensive lines, but it was not enough to save the dynasty from falling to the Qing in 1644.

sarmatian armor. Scale *armor* made with small iron plates sewn onto a deerskin leather jerkin in an overlapping manner, like scales on a fish. It was named for the region north of the Black Sea known in Roman times as Sarmatia. In Poland this style of armor was known as *karacena*. It was labor-intensive to produce and hence very expensive. For all that, it offered less protection than *plate*. It was usually worn as double armor, over *mail*. Polish nobles still wore such armor in battle as late as the 1760s.

sashimono. A small *samurai* banner, often displaying family or *daimyo* heraldic devices. It was attached to a bamboo pole inserted into brackets in back of a mounted warrior's upper armor.

saubannerzug. Bands of Swiss hooligans and young quasi-soldiers, frequently apprentices from the guilds, who gathered under an infamous *Banner* of a pig to raid local towns, threaten peasants, and extort money from merchants. They were militarily significant in that they provided weapons training to youths, principally with the *pike*, and in emergencies could be mustered to defend the cantons.

sauve-garde. See *salva guardia*.

Savonarola, Girolamo (1452–1498). Italian religious reformer. He was trained as a Dominican monk. He moved among several church postings in northern Italy without exhibiting a particular talent for religious oratory. In 1489 he was posted to Florence, where he was received by the devout as an inspired moralist. In 1493 he led a reformation of the Dominicans in Tuscany. His preaching became overtly political—essentially, apocalyptic and theocratic—that year. At first he greeted the French invasion at the start of the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559) as an opportunity for civic redemption. In the chaos that followed the French withdrawal, Savonarola and his followers (''Weepers'') set up a radical, puritanical theocracy in the guise of a ''Christian

commonwealth.'' Clothing and ornaments deemed temptations to sexual vice were destroyed in a ''bonfire of the vanities,'' public burnings of forbidden things that presaged subsequent burning of people who read censored books or upheld forbidden doctrines. Public hysteria was fed by the general reformist discontent of the times, the dislocations caused by the French invasion, and fresh outbreaks of plague. In 1495 Savonarola was called to Rome to answer charges of heresy but refused to go. He was excommunicated in 1497. The next year he oversaw a second great ''bonfire of the vanities.'' But when the *Medici* family returned to power, his days were numbered. The full powers of the church were brought to bear and charges of heresy and false prophesy made. Savonarola was tortured, confessed, recanted, and convicted. He was both hanged and burned on May 23, 1498.

Saxony. See *Georg, Johan*; *Prague, Peace of*; *Protestant Union*; *Reichskreis*; *Schmalkaldic League*; *Thirty Years' War*; *Westphalia, Peace of*.

scalping. Some revisionist historians ascribed the practice of scalping—slicing off the thin flesh and attached hair from the head of a dead or dying enemy—to European settlers. More recent research confirms the original view that this was a common, though not universal, practice of North American Indians that some Europeans later adopted. Scalps were war trophies, tokens of a brave's courage and success in battle. They were comparable to the *samurai* taking of enemy heads (''kubi jikken'') and the head-hunting of Balkan *stradiots* in the pay of Venice. Women's scalps were especially prized as a sign the warrior had raided deep into an enemy's lands and hurt him in his most vital interests: his home and family. Not all those who were scalped died, though most scalps were taken from the dead. The practice changed in the 17th century when colonial governments offered bounties for Indian scalps. This had the baleful effect of inducing unscrupulous whites to kill and scalp friendly or even allied Indians, which was always much easier than facing a hostile brave in combat. See also *Indian Wars*; *''skulking way of war.''*

scarp. See *escarp*.

schiltron. ''Wall of spears.'' A Scottish infantry formation of the 12th–14th centuries in which spearmen or pikemen formed circles in hedgehoglike defense against *heavy cavalry*. These formations could also move in offense and on occasion push even cavalry backward. See also *Bannockburn*; *caracole*; *Falkirk, Battle of*.

***schiopettari*.** Italian infantry of the 15th century armed with a variety of handguns. Until the 1430s they were mostly confined to garrison duty but by mid-century they were used in field campaigns. Their weapons produced so much smoke that the field of battle was often obscured.

Schladming, Battle of (1525). See *German Peasant War*.

Schlegelerbund. ''Mauling band.'' An alliance of largely reactionary nobles formed in the mid-14th century, an exclusive order of *knights* to oppose the independence of the cities of the *Swabian League*. They were ultimately defeated. See also *Swabian War*.

Schmalkaldic League. A defensive alliance of German Protestant princes and 20 *Reichsstädte* (free cities) formed in February 1531, to oppose the policies of *Charles V* after he ordered all Protestant territories to resume traditional religious practices as of April 1531. War in Germany was averted only because Charles was again distracted by war with the Ottomans. This led to a compromise at Nuremberg postponing action on the religious issue in Germany while Charles fought two more foreign wars with *Francis I* and *Suleiman I*. The German problem came to a head in the ''War of the Schmalkaldic League'' (1546–1547). On April 24, 1547, the *Duke of Alba* won a major victory for the Imperials by crushing the Leaguers at *Mühlburg* (1547) and capturing several leading princes. Magdeburg was one of the few Reichsstädte to stand successfully against the emperor, and so became a potent symbol of resistance to Catholic tyranny in following decades. Meanwhile, the Protestant dukes of Saxony cleaved to Charles, establishing a special relationship with the emperor that proved more rewarding for the Saxons than Protestant solidarity for nearly a century prior to the *Thirty Years' War*.

Schnepper. A 16th-century German *crossbow* that fired a round bullet instead of a *quarrel*. It came with a steel stock. Some versions could be modified to also shoot quarrels.

Schultheiss. The officer responsible for overseeing all legal matters in a *Landsknechte* company or regiment, including reading out and enforcing the *Articles of War* and rulings by the *Provost*.

schutterijen. Dutch civic *militia*. They were far better troops than most militia and have been described by one historian as a military ''elite of the second rank.'' Recruited from among the bourgeoisie at a rate of 100–150 men per 5,000 population, they regularly drilled, paraded, patrolled, and fought. See also *Alkmaar, Siege of*; *Eighty Years' War*; *Maurits of Nassau*; *uniforms*.

Schweizerdegen. A medium-length *sword* with a simple pommel and cross-guard that was favored and made famous by Swiss mercenaries.

Schweizerdolch. A long *dagger* carried by Swiss mercenaries. It became the main symbol of their status as professional warriors.

schynbalds. *Plate armor* positioned to protect the lower leg. It was introduced during the 14th century.

scorched earth. See *Abbas I*; *ashigaru*; *Black Prince*; *castles, on land*; *chevauchée*; *Ecorcheurs*; *Edward III*; *French Civil Wars*; *Hundred Years' War*; *Ōnin War*; *Mongols*; *raiding*; *routiers*; *Sengoku jidai*; *siege warfare*; *Timur*; *Unification Wars*; *wasters*.

Scotland. Like their English counterparts, Scottish kings had recourse to feudal service obligations of an enfeoffed nobility. In addition, there was a tradition of communal military service among the free male population known as ''communis exercitus'' or the ''servitium scottianum.'' During and after the *Scottish Wars* of the 13th–14th centuries, Scotland cleaved to the '*Auld alliance* with France, which presented a natural alliance out of mutual propinquity to a common enemy. That proved of little worth at *Flodden Field* (1513) where an English army sent north by the young *Henry VIII* defeated the Scots, who lost their young king, James IV (1488–1513), and many lairds and clansmen that day. Another day of defeat and despair came in 1547, at *Pinkie Cleugh*. The association with France was temporarily strengthened by *England*'s turn toward the reformed religion under Henry and then *Elizabeth I*, which alienated Catholics in Scotland and France who shared ties of kinship and faith through *Mary Stuart* and the *Guise*. It broke down, however, as more Scots converted to a severe version of the new religion during the full-throated *Protestant Reformation*. The dour preachings of *John Knox* and the new national faith of the *Covenanters* reshaped the Church in Scotland into the Presbyterian Kirk. The historical prop of the 'Auld alliance and French support of Scottish political independence was kicked away.

Elizabeth kept the fires of dissent alive with money and subversion of Scottish political stability.

Matters came to a head during the reign of Elizabeth I and the interrupted reign of Mary Stuart, who was supported by Catholic powers in her claim to the Scottish and English thrones but was opposed by many of her Scottish subjects for her Catholic faith and ties to foreign powers. Elizabeth kept the fires of dissent alive with money and subversion of Scottish political stability. In the end, Mary Stuart lost the Scottish throne and her personal freedom (1567), then her life to an English executioner (1587). Her son was elevated as James VI of Scotland (1566–1625) and later as *James I* of England (1567–1625), mounting the southern throne after the childless Elizabeth died in 1603. This *union of crowns* between England and Scotland brought peace along the border. However, trouble lay ahead: the Lowlands accepted union with the ancient enemy, to which the Lords had grown closer and more alike over the centuries from shared holdings on either side of the Tweed; but the Highlands remained wild, hardly governed at all, and fiercely independent and resentful of England.

For a time this social and cultural division among Scots was obscured by the dominance of the religious question in Scottish and international politics. During the *Thirty Years' War* large numbers of Scots served as *mercenaries* in

various armies. Arcane doctrinal and ecclesiastical disputes pulled Scotland deep into the *English Civil Wars* (1639–1651) as Scottish nobles and Covenanters backed the English king, *Charles I*, then betrayed him to Parliament, then fought Parliament and the military dictator, *Oliver Cromwell*. Following losses at *Dunbar* (1650) and Worcester (1651), thousands of Scots prisoners were transported to the West Indies as indentured laborers and Scotland became permanently subservient to England. See also *Argyll, Marquis of*; *Bannockburn*; *Burnt Candlemas*; *chevauchée*; *Edward III*; *Falkirk, Battle of*; *gallowglass*; *Halidon Hill, Battle of*; *Montrose, Marquis of*; *Otterburn, Battle of*; *penal settlements*; *redshanks*; *Stirling Bridge, Battle of*; *Wallace, William*; *Whiggamore Rising*.

Suggested Reading: I. Cowen, *The Scottish Reformation* (1978); David Stevenson, *The Scottish Revolution, 1637–1644* (1973).

Scots Archers. A famously fierce, and fiercely anti-English, unit of Sottish troops closely allied to the French crown. It was in regular French military service from 1419 when 150 Scots *men-at-arms* and 300 archers landed at *La Rochelle*. Another 17,000 followed during the final decades of the *Hundred Years' War*. The Scots provided what little backbone the dauphin (the future *Charles VII*) exhibited in military affairs prior to the advent of *Jeanne d'Arc*. See also *uniforms*; *Verneuil, Battle of*.

Scottish Wars (13th–14th centuries). *Edward I* sought English *overlordship* in Scotland, in part to force the Scots to accept ruthless taxes he needed to impose in order to pay for his wars in Gascony and Flanders. He repeatedly send lumbering armies north without sufficient attention to problems of supply by sea. On the Scottish side, these early wars saw one of the first efforts by a medieval government to address problems of military organization in a comprehensive manner. The Scots generally avoided battle, wisely letting repeated English failures of *logistics* wither most offensives. Still, battle was sometimes unavoidable. In 1296 Edward I reduced Berwick Castle, crushed a Scots army at Dunbar (April 27), captured Edinburgh, forced John de Baliol to abdicate, sent the Coronation Stone of Scone to England, and proclaimed himself overlord and king of Scotland. However, at *Stirling Bridge* (1297) the Scots won a surprising victory over Edward's heavy horse, partly as a result of the inspired leadership of *William Wallace* and in part because of blunt English cavalry tactics, overconfidence, and error. The next year, at *Falkirk*, the weight of English numbers and *longbows* overwhelmed the Scots. But once again, bad logistics forced Edward to withdraw before full victory was achieved. Another English campaign in 1301 produced no battles and no result. Fortunately for Edward, the French were stunned by the Flemings at *Courtrai* (1302), which freed English troops in Gascony and others intended for Flanders to campaign in Scotland. His 1304 campaign was successful: all the Scottish lairds capitulated and Stirling Castle fell.

The Scottish Wars waxed and waned over the following years and decades, lasting more than a century. After Wallace's execution in 1305 the Scots were

led by Robert Earl of Carrick, crowned Robert I (Bruce), at Scone in 1306. That challenge to English overlordship provoked Edward I to send another army north, to Perth. It was met at Methven by Robert and a small Scots army that was easily crushed. That sent Robert into exile in the northern isles (where the legend says he was inspired to renewed resistance by watching the determined web-building efforts of a country spider). More likely, he did not enjoy residence in the isolated and uncomfortable northern isles. Robert returned to Scotland to raise an army and fought the English at Loudon Hill (1307). There, his *schiltrons* met the rash and headlong charge of English heavy horse and won handily, inflicting serious casualties to English knighthood. For seven years following the death of Edward I, just after Loudon Hill, England was governed by the weak Edward II. At first he left Scotland alone. That permitted Robert to consolidate his claim by marrying the daughter of King Philip (''The Fair'') of France, confirming the '*Auld alliance*. Next, Robert rousted most English garrisons along the frontier and the Tweed. The Scots boldly laid siege to the last two English strongholds, the great castles at Berwick and Stirling, in 1314. That provoked Edward II to send north the largest English army ever to invade Scotland. The Scots used tactics learned from the Flemings to best the English cavalry with numerically inferior infantry at *Bannockburn*, five miles from Stirling.

Edward II spent the rest of his reign a detested and severely weakened king. He gained marginally from a civil war over the succession in Scotland between King David II and Edward de Baliol and ''The Disinherited'' (Scots nobles). After the Scots defeated another English army at Myton (September 20, 1319), a brief peace was agreed that lasted into 1322. With a baronial revolt underway in England, ''The Bruce'' crossed the border to raid northern England in force. Edward II learned something from his defeats and altered his tactics sufficiently to win over his barons at *Boroughbridge* (1322). Then he advanced into Scotland to retaliate against the Scottish invasion. But ''The Bruce'' chased Edward out, routing him at Byland (October 14, 1322). Edward formally accepted Scotland's independence and a long truce was agreed.

In 1327 Edward II was deposed and murdered by an invasion force organized by his Queen, Isabella. In what became popularly known as the ''Cowardice Peace'' or ''Shameful Peace'' of 1328 (officially, the Treaty of Northampton), *Edward III* was forced to renounce his claim to the Scottish throne. The young king overthrew the regency in 1330, rejected the settlement, revived England's claim to overlordship in Scotland and resumed the Scottish Wars. At Dupplin Moor (1332), a Scots host ten times the size of the English army it faced was routed, leaving 3,000 dead on the field to go along with the deaths of the Regent of Scotland and four out of five Scottish earls (the fifth was captured). Why this extraordinary victory by a far smaller force? Because Edward III had implemented an advanced military doctrine that led to a true infantry revolution in English arms. He tried out his new ideas in Scotland, before carrying them across the English Channel to France during the first decades of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). In both regions he used the old trick of a *chevauchée* to provoke his enemy to a battle in

which he held to the defensive and slaughtered his foes with massed archery and dismounted *men-at-arms*. That is how he beat the Scots again, at *Halidon Hill* (1333), despite a 2:1 disadvantage in raw numbers. An Edwardian army drove another chevauchée into Scotland in 1346, which again provoked the Scots to fight. This time they lost not just the battle but also their king, David II, at Neville's Cross (October 17, 1346). That battle was nearly lost for England when the archer wings broke, but when the men-at-arms held the center the archers rallied and returned to the fight. King David was held for a literal "king's ransom" to be paid by Scotland over ten years.

The loss of their king did not dismay the Scots. Also, they were more successful in war at sea where Highland *galleys* raided down the English coasts and the Channel Islands. And a Scots army beat back the 1356 *Burnt Candlemas* chevauchée led by Edward III in person. The Scots took the offensive as Edward III settled into a long and decadent decline, but they could only hope to punish, not conquer their English foe. For several decades more the Scottish wars were marked mainly by cross-border raids and skirmishes and occasional deeper chevauchées, along with harassment and capture of *prizes* at sea. Major fighting erupted again in 1388 when a Franco-Scottish army invaded northern England and fought a rare night battle at *Otterburn* (August 15). The Scots continued to raid unchallenged along the border for another fifteen years after that. They were badly beaten, however, at Homildon Hill (September 1402) by an English army utilizing large numbers of longbowmen who stood back and decimated the Scottish ranks with long-range missile fire, softening them up for a heavy cavalry charge. The Scots were rescued from further defeats by the outbreak of civil war in England, from the deposition of Richard II in 1399 to the fight at Shrewsbury in 1403.

Suggested Reading: E. Miller, *War in the North* (1960); Ranald Nicholson, *Edward III and the Scots: Formative Years of a Military Career, 1327–1335* (1965).

Scottish Wars (15th–17th centuries). See *Charles I, of England*; *Covenanters*; *Cromwell, Oliver*; *Elizabeth I*; *English Civil Wars*; *Henry VIII, of England*; *Mary Stuart, Queen of Scots*; *Pinkie Cleugh, Battle of*; *prisoners of war*; *Scotland*; *Wars of the Roses*.

scourers. Lancastrian term for *light cavalry* used during the *Wars of the Roses* in England.

scurvy. See *cruising*; *disease*; *Exploration, Age of*; *rations*.

scutage (*scutagium*). Cash payments to a liege lord or king in lieu of military "service in the host." Rather than award of a *fief* and jurisdiction in return for vassal military service, nobles recruited *men-at-arms*, or archers and other military professionals, and paid them to serve in the liege lord's host. This system was progressively adopted in England from the 12th century but later in France and Germany. It was not used in the Crusader states in the "Holy Land," however. There, a knightly vassal wishing to escape or limit military

service was required to surrender his fief for a year and a day, rather than pay a cash settlement. This harsher system and deterrent penalty was made necessary by the acute shortage of military manpower in the Latin kingdoms established by the first *Crusades*. See also *feudalism*; *servitium debitum*.

scuttle. To sink a ship by drilling, cutting, or knocking a hole in its hull below the waterline. This might be done to deny the ship to an enemy or more often, to sink it as a *blockship* in a river mouth or harbor.

Sea Beggars (*"Gueux"*). They took their sobriquet from a famous insult delivered to 200 nobles by *Margaret of Parma* on April 5, 1566, as she rejected their ''Petition of Compromise.'' The Beggars established a naval force in 1568, as a rebellion against Spain broke out that ultimately became the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648). Most Sea Beggar officers were Hollanders and Frisians; a few hailed from the south. The ferocious anti-Catholicism of the Sea Beggars was well-represented by their chosen symbol, a crescent Moon with the bold inscription ''Better Turkish Than Roman.'' They often killed prisoners and clergy with special cruelty. They were not highly regarded by all Protestants, either. Dutch Calvinists admired Sea Beggar martial feats but dreaded their presence in port and bad moral example: many Sea Beggar crews were little short of pirates in their manners and sexual habits. From 1568 to 1572, the Sea Beggars operated out of England against Spanish shipping in the Channel, under *letters of marque* issued by *William the Silent* in his sovereign capacity as Prince of Orange. The *Duke of Alba* countered by garrisoning the mouths of the Scheldt and Maas. In early 1572, *Elizabeth I*, under great pressure from Spain, closed English harbors to the Sea Beggars. In need of a new haven, on April 1, 1572, the Sea Beggars took *Brill*, then Flushing, and with the aid of local *schutterijen* held out against Alba's counterattack. In 1573 the Sea Beggars defeated an inland Spanish fleet and lifted the *Siege of Alkmaar*, then bested Alba's ships and a fleet from royalist Amsterdam at the Zuider Zee (October 11, 1573). In 1574 they finally overran the last Spanish garrison on Walcheren, at Middelburg, then dramatically lifted the *Siege of Leiden*. They failed to lift the *Siege of Antwerp* in 1585, despite a determined amphibious effort. From the 1590s they dominated the Spanish in the Channel and open sea, blockaded the Scheldt estuary and Flemish ports, privateered against Iberian shipping on several oceans, supported the Dutch invasion of Brazil and capture of Portuguese entrepôts in the Far East, and aided the rise of the United Provinces to globally dominant commercial and naval power in the 17th century. See also *Boisot, Louis*; *fireships*; *French Civil Wars*; *Tromp, Maarten van*.

. . . many Sea Beggar crews were little short of pirates in their manners and sexual habits.

Sea Brothers. See *Hospitallers*; *Rhodes, Siege of (1444)*; *Rhodes, Siege of (1479–1480)*; *Rhodes, Siege of (1522–1523)*.

Seacroft Moor, Battle of (1643). See *Fairfax, Thomas*.

sea dogs. *Privateers* and sometime *pirates* who earned a deserved reputation for ruthlessness and often indiscriminate violence at sea. Most were seamen of the ports of the West Country of England where skilled sailors joined common cause with aggressive local gentry, enjoyed protection by the local courts and magistrates, and often were backed financially and legally by the monarch. The most famous English sea dog captains were *Francis Drake*, *John Hawkyns*, *Walter Raleigh*, and *Martin Frobisher*, all of whom preyed on Iberian shipping with (though at other times, without) the blessing of *Elizabeth I* in her protracted war with *Philip II*. The Spanish viewed the sea dogs as common pirates, which they surely were in spirit and in practice; they also feared them greatly, especially Drake (''El Draque''). Piracy shaded into privateering when it was formally sanctioned and heavily invested in by the Queen. The crossing of class lines, the importance of privateering to the English economy, and the alliance of merchants with the monarch reflected and encouraged an emergent English patriotism and defiant Protestantism. Even so, profit was first and nearly always the prime motivator of these men, as was best shown during the Armada fight in 1588 when Drake slipped away from the battle to escort a Spanish *prize* into port.

Suggested Reading: Angus Konstam and Angus McBride, *Elizabethan Sea Dogs, 1560–1605* (2000); Neville Williams, *The Sea Dogs: Privateers, Plunder and Piracy in the Elizabethan Age* (1975).

sea power. See *ships*; *war at sea*.

Sea Victuallers. Swedish *pirates* in the Baltic, based on Gotland, who preyed on ships of the *Hanse*. They were driven off Gotland in 1398 by the *Teutonic Knights*, after which *Denmark* undertook to suppress them and protect the Baltic trade.

seclusion decrees. See *Japan*; *Kakure Kirishitan*.

secret. A mid-17th-century iron skull cap, sewn (secreted) inside a cloth hat. With full helmets out of fashion and no longer useful against *muskets*, this hidden head *armor* still provided some protection against sword cuts in a cavalry-to-cavalry fight.

Sefarad. The Hebrew name for Spain before the *expulsion of the Jews* in 1492.

sefer bahşişi. A campaign bonus customarily paid to active troops of the *Kapikulu Askerleri*.

Sejm. The assembly (Diet) of the Commonwealth of Poland-Lithuania. It had an upper Senate and a lower Chamber of Envoys. In 1505, the statute ''Nihil Novi'' (''Nothing New'') was passed, forbidding any legislation without

consent of the Sejm. Through this law and institution the nobility (*szlachta*) exercised great influence over monarchs, even deciding the size, command, and financing of armies. See also *Lithuania, Grand Duchy of*; *Poland*.

sejmiki. Professional troops, whether native Polish or foreign *mercenaries*, paid for by Sejmiki: provincial assemblies modeled on the *Sejm* and replicating its baronial autonomy on the local level.

sekban. Ottoman infantry, with some mounted as dragoons to keep up with *timariot* cavalry. Sekban units were formed from frontier auxiliaries in the Balkans at first; later they were recruited via universal conscription (''nefer-i am'') in Anatolia, to a wartime strength of about 10,000. They were deployed only temporarily, to supplement the permanent forces of the *Kapikulu Askerleri*. They shared their name with the ''sekban'' of the *Janissaries*, but otherwise were unrelated to that elite professional corps. At the end of campaigns it was sometimes hard to disband sekban infantry who wished to remain employed by the sultan. By the mid-17th century, some outside observers considered them to be better troops than the later Janissaries, as the Corps succumbed to a certain decadence. Others disagreed. See also *Celâli Revolts*.

Sekigahara, Battle of (September 15, 1600). After months of careful planning by *Tokugawa Ieyasu* nearly 170,000 troops met in this climactic battle of a century of *daimyo* warfare of the *Sengoku jidai*. Ieyasu led a coalition eastern army of 75,000 men in a final battle that established his control over Japan, confirming his succession to *Toyotomi Hideyoshi* (d.1598) and blocking the path to power of his minor son, Toyotomi Hideyori. The enemy was a western coalition of 82,000 led by Ishida Mitsunari, nominally backing Hideyori. Ieyasu maneuvered to bypass the western army in Ōgaki castle during the night, but it moved to meet him in a narrow valley at Sekigahara. The fight began at 8:00 a.m. after a thick fog lifted that had obscured the valley. The outcome was foreordained by secret agreements between Ieyasu and key western army daimyo who sat and watched the battle from on high, without joining it. That left just 30,000 Toyotomi loyalists to fight the Tokugawa. At noon one of the traitor Toyotomi daimyo revealed his shift in allegiance by charging down the mountainside into the Toyotomi right flank. This treachery was repeated by other commanders, serially collapsing the Toyotomi line. After six hours of heavy fighting Ieyasu won a crushing victory. Sekigahara was the culminating fight of the *Unification Wars*, but not the end. That finally came when Ieyasu destroyed the last *samurai* holdouts at *Osaka Castle* in 1615.

Selim I (1467–1520). ''The Grim.'' Ottoman Sultan. In 1512 he deposed his father, *Bayezid II*, with the help of the *Janissary Corps*. He put to death several brothers and nephews, eliminating all potential claimants to the throne. The bloody path to his ascension left Selim in debt to the Corps his whole reign.

Intent on imposing hardline religious conformity within his realm, something alien to most Ottoman sultans, in 1514 Selim ordered a mass slaughter of *shī'ia* and other heterodox Muslims preparatory to campaigning against the *Safavids* in Iran. He defeated the Iranians at *Chaldiran* in 1514 and went on to crush the Kurds of Iraq. However, in 1515 his *kuls* (including Janissaries) refused his orders to invade Syria, complaining of the desert heat and the lateness of the campaign season. He returned the next year to destroy a *mamlūk* army out of Egypt at *Marj Dabiq*. That enabled him to secure Syria, Palestine, and the Hejaz to the Empire. In early 1517 the Janissaries twice more defeated firearms-abjuring mamlūk armies, at *al-Raydaniyya* in January and *Giza* in April. Selim bombarded Cairo, destroyed much of it, then let his men sack the city. He killed all potential leaders among the Mamlūks, overthrew the last Abbasid *caliph*, and brought Egypt into the empire as a tributary province. He was succeeded and surpassed by his son, *Suleiman I*, who repudiated his father's religious intolerance and eastern aggressions but kept the new provinces that he inherited and further consolidated them within the Empire.

Selim II (1524–1574). Ottoman sultan. Decadent and incompetent successor to his father, *Suleiman I*. During his reign but not because of it, the *Ottoman Empire* took control of the remainder of the Arabian peninsula (it already held the Hejaz) in 1570. He occupied Cyprus in 1571 which provoked a Christian alliance to counterattack: Selim lost his whole fleet at *Lepanto* as a result. He also lost three-quarters of a large army to a new enemy, *Muscovy*, which he sent on an ill-fated expedition to Astrakhan.

Seljuk Turks. A nomadic warrior people from Central Asia who constructed a large empire on top of prior Arabicized peoples and *caliphates* in the 11th–12th centuries. They were named for Seljuk (''Selchuk'') who led them in conquest of the failing empire of the Turkic and Islamicized Ghaznavids in Afghanistan and the Punjab (1040). The Seljuks were drawn into Anatolia by the usual forces of Central Asian martial expansion: overpopulation, land hunger, and access to steppe horses and military technology that made *raiding* settled civilizations an attractive way of life. They quickly overran northern Iraq, taking Baghdad in 1055. Contact with the Abbasid caliphs led to a military alliance against the *shī'ia* of Iran, cemented in a dynastic marriage following conversion of the leading Seljuks to *sunni* Islam. The Seljuks next overran Armenia. Their greatest and most portentous victory was won over the Byzantines by Sultan Alp Arslan (r.1065–1072) at Manzikert (1071). This stunning victory was followed by further expansion under Sultan Malik Shah (r.1072–1092). The Seljuks governed their ethnically and religiously diverse empire within a tradition of broad tolerance of Christians and Jews, even during the *Crusades*. They were far more intolerant of heterodox Muslims, the shī'ia, whom the freshly converted and hence fervently orthodox Seljuks regarded as heretics and with whom they fought all along their Iranian frontier. The Seljuk empire was never fully consolidated and was sharply

weakened by the depredations of Asia Minor by the *Mongols*. The Seljuks were superceded by the *Ottoman Empire*, the creation of one of their Anatolian clients, Osman (1280–1326). See also *Normans*; *Piyadeğan militia*; *Turks*.

Suggested Reading: Mehmet Koprulu, *The Seljuks of Anatolia*, Gary Leiser, trans. (1992).

Seminara, Battle of (June 28, 1495). An early battle of the *Italian Wars*. A Franco-Swiss army defeated a Spanish force under *Gonzalo di Córdoba*. Following the battle *Charles VIII* still held Naples, which he had seized in February. See also *Cerignola, Battle of*.

Sempach, Battle of (July 9, 1386). The Austrians were led at Sempach by the young Duke Leopold III, who sought to reassert Austrian control over the Swiss and avenge the humiliation suffered at the hands of the *Forest Cantons* at *Morgarten* (1315). Leopold moved against the Swiss with about 4,000 *knights*, including a number of *mercenaries*, split into two columns. The Swiss Confederation, much expanded since Morgarten, fielded an opposing force (mainly from Lucerne) of 1,600 men. They advanced in the soon-to-be famous *Swiss square*. At the head of the lead Austrian column, Leopold ordered his knights to dismount, form ranks, and face the approaching Swiss van with lances level. The Swiss were mainly *halberdiers* with a few hand gunners, and were only partly protected by *pikemen* (the Swiss did not routinely deploy large numbers of pikers until after *Arbedo* in 1422). At first, the Austrians held their own and killed many lightly armed and armored Swiss. But the exceptional maneuverability of Swiss formations and tactics came into play as a separate detachment was formed from the rear ranks and sent to attack into the Austrian flank. This side assault was reinforced by fresh troops arriving at the run from Uri. The Austrian line was breached: Swiss halberdiers pushed into the gap swinging weapons at head height, beheading and mutilating hundreds of knights. The Austrians fought constricted by their armor and with an awkward main weapon—the *lance*—never meant for use on foot. Their rear ranks and the second column panicked as the Swiss broke through the front ranks. The Austrian infantry turned and ran, taking most of the wagons and nearly all the horses with them. Abandoned and on foot, knights were slaughtered en masse by the utterly unmerciful Swiss. It is thought that 1,800 Austrians—mostly knights, and including Leopold III—were killed, to just 200 Swiss.

Sempach, Covenant of (1393). An agreement among the Swiss cantons to coordinate their military efforts brought about by the external threat from Austria and Burgundy but also in the wake of Swiss successes at *Morgarten* (1315), *Laupen* (1339), and *Sempach* (1386). It is sometimes said to mark the beginning of the *Swiss Army* as a national force. In addition to the usual provisions and pledges required to facilitate joint military action, it was agreed that training of Swiss troops would continue on a canton-by-canton basis. The covenant also elaborated a fairly advanced code of conduct,

including protection of designated holy places (churches, shrines, monasteries) and of civilians (''defenseless persons''). It did so not to limit collateral damage or to encourage moral behavior, but to reduce conflict between men from different cantons by regulating in advance each man's share of goods acquired through *plunder*.

Sengoku daimyo. Japanese provincial warlords (*daimyo*) in the *Sengoku jidai* period.

***Sengoku jidai* (1467–1568).** ''Country at War'' or ''Warring States.'' The anarchic period in Japanese history starting with the *Ōnin War*. The Ashikaga shogunate was reduced to impotence while regional *daimyo* waged protracted war to satisfy predatory *samurai* greedy for conquered lands and willing to prostitute their vassalage to get it. So unusual was this phenomenon of once honorable and loyal samurai switching sides on the eve of a battle and behaving little better than *ronin*, and so revolutionary were its political, economic, and social upheavals, the period is also called *gekokujō* (''the lower overthrowing the higher''). That term denotes the new role of peasants and townsfolk in Japanese warfare, in which they participated in numbers hitherto unknown and using brutal tactics of scorched earth and razing hundreds of castles and towns. Most fighting was seasonal and local rather than national with chronic small battles rather than large decisive ones. There were few expensive or protracted sieges. Some 40,000 forts (*honjō* and *shijō*), were built by all sides. While these were easily reduced by fire, remote *jōkaku* and *yamajiro* in the mountains, fortified monasteries, and strong *jōkamachi* (castle towns) astride inland roads were harder to overcome. The period came to an end with *Oda Nobunaga*'s triumphal entry into Kyoto during the *Unification Wars*. See also *akutō*; *ashigaru*.

. . . Japanese warfare . . . using brutal tactics of scorched earth and razing hundreds of castles and towns.

Seoul, Battle of (1592). See *Korea*; *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*.

serasker. See *serdar*.

Serbia. See *Austria*; *Kosovo, Battle of*; *Maritza River, Battle of*; *Murad I*; *Ottoman Empire*.

Serb Sindin ("Serbian Defeat"), Battle of (1371). See *Maritza River, Battle of*.

serdar. Or ''serasker.'' The personal command representative of an Ottoman sultan, placed in full charge of the army according to terms laid out in a diploma of office. Even when a sultan went on campaign the serdar retained control of most deployment and tactical decisions and had full powers to punish troops. Because the post was so powerful it was an object of intense competition among senior *kuls*.

***Serdengeçti* (*serden-geçtiler*).** ''Head riskers.'' Elite, all-volunteer Ottoman commando and assault units. They were recruited among the *Janissaries* and *sipahis*. They undertook the most dangerous assignments in return for promises of unusual material rewards, defined in advance in written contracts. Some led the wild and frantic Janissary charges that so often overcame enemy infantry; others were the first through a breach in the enemy's wall or over it on scaling ladders. Their casualty rates frequently exceeded 70–90 percent. See also *Kapikulu Askerleri*; *uniforms*.

serfdom. See *Cossacks*; *feudalism*; *German Peasant War*; *Muscovy, Grand Duchy of*; *Poland*; *Ukraine*.

sergeant. A rank common among *men-at-arms*. In France it was replaced by *esquire* by the end of the 13th century. In England, sergeants were distinct from squires (esquires) and *valets*. Elsewhere, as with the *Military Orders*, they formed the real backbone of medieval armies.

Seritsa River, Battle of (January 1501). See *Muscovy, Grand Duchy of*.

serpentine. This term had three distinct meanings in the medieval and early modern periods. First, it was used about early mealed (as opposed to *corned*) gunpowder in apparent reference to the presumed Satanic origins of a technology whose employment of fire in war the *Catholic Church* regarded as the inspiration of the devil and tried to ban. Next, the *matchlock* firing device on a mid-15th-century *arquebus* had a serpentine shape and the term attached to it. Finally, serpentine described a class of small cannon that fired half-pound shot to an effective range of 250 yards and a maximum range of 1,000 yards. Serpentine also qualified other gun types such as *cannon-serpentine*.

serving the vent. See *wounds*.

***servitium debitum*.** The feudal military obligations of a medieval European lord and his *knights* and retainers (*men-at-arms*). It invoked three main obligations. The first was *chevauchée*, or riding service, the basic means of assembling early medieval cavalry. This faded out of existence over time. The second duty under the servitium debitum was ''watch'' or garrison service. Over time, this too was replaced by a substitution of money (tax) in lieu of service. Finally, there was ''service in the host'' or the responsibility to give 40 days free military service when called to arms by one's liege lord. Once more, over time this was eroded by the practice of instead paying *scutage*, in England in particular. Elsewhere, it was undermined by the success of vassals in placing sharp geographical and time limits on their service, which forced monarchs to seek out professional troops instead. By 1300, recourse to the servitium debitum was seldom made in England or France. See also *English armies*; *feudalism*; *French armies*; *Imperial Army*; *war finance*.

servitium scottianum. See *Scotland*.

servitor classes. The *Tatar* servitor system was called *soyughal*. Ottoman servitor classes included *askeri*, *sipahis*, and *timariots*. Servitors in the Muscovite military and social system could be patrimonial (votchina), principally the *boyars*, or non-hereditary (pomest'e). A servitor cavalry (*pomest'e cavalry*) was established by *Ivan III* in the late 15th century. These horsemen were recruited from a new landholding class seeded by Ivan over the countryside to control newly conquered lands, in exchange for several months per year of military service. Often, this involved patrolling the semi-fortified southern frontier against raids by Tatars or *Cossacks*. Pomeshchiki horsemen were required to provide their own mounts, weapons, and supplies. *Ivan IV* set up a servitor palace guard of infantry musketeers, the *strel'sty*, in 1550. Their special privilege was exemption from taxation. Other servitor units included artillery. Servitors on the southern frontier of the Muscovite empire had to serve south of the ''chertva lines'' in one of eight regular patrols made by 70–100 horsemen each. They departed on precise schedules from April through November, serving about three months active duty. See also *feudalism*; *fief*; *knight*.

sesto. ''Sixth.'' A division of the northern Italian communes, each tasked to produce units of infantry and cavalry for the common defense.

Sforza, Ludovico (1451–1508). Although he was formally Duke of Milan only from 1494 to 1499, he governed in fact from 1480. His alliance with Charles VIII of France helped trigger the French invasion of Italy that began the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559). In 1495 he tried to switch sides, leading the French to depose him. He mediated an end to the *Swabian War* (1499) in order to release Swiss troops for his own effort to recover Milan. In 1500 he was defeated at Novara and captured. He died in a French prison.

Sforza, Maximilian (1493–1530). ''Massimiliano.'' *Ludovico Sforza* lost Milan to France in 1499. In 1512, the Swiss (nominally as members of the *Holy League*) captured Milan in the name of his son, Maximilian. The Swiss in fact kept control of Milan, milking it for themselves until a stunning defeat at *Marignano* (1515). After that Milan reverted to French control. See also *Francis I*; *Italian Wars*.

shaffron. See *chanfron*.

shallop. Originally, a small sloop-like warship, predominantly a cruiser in shallow coastal water. In the 16th–17th centuries this term was used more often about a small class of ship's boat.

shell-keep. A round stone *keep* built on top of, or around, an older *motte*.

shells. During the early 16th century, experiments were made with hollow explosive projectiles fired from cannon; these were called ''shells'' for the obvious reason. Early shells were fitted with primitive wicks or fuses. These were highly risky as they had to be lighted at the same time the gun (usually, a *mortar*) was loaded. They were also inaccurate since nonstandardized fuses burned at irregular rates or according to the skill and experience of the master gunner. A fast-burning or short (cut) fuse might explode the shell before it reached its target while a really short fuse could detonate the shell inside the gun barrel. A slow or long-burning fuse was likely to go out when the shell hit the ground or be put out by a courageous enemy after the shell landed. Experimentation partly solved this problem by loading in a manner that permitted igniting the fuse on the shell simultaneously with the main powder charge that propelled the shell down the barrel. However, final resolution of the problem was not achieved until just before the French Revolution. Even so, after 1450 improvements to artillery shells were impressive: bronze explosive shells were available from 1463; incendiary shells appeared in 1487; an early ''shrapnel'' was invented in 1573; hot shot was in use from 1575; reliable explosive shells appeared in 1588; percussion fuses were invented in 1596. See also *artillery*.

Sher Khan (1486–1545). ''Sher Shah.'' Mughal emperor, 1540–1545. He was a leading general in *Babur*'s Afghan army that invaded north India and established the *Mughal Empire* after defeating the *Delhi Sultanate* and the *Rajputs*. He split with Babur's son and successor, Humayun, setting up a rival state in Bengal. He defeated Humayun in 1539 and again in 1540, after which he gained control of the Mughal Empire, adding to it his holdings in Bengal. He was succeeded by Humayun's son, *Akbar*.

***shī'a* Islam.** ''Shī' atu Ali'' (''The Party of Ali''). The most significant minority sect within *Islam*. The shī'a early on broke with the *sunni* majority to develop their own forms of piety and follow their own historical and theological path. Shi'ites accept as legitimate four *caliphs* whom they agreed with sunnis correctly succeeded Prophet Muhammad, up to Muhammad's son-in-law Ali (d.661 C.E.), the fourth caliph. However, they rejected the sunni (Umayyad) caliphs who then followed Ali. Thus, they denied legitimacy to the fifth caliph, Mu'awiya, founder of the sunni dynasty known as the Umayyad Caliphate (661–750), and all his sunni successors. Shī'a proclaimed only the descendants of Ali and Fatima, or the family of Muhammad, as the rightful—that is, anointed by Allah—successors to the Prophet and ruler of all Muslims. These shī'a shadow candidates became known as ''Alids.'' There were variants on this position of differing subtlety or obscurity. A deeply eschatological, quasi-messianic variant called ''Twelfth-imam shi'ism,'' or colloquially just ''Twelvers,'' recognized eleven specially anointed *imams* who lived in historical time while awaiting the arrival (future return) of the 12th, or ''Hidden Imam,'' who was said to be the true caliph. In contrast, *Ismailis* (Fatamid)

were sometimes called ''Seveners'' because they believed the rightful succession stopped in 765 C.E. with the death of the sixth caliph, the last visible to earthly eyes after Muhammad. Some Ismailis (Nizari) divided further, following only until the fourth caliph. All of this represented theological adjustment to historical reality, in which the devout were encouraged to believe that Muhammad's true successors exercised hidden influence in the interest of the community of believers. Shī'a thus became the main repository of Islam's original highly apocalyptic vision that was similar to, and rooted in, that of Christianity and Judaism, after the first several generations waited in vain for the great and promised transformation. This tradition became embodied in the idea of the ''mahdi,'' a quasi-cult notion which looked to the arrival of a divinely guided, heroic figure—the true or hidden imam—who will transform and end all history.

Over the centuries this latent messianism had great political significance: it was possible to create much turmoil and conflict in devout Islamic societies if some claimant to political power could, sincerely and legitimately or not, assert a claim to an Alid nature and candidacy. Shī'a communities also displayed a tendency toward exclusivity, indeed a real elitism contrary to the great spiritual leveling which made original Islam so attractive to so many, and still does. This flowed from a temperamental tendency in shi'ia theology which, rather like the clergy of the Medieval Latin Church, held the larger mass of faithful sunni (let alone non-Muslims) in some disdain as non-privileged by—and probably incapable of—the highest truths of the faith. A fundamentalist variant of shī'a thus utterly rejected the right of Muslims to select their own rulers. It was not enough for a community of believers to establish laws based upon the Koran, said these fundamentalists. Muslims must also have among them the physical presence of a true imam, one in genuine (Alid) descent from the family of the Prophet. This imam was to be be received as the spokesman of the divine will on Earth. Only such a ruler was seen as fit to govern Muslims because only such a man (women were wholly excluded) was anointed by Allah. Any leader not within the tradition, however devout, was scorned as a usurper. Such radical believers would, from time to time as circumstance permitted, challenge sunni Muslim leaders they regarded as not Alid, or whom they declared to have supplanted the legitimate rule of a true imam. Among Muslims the shī'a were closest to having an interpretive priesthood (''mujtahids'') and had the most highly developed and distinctive mystical traditions, notably *Sufism*. Yet, despite their more vehement political tradition, the great corpus of shī'a doctrine was akin to sunni doctrine and practice. Nevertheless, deep communal tensions often led to war between the main branches of Islam. See also *ayatollah*; *flagellants*; *Iran*; *Iraq*; *Islam*.

Suggested Reading: John Esposito, ed., *Oxford History of Islam* (1999); Marshall Hodgson, *The Classical Age of Islam* (1974).

shields/shielding. Early European and most Arab and Berber shields were simple and round. In Europe these ''bucklers'' were a mark of warrior status as

well as armaments. While Muslims retained round shields, European *knights* shifted to hefty kite-shaped shields. Smaller triangular shields were in use by the 13th century. At the end of the 14th century a notch was cut in the right top corner to afford greater protection to the rider by his not having to lower the shield along with the *lance* which he rested upon it. As *armor* evolved from *mail* to *plate*, shields became redundant and were eventually abandoned by most cavalry. In Scotland, clansmen still used a ''targe,'' many of which had a 12-inch spike at the center for offensive use as a lethal stabbing weapon. Similarly, warriors in India used a *madu*, a one-armed shield with horns or spikes attached for stabbing at the enemy in hand-to-hand combat. Japanese infantry carried a large wooden shield, the ''tate,'' for defense against *samurai* archers. Similar infantry shields were used in Europe by *pavisare*, special defensive troops who carried heavy wooden and iron shields into battle to protect crossbowmen who clustered behind them when reloading. *Henry VIII* ordered special gun shields from Italian armorers for his musketeers. These were small and circular, made from wood and attached plates of iron with a shooting hole at the center, above which there was a small grill for the musketeer to peer through. These were expensive and wholly impractical, and were not widely adopted. See also *adarga*; *artillery*; *bretasche*; *cat*; *chimalli*; *dhal*; *enarmes*; *escutcheon*; *gambeson*; *Mamlūks*; *manteletes*; *pavisade*; *pavise*; *sipar*; *sow*; *targe*; *targhieri*; *testudo*.

In Scotland, clansmen still used a ''targe'' . . . as a lethal stabbing weapon.

shi'ite. An adherent of *shī'a Islam*.

shijō. Japanese branch forts, usually simple wooden affairs supporting the main *honjō*. They were prevalent in the *Sengoku jidai* era.

Shimabara Rebellion (1637–1638). See *Japan*; *Kakure Kirishitan*.

shino-gote. See *armor*.

ship money. A tax imposed on coastal counties of England in 1634 by *Charles I* to support a royal navy to defend the Channel. It supported construction of 19 royal warships and 26 armed merchants. In 1637 Charles extended it to the inland counties. As this was all done without the consent of Parliament, ''ship money'' became a synonym for royal dictatorship and taxation without representation and thereby significantly moved the country toward the violent conflict of the *English Civil Wars* (1639–1651).

ship-of-the-line. Any warship in the ''Age of Sail'' powerful enough to join a *line ahead* or *line astern* formation to wage *broadside* battle alongside the most powerful warships, without constituting a weak point in the line. See also *frigate*; *galleon*.

ships. Ships of the period often doubled for war and trade. War at sea in the Mediterranean saw specialized warships in ancient times that were all variations on the galley, the most successful warship design in history. Among ships of sail there was a much slower trend toward building specialized warships. However, this accelerated in the 14th–17th centuries as more iron *cannon* became available to be mounted on warships and new designs and methods of hull manufacture were laid out to accept heavy guns. Ship design varied by region with even closely connected seas such as the Mediterranean and Atlantic seeing different ship-building designs and techniques. Indian Ocean, Japanese, and Chinese junk designs were radically different from European craft.

On ship types, see *balinger*; *barge*; *bark*; *birlin*; *brigantine*; *caravel*; *carrack*; *coaster*; *cocha*; *cog*; *cromster*; *dhow*; *drekkar/drekki*; *dromon*; *frigate*; *Fujian ships*; *fusta*; *galleass*; *galleon*; *galley*; *galliot*; *Great Galley*; *Great Ships*; *Guangdong*; *hulk*; *junk*; *longship*; *lymphad*; *man-of-war*; *nao*; *nef*; *patache*; *pinnace*; *resfuerzo*; *rowbarge*; *shallop*; *sloop-of-war*; *tarides*; *xebec*; *zabra*.

On related matters see *admiral*; *admiralty*; *aftercastle*; *Almiranta*; *astrolabe*; *battery*; *battle*; *blockade*; *blockship*; *boarding*; *bow(ing)*; *breeching*; *brig*; *broadside*; *burden*; *Capitana*; *captain*; *castles, on ships*; *chase gun(s)*; *clinker-built*; *compass*; *convoy*; *cross-staff*; *cruising*; *dead reckoning*; *demurrage*; *fathom*; *fireships*; *flags*; *Greek fire*; *gun-deck*; *gun port*; *gun tackle*; *haul close*; *haul wind*; *heave to*; *Invincible Armada*; *keel-haul*; *knot*; *last*; *Laws of Olèron*; *league*; *line abreast*; *line ahead*; *line ahead and astern*; *line astern*; *line of battle*; *longboat*; *make sail*; *maps*; *master*; *master gunner*; *master's mate*; *masts*; *muster*; *officer*; *patron*; *piracy*; *portolan chart*; *privateer*; *quarter deck*; *quartermaster*; *quartermaster's mate*; *rations*; *rigging*; *round robin*; *Royal Navy*; *safeguard the sea*; *sail*; *sails*; *ship money*; *ship-of-the-line*; *ship's boys*; *shipyards*; *shorten sail*; *skeleton-built*; *"sovereignty of the sea"*; *spar*; *sternpost rudder*; *sweeps*; *swivel gun*; *tackle*; *tier*; *tonnage*; *top*; *"tunnage and poundage"*; *van*; *victualer*; *waft*; *wafter*; *warp*; *wear*; *weather*; *weather gauge*; *weatherly*; *windlass*; *windward*; *yard*; *yardarm*; *Zheng He*.

ship's boys. Upper-class boys might be apprenticed to the captain and study navigation and command; lower-class boys were assigned to assist carpenters, gunners, and other specialized crew functions. Boys were added to English naval crews in the 14th century. They worked aloft in the new multi-masted sailing ships, nimbly moving among footropes and rigging of the upper *spars* that might not support the weight of a grown man, or replacing a heavier crewman sitting on a *yardarm* as it was hoisted aloft. Sometimes, as in the *St. Augustine massacre* (1565), their lives were spared in battle; other times, not.

ship-smashers. "ship-killers." Large-caliber ship's guns cast from alloyed gun metals such as brass or bronze, though sometimes from strengthened cast iron. They were capable of severely damaging or even holing and sinking an enemy ship. Their introduction reduced the need for boarding, thereby reducing the size of crews over time as well as eliminating the fighting *castle*

from new ship designs. In order to accommodate their great weight they tended to be placed amidships and fired through holes cut in the upper deck. In later designs they were dropped to the lower decks and fired through gunports with moveable outer doors. See also *galleon*.

shipyards. Specialized yards to build warships could be found in Venice from 1104 where the famous ''Arsenal'' grew into a marvel of concentrated state and merchant commitment, capital investment, and skilled craftsmen (carpenters, caulkers, coopers, oar carvers, rope makers, sailmakers, and others). Aragon kept a shipyard in Barcelona that specialized in building *galleys* from the end of the 13th century. Before and during the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453), the French crown built warships in a royal yard at Rouen. Burgundian ships were built at Bruges, largely overseen by Portuguese master shipwrights. England arrived late to the game of royal shipyards, relying for many decades on scattered armed merchants and *privateer* ships, with small production from yards on its east and south coasts. Korea had a large shipbuilding industry from the 12th century. Most of China's capacious shipyards were located along the southern coast. These were captured by the *Mongols*, who lacked any navy but used captured and coerced Chinese and Korean *junks* and pilots to attempt two invasions of Japan, in 1274 and 1281. The Ming dynasty built vast fleets of the world's largest ships into the rein of the *Yongle Emperor*, but then abandoned oceanic voyaging and banned blue-water ships. The Ottoman Empire maintained the largest shipyards in the world in the 16th century, employing over 160,000 in the yards at Constantinople alone. The Ottomans were thus able to replace their staggering losses of over 200 galleys and galliots at *Lepanto* (1571) within just nine months. However, they were never able to replace the skilled pilots and crews.

Shirley, Anthony (1565–1635). English adventurer and mercenary. Shirley's first military experience came with the English contingent fighting in alliance with the Dutch against Spain in the 1590s. He also took part in a military expedition to Normandy in 1591 during which he was knighted by Henry of Navarre (later, *Henri IV*). This displeased *Elizabeth I* and led to his brief imprisonment in England. In 1596, Shirley undertook a *privateering* mission to West Africa and the Caribbean (Jamaica and the Gulf Coast of North America). But some crews mutinied, and he was forced back to England with just one ship (1597). The next year he led English mercenaries to Italy to fight for Ferrara. From there he and his brother, *Robert Shirley*, left for Iran. He impressed Shah *Abbas I*, who made him a prince and gave him rich trade privileges. Abbas commissioned him as ambassador and sent him to Prague, Moscow, Rome, and Venice (where he was again imprisoned, this time for several years). His own government would not readmit him to England. In 1605 Emperor *Rudolf II* made him a count of the *Holy Roman Empire* and dispatched him as ambassador to Morocco, Lisbon, and Madrid. Once in Spain, he was appointed admiral and given a fleet to make conquests in the

Levant. In this he failed, being repulsed at Mitylene and losing his command in 1609. He retired to Madrid, spending his final years in quiet poverty.

Suggested Reading: D. W. Davies, *Elizabethans Errant* (1967).

Shirley, Robert (c.1581–1628). English mercenary. He traveled with his older brother, *Anthony Shirley*, to Iran in 1598. There, he married a Circassian woman and remained long after his brother left on a diplomatic mission for Shah *Abbas I* in 1599. Over the next nine years he was instrumental in helping modernize the new *standing army* Shah Abbas deployed, playing a key role as technical adviser in establishing Iran's first effective *artillery train* and musket corps. In 1608 Sir Robert was sent by Abbas as an envoy to *James I* of England (the king would not receive Shirley's brother). En route he visited Poland, Bohemia, Florence, Rome, and Spain, finally arriving in England in 1611 to be received at the court of James I. In 1613 he went back to Isfahan. In 1615 he went to live with his brother in Madrid. He made a final trip to Iran in 1627, where he died the next year.

shock. Delivering a stunning, smashing attack directly and bluntly into an enemy line or square with the weight and force of a whole military unit. This was the principal role of *heavy cavalry* in medieval Europe from the early 12th century, a tactic made possible by the *couched lance*. In a charge by 1,500–2,000 heavy cavalry, a line four ranks deep was about one mile wide. It did not move all at once, but in sections. Most often it swung down from the right, each section moving on a clear signal. The horsemen kept formation as they increased speed by stages, each time upon another signal. The central aim was to break through enemy *infantry*, to disarrange their ranks and files. This was often accomplished without a blow being struck as infantry unprotected by *pikes* or archers frequently ran at the terrifying spectacle of serried ranks of mounted *knights* pounding toward them, *lances* lowered for the kill at about 50 paces. If the enemy unit was also *cavalry*, however, the aim became dehorsing riders so that *esquires* and other retainers could finish them off on the ground, or more likely hold them for ransom. If the charge failed for any reason (terrain alone might break up momentum), heavy cavalry would withdraw and form up for a second charge. If the charge was met by a hedge of infantry spears and courage, as it was increasingly from the late 13th century, a heap of dead men and horses formed in front of the pike-and-halberd or *schiltron* hedge. The lead rank of horses could not turn aside due to the push of over-eager knights and hard-pounding mounts to its rear and would be impaled or dehorsed. If that happened, heavy cavalry lost the battle. Infantry were also capable of employing offensive shock tactics. In the early 15th century, the *Swiss square* represented a remarkable tactical innovation for infantry shock based on tightly packed pike-and-halberd formations moving across the field of battle. See also *Aztec Empire*; *battle (2)*; *chivalry*; *destrier*; *Landsknechte*; *men-at-arms*; *tournaments*; *warhorses*.

Shogun (*"Sei-i-tai-shogun"*). "Great-barbarian-subduing general," or "generalissimo." From the 8th century until the triumph of the Minamoto clan in the

12th century, this was the title of generals commanding pacification campaigns against indigenous Ainu in the north. Under the Minamoto, Shogun became a hereditary title for the head of the great warrior households. The Kamakura shogunate (1185–1333) passed, after a three-year interlude, to the Ashikaga clan (1336–1603). The *Tokugawa shogunate* took form in 1603 and lasted to the Meiji Restoration in 1868. With the Tokugawa, warrior rule was ascendant: the 15 Tokugawa shoguns of Edo ruled in fact while a succession of emperors reigned in Kyoto as figureheads, though some were more beholden to the *bakufu* than were others. The shogunate ended with the Meiji Restoration. See also *daimyo*; *Japan*; *shugo*.

shorten sail. When a sailing ship dropped or reduced canvas in order to leave the wind and slow or stop.

shot. A generic term for firearms troops, as in ''he had with him 300 archers and 100 shot.'' Alternately, any projectile fired from a gunpowder weapon. See also *artillery*; *ballot*; *canister shot*; *case shot*; *chain shot*; *dice shot*; *grapeshot*; *hail shot*; *hot shot*; *okka*; *small shot*; *solid shot*.

Shrewsbury, Battle of (1403). See *England*; *Scottish Wars*.

shugo. ''Constable.'' Semi-autonomous warlords, one for each of Japan's 66 provinces, nominally answerable to the *Shogun*. See also *daimyo*.

shynbalds. See *schynbalds*.

sich. A fortified *Cossack* camp and permanent headquarters.

Sicily. See *Aragon*; *Byzantine Empire*; *Catalan Great Company*; *Ifriqiya*; *itqa*; *Normans*; *War of the Sicilian Vespers*.

Sickingen, Franz von (1481–1523). German *knight*. Something of a Germanic Don Quixote, he protected *Martin Luther* and other reformers during the so-called ''Knights' War'' of 1522–1523, in which he led the last German knights in arms against forces of the episcopacy in Germany. He besieged Trier, put under an Imperial ban, and himself was besieged by the bishops in 1523. He was later memorialized by Johann Goethe as a romantic German hero.

siege engines. See *artillery towers*; *bastille*; *belfry*; *cat*; *catapult*; *mangonel*; *pertrary*; *sow*; *testudo*; *trebuchet*.

siege train. See *artillery train (1)*.

siege warfare. Surrounding, isolating, and attacking a *castle* or walled town was a characteristic form of warfare from the 11th century onward, as thickened stone walls or towers and a spate of castle-building made defenses nearly

unbreachable. The nature of slow siege warfare did not change much until the advent of effective gunpowder *artillery* speeded the whole process, until adoption of defensive *cannon* and reinforcement and lowering of military architecture restored the balance. Siege tactics followed a basic pattern. They began with savage threats of massacre and pillage, presented along with an offer of fair treatment should quick surrender ensue. Most commanders were justly hesitant to frontally assault a fortified position. Prudently, besiegers instead tried indirect methods of attack, such as *blockade*, seizure and destruction of outlying livestock and grain and blocking or poisoning any water source that flowed into the castle or town. They might even attempt biological warfare: diseases were spread that weakened or killed defenders by catapulting infected animal carcasses or bodies of plague victims over the walls. In one siege in France hundreds of cartloads of manure were flung over the walls, filling the besieged town with disease and a choking stench. If all that failed direct assault followed. Moats and dry ditches were filled with faggots of wood or rubble or stones to gain access to the walls. Trenches were dug and palisades erected to protect *sappers* and engineers in their work, while batteries of artillery provided covering fire. The besieging army might also resort to knocking down walls with *catapults* or *trebuchets*, if they had these weapons; or use these and other siege engines to launch great stones over the walls to smash houses and public buildings and inspire fear, or hurl incendiaries to the same end. They were also likely to try raw intimidation by hurtling heads and body parts of dead defenders over the walls.

Assaults

Once the moats and ditches were filled in besiegers would roll towers close against the walls to serve as archery platforms in exchanges of fire with the defenders, while miners and sappers worked to undermine the base of the wall, perhaps protected as they dug trenches and cavities by a *sow* or *testudo*. More daring or reckless, or just desperate, besiegers might try a direct assault over the wall, firing and crossing over from a huge siege tower such as a *belfry* while comrades kept up fire from a nearby *bastille*. But siege towers, even when protected with lead or copper, could be smashed by huge rocks dropped or rolled out by defenders, or they might be burned down with flaming oils or resins, or destroyed by trebuchet or catapult fire by the defenders. Scaling ladders were even more exposed. Besides, many defending walls were built too high for any storming attack to succeed. Most attempts to directly *storm* fortress walls were physically impossible, or promised to be too costly in the lives of expensive soldiers. That left the gates, at the same time the most vulnerable and the best-defended point of any fortified wall. A battering ram would be mounted to smash the gates. Close against the wall and gate there were special dangers facing attackers: defenders used their height advantage to drop crushing stones and inflammables or scalding water through *murder holes*, and fired point-blank into the chests or faces of attackers through firing slits or the *portcullis*.

Commanders were thus most often compelled to resort to *mining*—weakening the foundations of a defending wall by digging beneath it to

remove all earthen support, or building an intense fire in a cavity to crack the stones so they fell into the pit. Mining was of course met with countermining. A long siege added hunger and thirst, with the latter more quick and deadly, to the attackers' arsenal and the defenders' list of miseries. Yet, those were weapons that cut both ways: the duration of any siege was limited by the capability of surrounding lands to support the attacking force. If the area had been ''eaten out'' in a prior campaign it was next to impossible for the attackers to sustain their siege due to the severe limitations of supply that marked the *logistics* of warfare in this period. The best method to win a siege was the simplest: bribe or threaten and cajole defenders into surrender. This did not mean that bombardment did not take place: talk and killing were simultaneous, as in most wars. Just as was the case with so forbidding a structure as the *Great Wall* of China, the easiest way past fortified defenses in Europe or the Middle East or India was not over or under or through the walls but walking unmolested through the gate: offering good terms to induce surrender spared everyone involved. In most countries a convention persisted wherein defenders could expect greatest mercy if they gave in to attackers early in a siege. The more difficult the defenders made things for attackers the more likely that they would be put to the sword when their resistance collapsed. However the surrender occurred, it if was of a renowned fortress many lesser forts could change hands suddenly, swinging a whole region from one overlord to another. This happened several times during the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453), where the fall of some great city or complex led the subordinate garrisons of entire provinces to quit. Victories over field armies might have the same effect: they gave the winner a reputation for invincibility and made conquest look inevitable. But victory in a siege also gave the victor land and booty and a fortress into which to move.

Victories . . . gave the winner a reputation for invincibility and made conquest look inevitable.

Indirect Approach

The heavy advantage enjoyed by the defense from c.1000 to 1450 in Europe encouraged indirect offense in the form of economic warfare against the lands and villages surrounding a besieged castle or town. This ranged from local raiding and aggressive foraging by the besieger to the grand strategy of the *chevauchée*, which could encompass enormous destruction of whole regions and cut a swath through several countries. In the case of cities, any suburbs outside the walls became prime targets. Thus, ''El Cid'' ravaged the suburbs of Valencia in a successful effort to force its capitulation in 1094. On the other hand, *chivalry* and the *just war tradition* played some role in mitigating excesses and atrocities and establishing conventions governing sieges in practice. To apply these rules it was important for both sides to know when a siege officially began. Initially, the signal was a thrown javelin bearing announcement of siege. With the advent of gunpowder cannon a single report sufficed to alert all within earshot that a siege had commenced. If a truce was agreed

upon both sides hearing of the likely arrival of a relief force, hostages were given as a guarantee that besiegers would not bring troops or siege engines forward or complete their saps, defenders would not repair damaged walls or towers. Cheating by either side broke the truce: hostages would be killed in sight of the other side and left on display as a warning and a threat. If the truce held, the agreement extended to the army marching in relief. It was instructed to meet the besiegers at a given time and place to offer and accept *battle*. If the relief failed to arrive by the appointed time, the defenders were obliged to surrender. If a siege was ended by negotiation, a process usually mediated by clerics in Europe, waving a white flag or handing over the keys to the town gates were the usual signals of submission. In most cases, the lives of defenders and civilians were spared, or perhaps just the men were killed. If the siege was short or the attackers suffered few casualties, defenders might be allowed to carry out necessities of life. In a famous example of observation of the strict letter of agreement, women in one French town were told they could leave with whatever they could carry but that the lives of their husbands were forfeit; so they carried out their husbands. At the other extreme, if *guerre mortelle* was declared or the siege ended in storming, defenders and civilians could expect to be put to the sword.

By the mid-14th century the rate of fire, accuracy, and reliability of siege guns was such that the average length of sieges was shortened from several months to several weeks. For instance, Dinant fell to *Charles the Rash* after just seven days of bombardment even though it successfully resisted 17 prior sieges. This resulted from greater reliance on battering power as opposed to medieval practices such as encirclement, *raiding*, burning, blockade, and starvation. *Gunpowder weapons* thereby probably reduced the overall destructiveness of sieges. The pattern was the same in *Ottoman warfare*. From the 15th century, the Ottomans estimated the length of sieges not by months or weeks but by the number of cannonballs they were likely to expend before enemy walls were breached. Surviving Ottoman plans and dispatches refer to a ''seven-hundred shot siege'' or a ''two-thousand shot siege'' and other durations. The first guns fired at the walls from close range. Later, long-range *culverins* were brought to sieges to provide protective fire to engineers digging approach trenches. At the start of the 16th century siege defenses caught up with offensive firepower. New methods of fortification proliferated while older forts were reinforced with earthen escarpments and thickened walls or squat artillery towers to support heavy defensive cannon firing through low-level gun ports cut into stone walls. All that, and especially the new *trace italienne* style of bastioned artillery fortress, revived sieges at the expense of battles by the mid-17th century. See also *abatis*; *Albigensian Crusade*; *Alexandria, Siege of*; *Algeciras, Siege of*; *Alkmaar, Siege of*; *Antwerp, Siege of*; *attrition*; *Baghdad, Siege of*; *bellum hostile*; *bombard*; *Boulogne, Siege of*; *bretasche*; *Bursa, Siege of*; *Calais*; *Castillon, Battle of*; *casting*; *Chaul, Siege of*; *chevaux de fries*; *Constantinople, Siege of*; *Courtrai, Battle of*; *crossbow*; *Cyprus*; *Eighty Years' War*; *engineers*; *fire*; *fortification*; *Franco–Spanish War*; *Freiburg, Battle of*; *galley*; *garrisons*; *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *Granada*; *grenades*; *Haarlem, Siege of*; *herald*; *Héricourt,*

Battle of; *Honganji fortress, Siege of*; *hot shot*; *infantry*; *Italian Wars*; *Jeanne d'Arc*; *Laupen, Battle of*; *Leiden, Siege of*; *Le Tellier, Michel*; *lines of circumvallation*; *lines of contravallation*; *lodgement*; *Maastricht, Siege of (1579)*; *Maastricht, Siege of (1632)*; *Magdeburg, Sack of*; *Malta*; *Marienburg, Fortress of*; *Maurits of Nassau*; *Morat, Battle of*; *mortar*; *Muhammad II*; *mukai-jiro*; *Oda Nobunaga*; *Ostend, Siege of*; *Pavia, Battle of*; *place d'armes*; *Rhodes, Siege of* (1444); *Rhodes, Siege of (1479–1480)*; *Rhodes, Siege of (1522–1523)*; *Rouen, Siege of*; *Straslund, Siege of*; *Sturmgeld*; *Tenochtitlán, First Siege of (1520)*; *Tenochtitlán, Second Siege of (1521)*; *Thérouanne, Siege of*; *Thirty Years' War*; *Uzbeks*; *Vienna, Siege of*; *wakō*; *War of the Cities*; *Wars of the Roses*.

Suggested Reading: Jim Bradbury, *The Medieval Siege* (1992); C. Duffy, *Siege Warfare: The Fortress in the Early Modern World, 1494–1660* (1979); Christopher Gravett, *Medieval Siege Warfare* (1990).

Sigismund (1368–1437). Elector of Brandenburg, 1376–1415; king of Hungary, 1387–1437; Holy Roman Emperor, 1411–1437; king of Bohemia (disputed), 1419–1437; In 1396 he was badly defeated by the Ottomans at *Nicopolis*. His response to rebellion and religious dissent in Bohemia was to call the *Council of Constance* (1414–1418) in an effort to end the schism. However, he failed to uphold the safe-conduct he had granted to *Jan Hus*, who was burned at the stake instead. That sparked the long *Hussite Wars* (1419–1478) as rebellion broke out when Sigismund tried to mount the Bohemian throne.

Sigismund I (1466–1548). King of Poland, 1506–1548. The *Protestant Reformation* unfolded during his reign, unsettling Poland as it did all Europe. More immediately, Sigismund lost Smolensk to the expanding state of *Muscovy*. He was partly compensated with Moldova. In 1537 the Polish nobles rose against his authority; the concessions the rebellion forced from him permanently weakened the Polish monarchy.

Sigismund III Vasa (1566–1632). King of Poland-Lithuania, 1587–1632; king of Sweden, nominally, 1592–1604. He was the offspring of a dynastic marriage intended to unite the ruling families of Sweden and Poland-Lithuania. Sweden was a rising power in the western Baltic while Poland-Lithuania was on a protracted descent from weak medieval monarchy and empire to tremulous victim of three rising and territorially rapacious empires of the north: Russia, Sweden, and Prussia. Sigismund ruled Sweden and Poland-Lithuania as an unbending, convinced Catholic monarch. That led to chronic arguments with the Polish nobles. Ultimately, his persecution of Protestants led to war with Sweden, defeat at Linköping (1598), and deposition from Sweden's throne in favor of a Calvinist-leaning cousin, *Karl IX*, whose faith was also suspect but closer to the reformed Lutheranism of most of the Swedish population. Sigismund never accepted the loss of his northern kingdom and actively sought to regain it during the Polish-Swedish war of 1600–1611, again during the *Kalmar War*, and yet again against *Gustavus Adolphus* to 1629.

Sigismund supported the ''False Dmitri'' against *Boris Godunov* during the *''Time of Troubles''* (''Smutnoe Vremia''). He invaded Muscovy and put his son on the throne as would-be tsar, but was compelled to abandon that position in 1613 to *Michael Romanov*. From 1621 to 1622 and again from 1626 to 1629 Sigismund led Poland in a losing campaign against Sweden over control of Riga and Estonia. He closed his life in bitter defeat, shut out of Sweden by Gustavus and finally lost in self-pitying devotions and extravagant acts of piety.

Sigismund August II (1520–1572). King of Poland-Lithuania, 1548–1572. He extended religious tolerance to Polish Protestants, who multiplied greatly during his reign, especially among the nobility. He elevated the old tie to ducal Lithuania to full constitutional union, and advanced Polish colonization of Ukraine. From 1557 to 1558, he waged a war against Muscovy over control of Livonia. Unable to garner full military support from the powerful Polish nobility he allied with remnants of the *Teutonic Knights*. See also *Northern War, First*; *Union of Lublin*.

signals. See *battle cries*; *flags*; *Harsthörner*.

Sikhism. A blend of *Hinduism* and *Islam* which developed in Punjab. Over time it became a distinct religious tradition. It was founded by Nānak (1469–1538), its first Guru, as a syncretic fusion of Muslim rejection of the Hindu caste system but retention of other Hindu beliefs. It was broadly tolerant and rejected all religious extremes in India: the radical asceticism and self-abnegation found in Hinduism and Islam alike on one hand, and the highly ritualized and rigid caste system which engulfed Hindus on the other. *Akbar* donated land in Amritsar to the Sikhs who built the Golden Temple upon it. The faith only acquired a martial character later, under Guru Gobind Rai (1666–1708), when Sikhs responded militarily to persecution by the Mughal emperor and Muslim zealot Aurangzeb (r.1658–1707). Gobind Rai formed an ''Army of the Pure'' to defend Sikhs. He took the surname ''Singh'' (''lion'') which all Sikhs used thereafter, and instituted distinguishing features of Sikh males including beards, turbans, and carrying of a comb and ceremonial dagger.

silahdars. ''Swordsmen.'' Ottoman household infantry, part of the *Kapikulu Askerleri*. Like the *sipahis* they were among the most expensive troops to maintain. During the 17th century the state whittled away their numbers and used the savings to hire more modern infantry and cavalry.

Silesia. A mineral rich German province, long a *Habsburg* possession and integral part of the *Holy Roman Empire*. It was for centuries a theater of struggle between medieval Austria and Poland. Wracked by the *Protestant Reformation*, it was a frequent battleground during the wars of religion of the 16th and 17th centuries. As its nobility and most of its towns were Lutheran,

it allied with *Gustavus Adolphus* when he intervened in the *Thirty Years' War*, though more from fear of Swedish depredations than any firm confessional convictions. Subsequent occupation by the Austrian Empire saw reconversion of many Silesians to Catholicism under the influence of the *Counter-Reformation*. See also *War of the Cities*; *witchcraft*.

Simon de Montfort (d.1218). See *Albigensian Crusade*.

sipahis. ''Horsemen.'' Ottoman *heavy cavalry* drawn mainly from Anatolia and Rumelia. They were granted nonhereditary fiefs by the sultans in return for which they raised, armed, and supplied a given number of horse soldier retainers (*Cebelu*). Sipahis were known for wearing heavy *mail* and, along with *timariot* light cavalry, were the mainstay of Ottoman armies into the 15th century. Despite their origins as cavalry, some sipahis served as marines on the sultan's *galleys*. Given the dominant role of cavalry in *Ottoman warfare*, campaigns were confined to summers by the need for fodder. Sipahis decisively defeated mixed Balkan-Serb armies at the *Maritza River* (1371) and again at *Kosovo* (1389). They remained the keystone of Ottoman military power well past the advent of the *Janissary Corps* and other elite infantry and *gunpowder weapons* corps. However, slowing Ottoman expansion in the 16–17th centuries limited lands available to support an enfeoffed cavalry army. The growing importance of guns further encouraged a shift to infantry, including Imperial garrisons and various auxiliaries. By the end of the 16th century, six regiments (about 2,400 horsemen) of highly privileged, richly rewarded sipahis (''alti bölük sipahileri'') were assigned to the *Kapikulu Askerleri* at court. These older troops served in noncombat administrative roles (''divanî hizmet''). Because they were the most expensive of all Ottoman troops to maintain they were more exposed to demotion or even expulsion from the ranks. Sipahis were listed on a register, delisting from which was the ultimate punishment since it entailed loss of revenue and prestige. Over the course of the 17th century, sipahis rolls were steadily and deliberately reduced by the sultans to contains costs and shift military resources to recruitment of cheaper regular infantry. The sums saved were so substantial that the Ottoman Empire, unlike most European states, was able to meet the great cost of raising more modern infantry and artillery formations with relative ease. Purges of the sipahis rolls, sometimes involving thousands of names, were also tied to the ebb and flow of court intrigue and politics. See also *Serdengeçti*; *Thirteen Years' War*.

Despite their origins as cavalry, some sipahis served as marines on the sultan's galleys.

sipar. A Persian-Mughal style of small round shield. It was made of beaten and polished steel with a small boss in the center of four or five smaller bosses. Carried in the left hand, it was principally used by swordsmen or javelin troops.

Sis, Battle of (1606). The newly modernized Iranian Army, under *Abbas I*, deployed their *gunpowder weapons* and *artillery* corps when they met, and then destroyed, an Ottoman army at Sis. Perhaps 20,000 Ottoman dead were left on the field. The victory for Iran did not end the long Ottoman-Safavid and *shī'a* versus *sunni* Muslim war that had darkened the common frontier since *Chaldiran* in 1514. However, it marked the end of Ottoman predominance in battle, the emergence of a more powerful because reformed and modernized Iranian military, and a revival of the Iranian Empire in Central Asia.

Sixteen, The. See *Catholic League (France)*; *Day of the Barricades*; *French Civil Wars*.

skeggøx. See *axes*.

skeleton-built. The predominant shipbuilding technique of the Mediterranean world which constructed ships by first erecting a skeleton of the hull, then adding planking. Its northern counterpart was the *clinker-built* ship, which constructed the hull from the keel up and out, with layers of planks. Skeleton-built ships were lighter but less sturdy. From the 15th century there was some blending of the methods to create successful hybrids such as the *carrack*. See also *caravel*; *galleass*; *galley*; *galliot*.

"skulking way of war." The stealthy native style of warfare of the Indians of eastern North America. It was essentially the mode of the natural guerilla and lightening raider. It avoided direct assault on heavy fortifications that cost too many lives; it employed guile and ruses; and it used ground and forest cover in making the approach, to spring ambushes, and for refuge in retreat or defeat. ''Skulking'' bewildered settlers, *militia*, and European regulars during the *Indian Wars* in North America, at least until some learned it themselves and began to succeed on the battlefield. It also enraged Europeans as supposedly opposed to the ''rules of war.'' It should not have: Europeans had for centuries themselves ''skulked'' along wild frontiers in Ireland, or on the Scottish and Hungarian borders, and in the Balkan *Militargrenze*.

Well-adapted to its environment, the ''skulking way of war'' also reflected native cultural and ritualized religious values, some admirable but others less so. At its core was the Indian brave, who was a warrior rather than a soldier. A brave was usually young—training began no later than age 12—exceptionally fit, and capable of greater speed and physical endurance on the march than his European allies, enemies, or prisoners. He was an expert marksman, taking the white man's firearms and powder and shot in exchange for furs, and excelling in use of the rifle in hunting and war. He possessed, as Armstrong Starkey has shrewdly noted, ''the skills and discipline of modern commandos and special forces.'' He could move and survive in winter by using snowshoes and eating scraps from the forest floor, while white troops stayed huddled in wooden huts awaiting the spring or died starving and frozen in the deep snow. In summer he moved over river and lake in stealthy birchbark canoes that

gave his war party unparalleled mobility and tactical surprise. His officers were ''elected'' based on demonstrated bravery, audacity, and cunning, not mounted stiffly in a saddle by accident of birth or from a purchased commission.

Indian *military discipline* was based on personal honor rather than hard punishment. Indian tactics aimed at victory achieved with minimal loss of the lives of attackers. Tactical retreat or refusing to fight in the face of superior numbers or fortified works was thus commonplace. This infuriated European commanders who misunderstood Indian battlefield prudence as cowardice or fecklessness toward the ''cause,'' further misreading the fact that Indians fought in white men's wars for reasons of their own. A brave's ethics were also akin to a modern commando's, notably when it came to prisoners. They would take prisoners if chance permitted or slaughter all their enemies because they could not move quickly with old men and women and children in tow. While contemptuous of enemy males who surrendered, a warrior could still treat a prisoner gently and adopt him (or her) into his nation. Or he might slow torture or burn him (or her) to death. Unlike European or Asian soldiers for whom rape was a ubiquitous part of war, out of mystical taboo Indian warriors rarely molested captive women. In sum, braves could be as kind and humane, or as callous and cruel, as any other soldier in any era.

Most eastern Indians quickly adapted to firearms (exclusively *matchlock* weapons prior to 1660), abandoning bows and arrows. Starkey argues that they did this because the ability of most braves to dodge arrows became an impossible feat when facing bullets. In short, Indians appreciated the greater hitting power of firearms, which they often loaded with several bullets to maximize a gun's wounding or killing effect. Moreover, Indians much preferred rifles to muskets for hunting and in war, domains they did not always distinguish. Most became expert riflemen well beyond the skills exhibited by settlers, who were mainly farmers who occasionally supplemented their winter larder with wild game. European regulars sported *smoothbore* muskets and fired in *volley*, were not trained in marksmanship, and did not aim at individual targets. Braves aimed, fired, moved to new cover, fired again, and moved again. This emphasis on aimed fire did not mean that they fought merely as individuals. War parties conducted skilled advances and retreats ''blackbird fashion,'' where braves with loaded guns covered those reloading or moving, rather as a modern commando unit moves in urban warfare from cover to cover under suppressing fire. The ''skulking way of war'' also reduced casualties, a great concern of Indian societies once demographic decline set in from contact with virgin, settler-borne diseases.

Suggested Reading: Patrick Malone, *The Skulking Way of War: Technology and Tactics among the New England Indians* (1991); A. Starkey, *European and Native American Warfare* (1998).

slavery and war. Slavery and war are ancient cousins, closely and causally related. Slave raiding was a common practice from ancient times, with women especially targeted by raiders from underpopulated areas. Interestingly, this

was not true of Europe during the Middle Ages. As the European population expanded from the 12th century, chronic labor shortages ended and slavery became economically unnecessary in most of its regions. As one result, traditional German slave raids into Celtic and Slavic territories came to an end. Raiding continued, but it targeted livestock and portable wealth rather than human chattel. Other peoples who lived in thinly populated areas, including Celts and Slavs, still practiced slavery and therefore also slave-raiding, but on the whole Medieval Europe did not see wars originating from a slave economy. In the 16th century, however, Europe's overseas expansion created a new demand for slaves leading to a huge expansion in slave wars in Africa. After 1500, West and then Central Africa suffered ever-increasing demographic losses to this overseas slave trade, with a much older but smaller Arab slave trade draining people from East Africa and the sudan. These losses were uneven: many African societies found it rewarding to commit fully to the trade and became devoted to slave-raids against weaker neighbors. Few Africans were actually captured by European or Swahili Arab traders; most were brought to the coast by other Africans and sold to merchants servicing the overseas slave markets. Other African states exchanged captives of war for firearms. The guns were then used to acquire more slaves, to be sold for more guns.

Even at the peak of the African slave trade the awful truth is that more Africans were likely toiling as slaves of other Africans than were hauled away by sea or across the desert by camel caravan. The *Hausa* forced nearby pagans onto slave villages which surrounded and sustained their city states; *Benin* and the great *Yoruba* cities enslaved weaker tribes, raiding westward and throughout the Niger delta; *Songhay* expanded its use of slaves in the 16th century, raiding far afield and south of the Niger bend. The later jihads of the *Fulbe* were justified by enslavement of pagans. For such empires cavalry was the key to slave raiding: cavalry operating on the sudan and savannah easily ran down helpless villagers during slave raids hundreds of miles from Africa's coasts, caravan routes, and imperial capitals. The introduction of firearms in the 16th century dramatically changed the balance of power: guns made slaving easier but also war more costly, requiring still more slaving to pay for the new military technology which now sustained or overturned local balances of power. Firearms thus strengthened formerly weak coastal and forest tribes—who obtained them first from European traders—against the traditionally dominant slave-raiding states of the savannah and desert, which continued to rely on the armored cavalry that had served them so well since the 13th century but now became obsolete.

Beyond Africa other empires rested upon a foundation of military slaves. The Umayyad Caliphs of *al-Andalus* and Córdoba used northern and western European slaves captured as boys, castrated, and trained as local *mamlūks*. Other Europeans were taken from south Russia and the Caucasus, converted to Islam, and turned into mamlūk slave soldiers by emirs and caliphs in Damascus or Cairo. The Mamlūks eventually took over Egypt in all but name, forming a slave dynasty that eventually also ruled Palestine and Syria. The

Ottomans, too, kept a converted slave force: the *Janissary Corps*. Military slaves were commonplace in medieval India where different Mamlūks also, but only briefly, achieved supreme power in the Muslim-dominated north. And around the shores of the Mediterranean over the millennia tens of thousands of slaves pulled oars to which they were chained on the war *galleys* of Phoenicians, Romans, Byzantines, Persians, Ottomans, Spanish, Venetians, Genoese, corsairs, sultans, and popes.

Suggested Reading: David Ayalon, *Islam and the Abode of War: Military Slaves and Islamic Adversaries* (1994); Patricia Crone, *Slaves on Horses: The Evolution of Islamic Polity* (1980); D. Davis, *The Problem of Slavery in Western Culture* (1966); Daniel Pipes, *Slave Soldiers and Islam: Genesis of a Military System* (1981).

slave soldiers. See *military slavery*; *slavery and war*.

sling. A small *artillery* piece fitted on a swivel mount and deployed on castle or town walls as an anti-personnel weapon. These weapons came into use in Europe in the 15th century; some were still in use in European forts in Asia as late as the 17th century.

sloop-of-war. A mid-size warship in the Age of Sail with *cannon* on just one deck.

slow match. A slow burning wick or fuse, several feet long and lighted at both ends. It was made by soaking a thin hempen cord in a solution of limewater and saltpeter. This imparted a burn rate of about five or six inches an hour. *Arquebusiers* used slow match to ignite the powder in the pans of their weapon using a *matchlock* device. Slow matches were the source of many bad accidents, as a gust of wind carried embers into contact with exposed powder sacks or casks. Alternately, damp fog or rain would extinguish the slow match and render guns useless. For the *artillery*, the slow match was held aloft on the curved arms of a *linstock* planted firmly in the ground between each pair of guns. In the early days a gunner would lift the linstock to touch the slow match directly to the vent hole, setting off fine powder in the vent that ignited the main charge of coarser grains wadded and rammed down the muzzle. Later, gunners touched a *quick match* to the slow match then applied the quick match to the touch hole.

Sluys, Battle of (June 23, 1340). The largest naval battle of the 14th century, fought during the opening phase of the *Hundred Years' War*. The English sent out from 120 to 160 ships to face over 200 French ships, including 6 *galleys* and 22 *barges*. The English fleet worked up the coast and gained the *weather gauge*, which it used to stand off from the numerically superior French fleet and defeat it in detail. English and Welsh longbowmen used positional advantage to fire ''arrow storms'' at the French ships, decimating rowers and marines. The French probably lost more men and ships than necessary when their commander declined the advise of a Genoese technician and thereby lost the benefit of wind and tide which might have been used to cut the range to

the English fleet, or to escape. The other key to the battle was that the English ships carried thousands of archers, where the entire French fleet had only 150 *men-at-arms* and 500 crossbowmen, and thus no effective reply to the long-distance archery tactics of their enemy. The French lost 190 ships at Sluys and 16,000–18,000 men, more Frenchmen than died at *Agincourt* (1415) or even Waterloo (1815). Despite this devastating defeat, Sluys did not establish the English claim to "*sovereignty of the sea*," which was beyond enforcement by navies of the day.

small shot. Any *shot* fired from a handheld firearm whether a musket ball or some form of *hail shot*.

small war. See *Glyndŵr's Rebellion*; *guerre couverte*; *Indian Wars (North America)*; *Ireland*; *Korea*; *Martolos*; *Militargrenze*; *raiding*; *Razats*; *Scottish Wars*; *"skulking way of war"*; *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*; *Wallace, William*; *William Louis, of Nassau*.

Smolino River, Battle of (1502). See *Muscovy, Grand Duchy of*.

smoothbore. A *musket* or *cannon* with a bore that was not rifled (grooved) but smooth, giving it far less accuracy and range than a rifled weapon. Estimates based on famous 1886 tests are that early smoothbore muskets, most of which fired one-ounce lead balls about 300 yards, inflicted just one casualty for every 200–500 aimed shots. The reason for smoothbore inaccuracy—shots missed by five or more feet from the target at 200 yards range—was that the spin imparted to the ball by the barrel was random and the ball itself was not aerodynamic. The effect was comparable to a slicing golf shot or an American baseball pitcher's curve ball. Modern testing of smoothbore muzzle velocities recorded speeds about half that of a late-20th-century assault rifle, but a little faster than a Colt '45. The main point was that spherical shot lost speed to drag and deflection three times as fast as a shaped modern bullet, greatly lowering impact. This had a direct effect on tactics, limiting smoothbore muskets to firing at densely packed infantry or cavalry from close ranges of 50 to 75 yards. Hence, in early *volley fire* the initial command was not "aim" before giving the order to fire, it was "level guns."

. . . early smoothbore muskets . . . inflicted just one casualty for every 200–500 aimed shots.

***Smutnoe Vremia* (*Smuta*).** See "*Time of Troubles*."

snacca. See *longship*.

Society of Jesus. See *Jesuits*.

Sofala. The port of Sofala in Mozambique was an outpost of "Swahili Arab" trade for centuries before Vasco da Gama's ships landed there in 1497. In

1505 a military-trade expedition tried to oust the Arab slavers from Sofala; this was finally done in 1515. Portuguese factories took over the slave trade, and traded with Great Zimbabwe. Further north, Portuguese ships acted essentially as *pirates* with regard to Arab shipping. In 1575 Portugal signed a treaty with the Mwene Mutapa that permitted mining and trade and allowed for resident missionaries. The interior remained in the hands of Shona states (Kiteve, Mandanda, Manyika, Mutapa; in the 17th century, Barwe and Butwa). The Portuguese interfered only on matters of coastal trade and competition with Muslim slave powers active in the region.

sōhei. Japanese warrior monks. See also *Japan*; *Oda Nobunaga*; *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*; *True Pure Land*.

Sold. The unit of pay earned each month by a *Landsknechte* mercenary: 4 guilders. Over the course of the 16th century this rate did not change, which showed the declining value placed on pikemen of the Landsknechte sort as musketeers came to dominate the battlefield. See also *Doppelsöldner*; *mercenaries*.

solid shot. Stone or iron cannonballs, or what the French at first called ''pierres de fer'' or ''iron rocks.'' For most of the period, solid shot had a theoretical long range but in practice all effective gunnery took place at short ranges so that the shot did not bury itself harmlessly by traveling along too high an arc. The idea was to shoot below head height to do maximum damage. Gunners sought, but rarely achieved, enfilade positions that permitted solid shot to bore raw tunnels through many more ranks of men. Solid shot's effect, if not reduced by *balloting*, was to bore straight through enemy ranks killing several men instantly as they stood in what became in a split second a ''tunnel of destruction.'' If the ground was not dampened and the shot absorbed by rain-sodden turf, or if the cannonball landed inside a stone castle or town, it might ricochet among the enemy, decapitating some and smashing limbs and bones of others (though deliberate ricochet fire was invented, by Vauban, only in 1688). For technical reasons—sheer weight, problems of cartage, and limited mobility—field artillery lagged far behind siege guns. In *siege warfare*, solid shot was used to weaken walls as an assist to *mining* or *fire*, or if very heavy guns were available (possibly cast on site) they could independently batter down stone fortifications or force a breach. In war at sea, if fired at ships from a *raking* position (where solid shot penetrated thin planking at the fore or aft end of the enemy vessel), an iron cannonball might travel through the guts of a ship killing or maiming a dozen gunners and smashing into cannon and gun carriages. When solid iron shot was fired broadside at point-blank ranges it could penetrate decks or side beams and hole a ship below the waterline, if it was caught on the up-roll. Even a broadside hit that did not penetrate the wooden hull could kill: huge splinters exploded inward at high velocity from the inside of the impact point, impaling and terribly wounding men so that they died quickly from loss or blood or slowly from sepsis.

sollerets. Molded *armor* protections for the feet.

Songhay. ''Songhai.'' This Mande-speaking, West African empire straddled the great bend of the Niger, profiting as middle broker in the trans-Saharan salt, gold, and slave trades since the days of early medieval Ghana. Like *Kanem*, its original ruling house claimed to have Yemeni roots, though in the case of Songhay the claim was more likely a propaganda effort to gain legitimacy among its population following numerous conversions to Islam. Songhay was briefly a tributary of *Mali*, which cut it off from the desert trade in the 13th century. It broke free of Mali in the 14th century. Resurgent under a military innovator and conqueror, Sunni Ali (r.1464–1492), from 1464 to 1484 it utilized mounted knights to expand into several former Mali provinces and displace Mali as the major power in the region. Songhay captured Timbuktu from the *Tuareg* in 1469 and took Jenne with a riverine fleet in 1473. It greatly expanded the role of slavery in the economy, raiding south of the Niger to replenish its slave population. Under Muhammad Ture (r.1493–1528), it expanded westward and northward and raided in force as far south as the *Hausa* states. Ture was deposed by his sons in 1528, leaving Songhay divided between Animists and Muslims.

In 1591 Songhay was invaded and extinguished by a Moroccan army equipped with firearms. The Moroccans made an extraordinary trek across the desert to capture Timbuktu. Songhay's spear-cavalry and bowmen simply were no match for the Moroccan musketeers. The original conquerors were reinforced, but the tie to Morocco was slowly then definitively broken by 1618 when the fruits of the conquest failed to meet expectations in Marrakesh. The soldiers abandoned in Songhay clung to power and over time formed an ethnically distinct ruling class called, prosaically enough, the ''*arma*'' (gunmen). In the 1660s a succession crisis in distant Morocco provoked the arma to formally repudiate the Moroccan tie. Steeped in desert mysticism they were intolerant of the older and gentler Muslim tradition of Timbuktu and grew contemptuous of the cosmopolitan city they left behind on the coast.

Suggested Reading: David Conrad, *The Songhay Empire* (1998).

Sound Tolls. The entrance to the Baltic Sea narrows to just a small lane of water known as The Sound, lying between Denmark and the southern tip of the Scandinavian peninsula. It was a principal interest of Danish foreign policy and a major financial support of the monarchy, navy, and state to compel all ships traversing the Sound to pay tolls for the privilege. This occasioned frequent disputes and naval wars whenever Denmark was weakened, notably in conflicts with Sweden and the United Provinces. Nevertheless, the Danes levied tolls from the 1420s until 1857. See also *Christian IV*; *Dominum Maris Baltici*; *Kalmar War*; *Knäred, Peace of*; *Torstensson's War*; *Wallenstein, Albrecht von*.

Southern Route Army. See *Hakata Bay, Battle of* (1281).

Sovereign Military Order of Malta (SMOM). See *Hospitallers*.

"sovereignty of the sea." An English naval and political doctrine proclaimed in 1293 by *Edward I*, who had been summoned before a Paris court to explain why he had permitted his Gascon subjects to attack their liege lord, the king of France (the Gascons had burned part of *La Rochelle*). The doctrine held that English kings had "time out of mind . . . been in peaceable possession of the sovereign lordship of the English sea and the islands therein" (that is, the Channel). This was an effort to redefine a dangerous dispute with France as an internal English problem, and to elevate the English king to equal status with the king of France. On the water it was an idle boast: no one respected the English claim to jurisdiction, and England had no navy to enforce what, in Mahanian terms, today would be called "command of the sea." The assertion's most lasting effect was to sometimes embarrass the crown to pay compensation to foreign victims of English pirates. It was most often cited by foreign monarchs keen to embarrass their English counterpart, or by wily Flemish or Dutch merchants eager to recover goods lost to English *piracy*, or cynically by English pirates as an excuse to raid neutral shipping that "failed to honor" the claim. For two centuries English monarchs trotted out the claim to "sovereignty of the sea" but intermittently, only when it was enforceable or politic. Not even the staggering naval victory at *Sluys* (1340) permitted England to enforce this premature claim, which would have demanded a permanent navy to effect.

***sow* (*truies*).** A type of moveable hut protected on the roof with copper sheeting or hides. It was used to protect *sappers* and engineers as they approached the walls of a fortification. They were used extensively in medieval warfare on the continent. They were still in wide use in Ireland during the *English Civil Wars* after 1641, even though they were no longer effective when facing *muskets* or *cannon*.

***soyughal*.** The Kazan Tatar *servitor class* system of provisional tenure of landed estates in return for military service. It is not known whether the Tatar system directly influenced the Muscovite system of *Pomest'e cavalry*, which it closely resembled.

***spahis*.** See *sipahis*.

Spain. In 711 C.E. Moors from North Africa swept into Iberia, a poor and arid peninsula with few natural resources, claiming most of it for *Islam*. Over the next eight centuries Iberia witnessed a see-saw battle between Christian and Muslim rulers and states in the long and culturally formative *Reconquista*, with the fortunes of war eventually favoring the Christians. In 1469 the union of Aragon and Castile, through the dynastic marriage of *Ferdinand and Isabella*, set the stage for the final battle. In 1492 the last surviving Moorish state (*Granada*) fell to their crusading armies. In celebration, they sent Columbus

west to search for an alternate route to the China trades but also hoping to find a strategic backdoor to the Middle East. The relative tardiness of other Europeans in following the Spanish example of conquest and settlement of overseas colonies in the Americas has often been seen as a historical ''problem'' to be explained. Yet, it seems clearly the case that Spain was unique in its initial fortune: it encountered wealthy Indian empires that, once conquered, were easily exploited economically. Its colonial policy was also unique: Spain pursued armed settlement as an overseas continuation of its centuries-old pattern of military colonization during the Reconquista. Not even Portugal emulated Spain in this regard, barely penetrating coastal Brazil and Africa with entrepóts while France and England did not grip their first colonial toeholds for nearly a century after Spain had established a vast New World empire.

Catholic and *Habsburg* power looked to Spain as its champion with the ascent to the throne of *Charles V* in 1519. Spain's powerful infantry—the *tercios*—dominated land warfare in Europe for 150 years, along with the service of mercenary armies bought with the plundered silver of the *Aztec* and *Inca Empires*. In the 16th century Spain enjoyed a ''golden age'' of prosperity, internal (though not external) peace, and artistic achievement. It built a vast overseas empire, the first ''world empire'' in history, and was ''primus inter pares'' (first among equals) among the Great Powers of Europe. Imperial Spain faced no threat to the south, but was badly overstretched north to the Spanish Netherlands, east into Italy and parts of Germany, and west across the Atlantic to the Americas and into the Pacific. Its great advantages were that it enjoyed what one historian has aptly called the ''precocious modernity'' of a semi-modern state. It enforced religious uniformity in an age of doctrinal upheaval through persecution of Jews and Moors by the monarchy and *Inquisition*, culminating in the *expulsion of the Jews* and later *expulsion of the Moors*. Spain also benefitted from a ''power vacuum'' in Europe caused by prolonged internal disorder in its greatest enemy, France, during the *French Civil Wars*. Finally, it drew upon vast reserves of American silver to support protracted Catholic and Imperial crusades, though this bounty was a mixed blessing that brought with it a terrible *price revolution*, chaotic financial crises, and repeated royal bankruptcy.

. . . religious uniformity . . . through persecution of Jews and Moors by the monarchy and Inquisition . . .

Dissolution of the marriage of *Philip II* to *Mary Tudor* (1558) marked the high tide of Habsburg ''encirclement'' of France. Philip made Madrid the permanent capital of his empire in 1561. With the French tearing out their own vitals during 40 years of civil war from 1562, Philip was free to seek to impose religious conformity on the Netherlands and even in England. A revolt of the Moors in 1566 was quashed, but pointed to latent internal instabilities and weakness. Undeterred, Philip expanded: he seized Portugal and its vast overseas empire in 1580, gaining in Lisbon the best fortified anchorage in southern Europe. That also added to his naval strength the Portuguese fleet of

superb *galleons* and tens of thousands of able and experienced seamen, and gave him access to a store of several generations of secret maritime maps and navigational knowledge (*portolan charts*). On the other hand, taking Portugal also added additional overseas bases to defend against English, Dutch, and French *privateers* and *pirates*. Philip II sent Spanish armies into Flanders via the *Spanish Road* and sent the *Invincible Armada* (the first of three failed invasion fleets) north against England in 1588. The armies made little headway in decades of fighting and the Armadas were all lost.

Philip III completed Spain's economically and intellectually disastrous expulsion of its most educated and commercially advanced classes, which had begun a century earlier: from 1609 to 1614 he expelled remaining Jewish ''conversos'' and also forced into exile all ''moriscos,'' suspect converts from Islam. He negotiated peace with France in 1598, with England in 1604, and with the Dutch in the *Twelve Years' Truce* (1609–1621). All that may have been done in order to refinance and rearm. In any event, the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648) resumed in the year of his death (1621) and was prosecuted until 1648 by *Olivares* and *Philip IV*. Spain's dramatic martial and geopolitical decline was underlain by economic backwardness and inflation brought on by military expenditure and fiscal mismanagement. But the main problem was its pursuit of an unsustainable ''Weltpolitik'' (world policy) rooted in a medieval European vision of universal empire, the *monarchia universalis*, that did not match the emerging early modern world. Spain pursed protracted, debilitating, losing wars when peace might have been arranged on several occasions. But how could any part of a great empire which God had given Spain be handed over to heretics? While there is little question that Spain pursued a grand strategy of overseas empire and Catholic hegemony in Europe, the thesis should not be overstated, as Spain's international strength was always more a product of the weakness or internal division of its enemies than any fundamental national advantage. By the start of the 17th century Spain was still primus inter pares among the European powers, but the end of its preeminence had begun with de facto breakaway of the Netherlands and humiliation at the hands of England's *sea dogs* and navy.

By 1610 many within Spain's governing elite accepted that Catholicism could not be reimposed on certain parts of the empire or in Europe as a whole, and hence that Dutch and English heretics should simply be left to go to Hell after their own fashion. But that was not the view of Olivares or Philip IV. What changed fundamentally in the first half of the 17th century was not Spain but France: the re-emergence of a populous rival power after decades of internal chaos forced a basic shift in the balance of power in Europe. This was made evident by repeated defeats of Spanish forces in the 1640s, on land and at sea, by the Dutch and French. In the interim, Spain contended with serial revolts against rising war taxes in a losing cause in Catalonia, Portugal, Naples, and Castile itself. The Catalan and Neapolitan revolts were suppressed by force of arms, but Portugal broke free and took its empire with it, giving Spain multiple more fronts on which it thought it had to fight. The new balance of power in Europe was codified in the *Peace of Westphalia* (1648).

Yet, so complex was the relationship with France that even after the great war in Germany ended Spain and France still fought over Catalonia, where the lingering ''guerra dels segadors'' lasted until 1652. Final agreement on peace was only reached in 1659 in the Treaty of the Pyrenees. See also *Armada Real*; *Black Legend*; *Catalonia, Revolt of*; *Ceuta*; *conquistadores*; *Council of the Indies*; *cruzada*; *encomienda*; *Gibraltar*; *Lerma, Duke of*; *Line of Demarcation*; *Melilla*; *Naples, Revolt of*; *New Spain, Viceroyalty of*; *real patronato*; *requerimiento*.

Suggested Reading: Raymond Carr, ed., *Spain* (2000); J. H. Elliott, *Imperial Spain, 1469–1716* (1964; 1970); D. Goodman, *Spanish Naval Power, 1589–1665; Reconstruction and Defeat* (1996); L. Harvey, *Islamic Spain, 1250–1500* (1990); Henry Kamen, *Imperial Spain* (1983); A. Mackay, *Spain in the Middle Ages* (1977).

Spanish America. All New World possessions of the Spanish Empire, c.1500–1898, governed by the ''Spanish Monarchy'' as the empire was then known. At their greatest extent these stretched from Mexico through Central America to New Granada, and select Caribbean islands: Cuba, Puerto Rico, and most of Hispaniola. It included all South America except Brazil, which was Portuguese other than the period of Spanish control from 1580 to 1640.

Spanish Armada (1588). See *Invincible Armada*.

Spanish Army. The Christian armies of the *Reconquista* relied on Iberian *Military Orders* and the *Hermandades*. During the 14th–15th centuries, only 3,000 *men-at-arms* were kept in permanent service in Castile, with another 4,000 in a reserve on half-wages. (The Spanish Army that so impressed Europe, the army of the *tercios*, only took shape after the Reconquista.) The Brethren organized *militias* to supplement Castilian and Aragonese men-at-arms and the thinning ranks of the Iberian Military Orders. But once Spain moved to make war against other European powers the Brothers and militia were insufficient to meet Spain's manpower needs. Major reforms were introduced in 1493 that built the forces under royal command. The army was then critically shaped by the ''Ordinance of Valladolid'' of 1496, issued by *Ferdinand and Isabella*. This introduced conscription whereby 1 man in 12, age 20 to 45, was bound to royal military service. Volunteers were also recruited directly by the crown, and many served gladly as *conquistadores* in the 15th–16th centuries. As Spain's military fortunes declined in the 17th century rural landlords had to compel their tenants to enlist. In addition, Spain enforced penal conscription whereby felons were forced to serve out their sentence in arms, or sentences were commuted in return for military service.

A ''colonel'' was put in command of the basic unit of the Spanish Army, a regiment or ''coronelia'' of 3,000 soldiers, made up in turn of companies of 500 men. Two of these companies were armed exclusively with *pikes*; the others comprised combinations of *arquebusiers* and swordsmen. Each coronelia had attached to it a unit of 500 to 600 mixed *light cavalry* and *heavy cavalry*. Although the Spanish failed to standardize *artillery*—well into the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648) they used over 50 types of guns across some twenty calibers—their

use of cannon and arquebus in support of the pike-and-sword tercios made Spanish infantry the best troops in Europe for over a century. Under *Philip II*, in 1584 Spain could raise 200,000 troops all told. It kept nearly 150,000 employed on a regular basis, mostly in garrisons, including 20,000 infantry and 15,000 cavalry in Spain; 60,000 infantry and 2,000 cavalry in the *Army of Flanders*; 24,000 infantry and 2,000 cavalry in Naples and northern Italy; 15,000 infantry and 9,000 cavalry in Portugal; and scattered smaller garrisons in many overseas colonies. The financial burden of these huge numbers, added to the extraordinary costs of warships, dockyards, and convoy escort, was staggering, and ultimately fatal. See also *Alba, Don Fernando Álvarez de Toledo, duque de*; *Córdoba, Gonzalo di*; *Cortés, Hernán*; *Parma, duque di*; *Pizarro, Francisco*; *Santa Cruz, Marques de*; *Spínola, Ambrogio di*; *Zúñiga, Louis Requesens y*.

"Spanish Captivity" of Portugal (1580–1640). See *Brazil*; *Eighty Years' War*; *Invincible Armada*; *Philip II, of Spain*; *Portugal*.

"Spanish Fury" (November 4–5, 1576). The Spanish *Army of Flanders* mutinied after receiving no pay and no supplies as a result of a bankruptcy declared by *Philip II* in late 1575. Its starving veterans sacked several small towns from July through October, then ravaged the countryside to the point that opposing councils in Flanders and Holland united to drive the marauding Spanish and mercenaries away. But the militia of Brabant could not protect Antwerp where the Spanish ran amok, sacking the city. Over 1,000 buildings were razed, thousands of women were raped, and hundreds of civilians were robbed and murdered (Dutch propagandists claimed 18,000 dead). See also *Black Legend*; *Eighty Years' War*; *English Fury*; *Pacification of Ghent*.

Spanish Inquisition. See *Inquisition*.

Spanish Main. Originally, the north coast of South America. By the 16th century it referred also to the Caribbean coast of Mexico and the United States or even the entire Caribbean coastline. Along these shores Spanish ships formed into annual *convoys* to ply their way to Spain filled with slave-mined silver and gold from the Americas. Treasure ships were preyed upon by English *pirates*, French *buccaneers*, and in times of war—which was virtually constant at sea in the 16th and 17th centuries—by French, Dutch, and English *privateers* sailing under *letters of marque*.

Spanish Monarchy. See *Spanish America*.

"Spanish musket." See *La Bicocca*; *muskets*.

Spanish Netherlands. The southern half of medieval Burgundy (*Flanders*). It remained largely Catholic during the *Protestant Reformation* and thus split away from the rebellious Calvinist provinces during the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648). See also *Burgundy*; *Netherlands*.

Spanish riders. Sharp stakes driven into the ground at a forward angle by infantry anticipating a cavalry attack, but also useful as a defense to blunt advancing enemy infantry. In Sweden these were known as ''Swinesfeathers.''

Spanish Road. ''Le chemin des espagnols.'' The main *Habsburg* supply route from Italy to Flanders. It was of vital strategic and economic importance during the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559), the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648), and the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648), especially in those periods when French or Dutch or English naval power denied Spain the sea route to its northern possessions. It ran through Lombardy, several Swiss cantons, and into the Rhineland. Passage through parts of the Rhineland was often hotly contested. The Spanish Road hosted a remarkable postal service, a ''pony express'' of early modern Europe dating to 1504, when the Taxis family first created a chain of 106 relay stations supplied with fresh mounts to connect territories bound together by the new union of the crowns of Burgundy and Castile. In 1516 the young *Charles V* signed a contract with the Taxis family guaranteeing delivery times, and in 1518 Charles and *Francis I* of France agreed to extend diplomatic immunity to official couriers using a mutually advantageous service. *Philip II* deployed similar services connecting his new capital at Madrid with Rome and Vienna. In 1567 the *Duke of Alba* set up a new chain of postal relay stations. From 1572 riders from these stations carried copies of all letters to and from Philip II. Large bullion shipments also took this road to pay and support Spanish and Italian troops in Flanders, though other bullion shipments traveled by galley to Savoy and thence overland to the Netherlands. The route also had semi-permanent stations (*étapes*) where food, fodder, and other provision were brought by villagers and townsfolk for sale to the troops marching north. Later, *sutlers* were hired to supply the stations. This was quite advanced *logistics* given the state of the art in that era. In 1592 the first serious Franco-Dutch efforts were made to cut this vital Spanish artery in Lorraine. That led to a treaty securing Spanish access across *The Grisons*, by then a Protestant alpine valley, as long as the troops moved in small units and carried only *swords* (all other military equipment had to be carted separately).

Another critical choke point was the still-Catholic *Valtelline*. In 1595 *Henri IV* declared war on Spain and threatened the passage through Franche Comté, forcing the Spanish to march further to the east. Two years later Henri attacked the route in Savoy. Most issues appeared settled in the *Peace of Vervins* (May 2, 1598), but in 1600 Henri invaded Savoy, adding the pont de Grésin to France in the Treaty of Lyon (1601). That squeezed the Spanish Road down to a single route through a narrow valley and permitted France to cut it virtually at will. *Spínola* led 8,000 men through the pass in 1601 and more companies traversed it in 1602. Nevertheless, after 1601 Spanish troops could only move along this route upon French sufferance, a fact that greatly hampered Spain's military efforts in Flanders. As relations with France deteriorated, ultimately to end in protracted war, Spain was hard-pressed to resupply its troops in the north. There was intermittent fighting over control

of the mountain valley passes—the Protestant Grisons and the Catholic Valtelline—from 1607 to 1617, involving Spain, Savoy, Venice, and France. In 1620, Spain occupied the Valtelline and Grisons with 4,300 men. Within a year another 3,600 Habsburg troops were garrisoned in Alsace and 5,000 in the Palatinate, protecting the road north. But the next year the spread north of the German war cut off most roads from Italy to Flanders. In 1633 the French occupation of Lorraine cut all overland routes between Spain and Flanders. From 1635 the Spanish Road was more often than not blocked by French troops, who were garrisoned throughout the Rhineland. That forced the Spanish to reinforce their northern armies via the sea, with every convoy harassed by French and Dutch warships. Spectacular defeat of a heavily armed and escorted relief convoy at *The Downs* (1639) resulted in progressive strangulation of the Army of Flanders and reduction by the Dutch of the outer, fortified perimeter of the Spanish Netherlands. See also *besonios*; *Monzón, Treaty of*; *Rocroi, Battle of*.

Suggested Reading: Geoffrey Parker, *The Army of Flanders and the Spanish Road, 1567–1659* (1972).

spar. Any stout pole on a ship forming a *mast* when vertical, or a boom, *yard*, or gaff when horizontal.

spaudlers. *Plate armor* protecting the shoulders; also called ''pauldrons.'' See also *bracers*.

spears. See *lance (1)*; *pike*.

Speicher (Vögelisegg), Battle of (1403). See *Appenzell Wars*.

Spice Islands. The Portuguese first landed in 1512, after which these Moluccan islands became a great prize in the 16th century contest among European sea empires for control of the spice trades. In 1529 Spain renounced its claim in return for a heavy payment from Portugal. The islands were seized by the Dutch during the latter part of the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648).

spice trades. For centuries, spices from Asia (cloves, various peppers, curry powders, cinnamon, and others) formed one of the world's richest international trades. The direction of trade was from China and southeast Asia, Ceylon (Sri Lanka), and India, through Central Asia to the Middle East, and on to Europe. Arab middlemen, and in a real economic sense also Arab civilization, thrived from and depended upon this trade. In the Mediterranean, Venice dominated spice exchange, which made it and Italy rich, and underwrote and sustained the wars as well as cultural accomplishments of the *Italian Renaissance*. The Venetian monopoly was threatened by the Ottoman conquest of *Constantinople* in 1453, as the Ottomans at first denied market access to Venetian traders before later agreeing to a Venetian monopoly on

the westward carry trade. That calamity (from Europe's point of view) married a longstanding search (dating at least to the 13th century) for a new way to the fabled spice lands of the east with revolutionary new means of travel and transport: ocean-capable ships of sail that at last made it possible for Europeans to outflank Muslim control of the overland trade routes to Asia.

Once the Portuguese circumnavigated Africa they also bypassed Venetian control of the Mediterranean terminus of the spice trades, contributing significantly to the economic and military decline of Venice. Armed Portuguese merchantmen reached the Indian Ocean following the voyage of Vasco da Gama to the Calicut coast in 1497–1498. By 1510, Portuguese *carracks* had decisively defeated local Arab and Indian fleets of *dhows* and gained direct access to rich sources of cloves, cinnamon, and black pepper. Meanwhile, the Genoese explorer Christopher Columbus sailed west in 1492 in search of spices and other riches of Asia. In the *Line of Demarcation* decision made upon his return in 1493, Portugal was awarded a paper monopoly by the pope over the spice trade of the eastern hemisphere. Lisbon was never able to secure effective control of the sources of all the major spices, however. After a few decades of unchallenged profits, it lost the old monopoly on knowledge of the trans-African oceanic routes. In the mid-16th century Portugal surrendered the *Spice Islands* to the highly aggressive Dutch. Regardless of who controlled the spice trades at a given historical moment, for the better part of two centuries they were a major mover in European expansion and in naval and amphibious warfare in southeast Asia. See also *d'Albuquerque, Alfonso de*; *Diu, Battle of*; *East India Company*; *Fugger, House of*; *Portuguese India*.

Portuguese carracks . . . *gained direct access to rich sources of cloves, cinnamon, and black pepper.*

Suggested Reading: Kristof Glamann, *The Dutch-Asiatic Trade* (1958).

spiking (guns). The poor rate of fire and the limited range of early gunpowder *artillery* were inherent weaknesses that led opposing armies to adopt a simple and effective counter: wait until the enemy's guns fired, then rush the position and overwhelm the gun crews. From the early 15th century the additional precaution was taken of "spiking the guns." Once the guns were taken, iron spikes were hammered into the touch hole, which was the quickest and surest way to put *cannon* out of action. This rendered them inoperable even if the position was retaken by the guns' original owners. This threat to the artillery led to ever larger protective contingents of *infantry*, which meant more men on the other side were dedicated to charging the guns, which led to still more defenders, and so on. Over time, the proportion of an army's strength devoted to protecting or attacking artillery grew to a considerable size, much of it on the defensive side devoted to digging blocking trenches in front of the guns or constructing earthworks and palisades, and manning them. See also *Breitenfeld, First*; *Lützen, Battle of*.

Spínola, Ambrogio di (1569–1630). Italian mercenary general in the service of *Philip III*. In 1602 he raised an army of 9,000 *mercenaries* and hired it out to Spain. He was commander of the *Army of Flanders* from 1603 to 1628. Upon first arrival in Flanders, he relieved *Albert, Archduke of Austria* at the S*iege of Ostend*, finally forcing the city to surrender in September 1604. A highly aggressive commander, he reduced or stormed numerous Dutch strongholds and towns, often using his field army to screen siege operations from interference by his nemesis, *Maurits of Nassau*. This partially revived Spanish military fortunes from 1605 to 1606, just before the *Twelve Years' Truce* (1609–1621). As a member of a prominent Genoese banking family, Spínola was instrumental in obtaining loans to support Philip's war effort. He was also singularly responsible for modernization of the *Spanish Army*, in particular its system of *logistics*. One incentive was the chronically poor state of Spanish finances which several times forced Spínola to pay troops out of his own resources. He was a proponent of the Twelve Years' Truce and hoped to see it extended. When it ended in 1621, he resumed the fight with the Dutch and intervened in the Lower Palatinate, as the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648) merged with resumption of the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648). In 1625 he besieged Breda. In 1628, with the war in the Netherlands temporarily stalemated militarily, he left to become governor of Milan. He died during a siege of Casale. See also *contributions*.

sponge. The process of swabbing out a *cannon* or *bombard* after firing as well as the dampened felt or brush sponge (on the end of a long wooden handle) used to do this. It was critical to extinguish any smoldering wadding or burning powder that might remain inside the barrel. Failure to properly sponge out a gun could lead to catastrophic ignition of a new charge as it was loaded and *rammed* down the muzzle, which would kill the crew. For this reason buckets of water were kept near the guns to soak the sponge (and to cool the barrel by wrapping it from time to time with wet cloth). Sometimes acid was added to the water to wash out the barrel. See also *worm*.

springald. A ballista (arbaleste), dating in its main idea to at least Roman times, used to shoot large iron bolts stabilized by wooden "feathers." If fired into a mass of men, the bolt might pass through several enemy. The wounds it caused were almost always lethal, ripping great holes in bodies and leaving large splinters to later cause sepsis. Given its compact structure and size and the nature of its projectile, the springald was more often used in defense against a siege than by attackers. Springalds were not normally used as engines of bombardment, but they could throw stone ammunition in bombardment if necessary.

Spurs, Battle of (1302). See *Courtrai, Battle of*.

Spurs, Battle of (1513). See *Henry VIII, of England*.

squadron. Under the Dutch system introduced by *Maurits of Nassau*, each *company* was subdivided into three squadrons, each under a *corporal*. This system was copied, with variations, by many armies.

square rig. See *sails*.

squares. See *Arbedo, Battle of*; *arquebus*; *artillery*; *Banner (Swiss)*; *battle* (1); *Breitenfeld, First*; *Brustem, Battle of*; *Calven, Battle of*; *cavalry*; *crossbow*; *Dornach, Battle of*; *drill*; *Fähnlein*; *flags*; *Forlorn Hope*; *Frastenz, Battle of*; *Gevierthaufen*; *Giornico, Battle of*; *Grandson, Battle of*; *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *Haiduks*; *Harsthörner*; *heavy cavalry*; *Héricourt, Battle of*; *infantry*; *La Bicocca, Battle of*; *Landsknechte*; *Laupen, Battle of*; *Marignano, Battle of*; *Maurits of Nassau*; *Maximilian I*; *Morat, Battle of*; *mordax*; *Morgarten, Battle of*; *muskets*; *Nancy, Battle of*; *pike*; *Sempach, Battle of*; *shock*; *St. Jacob-en-Birs, Battle of*; *stradiots*; *Swiss square*; *tercios*; *Tilly, Count Johann Tserclaes*; *uniforms*; *Vienna, Siege of*; *wounds*.

squire. See *esquire*; *knight*; *men-at-arms*.

Sri Lanka. "Ceylon." Its indigenous people were conquered by *Buddhists* from India around 545 B.C.E. The Buddhist conquerors intermarried with the native Sinhalese to form the majority population. Also migrating to the island were ethnic Tamils and other *Hindus*, on and around the Jaffna peninsula. In 1505 Portuguese traders first made landfall. In 1515 Vasco da Gama secured the *spice trade* of Ceylon for Portugal. The Portuguese later lost out to the Dutch *Vereenigde Oostindische Compaagnie* (VOC), who controlled the island trade until displaced by the *East India Company* ("John Company") in 1796.

Stadholder. A representative of the *Habsburgs* in the Netherlands, with the exceptions of Brabant and Mechelen. They were always leading nobles from Flanders. The Habsburgs traditionally appointed three in the north, though under *William the Silent* these offices were combined into one Stadholderate. The title survived in the United Provinces after the outbreak of the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648). While often linked to the captaincy-general of the Dutch Army, it remained a political rather than military title. See also *Hendrik, Frederik*; *Maurits of Nassau*.

Stadtlohn, Battle of (August 6, 1623). The army of the *Catholic League* under *Johan Tilly* met a Protestant army of 15,000 under *Christian of Brunswick*, who had recklessly marched into Saxony. Christian withdrew on first contact but Tilly pursued. In Westphalia, just a few miles shy of the Dutch frontier, Tilly caught up with Christian's less fit and ill-disciplined troops and forced the fight. Both sides deployed in the traditional manner: infantry at the center flanked by cavalry. With heavy attacks, Tilly broke both Protestant cavalry wings and trapped the fleeing enemy infantry against an impassible bog. At least 6,000 Protestant troops died and another 4,000 were captured. The fool Christian escaped, running with under 2,000 surviving horse. The defeat

pushed *Friedrich V*, the ''Winter King,'' out of the *Thirty Years' War*, sent the Dutch of nearby Gelderland into a near panic, and brought thousands of refugees into the United Provinces by river and overland.

staff-weapons. Beyond the simple *quarterstaff*, staff weapons were any stout pole to which an axe head, war hammer, bill (blade), trident, or spiked tip was attached. See also *brown bill*; *gisarmes*; *goedendag*; *halberd*; *military flail*; *military fork*; *Morgenstern*; *polearm*; *poleax*.

St. Albans, First Battle of (1455). See *Wars of the Roses*.

St. Albans, Second Battle of (1461). See *Wars of the Roses*.

standardization (of weapons). See *artillery*; *ballot*; *bullets*; *Burgundy, Duchy of*; *cannon*; *corning/corned gunpowder*; *culverin*; *falcon*; *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *Henri II, of France*; *Invincible Armada*; *Le Tellier, Michel*; *Maurits of Nassau*; *muskets*; *New Model Army*; *pasavolante*; *printing*; *quarto-cannon*; *robinet*; *saker*; *shells*; *Spanish Army*; *Torstensson, Lennart*; *volley fire*.

standing army. ''Militum perpetuum.'' The permanent, professional army of a state; one not demobilized in times of peace. Several ancient empires had large standing armies, notably Rome and Persia. The *Byzantine Empire* at its height had a powerful standing army and a permanent navy supported by an advanced military bureaucracy and tax system. The first standing army in the Islamic world was set up by the Abbasid *caliphs* of Baghdad. This lessened their dependence on Arab tribal levies (*Bedouin*) while allowing newly converted, non-Arab populations to rise to social and political prominence within what was still an Arab empire. The *Mughal Army* had several hundred thousand permanent troops while the *Ming Army* was by far the largest of the period; it may have had 1 million men under arms in 1400, though this fell to just 250,000 a century later. The Japanese deployed large permanent armies toward the end of the *Unification Wars* (1550–1615) and in their two invasions of Korea in the 1590s. The rise of standing armies occurred later in Europe, paralleling a slow emergence of centralized monarchies and states (which came first remains a matter of intense debate). It was not until after 1650 that most powers in Europe adopted professional standing armies, in part to reduce the old reliance on untrustworthy *mercenaries* but also to concentrate military and political power under the sovereign. Creation of a standing army thus was not solely the result of evolution of military institutions or even a reaction to external military pressure. It primarily reflected changes in the social composition of states and armies and in popular attitudes toward both. This usually meant prior establishment of a stable tax system and a more advanced and literate bureaucracy, and expansion of social involvement in battle to include large infantry formations drawn from previously non-martial classes in countryside and town. Once the new militaries were in place they augmented trends toward national identities as

represented by wearing *uniforms*, use of distinctive emblems and *flags*, and stable national military cultures. Note: It is normal to discount *militia* or reserves or potential conscripts when calculating the size of standing armies. See also *Austrian Army*; *barony*; *contributions*; *Dutch Army*; *English armies*; *feudalism*; *French armies*; *Holy Roman Empire*; *housecarls*; *Hungarian Army*; *Imperial Army*; *Military Orders*; *Mughal Empire*; *Muscovy, Grand Duchy of*; *palace guards*; *Polish Army*; *Safavid Army*; *Spanish Army*; *Swedish Army*; *Swiss Army*.

standing navies. See *permanent navies*.

standing officer. In the *Royal Navy*, from the 17th century this was any of four *warrant officer* positions appointed to a ship on a permanent footing.

Stangebro, Battle of (1598). See *Karl IX*; *Sigismund III*.

***starotsy*.** Polish officials in Ukraine responsible for protecting the frontier against *Tatar* raids.

***starshnya*.** The *Cossack* officer elite.

States General. A governing body formed by the seven provinces that comprised the United Provinces in revolt against Spain. A special committee oversaw military operations. See also *Eighty Years' War*; *Generality*; *Maurits of Nassau*; *Nonsuch, Treaty of*; *Oldenbaarneveldt, Johan van*; *Raad van State*.

St. Augustine Massacre (1565). Following the defeat and massacre at *Fort Caroline*, a hurricane damaged a *Huguenot* fleet so that its survivors crawled ashore at St. Augustine, Florida. A Spanish military expedition ran down, caught, and killed all the men there, sparing only five *ships' boys*. Three years later, on April 6, 1568, a small Huguenot fleet surprised the Spanish garrison at San Mateo (Fort Caroline) and hanged every man in retaliation for the 1565 massacre.

St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres (August 24, 1572). This key event in the history of the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629) still sparks fierce controversy among historians over who was responsible for the bloodshed. It was once thought that *Catherine de Medici* and the *Guise* together plotted the violence, but most specialist historians reject that thesis. Instead, the Queen Mother is portrayed as looking to end the confessional warfare and heal the nation's wounds by tying Catholics and *Valois* to *Huguenots* and *Bourbons* with one stroke (though with a long-term hope of reconversion of most Huguenots): a dynastic union of Valois and Bourbon via the marriage of her daughter, Margaret de Valois, sister of King Charles IX, to Henri de Navarre (*Henri IV*). However, this proposal was made against a backdrop of several years of rising popular violence and zealotry. The prospect of a Valois marriage to a heretic

prince of the blood thus deepened rather than assuaged Catholic fears about secret Protestant influence at Court, and hardened opposition to any compromise with heresy and rebellion. This ugly mood was aggravated by efforts of some Huguenots to send military aid to Dutch rebels and news that a small Protestant army had seized Mons en route to the Netherlands. Catholics also falsely assumed that Charles IX was under the strong influence of the Huguenot commander *Coligny*, and again falsely that Coligny had persuaded Charles to support the Dutch against Spain. The planned union of Valois and Bourbon through the marriage of Margaret and Henri de Navarre went ahead on August 18, 1572. But over the next few days and the following six weeks, instead of reconciliation France was shaken by an explosion of extreme religious violence in which thousands of Huguenots were hunted down and the Fourth Civil War began.

The Massacres

The first of four key phases of the events known as the ''St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres'' came on August 22 with a failed attempt to assassinate Coligny, who was in Paris along with several thousand Huguenot nobles to attend the wedding. Coligny was shot in the arm and hand but only wounded superficially. As a result of the failed attempt on his life and his refusal to leave until the culprits were found, he and the majority of Huguenot nobles were still in Paris two nights later when the city exploded with violence. Modern research has largely cleared Catherine de Medici of the long-standing charge of organizing the assassination attempt and the massacres. No consensus exists on who to blame instead. Some scholars point to the Guise from whose house the shots were fired at Coligny and who stood most to gain from his death and renewed war with French Protestants. Others tried to save the traditional interpretation that blamed the Queen Mother. Still other historians marshaled evidence pointing to this or that culprit or claimed conspiracy. What is clear from the newest research is that the mass violence that followed was not directly linked to the assassination attempt: it was instead both popular and spontaneous rather than planned, and grew out of levels of extreme confessional tension within Paris that had been building for years. On the night of August 23, a Royal Council was called at which Charles and the Queen Mother agreed to make a preemptive strike against the Protestant leadership, that it was best to kill the top Protestant leaders all at once rather than face them again in battle. Heightening tension was the presence of a small Huguenot army outside the city walls and the presence of thousands of armed Catholic and Protestant nobles inside the city, men who had only recently taken up arms against one another.

Coligny was shot in the arm and hand but only wounded superficially.

Whether the order was given after long planning or impetuously out of fear and opportunity, the king's Swiss Guards, accompanied by soldiers loyal to the Duc d'Anjou, were dispatched into the hotels and the homes of leading

Huguenots to act as royal assassins. They startled awake Protestant leaders and their families and cut their throats or put them to the sword. The city militia was sent out to guard the streets and keep order while these bloody deeds were done. Coligny was killed personally by *Henri Guise, duc de Lorraine*, as part of an old vendetta between two noble families, Châtillon and Guise. Several dozen Huguenot nobles quickly followed Coligny into death. His blood lust and feud satisfied, Henri Guise protected other Huguenots from murderous Catholic mobs over the next several days. However, the Royal Council's plan for selective killings quickly got out of hand as ordinary Parisians, awakened by the death cries and screams of murdered Protestants, partook of an extraordinary and indiscriminate frenzy of ritualized murder, dismemberment, and drowning. Three awful days and nights of butchery in the streets, houses, and hotels of Paris ensued, joined in by some militia but carried out in the main by civilians rather than the Guise's or the king's men. Barbara Diefendorf has convincingly demonstrated that while Catherine and Charles did not plan these massacres, and despite the fact that they made some effort to stop the killing, their decision to murder the top Huguenot leaders betrayed such reckless disregard for confessional tensions in Paris and across the kingdom that they must be held responsible for them nonetheless.

At least 2,000 Huguenots were slaughtered in Paris by Catholics aroused to an exterminationist fury by the sounds and screams of official murders. The victims were not just killed: they were butchered with ritualized cruelty in sickening accord with Catholic rites of violent purification of the body social. Hence, special cruelties were enacted against pregnant women and their unborn babies, and hundreds of Huguenots were drowned in the Seine, perhaps symbolizing purification of Catholic France by lethal baptism. Others were vivisected and dismembered and their corpses (including Coligny's) and houses and religious places burned: ''purification by fire'' was an accepted method of expurgating *heresy* from the community of the godly. Historians also explain that the mobs thought they were carrying out the will of the king by holy purging of his, and their, confessional enemies. Even more important, pamphlet and other contemporary evidence points to a widespread belief that the killings were not just condoned by the king but were seen as the will of God, as signaled in dark portents and omens and affirmed on the spot by blessing of the murders by blood-spattered priests.

The massacres spread to the provinces during the next six weeks as a near-genocidal slaughter of the Huguenots gripped Catholic France. Another 3,000 were killed outside Paris in twelve provincial cities, all towns with Catholic majorities that moved to carry out a final solution to the Protestant problem by cleansing the Huguenot pollution from their godly communities. As in Paris, in the provincial cities civilians took the lead in the killings, repeating the pattern of ritualized humiliation and butchery of erstwhile neighbors. In several cities killings were carried out to the accompaniment of minstrels and musicians. In some towns civic leaders organized the butchery. In others they

placed Protestants into protective custody, only to see the city's prisons stormed by frenzied Catholic mobs who hauled out the prisoners and dispatched them in the streets.

Legacy

Most of the top Huguenot leaders were dead by October. That left only Henri de Navarre, who escaped murder by virtue of his new relationship with Charles IX and the fact that he abjured *Calvinism*. He was not the only one: many thousands of terrified Huguenots accepted reconversion to Catholicism. In some provincial cities fifty times as many Huguenots abjured their reformed faith as were killed in the massacres; thousands more emigrated to England or the Netherlands. The impact of these conversions and departures into exile on French Protestantism was catastrophic: Huguenot communities shrank to a fraction of their former size as despair set in, or they disappeared entirely, reconverted and reabsorbed into suspicious Catholic majorities. This happened well beyond the 12 massacre towns and Paris: public abjurations were made all over France. At the same time, and for the same reason, Catholic morale and confidence soared. The massacres thus marked the beginning of the end of the Huguenot movement in France and were the key turning point in the civil wars. Henceforth, Huguenots mainly hunkered down behind the walls of their fortified towns, which prolonged the civil wars by leading to fewer battles and more drawn-out sieges.

Nor were the massacres a signal event in France alone: they resonated across a divided Europe, bringing fear but also resolution to Protestant communities in face of widespread bloodthirsty celebrations by Catholics. The pope ordered a ''Te Deum'' chanted, struck a commemorative medallion, and had fresh frescoes painted in the Vatican depicting angelic approval of the French massacres. Catholic princes across Europe sent heartfelt congratulations to the Queen Mother and to Charles. Protestants drew a much different conclusion, forgetting and forgiving that Huguenot mobs had sometimes murdered Catholics without mercy and had also tortured priests, nuns, and monks in imitation of the *Inquisition*. And just as the French Civil Wars ended, across Europe various confessional communities gathered for the climactic phase of the wider ''Wars of Religion,'' with all sides asserting a renewed sense of righteousness and a new dedication to military resolution of old religious antagonisms. See also *Edict of Beaulieu*.

Suggested Reading: Denis Crouzet, *La nuit de la Saint-Barthélemy* (1994); Barbara Diefendorf, *Beneath the Cross: Catholics and Huguenots in 16th Century Paris* (1991); Mack Holt, *The French Wars of Religion, 1562–1629* (1995).

St. Bernard of Clairvaux (1090–1153). See *Crusades*; *Knights Templar*.

St. Denis, Battle of (1567). See *Saint-Denis, Battle of*.

Stegeborg, Battle of (September 8/18, 1598). See *Karl IX*; *Sigismund III*.

sternpost rudder. The sternpost was a straight timber rising upright from the keel to reinforce weakly built sterns and support a rudder that was fitted at the center. First used in Germany or the Netherlands at the end of the 12th century, the sternpost rudder was a key invention that displaced single and double steering oars and changed north European ship design. It greatly improved maneuverability and helped make possible the true sailing ship, which first evolved in the Baltic and Atlantic as the *cog*.

Stettin, Peace of (1570). See *Nordic Seven Years' War*.

stiletto. An Italian gunners' gauge in the form of a fine, thin dagger marked as a ruler and used for measuring both the caliber of a gun and the weight of shot and powder to be used. It also served as a personal weapon of last resort should the guns be overrun.

Stirling Bridge, Battle of (September 11, 1297). An early battle in the *Scottish Wars*. *Edward I* sent a large army north to secure his claim to *overlordship* of Scotland. At Stirling, *William Wallace* waited in ambush with a passionately inspired Scots army made up mostly of Highland infantry supported by small detachments of noble and retainer cavalry. They waited until perhaps a third of the English *heavy cavalry* crossed a narrow bridge over the Forth, then rushed to cut off the lead *knights* from the still-crowded bridge. While some Scots fought the English still on the bridge, others tore into knights milling about near the banks of the Forth. Many were pulled from their mounts and slaughtered, others were driven in panic to drown in the Forth under the weight of their armor. Stirling suggested that infantry could in fact stand against heavy horse, the arm that had dominated feudal warfare for two centuries, though its unique topography cast doubt on how general the lesson might be. The Scottish defeat at *Falkirk* the next year did not advance the argument for infantry. More clear was the stunning Flemish victory over French knights at *Courtrai* four years later.

St. Jacob-en-Birs, Battle of (August 16, 1444). An *Armagnac* army 40,000 strong invaded the Swiss Confederation in 1444. They were opposed by a force of just 1,200 regulars, plus 300 auxiliaries from Basle. After two minor skirmishes with Armagnac scouting parties the Swiss ranks and files grew eager for a fight, forcing their officers to continue an advance they wished to avoid. The Swiss forded the River Birs and were set upon along the far bank by the Armagnacs. The Swiss were badly positioned: the river at their backs limited prospects for any kind of tactical retreat. The outnumbered Swiss therefore formed their standard three squares of "Vorhut," "Gewalthut," and "Nachhut," and immediately attacked the Armagnac horse. Close-order fighting is said to have lasted for five hours, until the sheer weight of Armagnac numbers wore down the Swiss. The Swiss retreated to a nearby hospital where they gained some cover but still took heavy fire and casualties from French artillery and archers. The cannon fire particularly withered the

Swiss ranks. Then the Armagnac foot charged and overran the Swiss. In the last hand-to-hand fighting every Swiss was killed. The Armagnacs had won the day but their losses—estimated at over 4,000—were a testament to the courage and ferocity of their enemies. Conversely, Swiss losses were confirmation of the new power of artillery on the battlefield, something the Swiss sorely lacked prior to their war with *Charles the Rash* of Burgundy.

St. Lazarus, Knights of. See *Hospitallers*.

Stolbova, Peace of (1617). ''Stolbovo.'' A treaty of peace that ended the war between Russia and Sweden fought off and on since 1609, during Muscovy's *''Time of Troubles''* (''Smutnoe Vremia''). Sweden kept Ingria and Kexholm, but returned Novgorod to Muscovy.

stop-rib. A inverted v-bar on a breastplate designed to stop an enemy's *lance* from riding up the chest and penetrating the throat.

storm. To rush a *breach* in a wall or other fortification en masse. Usually carried out by infantry, this was a costly and risky tactic. At sea, the same tactic was called *boarding*. Whereas most infantry in most armies shied away from this dangerous task, the Ottomans had special units of volunteer commandos (*Serdengeçti*) who were the first through any breach. See also *artillery*; *belfry*; *castles, on land*; *fortification*; *siege warfare*; *solid shot*; *Sturmgeld*.

Stormakstid. ''Great Power Period.'' A term employed by Swedish historians about the period after 1621 when *Gustavus Adolphus* began to win a series of important victories and established *Sweden* as the new Great Power in the north. Usually said to have ended with the decisive defeat of Karl XII during the Great Northern War (1700–1721) against Russia.

Stoss, Battle of (1405). See *Appenzell Wars*.

Stow-on-the-Wold, Battle of (1646). See *English Civil Wars*.

St. Quentin, Battle of (1557). See *Saint-Quentin, Battle of*.

stradiots. ''Stradioti.'' Mercenary *light cavalry* mainly from Dalmatia and Greece. They were semi-barbaric, with a reputation for great ferocity and routine cruelty to prisoners. They wore distinctive ''top hats'' and light or little *armor*. While they carried *shields* and close-order weapons, notably a curved Turkish *sword*, most were *lancers*. Some also carried *crossbows* which they dismounted to use in the manner of *dragoons*. The Venetians recruited stradiots from 1479 to support their heavier cavalry and to contend with Turkish and Moorish raiders by fighting them in their own style of warfare. Using stradiots was also a calculated response to the intervention of the *Swiss square* and *pike* tactics in the wars of northern Italy. Venice paid stradiots by a

count of the enemy heads they delivered to the paymaster at the end of a raid. See also *heavy cavalry*; *mercenaries*.

Straslund, Siege of (May–July, 1628). *Albrecht von Wallenstein* dispatched an Imperial force to besiege the city of Straslund, an important port on the Baltic, an old opponent of Imperial power, and a target of *Olivares*' new policy of squeezing Dutch trade by attacking the *Hanse* ports. Although not yet ready to enter the *Thirty Years' War* directly, Sweden's Protestant champion *Gustavus Adolphus* sent aid by ship to Straslund to aid *Heinrich Holk* and the *Earl of Leven* (Alexander Leslie) resist the Imperials. Denmark also send aid. Wallenstein arrived and took command in early July. He made two failed assaults on the city then lifted the siege and moved off to fight at *Wolgast* (September 2, 1628).

strategic metals. The main metal used in warfare nearly everywhere outside the Americas during the medieval and early modern periods was iron, which was used to make weapons of war ranging from spear tips and bodkins to *armor*, to *hoop-and-stave* and cast *cannon*. Bronze—an alloy of copper and tin—was also known and in wide use, especially later in this period. Indeed, it was the preferred metal for casting larger *artillery* pieces due to its malleability during casting, general sturdiness, and much greater resistance to cracking and premature explosion. Its great disadvantage was expense. Copper, the basic metal used to make bronze, was found in quantity in Europe in Bohemia, Hungary, and Saxony. From the 16th century, large supplies of copper were imported by Spain from mines in Cuba, Mexico, and Peru. During the 16th and 17th centuries the Portuguese, and then the Dutch, exported copper from Japan to gun foundries scattered over Asia. In Europe, tin mining was largely confined to England, Germany, and Spain. A lively trade in these metals characterized the period, accelerating from the early 16th century but also concentrating in several key markets: Nuremberg, Bolanzo (Italy), and Antwerp. Bronze gun casting was done anywhere that skilled artisans and sufficient capital were brought together, sometimes even when an army was on the march (hence, into the 19th century some armies maintained a "right to the bells" by which their chief *gunner* could claim the best bronze bell in any captured town, later to be melted down and recast as cannon). See also *casting*; *Fugger, House of*.

. . . some armies maintained a "right to the bells" . . . later to be melted down and recast as cannon.

strategy. See *Art of War*; *attrition*; *bellum se ipse alet*; *castles, on land*; *chevauchée*; *fortification*; *guerre guerroyante*; *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *logistics*; *Machiavelli, Niccolò di Bernardo*; *Maurits of Nassau*; *Normans*; *Philip II, of Spain*; *Philip III, of Spain*; *siege warfare*; *trace italienne*; *Wallenstein, Albrecht von*.

Stratton, Battle of (1643). See *English Civil Wars*; *Hopton, Ralph*.

strel'sty. ''Musketeers'' or ''harquebusiers.'' A permanent corps of 3,000 nonhereditary Muscovite infantry armed with *arquebuses* (later, muskets), some of whom were selected from the *pishchal'niki*. The corps was established by *Ivan III* sometime between 1545 and 1550, probably in the wake of the disastrous Russian campaign in Kazan, 1549–1550. They were employed from 1550 by the tsars as an elite household guard then as an elite infantry corps that first saw combat in 1552. Some served as *dragoons* (''gunners at the stirrup'') and special guards of the tsar. Others served as auxiliaries performing household or constabulary functions. They were incorporated into a modified *servitor* system they owed the crown military service rather than taxes and they were not allowed to own serfs. Over time they evolved into a hereditary military caste, which lessened their military effectiveness. In wartime they formed the core of a tsarist army that otherwise was comprised of masses of ill-trained peasant conscripts supported by *pomest'e cavalry*. They fired from platforms while protected by cavalry or from *Wagenburgs*. By 1600, there were 25,000 strel'sty, with 2,800 serving in 28 elite companies in Moscow. Many later strel'sty remained Old Believers, alienated from the tsarist court after the schism within Russian Orthodoxy sparked by the reformed ritual introduced by Patriarch Nikon (1605–1681). They were savagely repressed by Peter I.

Stuart, Mary. See *Mary Stuart, Queen of Scots*.

Stuhm, Battle of (June 17–27, 1629). ''Honigfelde.'' After the Imperial victory over the Danes at *Wolgast* (September 2, 1628), *Albrecht von Wallenstein* sent 12,000 troops to aid *Sigismund III* against *Gustavus Adolphus* in Livonia. The Swedes advanced toward Warsaw but were blocked by a Polish-Imperial army at Stuhm, where *dragoons* seized the crossing over the Leibe. The Swedes were badly beaten by *Reiters* and *Cossacks*, with much of the fighting hand to hand. Gustavus, as always in the thick of it, was nearly killed or captured twice. *Cardinal Richelieu* then negotiated a peace with Poland that freed Sweden to intervene in the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648).

Stuhmsdorf, Truce of (September 12, 1635). An extension of an earlier peace between Poland and Sweden. It allowed Swedish troops to move to Germany, where they met and bested an attack by an Imperial-Saxon army at *Wittstock* (October 4, 1636).

Sturmgeld. ''Storm money.'' Extra pay given to soldiers who volunteered to take part in *storming* a *breach*, one of the riskiest of all military operations.

subashi. An Ottoman provincial prefect.

subinfeudation. Dividing *fief* lands held under *feudal* law and granting them to an inferior on the same conditions by which they were held by the higher lord. It was abolished in England in 1290, but survived for centuries longer in Scotland.

***sub utraque specie*.** ''In both kinds.'' In the Catholic Mass, serving the sacrament in the form of wine (blood of ''The Christ'') and bread (body of ''The Christ''). In the 15th–16th centuries it was a significant reform issue whether only clerics should take the sacrament in both kinds (the Catholic position) or whether it should be so distributed to lay believers as well. See also *Calixtines*; *Hus, Jan*; *Hussite Wars*; *Utraquists*; *Zwingli, Huldrych*.

Sudan. When the majority of Egyptians converted to *Islam* in wake of the Arab conquest, Arabic Sudanese closely tied to Egypt by culture and economics followed suit. The ethnically African southern Sudan remained mixed animist and Christian. Between 1300 and 1500, much of Sudan was overrun by nomadic Muslim tribes, fragmenting and pushing inland the older Christian kingdom of *Alwa*. Central Sudan was controlled by the ''Funj Sultanate,'' a cavalry-based military power, from the 16th to the 19th centuries.

Sud-Beveland, Battle of (1574). See *Boisot, Louis*; *Sea Beggars*.

***Sudler*.** A cook who traveled with the *baggage train* but cooked for the troops.

Sufism. The great mystic tradition of the Muslim world. It helped craft a grand compromise under the *Seljuk Turk*s between purer forms of desert and ascetic mysticism on one hand, and *sunni* orthodoxy and set legal and religious doctrine on the other. Sufism supplemented the grand sunni revival of the 11th century, which had been largely an urban and elite movement, by appealing to peasants and the nomads of the Arabian desert and Central Asian steppe and grafting these groups to a unifying mystical pietism. The Turkic tribes which converted to Islam were particularly attracted to Sufism. As a result, from the 13th century the majority of Muslims were bound to each other in a body of religious sentiment and identity that had as much or more to do with Sufism than with the earlier formed, but by then rigidified doctrines of legal theorists and theologians. See also *Qizilbash*; *shī'a Islam*.

Suleiman I (1494–1566). Süleyman ''The Magnificent.'' Ottoman sultan, 1520–1566. He succeeded and repudiated his brutal father, *Selim I*, expanding into Europe instead of warring with the *Safavids*. In a series of thirteen major campaigns Suleiman sought to complete the northward-moving conquest of the Christian peoples of the Balkans pursued by his predecessors, but blocked since the 1456 victory at Belgrade over *Muhammad II* won by *János Hunyadi*. Suleiman conquered outlying Serb provinces then undermined and assaulted fortified Belgrade in 1521, having first defeated the feudal cavalry levies of King Lajos of Hungary with his highly disciplined *Janissary Corps*. Although he lost many tens of thousands of men over six months of bloody fighting, he achieved what Muhammad failed to do. Building up the navy, he also succeeded in the south: he defeated the *Hospitallers* in a great *Siege of Rhodes*, 1522–1523, ending their protracted threat to the Muslim southern

flank. In 1524 Suleiman made peace with Poland so that he could concentrate on attacking the Hungarians. Accompanied by an *artillery train* of 300 guns hauled by barge up the Danube, he advanced into Hungary with 100,000 men in the summer of 1526. He was met by a Hungarian force of 25,000 on the field at *Mohács* (1526), where he utterly destroyed the overmatched Hungarian army. Having decimated its feudal nobility, Hungary lay prostrate and compliant before him. Buda fell in September.

When fortune shifted, the Hungarians later recanted their surrender. Although Suleiman expended vast amounts of Ottoman and Balkan blood and treasure trying to complete the conquest of Hungary, he was never able to do so. His aggression brought him also into direct conflict with *Habsburg* Austria. He personally conducted an unsuccessful *Siege of Vienna* (1529), possibly in tacit alliance with *Francis I* who sought an Ottoman alliance against *Charles V*. Suleiman was repulsed at Vienna and his army harassed and badgered bloody during its long withdrawal to Buda. As he pulled back, having overstayed the usual campaign season, his troops and cavalry suffered much want of grain and fodder.

Suleiman next attacked eastward into Asia Minor and Iran. It is important to note that his use of religious propaganda was aimed more at the *shī'a* ''schismatics'' and ''heretics'' of Iran than at Christian Europe: he was no *ghazi* in spirit, but was instead a sophisticated ruler of an increasingly cosmopolitan and tolerant empire. In 1532 he attacked Austria again, but neither side could win outright and Hungary settled down as a region of *guerre guerroyante* between the Ottoman and Austrian empires, with both sides content to leave it as a buffer between them. In 1538 Suleiman sent his navy to make war on Venice, threaten coastal Italy, and raid the coast of Spain. He tried but failed to capture Malta in 1565. He spent his last 25 years expanding and defending the difficult territory taken north of the Sava, as did his successors for another 100 years after that. Suleiman constantly intrigued with European powers, taking advantage of divisions within Christendom occasioned by the *Protestant Reformation*, the *Italian Wars*, and the first civil and religious wars in France. Suleiman was a life-long patron of arts, culture, and building, though even in such areas his instincts and tastes were imperial and martial. He died at age 72, still campaigning in Hungary, during the siege of Szigetvár.

Suggested Reading: André Clot, *Suleiman the Magnificent: The Man, His Life, His Epoch* (1992); Metin Kunt and Christine Woodhead, eds., *Süleyman the Magnificent and His Age* (1995).

Sully, duc de (1560–1641). See *Henri IV, of France*.

sultan. Arabic: ''sovereign.'' The sovereign ruler of an Islamic nation. The title became more common once agreement on the proper succession to the *caliphate* ended. A sultan ranked above emir but did not claim to rule all Muslims everywhere by right, as did the first caliphs. The Ottomans used the title from the early 16th century (Venetians called the Ottoman sultan ''Gran

Signor''). The Mughal rulers also used the title. Lesser sultans ruled lesser Muslim states in the Maghreb, Iberia, and in parts of southeast Asia.

sultanate. A territory ruled by a *sultan* as a secular prince, a Muslim religious authority, or both. See also *caliphate*.

sumpter. A baggage horse; not a *warhorse*. While never used as a battle mount for a *knight*, sumpters were indispensable in transporting his *armor*, weapons, and other effects to and from battle.

***sunni* Islam.** The main body of believers in *Islam*. Sunnis accepted the historical succession of *caliphs* and honored the Sunna, or tradition (life example) of the Prophet Muhammad. Four streams of accepted interpretation developed within sunni Islam, each reasonably tolerant of the others: (1) Hanafi, officially sanctioned by the Ottoman Empire and dominant in Central Asia, India, Iraq, Syria, and Turkey; (2) Maliki, predominant in North and West Africa and Sudan; (3) Shafii, spread through Arabia, East Africa, Egypt, and Southeast Asia; and (4) Hanbali, largely confined to inner Arabia. See also *Ismaili*; *shī'a Islam*; *Sufism*.

supply lines. See *lines of supply*; *logistics*.

surcoat. A long coat, usually white, worn by *knights* over their *hauberk* or other *mail*. It was called ''coat armor'' because it consisted of a hardened leather coat reinforced with plates of iron. It preserved *armor* from exposure to rain and, perhaps more important, deflected the baking heat of the sun. The surcoat may have been copied from the *Saracens*. See also *jupon*.

surety towns. See *place de sûreté*.

Susa, Peace of (1629). See *Charles I, of England*; *La Rochelle*.

sutlers. Large scale merchants (sutlers, in the full sense) carted goods in great wagons in the *baggage train* of armies. Sometimes, they heaped bulk goods on pole-driven barges that plied navigable rivers that paralleled the route taken by their customers. Sutlers also sold goods to garrisons and armies encamped for a siege. Armies were, in effect, large mobile marketplaces, often exceeding in size all but the largest cities. It made commercial sense to follow them on campaigns. Sutlers played a critical role in medieval and early modern warfare, not least since soldiers were responsible for obtaining their own food, clothing, arms, and equipment. Sutlers thus became a regular feature of the logistical systems of early modern armies as well, which could not have maneuvered as they did without such contracted supplies from civilian sources. At the start of a campaign sutlers might be dispatched along the anticipated line of march with orders to establish markets before the troops (and their families) arrived. Along the *Spanish Road* such sutler markets became more or less permanent over time.

Swabia. ''Schwaben.'' A large region of southwestern Germany originally including parts of Alsace, Baden, Bavaria, the Swiss cantons, and Württemberg. See also *Swabian League*; *Swabian War*.

Swabian League. A series of confederations of south German towns mainly located within Swabia. The first Swabian League was formed in 1331 by 22 towns led by Augsburg and Ulm. Initially, the Leaguers enjoyed support and protection from the *Holy Roman Empire*, which promised to uphold their constitutional rights and foreswore mortgage of their interests. The level of Imperial support for the League waxed and waned. In the 1360s feudal nobles who opposed emerging civic freedoms formed a counter-alliance called the ''*Schlegelerbund*'' (''mauling band''). With support from the emperor, the Bund moved to suppress the League, leading to fighting across Swabia from 1367 to 1372. League resistance was crushed by the Schlegelerbund under the Count of Württemberg. In 1376, 14 Swabian towns led by Ulm formed a new Swabian League and once again war broke out with the Bund. The emperor declined to support the nobles this time, possibly because he was bribed into effective neutrality by the Leaguers. The League *militia* army quickly prevailed over the *knights* of the Bund. This encouraged additional towns and cities in Bavaria, Franconia, and the Rhineland to join. In 1382 the Swabian League allied with Austria and was reaccepted into the Empire. The threat from the Schlegelerbund ended in 1395 when the headquarters fortress of its knights at Heimsheim was captured by a League army from Württemberg.

After nearly a century of religious and military quietude in Swabia, in 1488 the ''Great Swabian League'' was formed as a composite of knights and nobles of the ''Company of the Shield of St. George'' and a number of towns, all nominally accepting the authority of the emperor. The new League's military headquarters was in Ulm. Its army was comprised of noble *light cavalry* (''Rennfahne''), supplemented by ''poor knights'' hired by the member cities, and *Landsknechte* infantry. In 1499 the Leaguers supported the Holy Roman Empire during the *Swabian War* with the Swiss Confederation. In 1525 the Great Swabian League raised an army of 1,500 horse and 7,000 infantry to help put down the peasant rebellion in Germany and Austria known as the *German Peasant War*. The Swabian League was dissolved in 1534 because of growing and incompatible confessional differences, and hence dividing allegiance to the emperor, arising from the ferment of the *Protestant Reformation* in Germany.

Swabian War (1499). The Great Swabian League supported Holy Roman Emperor *Maximilian I* in his frontier claims against the *Swiss Confederation*. In January 1499, Imperial troops invaded and occupied a rich monastery in Graubünden (''*The Grisons*''). Fighting was actually sparked by taunts from Imperial troops shouted across the Rhine to passing Swiss from Uri (''moo, moo'' was a favorite), along with more provocative suggestions that all Swiss were ''cow herds'' or bumpkins, and that they partook of intimate relations with their herd animals: ''milchstinker'' (''milk stinker''), ''chueschnäggler''

(''cow cuddler'') and ''chuefigger'' (''cow fucker'') were among the coarse insults hurled across the river. The Swiss responded good-naturedly, by burning down a nearby village. Within weeks they returned in force and retook the Graubünden monastery and a series of sharp fights ensued. The first clash came at *Frastenz* on April 20, where the Swabians were flanked and routed. The next came a month later at *Calven* (May 22), where the Swabians were again put to flight. The key battle was *Dornach* (July 22), where the Swiss for the first time met *Landsknechte* in battle (Germans trained in the Swiss style to beat them at their own game of infantry shock and ''push of pike''). The Landsknechte were fairly quickly crushed. The Treaty of Basel that ended the war was signed two months later, on September 22. An unrelated event affected this outcome: the *Italian Wars* had left Duke *Ludovico Sforza* bereft of his duchy of Milan. Anxious to recover it, Sforza mediated the Peace of Basel to free Swiss troops who tied down fighting Imperial armies in Swabia, so that he could hire them for the fight he wanted to wage to regain Milan. The three quick yet decisive Swiss victories secured formal Imperial recognition of the Swiss Confederation. Within 15 years several more cantons joined the Confederacy, raising their number to 13. While Swiss soldiers sallied forth repeatedly to fight in other people's wars, their homeland was not again invaded before the late 18th century.

. . . along with . . . suggestions that all Swiss . . . partook of intimate relations with their herd animals . . .

Swahili Arabs. Arabic: ''Sahel'' or ''coastal.'' Sometimes called ''Congo Arabs,'' this mixed Swahili and Arab population (Bantu speaking but using many Arabic words) dominated the east African *slave* and *spice trade* between Oman and Zanzibar. Predominantly Muslim, from the 16th century they fought against competition from Portuguese slavers. Their own plantation economy on *Zanzibar* demanded slaves be taken from the interior. Surplus captives were sold into the Arabian and Indian Ocean markets. They were overwhelmed by the Portuguese in the 16th century.

Sweden. Sweden was founded as a Viking kingdom with extensive interests throughout the Baltic and deep inside Russia, where ancient Swedes (''Varangians'') were the likely founders of the first Russian state: Kievan Rus. Sweden was united with Denmark and Norway in 1397 in the *Union of Kalmar*. It broke this *union of crowns* in 1523 with the ascension of *Gustavus I*. He established *Lutheranism* but met deep resistance to most other reform measures he attempted. As Sweden rose to become an important regional power by the mid-16th century it faced constant hostility from Denmark, whose navy controlled the Baltic Sound and demanded payment of *Sound Tolls*. Sweden fought the *Nordic Seven Years' War* (1563–1570) with Denmark, and although it built a navy and even won a naval victory it was defeated on land and forced to pay a large indemnity to regain Älvsborg. In the eastern Baltic, given the decline of both the *Hanse* and the *Teutonic Knights*, the Swedish navy was unchallenged

and Sweden established several coastal enclaves. Expansion was furthered, but also complicated, by a dynastic marriage with the Catholic rulers of Poland-Lithuania. King *Sigismund III* was the offspring of that union but was deposed in Sweden in 1589 by *Karl IX*. Sigismund raised a Polish force that was met by a Swedish army that was still semi-feudal, consisting mainly of peasant levies and *mercenaries*. The reformed religion gave Sweden a rallying cry against Catholic Poles and Orthodox Russians, in addition to the ancient Scandinavian urge to war provided by prospects of plunder. During the long war that followed Sigismund's deposition, the economy and army was strained to the limit and Sweden's empire proved more a burden than boon. Out of this baleful experience Karl IX determined to prepare his son, *Gustavus Adolphus*, not just to conquer but also to govern shrewdly a kingdom mobilized for aggressive war. This emphasis on sound administration was crucial, as Sweden had only 1.5 million people, or less than a third the population of England and but one-tenth that of the Crown Lands of the *Habsburgs*.

Sweden was beaten in the *Kalmar War* with Denmark, 1611–1613, which was ended upon the death of Karl IX and by his son bribing the Danes to peace with an indemnity of 1 million riksdalers. Gustavus used the time bought to reform the army and fight off *Muscovy*. In 1621 he went on the offensive and took Riga (September 25), a city three times the size of Stockholm and thereafter a source of rich revenue sustaining his and Sweden's wars. During the 1620s, Gustavus pushed the Poles further out of Livonia and fought Sigismund for possession of Royal Prussia, 1626–1629. *Cardinal Richelieu* then arranged a peace to free Gustavus to intervene in the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). Sweden's intervention in Germany had a huge impact, rolling back earlier Imperial and Catholic advances and securing north Germany against the Habsburgs. Overnight, Sweden became champion of the Protestant cause. However, it lost its great king in battle at *Lützen* in 1632, and thereafter struggled to hold early gains with an army increasingly mercenary rather than national, and a population and economy that strained under the burden of decades of war despite dramatic growth in demands for Sweden's iron ore and fine cannons. The fiscal strain was offset by French subsidies, Livonian revenues, profitable foundries that cast for export Sweden's famed regimental cannon (and cannonballs), and other tools of early modern war for the export markets of northern Europe. From 1635 Sweden remained mired in the German war but no longer directed the grand strategy of the anti-Habsburg alliance—that role was assumed by France. For 16 years Sweden fought on, trying to hold on to at least some of the territorial and political gains Gustavus had earlier made for it in Germany. In the *Peace of Westphalia* (1648) Sweden retained enough German territory to confirm it as a major power, while in the Baltic it remained the unchallenged hegemon for another fifty years. See also *Oxenstierna*; *Swedish Army*.

Suggested Reading: Robert Frost, *The Northern Wars, 1558–1721* (2000); Michael Roberts, *The Swedish Imperial Experience, 1560–1718* (1979).

Swedish Army. The traditional Swedish recruitment system was known as "Gardetal," wherein levies were raised from homesteads rather than a strict

head count of male peasants. This was later reversed and replaced by the ''Bondetal'' (from ''Bonde,'' or peasant), in which levies were made by head count and not homestead. The overall system was known as ''Utskrivning'' (''Registration''). As with the army of its rival and ofttime enemy Denmark, Swedish soldiers were assigned to farms according to ''allotments'' (''Indelningswerk''), where they lived and worked as tenant farmers in peacetime. This kept a ready reserve in place while shrewdly displacing costs of military upkeep from the cash-poor crown to the productive countryside. Again paralleling the draft system in Denmark, if Sweden was attacked its kings could call up emergency levies by exercising the ''Uppbåd,'' their constitutional right to raise emergency levies of one man out of every five. This right was strictly defensive, however, and could not be used to raise troops to wage aggressive wars beyond the agreed borders of Sweden.

Beyond peasant infantry the Swedish nobility provided cavalry under the *rusttjänst*, a feudal military obligation to knightly service. If a noble wished to avoid personal riding service to the crown he was required to provide and pay for the upkeep and arming of a substitute. Much of this changed under *Gustavus Adolphus*, who introduced the first true national conscription in Europe (though still exempting the nobility). According to records kept by *Oxenstierna*, in its first year the system raised 15,000 men ''but afterwards, when every man had time to think of some evasion, not more than six or seven thousand.'' Once the Swedish Army entered the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648) in Germany and took heavy casualties, Gustavus and later captains resorted to hiring *mercenaries*, which they wrapped as best they could around a core of several thousand Swedish conscripts and noble and retainer cavalry. After 1632 most troops in ''Swedish'' armies were mercenaries. See also *Alte Feste, Siege of*; *Bärwalde, Treaty of*; *Breitenfeld, First*; *brigade*; *Chemnitz, Battle of*; *Dirshau, Battle of*; *engineers*; *Hamburg, Treaty of*; *Kalmar War*; *Karl IX*; *Kirkholm, Battle of*; *''leather guns''*; *mutiny*; *New Model Army*; *Nördlingen, First Battle of*; *Northern War, First*; *revolution in military affairs*; *''Time of Troubles''*; *Torstensson, Lennart*; *Torstensson's War*; *Zusmarshausen, Battle of*.

Swedish-Muscovite War (1554–1557). See *Ivan IV*; *Muscovy, Grand Duchy of*; *Sweden*.

Swedish-Muscovite War (1590–1595). See *Muscovy, Grand Duchy of*; *Sweden*.

sweeps. Racks of elongated oars. They were usually built into hybrid ship designs that had a high freeboard but were not yet true ships of sail, such as *Great Galleys* or *Guangdongs*.

Sweinfedder. See *swine feathers*.

Swiecino, Battle of (August 17, 1462). This battle is regarded by most military historians of the region and period as the historic turning point in the *War of the Cities* (1454–1466). A Polish army of 2,000 men under Piotr

Dunin sortied from *Danzig* to meet and defeat a force of 2,700 *mercenaries* and *Teutonic Knights*. After this loss the Knights could not hope to prevail or prevent further Polish gains on land and at sea.

swine feathers. Swedish: ''Sweinfedder.'' Sharp stakes or half-pikes driven into the ground at a forward angle by infantry anticipating a cavalry attack, but useful as well in blunting advances by enemy infantry. Elsewhere in Europe these simple but effective battlefield devices were known as ''Spanish riders.'' They could also be used to construct *chevaux de frise*.

Swiss Army. The Swiss operated a remarkably efficient and graded system of conscription from the middle of the 15th century. Rather than using a general head count, local councils of elders in each canton and within every town and village decided who and how many would serve. Recruitment was not usually a problem due to the immediacy of cantonal or village interests at stake in early Swiss wars, and the remarkable ferocity and general bellicosity of the Swiss. The term ''conscripts'' applied ever more loosely, however, as the mature Swiss Army moved into profitable *mercenary* service for foreign princes, fighting far away from the home cantons.

The recruits were divided into three groups. The ''Auszug'' were elite units comprised of fit unmarried men under the age of 30 who fought in every war their canton waged. The ''Landwehr'' were mainly married or older men who served outside their canton in wars authorized by the *Swiss Confederation*. The ''Landstrum'' was a general levy called up only in time of ''national'' emergency, and demanded the presence of all Swiss males capable of military service. The Landstrum was essentially a defensive levy, bringing in older and poorer troops to fight alongside elite and well-trained younger men, but it was effective enough to present any potential invader of the home cantons with a bristling wall of many thousands of tough, experienced, and usually merciless veterans. It has been estimated that the cantons could quickly raise a formidable force of over 50,000 skilled fighters in this fashion—a huge army by 13th to 16th-century standards.

The recruits responded to a roll call (''Mannschaftsrodel'') which decided who would officer the units, the number of men to be raised in each local area, and what equipment and supplies the guilds or towns needed to provide the troops. Soldiers provided their own weapons, usually, a *halberd*, *pike*, or *crossbow*, and were expected also to provision themselves with a minimum of 5 to 6 days' food supply. This gave Auszug units an unusual mobility and logistical independence which more than once caught a clumsy enemy by surprise and led him to death and desolation. Swiss troops were all well-drilled. They kept an unusually tight formation on the march and also in battle, with a degree of rigor and close-order discipline not seen in European warfare since the fall of the Western Roman Empire and the last legionnaires. For that reason *Machiavelli* called the Swiss the ''new Romans of Europe'' (he might better have called them the new Spartans). Unlike other medieval or early modern armies the Swiss elected their officers during a muster held in

each canton before embarking on a campaign. This ensured that officers knew most of the men under their command. If the army represented the Confederation an overall commander might be chosen, though rivalries among the cantons meant they sometimes fought instead under a council of war that provided collective rather than a central command.

Larger *Swiss squares* assembled under the *Banner* of a canton. Smaller than the Banner was the ''*Fähnlein*,'' or ''small flag'' tactical group organized by guild or town and numbering anywhere from 50 to 150 men. Some Fähnlein specialized in missile weapons (crossbow and later *arquebus*) to support the front ranks of pikes. The greatest tactical weakness of the Swiss was their complete lack of *cavalry*. Even when pikemen and halberdiers won a victory with ''push of pike'' they did not always finish off a beaten enemy because they could not effectively pursue his fleeing troopers. This happened at *Grandson* (1476), where failure to finish off the Burgundians made necessary two more battles: *Morat* (1476) and *Nancy* (1477). The great strategic weakness of the Swiss, which Hans Delbrück noted, was that ''it was known that they always wished to return home again soon. . . . Therefore, if one succeeded in avoiding their attack and outlasting them in unassailable positions, one could hope to win the campaign without risks and without battle.'' See also *Appenzell Wars*; *Arbedo, Battle of*; *Burgundian-Swiss War*; *Calven, Battle of*; *Dornach, Battle of*; *Frastenz, Battle of*; *Giornico, Battle of*; *Héricourt, Battle of*; *Kappel, Battle of*; *Laupen, Battle of*; *Marignano, Battle of*; *Morgarten, Battle of*; *Näfels, Battle of*; *Novara, Battle of*; *Reisläufer*; *Sempach, Battle of*; *Sempach, Covenant of*; *St. Jacoben-Birs, Battle of*; *Swabian War*.

Some Fähnlein specialized in missile weapons to support the front ranks of pikes.

Swiss Confederation. ''Schweizerische Eidgenossenschaft.'' This strategically located mountainous state was populated in Roman times by the Helvetii, a Celtic people conquered and assimilated by the Roman Empire. For a thousand years after the fall of Rome the Swiss maintained effective independence in their rural valleys and high mountain towns, fending off would-be conquerors from rude Christian kingdoms of the West and successive waves of pagan invaders. Swiss villages and herds were protected by stone retreats defended by local *militia*. During the 13th century, however, *Habsburg* expansion into neighboring areas threatened the fragmented Swiss cantons and provoked them to a more organized military response. In 1291 the first-known instance occurred of Swiss serving outside their cantonal borders, in Italy. The three ''Forest Cantons'' of Schwyz, Unterwalden, and Uri, known jointly as the ''Waldstätte,'' formed a military-political alliance called the ''Everlasting League'' or ''Eternal Bond of Brothers.'' Over the next 25 years the covenant—drafted in Latin and sworn to by oath—formed the core of a confederation of ''sworn comrades'' (''Eidgenossen'') of the Swiss Confederation (''Schweizerische Eidgenossenschaft''), around which other cantons rallied as the threat from Austria grew. From 1332 to 1353, five more cantons joined the

Confederation: Lucerne (1332), Zürich (1351), Zug (1352), Glarus (1352), and Berne (1353).

Like nearly everyone else in Europe in the mid-14th century, the Swiss suffered despair and dislocations from the *Black Death*. This led to wild charges of witchcraft and to violence against Jews. Externally, the Swiss fought to preserve their de facto independence from powerful barons of the *Swabian League* as well as from Habsburg emperors, though they did not yet claim de jure independence from the Empire. The main instrument of their military success was the *Swiss square*. In a series of 14th-century battles, the well-drilled and ferocious ''cowherds'' of the Alps devastated Austrian and German *knights* at *Morgarten* (1315), *Laupen* (1339), *Sempach* (1386), and *Näfels* (1388). In several of those encounters they used terrain and cunning to even greater effect than their *halberds* and *pikes*.

In 1393 the cantons agreed on the *Covenant of Sempach*, melding their separate armies into a proto-national *Swiss Army*. The next year the Confederacy signed a twenty-year truce with Austria, which left the Swiss effectively independent while nominally still part of the Holy Roman Empire. As a result of the *Appenzell Wars* (1403–1411) the Confederacy solidified alliances with additional cantons. With the introduction of the pike in larger numbers, ordered after the near disaster at *Arbedo* (1422), the Swiss began a century of infantry domination of European warfare. They also placed restrictions on individual foreign military service from 1422. For instance, Zurich forbade its citizens from running away to serve for pay in a foreign army. Collective requests for mercenary service were another matter. The first recorded contract was agreed with Florence in 1424.

From 1436 to 1450, the cantons were wracked by a civil war provoked by territorial ambitions on the part of Zurich that clashed with Confederate interests. In 1444 the Swiss fought off an *Armagnac* invasion at *St. Jacob-en-Birs*. The Peace of Constance (June 12, 1446) set the stage for a final arrangement, and in 1450 general peace was achieved under a strengthened Confederacy. From 1474 to 1477 the cantons waged the *Burgundian-Swiss War* against *Charles the Rash*, during which the Swiss made allies of a number of south German cities and princes also threatened by Burgundian expansion. At first this move was supported by the Emperor and by *Louis XI* of France, but after just a year those monarchs withdrew and left the Swiss to face Burgundy alone. Swiss squares proceeded to destroy the vaunted Burgundian Army at *Héricourt* (1474), *Grandson* (1476), *Morat* (1476), and *Nancy* (1477). The next year, the Swiss defeated the Milanese at *Giornico* (1478). These victories elevated Swiss infantry to the premier league, while fatally damaging Burgundy. The final stage in the Swiss struggle for national independence was the *Swabian War*, which the Swiss won handily in three swift battles all fought in 1499: *Frastenz*, *Calven*, and *Dornach*. After that, Swiss infantry commanded the highest wages from Europe's warring kings and princes.

By the first quarter of the 16th century the Swiss Confederation had expanded to thirteen cantons organized in a loose but effective political, military, and constitutional association. Early in the *Italian Wars* thousands of

Swiss were hired by Duke *Ludovico Sforza* to recover the Duchy of Milan from the French. The first effort was turned back at Novara (1500), but the Swiss took Milan in 1512. They held it nominally for the old duke's teenage son, *Maximilian Sforza*, repelling the French at *Novara* (1513). Swiss rule in Milan was grim: they imposed heavy taxes on the peasantry of Lombardy and billeted 20,000 men on the city. In 1515 *Francis I* invaded the duchy with a reformed French Army, then stunned the military world by smashing Swiss squares and blunting Swiss tactics in a two-day fight at *Marignano* (September 12–13, 1515). Swiss military power was not just curtailed in northern Italy after this defeat outside Milan: the Confederation signed the "*Perpetual Peace*" with France and did not fight the French for another 300 years; nor did it again send a full national army to fight outside the cantonal borders.

In the mid-16th century Switzerland was wracked by religious civil war, with the predominantly Catholic Forest Cantons splitting from Zürich in 1528 in opposition to Protestant radicals in that city who followed the firebrand teachings of *Zwingli*. The Zürich militias were annihilated at *Kappel* (1531), where a wounded Zwingli was dispatched as he lay on the ground after the battle. During the rest of the century Swiss hired out mainly to the kings of France and the popes, and fought repeatedly and unmercifully against German *Landsknechte* fighting for the Empire. During the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629) Swiss mercenaries fought on both sides and so impressed the Royalists that they foreswore ever again hiring cheaper, but less reliable, Landsknechte. During the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648) and the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648), when *The Grisons* were of great strategic importance to Spain and all of Europe was in flames, Swiss mercenaries served in many foreign armies. When the fighting finally stopped in 1648 the *Peace of Westphalia* confirmed the full legal independence of the Swiss Confederation, separating it formally from the Holy Roman Empire. See also *Calvinism*; *Papal States*; *saubannerzug*; *Savonarola, Girolamo*.

Suggested Reading: Frederick William Dame, *History of Switzerland* (2001); Douglas Miller and Gerry Embleton, *The Swiss at War, 1300–1500* (1979); J. L. Murray, *History of Switzerland* (1985).

Swiss square. Swiss "*Reisläufer*" ("Confederates") were propelled to international attention—and well-paid military service—by a series of stunning victories won by tough and merciless *infantry* over the mounted *cavalry* of the Austrians, French, and Burgundians: for nearly 200 years the Swiss were the premier infantry in European warfare, almost never defeated at odds less than 4:1. The Swiss square, or "Haufen" ("heap" or company), did not deploy cavalry on the flanks. This was because Swiss tactics were rooted in alpine valley and forest warfare where cavalry could not develop or operate, and because infantry better reflected the rough egalitarian structure of Swiss society. Swiss soldiers in the 14th century were very lightly armored, usually wearing only an iron skull cap and corselet; they did not carry shields or wear *mail* or *greaves*, and never wore *plate*. This made them far lighter and swifter on the march and on the field than almost any opponent they met, especially

lumbering mounted *knights* on oversized *warhorses*. By the 15th century, as lighter Italian *armor* came onto the market and Swiss soldiers took mounds of armor from the bodies of thousands of their dead enemies, armor came into greater use in Swiss warfare. Even so, generally only the front ranks wore plate: key to the Swiss way of war remained mobility and maneuver and this spoke against weighing down the Haufen with iron.

Early Swiss squares were made up mostly of halberdiers and axemen with some pikemen for protection, with crossbowmen and arquebusiers in support. The proportion of pikemen grew with time, but slowly. After a small Swiss army was nearly wiped out at *Arbedo* in 1422, the *Swiss Confederation* ordered that squares must comprise one-fifth crossbowmen and arquebusiers, one-fifth pikemen, and three-fifths halberdiers. The number of pikemen crested at about one-quarter of each square late in the 15th century. Swiss troops marched in sensible columns but as they approached the field of battle they quickly switched to parallel ranks making up three compact squares: the ''Vorhut,'' or van; the ''Gewalthut'' (or ''Gewalthaufen'') at the center; and the ''Nachhut,'' or rearmost square. The Vorhut had the majority of missile troops. The Gewalthut was the largest square. Its job was *shock* and push of *pike*, and it usually also protected the senior commanders. The Nachhut was the smallest but most flexible of the three squares. It moved behind the van in support of the main attack but could deploy to either side in a flank attack should the van become locked in close combat at the center.

This tripartite division allowed the Swiss to either feint or attack from either flank and to perform other complex maneuvers in the midst of battle, including complete encirclement and attacking from the rear simultaneously with a flank or frontal assault. The Vorhut might pin the enemy center, for instance, while the other two squares hit him from less well-protected angles (a tactic also used to great effect 500 years later by the Zulu). Or the Vorhut and the Gewalthut might attack in echelon with the Nachhut uncommitted and held in reserve until a decisive moment was reached. The Swiss also sometimes deployed a *Forlorn Hope* to skirmish in front of the Vorhut and act as a decoy or make minor feints. If cut off and isolated, the Swiss would form a true square with four ranks of pikes on every side with missile troops (including axemen, as some battleaxes were thrown rather than swung) in the middle. From there darts, stones, quarrels, axes, and shot were hurled toward the enemy. The front rank of pikemen would kneel with their pikes held fairly level and low; the next rank planted their pikes in the style of boar hunters, at an upward angle secured by the right foot; the third rank held their pikes level at waist height; the fourth rank held their pikes at shoulder height. This formed a defensive wall that was impenetrable by cavalry or infantry, with lethal blades set to contact the enemy at every level: gut, chest, and face. In the center, a stand of protective axemen and swordsmen defended the *Banner* and *Fähnlein*.

In attack, the Swiss deployed three front ranks presenting a hedge of iron-tipped pikes held at the level, behind which additional pikemen trotted with weapons held upright and one hand on the shoulder of the man in front,

ready to fill in any gaps in the attacking lines caused by enemy success. Next came halberdiers supported by crossbowmen. The first three ranks leveled pikes at shoulder height (modern experiments confirm that employing pikes in the fourth or fifth rank threatened men of the first ranks far more than the enemy). Then the whole ''square,'' which might be 30 or more ranks wide and 60 files deep, set off upon a shouted command or a signal from an alpine war horn. A disciplined and compact mass of 1,500–2,000 men (some later squares reached 10,000 or more) kept a tight but highly mobile and flexible formation as they moved toward the enemy. The square held shape even as the command was given for a fast trot, a pace maintained to the beat of drums or practiced chants. About 50 yards away the whole square accelerated to full battle speed and its mass slammed into the enemy, 18-foot pikes at chest or face height, punching through armor into flesh. The number of files provided the ''weight'' that gave this infantry charge real ''shock.''

The lead ranks of pikes smashed nearly irresistibly into any standing enemy, infantry or cavalry. As enemy front lines collapsed and went under foot with the momentum of the impact, follow-on ''push of pike'' resulted from 50 or 60 rear ranks pushing hard on the backs of the men in front. The whole square might undulate as it rose over the slick bodies of enemy (and friendly) dead, man or horse. Enemy wounded emerging from the rear of the square were hacked to death without mercy by halberdiers and axemen. If the shock of the initial charge did not break the enemy frontage but only moved him back, halberdiers left the ranks to curl around and slash at the enemy, gashing legs and horses and pulling *men-at-arms* from mounts or out of files to be finished off by a quick throat-cutting or a dirk plunged into an unprotected armpit or groin. While this was happening shot and quarrels whistled overheard, fired at point-blank range into the faces of the enemy by skilled crossbowmen at the rear and center (the national legend of William Tell, which dates to the early 14th century, had some basis in the fact of Swiss skill with missile weapons). If victory still eluded, the Vorhut and Nachhut would leave reserve positions to reinforce the Gewalthut and attack into the enemy flanks or rear.

The lead ranks of pikes smashed nearly irresistibly into any standing enemy, infantry or cavalry.

On the march as on the battlefield, the Swiss appeared as moving groves that bristled with the promise of death. Their great Banners and lesser *flags* announced the arrival of men of terrible resolve and reputation. So fearsome and well-deserved was the Swiss reputation for killing prisoners and for mutilation, in 1444 a formal regulation was passed by the cantons forbidding soldiers from anymore cutting out the hearts of dead enemies as trophies (a fairly common practice of the Swiss). As the renown of the military effectiveness of Swiss soldiers grew after the great victories over Austria and Burgundy, so did fear, admiration, and ultimately emulation. For the next four decades those who could afford to do so hired Swiss mercenaries before

heading into battle. Those who could not pay the price (a common lament was ''pas d'argent, pas de Suisses,'' or ''no money, no Swiss''), or whom the Swiss would not serve for other reasons, imitated their formations and tactics as best they could. The most famous mimics, with whom the Swiss shared an intense mutual and murderous hatred, were the German *Landsknechte*. See also *Appenzell Wars*; *caracole*; *Grandson, Battle of*; *La Bicocca, Battle of*; *Laupen, Battle of*; *Marignano, Battle of*; *Morat, Battle of*; *Morgarten, Battle of*; *Näfels, Battle of*; *Nancy, Battle of*; *Sempach, Battle of*; *St. Jacob-en-Birs, Battle of*; *Swabian War*; *Thirty Years' War*.

swivel gun. Small to mid-sized (up to six feet long) breech-loading cannon firing *grapeshot* or some other *canister shot* in an anti-personnel role. They were deployed as secondary artillery on *galleys* or on the high *castles* of roundships from where they could fire down onto the enemy's deck. The Chinese directly copied Portuguese swivel guns, which they called ''Javanese guns'' because they thought Portugal might be located near Java. Later, these models evolved in China into *folangji*. The Chinese also blended the swivel gun and *musket* to make the *child-mother gun*. See also *port piece*; *sling*; *verso*.

Sword Brethren. See *Livonian Order*; *Teutonic Knights*.

sword hunts. See *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*.

swords. Throughout this period personal blade weapons remained important on the battlefield, for self-defense in civilian life, and for sorting out matters of ''honor'' between gentlemen. Starting in the 9th century, the short ''gladius'' style inherited by Europe from Rome was displaced by swords with thinned, flattened, and tapered blades. This helped balance, reduced weight (to about 2½ pounds), and improved handling and fighting capabilities. The flat blade also took a better cutting edge, which was more useful against standard *mail*. A flat double-edged sword thus became the signature weapon of the medieval *knight*. A medieval swordmaker might take as long as 200–250 hours to finish one blade, raising the price of this weapon beyond the reach of any but the high nobility and their *men-at-arms*. Early medieval swords were made from pattern-welded steel and forged with a central groove which reduced metal content and weight without affecting strength. The blade was tapered to the hilt, improving balance and blade speed. For over 500 years, until about 1350, medieval European swords were mostly unchanged in appearance or manufacturing technique. As *plate armor* replaced mail and stabbing rather than slashing became the preferred use of blades against other armored men, knightly swords were thinned and tapered to a sharp thrusting point, usually reinforced with additional metal needed to punch through iron plate.

Swords played an enormous role in the mystique of the knight and the mores, ceremonies, and mystic symbolism of *chivalry*. Like later great

bombards, great swords were named and passed down as prized heirlooms to successor generations. Or they were buried in a kingly grave with their royal owner. On the other hand, many were hurled into streams or lakes: the story of the watery origin of King Arthur's magical sword ''Excalibur'' probably had a basis in the widespread medieval practice of casting swords into rivers or lakes once their owner died (though why this was done remains a mystery). For Crusaders, the sword's importance was accentuated by coincidental resemblance to the cross, prime symbol of every Christian holy warrior. In Iberia, ''Toledo steel'' became synonymous with the *Reconquista*.

The medieval Japanese sword is today often popularly depicted as the signature weapon of a *samurai*, but in fact it was initially his secondary weapon: the samurai began as mounted archers first and swordsmen second. Still, in Japan as in Europe the sword achieved a mystique for warriors and in literature and legend that no other weapon came close to equaling. It was the symbol of a samurai's social status, the means by which he took heads (''kubi jikken'') and won battlefield promotion, and the instrument of his ritual suicide should he decide or be ordered to perform seppuku. The medieval Japanese sword is rightly and universally admired for its supreme craftsmanship and beauty. There were many styles, including the curved ''katana'' that a samurai often paired with an 18 to 24 inch ''wakizashi''; the single-edged ''kogatana'' (''small blade''); the still smaller ''Tanto'' (a *dagger*); and various ''Daisho'' pairs of large and small weapons worn together in combinations of subtle symbolism and meaning. Japanese swords are also classed by age. The oldest were ''jokoto'' (''ancient swords'') dating to c.795. Medieval swords might be classed as ''koto'' (''old swords''), made between c.795 and 1596. The climax of the *Unification Wars* saw manufacture of ''shinto'' (''new swords'') between c.1596 and 1624. Swords made in the 14th–16th centuries remain among the most highly regarded. Another typology referred not to date of forging but to the importance of warriors in Japanese society. ''Bushi'' (''warrior'') era swords dated to the sharp rise of samurai warfare in the 10th century. Bushi swords were elegant and exceptionally keenly edged, sharper and far more refined than any contemporary European sword. The 12th century saw ''Kamakura'' period swords which reached so refined a peak of craftsmanship of forging and folding and refolding that the standard was set for all subsequent models. Most ''national treasure'' swords in Japanese museums date to the competing schools of master smiths of the Kamakura period, each of which put a unique signature on his swords by using local iron and sand in their making.

Ottoman swords and knives were mostly of Iranian, not Arab, origin. The ''kiliç'' was the most common blade. It was only slightly curved and did not taper to a point. The ''acemi kiliç'' was a curved, Iranian-origin saber. The Ottomans also used a sword with a reverse curve to the blade, the famous ''yatağan,'' better known in the West as the ''Turkish sword.'' It is worth noting that it was the bow, of all types, that was replaced by firearms and not the sword. In Japan, in the Middle East, in India, China, and Europe, the sword survived on the battlefield alongside the *musket* long after *longbows* and

crossbows disappeared. As a weapon of choice of the European officer class the sword survived into the early 19th century; as a personal weapon of Japanese officers of samurai descent or pretension it survived into the mid-20th century, where officer swords were put to horrific use in World War II. The sword is still used in commissioning ceremonies of several modern armies, including the U.S. Marine Corps. See also *claymore*; *counter-guard*; *falchion*; *pata*; *silahdars*.

Suggested Reading: R. E. Oakeshott, *The Sword in the Age of Chivalry* (1964).

Syria. See *Bedouin*; *caliph*; *Crusades*; *Islam*; *Mamlūks*; *Mongols*; *Ottoman Empire*; *Timur*.

Szigetvár, Siege of (1566). See *Suleiman I*.

***szlachta*.** The noble classes of Poland-Lithuania. In the 16th century they deepened the enserfment of Polish-Lithuanian and Ukrainian peasants. In 1505 they deprived towns of voting rights in the *Sejm*. In 1573 they gained the right to elect the monarch, severely limiting his ability to fund or wage war.

T

tabard. An outer garment worn by a knight over his armor, usually bearing the coat of arms of his liege lord. Alternately, the uniform of a *herald*, announcing his office and diplomatic immunity.

tabor. *Jan Žižka*, the Hussite general and military innovator, developed a horse-drawn mobile fort known for the base camp (''tabor'') formed by the wagons in which Hussite families traveled with their warrior menfolk. These mobile towns of armed Hussites lent the name ''Tabori'' to the poorer, radical faction of the movement and to the town of Tabor where their main camp was located. See also *Bohemian Brethren*; *gunpowder weapons*; *Hussite Wars*; *Wagenburg*.

Taborites. See *Hus, Jan*; *Hussite Wars*; *tabor*; *Wagenburg*.

tackle. Cable, rope, pulleys, blocks, and other equipment necessary to raise, lower, and control *sails*.

tactics. At sea, see *broadside*; *castles, on ships*; *firing on the roll*; *galley*; *galleon*; *Invincible Armada*; *Lepanto, Battle of*; *longship*; *piracy*; *privateer*; *Sluys, Battle of; weather gauge*. On land, see *artillery*; *ashigaru*; *battle (2)*; *Berbers*; *caracole*; *castles, on land*; *cavalry*; *chevauchée*; *couched lance*; *drill*; *Edward III*; *fortification*; *Granada*; *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *Hussite Wars*; *heavy cavalry*; *infantry*; *Janissary Corps*; *karr-wa-farr*; *knight*; *light cavalry*; *logistics*; *Maurits of Nassau*; *mining*; *Mongols*; *muskets*; *rabito*; *raiding*; *razzia*; *ribat*; *samurai*; *siege warfare*; *''skulking way of war''*; *spiking*; *Swiss square*; *tercio*; *Tilly, Count Johann Tserclaes*; *Wagenburg*; *Wallenstein, Albrecht von*; *warhorses*.

***taifa* states.** The dozens of small Muslim city-states which succeeded the Umayyad Caliphate in *al-Andalus* following the death of Caliph Abd al-Malik in 1008. They were well-established against each other by 1031 but lost all

military initiative to the Christian *Reconquista* within a few years. The Umayyads employed Berber tribesmen as soldiers but increasingly used northern and western European military slaves. These troops were captured as boys, castrated, and trained as *mamlūks*. The supply of European slaves dried up, however, as the *Teutonic Knights* expanded into the slave-bearing regions of Slavic central and eastern Europe. Since the taifa were reluctant to employ politically unreliable North African Berber warriors as replacements, and since their loss of land shrank the basis of the *itqa* system of feudal recruitment, the taifa states steadily shrank and were forced into a consistently defensive posture against Christian raids and the Reconquista. The Almoravids, fundamentalist Berbers from North Africa, intervened at the invitation of some taifa emirs in the early 12th century. A Castilian army was defeated at Badajoz. By 1111 the Almoravids overran almost all taifa as well, which they then ruled from Córdoba. A second set of 14 taifa states emerged from 1144 to 1146 as Muslim fragmentation returned due to an Almohad challenge to the Almoravids in North Africa that spilled over into Iberia. See also *rabito*; *ribat*.

taille. A tax levied annually on land in France in two forms: one on all subjects (this was limited to a few small areas) and one on commoners alone—clergy and nobles were exempt from most taxation, as were some professions and whole towns. It was the only direct tax in the French system and provided exceptional revenues. This made France's kings less dependent than other monarchs on vagaries of revenues drawn from customs duties or special taxes such as the Spanish *alcabala*. The burden of the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559) forced a rise in the taille and expansion of the *taillon* to the countryside.

taillon. An older French tax that, until 1555, was confined to walled towns to cover the cost of billeting and feeding the king's men. In 1555 it was extended to the peasantry by *Henri II*, in order to pay for his increasingly expensive foreign wars (notably in Italy).

Taiwan. The island of Taiwan, or Formosa (''Ilha Formosa'' or ''Beautiful Isle'') as the Portuguese called it, was peopled by Polynesian aborigines before 1500. They fiercely defended themselves, to the degree their primitive military capabilities permitted, as waves of different invaders arrived in the 16th century. Settlement from China was discouraged by the fact that *wakō* (pirates) settled in Taiwan after 1567, from where they preyed on shipping in the Taiwan Strait and East China Sea into the late 17th century. The Ming forced populations away from the Chinese coast to prevent interchange with wakō or emigration to Taiwan. The Dutch set up a base in Taiwan (Fort Zeelandia) from 1624 to 1662, expelling a small Spanish force in 1626. The Dutch were expelled by a Ming filibusterer, ''Koxinga'' (Zheng Chengong), in 1662.

Talbot, John (c.1385–1453). 1st Earl of Shrewsbury. He made his reputation in Ireland where he crushed a rebellion and twice served in the

military administration. He achieved wider fame during the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). He was present when *Jeanne d'Arc* lifted the siege of Orléans in 1429. ''The Maid'' took him prisoner when she bested the English at Patay (1429). At *Castillon* (1453), in his seventies, he led an English army into an artillery trap and to disaster. He was pulled from his horse and hacked to death by the French. Shakespeare froze him in heroic pose in *Henry VI, Part 1*, act 4, scene 6.

Tamerlane. See *Timur*.

Tangier. In 1437 the Portuguese *Order of Aviz* and the *Knights of Christ* tried unsuccessfully to conquer this Moroccan fortress city, losing with heavy casualties to the defending Moors. Tangier was attacked again in 1463 and 1464. The Marind dynasty in Fez collapsed in 1471, when a Portuguese assault with an army of 30,000 under *Alfonso V* (''The African'') took the city. Further assaults were delayed by Portugal's intervention in a civil war in Castile that broke out over the succession and *union of crowns* of Castile and Aragon surrounding the marriage of *Ferdinand and Isabella*.

tanko. See *armor*.

Tannenberg, Battle of (July 15, 1410). The *Teutonic Knights* were decisively defeated by the *Jagiello* king of Poland-Lithuania, Ladislas (Wladyslaw) II, at the head of a traditional Polish-Lithuanian army of noble light horse and medium *hussars*, supplemented by Bohemian and German mercenaries. Some allied *Cossacks* and *Tatars* were led by *Jan Žižka*. The Polish army numbered 150,000 men. It faced 80,000 enemy—mercenaries, auxiliaries, and volunteers, led by several hundred Sword Brethren. The Knights were all traditional *heavy horse*. Their retainers had few firearms, though some carried steel crossbows. Before the battle each side sang Christian hymns, then the Knights charged, crying out: ''Gott mit uns!'' They broke the Polish left and damaged the right, but the center held while Žižka rallied the Cossacks and Tatars. The Brethren charged again and again but could not catch the lighter horse of their enemy. With the larger German mounts blown, the fleeter ponies of the Tatars and Cossacks encircled them, Polish and mercenary infantry closed in, and slaughter with axe and sword commenced. About 205 Knights, including the Hochmeister and many marshals, along with 18,000 other Germans were killed. Another 14,000 were taken captive, with many summarily beheaded after the battle. Tannenberg cost so many casualties that the Teutonic Knights' military power went into terminal decline. Their bloody Baltic crusade was finally over.

Tarasbüchsen. Czech: ''tarasnice.'' Medium-caliber 14th-century guns mounted on stands. The *Hussites* used them in their *Wagenburgs*.

Tard-Avisés. ''Latecomers.'' A self-descriptive term by peasants who rose in 1594 in several areas of southwest France. It referenced their earlier

reluctance to arm in self-defense against the economic deprivations, looting by soldiers, and high taxation caused by the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629). These had been fought mainly by the urban classes, among whom the clergy and nobility were exempt from most taxation. The Tard-Avisés rose for the usual reasons of peasant grievance, but notably attacked all soldiers and nobles of both confessions. The noble and bourgeois pejorative for these peasant rebels was ''Croquants,'' or country bumpkins. Bands ranged in size from 2,000 to 10,000 armed peasants, but more importantly, swelled to as many as 40,000 in Périgord in May 1594. *Henri IV* wisely appeased them with words and by finally bringing peace to France. Historian Mack Holt has argued that their uprising convinced Henri and the nobility of the urgent social need to make peace. See also *Bonnets Rouges*; *Jacquerie*; *Razats*.

Suggested Reading: Mack Holt, *The French Wars of Religion, 1562–1629* (1995).

targe. A large flat shield.

targhieri. Italian infantry of the late 15th century bearing heavy shields (*targe*) with which they covered crossbowmen and arquebusiers while they reloaded their slow rate-of-fire weapons.

tarides. A flat-bottomed, long-distance oared transport used to carry from 25 to 40 cavalry mounts. Their great advantage over round-bottomed sailing ships, which could carry 100 or more horses, was that they were amphibian: their horse cargo could be unloaded directly onto a beach where a round-bottomed ship needed a secure harbor. See also *cog*.

tarpaulin. In the Elizabethan navy, an officer who learned his trade in the merchant marine; hence, a person of low social rank, not a ''gentleman officer.''

Tartaglia, Niccolò (c.1499–1557). Italian mathematician and ''father of ballistic science.'' He was nearly killed by French troops who lacerated his cheeks and jaw with deep saber cuts when they captured his home city of Brescia in 1512, during the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559). His reputation as a mathematician came with victory in a contest to solve cubic equations algebraically. He made a great impact on military affairs when he published a paper on the application of mathematics to artillery fire in which he outlined a scientific understanding of ballistics and published the first-ever firing tables. He is best remembered for ''Tartaglia's theorem,'' which proved that the trajectory of a projectile is always a curved line, rather than the straight line-to-target that the naked eye perceived. He thereby proved that the maximum range of a cannonball at any speed is obtained by firing at an elevation of 45°. Before that artillerists falsely believed that their cannonballs flew in a straight line after leaving the barrel, an error which often led gunners to fire short or position the guns dangerously close to the enemy. Tartaglia also invented the *gunner's quadrant* by which a master gunner calculated and

set the elevation of the barrel to meet the desired range according to a preset table divided into degrees, and indicated by a plumb line. Finally, he calculated maximum effective ranges for several known artillery types. For all that, he worried about the moral effects of applying science to the art of war, once destroying his manuscript on projectiles to prevent its application in war. However, when Italy was threatened by the Ottomans he set aside his scruples and published *Nuova Scientia* (1537), which was followed by other works on military science in the 1540s.

Tartars. See *Tatars*.

tassets. Plates of metal that protected the upper thighs and hung over the upper *cuisses*. They were often attached with ''leathers'' to the *fauld* that protected the waist.

tatami. See *armor*.

Tatars. A Central Asian Turkic people. The term was often corrupted to ''Tartar.'' It referred to any of several groups of steppe nomads including *Turks* (by the Russians) and *Mongols* (by the Chinese). The Tatars were in fact a blend of Mongol and Turkic horse peoples who overran the southern steppes, the Caucasus, and large sections of Anatolia and the Arab Middle East. They established Khanates in Astrakhan, Kazan, and the Crimea and waged war along the southern border of Muscovy for several centuries, marauding for booty and slaves. A Tatar army took Baghdad in 1393 and temporarily overran other parts of the eastern Ottoman Empire. Another horde sacked Aleppo, Damascus, and Baghdad on orders of *Timur*, then captured *Bayezid I* after crushing an Ottoman army at *Ankara* (1402). After the collapse of the Timurids, the Tatars came to terms with the Ottomans and into the 18th century counted the Ottoman sultan alternately as overlord and ally in protracted Tatar wars with Poland and Russia. Some Tatars fought for the Poles against the *Teutonic Knights* during the *War of the Cities* (1454–1466).

Tatars . . . killed the very old and very young, and dragged away thousands to be sold into Ottoman slavery . . .

Tatars raided deep into the ''great wheat field'' of Ukraine, Poland-Lithuania, and southern Muscovy almost annually in the early 16th century. Raiders reached Brest-Litovsk (1500), Minsk (1505), and Wilno (1510). They pillaged over an immense sweep of land, killed the very old and very young, and dragged away thousands to be sold into Ottoman slavery at Kaffa in the Crimea, the city Ukrainians called ''vampire.'' Muscovy sent punitive raids south during the reign of *Ivan IV* (''The Terrible''). A Tatar army sacked Moscow in 1571 during the chaos of Ivan's *Oprichnina*. Another horde repeated the feat in 1591. From 1450 to 1650, over 160 sizeable Tatar raids were recorded in Ukraine alone. Tatar mobility meant they remained extremely dangerous to, and independent of, Russia into the 18th century. The distance

to the Khanate and its strategic location on the lower Dnieper, then unnavigable below the rapids, cancelled out the Muscovite advantage in artillery. Still, the Tatars needed protection from increasing Muscovite aggression and expansion and therefore eventually accepted vassalage to the Ottomans.

Large Tatar armies thus accompanied the Ottomans in campaigns in the Balkans and Hungary during the 16th–17th centuries. Normal wartime contingents numbered from 30,000 to 40,000. A minimum of 72,000 rode whenever the han led the Tatars personally. On rare occasions, over 100,000 Tatars rode with the Ottomans. Tatar light cavalry was deployed to the front of Ottoman troops to serve as scouts and skirmishers, in a scythe-like formation that cut ahead of the main force. They fought not for pay but for a share in plunder and always under their own commanders. Yet, plunder was not the main tactical aim of this flying wedge of wild horsemen operating 10–15 kilometers ahead of the Ottoman army. Once the latter moved beyond the boundaries of the Empire and its ''menzil-hane'' system of supply depots, the Tatars acted primarily as foragers, gathering critical food and fodder while denying both to the enemy. Still, fighting under separate commands and employing different tactical styles meant that Tatar relations with Ottoman troops were usually marked by mutual distrust. On several occasions, Ottoman intervention in the Crimea itself deposed the reigning han and set back relations for years. See also *akincis*; *soyughal*.

tate. A large, wooden Japanese shield used to protect infantry against the mounted archers (*samurai*) who dominated medieval and early modern Japanese warfare.

taxes. See *Abbas I*; *Akbar*; *alcabala*; *annates*; *arrière-ban*; *askeri*; *avariz*; *Báthory, Stefan*; *bedel-i nüzul*; *bellum se ipse alet*; *Buenos Aires*; *Byzantine Empire*; *carbiniers*; *castles, on land*; *Catalonia, Revolt of*; *Charles I, of England*; *chevauchée*; *Chinese armies*; *club men*; *contributions*; *convoy*; *Cortés, Hernán*; *cruzada*; *Dutch Army*; *Edict of Nantes*; *Edict of Saint-Germain-en-Laye*; *Eighty Years' War*; *English Civil Wars*; *Estates*; *expulsion of the Jews*; *feudalism*; *France*; *French Civil Wars*; *fusiliers de taille*; *German Peasant War*; *Henri III, of France*; *Huguenots*; *Hundred Years' War*; *Imperial Diet*; *Islam*; *Italy*; *Jacquerie*; *jizya*; *jus pacis et belli*; *Maxmilian I*; *Netherlands*; *new monarchies*; *Novara, Battle of*; *Olivares, conde-duque de*; *Ottoman Empire*; *Ottoman warfare*; *Polish Army*; *''Poor Conrad'' revolt*; *Portugal*; *printing*; *Raya*; *Razats*; *Richelieu, Cardinal Armand Jean du Plessis de*; *Scottish Wars*; *servitium debitum*; *servitor classes*; *standing army*; *ship money*; *strel'sty*; *taille*; *taillon*; *Tard-Avisés*; *Tenth Penny*; *timariots*; *Turks*; *war chest*; *war finance*; *War of the Cities*; *zakat*.

teamsters. Civilian drivers of ox, mule, or horse teams contracted by an army to haul its *artillery* and supply wagons. Teamsters were not considered or counted as part of the regular army. As a result, they seldom exposed themselves or their harness and teams to danger; instead, they ran away at its first sign. As *standing armies* were founded, permanent teamster units were formed and paid soldiers' wages.

technology and war. The pace of technological change in medieval warfare in Europe, as elsewhere, was exceptionally slow. Important changes included a shift to stone or brick over wood in castle building and city fortification, improvements in manufacturing techniques of armor, changes in material and design of crossbows, and advances in shipbuilding and navigation. Only toward the end of the period were the revolutionary effects of gunpowder artillery and firearms felt with major advances in ballistics, chemistry, and casting. Spinoffs from military activity occurred in such diverse fields as cartography, cartage, engineering, metallurgy, mechanics, shipbuilding, and transportation. There can be no doubt that military technology advanced importantly and that in some measure it contributed to shaping what has been widely called the *revolution in military affairs*. Yet, it is probably a mistake to see technology as the principal cause of enormous historical events or the essential cause of most medieval or early modern military victories and defeats. This is especially a problem with explanations of the rise of *heavy cavalry* in Europe that point to the stirrup and lance as the determinant of the entire socio-military system of *feudalism*. An even greater problem inheres in the concept of *gunpowder empires*, which purports to explain the creation of the early modern world's greatest states with a one-size-fits-all technological explanation centered on the rate of adoption and adaptation to guns.

For one thing, new military technologies were introduced only slowly, too slowly to have had decisive effects that favored one party over another in most cases. In addition, societies attacked with new weapons for the first time usually adapted their own tactics and weapons quickly, in some cases (such as the *Aztec Empire*, that lost for other reasons) within just months of the first encounter rather than years or decades. Finally, new military technology was often unreliable: ineffectiveness of new weapons, especially early guns, and not just military conservatism slowed adoption rates. Too much is also made of differential rates of absorption of military technology by warring societies. ''Diffusion'' of military manufacturing methods was actually quite rapid in most cases as *renegades* migrated to foreign courts and military markets, carrying with them materials, plans, and expertise. Complex social, political, and fiscal causes best explain this or that society's failure to adjust to new military technology. Military conservatism, while a genuine problem for several societies, was usually overcome by the most persistent fact of military history: defeat is the clearest instructor of the need to change and war the harshest of teachers. On related issues, see also: *artillery*; *castles, on land*; *cavalry*; *fortification*; *infantry*; *galley*; *gunpowder weapons*; *Inca Empire*; *logistics*; *Mamlūks*; *Ostend, Siege of*; *Ottoman warfare*; *siege warfare*; *Unification Wars*; *weapons.*

Suggested Reading: Martin van Creveld, *Technology and War* (1989); M. Duffy, *The Military Revolution and the State, 1500–1800* (1980); J.F.C. Fuller, *Armaments and History* (1946); A. al-Hassan and D. Hill, *Islamic Technology* (1986); D. Headrich, *Tools of Empire* (1981); Maurice Keen, *Medieval Warfare* (1999); John A. Lynn, ed., *Tools of War: Instruments, Ideas, and Institutions of Warfare, 1445–1871* (1990); Joel Moykr, *Twenty-Five Centuries of Technological Change* (1990); J. Needham et al., *Military Technology* (1986).

Templars. See *Knights Templar*.

tenaille. A defensive position for infantry built into the dry ditch before the *curtain wall*.

tenere in dominico. See *feudalism*.

tenere in servitio. See *feudalism*; *servitor classes*.

ten-eyed gun. A 16th-century Chinese invention that loaded ten cartridges and bullets into a metal tube, each with a separate touch hole. Starting from one end, the gunner fired five times, then reversed his grip and fired the next set of five. Its accuracy must be doubted, but not its ingenuity. This was part of a general trend in Chinese firearms experimentation with multi-shot or multi-barreled weapons. Some Chinese guns had as many as 36 barrels. See also *child-mother gun*; *winged-tiger gun*.

Tennoji, Battle of (1615). See *Osaka Castle, Siege of*.

Tenochtitlán, First Siege of (June 24–30, 1520). The capital of the *Aztec Empire* was far larger than most European cities at over 240,000 souls, many tens of thousands of them elite Aztec warriors. Moral arrogance or reckless stupidity or military necessity, or more likely all three reasons, led *Hernán Cortés* to depart Tenochtitlán for the coast with most of his small band of *conquistadores*, leaving just 100 Spaniards and a few hundred Tlaxcalan warriors behind under *Pedro de Alvarado*. He was ordered to hold the palace and temple complex in the center of Tenochtitlán where whole rooms already had been filled with plundered gold. Cortés thought his men and the gold were safe as he also left them holding a prize prisoner, *Moctezuma*. Meanwhile, he hurried to Vera Cruz to stave off a rival force of Spanish who had arrived from Cuba, led by Pánfilo de Narváez. After Cortés killed or wounded the leaders in a brief skirmish, the rest were persuaded to join his expedition, bringing his force to over 1,200 conquistadores. The new men also brought welcome supplies of horses, guns, powder, and shot. In the two months Cortés was away, Alvarado kept busy torturing and massacring several thousand Tenochtitlán nobles and priests in a maniacal search for yet more gold. He was clearly influenced by Cortés' example, which earlier seemed to bring good effects from killing Aztec nobles, and he may have been acting under orders. In any case, the Spanish murders, cruelty, and avarice had the opposite effect to that intended. Aztec rage was compounded by erection by Spanish priests of a large crucifix atop the Great Temple and conduct of Christian worship in full view of the city population below. This provoked the Aztecs to depose Moctezuma and purge the strangers from their city.

Indian allies along the shore of Lake Texcoco warned Cortés not to re-enter Tenochtitlán, but he went in to secure the plundered gold that Alvarado guarded. Aztec commanders let him into the city then closed the causeways

and trapped the Spanish and Tlaxcalans inside, surrounding them with tens of thousands of angry Aztec warriors intent on blood revenge. From June 24 to 30, 1520, the Spanish and 3,000 allied Tlaxcalan warriors were besieged inside Tenochtitlán. Several sorties were assayed by crossbowmen and arquebusiers and the small unit of Spanish cavalry, but each was driven back. Aztec warriors at first were easily killed in large numbers, as too often they tried to trip and capture the Spaniards rather than swarming and killing them. Also, their obsidian-edged cutting weapons were not effective against Spanish plate armor and they had no reply to mounted lancers. But they soon learned to strike to kill with slings, *atlatl*, and large stones hurled from nearby temples. During the fighting Moctezuma was killed, possibly by the Spanish but perhaps by errant Aztec missiles.

Cortés ordered a set of *manteletes* built to try to break out under their cover. The manteletes provided protection for new sorties that each killed hundreds of Aztecs. Cortés also led attacks against secondary temples where his men slashed Aztec priests to death and overturned sacrificial tables, again demonstrating the physical triumph of their god over the weak gods of the Aztecs. In the closed confines of the main palace and temple, however, Spanish advantages in cavalry and cannon disappeared and casualties rose. The Spanish might kill thousands of Aztec warriors to their own dozens of dead, but they were sure to lose any fight ultimately decided by attrition. Cortés therefore decided to try to break out at night using a mobile bridge he had built to cross gaps cut by the Aztecs in the causeway. The horses were loaded with gold, their hooves bagged to muffle the sound of iron shoes clanging on paving stones, and the party set off on what became known as the ''*Noche Triste*'' or ''Night of Sorrow'' (June 30, 1520). Cortés was looking to escape, not to fight or conquer the inhabitants of a huge city where every man, woman, and child longed for his death.

During the fighting Moctezuma was killed . . . perhaps by errant Aztec missiles.

At first the stealthy escape went well. The leading Spanish and Tlaxcalans used the portable bridges to cross three out of four canals bisecting the causeway. Then they were spotted by chance by women on the shore: since the Aztecs did not usually fight at night they had not posted sentries, but women doing domestic work raised the alarm. Many Spaniards now learned that they were overly burdened with the weight of their greed, in the form of gold piled on top of their armor and on the horses. Hundreds of war canoes and thousands of Aztec warriors swarmed toward them. In a running fight that may have lasted six hours, disciplined Spanish formations were broken and half the conquistadores killed by stones or other missiles, drowned in their heavy armor, or bound and carried off to be ritually sacrificed. The last Spaniards and Tlaxcalans who escaped only did so because the bodies of their comrades and of Aztec dead filled in the last gap in the causeway, and they ran across. Cortés and half his men, along with a few hundred Tlaxcalans, fought their way to shore. Some 200 Spaniards and many more hundreds of

Tlaxcalans held out for a few days inside Tenochtitlán before succumbing to death or worse: capture, flaying alive, and ritual sacrifice. Most of the gold stolen earlier lay at the bottom of Lake Texcoco, along with Spanish heavy cannon. For years, courts in Spain heard cases over who was at fault for the shame, death, and worst military defeat suffered to that date by a European army in the Americas.

Tenochtitlán, Second Siege of (April 28–August 13, 1521). *Hernán Cortés* returned to Tenochtitlán with an enlarged force of *conquistadores* and much more important, large numbers of allied Mesoamerican warriors who came to complete what the Spanish had started but could not finish on their own. Cortés first systematically dismantled the supports of the *Aztec Empire*, forging alliances with vassal city-states around the interconnected lakes of the Central Valley. Tepeca and Cholula joined the Spanish alliance. Then, in a key event, Tetzcoco—on the eastern side of Lake Texcoco—long an ally of Tenochtitlán, switched sides. This gave the attackers the critical forward base they needed. Some Tetzcoco nobles sensed the end was near for Aztec hegemony; others hoped to replace their own king in the wake of the chaos to come. In short, as the brutal authoritarianism of the Aztecs collapsed, older traditions of fierce internal political rivalry among the noble classes and of independence of the city-states of the Central Valley reemerged. The Spanish were there largely to collect the pieces of the coming political, social, and demographic chaos.

The Aztecs enjoyed a major strategic advantage: they could attack at any point along the lakeshore with a vast fleet of war canoes. It was critical, therefore, that Cortés had 14 *brigantines* built in Tetzcoco using timber and struts hauled from the wrecks beached at Vera Cruz. They were pulled over the mountains by hundreds of Mesoamerican porters. The high-decked brigantines were launched on April 28, 1521, again vitally accompanied by thousands of Tlaxcalan and other allied braves in war canoes. The brigantines were unassailable by the Aztecs who could neither reach their high decks and *castles* from flat-bottomed canoes nor withstand withering fire spat at them from swivel guns and decks lined by arquebusiers and crossbowmen. They also were overwhelmed at water level by thousands of Indian enemies fighting canoe to canoe. The Aztec canoe fleet was destroyed, denying Tenochtitlán any means of resupply of food or fresh water. Meanwhile, 1,000 conquistadores and many tens of thousands of Tlaxcalan and other Mesoamericans warriors (over 95 percent of the attacking force) cut the causeways, isolating the island city.

The Spanish set up heavy cannon and some falconetes and settled in for a 93-day siege. But this was a siege with a difference: during the day, Spanish and Tlaxcalans fought down the causeways toward the city, slaughtering as many Aztec warriors as they could before withdrawing for the night. Each sortie consumed a bit more of the causeway and then the city itself, progressively opening lines of fire for the artillery and firearms troops and charging lanes for lancers. The fighting was close: Cortés was unhorsed three

times and once nearly dragged off to be ritually sacrificed. Some Spanish penetrated too far in a June attack and were ambushed and taken. Fifty conquistadores were carried off along with hundreds of Tlaxcalans. All were sacrificed in view of their comrades, their hearts cut out while still beating by high priests wearing cloaks of flayed human flesh. The bodies were tossed down the blood-slicked steps of the Aztec temples, or roasted, with their skins sent at night to shoreside towns to show that the Spanish were mortal, and to promise Aztec revenge on any who aided them. The Spanish gave no quarter either: they slaughtered hundreds each day and tore down whole blocks of houses and temples, all to no greater end than a conquest that would make them rich beyond the avarice of the basest among them.

Without a hint of moral awareness, let alone remorse, Cortés wrote to Emperor *Charles V*: ''The people of the city had to walk upon their dead. . . . So great was their suffering that it was beyond our understanding how they could endure it. Countless numbers of men, women and children came toward us, and in their eagerness to escape many were pushed into the water where they drowned amid the multitude of corpses.'' The Tlaxcalans took a full measure of revenge on the Aztecs, including thousands of women and children whom they slaughtered along with blood-stained priests and warriors. That caused humbug moralizing among the Spanish. On August 13, 1521, the third and last Aztec leader to face the Spanish, the boy-emperor Cuauhtémoc, surrendered Tenochtitlán. Cortés later had him murdered during an expedition to conquer Honduras in 1524.

Suggested Reading: Hugh Thomas, *Conquest*: *Montezuma, Cortés, and the Fall of Old Mexico* (1994); Ross Hassig, *Aztec Warfare* (1988); Richard Townsend, *The Aztecs* (1990; 2000).

Tenth Penny. A 10 percent sales tax, modeled on Castile's *alcabala*, introduced to the Netherlands by decree of the *Duke of Alba* and *Philip II* on July 31, 1571. It was enormously unpopular, contributing much to dissent and resentment of the monarchy, and riding roughshod over traditional liberties that reignited the *Eighty Years' War* in 1572 on a grand new scale. Many militia turned on their own town governments and refused to enforce the tax, thereby forcing still more towns to join the rebellion.

terakki. The Ottoman system of providing regular rises in salary for professional troops, tied to their performance in battle. This was different than cash bonuses (''*bahşiş*'') or spoils (''*ganimet*'').

Terceira, Battle of (1582). A fleet action off the Azores in which a Spanish fleet under *Santa Cruz* defeated a French fleet acting in support of a Portuguese pretender to the throne of Portugal, which had been seized by *Philip II* two years earlier.

tercio. ''Third.'' The name derived from the tripartite division common to early modern infantry squares, especially the main infantry unit in the

15th–16th-century Spanish system. Tercios started at 3,000 men, but heavy tercios could have up to 6,000 men each, formed into 50 to 60 ranks with 80 men to a file. They were super-heavy units of armored and tactically disciplined pikemen, supported by arquebusiers and lesser numbers of heavy musketeers on the corners. To contemporary observers they appeared as ''iron cornfields'' which won through *shock* and sheer mass rather than clever maneuver. Others saw in the tercio a ''walking citadel'' whose corner guards of clustered arquebusiers gave it the appearance of a mobile castle with four turrets, especially after the reforms introduced by *Gonzalo di Córdoba* from 1500. He wanted the tercios to better contend with the Swiss so he added more pikes at the front but also many more gunmen to replace the older reliance on polearms. These formations might have only 1,200 men. The new tercio was still heavy and ponderous on the move, but it was a more flexible unit with much greater firepower that could dig in for defense or advance to destroy the enemy's main force as circumstances suggested. This reform first paid off at *Cerignola* (1503). At *Pavia* (1525), tercios destroyed the French under *Francis I*. For two generations after that most opponents declined battle against the tercios whenever possible, and they became the most feared infantry in Europe. They remained dominant for nearly a hundred years. Their demise came during the *Thirty Years' War* when more flexible Dutch and Swedish armies broke into more flexible, smaller regiments. These units smashed the tercios with combined arms tactics that also employed field artillery and a return to cavalry shock. See also *volley fire*.

Terek River, Battle of (1262). See *Mongols*.

terrain. On the impact of well or poorly chosen terrain on the outcome of battle, see *Agincourt, Battle of*; *Bannockburn*; *cavalry*; *chevauchée*; *Courtrai, Battle of*; *Kephissos, Battle of*; *logistics*; *Morgarten, Battle of*; *siege warfare*; *Stirling Bridge, Battle of.*

terre-plein. The flat top of the *rampart* above the talus or sloping wall, where the artillery was mounted. It also supported the *chemin de ronde*.

testudo. ''Tortoise.'' A siege engine sporting an armored roof to fend off missiles and fire, which moved forward on rollers to cover men making a final assault on a breach in a fortified wall or gate.

Teutonic Knights, Order of. ''Domus hospitalis sanctae Mariae Teutonicorum'' (''Order of the Knights of the Hospital of St. Mary of the Teutons''). An order of hospitaller knights set up in 1127 in Jerusalem. In 1198 they were transformed into a *Military Order* (''Ritter des Deutschordens'') after the failed Third Crusade. They had three classes of brethren: *knights*, priests, and *sergeants*. All were required to be of German birth and noble blood. Some of their hospitals admitted nursing women. On their shields and chests the Teutonic Knights bore the Crusader symbol of the order: the black and silver

''Iron Cross'' that ordained, in both senses, German warriors and military equipment into the 21st century. Their fighting doctrine was, ''Who fights the Order, fights Jesus Christ!'' Their rallying cry was, ''Gott mit Uns!'' (''God is with us!''). They slept with their swords, initially their only permitted possession, practiced self-flagellation and extreme fasting and monkish devotions, and kept silent in camp and on the march. Many wore mail directly against their flesh to mortify it. They were at their worst Christian Taliban: gruesome holy warriors who welcomed martyrdom, willing killers for ''The Christ.''

Out of the Ashes

Unable to compete with other Military Orders in Syria, the Teutonic Knights fought in Armenia instead. In 1210 nearly the whole order was killed, leaving just 20 knights. Hermann von Salza essentially refounded the order in 1226, aided by Emperor Friedrich II (''Barbarossa''). They were given lands in Sicily and eastern Europe, a transaction approved by the pope in the Golden Bull of Rimini (1223). They now wore white tunics, an honor granted over the strong objection of the rival *Knights Templar*. They fought in behalf of the Hungarian king in Transylvania before moving into Prussia, which the *Knights in the Service of God in Prussia* had failed to conquer. The first two Knights of the order settled in Prussia in 1229; the next year 20 more arrived, along with 200 sergeants. The Brethren thereafter acted as commanders and officers in larger armies of converted Prussians who served them as auxiliaries. In battle the Knights were the panzer tip of a crusading invasion of the pagan lands of the Baltic. They ravaged and conquered Courland and Prussia and parts of Poland and western Russia, waging ruthless campaigns against ''the northern Saracens.'' They settled in conquered lands as the new aristocracy, enserfing native populations. Their own vassalage shifted among the Empire, the king of Poland, and distant but powerless popes. The legacy of the ''Drang nach Osten'' (''Drive to the East'') of the ''Sword Brethren'' was the Christianization and enfeoffment of Prussia by force of arms and merciless war with Lithuania, Poland, Sweden, and Muscovy. The northern crusades, especially the long forest-ambush campaigns of the 14th century against animist Lithuanians, were among the most ferocious of the entire Middle Ages.

The military tools of the Brethren were advanced and powerful crossbows, mailed *heavy cavalry*, stone watchtowers and fortress fastnesses, huge torsion *artillery* (*catapults* and counterpoise *trebuchets*), and *cogs* that could carry 500 troops, which gave them mobile striking power along the Baltic coast. Their early opponents had almost none of these weapons. When Knights charged native infantry (''Pruzzes'') armed only with bows and axes, the panic and slaughter was terrible. The Brethren united with the *Livonian Order*, also comprised of German knights, from 1237 to 1525. To their new *Ordensstaat* (1238), the Sword Brothers brought German and Dutch colonists and peasants to secure the land, completing the most successful and brutal military colonization of the Middle Ages. Baltic cities within the Ordensstaat were permitted to join the *Hanse*, as did the Hochmeister.

The Brethren also fought constant border wars with Poland-Lithuania, a large condominium that dominated most of eastern Europe and western Russia. They were defeated by a Mongol horde at Liegnitz (April 1241), but thereafter held and expanded their territory. By 1250 the Lithuanians had adapted to new weapons and mounted tactics and under a new leader, Mindaugus, invaded the Ordensstaat. In 1254 some 60,000 Germans and Bohemians mobilized to rescue the Knights. Over the next two decades they faced war with Lithuania and a 13-year peasant revolt in Prussia, the ''Great Apostasy.'' By the late 1270s they were triumphant in the Baltic.

In 1291 the last resistance to the Muslim assault on *Outremer* collapsed and the German Hospital in Acre was lost. In 1309 the Order's Grand Commandery was moved to Marienburg (Malbork) on the Vistula and its ties to the Holy Land faded into legend and dim memory. Marriage to natives was still forbidden because so many remained pagan and hostile: in 1343 peasants in Estonia rebelled and slaughtered 1,800 Germans in Reval. The Brethren hence had a narrow recruitment base: they boasted fewer than 500 full knights supported by 3,200 retainers, just under 6,000 sergeants, fewer than 2,000 garrison militia from six large towns, and 1,500 poor-quality conscripts who were peasant-tenants of various abbeys under control of the Brethren. The Order was reinforced by knights from across Europe when successive popes preached a new Baltic crusade against pagan Lithuania; many came for the blood sport. This was key, as Prussia's population was savaged by the *Black Death* and Crusaders from Germany grew scarce after Lithuanians converted to Christianity. Still, between 1345 and 1377, over 100 expeditions were launched by the Brethren into Lithuania. To make up the shortfall in German recruits, baptized Prussians and Slavs were recruited from 1400, and large numbers of Czech mercenaries were hired whenever the Brethren fought.

The reforms did not help: the Teutonic Knights were beaten decisively and with huge losses by a Polish-Lithuanian army at *Tannenberg* (July 15, 1410). That ended their Baltic crusade and accelerated a terminal military decline. Lands lay fallow, commanderies remained empty, castles were deserted. The Poles then raided into Prussia, but after the losses suffered at Tannenberg the Knights were loathe to offer battle. A full-scale Polish invasion occurred in 1422 and forced the Knights to cede territory. In 1440 the *Preussische Bund* was founded in opposition to the extant privileges of the Order. The end of political and military dominance by the Brethren came with the *War of the Cities* (1454–1466). The Knights fought well against the Poles at *Chojnice* (September 18, 1454), but the size of armies deployed by Poland and the Bund told against the Teutons and their mercenaries. Nor could the Brethren rely on their traditional Czech allies: *Hussite* armies, too, raided deep into the Ordensstaat. In 1455 virtually all Livonian knights were wiped out. When the purse of the remaining Brethren turned over empty, unpaid mercenaries handed over the capital and fortress of Marienburg to the Poles without even a token fight. The Teutonic Knights were reduced, humiliated, and split by the *Second Treaty of Torun* (1466). In 1498 they regained a measure of independence when they elected as Hochmeister the brother of Friedrich of Saxony,

who renounced homage to Poland and demanded the return of ''Royal Prussia.'' From 1498 to 1503 the Order fought with Muscovy, surprisingly holding its own against a more numerous foe. In 1519 the Knights attacked Poland, burning and raiding along the frontier but avoiding set-piece battles.

What finally defeated the Order was the same thing that had led to its founding: an argument about God. In 1523 *Martin Luther* wrote to Hochmeister Albrecht of Brandenburg. They met at the Imperial Diet in 1524 and Albrecht converted to Luther's views, as had the bishop of Straslund and many Brethren. The original Livonian Order broke away as a result of Albrecht's conversion. (Catholic remnants survived in Germany until 1809, but only as a landless and powerless ceremonial shell.) On April 8, 1525, Albrecht signed the Treaty of Cracow converting Prussia into a hereditary duchy under the Polish monarchy. The last significant military action of the Brethren was to support *Charles V* during his war with the *Schmalkaldic League* (1546–1547). The Order lost its rich Venetian commandery in 1595, the same year 100 knights made a last crusade against the Ottomans in Hungary. In 1618 the Duchy of Prussia passed to the Hohenzollerns and the last knights became Prussian officers. In 1695 the Order itself was remade into a regiment, the ''Hoch und Deutschmeister'' of the Prussian Army. A key result of the slippage of the hold of the Teutonic Knights on the eastern Baltic was a rise in commercial and military competition for the succession to the Ordensstaat among Poland and Sweden, and later, also Russia. See also *Sea Victuallers*; *taifa states*; *Žižka, Jan*.

What finally defeated the Order was . . . an argument about God.

Suggested Reading: E. Christiansen, *The Northern Crusades: The Baltic and the Catholic Frontier, 1100–1525* (1980); Desmond Seward, *Monks of War: The Military Religious Orders* (1972; 1995).

Tewkesbury, Battle of (1471). See *Wars of the Roses*.

Thérouanne, Siege of (1543). At Thérouanne in France, *Henry VIII*'s cannon made the first confirmed use of indirect fire, against Burgundian gunners bombarding the English outworks. The Burgundians were located in a valley beyond the town and behind a hill. English observers mounted the hill and redirected the fall of shot from the garrison onto the Burgundian position. This scattered the besiegers.

Third Rome. An Orthodox doctrine with deep nationalist undertones, formulated in the 15th century to justify Muscovite westward expansion. It proposed that responsibility for the ''True Church'' had passed to Russia where Moscow formed the ''Third Rome,'' the rightful capital of the Christian world. The first Christian capital, Rome, had been lost in the 5th century; in the 15th, from the Orthodox point of view, it was occupied by Catholic schismatics. The ''Second Rome'' was Constantinople, which fell to the

Ottomans in 1453, a conquest that stimulated Muscovite claims to spiritual succession. See also *Fifth Monarchists*.

Thirteen Years' War (1454–1466). See *War of the Cities*.

Thirteen Years' War (1593–1606). "The Long War." When dated from 1591 it is sometimes called the Fifteen Years' War (1591–1606). In either case, it was a protracted border conflict between the Ottoman Empire and the Austrian Habsburgs over Balkan territories. Conflict in the Balkans was long marked by small wars as local *beys* and Austrian nobles fought over control of some castle or valley. Sixty years of relative peace between the Ottomans and Austria was broken in 1591 not by the initiative of the sultan or emperor but by private raiding into the *Militargrenze* by the governor of Bosnia, Hasan Pasha. Two years later Vienna was late paying its annual tribute of 30,000 ducats. Grand Vezier Kica Sinan Pasha used this as an excuse to follow-up Hasan Pasha's petty raids with a full Imperial expedition led by his son. The war thus expanded, though still without real enthusiasm in either Constantinople or Vienna. Bitter frontier fighting broke out in the Militargrenze as the two empires fought over "The Principalities" of Transylvania, Moldavia, and Wallachia. Sisak fell to Hasan Pasha in September 1593, but was recovered because the Ottomans were unprepared to resume large-scale warfare on their western front. In May–June 1594, the Austrians besieged the strong fortress of Esztergom.

Caught unprepared for a real war in the Balkans, the Ottomans sent in relief only 2,000 locally recruited *Voynuqs*, who promptly defected. It took months more for a large Ottoman army to assemble. Before it departed, a vicious and complex fight broke out over the office of the Grand Vezier following the death of Sultan Murad III (January 1595). One rival candidate undermined the other's expedition to Wallachia. This split the *Kapikulu Askerleri* and brought tensions within the capital to a fighting pitch: at one point the *Janissary Corps* attacked the *sipahis*, the sultan's elite cavalry regiments, in their barracks.

The major clash of the war on the frontiers was a three-day fight at Keresztes (or Mezókeresztes), on October 24–26, 1596. An army led by Muhammad (Mehmed) III bombarded and stormed the Austrian fortress of Eger (Eğri). In 1600 the Ottomans also conquered Kanizsa and annexed the borderlands dividing Croatia from Hungary. The campaign season of 1601 was lost to another court struggle in Constantinople over who should command. The war sputtered on for another five years without major clashes or a real decision. The highwater mark for the Austrians was a failed siege of Buda and Pest (1602). Finally, Sultan Ahmad I forewent tribute from Austria in exchange for Vienna's recognition of his suzerainty over Transylvania. The terms were codified in the *Treaty of Zsitva Torok* (November 1606). See also *Celâli Revolts*.

Thirty, Battle of the (1352). See *Hundred Years' War*.

Thirty Years' War (1618–1648). The first half of the 17th century in Europe was riven with political, social, and religious crises. Also causing general turmoil and unrest were widespread economic changes, notably the *price revolution* of the 16th–17th centuries that saw real wages for most people badly outstripped by higher prices for basic staples, even as overall population and the size of cities rose dramatically. This drastic decline in living standards led to riots, urban and rural, especially within the *Holy Roman Empire* from the 1590s forward. Tensions within Germany were only aggravated once war broke out, so that German disquiet and constitutional and military trouble were exported to the rest of Europe. A widespread ferment—sometimes overstated as a ''general crisis of the 17th century''—underlay this German crisis and was worsened by the horrors and destruction of the Thirty Years' War. That name for the war remains controversial, since it was not one war but several and did not really begin in 1618 or end in 1648. Spain and France, for instance, were at war intermittently from 1609 and continued fighting until the Peace of the Pyrenees in 1659. Spain and the Netherlands fought bitterly from 1566, signed a *Twelve Years' Truce* (1609–1621), then resumed their *Eighty Years' War*. The Dutch war paralleled, influenced, and then meshed with the war in Germany. Poland and Sweden also fought wars long before 1618 and fighting among northern and east European powers continued well after 1648, sometimes connecting with the German war, sometimes running parallel to it.

Yet, the conventional name for these interrelated wars was actually used at the time and captures well the conflicts fought on, across, and around the central battlefield of Germany. Within Germany, from the turn of the 17th century a longstanding constitutional struggle between territorial princes and the Emperor, and religious struggles throughout the Empire, fed a growing sense that war was coming: cities and princes alike began to arm and otherwise prepare for war. When war came in Bohemia and Austria in 1618 it was not unexpected or even unwelcome, though no one foresaw the full holocaust that followed. At the core of the German war were contested interpretations of the constitutional principles of an ancient empire newly split by tri-*confessionalism* into *Catholic*, *Lutheran*, and *Calvinist* camps. No longer united against *Islam* after the *Treaty of Zsitva Torok* (1606), and with the *Reichskreis* defense system broken after 1607, Germany's religious antagonists formed confessional alliances aimed at each other: the *Protestant Union* and the *Catholic League*. A closely related, and possibly more basic, issue was whether Germany's many principalities (duchies, free cities, and hundreds of smaller fiefs) were mere *Estates* of a larger and more powerful monarchy or were joined in a voluntary confederation which afforded them full sovereignty on matters of war, treaty-making, and taxes. Emperors had driven toward a more homogenous polity for half a century against resistance from feudal Estates, especially free cities and regional princes, asserting traditional local rights. The main actors in this underlying constitutional conflict were sometimes also confessional fanatics, including emperors and kings, territorial princes, and aroused clergy and their gullible flocks. But just as important were wholly secular-minded princes

uncontrolled by any confessional group, who acted regardless of personal or public confessional affiliation. Princes seen as belonging to one or another confession thus might ally with or scheme against eschatological "heretics" or coreligionists, as their secular interests required. From the beginning powerful mercenary captains of no particular faith or loyalty were also important participants.

From 1618 to 1625 the war was mainly between *Ferdinand II* and his subjects within the Empire, with limited involvement by outside powers. But it subsequently spread to involve so many states that it became in effect a European civil war, or a war to define European civilization. Thus, while the German war might have been resolved by compromise between Ferdinand and the German Estates in 1635, in fact, fighting continued to 1648 because of the war's many and evolving external linkages. Its course and final resolution crucially affected the religious balance among the three main confessions in central Europe and the material balance of power among the Great Powers and lesser states. Outside Germany confessionalism was not generally seen as the main issue at stake in the war. Instead, the German war was viewed as a new chapter in a larger and older struggle for power that pitted Austria and Spain against France, or Habsburg against Bourbon, not Catholic against Protestant. This view had real merit, for while the Thirty Years' War was about changing the internal nature of the polities that would make up the emerging European system of states, it was also fought over the future balance of power among the greatest of those states. Most rulers thought about external security and secular alliances more than they did about doctrinal disputes, except where these had congealed into confessional communities that could undermine internal stability and constrain diplomacy. New dynasties in England and France feared a general European war that might undo tenuous consolidation of kingdoms already riven with sectarian conflict but momentarily at peace. Each feared a general war of religion would split apart their own fragile polities, as domestic factions reached out in appeal to outside powers and warring coreligionists who were already tearing apart the Netherlands and Germany. As always, issues of the rights and prestige of sovereigns, along with princely vanity, also strutted across the political stage. And such matters had little or nothing to do with confessional idealism or conflict.

Bohemian Phase, 1618–1625

War broke out over a local Protestant challenge to Habsburg control of Bohemia, which was linked to an expectation of the pending death of Emperor Matthias and succession to the Imperial throne of a known Catholic ideologue, Archduke Ferdinand of Styria (later, Ferdinand II). The succession crisis in Bohemia turned into open rebellion with the "*Defenestration of Prague*" (May 23, 1618), an event humorous to Protestants, sacrilegious to Catholics, and a casus belli to the Habsburgs. The Bohemian revolt which erupted that summer threatened the religious and political balance among the seven *Kurfürsten* who chose the Holy Roman Emperor. This struck at the heart of Habsburg-Catholic power in Germany just as Ferdinand, a fanatic advocate

of the Catholic *Counter-Reformation*, was poised to ascend the Imperial throne. With Catholic ascendancy challenged doctrinally by Lutheranism and Calvinism, Imperial authority was challenged constitutionally by territorial princes and local Estates. This confluence of events and forces brought a brash Protestant prince, *Friedrich V*, the Elector Palatine, to Bohemia to secure for himself a crown which the rebels offered to any prince who would uphold Protestantism. Thus began the great conflagration of the 17th century.

The Duke of Savoy and Friedrich commissioned the contractor *Graf von Mansfeld* to raise and lead an army of 20,000 mercenaries into Bohemia in support of local forces already there under *Matthias Thurn* and *Christian of Anhalt-Bernburg*. After a day of hard fighting, Mansfeld took Pilsen on November 1, 1618. The first field battle came the next summer, at *Sablat* (June 10, 1619). Also in June, Ferdinand was hemmed into Vienna by a Bohemian army come to discuss grievances (submitted as a ''Sturmpetition,'' or ''storm petition'') at pike point. He had to be rescued by the Bavarians. Ferdinand was thereafter greatly assisted by a zealous Catholic army of veteran Spaniards and another of Bavarians and *Catholic Leaguers*, as well as the usual assortment of confessionally indifferent mercenaries. Together, these Habsburg armies crushed the Bohemian rebels and their Dutch allies and mercenary hires at the *White Mountain* (November 8, 1620). Pilsen surrendered on March 26, 1621. Only a few cutoff Dutch and Scottish troops held out until October 8, 1622. By then Ferdinand had imposed a draconian religious settlement on Bohemia, bearing down with the full weight of the Counter-Reformation and doctrinal rigors of the *Inquisition* into heresy. He stripped rebel nobles of lands and titles by imperial fiat, and sometimes took their lives; and he ripped away the traditional freedoms and rights of the Bohemian Estates and *Ritterstand*.

Catholic armies then brought the war home to the Palatinate where Friedrich's feckless policies and increasing diplomatic isolation, along with weak finances and bad generalship by several of his commanders, doomed his cause to defeat. *Johann Tilly* brought the army of the Catholic League (''Liga'') north to impose by force Catholic orthodoxy and Habsburg rule. In 1622 the Liga was blocked and rebuffed by Mansfeld at *Mingolsheim* (April 22). The armies fought again five days later at *Wiesloch* (April 27, 1622), before Tilly maneuvered around Mansfeld. Tilly won handily over the Margrave of Baden at *Wimpfen* (May 6), and yet again over the brash *Christian of Brunswick* at *Höchst* (June 20), when those Protestant commanders and armies failed to join. Tilly then successfully linked with an army of Spanish veterans from the Netherlands and forced Brunswick's remaining Protestants and Mansfeld's unreliable mercenaries to withdraw across the Rhine. An Imperial army crossed into the Netherlands to lend assistance to the Spanish against the Dutch rebels but was beaten at *Fleurus* (August 29) and forced to withdraw. In the Lower Palatinate Heidelberg fell to Tilly in September and Mannheim was overrun in November 1622.

Friedrich's coalition had fallen apart because war against the Habsburgs was something few Protestant princes were yet ready to contemplate. For instance, as a prince, *Johann Georg*, Elector of Saxony, wanted nothing to do

with a direct constitutional confrontation with his Emperor; and as a Lutheran, he had no desire to seat Friedrich, a Calvinist, on the Bohemian throne. Another Protestant, the Landgrave of Hesse, joined Tilly in alliance with German Catholic princes and Ferdinand against the rebellion of the ''Winter King.'' As for the Protestant north, Ferdinand appeased those German princes with what turned out to be false promises not to seek restitution of long secularized ecclesiastical properties. That kept them neutral. Even Friedrich's father-in-law, *James I* of England, sent just 2,000 troops in 1620. *Maurits of Nassau* helped the most, providing Friedrich one-eighth of his troops and heavy financial backing (but also unwisely egging him to war in the first place). It was not enough. In 1623 Christian of Brunswick was chased out of Saxony then trounced by Tilly at *Stadtlohn* (August 6). That ended Friedrich's last hope of regaining the Palatinate or otherwise returning to the status quo ante bellum. He went into exile in the Netherlands.

Ferdinand appeased these German princes with what turned out to be false promises . . .

Danish Phase, 1625–1629

The Bohemian and Palatinate phase of the war had been mostly fought by powers of, and within, the German Empire. After 1624 this changed as the war became evermore internationalized and eternally confusing. The shift began when England intervened, weakly and ineptly, in 1624. In December 1625, *Christian IV* of Denmark formed the *Hague Alliance* with England and the Netherlands and entered the German war. James I promised money and men to support this new Protestant champion but sent little gold, and even fewer troops. The Dutch helped pay for a second army raised by Mansfeld. The French saw Spanish-Austrian armies positioned to their east and north in these years and were ever more uneasy about perceived Habsburg ''encirclement.'' Momentarily, however, France made common cause with Spain against England: the two Catholic powers signed a treaty of alliance in 1627 that aimed at smashing the *Huguenot* base at *La Rochelle* and punishing England for intervening there when the religious wars had briefly flared again in southern France. England and France fought from 1627 to 1628 over *Charles I*'s support for the Huguenots, until Charles signed a peace treaty that abandoned the Protestants of La Rochelle to French Catholic besiegers.

In northern Europe, Christian IV managed to gather a weak and temporary coalition of Protestant states but Sweden refused to join. *Gustavus Adolphus* knew how little aid England was really lending the cause and would not in any event back the ambitions of Sweden's traditional enemy, Denmark. Besides, he was still at war with *Sigismund III* of Poland. As for the German princes, Johann Georg again sheltered under formal Saxon neutrality, while most north German princes were as yet far enough removed from Austria and Spain that the Habsburg threat was felt only faintly. The Dutch, always eager for allies in their long and lonely war with Spain, sent infantry to help the Danes and money to raise yet another cheap but unreliable mercenary army

under Mansfeld. Meanwhile, the Habsburgs sent their greatest armies and generals north: Tilly and the army of the Catholic League, skilled Spanish *tercios* under veteran commanders, and above all the Czech captain *Albrecht von Wallenstein* at the head of a mercenary host, though one far more loyal to its commander than to the Emperor. These disparate forces contended in Germany and Flanders during the latter 1620s over the fate of Protestantism and the future of Habsburg power.

In spring 1626, Tilly and the Liga army moved north along the Elbe, pushing the Danes back into Holstein. Wallenstein destroyed three-quarters of Mansfeld's army of 20,000 at *Dessau Bridge* (April 25), hounded him from Saxony, then pursued him to Moravia where Mansfeld failed to link with *Gabriel Bethlen*'s Hungarian rebels. That took Mansfield permanently out of the war. The great Czech next moved to Holstein to join Tilly. Their combined forces beat the Danes at *Lutter-am-Barenberg* (August 17/27). In early 1628 Wallenstein occupied Jutland, Pomerania, and Mecklenburg (which was given to him later by Ferdinand in reward for services rendered). Wallenstein besieged *Straslund* that summer but failed to take it. Christian IV tried one last time to invade the Empire but was crushed by Wallenstein at *Wolgast* (September 2, 1628). After four years of fighting that devastated northern Germany, Denmark was finally beaten into submission: Christian IV signed the *Peace of Lübeck* (July 7, 1629) and exited the war. He was left with his home realm intact but made to foreswear any future engagement in Imperial wars or politics.

Catholic and Imperial power was ascendant and seemed unassailable; grace, magnanimity, and toleration were called for. Instead, Ferdinand II gravely overreached, seeking to turn back 75 years of constitutional compromise with Protestantism within the Empire. Instead of pardons he issued arrest warrants; instead of toleration he proclaimed the *Edict of Restitution* (March 28, 1629). That marked the major turning point of the war. Ferdinand's Edict threatened to force princes and free cities alike to yield traditional freedoms, roll back the limited religious tolerance of the *Convention of Passau* (1552) and *Peace of Augsburg* (1555), and promised to restore to Catholics all offices and lands secularized by Protestant rulers. In short, Ferdinand sought to recover all Germany to ''the one true Faith'' (from the other one), and to radically increase Imperial power. Even Catholic princes saw this as a Habsburg grab for hegemony rather than a purely Counter-Reformation policy.

Protestants took heart that Straslund had fended off Wallenstein in 1628 with aid from Sweden, which they hoped presaged intervention in Germany by Gustavus Adolphus. They celebrated Dutch capture of the Spanish treasure fleet in September 1628, and Dutch occupation of northern Brazil in 1630. Always ready with a great *war chest* to support any emergent anti-Habsburg champion, regardless of confession, was the ''éminence rouge'' *Cardinal Richelieu*, behind whom stood all the wealth and latent military power of France. By 1628 France was already at war with Spain in their old battleground of northern Italy. That contest would continue undeclared until it overlapped with the German war from 1635. The Dutch also went on the

offensive once the Spanish Chancellor *Olivares* reduced troop levels in the north to fight the French in Italy and shifted also to a more maritime strategy. In September 1629, Dutch troops took the key fortress of s'Hertogenbosch. Before Richelieu and *Louis XIII* would intervene in Germany directly, however, they waited to see what the "Lion of Midnight" could do to stop Ferdinand and offered the great Swede huge subsidies to try.

Swedish Phase, 1630–1635

Habsburg fortunes in Germany went into steep decline from 1630 to 1634. The *Imperial Diet* meeting in Regensburg defied Ferdinand's request to send 50,000 men to Italy to aid Spain wage the *War of the Mantuan Succession*. Instead, they enticed Ferdinand to sack his overly ambitious general, Wallenstein, who was also seen as too tolerant of Protestants, and reduce the Imperial Army by two-thirds, to 40,000 men. Wallenstein was thus forced into Bohemian retirement and Ferdinand's army was hamstrung. Ferdinand's policies had finally brought Lutheran Sweden, the Protestant German princes, and Catholic France together, in defense of local autonomy against Imperial authority and in opposition to a perceived Habsburg drive for European hegemony. Gustavus Adolphus at last entered the war, seeing an expansion of Swedish power as nicely linked to the Protestant cause in Germany. Not all Protestants agreed: Johann Georg wanted to stay neutral, but was compelled to join the coalition by Swedish occupation of Saxony. Likewise, Georg Wilhelm of Brandenburg at first refused to allow Swedish troops to use his territory, until Gustavus marched uninvited to take the fortress at Küstrin, then west to Berlin to capture the fortress of Spandau and force Brandenburg into a growing coalition of the unwilling and the mercenary. This move against the fortresses of north Germany secured the confluences of the major navigable rivers, which permitted Gustavus to move his artillery train down river and closer to the Habsburg heartland and to supply his armies with food and fodder gathered in the north. On April 13, he stormed Frankfurt an der Oder, smashing eight Imperial regiments and taking the city. The next month *Magdeburg* fell to Tilly, whose men put its population to the sword when Gustavus failed to relieve the city. The atrocity—the worst of the war—actually strengthened Gustavus by raising levels of fear and resolve among German Protestants.

By May 1631, Gustavus had cleared Pomerania of Imperial armies and garrisons, while in Mecklenburg only the city of Greifswald held out against him. Gustavus marched into Saxony, forcing Johann Georg to join him and swelling the ranks of his army by a further 12,000 men. With his strategic rear and supply lines secured he moved south to do battle with Tilly's army, which had taken Leipzig a few days earlier. The two armies met at *First Breitenfeld* (September 17, 1631), where Gustavus won a smashing victory despite being abandoned early in the fight when his reluctant Saxon allies fled in panic and en masse. Gustavus next took Mainz after a short siege. To the north, Spanish troops were withdrawn into fortified garrisons in the Netherlands: Gustavus had broken the link between the armies and bases of the

Austrian and Spanish branches of Habsburg military power. All armies then went into winter quarters. By spring 1632, Tilly and Ferdinand had raised a new Imperial army and Gustavus marched to meet it. The clash came at *Rain* (April 15, 1632), where Gustavus daringly forged the River Lech under enemy fire, covered by a smokescreen from his artillery. During the action Tilly was mortally wounded; he died five days later, forcing Ferdinand to recall Wallenstein to Imperial command. Meanwhile, Gustavus occupied Augsburg and Munich, ate out Bavaria, and prepared for either a feint or an actual drive to take Vienna. At that moment it seemed the ancient and Catholic Holy Roman Empire might become instead a Swedish and Protestant empire.

However, within a month a huge army of mercenaries flocked to the banner of the Czech war captain, enticed by the prospects of plunder and success that always accompanied his campaigns. Even as Wallenstein assembled this army and then marched north he secretly negotiated with Saxony and Brandenburg, arguing for a common interest in expelling the Swedes from Germany. Where his nominal superior Ferdinand thought in terms of ''the Faith,'' Wallenstein thought of German lands and riches to be divided or despoiled. Impressed by Swedish artillery and maneuverability he chose to avoid battle. He curled behind Gustavus into Saxony, taking Leipzig and wasting the surrounding lands to pull the great Swede north. At Fürth, near Nürnberg, Wallenstein linked with *Maximilian I* of Bavaria and the army of the Catholic League. The Catholic and Protestant armies then settled into opposing trenches where each grew progressively weaker from disease, hunger, and desertion. Gustavus cracked first, precipitously attacking Wallenstein's trenches. He was rebuffed with a loss of 3,000 men, suffering a real blow to his reputation for invincibility. To draw Wallenstein out of his defenses Gustavus moved into Bavaria and threatened Vienna. Instead of following as expected Wallenstein moved back into Saxony where he again devastated an allied country and threatened Swedish lines of supply. Gustavus was forced north to fight Wallenstein at *Alte Feste* (August 24–September 18, 1632) after which the armies again went separate ways, each eating out the lands of the other's allies. The decisive clash came at *Lützen* (November 6, 1632) where, although Gustavus was shot to death during the battle, the Swedish army smashed the Imperials.

Gustavus died after just two years of campaigning in Germany, but his intervention altered the whole course of the war. He saved the Protestant cause even while revealing and confirming that the war had become mainly a struggle for raw political power and territory regardless of faith. On the other hand, his death brought the two sides back to even and thus forced each to look outside Germany for new allies: Habsburg-Catholics turned to Spain while the anti-Habsburg Protestant alliance turned to France. In the summer of 1633, some 20,000 Spanish troops moved through the *Valtelline* into southern Germany to reestablish Habsburg control while France invaded Lorraine and occupied Nancy. To the east the *War of Smolensk* (December 1632–June 1634) broke out between Russia and Poland, tying down Polish

Catholic armies. Within Germany, the two sides clawed at their own vitals rather than each others': as Swedish influence over the Protestant princes waned the alliance cracked, while Catholic princes worried the Emperor until he again dismissed Wallenstein, then had him assassinated.

French Phase, 1635–1648

Gustavus' councillor *Oxenstierna* replaced him in the field in Germany but lost badly at *First Nördlingen* (September 5–6, 1634). He was later taken hostage by his own men, who demanded all pay in arrears. Sweden did not recover from this debacle for several years. Moreover, the Habsburg victory persuaded Olivares that the moment had come to throw the French off the right bank of the Rhine, where Richelieu had been planting garrisons since 1632. Spanish troops attacked the French in Trier in March 1635 (taking the archbishop prisoner), in an effort to establish an alternative route to the *Spanish Road*, which had been cut by France. The assault on Trier was designed to trigger war between France and the Holy Roman Empire. The stratagem failed: on May 19, 1635, France declared war only on Spain. Longer term, expanded Spanish-French fighting drew Habsburg armies away from northern Germany, permitting Sweden to slowly recover. Led by a prince of the church, Cardinal Richelieu, France finally intervened in the German war only when the gains it had earlier made by stealth in the Rhineland were assaulted and eroded by Spain. It did not enter the war as a Catholic power, as Richelieu had already signed offensive treaties with Protestant Sweden and the Netherlands in expectation of fighting Catholic Austria and Spain. Why?

With Catholicism secure in France following Richelieu's crushing of the last Huguenot military resistance in 1628, France was free to act for raison d'etat (reason of state) against the Habsburg powers rather than out of delusional confessional loyalty. Besides, France and Spain had fought an undeclared but bitter frontier war for years in northern Italy and along the Spanish Road, even after the formal end of the Mantuan war in 1631. The stunning Swedish defeat at Nördlingen confirmed Imperial control of southwest Germany and seemed to re-close a strategic ring of Habsburg lands around the perimeter of France that had been broken by Gustavus. This threat persuaded Richelieu that France must enter the war directly at long last, that fighting the Habsburgs through subsidized proxies was no longer enough. France must now intervene herself in Flanders, Germany, Italy, and at sea. For four years France pursued these grand strategic goals with an inadequate military system, with poor armies badly led by inept generals. It was not until the early 1640s that France settled on sound commanders and fielded well-trained armies capable of winning the war. It was greatly aided by the cracking of Habsburg power occasioned by the *revolt of Catalonia* and another in Portugal in 1640.

French intervention—which guaranteed a great widening of the war—occurred just as Ferdinand and the German princes reached an accommodation that might have ended it: the *Peace of Prague* (May 30, 1635). However, the ''German war'' was no longer solely a German affair: it was a general war

involving all the major powers, which meant it could not be ended by a settlement crafted by Germans alone. In addition, the anti-Habsburg coalition did not agree on what sort of peace it should force on the Habsburg powers, with Sweden concentrating on the German war and desperate for territorial and financial compensation for its ruinous military effort and France more concerned with defeating Spain. This split gave hope to Vienna and Madrid that they could still win by dividing their enemies.

And so, for 13 years more the armies battled. They marauded over Germany, Bohemia, the Netherlands, Italy, and France, sacking cities and terrorizing populations as they battened off and burned the land. Catholic fought Catholic and Protestant killed Protestant while each murdered, raped, tortured, and burned out the other, spreading famine, pestilence, refugees, cruelty, and death through the heart of Europe. Huge mercenary armies did not so much fight strategic battles as constantly maneuver, plunder, and forage, all the while collecting wages of death. Entire cities were put to the sword out of revenge or reprisal. The conflict left some areas of Germany and Bohemia denuded of half their population, while other provinces paid huge ransoms to approaching armies—of whichever side—to deflect the war elsewhere, escape with their lives, and keep town, livestock, and farms intact. As the war drew to a drawn-out and exhausted close, the armies engaged shrank in size. This was due to the inability of burned and eaten out farms or serially extorted and depopulated towns to sustain relentless demands for *contributions* to maintain forces on the huge scale seen earlier under Wallenstein and Gustavus. During these last years, given the strength of fortified defenses and the still unsolved problems of mid-17th century logistics, deep cavalry raiding was about the most either side could undertake. And most raids achieved little because of an abiding inability to supply mid-17th century armies on the move and the inherent superiority of fortified defenses.

At *Wittstock* (October 4, 1636), the Imperial Army lost heavily to the Swedes, so that once more the balance of power swung (as it had in the other direction after Nördlingen) and new hope for victory was raised among the Protestant princes of Europe. In 1638 France and Sweden signed the *Treaty of Hamburg* (March 15) providing French subsidies to Sweden and foreswearing a separate peace. At *Rheinfelden* (March 2–3, 1638) a Protestant army under *Bernhard von Sachsen-Weimar* destroyed a Bavarian army and took *Johann von Werth* captive. The Swedes followed up with a victory over the Saxons at *Chemnitz* (April 14, 1638) and occupation of Bohemia. From September 1640 to October 1641, the full Imperial Diet met for the first time since 1613, to work out the negotiating positions of the Empire for any future peace talks. Not every German prince waited: in July 1641, Friedrich Wilhelm (1640–1688), the new ''Great Elector'' of Brandenburg, agreed to a ceasefire with Sweden; in January 1642, the Welf dukes of Brunswick also dropped out of the war (Treaty of Goslar). These defections freed Swedish general *Lennart Torstensson* to invade Moravia and Silesia. A determinative battle was *Second Breitenfeld* (November 2, 1642) where Torstensson destroyed an Imperial army and *Ferdinand III*'s hope to avoid major concessions to Sweden in the

final settlement. The other important battle of this last phase of the war was *Rocroi* (May 19, 1643), where the seasoned but sullen and shrunken Army of Flanders was defeated by a French army of 22,000 led by the ''Great Condé'' (Louis II). The French suffered a disaster of their own at *Tüttlingen* (November 24–25, 1643), after which *Turenne* was recalled from Italy and given command of the shattered Armeé d'Allemagne.

End Game

As the first diplomatic envoys gathered at Osnabrück and Munster in Westphalia, their deliberations were interrupted by *Torstensson's War* (1643–1645) between Sweden and Denmark. Ferdinand III sent an army to help the Danes, only to lose two-thirds of his force of 20,000. At *Freiburg* (August 3–10, 1644) the French were led by the Great Condé and Turenne. They initially failed to take the city and lost half the army's strength trying. Still, they forced the defending Bavarian garrison to withdraw to Rothenburg. Until the end of the campaign season that followed, Turenne's cavalry screened Condé's infantry while they alternately foraged and scoured the Rhineland of Catholic forces. After defeating Denmark the Swedes invaded Bohemia in coordination with an attack by a Transylvanian army into Hungary. At *Jankov* (March 6, 1645), Torstensson routed an Imperial-Bavarian army. Then he laid siege to Prague. However, the logistical deficit of a country long since denuded of people and resources meant the siege could not be sustained. At *Mergentheim* (May 2, 1645), also in Bavaria, Turenne was surprised in camp, beaten, and driven back to the Rhine to rejoin the Great Condé. A few months later two diminished armies of just 12,000 men apiece clashed at *Second Nördlingen* (August 3, 1645). They fought each other to exhaustion, separated to forage over devastated lands, and did not fight again for another two years. More important German states joined Brandenburg in signing separate peace treaties before the talks in Westphalia were even seriously under way. Saxony quit the war in 1645. Bavaria left in 1647 then reentered the fight, provoking another invasion by French and Swedish armies and total Bavarian defeat at *Zusmarshausen* (May 17, 1648). Yet, the last battle of the great German war was not fought in Germany but in northern France, at *Lens* (August 2, 1648).

Turenne was surprised in camp, beaten, and driven back to the Rhine to rejoin the Great Condé.

Relief for all finally arrived in the form of the *Peace of Westphalia*, that great set of agreements which settled the religious question in Germany on a profoundly secular basis. In Bohemia, where it all had started and where confessional hatred and armed retribution scorched the land several times over, barely one in seven villages thriving and prosperous in 1618 were even inhabited thirty years later. The Czech population had been reduced by famine, murder, pillage, and pestilence to one-third its former size. Much of Germany and Central Europe, especially along the great riverine highways, lay in ruin. The Swedish army alone is thought to have destroyed over 1,500 towns and

18,000 villages. Population statistics for the 17th century are notoriously unreliable, but concerted efforts to measure the damage nevertheless have been made by historians. Their highest estimate of casualties is eight million dead, of whom 350,000 were soldiers killed in skirmishes, set-piece battles, or sieges. All the rest were soldiers or civilians lost to massacre, fire, famine, or disease. By 1648 those parts of Germany repeatedly fought over or eaten out by passing armies were below half their prewar population, but the overall loss may have been less than the oft-cited figure of one-third or one-half the entire Empire's population. Some historians estimate the loss at closer to 15–20 percent (or a reduction from 20 million prewar to 16–17 million in 1648). In either case, destitution and desperation was so great that in some areas people resorted to cannibalism of their neighbors, and in a few others even of their own children. Historians still argue over whether the economic decline of Germany in these years began before the war as part of the general economic decline of the 17th century, or was caused by it. None dispute that the damage was enormous, even catastrophic. Nor did suffering end with signature of the peace treaties: a Swedish siege of Prague continued for nine days after the peace was signed while bands of unemployed former soldiers continued petty ravages and isolated killings and extortion for years. Fighting over unresolved issues stirred up by the German war, or by the German peace, continued along the Ottoman frontier, in Lorraine, and the Baltic. Still, for most areas the war was finally over by the autumn of 1648.

Recognition of the complexity of the war's origins in competing secular and confessional interests makes it easier to understand that it ended not with triumph of one religious party over the other, but in a grand secular compromise born of physical and moral exhaustion. As the last and greatest of the ''wars of religion,'' the Thirty Years' War detached confessional questions from interstate politics, jolted the core convictions of princes and hostile faiths even as it shook the land, and finally led to agreement that princes should conduct their affairs according to raison d'etat rather than doctrinal differences on such questions as transubstantiation, predestination, or justification by faith alone. In other words, the Thirty Years' War was the climax of a revolution in church-state affairs in Europe that had lasting, even global, significance. It was the first of the ''Great Wars'' of modern history, and thus shaped much that followed in ways both foreseen and hidden at the time. It spawned great commanders and national and confessional heroes and witnessed huge field armies that then dwindled in size as an extraordinary toll of death and destruction mounted; and it saw innumerable sieges, the sack of cities, and battles fought with new troop formations, weapons, and tactics. And yet no campaign, siege, or battle was decisive to the final outcome. Even the oft-cited Swedish intervention was more important for what it prevented, Catholic victory, than what it sought to promote, Swedish and Protestant predominance over Germany and Central Europe. In this as in other great wars, moral despair and physical exhaustion were more decisive than ideals or the vainglorious dreams of the usual dynastic, political, and military pretenders or idiots found on every side.

A major consequence of the war was to leave Germany weak and divided (over 300 distinct German entities were recognized at Westphalia), and so on the margins of world history and politics for another 150 years. Never again would war break out in Germany over religious division or Habsburg pretensions. The general mêlée also amounted to a fundamental crisis in European civilization, in its final phase witnessing a transition from an era of war between religious communities to a period of war among princes and states, fought not for God but for raison d'état, and ending not in confessional triumph but in stalemate and a new balance of power. More widely, it witnessed the removal of the religious question from international relations, though religious disputes remained a matter of prime political importance internally in many countries. An older age of ''horizontal loyalty'' to popes and emperors was over, though the full change would take decades more to become clear. A new age of ''vertical loyalty'' to centralized monarchies was under way. It was driven by prolonged warfare which speeded advanced state-building and military centralization, and necessary to sustain new levels and forms of taxation and wartime levels of military spending needed after the peace to keep permanent armies in barracks. First among equals of the myriad states and statelets of Europe was France, the greatest single beneficiary of the Thirty Years' War. Thus did a German conflict stemming from confessional and constitutional confrontations that seemed odd or quaint to later generations become a European-wide war, and indeed a global war with naval and amphibious battles waged as far afield as Brazil and Ceylon. See also *Bärwalde, Treaty of*; *Hague Alliance*; *Heilbronn, League of*; *Holk, Heinrich*; *Leipziger Bund*; *Lisowczyks*; *Monzón, Treaty of*; *prisoners of war*; *Uzkok War*; *witchcraft*.

Suggested Reading: Ronald Asch, *The Thirty Years' War* (1997); Geoffrey Parker, ed., *The Thirty Years' War* (1987); S. H. Steinberg, *The ''Thirty Years' War'' and the Conflict for European Hegemony, 1600–1660* (1966).

Three Kingdoms, Wars of (1639–1653). See *English Civil Wars*.

thughur. See *March*.

Thurn, Count Mathias von (1567–1640). Protestant general in the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). He initiated the war by carrying out the ''*Defenestration of Prague*'' (1618). Along with *Graf von Mansfeld* and *Christian of Anhalt-Bernburg*, Thurn and his Bohemians were decisively defeated by the army of the *Catholic League*, led by *Compte Bucquoy* and *Johann Tilly*, at the *White Mountain* (November 8, 1620).

tier. The entire set of *broadside* guns on one deck of a ship.

Tilly, Count Johann Tserclaes (1559–1632). Catholic general. Commander of the *Catholic League* (Liga); Imperial field marshal. A Habsburg subject by virtue of his birth in the Spanish Netherlands, Tilly was raised by *Jesuits* to

service of the Church Militant but never imbibed the full range, or scholarly inclinations, of a Jesuit education. Instead he turned to war: he spent his adult life in professional military service, earning a reputation for toughness, even callousness, an attitude that fit the Age like a mailed glove. He first saw combat at age 15 and served under *Parma* in the Netherlands to 1592. He fought for *Rudolf II* against the Ottomans in Hungary from 1600 to 1608. In 1610 he hired out to *Maximilian I* and the Catholic League. Tilly led an Austrian army into Bohemia at the start of the Thirty Years' War, crushing combined Protestant armies at the *White Mountain* (November 8, 1620). Then he marauded through the Palatinate, ripping it away from *Friedrich V*. In 1622 Tilly was beaten, but not stopped, by *Graf von Mansfeld* at *Mingolsheim* (April 22). He beat Mansfeld and *Baden* five days later at *Wiesloch* (April 27). He defeated Baden again at *Wimpfen* (May 6). He bested *Christian of Brunswick* at *Höchst* (June 20). From August to September, Tilly besieged Heidelberg; he let his troops pillage the city when it fell. The next year he won at *Stadtlohn* (August 6), destroying nearly 80 percent of Christian's army. That left only Mansfeld and his ragged mercenaries in the field on the Protestant side.

Once Denmark entered the war Tilly was effectively subordinate to *Albrecht von Wallenstein*, as Bavaria was to the Empire. Tilly scored a major victory over *Christian IV* of Denmark at *Lutter-am-Barenberg* in 1626, then worked with Wallenstein to clear Saxony, and later Jutland, of anti-Habsburg forces. After Wallenstein's dismissal from Imperial command in August 1630,Tilly was appointed to command both the Imperial and Liga armies just in time to face the spectacular intervention by *Gustavus Adolphus* and the superb Swedish Army. The 71-year-old Tilly could do nothing to prevent the Swedes occupying northern Germany. His response was to let his troops run amok: he dismissed one complaint about brutal conduct by his men against civilians with the cavalier remark, ''Do you think my men are nuns?'' That attitude underlay the most famous atrocity of an age of atrocities when *Pappenheim*'s cavalry, part of Tilly's Imperial Army, sacked *Magdeburg* (1631). So extensive was the rapine, murder, and destruction that Tilly could not provision his men there and had to march north. Gustavus met and beat him at *Werben* (July 22–28, 1631), forcing him into Saxony. Tilly is often criticized for being too old and too old-fashioned to keep up with the tactics of Gustavus at *First Breitenfeld* (September 17, 1631), where his army was shattered and he was personally wounded three times. But he was not as tactically backward as is sometimes said. For instance, he broke up his infantry squares into looser formations in imitation of the Swedes. While these were not copies of the brigade-sized units of the Swedish Army, they were not the old, over-massive *tercios* either. By early 1632 Tilly and Ferdinand had raised a new Imperial Army and Gustavus marched to meet it. They clashed at *Rain*, Bavaria (April 15, 1632), where Gustavus forced his way across the River Lech under heavy fire. During the action, Tilly's leg was smashed by a cannonball. It was a mortal hurt from which he died at Ingolstadt five days later, last of the great tercio captains.

timariots. Ottoman light cavalry. Like Muscovite *servitor class* cavalry, timariots were obliged to seasonal military service in exchange for a grant of land (''timar''), usually one that produced annual revenues of less than 20,000 akçes. The highest timariot ranks were sustained by generous income from a very large grant (*ziamet*), that paid revenue from 20,000 to 100,000 akçes. All were expected to tax their peasants at levels sufficient to equip themselves and support armed cavalry retainers (*Cebelu*), and to ride on military service for the sultan during the regular campaign season (May–October). Simply registering was enough to retain one's timar, but to expand it a timariot needed to display exceptional skill or combat bravery. Active participation in the sultan's wars was necessary to share in redistribution of the land revenues of dead timariots made after every battle or campaign. The distribution was made among survivors and landless volunteers who served recklessly in hope of winning a timar. Timariots provided the bulk of early modern Ottoman soldiery, numbering from a conservatively estimated reserve of 100,000 to perhaps as many as 200,000. On campaigns they mustered an average of about 75,000. In battle, timariots deployed on the wings, protecting the flanks of *Janissary Corps* infantry and artillery at the center. They were supplemented by light cavalry: allied *Tatars*, Kurds, or Christian *Voynuks*. These troops were used to scout, forage, and raid, preserving the timariots for combat. At the end of every campaign to about 1550, timariots were demobilized. Once the Empire became too expansive to use seasonal troops, timariot cavalry sometimes were held over the winter along the frontier to fight again the next year. In the main, however, sultans shifted to salaried forces during the 16th century. See also *Celâli Revolts*; *sipahis*.

Timariots provided the bulk of early modern Ottoman soldiery . . .

"Time of Troubles" (1604–1613). ''Smutnoe Vremia,'' or ''Smuta'' A prolonged period of social unrest, famine, peasant uprisings, dynastic and civil wars, and harsh repression in *Muscovy*. It was occasioned by complex dynastic struggles among several rival claimants to the throne, exacerbated by a frenetic climate of religious despair, schism, and millenarianism. The ''False Dimitri,'' claiming to be the true tsar, invaded with a large but ill-disciplined peasant army during the reign of *Boris Godunov*. Rumors that the False Dimitri had a white cross on his chest and belief that he was the true tsar risen from the dead rallied peasants angry over the spread and deepening excesses of serfdom. Cynical Polish-Lithuanian nobles eager for material gain backed Dimitri and helped him take Moscow. True believers were disgusted with Dimitri, however, when he married a Polish Catholic who refused to convert to Orthodoxy. A cabal of *boyars* raised a Muscovite mob which turned on and killed Dimitri and his supporters with cries of ''Death to the Poles!'' A new tsar, Vasily Shuisky, was elected but represented only one faction of the boyars and could not control at all the aroused peasantry. Other boyars invited *Sigismund III*, king of Poland-Lithuania, to intervene. He did so,

winning at Klushino (July 4, 1610) over a Russo-Swedish army. But then Sigismund claimed the throne for his son, Wladyslaw, in an effort to extend the already large Polish-Lithuanian empire over Muscovy. Wladyslaw refused to convert to Orthodoxy and was therefore rejected by most Russians as anathema. Orthodox boyars raised a rural militia that took Moscow back from the Poles in 1613. The zemsky sobor, or assembly of *Estates*, finally ended the chaos by uniting against the foreign, Catholic Poles. It established a new Russian dynasty by electing as tsar 16-year-old *Michael Romanov* (1596–1645).

Suggested Reading: M. Perrie, *Pretenders and Popular Monarchism in Early Modern Russia* (1995); Ruslan Skrynnikov, *The Time of Troubles*, Hugh Graham, trans. (1988).

Timur (1336–1405). ''Amir Timur,'' or ''Timur the Great.'' Best known in the West as ''Tamerlane'' (a corruption of ''Timur Lang'' or ''Timur the Lame''). Born into a minor military family among the Jagatai Mongols, and partially lame in one leg, in 1370 Timur overthrew the Khan of Samarkand and declared himself a direct descendant of the ''Great Khans.'' After securing his base with murder and terror, in 1380 he invaded Iran, which had split into fractious states following the collapse of the Mongol ''Il-Khans.'' Thus began a career built wholly on warlordism and carnage. He next invaded Armenia, Azerbaijan, and Iraq. His major enemies were to the north, however, in southern Russia, which he invaded in 1390. As he attacked these Christian areas, rampaging and slaughtering throughout Ukraine and parts of Mongol-occupied Muscovy, rebellions broke out in his provinces in Central Asia and he was forced to return and reconquer those lands. Thus was set in motion a bloody and destructive, yet ultimately futile pattern of shifting personal and martial dominance, in which he ruled so harshly that in his absence rebellion frequently sprang up, only to be met with reconquest and ferocious retribution. Millions may have died at the hands of his mixed Tatar-Mongol armies. He left whole regions underpopulated and economically depressed, literally for centuries. In 1391 Timur turned from Iran into the Caucasus in pursuit of the army of the Golden Horde, which he chased into southern Russia and defeated in a massive cavalry battle involving 100,000 horsemen, at Kandurcha. He then returned to Iran to complete its conquest. In 1397 he savagely repressed a rebellion in Iran. The next year he invaded northern India on the pretext of enforcing strict Islam on the Hindu subjects of an overly tolerant *Delhi Sultanate*. Once again slaughter and pillage was the order of his days. Timur won at *Panipat* (1398), then proceeded to sack Delhi during ten days of rape and unbridled carnage by brutal, barbarian illiterates. He then abandoned India, satisfied with having destabilized it and opened its cities to longterm pillage, rape, and murder any time he chose to return.

Timur invaded Syria where he wiped out a *mamlūk* army in 1400. He rewarded his troops by letting them sack Aleppo, Damascus, and Baghdad. He did all this in spite of his nominal claim to be a Muslim: while he did spare Muslim holy places he killed Muslims in large numbers. Timur later had Baghdad razed as retribution for a brief revolt against his occupation. In 1402

he invaded Anatolia, defeating the Ottomans at *Ankara* and capturing *Bayezid I*. That victory made Timur overlord of a vast region from the Middle East to Central Asia: by 1405 he was receiving *tribute* from the Ottomans, Byzantines, Egyptians, Syrians, and several small khanates of Central Asia and southern Russia. Timur's appetite for blood and plunder was not satiated, however: he was planning a massive invasion of China when he took ill and died. Like so many of his Mongol and Turkic nomad forebears, Timur took much from more settled civilizations but gave back nothing. His death marked the end of an enormously destructive era of invasions of settled civilizations by steppe nomads, and his empire fell apart as soon as he departed it. In western Iran "Black Sheep" and "White Sheep" Turkomen clans succeeded Timur. Only in eastern Iran and Afghanistan did a branch of the Timurid dynasty survive. His great-grandson *Babur* also invaded India, but unlike his forebear stayed to found the *Mughal Empire*.

Suggested Reading: Beatrice Manz, *The Rise and Rule of Tamerlane* (1999).

Timurid dynasty. Any of several dynastic lines descending from *Timur*. See also *Babur*; *Iran*; *Mughal Empire*.

Tippermuir, Battle of (1644). A *Covenanter* army of 5,000 chased down and offered battle to a force of just 1,100 Irish and Highlanders (MacDonalds) loyal to the *Marquis of Montrose*. Highland ferocity and Montrose's tactical brilliance told the tale as the overconfident and numerically superior Covenanters suffered over 40 percent casualties. That allowed Montrose to occupy Perth and Aberdeen and keep Royalist hope alive, in Scotland at least. See also *English Civil Wars*.

Tokugawa Ieyasu (1542–1616). Né Matsudaira Motoyasu. Last of the great unifiers of Japan and founder of the Tokugawa shogunate. At age 4 he was given by his father as a hostage to a neighboring *daimyo*; he was captured en route by a third daimyo and held hostage to age 7. Once freed he continued to his original destination and resumed his family obligation as hostage to his father's loyalty and conduct until the age of 18. In 1560 he allied with *Oda Nobunaga* after paying that cruel warlord's loyalty-price of killing his wife and ordering his son to commit seppuku (ritual suicide). Ieyasu and Nobunaga fought together well and often, notably at *Anegawa* (1570). Ieyasu lost to Takeda Katsuyori at Mikata ga Hara in 1572 but crushed him at *Nagashino* three years later. The alliance with Nobunaga paid well: by 1582, Ieyasu controlled five provinces and was poised to succeed as military hegemon. However, *Toyotomi Hideyoshi* moved more quickly to defeat Nobunaga's assassin and claimed the succession. The two warlords met in an indecisive succession battle at Nagakute (1584). Afterwards, they allied and Ieyasu sealed the deal by marrying Hideyoshi's sister. In 1590 he helped Hideyoshi defeat the Hōjō at Odawara and subdue the northeast. He was then ordered to relocate to secure the conquered Hōjō domains. He settled at Edo (Tokyo), master of the richest and most strategic of all daimyo domains. Busy

consolidating these new lands, Ieyasu was not involved in Hideyoshi's costly and failed invasions of Korea in the 1590s.

In 1598 Ieyasu was appointed one of five regents for Hideyoshi's minor son, Toyotomi Hideyori, but instead moved to seize power for himself as the new military hegemon. He secured this position by leading an eastern coalition to victory at *Sekigahara* in 1600. As a descendant of the Minamoto, Ieyasu did what Nobunaga and Hideyoshi were unable to do because of their humble origins: in 1603, he became *Shogun*. Two years later he raised his son to that office while still exercising power behind the scenes. Ieyasu made peace with Korea in 1605, formalized in the Treaty of Kiyu (1609). As part of his policy of concentrating all military power, in 1607 he decreed that all cannon casting must be centralized under his control at Nagahama. Gunsmiths were elevated to *samurai* status, reflecting a new respect in Japan for firearms. All cannon and musket purchases were henceforth channeled through the "Commissioner of Guns." In combination with control of Japan's coasts and radically restricted foreign trade, this order ultimately established a tightly centralized state and shogunal monopoly over firearms. As much as anything, this ensured the long peace that consolidation of the Tokugawa victory brought to Japan from 1615, when Ieyasu defeated Hideyori and reduced his last stronghold at *Osaka Castle*. The realm united and subdued, Ieyasu died in 1616.

Suggested Reading: George Sansom, *History of Japan, 1334–1615* (1961); Conrad Totman, *Tokugawa Ieyasu: Shogun* (1983).

Tokugawa Shogunate (1603–1867). See *bakufu*; *castles, on land*; *daimyo*; *Japan*; *Kakure Kirishitan*; *samurai*; *Tokugawa Ieyasu*; *tribute*; *Unification Wars*.

toleration. See *Akbar*; *Anabaptism*; *arma*; *Arminianism*; *Augsburg, Peace of*; *Augsburg Confession*; *Austria*; *Calvinism*; *Carafa War*; *Catholic Church*; *confessionalism*; *Corpus Catholicorum*; *Corpus Evangelicorum*; *Counter-Reformation*; *Edict of Amboise*; *Edict of Nantes*; *Edict of Restitution*; *Edict of Saint-Germain*; *Edict of Saint-Germain-en-Laye*; *Egmont*; *Eighty Years' War*; *Elizabeth I*; *expulsion of the Jews*; *expulsion of the Moors*; *Ferdinand II, Holy Roman Emperor*; *Francis I*; *Granada*; *Grotius, Hugo*; *Guise Family*; *Hendrik, Frederick*; *Henri III, of France*; *Henri IV, of France*; *Holy Roman Empire*; *Huguenots*; *Levellers*; *Louis XIII*; *Luther, Martin*; *Maximilian II*; *Medici, Catherine de*; *Oldenbaarneveldt, Johan van*; *Ormonde, 1st Duke of*; *Ottoman Empire*; *Passau, Convention of*; *Philip II, of Spain*; *Philip III, of Spain*; *Philip IV, of Spain*; *politiques (France)*; *politiques (Netherlands)*; *Prague, Peace of*; *Protestant Reformation*; *Reconquista*; *Richelieu, Cardinal Armand Jean du Plessis de*; *"Root and Branch" petition*; *Rudolf II*; *Thirty Years' War*; *Tudor, Mary*; *Urban VIII*; *Westphalia, Peace of*; *William the Silent*.

Tolsburg, Truce of (1618). This truce was to have brought peace between Sweden and Poland for two years but actually lasted until July 1621, when the war resumed. By September, *Gustavus Adolphus* had captured Riga. The Polish-Swedish war continued until the *Truce of Altmark* of September 16/26, 1629.

tompion. A wooden plug used to close the firing chamber in early *bombards*.

tonlet. An armored skirt that protected the stomach and hips. See also *fauld*.

tonnage. ''Burthen.'' A measure of a ship's carrying capacity by volume (not weight), originally determined by the number of wine casks it could carry. The lost space involved in dry goods not in casks was called ''deadweight stowage.'' A ''tun'' was a measure of eight barrels (36 gallons) or four hogsheads.

top. A platform located at the top of any lower mast (hence, ''foretop,'' ''maintop,'' ''mizzentop''), serving as a foothold for men or boys spreading upper rigging and sail on the topmast. In battle, snipers might be placed in the top to fire down on enemy decks or at enemy snipers. See also *masts*; *sails*.

***Top Arabacs* (*top arabacilar*).** ''Gun-carriage drivers.'' Muleteers and other drivers of the *Janissary Corps* artillery. They were full members of the Corps, not auxiliaries. Other Janissary military specialists included *Cebicis* and *Topçu*.

top castle. See *castles, on ships*.

***Topçu* (*Topçuar*).** ''Gunners.'' One of several groups of military specialists within the *Janissary Corps*. Others included *Cebicis* and *Top Arabacs*.

topgallant. See *masts*; *sails*.

Tophane-i Amire. See *armories*.

Tordesillas, Treaty of (1494). See *Brazil*; *Canary Islands*; *Line of Demarcation*; *Zaragoza, Treaty of*.

toredar. A light *matchlock* firearm in use in India from the 15th century.

Toro, Battle of (1476). See *Ferdinand II, of Aragon and Isabella I, of Castile*.

Torquemada. See *expulsion of the Jews*; *Inquisition*.

torre alberrano. An exterior watch tower associated with a *torre del homenaje* to which it was connected solely by a plank bridge that could be cut or burned in the event of an enemy assault.

torre del homenaje. A *keep* in the Spanish style, with four corner towers and heavy machicolations to permit archery and pouring of burning oils on the heads of attackers below.

Torrington, Battle of (1646). See *English Civil Wars*; *Fairfax, Thomas*; *Hopton, Ralph*.

Torstensson, Lennart (1603–1651). Swedish artillery general, then field marshal. A companion of *Gustavus Adolphus* from youth, he served in the king's wars in Livonia and Poland in the 1620s. He spent two years of military study in the Netherlands, 1624–1625, under *Maurits of Nassau*. He was closely involved in the reform and standardization of Swedish artillery by Gustavus. Torstensson accompanied the king into Germany in 1630 in command of the field artillery. His batteries fought exceedingly well at *First Breitenfeld* (1631). He provided a smoke screen that allowed the army to cross the River Lech under enemy fire at *Rain* (1632). He was captured at *Alte Feste* (1632) during a failed attack on *Albrecht von Wallenstein*'s camp. He was held for a year then ransomed by Sweden and exchanged. He was subordinate to *Johann Banér* at *Wittstock* (October 4, 1636) but took full command of the Swedish Army at *Second Breitenfeld* (1642). He spent most of 1642 overrunning Saxony, Bohemia, and Moravia. He marched the army across Germany in 1643 in order to invade Jutland in a pre-emptive campaign against Denmark sometimes called *Torstensson's War*. In 1645 he moved against Prague, winning decisively at *Jankov* and knocking Bavaria out of the war but failing to take the well-defended city. His many years in the saddle took their toll: he resigned in ill-health in 1646 and died five years later.

He marched the army across Germany . . . in a pre-emptive campaign against Denmark . . .

Torstensson's War (1643–1645). In 1643 *Christian IV* of Denmark contemplated re-entering the German war, this time in alliance with the Habsburgs. As that would seriously jeopardize the Swedish strategic position *Oxenstierna* decided to pre-empt: he recalled *Lennart Torstensson* and the main Swedish Army from Moravia and sent them into Jutland (December 22, 1643). The Danes fell back, as was their usual military practice under Christian, and Jutland fell to the Swedes. In addition, Swedish and Dutch warships pounded and threatened Danish coastal towns and the Dutch and Swedes defied the *Sound Tolls*. Christian agreed to an armistice in November 1644, and a humiliating peace at *Brömsebro* (1645). He lost Gotland, Ösel, and the bishoprics of Verden and Bremen. The losses were confirmed in the *Peace of Westphalia* in 1648.

Torun, Second Peace of (October 19, 1466). This treaty ended the *War of the Cities* (1454–1466) between Poland-Lithuania under *Casimir IV* and the *Teutonic Knights*. The Brethren lost West Prussia (henceforth called "Polish" or "Royal Prussia") to Poland, retained possession only of East Prussia (but conceded suzerainty to Poland), and were forced to transfer their capital from Marienburg to Königsberg (modern Kaliningrad). They were also compelled to accept 50 percent Polish membership and to watch their Hochmeister pay homage to Casimir. Torun split the Teutonic Knights: the Livonian brothers elected their own commander (Landmeister), resuming their former discrete status. While neither the emperor nor the pope accepted the legality of this treaty it was a triumph for Polish statecraft. It set the stage for Poland's

dominance of the eastern Baltic until the rise of Sweden to pre-eminence under *Gustavus Adolphus*.

Tournai, Siege of (1581). See *Parma, duque di*.

tournaments. Once personal armor afforded good protection (early 12th century) and the stirrup and wraparound saddle with pommel permitted European *knights* to use a *couched lance*, the warrior class developed a game of group (''conrois'') sham combat called the ''tournament'' or ''tourney.'' This was essentially a way to practice new cavalry techniques involving *shock* and test other weapons and combat skills. Tourneys were closely associated with *chivalry*. Knights would sometimes ''wear their hearts on their sleeve'' by tying a lady's scarf or other favor to their gauntlet before entering the arena. In a combat ''à plaisance,'' light lances were used which had a coronal (blunted spearpoint) instead of the normal leaf-shaped cutting tip. Still, tourneys could be nearly as lethal as combat when a fight ''à outrance'' was waged. In these contests many real weapons were used—except the battleaxe, which was banned as too savage and lethal. Extra-heavy armor was developed for tourneys, with additional pieces such as the ''barber'' (an added layer of iron plate) worn over the *cuirasse* and *hauberk*. Saddles were adjusted to protect the legs. In later tourneys a wooden barrier called the ''tilt'' was introduced to jousts to keep horses and riders from colliding, which could have fatal consequences. From the 14th century the addition of lance-rests to armor increased breakage of lances, with some spring mounted to add to the drama by amplifying the crack and splintering effects. By the end of the Middle Ages tourneys were reduced to ritual display, posing little real danger to participants but also teaching them little or nothing of the art of war, which was in any case already bypassing the mounted knight. See also *drill*; *mace*.

Suggested Reading: Juliet Barker, *The Tournament in England, 1100–1400* (1986).

tourney. See *tournaments*.

Towarzysz. Polish: ''Comrade.'' Commanders in the ''National Contingent'' of the *Polish Army*, recruited among the greater nobles who brought military retinues with them. They dressed extravagantly, wearing tall plumage or even lion and leopard skins. See also *poczet*.

tower-keep. A multi-storied rectangular castle built of stone. It was an advance in defense and comfort over the primitive *motte-and-bailey* fort or even the *keep-and-bailey*. Rather than being built on top of the motte like a simple keep, these much larger structures were built on the scale of the outer bailey.

Tower of London. In addition to its famous history as a royal prison and place of intrigue, treason, betrayal, murder, and execution, the Tower of London served for centuries as the main *armory* for English armies and the *Royal Navy*. To serve the navy, the Tower had a stone quay at which royal warships took aboard

powder, shot, bows, crossbows, quarrels, and other military stores. In the late 14th century naval supply obligations were transferred to the ''Privy Wardrobe of the Tower.'' For the army it stockpiled *catapults* and *trebuchets* along with hand-cut stone ammunition; mail and plate armor of all types; halberds, pikes, crossbows, longbows, and masses of arrows loaded in wooden quivers; and later, arquebuses and muskets along with powder and shot. For both the army and navy into the 16th century the only bronze gun foundry in England was located in the Tower. This was because England's rich iron deposits, neatly located close to large forests, encouraged an unusual national reliance on iron cannon and permitted decentralized iron foundries. See also *Wars of the Roses*.

Towton, Battle of (1461). See *Wars of the Roses*.

Toyotomi Castle, Siege of (1614–1615). See *Osaka Castle, Siege of*.

Toyotomi Hideyori (1593–1615). Son of *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*. See also *Osaka Castle, Siege of*.

Toyotomi Hideyoshi (1537–1598). ''Taikō'' Japanese warlord. Son of a foot soldier in *Oda Nobunaga*'s army, he rose through the ranks based upon toughness and drive. He demonstrated his generalship in 1570 during Nobunaga's invasion of western Honshu. In 1581 he displayed his siegecraft by taking Tottori castle with a novel device: months in advance of the siege he bought up most of the rice in the region, thus speeding starvation of the garrison. When he learned of Nobunaga's death he marched on Kyoto and defeated the treacherous vassal *daimyo* (Akechi Mitsuhide) who had betrayed his master at Yamazaki. This act earned Hideyoshi the loyalty of Nobunaga's army. He fought an inconclusive succession battle with *Tokugawa Ieyasu* at Nagakute (1584). The two warlords then allied to complete the unification of Japan.

Hideyoshi increased the number of *arquebusiers* in his armies, razed the castles of defiant daimyo, and hounded to death all he suspected of contemplating rebellion. Like Nobunaga, he also viciously suppressed *Buddhism*. By the 1580s he commanded the largest armies ever assembled in Japan and campaigned on a truly national scale. With 100,000 men he conquered Shikoku and Etchu in 1585. Two years later he took Kyushu with 200,000 troops. In 1590 he crushed the Hōjō army of 60,000 men with an army of his own numbering nearly 200,000. He reduced garrisons and branch forts and led a three-month siege of Odawara castle, the Hōjō fortress in Sagami province. Having unified the country he sought to pacify it by disarming the population. In 1587 he banned peasants from owning weapons and sent inspectors to seize all swords, spears, bows, and firearms from the non-*samurai* classes. Four years later he banned training of peasants or townsfolk as soldiers (''separation edict''). These measures consolidated the military monopoly of the samurai and thereby bought acquiescence to centralized rule, ultimately with Hideyoshi serving as imperial regent.

Hideyoshi could be magnanimous to defeated daimyo when it suited his political interest, allowing them to relocate to lesser domains but keep their

heads and their families and retainers. Yet, he was also capable of great brutality and cruelty akin to Nobunaga's. On numerous occasions he not only killed male prisoners, he impaled their children and crucified their wives and mothers. Among his many victims were one of his heirs, several members of his household, and a number of lifelong companions. When he ''forgave'' enemies it was for shrewd political reasons. In his last years his rage, paranoia, and cruelty were expressed on a grand canvas. In 1587 Hideyoshi ordered all Christian missionaries to leave Japan, which he affirmed as ''land of the gods.'' Ten years later he ordered mass executions of Japanese Christians (*Kirishitan*), whom he feared would act as a fifth column for foreign influence and conquest.

Hideyoshi planned a great empire to include Indochina, Siam, Taiwan, the Ryukyus, the Philippines, Korea, and indeed, all China: there is some evidence that he hoped to displace the Ming emperor and replace him with the figurehead Japanese emperor, with himself the power behind the thrones of a vast Asian empire. In 1592 he sent a force of 160,000 to invade Korea. His army took poorly fortified Pusan within a day, using superior muskets, better trained musketeers employing *volley fire*, and far more powerful siege cannon than anything the Koreans had ever seen. Three weeks later the Japanese captured Seoul. They took Pyongyang two months after that. Hideyoshi ordered ''mopping-up'' operations in northern Korea and prepared to invade Manchuria. Instead, he faced intervention by a Ming army advancing from the north. While the Japanese severely damaged this force another Ming army arrived in 1593 while dispersed Koreans waged an effective guerilla campaign. Four years of bloody stalemate ensued. At sea, the Koreans used *turtle ships* to destroy convoys of Japanese junks, which were armed supply ships rather than true warships. On land, Korean guerilla and Ming regular resistance pushed the Japanese back to Seoul. Cut off from Japan by the Korean navy and running out of supplies, Hideyoshi agreed to a truce in 1593: he withdrew to Pusan in exchange for the Ming army departing Korea. In 1597 Hideyoshi re-invaded Korea with a second massive army. The Ming again counter-intervened. More savagery abounded: tens of thousands of Korean and Chinese ears and noses were sent to Kyoto to form a great ''victory mound.'' On land the Japanese were stopped again at Chiksan (1597), south of Seoul; a week later they were defeated at sea, at Myongnyang.

Hideyoshi's major accomplishments were to complete unification of Japan and begin the domestication of daimyo and samurai so that they became the permanent floor of a quiescent Japanese social order under the *Tokugawa shoguns*. On the other hand, the price in lives of his megalomaniacal foreign military adventures was high. The price in lasting Korean and Chinese animosity was higher still.

Suggested Reading: Elizabeth Berry, *Hideyoshi* (1982).

Trabanten. Bohemian mercenaries employed mainly by the Holy Roman Empire until the advent of the *Landsknechte* infantry in 1485. The term was later used about the personal guard of the colonel of a company or regiment.

trace italienne. ''Italian traces.'' Known in Italy as ''*alla moderna*'' (''modern style''). A key innovation of the 15th–16th-century evolution of fortification techniques was the addition of triangular *bastions* that extended from low broad walls to permit defensive artillery to cover attack lanes and approaches. The ''artillery fortress'' (historian John Lynn's excellent term) employing trace italienne bastions evolved in stages, all a reaction to improvements in siege artillery. First came the addition of cut-away ports and guns to existing stone fortifications, mostly to provide counterbattery fire against enemy siege engines and cannon. Next came a series of adjustments that lowered the walls (''countersinking'') and reinforced them with earthen banks, ditches, and moats; this allowed larger defensive cannon to be mounted on stronger walls or squat towers and roundels. Finally, geometric bastions were built or added to maximize the effect of defensive fire. This was done on a grand scale by Italian towns, though the expense was so vast few were completed. The style spread from Italy to nearby city-states such as Mantua, Monferrat, and Geneva, which built single massive works. In the Netherlands, dozens of smaller artillery fortresses provided a layered defense-in-depth that proved unbeatable by the Spanish. Similarly, they supported a system of defense-in-depth in Hungary and Dalmatia that helped stop the advance of powerful Ottoman armies deeper into Europe.

. . . the new bastions certainly restored a balance between offense and defense . . .

A major debate has taken place among military historians as to whether the new ''artillery fortress'' constituted a *revolution in military affairs* that resulted in a huge expansion of European armies necessary to overcome the revolutionary effects of the new fortifications (Michael Roberts' thesis). In the 16th century, the new bastions certainly restored a balance between offense and defense that had been broken by siege cannon in the 15th century. This restored balance lasted late into the 18th century. Yet, even this shift to the defense should not be exaggerated: the Ottomans were able to overwhelm ''alla moderna'' fortifications on several occasions using cannon along with mining and starvation. In addition, trace italienne bastions were hugely expensive: more than one petty ruler went bankrupt and lost his state out of the effort to defend it too well (as Frederick the Great would later warn, ''he who defends everything, defends nothing'').

The trace italienne traveled overseas along with European expansion and conquest. New model forts were built by the Spanish in the Caribbean, by the Portuguese in Africa and India, and by the Dutch in Southeast Asia. Yet, these were limited applications. In most places outside Europe and the scattered enclaves where Europeans built artillery fortresses overseas to ward off other Europeans, the old styles of fortification sufficed. Since most non-European armies did not have the heavy cannon needed for siege warfare there was usually no need for Europeans to build overseas bastions in the expensive new style. Nor did the trace italienne spread to China, which could easily have afforded and adopted it. Why not? Probably because the usual threat to China in this period was not a modern army with siege capabilities but a host of

steppe nomads wholly reliant on cavalry. These nomads could sweep deep into China but were unable to reduce the extant walls of its cities. That changed when *Nurgaci* captured Chinese cannon and Han gunners and incorporated them into the Manchu *banner system*. But by then the Ming had so many other internal enemies and military costs it was too late to fundamentally adapt their system of fortification.

Suggested Reading: Mahhinder Kingra, "The *trace italienne* and the Military Revolution during the Eighty Years' War," *Journal of Military History* (1993); Geoffrey Parker, *The Military Revolution*, 2nd ed. (1996).

train (1). The long tail of baggage carts and people following any army. See also *baggage train*; *Hurenweibel*; *provost*; *Tross*.

train (2). The artillery and related wagons and personnel accompanying an army. See also *artillery train* (1); *pioneers*; *Tross*.

train (3). The tail of a gun carriage.

trained bands. Military advisers to *Elizabeth I* established "trained bands" that built upon the country's *militia* tradition to strengthen domestic forces in the event conflict with Spain led to invasion. The idea was to substitute a well-trained and properly equipped urban militia for the wholly inadequate and ill-equipped amateurs that preceded the trained bands. Nobles and clergy were exempt from trained band obligations since, theoretically, they already contributed through the older feudal levies. During the first year of the *English Civil Wars*, London and other southern trained bands were crucial to survival of the Parliamentary cause. Still, since they mostly did not like to fight far from home they were eventually replaced by the *New Model Army*. In the north and west some trained bands loyal to regional magnates fought for the Royalists. See also *company*; *exact militia*; *Newbury, First Battle of*; *Preston, Campaign of*.

transportation. A penalty of enforced exile in *penal settlements* meted out to common criminals, political dissidents, and rebels by several European states which possessed overseas colonies, notably Portugal, France, and England. The Tudors and Stuarts transported large numbers of forced migrants from Ireland, displaced by the *plantations* of that country. After the battles of *Dunbar* (1650) and *Worcester* (1651), thousands of Scottish prisoners of war were transported to the West Indies as indentured laborers.

Transylvania. See *Hungary*; *Kosovo Polje, Battle of*; *Teutonic Knights, Order of*.

trapper. A thick cloth blanket worn over equine armor.

treasure fleets. See *convoy*.

trebuchet. The traction trebuchet was invented in China during its wars of unification prior to 221 B.C.E. There is controversy over the date at which the technology migrated to Europe, but certainly trebuchets were in wide use there by 1200 C.E. Alternate terms for trebuchets included ''martinets,'' ''flying engines'' (''engine volants''), and ''perrières'' (''stone-tossers''). By whatever name, mid-12th-century trebuchets were great stone-throwing engines that used counterweights (a box of stones or slag) rather than simple traction to gain power and increase projectile velocity. By altering the size of the balance different ranges could be located. Once range was established, the second, third, and later shots hit the same spot with high accuracy and destructive effect. Like the largest gunpowder cannon, great trebuchets bore ''noms de guerre'' and were handed down by name in royal wills. They were used by attackers to hurl heavy stones, including hand-cut stone balls (''pommes'') at or over defending walls. Defenders in a siege used trebuchets in a counterbattery role to smash the attacker's trebuchets and kill his artillerymen, or to smash various counter-castles (*bastilles*) or *siege engines* that might be brought into range for an assault. Modern tests have shown that a 10-ton counterweight trebuchet of medieval European design could hurl a 300-pound stone ball over 450 feet, achieving much greater impact than either Roman torsion engines or early gunpowder artillery. They also achieved a high rate of fire—recorded in one English siege at over 52 shots per day per trebuchet. Still, they were perfectly useless in field battles.

Trebuchets were expensive siege engines, especially if hurling labor-intensive, cut-stone ammunition. They were also difficult to transport. They were usually dismantled for transport by cart or barge and reassembled at the place of siege. General expense kept numbers down: a maximum of 20 trebuchets were recorded at the greatest sieges of the Middle Ages. The weight of stone ammunition even a few machines expended must have caused prodigious logistical and financial problems and suggests that most stone ammunition may have been quarried and cut by masons near the siege site. As with the much less powerful *catapult*, trebuchets could also hurl disease-ridden animal or human carcases or manure into the defenders' abodes, advancing the general debilitating effects of siege with primitive germ warfare. They were also used to conduct psychological warfare by throwing severed heads and bodies of dead defenders over the walls and, on occasion, live men. And they could hurl incendiaries to burn down a town. The trebuchet was so effective as a siege weapon that it provoked wholesale redesign of castles and other fortified defenses, notably thickening walls and rounding *keeps* and *donjons* to deflect high-impact stones. They remained in use in tandem with the first gunpowder artillery for many decades. In the last quarter of the 14th century, for instance, the French had over a hundred trebuchets in service in various sieges or fixed defenses. In the 1420s new trebuchets were still being ordered for use in the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). Inventories of royal armories in France still showed a number of trebuchets in stock as late as the 1460s. See also *Albigensian Crusade*;

armories; *artillery*; *castles, on land*; *fortification*; *siege warfare*; *Teutonic Knights, Order of*.

Suggested Reading: Donald Hill, ''Trebuchets,'' *Viator*, 4 (1973).

Trent, Council of (1545–1563). See *Council of Trent*.

Trent, Peace of (1501). See *Italian Wars*.

***Treuga Dei*.** ''Truce of God.'' In the 11th century the Catholic Church attempted to go beyond the strictures of the *Pax Dei* to impose limits to permissible violence against additional classes of people by forbidding warfare on certain days of the week: Thursdays, in commemoration of the ''Last Supper''; Fridays, in memory of the Crucifixion of Jesus of Nazareth (''The Christ''); Saturday, to remember the day Jesus lay in his tomb; and Sunday, ''The Lord's Day.'' Also, the Treuga Dei banned fighting during the month of Lent which preceded Easter, during Advent, and on Christmas Day and other Feast Days. This helped protect peasants and other food producers, merchants, and travelers from brigands in the guise of soldiers. A number of powerful lay authorities picked up the chalice and acted to enforce these rules within their domains. They did so partly for reasons of piety but also because social order and peace suited their instincts as governors. Ultimately, the Church attempted to effect a ban on killing of any Christian by other Christians, though with minimal effect. The main practical result of the ''Truce of God'' was not to restrain war but to restrict its practice to a chosen few: the feudal nobility and town militias.

tribute. Treasure and political homage paid to a greater power by a weaker magnate, ruler, or state. Tribute was elicited by raids and paid to gain protection from future raids, as when the Anglo-Saxons paid the ''Danegeld'' to Viking raiders. When simple raiding failed, more violent and sustained warfare ensued in the form of sieges by land and blockades by sea until the point was well-taken. Wherever relations of *overlordship* existed tribute followed: even in the distant Arctic some Norse enforced tribute payments in reindeer hides from the Lapps. In the absence of the modern idea of sovereign equality of states the surest way to avoid subservience was to establish dominance over someone else. For a time *Crusader* princes of Antioch held small Muslim states in Syria in tribute. At the other end of the scale, very large states might pay tribute, as with Austrian payments to the Ottomans in exchange for part of Hungary. Or tribute might be paid within an empire, as when the Abbasid caliphs demanded boys from their eastern provinces to be raised as military slaves (*mamlūks*), and the later Ottomans took Christian boys to become *Janissaries*. The *taifa states* of Iberia were forced into tributary status to Berber dynasties when the recruitment base of their armies shrank because the supply of north European slave boys, on which they depended to fill mamlūk regiments, dried up with the eastward advance of the *Teutonic Knights* in the Baltic. A number of Muslim taifa states were forced to pay tribute to Christian

Aragon, Castile, and Portugal. The most elaborate tribute system was developed by China. Besides flattering and confirming the prestige of the emperors of the Middle Kingdom, ritual tribute disguised what was really mercantile trade. Why the subterfuge? Because trade was despised by the Confucian scholar-elite, an attitude that greatly hampered development of overseas commercial relations. Since Ming emperors officially regarded Dutch, Portuguese, and English traders as representatives of ''tributary nations,'' diplomatic confusion reigned as well. See also *Assassins*; *Aztec Empire*; *Hungary*; *Mali Empire*; *Murad I*; *Reconquista*; *Songhay*; *Thirteen Years' War*; *Xochiyaoyotl*.

Tridentine Reforms. See *Council of Trent*.

Triebel, Battle of (1647). See *Montecuccoli, Raimundo*.

Trier, bishopric of. One of the eight larger polities within the *Holy Roman Empire*. It had about 400,000 souls at the start of the *Thirty Years' War*. Its bishop was an Imperial Elector. See also *Richelieu, Cardinal Armand Jean du Plessis de*; *Westphalia, Peace of*.

Triple Alliance. See *Aztec Empire*.

Tripoli (Tripolitania). From the 7th century C.E., Tripoli was governed by various Arab and Muslim dynasties. It formed part of *Ifriqiya* in the 13th century and was the northern terminus of the shortest of the trans-Saharan trade routes. It was occupied by Ferdinand I of Aragon (1452–1516) in 1511 then given over to the Knights of St. John, one of the Christian *Military Orders*. They were expelled in 1551 by the Ottomans. By the end of the 16th century Tripoli was fully incorporated as an Ottoman province, along with Tunis and Algiers. See also *Barbary corsairs*; *Tuareg*.

Triumvirate. An anti-Protestant league formed in 1561 by *Anne Montmorency*, *François Guise*, and Jacques d'Albon, Marshal of Saint-André. See also *French Civil Wars*.

Tromp, Maarten van (1598–1653). Dutch admiral. While at sea with his father he was taken prisoner by an English ship and made to serve as a cabin boy for two years. In 1624 he took command of a Dutch frigate in the war against Spain. He rose to admiral and became one of the premier sea captains of the 17th century. In mid-1639 he carried out a raid on the Dunkirk pirates. That October he defeated a huge Spanish invasion fleet off *The Downs* (October 11/21), capturing 13 prize galleons and 57 other ships out of a Spanish convoy of 100 ships. It was an astonishing, decisive, crushing victory that helped decide the outcome of the *Eighty Years' War* (1568–1648). Tromp later fought several important battles in the Anglo-Dutch wars.

Troppau, Battle of (1642). See *Montecuccoli, Raimundo*.

Tross. The *train* following any German army.

trou de loup. ''Wolf hole.'' A conical pit dug to the height of a man or deeper, with a sharpened iron spike embedded at the bottom. The top of the hole was covered with taut cloth or wicker and further camouflaged with dirt. It might be filled with water to facilitate slipping and then drowning of any man impaled on, or wounded by, the spike. Wolf holes were used singly or sometimes in dense fields in front of a defended position.

Troyes, Treaty of (1420). See *Henry V, of England*; *Hundred Years' War*; *safeguard the sea*.

truages. ''Truces'' in which protection money was extorted from towns or peasants by *routiers* or *Free Companies*. See also *appatis*.

Truce of God. See *Treuga Dei*.

True Pure Land. ''Ikkō-ikki'' or ''single-minded bands.'' Adherents of Jodo Shinshu, or the True Pure Land sect of Buddhism. Most were warrior monks or peasant farmers. This radical sect was headquartered in the fortress of *Honganji* in Osaka where it produced its own guns and cannon. Locally, the sect was organized into confederacies that spanned central and eastern Japan. During the *Sengoku jidai* the confederacies clashed with local *daimyo*, overturning some. Its adherents seldom gave or asked for quarter so that fights often were unusually bloody and fought to the last man. It became active in opposition to the centralizing conquests of *Oda Nobunaga* after 1570. In 1574 Nobunaga massacred—without regard to age or gender—all adherents of the sect who lived in the Nagashima delta region, perhaps as many as 20,000 souls. Some he starved to death after refusing mercy; others he burned alive. Sporadic fighting with the sect continued for a decade, until the fall of Honganji in 1580.

. . . Nobunaga massacred—without regard to age or gender—all adherents of the sect . . .

trunnion. Developed by the French toward the end of the 15th century, this simple device had a major impact on *artillery*. A trunnion was an axle cast together with, and as an integral part of, a gun barrel. It served two key purposes. First, by channeling the force of recoil into the *gun carriage* the gun itself could be rolled back into firing position more easily, with the position marked by blocks placed underneath the front of the carriage wheels. Older guns, without trunnions, had to be manhandled back into position and re-aimed after each shot. Second, with trunnions the gun barrel could be elevated independently, while resting on the gun carriage by using a simple pre-formed step system. Trunnions, and hence the barrel from which they extruded, were fixed to the carriage by bolts and fittings called ''capsquares.''

Tuareg. A fierce nomadic people who dominated the central portion of the great trans-Saharan trade routes, breeding camels and enslaving sudanese blacks to mine the salt deposits of the central Sahara. They were a complex ethnic mix with a Berber military aristocracy at the top and a black underclass descended from former slaves at the bottom. What made them one people was the great leveling effect of *Islam*, to which most converted. In the 11th century the Tuareg helped establish caravan links from *Mali* and *Songhay* as the southern termini, to Tripoli and Ifriqiya on the Mediterranean coast. A Tuareg *jihad* carried into *al-Andalus* in the form of the Almoravids in the 11th century. In the 15th century they connected the city-states (and leather and cloth manufactures) of the Hausa to North Africa. Timbuktu, capital of the ancient empire of Mali, fell to the Tuareg in 1433 but they lost it to a resurgent Songhay in 1469. Migrating eastward, they established the state of Aïr with a capital at Agades, to which they brought slaves to work salt mines and service the western caravan routes.

Tudor, Mary. See *Mary Tudor*.

Tudors. See *Elizabeth I*; *Henry VIII, of England*; *"King's Two Bodies"*; *Mary Tudor*; *Wars of the Roses*.

tufang. A light *matchlock* firearm in use in India from the 15th century.

Tüfeçis. Ottoman mounted infantry first formed in the 16th century. They wore distinctive red coats and high red hats. They steadily grew in effectiveness and hence military importance to the Ottoman system, reaching a peak of proficiency in the 17th century.

Tula River, Battle of (1372). See *Hongwu Emperor*.

Tumu, Battle of (September 1, 1449). In 1449 the Ming emperor Zhu Qizhen (Zhengtong), son of the fierce Xuande emperor, was just 21. Accepting advice from his chief *eunuch*, Wang Zhen, he invaded Mongolia with a huge host several hundred thousand strong and a truly mammoth supply train. Without ever encountering the Mongols the army turned around once it reached the extreme edge of its supplies. Just a few days march from a fortified town, and food and water, its rearguard was ambushed. Another was quickly formed but it too was cut off and wiped out by pursuing Mongols. Then the main body was surrounded. Weak from thirst, hunger, and overlong marches, the Ming Army stood no chance in the battle that followed. Wang Zhen was killed and Emperor Zhu Qizhen captured. As many as 500,000 Chinese may have perished in the Tumu campaign and battle. The Mongol horde then moved toward Beijing, raiding, pillaging, and raping as it passed unimpeded by any Ming army. The eight border garrisons (built by *Hongwu* but later abandoned by *Yongle*) did nothing but tend to themselves. As the Mongols were ill-equipped for a siege, after a week of plundering the outlying districts and

countryside around Beijing they left, steppe ponies burdened with booty. In 1450 the Mongols released the boy emperor but in the interim his brother had claimed the throne. The Zhengtong Emperor did not regain power until he mounted a successful coup against his brother in 1457. After a long debate over appropriate strategy toward the Mongols, the Ming court decided to adopt a pure defensive posture and began construction of 700 miles of the *Great Wall*.

Tunis. The state of *Ifriqiya* dominated this area of North Africa from the 13th century. Assaults were made on its coastal cities in 1270 and 1390 by Frankish Crusaders. In the 14th century the Muslim Hafsid dynasty was sustained by Christian Spain when pressured by rival Marind forces. In 1535 *Charles V* commissioned *Andrea Doria* to lead an invasion fleet to capture Tunis. *Barbarossa* was chased off in June and the invasion army landed. After a three-month siege, the city fell and was sacked by Christian marauders for three full days. In 1569 Tunis was occupied by corsairs from neighboring Algiers. After the Ottoman naval defeat at *Lepanto* (1571), the Hafsid dynasty was restored by its Spanish patrons (1571), but within a few years the Hafsids were again deposed as Tunis, Tripoli, and Algiers fell to the Ottomans. See also *Barbary corsairs*.

"tunnage and poundage." A customs duty introduced in England in 1347 to support a fleet raised to besiege Calais during the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). It levied fees on ''tuns'' of imported wine, and ''pounds'' of outgoing wool or other goods.

Turcopoles. Christian troops armed and equipped in the manner of lightly armored mounted archers employed by the Seljuks and other Turkic rulers first encountered by the *Crusaders* in the Middle East. The Latin states used Turcopoles as auxiliaries because their *heavy cavalry* had great difficulty coming to grips with the fleet Turkic and Arab mounted archers. They were likely recruited among pilgrims who remained in the Holy Land, from Christian Arabs, and from the offspring of Latin magnates and local Arab women.

Turenne, Henri de (1611–1675). Maréchal de France. Nephew of *Maurits of Nassau*. A Protestant, he was nonetheless a loyal general of *Louis XIII*. He fought in the Rhineland starting with the French intervention in 1635 and was wounded at Saverne. In 1638 he commanded a small army in support of *Bernhard von Sachsen-Weimar*. He might have been dragged down by the involvement of his family in a conspiracy against Louis XIII in 1643, but his loyalty led instead to promotion to field marshal and command of the *Armeé d'Allemagne* after it suffered defeat at *Tüttlingen* (November 24–25, 1643). He and the *Great Condé* (Louis II) joined forces to campaign against *Franz von Mercy* in Germany. Together, they pushed Mercy back from *Freiburg* (1644). The next year Mercy bested Turenne at *Mergentheim*. In 1646 Turenne

marched down the Rhine to join *Karl Gustaf Wrangel*. They fought together to victory at *Zusmarshausen* (May 17, 1648). Following the *Thirty Years' War*, Turenne became entangled in the various conspiracies of the Frondes and fled into exile in the Netherlands. He returned to take command of royalist forces and fight against the Spanish and the Great Condé. He fought extensively in Louis XIV's Dutch War, 1672–1678.

Suggested Reading: Jean Bérenger, *Turenne* (1987).

Turkish bow. A Western term for a *composite bow* commonly used by Ottoman troops. About five feet long, it was made of wood, bone, and horn and held together by sinew and various glues. As with every composite bow, each layer of construction added elasticity. In addition, its tips curved forward, which imparted extra energy to iron-tipped arrows when the bow was strung and shot. It had a killing range up to 250 yards. Many weapons historians consider it the best bow ever made prior to modern bows constructed from synthetic materials.

Turks. The Turks first made an impression on world history as military slaves, or *mamlūks*, imported into the Arab empire by the Abbasid *caliphs* and into Iran by various breakaway and regional dynasties. Turkic-speaking slave soldiers soon dominated nearly all Muslim regimes, in several cases taking de facto control and later establishing slave dynasties in India and Egypt. In 960 the Karakhanids, a Turkic frontier people, converted to Islam en masse; others followed as migrants and converts in later centuries, notably the Oghuz Turks and the Kipchak Turks. Among the Oghuz, the sub-group of *Seljuks* (named for the dominant clan) arrived in Bukhara in the 10th century, converted to Islam, and sold military services to various Muslim rulers. One band formed the Ghaznavid dynasty in Iran, but the direct descendants of the Seljuks overthrew the Ghaznavids and overran Iran. In 1055 they conquered Baghdad, the Abbasid capital. Within 25 years all Syria and Palestine fell to the Seljuks, and thereafter they took most of Anatolia from the Byzantine Empire. The Seljuks ruled from Baghdad as "Great Sultans," while keeping the Abbasid caliphs in place as useful figureheads. By the start of the *Crusades*, so uniform was identification of Turkic-speaking converts with Islam and so rapid their rise to political and military dominance of the Middle East, "Turk" and "Muslim" became interchangeable terms in the West.

Under Turkic military leadership the radical *shī'a* regimes of Iran and the shī'a Būyid dynasty in Baghdad were overthrown and replaced by *sunni* rulers. That extended the process of conquest of Anatolia and other Middle Eastern lands first undertaken by the Seljuk Turks. Even the shī'a *Assassins* in Syria were effectively contained by Turkic power, reduced to terrorizing mountain travelers caught alone in passes and valleys. There followed a successful Seljuk assault against the Latin Christian states that had lingered on the Syrian border long after the fall of Jerusalem to *Salāh al-Dīn*. Thus, the Turkish variant of Islam was, from the start, a highly successful and thoroughly militarized culture. Its early ethic was that of holy war and its embodiment

was the *ghazi*. This impulse was probably still important into the early 14th century when the Seljuk state was destroyed by Mongol invasions of Iran, Iraq, and Anatolia. This was followed by a new Turkic power that moved into the vacuum left by the collapse of the Seljuks: the *Ottomans*. These were former vassals of the Seljuks who were granted lands close to the Byzantine frontier. Their empire was named for their leader, Osman (or Othman, 1259–1356).

This record of successful conquest and empire-building arose in part from fortunate geography that shaped and reinforced the strengths of Turkic martial culture. During the semi-nomadic phase of their conquests, various Turkic peoples controlled vast herds of steppe ponies from which they supplied their cavalry armies. Next, they were positioned to do maximum damage to the rich trade of the Middle East because they straddled the main trade and caravan routes; this made extortion of tribute a sustainable and lucrative policy. Finally, the lands they conquered were occupied by peoples and governed by states that were constantly at war with one another, which allowed the Ottomans to defeat them in strategic detail, as it were. Turkish dominance was maintained by an ethnic monopoly of military skills in which Turks retained the sword in tribal levies or as military slaves but hired Iranian or Arab scholar-bureaucrats to wield the pen of imperial taxation and administration. The spirit of jihad as a motive to expansion faded as the Ottoman Empire matured, so that by c.1600 it was more often the case that the sultan or grand vezier made policy for more secular purposes than his Christian counterparts in Europe, who were still engaged in ''holy wars'' into the mid-17th century. Besides, no sultan after 1362 was actually a ''Turk'': they were Circassian, Georgian, or Slavic, or some other non-Turkish ethnicity. That fact did not prevent contemporaries, or later historians, from calling the Ottomans ''Turks.''

. . . Turks retained the sword . . . but hired Iranian or Arab scholar-bureaucrats to wield the pen . . .

Turnham Green, Battle of (1642). See *English Civil Wars*.

Turnhout, Battle of (August 22, 1597). One of just two battles fought by *Maurits of Nassau* in 20 years. The speed of his movement to the battlefield caught the Spanish by surprise. The Dutch cavalry drove the Spanish horse from the field and then attacked the Spanish infantry, supported by the main body of Dutch infantry. The Spanish were routed, losing over 3,000 men.

turtle ships. The Koreans built the first ''ironclad'' ships in 1592 to meet the invasion led by *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*. Commanded by Admiral Yi Sun-Sin, these oared ships had metal rooves to retard fire arrows that were also covered in spikes to prevent boarding. They also sported 14 small cannon, which made them deadly to thin-hulled *junks*. Yi Sun-Sin cut off the Japanese Army from resupply and eventually forced its withdrawal to Japan.

Ţuţora, Battle of (1620). See *Cecora, Battle of*.

Tüttlingen, Battle of (November 24–25, 1643). A French army seized Rottweil (November 19, 1643), but lost its able commander, the Compte de Guébriant, who died five days later from wounds incurred in the assault. His lieutenant, the mercenary captain Josias von Rantzau, took the army on to attack Tüttlingen, winter quarters of the Bavarian Army on the Danube. The Bavarians, under *Johann von Werth* and *Franz Mercy*, were reinforced by Imperial troops and moved out to meet the invaders. The Protestant army was thus taken by surprise and bloodied at Tüttlingen. The next day Rantzau tried to counterattack but lost the field again. Rottweil was recaptured by the Imperials on December 2, 1643, as the sole surviving third of the original French army retreated across the Rhine. After Tüttlingen *Turenne* was given command of the Armeé d'Allemagne.

Twelfth-imam shi'ism. See *shī'a Islam*.

Twelve Years' Truce (April 1609–April 1621). A formal cessation of hostilities in the midst of the *Eighty Years' War* between Spain and the Dutch Republic. The first terms for a permanent peace offered by *Philip III* and the *Duke of Lerma* were quite moderate: de jure recognition of Habsburg sovereignty in the Netherlands and some symbolic genuflection towards supremacy of the Catholic Church. *Maurits of Nassau* and *Johan van Oldenbaarneveldt* agreed on little else but they united in opposing such terms for the United Provinces. Spain countered with an offer to concede sovereignty in exchange for the return of rich trade outposts lost to the *Vereenigde Oostindische Compaagnie* (VOC) in the Indies in 1605. A cease-fire was signed in April 1607, but disagreement over the text—widely seen as a humiliation in Spain—and the Dutch naval victory over Spain at *Gibraltar* (April 25, 1607), along with Dutch reluctance to disband the VOC and depart the Indies as they had agreed when it actually came to it, destroyed the last chance for peace. Instead, a truce for 12 years was all that could be arranged. A pause in the fighting was of great importance to Madrid as the 1590s had seen a succession of Spanish defeats at the hands of Maurits, recurrent mutinies in the *Army of Flanders*, and another royal bankruptcy. On the other side, the Dutch feared a Spanish military revival with the end of the Franco-Spanish war at *Vervins* (1598) and a lessening of Spain's conflict with England, both of which freed military resources for the war in the north; and they had in fact fared badly from 1598 to 1606, losing territory to the Spanish and incurring much higher defense costs. Talks were also hurried by Spanish intelligence that *Henri IV* was planning major offensives against Spain in Italy and the Rhineland. In fact, he was assassinated before he could effect either plan but after the Truce was agreed.

The Spanish found the Truce in some ways more costly than the war. With the end of the embargo, Dutch cloth and textile manufactures undermined the wool industry in Castile, while North Sea fish imports undercut

Iberian fisheries. In return for lifting the Spanish embargo the Dutch ended their blockade of Flemish coastal ports, with which Spanish trade resumed. However, the Scheldt was excluded and remained closed throughout by the *Sea Beggars*. Beyond ending the embargoes, the Truce did little else to end the global war at sea. It did not extend to Asia, where Portuguese bases and interests came under ever sharper attack by Dutch privateers released from fighting closer to home. Also excluded was the North Sea and all the waters surrounding the Americas. During the interregnum the Dutch set up forts in Guyana, on the Hudson River, and at Elmina in West Africa (from which they expelled the Portuguese). The Dutch economy continued to grow, the VOC prowled the Indies, and Dutch ships muscled into the rich Baltic and Muscovy trades. Several European states recognized the United Provinces as de jure sovereign, as did Muslim Algiers, Morocco, and the Ottoman Empire. No wonder many thought the Truce a profound mortification of Spain.

As the terminal date approached many in Spain grew eager to resume the fight, not for the old religious reasons but for new economic and geopolitical ones. Recent research suggests that Philip III may even have intended the Truce all along as merely a breathing space to recover from his father's debts and imperial overreach. In the Netherlands, too, there was argument over the wisdom of resuming the war. *Arminians* led by Oldenbaarneveldt, and moderates like *Hugo Grotius*, saw good reason for the United Provinces to seek a more permanent peace, but Maurits and the war party were hot for renewed conflict. Maurits had Oldenbaarneveldt arrested in 1617 and executed the next year. He also imprudently egged on *Friedrich V* to accept the Bohemian crown, hoping to draw Spain into a German war. This full effect of the political division of Holland and the reckless policy of the war party would only be felt at Maurits' death. In the meantime, he intervened with money and 5,000 Dutch troops in the burgeoning revolt in Bohemia and schemed to undermine any renewal of the Truce. The war with Spain thus resumed upon expiration of the Truce in April 1621, and all the blockades and embargos were reinstated. Thereafter, the last three decades of the Eighty Years' War in Flanders and overseas merged with the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648) in Germany. See also *Fleurus, Battle of*; *Missio Hollandica*; *Oñate, Treaty of*.

Suggested Reading: Paul C. Allen, *Philip III and the Pax Hispanica 1598–1621: The Failure of Grand Strategy* (2000).

two swords, doctrine of. A fifth-century doctrine of the *Catholic Church* which resonated in the history of feudal and early modern Europe. It was framed by Pope Gelasius I (r.492–496), who held that God gave Man two swords, one secular and the other religious, one for the emperor and the other for the pope. Of these swords the religious was, of course, seen as the higher. With this imaginative metaphor Gelasius became the first pontiff to affirm supremacy of the Church even in secular affairs. This was not immediately of great consequence but it became so during the reign of Pope Gregory ''the Great'' (540–604, r.590–604), the first pope to claim supremacy over all Christians and all Christendom. A major step was thus taken on the steady

march to Christianization of arms and arming of Christians, as well as the centuries-long struggle between papacy and empire over whose writ really ran within the *res publica Christiana*.

Tyndale, William (d.1536). See *printing*.

Tyrone, Earl of (1540–1616). Né Hugh O'Neill. See *Nine Years' War*.

Tyrone's Rebellion. See *Nine Years' War*.

U

Uhlans. See *lancers*.

ujen cooba. See *banner system*.

Ukraine. Most of Ukraine converted to Orthodoxy during the Kievan Rus period, under Byzantine influence. In the 13th century, Ukrainians (''Rusyns'') defended Kiev against the Tatar-Mongol ''Golden Horde.'' The metropolitan abandoned Kiev in 1300 and Ukraine's native dynasty was extinguished in 1323, its last princes (from Galicia-Volhynia) possibly dying fighting the Mongols. Ukraine was then loosely attached to Poland under Iurii-Boleslaw. This did not sit well with the *boyars*, who poisoned him in 1340 on charges he favored Catholicism and foreigners. Thus began a new cleavage in Ukrainian history: conflict between Orthodoxy and Catholicism, the former cleaved to by most peasants and the latter the faith of the elite and Ukraine's Polish masters. Casimir III, ''The Great'' (1310–1370) invaded Galicia in 1340 under an agreement with Hungary to divide Ukraine. For the next 20 years Poland claimed to be the ''buffer of Christianity'' against Orthodox schismatics and fought Lithuania for control of Galicia and Volhynia. In 1362 Lithuania occupied Kiev, defeated the Golden Horde the next year, and occupied half of Ukraine. That mostly pleased Ukrainians, who were glad to see the back of Mongol rule. In 1452 Volhynia was incorporated as a province of Lithuania, followed by Kiev in 1471. Over the next century Ukraine's nobility was progressively assimilated into Polish-Lithuanian culture and religion, while the peasants toiled loosely untouched by either. The *Union of Lublin* (1569) cemented Ukraine formally to Poland-Lithuania, confirming the main cultural influence on Ukraine as Polish-Catholic.

In the 16th century Muscovy expanded west and south at Polish-Lithuanian expense, under *Ivan IV* (1530–1584) and his successors. Ukrainian *Cossacks*, many former serfs who escaped to join the free bands on the steppe, were

enlisted by the Poles in wartime to fight Russians or Ottomans. But they were neglected in peacetime, or worse, treated as little more than rebellious serfs. The first Cossack uprising against the Poles came in 1591. Led by a Ukrainian nobleman, Krystof Kosynsky, it was essentially a rural revolt against privileged, distant, and arbitrary landlords. The Polish-Ukrainian nobility mobilized and crushed the rebels at the Piatka River. A more ambitious rising took place in 1595–1596, with peasants and Cossacks joining to seek a common homeland independent of Poland. However, as the main Cossack army retreated toward Muscovy the cause was betrayed by officers and some wealthy Cossacks, whereupon the Poles massacred the survivors who surrendered.

As Poland embarked on a series of 17th-century wars with Muscovy, the Ottoman Empire, and Sweden, the Cossacks were again called upon by the monarchy as a source of ready recruitment of skilled cavalry. But independent Cossack bands raided the other way, into the Ottoman Crimea. Sultan Othman (Osman) II invaded Ukraine in 1621 to reclaim rebellious Moldavia and punish Cossack raiders. He was beaten decisively by a Polish-Cossack army at *Khotyn* (1621). The Cossacks were restless during the 1620s–1630s. A full-scale and unusually bloody rebellion broke out in 1648: the Khmelnitsky Uprising. It lasted to 1654 and was marked by invasions of Poland by massive Cossack-Tatar armies, several huge cavalry battles, pogroms against Jews, and mutual massacres of prisoners.

Suggested Reading: Paul Magosci, *History of Ukraine* (1996); Orest Subtelny, *Ukraine: A History* (2000).

Ula River, Battle of (1564). See *Northern War, First*.

ulema. See *Islam*.

Ulm, Treaty of (1620). See *Catholic League (Germany)*; *Protestant Union*.

Ulster. An independent kingdom in antiquity, it was also one of four traditional provinces of medieval Ireland that echoed with the history of ancient Celtic kingdoms. An abortive effort at Anglo-Scots colonization was made in northeast Ulster by Thomas Smith in the 1570s. In the 1590s the *Nine Years' War* (1594–1603) began in Ulster, then spread to all Ireland. As a reward for service in the king's wars, and as punishment for Irish Catholic rebellion, *James I* granted Scottish and English Protestants the right to settle in Ulster on land expropriated from defeated Gaelic peasants and *Old Irish* lords. Some 30,000 Scots migrated to Ulster before mid-century. This was the so-called ''Plantation of Ulster.'' Its religious context included a belief that the new colonies would be model societies which would help to civilize a native Gaelic population, judged by Scots and English to be backward in culture and wayward in faith. The Plantation of Ulster was the single most expensive colonial enterprise undertaken from Britain during the 17th century. It did not easily take root. Although it later served as a model of the new ''British'' nationalism of the Anglo-Scots and of the proper relation of colony to mother country, in fact *New English*

military officers were ascendant over both Scots and Irish in Ulster (as they were also in the Dublin *Pale*). Hence, Scots settlers were shunted to marginal land while native Irish were pushed off the land almost entirely and forced to serve as cheap rural labor or in servant classes in the towns. The monarchy was closely involved in the scheme, compelling London merchants to finance fortification of the ports of Derry and Coleraine, for instance. Like the rest of the inhabitants of Ireland, Scots immigrants in Ireland were pulled into the *English Civil Wars* upon the great Irish rebellion of 1641.

uma jirushi. ''Horse sign.'' The elaborate battle standard of a Japanese *daimyo*. Usually large and vertical, some were kitelike, three-dimensional cloth objects that readily identified a Japanese lord and commander on the field of battle.

Umma. See *Islam*.

Uniate Churches. Churches which maintained a distinct Eastern Orthodox liturgy and rite but chose union with the Catholic popes and *Ecumenical Councils* on matters of faith and doctrine, rather than with the new patriarchate set up in Moscow in the late 16th century. Founded in 1596, the Ukrainian church was the largest and oldest. Uniate churches were later established in Armenia, Egypt, Ethiopia, Greece, Lebanon, and Syria.

Unification Wars (1550–1615). During the late Ashikaga period in Japan, the warlord *Oda Nobunaga* overthrew the Ashikaga shogunate in a series of sharp wars in which he effectively deployed firearms and expanded infantry formations to supplant the traditional *samurai* horse archers. This and skillful strategy and daring tactics enabled him to unify about one-third of Japan under his rule. His entrance into Kyoto in 1568 is usually taken as marking the end of the anarchic period called *gekokujō* or *Sengoku jidai*. The wars of national unification in Japan were marked by treachery, assassination, rebellion, and switching loyalties just before (and in several cases during) a battle. Garrisons and samurai might hold for their *daimyo*, or flee or surrender without offering more than token resistance, or seize their commander and hand him over to spare their own lives. After winning an astonishing victory at *Okehazama* (1560) Nobunaga allied with *Tokugawa Ieyasu*. The 1560s were spent consolidating his hold over Honshu. Nobunaga and Ieyasu then defeated their northern enemies decisively at *Anegawa* (1570). Fighting continued as Nobunaga sought unsuccessfully to unify all Japan under his rule. He was betrayed and probably committed ritual suicide (seppuku) in 1582. The great tyrant *Toyotomi Hideyoshi* (1537–1598), after first displacing then allying with Ieyasu, succeeded Nobunaga and is known to history as the second of the great unifiers of Japan. A paranoid brute, Hideyoshi nonetheless consolidated authority over most of central and southern Japan. He then twice invaded Korea with massive armies, only to be stopped by Korean *turtle ships* and guerillas, and by interfering Ming armies from China. When he died chaos returned briefly to Japan along with a war of succession. The fighting

continued until Ieyasu imposed a centralized political and military order on all Japan. He was able to complete this task following a decisive victory at *Sekigahara* (1600) and a bloody last stand by Hideyoshi's son at *Osaka Castle* (1615). After that all Europeans save the Dutch were expelled and banned, the *Kirishitan* were massacred or driven underground, and the ''Great Tokugawa Peace'' settled over Japan for more than 250 years, until the Meiji Restoration. The wars of unification, which were shaped dramatically by the arrival of firearms in Japan in 1543, paralleled centralizing and state-building developments underway in Europe, from Spain to France and Muscovy. See also *castles, on land*; *fortification*; *revolution in military affairs*; *True Pure Land*.

uniforms. Outside Europe, uniform military dress was more common in this period. Boys inducted into the *Janissary Corps*, for instance, dressed in all red, including red caps. Fully trained Janissaries wore an exclusive white felt cap called a ''Börk'' which distinguished them on the battlefield. The Börk had a wooden spoon attached, in line with nearly all unit symbolism in a corps where even officer ranks and titles expressed a culinary motif rooted in ritual meal sharing. Most uniform cloth was made of wool though officers might add fur trim. The main way to display rank was in the use of belts or sashes of high quality and distinct color. Janissary winter uniforms were sewn in state-run mills in Greece. All Janissaries received a monthly clothing allowance, another for weapons, and still another for horses and grooms. They were therefore expected to dress well. *Serdengeçti* special assault troops decked out their uniforms with fur trim and feathers and unit badges and devices. They replaced the white Börk with a red or white turban to signal their special status as potential warrior-martyrs. Non-Janissaries in Ottoman armies wore a simple red fez. Similarly, red ''zami'' hats were worn by *mamlūks* who were known by this headgear across the Middle East. Hungarian military costume was directly influenced by contact with the Ottomans, and with Cossacks and Tatars. Hungarian fashions in turn fed back into Central Europe via Polish military contacts, especially in *hussar* units.

During the Middle Ages, European knights and men-at-arms wore a *tabard* over their armor, often decorated with heraldic devices of their king or liege lord. But these were not uniforms strictly speaking. Some infantry, among whom martial egos were less developed, wore uniforms by about 1300. For example, the militia of Tournai dressed in red tunics decorated with a silver castle. Italian city-states dressed their militia uniformly from the late 13th century and towns in Flanders dressed militia in uniforms by the 14th century. English troops fighting in Wales with Edward I wore armbands sporting the Cross of St. George, while at *Falkirk* some English units wore all-white tunics. Among the first military costumes in early modern Europe that approximated a national uniform were those introduced by the *Black Prince*. During the *Hundred Years' War* he dressed his longbowmen alike to prevent their being attacked in error by English regulars, a concern reflecting worry that his English troops might mistake Welsh speakers for foreigners, since the average English soldier heard Welsh and French as similarly odd and suspiciously

foreign tongues. Cheshire archers also dressed alike, in identical green-and-white cloth and hats. The Swiss did not wear uniforms. Though in later decades, after they killed thousands of Austrian and Burgundian knights, some covered their poor peasant or town cloth with captured armor. After *Laupen* (1339), most Swiss sewed a cross of white cloth onto their leggings or doublet or painted it onto their weapons. The *Landsknechte* adopted the Swiss fashion of slashed and tattered *Pluderhosen* and huge puffed sleeves, then advanced it to truly ridiculous lengths. They engaged in a cult of outlandish dress that included stuffed or oversized codpieces, different colored hose on each leg, and absurdly tall hats that served as platforms for huge plumes of eagle or ostrich feathers. While this made them as obvious as a punkster on a London railway platform, the intent was to make each Landsknechte look distinct from his neighbor, in other words, the very opposite of the idea of a uniform.

Most Christian armies in the Middle Ages used the cross as an emblem, varying only its color and style. Valois armies usually wore a white cross. *Henry V* forced the people of Normandy to wear the red cross of St. George, which his men-at-arms also wore, but this was a sign of submission not nationhood. *Charles the Rash* put his famous Burgundian *lances* and *compagnies de l'ordonnance* in uniform in the 1470s, numbering each unit and giving it a distinctive pennant, badge, and insignia, and varying styles of crosses. In France, there was some experimentation with uniforms as early as 1340, but an army heavy in noble horse only reluctantly surrendered individual and family insignia in favor of the king's colors, once he adopted some. Scots Archers in French service wore a singular uniform by the 1480s, but the regular French army did not adopt standard uniforms for another 200 years: *Michel le Tellier* ordered three cuts of uniform cloth in 1647; even then the King's Fusiliers were not dressed in standard costume of common cut and color until 1670. In most armies, officers before 1650 were distinguished not by the splendor of gold braid or burnished insignia of their uniforms but by literal chains of command, hammered out of gold or silver and worn around the neck. After the 1618 coup by *Maurits of Nassau*, Prince of Orange, Dutch troops and *schutterijen* militia wore either the orange of his distant principality or the orange, white, and blue colors of the *Generality* of the United Provinces.

. . . literal chains of command, hammered out of gold or silver and worn around the neck.

Uniforms caught on earlier in Eastern Europe than in Western Europe. From the 1550s, *Haiduk* musketeers wore uniforms, generally a cloudy blue jacket made from good cloth imported from the Netherlands, with red trousers and black caps and boots. From 1578 the *Polish Army* dressed less valuable ''drafted'' or ''chosen infantry'' (''Piechota wybraniecka'') in cheap homespun, but also dyed plain blue to match the far finer cloth worn by Haiduks. Even though these uniforms were bought by the men who wore them and thus varied in quality and appearance, they still were advanced as compared to military dress in Western Europe. In contrast to the infantry, because Polish hussars so closely resembled hussars or Cossacks on the other

side, they took to wearing white cloths or straw twists in order to recognize each other in battle. Some Polish cavalry were distinguished by the fact that they dyed their horses red, which caused a minor sensation when the *Lisowczyks* fought in France and Germany during the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). In the French Army in the 1560s–1580s only poorly paid and unskilled *pioneers* were put into uniform, not out of kindness but to make desertion harder by men wearing the king's colors, and hence more easily identified when on the run.

In Western Europe it was not until the 17th century that uniforms caught on. The Duke of Neuburg dressed his militia in proper uniforms in 1605, as did the city of Nuremberg from 1619. *Gustavus Adolphus* took his men out of armor to increase their mobility and dressed them in cloth or buff leather uniforms instead. He began with just the royal bodyguard, but ended by setting up depots that contained standardized clothing for all Swedish conscripts, including a light sleeveless tunic, baggy breaches, and wool stockings. Yet, even Swedish regiments still dressed so differently in practice that in battle all Swedish soldiers wore a yellow band around their hats or helmets to declare they were friend not foe. Similarly, Habsburg troops wore red as a token, in the form of a sash or plume or hatband.

Regular uniforms were not adopted by English armies until 1645, during the *English Civil Wars* (1639–1651). This was not done to provide distinctions between the rival armies so much as to address the destitute condition of too many recruits. The cost of these first uniforms was deducted from a soldier's pay. During the course of the Civil Wars the *New Model Army* was issued red coats. Many historians date the English term ''Redcoats'' from this fact, but others caution that some Royalist regiments also wore red coats. In fact, neither army as a whole dressed in uniform color. As late as 1686, 10 out of 11 English regiments wore red, but the 12th still wore blue. It was more common in the early modern period for armies to wear a common pattern or cut of cloth than it was to sport a common color. Even when standardized clothes were issued they were of such poor quality, or so soon wore out in exposed conditions, that soldiers acquired polyglot replacements on the march through purchase or looting. The idea of a standard uniform and clear national colors was a development that came so late in this period it properly belongs to the next. See also *buff coats*; *cavalry*; *civilians*; *''coat-and-conduct'' money*; *eunuchs*; *Tüfeçis*.

Union of Arms. See *Catalonia, Revolt of*; *Olivares, conde-duque de*.

Union of Arras. See *Eighty Years' War*.

Union of Brest (1595). An agreement permitting Orthodox Ukrainians who rejected claims to authority of the new patriarchate in Moscow to instead join Catholics in a *Uniate Church*.

union of crowns. Political union of two or more dynasties through a dynastic marriage that does not unite the kingdoms under a unitary constitution

but governs them under separate laws and local traditions. See also *Castile*; *Charles V, Holy Roman Emperor*; *Ferdinand II, of Aragon and Isabella I, of Castile*; *James I and VI*; *Kalmar War*; *Lithuania, Grand Duchy of*; *Poland*; *Reconquista*; *Scotland*; *Union of Kalmar*.

Union of Kalmar (1397). In 1388, Queen Margaret (1353–1412), daughter of Waldemar IV of Denmark and wife of Haakon VI of Norway, was offered the crown of Sweden by that country's nobles, who were greatly displeased with their king, Albert of Mecklenberg. Margaret agreed to the offer and invaded Sweden in order to accept it, taking Albert prisoner. The Union of Kalmar created a *union of crowns* of Denmark, Norway, and Sweden, but stipulated that each retained its domestic laws and traditions. In the 1470s, Christian I of Denmark tried to force Sweden under a more unitary monarchy. He lost to a patriot army that won a decisive victory over the Danes and Norwegians at Brunkeberg (October 10, 1471), thereby preserving Sweden's de facto independence. Sweden's de jure link to the Union of Kalmar was broken by *Gustavus I* in 1523.

Union of Krevo (1385). See *Jagiello dynasty*; *Lithuania, Grand Duchy of*; *Poland*.

Union of Lublin (1569). A constitutional union by which Poland joined with Lithuania in return for acceptance that Ukraine remain attached to Poland. During the *First Northern War* the loss of political authority by the monarchy of Poland-Lithuania to the already powerful nobility accelerated. In 1568 a "Sejm" (assembly of nobles) met at Lublin to forestall a break in the dynastic union between Poland and Lithuania. In 1568 *Sigismund August II* of Poland annexed the Ukrainian territories long claimed by Lithuania. The next year, Poland and Lithuania formed a full constitutional union to replace their old *union of crowns*. While the twinned territories more closely coordinated domestic and foreign policy, they continued to maintain separate armies and legal systems. The Union extended Polish military operations to the eastern border of Lithuania and south into Ukraine, which meant a general reorientation away from Western Europe. While this engaged Poland militarily with the rising powers of Muscovy and Sweden, it disengaged from the other great wars of religion that swept over Central and Western Europe during the 16th–17th centuries. On internal matters religious, the new Union—which was overwhelmingly Catholic—granted toleration to Orthodox nobility.

Union of Utrecht. See *Eighty Years' War*.

United Provinces of the Midi. See *Huguenots*.

United Provinces of the Netherlands. See *Netherlands*.

Uppbåd. See *Swedish Army*.

Urban (n.d.). ''Orban.'' Hungarian master cannoneer and smith. Dissatisfied with his pay in service of the Byzantine emperor, he crossed over and sold his skills to *Muhammad II*. Urban built great bombards using the *hoop-and-stave method* (one of which quickly cracked and broke) and cast many smaller cannon for the sultan. He personally oversaw the Muslim bombardment during the *Siege of Constantinople*. About him little else is known. See also *renegades*.

Urban II. See *Crusades*; *Pax Dei*.

Urban VIII (1568–1644). Warrior pope, 1623–1644. A territorial prince and warlord more than a cleric, Urban even transformed the Vatican Library into an arsenal. He played a key role in disrupting the *Habsburg* hold on northern Italy during the *War of the Mantuan Succession* (1627–1631), securing the Duchy of Urbino to the *Papal States*. He encouraged France to ally with various Protestant princes, all to the end of driving the Spanish out of Italy. Confessional fanatics on the Catholic side suspected that he even subsidized the entry of *Gustavus Adolphus* into the *Thirty Years' War*. True or not, he certainly welcomed the humbling of Habsburg power that Swedish intervention brought about. On the other hand, he vehemently objected to the religious toleration clauses of the *Peace of Prague* (1635). In 1642, he condemned *Jansenism*.

urca. See *hulk*.

Ustí nad Labem, Battle of (1426). An early battle in the *Hussite Wars* (1419–1478). Following the death of the brilliant Hussite general *Jan Žižka* in 1424, the Hussite (or *Taborite*) army was commanded by a former priest, *Procopius the Great*. By this time the Hussite reputation for ferocity, defensive firepower, and tactical skill was such that the papacy and Holy Roman Emperor *Sigismund* had difficulty raising troops willing to face them. An army of about 50,000 Germans was slowly assembled in 1426 and moved to meet the Taborites at Ustí nad Labem on the Elbe in northern Bohemia. Yet again, as at *Kutná Hora* (1422) and *Nêmecký Brod* (1422), the Hussites assembled their *tabor* or wagon fort and hunkered down to hold off all assaults of the Imperial Army. Once more the Imperials charged in the same old way only to dash themselves to pieces, uselessly and bloodily, against the small artillery and arquebus firepower of the lashed-together-wagons of the Hussites. They succumbed when the Hussites countercharged and engaged in a murderous pursuit.

Utraquists. A moderate, predominantly noble faction of the Hussite movement, named for its support of the doctrinal statement in favor of dispensation of the sacrament in both species, or *sub utraque specie*, during the Mass. The two symbols of the rebellion were the peasant goose flag (''hus'') and the chalice of the Utraquists. After the Imperial defeat of the *Taborites*, with whom the Utraquists first allied but later split, the *Hussite Wars* broke out again in 1466

when Utraquists rebelled against papal and Imperial authority. A peace was agreed in 1478 that left the Utraquists in Bohemia an essentially national church. After that, liturgical and doctrinal differences between Utraquists and the Roman church were smoothed and reduced to a handful of minor points. Still, a strong tendency to unorthodox belief and independent spirits lingered so that during the *Protestant Reformation* of the 16th century many longtime Utraquists embraced Lutheranism or Calvinism.

Utskrivning. See *Swedish Army*.

Uzbeks. The Uzbeks formed into a people from a confederation of steppe nomads, including *Mongols*, *Turks*, and others. In 1500 an Uzbek army captured Samarkand, lost it soon after to the Timurid chief *Babur*, then retook it in 1501. Starting in 1510 a long frontier war began with the *Safavids* of Iran, to whom the Uzbeks lost the cities of Marv and Herat. In 1512 the Uzbeks took Samarkand for a third time, and held it. They briefly recaptured Herat in 1513 and 1524, lost it, then returned to besiege it in 1528. That year, they lost a field battle to a Safavid relief army that had adopted the wagon-fort tactics of the Ottomans. For much of the rest of the 16th century they remained at war with Iran. They besieged Herat yet again in 1587–1588, taking the city in a final assault. That forced *Abbas I* to sue for peace with the Ottomans so that he could concentrate on military reform as well as turn to fight the Uzbeks. Abbas brought his new army to the Uzbek city of Nishapur in 1598, from whence the garrison fled without offering any resistance. Outside the walls of Uzbek-occupied Herat, Abbas detached a van of 6,000 men and set them as bait to draw out a 12,000-man Uzbek army. Meanwhile, he secretly flanked the overconfident Uzbeks with his cavalry. The ruse worked, the Uzbeks were beaten, and Herat was taken by Abbas. Less successfully, in 1602 Abbas led an army of 50,000 on a weary and fruitless march to Balkh, with the Uzbeks harassing his supplies and attacking his artillery train there and back again. The Uzbeks benefitted from some Ottoman support in their wars with Iran, including shipments of muskets. The Ottoman interest was, of course, to tie down the Safavids along a dangerous second front with the Uzbeks.

Uzkok War (1615–1617). A border war between Venice and Austria broke out in 1615 (''Guerra Arciducale''). The Austrian *Habsburgs* employed wild border mercenaries from a community of Serbian refugees (uzkoks), who were experienced in *piracy* in the Adriatic and Mediterranean. Netherlands troops and ships, and some English ships, along with Savoy and the *Protestant Union* supported Venice. However, the intervention of Spanish troops forced Venice to terms. The Uzkok War may have raised false hopes among Protestants that an international confessional alliance would easily support any anti-Habsburg prince. This may have encouraged Bohemian nobles to rebel against Austria the next year. On the other hand, it also firmed up cooperation between the two branches of the House of Habsburg.

V

vadia. Wages paid by the Capetian monarchs of France, starting in the 13th century, to soldiers not bound to them by ties of *feudal* military obligation. See also *France*; *war finance*.

valet. The lowest rank among *men-at-arms* in a medieval European army. Most were armed retainers attached to a full-fledged (''dubbed'') *knight* or served under a *banneret*. See also *page*; *sergeant*; *squire*.

Valois, House of. The Capetian dynasty ruled much of France from its founding by Hugh Capet in 987 until 1328, when the House of Valois, a branch of the Capetians based in the province of Valois, took the throne in the person of *Philip VI* (1293–1350). A Valois monarch governed France from 1328 (Philip VI) to 1589 (*Henri III*), or from before the start of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453) to near the end of the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629). Having expelled the English from the continent by 1453, the Valois led France in a protracted struggle against the Habsburgs that included the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559). They were succeeded by the *Bourbons* in the *Franco–Spanish War* (1595–1598), the *War of the Mantuan Succession* (1627–1631), and the latter *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). The Valois House of Burgundy ruled from 1363 to 1477 (to the death in battle of *Charles the Rash*). See also *Francis I*; *Henri II, of France*; *Medici, Catherine de*.

Valtelline. A strategic alpine valley which could either block or allow troops to move between the Tyrol and Milan and Venice. Its Catholic population was cowed by Protestant occupation and persecution in 1607. In 1618, it was invaded by Protestant troops from the neighboring *Grisons*. With Spain desperate to find an alternative route north from 1620, after France closed Savoy to passage of Spanish troops, Madrid supported Valtelline Catholics in an uprising against The Grisons. The Spanish blocked access to the valley

while locals massacred over 600 Protestants, after which Spain garrisoned the Grisons. In 1623 the *League of Lyon* forced Spain to surrender the Valtelline to papal troops. The next year, France occupied the valley. It was returned, by agreement, to papal control in 1626. The last Spanish expedition to use the Valtelline was an army of 12,000 which moved through it en route to *First Nördlingen* in 1634. See also *Monzón, Treaty of*; *Spanish Road*.

vambraces. *Plate armor* covering the lower arms, worn over a *hauberk*. They consisted of articulated gutter-shaped sleeves called the upper and lower "cannons."

van. At sea: the lead squadron of any three squadrons comprising a fleet. On land: the foremost major division of an army; the lead force of a moving army divided into three units. See also *Swiss square*; *vice admiral*.

vanguard. See *van*.

Varna, Battle of (1444). Pope Eugene IV preached a new crusade against the Ottomans who were then advancing through the Balkans and along the Dalmatian coast. *János Hunyadi* took a hodgepodge Christian army, nominally commanded by the kings of Hungary and Poland, to Varna on the Black Sea. He expected to meet Venetian transports and reinforcements. However, the Venetian galleys were unable or unwilling to pass under the guns of Constantinople. A Muslim army came to Varna instead. It quickly routed the Christians with the *Janissary Corps*, a superior and more tactically disciplined force.

Vasa, House of. The ruling house of Sweden. It came to the throne in 1523 when *Gustavus I* broke the *Union of Kalmar* with Denmark and Norway. The dynasty closely allied with great merchants and lesser gentry to face down the landed nobility and Catholic Church. It was bitterly divided by competing claims to the Swedish crown by *Karl IX* and *Sigismund III Vasa* of Poland. See also *Gustavus II Adolphus*.

Vasco da Gama (1469–1524). See *Exploration, Age of*.

Vassy massacre (March 1, 1562). The opening act of violence in what became the *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629), reflecting wide Catholic anger over the call for toleration in the *Edict of Saint-Germain* (January 17, 1562). The *duc de Guise* (François, 1519–1563) stopped to attend Mass at Vassy, a small town inside his domain. A congregation of Protestants was holding a service nearby and Guise went over to lecture them on the errors of their faith. When he was met with a hail of stones his men fired off pistols and arquebuses in reply, then they hacked members of the congregation to death with swords. About 30 died and 100 more were grievously wounded. Catholic Paris rejoiced at the news. The next month Protestant churches met in synod,

called for an army of protection to be raised, and gave command of this force to Louis de Bourbon (*Condé*), blood enemy of the Guise family.

vataby. A band of *Cossacks* led into the ''wild field'' (steppe) by an *otaman*.

Vegetius. See *Art of War*.

Venice. ''Queen of the Adriatic.'' For nearly 800 years Venice was the commercial center of the western Mediterranean, serving also as a conduit of ancient Graeco-Roman learning to Europe. In the fragmented medieval world it was a small military and imperial power in its own right. It was also the only medieval state in Europe to maintain a permanent navy, with which it alternately traded with and warred against the *Byzantine Empire*. During the *Crusades*, rivalry with the Byzantines peaked in 1204 when Venice financed, transported, and successfully redirected the Fourth Crusade from its intended destination of Egypt to instead sack and occupy Constantinople. From the 13th century, the Aegean was the venue of trade wars between Venice and its main commercial and military rival, Genoa, with Venice in control of the Dalmatian coast and Ionian Islands route eastward. The Ottomans began to acquire a permanent navy under *Bayezid I* that competed with Venice from 1390. A century later, under *Bayezid II*, the Ottoman galley fleet overmatched and humiliated the Venetians, ending their domination of the eastern Mediterranean.

In the 14th century, Venice ran the great ''Flanders Fleets'' to Bruges in cooperation with the *Hanse*, and sent merchants overland into France and as far east as Poland. Venice reached an apex of commercial and secular influence during the *Italian Renaissance*. The shrewd and worldly merchant class which ran the Venetian Republic in the 15th century bequeathed much to the history of diplomacy, navigation, and banking. In response to Milanese and Paduan expansion at the end of the 14th century, and in order to secure grain supplies in the face of Ottoman advances in the Balkans and North Africa, Venice set out to acquire a land empire to its immediate and strategic rear in Italy. It conquered and absorbed Vicenza, Verona, Padua, Friuli, Brescia, and Bergamo between 1404 and 1427. Venice participated in the long war between Milan and Florence from 1423 to 1445. It agreed to the *Peace of Lodi* with Milan in 1454.

Like other Italian city-states Venice was mortally threatened by the overturning of the Italian balance of power by the French invasion of 1494. It became entangled in complex alliance politics and wars during the baleful, prolonged, and destructive *Italian Wars* (1494–1559), sometimes in alliance with France against the popes and sometimes allied with the papacy. Venice was targeted for dismemberment by the *League of Cambrai* and fared badly militarily from 1508 to 1510. The political sands then shifted and by 1515 Venice was allied with France. The last-hour intervention by Venetian cavalry decided the bloody fight at *Marignano* that year, where *Francis I* and Venetian arms ended the infantry dominance of the Swiss. As foreign giants wrestled

for control of Italy during the 16th century, Venice shrank from conflict. As Garrett Mattingly put it, ''Venice renounced its ambitions and looked simply to its safety.'' Conflict sought it out, regardless. Surrounded by Austrian and Spanish possessions during the 16th–17th centuries, Venice was the natural, albeit minor, ally of successive anti-Habsburg alliances and wars. See also *Arsenal of Venice*; *Black Death*; *standing army*; *stradiots*.

Suggested Reading: F. Lane, *Venice: A Maritime Republic* (1973); M. E. Mallett and J. R. Hale, *Military Organization of a Renaissance State: Venice, 1400–1617* (1984); Garrett Mattingly, *Renaissance Diplomacy* (1955).

Vereenigde Oostindische Compaagnie **(VOC).** ''Jan Compagnie.'' Following successful military campaigns in the 1580s–1590s that reopened the riparian trade of northwestern Europe, Dutch overseas trade rapidly expanded. This marked the beginning of global commercial primacy that would last 150 years. From 1595 to 1601, Dutch traders moved aggressively into south India, Java, Sumatra, and the Spice Islands under the auspices of the ''Compagnie van Verre'' (''Long-Distance Company''), and up to eight other Dutch companies doing trade in the East Indies. The Vereenigde Oostindische Compaagnie (VOC), or Dutch East India Company, was chartered for an initial 21 years by Holland and Zeeland in 1602 to maximize and consolidate these penetrations of Asian markets. Initially, the VOC was far better capitalized than its French or English counterparts, because *Johan van Oldenbaarneveldt* took a lead role in launching the company and the Holland regents and merchants were flush with capital. It was also granted quasi-sovereign rights to build forts and maintain garrisons overseas, to sign treaties with other sovereigns, and to make military alliances. These agreements had to be formally approved by the States General of the United Provinces, but this posed no limitations in practice. Reflecting Dutch republicanism, uniquely among European overseas charter companies the VOC did not rely on nobles as its colonial governors. In 1605 a Dutch fleet forcibly cleared the Portuguese from the Indian Ocean and the VOC seized Portugal's share of the Spice Islands at Amboina. This breakthrough in the Indies became an issue in the talks leading to the *Twelve Years' Truce* (1609–1621). In 1609 the VOC set up shop in Japan, at Hirado. Anglo-Dutch cooperation against the Portuguese and French ended in 1623 when the Dutch judicially murdered ten *East India Company* merchants at Amboina. During the latter *Eighty Years' War* the VOC took numerous overseas entrepôts from Portugal: Pernambuco (1630), Elmina (1637), Luanda (1641–1648), Ceylon (1638–1641), Malacca (1641), and *Deshima* in Japan, from 1641 through most of the era of the *Tokugawa shoguns*. Headquartered at *Batavia*, the VOC concentrated on the more valuable East Indies trades, leaving India to the French and English. By 1650 VOC wealth and naval power helped make the United Provinces the world's greatest trading nation and a foremost world empire.

Suggested Reading: Charles Ralph Boxer, *Jan Compagnie in War and Peace, 1602–1799* (1979); John Wills, *Pepper, Guns, and Parleys: The Dutch East India Company and China, 1622–1681* (1974).

Verneuil, Battle of (August 17, 1424). Following the death of *Henry V* (1422), the French sought to push the English back across the Loire. Joined by 5,000 *Scots Archers*, some 10,000 French assaulted 9,000 English at Verneuil, west of Paris. English longbowmen did their usual deadly work against dismounted Scots and French men-at-arms, killing nearly 7,000 while suffering few casualties themselves. Verneuil was thus very nearly a second *Agincourt* (1415). It added to the weight of defeatism that pervaded France just before *Jeanne d'Arc* aroused the nation to a new fighting spirit, and English weapons complacency and strategic overcommitment snatched defeat from the maw of victory.

verso. A type of small, Iberian *swivel gun*, often with wrought-iron fittings, that loaded from the breech. Similar guns were used on the warships of other nations into the 17th century. They were anti-personnel weapons (man-killers), not *ship-smashers*.

Vervins, Peace of (May 2, 1598). A settlement between *Henri IV* of France and *Philip II* of Spain halting a protracted series of Franco-Spanish wars. Specifically, it ended the *Franco–Spanish War* of 1595–1598. Both sides returned all towns taken since the *Peace of Cateau-Cambrésis* (1559). Now that the French throne was occupied by a Catholic, Philip renounced his claim to it. The peace left the disposition of Saluzzo in abeyance pending arbitration. In 1601 Henri declared war on Savoy to reclaim Saluzzo. He failed, but received the Pont de Grésin. That allowed France to cut the *Spanish Road* whenever it chose, which it did repeatedly during the 1620s and consistently from 1635 during the latter *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). The Peace of Vervins also had an impact on Spanish-Dutch negotiations that led to the *Twelve Years' Truce* (1609–1621).

Now that the French throne was occupied by a Catholic, Philip renounced his claim to it.

Vesting Holland. A strategic area serving as a grand redoubt for the Netherlands. It was bordered to the north and west by the North Sea and Zuider Zee, to the east by the Ijssel and broad wetlands, and to the south by multiple parallel rivers. Its low-lying flatlands were easily flooded in defense, and its many canals, rivers, and fortified towns provided highly effective defense in depth against Spanish invasion.

veterans. See *wounds*.

veuglaire. A medium-size medieval cannon.

vice admiral. In the 14th–17th centuries among Atlantic nations, a vice admiral was the second-ranking commander in a fleet, behind the *admiral* but ahead of *rear admiral*. This was also the combat rank of an admiral in command of the *van* of a fleet. In the *Royal Navy*, the title was held by deputies of the *Lord High Admiral*.

victualer. A supply ship carrying foodstuffs.

Vienna, Siege of (September 27–October 15, 1529). The Ottoman defeat of a Hungarian army at *Mohács* on August 29, 1526, opened the road to Vienna before *Suleiman I*. Upon making a secret alliance with France, he moved down it in 1529 with about 80,000 men, sacked Buda en route, then laid siege to Vienna. The city was defended by a *Habsburg* garrison of 24,000, including *Landsknechte* mercenary infantry. Vienna's walls were old (13th century) and too thin, at just six feet, to withstand shelling by the great siege *bombards* Suleiman's men hauled laboriously toward the city. To answer, the Austrians had 72 cannon of various calibers, some of them ancient pieces. These were mounted on tall buildings or hastily built gun platforms to give them clear fields of fire to expected Ottoman positions. Most of the women, children, old men, and other "useless mouths" were evacuated to conserve what supplies there were for the fighting men. Archduke *Ferdinand I* frantically called on his brother, Emperor *Charles V*, to rush to the city's aid. In fact, the siege would end after just 25 days, well before Charles could assemble forces and march them to Vienna in relief, and before starvation could do its work. It has been speculated that the Ottomans and French secretly agreed to a simple show of force before Vienna in order to draw Charles eastward, to relieve military pressure on France. If so, the plan failed: Francis was defeated by Charles and forced to sign the *Treaty of Cambrai* (1529). Moreover, the size of the Ottoman Army and the casualties it took at Vienna belies the suggestion that the Sultan took the field just for show.

The Ottomans burned and pillaged most of the outlying suburbs of the city, adding to destruction the Austrians had done before the siege to open lanes of fire on the anticipated Ottoman trenches and positions. Suleiman could not effect a major breach in the walls of "The Ring" that protected the inner city. This was partly because bad weather slowed the arrival of his great siege guns. In addition, using height to advantage, the Austrians did excellent counter-battery work under the command of Marshal Wilhelm von Roggendorf and Graf Nicholas zu Salm-Reifferscheidt, who ordered the paltry Austrian guns to fire exclusively in a counter-battery role. That put a large number of Suleiman's smaller siege guns and crews out of action, some before they were even brought to bear. The Ottomans also mined extensively but Austrian countermining denied them success: in one case a chamber was prepared and about to be blown but was instead assaulted by Austrian troops and robbed of its casks of black powder before the Ottomans could set off the charge. When smaller breaches were made rubble usually fell outward, impeding attack. And whenever *Serdengeçti* assault commandos rushed a breach they found heavily defended secondary palisades and walls waiting on the other side, along with Austrian cavalry stationed in each of four main squares of the inner city, ready and able to counterattack. Serdengeçti and other Janissaries showed their usual bravery, only to leave many comrades impaled on stalwart Viennese pikes or shot dead at point-blank range. Once the counter-battery work was done, the Austrians disrupted Ottoman assaults by firing their large guns

accurately and often into troop assembly areas. As a result, the city was never in imminent danger of falling.

The Ottomans burned everything of value outside the walls (reportedly including their prisoners, though that may be only Christian propaganda) and withdrew. Retreat had been forced on them by a failure of sufficient supply to sustain the Sultan's oversized army that late in the campaign season, a problem aggravated by a huge number of camp followers who accompanied the army to Vienna. In the next few years Vienna's walls, bastions, and defenses were modernized and reinforced in the expectation of more attacks. Some desultory fighting took place along the frontier for two decades before a truce was signed in 1553. In fact, it would be another 154 years before the Ottomans again tried to take Vienna.

Vijayanagar. See *India*.

vintenar. An infantry rank of medieval European officers, roughly equivalent to a modern noncommissioned officer; a man put in charge of a unit of twenty foot soldiers.

Virginia. See *Indian Wars (North America)*.

visor. See *helm*.

vivente rege. "In the lifetime of the king" or "while the king yet lives." In elective monarchies, the royal succession might be decided by a vote before the death of a king. Although this was not required and could still occasion vicious succession struggles, it tended to support more stable transitions of power. See also *Holy Roman Empire*; *Poland*.

Vlachs. See *Militargrenze*.

vlieboot. "Flyboat." A shallow-draft *Sea Beggar* ship with either one or two masts, capable of maneuvering along the shore or up canals where deep-draft Spanish vessels could not pursue.

VOC. See *Vereenigde Oostindische Compaagnie*.

Vögelisegg (Voegelinsegg), Battle of (1403). See *Appenzell Wars*.

voivodes. Levies raised in the wilderness of Wallachia and Moldova by the kings of Hungary. Their quality reflected the vices and virtues of their origins: ill-discipline, but also ferocity and feral cunning.

volley fire. Ancient Romans and Chinese armies used a form of volley fire for various missile troops, but nowhere before the late 16th century was this attempted with guns. Although it is often said that the Dutch reinvented

volley fire for muskets based on descriptions of Graeco-Roman javelin tactics, it appears that *Oda Nobunaga* introduced musket volley fire at Muraki Castle in 1554, over 20 years before the first experiments in the Netherlands. Nevertheless, it was the Dutch rather than the Japanese practice that was systematized and spread to other armies, to have lasting influence on developments in world warfare. In 1594 Willem Lodewijk introduced volley fire to the *New Model Army* of the United Provinces. In his system, after the front rank fired the next rank advanced through the front rank, followed by the third rank and the one after that. Lodewijk's more famous cousin, *Maurits of Nassau*, added the *countermarch* in which each successive front rank in a 10-rank line fired in unison before it retired to the rear to reload, allowing the next rank to step forward to fire and retire, and so on. This maintained a steady fire that devastated the older, less gun-heavy *tercios* of the *Army of Flanders*. Reducing the size and depth of Dutch infantry units added flexibility in maneuvers to this advantage in rate of fire. *Gustavus Adolphus* further adapted the volley system, reducing it to just six ranks from 10. He also developed a ''double volley,'' wherein the front three ranks fired at once, front rank prone, second rank kneeling, third rank standing, then countermarched to allow the back three ranks to fire a second double volley. The tactical discipline of these highly trained armies contributed to standardization of *drill* and of weapons such as the ''Dutch musket.'' In striking contrast, the *Janissary Corps* uniquely emphasized individual marksmanship over unit fire. See also *Nagashino, Battle of*; *''skulking way of war''*; *smoothbore*.

Vorhut. ''Van.'' See *Swiss square*; *van*.

votchina/votchiny. See *Muscovy, Grand Duchy of*; *servitor classes*.

vouge. See *bardiche*.

***Voynuqs* (*Voynuks*).** ''Horse soldiers.'' Ottoman auxiliary cavalry recruited mainly among the Christian populations of the Balkans but including some Muslims. The majority served in the *Militargrenze* as guides or raiders. Voynuqs registered for paid service, which meant they served as an effective reserve that could be called up as need arose. They were not always reliable: more than once they defected to the other side during the *Thirteen Years' War* (1593–1606).

W

waardgelders. Garrison troops in the pay of the Dutch state, as distinct from town militia and the new model mercenary army of *Maurits of Nassau*. In 1617, the ''Sharp Resolution'' raised waardgelder units in Holland and Utrecht but demanded they swear allegiance to the towns. This threatened civil war between pro- and anti-*Arminian* factions, between *Johan van Oldenbaarneveldt* and the Holland regents on one hand and *Maurits of Nassau* and anti-Holland provinces on the other. Maurits condemned the waardgelders and had them declared illegal on July 9, 1618. He crushed all opposition in a bloodless coup d'état in July–August 1618, during which the waardgelders were peacefully disbanded. He had Oldenbaarneveldt executed the next year.

Wachmeister. ''Master of the watch.'' The officer charged with ensuring the camp and train of a *Landsknechte* company or regiment was well guarded, and if necessary, also fortified.

waft. A 16th–17th-century English term synonymous with ''escort'' (of merchant ships). See also *convoy*.

wafter. A warship assigned to escort other ships. See also *convoy*; *waft*.

Wagenburg. ''Wagon fort.'' An innovation by *Jan Žižka*, first commander of the Hussites. He converted heavy wagons into mobile forts that grew famous with each successive victory in the *Hussite Wars*. This provided the Hussites with a mobile system of fortification that could be set up in minutes even in open country. Moreover, when not in combat the wagons were used as transports for Hussite armies and equipment, as well as for whole families who traveled with their menfolk. This dual-purpose wagon system took full advantage of the relatively flat terrain of Bohemia, giving the Hussites a mobility unique for the

time combined with exceptional defensive firepower and technological self-sufficiency: Hussite armies carted mobile ore crushers and forges to make iron on the spot to repair weapons. Hussite wagons were not simple peasant box carts for hauling hay or turnips to market. They were built from heavy timber reinforced with iron, were covered by heavy timber rooves, and could absorb quarrels, arrows, and even musket balls. When lashed together with chains, 10 to 12 wagons formed a Wagenburg (wagon fort) or ''vozova hradba'' (''mobile fortress''). These served as platforms for Hussite men—and women, who sometimes also bore arms. Defenders stood or knelt inside the wagons firing *arquebuses* (''hand coulverines'') and *crossbows* through gun ports cut in the outer facing. Various caliber cannon and more arquebusiers and crossbowmen fired from gaps left between some pairs of wagons to facilitate counterattacks. Other defenders flailed away with iron chains at nearby enemy knights or their mounts: *tabor* forts were especially effective against cavalry.

Counterattacks were mounted through the gaps once an enemy's assault or offensive will was broken by defensive fire. The exceptional defensive capabilities of the Wagenburg were enough to break assaults even by large numbers of attackers, after which the Hussites sallied forth to pursue bewildered, bleeding foes and finish off wounded and stragglers with the usual pitiless ferocity that arises from religious zealotry and class hatred. After battle, Wagenburgs were unlinked and the Hussites moved forward in parallel columns, their women and children safe inside the wagons and further protected by light screens of mounted Hussite scouts guarding the flanks. The tactic of the Wagenburg spread across Europe as the Hussites campaigned in Germany during the 1420s–1430s, but more because success in war always breeds imitation and the Hussites enjoyed unparalleled military success for over a decade. Polish soldiers recognized the worth of the Wagenburg and carried the knowledge north into wars against Sweden and Muscovy. The Hungarians used Wagenburgs in their frontier wars with the Ottomans. In the second half of the 15th century, Imperial troops in Germany adopted the heretic's wagon fort. The *Janissary Corps* also appreciated the worth of mobile forts and used them from the 1440s against Austrians and Hungarians in the west and Safavids to the east. On the march, Janissary Wagenburgs were pulled by mules and carried cases of ammunition inside and slung underneath. The Janissaries used Wagenburgs well into the 18th century, long after they became vulnerable to field artillery. See also *carroccio*; *Fastolf, John*; *German Peasant War*; *Héricourt, Battle of*; *Kutná Hora, Battle of*; *Nêmecký Brod, Battle of*; *Rouvray, Battle of*; *Ustí nad Labem, Battle of*; *Wallenstein, Albrecht von*; *war wagons*.

waist-lames. *Lamellar armor* attached to canvas or cloth and worn over the stomach and hips.

Wakefield, Battle of (1460). See *Wars of the Roses*.

wakō. *Pirates* active in northeast Asia in the 14th–16th centuries. Many were ethnic Chinese who fought alongside Japanese and Koreans; not a few were

former merchants reacting to the Xuande emperor's cancellation of overseas trade in 1436. Wakō ravaged the coasts of China, Japan, and Korea, and preyed on the seaborne trade linking Ming China to overseas Chinese communities in Southeast Asia. With Japan politically fragmented and China immersed in civil war, wakō had free rein. Banned from legal trade with China from the 1520s, some Portuguese became pirates, confirming that at its core piracy was large-scale smuggling defended by force of arms. By the mid-16th century the weakness of the Ming allowed wakō fleets to land several thousand armed brigands at once, amphibious pirates who raided deep into China. The wakō even seized semi-permanent coastal bases.

On the other hand, as in England and the Netherlands at that time, piracy and trade were closely linked to seaside communities and the local economy. Like *Drake* or *Hawkyns*, wakō enjoyed local governmental protection and encouragement and the active participation and protection of the shoreside population. The central Ming military response was to attack the pirates in their land bases, not at sea. In retaliation, several thousand pirates landed at three coastal sites in coordinated diversionary raids in 1556, while 10,000 made a main attack on Zhejiang. They looted and burned hundreds of villages. However, the wakō lacked siege equipment or patience or military discipline. After falling out over the spoils they were defeated in detail by the Ming. That forced most wakō south to Fujian and Guangdong provinces. When the Ming ban on overseas voyages and trade was lifted in 1567, many wakō returned to legitimate trade. The problem of the wakō was further eased by Ming naval successes which pushed hard-core pirates out to the Philippines, where Manila was attacked in 1574. Others settled on Taiwan, which served as the main wakō base during the 17th century.

Walcheren, Battle of (1574). See *Eighty Years' War*.

Waldstätte. See *Forest Cantons*; *Swiss Confederacy*.

Wales. See *Edward III*; *England*; *Glyndŵr's Rebellion*; *Hundred Years' War*; *longbow*.

Wallace, William (c.1274–1305). Also "Walays" or "Wallensis." The origins of this Scots patriot and leader in the first years of the *Scottish Wars* are shrouded in speculation and legend. His first confirmed appearance was in 1297, the year after the English sack of Berwick, when he emerged as a brilliant guerilla leader. His first followers were a few dozen men from his own clan. Later, many common Scots and even some nobles rallied to him. At Lanark, his small band burned an English fort and slew the sheriff and garrison in revenge for the judicial murder of Wallace's wife. His father had been killed by the English in an earlier war, and this too nursed his hatred. He led a Scots army to victory over Edward I's men at *Stirling Bridge* (1297). When the English retreated out of Scotland Wallace followed, leading punitive raids through the north country. When he returned to Edinburgh, he

was elected by the Scottish nobles ''Guardian of Scotland.'' In 1298 Edward I (''Longshanks'') personally invaded Scotland with a huge army of nearly 90,000 men. Wallace and the Scots infantry met Edward at *Falkirk* (1298), where the Scottish noble cavalry abandoned the field leaving the infantry to be mown down by superior Welsh archers using a deadly new weapon, the *longbow*. English swordsmen and Irish infantry finished off the Scots (the Irish did not join Wallace in a warm Celtic embrace, as has been depicted on film).

Wallace went to France and possibly also to Norway and Rome to seek assistance. He was thus absent during the latter part of the Comyn Wars (1297–1304). He reappeared in Scotland in 1304 and resumed his guerrilla campaign, until betrayed and arrested in 1305 and taken to London. He was charged with treason, although he was the one rebel never to have sworn allegiance to England's king. That charge reflected the fact that the English thought of the Scots not as a foreign nation but as unlawful rebels. Wallace was savagely tortured, hanged, drawn, quartered, and beheaded. In accordance with English law for traitors, his head was impaled on a pike for public display and the quarters of his body dispatched as a warning to the four corners of the kingdom: Newscastle, Stirling, Berwick, and Perth. This did not matter for later Scots nationalists, who proclaimed, ''He has no tomb. He needed none.''

Suggested Reading: James Fergusson, *William Wallace: Guardian of Scotland* (1938); Andrew Fisher, *William Wallace* (2002).

Wallenstein, Albrecht von (1583–1634). Also known as Albrecht von Waldstein. Duke of Friedland and Mecklenburg, Prince of Sagan. He made his name as a mercenary in *Habsburg* service. Although he was a Czech he is remembered by German nationalists as ''Der Friedlander.'' From first to last, in two spectacularly lucrative marriages and in his inspired mercenary commands, Wallenstein was motivated by exceptional ambition for power, titles, and estates. He achieved all three beyond any man of his age, only to lose it all in blood and betrayal. An orphan at 10, he was raised by his uncles and educated by the *Jesuits*, under whose tutelage he nominally adhered to Catholicism. His 1607 marriage gave him great wealth. When his first wife died he married again, gaining even more lands. He first took a command in 1617 when he raised 200 horse to aid Archduke Ferdinand of Austria, later *Ferdinand II*, in a minor dispute with Venice. This led to his appointment as head of the militia of Moravia. When the *Thirty Years' War* broke out, he spurned the entreaties of Bohemian Protestants to join them. Instead, he tried to raise militia from his considerable estates to serve Ferdinand. When this failed he was expelled from Bohemia and forfeited his lands to the rebels.

Wallenstein went to Vienna to offer his services to Ferdinand, now Holy Roman Emperor. He captured a Bohemian *Wagenburg* (a rare military feat) during a skirmish at Rablat, compelling *Count Matthias von Thurn* and the Bohemian army to abandon its assault on Vienna. He then held a key bridge to allow a retreating Imperial army to cross to safety. He played no role, however, at the fight that followed at the *White Mountain* (November 8, 1620), outside Prague. After that decisive defeat of the Bohemian rebels

Wallenstein not only recovered all his estates, he added to them greatly by buying at cut-rate prices the lands of Protestant nobles executed or exiled by Ferdinand. His estates were so extensive Ferdinand designated them the ''Principality of Friedland'' and made Wallenstein a prince. In 1621 and 1623 he raised armies to block the claims of Bethlen Gabor to the Hungarian throne. For these services he was created ''Duke of Friedland'' by Ferdinand and given the right to mint coin.

In 1625 Wallenstein was given command of all Imperial armies. At the peak of his power he commanded forces in excess of 100,000 men. To finance this army he devised a system of *contributions* that made his army more effective but so scarred the face of Europe that marauding became irrevocably attached to his reputation, and he became the most hated man in the Empire. Along with *Johan Tilly*, general of the German *Catholic League*, Wallenstein campaigned brilliantly in behalf of Imperial and Catholic authority, although he was himself an agnostic mystic from Bohemia with a penchant for astrology. He governed his lands and appointed officers with broad indifference to religion. That appeared to fanatic Catholics around Ferdinand to be religious tolerance, which for such men was little better than heresy itself. For fanatics of the *Counter-Reformation* indifference to religion was Wallenstein's mortal sin, as it would in time prove his mortal doom. Always, his central ambition was power, wealth, and personal aggrandizement, not occurring advantage to his paymaster in the great confessional and constitutional war. As his ends nonetheless merged with Ferdinand's on most days before 1634, both men were content for Wallenstein to exercise Imperial command with great latitude as to strategy and financing.

. . . marauding became irrevocably attached to his reputation . . . the most hated man in the Empire.

Wallenstein began at *Dessau Bridge* (April 25, 1626) where he bested *Graf von Mansfeld*. Together with Tilly he beat the Danes at *Lutter-am-Barenberg* (August 17/27, 1626). He drove Hungary out of the war in 1627, then linked with Tilly again to push *Christian IV* of Denmark out of Germany in 1628. He next sent Tilly to watch the Dutch frontier while he occupied Brandenburg, Mecklenburg, and Pomerania. He asked for and was given title to the whole of Mecklenburg. In these lands he was tasked to impose the terms of the *Edict of Restitution* (March 28, 1629), which earned him the lasting animosity of Protestant princes. In accord with the new Baltic policy of *Olivares*, Wallenstein invested *Straslund* and began building a Baltic fleet that could contain Denmark and threaten the *Hanse* and Sweden. All that accomplished was permanent alienation of the whole of northern Europe.

As for Vienna, Wallenstein's unquenchable ambition, constant intrigue, military and financial independence, unique ability to raise armies in short order, and irreligious nature, posed a real threat to the interests and policies of the Habsburgs. When Ferdinand tried to send Wallenstein and 50,000 troops to intervene in behalf of Spain in the *War of the Mantuan Succession* (1627–1631), the German princes refused to pay. Instead they demanded a reduction of the

Imperial Army by two-thirds (to 40,000 men) and that Wallenstein be dismissed. Since recent military success made it seem that Ferdinand would have no more need of his Bohemian general, he sacked Wallenstein on August 13, 1630. That weakened Ferdinand just as the threat of launching an Imperial navy into the Baltic, and offers of French gold, provoked *Gustavus Adolphus* to enter the German war.

Wallenstein retired to his estates and waited. He was recalled after the Imperial and Catholic League armies were routed by Gustavus at *First Breitenfeld* (1631). With Vienna threatened, Wallenstein negotiated exceptional terms of pay and command, extracting huge concessions from Ferdinand. He was reinstated in fact in December 1631 and formally confirmed in April 1632. His extraordinary power and ambition, combined with Ferdinand's debilitating political and military weakness, would prove to be Wallenstein's undoing. For the moment, however, his eye was on the great champion of Protestantism descending from the north with a powerful Lutheran army. Blind with ambition, Wallenstein did not appreciate the envy and malice of Catholic nobles to his strategic rear, who were already planning his demise.

To stop Gustavus from marauding over Bavaria and divert him from advancing on Vienna, Wallenstein did an exceptional thing: instead of moving into Bavaria to seek battle he maneuvered against the weaker member of the Swedish alliance, the Saxon Army, then active in Bohemia. That left the road to Vienna open to Gustavus but placed Wallenstein's force behind the Swedes, cutting their lines of communication and supply should they continue south even as he chased the Saxons from continuing their destructive *chevauchée* through Bohemia. After coercing *Maximilian I*, Elector of Bavaria, to join his forces to the Imperial Army, Wallenstein moved farther north into Saxony itself. This forced Gustavus to fall back to the crucial crossroads town of Nuremberg. Instead of fighting, Wallenstein dug in parallel to the Swedish lines, then deployed his superb Austrian and Balkan light horse to harry their foraging parties in a low-level strategy of attrition. Within two weeks Gustavus was provoked into making a rare mistake: an ill-conceived frontal attack that was fairly easily repulsed, and which cost the great Swede more in reputation than in military losses. As Wallenstein put it: ''The King has blunted his horns.'' In a vain effort to lure Wallenstein out of his fortified defenses, Gustavus moved back to Bavaria. In a master stroke of war-of-maneuver, Wallenstein turned north into Saxony, once more checking the southern advance of the Swedish Army by compelling it to follow him northward away from the core Habsburg lands and capital, to waste instead Protestant Saxony. There followed an extraordinary set of marches and countermarches by the two main armies, as well as several smaller and allied forces. The campaign saw a small action at *Alte Feste* (1632) before culminating in the one near-decisive battle of the Thirty Years' War at *Lützen* (1632). Wallenstein was badly beaten by Gustavus: he lost his artillery, baggage train, and thousands of men. But the great Swedish general died of multiple wounds received while leading a cavalry charge into the Imperial flank. This one death nearly counterbalanced thousands of Imperial dead and almost made Lützen an Imperial victory.

Wallenstein rebuilt the Imperial Army in 1632–1633, adopting as many of the Swedish reforms as his troops could absorb, notably returning to a *shock* role for cavalry, thinning infantry ranks, adding lighter field artillery, and filling out the ranks of the *tercios* with more musketeers. While Wallenstein skirmished and maneuvered, he also intrigued with Catholic and Protestant powers alike to hire out his services and army. More crucially, he plotted to forge an alliance that might force Ferdinand to make a peace that took no cognisance of the Emperor's Catholic crusade and personal sense of religious mission. To his later admirers, Wallenstein was readying to end the war by creating a unified and tolerant Germany. Or perhaps he really sought the symbols as well as the substance of power for himself, as emperor? In any case, spies informed Ferdinand of the general's secret talks and he determined to finish Wallenstein for good. Reinforcing the decision was the fact that Spain was readying to enter the German war but would not accept Wallenstein's core demand that he alone have supreme command of all Catholic troops.

In January 1634, Ferdinand secretly removed Wallenstein from office, declared him outlaw and traitor, condemned his hiring of Protestant officers, and ordered his arrest pending a planned judicial murder. Wallenstein learned of the secret orders and fled toward the Protestant lines. He sent word ahead to ask for sanctuary, but was refused. Escorted by a troop of Irish dragoons whose commander, Colonel Butler, was in secret contact with agents from Ferdinand's court, on February 24 Wallenstein's small party reached the fortress of Eger. It was held by two Scottish officers who had served him for years, Colonel Gordon and Major (later Field Marshal), *Walter Leslie*. That night, Butler drew the Scots into the conspiracy. The next evening, after dining with their victims, the dragoons slew Wallenstein's close companions. Butler, Gordon, and Leslie, and a French mercenary captain, Devereux, entered Wallenstein's bedchamber. Devereux struck the first blow with a halberd; the others joined in, hacking Wallenstein to death with their swords. *Ferdinand III* replaced him in nominal command of all Habsburg forces.

Suggested Reading: Golo Mann, *Wallenstein* (1976).

Waller, William (1597–1668). English soldier. He gained military experience under *Graf von Mansfeld* while fighting in Germany. When the *English Civil Wars* broke out Waller accepted a colonel's commission from Parliament. He lost his entire army of 4,500 to *Ralph Hopton* at Roundway Down (July 13, 1643). He recruited another army and destroyed a garrison at Alton (December 13, 1643). The next year he beat Hopton at Cheriton (May 29, 1644). A month later he was beaten by *Charles I* at Cropedy Bridge (June 29, 1644). Waller was active in training the *New Model Army* but later opposed *Oliver Cromwell*'s abuse of the Army to set up a military dictatorship. He spent several years in prison during the Republic.

Wallhof, Battle of (1626). See *Gustavus II Adolphus*.

Walsingham, Sir Francis (c.1530–1590). Secretary of State to *Elizabeth I*. A zealous Protestant, he spent the years of *Mary Tudor*'s reign in prudent exile, returning to serve the young Queen Elizabeth upon Mary's death. His foreign contacts—he had spies in every important court—enabled him to act essentially as head of Elizabethan intelligence. He served as ambassador to France in the 1570s and was in Paris during the *St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres* (1572). His diplomatic experience did not teach him statecraft, however. Where the Queen vacillated to strategic purpose, he lunged ahead with full confessional passion and never understood the subtlety or excellence of her policy. Yet hers was by far the more prudent and successful course. His real value was in keeping the Queen alive in face of over 20 plots to kill her. It was Walsingham, even more than *William Cecil*, who ferreted out the conspiracy that finally persuaded Elizabeth to send *Mary Stuart* to the block. Walsingham also pushed hard, though without success, to alert Elizabeth to the gains Spain derived from its American empire. He hoped to counter those advantages by providing state support to various colonization schemes. In that, at least, he was ahead of the Queen and the county: serious English colonization in North America did not begin until after 1603.

Wanli Emperor (r.1573–1620). Né Zhu Yijun (1563–1620). Ming emperor. His reign was most notable for the "Three Campaigns" he conducted to deal with the old *Mongol* and new *Manchu* threats. The first campaign put down the Yang Yinglong Rebellion, which began in 1587 in southwest China and ended with a slaughter of the rebels in 1600. The second dealt with a minor rebellion in the Ordos region led by a rebel Mongolian officer, Pubei. It ended in a siege of Ningxia, after which Pubei burned himself alive. The third campaign was in Korea, 1592–1598, where Wanli sent Ming armies to block two Japanese invasions ordered by *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*. Domestically, under Wanli there was great ossification of the central government and scholar elite. Endemic corruption and a rigid *Confucianism* was unable to adapt the traditional rural economy to an expanding population. This crisis was aggravated and personified by the progressive isolation and state of unreality of Wanli himself. Once responsible and keen, as he aged Wanli increasingly shirked his duties, retreating into a semi-private and monkish life of study and reflection in the Forbidden City. As he withdrew from effective rule, China's government was left to corrupt advisers and 10,000 palace eunuchs. After Wanli's death Confucian scholars launched the "Donglin" reform movement to try to curb eunuch power, but this effort was violently crushed by the eunuchs from 1624 to 1627.

war at sea. The Ottoman Empire built an impressive *permanent navy* that dominated the eastern Mediterranean by the 15th century while their nominal tributaries, the *Barbary corsairs*, contested for domination of the western Mediterranean with the navies of Venice, Portugal, and Spain. China had an extensive blue-water fleet before 1500 but abandoned the seas by 1536 and thus fell ever further behind Europe in naval technology and

capabilities. It was the unique accomplishment of much smaller European societies to construct global maritime empires in the 16th–17th centuries. This was mostly a private activity: the concept of ''navy'' did not exist in medieval Europe and caught on only slowly in early modern Europe, when the term still referred to the whole shipping complement of a city or country, with just a handful of ''the king's ships'' added. Only *Henry V* among medieval kings of England had a *Royal Navy*. French kings from the 14th century and Castilian and Portuguese monarchs in the 14th–15th centuries committed real resources to building royal fleets of warships, assembling *maps* and *portolan charts*, and maintaining shipyards and docks. But it is important to remember that prior to the 16th century there was not all that much difference between armed merchants and warships. This meant Atlantic states mostly relied on conversion of private warships to public purposes in time of war, as *privateers* or impressed ships and crews. Mediterranean states were far more advanced in purpose-built warships. For example, the merchants of Venice maintained a sophisticated galley navy for many centuries, as did their main rivals in Genoa.

Battles at sea were few and far between in this period and almost never decisive. They usually occurred when a fleet of privateers or other warships intercepted a convoy of armed merchants and the convoy tried to fight it out or, more often, fought back while it ran and was chased. Even colossal battles with much loss of life such as *Sluys* (1340) and *Lepanto* (1571), which wiped out entire national fleets, proved that victory in battles at sea did not mean victory in wars at sea. Far more important was the role of navies in amphibious warfare. This remained the dominant mode of naval warfare in the Mediterranean (such that some historians even refer to the ''Mediterranean system'' of amphibious galley warfare). Amphibious operations also dominated war at sea in the British Isles, Caribbean, Black Sea, and other shallow water or coastal war zones. Only toward the very end of the period did long-distance ships appear of hybrid hull design and rigging that were capable of *cruising* for months at a time. Such ships could and did conduct war at transoceanic distances, and even globally. Otherwise, as Jan Glete demonstrated, in this era ''warfare at sea, its aims, strategies and tactics, were determined by climate, human endurance, and technology.'' The idea of ''command of the sea'' had yet to be conceived, let alone effected in the real world of murderous storms, limited logistics, coastal navigation, and intimidating oceanic horizons. See also *admiralty*; *Almiranta*; *battery*; *battle* (2); *blockade*; *blockship*; *boarding*; *bow(ing)*; *broadside*; *Buckingham, 1st Duke of*; *Calicut, Battle of*; *Capitana*; *capture*; *charter company*; *chase gun(s)*; *Cinque Ports*; *close-fights*; *convoy*; *Diu, Battle of*; *Dover, Battle of*; *The Downs, Battle of*; *Drake, Francis*; *Eighty Years' War*; *Elizabeth I*; *embargo*; *England*; *fireships*; *firing on the roll*; *galley*; *Gibraltar, Battle of*; *Greek fire*; *gun-deck*; *gun tackle*; *Hakata Bay, Battle of (1274)*; *Hakata Bay, Battle of (1281)*; *Hanse*; *haul close*; *haul wind*; *heave to*; *Hormuz*; *Hundred Years' War*; *intelligence*; *Invincible Armada*; *levend/levendat*; *line ahead*; *line astern*; *line of battle*; *muster*; *Navigation Acts*; *Netherlands*; *officer*; *Olivares, conde-duque de*; *Philip II, of Spain*; *piracy*; *Portugal*; *rations*; *Royal Navy*; *royal ships*;

safeguard the sea; *ship-of-the-line*; *ships*; *ship's boys*; *ship-smashers*; *shipyards*; *Sound Tolls*; *"sovereignty of the sea"*; *Spain*; *swivel gun*; *Teutonic Knights, Order of*; *"tunnage and poundage"*; *turtle ships*; *Walcheren, Battle of*; *weather gauge*; *windward*; *Zatoka Swieza, Battle of*.

Suggested Reading: Carlo Cipolla, *Guns, Sails and Empires, 1400–1700* (1965; 1996); Jan Glete, *Navies and Nations* (1993); John Guilmartin, *Gunpowder and Galleys* (2003); John Hattendorf and Richard Unger, eds., *War at Sea in the Middle Ages and Renaissance* (2002); Frank Howard, *Sailing Ships of War 1400–1860* (1979); N.A.M. Roger, *The Safeguard of the Sea: A Naval History of Britain*. Vol. 1 (1997).

War Between the Courts. See *Japan*.

war by diversion. A strategy or policy of indirect attack on an enemy's interests so as to divert him from pursing aggressive policies of invasion and occupation of one's own or an ally's territory. This strategy was largely dictated by the inability of any party to raise armies large enough to dominate a given territory, for instance, Germany during the period of Swedish intervention in the *Thirty Years' War* from 1630 to 1635. See also *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *Wallenstein, Albrecht von*.

war chest. "Kriegskasse." Prior to the development of modern economies and systems of taxation and expenditure, national leaders literally kept chests of gold and other precious metals to finance their wars. This practice contributed to "bullionism" and related mercantilist policies. See also *contributions*; *prisoners of war*.

war cries. See *battle cries*.

war dogs. See *Cortés, Hernán*; *Hunderpanzer*.

war elephants. See *elephants*.

war finance. During the *feudal* period in Europe, military service was generally contracted through a system of vassalage (*servitium debitum*) of *knights* and *men-at-arms*. By the 13th century, however, this system was rarely able to raise a sizeable army. This fact, along with the "commercial revolution" underway in society in general, new taxes and other sources of royal revenue, and *scutage* or commutation of vassal military obligations with money payment, all contributed to a shift to paid military service. Italy, England, and France led the slow but inexorable shift to a wage-based soldiery made possible by a dramatic expansion of population and the return of a money economy, combined with a newly literate clerical class that allowed governments to tap into the new economy. In turn, this new system of war finance led to a progressive increase in the size of armies and

. . . the principle of war finance in Europe was . . . "war should pay for itself."

navies and in expenditure on war, from garrisons to field armies and *galleys* to *galleons*, such that on average 50 percent of public revenues were fed into the maw of war. The costs of war quickly outstripped the new tax systems and sources of monarchical revenue. From the 14th to 17th centuries, with rare exceptions, the principle of war finance in Europe was *bellum se ipse alet* (''war should pay for itself''). In this way, relentlessly bellicose monarchs, warrior aristocracies, and early modern states all sought to export the costs of war to the rural population and cities of their enemies. As payment for military service displaced feudal aristocratic levies with expensive *mercenaries*, the costs of war rose to staggering heights. This placed enormous administrative and tax pressures on governments. Often these costs could only be met by waging war to gain access to new markets, subject populations, and land and tax revenues. In this sense war did not just pay for itself, it begat itself.

Austria and the Holy Roman Empire

In wars along the Austrian frontiers local troops were rewarded by allowing them to take booty as compensation. For larger wars in Italy or with France, the Imperial Diet might provide some troops. Others were raised with revenues from the Habsburg hereditary lands, and Imperial loans were provided by the *Fuggers*. Habsburg finances were more precarious during the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648), so much so that *Ferdinand II* essentially relied on private contractors to sustain his war effort in accord with the principle cited above, ''bellum se ipse alet.'' Military entrepreneurs, most importantly *Albrecht von Wallenstein*, raised the men and the money needed to field armies from forced *contributions*. This made Wallenstein effectively independent of Ferdinand. Matters were not helped by the fact that the now bitterly divided German *Estates* refused to vote war taxes for the Empire or to Ferdinand, whom they distrusted. Devolving military obligations to the *Reichskreis* did not solve the problem either, since the Imperial Circles were hobbled by confessionalism and princely rivalries. Much changed after Wallenstein was assassinated in 1634. In the *Peace of Prague* (1635), the Estates agreed to pay regular war taxes in lieu of forced contributions. While this provided for most Imperial garrisons it did nothing to make possible offensive war. Field armies were partly supported by revenue from the Habsburg hereditary lands and continuation of the contribution system on a more limited scale.

China

The Chinese had the most advanced bureaucratic state anywhere in the world in this period and were able to finance their wars through a reasonably efficient general tax system. They used these revenues to pre-stock armories, purchase warhorses from as far away as Tibet, run Imperial breeding stables, stock Imperial granaries, store armor and weapons, finance cannon foundries, and pay their troops. In addition, *Hongwu* set up Ming military colonies astride the *Great Wall*, and elsewhere, that were expected to be self-sustaining through farming, trade, and light manufacture. Over time, independent trade and other economic activity, and distance from the capital,

reduced the purely military character and effectiveness of Ming garrison towns while intermarriage with frontier nomads limited their political reliability. That said, Ming China's main military problems were not financial: they were more social, political, technological, and geographical in origin and effect.

England

Under the feudal system military service was determined by a quota (the *servitium debitum*) of knights and other fighting men owed by vassals in fulfillment of their obligation to military service. From the 13th century onward a royal summons of this obligation was never enough to raise an effective army in England. Newer infantry units were formed using increased customs revenues which grew as the monetary economy recovered, and in part with *scutage*. After 1270, a new form of contracted military (and other) service emerged called *indentures for war*. This resulted from the slow degradation of overlordship feudalism in the preceding two centuries. The new system, sometimes called "bastard feudalism," relied on a written contract ("indentures") and money payment for services. This proved highly efficient in raising armies for foreign wars. "Bastard feudalism," however, also permitted the raising of private armies and thus eroded the authority of the English monarchy and the rule of law. During the first phase of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453), *Edward III* had normal revenues on the order of £35–40,000 per annum. But a single *chevauchée* or siege lasting three months might cost £60–70,000, while his naval costs were additionally burdensome. Direct taxes were sometimes raised to pay for foreign wars but only by Edward III and later kings acceding to an unsteady, but still progressive, expansion in the say of the landed and merchant classes over national policy. In a rough sense, English democracy was the bastard child of England's wars, delivered in blood and suffering after several centuries of tormented labor. This trend was accelerated dramatically when Parliament raised taxes on its own authority to make war against the king during the *English Civil Wars*. The costs of the *Royal Navy* were originally paid by shifting the burden to shipowners, largely through failure to compensate them for use of their ships and crew. Then a "*tunnage and poundage*" duty was levied. Finally, naval costs were partly covered by an annual sum called the *Ordinary*. Even with all that, into the early 17th century English naval power was largely in private hands: *pirates* and *privateers* carried the war to the enemy for their own profit and that of investors (who often included the monarch). It was not until the 1640s that John Pym and Parliament created an advanced military finance system of direct taxes and dedicated customs revenue.

France

Feudal forms of military service were used throughout the 13th century, with towns paying for units of infantry that supplemented an unusually large body of knights raised in the old way. Religious houses also had military

obligations to the French crown. In the 13th century, the Capetian monarchs began to make use of wages (''vadia'') to hire specialized infantry. Some frontier garrisons also served on salary. By the early 14th century wages to knights were being disguised as feudal obligations (''fief de chambre''), as for many decades the old feudal and new wage systems coexisted uneasily. The money system led to a dramatic increase, perhaps as much as fourfold, in the size of French armies in just over 100 years. French kings drew funds from the *taille*, an annual land tax that fell mostly on the peasantry, and the gabelle, a salt tax that was unevenly applied. In 1555 the *taillon* was expanded from towns to the peasantry in order to pay for the Italian Wars of *Henri II*. The nobility were exempt from most taxation but were pressured to meet the demands of the *arrière-ban* through military service or payments in lieu thereof. Also in 1555, a new system of royal borrowing was set up: the *Grand Parti de Lyon*, which piggybacked on Lyon's four large annual fairs by offering long-term contracts to merchant bankers. This led to royal bankruptcy within just two years, as Henri borrowed far beyond his means. The expanded taillon came to an effective end in 1559 upon the King's death.

The *French Civil Wars* (1562–1629) hence were significantly extended by the fact the monarchy was crippled by debt and a deserved reputation as an untrustworthy borrower. Even in peacetime the army consumed 40 percent of royal revenues. In wartime, a single month's military expenditure might equal three years of peacetime spending. Nor could the crown collect taxes from rebel towns or devastated provinces. *Huguenot* finances were also hand-to-mouth. They relied on donations from the faithful, heavy borrowing, sale of confiscated Catholic benefices and church property, collection and confiscation of royal taxes in Huguenot towns and across the Midi, and profits from Rochelais privateering. This fiscal weakness of each side put a premium on fast rather than successful campaigns. Throughout the civil wars, one-half of all royal revenue went to waging war on land, and naval commitments were even more expensive than land warfare.

Fifty years later, under *Cardinal Richelieu*, the French tax system was reformed and centralized, permitting collections that sustained French armies and those of anti-Habsburg allies such as Sweden. This income was supplemented by selling bastardized titles and public offices (''droits aliénés'') to eager social climbers from the middle classes. The French economy was also larger and more prosperous by the mid-17th century. During the Thirty Years' War, France, like other belligerents, relied on contract mercenaries to raise forced contributions to pay for themselves. However, the areas it occupied were too small to sustain large armies or were already eaten out and plundered. France thus relied more than other large states in the mid-17th century on direct taxes. The spectacular increase in war taxes that resulted in the 1630s and 1640s led to deep resentment that at times threatened France's war effort. Upon victory in 1648 this anger finally exploded into widespread rebellion (''The Frondes'').

Italy

The city-states of central and northern Italy pioneered the post-feudal system of wages for military service for citizen militia and in hiring mercenaries. These became known by their contracts, or ''condotta,'' as *condottieri*. Contract mercenaries dominated Italian warfare through the *Italian Renaissance* and continued to be active into the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559), paid from the rich revenues derived from the spice trades and urban commerce. After the French invasion, however, Italian city-states seldom controlled their own military policy or financing.

Mughal Empire

The Mughals ruled a vast and wealthy empire with a military sustained by a mixture of quasi-feudal levies of cavalry and an advanced bureaucracy and taxation system that allowed them to man garrisons, build military roads, and fight protracted campaigns in Central Asia and against the *Marathas* and *Rajputs*. It is worth remembering that India in this period was considered a land of fabulous wealth, which meant in practice that Mughal military and social elites lived high at the price of huge tax burdens borne by a destitute peasantry.

Muscovy

Early Russian military weakness was rooted in its splintered landholding, ''udel,'' or appanage system, which kept each local prince weak. This changed under *Ivan III* in the late 15th century. He introduced *servitor* cavalry, horsemen recruited from a new landholding elite seeded over the countryside in exchange for several months per year of military service. *Ivan IV* set up a servitor palace guard of infantry musketeers, the *strel'sty*, in 1555. They were exempt from the elevated taxation which Muscovites were increasingly forced to pay to support the new military formations. The crisis of the Muscovite service state came during the *Oprichnina* and the *Smutnoe Vremia*, when expansion to the west was blocked so that the state could not fulfill its promises of new land made to servitor soldiers.

Netherlands

The Dutch were the only European nation to raise sufficient taxes at home to pay for their wars, which were fought mainly on their own territory in this period and at sea. That feat is all the more remarkable given that the northern Netherlands was at war with Spain for eight decades. This singular success rested on the most advanced early capitalist (modern) economy in the world. The Dutch also had a sophisticated tax system and a federal governmental structure, disguised as a confederation of provinces, that permitted revenues generated by populous and prosperous core provinces such as Holland to be spent on perimeter defense and fortification of the lesser sisters of the system. The Dutch supplemented tax and customs revenues with lucrative privateering, including occasional interception of lone Spanish treasure ships from the Americas, and once, the whole treasure fleet. Dutch merchants and

bankers were so prosperous by the mid-17th century that they made large war loans to other belligerent allies.

Ottoman Empire

In the 14–15th centuries, the Ottomans made heavy use of light cavalry *akincis* paid only in booty. Their *Tatar* allies also survived on booty. During the 16th century, the Ottomans engaged a standing and salaried army as well as a well-developed *magazine* system (''menzil-hane'') supported by a special grain tax (*avariz*), innovations centuries ahead of comparable commissariat services in the West. The sultans were also unique in this era in their ability to sustain near-continuous and major land campaigns against the West and Safavid Iran without exceptional tax levies or repeated bankruptcy. Starting in the early 17th century, they levied more often what had been an exceptional military surtax called the *bedel-i nüzul*. The Ottoman military finance system benefitted from the fact that the Empire had lower naval expenses than its rivals (navies were much more expensive than armies). When the Ottomans did fight at sea, as at *Lepanto* (1571), they called upon ships and crews of Barbary vassals to supplement their fleets. This changed in the 17th century as Western navies pulled ahead in ship design, pushing the Ottomans to spend more just to keep pace.

The Ottomans also had to build, and overcome, the new *alla moderna* fortifications. Again, they were unique in controlling fortification costs by utilizing regular troops as military laborers: digging was something few Western soldiers would do without extra pay. Along the frontiers, especially in the *Militargrenze*, costs were kept low by relying on local auxillary troops such as *Voynuqs*, and taking advantage of difficult terrain with minimal fortification. Real money was laid out only for the most vital garrisons, such as at Buda or Mosul or Baghdad. The sultans spent lavishly from taxes on the *Janissary Corps*, but they also kept these troops limited in number. Much of their army remained *sipahis* and *timariot* cavalry paid from land revenues. Military expenditures were made from an Inner Treasury reserve which gathered all revenues from rich provinces such as Egypt, then dispensed funds to an Outer Treasury that paid ongoing expenses in other provinces of the Empire.

Safavid Iran

The Safavids relied initially on traditional feudal cavalry raised by tribe and paid for by local warlords in return for land grants. The creation of a standing army by *Abbas I* changed that. His new cavalry, infantry, and artillery units were paid from royal revenues. As with comparable military reform monarchs in Europe, Abbas was forced to modernize Iran's tax system to concentrate revenue at the center. This entailed loosening the grip of the old religious elite, the *Qizilbash*.

Spain

During the later *Reconquista*, Castile drew upon an exceptional war tax approved by the popes: the *cruzada*. After 1492, the monarchy kept the cruzada

in place while drawing revenues also from a dedicated sales tax known as the *alcabala*. After 1500, Spain drew rising amounts of revenue from gold and silver mines in the Americas, though this source went into steep decline in the 17th century as more silver was smuggled into Europe outside of Spain's control. The main problem for Spain was that the monarchs suffered repeated bankruptcy born of too many wars with too many enemies, fought for too little gain over too many decades. Spain's agrarian and ranching economy never produced much surplus revenue to be taxed and the inflow of American silver drove inflation ever higher.

Spain never solved these basic problems but it managed them perhaps better than its repeated bankruptcies make it appear. It did so by floating state loans, with new loans coerced from bankers already overexposed to the king's prior bad debts. And it imposed basic military costs on the areas where its troops were billeted, in Italy and the Netherlands. Spain was able to borrow heavily on capital markets despite its repeated defaults since it controlled much of the territory where Italian and other Mediterranean bankers operated. The threat of a total default on old debt coerced bankers to throw worse money after bad in exchange for some payment of interest (usually, at 5 percent, reduced from original rates as high as 20 percent). Like French kings, Spanish monarchs raised funds through the sale of titles, offices, and monopoly charters for overseas enterprises. Unlike France, Spain squeezed *conversos* for loans tied to promises of eased restrictions on their civic freedoms and extracted vast funds from the sale of properties confiscated from Jews persecuted by the *Inquisition*. Well before the end of the Thirty Years' War, however, most of these sources had dried up. *Olivares* thus tried to extract more taxation from Aragon, Catalonia, and Portugal, but this only provoked serial rebellions and hence created more battlefields on which to spill Spanish blood and treasure.

Olivares . . . *created more battlefields on which to spill Spanish blood and treasure.*

Sweden

Swedish war finance in the 17th century may almost be reduced to a singular proposition: the Swedes were able to get other belligerents to pay for their armies and wars. France provided over 300,000 thalers per annum, on average, from 1630 to 1648. Forcibly allied German principalities like Brandenburg and Saxony also provided subsidies, while occupied territories in Germany provided vast "contributions." Swedish taxes never paid for more than 5–15 percent of the cost of the German war, which was entered into in good part to make a profit for the impoverished northern kingdom. Sweden also received significant revenue from customs duties leveled on the rich Baltic trade: to that end, the earlier capture of Riga by *Gustavus Adolphus* was a key moment in Swedish martial and imperial history. In the last years of the German war Sweden fell badly into arrears despite these foreign subsidies. Among its essential goals in talks leading to the *Peace of Westphalia* in 1648

was obtaining a huge ''indemnity'' (20 million thalers) to pay off its veterans, who were mostly non-Swedish mercenaries by then. Sweden finally settled for 5 million thalers and the peace was agreed.

Swiss Confederation

The Swiss cantons initially raised town and rural militia on an unpaid basis for self-defense and joint defense of the Swiss Confederation. As the Swiss emerged as the pre-eminent infantry in Europe over the 14th–15th centuries, they switched to mercenary service. Making war for profit became their hallmark. This fact was captured in the maxim of foreign princes: ''Pas d'argent, pas de Suisses'' (''no money, no Swiss''). See also *annates*; *appatis*; *bahşiş*; *bullionism*; *carbiniers*; *Crusades*; *esame*; *fusiliers de taille*; *ganimet*; *ishan*; *printing*; *Tenth Penny*; *terakki*; *war chest*; *ziamet*.

Suggested Reading: Richard Bonney, *The King's Debts: Finance and Politics in France, 1589–1661* (1981); J. Collins, *Fiscal Limits of Absolutism* (1988); C. Finkel, *Administration of Warfare: Ottoman Military Campaigns in Hungary, 1593–1606* (1988); P. Hamon, *L'argent du roi* (1994); M. Hart, *In Quest of Funds: Warfare and State Formation in the Netherlands, 1620–50* (1989).

war hammer. A short-hafted weapon with a hammerhead tapering into a spiked tail. It was not widely used, principally because better close-in weapons were readily available. A 13th–14th century war hammer of Swiss origin had some success. In combat the Swiss war hammer was swung as a club, but it could be thrown as need or opportunity arose. In addition to close combat, it served the Swiss as a construction tool in making defensive earthworks and palisades (*Letzinen*) or pitching camp. Polish nobles sometimes carried war hammers, but in general Polish cavalrymen preferred swords. In the 16th century war hammers enjoyed renewed popularity in Europe, but more as affect and decoration than as a real weapon. See also *polearm*.

warhorses. The main association of world historical change with warhorses concerns the impact of the warrior peoples of the steppe on the wider history of the *Oikoumene*. The Central Asian, or Inner Asian, steppe peoples learned horsemanship in their first years (most could ride well by age 5), and learned soon after that to shoot from the saddle with their *composite bows*. Notable among these horse culture migrants were the Magyars. Most famous were the *Mongols*. So dedicated were such warriors to their steppe ponies they were often buried together. Other steppe peoples known generically as *Turks* were as horse savvy and dangerous to settled societies as any Magyar or Mongol. Cavalry power was the basis of the ascendancy of the *Seljuks* and *Ottomans* over older and long-established Muslim and Christian populations of the Middle East and Balkans. Horse soldiers overran much of northern India in the 11th–12th centuries, where Mongol-Turkic skill in mounted archery and use of stirrup and composite bow was unmatched by native Indian horsemen or military technology. Comparable in horsemanship and military skills to the steppe ''horse peoples,'' but settling in the Caucasus and Ukraine later and

arising from a different ethnic and social origin, were the *Cossacks*. As skilled in mounted warfare as all these peoples, but emerging from a wholly different desert, were the *Bedouin*.

The warhorses ridden by steppe peoples were stalwart little ponies, fleet of hoof and exclusively grass fed. The absolute food limit imposed by the steppe tended to reduce horse size. In turn, that set a burden limit on the rider, his weapons, and armor. That was normally no great trouble since nomads wore little armor beyond *cuir-bouilli* and had no metal industry. Steppe ponies were far hardier and more numerous than the grain-fed horses of China or Europe. They were capable of long-distance riding while placing fewer demands on their masters for fodder and care. Ming China supplied its cavalry with steeds from four sources: the ''tea-horse'' trade, in which Chinese tea was exchanged for warhorses raised in Tibet at a rate of some 5,000 per annum, with occasional interruptions of the trade by Mongol raiders; a state breeding program run by the ''Court of the Imperial Stud'' that produced 3,000 horses per year; private horse markets across rural China that supplied the great bulk of the army's needs, some 25,000 fresh horses per year; and ad hoc purchases of Mongol or other steppe ponies from frontier horse markets for use by border garrisons. Despite all this, Ming cavalry was chronically short of good mounts, a serious military disadvantage when facing Mongol or Manchu equine armies.

Arab warhorses in use in the Middle East, North Africa, and Muslim Iberia were superior breeds to European horses in quality, speed, and endurance. They included fine breeds such as the ''Barb'' and ''Turkmene,'' the latter of Asian origin and introduced to the Arabs by the Seljuks. The most famous Muslim breed was known simply as the ''Arabian.'' When these fleet stocks reached Spain crossbreeding produced the ''Andalusian,'' a breed prized throughout Europe. Arab stables in Sicily and southern Italy produced the ''Apulian'' and other crossbreeds that were fast yet adapted easily to heat and distance. Cavalry empires in sub-Saharan Africa such as the *Fulbe*, *Songhay*, and *Mali* acquired horses from Arab traders and then bred their own. The military limits imposed by the environment on their imperial expansion had to do with the rainforest, which imposed a barrier to African cavalry because it hosted the tsetse fly that bore ''sleeping sickness'' (African trypanosomiasis) that killed horses. But in the flat and semi-arid sudan and the vast sahel grasslands the horse made its owner master of the battlefield, and hence also of an economy of cowering peasants and monopoly trades in salt, gold, slaves, and other caravan goods.

Equestrian warfare by mounted, armored men is closely associated with the history of Medieval Europe. *Heavy cavalry* began its rise to martial preeminence under the Carolingians in France in the 8th–9th centuries. Thereafter, cavalry rose to predominance not just militarily but as a full horse culture: warhorse and rider were central to *feudalism*, *chivalry*, and *knighthood*. By the 11th century, heavy horse was overpowering in nearly every European battle. Up to the 15th century, knights of the first rank rode to the fight with at least three types of specialized warhorses. Most important was the

''dexterarius,'' better known as the *destrier* or main battle horse. It was led to combat by hand and ridden only in *tournaments* or on the battlefield. Like the knight, it too was usually clad in cloth and some armor, and decorated with a coat of arms. In the 12th–13th centuries destriers were clad in heavy padded quilts (''trappers''). By the 14th century a destrier wore mail and plate in combination, with a *chanfron* protecting his head and a *peytral* covering his chest (all destriers were stallions). Controversy lingers over the size of medieval chargers. Andrew Ayton, the expert historian of equine warfare, suggests the typical destrier was ''of the order of 14 to 15 hands in height—not a large animal by modern standards.'' That assessment needs this context: people, too, were much smaller on average than today. The overall effect and impression made by a powerful destrier was therefore still that it was a huge battle horse, first in its class and ''heavy'' by comparison to the normal nags or *hackneys* of town or country life. And like its rider, the appearance of girth and hitting power was enhanced in the charge by its shell of armor and flowing and flapping cloth. The second horse in a knight's stable was a *palfrey*. It carried the knight on the road to battle, thereby keeping the great destrier fresh. Finally, the knight might have one or more pack horses to help his *page* or *squire* carry armor, weapons, and personal comforts. The number of warhorses owned, along with the richness and amount of armor worn, often determined if ordinary soldiers might aspire to gain the status of *men-at-arms*.

Warhorses were carefully bred, highly prized, and very expensive—the equivalent on average of a year's landed income for a knight. This led to systems of reimbursement for warhorses killed or maimed in combat. In Italy this was called ''mendum'' while in France it was known as ''restaur.'' It normally took up to four years to train a proper cavalry mount. International horse breeding and trading markets arose with annual fairs held in all major theaters of war. The horse market, and related crafts and trade, was a major part of the war economy in England and France during the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). There were large-scale breeding programs and importation from Spain and Lombardy. Breeding programs and the general demand for powerful chargers produced the late medieval ''magnus equus,'' or great warhorse. An earlier English breeding program started by *Edward III* has been described by Andrew Ayton as little short of a ''horse-breeding revolution.'' The breed that resulted was taller than all earlier types (but still less than 18 hands) and sturdy enough to carry the weight of its armor and that of its steel-encased master. However, even equine armor did not suffice when facing potent missile weapons such as the *longbow*. It did much more damage to semi-protected chargers than to the armored knights who rode them. Similarly, horses fared badly when facing new infantry tactics built around the *pike* and *halberd*. The response of Europe's warrior classes to this challenge was to dismount and fight on foot, a tactic pioneered by English knights against the Scots and the French and adopted by the French to fight the English at *Poitiers* (1356). The French were back in the saddle at *Agincourt* (1415) only because they overestimated progress made in equine armor and thought it could resist

the longbow; it did not. Milanese knights dismounted to fight the Swiss at *Arbedo* (1422). In eastern Europe, where cavalry warfare survived as the dominant arm into the 17th century, swifter and smaller horses suitable to *hussars* were bred and prized. Poland was famous for such horses, which its kings took great care not to export. In the middle of the 16th century English monarchs also banned the export of cavalry mounts, though this was often evaded in practice by parading the same horse through official countings in different market towns.

Destriers were trained to one purpose: ride without flinching or swerving toward an apparently solid front of other men-at-arms and horses or infantry. The ideal was to pass the front line through with the *couched lance* then put to the sword the remnants of a broken and running formation. This tactic provided the overwhelming *shock* that gave heavy cavalry dominance on the field of battle in Europe for 200 years. Adding to the threatening psychological effect of a charge by heavy horse, the sound of thundering hooves of as many as 2,000 armored warhorses and riders, with lances bent and riding in line with men whooping exhortations and curses, evoked a profound and understandable fear in opposing infantry: a full-throated charge of medieval heavy horse produced the loudest and most terrifying artificial sound heard in the world in that Age. Warhorses charged in this unswerving manner even when facing pikes for the first time at *Courtrai* (1302). If instinct prevailed over training and the lead horses and riders tried to turn aside or hold back at the point of imminent contact, they could not: a turn to the side knocked into other knights in the line while to the rear they were locked in place by a second and even third line of men and horses, pushing blindly forward to mutual impalement on the unmoving, braced pikes. Riders who made it inside the square, still mounted or not, were met by axemen and halberdiers who eagerly hacked hated nobles to death, or sliced a dagger through the visor as a knight floundered in his armor like some ridiculous overturned turtle, or plunged a blade into his unprotected armpit or groin.

. . . medieval heavy horse produced the . . . most terrifying artificial sound heard in the world . . .

From such fights men-at-arms and mounts alike learned that enemy infantry no longer divided automatically when knights charged. Cavalry sometimes loosened formation to better pull back from the hedges of planted and braced spears that did not waver. More often, in the early 14th century they came on in the same old way only to die in the new one, on the points of pikes and finishing axe blows. Later, cavalry learned to send in archers and arquebusiers to disorder the enemy pike square so that the cavalry could ride into the gaps with slashing swords or bone-breaking maces. In sum, infantry tactics built around the pike vitiated shock by heavy cavalry and tipped the balance in battle slowly but inexorably toward massed infantry. Cavalry adjusted, but ultimately the combination of new infantry tactics and armor-piercing weapons made the old cavalry shock attack with heavy lance too dangerous and expensive in noble lives. Once that became clear, mounts were

no longer chosen for their load-bearing ability but for speed and intelligence, so that they could undertake complex tactics like the *caracole*. Thus, smaller and fleeter horses found their way back to the European battlefield. Among other evidence of the change, the new style of cavalry mounts often missed part of each ear, a consequence of riders slashing at the enemy with sabers wielded on either side of the horse's head and flanks. See also *auxiliaries*; *barded horse*; *booty*; *cog*; *courser*; *dragoons*; *engagements*; *fodder*; *hobelars*; *horse armor*; *jinetes*; *Knights Templar*; *lance* (2); *logistics*; *Propositions*; *rouncey*; *sumpter*.

Suggested Reading: Andrew Ayton, *Knights and Warhorses* (1994); John Clark, *The Medieval Horse and Its Equipment, 1150–1450* (1995); Ann Hyland, *The Medieval Warhorse* (1996); Miklós Jankovich, *They Rode into Europe* (1971); Maurice Keen, ed., *Medieval Warfare* (1999); R. Law, *The Horse in West African History* (1980).

War of Cologne (1583–1588). The first successful effort by the *Counter-Reformation* to reverse the protestantization of German states, in this case the recatholicization of Cologne. It marked a new Catholic militancy. Paradoxically, it also evidenced a sense of urgency among Catholics that they were losing the confessional struggle. *Parma* advanced the Catholic cause simultaneously in Flanders and Brabant.

War of Smolensk (December 1632–June 1634). *Cardinal Richelieu* and *Gustavus Adolphus* sought to build an alliance in eastern Europe to drain away Habsburg troops and resources from Germany. To this end they conspired with the Ottoman sultan, with a Transylvanian prince, and with the *Cossacks*. The plan was to launch coordinated attacks on Poland, Hungary, and Austria. It was far too grand a scheme to work: the sultan was bogged down in another war with Iran and the Cossacks attacked Muscovy instead of Poland. When the Polish throne was vacated in August 1632, Muscovy laid siege to Smolensk. The Swedes intervened in behalf of Muscovy but the death of Gustavus in battle in Germany and superior Polish troops and battlefield tactics forced the Muscovites to withdraw. A peace was agreed at Polyanovka wherein Poland renounced all claim to the Muscovite throne but kept Smolensk.

War of the Breton Succession (1341–1365). A local war over the succession to Brittany fought within the larger *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). When the old Duke died without leaving a recognized heir in 1341, France and England clashed over which would put its favored candidate on the throne. The conflict was not settled for over twenty years. Despite the major parties signing the Treaty of Brétigny in 1360, localized fighting continued over the issue until 1364. The next year, in the Treaty of Guérande, France agreed to recognize the English candidate, John de Montfort. Thereafter, the new Duke piloted a neutral course to avoid conflict with either of his giant warring neighbors.

War of the Cities (1454–1466). "Thirteen Years' War." The territorial struggle between the *Teutonic Knights* and the still feudal kingdom of

Poland-Lithuania climaxed in the mid-15th century. Within Prussia economic advances had outstripped political modernization. By mid-century affluent Prussian cities were desperate to escape the economic constrictions imposed on them by the still-feudal economic policies and taxes of the Brethren, and so formed an alliance with the Junkers. This strange alliance was possible because also feeding the rebellion was Junker disgruntlement with the foreign birth of many ''Sword Brothers.'' The leading cities of Prussia (Danzig, Elblag, Torun, Elbing, and Thorn), later joined by 16 other towns, and the Junkers formed the *Preussische Bund* (''Prussian Confederation'') in 1440. In 1452 the Bund appealed to Emperor Friedrich III to mediate their grievances with the Brethren. Instead, early the next year Friedrich ordered all Prussians to submit. This forced the Bund to seek help from the Poles. In early 1454, the Bund secretly asked to be incorporated into Poland. *Casimir IV* signaled that he would support the rebels if they made a public request: his interest was to detach Prussia from the Teutons and annex it to Poland-Lithuania. From February 6, the Bund began taking over and destroying lightly garrisoned Teutonic castles. On March 6 a formal agreement was reached between Casimir and the Bund asserting Polish sovereignty over Prussia and declaring war on the Brethren.

Since most of the Teutonic castles in Prussia had fallen to the rebels even before the war officially started, it was widely expected to be a short campaign. In fact, it lasted thirteen years. Cracks in the Teutonic edifice were offset by initial Polish weakness: despite sharing Casimir as joint sovereign, the Lithuanians refused to send troops or finance the war in Prussia. Other Polish troops were tied down by the threat to southern Poland of a possible Ottoman attack. As a result, an undersized Polish army was sent into Prussia. After a desultory and unsuccessful siege of Chojnice by the Prussians, this force engaged in a major battle outside the city. On the field at *Chojnice* (September 18, 1454) the Poles and Prussians were soundly defeated by the Teutonic Knights, aided by a large band (9,000 horse, 6,000 foot) of German mercenaries. Teutonic victory at Chojnice ensured that the war would go on. The rebels seized most of the Order's arsenals and castles in Prussia, but failed in an effort to storm the citadel and Teutonic capital of *Marienburg* (Malbork). The financial weakness of the Order meant that its Grand Master had to promise the mercenaries control of Prussian cities in lieu of wages. Still, the Knights raised small armies from among loyal Brethren outside Prussia and by conscripting their enserfed peasants. While the Prussian towns remained determined to break free of Teutonic overlordship, the larger *Hanse* cities allied with the Knights. Nor did the international situation favor either side: most other powers were preoccupied with their own unsettled internal affairs or other wars, and remained neutral.

The Poles were also forced to hire mercenaries, primarily Czechs and Silesians, greatly straining the royal purse which was light in the best of times. Casimir's repeated call-ups of peasant levies were only agreed to by the Sejm after he made heavy political concessions to the nobility, which started the Polish state down a road that ultimately led to a fatal weakness at the center.

The Poles besieged Lasin in 1455, but again their lack of siegecraft and cavalry-heavy army told against success. As war taxes began to bite into the rebel cities the Teutons enjoyed better luck. Their army was better equipped for siege work, and several towns fell to a combination of internal unrest and external military pressure: Konigsberg surrendered on April 17, 1455, and Knipawa gave in on June 14, 1455. When the Brethren again ran out of money, however, some mercenary captains took Prussian towns for themselves and milked them dry. Several companies also negotiated with the Poles to transfer possession of fortified cities. Now, external powers also intervened: the Holy Roman Empire moved to ban the Bund and the pope threatened to excommunicate any who refused to come to terms with the Teutonic Knights. Denmark declared war on Poland and the Bund but that was largely an empty gesture since Denmark was already engaged in a major naval war with Sweden. Still, this emboldened the Knights, who refused terms to the Poles and rebels. The Poles replied by hiring still more mercenaries from Silesia, more mercenaries from Russia, and even *Tatars* from the Crimea. Fighting resumed, but with both sides suffering internal dissension and bad finances the war settled into a pattern of minor raids and indeterminate sieges.

A Prussian fleet, mostly built in Danzig on orders from Poland, defeated a Teutonic fleet at *Bornholm* (August 1457). As the war lengthened, the fundamental economic weakness of the Brethren was revealed. They were not as rich as in the past and struggled unsuccessfully to meet the payroll of their mercenary troops. In 1457 Bohemian mercenaries garrisoning Marienburg mutinied, sold the fortress to the Poles, and went home. The loss of the Teuton capital should have ended the war but on September 28, 1457, Marienburg was retaken in a surprise assault by the Knights that was abetted by internal treachery which opened its gates before they were forced. In 1458 the Poles invaded Prussia again, employing Tartar auxiliaries, and besieged Marienburg. Yet again the Poles proved incompetent at siege warfare. The campaign collapsed and a cease-fire took effect that lasted nine months, into 1459. The Danes withdrew from the war, an act almost as little noticed as their entry. Pope Pius II tried to mediate peace, hopeful that he could get all sides to join in a new crusade against the Ottomans. The Poles rejected the pope's entreaties and his threats of excommunication (eternal damnation was not what it used to be).

The Knights were briefly resurgent: they defeated the Danzig militia and burned part of the city in July 1460. The fundamental weakness of the Polish recruitment system, based still on feudal levies of peasants and independently minded noble cavalry, became apparent in deep resistance to new enlistment drives. Casimir finally persuaded the nobles to turn the fight over to professionals. That meant raising funds to hire a mercenary army rather than raising peasant levies to be led by amateur noble captains. These harder and more skilled troops crossed into Prussia in 1461. At *Swiecino* (August 17, 1462), the defeat they handed to the Brethren's field army was so sharp that the end of Teuton rule in the eastern Baltic came into sight. Loss of the Brethren's fleet at *Zatoka Swieza* (September 15, 1463) so severely damaged the Order's

maritime interests and profits in the eastern Baltic that the Knights could no longer pay for a war being fought mainly by privateers at sea and mercenaries on land. A complete defeat was only averted by the internal divisions of Poland-Lithuania. Negotiations began at Torun but broke down during 1462. Desultory fighting thus continued through 1465. The Poles made small but steady gains, whittling away at the shrinking domain of the Order until they captured Chojnice (September 28, 1466). Pope Paul II mediated the *Second Peace of Torun* (October 19, 1466) in which the Sword Brothers lost half of Prussia outright and accepted Casimir's suzerainty in the rump lands left to them.

War of the Debatable Lands (1532). See *Henry VIII, of England*.

War of the Eight Saints (1375–1378). Fought between Florence and Pope Gregory XI (1370–1378), and named for the eight priors of Florence. It sprang from concern by the Florentine council to prevent expansion of the Papal States being asked by Gregory as the price of an end to the "Avignon Captivity" of the papacy and his return to Rome. Florence sent agents and troops to provoke rebellion inside the Papal States, prompting a swift papal interdict against the city. To pay for the *condottieri* who were waging its war, from 1376 Florence sold church properties, liquidating sacred assets in a way and on a scale not seen before (and not seen again until the mass confiscations of monastery and other church property during the *Protestant Reformation* of the 16th century in England and Germany). This added an anti-Church dimension to what had begun as a territorial conflict, and that turned the opinion of common Florentines against the war. Flagellants appeared in the streets of Florence in protest against cancellation of Church services, culminating in a full-scale rebellion by the "ciompi" (city laborers) in one of the first urban social upheavals in late medieval and early modern Europe. The city's leadership was also divided by the issue of confiscations, and so Florence asked for terms. In the interim Pope Gregory had died, and the papacy lurched into the bitter and enfeebling controversy of the *Great Schism*. As a result, Florence received better terms from Pope Urban VI than its battlefield failures and internal divisions warranted. See also *Hawkwood, John*.

Suggested Reading: David Peterson, "War of the Eight Saints," in William J. Connell, ed., *Society and Individual in Renaissance Florence* (2002).

War of the Mantuan Succession (1627–1631). In December 1627, the Duke of Mantua died, the last male in the main Gonzaga (Gonzague) line. The best claimant to the succession was the Duke of Nevers, who was heavily backed by France. Spain feared that Nevers would give France control of key fortresses that straddled the main road through northern Italy, so they attacked him in Mantua as well as his home principality of Montferrat, which like Mantua was strategically located in Lombardy. In February 1629, a French army crossed into Italy to aid Nevers against the Spanish. As this

fighting got under way, the Dutch seized the moment to break the ring of Spanish fortresses that had encircled them since 1604. Led by *Frederik Hendrik*, they overran several key Spanish garrison towns from 1629 to 1632. *Ferdinand II* wanted to send 50,000 Imperial troops to aid Spain in Italy but the German princes balked at the idea of expanding their military obligations to Italy and the Netherlands and refused to pay. Ferdinand managed to send a small army which stormed and sacked Mantua in 1630. A ferocious outbreak of plague in northern Italy in 1631 then crippled both sides. Ferdinand wanted to recall his troops to face the Swedish invasion of Germany, so he agreed to accept Nevers as Duke in exchange for a French promise not to intervene in Germany. *Cardinal Richelieu* rejected the settlement, however, so that the war in Italy continued even as *Gustavus Adolphus* landed in Pomerania and Richelieu sent him money to fight Ferdinand for control of Germany. Formally, the Mantuan war ended with the Peace of Cherasco in 1631. In fact, a protracted struggle fought initially in the twilight along the Italian frontier continued to 1635, then broke into the open until final victory was achieved by France in 1659 (Peace of the Pyrenees). See also *Maximilian I*; *Regensburg, Treaty of*; *Wallenstein, Albrecht von*.

Ferdinand wanted to recall his troops to face the Swedish invasion of Germany . . .

War of the Schmalkaldic League (1546–1547). See *Schmalkaldic League*.

War of the Sicilian Vespers (1282–1302). The conflict began as a rebellion in Palermo against rule by the Angevin Empire, starting on ''vespers'' (Easter Monday). Within days, most French in Sicily were butchered by roving mobs. Byzantine Emperor Michael VIII had financed and encouraged leaders of the revolt in secret, hoping to preoccupy the Angevins and forestall any invasion of his own shrunken and vulnerable lands. The Aragonese intervened to press their claim to Sicily. This led to a protracted war between the Angevins and Aragonese over Sicily. Aragon finally won and kept the island under terms of the ''Peace of Caltabellota'' (1302). The outbreak of peace led the *Catalan Great Company* to shift its operations to the fringes of the Byzantine Empire. Some 140 years later, Sicily was reunited with Naples when the latter was acquired by Alfonso V of Aragon in 1442.

War of the Three Henries (1587–1589). See *French Civil Wars*.

warp. To tow a ship with oared boats or by pulleys and ropes (''warps'') along a shoreline or dock.

warrant officer. An army or naval officer who held his rank by virtue of a warrant, rather than a commission; most often a staff officer or functional officer appointed by a regiment's colonel or a ship's captain. Warrant officer

rank was most frequently awarded to chaplains and surgeons, but also to some *corporals*, *sergeants*, and most *quartermasters*. See also *purser*.

"Warring States." See *Sengoku jidai*.

Warrington, Battle of (1648). See *Preston, Campaign of*.

warrior monks. See *Aviz*; *Buddhism*; *Crusades*; *Hospitallers*; *Japan*; *Knights of Calatrava*; *Knights of Christ*; *Knights of Our Lady of Montjoie*; *Knights of Santiago*; *Knights Templar*; *Military Orders*; *Negora Temple*; *sōhei*.

warships. See *ships*; *War at Sea*.

Wars of Investiture (1077–1122). See *castles, on land*; *Guelphs and Ghibellines*; *Holy Roman Empire*; *Italy*; *Papal States*.

"Wars of Religion" (in France). See *French Civil Wars*.

Wars of the Roses (1455–1485). An underlying cause was failure of the sustained effort to hold onto English territories in France during the final phase of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). This was followed by a protracted dynastic dispute between the rival Houses of Lancaster ("Red Rose") and York ("White Rose"), each claiming the throne via descent from *Edward III*. More immediate grievances included the unpopularity of the Lancastrian, Henry VI (1422–1461), and some nobles at his court; the continuing availability to the barony of small private armies; and complex relations with powerful nobles in Ireland and in exile. Ireland itself was valued for its strategic location and as a ready source of cheap troops.

The Wars of the Roses saw sixteen significant battles and dozens of skirmishes and small sieges, none of which were truly decisive. The opening fight came at First St. Albans (May 22, 1455), where Richard of York's 3,000 men defeated 2,500 Lancastrians under Henry VI. There followed four years of uneasy peace. At Blore Heath (September 22, 1459), in Staffordshire, this ended when Yorkist knights under the Earl of Salisbury bested a force of the king's *men-at-arms*. The rebels then hooked up with a larger Yorkist force at Ludford Bridge and moved against Worcester, but fell back when they met a still larger Lancastrian army. At Ludford they spent a cold night waiting on battle, with the Lancastrians drawn up across the river. But too many Yorkist troops deserted during the night and even more fled or switched sides when they saw the enemy in the cold dawn on October 12. The army scattered and the major Yorkist leaders fled abroad, but only to plot a return to power. At Northampton (July 10, 1460), Yorkists defeated the Royal Army when Lord Grey, who was in command of a Lancastrian wing, switched sides in mid-battle. The king was taken prisoner and agreed that the Yorkist claim to the succession should be exercised upon his death. This did not end the fighting: at Wakefield (December 30, 1460) 8,000 Yorkists attacked foolhardily directly

into 18,000 waiting Lancastrians only to lose decisively and bloodily. Several leading Yorkists were executed after the battle, signaling that a new seriousness and ruthlessness of purpose and method had entered the conflict, while also clearing the way for a new generation of noble aspirants and rivals to contest for the Plantagenet crown.

At Mortimer's Cross (February 2, 1461), 11,000 Welsh Yorkists led by the future Edward IV routed a force of 8,000 French, Welsh, and Irish mercenaries fighting for the Red Rose. Edward headed to London where he would be crowned two months later. But first he tried to link with a second Yorkist army. At Second St. Albans (February 17, 1461) the rival armies numbered 25,000 each. The Lancastrians attacked before Edward arrived and joined the Yorkist armies. The commander in his absence was the Earl of Warwick (Richard Neville, ''The Kingmaker''), who fled at the first hint of danger. Warwick even abandoned his hostage, no less a person than the Lancastrian king, Henry VI, whom he left under a tree! Both sides gathered more forces. At Ferrybridge (March 28, 1461), Edward IV's advance guard was isolated and destroyed, but the main force carried the bridge. The next day, at Towton, the enlarged main armies met in battle. The Yorkist army of 36,000 attacked a Lancastrian force of 40,000 in the midst of a heavy snow storm. Edward used a favorable wind to increase the range of his archers and limit that of the Lancastrians, who were thus enticed to leave their entrenchments and charge the Yorkist lines. The fight lasted many hours, seesawing at the center during one of the bloodiest days ever seen in England. The arrival of reinforcements gave the blood-soaked day to Edward: Henry's infantry broke and ran while hundreds of stranded knights floundered and drowned in the River Cock, pulled under by the weight of their armor.

Towton brought three years of peace to England, though the Lancastrians sought and received aid from Scotland and kept the war going in the north. At Hedgely Moor (April 25, 1464), a small Yorkist army of 5,000 men handed a comparable Lancastrian force another sharp defeat, but the Duke of Somerset evaded capture with some survivors and began to raise new levies. Before they were ready, he was attacked at Hexham (May 15, 1464) and his force annihilated. Somerset was captured and beheaded, the first of many Lancastrian nobles to die on the block on Edward's writ. Henry VI was put in a cell in the *Tower of London*. Harlech Castle in Wales held out against Edward until 1468 but the White Rose was victorious, and champions of the Red Rose mostly dead or in bitter exile. It was only fratricidal quarreling among the Yorkists that kept Lancastrian hope alive. Edward IV's choice of wife, Elizabeth Woodville, and his alliance with *Charles the Rash* of Burgundy displeased even his closest supporters and members of his family. Warwick also resented that the king increasingly appeared to want to rule as well as reign. In early 1469 an uprising against Edward began in Yorkshire stimulated by Warwick, who hoped to replace the king with his brother, George, Duke of Clarence. A major fight took place at Banbury (July 26, 1469), also called ''Edgecote Moor,'' in Northamptonshire when a Yorkist army led by the Earl of Pembroke ran into a rebel army maneuvering to link up with Warwick. After a close fight more rebels

arrived and frightened Pembroke's men into fleeing the field. Pembroke was captured the next day and executed.

Edward sent another army to repress a small uprising in Lincolnshire. His men surprised the insurgents at Lose-coat Field (March 12, 1470), so-named because of the number of coats discarded as the rebels took to their heels. Some key Lancastrians were implicated in the rising and forced into exile. Warwick now raised an army in France and crossed to England to force Edward from the throne. Edward fled to Burgundy to raise a mercenary army of his own. In his absence, Henry VI was freed and placed on the throne by Warwick, once again playing the role of the ''Kingmaker.'' The next year Edward landed at Ravenspur with 1,500 Burgundian and German mercenaries, scattered the local defenders (March 14, 1471), and raced for London with Warwick's army close on his heels. Edward seized Henry VI and locked him back in the Tower. Then he turned to meet Warwick at Barnet (April 14, 1471), 12 miles north of London, where the armies fought in a fog-obscured and confused battle. At its end, Warwick was dead and Edward IV held the field and therefore the crown. However, that same day a Lancastrian army raised abroad landed at Weymouth and rallied the western counties to war, raising fresh troops in Wales. At Tewkesbury (May 4, 1471), Edward led an army of 5,000 against 7,000 dug-in Lancastrians. He immediately engaged the enemy, opening with a bombardment from his artillery. The Lancastrians charged the center of Edward's line, mistakenly perceiving a weakness there. The assault was repelled and Edward counterattacked, routing and killing 2,000 of his enemies. This ended the war in Edward's favor.

Upon Edward IV's death in 1483, his 13-year-old son, Edward V, was left vulnerable on the throne. Civil war broke out again after a 12-year hiatus when the Duke of Gloucester deposed the boy king and imprisoned him along with his younger brother, the Duke of York, in the Tower of London. Gloucester claimed the throne as King Richard III and the ''little princes'' were soon murdered in the Tower. This provided the pretext for Henry Tudor to land at Milford Haven in Wales on August 7, 1485, with an army of 2,000 men. Within days, 3,000 more rallied to his banner. Gloucester moved to meet him with an army of 10,000. Another 6,000 stood on his flanks led by the brothers Stanley. The armies met at Bosworth on August 22, 1485. Each side opened with artillery and archery showers. At a critical moment one of Gloucester's lieutenants, the Earl of Northumberland, fled the field. The Stanleys then turned coats on Gloucester and joined their 6,000 men with Henry Tudor's army. Gloucester (Richard III) died fighting for his crown, which he wore into the battle. A soldier picked it up and handed it to Henry Tudor, who subsequently donned it as Henry VII. The Wars of the Roses were effectively over, even if two years later Yorkist rebels crossed from Ireland with several thousand German mercenaries and Irish *kernes* to be defeated by Henry at East Stoke (June 16, 1647). The English gentry henceforth became the solid foundation of the Tudor monarchy. England was at last severed from its long history of continental entanglement (except for *Calais*), and became more clearly a national kingdom and island realm, increasingly English in its

language, culture, and politics. Next would come nationalization of its religion under *Henry VIII* and his daughter, *Elizabeth I*. See also *prickers*; *scourers*.

Suggested Reading: Hubert Cole, *Wars of the Roses* (1973); J. Gillingham, *Wars of the Roses* (1981); Anthony Goodman, *Wars of the Roses* (1981).

Wars of the Three Kingdoms (1639–1651). See *English Civil Wars*.

war wagons. Many late-medieval and early-modern peoples deployed war wagons or some form of portable wooden wall to provide cover in field operations. This was true of the Chinese, Mamlūks, Mughals, Ottomans, Muscovites, and Safavids, all peoples and empires which either frequently fought steppe or desert nomad cavalry or were themselves products of a military culture rooted in mobile horse warfare. On the steppe, cavalry and carts predominated over supply-consuming infantry for logistical reasons: the wagons that carried supplies also doubled as a defensive laager. In Western Europe and Japan, pikes rather than wagons were used to protect infantry archers and musketeers. The Italians had a ''war cart'' called the *carroccio*, but it served a ceremonial and religious rather than military purpose. In the 14th century, sophisticated military wagon-forts—the Hussite *Wagenburg*—appeared in Bohemia during the *Hussite Wars* (1419–1478), spreading from there to Germany, Hungary, Poland, and elsewhere. The *Janissary Corps* was an avid user of war wagons into the 18th century. See also *arquebus à croc*; *Art of War*; *Chaldiran, Battle of*; *Héricourt, Battle of*; *Khanwa, Battle of*; *mutiny*; *Panipat, Battle of (April 21, 1526)*; *Pinkie Cleugh, Battle of*; *Sarhu, Campaign of*; *tabor*; *Uzbeks*.

The Italians had a ''war cart'' . . . but it served a ceremonial and religious rather than military purpose.

wastage. See *casualties*; *desertion*; *disease*; *wounds*.

wasters. ''Guastatores.'' Specialized troops (miners, pioneers) tasked with physical destruction of a enemy's country. This was done as an essential part of the economic warfare of a *chevauchée*, punitive raid, or other scorched earth practice.

weapons. See *Ahlspiess*; *alcancia*; *armories*; *arquebus*; *arquebus à croc* ; *artillery* (and its many cross-references); *atlatl*; *axes*; *balistae*; *bardiche*; *bastard musket*; *bayonet*; *blunderbuss*; *bodkin*; *bolt*; *bombard*; *bombardier*; *bracer*; *bracers*; *brown bill*; *caliver*; *caltrop*; *carbine*; *carreaux*; *cartridges*; *case shot*; *chauve-souris*; *child-mother gun*; *claymore*; *continuous bullet gun*; *corning/corned gunpowder*; *coronal*; *couseque*; *cranequin*; *crossbow*; *crossbow à croc*; *crossbow à jalet*; *cultellus*; *daggers*; *falchion*; *fire*; *fire-lance*; *fireships*; *flintlock*; *garrots*; *gisarmes*; *glaive*; *goedendag*; *Greek fire*; *grenades*; *gunner's rule*; *gunner's quadrant*; *gunpowder weapons*; *hackbut*; *halberd*; *half-pike*; *hanger*; *Holy Water Sprinkler*; *hussars*; *invincible generalissimo*; *Katzbalger*; *Klozbüchse*; *knight*; *kumade*; *lance* (1); *Leonardo da Vinci*; *lochaber axe*; *longbow*; *mace*; *main-gauche*; *masse*; *matchlock*; *military flail*; *military fork*; *miquelet*; *misericord*; *Mordax*;

Morgenstern; *muskets*; *naginata*; *partisan* (1); *pennon*; *pike*; *pistols*; *polearm*; *poleax*; *pots de fer*; *quarrel*; *rawcon*; *rifled-bore*; *Schnepper*; *Schweizerdegen*; *Schweizerdolch*; *shells*; *sling*; *smoothbore*; *springald*; *staff-weapons*; *swivel gun*; *swords*; *tabor*; *Tartaglia, Niccolò*; *ten-eyed gun*; *trou de loup*; *Turkish bow*; *verso*; *volley fire*; *Wagenburg*; *war hammer*; *wheel lock*; *winged-tiger gun*. See also *armor*; *pavisade*; *shields/shielding*; *testudo*.

Suggested Reading: C. Ashdown, *Armor and Weapons in the Middle Ages* (1925); Bert Hall, *Weapons and Warfare in Renaissance Europe* (1997); S. T. Pope, *Bows and Arrows* (1962); William Reid, *The Lore of Arms: A Concise History of Weaponry* (1984); Eduard Wagner, *European Weapons and Warfare, 1618–1648*, S. Pellar, trans. (1979).

wear. To change course in a ship of sail by tacking one way then another before the wind.

weather (1). The direction from which the wind is blowing, which was critical to handling a ship of sail.

weather (2). To move a ship to *windward* of another ship or point of land.

weather, its effect on military operations. See *Agincourt, Battle of*; *Bedouin*; *China*; *galley*; *Hakata Bay, Battle of* (1274); *Hakata Bay, Battle of* (1281); *India*; *Invincible Armada*; *Lithuania, Grand Duchy of*; *logistics*; *Maurits of Nassau*; *Mongols*; *mutiny*; *Nancy, Battle of*; *Ottoman warfare*; *Pavia, Battle of*; *Sekigahara, Battle of*; *slow match*; *warhorses*; *Wars of the Roses*.

weather gauge. Assuming the *windward* position in relation to another fleet or ship. Running on a following wind was critical in fighting among ships of sail as it permitted the attacker to bear down at speed on the enemy, fire his *broadside* guns, then turn away to reload firing rear-facing *chase guns* as he did so. See also *battle* (2); *Invincible Armada*.

weatherly. Said of a ship that handled well. That is, a ship which tended to drift very little when *hauled close*.

Weepers. See *Savonarola, Girolamo*.

Weimar Army. The army of the *League of Heilbronn* commanded by *Bernhard von Sachsen-Weimar*.

Wenden, Siege of (1577). See *Ivan IV*.

Werben, Battle of (July 22–28, 1631). After sacking *Magdeburg*, the *Catholic League* general *Johann Tilly* moved north in search of food and forage for his 22,000-man Imperial Army. *Gustavus Adolphus* blocked his way at Werben, at the union of the Rivers Elbe and Havel, with 16,000 entrenched Swedes. Tilly attacked frontally on July 22 but was repulsed with heavy casualties by

concentrated musket and cannon fire. He attacked again on July 28 and took the same punishment. Leaving over 6,000 dead on the field, he retreated deep into Saxony to collect reinforcements while Gustavus arranged a new alliance with Saxony then pursued Tilly to Leipzig.

Werth, Johann Count von (c.1595–1652). Known in France as "Jean de Weert." Catholic and *mercenary* cavalry general in the *Thirty Years' War* (1618–1648). He served as a young officer with *Habsburg* forces in Flanders in the 1620s. By 1630 he had secured a colonelship and soon also command of his own regiment in the service of Bavaria. He fought well at *First Nördlingen* (1634), and was rewarded with promotion to Field Marshal. Upon the entry of France into the German war, Werth raided deep into Lorraine in 1635 and even deeper into France the next year, reaching as far as the suburbs of Paris and gaining a lasting reputation in France for terror and destruction. His invasion was pushed back to the borders of France, however, by a large army raised and led by *Cardinal Richelieu*. A year later Werth scourged the Rhine Valley. The next year he snatched defeat from the jaws of victory, and was taken prisoner, at *Rheinfelden*. He was brought to Paris, where he enjoyed the comfortable life of a high-ranking prisoner until 1642. Finally exchanged, he regained a command in the Bavarian Army. The next year he fought at *Tüttlingen*, under *Franz Mercy* and against *Turenne*. He also fought at *Freiburg* (1644) and, again under Mercy, took a major command at *Second Nördlingen* (1645). As the war wound down in 1647, he tried to lead his men out of Bavaria—which was seeking a separate peace—and into Imperial service, but most would not follow him: Werth had not yet had his fill of war, but his men certainly had. When general peace came to Germany and Europe in 1648, Werth retired to vast estates gained from his military service. He died in his bed four years later.

Western Army (England). After founding the unified *New Model Army* in February 1645, Parliament retained two other armies: a Western Army and a Northern Army. These, too, were placed under the overall command of *Thomas Fairfax*.

Western Army (Japan). See *Ōnin War*; *Sekigahara, Battle of*.

Western Association. During the *English Civil Wars*, both Parliament and *Charles I* used this name for opposing regional armies operating in the west of England and in Cornwall and Wales.

West Indies Company (WIC). See *Brazil*; *Eighty Years' War*.

Westphalia, Peace of (1648). A set of discrete Treaties of Westphalia named for the demilitarized cities where they were negotiated and signed: two *Treaties of Münster* and the *Treaty of Osnabrück*. The first Treaty of Münster (January 30, 1648) ended the *Eighty Years' War* between Spain and the Netherlands. The

second Treaty of Münster and the Treaty of Osnabrück (both October 24, 1648) framed the general settlement that ended the *Thirty Years' War*, while altering internal constitutional relations of the *Estates* of the Holy Roman Empire to the emperors. The long peace conference at Westphalia did not stop the protracted war between France and Spain which continued to 1659, or the Spanish-Portuguese war which lasted to 1668. But otherwise the agreements reached at Westphalia represented a general and genuine European settlement akin to that achieved at the Congress of Vienna in 1814–1815. It certainly ranks with that settlement in historical importance.

After a preliminary meeting in Frankfurt in January 1643, the first peace envoys arrived in late 1643 to open talks at Münster. Meeting there were representatives of the Holy Roman Empire and France as well as all minor Catholic belligerents and loyal German princes and Estates. Other delegates met in Osnabrück for talks between the Holy Roman Empire and Sweden and all allied Protestant powers and German princes and Estates. All told, 176 diplomats met in Westphalia representing 194 sovereign entities (of which 109 sent their own negotiators while 85 smaller polities shared in other delegations), to frame a general peace to follow three decades of war. They were accompanied by hundreds of lawyers, scribes, and translators. The conference was disrupted for a year by a sharp new war between Denmark and Sweden in which *Ferdinand III* also intervened: *Torstensson's War*. And right through the summer of 1648 campaigning and battles continued in Germany and France. As one tired Catholic delegate put it: ''In winter we negotiate, in summer we fight.''

Imperial Issues

Delegates returned to Westphalia in 1644. On June 11, 1645, French and Swedish envoys presented their first peace proposals and on September 25 the Empire replied. After much argument it was agreed that 1624 would be the *Normaljahr* for settling religious disputes. While that departed from the exclusively German proposals of the *Peace of Prague* (1635), the Westphalian peace accepted other principles framed at Prague and by the *Imperial Diet* of 1640–1641. However, it permanently broke with the Imperial impositions of the *reservatum ecclesiaticum* (1555) of *Charles V* and the *Edict of Restitution* (1629) of *Ferdinand II*. The major treaties were signed simultaneously on October 24, 1648, and ratified on February 8, 1649. They granted war and treaty-making rights to all princes of the Empire, though in practice such apparent sovereignty was limited by a requirement that such acts be compatible with loyalty to the emperor. In short, the Westphalian settlement of internal affairs of the Empire did not apply the same principles as it did to wider international relations. Instead, it returned to an older tradition of customary law reinforced by *Grotian* principles derived from ''natural law.'' Part of the confusion (mainly among modern political scientists) about princely ''sovereignty'' as confirmed at Westphalia is that the French text translated ''jus territorii et superioritas'' as ''droit de souverainité.'' In fact, while the German princes gained real ground vis-à-vis the Emperor, legal sovereignty

did not amount to actual or effective sovereignty. All *Reichsritter* (knights) and most *Reichsstädte* (Imperial free cities) were too small to exercise any legal right of sovereignty. Most in fact aligned with the Emperor, seeking his protection against feral predators among neighboring territorial princes. It was more important that on August 29, 1645, Ferdinand III ceded to the Imperial Diet the *jus pacis et belli*, so that German emperors could never again make war or peace without consulting the Diet and princes. The main victors of the war, Sweden and France, were named formal guarantors of the German settlement. That was short of the status as Imperial Estates they had sought but contained an implied right of intervention in Germany. In practice, at least in the short run, both states were too weak and too internally unstable to intervene, and loathe to exercise their legal right.

Territorial Issues

Paris received title to northern Alsace—an ancient Habsburg province—in exchange for 1.2 million Talers. France also took permanent title to the fortified bishoprics of Metz, Toul, and Verdun which it had occupied in fact since the reign of Charles V. Rostock, Wismar, and parts of Bremen, along with most of western Pomerania went to Sweden as imperial fiefs. The Swedes also received an indemnity of 5 million Talers paid by the Empire (they had asked for 20 million). That was a critical issue as Sweden needed to pay off arrears owed to its veterans, most of whom by then were tough non-Swedish mercenaries. The Empire agreed because it was in everyone's interest to demobilize the ruthless armies still eating out parts of Germany and Europe—no one wanted to repeat the 14th-century experience with *Free Companies*. The Count Palatine was restored to his dignities and a new imperial dignity created to replace the one lost by the Palatinate to Bavaria, which was in turn confirmed as seat of an Imperial Elector (raising the *Kurfürsten* of the Empire to eight). Bavaria was granted full control of the Upper Palatinate which it had occupied for 20 years. Brandenburg received the bishoprics of Halberstadt and Minden while the Hohenzollerns were confirmed in possession of eastern Pomerania. Saxony's claim of Lusatia, which dated to 1635, was also confirmed.

The United Provinces and Helvetian Confederation were recognized de jure as independent states, including by Austria and Spain. The French had hoped to acquire the Spanish Netherlands, Franche Comté, and borderlands astride Catalonia and Italy. But the refusal of Spain to accept a universal settlement left these issues open even after a sharp victory for France at *Lens* (August 2, 1648). Knowledge of French plans to expand into Flanders and dominate central Germany helped persuade the Dutch to sign a truce with Spain in 1647 that led to the permanent peace signed at Münster in January 1648. French plans to smash what they saw as Spanish tyranny and hegemony were thus postponed to 1659, even as neighboring states such as the Netherlands began to suspect France as an emerging threat to their hard-won sovereign independence. Also frustrated was *Cardinal Richelieu*'s grand design, which he had provided after his death as written instructions to French

envoys attending the peace conference. This had called for a system of collective security in which France displaced Habsburg Spain as hegemon in north Italy and Flanders, and replaced Habsburg Austria as the dominant power in central Germany. No one outside France thought those were desirable ends or likely to maintain the general peace.

Legal Principles

Nor could Sweden impose its will within the southern half of the Empire. Stockholm's demand for religious toleration in the Habsburg hereditary lands and return of exiled Protestants to Austria and Bohemia was rejected. It was in any case far beyond Swedish ability to enforce, even with its troops still in Prague in 1648. The great principle of the *Peace of Augsburg* (1555) of *cuius regio eius religio* (''whosoever controls the territory decides the religion'') was abandoned outside the hereditary lands in favor of more general toleration: religious minorities everywhere in the Empire were legally permitted to practice their faith if they had done so in that territory before the Normaljahr of 1624.

The principle of sovereignty permeated the treaties, raising as a new measure of interstate conduct a norm of nonintervention in internal affairs (meaning religious matters). Instead of confessionalism, secularism would dominate a new order in international politics. The pretensions of popes were ignored, including by Catholic princes as jealous of sovereign prerogative as were Protestants. This pragmatism among the Catholic delegates gathered at Osnabrück caused Pope Innocent X to fulminate that all articles affirming tolerance were ''null and void, invalid, iniquitous, unjust, condemned, rejected, frivolous, without force or effect, and no one is to observe them, even when they be ratified by oath.'' No one paid much attention. Rail as the enraged pontiff did, the *Protestant Reformation* and *Counter-Reformation* alike failed to achieve confessional or doctrinal exclusivity in face of a balance of power among secular forces and states. Or, as one Catholic publicist put it in February 1648: ''It is lawful by urgent necessity to enter into perpetual peace with heretics.''

No more would rituals of the Mass or a public oath of some rabid cleric, or a hard religious doctrine or intemperate and rude tract, shake the affairs of nations in Europe. Instead, the Peace of Westphalia codified rules of an emergent secular order, sanctioning in law and legitimizing a rejection long in the making of the transcendent claims of popes and emperors in favor of the ascendant secularism of monarchs and nation-states. It confirmed that a shift had occurred in the balance of power, from the Habsburgs to France (and to a lesser extent, also Sweden). Even if these processes evolved for many decades after 1648, that date still serves as a useful marker of fundamental change in European and world history, politics, diplomacy, and law. The confessional passions that once roused men to war and atrocity were fading with moral, political, and military exhaustion for all but a few unbending fanatics. In the place of religious wars an age of absolute sovereign claims began. With it, the old pattern of international politics donned new dress: Great Powers still lorded it over weaker nations, but henceforth they did so in the name of secular statecraft, of raisons d'etat and balances of power.

None of that was obvious or even intended at the time. The diplomats gathered in Westphalia had their eyes on closer prizes, from this or that territorial annexation or legal title to compensation to pay the arrears of mutinous troops. Even so their accomplishments were considerable. First, they ended the war. Second, they addressed most of the German constitutional conflicts that brought it about and established a mechanism for resolving future confessional disputes short of violence. Next, they provided the necessary conditions for foreign armies to depart Germany, even if this took several more years. Finally, the Peace of Westphalia was sufficiently just that it was accepted by everyone except the pope, and his dissent was no longer of any consequence in worldly affairs. Because the Westphalian treaties became part of the Empire's basic law, and because they were internationally accepted as vital to the new states system, it would be another 200 years before a general European war again erupted out of Germany. If the price for that achievement was delayed German national consolidation and continuing political and military weakness, that too was necessary to avoid another conflagration that had harmed Germans above all others.

. . . [the pope's] dissent was no longer of any consequence in worldly affairs.

Odds and Ends

Westphalia was followed by a conference at Nuremberg that lasted to July 1651. It oversaw payment of wages in arrears to the troops and demobilization of all armies as agreed at Westphalia. This did not always go smoothly: smaller armies were quickly disbanded, but Imperial and French garrisons proved more restless and some mutinied. Sweden, indemnity in hand, withdrew more smoothly at first. But in late 1649, even Swedish troops threatened large-scale mutiny and marauding unless all arrears were paid. On June 26, 1650, Imperial and Swedish delegates agreed to a schedule of troop payments. Even so, Spanish troops remained in the Palatinate to 1653 and Swedish troops stayed in barracks on the Baltic coast of Germany until 1654. It is notable that the two physical and political extremes of Europe—Russia and England—were, during the summer of 1648, the last summer of confessional warfare in Europe, still undergoing purges, revolutions, and civil wars over matters of religious contention. In June, Moscow was wracked by the ''Morozov riots,'' outbursts of rabidly violent piety directed against the boyar retainers of Tsar Alexis. They only frightened him into conducting a bloody purge in the usual Russian style. Meanwhile, the *English Civil Wars* were still raging across the Channel, while the ''Republic of Virtue'' of *Oliver Cromwell* and his Puritan ''soldiers for Christ'' still lay in England's future. The affairs of Russia and England were unaffected by the Peace of Westphalia because those states were not involved in the Thirty Years' War (other than England, briefly, in the 1620s). By the end of the century they, too, would put confessional wars behind them and embrace the ''Westphalian system.'' That occurred just in time for all of Europe to engage in still greater wars that got

underway between secular Leviathans in the second half of the 17th century. See also *Corpus Catholicorum*; *Corpus Evangelicorum*; *Edict of Nantes*; *étapes*.

Suggested Reading: Ronald Asch, *The Thirty Years' War* (1997); Derek Croxton and Anuschka Tischer, *The Peace of Westphalia: A Historical Dictionary* (2002).

Wexford, Sack of (October 11, 1649). *Oliver Cromwell* marched with 10,000 Puritan veterans from the slaughter at *Drogheda* directly to a second massacre at Wexford. His men stormed the town walls, which were too old and inadequate to resist the new English artillery, on October 11, 1649. Once again they put a mixed English and Irish Catholic population to the sword without pity or mercy.

wheeling. See *drill*.

wheel lock. The expertise of clockmakers was drawn upon to replace the *matchlock* with the first nonmatch firing device. A small steel wheel was wound and locked in place against a piece of pyrite. Powered by a spring, release of the trigger spun the wheel to cause friction and raise sparks from the pyrite that ignited fine powder in the pan, which in turn set off the main charge in the breech that fired the projectile from the gun. This made the wheel lock useful for cavalry: several wheel lock pistols could be wound in advance, carried in holsters or belts or stuck in boot tops, and fired at the enemy before the cavalryman had to withdraw to reload. The main drawback was delicacy of the mechanism and the expense of skilled manufacture, which priced it out of the range of infantry and made it suspect among professional soldiers who wanted reliability above all else in their firearms.

Prototypes appeared as early as 1505 and carbines and pistols used the wheel lock in the field as early as 1515 in Styria and in the 1520s in the Holy Roman Empire. Wheel locks were extensively used across Europe from the mid-16th century. Efforts were made to ban the new wheel lock pistol as an immoral weapon because it was too easily concealed in the absence of a burning match. For the same reason, the new pistol became a favorite weapon of highwaymen. *Maximilian I* banned it in 1517 and the Duke of Ferrara followed suit in 1522, but without much effect. German *Reiter* cavalry switched from lances to wheel lock pistols around 1550 and for a few decades enjoyed some success in battle (though they were never highly respected or reliable). French cavalry was more conservative and cleaved to lances far longer. Polish cavalry remained mainly *hussar* in disposition. The wheel lock never achieved the rate of fire of even the matchlock and was quickly displaced once the *flintlock* musket and pistol became widely available. Bert Hall argues that the wheel lock pistol, more than even muskets, finished knighthood in Europe not by dehorsing knights with missile weapons but by wholly altering cavalry tactics. See also *caracole*; *grenades*; *Gustavus II Adolphus*; *musket*; *pistol*.

Suggested Reading: Bert Hall, *Weapons and Warfare in Renaissance Europe* (1997).

Whiggamore Rising (1648). An uprising led by *Argyll* in southwest Scotland and joined by *David Leslie* and the *Earl of Leven*. They took Edinburgh but lost to Monro at Stirling. Argyll asked *Oliver Cromwell* to cross the Tweed and with his help and presence brokered a compromise peace in the brief Scottish civil war.

white armor. ''harnois blanc.'' Dating from the early-to-mid-15th century, this Italian armor was fully articulated. It derived its name once it became fully exposed as *surcoats* and other cloth coverings were abandoned. White armor was not the same as the ''black and white'' armor that appeared in the 16th century. That was armor painted black in places for interests of fashion (on land). At sea, the paint provided protection against salt water rusting. See also *Jeanne d'Arc*; *mail*; *plate armor*; *shields/shielding*; *swords*.

White Company. After the *Treaty of Brétigny* (1360) paused fighting in France during the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453), mixed *Free Companies* of French and English drifted into Italy. The most famous was the White Company which competed with older *condottieri* Great Companies in the wars of the Italian city-states. It was initially commanded by *John Hawkwood* and was notable for bringing the new English methods of war to Italy: unlike the cavalry-dominated condottieri, men-at-arms in the White Company fought dismounted and protected by large numbers of archers. Following a dispute in 1372, Hawkwood resigned command and returned to Florence while his White Company fought for the pope.

White Hoods. ''Capuciati.'' See *routiers*.

White Mountain, Battle of (November 8, 1620). ''Bílá hora.'' Also known as the ''White Hill.'' After inconclusive skirmishing and missed opportunities during the first two years of the *Thirty Years' War*, a Protestant coalition army that included 5,000 Dutch troops sent by *Maurits of Nassau* assembled to defend the Bohemian crown of *Friedrich V*. It met a much greater Catholic army intent on defending the claims and rights of *Ferdinand II* in the first major battle of the war. The Protestant commander was Count *Mathias von Thurn*, supported by *Christian of Anhalt-Bernburg* and *Graf von Mansfeld*. Against them were ranged 30,000 men of the army of the *Catholic League* under *Johann Tilly*, supported by an Austrian contingent under the French general *Bucquoy*.

Thurn, Christian, and Mansfeld deployed on the slopes of the hill called ''Bílá hora'' (White Mountain) astride the road to Prague. On their right was a small castle and to the left a narrow brook with marshes to the front. Tilly ignored these minor obstacles and attacked in force straight into the Protestant center. In just two hours, the Protestants were decisively defeated. Tilly then marched on to Prague. Ferdinand and *Maximilian I* of Bavaria thereafter repressed Protestantism in Bohemia with the full rigors of the *Counter-Reformation*. Nobles were executed or exiled, their lands and titles stripped

and given in reward to loyal Catholics or sold at cut-rate prices to valued mercenaries (including *Albrecht von Wallenstein*). Catholic and Imperial intolerance in the Czech lands helped spread confessional warfare throughout Germany and beyond, but Bohemia was cemented to the Holy Roman Empire and Czechs forcibly restored to Catholicism. The price was a warning to all Protestants of what they would face should Ferdinand win the larger war. See also *Georg, Johann*; *Protestant Union*; *Ritterstand*.

Wiesloch, Battle of (April 27, 1622). Following the Catholic and Imperial victory at the *White Mountain* (1620), the army of the *Catholic League* moved north under *Johann Tilly* to join Spanish troops from the Netherlands and clear Protestantism from the Palatinate. A mercenary army under *Graf von Mansfeld* and *Bernhard von Sachsen-Weimar* moved to block the planned union of the Catholic armies. Mansfeld briefly checked Tilly at *Mingolsheim* (April 22, 1622). Tilly recovered, then stumbled on Mansfeld's rearguard and drove it back onto his main body. A counterattack drove Tilly back in turn. Mansfeld then made the mistake of digging in. Tilly simply marched around him and linked with a 20,000 man Spanish army. These armies clashed again at *Wimpfen* (May 6, 1622).

William I, of Nassau. See *William the Silent*.

William Louis, of Nassau (1560–1620). Dutch: Willem Lodewijk. See *Maurits of Nassau*; *New Model Army*; *volley fire*.

William the Silent (1533–1584). William I, of Nassau. Prince of Orange; Stadtholder of Holland, Zeeland, and Utrecht. His sobriquet arose from holding his tongue on the most controversial religious matters of the day until finally forced to choose sides. William led one of the major noble factions and ''client'' patronage systems in the Netherlands. He moved into clear opposition in 1561 when he married Anna of Saxony, niece of the leading Lutheran prince of Germany. Still, William accepted overt rebellion against *Philip II* only with deep reluctance: his consistent hope was to negotiate a compromise religious settlement in which he and other princes would be the arbiters. The definitive break only came, as for so many Dutch nobles, with dispatch of the brutal and politically inept *Duke of Alba* to the Netherlands. Alba's persecutions and juridical murders sent William into exile to avoid arrest. He was convicted in absentia, all his property confiscated, and his 13-year-old son kidnapped and taken to Spain to be raised a Catholic. William retaliated by raising funds and allies, notably the Palatinate and England, for the revolt of the Netherlands that marked the onset of the *Eighty Years' War*. From the start, William made freedom (''Vryheid'') the watchword of the revolt, insisting on restored local liberties and even modern individual freedoms of conscience and belief. He insisted on a ''Religious Peace,'' which in practice meant toleration of Protestantism in heavily Catholic towns. After his brother *Louis of Nassau* was defeated at *Jemmingen* in July 1568, William invaded with an army

of 25,000 German mercenaries. After several skirmishes, he retreated in the face of Alba's superior generalship and tougher and more disciplined troops. William was not able to return at the head of another large army before 1572. Yet he remained the focus of nationalist aspirations. This was captured in the 1568 Orangist patriotic song the ''Wilhelmus.''

In exile, William was reduced to making small war across the frontier while the *Sea Beggars* operated in the Channel out of English ports under his *letters of marque*. After the Sea Beggar capture of *Brill* (April 1, 1572) launched the ''Great Revolt'' of the Netherlands, dozens of towns invited William to established garrisons. He showed his mettle in directing the critical relief of the *Siege of Leiden* (May 26–October 3, 1574). Following the *Spanish Fury* and the *Pacification of Ghent* he tried to radicalize the Catholic south. Although he failed in this effort he was welcomed into Antwerp and Brussels and resided in Brabant from 1577 to 1583, uneasily trying to stay on a middle road in a country where the north-south gap was widening and ultimately unbridgeable. On May 3, 1579, he accepted the division of the Netherlands and adhered to the Union of Utrecht. He persuaded the States General to invite the *duc d'Anjou* to become the new sovereign, an experiment that ended in disaster. As *Parma* advanced into Brabant, William withdrew to Holland. In 1580 William had been declared outlaw by Philip II; a large reward offer led to many assassination attempts. The final one was successful in May 1584: William was shot dead on the staircase of his home in Delft by a Catholic fanatic.

William was shot dead on the staircase of his home in Delft by a Catholic fanatic.

Suggested Reading: K. Swart, *William the Silent and the Revolt of the Netherlands* (1978).

Wimpfen, Battle of (May 6, 1622). The army of the *Catholic League* under *Johann Tilly* had escaped *Graf von Mansfeld*'s Protestant mercenary army at *Wiesloch* (April 27, 1622), and linked with 20,000 Spanish troops out of the Netherlands. *Christian of Brunswick* failed to link with Mansfeld, as did another Protestant army of 14,000 men under the Margrave of Baden-Durlach. The latter was instead isolated by Tilly's vastly superior army at Wimpfen. Although the German Protestants fought well, a chance explosion of their artillery magazine disrupted the defense. Taking full advantage, Tilly ordered his veteran Catholic troops to charge uphill and overrun the Protestant position, which they did.

Winceby, Battle of (October 11, 1643). *Thomas Fairfax*, *Oliver Cromwell*, and the *Earl of Manchester* joined forces to defeat a Cavalier force in a small cavalry fight at Winceby, Lincolnshire. Their victory temporarily pushed the Royalists from the eastern counties. Cromwell had a horse shot from under him by enemy *dragoons* but lived. Surviving Royalists were ridden down and dispatched without mercy.

Winchelsea, Battle of (1350). See *Hundred Years' War*.

wind. See *haul close*; *haul wind*; *heave to*; *make sail*; *shorten sail*; *wear*; *weather*; *weather gauge*; *weatherly*; *windward*.

windlass. At sea, a large mechanical device comprised of a drum and handles used for hauling and winding rope or cable. On land, a compact mechanical device employing pulleys and a winding handle used for drawing back the string on a *crossbow*. It was introduced in Europe in the 14th century and greatly increased reloading speed.

windward. The direction from which the wind is blowing at any given moment. Havens and harbors were easier to defend if they lay to windward. This fact enormously advantaged England whose entire east coast was windward of the prevailing Westerlies of the Northern Hemisphere. Similar but less spectacular advantages accrued to Denmark, Scotland, and Sweden. Foes of those countries were highly disadvantaged in naval warfare for the same reason. In the Mediterranean, the wind advantage also lay with the westernmost powers, notably the Christian states in their long naval struggle with the Islamic powers of the eastern Mediterranean. However, this advantage was militated against by the fact that to the end of the 16th century Mediterranean fleets were nearly exclusively comprised of *galleys*. See also *weather gauge*.

winged-tiger gun. A three-barrel Chinese gun that came in heavy (infantry) and lighter (cavalry) versions.

"Winter King." See *Friedrich V*.

Winwick, Battle of (1648). See *Preston, Campaign of*.

witchcraft. In the latter Middle Ages in Europe lay piety increasingly took on folk traditions and beliefs, in good measure stimulated by the *Catholic Church*'s teachings about daemonology, possession, and the active intervention of the occult world in daily affairs of this one. In 1480 the Church responded to this popular movement with persecution of accused witches. It is unlikely very many witches actually existed, but belief that witches conducted secret and satanic sabbaths and dark practices was nearly universal, and often also hysterical. Among the Swiss, the *Black Death* provoked mid-14th-century mobs to murderous rages against Jews and against people accused of witchcraft, usually older, poor, single, or widowed women. In the 16th–17th centuries, ''maleficia'' trials and mass witch hunts were carried out across Europe. In Würzburg in 1625 and again three years later, great witch hunts and trials led to perhaps 9,000 women (and some men) being burned by the bishop and courts of the *Inquisition*. In Silesia in 1640, at Niesse, it is thought that 1,000

women were burned as condemned witches. *Ferdinand II* actively campaigned to suppress witchcraft in tandem with his crusade against Protestantism.

Suggested Reading: Alan Kors, ed. *Witchcraft in Europe, 400–1700: A Documentary History* (2000); Brian Levack, T*he Witch-Hunt in Early Modern Europe* (1995); Jeffrey Russell, *Witchcraft in the Middle Ages* (1972).

Witkov, Battle of (1420). See *Hussite Wars*.

Wittstock, Battle of (October 4, 1636). After the crushing Swedish defeat at *First Nördlingen* in 1634, Protestant hopes for military victory in Germany waned. Hoping to finish the Protestant cause for once and all, a German army comprised of 35,000 Imperials, Saxons, and smaller allies moved to Brandenburg to try to crush an isolated Swedish-Scottish army of 22,000 men led by Field Marshal *Johann Banér* and *Lennart Torstensson*. Banér moved his main body directly forward while his Scottish troops maneuvered widely and unseen to the flank and rear of the Catholic position. Seeing an inferior force to their front, the Catholics left their works and attacked. They were thus taken by surprise and enfiladed on three sides as the Scots hit them from the side and rear while Banér charged their center. The Imperials and Saxons together lost 11,000 casualties and 8,000 captured to just 5,000 total losses for the Swedes and Scots. The victory delivered much of Brandenburg to Sweden and reversed the psychology of the German war.

wolf holes. See *trou de loup*.

Wolgast, Battle of (September 2, 1628). While *Albrecht von Wallenstein* was unsuccessfully besieging *Straslund*, the militarily inept *Christian IV* invaded Pomerania. Reinforced by Scots mercenaries from Straslund, he occupied Wolgast. Wallenstein broke off his siege and caught Christian unprepared. The Danes were utterly routed by the Imperials, who then occupied Jutland. The victory allowed Wallenstein to send 12,000 troops to aid *Sigismund III* in his war against *Gustavus Adolphus*. A Polish-Imperial army then bested Gustavus at *Stuhm*.

Wolsey, Cardinal Thomas (1471–1530). See *Cromwell, Thomas*; *Henry VIII*.

women. See *Albigensian Crusade*; *baggage train*; *camp followers*; *casting*; *chivalry*; *civilians*; *Cossacks*; *Crusades*; *dévotes*; *Elizabeth I*; *gabions*; *Hurenweibel*; *Hussite Wars*; *Imperial Army*; *Islam*; *"King's Two Bodies"*; *Knights of Calatrava*; *Knox, John*; *La Malinche*; *Mamlūks*; *Margaret of Parma*; *Medici, Catherine de*; *Medici, Marie de*; *Mary Stuart, Queen of Scots*; *Mary Tudor; Mongols*; *Naseby, Battle of*; *penal settlements*; *Pequot War*; *Philiphaugh*; *pillaging*; *Rajputs*; *Richelieu, Cardinal Armand Jean du Plessis de*; *Scotland*; *siege warfare*; *"skulking way of war"*; *tabor*; *Tenoctitlán, First Siege of* (1520); *Tenochtitlán, Second Siege of* (1521); *Teutonic Knights, Order of*; *Wagenburg*; *witchcraft*; *wounds*.

Worcester, Battle of (1642). See *English Civil Wars*.

Worcester, Battle of (1651). See *Leslie, David*.

worm. A gunner's device used to clear obstructions such as excess wadding from the barrel of a gun.

Worms, Diet of (1495). See *Maximilian I*.

Worms, Diet of (1521). See *Charles V, Holy Roman Emperor*; *Luther, Martin*; *Netherlands*; *Protestant Reformation*.

wounds. Chinese medicine was well advanced in the medieval period with the Middle East probably second in medical knowledge and Europe a distant third. The *Hospitallers* learned much from Arab medicine and served as a conduit of this knowledge to Europe. The main combat wounds that had to be dealt with everywhere were the usual suspects of slashing and hacking weapons, puncture wounds from quarrels and arrows fired by crossbows and various long and short bows, crushed skulls and broken bones from maces and staff weapons, and burns from incendiaries. Men in closely packed infantry formations like the *tercio* or the *Swiss square* were sometimes crushed to death or suffocated by the combined effect of the push of pike from their own rearward ranks and the close press of the front ranks of the enemy, assuming they avoided being skewered on a three-foot sharpened metal tip at the end of an enemy pike. If the hedge of pikes failed to kill the enemy, *axes, halberds*, and various polearms cleaved off heads and limbs, punctured armor and the vitals of the man inside, and slashed open unprotected bellies and spilled out a man's (or horse's) intestines. There was little that could be done to help men wounded in any of these ways. They were dispatched by the enemy (Japanese *samurai* always took their enemy's head) or crawled off to die. Infantry cut about the head and shoulders by a cavalry saber, or a man or boy whose face was slashed open by a misjudged lance blow, had some chance to survive if blood loss was stanched in time and the wound cleaned so that infection was avoided. However, since the source of infection was not known to be unclean wounds, or at least particles smaller than the naked eye could detect and probing fingers remove, infection and death was highly probable from any serious wound.

With the advent of gunpowder weapons, musket balls caused horrific wounds, shattering bones in limbs or splintering ribs as they tore into the chest to perforate organs and spray bone chips inside the cavity. An arrow or quarrel point penetrated more deeply than a musket ball, but unlike arrow tips, lead musket balls deformed on impact to rip out a larger wound or shattered into micro-shrapnel. All arquebus or musket balls carried powder grains, dirt, and filthy bits of cloth from the injured man into the wound to cause sepsis and usually a lingering and painful death. Gun crews were subject to terrible injuries from burning powder forced under the skin when a cannon

misfired or a lighted match or fuse set off a sack or cask of black powder stored near the guns. In 1536, at Milan, a French doctor described one such scene: ''Beholding them with pity there came an old soldier who asked me if there was any means of curing them. I told him no. At once he approached them and cut their throats gently.''

A wound peculiar to master gunners was the ''split thumb.'' This was incurred by the necessity of placing the thumb over the vent during loading and ramming to prevent premature ignition of the wadding or charge. If there was a premature discharge nonetheless, the explosive gasses passing up the vent sliced through the gunner's thumb like a modern acetylene torch, splitting it in two. Although gunners wore leather ''thumbstalls'' for protection these did not always suffice. ''Serving the vent'' in this fashion remained common practice into the 19th century and did not entirely fade from military history until all armies converted to breech-loading guns which did away with the vent. Similarly, certain wounds were peculiar to war at sea where *solid shot* hitting a wooden wall at point-blank range and broadside angle produced huge splinters that exploded inward at high velocity from the inside of the impact point, impaling and terribly wounding men so that they died quickly from loss of blood or slowly from sepsis.

Barber-surgeons were attached to some units in the mid-16th century to treat the wounded. Fifty years later, each regiment in armies following the Dutch system had a surgeon and two assistants. By the mid-17th century adoption of the regimental system in England, two surgeons were assigned per regiment (in theory). Senior officers had access to the best surgeons of the day, which is not saying all that much, but regimental surgeons were unlikely to be at the top of the medical profession. The usual and sometimes the only treatment of a wounded limb by regimental surgeons was amputation. This was not the result of mere incompetence: if a man did not die from lost blood before or during the surgery, to prevent sepsis in a wounded arm or leg spreading to more vital parts amputation was essential; it was also the best way to prevent the deadly curse of gangrene. There was some insight into the role of postsurgical infection, though the practical conclusions drawn were not the happiest. A leading 16th-century German doctor recommended fast amputation with an axe followed by searing the stump with hot pokers and boiling oil. That usually sent the patient into shock, then killed him by promoting infection. The pioneering and deeply humane French surgeon Ambroise Parè instead recommended slow and careful amputation, including tying off severed arteries and most unusually, ordered a regime of rest and follow-up nursing. Whatever the method, no germ theory of infection was known before the late 19th century. This meant surgeons who did not wash their hands or instruments and did not sterilize wounds or incisions almost certainly killed more men by transmitting lethal infections than they saved by surgery.

. . . sometimes the only treatment of a wounded limb by regimental surgeons was amputation.

Most nursing of wounded men was done by soldiers' wives, mistresses, or camp prostitutes, all of whom were found among *camp followers* and in the *baggage train*. German *Landsknechte* had *Feldarzt* and assistants who performed crude surgeries such as digging out musket balls and bone fragments from wounds and carrying out amputations. Surviving amputees usually turned to begging as the vast majority were left without a soldier's pension. This began to change in England from 1643 when in response to *Leveller* and other *New Model Army* agitation Parliament ordered funds raised to support disabled veterans and soldiers' widows and orphans, though in practice the effort left much wanting. After the English Civil Wars military hospitals were founded (Kilmain in Ireland and Chelsea in England) to care for wounded veterans. On the continent, the scale of destruction and despair of the Thirty Years' War simply overwhelmed similar efforts made earlier in Germany. While most combatant powers did little for men on campaign, Spain and the Netherlands provided medical care for their sick and wounded in highly urban Flanders. The Spanish maintained a 330-bed military hospital in Mechelen and had a pensioners' home for veterans at Hall. Ottoman *Janissaries* were relatively better off than European counterparts. Their *Ortas* kept pensioner homes and cared for surviving wounded and for the families of their dead. Wounded men, Janissary or not, were paid injury money (''merham beha'') staggered over five stages according to the severity of the wound. The Janissaries also had a specialized water-bearer corps, the Saka, who doubled as nurses after battle.

For all the suffering and subsequent death caused by wounds, the vast majority of soldiers gave up the ghost to disease, not enemy assault or fire. In addition to the *Black Death* and other plagues, camps full of closely packed soldiers were natural breeding grounds of epidemic diseases. Among these were typhus (''camp fever''), dropsy, dysentery, cholera, deadly influenza viruses, and syphilis. Conditions were much worse aboard warships. See also *hors de combat*; *Jesuits*; *mail*; *springald*.

Wrangel, Karl Gustaf (1613–1676). Swedish general who fought the Danes in 1644. He replaced *Lennart Torstensson* in 1646 and was active in the last two years of the *Thirty Years' War* alongside *Henri de Turenne*. They fought to victory together at *Zusmarshausen* (May 17, 1648) and punished Bavaria for reentering the war. Wrangel fought many later battles against Poland under Karl X and served as regent for Karl XI.

Wu Sangui (1612–1678). See *China*.

Wyatt's Rebellion (1554). A family and Protestant plot to set aside the testament of *Henry VIII* which gave the throne to his Catholic daughter *Mary Tudor*. The conspirators planned to set a naïf, Lady Jane Grey (1537–1554), on the throne in Mary's stead. The coup attempt was foiled and the plotters arrested. Only three executions followed and Mary was soon crowned. However, when she married *Phillip II* the plotters struck again in a more

serious rebellion. Mary coolly handled the crisis and put down the revolt. Accused of complicity, probably falsely, the future *Elizabeth I* was imprisoned in the *Tower of London*. The future *Earl of Leicester* was also arrested but was pardoned by Philip. Lady Jane, her husband, and father, and others actually or just thought to be involved in treason were not treated as leniently: many executions followed that earned for the Catholic queen from her Protestant subjects the sobriquet ''Bloody Mary.'' *John Knox* had supported the rebellion and prudently fled to Dieppe upon its failure.

***wybraniecka* infantry.** See *Báthory, Stefan*; *Polish Army*.

Wycliffe, John (1320–1384). See *Hus, Jan*; *Lollard Knights*; *Lollards*.

X

Xanten, Treaty of (1614). See *Jülich-Kleve, Crisis over*.

xebec. A hybrid sail-and-oar warship of the 15th–16th centuries akin to a *galleass*: it had a three-masted rig with lateen sails. Designed as a fast armed merchantman, it was favored by *corsairs*. As long as 130 feet, its sturdy hulls could support up to 40 cannon, though it normally carried fewer than 20. It was used mainly in the Mediterranean, although Sweden and Muscovy also built some of this type of warship.

Xochiyaoyotl. "Flower Wars." Ritual wars among Mesoamericans. They resulted in few immediate deaths because the intention in battle was not conquest but taking living captives for ritual human sacrifice. Alternately, flower wars were occasions for display of overwhelming Aztec might sufficient to coerce an enemy state to surrender as tribute an annual quota of its people to be sacrificed at the Great Temple in Tenochtitlán. If resistance persisted, the Aztec shifted into ruthless combat and imposed the tribute quota anyway.

Xuande Emperor. See *China*; *Tumu, Battle of*; *Zheng He*.

Y

yabusame. The *samurai* art of mounted archery. It emphasized accuracy and precision, the opposite of the volley-firing archery practiced by most infantry.

Yaka. Stateless armed marauders and slavers in eastern and southern Africa. They were roughly comparable to the Mane in West Africa or *Free Companies* in France during the *Hundred Years' War* (1337–1453). See also *Kongo, Kingdom of*; *Ngola*.

yamajiro. ''Yamashiro.'' A squat Japanese mountain fortress common during the *Sengoku jidai* era. They were carved out of canyons and gullies and were usually girded by a wooden palisade and guarded by dry moats and earth ramparts. Some had watchtowers.

Yamazaki, Battle of (1582). See *Toyotomi Hideyoshi*.

Yang Yinglong Rebellion (1587–1600). See *Wanli Emperor*.

yard. A long, horizontal spar secured at its center to any mast on a ship and rigged to bend the sail at top or bottom, thereby spreading canvass before the wind. A ''cross-jack'' or ''crojack'' yard (known in French as the ''vergue sèche'' or ''barren yard'') did not set canvass of its own. Instead, it spread the foot of a square mizzen topsail. See also *masts*; *sails*.

yardarm. The far tips of a *yard*.

yari. A Japanese infantry spear. It was widely adopted by the 14th century to supplement the *kumade* and *naginata*. The yari was commonly used by *ashigaru*.

yari fusuma. "Spear circle." See also *ashigaru*; *yari*.

***Yaya* infantry.** Early *Beylik* infantry recruited among both Muslim and Christian subjects. The Ottomans also employed Yaya units from the 1330s onward. Some were given land in the Balkans in exchange for military service and provision of local defense.

Yellow Ford, Battle of (1598). See *Nine Years' War*.

Yellow Waters, Battle of (February 1648). At the start of the Khmelnitsky Uprising (1648–1654), 3,000 Polish hussars met about 10,000 rebel *Cossacks* in a freewheeling cavalry battle in Ukraine. The Cossacks repulsed several badly organized attacks by the outnumbered but courageous Poles, then pressed home their own wild assaults. Many Poles died and many nobles were taken prisoner. These were herded to the Crimea and held for ransom.

Yeniçeri Ağasi. "Commander of the *Janissaries*." He was appointed by the sultan, usually from among the top graduates of one of the Palace Schools. He had the power to defy even the orders and wishes of the *Grand Vezir*. His power was limited by two things: a strong-willed sultan and the collective will of the "Divan" (council) of the Janissary Corps. There was also a technical limit to his power: in theory he commanded the corps only when the sultan was also present. Otherwise he was subordinate to whatever favorite the sultan chose to place over him as army commander. The Yeniçeri Ağasi was responsible for policing Constantinople with part of his personal guard. See also *martial music*.

Yeoman of the Guard. See *palace guards*.

Yongle Emperor (1360–1424, r.1402–1424). Né Zhu De. Son of *Hongwu*. He was passed over for the succession in favor of a grandson who was crowned in Nanjing. Zhu De challenged his father's will and after four years of civil war seized the throne. Yongle commissioned the first six spectacular voyages by Admiral *Zheng He* which returned to China foreign goods and ideas along with *tribute* from several southeast Asian kingdoms. Yongle expanded the Forbidden City and was a patron of compilations of *Confucian* learning. But his heart was always in making war. He invaded Tonkin in 1402 and again in 1406. He annexed Tonkin in 1407 but faced protracted guerilla resistance. Three years after his death Ming occupiers were expelled from Tonkin. In 1403 Yongle withdrew from four of the eight northern military colonies set up by Hongwu along the *Great Wall*. He later abandoned the last four colonies. Why? Because with south China pacified, Beijing was secure behind the protection of a huge Ming army in the north and because he wanted to conquer Mongolia, not wage war from his backside in defensive garrisons. He sent a major expedition to split the Oirat Mongols from the Tatars in 1409 but the Tatars used a ruse to lead his army into an ambush and destroyed it. The next year Yongle launched the first of five personally led campaigns against the

Mongols. Although he met and defeated a portion of the enemy's forces in 1420, he also experienced the logistical nightmare of bringing a large Chinese army riding grain-fed horses into the steppe: on the return journey Yongle missed the resupply column and large numbers of his men and horses came close to starvation.

In 1414 Yongle again struck out for Mongolia. After passing over the Tula River he lured the Oirat Mongol horde into a trap and slaughtered thousands with concealed artillery. His troops also used their *divine fire-arrow* guns to some effect. He moved the capital to Beijing in 1421, a shift that required repair of the Grand Canal to facilitate grain shipments to feed an enlarged Imperial city and to supply his northern armies. The main reason he moved the capital was to oversee the conquest of Mongolia he planned and attempted over five major campaigns (two into the Gobi Desert) from 1410 to 1424. In 1422 he marched north on his third Mongolian campaign. He took a monstrous army of 240,000 men supplied from a train of 117,000 heavy wagons and 340,000 donkeys used as pack animals. In preparation for this invasion, he built the Ming supply of cavalry and pack horses during the previous decade to over one million. Not being fools, the Mongols retreated before this vast host. Yongle thus scored only minor tactical successes over groups of Mongol stragglers, while the greater speed and ability of the Mongol hordes to retreat deep into the steppe, taking with them families and herds, denied him a strategic victory. Once he reached the outer limit of his supply chain he was compelled to withdraw, leaving the Mongols undefeated. He returned to Mongolia the next year with 300,000 men. Once again the Mongols simply avoided battle. In part this was a defensive strategy and partly it reflected the fact they were fighting amongst themselves elsewhere. Yongle's final Mongolian campaign took place in 1424. Yet again he failed to find a Mongol army to fight, and on the return journey he died. Although his campaigns failed to conquer Mongolia they probably prevented the Mongol tribes from consolidating into a rival empire that would have presented a serious threat to China's north. See also *Tumu, Battle of*.

Suggested Reading: Shih-shan Henry Tsai, *Perpetual Happiness: The Ming Emperor Yongle* (2001).

Yoruba. By 1400 the Yoruba were organized in a complex city-state system in which Ekiti, Ijebu, Ife, Owu, and Oyo were the main participants. Ife was the oldest Yoruba city and culturally and religiously the most significant. In 1535 the northernmost Yoruba city-state of Oyo was overrun by Nupe and its ruling family forced into a century of exile in Borgu. In the mid-17th century, possibly with aid from Borgu (to whose rulers the Oyo kings were related by dynastic marriage), Oyo fielded a cavalry force which freed the city from Nupe. Oyo went on to conquer other Yoruba cities as well as territory further south, paralleling the rain forest belt where Oyo's cavalry lost its advantage due to the tsetse fly which bore ''sleeping sickness'' (African trypanosomiasis) that killed the horses.

Z

Zabern, Battle of (May 16–17, 1525). See *German Peasant War*.

***zabra*.** A small (80–100 tons) two- or three-masted Spanish warship. The type was closely related to the *patache*. Most sported lateen sails and were fast ships. They were used in reconnaissance and for carrying messages or supplies between slower hulks and larger warships. The Spanish deployed a full squadron of zabras and pataches as part of the *Invincible Armada*.

***zakat*.** The main Islamic tax, calculated over one lunar year, required of all able Faithful. It was used principally to provide alms to the needy and support more general communal purposes. Payment of the zakat constituted one of the cardinal pillars of the Faith. Its counterpart was the *jizya*, a poll tax on non-Muslims.

Zanzibar. This East African island was home to the *Swahili Arabs* who controlled the East African slave trade with Arabia and India for over 1,000 years. It was ruled by sultans with close ethnic and dynastic ties to Oman. Chinese junks reached Zanzibar in the late 15th century, but in 1536 the Ming abandoned oceanic exploration and trade. That left Portuguese traders and *privateers* from Mombasa (Fort Jesus) to compete with and eventually control the Zanzibar trade in cloves and slaves. A Swahili Arab rebellion occurred in 1632 but within three years the Portuguese regained control.

Zaporozhian Cossacks. See *Cossacks*.

Zaragoza, Treaty of (1529). This treaty extended the settlement of division of the Western Hemisphere laid out in the *Line of Demarcation* (1493) and amended in the Treaty of Tordesillas (1494). Zaragoza applied the principle of the papal line of demarcation between Spain and Portugal in the Atlantic to the Pacific, at 145° east.

zarbzens. Ottoman light field guns. Weighing in at just 125 pounds, they were easily transported by packhorse or camel.

Zatoka Swieza, Battle of (September 15, 1463). This naval victory for the alliance of Poland and the rebel cities of Prussia was a significant turning point during the final phase of *War of the Cities* (1454–1466). A fleet of *privateers* and warships commissioned by the *Teutonic Knights*, comprising forty-four ships in all, was destroyed by thirty warships operating from the rebel cities of Danzig and Elbing. This severely constricted Teutonic maritime trade in the eastern Baltic and undermined the economic basis of the Teutonic war effort.

Zemshchina. See *Ivan IV*; *Oprichnina*.

zemsky sobor. An assembly of Muscovite *Estates*. See *"Time of Troubles."*

zereh bagtar. Armor comprised of a long mail undercoat with four linked plates tied girdle-style around the chest and upper stomach. It was typical of armor used by armies of the *Mughal Empire*.

Zeugherr. The title of a master gunner in the *Swiss Army* from the latter 15th century, when the Swiss acquired artillery by taking hundreds of cannon in battle from *Charles the Rash*. The job of the Zeugherr was maintenance, training of gun crews, and firing cannon in combat. Some also learned to cast guns.

Zheng He (1371–1433). Ming *eunuch* and admiral. A Chinese Muslim sent by the *Yongle Emperor* on six spectacular transoceanic western voyages in 1405, 1407, 1409, 1413, 1417, and 1421. Zheng He explored the coasts of India and Oman and touched the shores of distant Zanzibar. The expeditions were made as much to display Ming military prowess as to seek trade or knowledge of foreign lands. Each voyage averaged 50 large ships, then the biggest by far in the world. Some sported nine masts and had advanced design features such as *sternpost rudders*, watertight bulkheads, and brass cannons. The greatest were 200–300 feet long with many times the cargo capacity of contemporary European vessels. They carried manpower not matched at sea in Europe until the fight at *Lepanto* in 1571 or the sails and guns of the *Invincible Armada* appeared off Gravelines in 1588. Tens of thousands of Ming soldiers, sailors, and marines traveled with Zheng He, who navigated by compass and detailed coastal charts. The 1407 expedition attacked and destroyed a pirate base and fleet on Sumatra. The 1411 fleet intervened in the internal politics of Ceylon (Sri Lanka), kidnapping a local ruler and returning him to China. Zheng He's seventh voyage was commissioned by the Xuande Emperor in 1431 and comprised possibly 300 ships and 35,000 crew and marines. Zheng He died on the journey home in 1433. There is every reason to think that had China continued his explorations *junks* would have skirted the Cape of Good Hope decades before Portuguese *galleons* did, with an enormous impact on world history. Instead, after Zheng He's seventh voyage the Ming fleet never put to

sea again. China's lead in nautical exploration and commerce was repressed by Xuande, who forbade oceanic trade and banned new construction of blue-water ships.

Suggested Reading: Louise Levathes, *When China Ruled the Seas: The Treasure Fleet of the Dragon Throne, 1405–1433* (1994; 1996).

***ziamet*.** Ottoman troops at the highest ranks of the *timariots* were rewarded with revenue from a large land assignment, or ziamet, that paid from 20,000 to 100,000 akçes annually. If the soldier promoted was from the *dirlik yememiş* the ziamet replaced the lower revenues (up to 20,000 akçes) of his "timar," or the salary he drew from Imperial tax revenues.

Žižka, Jan (d.1424). One-eyed Taborite fanatic and brilliantly innovative general who invented the Hussite *tabor*. In 1409 he led Tatar, Cossack, Hungarian, and Bohemian mercenaries in the pay of Poland-Lithuania in a campaign against the *Teutonic Knights*, culminating in the extraordinary fight at *Tannenberg* in 1410. His main claim to fame was as the original Hussite commander during the *Hussite Wars*. He won victories at *Kutná Hora* (1422) and *Nêmecký Brod* (1422), both fights where he deployed firearms troops behind the Hussite *Wagenburg*. After his death the Taborites reputedly stretched his skin to make from it a great war drum.

Zsitva Torok, Treaty of (November 1606). Signed by Archduke Matthias in behalf of *Rudolf II*, this treaty codified peace between the Holy Roman Empire and the Ottoman Empire and formally ended the *Thirteen Years' War* (1593–1606). Intended to last 20 years, in fact it kept the peace much longer: it was renewed six times by 1649. In Hungary chronic border warfare continued unaffected by the peace. In Germany, however, the end of the "Long War" in the *Militargrenze* loosened ties of confessionally divided territorial princes to the Emperor, contributing to the divisions that brought on and sustained the *Thirty Years' War*. Zsitva Torok's terms were: the Ottomans received the fortresses of Eger (Eğri) and Esztergom and reacquired "The Principalities" (Transylvania, Moldavia, and Wallachia).

Zuhab Treaty of (May 1639). Also "Qasr-i Shirin." A codification of the restored balance of power between Safavid Iran and the Ottoman Empire. It followed a 16-year war over Iraq that began with defection of the Ottoman garrison in Baghdad in 1623. The Ottomans made its recapture the top priority of their policy, a task in which they were helped by the religious division of traditional Christian enemies in Europe. Zuhab established peace in Iraq to the effective end of the Safavid regime in 1722.

Zuider Zee, Battle of (1573). See *Eighty Years' War*.

Zúñiga y Requesens, Luis (1528–1576). Grand commander of the *Knights of Santiago*. In 1568 he helped *Don Juan of Austria* suppress a *Morisco* revolt in

Granada. Three years later he fought at *Lepanto*. In 1573 he was sent to Flanders to replace the *Duke of Alba*, whose depredations and persecutions left the local population consumed with rage and the Army of Flanders in mutinous mood. Zúñiga failed in a 1574 attempt to crush the Sea Beggars at *Walcheren*. He also failed to complete the *Siege of Leiden*. However, he won a sharp fight at *Mookerheyde*, killing many Flanders nobles. He died in Brussels after less than three years as governor in the Netherlands.

Zusmarshausen, Battle of (May 17, 1648). Having withdrawn from the *Thirty Years' War* earlier in 1647, *Maximilian I* of Bavaria reengaged the fight. This provoked yet another invasion of Bavaria, this time by a French-Swedish army of 30,000 under *Henri de Turenne* and *Karl Gustaf Wrangel*. A Bavarian-Imperial army under the Hessian general Peter Melander (who was killed) and the Habsburg general *Raimundo Montecuccoli* was crushed at Zusmarshausen near Augsburg. While the Austrians fought a rearguard action the Bavarians ran. At the end of the day Montecuccoli had to cut loose from his massive baggage train and camp following and flee. French and Swedish troops then marauded over Bavaria to the end of the war in October.

Zutphen, Battle of (September 22, 1586). After the murder of *William the Silent* and under terms of the *Treaty of Nonsuch*, England dispatched troops to aid the Dutch rebels against Spain. The expedition was commanded by *Elizabeth I*'s court favorite, the *Earl of Leicester*. Two years later Leicester joined *Maurits of Nassau* in laying siege to the Spanish garrison at Zutphen. *Parma* sent a relief column that beat back an attack by Leicester's troops, killed his brother (Philip Sidney) and lifted the siege.

Zutphen, Siege of (1591). See *Maurits of Nassau*.

Zwingli, Huldrych (1484–1531). Swiss reformer. Educated at Basel, he did not let his ordination as a Catholic priest curtail his enthusiasm for womanizing, for which he was infamous. He criticized the *mercenary* trade of his countrymen as early as 1510, but his objections were patriotic rather than moral or religious: he thought serving in foreign wars might be dangerous to Swiss independence. He toyed with moral objections to Swiss killing foreigners for money, but never denounced the mercenary profession or embraced pacifism. In fact, he served as a field chaplain with two Swiss mercenary expeditions during the *Italian Wars* (1494–1559). He saw action in service to the *Holy League* against the French at *Novara* in 1513. Two years later he was in the thick of the fight at *Marignano*, which he commemorated in the poem "The Labyrinth." In the 1520s Zwingli claimed to have called for essential reforms of the Church as early as 1516, a year before *Martin Luther* stunned the Catholic world with his ninety-five theses of protest, but most scholars see this as a post facto assertion produced by their personal rivalry. Indisputably, Zwingli roused Zürich in 1518 to ban peripatetic priests selling indulgences. In 1519, as he recovered from a bout of plague, he clearly parted

with Rome on several matters of doctrine and clerical discipline. In 1522 he defended citizens arrested for eating sausages in their homes during Lent, an act of defiance that marked the real beginning of the Reformation in Zürich. The next year he declared his support for clerical marriage. Zwingli mocked the idea of original sin, dismissed the notion that the unbaptised could not be admitted to Heaven, and argued that even pagans could live just and virtuous lives. He also believed firmly in predestination. Yet he remained the most tolerant of the early, major reformers. Many historians depict him as the most socially progressive as well, though that is more arguable.

Zwingli convinced Zürich to abstain from participation in the Swiss Confederation's alliance with France in 1521. In 1523 he so impressed observers by defeating the representative of the Bishop of Constance in theological debate that Zürich adopted the reforms he set out in ''sixty-seven theses'' (intended to rival Luther's ninety-five). Later that year Zwingli did away with the Mass in Zürich along with all Catholic imagery and statuary, which he condemned as idolatrous. *Iconoclastic* mobs carried the policy through at first, until a more disciplined removal was organized the next year. By 1525 Zwingli broke with the rule of priestly celibacy by marrying. More provocatively, he dispensed the sacrament *sub utraque specie* (''in both kinds''). In 1524 he began a long and bitter quarrel with Luther over the nature of the Mass, with Zwingli rejecting all notions of transubstantiation or consubstantiation. Their argument was unresolved, ending in mutual disdain and a split between the Swiss and German reform movements at a failed conference held at Marburg in 1529. By that time Zwingli's teachings had spread to Bern, across Switzerland, and into southern Germany. Zwingli's teachings and austere religious rule divided the Swiss from each other as well as from Lutherans. When the Anabaptist founder, Conrad Grebel, broke with Zwingli in 1525, he and his family and followers were hounded from the city or put to death for heresy. With Protestant cantons aligned with Zürich, the Catholic Forest Cantons formed an opposing alliance. When Schwyz executed a Protestant preacher in 1529 who dared to speak in a declared neutral zone, a sixteen-day civil war ensued. A more serious civil war broke out in 1531 that included an attack on Zürich. The main clash came at *Kappel* where Zwingli was found among the wounded by Catholic Swiss and killed where he lay. The Catholics then burned his corpse, mixed the ashes with dung, and scattered them. Eighteen years after his death Zwinglians reconciled with Swiss Calvinists (1549) in a union confirmed by the 1566 ''Second Helvetic Confession.''

Suggested Reading: G. Potter, *Zwingli* (1976); Robert Walton, *Zwingli's Theocracy* (1967).

Chronology of Major Events

1008	Córdoba emirate falls; al-Andalus breaks into *taifa* states.
1027	Church Council proclaims "Truce of God."
1066–1070	Norman conquest of England.
1077–1122	Wars of Investiture.
1085	Capture of Toledo, milestone in Christian "*Reconquista*." Capture of Syracuse by Normans; all Sicily conquered by 1091.
1095	First Crusade preached at Clermont. "Peace of God" proclaimed.
1099	Crusaders sack Jerusalem.
1104	Venice founds "The Arsenal."
1147–1148	Second Crusade defeated before Damascus. Saxon crusade against pagan Slavs east of the Elbe.
1187	Battle of Hattin: Salāh-al-Dīn defeats Crusaders, retakes Jerusalem.
1188–1192	Third Crusade takes Acre. Battle of Arsur (1191): Richard I defeats Salāh-al-Dīn.
1204	Fourth Crusade sacks Constantinople, establishes "Latin Kingdom" in Greece. French seize Normandy from English.
1209–1229	Albigensian Crusade: Cathars massacred and suppressed in France.
1212	Battle of Las Navas de Tolosa: Aragon defeats the Almohads.
1217–1221	Fifth Crusade.
1228–1229	Emperor Friedrich II secures Jerusalem.

1229	Teutonic Knights crusade against ''northern Saracens'' of Prussia.
1234	Mongols overthrow Jin Empire. Battle of Alamut: Mongols crush the Assassins.
1240	Battle of Jand: Mongols overrun western Iran.
1241	Battle of Liegnitz: Mongols defeat Poles and Teutonic Knights.
1242	Battle of Mohi: Mongols defeat Hungarians.
1260	Battle of Ayn Jālut: Mamlūks defeat Mongols.
1261	Byzantines recapture Constantinople.
1274/1281	Battles of Hakata Bay: two Mongol attempted invasions of Japan fail.
1277–1283	Edward I conquers Wales.
1291	Muslims capture Acre, last ''Frankish state'' overrun. Hospitallers retreat to Cyprus (1291) and Rhodes (1306).
1297–1298	Battle of Stirling Bridge: Scots infantry beat English knights. Battle of Falkirk: English knights and Welsh archers defeat Scots.
1302	Battle of Courtrai: Flemish militia defeat French knights.
1314–1315	Battle of Bannockburn: Scottish foot defeat English knights. Battle of Morgarten: Swiss infantry defeat Austrian knights.
1334	Buddhist Red Turban Rebellion breaks Mongol hold on China.
1337	Start of Hundred Years' War (to 1453).
1340	Battle of Sluys: greatest naval battle of the medieval period.
1346	Battle of Crécy: English longbowmen and men-at-arms decimate French knights.
1347–1350	''Black Death'' first reaches and devastates Europe.
1356	Battle of Poitiers: English infantry again beat French knights; King Jean II captured and held for ransom.
1363–1368	Battle of Lake Boyang: Hongwu defeats Han fleet. Hongwu occupies Nanjing; proclaims himself emperor and founds the Ming dynasty. Hongwu sets up eight military colonies along the northern border.
1378	''Great Schism'' of the West begins; papacy contested and degraded.
1386	Battle of Sempach: Swiss infantry defeats Austrian knights.
1396	Battle of Nicopolis: Sultan Bayezid I defeats Hungarians and French crusaders.
1402–1405	Battle of Ankara: Timur defeats Ottomans, captures Sultan Bayezid I.

	Yongle moves Imperial capital to Beijing.
	Zheng He leaves on first of six transoceanic voyages for Yongle Emperor, 1405–1421.
1410	Battle of Tannenberg: Poles and Lithuanians crush Teutonic Knights.
1415–1417	Battle of Agincourt: English longbowmen and men-at-arms defeat French knights.
	Henry V advances English re-conquest of Normandy.
1419	Hussite Wars begin (to 1478).
1422	Battle of Arbedo: Milanese defeat small Swiss unit.
	Swiss reform and standardize squares, adding more pikemen.
1429–1431	Jeanne d'Arc relieves siege of Orléans, defeats English at Patay (1429).
	Dauphin crowned Charles VII at Rheims (1429).
	Jeanne d'Arc burned at the stake (1431).
	Zheng He makes seventh and final voyage west.
1433–1436	Xuande Emperor dry docks China's blue water fleet.
	Naval exploration prohibited to Chinese.
1444	Battle of Varna: Ottomans defeat Hungarians and Poles.
1449–1450	Battle of Tumu: Zhengtong Emperor loses 500,000 men in campaign against Mongols.
	Mongols attack Beijing.
	Ming renew work on Great Wall, add 700 miles and establish outlying military colonies.
	Battle of Formigny: French defeat English field army, go on to occupy Normandy.
1453	Ottomans besiege and sack Constantinople.
	Battle of Castillon: French victory ends Hundred Years' War.
1454	''War of the Cities'' begins in Prussia and Baltic (to 1466).
	Battle of Chojnice: Poland-Lithuania fights Teutonic Knights.
	Peace of Lodi defines balance of power among main city-states in Italy.
	Johannes Gutenberg introduces moveable type at Frankfurt.
1455	''Wars of the Roses'' begin (to 1485).
1456	Fortress of Marienburg surrenders to Poles.
	Ottomans capture Athens.
1459–1467	Ottomans conquer Serbia (1459), Morea (1460), Bosnia (1464), and Herzegovina (1467).
1461	Yorkists defeat Lancastrians at Mortimer's Cross and Towton.

1466	''War of the Cities'' ends in Prussia.
1467	Ōnin War destroys Kyoto (1467–1477). *Sengoku jidai* era begins in Japan (to 1568).
1469	Ferdinand of Aragon marries Isabella of Castile. Niccolò Machiavelli born in Florence (May 3).
1470	Portuguese ships reach Gold Coast (West Africa).
1471	Battle of Tewkesbury: Prince Edward killed. Henry VI murdered in the Tower of London. Fuggers make first war loan to Habsburgs.
1475	Ottomans invade the Crimea.
1476–1477	Swiss-Burgundian Wars. Charles the Rash killed by Swiss. Burgundy partitioned by Austria and France.
1480	Ivan III assumes the title ''Tsar.'' Inquisition begins in Castile.
1483	Muscovite military expedition to western Siberia. Juan II of Portugal declines to finance voyage of exploration by Columbus.
1485	Battle of Bosworth Field: Richard III killed. ''Wars of the Roses'' end. Henry Tudor crowned as Henry VII.
1486	Portuguese ships reach Ngola. Portuguese explorers reach Kongo.
1487	Bartolomeu Dias navigates Cape of Good Hope. Spanish capture Malaga.
1488	Henry VII builds first ''Great Ship.''
1492	Granada surrenders to Spain, end of ''*Reconquista.*'' Ferdinand and Isabella order expulsion of Spanish Jews. Columbus makes landfall on Watling Island.
1493	Pope Alexander VI sets ''Line of Demarcation.'' Syphilis epidemic in Barcelona.
1494	Treaty of Tordesillas amends ''Line of Demarcation'' agreement. Italian Wars begin (to 1559). Leonardo da Vinci publishes *Codex Madrid II*.
1495	Henry VII builds first dry dock at Portsmouth. Charles VIII takes Naples. Holy League opposes France in Italy.

	Expulsion of Portuguese Jews.
	Soldiers returning from Italy spread syphilis to France.
1496	John Cabot sails in search of northwest passage to Asia.
	Columbus brings tobacco, Caribbean Indians to Europe.
1497	John Cabot claims Newfoundland and Nova Scotia for England.
	Savonarola excommunicated, carries out ''bonfire of the vanities'' in Florence.
1498	Vasco de Gama reaches India.
	Savonarola burned in Florence.
	Grand Inquisitor Torquemada dies.
1499	Louis XII occupies Milan and Genoa.
	Granadine Moors revolt against Spain.
1500	Charles V born.
	France and Spain agree to partition Naples.
	Amerigo Vespucci discovers mouth of the Amazon.
	Pedro Cabral claims Brazil for Portugal.
1501	Louis XII reinvades Italy.
	Pope Alexander VI orders burnings of books deemed heretical.
1502	Ismail I consolidates Safavid rule in Iran.
1504	Ferdinand of Aragon conquers Naples.
	Treaty of Lyon gives Naples to Spain.
	Treaty of Blois gives Milan to France.
	Isabella of Castile dies.
1505	Ivan III dies.
	First Portuguese factories established in east Africa.
	Portugese muscle into Indian Ocean monopoly trade in cloves and slaves.
1506	Fuggers finance expansion of spice trade.
1508	Portuguese capture Muscat.
	League of Cambrai formed.
1509	Battle of Diu: Portuguese defeat Mamlūk and Gujarati galley fleets.
	Portugal takes full control of Indian Ocean trade routes.
	Henry VIII succeeds Henry VII.
	Battle of Agnadello: French defeat Venetians.
	Persecution of Jews increases inside the Holy Roman Empire.
	Maximilian I orders heretical books burned within the Holy Roman Empire.
1510	Portuguese capture Goa.

1512	Ponce de Leon claims Florida for Spain.
	Battle of Ravenna: French defeated by Holy League.
	Shi'ism established as state religion of Safavid Empire.
1513	Battle of Flodden Field: James IV killed.
	Battle of Novara: French defeated by Swiss.
	''Battle of the Spurs.''
	Machiavelli writes *The Prince* (not published until 1532).
1514	Selim I orders a mass slaughter of shi'ia inside the Ottoman Empire.
	Ottoman-Safavid wars begin.
	Battle of Chaldiran: Janissaries and timariots destroy Safavid army.
1515	Louis XII dies: Francis I succeeds as king.
	Battle of Marj Dabiq: Ottomans crush Egyptian Mamlūks.
	Pope Leo X captures Florence.
	Battle of Marignano: French crush Swiss outside Milan.
1516	Battle of al-Raydaniyya: Ottomans defeat Mamlūks, conquer Syria.
	Mary Tudor born.
1517	Egyptian Mamlūks accept Ottoman suzerainty.
	Ottomans take control of the Hejaz.
	Martin Luther registers his protests in Wittenberg.
	John Cabot discovers entrance to Hudson's Bay.
1518	Martin Luther summoned to answer charges of heresy.
1519	Magellan's crew and ship complete circumnavigation of globe, without Magellan.
	Hernán Cortés first hears of existence of Aztec Empire.
	Charles V elevated to Holy Roman Emperor.
	Alonso de Pineda discovers mouth of Mississippi.
	Leonardo da Vinci dies.
1520	Suleiman the Magnificent elevated to Ottoman Emperor.
	''Field of the Cloth of Gold'' summit of Henry VIII and Francis I.
	First siege of Tenochtitlán.
	Cortés flees Tenochtitlán.
1521	Ottomans capture Belgrade.
	Martin Luther excommunicated by Pope Leo X.
	Francis I declares war on Charles V.
	Charles V establishes Inquisition in the Netherlands.
	Diet of Worms meets to contend with ''Lutheranism.''
	Second siege of Tenochtitlán.

	Charles V takes Milan.
	Ming acquire first Portuguese cannon.
1522	Ottomans capture Rhodes after third siege.
	Battle of La Bicocca: Charles V defeats French.
1523	Duke of Bourbon invades France.
	Zürich establishes Zwinglian Protestantism.
1524	French recapture Milan.
1525	Battle of Pavia: Francis I taken prisoner, held in Spain.
	German Peasant War (to 1526).
	Anabaptists burned in Zürich, persecution also begins in Netherlands.
1526	Francis I signs Treaty of Madrid and is released.
	Francis I renounces Treaty of Madrid, Italian Wars resume.
	League of Cognac formed.
	First slave rebellion in New World.
	Battle of Mohács: Ottomans destroy a Hungarian army.
	Mughal Empire founded in India.
1527	Imperial Army runs amok in Rome, pope taken prisoner.
	Medici are expelled from Florence.
	Henry VIII asks pope to annul marriage to Katherine of Aragon.
1529	Treaty of Zaragoza extends ''Line of Demarcation'' to Pacific.
	Battle of Landriano: French lose at Milan.
	Ottomans besiege Vienna.
	Charles V and pope reconcile, jointly besiege Florence.
	Treaty of Cambrai.
	Henry VIII dismisses Cardinal Wolsey, appoints Thomas More Chancellor of England.
	''Reformation Parliament'' called in England.
1530	''Augsburg Confession'' published by Luther.
	Ivan IV (''The Terrible'') born.
	Cardinal Wolsey dies.
	Schmalkaldic League formed in Germany.
	Florence surrenders to pope.
1531	Battle of Kappel: Zwingli killed in Swiss civil war.
	Lisbon earthquake kills 30,000.
	''Virgin of Guadalupe'' said to appear to Mexican child; Indian conversions accelerate.
1532	English Parliament recognizes the ecclesiastical supremacy of Henry VIII.

	Thomas More resigns; Thomas Cromwell elevated in his place.
	War of the Debatable Lands.
1533	Henry VIII marries Anne Boleyn.
	Parliament voids all papal authority in England.
	Elizabeth I born.
	Jean Calvin has vision of a personal mission to reform Church.
	Anabaptists seize control of Münster, 18-month siege begins.
1534	Affair of the Placards in Paris.
	Act of Supremacy establishes Church of England.
	Martin Luther completes German translation of Bible.
1535	Anabaptists burned in Netherlands.
	Thomas More beheaded.
1536	Erasmus dies.
	Francis I invades Savoy.
	Charles V invades Provence from Piedmont.
	Jean Calvin publishes *Institutes of the Christian Religion*.
	Mary and Elizabeth Tudor declared illegitimate by Parliament.
	William Tyndale burned in Brussels.
	Dissolution of smaller monasteries in England.
	Irish Parliament establishes Church of Ireland, under the Crown.
1538	Truce of Nice pauses Franco-Habsburg war.
1539	Francis I and Charles V threaten Henry VIII.
	Ottomans capture Aden.
	Dissolution of greater monasteries in England.
1540	Jean Calvin secures control of Geneva.
	Society of Jesus founded by Ignatius Loyola.
	Francisco Vazquez de Coronado reaches Rio Grande.
1541	Ireland annexed to English Crown.
	Calvinism established in Geneva.
	Ottomans capture Buda, annex central Hungary.
1542	Francis I attacks Luxemburg, Brabant, Navarra.
	Ottoman-French joint fleet sacks Nice.
	Battle of Solway Moss: Scots defeated.
	Mary Stuart born.
1543	Nicholas Copernicus dies.
	Treaty of Greenwich ends Scottish war.

	England invades Flanders.
	Act of Union fuses Wales to England.
1544	Charles V invades France.
	English occupy Boulogne (to 1550).
1545	Council of Trent convened.
1546	Martin Luther dies.
1547	Henry VIII dies, succeeded by Edward VI.
	Battle of Mühlburg: Charles V defeats Schmalkaldic League.
	Francis I dies, succeeded by Henri II.
	Ivan IV ascends in Muscovy.
1548	*Chambre ardente* tortures accused heretics in France.
1550	Unification Wars begin in Japan.
1551	Edict of Châteaubriant bans Protestantism in France.
1552	Muscovite army takes Kazan.
	Ottomans besiege Eger (Eğri).
1553	Edward VI dies.
	Mary I restores Catholicism in England.
	Henri de Navarre born.
1554	Swedish-Muscovite War begins (to 1557).
	Wyatt's Rebellion.
	Mary I marries Philip II.
1555	Charles V abdicates in Netherlands and Burgundy in favor of Philip II.
	Peace of Amasya ends Ottoman-Safavid war.
	Peace of Augsburg ends religious war in Germany.
1556	Charles V abdicates Iberian crowns to Philip II.
	Muscovites capture Astrakhan.
1557	Spain invades France from Netherlands.
	Battle of St. Quentin: Montmorency and Coligny taken prisoner by Spanish.
1558	First Northern War begins (to 1583).
	Calais retaken by France.
	Mary Stuart marries Francis I.
	Mary Tudor dies.
1559	Treaties of Cateau-Cambrésis: French leave Italy.
	Elizabeth I ascends to throne.
	Henri II killed in jousting accident.

1560	Treaty of Edinburgh: French leave Scotland.
	Scottish Parliament adopts Confession of Faith, bans Catholic Mass.
	Conspiracy of Amboise fails.
	Francis II dies, succeeded by Charles IX.
	Battle of Okehazama: Oda Nobunaga advances unification drive.
1561	Livonian Order secularized, Courland made vassal of Poland.
	Colloquy of Poissy fails.
	Mary Stuart lands in Scotland to claim the crown.
1562	Edict of Saint-German (Toleration).
	Vassy massacre of Huguenots.
	First French Civil War begins.
1563	Nordic Seven Years' War begins (to 1570).
	Peace of Amboise ends First Civil War in France.
	English garrison surrenders Le Havre to French.
1564	Spanish found Manila in Philippines.
	Pope Pius IV affirms Council of Trent's *Professio Fidei*.
	Galileo Galilei born.
	Jean Calvin dies.
1565	Ottoman siege of Malta.
1566	James VI born to Mary Stuart, Queen of Scots.
1567	Mary Stuart abdicates, succeeded by infant James VI.
	Oda Nobunaga enters Kyoto, deposes shogun.
	Second Civil War begins in France.
1568	Edict of Longjumeau ends Second Civil War in France.
	Mary Stuart flees to England.
	Eighty Years' War begins (to 1648).
	Third Civil War begins in France.
1569	Battles of Jarnac and Moncontour: Huguenots defeated; death of Condé.
1570	Reval besieged by Muscovites.
	Peace of Stettin ends Nordic Seven Years' War.
	Peace of St. Germain-en-Laye ends Third Civil War in France.
	Ottoman-Venetian war begins.
	Battle of Anegawa: victory for Oda Nobunaga and Tokugawa Ieyasu.
1571	Ottomans sack Famagusta.
	Battle of Lepanto: Ottoman fleet destroyed by Christian coalition.

1572	Henri de Navarre marries Margaret de Valois.
	St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres.
	Fourth Civil War starts in France.
1573	Peace of La Rochelle ends Fourth Civil War in France.
	Henri Valois elected King of Poland.
	Ottomans conquer Cyprus.
	End of Ottoman-Venetian war.
	England invades Scotland.
	Wan-Li mounts throne in China.
1574	Death of Charles IX; Henri Valois abdicates Polish throne, is crowned Henri III of France.
	Portuguese seed colonies in coastal Angola and Brazil.
	Spanish Inquisition burns its first American victims.
	Oda Nobunaga slaughters True Pure Land Buddhists.
1575	Philip II declares bankruptcy, defaults on Spain's war loans.
	Fifth Civil War begins in France.
	Battle of Nagashino (1575): Oda Nobunaga wins major victory.
1576	Henri de Navarre escapes from Paris, recants his forced conversion to Catholicism.
	Edict of Beaulieu ends Fifth Civil War.
	"Spanish Fury" in Antwerp.
1577	Sixth Civil War begins and ends in France.
1578	Peasant revolts in Dauphiné, Vivarais, and Provence (to 1580).
	Ottoman-Safavid war resumes in Caucasus (to 1590).
1579	Elizabeth I allies with Sea Beggars.
	Union of Arras and Union of Utrecht formally split Netherlands.
1580	Portugal and its empire are annexed to Spain by Philip II.
	Seventh Civil War in France begins.
	Honganji fortress surrenders to Oda Nobunaga.
1581	James VI signs Scottish Confession of Faith.
	Francis Drake captures Spanish treasure ship off Panama.
1582	Gregorian Calendar adopted by most Catholics.
	Oda Nobunaga betrayed and killed; Toyotomi Hideyoshi siezes power, continues Unification Wars.
	First Jesuit mission to China.
	First English colonists settle in Newfoundland.
1583	Albrecht von Wallenstein born.

1584	Ivan IV dies.
	Boris Godunov becomes regent in Moscow.
	Eighth Civil War begins in France (to 1598).
	Treaty of Joinville: Philip II allies with French Catholic League.
	duc d'Anjou dies; Henri de Navarre becomes presumptive heir to French throne.
	William of Orange assassinated.
	Protestant Plantation of Munster begins.
1585	Francis Drake attacks Vigo and Santo Domingo.
	Treaty of Nonsuch: England allies with United Provinces against Spain.
	Treaty of Nemours: Henri III allies with Catholic League.
	English found colony at Roanoke, Virginia.
1586	Francis Drake attacks Spanish settlement at St. Augustine, Florida.
	English fight Spanish in Netherlands.
	Mary Stuart convicted of treason, names Philip II as heir.
1587	Mary Stuart executed on order of Elizabeth I.
	Phillip II orders ''Enterprise of England.''
	Francis Drake raids Cadiz, burns Armada warehouses.
	Toyotomi Hideyoshi orders Christian missionaries to leave Japan.
1588	Trained Bands muster at Tilbury.
	Invincible Armada falters in the English Channel.
	Day of the Barricades in Paris.
	Guise assassinated by Henri III.
	Thomas Hobbes born.
1589	Sigismund III deposed in Sweden.
	Abbas I loses Azerbaijan and Georgia to Ottomans.
	Catherine de Medici dies.
	Henri III assassinated; Henri de Navarre succeeds as Henri IV.
	Catholic League launches religious terror in cities.
	Battle of Arques: Henri IV defeats Catholic League.
	Francis Drake attacks Lisbon.
1590	Swedish-Muscovite War begins (to 1595).
	Charles de Bourbon dies.
	Battle of Ivry-la-Bataille: Henri IV defeats Catholic League, besieges Paris.
	Duke of Parma intervenes in France with Spanish army from Netherlands.
	Toyotomi Hideyoshi completes major phase of Unification Wars.

1591	Henri IV excommunicated by Pope Gregory XIV.
	Boris Godunov assassinates Tsar Dimitri.
	Private warfare breaks out in the *Militargrenze*.
1592	Henri IV besieges Rouen.
	Toyotomi Hideyoshi invades Korea.
1593	Thirteen Years' War begins (to 1606).
	Henri IV abjures Protestantism.
	Peasant revolts in Agenais, Burgundy, Limousin, and Périgord (to 1594).
1594	Henri IV crowned at Chartres; Paris submits to his authority.
	Nine Years' War begins in Ireland (to 1603).
1595	End of Swedish-Muscovite War.
	Henri IV absolved by Pope Clement VIII, excommunication lifted.
	Henri IV declares war on Spain.
	Dutch colonies established in East Indies.
	English armies finally abandon longbows.
1596	War of Catholic League ends in France.
	Elizabeth I orders "pacification of Ireland."
	Spanish capture Calais and Cambrai.
	English Privy Council raises ship money to pay for Irish war.
1597	Second Spanish Armada fails.
	Spanish seize Amiens.
	Upper Austria forcibly recatholicized; religious tensions mount in Germany.
	England transports convicts and Irish rebels to North American colonies.
	Dutch found Batavia as main base of their Asian operations.
	Toyotomi Hideyoshi invades Korea for the second time.
	Mass executions of Japanese *Kirishitan*.
1598	Edict of Nantes extends toleration to Huguenots.
	Eighth Civil War ends in France.
	Peace of Vervins: Philip II renounces claim to French crown.
	Abbas I moves Iranian capital to Isfahan.
	Sigismund III invades Sweden.
	Battle of Stegeborg: Swedes defeat Poles.
	Fyodor I dies; Boris Godunov elevated to Tsar.
	Tyrone defeats English at Béal Atha Buí (Yellow Ford).
	Phillip II dies, succeeded by Philip III.
	Toyotomi Hideyoshi dies.

1599	Sigismund III deposed in Sweden.
	Oliver Cromwell born.
	Essex campaigns in Ireland.
1600	Karl IX invades Livonia; Polish-Swedish wars continue intermittently (to 1629).
	Battle of Sekigahara: Tokugawa Ieyasu wins decisive victory, continues Unification Wars.
1601	Spanish land 4,000 troops in Ireland.
	Battle of Kinsale: Tyrone and Spanish defeated.
	East India Company sends out first expedition, to Sumatra.
	Jesuit Matteo Ricci received at Imperial Court in China.
	Nurgaci first organizes Manchu troops into banner system.
1602	Last Spanish in Ireland surrender (January).
	Ottomans defend Buda against Austrian siege.
1603	Tokugawa Ieyasu named shogun.
	Champlain begins six-year expedition to map Canadas.
	Henri IV recalls Jesuits.
	Elizabeth I dies.
	Tyrone surrenders, end of Nine Year's War in Ireland.
	Ottoman-Safavid war over Azerbaijan resumes (to 1612).
1604	Boris Godunov defeats "False Dimitri."
	James VI crowned James I in England.
	"Time of Troubles" in Russia (to 1613).
1605	Battle of Kirkholm: worst defeat in Swedish history.
	Boris Godunov dies.
	Gunpowder Plot foiled.
1606	Thirteen Years' War ends.
	Dutch discover Australia.
	Military brevets of Edict of Nantes renewed.
1607	Jamestown Colony founded in Virginia.
	Flight of the Earls from Ireland.
	Ceasefire in Eighty Years' War (to 1609).
	Donauwörth incident.
1608	Jesuits establish sanctuary for Amazon Indians.
	Protestant Union formed in Germany.
1609	Catholic League formed in Germany.
	Sweden intervenes in Russia.
	Twelve-Year Truce (to April 1621).

VOC ship returns with first tea from China.
Siege of Smolensk (to 1611).
Jülich-Kleve crisis (to 1614).
Polish-Muscovite War (to 1619).
Rudolf II allows freedom of conscience in Bohemia.
Plantation of Ulster begins.

1610 Henri IV assassinated in Paris; regency begins.
Friedrich V succeeds as Elector Palatine.
Swedish troops enter Moscow.
Poland invades Russia.
Battle of Klushino: Russo-Swedish army defeated by Poles.
Poles occupy Moscow, garrison Kremlin (to 1612).
English and Dutch "John Companies" fight in India.

1611 Huguenot assembly at Saumur.
King James Bible printed in England.
War of Kalmar (to 1613).
Karl IX dies; succeeded by Gustavus Adolphus.

1612 Rudolf II dies; Matthias elected Holy Roman Emperor.
Gustavus Adolphus crowned in Sweden.

1613 War of Kalmar ends.
Friedrich V marries Elizabeth Stuart.
German princes ally with United Provinces.
Michael Romanov acclaimed Tsar.
Bethlen Gabor elevated to Prince.
Elector of Brandenburg converts to Calvinism.
Virginian colonists attack Port Royal in New France.
Renewed fighting in the *Militargrenze*.

1614 Revolt against regency in France led by Condé.
Louis XIII attains majority.
Aachen recatholicized.
Jülich-Kleve crisis resolved.

1615 Dutch seize Moluccas from Portuguese.
English fleet defeats Portuguese off Bombay (Mumbai).
Galileo Galilei interrogated by Roman Inquisition.
Lutherans riot in Brandenburg.
Sea Beggars raid Spanish Main.
Tokugawa Ieyasu defeats Toyotomi Hideyori at Osaka Castle.
End of Unification Wars in Japan; start of the long "Tokugawa Peace."

1616	Cardinal Richelieu appointed Minister of War to Louis XIII.
1617	Peace of Stolbova ends Russo-Swedish war.
	Louis XIII dismisses his mother as regent, assumes power (to 1643).
	Catholic League dissolved in Germany.
	Evangelical Union renewed to 1621.
	Ferdinand of Styria recognized as king-designate of Bohemia.
	Sweden invades Livonia, makes peace with Poland (to 1621).
	First African slaves shipped to Jamestown, Virginia.
1618	Truce of Tolsburg ends Polish-Swedish War (to 1621).
	Prussia annexed by Brandenburg.
	William of Orange dies, succeeded by Maurits of Nassau.
	Defenestration of Prague begins Bohemian rebellion.
	Thirty Years' War begins with skirmishes in Bohemia and Lower Austria.
	Oldenbaarneveldt and Hugo Grotius arrested by Maurits of Nassau.
1619	Truce of Deulino: Muscovy cedes Smolensk to Poland.
	Emperor Matthias dies.
	Bohemians besiege Vienna.
	Oldenbaarneveldt executed.
	Bohemians depose Ferdinand of Styria, elect Friedrich V.
	Ferdinand of Styria elected as Holy Roman Emperor Ferdinand II.
	Bethlen Gabor conquers Hungary.
	Poland invades Transylvania.
	Battle of Sarhu: Ming Army devastated by Manchus.
1620	Battle of the White Mountain: Bohemian Protestants crushed.
	Friedrich V flees Bohemia for the Palatinate.
	Battle of Jassy: Ottomans defeat Poles.
	Bavaria occupies Upper Austria (to 1628).
	Spínola invades Palatinate; Friedrich V flees to Netherlands.
	Louis XIII invades Béarn; Habsburgs occupy Valtelline.
	Edict of Restitution restores Catholicism in Béarn.
	Huguenot assembly in La Rochelle.
	Mayflower Pilgrims land at Plymouth Rock.
1621	Friedrich V declared outlaw by the Empire.
	Louis XIII renews war with Huguenots.
	Philip III dies, succeeded by Philip IV.
	Twelve-Years' Truce ends, Eighty Years' War resumes (to 1648).
	Protestant Union dissolved.
	Truce of Tolsburg expires, Polish-Swedish war resumes.

Gustavus Adolphus captures Riga.
Battle of Chocim: Poles fight Ottomans and Tatars.
Bavaria occupies Upper Palatinate (to 1623).

1622 Pope Gregory XV founds *Congregatio de Propaganda Fidei*.
Spínola captures Jülich.
Battle of Wiesloch: Tilly defeated by Mansfeld and Baden.
Battle of Wimpfen: Tilly defeats Baden.
Battle of Höchst: Tilly defeats Brunswick.
Friedrich V dismisses Mansfeld and Brunswick.
Olivares appointed chief minister to Philip IV.

1623 Battle of Stadtlohn: Tilly defeats Brunswick.
Electorate transferred from Palatinate to Bavaria.
EIC founds first factory in India.
First commercial treaty between United Provinces and Iran.
Pope Urban VIII elected (to 1644).
Ottoman garrison in Baghdad defects to Abbas I.

1624 Mansfeld disbands mercenary army.
Spínola besieges Breda.
Dutch found New Amsterdam on Manhattan Island.
Cardinal Richelieu admitted to Privy Council; named first minister of France.
Mansfeld's veterans sail for Netherlands.

1625 James I dies, Charles I succeeds in the Three Kingdoms.
Maurits of Nassau dies.
Army of Flanders occupies Breda (to 1637).
Wallenstein raises mercenary army for Ferdinand II.
First Ottoman siege of Baghdad fails.
Tilly invades Lower Saxony.
Anglo-Dutch raid on Cadiz.
Hague Alliance formed.

1626 Royalists take Ile de Ré.
Gustavus Adolphus campaigns in Royal Prussia (to 1629).
Battle of Dessau Bridge: Wallenstein defeats Mansfeld.
Upper Austria revolts against Habsburgs.
Battle of Lutter-am-Barenberg: Tilly defeats Danes.
Battle of Mewe: Poles lose to Swedes.
Peace of La Rochelle.
French colony set up in Senegal.
Charles I declares war on France.

1627	Philip IV of Spain declares bankruptcy.
	Wallenstein conquers Pomerania and Holstein.
	France and Spain declare war on England.
	Buckingham attacks French on Ile de Ré, repulsed with heavy losses.
	Siege of La Rochelle begins.
	Battle of Dirshau: Gustavus Adolphus is wounded.
	Battle of Oliwa: naval battle off Danzig.
	Wallenstein invades Silesia.
	Tilly defeats Protestants in Brunswick.
	War of the Mantuan Succession starts (to 1631).
1628	Imperial troops overrun Jutland.
	Wallenstein besieges Straslund.
	Battle of Wolgast: Wallenstein defeats Danes.
	La Rochelle capitulates.
	Dutch conquer Java and Moluccas.
	Sea Beggars capture Spanish silver treasure fleet.
1629	Louis XIII intervenes in Mantuan War.
	Imperials counter-invade Italy.
	Ferdinand II issues Edict of Restitution.
	Dutch capture s'Hertogenbosch.
	Peace of Susa ends Anglo-French war.
	Peace of Alais ends Wars of Religion in France.
	Battle of Stuhm: Gustavus Adolphus loses to Poles.
	Peace of Lübeck: Denmark leaves German war.
	Truce of Altmark ends Polish-Swedish wars (to 1635).
	Bethlen Gabor dies, succeeded by George Rákóczi.
1630	Dutch occupy Pernambuco, Brazil (to 1654).
	Gustavus Adolphus lands in Peenemünde.
	French occupy Savoy.
	Imperials take Mantua.
	Outbreak of plague in Italy, to 1631.
	Magdeburg defies Empire (to May 1631).
	Wallenstein dismissed by Ferdinand II.
	Peace of Madrid ends Anglo-Spanish war.
	Second Ottoman siege of Baghdad fails.
1631	Magdeburg sacked by Tilly and Pappenheim.
	Swedes take Frankfurt-on-Oder.
	Swedish–Brandenburg alliance formed.
	Sweden allies with Saxony, Bremen, Hesse-Kassel.

Battle of First Breitenfeld: Gustavus Adolphus defeats Tilly.
Saxons take Prague (to 1632).
Basque revolt (to 1634).
Swedes take Mainz (to 1636).
Wallenstein recalled by Ferdinand II, raises new army.
Insurrections against Ottomans in Egypt, Lebanon, Yemen.

1632 Battle of Rain: Tilly mortally wounded, dies at Ingolstadt.
Gustavus Adolphus occupies Bavaria.
Sigismund III dies.
Siege of Alte Feste.
English found first factory in Africa.
Portuguese expelled from Bengal.
Russians establish fur-trading post at Yakutsk.
Dutch capture Venlo, Roermond, Maastricht.
Wallenstein captures Leipzig.
Battle of Lützen: Gustavus Adolphus killed.
War of Smolensk begins.

1633 Franco–Swedish alliance renewed.
Heilbronn League formed (to 1635).
Swedish Army mutinies.
Ottomans invade Poland.
French invade Lorraine.
Wallenstein conquers Silesia.
Battle of Steinau: Wallenstein defeats Swedes.
East India Company gains toehold in Bengal.
Galileo Galilei tried by Roman Inquisition.

1634 Wallenstein dismissed by Ferdinand II, flees, is murdered on Ferdinand's order.
English Catholic refugees found colony in Maryland.
Brandenburg breaks alliance with Sweden, over Pomerania.
France increases subsidy to Netherlands.
Charles I raises first instalment of ship money, without consulting Parliament.
War of Smolensk ends.
Saxons invade Bohemia.
Battle of Nördlingen: Swedes lose to Imperials.
France occupies part of Alsace.
Heilbronn League allies with France.
Preliminaries of Pirna point way to religious peace in Germany.

1635	Franco–Dutch alliance renewed.
	Spain occupies Trier.
	France occupies Valtelline (to 1637).
	Franco–Swedish alliance fortified.
	France declares war on Spain.
	Peace of Prague in Germany.
	Truce of Stuhmsdorf extends Truce of Altmark for 26 years.
	Dutch establish base on Formosa.
	Louis XIII hires Bernhard von Sachsen-Weimar.
1636	Sweden surrenders Mainz.
	Ferdinand II declares war on France.
	Treaty of Wismar formally allies Sweden with France.
	Army of Flanders invades France.
	Imperial Army invades Burgundy.
	Croquant revolt.
	Regensburg Diet.
	Battle of Wittstock: Swedes defeat Imperials.
	Dutch establish colony on Ceylon.
	Ferdinand III elected king of the Romans.
1637	Swedes retreat to Torgau.
	Ferdinand II dies, succeeded by Ferdinand III.
	Revolt in Valtelline and Spanish occupation.
	Swedish Army withdraws to Pomerania.
	Christianity prohibited in Japan; Kirishitan slaughtered, move underground.
	Dutch expel Portuguese from Gold Coast.
	English trade with China begins, at Canton.
	France intervenes in Catalonia.
	Breda falls to United Provinces.
1638	Battle of Rheinfelden: Bernhard von Sachsen-Weimar defeats Johann von Werth.
	France and Sweden renew alliance.
	English fortify factories in Africa.
	Louis XIV born.
	Third Ottoman siege of Baghdad takes city.
	Bernhard von Sachsen-Weimar captures Breisach.
1639	Battle of Chemnitz: Saxons defeated by Swedes.
	Sweden invades Bohemia.
	First Bishops' War begins.

Bernhard von Sachsen-Weimar dies; France seizes army and lands.
Ottoman conquest of Iraq.
Battle of The Downs: Sea Beggars destroy Spanish fleet, block reinforcements.
Revolt in Normandy.

1640 Revolt in Catalonia (to 1652).
France occupies part of Alsace.
Georg Wilhelm dies; Friedrich Wilhelm succeeds in Brandenburg.
Massacre of Protestants in Ulster.
Revolt of Portugal (to 1668).

1641 Catalans accept French protectorate.
Banér dies.
Swedish Army mutinies.
Netherlands and Portugal sign anti-Spanish alliance.
France and Sweden deepen alliance, to end of war (1648).
Dutch occupy Angola (to 1648).

1642 Brunswick departs the German war.
First English Civil War begins.
Swedes occupy Saxony, invade Moravia.
French found fortified settlement at Montréal, New France.
Battle of Edgehill: Parliament defeated by Cavaliers.
Second Breitenfeld: Imperials beaten by Swedes.

1643 Olivares loses power.
Sweden invades Denmark, starting Torstensson's War (to 1645).
Battle of Rocroi: the Great Condé defeats Army of Flanders.
Louis XIII dies; Louis XIV, age five, succeeds.
Peace talks begin at Münster and Osnabrück (to 1648).
Tüttlingen: Armeé d'Allemagne defeated by Bavarian-Imperial army.

1644 Battle of Marston Moor: Roundheads and Scots defeat Cavaliers.
Battle of Freiburg: Franz von Mercy defeated by the Great Condé and Turenne.
French occupy rest of Alsace.
Pope Urban VIII dies, succeeded by Innocent X.
Manchus overthrow Ming dynasty, establish Qing Empire.

1645 Battle of Jankov: Imperials defeated by Swedes.
Battle of Mergentheim: Franz von Mercy defeats Turenne.
French take 10 towns in Spanish Netherlands.
Crete besieged by Ottomans (to 1669).

	New Model Army funded by Parliament.
	Battle of Naseby: Charles I defeated by Fairfax and Cromwell.
	Michael Romanov dies.
	Peace of Brömsebro ends Torstensson's War.
	Battle of Allerheim: Bavarian-Imperial army defeated by French and Hessians.
	Westphalian delegates meet in full session for first time.
	Saxony and Sweden make separate peace.
1646	Dutch diplomats arrive in Münster.
	Charles I surrenders to Scots; end of First English Civil War.
	France and the Holy Roman Empire agree to provisional peace.
	French retake Dunkirk.
1647	Spain and the Netherlands agree to truce.
	France and Bavaria agree to truce.
	Charles I sold to Parliament by Scots.
	Revolt of Sicily.
	Revolt of Naples.
	Spain declares another bankruptcy.
1648	First Treaty of Münster ends Eighty Years' War.
	Second English Civil War begins.
	The Frondes begin in France.
	Cossacks revolt in Ukraine (to 1654).
	Battle of Zusmarshausen: Bavarians defeated by French.
	Battle of Batoh: Polish Quarter Army defeated by Cossacks.
	Sweden and the Empire agree to preliminary peace.
	Battle of Lens: Spanish defeated by French.
	Treaty of Osnabrück and Second Treaty of Münster end Thirty Years' War.
1649	Bavaria evacuated by French and Swedes.
	Charles I tried for treason, executed.
	Cromwell in Ireland.
	Imperial cities accept toleration.
1650	Congress of Nuremberg sets demobilization schedule for troop withdrawals from Germany.
	Military settlement of Thirty Years' War completed.

Selected Bibliography

Contemporary Sources and Published Documents

d'Albuquerque, Alfonso. *Commentaries of the Great Alfonso d'Albuquerque*, Walter Birch, trans. (1877).

Andrews, Kenneth, ed. *English Privateering Voyages to the West Indies, 1588–1595: Documents* (1986).

Babur. *The Babur-nama in English*, Susannah Beveridge, trans. (1921).

Balbi, F. *The Siege of Malta*, E. Bradford, trans. (1965).

Barbao, Nicolò. *The Diary of the Siege of Constantinople, 1453*, J. R. Melville Jones, trans. (1969).

Barret, Robert. *Theorike and Practike of Moderne Warres* (1598).

Beneke, G. *Germany in the Thirty Years' War* (1978).

Bingham, John. *The Tacktics of Aelien* (1616).

Bourne, William. *The Arte of Shooting in Great Ordnance* (1587).

Champlain, Samuel. *The Voyages of Samuel de Champlain*, C. Pomeroy, trans. (1880).

Cortés, Hernán. *Letters from Mexico* (1971).

Cromwell, Oliver. *The Writings and Speeches of Oliver Cromwell*, 4 vols., W. Abbot, ed. (1937).

De Fuentez, P. *The Conquistadores: First-Person Accounts of the Conquest of Mexico* (1963).

Díaz del Castillo, B. *The True History of the Conquest of Mexico*, 5 vols. (1908–1916).

du Bellay, Martin. *Discipline Militaire* (1548).

Du Praissac, Lord. *A Short Method for the Easie Resolving of any Militarie Question Propounded*, John Cruso, trans. (1639).

Evans, John, ed. *The Works of Sir Roger Williams* (1972).

Fallon, Robert, ed. *The Christian Soldier: Religious Tracts Published for Soldiers on Both Sides during and after the English Civil Wars, 1642–1648* (2003).

Fletcher, Giles. *Of the Russe Commonwealth*, Richard Pipes, ed. (1966).

Gheyn, Jacob de. *Exercise of Armies for Calivres, Muskettes, and Pikes* (1607), J. Kist, trans. (1971).

Giraud, J. *Documents pour servir à l'histoire de l'armement au moyen âge et à la Renaissance*, 2 vols. (1895; 1899).

Hale, J. R., ed. *Certain Discourses Military, by Sir John Smythe* (1590).

Henning, S. *Soloman Henning's Chronicle of Courland and Livonia*, V. Zeps, ed. (1992).
Hogan, E., ed. *A History of the War in Ireland, 1641–1652*, 3 vols. (1879–1880).
Jones, J., trans. *The Siege of Constantinople, 1453: Seven Contemporary Accounts* (1972).
Kors, Alan, ed. *Witchcraft in Europe, 400–1700: A Documentary History* (2000).
Limm, Peter, ed. *The Thirty Years' War* (1984).
Lostal, Pierre de. *Le soldat françois* (1604).
Macauly, G. C., ed. *The Chronicles of Jean Froissart* (1904).
Machiavelli, Niccolò. *The Art of War*, Ellis Farnesworth, trans. (1965; 2003).
———. *The Prince* (1532).
Markham, Francis. *Five Decades of Epistles of Warre* (1622).
Markham, Gervase. *The Last Fight of the Revenge* (1598).
———. *The Souldiers Accidence* (1625).
———. *The Souldiers Exercise in Three Bookes* (1639; 1964).
———. *The Souldiers Grammar* (1627).
Massa, I. *A Short History of the Beginnings and Origins of These Present Wars in Muscovy, to the Year 1610*, G. E. Orchard, trans. (1982).
Monk, George. *Observations Upon Military and Political Affairs* (1671).
Monro, Robert. *Robert Munro, His Expedition with the Worthy Scots Regiment* (1637).
Pasek, J. C. *Memoirs of the Polish Baroque*, C. S. Leach, trans. (1976).
Potter, David. *The French Wars of Religion: Selected Documents* (1997).
Rich, Barnabe. *Farewell to Military Profession, 1581* (1959).
———. *The Pathway to Military Practice* (1587; 1969).
Richelieu, Armand de. *Les Papiers de Richelieu*, Vol. 1, *Section politique extérieure*, P. Gillon, ed. (1982).
———. *Lettres, Instructions, diplomatique et papiers d'etat du Cardinal de Richelieu*, 8 vols. (1853–1877).
Roberts, Keith, ed. *Military Discipline for the Young Artilleryman, by William Barrife* (1661; 1988).
Smythe, John. *Instructions, Observations, and Orders Mylitarie* (1598).
Soman, A., ed. *The Massacre of St. Bartholomew: Reappraisals and Documents* (1974).
Staden, H. *The Land and Government of Muscovy: A 16th Century Account*, T. Esper, trans. (1967).
Stegmann, Andre, ed. *Edits des guerres de religion* (1979).
Tincey, John, ed. *The Young Horseman, or Honest Plain-dealing Cavalier, by John Vernon* (1644; 1993).
Usherwood, Stephen, ed. *The Great Enterprise: History of the Spanish Armada* (1978).
Vauciennes, L. de. *Mémoires de ce qui c'est passé en Suède trés de dépêhes de Chanut*, 2 vols. (1677).
Ward, Robert. *Animadversions of Warre* (1639).
Williams, Roger. *A Briefe Discourse of Warre* (1590).
Young, Peter, ed. *Militarie Instructions for the Cavall'rie, by John Cruso* (1632; 1972).
Young, Peter et al., eds. *The Civil War* (1968).
Zarain. *A Relation of the Late Siege and Taking of the City of Babylon [Baghdad] by the Turks* (1639).
Zólkiewski, S. *Expedition to Moscow*, M. W. Stephen, trans. (1959).

Journals

American Historical Review
Archeological Journal

Archivum Ottomanicum
English Historical Review
European History Quarterly
European Studies Review
French Historical Studies
French History
Gladius
Historical Journal
History Today
International History Review
Islamic Quarterly
Journal of Arms and Armour Society
Journal of Asian Civilizations
Journal of Asian History
Journal of Ecclesiastical History
Journal of European Studies
Journal of Medieval History
Journal of Medieval Military History
Journal of Military History
Journal of Modern History
Journal of World History
The Mariner's Mirror
Military Affairs
Military History Quarterly
Modern Asian Studies
Past and Present
Proceedings of the Huguenot Society of London
Renaissance Studies
Revue d'histoire moderne et contemporaine
Revue du nord
Revue historique
Russian History
Scandinavian Journal of History
Scottish Historical Review
Sixteenth Century Journal
Studies in Medieval and Renaissance History
Technology and Culture
Turcica
Viator
War and Society
War in History
World History Bulletin

General Histories

Cambridge History of Africa, Vol. 3, Roland Oliver, ed. (1977).
Cambridge History of China, Vol. 7, *Ming Dynasty* (1988).
Cambridge History of Early Inner Asia, Denis Sinor, ed. (1990).
Cambridge History of India (1922).

Cambridge History of Iran, Vol. 6, *Timurid and Safavid Periods* (1986).
Cambridge History of Islam, 2 vols. (1970). P. M. Holt, Ann K. S. Lambton, and Bernard Lewis, eds.
Cambridge History of Japan, Vol. 4, *Early Modern Japan* (1991). John W. Hall et al., gen. eds.
New Cambridge History of India, Vol. 1, *The Portuguese in India* (1987). Gordon Johnson, gen. ed.
Oxford History of Britain, rev. ed., Kenneth O. Morgan, ed. (2001).
Oxford History of Christianity, John McManners, ed. (1993).
Oxford History of India, 4th ed., Percival Spear, ed. (1981).
Oxford History of Islam, John Esposito, ed. (1999).
Oxford History of Italy, George Holmes, ed. (1997).
Oxford History of Medieval Europe, George Holmes, ed. (1992).
Oxford History of the British Empire, Vol. 1, W. Roger Lewis, ed. (1998).
Oxford History of the Crusades, Jonathan Riley-Smith, ed. (1999).

Selected Secondary Works

Battles

Books

Ayton, Andrew, and Philip Preston. *The Battle of Crécy, 1346* (2005).
Creasy, Edward. *Fifteen Decisive Battles of the World: Marathon to Waterloo* (1851; 1992).
Davis, Paul. *100 Decisive Battles: Ancient Times to the Present* (1999).
Eggenberger, David. *An Encyclopedia of Battles, 1479 B.C. to the Present* (1985).
Fuller, J.F.C. *A Military History of the Western World*, Vols. 1 and 2 (1954; 1955).
Guthrie, William. *Battles of the Thirty Years War* (2002).
Keegan, John. *The Face of Battle* (1976).
Koustam, Angus. *Pavia 1525: Climax of the Italian Wars* (1996).
Liddell Hart, Basil. *Great Captains Unveiled* (1927; 1996).
Lynn, John A. *Battle* (2003).
Mackenzie, W. M. *The Battle of Bannockburn* (1913).
McCoy, G. *Irish Battles* (1990).
Morgan, Hiram. *The Battle of Kinsale* (2004).
Pratt, Fletcher. *Battles that Changed the History* (1956).
Wailly, Henri de. *Crécy, 1346: Anatomy of a Battle* (1987).
Whistler, Catherine. *The Battle of Pavia* (2003).
Woolrych, Austin. *Battles of the English Civil War* (1991).

War and Society: Africa

Article

Law, R. ''Horses, Firearms, and Political Power in Pre-colonial West Africa,'' *Past and Present* (1976).

Books

Ajayi, J.F.A., and Michael Crowder, eds. *History of West Africa*, 2 vols. (1974).
Black, Jeremy. *War and the World: Military Power and the Fate of Continents, 1450–2000* (2002).

Bovill, E. W. *The Caravans of the Old Sahara* (1933).
———. *The Golden Trade of the Moors*, new ed. (1968).
Choueiri, Youssef M. *Arab Nationalism: A History* (2000).
Conrad, David. *The Songhay Empire* (1998).
Cook, Weston. *The Hundred Years' War for Morocco: Gunpowder and the Military Revolution in the Early Modern Muslim World* (1994).
Daaku, K. Y. *Trade and Politics on the Gold Coast, 1600–1720* (1970).
Davis, D. *The Problem of Slavery in Western Culture* (1966).
Earle, Peter. *The Corsairs of Malta and Barbary* (1970).
Hassan, Y. F. *The Arabs and the Sudan* (1967).
Hess, A. *The Forgotten Frontier: A History of the 16th Century Ibero-African Frontier* (1978).
Klein, Herbert. *The Atlantic Slave Trade* (1999).
Last, Murray. *The Sokoto Caliphate* (1967).
Law, R. *The Horse in West African History* (1980).
Lovejoy, Paul. *Transformations in Slavery* (1983).
Nasr, J. Abun. *A History of the Maghreb* (1971).
Newbury, C. W. *The Western Slave Coast and its Rulers* (1961).
Northrup, David. *The Atlantic Slave Trade* (1994).
Oliver, Roland, and Anthony Atmore. *Medieval Africa 1250–1800* (2001).
Oliver, Roland, and J. D. Fage. *A Short History of Africa* (1962; 1995).
Petry, Carl. *Protectors or Praetorians? The Last Mamluk Sultans and Egypt's Waning as a Great Power* (1994).
Phillip, Thomas, and Ulrich Haarmaan, eds. *The Mamluks in Egyptian Politics and Society* (1998).
Phillipson, David. *Ancient Ethiopia* (1998).
Pipes, Daniel. *Slave Soldiers and Islam: Genesis of a Military System* (1981).
Popper, William. *Egypt and Syria under the Circassian Sultans, 1382–1468*, 2 vols. (1955–1957).
Ryder, Allan. *Benin and the Europeans, 1485–1897* (1969).
Sellassie, Sergew. *Ancient and Medieval Ethiopia* (1972).
Smith, Robert. *Warfare & Diplomacy in Pre-Colonial West Africa* (1989).
Thornton, John K. *Africa and Africans in the Making of the Atlantic World, 1400–1680* (1998).
———. *Kingdom of the Kongo: Civil War and Transition, 1641–1718* (1983).
———. *Warfare in Atlantic Africa, 1500–1800* (1999).
Vansina, Jan. *Kingdoms of the Savannah* (1966).

War and Society: The Americas

Articles and Chapters

Clendinnen, Inga. "Fierce and Unnatural Cruelty: Cortés and the Conquest of Mexico," in Stephen Greenblatt, ed., *New World Encounters* (1993).
Eccles, W. J. "The History of New France According to Francis Parkman," *William and Mary Quarterly*, 18/2 (1961).
Hirsch, A. "The Collision of Military Cultures in 17th Century New England," *Journal of American History*, 74 (1997/1998).
Raudzens, G. "Why Did Amerindian Defenses Fail?" *War in History*, 3/2 (1996).
Richter, D. "War and Culture: The Iroquois Experience," *William and Mary Quarterly*, 40 (1983).

Selected Bibliography

Books

Axtel, J. *Beyond 1492* (1992).

Beck, Roger B. *Christian Missionaries and European Expansion, 1450 to the Present* (1999).

Beeching, Jack. *An Open Path: Christian Missionaries, 1515–1914* (1980).

Black, Jeremy. *War and the World: Military Power and the Fate of Continents, 1450–2000* (2002).

Boxer, Charles Ralph. *The Dutch in Brazil* (1957; 1973).

———. *Four Centuries of Portuguese Expansion* (1961).

———. *The Portuguese Seaborne Empire* (1969).

Bradford, Burns E. *A History of Brazil* (1970).

———. *Latin America: A Concise Interpretive History*, 6th ed. (1994).

Brading, D. A. *The First America: The Spanish Monarchy, Creole Patriots, and the Liberal State, 1492–1867* (1991).

Bradley, Peter. *The Lure of Peru: Maritime Intrusion into the South Sea, 1598–1701* (1989).

Brundage, B. *A Rain of Darts: The Mexican Aztecs* (1972).

Carman, Philip. *Lost Paradise: The Jesuit Republic in South America* (1976).

Clendinnen, Inga. *The Aztecs* (1991).

Conrad, Geoffrey, and Arthur Demarest. *Religion and Empire: The Dynamics of Aztec and Inca Expansionism* (1984).

Cook, Noble. *Born to Die: Disease and New World Conquest, 1492–1650* (1998).

Davidson, Miles H. *Columbus Then and Now* (1997).

Davies, Nigel. *The Aztec Empire* (1987).

Diamond, Jared. *Guns, Germs and Steel* (1997).

Eccles, W. J. *The Canadian Frontier, 1534–1760* (1969).

———. *The French in North America, 1500–1783* (1998).

Ferling, J. *A Wilderness of Miseries: War and Warriors in Early America* (1980).

Fernández-Armesto, Felipe. *Columbus* (1991).

Fisher, John. *Economic Aspects of Spanish Imperialism in America* (1997).

Hassig, Ross. *Aztec Warfare* (1988).

———. *Mexico and the Spanish Conquest* (1995).

Hemming, John. *Red Gold: The Conquest of the Brazilian Indians* (1978).

Hoffman, P. *The Spanish Crown and Defense of the Caribbean, 1535–1585* (1980).

Hulme, Peter. *Colonial Encounters: Europe and the Caribbean, 1492–1797* (1986).

Jennings, F. *The Ambiguous Iroquois Empire* (1984).

———. *The Invasion of America: Indians, Colonialism, and the Cant of Conquest* (1975).

Kicza, John, ed. *The Indian in Latin American History* (1993).

Leon-Portilla, M. *Broken Spears: The Aztec Account of the Conquest of Mexico* (1966).

Lockhart, J. *We People Here: Nahuatl Accounts of the Conquest of Mexico* (1993).

Lunenfeld, Martin. *1492: Discovery, Invasion, Encounter* (1991).

Malone, Patrick. *The Skulking Way of War: Technology and Tactics among the New England Indians* (1991).

Naylor, R. T. *Canada in the European Age, 1453–1919* (1988).

Patterson, Thomas C. *The Inca Empire* (1991).

Phillips, William, and Carla Rahn. *The Worlds of Christopher Columbus* (1992).

Quinn, Frederick. *The French Overseas Empire* (2000).

Richter, D. *The Ordeal of the Longhouse: Peoples of the Iroquois League in the Era of European Colonization* (1992).

Salisbury, N. *Manitou and Providence* (1982).
Starkey, A. *European and Native American Warfare* (1998).
Steele, Ian. *Warpaths: Invasions of North America* (1994).
Thomas, Hugh. *Conquest: Montezuma, Cortés, and the Fall of Old Mexico* (1994).
Townsend, Richard. *The Aztecs* (1990; 2000).
Trigger, B. *The Children of Aataentsic: History of the Huron Peoples to 1660*, 2 vols. (1976).
Vaughan, A. *The New England Frontier: Puritans and Indians, 1620–1675* (1965).
Watts, David. *The West Indies* (1987).
Webb, Stephen. *Governors General: The English Army and the Definition of Empire, 1569–1681* (1979).
Weber, D. *The Spanish Frontier in North America* (1992).
Wood, Michael. *The Conquistadors* (2001).

War and Society: Ottoman Empire and Asia

Articles and Chapters

Agoston, Gábor. "Gunpowder for the Sultan's Army," *Turcica*, 23 (1993).
———. "Ottoman Artillery and European Military Technology in the 15th–17th Centuries," *Acta Orientalia Acadediae Scientiarum Hungaricae*, 47 (1994).
Brown, Delmer. "The Impact of Firearms on Japanese Warfare, 1543–1598," *Far Eastern Quarterly*, 7 (1948).
Collins, L. "Military Organization and Tactics of the Crimean Tatars, 16th–17th Centuries," in V. J. Parry and M. Yapp, eds., *War, Technology, and Society in the Middle East* (1975).
Cook, Theodore. "The Mongol Invasion," *Military History Quarterly*, 11/2 (1998).
Dryer, Edward. "The Military Origins of Ming China," in *Cambridge History of China*, Vol. 7 (1988).
Fall, Bernard. "2000 Years of War in Vietnam," *Horizon* (1967).
Finkel, C. "The Costs of Ottoman Warfare and Defense," *Byzantinische Forschungen*, 16 (1991).
Gommens, J. "The Silent Frontier of South Asia, 1100–1800," *Journal of World History*, 9 (1998).
Goodrich, L. C., and Chia-Sheng. "Early Development of Firearms in China," *Isis*, 35 (1944).
Grant, Jonathan. "Rethinking the Ottoman 'Decline': Military Technology Diffusion in the Ottoman Empire, 15th–18th Centuries," *Journal of World History*, 10 (1999).
Guilmartin, John. "Ideology and Conflict: The Wars of the Ottoman Empire, 1453–1606," *Journal of Interdisciplinary History*, 18 (1988).
Heesterman, Jan. "The Hindu Frontier," *Itinerario*, 13 (1989).
———. "Warrior, Peasant, and Brahmin," *Modern Asian Studies*, 29 (1995).
Hess, A. "The Ottoman Conquest of Egypt," *International Journal of Middle East Studies*, 4 (1973).
Huang, Yi-Long. "Military Expenditures in 16th Century Ming China," *Oriens Extremus*, 17 (1970).
Inalcik, H. "Military and Fiscal Transformation in the Ottoman Empire, 1600–1700," *Archivum Ottomanicum*, 6 (1980).
———. "Ottoman Methods of Conquest," *Studia Islamica*, 2 (1954).
Iqtidar, Alam. "The Coming of Gunpowder to the Islamic World and North India," *Journal of Asian History*, 30 (1996).

———. "Early Use of Cannon and Musket in India, 1442–1526," *Journal of the Economic and Social History of the Orient*, 24 (1981).
———. "Origin and Development of Gunpowder Technology in India, 1250–1500," *Indian Historical Review*, 4 (1977).
Kaldy-Nagy, G. "The Holy War (Jihad) in the First Centuries of the Ottoman Empire," *Harvard Ukrainian Studies*, 3–4 (1979–1980).
Lal, K. "Striking Power of the Army of the Sultanate," *Journal of Indian History*, 55 (1977).
Latham, J. "The Archers of the Middle East," *Iran*, 8 (1970).
Lockhart, Lawrence. "The Persian Army in the Safavid Period," *Der Islam*, 34 (1959).
Morillo, David. "Guns and Government: A Comparative Study of Europe and Japan," *Journal of World History* (1995).
Murphey, Rhoads. "Horsebreeding in Eurasia," *Central and Inner Asian Studies*, 4 (1990).
———. "Ottoman Resurgence in the 17th Century Mediterranean," *Mediterranean Historical Review*, 8 (1993).
———. "An Ottoman View from the Top," *Turcica*, 28 (1996).
Nadvi, S. "The Use of Cannon in Muslim India," *Islamic Culture*, 12 (1938).
Nicolle, David. "The Impact of the European Couched Lance on Muslim Military Tradition," *Journal of Arms and Armour Society*, 10 (1980).
Patterson, W. P. "Archers of Islam," *Journal of Economic and Social History of the Orient*, 9 (1966).
———. "Archery in Moghul India," *Islamic Quarterly*, 16 (1972).
Serruys, Henry. "The Mongols in China: 1400–1450," *Monumenta Serica*, 27 (1968).
———. "The Mongols in China during the Hongwu Period, 1368–1398," *Melanges Chinois et Bouddhiques*, 11 (1959).
Smith, John Masson. "Ayn Jālūt: Mamluk Success or Mongol Failure?" *Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies*, 44 (1984).
———. "Nomads on Ponies vs. Slaves on Horses," *Journal of American Oriental Society*, 118 (1998).
Sugar, P. "A Near-Perfect Military Society: The Ottoman Empire," in L. Farrar, ed., *War* (1978).
Thompson, William. "The Military Superiority Thesis and the Ascendancy of Western Eurasia in the World System," *Journal of World History*, 10 (1999).
Van de Ven, Hans. "Military Mobilization in 17th and 18th Century China, Russia, and Mongolia," *Modern Asian Studies*, 30 (1996).
Waldron, Arthur. "Chinese Strategy from the 14th to the 17th Centuries," in William Murray et al., eds., *Making of Strategy: Rulers, States, and War* (1994).
Yar Khan, Muhammad. "Use of Artillery during the Sultanate Period," *Islamic Culture*, 35 (1961).
Zaman, M. "Use of Artillery in Mughal Warfare," *Islamic Culture*, 57 (1983).

Books

Adshead, S.A.M. *Central Asia in World History* (1994).
Alam, Muzaffar, and Sanjay Subrahmanyan. *The Mughal State, 1526–1750* (1998).
Allsen, Thomas. *Mongol Imperialism* (1987).
Amitai-Preiss, Reuven. *Mongols and Mamluks* (1995).
Amitai-Preiss, Reuven, and David Morgan, eds. *The Mongol Empire and its Legacy* (1999).
Arjomand, Said. *The Shadow of God and the Hidden Imam* (1984).

Ayalon, David. *Eunuchs, Caliphs and Sultans* (1999).
———. *Gunpowder and Firearms in the Mamluk Kingdom* (1956).
———. *Islam and the Abode of War: Military Slaves and Islamic Adversaries* (1994).
———. *Mamlūks and Naval Power: The Struggle Between Islam and Christian Europe* (1965).
———. *Outsiders in the Lands of Islam: Mamluks, Mongols, and Eunuchs* (1988).
Babinger, F. *Mehmed the Conqueror and His Time*, Ralph Manheim, trans. (1978).
Barfield, Thomas. *The Perilous Frontier: Nomadic Empires and China* (1989).
Basham, A. L. *The Origins and Development of Classical Hinduism* (1989).
———. *The Wonder That Was India* (1963).
Beasley, W. G. *The Japanese Experience: A Short History of Japan* (2000).
———. *The Rise of Modern Japan*, 2nd ed. (1995).
Beckwith, Christopher. *The Tibetan Empire in Central Asia* (1987).
Berry, Elizabeth. *The Culture of Civil War in Kyoto* (1992).
———. *Hideyoshi* (1982).
Bhakari, S. *Indian Warfare: Strategy and Tactics in the Early-Medieval Period* (1981).
Black, Jeremy. *War and the World: Military Power and the Fate of Continents, 1450–2000* (2002).
Bomati, Yves, and Houchang Nahavandi. *Shah Abbas, Empereur de Perse, 1587–1629* (1998).
Boxer, Charles Ralph. *The Dutch Seaborne Empire* (1965).
———, ed. *Portuguese Commerce and Conquest in Southern Asia, 1500–1750* (1985).
———. *The Portuguese Seaborne Empire, 1415–1825* (1969).
———, ed. *South China in the 16th Century* (1953).
Calmard, Jean, ed. *Etudes Safavides* (1993).
Canfield, Robert. *Turko-Persia in Historical Perspective* (1991).
Chan, A. *The Glory and Fall of the Ming Dynasty* (1982).
Chaudhuri, K. *Asia before Europe* (1990).
Clot, André. *Suleiman the Magnificent: The Man, His Life, His Epoch* (1992).
Cosomo, Nicola. *Warfare in Inner Asian History, 500–1800* (2002).
Crone, Patricia. *Slaves on Horses: The Evolution of Islamic Polity* (1980).
Crossley, Pamela. *The Manchus* (1997).
Dávid, Géza, and Pál Fodor, eds. *Hungarian-Ottoman Military and Diplomatic Relations in the Age of Süleyman the Magnificent* (1994).
Davidson, Roderic H. *Turkey: A Short History*, 3rd ed. (1998).
De Bary, William T., ed. *The Buddhist Tradition in India, China, and Japan* (1972).
———. *The Trouble with Confucianism* (1991).
de Silva, Chandra. *Sri Lanka: A History*, 2nd rev. ed. (1997).
Digby, Simon. *Warhorse and Elephant in the Delhi Sultanate* (1971).
Djévad, Ahmed. *Etat Militaire Ottoman*, Vol. 1: *Les Corps des Janissaires* (1882).
Eaton, Richard. *The Rise of Islam and the Bengal Frontier, 1204–1760* (1993).
Eber, Irene. *Confucianism* (1986).
Elison, George, and B. Smith. *Warlords, Artists, and Commoners: Japan in the 16th Century* (1981).
Esin, E. *The Age of Sultan Süleyman the Magnificent* (1987).
Farris, William. *Heavenly Warriors: The Evolution of Japan's Military, 500–1300* (1992).
Fodor, Pál, and Géza Dávid, eds. *Ottomans, Hungarians, and Habsburgs in Central Europe: The Military Confines in the Era of Ottoman Conquest* (2000).

Fowler, Jeaneane. *Hinduism: Beliefs and Practices* (1997).
Friday, Karl. *Hired Swords: The Rise of Private Warfare in Early Japan* (1992).
Gabrielli, F. *Muhammad and the Conquests of Islam* (1968).
Gascoigne, Bamber. *The Great Moghuls* (1971).
Gernet, Jaques. *China and the Christian Impact* (1985).
Glamann, Kristof. *The Dutch-Asiatic Trade* (1958).
Goodwin, Godfrey. *The Janissaries* (1995).
Goodwin, Jason. *Lords of the Horizons: A History of the Ottoman Empire* (1999).
Grew, Raymond. *Food in Global History* (1999).
Grewal, J. S. *The Sikhs of the Punjab*, rev. ed. (1998).
Groot, A. *The Ottoman Empire and the Dutch Republic, 1610–1630* (1978).
Haider, Syed. *Islamic Arms and Armour of Muslim India* (1991).
Halecki, O. *The Borderlands of Western Civilization* (1952).
Hall, J. et al., eds. *Japan before Tokugawa* (1981).
Hallissey, Robert. *The Rajput Rebellion Against Aurangzeb* (1977).
Har-el, Shai. *The Struggle for Domination in the Middle East: The Ottoman-Mamluk War, 1485–1491* (1995).
Hartog, Leo de. *Ghengis Khan, Conqueror of the World* (1989).
Henthorn, William. *Korea: The Mongol Invasions* (1963).
Hillenbrand, Carole. *The Crusades: Islamic Perspectives* (2000).
Hinago, Motoo. *Japanese Castles* (1986).
Hodgson, Marshall. *The Classical Age of Islam* (1974).
———. *The Expansion of Islam* (1974).
———. *Gunpowder Empires and Modern Times* (1974).
———. *Rethinking World History* (1993).
———. *The Venture of Islam*, 3 vols. (1958–1961).
Holt, P. M. *The Age of the Crusades* (1986).
———. *Egypt and the Fertile Crescent, 1516–1922* (1966).
Hourani, Albert. *A History of the Arab Peoples* (1997).
Hucker, Charles. *China's Imperial Past* (1975).
Ikegami, Eiko. *The Taming of the Samurai* (1995).
Imber, Colin. *The Ottoman Empire, 1300–1650* (2002).
Inalcik, H. *The Ottoman Empire: The Classical Age, 1300–1600* (1973).
———. *The Ottoman Empire: Conquest, Organization and Economy* (1978).
———. *Süleyman the Second and His Times* (1993).
Irvine, W. *The Army of the Indian Mughals* (1903).
Jackson, Peter. *The Delhi Sultanate: Political and Military History* (1999).
Jagchid, Sechin, and Luc Kwanten. *Imperial Nomads: A History of Central Asia, 500–1500* (1979).
Jagchid, Sechin, and V. J. Symons. *Peace, War, and Trade Along the Great Wall* (1989).
Jankovich, Miklós. *They Rode into Europe* (1971).
Johnson, James T., and John Kelsey. *Cross, Crescent and Sword* (1990).
Kaeppelin, P. *La Compagnie des Indes Orientales* (1908).
Kafadar, Cemal. *Between Two Worlds: Construction of the Ottoman State* (1995).
Karsh, Efraim. *Empires of the Sand* (1999).
Keay, John. *India: A History* (2000).
Kennedy, Hugh. *The Armies of the Caliphs* (2001).
———. *The Prophet and the Age of the Caliphates* (1986).

Kiernan, Frank, and John Fairbanks. *Chinese Ways in Warfare* (1974).
Kolff, Dirk. *Naukar, Rajput, and Sepoy* (1990).
Koprulu, Mehmet. *The Seljuks of Anatolia*, Gary Leiser, trans. (1992).
Kortepeter, C. M. *Ottoman Imperialism during the Reformation* (1992).
Kunt, Metin, and Christine Woodhead, eds. *Suleyman the Magnificent and His Age* (1995).
Lamers, Jeroen. *Japonius Tyrannus: The Japanese Warlord Oda Nobunaga Reconsidered* (2000).
Langlois, J., ed. *China under Mongol Rule* (1981).
Lawson, Philip. *The East India Company* (1993).
Lewis, Bernard. *Arabs in History* (1966).
———. *The Assassins: A Radical Sect in Islam* (1967; 2002).
———. *The Middle East* (1995).
———. *The Muslim Discovery of Europe* (1982).
Liu, Xinru. *Ancient India and Ancient China: Trade and Religious Exchanges* (1994).
Lyons, M. C., and D. Jackson. *Saladin: Politics of the Holy War* (1982).
Maalouf, Amin. *The Crusades Through Arab Eyes* (1984).
Manz, Beatrice. *The Rise and Rule of Tamerlane* (1999).
Matar, Nabil. *Turks, Moors, and Englishmen in the Age of Discovery* (1999).
McCarthy, Justin. *The Ottoman Turks* (1997).
McLeod, W. H. *Sikhism* (1997).
McMullen, N. *Buddhism and the State in 16th Century Japan* (1984).
McNeill, William H. *The Age of Gunpowder Empires, 1450–1800* (1999).
———. *Europe's Steppe Frontier, 1500–1800* (1964).
———. *Plagues and Peoples* (1977; 1998).
Melville, Charles, ed. *Safavid Persia* (1996).
Monshi, Eskandar Beg. *The History of Shah Abbas the Great*, Roger Savory, trans. (1978).
Morgan, David. *Medieval Persia, 1040–1797* (1988).
———. *The Mongols* (1993).
Mote, Frederick. *Imperial China, 900–1800* (2000).
Muldoon, James. *Empire and Order: The Concept of Empire, 800–1800* (1999).
Murphey, Rhoads. *Ottoman Warfare, 1500–1700* (1999).
Murphy, P., ed. *Holy War* (1976).
Nakane, Chie, and Shinzabur Oishi, eds. *Tokugawa Japan* (1990).
Nicolle, David. *The Janissaries* (1995).
Nouzille, J. *Histoire de Frontières: l'Autriche et l'empire Ottoman* (1991).
Olmstead, A. T. *History of the Persian Empire*, 2nd ed. (1969).
Ostrowski, Donald. *Muscovy and the Mongols* (1998).
Pagden, Anthony. *Lords of All the World* (1995).
Paludan, Ann. *Chronicle of the Chinese Emperors* (1998).
Parry, V., and M. Yapp. *War, Technology and Society in the Middle East* (1975).
Parry, V. J. *A History of the Ottoman Empire to 1730* (1976).
Parsons, James. *The Peasant Rebellions of the Late Ming Dynasty* (1970).
Pearson, M. N. *Port Cities and Intruders: The Swahili Coast, India, and Portugal in the Early Modern Era* (1998).
———. *The Portuguese in India* (1987).
Perrin, Noel. *Giving Up the Gun: Japan's Reversion to the Sword, 1543–1879* (1979).

Pomeranz, Kenneth. *The Great Divergence: Europe, China, and the Making of the Modern World Economy* (2000).
Ratchnevsky, Paul. *Ghengis Khan: His Life and Legacy* (1992).
Raychaudhuri, T. *Jan Company in Coromandel, 1605–1690* (1962).
Richards, John. *The Mughal Empire* (1993).
Roberts, J.A.G. *A Concise History of China* (1999).
Robinson, David. *Bandits, Eunuchs, and the Son of Heaven* (2001).
Robinson, R. H. *The Buddhist Religion*, 3rd ed. (1982).
Rossabi, Morris. *China and Inner Asia From 1368* (1975).
———. *Khubilai Khan* (1988).
Sansom, George. *A History of Japan, 1334–1615* (1961).
Sarkar, J. *The Art of War in Medieval India* (1984).
———. *Military History of India* (1970).
Savory, Roger. *Iran under the Safavids* (1980).
Saxena, R. *The Army of the Rajputs* (1989).
Sen, S. *The Military System of the Marathas* (1928).
Shaw, Stanford, and E. K. Shaw. *History of the Ottoman Empire and Modern Turkey*, Vol. 1 (1977).
Sinor, Denis. *Studies in Medieval Inner Asia* (1997).
So Kwan-wai. *Japanese Piracy in Ming China during the 16th Century* (1975).
Souchek, Svat. *A History of Inner Asia* (2000).
Spence, Jonathan. *The Search for Modern China* (1990).
Spence, Jonathan, and John Wills. *From Ming to Ch'ing* (1979).
Spruyt, J., and J. B. Robertson. *History of Indonesia*, rev. ed. (1973).
Srivastava, A. L. *The Mughal Empire, 1526–1803*, 6th ed. (1971).
Stein, Burton. *A History of India* (1998).
Stiles, A. *The Ottoman Empire, 1450–1700* (1989).
Stresusand, Douglas. *The Formation of the Mughal Empire* (1999).
Stripling, George. *The Ottoman Turks and the Arabs, 1511–1574* (1942; 1977).
Struve, Lynn. *The Southern Ming, 1644–1662* (1984).
Subrahmanyan, Sanjay. *The Portuguese Empire in Asia, 1500–1700* (1993).
Toby, R. *State and Diplomacy in Early Modern Japan* (1984).
Tong, James. *Disorder Under Heaven: Collective Violence in the Ming Dynasty* (1991).
Totman, Conrad. *Early Modern Japan* (1993).
———. *Tokugawa Ieyasu: Shogun* (1983).
Tsai, Shih-shan Henry. *Perpetual Happiness: The Ming Emperor Yongle* (2001).
Turnbull, Stephen. *The Samurai: A Military History* (1977).
———. *Samurai Warfare* (1996).
———. *War in Japan, 1467–1645* (2002).
Van de Ven, Hans, ed. *Warfare in Chinese History* (2000).
Varley, H. *The Ōnin War* (1994).
———. *Warriors of Japan* (1994).
Waldron, Arthur. *The Great Wall of China: From History to Myth* (1990).
Watts, Sheldon. *Epidemics and History* (1998).
Weber, H. *La Compagnie Française des Indes* (1904).
Weissmann, Nahoum. *Les Janissaires: Étude de l'Organisation Militaire des Ottomans* (1938).
Wheatcroft, Andrew. *The Ottomans* (1993).
Wink, A. *The Making of the Indo-Islamic World*, 2 vols. (1997).
Wolpert, Stanley. *A New History of India*, 6th ed. (2000).

War and Society: The Baltic

Articles and Chapters

Agren, K. ''Rise and Decline of an Aristocracy: The Swedish Social and Political Elite in the 17th Century,'' *Scandinavia Journal of History*, 1 (1976).

Alberg, A. ''The Swedish Army from Lutzen to Narva,'' in M. Roberts, ed., *Sweden's Age of Greatness, 1632–1718* (1973).

Böhme, K-R. ''Building a Baltic Empire: Aspects of Swedish Expansion, 1550–1660,'' in G. Rystad et al., eds., *In Quest of Trade and Security: The Baltic in Power Politics, 1500–1990* (1994).

Jespersen, K.J.V. ''Absolute Monarchy in Denmark,'' *Scandinavian Journal of History*, 12 (1987).

———. ''The Rise and Fall of the Danish Nobility, 1600–1800,'' in H. M. Scott, ed., *The European Nobilities in the 17th and 18th Centuries* (1995).

Lind, G. ''Military and Absolutism: The Army Officers of Denmark-Norway as a Social Group and Political Factor, 1660–1848,'' *Scandinavian Journal of History*, 12 (1987).

Lindegren, Jan. ''The Swedish 'Military State,' 1560–1720,'' *Scandinavian Journal of History*, 10 (1985).

Lockhart, P. D. ''Denmark and the Empire: A Reassessment of the Foreign Policy of King Christian IV, 1596–1648,'' *Scandinavian Studies*, 62 (1992).

Roberts, Michael. ''Gustav Adolf and the Art of War,'' in Michael Roberts, *Essays in Swedish History* (1967).

———. ''The Military Revolution, 1560–1660,'' in Michael Roberts, *Essays in Swedish History* (1967).

———. ''Queen Christiana and the General Crisis of the 17th Century,'' in Michael Roberts, *Essays in Swedish History* (1967).

Troebst, S. ''Debating the Mercantile Background to Early Modern Swedish Empire-Building,'' *European History Quarterly*, 24 (1994).

Viirankoski, P. ''The Impact of Military Service on Finnish Rural Society in the 17th Century,'' *Turun Historiallinen Arkisto*, 38 (1982).

Books

Ahnlund, Nils. *Gustavus Adolphus the Great* (1940).

Andersson, Ingvar. *A History of Sweden* (1975).

Brondsted, J. B. *The Vikings* (1965).

Burleigh, M. *Prussian Society and the German Order, 1410–1466* (1984).

Carsten, F. L. *The Origins of Prussia* (1954).

Christiansen, E. *The Northern Crusades: The Baltic and the Catholic Frontier, 1100–1525* (1980).

Dodge, Theodore. *Gustavus Adolphus* (1895).

Dollinger, P. *The German Hansa* (1964; 1970).

Dow, J. *Ruthven's Army in Sweden and Estonia* (1965).

Fitzhugh, W. W., and E. I. Ward, eds. *The Vikings* (2000).

Foote, P., and D. M. Wilson. *The Viking Achievement* (1970).

Friedrich, K. *The Other Prussia: Poland, Prussia and Liberty, 1559–1772* (2000).

Frost, Robert. *The Northern Wars, 1558–1721* (2000).

Grell, Ole. *The Scandinavian Reformation* (1995).

Grosjean, Alexis. *An Unofficial Alliance: Scotland and Sweden, 1569–1654* (2003).

Hill, C. E. *The Danish Sound Dues and the Command of the Baltic* (1926; 1955).
Johannesson, K. *The Renaissance of the Goths in 16th Century Sweden* (1991).
Jones, Gwyn. *A History of the Vikings* (1968; 2001).
Kirby, D. *Northern Europe in the Early Modern Period: The Baltic World, 1492–1772* (1990).
Kirchner, W. *The Rise of the Baltic Question* (1954).
Koch, H. W. *A History of Prussia* (1978).
Lisk, J. *The Struggle for Supremacy in the Baltic, 1600–1725* (1967).
Lockhart, Paul. *Denmark in the Thirty Years' War, 1618–1648* (1996).
Oakley, S. *War and Peace in the Baltic, 1560–1790* (1992).
Ringmar, E. *Identity, Interest and Action: Sweden's Intervention in the Thirty Years' War* (1996).
Roberts, Michael. *Early Vasas: A History of Sweden, 1523–1611* (1968).
———. *Essays in Swedish History* (1967).
———. *Gustavus Adolphus* (1992).
———. *Gustavus Adolphus and the Rise of Sweden* (1973).
———. *Sweden as a Great Power, 1611–1697* (1968).
———, ed. *Sweden's Age of Greatness, 1632–1718* (1973).
———. *Swedish Diplomats at Cromwell's Court* (1988).
———. *The Swedish Imperial Experience, 1560–1718* (1979).
Roesdahl, Else. *The Vikings*, 2nd ed. (trans. 1998).
Rystad, G. et al., eds. *In Quest of Trade and Security: The Baltic in Power Politics, 1500–1990* (1994).
Sawyer, P. H. *The Age of the Vikings* (1972).
Stiles, A. *Sweden and the Baltic, 1523–1721* (1992).

War and Society: Eastern Europe and Muscovy

Articles and Chapters

Alef, G. "Muscovite Military Reforms in the Second Half of the 15th Century," *Forschungen zur Osteuropäschen Geschichte*, 18 (1973).
Crummey, R. "The Fate of the Boyar Clans, 1565–1613," *Forschungen zur Osteuropäschen Geschichte*, 38 (1986).
Davies, B. "Village into Garrison: The Militarized Peasant Communities of Southern Muscovy," *Russian Review*, 51 (1992).
Frost, R. I. "The Nobility of Poland-Lithuania, 1569–1795," in H. M. Scott, ed., *The European Nobilities in the 17th and 18th Centuries* (1995).
———. "Poland-Lithuania and the Thirty Years' War," in K. Bussmann and H. Schilling, eds., *War and Peace in Europe, 1618–1648* (1998).
Loewe, K. "Military Service in Early 16th Century Lithuania," *Slavic Review*, 30 (1971).
Paul, Michael. "The Military Revolution in Russia, 1550–1682," *Journal of Military History*, 68/1 (2004).
Poe, M. "Consequences of the Military Revolution in Muscovy," *Comparative Studies in Society and History*, 38 (1996).
Shaw, Dennis. "Southern Frontiers of Muscovy, 1550–1700," in James Bater and R. French, eds., *Studies in Russian Historical Geography* (1983).
Skrynnikov, R. G. "The Civil War in Russia at the Beginning of the 17th Century (1603–1607)," in L. Hughes, ed., *New Perspectives on Muscovite History* (1993).

Smith, D. L. "Muscovite Logistics, 1462–1598," *Slavonic and East European Studies Review*, 71 (1993).
Sysyn, F. "The Problem of Nobilities in the Ukrainian Past: The Polish Period, 1569–1648," in L. Rudnitsky, ed., *Rethinking Ukrainian History* (1981).

Books

Alef, Gustave. *Ruklers and Nobles in 15th Century Muscovy* (1983).
Bak, J. M., and R. Király, eds. *From Hunyadi to Rakocki: War and Society in Late Medieval and Early Modern Hungary* (1982).
Bartos, F. *The Hussite Revolution* (1986).
Brzezinski, R. *Polish Armies, 1559–1696*, 2 vols. (1987).
Bushkovitch, Paul. *Religion and Society in Russia: The 16th and 17th Centuries* (1992).
Crummey, Robert. *Aristocrats and Servitors: The Boyar Elite in Russia, 1613–1689* (1983).
———. *The Formation of Muscovy, 1304–1613* (1987).
Davies, Norman. *God's Playground: A History of Poland*, Vol. 1 (1981).
Fedorowicz, J. K., ed. *A Republic of Nobles: Studies in Polish History to 1864* (1982).
Finkel, C. *The Administration of Warfare: Ottoman Military Campaigns in Hungary, 1593–1606* (1988).
Friedrich, K. *The Other Prussia: Poland, Prussia and Liberty, 1559–1772* (2000).
Graham, Hugh F. *Ivan the Terrible* (1981).
Grey, Ian. *Ivan III and the Unification of Russia* (1964).
Halperin, Charles. *Russia and the Golden Horde* (1987).
Hellie, R. *Enserfment and Military Change in Muscovy* (1971).
Heyman, F. G. *Jan Zizka and the Hussite Revolution* (1955).
Hughes, Lindsay, ed. *New Perspectives on Muscovite History* (1993).
Kaminsky, Howard. *A History of the Hussite Revolution* (1967).
Keep, J. L. *Soldiers of the Tsar: Army and Society in Russia, 1462–1874* (1985).
Koch, H. W. *A History of Prussia* (1978).
Kollmann, N. S. *Kingship and Politics: The Making of the Muscovite Political System, 1345–1547* (1996).
Lieven, Dominic. *Empire: The Russian Empire and its Rivals* (2001).
Lincoln, W. Bruce. *The Conquest of a Continent: Siberia and the Russians* (1994).
Magosci, Paul. *A History of Ukraine* (1996).
Perjés, Géza. *The Fall of the Medieval Kingdom of Hungary: Mohács 1526–Buda 1541*, Mario Fenyó, trans. (1977; 1989).
Péter, K. et al., eds. *A History of Hungary* (1990).
Posnic, Roger, ed. *Histoire militaire de la Pologne* (1970).
Reddaway, W. et al., eds. *Cambridge History of Poland*, Vol. 1: *From the Origins to Sobieski* (1950).
Riasanovsky, Nicholas. *A History of Russia* (1984).
Rothenberg, G. *The Austrian Military Border in Croatia, 1522–1747* (1960).
Rudnitsky, L., ed. *Rethinking Ukrainian History* (1981).
Skrynnikov, R. G. *Boris Gudonov*, Hugh Graham, trans. (1982).
———. *Ivan the Terrible*, Hugh Graham, trans. (1981).
———. *The Time of Troubles*, Hugh Graham, trans. (1988).
Stavrianos, Leften. *The Balkans Since 1453* (1958).
Stevens, C. B. *Soldiers on the Steppe: Army Reform and Social Change in Early Modern Russia* (1995).

Subtelny, Orest. *Ukraine: A History* (2004).
Sugar, Peter. *Southeastern Europe under Ottoman Rule, 1354–1804* (1977).
Troyat, Henri. *Ivan the Terrible* (1984).

War and Society: Western Europe and the Mediterranean

Articles and Chapters

Allmand, C. T. "War and Profit in the Late Middle Ages," *History Today*, 15 (1965).
Antonucci, Michael. "Siege Without Reprieve," *Military History* (April 1992).
Baraude, Henri. "Le Siège d'Orleans et Jeanne d'Arc," in *Revue des questions historiques*, 80 (1906) and 81 (1907).
Benecke, G. "The Problem of Death and Destruction in Germany during the Thirty Years' War," *European Studies Review*, 2 (1972).
Benedict, Philip. "The Saint Bartholomew's Day Massacre in the Provinces," *Historical Journal* (1978).
Bossy, John. "The Counter-Reformation and the People of Catholic Europe," *Past and Present*, 47 (1970).
Brightwell, P. "Spain and Bohemia: The Decision to Intervene, 1619," *European Studies Review*, 12 (1982).
———. "Spanish Origins of the Thirty Years' War," *European Studies Review*, 9 (1979).
Brown, S. "The Mercenary and His Master," *History*, 74 (1989).
Carr, A. "Welshmen and the Hundred Years' War," *Welsh History Review*, 4 (1968).
Cogswell, T. "Foreign Policy and Parliament: The Case of La Rochelle, 1625–26," *English Historical Review*, 99 (1984).
Cowdery, H. E. "The Peace and the Truce of God," *Past and Present*, 46 (1970).
Curry, Anne. "English Armies in the Fifteenth Century," in A. Curry and M. Hughes, eds., *Armies and Fortifications in the Hundred Years War* (1994).
Davis, Natalie. "Rites of Violence: Religious Riots in 16th Century France," *Past and Present*, 59 (1973).
Dickson, G. "The Flagellants of 1260 and the Crusades," *Journal of Modern History*, 15 (1989).
Diefendorf, Barbara. "Prologue to a Massacre: Popular Unrest in Paris, 1557–1572," *American Historical Review*, 90 (1985).
Donagan, B. "Halcyon Days and the Literature of War: England's Military Education before 1642," *Past and Present*, 147 (1995).
Dukes, P. "The Leslie Family in the Swedish Period of the Thirty Years' War," *European Studies Review*, 12 (1982).
Eltis, David. "Towns and Defence in Later Medieval Germany," *Nottingham Medieval Studies* (1989).
Finó, J-F. "Les armées françaises lors de la guerre de cent ans," *Gladius*, 13 (1977).
Flynn, D. "Fiscal Crisis and the Decline of Spain," *Journal of Economic History*, 42 (1982).
Gaupp, F. "The Condottieri John Hawkwood," *History*, 23 (1938–1939).
Gentile, I. "Why Men Fought in the English Civil Wars, 1639–1651," *History Teacher*, 26 (1993).
Gilbert, F. "Machiavelli and the Renaissance of the Art of War," in E. M. Earle, ed., *Makers of Modern Strategy* (1952).
Grayson, J. "The Civic Militia in the County of Holland," *BMGN*, 95 (1981).

Greengrass, Mark. ''The Later Wars of Religion in the French Midi,'' in P. Clark, ed., *The European Crisis of the 1590s* (1985).
Griffiths, G. ''Saint Bartholomew Reappraised,'' *Journal of Modern History* (1976).
Hale, J. R. ''War and Public Opinion in the 15th and 16th Centuries,'' *Past and Present*, 21 (1962).
Harari, Yuval. ''Strategy and Supply in 14th Century Western European Invasion Campaigns,'' *Journal of Military History*, 64 (2000).
Hayden, J. ''Continuity in the France of Henri IV and Louis XIII: French Foreign Policy, 1598–1615,'' *Journal of Modern History*, 45 (1973).
Hendrix, S. ''Luther's Impact on the 16th Century,'' *Sixteenth Century Journal*, 16 (1985).
Henry, L. ''The Earl of Essex and Ireland, 1599,'' *Bulletin of the Institute of Historical Research*, 32 (1959).
———. ''The Earl of Essex as Strategist and Military Organizer (1596–97),'' *English Historical Review*, 68 (1953).
Holt, Mack. ''Putting Religion Back into the 'Wars of Religion,' '' *French Historical Studies*, 18 (1993).
Israel, J. I. ''Central European Jewry during the Thirty Years' War,'' *Central European History*, 16 (1993).
Jensen, D. ''French Diplomacy and the Wars of Religion,'' *Sixteenth Century Journal*, 5 (1974).
Kamen, Henry. ''The Decline of Spain: A Historical Myth?'' *Past and Present*, 81 (1978).
———. ''Economic Consequences of the Thirty Years' War,'' *Past and Present*, 39 (1968).
Kettering, Sharon. ''Cleintage during the Wars of Religion,'' *Sixteenth Century Journal*, 20 (1989).
Kiernan, V. ''Foreign Mercenaries and Absolute Monarchy,'' *Past and Present*, 11 (1957).
Kingdom, Robert. ''Calvinism and Resistance Theory, 1550–1580,'' in *Cambridge History of Political Thought, 1450–1700* (1991).
Koenigsberger, H. ''Orange, Granville, and Philip II,'' *BMGN*, 99 (1984).
Love, Ronald. ''All the King's Horsemen: The Equestrian Army of Henry IV, 1585–1598,'' *Sixteenth Century Journal*, 22 (1991).
Lynn, John A. ''How War Fed War: The Tax of Violence and Contributions during the *Grand Siècle*,'' *Journal of Modern History*, 65 (1993).
———. ''Recalculating French Army Growth during the *Grand Siècle*, 1610–1715,'' in Clifford Rogers, ed., *The Military Revolution Debate* (1995).
———. ''Tactical Evolution in the French Army, 1560–1660,'' *French Historical Studies*, 14 (1985).
Malcolm, J. ''All the King's Men,'' *Irish Historical Studies*, 22 (1979).
Nicolle, David. ''Medieval Warfare,'' *Journal of Military History*, 63 (1999).
Nusbacher, E. ''Civil Supply in the Civil War,'' *English Historical Review* (2000).
Ogilvie, S. ''Germany and the 17th Century Crisis,'' *Historical Journal*, 35 (1992).
Parker, Geoffrey. ''The Making of Strategy in Habsburg Spain: Philip II's 'Bid for Mastery,' '' in William Murray et al., eds., *The Making of Strategy: Rulers, States, and War* (1994).
———. ''Soldiers of the Thirty Years' War,'' in K. Repgen, ed., *Krieg und Politik, 1618–1648* (1983).
Parrott, D. ''Causes of the Franco-Spanish War of 1635–59,'' in J. Black, ed., *Origins of War in Early Modern Europe* (1987).

———. "Richelieu, the *Grands*, and the French Army," in Joseph Bergin and Laurence Brockliss, eds., *Richelieu and His Age* (1992).

———. "Strategy and Tactics in the Thirty Years' War," in Clifford Rogers, ed., *The Military Revolution Debate* (1995).

Peterson, David. "War of the Eight Saints," in William J. Connell, ed., *Society and Individual in Renaissance Florence* (2002).

Potter, D. "The International Mercenary Market in the 16th Century," *English Historical Review* (1996).

———. "Kingship in the Wars of Religion," *European History Quarterly*, 25 (1995).

Rabb, T. K. "The Effect of the Thirty Years' War on the German Economy," *Journal of Modern History*, 34 (1962).

Redlich, Fritz. "Contributions in the Thirty Years' War," *Economic History Review*, 12 (1959–1960).

Reinhard, W. "Reformation, Counter-Reformation, and the Early Modern State," *Catholic History Review*, 75 (1989).

Rogers, Clifford. "By Fire and Sword," in Clifford Rogers and Mark Grimsley, eds., *Civilians in the Path of War* (2002).

———. "Edward III and the Dialectics of Strategy, 1327–1360," *Transactions of the Royal Historical Society* (1994).

———. "Military Revolutions of the Hundred Years' War," *Journal of Military History*, 57 (1993).

———. "The Offensive/Defensive in Medieval Strategy, From Crecy to Mohacs," *Acta of the XXIInd Colloquium of the International Commission of Military History* (1997).

———. "The Scottish Invasion of 1346," *Northern History*, 34 (1998).

Salmon, J.H.M. "The Paris Sixteen," in J.H.M. Salmon, *Renaissance and Revolt* (1987).

Scot, Tom. "The Peasants' War," *Historical Journal*, 22 (1979).

Slutter, E. "Dutch-Spanish Rivalry in the Caribbean Area, 1594–1609," *Hispanic American Historical Review*, 28 (1948).

Stevenson, D. "Financing the Cause of the Covenanters, 1638–51," *Scottish Historical Review* (1972).

Storrs, C., and H. M. Scott. "The Military Revolution and the European Nobility, 1600–1800," *War in History*, 3 (1996).

Stradling, R. "Olivares and the Origins of the Franco-Spanish War, 1627–1635," *English Historical Review*, 101 (1986).

Sutherland, N. "Origins of the Thirty Years' War and the Structure of European Politics," *English Historical Review*, 107 (1992).

———. "Queen Elizabeth and the Conspiracy of Amboise," *English Historical Review*, 81 (1966).

Theibault, J. "The Rhetoric of Death and Destruction in the Thirty Years' War," *Social History*, 27 (1993).

Turchetti, Marco. "Concorde ou tolerance? de 1562 à 1598," *Revue historique*, 274 (1985).

———. "Religious Concord and Political Tolerance in 16th Century France," *Sixteenth Century Journal*, 22 (1991).

Venard, Marc. "Arrètez le massacre!" *Revue d'histoire moderne et contemporaine*, 39 (1992).

Verbruggen, J. "La tactic militaire des armées de chevaliers," *Revue du nord*, 29 (1947).

Weber, H. "'Un Bonne Paix': Richelieu's Foreign Policy and the Peace of Christendom," in J. Bergin and L. Brockliss, eds., *Richelieu and His Age* (1992).

Whaley, D. P. ''Condotte and Condottieri in the 13th Century,'' *Proceedings of the British Academy*, 61 (1975).
Wijn, H. ''Military Force and Warfare, 1610–1648,'' in *The New Cambridge Modern History*, Vol. 4 (1970).
Wood, James. ''The Royal Army during the Early Wars of Religion in France, 1559–1576,'' in Mack Holt, ed., *Society and Institutions in Early Modern France* (1991).
Wright, Nicholas. ''Ransoms of Non-combatants during the Hundred Years' War,'' *Journal of Medieval History*, 17 (1991).

Books

Allen, Paul C. *Philip III and the Pax Hispanica, 1598–1621: The Failure of Grand Strategy* (2000).
Allmand, Christopher. *Henry V* (1992).
———. *The Hundred Years' War* (1988).
Anderson, Alison. *On the Verge of War: International Relations and the Jülich-Kleve Succession Crises, 1609–1614* (1999).
Anderson, M. *War and Society in Europe of the Old Regime, 1620–1789* (1988).
André, Louis. *Michel le Tellier et l'organisation de l'armée monarchique* (1906; 1980).
Angold, Michael. *The Byzantine Empire, 1025–1204* (1997).
Arnold, Thomas F. *The Renaissance at War* (2001).
Asch, Ronald. *The Thirty Years' War* (1997).
Ashley, M. *The English Civil War* (1980).
Ashton, Robert. *The Counter-Revolution: The Second Civil War and its Origins, 1646–1648* (1994).
———, ed. *James I* (1969).
Ashton, T., ed. *Crisis in Europe, 1550–1660* (1965).
Ashworth, William. *A Short History of the World Economy* (1987).
Aveling, John. *The Jesuits* (1982).
Ayton, Andrew. *Knights and Warhorses* (1994).
Baird, Henry Martyn. *The Huguenots and Henry of Navarre* (1886; 1970).
Bak, Janos, ed. *The German Peasant War of 1525* (1976).
Barber, M. *The New Knighthood* (1994).
———. *The Trial of the Templars* (1978).
Barber, Richard. *Edward, Prince of Wales and Aquitaine* (1978).
———. *The Knight and Chivalry* (1970).
Barbier, Pierre. *La France féodale, 987–1515* (1974).
Barker, Juliet. *The Tournament in England, 1100–1400* (1986).
Barker, Thomas M. *Army, Aristocracy, Monarchy* (1982).
———. *Double Eagle and Crescent* (1967).
———. *The Military Intellectual and Battle* (1975).
Barkey, K. *Bandits and Bureaucrats* (1994).
Barratt, John. *Cavaliers: The Royalist Army at War* (2000).
———. *The Great Siege of Chester* (2003).
Barrie-Curien, Viviane, ed. *Guerre et Pouvoir en Europe au XVIIe Siècle* (1991).
Barrow, G. *Feudal Britain* (1956).
Bartlett, Thomas, and Keith Jeffrey, eds. *A Military History of Ireland* (1996).
Bartusis, Humfrey. *The Late Byzantine Army, 1204–1453* (1992).
Basin, Thomas. *Histoire de Charles VII*, 2 vols. (1933–1944).
Baugert, W. V. *A History of the Society of Jesus* (1972).

Baumgartner, Frederick. *Henri II: King of France, 1547–1559* (1988).
———. *Radical Reactionaries* (1975).
Beaumont, R. *War, Chaos and History* (1994).
Beeler, John. *Warfare in England, 1066–1189* (1966).
———. *Warfare in Feudal Europe, 730–1200* (1971).
Beer, G. *The Origins of the British Colonial System, 1578–1660* (1959).
Benecke, Gerhard, ed. *Germany in the Thirty Years' War* (1979).
Benedict, Philip. *Rouen during the Wars of Religion* (1981).
Benedict, Philip et al., eds. *Reformation, Revolt, and Civil War in France and the Netherlands, 1555–1585* (1999).
Bennett, M. *Civil Wars in Britain and Ireland, 1638–1651* (1997).
Bérenger, Jean. *Turenne* (1987).
Bergin, J. *Cardinal Richelieu, Power, and the Pursuit of Wealth* (1985).
———. *The Rise of Richelieu* (1991).
Bergin, J., and Laurence Brockliss, eds. *Richelieu and His Age* (1992).
Bertram, Henry, ed. and trans. *Political Testament of Cardinal Richelieu* (1961).
Best, Geoffrey. *Humanity in Warfare* (1983).
Bireley, Robert. *Counter-Reformation Prince* (1990).
———. *The Jesuits and the Thirty Years' War* (2003).
———. *Religion and Politics in the Age of the Counter-Reformation* (1981).
Black, J. B. *Oxford History of England: The Reign of Elizabeth, 1558–1603* (1994).
Black, Jeremy. *A History of the British Isles* (2000).
———. *A Military Revolution? Military Change and European Society, 1550–1800* (1991).
———, ed. *War in the Early Modern World, 1450–1815* (1999).
Bloch, Marc. *Feudal Society*, L. Manyon, trans. (1964).
Bonney, Richard. *European Dynastic States, 1494–1660* (1991).
———. *The King's Debts: Finance and Politics in France, 1589–1661* (1981).
———. *Political Change in France Under Richelieu and Mazarin, 1624–1661* (1978).
Bossy, John. *Christianity in the West, 1400–1700* (1985).
Boucher, Jacqueline. *La cour de Henri III* (1986).
Bourgeon, J-L. *L'assassinat de Coligny* (1992).
Bouwsma, William. *John Calvin* (1988).
Bradford, E. *The Great Siege* (1961).
Brady, Thomas. *The Protestant Reformation in German History* (1998).
Brake, W. *Regents and Rebels* (1989).
Brecé, Yves-Marie. *A History of Peasant Revolts*, Amanda Whitmore, trans. (1991).
Brenner, Robert. *Merchants and Revolution* (1993).
Brewer, Paul. *Warfare in the Renaissance World* (1999).
Brotton, Jerry. *The Renaissance Bazaar* (2002).
Brown, R. *Castles, Conquest, and Charters* (1989).
Browning, Robert. *The Byzantine Empire* (1992).
Bryce, James. *The Holy Roman Empire* (1892; 1978).
Buisseret, David. *Henry IV* (1984).
———, ed. *Monarchs, Ministers, and Maps* (1992).
Bullough, D. *The Age of Charlemagne* (1966).
Bumke, Joachim. *The Concept of Knighthood in the Middle Ages* (trans. 1982).
Burkhardt, Carl Jacob. *Richelieu and His Age*, 3 vols. (1967).
Burkhardt, Jacob. *The Civilization of the Renaissance in Italy* (1995).

Burman, Edward. *The Templars* (1986; 1990).
Burne, Alfred H. *The Agincourt War* (1956; 1999).
———. *The Crécy War* (1955; 1999).
Bussmann, K., and H. Schilling, eds. *War and Peace in Europe, 1618–1648* (1998).
Cachia, P. *A History of Islamic Spain* (1965).
Cahill, T. *How the Irish Saved Civilization* (1995).
Cameron, Keith, ed. *From Valois to Bourbon* (1989).
———. *Henri III, a Maligned or Malignant King?* (1978).
Canny, Nicholas. *Elizabethan Conquest of Ireland* (1976).
———. *Europeans on the Move, 1500–1800* (1994).
———. *Kingdom and Colony* (1988).
———. *Making Ireland British: 1580–1650* (2001).
Carlin, Norah. *Causes of the English Civil War* (1999).
Carlton, Charles. *Going to the Wars: The Experience of the English Civil Wars, 1638–1651* (1992).
Carmona, M. *Richelieu, L'Ambition et le pouvoir* (1983).
Carpenter, Stanley. *Military Leadership in the British Civil Wars, 1642–1651* (2005).
Carr, Raymond, ed. *Spain* (2000).
Carrol, S. *Noble Power during the French Wars of Religion* (1998).
Carter, C. H., ed. *From the Renaissance to the Counter-Reformation* (1965).
Castries, duc de. *The Lives of the Kings and Queens of France*, Anne Dobell, trans. (1997).
Casway, Jerrold. *Owen Roe O'Neill and the Struggle for Catholic Ireland* (1984).
Cazaux, Yves. *Henri IV ou la grande victoire* (1977).
Chadwick, Owen, series ed. *Pelican History of the Church*, 6 vols. (1970–).
———. *The Popes and European Revolution* (1981).
———. *The Reformation* (1972).
Chatellier, Louis. *The Europe of the Devout*, John Birrell, trans. (1989).
Chibnall, Marjorie. *The Normans* (2001).
Chickering, H., and T. Seiler, eds. *The Study of Chivalry* (1989).
Chidester, David. *Christianity* (2000).
Childs, John. *Warfare in the 17th Century* (2001).
Church, W. *Richelieu and Reason of State* (1972).
Cipolla, Carlo. *An Economic History of World Population*, 7th ed. (1978).
Clark, George. *War and Society in the 17th Century* (1958; 1985).
Clark, Peter, ed. *The European Crisis of the 1590s* (1985).
Clarke, Adrian. *The Old English in Ireland, 1625–42* (1966).
Clasen, C-P. *Anabaptism* (1972).
Cloulas, I. *Catherine de Medici* (1979).
———. *Henri II* (1985).
Cogswell, T. *The Blessed Revolution: English Politics and the Coming of War, 1621–1624* (1989).
Cole, Hubert. *The Wars of the Roses* (1973).
Collins, J. *The Fiscal Limits of Absolutism* (1988).
Collinson, Patrick. *Elizabethan Puritan Movement* (1967).
———. *Religion of Protestants: The Church in English Society, 1559–1625* (1982).
Connell, William, ed. *Society and Individual in Renaissance Florence* (2002).
Contamine, Philippe. *Guerre, état et société à la fin du moyen âge* (1972).
———, ed. *Histoire militaire de la France: tom 1, Des origines à 1715* (1992).
———. *War in the Middle Ages*, Michael Jones, trans. (1984; 1990).

Corfis, A., and Michael Wolfe, eds. *The Medieval City under Siege* (1995).
Corvisier, Andre. *Armies and Societies in Europe, 1494–1789* (1979).
Cowen, I. *The Scottish Reformation* (1978).
Crew, P. M. *Calvinist Preaching and Iconoclasm in the Netherlands, 1544–1569* (1978).
Crouzet, Denis. *La nuit de la Saint-Barthélemy* (1994).
———. *Les guerriers de Dieu: la violence au temps des troubles de religion*, 2 vols. (1990).
Croxton, Derek, and Anuschka Tischer. *The Peace of Westphalia: A Historical Dictionary* (2002).
Cruikshank, G. *Elizabeth's Army* (1966).
———. *Henry VIII and the Invasion of France* (1990).
Curry, Anne. *The Hundred Years' War, 1337–1453* (2003).
Curtin, Philip. *The World and the West* (2000).
Cust, Edward. *Lives of the Warriors of the Civil Wars of France and England* (1867; 1972).
———. *Lives of the Warriors of the Thirty Years' War* (1865; 1972).
Cust, R., and Ann Hughes, eds. *The English Civil War* (1997).
Dame, Frederick William. *A History of Switzerland* (2001).
Davidson, N. S. *The Counter-Reformation* (1987).
Davies, D. W. *Elizabethans Errant* (1967).
Davies, Norman. *The Isles: A History* (2000).
Davis, Natalie. *Society and Culture in Early Modern France* (1975).
De Gaury, Gerald. *The Grand Captain: Gonzalo de Córdoba* (1955).
Delbrück, Hans. *History of the Art of War*, Vol. 4, *Dawn of Modern Warfare*, Walter Renfroe, trans. (1920; 1990).
Delumeau, Jean. *Catholicism Between Luther and Voltaire*, J. Moiser, trans. (1977).
Dembkowski, H. E. *The Union of Lublin: Polish Federalism in the Golden Age* (1982).
Denieul-Cormier, Anne. *Wise and Foolish Kings: The First House of Valois 1328–1498* (1980).
De Vries, Jan. *The Economy of Europe in an Age of Crisis, 1600–1750* (1976).
De Vries, Jan, and Ad Van Der Woude. *The First Modern Economy* (1997).
DeVries, Kelly. *Joan of Arc: A Military Leader* (2003).
Dickens, A. *The English Reformation* (1964).
Diefendorf, Barbara. *Beneath the Cross: Catholics and Huguenots in 16th Century Paris* (1991).
Diffy, B., and G. Winius. *Foundations of the Portuguese Empire* (1977).
Douglas, David C. *The Norman Achievement, 1050–1100* (1969).
Duby, G. *The Chivalrous Society* (1978).
Duke, A. *Reformation and Revolt in the Low Countries* (1990).
Dunn, R. *The Age of Religious Wars, 1559–1689* (1970).
Éditions, G. *La merveilluese histoire de l'armée Française* (1947).
Edwards, Peter. *Dealing in Death: The Arms Trade and the British Civil Wars, 1638–1652* (2000).
Elliott, J. H. *The Count-Duke of Olivares: The Statesman in an Age of Decline* (1986).
———. *Europe Divided, 1559–1598* (1969).
———, ed. *The Hispanic World, Civilization, and Empire: Europe and the Americas* (1991).
———. *Imperial Spain, 1469–1716* (1964; 1970).
———. *The Revolt of the Catalans* (1963).
———. *Richelieu and Olivares* (1984).
———. *Spain and Its World, 1500–1700* (1989).
Elton, G. *Reformation Europe* (1963).

Estèbe, Janine. *Tocsin pour un massacre: La saison des Saint-Barthélemy* (1968).
Evans, R. W. *The Making of the Habsburg Monarchy, 1550–1700* (1979).
———. *Rudolf II and His World* (1973).
Falls, Cyril. *Elizabeth's Irish Wars* (1950).
Favier, J. *La Guerre de Cent Ans* (1980).
Fergusson, James. *William Wallace: Guardian of Scotland* (1938).
Fernandez-Armesto, F. *Ferdinand and Isabella* (1975).
Firth, Charles. *Cromwell's Army* (1912; 1992).
Fisher, Andrew. *William Wallace* (2002).
Fissel, Mark. *The Bishops' Wars: Charles I's Campaigns Against Scotland, 1638–1640* (1994).
———. *English Warfare, 1511–1642* (2001).
———, ed. *War and Government in Britain: 1598–1650* (1991).
Forey, A. *Military Orders from the 12th to the Early 14th Centuries* (1992).
Foster, R. F. *Modern Ireland, 1600–1972* (1989).
Fowler, K. A. *The Age of Plantagenet and Valois* (1967).
———, ed. *The Hundred Years' War* (1971).
———. *Medieval Mercenaries: "The Great Companies,"* Vol. 1 (2001).
France, John. *Western Warfare in the Age of the Crusades* (1999).
Fraser, Antonia. *Mary, Queen of Scots* (1969).
Friedrichs, C. *Urban Society in an Age of War: Nördlingen, 1580–1720* (1979).
Fulaine, Jean-Charles. *Le duc Charles IV de Lorraine et son armée: 1624–1675* (1997).
Fuller, W. C. *Strategy and Power in Russia, 1600–1914* (1992).
Gail, M. *The Three Popes* (1969).
Gajecky, G., and A. Baran. *Cossacks in the Thirty Years' War*, 2 vols. (1969).
Gallagher, P., ed. *God's Obvious Design* (1988).
Garrison, Janine. *L'Edit de Nantes et sa révocation* (1985).
———. *Protestants du Midi, 1559–1598* (1980).
Gash, G. *Renaissance Armies* (1975; 1982).
Gay, Peter, and R. K. Webb. *Modern Europe* (1973).
Gelder, H. *The Two Reformations of the 16th Century* (1961).
Gelderen, Martin van. *Political Thought of the Dutch Revolt, 1555–1590* (1992).
Gentles, Ian. *The New Model Army in England, Ireland, and Scotland, 1645–1653* (1992).
Geyl, Peter. *The Netherlands in the 17th Century*, 2 vols. (1961).
———. *Orange and Stuart*, Arnold Pomerans, trans. (1939; 1969).
———. *The Revolt of the Netherlands, 1555–1609* (1980).
Gibbon, Edward. *The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, abridged by D. M. Low (1960).
Gies, Frances. *Joan of Arc: The Legend and the Reality* (1981).
Gille, Betrand. *Engineers of the Renaissance* (1966).
Gillingham, J. *The Wars of the Roses* (1981).
Glénisson, J., ed. *Jeanne d'Arc, une èpoque, un rayonnment* (1982).
Glete, Jan. *War and the State in Early Modern Europe* (2002).
Glick, Thomas. *Islamic and Christian Spain in the Early Middle Ages*, 2nd ed. (2005).
Goodman, Anthony. *The Wars of the Roses* (1981).
Gordon, M. *Joan of Arc* (2000).
Gravett, Christopher. *Medieval Siege Warfare* (1990).
Green, David. *The Battle of Poitiers, 1356* (2002).
Greengrass, Mark. *Conquest and Coalescence* (1991).

———. *France in the Age of Henry IV* (1995).
———. *The French Reformation* (1987).
Griffin, Margaret. *Regulating Religion and Morality in the King's Armies, 1639–1646* (2004).
Gruber von Arni, Eric. *Justice to the Maimed Soldier* (2001).
Guillemin, H. *Joan, Maid of Orleans* (1973).
Gush, George. *Renaissance Armies, 1480–1650* (1975; 1982).
Gutmann, M. *War and Rural Life in the Early Modern Low Countries* (1980).
Guy, John. *Queen of Scots* (2004).
———, ed. *The Reign of Elizabeth I* (1995).
———. *Tudor England* (1988).
Haigh, C., ed. *The English Reformation Revised* (1987).
———, ed. *The Reign of Elizabeth I* (1984).
Haldon, John. *Byzantium* (2000).
Hale, John R. *Machiavelli and Renaissance Italy* (1960).
———. *Renaissance War Studies* (1983).
———. *War and Society in Renaissance Europe, 1450–1620* (1986).
Hale, John R. et al. *Europe in the Late Middle Ages* (1965).
Hall, Bert. *Weapons and Warfare in Renaissance Europe* (1997).
Hamilton, B. *The Medieval Inquisition* (1981).
Hammer, Paul. *Elizabeth's Wars* (2003).
Hamon, P. *L'argent du roi* (1994).
Harper-Bill, D., ed. *The Ideals and Practice of Knighthood* (1986).
Hart, M. *In Quest of Funds: Warfare and State Formation in the Netherlands, 1620–50* (1989).
———. *The Making of a Bourgeois State: War, Politics, and Finance during the Dutch Revolt* (1993).
Harvey, L. *Islamic Spain, 1250–1500* (1990).
Head, T., and R. Landes, eds. *The Peace of God* (1992).
Heer, Friedrich. *The Holy Roman Empire* (1968).
Heller, H. *Iron and Blood: Civil Wars in 16th Century France* (1991).
Henry, Gráinne. *The Irish Military Community in Spanish Flanders, 1586–1621* (1992).
Herlihy, D., ed. *The History of Feudalism* (1970).
Herzstein, R. E., ed. *The Holy Roman Empire in the Middle Ages* (1966).
Hewitt, H. *The Black Prince's Expedition of 1355–1357* (1958).
———. *The Organization of War under Edward III, 1338–1362* (1966).
Hillgarth, J. *The Spanish Kingdoms, 1250–1516*, 2 vols. (1978).
Hollister, C. W. *The Military Organization of Norman England* (1965).
Holt, Mack. *The Duke of Anjou and the Politique Struggle during the Wars of Religion* (1986).
———. *The French Wars of Religion, 1562–1629* (1995).
Howard, Michael. *War in European History* (1976).
Hsia, R. *Society and Religion in Münster, 1535–1618* (1984).
Hsia, R. P., ed. *The German People and the Reformation* (1988).
Hughes, Anne. *Causes of the English Civil War* (1998).
Hussey, J. M. *The Orthodox Church in the Byzantine Empire* (1986).
Hutchinson, H. *Henry V* (1967).
Hutton, Ronald. *The British Republic, 1649–1660* (2000).
———. *The Royalist War Effort, 1642–1646* (1999).

Ingrao, Charles. *The Habsburg Monarchy, 1618–1848* (1994).
Israel, Jonathon. *The Dutch Republic: Its Rise, Greatness and Fall, 1477–1806* (1995).
———. *The Dutch Republic and the Hispanic World, 1606–1661* (1982).
Jedin, H. *A History of the Council of Trent*, 2 vols. (1957; 1961).
Johnson, James. *Ideology, Reason, and the Limitation of War* (1975).
Johnson, James Turner. *Just War Tradition and the Restraint of War* (1981).
Johnson, Paul. *The Life & Times of Edward III* (1973).
Kamen, Henry. *Imperial Spain* (1983).
———. *Philip of Spain* (1997).
———. *Phoenix and the Flame: Catalonia and the Counter-Reformation* (1993).
———. *The Spanish Inquisition: A Historical Revision* (rev. ed. 1998).
Kann, R. *The History of the Habsburg Empire, 1526–1918* (1974).
Keen, Maurice. *The Laws of War in the Late Middle Ages* (1965).
———, ed. *Medieval Warfare* (1999).
Kelly, John. *The Great Mortality: An Intimate History of the Black Death* (2005).
Kennedy, Hugh. *Muslim Spain and Portugal* (1996).
King, E. *The Knights Hospitaller in the Holy Land* (1931).
Kingdon, Robert. *Geneva and the Coming of the Wars of Religion in France, 1555–1563* (1956).
Kitson, Frank. *Old Ironsides: Military Biography of Oliver Cromwell* (2004).
Knecht, Robert. *Catherine de Medici* (1998).
———. *Francis I* (1982).
———. *The French Civil Wars, 1562–1598* (2000).
———. *The French Wars of Religion, 1562–1598* (1996).
———. *Renaissance Warrior and Patron: The Reign of Francis I* (1994).
———. *The Rise and Fall of Renaissance France, 1483–1610* (2001).
Koch, H. W. *Medieval Warfare* (1978).
———. *The Rise of Modern Warfare, 1618–1815* (1982).
Labarge, Margaret. *Gasgony: England's First Colony, 1204–1453* (1980).
———. *Henry V: The Cautious Conqueror* (1975).
Lacroix, Paul. *Military and Religious Life in the Middle Ages and Renaissance* (1874).
Lambert, Malcolm. *Medieval Heresy* (2002).
Lamont, William. *Godly Rule: Politics and Religion, 1603–1660* (1969).
Langer, H. *The Thirty Years' War* (1980).
La Patourel, John. *The Norman Empire* (1976).
Lenihan, Pádraig. *Confederate Catholics at War, 1641–1648* (2000).
———, ed. *Conquest and Resistance: War in Seventeenth-Century Ireland* (2001).
Lenman, Bruce. *England's Colonial Wars, 1550–1688* (2001).
Lennon, Colm. *Sixteenth Century Ireland: The Incomplete Conquest* (1994).
Le Patourel, John. *The Norman Empire* (1976).
Levack, Brian. *The Witch-Hunt in Early Modern Europe* (1995).
Levene, M., and P. Roberts, eds. *The Massacre in History* (1999).
Lewis, Archibald. *Nomads and Crusaders* (1988).
Lewis, P. S., ed. *The Recovery of France in the 15th Century* (1972).
Limm, P. *The Thirty Years' War* (1984).
Lindsay, Jack. *The Normans and Their World* (1974).
Livermore, H. *A New History of Portugal*, 2nd ed. (1976).
Livet, Georges. *La Guerre de trente ans* (1972).
———. *Les guerres de religion, 1559–1598* (1962).

Lloyd, Howell. *The Rouen Campaign, 1590–1592: Politics, Warfare, and the Early Modern State* (1973).
Lomax, L. *The Reconquest of Spain* (1978).
Lynch, J. *The Hispanic World in Crisis and Change, 1598–1700* (1992).
———. *Spain Under the Habsburgs*, 2 vols. (1981).
Lynn, John A. *A Giant of the Grand Siècle: The French Army, 1610–1715* (1997).
MacCaffrey, Wallace. *Elizabeth I, War and Politics, 1588–1603* (1983).
———. *Queen Elizabeth and the Making of Policy, 1572–1588* (1981).
MacHardy, Karin. *War, Religion and Court Patronage in Habsburg Austria* (2003).
MacInnes, Allan. *Charles I and the Making of the Covenanting Movement, 1625–1641* (1991).
Mackay, A. *Spain in the Middle Ages* (1977).
Madden, T. *A Concise History of the Crusades* (1999).
Maland, D. *Europe at War, 1600–1650* (1980).
Mallett, M. E. *Mercenaries and Their Masters: Warfare in Renaissance Italy* (1974).
Mallett, M. E., and J. R. Hale. *Military Organization of a Renaissance State: Venice, 1400–1617* (1984).
Maltby, William. *Alba* (1983).
———. *The Reign of Charles V* (2002).
Mann, Golo. *Wallenstein* (1976).
Mariejol, J-H. *La Réforme, la Ligue, l'Édit de Nantes* (1983).
Marius, Richard. *Martin Luther* (1999).
Marwick, Arthur. *War and Social Change* (1974).
Mason, Roger, ed. *Scots and Britons* (1994).
Matmatey, V. S. *The Rise of the Habsburg Empire, 1526–1815* (1978).
Matthias, P. *The First Industrial Nation* (1969).
Mattingly, Garrett. *Renaissance Diplomacy* (1955).
Mayer, Hans. *The Crusades* (trans. and rev. ed. 1988).
McCavitt, John. *The Flight of the Earls* (2004).
McGuire, B., ed. *War and Peace in the Middle Ages* (1987).
McGurk, John. *The Elizabethan Conquest of Ireland* (1997).
McNeill, John. *The History and Character of Calvinism* (1954).
Méthivier, Hubert. *La Fronde* (1984).
Miller, Douglas, and Gerry Embleton. *The Swiss at War, 1300–1500* (1979).
Miller, E. *War in the North* (1960).
Monod, Paul. *The Power of Kings: Monarchy and Religion in Europe, 1589–1715* (1999).
Monter, William. *Calvin's Geneva* (1967).
Moody, T. et al., eds. *A New History of Ireland*, Vol. 3, *Early Modern Ireland, 1534–1691* (1976).
Moote, Lloyd. *Louis XIII* (1989).
Morrill, John. *Oliver Cromwell and the English Revolution* (1990).
———, ed. *Reactions to the English Civil War, 1642–1649* (1983).
Morris, J. *The Welsh Wars of Edward I* (1901).
Munk, T. *17th Century Europe* (1990).
Murray, J. L. *History of Switzerland* (1985).
Murray, W. et al., eds. *The Making of Strategy: Rulers, States, and War* (1994).
Nalle, Sarah. *God in La Mancha, 1500–1650* (1992).
Neale, J. E. *The Age of Catherine de Medici* (1943).
Neillands, Robin. *The Hundred Years' War* (1990; 2001).
Newark, P. *Medieval Warfare* (1979).

Newhall, R. *The English Conquest of Normandy, 1416–1424* (1924).
Nicholson, Helen. *The Knights Hospitaller* (2001).
Nicholson, Ranald. *Edward III and the Scots: Formative Years of a Military Career, 1327–1335* (1965).
Nischan, B. *Prince, People, and Confession: The Second Reformation in Brandenburg* (1994).
Oberman, Heiko. *Luther: Man Between God and the Devil* (1989).
Oblonsky, D. *The Byzantine Commonwealth* (1971).
Okey, Robin. *The Habsburg Monarchy* (2000).
O'Malley, John W., ed. *Catholicism in Early Modern Europe* (1988).
———, ed. *The Jesuits* (1999).
Oman, Charles. *A History of the Art of War in the Middle Ages* (1924; 1976).
———. *A History of the Art of War in the 16th Century* (1937; 1987).
O'Shea, Stephen. *Perfect Heresy: The Revolutionary Life and Death of the Medieval Cathars* (2000).
O'Siochru, M. *Confederate Ireland* (1999).
Ottway-Ruthven, A. *A History of Medieval Ireland* (1968).
Ozment, Steven. *The Age of Reform, 1250–1550* (1980).
Packe, Michael. *King Edward III* (1984).
Pagès, G. *La Guerre de trente ans* (1949).
Paraskevas, J., and F. Reinstein. *The Eastern Orthodox Church* (1969).
Paret, Peter, ed. *Makers of Modern Strategy: From Machiavelli to the Nuclear Age* (1986).
Parker, David. *La Rochelle and the French Monarchy* (1980).
———. *The Making of French Absolutism, 1450–1660* (1983).
Parker, Geoffrey. *The Army of Flanders and the Spanish Road, 1567–1659* (1972).
———. *The Dutch Revolt* (1977; 1985).
———. *Empire, War and Faith in Early Modern Europe* (2002).
———. *Europe in Crisis, 1598–1648* (1980; 2001).
———. *The General Crisis of the 17th Century* (1978).
———. *The Grand Strategy of Philip II* (1998).
———. *Spain and the Netherlands, 1559–1659* (1977).
———, ed. *The Thirty Years' War* (1987).
Parker, Geoffrey, and Angela Parker. *European Soldiers, 1550–1650* (1977).
Parrott, David. *Richelieu's Army: War, Government, and Society in France, 1624–1642* (2001).
Pernot, Michel. *Les guerres de religion en France, 1559–1598* (1987).
Perrie, M. *Pretenders and Popular Monarchism in Early Modern Russia* (1995).
Perroy, Édouard. *The Hundred Years' War* (1951).
Phillips, Carla. *Six Galleons for the King of Spain: Imperial Defense in the 17th Century* (1986).
Phillips, Gervase. *The Anglo-Scots Wars, 1513–1550* (1999).
Phillips, Henry. *The Church and Culture in 17th Century France* (1997).
Pincus, Steven. *Protestantism and Patriotism* (1996).
Pirenne, Henri. *Medieval Cities* (1925).
———. *Muhammad and Charlemagne* (1939).
Polisensky, J. *The Thirty Years' War* (1971).
———. *Tragic Triangle: The Netherlands, Spain and Bohemia, 1617–1621* (1991).
———. *War and Society in Europe, 1618–1648* (1978).
Potter, D. *A History of France, 1460–1560* (1995).
———. *War and Government in the French Provinces* (1993).

Potter, G. *Zwingli* (1976).
Powers, James. *A Society Organized for War: The Iberian Militias, 1000–1284* (1988).
Powicke, Michael. *Military Obligation in Medieval England* (1962).
Prestwich, Meena, ed. *International Calvinism, 1541–1715* (1985).
Prestwich, Michael. *Armies and Warfare in the Middle Ages: The English Experience* (1996).
———. *The Three Edwards: War and the State in England, 1272–1377* (1980).
Price, J. *Holland and the Dutch Republic in the 17th Century* (1994).
Rabb, T., ed. *The Thirty Years' War* (1971).
Rady, Martyn. *Emperor Charles V* (1988; 1995).
Ranum, Orest. *The Fronde: A French Revolution, 1648–1652* (1993).
Read, Piers. *The Templars* (2000).
Redlich, F. *De Praeda Militari: Looting and Booty, 1500–1815* (1956).
———. *The German Military Enterpriser and His Workforce, 13th–17th Centuries*, 2 vols. (1964–1965).
Reeve, L. *Charles I and the Road to Personal Rule* (1989).
Reid, Stuart. *All the King's Armies: A Military History of the English Civil War* (1998).
Ridley, Jasper. *John Knox* (1968).
Riley-Smith, Jonathon. *The Crusades* (1990).
———. *A History of the Crusades* (2000).
———. *The Hospitallers: History of the Order of St. John* (1999).
Robinson, I. H. *Henry IV of Germany, 1056–1106* (1999).
Rodger, N.A.M. *The Safeguard of the Sea: A Naval History of Britain*, Vol. 1 (1997).
Rodríguez-Salgado, M. *The Changing Face of Europe* (1988).
Roelker, Nancy. *One King, One Faith* (1996).
Rogers, Clifford. *War Cruel and Sharp: English Strategy Under Edward III, 1327–1360* (2000).
Rogers, P. *Fifth Monarchy Men* (1966).
Rosen, S. *Societies and Military Power* (1996).
Rowen, Herbert, ed. *The Low Countries in Early Modern Times* (1972).
———. *The Princes of Orange* (1988).
Rowse, A. L. *The Elizabethan Renaissance* (2000).
———. *The England of Elizabeth* (1950; 1978).
———. *The Expansion of Elizabethan England* (1955).
Runciman, Steven. *The Fall of Constantinople* (1903; 1968).
———. *A History of the Crusades*, 3 vols. (1951–1954).
———. *The Medieval Manichee* (1947; 1961).
Russell, Conrad. *Causes of the English Civil War* (1990).
———. *The Fall of the British Monarchies, 1637–1641* (1991).
Russell, F. H. *Just War in the Middle Ages* (1975).
Russell, Jeffrey. *Witchcraft in the Middle Ages* (1972).
Russell, Peter. *Prince Henry "the Navigator"* (2000).
Ryder, I. *An English Army for Ireland* (1987).
Salmon, J.H.M. *Renaissance and Revolt* (1987).
———. *Society in Crisis: France in the 16th Century* (1975).
Saul, Nigel. *Knights and Esquires* (1981).
Sauzet, Robert, ed. *Henri III et sons temps* (1992).
Schama, Simon. *A History of Britain* (2000).
Schilling, H. *Religion, Political Culture and the Emergence of Early Modern Society* (1992).
Schlight, J. *Monarchies and Mercenaries* (1968).

Scott, H. M., ed. *European Nobilities in the 17th and 18th Centuries* (1995).
Scribner, R., and G. Benecke. *The German Peasant War, 1525* (1979).
Seaver, Paul. *Sir Walter Raleigh* (2004).
Setton, Kenneth, ed. *A History of the Crusades*, 7 vols. (1955–1990).
———. *Venice, Austria, and the Turks in the 17th Century* (1991).
Seward, Desmond. *The Hundred Years' War* (1978).
———. *Monks of War: The Military Religious Orders* (1972; 1995).
———. *Prince of the Renaissance: The Golden Life of Francis I* (1973).
Shannon, Albert C. *The Medieval Inquisition* (1991).
Sharpe, Kevin. *The Personal Rule of Charles I* (1992).
Shearer, David. *Private Armies and Military Intervention* (1998).
Shimizu, J. *Conflict of Loyalties: Politics and Religion in the Career of Gaspard de Coligny* (1970).
Siméon, L. *Histoire de Bertrand du Guesclin et de son époque* (1867).
Simpson, Leslie. *Encomienda in New Spain* (1966).
Sire, H. *The Knights of Malta* (1994).
Smail, R. *Crusading Warfare, 1097–1193* (1956).
Smith, Denis. *A History of Sicily, 800–1713* (1968).
Smith, H. M. *Henry VIII and the Reformation* (1948).
Smith, J. H. *The Great Schism* (1970).
Solt, Leo. *Saints in Arms: Puritanism and Democracy in Cromwell's Army* (1959).
Starkey, D. *The Reign of Henry VIII* (1986).
Steen, C. *A Chronicle of Conflict: Tournai, 1559–1567* (1985).
Steinberg, S. H. *The "Thirty Years' War" and the Conflict for European Hegemony, 1600–1660* (1966).
Stevenson, David. *Scottish Covenanters and Irish Confederates* (1981).
———. *The Scottish Revolution, 1637–1644* (1973).
Stone, L. *Causes of the English Revolution* (1972).
Strachan, Hew. *European Armies and the Conduct of War* (1983).
Stradling, R. *The Armada of Flanders: Spanish Maritime Strategy and the European War, 1568–1668* (1992).
———. *Europe and the Decline of Spain* (1981).
———. *Philip IV and the Government of Spain, 1621–1665* (1988).
———. *Spanish Monarchy and Irish Mercenaries: The Wild Geese in Spain, 1618–1668* (1994).
Strayer, Joseph. *Feudalism* (1979).
Strickland, M. *War and Chivalry* (1996).
Stroud, Philip. *The Siege of Colchester, 1648* (2003).
Sugden, John. *Sir Francis Drake* (1992).
Sumption, Jonathon. *The Albigensian Crusade* (1978).
———. *The Hundred Years' War* (1990; 1999).
Sutherland, N. M. *Catherine de Medici and the Ancien Régime* (1968).
———. *The Huguenot Struggle for Recognition* (1980).
———. *The Massacre of St. Bartholomew and the European Conflict, 1559–1572* (1973).
———. *Princes, Power, and Religion, 1547–1589* (1984).
Swart, K. *William the Silent and the Revolt of the Netherlands* (1978).
Tallett, Frank. *War and Society in Early Modern Europe, 1495–1715* (1992).
Tapié, Victor-Louis. *France in the Age of Louis XIII and Richelieu*, D. Lockie, trans. (1975).

———. *La politique de la France et le début de la guerre de trente ans* (1934).
Taylor, A.J.P. *The Habsburg Monarchy* (1948).
Taylor, F. L. *The Art of War in Italy: 1494 to 1529* (1921).
Templeman, Geoffrey. *Edward III and the Beginnings of the Hundred Years' War, 1337–1453* (1952).
Thompson, I. A. *War and Government in Habsburg Spain, 1560–1620* (1976).
Thompson, J. A. *Popes and Princes, 1417–1517* (1980).
Thompson, J. W. *Feudal Germany*, 2 vols. (1927; 1962).
———. *The Wars of Religion in France, 1559–1576* (1909; 1958).
Tracy, James. *Emperor Charles V, Impresario of War* (2002).
———. *Europe's Reformations, 1450–1650: Doctrine, Politics, and Community*, 2nd ed. (2002).
———. *Holland under Habsburg Rule, 1506–1566* (1990).
———, ed. *Luther and the Modern State in Germany* (1986).
———, ed. *The Political Economy of Merchant Empires* (1991).
———, ed. *Religion and the Early Modern State* (2004).
Trease, G. *Condottieri, Soldiers of Fortune* (1970).
Trevelyan, G. M. *England in the Age of Wycliffe* (1904; 1975).
———. *The English Revolution* (1967).
Trevor-Roper, Hugh. *Catholics, Anglicans, Puritans* (1987).
Trim, D., ed. *The Chivalric Ethos and the Development of Military Professionalism* (2003).
Tuchman, Barbara W. *A Distant Mirror: The Calamitous 14th Century* (1978).
Tyler, Royall. *Emperor Charles the Fifth* (1956).
Underdown, David. *Revel, Riot, and Rebellion* (1985).
Vale, Juliet. *Edward III and Chivalry* (1983).
Vale, Malcolm. *Charles VII* (1974).
———. *English Gascony, 1399–1453* (1970).
———. *War and Chivalry* (1981).
Van der Hoevan, Marco, ed. *Exercise of Arms: Warfare in the Netherlands, 1568–1648* (1997).
Vaughan, Richard. *Charles the Bold* (1973).
———. *John the Fearless* (1966).
———. *Philip the Bold* (1962).
———. *Philip the Good* (1970).
———. *Valois Burgundy* (1975).
Verbruggen, J. F. *The Art of Warfare in Western Europe during the Middle Ages* (1977).
Verheyden, A. *Anabaptism in Flanders, 1530–1650* (1961).
Villalon, Andrew, and Donald Kagay, eds. *Crusaders, Condottieri, and Cannon* (2003).
Wagner, Eduard. *European Weapons and Warfare, 1618–1648*, S. Pellar, trans. (1979).
Walton, Robert. *Zwingli's Theocracy* (1967).
Wanklyn, Malcolm, and Frank Jones. *A Military History of the English Civil War, 1642–1646* (2004).
Wedgewood, C. V. *The King's Peace, 1637–1641* (1955).
———. *The King's War, 1641–1647* (1958).
———. *Montrose* (1952).
———. *The Thirty Years' War* (1938).
Wernham, R. B. *After the Armada: Elizabethan England and the Struggle for Mastery in Western Europe, 1588–1595* (1988).
———. *Before the Armada: The Growth of English Foreign Policy, 1485–1588* (1966).

———. *The Making of Elizabethan Foreign Policy, 1588–1603* (1980).
———. *The Return of the Armadas: The Last Years of the Elizabethan War Against Spain, 1595–1603* (1994).
Wheatcroft, Andrew. *The Habsburgs* (1996).
Wheeler, Bonnie, and Charles Wood, eds. *Fresh Verdicts on Joan of Arc* (1996).
Wheeler, James. *Cromwell in Ireland* (1999).
———. *Irish and British Wars, 1637–1654* (2002).
Whitehead, A. *Gaspard de Coligny, Admiral of France* (1904).
Wilson, Charles. *The Dutch Republic* (1969).
———. *Queen Elizabeth and the Revolt of the Netherlands* (1970).
Wilson, D. *The King and the Gentleman: Charles Stuart and Oliver Cromwell* (1999).
———. *King James VI and I* (1967, revised).
Wilson, J. *Fairfax: General of Parliament's Forces* (1999).
Wilson, Peter. *The Holy Roman Empire, 1495–1806* (1999).
Wise, T. *Medieval Warfare* (1976).
Wolfe, Martin. *The Conversion of Henri IV* (1993).
———. *The Fiscal System of Renaissance France* (1972).
Wood, James. *The Army of the King* (1996).
Woolrych, Austin. *From Commonwealth to Protectorate* (1982).
———. *Soldiers and Statesmen: The General Council of the Army and its Debates, 1647–1648* (1987).
Worthington, David. *The Scots in Habsburg Service, 1618–1648* (2004).
Wright, A. D. *The Counter-Reformation* (1982).
Wright, N.A.R. *Knights and Peasants: The Hundred Years' War in the French Countryside* (1998).
Zeller, G. *La Guerre de Trente Ans et les relations internationales* (1948).
Ziegler, Philip. *The Black Death* (1969).

War at Sea

Articles and Chapters

Adam, P. "Conclusions sur les développements des techniques nautiques médiévales," *Revue d'histoire économique et sociale*, 54 (1976).
Anderson, R. "Operations of the English Fleet," *English Historical Review*, 31 (1916).
Ayalon, D. "The Mamlūks and Naval Power," *Proceedings of the Israel Academy of Sciences and Humanities*, Vol. 1 (1965).
Dames, M. "The Portuguese and the Turks in the Indian Ocean in the 16th Century," *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* (1921).
Deny, J., and L. Laroche. "L'expédition en Provence de l'armée de mer du Sultan Süleyman, 1543–1544," *Turcica*, 1 (1968).
Glasgow, Tom. "The Shape of the Ships that Defeated the Spanish Armada," *The Mariner's Mirror*, 49 (1963).
Hamblin, William. "The Fatamid Navy during the Crusades," *American Neptune*, 46 (1986).
Hess, A. "The Evolution of the Ottoman Seaborne Empire in the Age of Oceanic Discoveries, 1453–1525," *American Historical Review*, 75 (1970).
Howard, Frank. "Early Ship Guns, Part I: Built-up Breech-Loaders," *The Mariner's Mirror*, 72 (1986).
———. "Early Ship Guns, Part II: Swivels," *The Mariner's Mirror*, 73 (1987).

Imber, Colin. ''The Navy of Süleyman the Magnificent,'' *Archivum Ottomanicum*, 6 (1980).
———. ''The Reconstruction of the Ottoman Fleet after the Battle of Lepanto,'' *Studies in Ottoman History and Law* (1996).
Lo, Jung-pang. ''The Decline of the Early Ming Navy,'' *Oriens Extremus*, 5 (1958).
Marshall, P. ''Western Arms in Maritime Asia,'' *Modern Asian Studies*, 14 (1980).
Ohlmeyer, J. ''The Dunkirk of Ireland: Wexford Privateers during the 1640s,'' *Journal of the Wexford Historical Society*, 10 (1989).
———. ''Irish Privateers during the Civil War, 1642–1649,'' *The Mariner's Mirror*, 76 (1990).
Parker, Geoffrey. ''The *Dreadnought* Revolution of Tudor England,'' *The Mariner's Mirror*, 82 (1996).
Rodger, N.A.M. ''The Development of Broadside Gunnery, 1450–1650,'' *The Mariner's Mirror*, 82 (1996).
Tinniswood, J. T. ''English Galleys, 1272–1377,'' *The Mariner's Mirror*, 35 (1949).
Unger, Richard. ''Dutch Ship Design in the 15th and 16th Centuries,'' *Viator*, 4 (1973).
———. ''Warships and Cargo Ships in Medieval Europe,'' *Technology and Culture*, 22 (1981).

Books

Adams, Simon. *The Armada Campaign of 1588* (1988).
Ahrweiler, H. *Byzance et la mer* (1966).
Anderson, R. C. *Naval Wars in the Baltic, 1522–1850* (1919; 1969).
———. *Naval Wars in the Levant, 1559–1853* (1952; 2005).
Anderson, R. C., and Romola Anderson. *Oared Fighting Ships From Classical Times to the Age of Steam* (1962; 1976).
———. *A Short History of the Sailing Ship* (1926; 2003).
Andrews, Kenneth. *Drake's Voyages* (1968; 1970).
———. *Elizabethan Privateering* (1964).
———. *Ships, Money, and Politics: Seafaring and Naval Enterprise in the Reign of Charles I* (1991).
———. *The Spanish Caribbean: Trade and Plunder, 1530–1630* (1978).
———. *Trade, Plunder, and Settlement: Maritime Enterprise and the Genesis of the British Empire, 1480–1630* (1984).
Andrews, Kenneth et al., eds. *Westward Enterprise: English Activities in Ireland, the Atlantic, and America, 1480–1650* (1979).
Barendse, R. *The Arabian Seas* (2002).
Baumber, M. *General at Sea* (1989).
Belabre, F. *Rhodes of the Knights* (1908).
Bernard, Jacques. *Navires et Gens de Mer à Bordeaux*, 3 vols. (1968).
Boxer, Charles Ralph. *Jan Compagnie in War and Peace, 1602–1799* (1979).
Bracewell, C. *The Uskoks of Senj: Piracy, Banditry, and Holy War in the 16th Century Adriatic* (1992).
Braudel, Fernand. *The Mediterranean and the Mediterranean World in the Age of Philip II*, 2 vols., Siân Reynolds, trans. (1966; 1995).
Bruihn, J. *The Dutch Navy of the 17th and 18th Centuries* (1993).
Brummett, Palmira. *Ottoman Seapower and Levantine Diplomacy in the Age of Discovery* (1994).
Cipolla, Carlo. *Guns, Sails, and Empires, 1400–1700* (1965; 1996).

Friel, I. *The Good Ship* (1995).
Fulton, T. *The Sovereignty of the Sea* (1911).
Gaea, M. *The German Knights of Malta* (1986).
Glete, Jan. *Navies and Nations* (1993).
———. *Warfare at Sea, 1500–1650* (2000).
Goodman, D. *Spanish Naval Power, 1589–1665: Reconstruction and Defeat* (1996).
Gray, Colin. *The Leverage of Sea Power* (1992).
Guilmartin, John F. *Gunpowder and Galleys* (1974; 2003).
Hale, John R. *The Age of Exploration* (1974).
Harding, Richard. *The Evolution of the Sailing Navy, 1509–1815* (1995).
Hattendorf, John, and Richard Unger, eds. *War at Sea in the Middle Ages and Renaissance* (2002).
Hebb, D. *Piracy and the English Government, 1616–1642* (1994).
Heckscher, Eli. *Mercantilism* (1965).
Heers, Jacques. *The Barbary Corsairs* (2003).
Hill, J. R., ed. *Oxford Illustrated History of the Royal Navy* (1995).
Horden, Peregrine, and Nicholas Purcell. *The Corrupting Sea: A Study of Mediterranean History* (2000).
Howard, Frank. *Sailing Ships of War 1400–1860* (1979).
Howarth, David. *The Voyage of the Armada: The Spanish Story* (1981).
Hutchinson, G. *Medieval Ships and Shipping* (1994).
Israel, Jonathon. *Conflicts of Empires: Spain, the Low Countries, and the Struggle for World Supremacy, 1585–1713* (1997).
———. *Dutch Primacy in World Trade* (1989).
———. *Empires and Entrepots* (1990).
Kelsey, Harry. *Sir Francis Drake: The Queen's Pirate* (1998).
———. *Sir John Hawkins: Queen Elizabeth's Slave Trader* (2002).
Kendall, C. *Private Men-of-War* (1931).
Konstam, Angus, and Angus McBride. *Elizabethan Sea Dogs, 1560–1605* (2000).
Lane, F. *Venetian Ships and Shipbuilders of the Renaissance* (1934).
———. *Venice: A Maritime Republic* (1973).
Lev, Yakov, ed. *War and Society in the Eastern Mediterranean, 7th–15th Centuries* (1997).
Levathes, Louise. *When China Ruled the Seas: The Treasure Fleet of the Dragon Throne, 1405–1433* (1994; 1996).
Lewis, Archibald. *Naval Power in the Mediterranean, 500–1500* (1951).
Lewis, Michael. *Armada Guns* (1961).
Loades, David. *The Tudor Navy* (1992).
Love, R., ed. *Changing Interpretations and New Sources in Naval History* (1980).
Lydon, James G. *Pirates, Privateers, and Profits* (1970).
Mallett, M. E. *Florentine Galleys in the 15th Century* (1967).
Martin, Colin, and Geoffrey Parker. *The Spanish Armada* (1988).
McDermott, James. *Sir Martin Frobisher: Elizabethan Privateer* (2001).
Mollat, M. *Europe and the Sea* (1993).
Morrison, J., ed. *The Age of the Galley* (2003).
O'Connel, Daniel. *The Influence of Law on Sea Power* (1975).
Padfield, P. *Guns at Sea* (1973).
Parry, J. H. *Trade and Dominion* (1971).
Peers, Douglas, ed. *Warfare and Empires: Contact and Conflict Between European and Non-European Military and Maritime Forces and Cultures* (1997).

Potter, E. *Sea Power* (1981).
Powell, J. *The Navy in the English Civil War* (1962).
Quinn, David, and A. Ryan. *England's Sea Empire, 1550–1642* (1983).
Reynolds, Clark. *Command of the Sea* (1974).
———. *Navies in History* (1998).
Rodgers, William. *Naval Warfare Under Oars, 4th–16th Centuries* (1940).
Rodríguez-Salgado, M., ed. *England, Spain, and the Gran Armada, 1585–1604* (1990).
Rose, Susan. *Medieval Naval Warfare, 1000–1500* (2002).
Scammel, G. V. *The First Imperial Age: European Overseas Expansion, 1400–1715* (1989; 1992).
———. *World Encompassed: The First European Maritime Empires, 800–1650* (1981).
Senior, C. *A Nation of Pirates* (1976).
Tenenti, Alberto. *Piracy and the Decline of Venice, 1580–1615* (1961).
Unger, Richard. *Cogs, Caravels, and Galleons* (1994).
———. *The Ship in the Medieval Economy* (1980).
Walton, Timothy. *Spanish Treasure Fleets* (1994).
Williams, Neville. *The Sea Dogs: Privateers, Plunder and Piracy in the Elizabethan Age* (1975).
Wills, John. *Pepper, Guns, and Parleys: The Dutch East India Company and China, 1622–1681* (1974).
Withey, L. *Voyages of Discovery: Captain Cook and the Exploration of the Pacific* (1989).

Weapons, Fortification, and Military Technology

Articles and Chapters

Bachrach, Bernard. "Charles Martel, Mounted Shock Combat, the Stirrup, and Feudalism," *Studies in Medieval and Renaissance History*, 7 (1970).
Bruhn de Hoffmeyer, Ada. "From Medieval Sword to Renaissance Rapier," *Gladius*, 2 (1963).
Buttin, François. "La lance et l'arrêt de cuirasse," *Archaeologia*, 99 (1965).
Clephan, R. "Ordnance of the 14th and 15th Centuries," *Archeological Journal*, 68 (1911).
Contamine, Philippe. "Les fortifications urbaines en France à la fin du Moyen Âge," *Revue historique*, 260 (1978).
Cook, Weston. "Cannon Conquest of Nasrid Spain," *Journal of Military History*, 57 (1993).
De Vries, Kelly. "Military-Surgical Practice and the Advent of Gunpowder Weaponry," *Canadian Bulletin of Medical History*, 7 (1990).
Dubled, H. "L'artillerie royale Française à l'époque de Charles VII et au début du règne de Louis XI: Les frères Bureau," *Memorial de l'artillerie Française*, 50 (1976).
Esper, Thomas. "Military Self-sufficiency and Weapons Technology in Muscovite Russia," *Slavic Review*, 28 (1969).
———. "Replacement of the Longbow by Firearms in the English Army," *Technology and Culture*, 6 (1965).
———. "A 16th Century Anti-Russian Arms Embargo," *Jahrbücher für Geschichte Osteuropas*, 15 (1967).
Finó, J-F. "L'artillerie en France à la fin du moyen âge," *Gladius*, 12 (1974).
———. "Le Feu et ses Usages Militaires," *Gladius*, 9 (1970).
———. "Machines de jet médiévales," *Gladius*, 10 (1972).
Foley, Vernard et al. "The Crossbow," *Scientific American* (April 1981).

Hale, J. R. "The Development of the Bastion, 1440–1534," in J. R. Hale, ed., *Europe in the Late Middle Ages* (1965).
———. "Gunpowder and the Renaissance," in C. Carter, ed., *From the Renaissance to the Reformation* (1965).
———. "War and Public Opinion in the 15th and 16th Centuries," *Past and Present*, 21 (1962).
Harbinson, Michael. "The Longbow as a Close Quarter Weapon in the 15th Century," *Hobilar* (1995).
Hess, A. "Firearms and the Decline of Ibn Kaldun's Military Elite," *Archivum Ottomanicum*, 4 (1972).
Hill, Donald. "Trebuchets," *Viator*, 4 (1973).
Hope-Taylor, Brian. "Norman Castles," *Scientific American* (March 1958).
Iqtidar, Alam. "The Origin and Development of Gunpowder Technology in India, 1250–1500," *Indian Historical Review*, 4 (1977).
Kenyon, John. "Early Artillery Fortifications in England and Wales," *Archeological Journal* (1981).
Kingra, Mahhinder. "The *trace italienne* and the Military Revolution during the Eighty Years' War," *Journal of Military History* (1993).
Lane, Frederic. "The Crossbow in the Nautical Revolution of the Middle Ages," *Explorations in Economic History*, 7 (1969–1970).
Larsen, Henrietta. "The Armor Business in the Middle Ages," *Business History Review*, 14 (1940).
McGuffe, T. "The Longbow as a Decisive Weapon," *History Today*, 5 (1955).
Rogers, Clifford. "The Efficacy of the Medieval Longbow," *War in History*, 5/2 (1998).
Smith, Robert D. "Artillery and the Hundred Years' War: Myth and Interpretation," in A. Curry and M. Hughes, eds., *Armies and Fortifications in the Hundred Years' War* (1994).
Stone, John. "Technology, Society, and the Infantry Revolution of the 14th Century," *Journal of Military History*, 68/2 (2004).
Tout, T. "Firearms in England in the 14th Century," *English Historical Review*, 26 (1911).
Vogt, John. "Saint Barbara's Legions: Portuguese Artillery in the Struggle for Morocco, 1415–1578," *Military Affairs*, 41 (1977).
Williams, Alan. "The Manufacture of Mail in Medieval Europe," *Gladius*, 13 (1980).

Books

Alm, Joat. *European Crossbows* (1994).
Anderson, W. *Castles of the Middle Ages* (1970).
Ashdown, C. *Armor and Weapons in the Middle Ages* (1925).
Baumgartner, Frederick. *From Spear to Flintlock* (1991).
Blair, Claude. *European Armor* (1958).
———. *European Armour, 1066–1700* (1958).
Bradbury, Jim. *The Medieval Archer* (1985).
———. *The Medieval Siege* (1992).
Brassey's Book of Body Armor (2000).
Brown, M. *Firearms in Colonial America, 1492–1792* (1980).
Bruhn de Hoffmeyer, Ada. *Arms and Armor in Spain* (1972).
Buchanan, Brenda J. *Gunpowder: The History of an International Technology* (1996).
Carman, W. *A History of Firearms* (1955).
Chatelain, A. *Architecture militaire mèdiévale* (1970).
Clark, John. *The Medieval Horse and Its Equipment, 1150–1450* (1995).

Crosby, Alfred. *Throwing Fire: Projectile Technology Through History* (2002).
Curry, Anne, and M. Hughes, eds. *Arms, Armies and Fortifications in the Hundred Years' War* (1999).
Davis, R. *The Medieval Warhorse* (1989).
DeVries, Kelly. *Guns and Men in Medieval Europe, 1200–1500* (2002).
———. *Infantry Warfare in the Early 14th Century* (1996).
———. *Medieval Military Technology* (1992).
Downing, Brian. *The Military Revolution and Political Change* (1992).
Duffy, C. *Siege Warfare: The Fortress in the Early Modern World, 1494–1660* (1979).
Duffy, M. *The Military Revolution and the State, 1500–1800* (1980).
Elgood, Robert, ed. *Islamic Arms and Armour* (1979).
Ellis, John. *Cavalry: The History of Mounted Warfare* (2002).
Eltis, David. *The Military Revolution in 16th Century Europe* (1995).
Finó, J-F. *Fortresses de la France médiévale* (1970).
Fuller, J.F.C. *Armaments and History* (1946).
Hale, John R. *Renaissance Fortification* (1977).
Hardy, R. *The Longbow: A Social and Military History* (1976).
Harley, J., and D. Woodward, eds. *A History of Cartography* (1992).
al-Hassan, A., and D. Hill. *Islamic Technology* (1986).
Hayward, J. F. *European Armour* (1951; 1965).
Headrich, D. *Tools of Empire* (1981).
Heath, E. *Archery: A Military History* (1980).
———. *Bow versus Gun* (1973).
Held, Robert. *The Age of Firearms* (1957; 1970).
Hime, H. W. *The Origin of Artillery* (1915; 1945).
Hogg, O. *Artillery: Its Origins, Heyday, and Decline* (1970).
———. *English Artillery: 1336–1716* (1963).
Hoppen, A. *The Fortification of Malta by the Order of St. John, 1530–1798* (1979).
Hyland, Ann. *The Medieval Warhorse* (1996).
Kenyon, John. *Medieval Fortifications* (1991).
Kishlansky, Mark. *The Rise of the New Model Army* (1979).
Klopsteg, Paul. *Turkish Archery and the Composite Bow* (1934; 1947).
Knox, MacGregor, and Williamson Murray, eds. *The Dynamics of Military Revolution, 1300–2050* (2001).
Latham, J., and W. Paterson. *Saracen Archery* (1970).
Lombarès, Michel. *Histoire de l'artillerie Française* (1984).
Lugs, Jaroslav. *Firearms Past and Present* (1973).
Lynn, John A. *Feeding Mars* (1995).
———, ed. *Tools of War: Instruments, Ideas, and Institutions of Warfare, 1445–1871* (1990).
McNeill, William H. *The Pursuit of Power: Technology, Armed Force and Society Since A.D. 1000* (1982).
Moykr, Joel. *Twenty-Five Centuries of Technological Change* (1990).
Needham, J. et al. *Military Technology* (1986).
Needham, Joseph. *Science and Civilization in China*, Vol. 5/Part 7: *The Gunpowder Epoch* (1986).
Nicolle, David. *Arms and Armor of the Crusading Era, 1050–1350* (1988).
———, ed. *Companion to Medieval Arms and Armour* (2002).
Norris, John. *Artillery: A History* (2000).
Oakeshott, R. Ewart. *European Weapons and Armor* (1980).
———. *A Knight and His Armour* (1961).

———. *A Knight and His Weapons* (1964).
———. *Records of the Medieval Sword* (1991).
———. *The Sword in the Age of Chivalry* (1964).
O'Connell, Robert L. *Of Arms and Men* (1989).
O'Neil, B. H. *Castles and Cannon* (1960).
Parker, Geoffrey. *The Military Revolution*, 2nd ed. (1996).
Partington, J. R. *A History of Greek Fire and Gunpowder* (1960).
Patrick, John Merton. *Artillery and Warfare during the Thirteenth and Fourteenth Centuries* (1961).
Payne-Gallwey, Ralph. *The Crossbow* (1958).
Pepper, Simon, and Nicholas Adams. *Firearms & Fortifications* (1986).
Pope, S. T. *Bows and Arrows* (1962).
Preston, Richard et al. *Men in Arms* (1962).
Pringle, D. *The Red Tower* (1986).
Pryor, J. H. *Geography, Technology, and War* (1988).
Reid, William. *The Lore of Arms: A Concise History of Weaponry* (1984).
Reyerson, E., and F. Powe, eds. *The Medieval Castle* (1984).
Ritter, R. *L'architecture militaire mèdiévale* (1974).
Roberts, Keith. *The Matchlock Musketeer, 1588–1688* (2002).
Rodgers, R. *Siege Warfare in the 12th Century* (1992).
Rogers, Clifford, ed. *The Military Revolution Debate* (1995).
Rogers, Hugh. *Artillery Through the Ages* (1971).
Russell, H. *Oriental Armour* (1967).
Thompson, A. *Military Architecture in Medieval England* (1912).
Thompson, M. W. *The Decline of the Castle* (1987).
Toy, Sidney. *A History of Fortification* (1955).
van Creveld, Martin. *Command in War* (1985).
———. *Supplying War* (1977).
———. *Technology and War* (1989).
White, Lynn. *Medieval Technology and Social Change* (1962).

Web Sites of Special Interest

General

All Empires.com	http://www.allempires.com
BBC Wars and Conflicts	http://www.bbc.co.uk/history/war/launch_gms_bfacademy.shtml
ehistory.com	http://www.ehistory.com/index.cfm
Historical Journals	http://www.deremilitari.org/link/newlinks6.htm
Historical Journals Online	http://www2.tntech.edu/history/journals.html
History Journals Guide	http://www.history-journals.de
History Learning Site	http://www.historylearningsite.co.uk
History of Warfare	http://www.zum.de/whkmla/military/warindex.html
International History Review	http://www.sfu.ca/ihr
Journal of Military History	http://www.smh-hq.org/jmh
Military History Magazine	http://www.historynet.com/mh
Military History Online	http://www.militaryhistoryonline.com
Modern History Sourcebook	http://www.fordham.edu/halsall/mod/modsbook.html

On War.com	http://www.onwar.com
Society for Military History	http://www.smh-hq.org
War and Society	http://www.deremilitari.org/RESOURCES/ARTICLES/warandsociety.htm

Wars by Region

Arab and Ottoman warfare	http://www.zum.de/whkmla/military/asmin/milxottomananatolia.html
	http://www2.let.uu.nl/Solis/anpt/ejos/EJOS-1.html
Chinese warfare	http://www.sonshi.com
	http://www.usc.edu/isd/archives/arc/libraries/eastasian/china/toqing.html
Crusades	http://crusades.boisestate.edu
	http://www.callisto.si.usherb.ca/~croisade/Byzance.htm
	http://www.cathares.org
	http://www.crusades.dk
	http://www.deremilitari.org/NEWS/crusadesjournal.htm
	http://www.unf.edu/classes/crusades/crusadesbibliography.htm
	http://xenophongroup.com/montjoie/albigens.htm
	http://xenophongroup.com/montjoie/crusade2.htm
Early Modern Baltic States	http://66.188.129.72:5980/History/PreModernEurope/index.htm
Eighty Years' War	http://www.nnp.org/project/historical.html
English Civil Wars	http://easyweb.easynet.co.uk/~crossby/ECW
	http://www.bbc.co.uk/history/war/englishcivilwar/index.shtml
	http://www.british-civil-wars.co.uk/index.htm
	http://www.kingorparliament.com
	http://www.open2.net/civilwar/index.html
French Civil Wars	http://www.lepg.org/wars.htm
Hundred Years' War	http://www.hyw.com/books/history/1_Help_C.htm
	http://xenophongroup.com/montjoie/hyw_fp.htm
Hussite Wars	http://archiv.radio.cz/history_96/history05.html
Indian warfare	http://www.mewarindia.com/history/indexhissyn.html
Japanese warfare	http://www.samurai-archives.com/index.html
Medieval warfare	http://www.cc.jyu.fi/~mirator/ukmira.html
	http://www.chronique.com
	http://www.cusd.claremont.edu/~ccandy/his/medmil.html
	http://www.deremilitari.org
	http://www.deremilitari.org/JMMH/jmmh.htm
	http://www.harnois.fr/hm
	http://www.humnet.ucla.edu/cmrs/Publications/Pub_default.htm
	http://www.mtp.dk/periodicals/classica/index.htm

	http://www.revistamirabilia.com
	http://www.secretsofthenormaninvasion.com
	http://xenophongroup.com/montjoie/oriflam.htm
Mongols	http://www.friesian.com/mongol.htm#crimea
Polish warfare	http://www.allempires.com/empires/polish_lit_full/polish_lit1.htm#7
	http://www.jasinski.co.uk/wojna/index.htm
Reconquista	http://www.deremilitari.org
Safavid Empire	http://www.ucalgary.ca/applied_history/tutor/islam/empires
Swiss warfare	http://www.geschichte-schweiz.ch/alte-eidgenossenschaft-1291.html
Thirty Years' War	http://www.bodley.ox.ac.uk/dept/readerserv/history/thirty.htm
	http://www.historylearningsite.co.uk/thirty_years_war.htm
	http://www.lwl.org/LWL/Kultur/Westfaelischer_Friede
	http://www.uni-potsdam.de/u/geschichte/mdk
	http://www.zum.de/whkmla/military/17cen/xxxywar.html
Wars of the Roses	http://www.bbc.co.uk/history/timelines/england/lmid_wars_roses.shtml
	http://www.warsoftheroses.com

Weapons

Early firearms	http://www.geocities.com/Yosemite/Campground/8551
	http://xenophongroup.com/montjoie/gp_wpns.htm
Fortifications	http://pages.ca.inter.net/~ttoyooka/oshiro
	http://www.castles-of-britain.com
	http://www.castlesontheweb.com/search/Medieval_Studies
	http://www.castlewales.com/home.html
	http://www.deremilitari.org/RESOURCES/ARTICLES/bachrach1.htm
Medieval arms and armor	http://netsword.com
	http://www.chronique.com/Library/Armour/armour.htm
	http://www.maney.co.uk/search?fwaction=show&fwid=464
	http://www.vikingsword.com
Non-gunpowder artillery	http://members.iinet.net.au/~rmine/seemore.html
	http://www.cathares.org/mma-trebuchet.html
	http://www.pbs.org/wgbh/nova/lostempires/trebuchet
	http://xenophongroup.com/montjoie/ngp_arty.htm

Index

Note: Page numbers in **bold** indicate main entries.

abatis, **1**
Abbas I (1571–1629), **1–2**, 51, 58, 133, 234, 348, 413, 457, 656, 715, 754, 779, 780, 788, 891, 915
Abbasids, 77, 107, 458, 565, 604–605, 770, 872
Abbey of Louroux, 747
Abbot of St. Gallen, 19
Abd al-Malik (d.1008), 831
Abdullah al-Zagel, 351
Abu Bakr (573–634), 106
Aceh, **2**, 563
Acemi Oğlan, **2**
Achlhua, 51–52
Acre, Fall of (1291), **2**
Act of Abjuration (1581), 247–248
Act of Supremacy (1534), 200
adarga, **2**
Aden, **3**
admiral, **3**, 724, 897
admiralty, **3**
Admiralty, **3**
Adrianople, Battle of (1360), 618
Adwalton Moor, Battle of (1643), **3**
Affair of the Placards (1534), **3**, 109, 182, 239
Afghanistan, **3**
Afonso I (1543), death of, 634
aftercastle, **3–4**
Agades, 875
Agincourt, Battle of (1415), **4–5**, 23, 25, 69, 108, 120, 135, 147, 154, 298, 315, 397, 420, 546, 590, 626, 700, 792, 897, 919–920
Agnadello, Battle of (1509), **5**, 111
Agra, 57
Ahlspiess, **5**
Ahmad I, 846
Ahuizotl (r.1486–1502), 52
ailettes, **5**
Ain Jalut, Battle of (1260), **5**
Aïr, Kingdom of, **5**
Akbar (1542–1605), 2, **5–6**, 57, 615, 663, 719, 775, 786
Akechi Mitsuhide, 867
aketon, **6**
akincis/akinjis, **6**, 658
Akritai, **6**
akutō, **6**
Alais, Peace of (1629), **6**
Alamut, Battle of (1234), **7**
al-Andalus, **7**, 20, 107, 118, 348, 471, 591, 665, 724, 790, 831, 875
Alarcos, Battle of (1195), **7**
Ala-ud-din (r.1296–1316), 719, 737
Alba, Don Fernando Álvarez de Toledo, duque de (1507–1582), **7–8**, 10, 12, 81, 115, 223, 242, 244–245, 321, 379, 486, 524–525, 571, 617, 691, 700, 727, 734, 762, 766, 767, 800, 841, 938, 956
Albania, **8**, 750
Albert, Archduke of Austria (1559–1621), **8**, 635, 652, 803
Albert I, murder of, 406
Albert of Hohenzollern (1553–1618), 712
Albigensian Crusade (1208–1229), **8–9**, 128, 207, 309, 428–429, 508, 628, 747
Albigensian heresy, 18, 234, 445
Albon, Jacques d', 873

Albrecht, Hochmeister of the Teutonic Knights (1490–1568), 845
d'Albuquerque, Alfonso de (1453–1515), **9–10**, 413, 563, 695
alcabala, **10**, 832, 841, 916
alcancia, **10**
Alcántara, Battle of (1580), 8, **10**, 597, 693
Alcántara, Knights of, **10**
Alcazarquivir, Battle of (1578), **10**, 612, 693
Aleppo, sack of, 17, 566, 576, 835, 861
Alexander the Great, 242, 293
Alexander V, 354, 427
Alexander VI, 534
Alexandria, Siege of (1364), **10**, 209
Alexis, 935
alferes, **11**
Alfonso I (d.1134), 20
Alfonso V (1432–1481), **11**, 288, 833
Alfonso XI (1312–1350), **11**, 119, 348, 505, 727
Alford, Battle of (1645), **11**, 195, 267, 501, 608
Algeciras, Siege of (1344), **11**, 727
Algiers, **11**, 64, 224, 432, 655, 876
Algonquins, 440
Alhama de Granada, Battle of (1482), **12**, 351, 727
Ali (c.598–661), 106, 775
Ali Pasha (d.1571), **12**, 527–529
Alighieri, Dante, 360
Aljubarrota, Battle of (1385), **12**, 50
Alkmaar, Siege of (1573), 8, **12**, 245, 767
alla moderna, **12**, 306, 466, 869, 915. See also *trace italienne*
Allerheim, Battle of (1645), **12**
Allgäu Band, 346
Alliance Orders of St. John, 489
allotment system, 216
Al-Madina, 461
Almiranta, **12**
Almogavars, **12–13**, 126
Almohads, 11, **13**, 119, 431, 562, 726
Almoravids, 11, **13**, 108, 725, 832
Alp Arslan (r.1065–1072), 770
Alphonso II (866–911), 49, 725
Alphonso V (1416–1458), 470
Alsace, 801, 817
Alte Feste, Siege of (1632), **13**, 132, 586, 853, 865, 906
Altmark, Truce of (1629), **13**, 374, 660, 740, 864
Alvarado, Pedro de (1485–1541), **13**, 185, 838
Alton, Battle of (1643), **13**
Alva, **13**
Älvsborg, 637, 818
Alwa, **14**, 566, 814
Amasya, Peace of (1555), **14**, 46, 457, 754
Amboise, Conspiracy of (1560), **14**, 162, 165, 311, 318, 588
Amboise, Peace of (1563), **14**
Amboise, royal chateau at, 526
Ambuila (1665), 510
Amiens, Siege of (1597), **14**
ammunition, **14**, 38
amphibious warfare, **15**
amsār, **15**, 462
Anabaptism, **15–16**, 45, 46–47, 447, 631
Anatolia, **16**, 750, 770
ancient, **16**
Andorra, Principality of, **16**
Anegawa, Battle of (1570), **16**, 644, 862, 885
Angevin Empire, 925
Anglo-Dutch Wars, 749, 873
Anglo-French War (1626–1630), 139
Anglo-Navarrese companies, 747
Anglo-Scots, 460
Angola, **16**
Angora, Battle of, **16**
d'Anjou, duc (1555–1584), **17**, 247, 392, 394, 536, 807–808, 939
Ankara, Battle of (1402), **17**, 71, 618, 654, 835
annates, **17**, 129, 340
Anne Boleyn (1504–1536)
  Elizabeth I as daughter of, 254
  Henry VIII and, 398, 399
Anne of Austria (1601–1666), 589, 677
  Louis XIII betrothal to, 549
Anne of Cleves (1515–1557), 200, 399
Anthonisz, Adriaen (1541–1620), 306–307
anti-Arminian factions, 901
Antichrist, **17**, 705
anti-clericalism, 80–81
anti-Habsburg propaganda, 602, 645
anti-Muslim laws, 281
anti-Semitism, **18**
Antwerp, Siege of (1584–1585), **19**, 247, 666, 767
Appanage Russia, 619
Appanage system, **19**
appatis, **19**, 314, 747
appeasement, 476
Appenzell Wars (1403–1411), **19**, 47, 823
Aquinas, Thomas (1225–1274), 550
Aquitaine, **19**
Arabs, **20**
Aragon, **20**, 759, 779, 795

Aragon-Castile, 693, 724, 925
Arawaks, 403
arbaleste, **20**, 201
arbalétriers, **20**
Arbedo, Battle of (1422), **20–21**, 116, 133, 678–679, 771, 823, 825, 920
arceri, **21**
archers, **21**
Argentina, **21**
Argyll, Marquis of (1607–1661), **21**, 115, 195, 608, 937
Arianism, **21–22**, 688
aristocracy, **22**
Aristotelian ethics, 550
arma, **22**, 564, 612, 736, 794
Armada Real (de la Guarda de la Carrera de los Indias), **22**
Armagnacs, 4, **22–23**, 420, 810, 823
arme blanche, **23**, 555, 683
Armeé d'Allemagne, **23**, 856, 876
Armenia, **23**, 604
armet, **23**
"Armies of the Religion on the Sea," **23**
arming cap, **23**, 390
arming doublet, **23**
Arminianism, **23–24**, 263, 358, 631, 646, 880
Arminius, Jacobus (1560–1609), 23–24
armor, **24–27**, 386, 431, 502, 594, 768, 777, 812, 816, 825
armories, **28**, 866
Army of Flanders, 19, **28–29**, 76, 148, 168, 245, 261, 473, 525, 623, 647, 648, 673, 734, 799, 803, 879, 900
Army of the Catholic League, **29**
Army of the States, **29**
Arnay-le-Duc, Battle of (1570), **29**
Arnim, Hans Georg von (1581–1641), **29**
arquebus, **29–30**, 108, 181, 188, 352, 442, 479, 582, 600, 621, 622, 668, 683, 720, 773, 822, 902, 942
arquebus à croc, **30**, 680
arquebusiers, **30**, 120, 302, 443, 570–571, 573, 625, 672, 679, 680, 756, 791, 798, 825
arquebusiers à cheval, **30**
Arques, Battle of (1303), **30**
Arques, Battle of (1589), **30–31**, 131, 194, 395, 472, 473, 586
Arras, Peace of (1435), 23, 422
arrêt de cuirasse, **31**, 518
arrière-ban, **31**, 59, 194, 308, 913
arrows, **31**, 196
arrow storms, 546
Arsenal of Venice, 28, **31–32**
arsenals, **32**
Artevelde, Philip van, 744
Articles of War, **32**, 762
artillery, **32–40**, 208, 626, 645, 671, 734, 738, 756, 782, 788, 791, 798, 802, 812, 836, 843, 874
  field artillery, 36–38
  at sea, 39–40
artillery fortress, **41**, 145, 265, 869
artillery towers, **41**, 125, 720
artillery train (1), **41**, 680
artillery train (2), **41**, 609, 626, 737, 780, 815
Art of War, **41–43**
Art of War (Machiavelli), 558
Aryans, 401–402
Asakura Yoshikage (1533–1573), 16
ashigaru, **43**, 101, 136, 342, 481, 511, 648–649, 736, 758
Ashikaga shogunate, 480–481, 772
askeri, **43**, 774
Assassins, **43–44**
Assize of Arms, **44**, 262
Astrakhan, Conquest of (1554–1556), **44**, 472, 620, 656
astrolabe, **44**, 213, 275
astrology, **44**
Atahualpa (c.1502–1533), **44**, 435, 684
atlatl, **44**
atrocities, **44–45**
attrition, **45**
audiencia, 678
Augsburg, Peace of (1555), 14, **45–46**, 47, 111, 115, 142, 191, 213, 239, 243, 286, 287, 380, 407, 491, 706, 732, 851, 934
Augsburg Confession (1530), 45, **46–47**, 111, 551, 705
Augustine of Hippo (354–430 C.E.), 492
Augustinians, 625
Augustinus (Jansen), 480
'Auld Alliance, **47**, 241, 255, 763, 765
Auldearn, Battle of (1645), **47**
Aulic Council, 407
Aurangzeb (r.1658–1707), 786
Auray, Battle of (1364), **47**
Austria, **47–48**
Austrian Army, **48**
Auszug, **48**, 821
auto de fe, **49**, 81, 182, 279, 281
auxiliaries, **49**
avariz, **49**, 915
aventail, **49**
aventuriers, **49**, 319
"Avignon Captivity" of the papacy (1314–1362), **49**, 129, 235, 354–355, 662, 664
Aviz, Order of, 12, **49–50**, 597, 833
Axaycatl (1450–1481), 52
axes, **50**, 942

Axtorna, Battle of (1565), **50**
Ayacucho, 435
ayatollah, **50**
Ayn Jālut, Battle of (1260), **50**, 242, 566, 605
Ayton, Andrew, 919
Ayyubid dynasty, 566
Azaps, **50–51**
Azerbaijan, 1, **51**, 458
Azores, **51**, 505, 534, 614
Aztec Empire, 27, **51–56**, 71, 140, 158, 171, 183–187, 221, 233, 403, 476, 542, 564–565, 590, 601, 659, 700, 722, 837, 838–840, 840, 947

Babur (1483–1530), **57**, 215, 438, 499–500, 615, 663, 721, 775, 862, 891
Babylonian Captivity of the Church, 550
bacinet, **57**
back-staff, **57**, 202
Bacon, Francis (1561–1626), 255
Bacon, Roger (c.1214–1294), 365
Badajoz, 725, 832
Baden, Margrave George Frederick (1577–1622), **57**
Baden, 817, 859
baggage train, **57–58**, 134, 426–427, 542, 816, 944
Baghdad, 17, 458, 656, 835, 861, 955
  Siege of (1638), **58**
Bagirmi, **59**, 86
Bahamas, **59**
Bahmāni dynasty, 437
bahşiş, **59**, 841
bailey, **59**
bailli, **59**
bakufu, **59**, 97, 211, 383, 781
balance of power, **59–60**
Balboa, Vasco Nunez de (1475–1517), 276
baldric, **60**
Baldwin II (d.1131), 507
Balearic Islands (1229–1235), 20, 727
balestrieri, **60**
balinger, **60**, 116, 336, 396
Baliol, Edward de (d.1315), 765
balistae, **60**
balistarii equites, 20, **60**
Balkh, Battle of (1602), **60**
ballista, **60**
ballock, **60**
ballot, **60**, 793
Baltic, **60**
Baltic Sound, 215, 371
Baltringen Band, 346
Baluchistan, 6
bal yemez, **61**
banduq, **61**
Banbury, Battle of (1469), **61**
bandeiras, **61**
bandolier, **61**
Banér, Johann (1596–1641), 13, **61**, 865, 941
ban et l'arrière-ban, **61**
banner (*bannières*) (1), 19, **61**, 283, 298, 352, 386, 591, 760, 822, 825
banner (*bannières*) (2), **61**, 68, 442, 610, 745
Banner (Swiss), **61–62**
banneret, 61, **62**, 133, 262, 298, 589, 893
banner system (China/Manchuria), **62–63**, 568–569, 641, 870
banner system (Japan), **63**
Bannockburn (1314), **63**, 133, 194, 241, 262, 442, 546
bannum, **63–64**, 294, 432–433
banquette, **64**
Barbados, **64**
Barbarossa (c.1483–1546), **64**, 224, 698, 876
Barbarossa, Holy Roman Emperor. *See* Friedrich I (c.1125–1190)
Barbary corsairs, 11, **64**, 183, 340, 343, 469, 655, 681, 748, 908
Barbary States, 380, 675
barber, **64**
barber-surgeons, 943
barbican, **65**, 87, 125, 560
barbuta, **65**, 136, 757
Barcelona, 724, 779
bard, **65**
barded horse, **65**
bardiche, **65**
barge, **65**, 116, 336, 396, 791
bark, **65**
Barletta, Battle of (1502), **65**
Barnet, Battle of (1471), **65**, 928
Barons' Wars (1215–1217 and 1264–1267), **65**
barony, **65–66**
Barret, Robert, 43
Bärwalde, Treaty of (1631), **66**, 740
Barwe, 793
bascinet, 23, **66**
Basel, Treaty of (1499), 818
Basel-Ferrara-Florence, Council of (1431, 1438, 1439), **66**, 137, 235, 430, 702
Bashi-Bazouks, **66**, 174, 357
basilard, **66**
basilisk, **66–67**, 113
bastard feudalism, **67**, 262, 912
bastard musket, **67**, 98
bastille, **67**, 198, 307, 593, 782, 871
bastion, **67**, 125, 215, 729, 869
Batavia, **67**, 896
Báthory, Stefan (r.1575–1586), **67–68**, 212, 428, 476, 586, 640, 688, 690
battalion, **68**
battery (1), **68**
battery (2), **68**
battery (3), **68**

battle (1), **68**
battle (2), **68–70**, 784
battle-axe, **70**
battle cries, 61, **70–71**, 561, 577
Battle of the Pyramids (1798), 568
Bavaria, **71**, 817, 933
Baybārs (1223–1277), 107
Bayezid I (r.1389–1402), 17, **71**, 173, 615–616, 618, 634, 654, 835, 862, 895
Bayezid II (1447–1512), **71–72**, 279, 446, 526, 655, 671, 769, 895
Bay of Seine, Battle of (1417), **72**, 420
bayonet, **72**
Bayonne Shipowner's Society, 177
Bazán, Alvara de, 759
Béal Atha Buí, Battle of (1598), **72**
beat the drum, **72**
Beaugé, Battle of (1421), **72**, 421
beaver, **72**
beaver wars, **73**
Becket, Thomas à (c.1118–1170), 397
bedel-i nüzul, **73**, 915
Bedouin, 20, **73–74**, 242, 461, 566, 724, 805, 918
beeldenstorm, **74**, 431
beg, **74**
Beggars ("*Gueux*"), **74**
Beijing, Fall of (1214), **74**
Beijing, Fall of (1644), **74**
Bektashi Order, **74**
Bektaşi Order, **74**, 477
belatores, **74**, 291
beldar, 58, **74**
belfry, **74**, 198, 593, 782
Belgium Nostrum, **74**
Belgrade, conquest of (1521), 655
Belgrade, Siege of (1456), **74**
Belgrade, Siege of (1521), **74**
Bellay, Marin du, 42
bellum hostile, **74–75**, 493
bellum justum, **75**
bellum se ipse alet, **75**, 722, 911
Benburb, Battle of (1646), **75**, 648
Benedict XIII (r.1394–1417), 354
Benedict XVI (b.1928), 447–448
Benevento, Battle of (1266), **75**
Bengal, 6
Benin, Kingdom of, **75**, 790
Berber Fatamids, 242, 350
Berbers, **75**, 351, 562, 612, 725
Bergamo, 895
Bergen-op-Zoom, Siege of (1622), **75**
Bergerac, Peace of (1577), **75**, 325
Bergfreid, **76**
Bernardines, **76**
Bernard of Clairvaux (1090–1153), 9, **76**, 205, 507, 508
Berne, 522–523
Bernese militia, 523
Bernhard von Sachsen-Weimar (1604–1639), **76**, 555, 593, 638, 701, 736, 855, 876, 930, 938
Bertrand the Guesclin (1323–1380), 420
Berwick, 765, 903
besagaws, **76**
besonios, **76**
Bestallungbrief, **76**
Bethlen, Gabriel (1580–1629), **76–77**, 570, 851
Béthune, Maximilien de, duc de Sully (1560–1641), 396
bevor, **77**
bey, **77**
Beyliks, **77**, 950
Bhagavad-Gita, 402
Bhakti Hinduism, 403
Bhutan, **77**
Bicocca, Battle of (1522), **77**
bill, **77**
billhook, **77**
Bingham, John, 43
birlin, **77**, 336
Biscuits, Battle of (1594), **77**, 635
Bishops' War, First (1639), **77–78**, 140, 264, 532, 608
Bishops' War, Second (1640–1641), **78**, 140, 264, 434, 532, 608
Black Bands, **78**
blackbird fashion, 789
Black Company, **78**, 425
Black Death, 18, **78–81**, 149, 158, 206, 221, 241, 292, 297, 348, 385, 411, 419, 605, 630, 693, 727, 729, 823, 940, 944
Black Guard, **81**, 520
Black Legend, 7, **81–82**, 669
Black Prince (1330–1376), 50, **82**, 92, 134, 146, 241, 385, 442, 475, 505, 546, 626, 670, 686–687, 886–887
Black Riders (*Schwartzenreiter*), **82**
Black Robes, 487
Blackwater River, Battle of (1598), **82**
Blake, Robert (1599–1657), **82**
Blind King John, 196
blitzkrieg, 603
blockade, **82–83**, 124, 782
blockship, **83**
Blois, Treaties of (1504–1505), **83**, 468
Blore Heath, Battle of (1459), **83**, 926
blunderbuss, **83**
Boabadil, 351
boarding, **83**, 811
boatswain, **83**
boatswain's mate, **84**

Böblingen, Battle of (1525), **84**
Bocskay Rebellion (1604–1606), **84**, 749
bodkin, **84**, 94
Bogomil heresy, **84**, 98
Bohemia, **84**, 592
Bohemian Brethren, **84**
Bohemian revolt, 848–850
Boisot, Louis (c.1530–1576), **84**
Bologna, 301
bolt, **84**, 715
bomba, **84**
bombard, 34, **84–85**, 113, 120–121, 173, 387, 407, 456, 471, 616, 737, 803, 828, 864, 898
bombardetta, **85**, 692
bombardier (1), **85**, 699
bombardier (2), **85**
Bonaparte, Napoleon (1769–1821), 735
bonaventure, **86**, 581
Bondetal, **86**
bonfire of the vanities, **86**, 761
Boniface VIII (1235–1303), 664
Boniface IX (d.1404), 354
Bonnets Rouges, **86**
boom, **86**
booty, **86**
Borgia, Cesar (1476–1507), 525–526, 558
Börk, 886
Bornholm, Battle of (1457), **86**, 212, 923
Bornu, 59, **86**, 332, 496
Boroughbridge, Battle of (1322), **87**, 765
Bosnia, **87**, 750
Bostanci (Gardener), 478
Bostancilar, **87**
Bosworth, Battle of (1485), **87**
Bothwell (James Hepburn), Lord (1536–1578), 579
boucaniers, 417
boulevard, **87**, 125
Boulogne, Siege of (1544), **87**, 399
Bourbon, Antoine de (1518–1562), 317, 533
Bourbon, Cardinal de, 240
Bourbon, Charles, duc de (1490–1527), **87**, 311
Bourbon dynasty, **87**, 806
Bouvines, Battle of (1214), **87**, 747
bow(ing), **87**
bowlines, **87**
bows, **87**, 332
bowsprit, **88**
boyars (Russia), **88**, 349, 640, 860
boyars (Ruthenia), **88**
boyars (Ukraine), **88**, 883
boys, **88**
Brabant, 100, 746
bracer, **88**
bracers, **88**
Braddock Down, Battle of (1643), **88**
Bragrança, Duke of, 695
Brahmanism, 402
Brandenburg, 712
Branxton, Battle of (1513), **88**
brayette, **88**
Brazil, **88–89**
breach, **89**, 811
Breda, Siege of (1625), **89**, 584
breech, **89**, 623, 720
breeching, **89**
breech-loader, **90**, 180
Bregenz, Battle of (1408), **90**
breidex, **90**
Breitenfeld, First (1631), 61, 76, **90–91**, 288, 344, 376, 593, 607, 665, 718, 859, 865, 906
Breitenfeld, Second (1642), **91–92**, 678, 855, 865
Bremen, 933
Brentford, Battle of (1642), **92**
Brescia, 301, 895
Brest, Union of, **92**
Brest-Litovsk, Tatar raid on (1500), 835
bretasche, **92**
Brétigny, Treaty of (1360), **92**, 146, 166, 313, 420, 687, 747, 921, 937
Breton Succession, War of (1341–1365), 47, **92–93**, 921
brevet, **93**
Brielle, Battle of (1572), **93**
brig (1), **93**
brig (2), **93**
brigade, **93**
brigandine, **93**
brigantine (1), **93**
brigantine (2), **93**, 186, 840
Brill (Brielle), Battle of (1572), **93–94**, 245, 939
British Army, **94**
broadhead arrow, 84, **94**, 686
broadside, 40, **94**, 719, 777
Brömsebro, Peace of (1645), **94**, 865
bronze, 812
Brotherhood of the Cross, 297
Brotherhood of the Rosy Cross (Rosicrucians), 331
brown bill, **94**, 639, 680
Bruce, Robert (1274–1329), **94**
Bruges, 779
Brunkeberg, Battle of (1471), **94**, 215, 889
Brustem, Battle of (1467), **95**
buccaneers, **95**, 403, 799
Buckingham, 1st Duke of (1592–1628), **95**, 432, 476, 749
buckler, **95**, 257
Bucquoy, Count de (1571–1621), **95**, 570, 753, 937
Buçuk Tepe, 478, 616
Buda, 655
Buddhism, **96–97**, 383, 482, 644, 645, 729, 804, 874
Buenos Aires, **97**
buff coats, 26, **97**, 135, 461

Bukhara, Battle of (1220), **97**
Bulgaria, **97–98**, 750
bullets, **98**
bullionism, **98**
burden (''burthen''), **98**
Bureau, Jean (1390–1463) and Gaspard (d.1470), **98**, 120, 422
Burgh, Hubert de (c.1175–1243), 225
Burgundian-French War (1474–1477), **98–99**
Burgundian-Swiss War (1474–1477), **99**, 520, 627, 823
Burgundy, Duchy of, **99–100**, 630
Burkhardt, Jacob, 709
Burma, **100**
Burnt Candlemas (1356), **100**, 146, 766
Bursa, Siege of (1317–1326), **100–101**, 102, 652, 654
busby, **101**
bushidō, **101**, 758
Butler, Walter, 592
Butwa, 793
Būyids (932–1055), 107
Byland, Battle of (1322), **101**, 765
byrnie, **101**
Byzantine Empire, 77, **101–103**, 126, 173, 409, 638, 652, 654, 805, 895

cabasset, **105**
Cabot, John (Giovanni Cabota, 1450–1499), 276, 534
Cabral, Pedro (b.1460, d.?), 88, 276, 534
Cadiz, Raid on (1587), **105**
Cadiz, Raid on (1596), **105**, 272, 720
Cadiz, Raid on (1625), **105**
Cairo, Sack of (1517), **105**
Cairo caliphs, 107–108
Calais, **105**, 319, 361, 422, 580, 876, 928, 957
  Siege of, 241, 419
Calatrava, Knights of, **105**, 504, 505, 597
Cale, Guillaume (d.1358), 475
Calicut, Battle of (1506), **106**
caliph, **106–108**, 108, 756, 770, 775, 805, 816, 877
caliphate, **108**, 242, 465, 724, 770
caliver, 67, 97, 98, **108**, 461
Calixtines, **108**
Caltabellota, Peace of (1302), 925
caltrop, **108–109**, 196, 338, 442
Calven, Battle of (1499), **109**, 224, 818, 823
Calvin, Jean (1509–1564), 3, 14, 46–47, **109**, 110, 189, 319, 417, 509–510, 704, 706–707
Calvinism, 16, 23, 45, **109–111**, 246, 361, 447, 586, 704, 809, 847, 849
Cambrai, League of (1508–1510), **111–112**
Cambrai, Treaty of (1529), **112**, 162, 898
camels, **112**
camino francés, **112**
Campbell, Archibald, 21
camp diseases, 221
camp followers, **112**, 121, 542, 944
Canada, **112**
Canary Islands, **112**, 534
canister, 339, 373
canister shot, **112**, 117, 720, 827
cannibalism, **112**, 441
cannon, 33–34, 38–39, 66, 95, **113**, 668, 683, 720, 724, 729, 743, 782, 792, 795, 802, 803, 812
cannonballs, **113**, 793
cannon-royal, **113**
cannon-serpentine, **113**, 773
cañon, **113**
cañon de batir, **113**
Canterbury Tales (Chaucer), 11
Canton of Glarus, 625
Capac, Huayna (r.1493–1525), 435
caparison, 65, **113**
Capet, Hugh (c.944–996), 308
Capetians, 87
Cape Verde, 534
Capitana, **113**
capitulations, **114**
capo de squadra, **114**
caprison, **114**
capsquare, **114**, 874
captain, **114**, 533
capture, **114**
Capuciati, **114**
caracole, 23, **114–115**, 227, 229, 373, 518, 574, 662, 665, 683, 731, 921
Carafa, Giovanni Pietro, 115, 667. *See also* Paul IV (1476–1559)
Carafa War (1556–1557), **115**
caravel, **115**, 220, 275, 682, 694, 742
Carberry Hill, Battle of (1567), **115**, 579
Carbiesdale, Battle of (1650), **115**, 195, 269, 608
carbine, **115**
carbiniers, **116**
Cardinal of Lorraine, **116**
Carmagnola, Francesco Bussone (1390–1432), 20–21, **116**, 166
Carolingian kings, 664
carpenter, **116**
carrack, **116–117**, 161, 275, 336, 338, 396, 491, 569, 627, 720, 742, 788, 802
carreaux, **117**
carroccio, **117**, 929
Cartagena, 301
cartridges, **117**, 622, 720
carvel, **117**

casemate, **117**
casement, **117**
case shot, **117**, 720
Casimir, John, regent of the Palatinate, 327
Casimir III (1310–1370), **117**, 687, 883
Casimir IV (1427–1492), 86, **117–118**, 155, 476, 687–688, 712, 865, 922, 923
Cassel, Battle of (1328), **118**, 299, 677
Castagnaro, Battle of (1387), **118**, 738
Castelnaudary, Battle of (1632), **118**
Castile, 11, **118–119**, 423–424, 647, 724, 725, 795
Castile-León, 727
Castillo, Bernal Días del (1492–1584), 55
Castillon, Battle of (1453), **119–120**, 422, 547, 727
casting, **120–123**, 180
castles, on land, **123–126**, 355, 364, 613
  in Asia, 125–126
  in Europe, 123–124
castles, on ships, **126**, 778, 827, 840
castle towns, **126**
Castra Dei, **126**, 169
Castro War (1642–1644), 471
casualties, **126**
cat ("*chatte*"), **126**, 306
Catalan Great Company, **126–127**, 194, 499, 700, 925
Catalonia, Revolt of (1640), **127**, 182, 252, 647, 677, 694, 798, 854
catapult, 28, 32, 124, **127**, 306, 672, 782, 867, 871
Cateau-Cambrésis, Peace of (1559), 7–8, **127–128**, 310, 318, 392, 469, 897
Cathars, 9, 18, **128**
Catherine de Medici, **128**
Catherine of Aragon (1485–1536), 398, 579
Catholic Church, 3, **128–130**, 651, 703, 724, 732, 773, 880, 940
Catholic League (France), 31, **130–131**, 312, 404
  Catherine de Medici and, 588
  Day of the Barricades and, 394–395
  dévots support of, 326
  duc de Mayenne and, 472
  Edict of Union and, 240
  Eighty Years' War and, 247
  fanatic reaction against, 111
  French Civil Wars and, 219, 297
  under Henri, duc de Guise, 310, 586
  Henri III and, 212–213, 393, 630
  interference of, 317
  martial music and, 577
  radical intolerance of, 691
  Salic Law and, 757
  2nd Earl of Essex and, 271–272
  Treaty of Joinville and, 489
  Treaty of Nemours and, 394
Catholic League (Germany), 90, **131–132**, 158, 192, 489, 552
  army of, 804, 851, 853, 859
  dissolution of, 697
  Edict of Restitution and, 238
  Ferdinand II and, 382
  founding of, 408, 711, 730, 847
  Franz von Mercy's joining of army of, 593
  Gustavus II Adolphus and, 376
  Maximilian I and, 585–586
  Thirty Years' War and, 433
  under Tilly, 95, 404, 552, 905, 930, 937, 938, 939
Catholic Reformation, **132**
cavalgada, **132**, 718
cavalier (1), **132**
cavalier (2), **132**
Cavaliers, 66, **132**, 341, 750
cavalry, **132–136**, 225–226, 626, 683, 746, 780, 920–921. *See also* heavy cavalry; light cavalry
Cayugas, 387, 439
Cebelu, **136**, 787, 860
Cebici başi, **136**
Cebicis (*cebicilar*), **136**, 478, 864
Cecil, William (1520–1598), **136**, 256, 578, 579, 675, 908
Cecora (Ţuţora), Battle of (1620), **136**
Celâli Revolts, **136**
celata, **136**
censored books, 761. See also *Index Librorum Prohibitorium*
Les Cent-Suisses, **137**
Cerestole, Battle of (1544), **137**
Cerignola, Battle of (1503), 30, **137**, 179, 301, 367, 842
Cervantes, Miguel de (1547–1616), 526, 676
Český-Brod, Battle of (1434), **137**, 430, 702
Ceuta, **137**, 270, 612, 693
Ceylon, 252, 804, 896
chaiky, **137**
chain shot, **137**
Chalcedon, Ecumenical Council of (451), 179
Chaldiran, Battle of (1514), 1, **138**, 457, 479, 754, 770, 788
Chalgrove Field, Battle of (1643), **138**
chamber, **138**
chambre ardente, **138**

Champlain, Samuel de (1567–1635), **138–139**, 440
Chancery, 407
chanfron, **139**, 198, 909
chapel-de-fer, **139**, 611
char-aina, **139**
Charlemagne (r.768–814), 518, 753
Charles, duc de Mayenne, 393
Charles I, of England (1600–1649), 11, 21, 24, **139–141**, 477, 530
  Bishops' Wars and, 78, 283
  Catholic League and, 382
  Cavaliers and, 751
  Committee of Both Kingdoms and, 163
  Confederation of Kilkenny and, 168
  Cromwell and, 140, 199
  at Cropedy Bridge, 907
  Earl of Manchester and, 568
  Edgehill and, 235
  English Civil Wars and, 66, 132, 263–265
  exact militia and, 274
  execution of, 295
  Friedrich V and, 330
  La Rochelle and, 261
  Marquis of Montrose and, 608
  marriage of, 740
  marriage of daughter, 391
  military aid and, 330
  Naseby and, 627
  National Covenant and, 628
  Peace of Susa and, 522
  Philiphaugh and, 678
  political machinations of, 650
  Prince Rupert and, 750
  Puritans and, 713
  reformadoes and, 729
  Scotland and, 764
  ship money and, 777
  Siege of *Île de Ré* and, 432
  Stow-on-the-Wold and, 268
  succession to throne, 95
  Thirty Years' War and, 850
  trained bands and, 434
  Western Association and, 931
Charles II, of England (1630–1685), 16, **141**, 230, 651
Charles IV "The Fair," King of France (1294–1328)
  death of, 418
  Golden Bull and, 406
  Hawkwood and, 388
Charles V, Holy Roman Emperor (1500–1558), 7, 15, 37, 45, 47, **141–143**, 223, 224, 286
  abdication of, 115
  ascension to throne of, 407, 796
  Barbaby corsairs and, 64
  Barbarossa and, 64
  at Boulogne, 87
  Charles Bourbon and, 87
  Convention of Passau and, 667
  Cortés and, 841
  Crusades (Rhodes) and, 738
  Diet of Worms convened by, 551
  edict in 1520 by, 257
  family of, 672
  Francis I and, 311, 398, 762, 800, 815
  Fuggers and, 332, 505
  Habsburgs and, 379, 426
  Henry VIII and, 66, 397–398
  Hospitallers and, 415, 565
  Iberian Military Orders and, 504, 505
  Imperial Diet and, 191, 433–434
  Inquisition and, 445, 447
  Italian Wars and, 345
  at La Bicocca, 517
  League of Cognac and, 162
  Magdeburg resistance to, 561
  Magellan and, 534
  Margaret of Parma and, 572–573
  Maximilian I and, 585
  Maximilian II and, 586
  mercenaries and, 591
  at Metz, 361
  Moctezuma II and, 601
  Mohács and, 602
  mounting of Spanish throne by, 630–631
  Ottoman Empire and, 698, 815
  Papal States and, 664
  at Pavia, 520, 667–668
  Peace of Augsburg and, 243
  Philip II and, 675
  policies of, 81
  Protestant Reformation and, 703, 705
  reservatum ecclesiaticum and, 932
  Schmalkaldic League and, 82, 216, 433, 617, 762, 845
  Siege of Vienna and, 898
  Spanish Road and, 800
  succession of, 289
  territorial issues and, 933
  at Tunis, 876
  union of Spain and Austria under, 655
  Velásquez and, 183
  Wyatt's Rebellion and, 580
Charles V, of France (r.1364–1380), reconstruction of government by, 420
Charles VII, of France (1403–1461, r.1429–1461), 22–23, 31, **143**, 424, 764
  death of, 421
  Ecorcheurs and, 234
  franc-archers and, 308
  heir to St. Louis, 485–486
  Jeanne d'Arc and, 309
  military reforms of, 163–164, 548

Charles VII (*continued*)
organization of *compagnies de l'ordonnance du roi*, 315
reign of, 421
siege train of, 98
Charles VIII, of France (1470–1498, r.1483–1498), **143**
alliances of, 774
bodyguards for, 591
Italian Renaissance and, 466
Italian Wars and, 83, 303, 467–468
Naples and, 771
Charles IX, of France (1550–1574), 14, 17, **143**, 392
attempted kidnapping of, 588
Catherine as regent for, 165, 362
Coligny and, 162
Edict of Amboise and, 320
marriage of, 323–324
Second Civil War and, 321
St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres and, 806–807, 807, 809
Charles IX, of Sweden, **143**
Charles X (Bourbon, 1523–1590), 327, 328
Charles de Lorraine, **143**
Charles of Blois (c.1319–1364), 93
Charles the Rash (1433–1477), 31, 47, 141, **143–144**, 662, 679
alliances of, 927
arrest of Louis XI by, 548
in Burgundian Wars, 99, 298, 348, 520
death of, 100, 630, 893
Héricourt and, 400
invasion of Alsace and Lorraine by, 98–99
lances and, 315–316, 518–519
League of Public Weal and, 523–524
Maximilian I and, 585
military and, 164, 167, 228
Morat and, 609
movement against Berne, 351–352
Nancy and, 626–627
siege warfare and, 784
uniforms for units, 887
war with Swiss, 308, 811, 823
Zeugherr and, 954
charter colony, **144**
charter company, **144–145**
chase gun(s), 39, **145**, 335, 339
Chastillon, Battle of (1453), **145**
Châteuaneuf-de-Randon, Fall of (1380), **145**
Châtillon, **145**, 317
Chaucer, Geoffrey (c.1340–1400), 11
Chaul, Siege of (1571), **145**
chausses, **145**, 562
chauve-souris, **145**
chemin de ronde, **145**, 842
Chemnitz, Battle of (1638), **145**, 855
Cherasco, Peace of (1631), **145**, 925
Cheriton, Battle of (1644), **145**, 907
Chertva lines, **146**
Cheshire mounted archers, 661–662
chevalier, **146**
chevauchée, 4, 9, 19, 33, 42, 45, 82, 92, 100, 124, **146–148**, 159, 162, 195, 241, 295, 307, 419, 442, 475, 637, 718, 746, 747, 751, 765–766, 773, 783, 906, 912
chevaux de frise, **148–149**, 442, 821
chevaux-légers, **149**, 533
Chichimecs, 51–52
Chiksan, Battle of (1597), **149**, 868
child-mother gun, **149**, 827
Chile, **149**
chimalli, **149**
China, **149–153**
military of, 735–736
Ming dynasty, 150, 304, 355–356, 364, 411–412, 517, 560, 568, 598–599, 604
Yuan dynasty, 150, 356, 604
Chinese armies, **153**
Chinggisid Empire, **153**, 603, 604
Chinngis Khan (1162–1227), 57, **153**
Chitor, 5, 719
chivalry, 61, 63, 134, **153–155**, 159, 291, 298, 389, 400, 466, 502, 650, 661, 699, 757, 783, 827, 866, 918
Chocim, Battle of (1621), **155**
Chodkiewicz, Jan Karol (1561–1621), **155**, 500, 501
Chojnice, Battle of (1454), 118, **155**, 592, 623, 844, 922, 924
Cholallan, 601
Cholula, 840
Chongzhen, 152
choragiew, **156**, 712, 745
Christendom, **156**
Christian Brotherhood, **156**, 346
Christian commonwealth, 760–761
Christian humanism, **156**
Christian I of Saxony (1586–1591), 111
Christianity, **156**, 464, 597, 645
Christian IV (1588–1648), 44, **156–157**, 905, 941
Bernhard von Sachsen-Weimar and, 76

Dominum Maris Baltici and, 223
as Duke of Holstein, 216, 272
humiliation of, 374–375
intervention in Germany by, 570
Mecklenburg and, 587
Peace of Prague and, 696
Richelieu and, 739, 851
settlement between Holy Roman Empire and, 550
Thirty Years' War and, 850, 851
Tilly and, 859
Torstensson's War and, 865
Christian of Anhalt-Bernburg (1568–1630), 95, 131, **157**, 570, 711, 849, 937
Christian of Brunswick (1598–1626), **157–158**, 300, 404, 804, 849, 859, 939
chronic warfare (Sengoku), 643
Church of England, 255–256
Church of the Holy Sepulcher, 405
El Cid (Diaz Ruy Count of Bivar, 1040–1099), 118, **158**, 725, 783
cihuacoatl, **158**
cimarónes, **158**, 226, 683
Cinque Ports, **158**, 423
Circles (of the Holy Roman Empire), **158**
circumvallation, **159**
citadel, **159**, 271, 304, 489, 513
çit palankasi, **159**, 305, 495
city-states, **159**
civilians, **159–160**, 491, 595
Civitate, Battle of (1053), **160**
Clare, Earl Richard de (Strongbow, c.1130–1176), 458
claymore, **160**
Clément, Jacques, 393
Clement III (d.1191), 406
Clement V (1264–1314), 508
Clement VI (1291–1352), 297
Clement VII (1478–1534), 141–142, 162, 354, 395, 398
Clement XIII (r.1378–1394), 354
Clermont, Battle of (1358), **160**
Clermont, Council of (1095), 204, 303
clinker-built, 60, 65, 116, **160**, 161, 336, 788
Clontibret, Battle of (1595), **160**, 635
close-fights, **160**
close-haul, **161**
close order, **161**, 229, 389, 649
close-quarters, **161**
club men, **161**
Cluniac reform, 270
coaster, **161**
"coat-and-conduct" money, **161**
coat of plates, **161**
coat armor, 816
cocha, 116, **161**
Codex Madrid II, 525
cog, **161–162**, 581, 681
Cognac, League of (1527), **162**, 684
coiffe-de-maille, **162**
Colchester, Battle of (1648), **162**
Coleraine, 885
Coligny, Gaspard de (1549–1572), **162–163**, 165, 227–228, 361, 394, 417, 469, 483, 588, 603, 608, 755–756, 807
Colloquy of Poissy, 318
Cologne, Archbishop of, 732
colonel, **163**, 220, 594
colonialism, **163**
columbrina ad manum, **163**
Columbus, Christopher (c.1451–1506), 728
discoveries of, 276, 351, 403
encomienda and, 257
voyages of, 115, 116, 276, 289, 445, 627
combat, **163**
commandery, **163**, 257, 415, 506, 597, 649, 652
command of the sea, 795, 909
commercial revolution, 910
Committee of Both Kingdoms, **163**
Commonwealth of the Two Nations, **163**
communis exercitus, **163**, 763
compagnies de l'ordonnance (du roi), 144, **163–164**, 234, 319, 519, 548, 755, 877
company, 114, **164**, 229
company-based administrative and tactical system, 730
compass, **164**, 275
composite bow, **164–165**, 877, 917
Compostella, shrine at, 759
Comyn Wars (1297–1304), **165**, 904
Condé, Henri I, de Bourbon (1552–1588), **165**, 324, 483
Condé, Henri II, de Bourbon (1588–1646), **165**, 329, 589
Condé, Louis de Bourbon (1530–1569), 14, **165**, 319, 588
Battle of Dreux and, 227–228
Battle of Saint-Denis and, 755–756
death of, 417
Edict of Amboise (1563) and, 236
Condé, Louis II, de Bourbon (1621–1686), **166**, 314, 525, 593, 638, 743, 856, 876–877

condottieri, 20, 30, 42, 116, 126, **166–167**, 172, 224, 303, 314, 388, 465, 466, 470, 471, 521, 540, 558, 591, 664, 672, 914, 924, 937
conestabularia, **168**
Confederate Army, **168**, 265, 651
Confederation of Kilkenny (1641), **168**, 265, 646, 650
Confessio Augustana (1530), 168
confessionalism, 131, **168–169**, 195, 434, 520, 688, 705–706, 711
Conflans, Treaty of, 524
confraternities, **169–170**
confratres, **170**
*confrère*knights, **170**
Confucianism, 150, **170–171**, 294, 569, 645, 908
Confucius (K'ung-fu-tzu, d.479 B.C.E.), 170–171, 950
Congo, **171**
Congregatio de Propaganda Fidei, **171**, 447
Conitz, **171**
conquistadores, 2, 53–54, 71, **171–172**, 183, 253, 289, 403, 431, 435, 564, 591, 601, 684, 700, 727, 731, 736, 798, 838
conrois, **172**
conscription, **172**
consorterie, 133, **172**
Conspiracy of Amboise, **172**
constable, **172**, 262
Constable of France, **172**, 576
constabulary, 61, 62, **172**, 298
Constance, Council of (1414–1418), 128, **172–173**, 190, 235, 354, 427, 428, 785
Constance, Peace of (1446), 823
Constantine I (c.274–337), 410, 664
Constantine XI Paleologus (r.1449–1453), 174
Constantinople, 17, 85, 275, 343, 616, 651, 655, 895
Constantinople, Sack of (1204), 103, **173**
Constantinople, Siege of (1453), 39, 102, 173, **173–176**, 307–308, 357, 513, 613, 654–655, 801, 890
Contamine, Phillipe, 40
continuous bullet gun, **176**
contravallation, **176**
contributions, 76, **176–177**, 248, 258, 314, 530, 536, 544, 665, 703, 722, 855, 911
conversos, **177**, 277, 340
convoy, **177–179**, 203, 348, 423, 799
copper, 812
Coptic Church, **179**
Çorbasi, **179**
Córdoba, 724, 725, 726, 727, 790, 832
Córdoba, Battle of (1236), **179**
Córdoba, Caliphate of, **179**
Córdoba, Gonzalo di (1453–1515), 137, **179–180**, 341, 505, 565, 771, 842
Corkbush Field, mutiny at, 532
corned gunpowder, 25, 89, 98, **180**, 363, 622, 716, 742, 773
cornet (1), **180**
cornet (2), **180**
cornette (1), **180**
cornette (2), **180**
corning/corned gunpowder, 30, **180–181**, 699
coronal, **181**
coronation wars, **181**
coronelia, **181**
corporal, **181**, 926
Corpus Catholicorum, **181**, 182
Corpus Christi, 3, 127, **181–182**, 286
Corpus Evangelicorum, 111, 181, **182**
corpus mysticum, **182–183**, 707
corsair, **183**, 220, 682, 947
Cortes, **183**
Cortés, Hernán, 13, 54–55, 71, 93, 141, 158, 171, 172, **183–187**, 257, 435, 564, 570–571, 601, 659, 838–839, 840–841
Cossacks, **187–188**, 537, 619, 649, 662, 690, 735, 774, 813, 833, 918, 921, 950
couched lance, 133, **188**, 291, 389, 502, 518, 519, 594, 685, 780, 866, 920
coudières, **188**
couleuveriniers, **188**
coulverin à main, **188**
coulverine, **188**
coulverines enfustées, **188**
Council of Blood, **188**
Council of Ten, **188**, 529, 558
Council of the Indies, **189**
Council of Trent (1545–1563), 129, **189–190**, 191, 235, 286, 318, 361, 391, 395, 445, 487, 489, 548, 706
Council of Troubles, **190**
counter-castle, **190**
counter-guard (1), **190**
counter-guard (2), **190**
counter-march, **190**, 517, 583, 900
counter-mining, **190**
Counter-poise projectile weapons, 32
Counter-Reformation, 48, 129, 157, 168–169, 171, 182, 190, **190–193**, 235, 239, 243, 261, 286, 355, 380, 407–408, 436, 447, 448, 487, 548, 586, 667, 674, 707–708, 749,

787, 849, 905, 921, 934, 937
counterscarp, **193**, 195, 306
counter-sinking, **193**
counterweights, 871
coup de grâce, 600
coureurs, **193**
courser, **193**, 590, 746
courtaux, **193**
Courtrai (Kortrijk), Battle of (1302), 63, 69, 118, 126, 154, **193–194**, 241, 260, 299, 315, 350, 442, 499, 522, 607, 611, 677, 700, 744, 764, 810, 920
couseque, **194**
couters (*coudières*), **194**
coutillers, **194**
Coutras, Battle of (1587), **194**, 327, 394
Covenanters, 11, 77, 78, 140, **194–195**, 263, 460, 501, 510, 530, 532, 678, 763, 862
covered way, 193, **195**
''Cowardice Peace'' (1328), **195**, 765
coxswain, **195**
Cracow, Battle of (1241), **195**
Cracow, Peace of (1525), **195**, 538, 845
cranequin, **195**, 201
crapadeaux, **195**
Crécy, Battle of (1346), 4, 25, 82, 105, 120, 134, 154, **195–198**, 241, 315, 419, 420, 442, 590, 686, 747
crenel, 125, **198**, 593
Crete, **198**
crinet, **198**
Croatia, **198**, 750
cromsters, 94, **198**
Cromwell, Oliver (1599–1658), 21, **198–200**, 697–698
  abuse of army by, 907
  Army high command of, 532
  Barbaby corsairs and, 64
  Carbiesdale and, 115
  Charles I and, 140
  club men and, 161
  Eastern Association Army and, 266–267
  Henry Ireton and, 461
  Irish and, 460, 711
  Ironsides cavalry and, 97, 233, 627, 633
  Manchester and, 568
  Marston Moor and, 530, 576–577
  mutinies and, 623
  Navigation Act and, 629
  New Model Army and, 140, 295, 651, 734
  ''Republic of Virtue'' of, 935
  Sack of Drogheda and, 229–230
  Scotland and, 764
  theocratic republic under, 261
  in Wexford, 936
  Whiggamore Rising and, 937
  at Winceby, 284, 939
Cromwell, Thomas (1489–1540), **200**, 399, 699
Cropedy Bridge, Battle of (1644), **200**, 907
Croquants, **200**
crossbow, 24, 84, 195, **200–202**, 349, 350, 352, 442, 546, 570–571, 621, 639, 680, 715, 821, 825, 829, 837, 902, 940
crossbow à croc, **202**
crossbow à jalet, **202**
Cross of St. George, 886
cross-staff, 44, **202**
crouching tiger, **202**
crownwork, **202**
cruising, **202–203**, 748
crupper, **203**, 299
Crusaders, 566, 618, 759, 872, 876
Crusader states, 757
Crusades, 42, 65, 102, 153, 181–182, **203–207**, 212, 218, 230, 243, 275, 299, 337, 463, 484, 486, 502, 507, 537, 565, 597, 634, 639, 703, 725, 770, 877, 895
  First, 204–205, 410, 486, 669, 725
  Second, 205
  Third, 205–206, 842
  Fourth, 206, 651, 895
  Fifth, 206, 207
  Sixth, 206
  Seventh, 206
cruzada, **207**, 915–916
cuartel general, **207–208**
Cuauhtémoc (d.1525), 186
cuirass, **208**
cuirassier, **208**
cuir-bouilli, 101, **208**, 685, 918
cuisses (*cuissart*), **208**
Cuitláhuac (d.1520), 659
cuius regio eius religio, **208**, 732, 934
culebrina, **208**
Culhua, 51
cultellus, **208**
culverin, 95, 188, **208–209**, 339, 452, 651, 666, 784
culverin-bastard, **209**
culverin-moyenne, **209**
culverin-royal, **209**
curtain wall, **209**, 215, 306, 331, 723
Cyprus, 205, **209**
Czasniki, Battle of (1564), **209**

Dacia, 750
dag, **211**
daggers, **211**, 762, 828
daimyo, 59, 101, 125, **211**, 304, 342, 415, 481, 489, 644, 645, 648, 736, 744, 758, 760, 769, 862, 867, 868, 874, 885
Damascus, 17, 835, 861
Danegeld, 259, 717, 872

Danubian principalities, **211**, 750
Danzig, 68, **212**, 374, 821, 922, 954
Dar al-Harb, **212**
Dar al-Islam, 204, **212**, 657
dastana, **212**
Dauphiné, 723
Daura, 387
David II (1324–1371), 765
Davis, John, 277
Day of the Barricades (1588), 130, **212–213**, 240, 327, 393, 394–395, 662
deadmen's eyes, **213**
dead-pays, **213**, 231, 382, 745
dead reckoning, 44, 164, **213**
deadweight stowage, 864
Deccan Sultanate, 437–438
Declaratio Ferdinandei, **213**
"Defenestration of Prague" (1419), **213**, 429
"Defenestration of Prague" (1618), 48, **213–214**, 286, 330, 514, 848
defilade, **214**
De jure belli et pacis, 358
Delbrück, Hans, 93, 503
Delhi, Sack of (1398), **214**
Delhi Sultanate (c.1200–1526), **215**, 362, 437, 499, 615, 662, 663, 719, 721, 775, 861
demi-bastion, **215**, 413
demi-cannon, **215**, 339
demi-culverin, **215**
demi-lancers, **215**, 533
De Militia Romana (1596), 536
demi-lune, **215**
demi-saker, 208, **215**, 756
demurrage, 158, **215**
Denmark, **215–216**, 768
De Principatibus (Machiavelli), 558
Derbençi, **216–217**
Derry, 885
Descartes, René (1596–1650), 466
desertion, **217**, 596, 711
Deshima, **217**, 252, 625, 694, 896
Dessau Bridge, Battle of (1626), 77, **218**, 570, 851, 905
destrier, 73, 134, 188, **218**, 254, 291, 386, 389, 404, 442, 503, 518, 533, 542, 589, 607, 610, 661, 686, 746, 919, 920
Deulino, Truce of (1619), **218**
Deutschorden, **218**
Deutschritter, **218**
Deventer, Siege of (1591), **219**
dévotes/dévots, **219**, 238, 477, 549, 739
Devşirme system, **219–220**, 477, 654
dexterarius, 919
dey, 11, 64, 77, **220**
dhal, **220**
dhow, **220**, 802
Dias, Bartolomeu (d.1500), 276
dice shot, **220**
Dieppe, 423
Diet of Nuremberg (1422), 429
Diet of Worms (1495), **220**, 585, 631
Diet of Worms (1507), 163, **220**
Diet of Worms (1521), **220**, 551
Dilthey, Wilhelm, 709
Dimitri, Prince of Muscovy, 619
Dinant, 784
diplomacy, 558
dirlik yemeniş, **220**, 955
Dirshau, Battle of (1627), **220–221**, 374
discipline, **221**
Discourses on Livy (Machiavelli), 558
disease, **221–222**
"The Disinherited," 765
Dithmarscher, **222**
Diu, **222**
Diu, Battle of (1509), **222**, 362–363, 694, 695
divanî hizmet, **222**
divine fire-arrow, **222**, 951
Doğanci (falconers), 478
dolman, **222**
do-maru, **222**
Dome of the Rock mosque, 405
Dominicans, 257, 625, 760
Dominum Maris Baltici, 216, **223**
Donation of Constantine, 664
Donauwörth, **223**, 408
Donauwörth Incident (1607), **223**
Donglin reform movement, 908
donjon, 125, **223**, 257, 305, 307, 498, 871
Don Juan of Austria (1547–1578), **223**, 247, 342, 661, 666, 955–956
  fleet of, 526–528
Don Quixote (Cervantes), 526
Doppelgänger, **223–224**
Doppelhäcken, **224**
Doppelsöldner, **224**, 347
Doria, Andrea (1468–1560), 11, 64, **224**, 698, 876
Doria, Gian Andrea (1539–1606), **224**, 528–529
Dornach, Battle of (1499), **224**, 520, 818, 823
Dorpat, Battle of (1501), **224**, 472
Dorpat, Sack of (1558), **225**, 538, 640
double armor, 503
double cannon, **225**
double volley, **225**, 900
doubling the ranks, **225**, 229
Dover, Battle of (1217), **225**
The Downs, Battle of (1639), **225**, 252, 647, 801, 873

dragoons, 26, 30, 73, 132, 208, **225–226**, 348, 404, 811, 813, 939
drake, **226**
Drake, Francis (1540–1596), 46, **226–227**, 256, 331, 336, 388, 449, 452, 453, 701, 768, 903
Drang nach Osten, **227**
drekkar/drekki, **227**
Drenthe, 630
Dreux, Battle of (1562), 114, **227–228**, 320, 520, 608
drill, **228–229**, 285, 371, 536, 558, 583, 733, 900
  in the cavalry, 229
  in the infantry, 228–229
Drogheda, Sack of (1649), 199, **229–230**, 269, 936
"*droit de souveraineté*," 932–933
dromon, **230**
drums, **230**
Druse, **230**, 465, 756
druzhyna, **230**
Dünaburg, 640
Dunbar, Battle of (1296), **230**
Dunbar, Battle of (1650), **230**, 530, 764, 870
Dungan's Hill, Battle of (1647), **230**
Dunin, Piotr (1531–1590), 820–821
Dunkirk (1646), 252, 748
Duns Law, 78
Dupplin Moor, Battle of (1332), **230**, 765
Dutch Army, **230–231**
Dutch exercises, **231**
Dutch model, 371
Dutch musket, **231**
Dutch Revolt, **231**
Dutch War (1672–1678), 877
Dutch West Indies Company (WIC), 89, 251–252
dysentery, 222
dziesietniks, **231**, 382, 745

eagle knight, **233**, 476
Eastern Army, **233**
Eastern Association Army, 199, **233**, 266
Eastern Route Army, **233**
East India Company (EIC), 2, 144, **233–234**, 255, 277, 413, 486, 694, 804, 896
East Prussia, **234**, 712
East Stoke, Battle of (1647), **234**, 928
Ecorcheurs, 136, **234**, 744
Ecumenical Councils, 66, **234–235**, 469, 651, 885
Edgecote Moor, Battle of (1470), **235**, 927
edged weapons, **235**
Edgehill, Battle of (1642), 140, **235**, 265, 460, 751
Edict of Alès (1629), **235**, 238, 330, 549, 739
Edict of Amboise (1563), **236**, 320
Edict of Beaulieu (1576), 17, 169, 219, **236**, 237, 325, 392, 684, 691
Edict of Châteaubriant (1551), **236**, 392
Edict of Compiègne (1557), 392
Edict of January (1562), **236**
Edict of Longjumeau (1568), **236–237**, 321, 361
Edict of Nantes (1598), 93, 219, 235, 236, **237–238**, 312, 329, 395, 396, 418, 522, 549, 684, 691, 738
Edict of Restitution (1617), **238**
Edict of Restitution (1629), 29, 182, **238–239**, 287, 290, 302, 329, 330, 381, 514, 549, 561, 585, 587, 638, 696, 739, 851, 905, 932
Edict of Saint-Germain (1562), 162, 165, 236, **239–240**, 318–319, 322, 362, 894
Edict of Saint-Germain-en-Laye (1570), **240**, 684
Edict of Toleration (1562), **240**
Edict of Union (1588), **240**, 393, 630
Edinburgh, 608, 937
Edo, 862–863
Edward I (1239–1307), **240**, 241, 259
  conquest of Wales and, 158
  at Falkirk, 284, 546, 810
  Scottish Wars and, 134, 262, 404, 764
  sovereignty of the sea doctrine and, 795
  at Stirling Bridge, 903–904
Edward II (1284–1327), 240
  at Bannockburn, 262, 546
  Bruce dynasty and, 260
  murder of, 765
  Scottish Wars and, 134
Edward III (1312–1377), 12, 33, 34, 50, **240–242**, 397, 590, 926
  at Agincourt, 135
  Black Prince and, 82
  Burnt Candlemas and, 100, 766
  at Calais, 105
  chevauchées of, 475, 595, 766
  chivalry and, 650
  at Crécy, 195–198, 686
  crossing of the Channel by, 423
  death of, 424
  economic attrition commissioned by, 314
  English horse breeding program of, 919
  finances of, 912
  at Halidon Hill, 134
  Hundred Years' War and, 342, 418–419
  men-at-arms and, 442
  Philip VI and, 677
  Scottish Wars and, 260, 384–385
  scutage and, 436
  Shameful Peace and, 262, 765

Edward III (*continued*)
tactics of, 146, 546, 626, 661–662, 670
tactics of, used at Najera, 670
Edward IV (1442–1483), 82, 143, **242**
death of, 928
at Mortimer's Cross, 927–928
Edward V (1470–1483), vulnerability of, 928
Edward VI (1537–1553), **242**, 399, 579, 748
foreign policy and, 260
John Knox and, 509
succession of, 391
Effingham, Admiral Lord Howard of (1536–1624), **242**
Egmont, Lamoral Graaf van (1552–1568), 7, **242**, 244, 353, 756
Egypt, **242–243**
Ehrenbreitstein, fortress of, 741
Eighty Years' War (1568–1648), 12, 46, **243–253**, 847
armaments during, 121
confessional divisions of, 536
convoys and, 178
Dutch in, 230, 243–253, 255, 469
emergence of Dutch state, 243–249
English army in, 217, 255
expulsion of the Jews and, 280
final years of, 250–253, 617, 634, 931
Flanders and, 242, 300
Habsburgs and, 380, 602, 804
horrors of, 492
iconoclasm and, 431
Invincible Armada and, 456
Leiden in, 524
local conflicts in, 490
Mookerheyde in, 609
Netherlands in, 631
onset of, 548, 938
peace negotiations, 348
Philip II and, 673, 693
Philip III and, 797
Philip IV and, 677
Protestant Reformation and, 708
repression and revolt, 244–245
resumption of, 358
revolution in military affairs and, 734
Sea Beggars and, 767
sectarian war and, 192
siege of Groningen during, 148
Spanish in, 111, 243–253, 607
Spanish Netherlands and, 799
Spanish Road and, 800
Spice Islands and, 801
Spinola and, 803
stalemate and truce, 249–250
Swiss Confederation and, 824
Tenth Penny and, 841
Thirty Years' War and, 300
Tromp in, 873
Twelve Years' Truce and, 879, 880
Vereenigde Oostindische Compagnie in, 896
einschildig Ritter, **253**
Ekiti, 951
Elbing, Battle of (1463), **253**
Elbing, formation of Preussische Bund, 922, 954
El Dorado, **253**, 720
elephants, 133, **254**, 499, 614
Elipolos, 85, 616
Elizabeth I (1533–1603), **254–257**, 578
ascension to throne, 675
astrology and, 44
Charles Howard and, 416
Counter-Reformation and, 261
as daughter of Anne Boleyn, 398
death of, 249
Drake and, 226
duc d'Anjou and, 17
Dudley as favorite of, 524
Dutch military collapse and, 247–248
Earl of Leicester and, 956
East India Company and, 233
Hanse traders and, 386
Henri IV and, 327–328, 745, 779
Invincible Armada and, 448–456
iron cannon supplied by, 122
"King's Two Bodies" and, 501
Knox and, 510
Mary Stuart and, 448, 579, 580, 763, 908
Mountjoy and, 614
Nine Years' War and, 635–636
occupation of Le Havre and Dieppe by, 319
piracy and, 682, 701, 748, 768
plot to overthrow, 361
Raad van State and, 717
Raleigh and, 720
Sea Beggars and, 767
2nd Earl of Essex and, 271–272
succession of, 399, 476
trade and, 388
trained bands and, 870
Treaty of Nonsuch and, 636–637, 646
William the Silent and, 269
withdrawing from military commitments in France, 127

Elizabeth Valois (1545–1568), 588
Elmina (1637), 252, 880
embargo, **257**
emir, **257**
enarmes, **257**
enceinte, 125, 202, **257**, 659, 729
enclave, 589
encomienda, 55, 59, 183, **257–258**, 435, 724
enfilade, **258**
engagements, **258**
engineers, **258**
''engine volants,'' 871
England, **259–262**
English armies, **262–263**
English Civil Wars (1639–1651), 21, 47, 140, **263–269**, 530, 935
basilisk and, 66
buff coats in, 97
Calvinism and, 111, 192
Cavalier cavalry in, 750
Charles I and, 132
club men and, 161
constitutional issues and, 398
contributions in, 314, 703
Cromwell and, 261–262, 460
Drogheda and, 229–230
Earl of Manchester and, 568
early skirmishes in, 434
Eastern Association Army in, 199, 233
Edgehill, Battle of, 235
Fairfax and, 283–284
Fifth Monarchists in, 295
Frederick Hendrik and, 391
George Monk and, 606
gunpowder and, 365
Ireland in, 795
mercenaries in, 729
military affairs in, 734
onset of, 907
Parliament and, 272, 912
plague during, 80
prisoners of war in, 701
Protestantism and, 708
Puritans in, 713
regiments in, 730
Roundheads in, 539, 746
Royalist gunners in, 71
Scotland in, 532, 764, 862, 885
sea power and, 749
ship money and, 777
trained bands in, 870
uniforms in, 888
Western Association Army and, 931
English Fury (1580), 248, **269**
English gun casting, 122–123
English Reformation, 398, 704, 707
Enrique the Navigator (1394–1460), 50, 51, 137, **269–270**, 275, 505, 571, 693
Enrique of Trastamara (d.1379), 119
enseigne, **270**
ensign, **270**
''Enterprise of England'' (1588), **270**
epalière, **270**
Epitoma de re militari, 41
equine armor, 25, **270**
equitatores, **270**, 518
equites, **270**
Erasmus (1466–1536), **270**, 550, 551, 703
Erastianism, 268, **270**, 545
Erastus, Thomas (1524–1583), 270
Erik XIV (1533–1577), 637
Erivan, 458
Ermes, Battle of (1560), **271**, 539, 640
esame, **271**
escarp, **271**
escutcheon, **271**, 503
esmeril, 208, **271**
espaliers, **271**
esplanade (1), **271**
esplanade (2), **271**
espringarda, **271**
esquire, **271**, 503, 589, 661, 687, 758, 773, 780
Essex, 2nd Earl of (1566–1601), 265, **271–272**, 416, 635, 720
Essex, 3rd Earl of (1591–1646), 235, **272**, 633
Estates, 181, **272–273**, 286, 407, 502, 549, 696, 732, 847, 911, 932
Estonia, 786
étapes, **273**, 560, 800
d'Etaples, Lefèvre (1450–1536), 703
Eternal Bond of Brothers, 822
Eternal Peace (1533), **273**, 688
ethic of intentions, 559
Ethiopia (Abyssinia), **273–274**
Eugene III (d.1121), 205
Eugene IV (1388–1447), 894
eunuchs, 63, **274**, 875
Eustace the Monk, 225
Everlasting League, **274**, 822
Evesham, Battle of (1265), 259, **274**
exact militia, **274**
expeditio ultra Alpes, **274**
Exploration, Age of, 103, 270, **274–277**, 446
expulsion of the Jews (from Iberia), 18, **277–280**, 289, 351, 445, 768, 796
expulsion of the Moors (from Iberia), **280–281**, 289, 351, 445, 529–530, 676, 796
Eyâlet Askerleri, **281**, 497
eyâlet-i Budin, **281**, 479

Fabian strategy, 41–42
facings, **283**
factory, **283**
Fähnlein, 270, **283**, 298, 347, 352, 577, 822, 825

Fairfax, Thomas (1612–1671), 161, 199, 266, 268, **283–284**, 295, 460–461, 532, 576, 577, 627–628, 633, 639, 734, 751, 931, 939
faith seeking understanding, 704
falchion, **284**
falcon, 208, 284, **284**
falconete, 208, **284**
Falkirk, Battle of (1298), **284**, 546, 764, 810, 886, 904
"False Dimitri" (d.1605), **284**, 350, 786, 860
Famagusta, Siege of (1570–1571), **285**
familia, **285**
familiares ad arma, **285**
famine, as a weapon of war, **285**
Farangi, **285**
Farnesse, Alexander, **285**
fascine, **285**
Fastolf, John (d.1459), **285**, 747–748
Fatamids, 11, 107, **285**
fathom, **285**
Fatima, 106, 775
fauld, **285**, 835
Feldarzt, **285**, 944
Feldobrist, **285**
Feldweibel, **285**
Ferdinand I, Holy Roman Emperor (1503–1564), 48, 142, **286**, 345, 497, 586, 667
  military frontier and, 594–595
  Peace of Augsburg and, 45
  Philip II and, 380
  siege of Vienna and, 898
Ferdinand I of Portugal (r.1367–1383), 12, 50
Ferdinand II, Holy Roman Emperor (1578–1637), 44, 48, **286–288**, 376, 696, 848–850
  aid to, 131
  Austrian claims to Alsace and, 648
  Battle of the White Mountain and, 937
  in Bohemia, 330, 678, 743
  Bohemian Estates deposition of, 157
  Catholicism of, 408
  Catholic League and, 382
  Christian IV and, 156
  constitutional struggles and, 730
  contributions and, 177
  Corpus Christi and, 181
  Counter-Reformation and, 171, 380
  "Defenestration of Prague" (1618) and, 213
  Edict of Restitution (1629) and, 238–239, 330, 932
  fanaticism under, 191
  Friedrich V and, 585
  Gabriel Bethlen and, 76–77
  Jesuits' influence on, 487
  Johann Georg and, 344
  Leipziger Bund and, 525
  Maurits' support against, 632
  Mecklenburg and, 587
  Peace of Lübeck and, 550
  revolt of Protestant subjects against, 549
  Spanish on loan to, 90
  Thirty Years' War and, 272, 380, 434
  Treaty of Oñate and, 250
  Twelve Years' Truce and, 530
  Wallenstein and, 290, 514, 553–556, 647, 904–907
  Walter Leslie and, 530
  war finance and, 911
  War of Mantuan Succession and, 925
  witchcraft and, 941
Ferdinand II, of Aragon (1452–1516) and Isabella I, of Castile (1451–1504), 8, 11, 64, 277, 278, 280, **288–290**, 351, 504, 728
  alliances of, 111
  army of, 163
  besiegement of Granada by, 410, 505
  conquest of Naples by, 83
  expulsion of the Jews and, 277, 278, 280
  financing of Columbus by, 351
  Inquisition and, 445
  Italian Wars and, 141, 468
  marriage, 728, 736, 795–796, 833
  Olivares and, 647
  Ordinance of Valladolid and, 798
  reign of, 504
  religious loyalties under, 129
  requerimiento and, 731
  unification of Spain under, 119, 693, 727, 736, 795–796, 798
Ferdinand III, Holy Roman Emperor (1608–1657), 92, **290**, 525, 696, 697, 719, 855
  Battle of Jankov and, 480
  Imperial throne for, 288
  Thirty Years' War and, 434
  Torstensson's War and, 932
Ferdinand III (1217–1252) of Castile, 727
Ferdinand V, of Castile, **290**
Fernando I (r.1035–1065), 118
Ferrybridge, Battle of (1461), **290**, 927
feudalism, 68, 123, 211, **290–294**, 299, 360, 364, 436, 462, 558, 573, 723, 758, 813, 837, 910, 913, 918
  military system of, 290–294, 469, 471, 751
fief, **294**, 471, 757, 766, 813
fief de chambre, **294**

field artillery, 36–38, **294**
field fortifications and obstacles, **294**
Field Marshal, **294**, 701
''Field of the Cloth of Gold'' (1520), **294**
Fifteen Years' War (1591–1606), **294**
Fifth Monarchists, **294–295**
fire, 59, **295**, 614, 627, 793
firearms, **295**, 366, 790, 837
fire-lance, **295–296**, 332, 365
firepots, **296**, 695
fireships, 295, **296**, 454, 517, 737
firing on the roll, **296**
fitna, **296–297**
Fitzgerald, Gerald, 500
Five Nations, 387, 439
flagellants, 18, **297–298**, 577
flags, **298–299**, 670, 826
flagship, **299**
flails, **299**
flanchard(s), **299**
Flanders, 242, **299–300**, 300, 746, 799
Flanders Fleets, 895
Fleurus, Battle of (1622), 158, **300**, 570, 849
flintlock, **300**, 582, 600, 936
Flodden Field, Battle of (1513), **300–301**, 397, 763
Florence, **301**, 895, 924
Flores, Battle of (1591), **301**, 357
flota, 226, **301**, 304, 388
flower wars, **301**
Flushing, 548
Flyboat, 899
fodder, **301**
Foix, Comte de, 16
Foix, Gaston de, duc de Nemours (1489–1512), **301–302**
folangji, **302**, 827
Fontainebleau, Treaty of (1631), **302**, 525
Fontaine-Francais, Battle of (1595), **302**
food, **302**
foot ropes, **302**
fore-and-aft sails, 755
forecastle, **302**
Foreign Contingent, **302**
foremast, 581
foresail, 755
Forest Cantons, **302**, 497, 522–523, 771
foretop, 581
forged guns, 35, **302**
Forlorn Hope, **302**, 352, 626, 825
Formigny, Battle of (1450), 120, 208, **303**, 422, 547
Formula of Concord (1577–1578), 111, **303**
Fornovo, Battle of (1495), **303–304**
Fort Caroline, **304**, 417
fortification, 214, 215, **304–308**, 613, 718, 734
  in Asia, 304–305
  in bridges and towns, 307–308
  in Europe, 305–307
foundries, **308**
Four Mirror armor, 27
Fra, **308**
franc-archers, 31, **308**, 315, 662
France, **308–310**
France, Maréchal de, 876
Franche-Comté, **310**
Franciscans, 625
Francis I (1494–1547), 3, 87, 181–182, 190, **310–311**, 417
  as anti-Habsburg ally, 655
  Charles V and, 398, 762, 800, 815
  Edict of Beaulieu (1576) and, 236
  Edict of Saint-Germain (1562) and, 239
  inheritance of war by son of, 391
  Italian Wars and, 517, 608
  Landsknechte infantry and, 443
  League of Cognac and, 162
  Leonardo da Vinci and, 526
  Marignano and, 520, 573–575, 640–641
  at Pavia, 520, 667–668
  ransom of, 721
  Swiss Confederation and, 824
  Venice and, 895
Francis II (1544–1560), 14, 17, **311**, 588
  conspiracy of Amboise to kidnap, 165
  House of Guise and, 318
  marriage to Mary Stuart, 311, 318, 362, 588
  reign of, 362
François, duc de Lorraine, 362
François I, **311**
François II, **311**, 578
Franco–Spanish War (1595–1598), **312**, 328, 395, 586, 893, 897
Franco–Spanish Wars (1494–1559), **312**
Frankenhausen, Battle of (1525), **312**
Frankenhausen Band, 346
Frankfurt-on-the-Oder, Storming of (1631), **313**, 592
Franks, **313**
Frastenz, Battle of (1499), 224, **313**, 818, 823
Frederick II (Denmark), First Northern War (1558–1587) and, 216
Frederick the Great (1712–1786), 444, 869
free cities, **313**
Free Companies, 19, 92, 126, 136, 147, 166, 234, 295, **313–314**, 422, 465, 475, 591, 598, 744, 933, 937
freedom of the seas, **314**
free quarter, **314**

Freiburg, Battle of (1644), 166, **314–315**, 593, 856, 876, 931
French armies, 30, **315–316**
French Civil Wars (1562–1629), 30, 46, **316–330**
  anti-Huguenot sentiment and, 361
  beginning of, 227, 243, 417, 469, 631
  Catherine de Medici and, 588
  Catholic League and, 130
  duque di Parma in, 666
  Edict of Nantes and, 237
  Edict of Saint-Germain and, 236
  Eighth, 165, 326–329, 472, 630
  end of, 240, 392, 472
  Estates and, 273
  Fifth, 324–325, 564
  final phase of, 893
  First, 318–320, 608
  flagellants in, 297
  Fourth, 322–324
  Guise family and, 362
  Henri IV and, 312
  Huguenot rioters and, 311
  internal disorder during, 796
  La Rochelle in, 521
  mercenaries in, 824
  Ninth, 329–330
  Parlement of Paris and, 665–666
  peasants in, 86
  Philip II and, 674–675
  politiques in, 691
  religious issues in, 111, 123, 192, 310, 708
  Richelieu and, 444
  Royalist armies in, 164
  in Saint-Denis, 755
  Salic Law and, 757
  search for peace in, 754
  Second, 320–321
  Seventh, 165, 326
  Sixth, 165, 325
  St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres in, 806–809
  taxation caused by, 834
  Third, 321–322, 394, 603
  Treaty of Joinville and, 489
  Vassy massacre in, 894
  war finance and, 913
  weapons in, 519
French Revolution, 775
Frey, **330**
Friedrich I (c.1125–1190), 205, **330**
Friedrich II (1194–1250), 206, 235, 759, 843
  excommunication of, 235
Friedrich III (1415–1493), 922
Friedrich V (1596–1632), 139, 157, 287, **330–331**, 477, 514, 584, 711, 750
  Bohemian crown of, 937
  commissions of, 570
  Ferdinand II and, 585
  Gabriel Bethlen and, 76–77
  Hague Alliance and, 382
  James I and, 261
  Johann Georg and, 344
  Maurits' support of, 632
  Thirty Years' War and, 131, 805
  Twelve Years' Truce and, 880
  White Mountain (1620) and, 214, 250, 849
Friedrich Wilhelm, of Brandenburg (1640–1688), 855
Friesland, 630
frigate (1), **331**, 338, 755
frigate (2), 203, 275, **331**, 681
Frobisher, Martin (1539–1594), 226, **331**, 452, 701, 768
Froissart, Jean (b.1337, d.?), 42
Frondes, 877, 913
front (1), **331**
front (2), **331**
Frost, Robert, 689
fryd, 262, **331–332**
Fugger, Johannes (1348–1409), 332
Fugger, House of, 142, **332**, 379, 504, 505, 506, 911
Fujian ships, 275, **332**, 491
Fulbe (Fulani), **332–333**, 790, 918
Funj Sultanate, **333**
Furstenberg, Count (1563–1617), **333**
Fürstenverschwörung, **333**, 667
Fürth, Battle of (1632), **333**
fuses, **333**
fusiliers de taille, **333**
fusta, **333**, 527
Fyodor I (1557–1598), 349

gabions, **335**
Gabor, Bethlen, 905
gadlings, **335**
gaff, **355**
Gainsborough, Battle of (1643), **335**, 460
"*galeones*," **335**
galets, **335**
Galicia, 724, 883
Galilei, Galileo (1564–1642), 447
galleass, 40, 174, **335**, 336, 353, 526
galleon, 203, 220, **335–336**, 338, 348, 355, 450, 491, 529, 569, 680, 681, 748, 755, 797, 911, 954
galley, 60, 93, 145, 161, 202, 230, **336–340**, 491, 521, 526, 547, 694, 737–738, 746, 759, 766, 787, 791, 827, 911
galley slaves, **340**
galley-to-sail action, 68–69, 201
Gallican Church, 129, 190, 318, **340**, 354, 361, 391, 588, 738
Gallican crisis, **340**
galliot, 333, **340**, 526

galloglass, **341**, 500, 729
galloper gun, **341**
gambeson, **341**, 562
Gambia, **341**
gangrene, 943
ganimet, 59, **341**, 841
Gao, 22, 564, 612
gardebraces, **341**, 667
Garde de Cent Suisses, 591
Gardetal, **341**
Garigliano River, Battle of (1503), 180, **341**, 468
garrisons, **341–342**
garrots, **342**
Gascony, 423, 521, 754
Gaspard, 120
Gaston de Foix, 723
gauge, 791
gauntlets, 335, **342**
Gazi, **342**
Geertruidenberg, 584
gekokujō, **342**, 481, 489, 649, 710, 772, 885
Gelasius I (r.492–496), 880
Gelderland, 630
Gembloux, Battle of (1578), 223, 247, **342–343**, 666
gendarmerie, **343**
gen d'armes, **343**
general, **343**
General at Sea, **343**
Generalfeldobrist, **343**
Generality, **343**, 391, 583, 632, 633, 887
Generallissimus, **343**
Generalobrist, **343**
general officer, **343**
genitors, **343**
genouillières, **344**
Genoa, **343**, 759
Gentili, Alberico (1552–1608), **344**, 358, 682
Georg, Johann (1611–1656), 29, 90, **344**
Georg, Meister, 737
George, Duke of Clarence, 927
Georgia, 1, 604
Georg of Waldburg, 345
Georg Wilhelm, of Brandenburg (1595–1640), 13, **344**, 561, 852
German brigade, **344**
German Peasant War (1525), 16, 286, **344–347**, 498, 520, 551–552, 692, 817
Germany, **347**
Gershon, Levi ben, 202
Gevierthaufen, **347**, 745
Gewalthut, **347**, 609–610, 610, 626–627, 810
ghaz, **347**
ghazi, **347**, 409, 657, 715, 754, 815, 878
Ghaznavids (962–1186), 437, 565, 719, 877
Ghibellines, 182
ghulams, 2, **348**
Ghurids, 437, 719
Gibraltar, **348**
  Battle of (1607), 249–250, **348**, 879–880
Giornico, Battle of (1478), **348**, 823
gisarmes, **349**, 666
Giustiniani Longo, Giovanni (d.1453), 174
Giza, Battle of (1517), **349**, 770
glacis, 193, 195, 271, **349**
glaive, **349**
Glete, Jan, 909
Gloucester, 928
Glyndŵr, Owain (1359–c.1416), 349
Glyndŵr's Rebellion (1401–1406), **349**, 424
Goa, 10, 695
  Seizure of (1510), **349**
goat's foot lever, **349**
Gobir, 387
Godunov, Boris Fyodorovich (c.1552–1605), 272, **349–350**, 620, 786, 860–861
goedendag, 193, 299, **350**
Golden Bull (1356), 129, **350**, 406
Golden Bull of Rimini (1223), **350**
"Golden Hind," 336
Golden Horde, **350**, 471, 604, 605, 619, 620, 861, 883. *See also* Mongols
Golden Horn, 616
Goldman, Nicholas, 43
gomeres, **350**
Gonzaga, Giovanni (1466–1519), 166, 303, **350**
gorget, **350**
Goslar, Treaty of (1642), 855
Gotland, 768
Gottesfurcht, 504
Grace Dieu, 581
Grace of Alais (1629), **350**
graffle, 195, 201, **350**
Granada, 11, 118, 179, 206, 275, 291, **350–351**, 445, 463, 504, 505, 693, 725, 795
Granadine Moors, 445, 609
Gran Colombia, 634
Grande François, 355
Grand Parti de Lyon, **351**, 913
Grandson, Battle of (1476), 99, 144, 154, 302, **351–352**, 443, 609, 679, 822, 823
Grand Vezier (*Vezir-i Azam*), 77, **352–353**, 495, 756, 950
Grantham, Battle of (1643), 199, **353**
Granvelle, Cardinal Antoine Perrenot (1517–1586), 242
grapeshot, 35, 112, 117, 202, 306, 339, **353**, 720, 827
Graubünden, **353**, 817
Gravelines, Battle of (1558), 127, 242, 252, 261, **353**
Gravelines, Battle of (1588), **353**
Great Apostasy, **353**

Great Condé, **353**
Great Enterprise (1521–1522), **353**
Great Galley, 336, **353**, 820
Great Helm, **353**
Great Horns, 386
Great Interregnum (1250–1273), **353**, 406
Great Schism (1378–1417), 128, 172, 190, 235, **354–355**, 470, 545, 664, 733, 924
Great Ships, **355**, 396, 399, 748
Great Swabian League, 345, **355**, 817
Great Tokugawa Peace, 886
Great Wall, 125, 151, 304, **355–356**, 783, 876, 911, 950
"Great War" (1409–1411), **356**, 573, 605–606
Great Zimbabwe, **356–357**, 793
greaves, **357**, 685, 824
Grebel, Conrad (1498–1526), 15, 957
Greece, **357**, 750
Greek fire, 69, 295, 338, **357**
Gregorian reform, 270
Gregory ("The Great") (540–604), 880
Gregory VII (c.1020–1085), 405–406, 664
Gregory IX (1145–1241), 445
Gregory XI (1331–1378), 354, 545, 924
Gregory XII (1327–1417), 354
Gregory XIV (1535–1591), 327
Gregory XV (1554–1623), 171
Greifswald, 852
grenades, **357**
Grenville, Richard (1542–1591), 301, **357**, 614
Grey, Lady Jane (1537–1554), **357**, 944, 945
Grey, Lord, 926
The Grisons, 109, 247, **357–358**, 556, 800, 801, 824, 893–894
Groningen, 630
Grotian principles, 932
Grotius, Hugo (1583–1645), 314, 344, **358–359**, 492, 584, 631, 682, 880
Grünhag, **359**
Grunwald, Battle of (1410), **359**
Guangdong, **359**, 491, 820
guardas reales, **359**
guastatores, **359**
Guébriant, Compte de, 879
Guelphs and Ghibellines, 182, **360**, 469
Guérande, Treaty of (1365), 93, 921
Guerra Arciducale (1615), **360**, 891
guerra dels segadors, **360**
guerre couverte, **360**, 459, 636
guerre d'usure, **360**
guerre guerroyante, 155, **360**, 608, 719, 815
guerre mortelle, 9, **360–361**, 784
guerriers de Dieu, **361**
guerrilla warfare, **361**
Guinea, 270
Guinegate, Battle of (1513), **361**
guisarmes, **361**
Guiscard, Robert, 639
Guiscard, Roger, 639
Guise, Charles, Cardinal de Lorraine (1524–1574), 190, 320, 321, **361**, 393
Guise, Charles de Lorraine (1554–1611), **361**
Guise, François, duc de Lorraine (1519–1563), 7, 162, 310, 311, 317, 361, **361–362**, 533, 548, 873, 894
Guise, Henri, duc de Lorraine (1550–1588), 130, 213, 240, 326, **362**, 393, 533, 586, 808
Guise family, 111, 162, **362**, 489, 588, 608, 740–741, 763, 806
Gujarat, 6, 222, **362–363**, 615, 694
gun carriages, 341, **363**, 372, 452, 583, 695, 738, 874
gun-deck, **363**
gun metal, **363**
gunner, **363**, 812
Gunner's Mark, **363**
gunner's quadrant, **364**, 834–835
gunner's rule, **364**
gunnery, **364**
gun port, 363, **364**, 490
gunpowder artillery, 306, 837
gunpowder empires, **364**, 654, 837
gunpowder revolution, 292–293, **364**
gunpowder rockets, 33
gunpowder weapons, 24, 133, **365–370**, 399, 630, 719, 734, 743, 784, 787, 788, 942
  early, 365–367
  social consequences, 367–368
  state and, 368–370
guns, social consequences of, 367–368
gun tackle, **370**
Gur states, **370**
Gustavus I (1496–1560), **370–371**
  Brunkeberg (1471) and, 215
  Union of Kalmar and, 889, 894
Gustavus II Adolphus (1594–1632), 13, 23, 29, 37–38, **371–377**, 735, 850
  adoption of volley system, 900

artillery and, 37–38, 372, 524
Bernhard von Sachsen-Weimar and, 76
brigade system and, 93
capture of Riga, 916
cast guns and, 122
Catholic League and, 382
cavalry and, 71, 135, 155
Christian IV and, 157
at Dirshau, 220–221
as disciplinarian, 596
Dominum Maris Baltici and, 223
doubling the ranks and, 225
Earl of Leven and, 532
education of, 498
at First Breitenfeld, 90–91, 718, 917
galloper gun and, 341
Georg Wilhelm and, 561
gun carriages and, 363
Haiduks and, 382
Heinrich Holk and, 404
identification of regiments by flag colors, 298
infantry and cavalry, 373–374
infantry problems of, 114–115
Johann Banér and, 61
Kalmar War and, 659
League of Heilbronn and, 390
Leipziger Bund and, 344, 525
Lutheran Swedes entering war under, 132
Lützen and, 97, 552–556, 637
martial music and, 577
Maurits of Nassau and, 444
military engineers and, 258
mutinies and, 623
Peace of Knäred and, 496
Peace of Prague and, 696
Poland and, 688–689
reforms of, 58, 335, 502, 742
revolution in military affairs theory and, 734
Richelieu and, 739
at Riga, 916
shock tactics under, 229
Siege of Straslund and, 812
Sigismund III Vasa and, 785, 813, 819
Stormakstid and, 811
Swedish Army and, 633
Thirty Years' War and, 66, 530, 535, 592–593, 665, 750, 751, 787, 850, 851, 852–854, 890
Tilly and, 647, 859
Torstensson and, 865
Truce of Altmark and, 660
Truce of Tolsburg and, 863
uniforms and, 888
Wallenstein and, 552–556, 852–854, 906
War of Smolensk and, 921
War of the Mantuan Succession and, 288, 925
at Werben, 930
at Wolgast, 941
Gutenberg, Johannes (1400–1468), 699
Guy, John, 578

Haakon VI (r.1355–1380), 889
Haarlem, Siege of (1572–1573), 8, 12, 245, **379**
habergeon, 23, **379**
Habsburgs, 310, 332, **379–381**, 467, 471, 629, 647, 664, 673, 691, 719, 739, 743, 786, 800, 804, 815, 819, 822, 890, 891, 898, 931
Hacci Bektash Veli (1209–1271), 74
Hacen, Muley (d.1485), 351
hackbut, **381**
hackbutters, **382**, 680
hackney, **382**, 919
Hadrian's wall, 259
Hafsids, 223, 431–432, 562, 876
hagbutters, **382**
Hagia Sophia, 616
Hague Alliance (1625), 139, 156–157, **382**, 550, 850
Haiduks, **382**, 887
hail shot, **382**
Hainault, 100
Haiti, **382**
haj, 464
Hakata (Hakozaki) Bay, Battle of (1274), 26–27, 59, 149, **382–383**, 480, 481, 490, 605
Hakata (Hakozaki) Bay, Battle of (1281), 26–27, 59, 149, **383–384**, 480, 481, 482, 605
hakenbüsche, **384**
haketon, **384**
halberd, 5, 21, 65, 94, 145, 194, 349, 352, **384**, 442, 523, 610, 611, 639, 666, 679, 723, 821, 823, 919, 942
halberdiers, **384**, 574, 678, 771
Halberstadt, 933
half-pike, **384**
Halidon Hill, Battle of (1333), 134, 146, 241, **384–385**, 442, 766
Hamburg, Treaty of (1638), 145, **385**, 638, 855
Hampden, John, 266
han, **385**
Han (Ming) column, 760
Han Empire, 568
hand cannon, **385**
hanger, **385**
Hannibal of Carthage, 254
Hansa, **385**
Hanse, 79, 86, 212, 215, 223, 227, **385–386**, 471, 630, 709, 768, 812, 818, 843, 895, 905, 922
Hanseatic League, **386**

"Hans Karst," 498. *See also* Karsthans
Hara Castle, massacre of Christians at (1638), **386**
haramaki, **386**
Harfleur, 420
  Battle of (1416), **386**
Harmensen, Jacob, 23
harness, **386**
Harold of Wessex (1022–1066), 613, 638
harquebus, **386**, 683
Harsthörner, 62, 352, **386**, 575
Hasekis (personal bodyguard), 478
Hashemites, **386**
Hassan, 106–107
Hassig, Ross, 55
Hastings, Battle of (1066), **386**
hata jirushi, 298, **386**
hatamoto, **386**
Hattin (1187), 205
hauberk, 341, **386–387**, 503, 562, 614, 816, 894
Haudenosaunee, **387**, 439, 440, 461
Haufen, **387**
haul close, **387**
haul wind, **387**
Hauptmann, **387**
Hauptstuke, **387**
Hausa, 293, 307, 332, **387**, 496, 790, 794
Hausaland, 496
havoc radius, **387**
Hawkwood, John (d.1394), 36, 166, **388**, 738, 937
Hawkyns, John (1532–1595), 226, 227, **388**, 452, 701, 768, 903
headsail, 755
heave to, **389**
heavy cavalry, 26, 73, 75, 87, 118, 147, 154, 161, 188, 193, 208, 215, 218, 228, 284, 291, 304, 310–311, 315, 350, **389**, 404, 428, 441–442, 465, 503, 519, 522, 533, 540, 548, 573, 598, 602, 603, 607, 610, 614–615, 639, 657, 679, 686, 690, 723, 744, 761, 780, 787, 798, 810, 837, 843, 876, 918
heavy mortars, 613
Hedgely Moor, Battle of (1464), **389**, 927
Heemskerk, Jacob van (1567–1607), 348, **389**
Heerschild, **389**
Heerschildordnung, **390**
Hegel, Georg Wilhelm Friedrich (1770–1831), 709
Heilbronn, League of, **390**, 660
Heiligerlee, Battle of (1568), 244, **390**
Heilongjiang, 568
Hein, Piet (1577–1629), 178
Hejaz, 205, **390**, 409, 770
Hellburners, **390**
helm, 23, 215, **390**, 558
helmets, **390**
Helvetian Confederation, **390**, 933
Hemmingstedt, Battle of (1500), **390**, 520
Hendrik, Frederik (1584–1647), 251, **390–391**, 632, 691, 925
Henri de Navarre (1553–1610), 17, 30–31, 130, 131, 165, 194, 240, 248, 322, 323, 325, 326–327, 327, **391**, 392, 393, 394, 489, 586–587, 724, 725, 757, 806–807, 809. *See also* Henri IV, of France
Henrietta Maria (1609–1669), 139
Henri II, of France (1519–1559), 17, 37, **391–392**, 588, 603, 608, 756, 832, 913
  "Burning Chamber" and, 138
  death of, 318, 580
  Huguenots and, 416
  inspection of army by, 316
  militant Protestantism and, 127
  officers of maréchal rank under, 576
  reign of, 311
  religious peace in Germany and, 190
Henri III, of France (1551–1589), 17, 30, 326, **392–394**, 586, 588, 630, 688
  abdication of Polish throne, 324
  Catholic League and, 247
  corpus mysticum and, 182
  Day of the Barricades (1588) and, 212–213
  Edict of Beaulieu (1576) and, 236
  French Civil Wars and, 324–327, 483
  Henri de Navarre and, 327, 394
  hiring of Swiss guards by, 662
  Italian Wars of, 893
  marriage of, 476
  murder of Guise by, 327
Henri IV, of France (1553–1610), 87, 236, **394–396**, 489–490, 586, 589, 779. *See also* Henri de Navarre
  anti-Habsburg diplomacy of, 381
  Arques and, 131
  assassination of, 477, 549
  Catholic League and, 271–272, 473
  coronation of, 310, 628
  Edict of Nantes and, 237–238, 522
  excommunication of, 327–329

French Civil Wars and, 312, 321–329, 834
invention of *pistolade* by, 683
Peace of Vervins and, 897
politiques and, 691
reformed faith of, 417
Salic Law and, 757
siege warfare and, 745–746
Spanish intelligence and, 879
Spanish Road and, 800
Henry II (1133–1189), 44, 177, 262, 458, 626
Henry IV (1367–1413)
reform enthusiasm and, 405
Richard II murdered by, 420
victory of, at Shrewsbury, 260
Henry IV, Holy Roman Emperor (1050–1106), 406
Henry the Navigator, **396**
Henry Tudor. *See* Henry VII
Henry V, of England (1387–1422), 4–5, 23, 284, **396–397**, 682, 700, 748
Agincourt and, 135, 443
death of, 260, 421, 897
Grace Dieu built for, 581
Great Galley commissioned by, 336
halingers and barges of, 116
Hundred Years' War and, 295
invasion of France by, 147, 424
Royal Navy of, 909
uniforms and, 887
Henry VI (1422–1471), 421, 682
War of the Roses and, 926, 928
Henry VII (1457–1509), 578, 928
Henry VIII, of England (1491–1547), **397–399**, 500, 662, 777, 944
cannon and, 845
Thomas Cromwell and, 200
death of, 748
as Defender of the Faith, 736
Elizabeth I and, 254
Henry Grâce à Dieu and, 355
launching of galleass by, 353
League of Cognac and, 162
legal doctrine developed under, 501
martial interests of, 260
Mary Tudor and, 579
presentation of basilisk to, 66
Protestant Reformation and, 704
reign of, 263
religious policies of, 500
Scotland and, 763
siege of Boulogne by, 87
split from Rome under, 391
strategic sense of, 399
herald, **399–400**, 831
Herat, Battle of (1221), **400**
Herat, Battle of (1598), **400**
heresy, 9, 18, 80–81, 98, 159, 234, **400**, 445, 707, 808, 849
Héricourt, Battle of (1474), 99, 351, **400**, 823
Hermandad(es), **400**, 717, 798
hermangildas, **401**, 504, 505
Herrings, Battle of the (1429), **401**
hetman (*otaman*), **401**
Hexham, Battle of (1464), **401**, 927
Highland galley, **401**
hijra, **401**
Hinduism, 96, **401–403**, 462, 615, 645, 718, 804
Hispaniola, **403**
Hobbes, Thomas (1588–1679), 183, 358, 359, 552, 559
hobelars, **403–404**, 519, 590
Hochmeister, **404**, 843
Höchst, Battle of (1622), 158, 300, **404**, 570, 849
Hofkriegsrat, **404**, 407, 433
Hohenzollern, **404**
Hōjō, 862
Holk, Heinrich (1599–1633), **404**, 812
Holy Lands, **404**
Holy League (France), **404**
Holy League (Italy), 235, **404–405**, 467–468, 774, 956
Holy Office, **405**
Holy Places, **405**, 486
Holy Roman Empire (of the German Nation), 129, 272, 360, 404, **405–408**, 425, 428, 433, 514, 519, 520, 652, 664, 687, 698, 730, 731, 743, 779, 786, 817, 873
Holy Union, **408**
"holy war," 138, 203, 207, **408–411**, 461, 493, 526, 597, 657
Holy Water Sprinkler, **411**
Homildon Hill, Battle of (1402), **411**
homosexuality, **411**
Homs, Battle of (1281), **411**
Honganji fortress, Siege of (1570–1580), **411**, 644, 874
Hong Taiji, 62, 641
Hongwu emperor (r.1368–1398), 79, 149–150, 153, 254, **411–412**, 517, 599, 604, 729, 875, 911, 950
Honigfelde, Battle of (1629), **412**
honjō, 304, **412**, 772
hookgun, **412**
hoop-and-stave method, 35, 84, 89, 113, 121, 180, 353, **412–413**, 695, 812, 890
Hopton, Ralph (1598–1652), 266, **413**, 907

Horasani technique, 58, **413**
horizontal loyalty, 858
Hormuz, 10, 234, **413**, 694
hornwork, **413–414**
horo, 298, **414**
hors de combat, **414**
horse, **414**
horse armor, **414**
horse-breeding revolution, 919
horseman's axe, **414**
horses, **414**
Hospitallers, 44, 49–50, 71, 209, 257, 414–415, **414–415**, 489, 505, 507, 565, 597, 617, 737, 757, 814, 942
hostage-taking, **415–416**
Hotin, Battle of (1621), **416**
hot shot, **416**
housecarls, 262, **416**, 661
Howard, Catherine (c.1520–1542), 399
Howard, Charles (1536–1624), **416**, 452–453, 720
howdah, **416**
Hsiang-Yang, Siege of (1268–1273), 149, **416**, 604
Hudson, Henry (c.1570–c.1611), 277
Huguenots, 110, 194, 235, 237–238, 239, 301, 310, **416–418**, 521, 548, 549, 588, 608, 628, 631, 647, 674, 683, 687, 691, 707, 738, 755, 757, 806, 850, 913
Hulagu, 604
hulk, **418**, 450
Hulst (1645), 252
humanism, 704
Humayun, 775
Hunderpanzer, **418**
Hundred Years' War (1337–1453), 42, **418–425**, 470, 893
Agincourt in, 4–5, 23, 25, 69, 108, 120, 135, 147, 154, 298, 315, 397, 420, 546, 590, 626, 700, 792
Beaugé in, 72, 421
Brétigny Treaty and, 92
Calais in, 105, 876
Castile involvement in, 727
chevauchés in, 747
chivalry in, 153–154, 164
Cinque Ports and, 158
Crécy in, 4, 25, 82, 105, 120, 134, 154, 195, 195–198, 241, 315, 419, 420, 442, 590, 686, 747
culverins in, 208
desertions during, 217
Ecorcheurs in, 234
Edward III and, 260, 677
English in, 146, 263, 418–425, 470, 622, 653
feudalism and, 293
final phase of, 39, 98, 119, 303, 309, 366, 548, 682, 764, 926
fire and, 295
first phase of, 912
Francis I and, 310–311
French in, 418–425, 470, 774
garrisons in, 341–342
Hanse and, 385
Henry VIII and, 300
indentures in, 436
Jeanne d'Arc in, 99, 154, 307, 309, 421–422, 484–486, 596, 748, 764, 833
La Rochelle and, 521
mercenaries in, 12, 22–23, 591
new monarchies and, 633
opening phase of, 241, 546, 765, 791
privations of, 475
Reconquista and, 80
recruitment during, 313, 315
religious loyalties during, 129
Salic Law and, 757
sea power in, 396, 423–424, 748, 779
siege warfare in, 783
Talbot and, 833
uniforms in, 886–887
war economy in, 919
War of Breton Succession and, 921
weapons and tactics in, 34, 134, 202, 228, 442, 703, 871
White Company and, 937
Hungarian Army, **425**
Hungary, **425–426**
Hung Taiji (d.1643), **426**, 569
Hunyadi, János (c.1407–1456), 425, **426**, 513, 616, 814, 894
Hurenweibel, **426–427**, 711
Hurons, 439, 440, 441
Hus, Jan (1369–1415), 173, 213, 235, **427**, 428, 429, 515, 551, 630, 785
hussars, 26, 78, 135, **427–428**, 513, 553, 690, 692, 886, 887–888, 920
Hussites, 71, 189, 298, 354, 479, 498, 577, 702, 831, 844, 901–902
Hussite Wars (1419–1478), 9, 47, 128, 173, 190, 213, 214, 235, 345, 427, **428–430**, 515, 785, 890–891, 901, 929

Ibiza, 725
ichcahuipilli, **431**
iconoclasm, 15, 244, 318, 417, **431**, 957
Ife, 951
Ifriqiya, **431–432**, 463, 496, 873, 876
Ijebu, 951
Ikkō-ikki, **432**, 874

Île de Ré, Siege of (1627), 330, **432**
Ile d'Olèron, 523
Il-Khans, 243, **432**, 456–457
imam, **432**, 775
Imperial Army (of the Holy Roman Empire), **432–433**, 552, 660, 906
Imperial Circles, 911
Imperial Diet, 177, 181, 191, 290, 407, **433–434**, 652, 703, 731, 852, 932
Imperial Tribunal, 407
impressment, 158, 215, 264, **434**
Inca Empire, 171, 221, 403, 415, **434–436**, 542, 684, 796
incastellamento, **436**
incendiaries, **436**
indentured laborers, 870
indentures for war, 262–263, **436**, 912
Index Librorum Prohibitorium, **436–437**, 480
India, 10, **437–438**, 462, 695. See also Hinduism; Mughal Empire
Indian (subcontinental) armies, **438**
Indian Wars (Mexico, Central and South America), **438**
Indian Wars (North America), 221, 332, **438–441**, 788
indulgences, 128, **441**, 550
inermis, **441**
infantry, **441–444**, 540, 780, 802, 824
Inner Asia, **444**
Innocent III (1198–1216), 9, **445**, 726
Innocent VII (1432–1492), 354
Innocent X (1574–1655), 934
Inquisition (1478–1834), 9, 18, 81, 122, 129, 182, 191, 234, 243, 278, 279, 280–281, 295, 297, 340, **445–448**, 480, 484, 508, 551, 631, 646, 673, 695, 708, 796, 809, 849, 916, 940
Institutes of the Christian Religion (Calvin), 109, 706
intelligence, **448**
interior lines (of operations), **448**
Inverlochy, Battle of (1645), **448**
Investiture, 405, 406, 664
Invincible Armada (1588), 2, 105, 222, 225, 227, 248, 256, 261, 295, 296, 327, 331, 357, 363, 380, 416, 418, **448–456**, 487, 529, 579, 647, 666, 675, 720, 759, 797, 953, 954
invincible generalissimo, **456**
Iran, **456–458**, 671
Iraq, **458**
Ireland, **458–460**
Ireton, Henry (1611–1651), 199, **460–461**, 532, 627
iron rocks, 793
Ironsides, 97, 199, 233, 266, **461**
Iroquois Confederacy, 387, 439, 440, **461**
Isabella I (1451–1504), **461**
ishan, **461**
Ishida Mitsunari, 769
Iskandar Muda (d.1636), 2
Islam, 59, 242, 458, **461–465**, 495, 613, 645, 700, 795, 814, 875
  explosion of, 469
  Ismaili, 410, 432, 465, 775–776
  shi'ia, 106, 107, 108, 456, 562, 605, 655
  sunni, 106, 108, 432, 456, 605
Ismaili, 410, 432, **465**, 775–776
Ismail I (1486–1524), 457, 715
Italian armies, **465**
Italian Renaissance, 129, 166, 275–276, 354, 369, 400, 448, **466–467**, 470–471, 492, 536, 587, 591, 664, 703, 709, 733, 801, 895, 914
Italian traces, **467**
Italian Wars (1494–1559), 7, 31, 38, 47, 83, 123, **467–469**, 664, 667, 672, 708, 723, 733, 760, 771, 774, 800, 815, 818, 823–824, 832, 834, 893, 895, 913, 914, 956
  antagonists of, 573
  beginning of, 289, 303, 309, 316, 471, 525, 540
  Condé, Louis de Bourbon and, 165
  end of, 127, 162, 243, 631
  Ferdinand I and, 141
  Francis I and, 310–311, 517, 608
  German Peasant War and, 345
  Habsburgs and, 379, 424, 466
  Henri II and, 392
  Loyola and, 486
  martial skills in, 400, 467–469
  mercenaries in, 200, 640
  plague and, 221
  royal debt and, 317
  temporary halt in, 641
Italic League (1454–1494), **469**, 540
Italy, **469–471**
itqa, **471**, 728, 832
Itzcoatl (d.1440), 52
Ivan III (1440–1505), 44, **471–472**, 774, 813, 914
  Hanse trade and, 385–386
  Muscovite assault by, 539
  reign of, 620
  servitor cavalry established by, 619

Ivan IV (1530–1584), 44, 271, **472**, 537–539, 649, 774, 835, 883, 914
appanage system and, 620
Battle of Ermes and, 271
death of, 349
"False Dimitri" and, 350
First Northern War and, 537
Livonian Order and, 539
Muscovite invasion and, 538
Sack of Dorpat (1558) by, 225
Ivry-la-Bataille, Battle of (1590), 31, 131, 327, 395, **472–473**, 586

jack, **475**
Jacob's staff, 202, **475**
Jacquerie (1358), 92, 148, 422, **475–476**
"Jacques Bonhomme," 475, 498
Jaen, 727
Jagatai Mongols, 861
Jagiello, Wladyslaw II (1351–1434), 476
Jagiello dynasty, 118, **476**, 537, 687, 688, 712
Jagiellon, Anna (1523–1596), 67, 476
jaguar knight, **476**
jamber, **476**
Jamestown, 440
James I, of Aragon (1208–1276), 727
James I and VI (1566–1625), 20, 94, 95, 261, **476–477**, 579, 763, 780, 884
exact militia and, 274
Friedrich V and, 330–331
and Mary Stuart, 257
military aid and, 330
Raleigh and, 720, 748
Thirty Years' War and, 850
James II (1427–1460), 34
James IV (1488–1513), 300, 397, 763
Jamestown, **477**
James V, King of Scotland, 578
Jand, Battle of (1240), **477**
Janissary Corps, 1, 2, 8, 17, 20, 58, 71, 72, 133, 138, 179, 219, 271, 281, 342, 348, 352, 357, 368, 457, **477–479**, 478, 497, 500, 512, 526, 533, 567, 575, 576, 577, 595, 602, 616, 618, 651, 653, 654, 657, 722, 723, 756, 769, 773, 787, 791, 814, 846, 860, 864, 872, 886, 894, 898, 900, 902, 915, 929, 944, 950
Jankov, Battle of (1645), 290, **480**, 856, 865
Jansen, Cornelis (1585–1638), 480
Jansenism, 219, **480**, 890
Japan, **480–483**
Japanese swords, 828
Jargeau, Battle of (1429), **483**
Jarnac, Battle of (1569), 162, 165, 322, 392, 417, **483**, 602–603
Java, **483**
Javanese guns, 827
Jean II (The Good) (1319–1364), 82, 92, 420, 687, 721
Jeanne d'Arc (1412–1431), 99, 154, 307, 309, 421–422, **484–486**, 596, 748, 764, 833, 897
Jebel Musa, 348, 432
Jemmingen, Battle of (1568), 7, 244, **486**, 938–939
jeniçeri Ocak, **486**
Jenne, 22, 564, 612
Jerusalem, 243, **486**
Jesuits, 121, 129, 189, 191, 257, 274, 286, 439, 481, **486–488**, 510, 587, 625, 695, 708, 724, 736, 904
Jews, 18, 80, 277–280, 297, 445–447, 464, **488**
Jidai, 736
jihad, 73, 108, 119, 204, 408–409, 462, 471, **488**, 572, 725, 875, 878
Jilin, 568
Jin Empire (1234), 568, 604
jinetes, 351, **488**, 498, 662
jizya, 5, **488**, 953
João III (1502–1557), 279
João IV (1603–1666), 695
Jodo Shinshu Buddhism, 874
Johann Georg (1611–1656), 696, 849–850, 850–851, 852
Johannitterorden, **489**, 652
Johann of Nassau, 42–43
John Company, **489**
John the Good (Burgundy), 366
John XXIII (1370–1419), 354
Joinville, Treaty of (1584), 130, 326, **489**
jōkaku, 304, **489**, 772
jōkamachi (castle towns), 125, 304, 481, **489**, 758, 772
Jonson, Ben, 365
Juan I, of Aviz (1358–1433), 12, 50, 692
Juan II (1455–1495), 115
Juan of Austria, **489**
Judaism, 464
Jülich-Kleve, Crisis over (1609–1614), 396, 408, 476–477, **489–490**, 711
Julius II (1443–1513), 111, 191
Julius III (r.1549–1555), 189, 391, **490**
junk, 332, 337, **490–491**, 755, 779, 878
Junkers, **491**
Junta Grande de Reformación, 646
jupon, **491**
Jürchen, **491**
jus ad bellum, **491**, 492, 493
jus armorum, **491**

jus emigrandi, **491**
jus in bello, 159, **491–492**, 493, 700
jus pacis et belli, **492**, 933
jus territorii et superioritas, 932–933
justification by faith, **492**, 550, 704
just war tradition, 153, 204, 358, 360, 414, 466, **492–494**, 559, 561, 715, 747, 751, 783

Kabul, 6, 57
kabuto, **495**
Kaduna, 387
kaffir, 462, **495**
kaim mekam, **495**
Kaiping, 560
Kakure Kirishitan, 482, **495**
kale, 305, **495**
Kalimantan, 563
Kallo, Battle of (1638), **495**
Kalmar, Union of, **495**
Kalmar War (1611–1613), 156, 371, 374, **496**, 498, 502, 659, 785, 819
Kamakura shogunate (1185–1333), 480, 781
kamikaze, 383–384, **496**
Kandahar, 2, 458
Kandurcha, Battle of (1391), **496**
Kanem, 432, **496**
Kangxi Emperor (1654–1722), 557
Kano, 387
Kant, Immanuel, 359
Kapikulu, **496**
Kapikulu Askerleri, 281, 477, **496–497**, 561, 653, 768, 769, 786, 787, 846
Kappel, Battle of (1531), **497**, 824, 957
Kapudan-i Derya, **497**
kapu kulu, **497**
karacena, **497**, 760
Karakhanids, 877
Karamanian Turks, 479
Karl IX (1550–1611), 155, **497–498**, 785, 819, 894
  death of, 371, 496, 659
  Kirkholm and, 501
Karl X (1622–1660), 944
Karl XII (1682–1718), 811
karma, 403
Karrenbüchsen, **498**
karr-wa-farr, **498**
Karsthans, **498**
Katsina, 387
Katzbalger, **498**, 520
Kazan, 179, 472, **498**, 722, 813
Kazan, Conquest of (1552), **498**
keel-haul, **498**
keep, 125, 257, **498**, 498–499, 614, 774
keep-and-bailey, **498–499**, 866
Kelso, 78
kenshin, **499**, 758
Kephissos, Battle of (1311), 126, 194, **499**
Keresztes, Battle of (1596), **499**
kerne, **499**, 928
kettle-hat, **499**, 563
Khair al-Din, 11
Khalji dynasty, 215, 719
Khanates, 835
Khanua, Battle of (1527), **499**
Khanwa, Battle of (1527), 57, 438, **499–500**, 615, 721
Khmelnitsky Uprising (1648–1654), 884, 950
Khotyn, Battle of (1621), 155, 479, **500**
Khudabanda, Muhammad (1578–1587), 457
kieko, **500**
Kiev, 651, 883
Kievan Rus, **500**
Kildare Rebellion (1534–1535), 459, 499, **500–501**, 633, 646
Kilsyth, Battle of (1645), 195, 267, **501**, 608
Kilwa, 3
"King's Two Bodies," **501**
Kinsale, Battle of (1601), **501**, 614
Kipchak Turks, 877
Kirishitan, 482, **501**, 708, 868
Kirishitan Shumon Aratame Yaku (1637–1638), 482, **501**
Kirkholm, Battle of (1605), 155, 374, **501**
Kirk o'Field, 578
Kiteve, 793
Kiyu, Treaty of (1609), 863
kizilbash, **501**
Klozbüchse, **501**
Klushino, Battle of (1610), **502**
Knabenschaften, **502**, 519
Knäred, Peace of (1613), 496, **502**
Knechte, **502**, 519, 520
knight, 66, 133, 153, 193, 208, 218, 271, 272, 294, 308, 389, 390, 491, **502–504**, 518, 589, 600, 626, 659, 661, 662, 685, 700, 725, 729, 744, 751, 757, 762, 777, 780, 810, 816, 817, 823, 827, 842, 886, 910, 923–924
knight bachelor, 503
knight banneret, 503
knighthood, **504**, 562, 918
knight marshal, **504**, 711
Knights Hospitaller, **504**
Knights in the Service of God in Prussia, **504**, 597, 843
Knights of Alcántara, 11, **504**
Knights of Aviz, **504**
Knights of Calatrava, **504–505**, 506, 726
Knights of Christ, 269–270, **505**, 833
Knights of Malta, **506**
Knights of Our Lady of Montesa, **506**
Knights of Our Lady of Montjoie, **506**

Knights of San Julián de Pereiro, **506**
Knights of Santa Maria, **506**, 597, 627
Knights of Santiago, 13, **506**, 726, 955
Knights of Santo Stefano, **506**
Knights of St. George, **506**
Knights of St. James of the Sword, **507**
Knights of St. John of the Hospital, **507**
Knights of St. Lazarus, **507**
Knights of St. Thomas Acon, **507**
Knights of the Dove, 166
Knights of the Sword, **507**
Knights of Trufac, **507**
Knights Templar, 42, 44, 209, 235, 284, 414, 505, 506, **507–509**, 597, 757, 843
Knights' War, **509**
Knipawa, 923
knocking, **509**
Knocknanuss, Battle of (1647), **509**
Knollen, **509**
knot, **509**
Knox, John (c.1513–1572), 14, 110, **509–510**, 578, 763, 945
Knudabanda, Muhammad (1578–1587), 14
Kokenhausen, 640
Komaki-Negakutte, Battle of (1584), **510**
Konfessionalisierung, **510**
Kongo, Kingdom of, **510**, 634, 694, 736
Königsberg, 538, 923
Königshofen, Battle of (1525), **510**
Konitz, **510**
köprücu, 258, **510**
Korea, **510–512**, 868, 908
Koryo dynasty (918–1392), 511
Kosovo, Battle of (1389), 71, **512–513**, 575, 618, 634, 654, 787
Kosovo Polje, Battle of (1448), 173, 425, 426, 428, **513**, 618
Kosynsky, Krystof, 884
kote, **513**
Koxinga (Zheng Chengong, 1624–1662), 832
Krak des Chevaliers, 414, 639
Kreise, **513**
Kreisoberst, **513**
Kremlin, 28, **513**
Krevo, Union of (1385), **513**
Kriegskasse, 131, **513**
Kringen, Battle of (1612), **513**
kubi jikken, **513**
Kublai Khan (1214–1294), 100, 382–383, 383, **513**, 604, 605
kul, **514**, 770, 772
kulah, **514**
Kulikovo, Battle of (1380), **514**
kumade, **514**, 758
Kur'aci, **514**
Kurds, **514**
Kurfürsten, 214, 406, **514–515**, 731, 848, 933
kurofune, **515**
Küstrin, 852
Kutná Hora, Battle of (1422), 429, **515**, 629, 702, 890, 955
Kyoto, 644
Kyushu, 383

La Bicocca, Battle of (1522), 311, **517**, 667, 672
The Labyrinth (Zwingli), 956
La Charité, 684
La Forbie, Battle of (1244), **517**
lağimci, 58, **517**
Lajos (Louis) II, 602, 814
Lake Band, 346
Lake Boyang, Battle of (1363), 149, **517**
Lake Texcoco, 838–840
Lambert, John, 230
lamellar armor, 24–25, **518**
Lanark, 903
Lancaster, House of, 260, 926
lance (1), 31, 349, 352, **518**, 596, 771, 777, 780
lance (2), 99, **518**
lance (3), 100, 143, 298, 315–316, **518–519**, 685, 887
lance-rest, **519**
lanceri, **519**
lancers, 208, 352, **519**, 811
Landesabwehr, **519**
Landesaufgebot, 433, **519**
Landgrave of Hesse, 850
Landmeister, 865
Land of the Four Quarters, 434
Landsdown Hill, Battle of (1643), **519**
Landsknechte, 32, 76, 223, 224, 227, 270, 283, 285, 316, 319, 345, 347, 426, 433, 443, 498, 513, **519–521**, 573, 574, 575, 577, 585, 591–592, 603, 609, 625, 640, 643, 672, 679, 685, 711, 731, 745, 750, 762, 793, 817, 818, 824, 827, 868, 887, 898, 901, 944
Landstrum, **521**, 821
Landwehr, **521**, 821
Landwere, **521**
Langport, Battle of (1645), **521**
Langside, Battle of (1568), **521**
Languedoc, 9
"Lanowa" infantry, **521**
Lansdowne, Battle of (1643), **521**
lansquenets, **521**
Lanze, **521**
lanze spezzate, **521**
La Plata estuary, 276

La Rochelle, 95, 139, 235, 238, 261, 392, 394, 417, 424, 432, **521–522**, 549, 564, 682, 684, 687, 739, 744, 764, 795, 850
  Peace of (1573), 324
Las Casas, Bartolomé de (1484–1566), 258
Las Navas de Tolosa, Battle of (1212), 119, 505, **522**, 726, 727
last, **522**
lateen sails, 275, **522**, 629, 755
Lateran Councils
  First (1123), 234
  Second (1139), 200
  Third (1179), 234
  Fourth (1215), 234
  Fifth (1512–1517), 191, 235
launciers, **522**
Laupen, Battle of (1339), 133, 154, 194, 442, **522–523**, 700, 823, 887
Laws of Olèron, **523**, 580
laws of war, **523**, 562, 596
Lazar I, execution of, 512
league, **523**
League of Cambrai, 5, 468, 895
League of Cognac, 141
League of Heilbronn, 76, 930
League of Lyon, 894
League of Public Weal, **523–524**, 548
"leather guns," 37, 372, **524**
Lech, Battle of (1632), **524**
legalism, 170–171
legharnesses, **524**
Lehnsaufgebot, 433, **524**
Leicester, Earl of (c.1530–1588), 248, 271–272, **524**, 536, 637, 717, 945, 956
Leiden, Siege of (1574), 245, **524–525**, 767, 939, 956
Leipheim, Battle of (1525), **525**
Leipzig, 852
Leipziger Bund (1631), 90, 302, 344, **525**, 561
Le Morte d'Arthur (Mallory), 650
Lens, Battle of (1648), 166, **525**, 856, 933
Leo IX (1002–1054), 389, 638
Léon, 11, 119, 724, 725
Leonardo da Vinci (1452–1519), 42, **525–526**
Leopold I, Duke (1290–1336), 610
Leopold III, Duke (1351–1386), 771
Leopold Wilhelm, Archduke of Austria (1614–1662), 92, 525
Leo X (1475–1521), 397–398, 550
Lepanto, Battle of (1499), **526**
Lepanto, Battle of (1571), 64, 72, 223, 224, 337, 339, **526–529**, 656, 675, 759, 770, 876, 909, 915, 954, 956
Lerma, Duke of (1553–1625), 250, 281, **529–530**, 648, 676
Les Espagnols sur Mer, Battle of (1350), **530**
Leslie, Alexander (c.1580–1661), 77, 78, **530**, 532, 608
Leslie, David (1601–1682), 21, 140, 195, 230, 267, 268, **530**, 532, 576, 577, 678, 937
Leslie, Walter (1606–1667), **530**, 750, 907
Le Tellier, François, 530
Le Tellier, Michel (1603–1685), **530–531**, 560, 887
Le Tréport, 423
letters of marque, 265, 477, **531**, 701, 748, 766, 767, 799, 939
letters of reprisal, **531–532**
lettres de retenue, **532**
Letzinen, 19, **532**, 625, 917
Levant, 205
Levellers, 199, 268, 295, **532**, 944
Leven, Earl of (c.1580–1661), 77, 78, 195, 266, 530, **532**, 576, 608, 812, 937
levend/levendat, **532–533**
Leviathan (Hobbes), 183
Lewes, Battle of (1264), 259, **533**
Liaoning, 568
Liegnitz, Battle of (1241), **533**, 604, 844
lieutenant, **533**
Lieutenant-General (Germany), **533**
Lieutenant-général du royaume ("of the kingdom"), **533**
Liga, 131, **533**
light cavalry, 135, 215, 226, 343, 389, 441–442, 519, **533**, 619, 690, 724, 758, 766, 798, 811, 817, 836
limacon, **533**
Limburg, 100
Limerick, siege of, 461
Lincoln, 568
line abreast, 338–339, **533**
line ahead, 338, **534**, 777
line ahead and astern, 527, **534**
line astern, 338, 452, **534**, 777
line of battle, **534**
Line of Demarcation (1493), 88, 112, 270, 276, 289, **534–535**, 678, 693, 802, 953
line of march, **535**
line of metal, **535**
lines of circumvallation, **535**
lines of communication, **535**
lines of contravallation, **535**
lines of investment, **535**
lines of operations, **535**
lines of supply, 376, **535–536**

Linköping, Battle of (1598), **536**, 785
linstock, **536**, 716, 791
Linz, 719
Lipany, Battle of (1434), **536**
Lipsius, Justus (1547–1606), 42, **536**, 582, 633
Lisowczyks, **537**, 888
Lisowski, Aleksander (d.1617), 537
Lithuania, Grand Duchy of, **537–538**, 688, 883
Living off the land, **538**
Livonia, **538**, 688
Livonian Order, 207, 225, 271, 472, 537, 538, **539**, 597, 620, 640, 711, 843, 845
Livonian War (1558–1583), **539**
Li Zicheng (1606–1645), 152
Lobsters, 266, **539**
lochaber axe, **539**
Locke, John (1632–1704), 359
Locks (on firearms), **539**
locumentems, **539**
Lodewijk, Willem (1560–1620), **539**, 583, 633, 900
lodgement, **539**
Lodi, Ibrahim (d.1526), 663
Lodi, Peace of (1454), 129, 466, 467, 470, **540**, 895
Lodi dynasty, 215
log-barrel wheel lock musket, 478
logistics, 301, 306, **540–545**, 569, 623, 732, 764, 800, 803
Loja, Battle of (1486), **545**
Lollardism, 354, 545
Lollard Knights, **545**
Lollards, **545**
lombarda, **545**
London, Treaty of (1641), 264
longboat, **546**
longbow, 196, 197, 419, **546–547**, 621, 639, 680, 764, 766, 828–829, 919
Long Parliament, 199
longship, 161, 336, **547**, 556
Long War (1593–1606), **547**
Lord High Admiral, **547**, 897
Lordship, **548**
Lorraine, **548**
Lorraine, Charles, Cardinal of (1524–1574), 237, 311, 362, **548**, 586
Lorraine, Charles, duc de Mayenne (1554–1611), **548**
Lose-coat Field, Battle of (1470), **548**, 928
Lostwithiel, Battle of (1644), **548**
"Lotus Sutra," 634
Loudon Hill, Battle of (1307), **548**
Louis de Bourbon, **548**
Louis of Nassau (1538–1574), 7, 244, **548**, 609, 938
  declaration of war on Spain by, 323
  Dutch army and, 322, 486
Louis IV (921–954), 405
Louis VII (1120–1180), 205
Louis VIII (1187–1226), 9
Louis IX (1226–1270), 206, 235
  Crusader army under, 566
  France under, 309
Louis XI (1423–1483), 100, **548–549**, 591, 823
  hostility of, 99
  imprisonment of, 143
  League of Public Weal and, 524
  size of reserve of army, 308
Louis XII (1462–1515), 5, 191, 300, **549**
  alliances of, 111
  France victorious under, 309
  Italian Wars and, 468
  Leonardo da Vinci and, 526
Louis XIII (1601–1643), 139, 238, **549–550**, 589
  appeal of, for protection, 127
  Edict of Alès (1629) and, 235
  fall of La Rochelle and, 522, 744
  Garigliano River and, 341
  German brigade and, 76
  Henri II Condé and, 165
  Huguenots and, 140, 310
  Le Tellier and, 531
  marriage of, 329, 677
  policies of, 118
  politiques and, 691
  Richelieu and, 738, 740, 741, 742, 852
  succession of, 396
  surety towns and, 684
  Treaty of Regensburg and, 730
Louis XIV, 560, 877
  Edict of Nantes and, 396
  reign of, 543–544
  wars of, 531
Loyola, Ignatius, 486–487
Luanda, 252, 634, 896
Lübeck, Peace of (1629), 157, **550**, 851
Lublin, Union of (1569), **550**
Lucayas, 59
Ludford Bridge, Battle of (1459), **550**, 926
Ludovico, 525
Luther, Martin (1483–1546), 15, 47, 109–110, 142, 234, 235, 345, 397, 427, 431, 509, **550–552**, 585, 602, 699, 703, 705–706, 845, 956
Lutheranism, 16, 110, 111, 216, 447, **552**, 586, 732, 818, 847, 849
Lutter-am-Barrenberg, Battle of (1626), 157, **552**, 851, 859, 905
Lützen, Battle of (1632), 13, 61, 76, 97, 288, 376–377,

404, 532, **552–556**, 586, 607, 637, 660, 665, 678, 740, 819, 853, 906
lymphad, 336, **556**
Lyon, League of (1623), **556**
Lyon, Treaty of (1601), 395, **556**, 800

Maastricht, Siege of (1579), 247, 391, **557**, 666
Maastricht, Siege of (1632), **557**
Macao, **557**
mace, **557–558**, 596, 611
Macedonia, 750
Macedonian phalanx, 441
Machiavelli, Niccolò di Bernardo (1469–1527), 42, 167, 467, 471, 492, 526, 536, **558–560**, 582, 821
machicolation, 65, 125, 295, **560**
Madeira (1425), 505
Madrid, Treaty of (1526), **560**
madu, **560**, 777
magazines, 273, 530, **560–561**, 915
Magdeburg, Sack of (1631), 71, 132, 344, 375, 525, **561–562**, 660, 665, 732, 852, 859, 930
Magellan, Ferdinand (c.1480–1521), 276, 534, 678
Maghreb, 77, 107, **562**, 572
maghribis, **562**
Maginot Line, 356
magnetic compass, 44
magnus equus, **562**, 919
Maguire, Hugh, 635
Magyars, 917
Mahal, Mumtaz (d.1631), 615
Maharashtra, 572
mahdi, 464, **562**
mail, 24, 101, 145, 341, 386, **562–563**, 614, 685, 760, 777, 787, 824, 827
mail-tippet, **563**
Maimonides (1135–1204), 492
main-gauche, **563**
main mast, 581
mainsail, 755
maintop, 581
Mainz, 852
maître de camp, **563**
Majapahit, **563**
Majorca (1229), 20, 725, 727
make sail, **563**
Malacca, 10, 252, **563**, 896
Málaga, Siege of (1487), **563**
Malaya, **563**, 727
Malays, 490–491
malcontents, 236, 325
Malcontents (Flanders), **563**
Malcontents (France), **564**
maleficia trials, 940
Mali Empire, 341, **564**, 590, 613, 736, 794, 875, 918
Malik Shah (r.1072–1092), 770
Malinche, La (c.1505–1529), **564–565**
Malle, Louis de (d.1384), 100
Mallory, Thomas (c.1405–1471), 650
Malta, 82, 205, **565**, 638
Mamlūks, 10, 20, 44, 107, 132, 209, 222, 242–243, 293, 342, 362, 368, 409, 432, 437, 456, 463, 471, **565–568**, 576, 605, 655, 694, 717, 719, 725, 728, 737, 770, 790–791, 832, 861, 872, 877, 886
Manchester, Earl of (1602–1671), 199, **568**, 576, 633, 939
Manchuria, **568**, 760, 868
Manchus, 62, 63, 356, 364, 444, 482, 568, **568–569**, 623, 729, 735–736, 760, 908
Mandanda, 793
mandate of heaven, **569**
mandrel, **569**
maneuvers, **569**
mangonel, **569**
manjaniq maghribis, 569
Mannschaftsrodel, **569**, 821
man-of-war, 331, 336, 370, **569–570**, 755
mansabdari, 297, **570**, 719
Mansfeld, Count Ernst Graf von (1580–1626), 76, 95, 131, 157–158, 218, 298, 300, 404, 477, **570**, 599, 753, 849, 850–851, 859, 905, 907, 937, 938, 939
al-Mansur, Mawlai Ahmad, 612
manteletes, **570–571**, 839
Mantuan Succession, War of, 251
Manyika, 793
Manzikert, Battle of (1071), 102, **571**, 770
maps, **571**, 909
marabout, 74, 332, **572**, 612
Marakesh, 612
Maratha cavalry, 667
Marathas, 27, **572**, 629, 695, 914
Marburg (1529), 957
March, 292, 360, 405, 438, **572**
Marchers, 459
marcher state, 426
March of the Franks, 409
Marciano, Battle of (1553), 7
Marco Polo (c.1254–1354), 275
maréchal de camp, **572**
maréchal de logis, **572**, 716
Mared, Battle of (1564), **572**, 637
Mare Liberum, 314, 358
Margaret of Denmark and Norway (1353–1412), 889
Margaret of Parma (1522–1586), 244, **572–573**, 666
Margate, Battle of (1387), **573**

Marienburg (Malbork), Fortress of, **573**, 592, 623, 712, 844, 922, 923
Marignano, Battle of (1515), 283, 309, 311, 367, 443, 520, **573–575**, 640–641, 774, 824, 895, 956
Marind dynasty, 11, 562, **575**, 833
marines, **575**
Maritza River, Battle of (1371), 513, **575–576**, 618, 654, 787
Marj Dabiq, Battle of (1516), 567, **576**, 655, 770
maroons, **576**
Marrakesh, 22
marshal, **576**
Marston Moor, Battle of (1644), 199, 267, 284, 460, 530, 568, **576–577**
Martel, Charles (c.688–741), 409, 724
martial music, **577**
Martin, Don, 564
martinet, **577**
Martinic, Jaroslav, 214
Martinique, **577**
Martin V (1368–1431), 354, 429
Martolos, **577**
Mary I (of England, 1516–1558), **578**
Mary of Burgundy, 47, 141, 379
Mary of Guise, 318, 578
Mary of Habsburg (Austria, 1505–1588), 630–631
maryol taifesi, **578**
Mary Stuart, Queen of Scots (1542–1587), **578–579**, 763
  abdication of, 476
  Eighty Years' War and, 255
  English exile of, 321–322
  execution of, 261, 908
  Francis II marriage to, 311, 318, 362, 588
  Guise's plot involving, 361
  James I as son of, 257
  John Knox and, 510
  Philip II and, 675
  plot to assassinate Elizabeth I, 449
  William Cecil and, 136
Mary Tudor (1516–1558), 448, **579–580**
  ascension of, 509
  death of, 524, 578
  "King's Two Bodies" and, 501
  marriage of, to Philip II of Spain, 105, 255, 260–261, 353, 675, 796, 944
  navy under, 748
  reign of, 579–580, 944–945
  Walsingham and, 908
  William Cecil and, 136
  Wyatt's Rebellion and, 254
Masaniello (c.1620–1647), **580**, 627
masnada, **580**
masse, **580**
masse d'armes, **580**
Massenya, 59
mass infantry, 733
master, **580**
master carpenter, 116, **580**
master gunner, 363, **581**
master's mate, **581**
masts, **581**, 742
Mataram, 483
match, **581**
matchcord, **581**
matchlock, 29, 300, 373, **581–582**, 773, 789, 791, 936
mate, **582**
Matthias (1458–1490), 425, 427, **582**
Matthias (1557–1619), 286, 380, 489, **582**
mattross, **582**
Maurice of Nassau, **582**
Maurits of Nassau (1567–1625), 8, 24, 37, 42, 57–58, 93, 161, 164, 229, 230–231, 248–249, 330–331, 358, 371, 391, 444, 536, **582–585**, 595, 596, 622, 631, 633, 635, 646, 652, 691, 717, 730, 734, 803, 850, 865, 876, 879, 887, 900, 901, 937, 956
Maximilian I (1459–1519), 5, 313, **585**, 817
  alliances of, 111
  death of, 141
  Generalfeldobrist and, 343
  Landsknechte companies and, 433
  marriage to Mary of Burgundy, 47, 379
  military reforms and, 407
Maximilian I, of Bavaria (1573–1651), **585–586**, 696, 730, 853, 859
  banning of wheel lock, 936
  Counter-Reformation and, 937
  Imperial Army and, 906
  setting up of supply depots by, 560
  Swabian War (1499) and, 224
  Treaty of Munich and, 131
  Wallenstein and, 553
  at Zusmarshausen, 956
Maximilian II (1527–1576), 8, 48, 191, 407, **586**, 749
  Council of Trent and, 286
  crypto-Protestant sympathies of, 142
Mayenne, duc de (1554–1611), 30–31, 312, 395, 472, 533, **586–587**, 746
Mazarin, Jules (1602–1661), **587**
Mecca, 462
Mechlen, 8, 379
Mecklenberg, Albert of, 889
Mecklenburg, Duchy of, 287, **587**
media culebrina, **587**
media falconeta, **587**

media sacre, **587**
Medici, **587**
Medici, Catherine de (1519–1589), 14, 17, 162, 165, 236, 239, 240, 318, 361, 362, 392, 394, 578, **588**, 672, 806, 807
Medici, Marie de (1573–1642), 329, 395, 396, **589**, 738
Medina, 461–462
Medina Sidonia, duque de (1550–1615), 450–451, 452, 455–456, **589**
Mediterranean system (of war at sea), **589**, 909
medium cavalry, 519
Mehemet I, **589**
Mehemet II, **589**
Meiji Restoration, 781
Melegnano, Battle of (1515), **589**
Melilla, **589**
Melo, Francisco di (1608–1666), **589**, 743
Meloria, Battle of (1284), 343, **589**
men-at-arms, 63, 66, 133, 193, 241, 292, 343, 384–385, 389, 442, **589–590**, 598, 662, 692, 744, 764, 766, 773, 792, 826, 827, 886, 893, 910, 919, 920, 926
mendum, **590**, 919
Menendez, Pedro de, 304
men-of-war, 355
menzil-hane supply system, 540, 561, **590**, 836
Mercator, Gerard (1512–1594), 571
mercenaries, 19, 66, 70, **590–593**, 591–592, 623, 626, 689, 700, 729, 763–764, 769, 771, 803, 805, 819, 821, 911, 956
Mercy, Franz von (1590–1645), 314, **593**, 638, 876, 879, 931
Méré, Poltrot de (1537–1563), 362
Mergentheim, Battle of (1645), 593, **593**, 856, 876
merlon, 125, 198, 306, **593**
Mesoamericans, 731
Mesopotamia, **593**
Mestre, 11, 504, **594**, 670
mestres de camp, 563, **594**
Methven, Battle of (1306), **594**
Metz, Fortress of, **594**
Mewe, Battle of (1626), **594**
Mexica, 51–52
Mexico, **594**
Mexico City, 634
Mezókeresztes, Battle of (1596), **594**
Michael VIII Palaeologus (1261–1282), 925
midshipman, **594**
Mikata ga Hara, Battle of (1572), **594**, 862
Milan, **594**, 774, 895
Milan, Viscount of, 662
miles, **594**
Milford Haven (1485), 928
Militargrenze (*vojna krajina*), 47, 140, 286, 360, 410, 426, 457, **594–595**, 629, 656, 657, 666, 788, 846, 900, 915, 955
military colonies, **595**
military discipline, 222, 371, 520, 536, 558, 583, **595–596**, 711, 789
military flail, **596**
military fork, **596**
military labor, **596**
military medicine, **596**
Military Orders, 11, 13, 42, 154, 163, 170, 203, 205–206, 308, 332, 400, 487, 488, 502, 504, 505, 506, 507, 537, 538, 539, 594, **597–598**, 626, 650, 670, 699, 702, 726, 773, 798, 842, 873
military revolutions, 372, **598**
military slavery, **598**
milites, 590, **598**
militia, **598**, 670, 755–756, 762, 788, 798, 817, 822, 870
militia Sancti Petri, **598**, 664
milling, **598**
Milton, John (1608–1674), 365
Minamotto clan, 780–781
Mindaugus (c.1219–1263), 844
Minden, 933
Ming Army, 274, 444, **598–599**, 605–606, 623, 805, 868
Ming dynasty (1368–1644), 304, 355–356, 364, 411–412, 517, 560, 568, 598, **599**, 604, 735–736, 779, 903, 911–912, 918
Mingolsheim, Battle of (1622), **599**, 849, 859, 938
mining, 59, **599–600**, 614, 759, 782–783, 793
minion (1), 208, **600**
minion (2), 215, **600**, 756
Minsk (1505), 835
miquelet, **600**
misericord, **600**
missile weapons, **600**
Missio Hollandica, 480, **600**
missionaries, **600**
mita, 258
mitaille, **600**
mitrailleuses, **600**
Mixtecs, 51
mizzen, 581, **600**
mizzentop, 581
moat, **600**
mobility, **600**
Moctezuma II (c.1470–1520), 52, 55, 183, 184–185, 564, **601**, 839
Mogul Empire, **601**
Mohács, Battle of (1526), **602**, 815, 898

Mohawks, 387, 439, 440
Mohi, Battle of (1242), **602**
Mohicans, 440
Moldavia, 211, 750
Moldova, **602**, 785, 899
monarchia universalis, 250, 381, **602**, 797
Moncontour, Battle of (1569), 165, 322, 392, **602–603**
Mongols, 20, 23, 59, 63, 100, 102, 132, 149, 206, 304, 383, 425, 444, 458, 463, 480, 483, 490, 510–511, 599, **603–606**, 619, 634, 666, 750, 779, 835, 875–876, 891, 908, 917
Monk, George (1608–1670), 43, 230, 269, **606–607**
Monophysite (Coptic) Ethiopian Church, 273, 274
Mons-en-Pévèle, Battle of (1304), 194, 299, 442, **607**
Monsieur, Peace of (1576), 236, **607**
Montauban, 684
Montecuccoli, Raimundo (1609–1680), **607**, 956
Monte-Frago, 597
Montesa, 597
Montezuma II, **607**
Montfort, John, **607**
Montfort, Simon de (d.1218), 9, **607**
Montiel, Battle of (1369), **607**
Montihéry, Battle of (1465), 524, **607**
Montijo, Battle of (1644), **607**, 695
Montjoie, Knights of, **607**
Montmorency, Anne, duc de (1493–1567), 162, 227–228, 318, 362, 392, 469, **608**, 755–756, 873
Montmorency, Henri, duc de (1595–1632), 118
Montpellier, Peace of (1622), 329, **608**
Montrose, Marquis of (1612–1650), 11, 47, 115, 195, 267, 501, 530, 532, **608**, 677–678, 862
Monzón, Treaty of (1626), 382, **608–609**, 740
Mookerheyde, Battle of (1574), 245, 548, **609**, 956
Moors, 2, 280–281, 350–351, 445–447, **609**
Morat, Battle of (1476), 99, 133, 144, 154, 443, **609–610**, 626, 679, 822, 823
Moravia, 904
Moray's Rebellion (1565), 578, **610**
Mordax, **610**
More, Thomas (1478–1535), 200, 398, **610**
Morgan, Henry (c.1635–1688), 683
Morgarten, Battle of (1315), 133, 154, 194, 442, 522, 532, **610–611**, 700, 771, 823
Morgenstern, **611**
morion, **611**
Moriscos, 340, **612**, 955–956
"Morning Star," **612**
Morocco, 10, **612**
Morozov riots (1648), **612**, 620, 935
mortar, **612–613**, 669, 775
Mortimer, Roger de (d.1330), 241
Mortimer's Cross, Battle of (1461), **613**, 927
Moser, Johann (1701–1785), 415
Mossi states, **613**
motte, 59, 223, 305, 499, 599, **613**, 774
motte-and-bailey, 124, 295, 498, **613–614**, 639, 718, 866
mounted shock combat, **614**
Mount Hiei, 644
Mountjoy, Baron of (1562–1606), **614**, 635
mourning war, **614**
moyen/moyenne, **614**
Mozambique, **614**
Mu'awiya, 106–107, 775
mudéjar, 505, 506, **614**
mufflers, **614**
Mughal Army, **614–615**
Mughal Empire (1526–1857), 2, 6, 27, 57, 215, 297, 305, 363, 364, 438, 444, 464, 482, 499, 570, 572, **615**, 617, 629, 663, 719, 735, 775, 805, 862, 954
Muhammad (c.570–632), 212, 408–409, 456, 461–462, 775–776, 816
Muhammad I (r.1413–1421), 409, **615–616**, 654
Muhammad II (1430–1481), 8, **616–617**, 737, 814, 890
  Balkan invasion and, 426
  delayed ascent of, 478
  engineers and, 258
  Janissaries strike (1446–1451) and, 478
  Negroponte and, 629
  Ottomans under, 426
  Siege of Constantinople by, 39, 102, 173–175, 307–308, 654–655
  state cannon foundry and, 28, 616–617
  succession and, 71–72, 513, 618
Muhammad III (1567–1603), 846
Muhammad IV (1641–1692), 35
Muhammad Khudabanda, 754
Muhammad Ture (r.1493–1528), 794
Mühlburg, Battle of (1547), 7, 142, **617**, 762
mujahadeen, **617**
mukai-jiro, **617**

Muley Hacen (d.1484), **617**
mulkgiri, **617**
mullah, **617**
Munich, Treaty of, 131
Münster, Siege of (1534–1535), **617**
Münster, Treaty of (January 30, 1648), 253, **617–618**, 931
Münster, Treaty of (October 24, 1648), **618**, 652, 932
Müntzer, Thomas (c.1490–1525), 345, **618**
Murad I (c.1326–1389), 477, 512, **618**
  conquest of Adrianople under, 654
  Ottoman force under, 575
Murad II (r.1421–1444; 1446–1451), 513, **618**, 654
  emergence of, 71
  Janissary Corps and, 219
Murad III (1546–1595), 846
Muraki Castle, 900
Murbräcker, 372, **618**
Murcia (1243), 727
murder holes, **618**, 782
Muret, 9
  Battle of (1213), **619**
murtat, **619**
Muscovite Army, **619**
Muscovite Orthodox Church, 651
Muscovy, Grand Duchy of, **619–621**, 649, 656, 688, 744, 770, 785, 819, 860, 884
musket balls, 97, 942
musketeers, **621**
muskets, 115, 149, 332, 443, 461, 581, 582, 600, **621–622**, 626, 683, 720, 742, 768, 792, 795, 827, 828
muster, **622**
mutilation, **623**
mutiny, 596, **623**, 711
muzzle-loader, 89, 180, **623**
Mwene Mutapa, 357, 793
Myongnyang, Battle of (1597), **623**, 868
Myton, Battle of (1319), **623**, 765

Naarden, 8, 379
Nablus, 508
Nachhut, 610, **625**, 810
Nachrichter, **625**
Näfels, Battle of (1388), 133, 154, 442, 532, **625**, 700
Nagahama, 863
Nagakute, Battle of (1584), **625**, 862, 867
Nagamasa, Azai (1545–1573), 16
Nagasaki, 482, **625**
Nagashino, Battle of (1575), 30, 369, **625–626**, 644
naginata, **626**, 758
Nájera, Battle of (1367), 82, 504, 505, **626**, 670
Nānak (1469–1538), 786
Nancy, Battle of (1477), 47, 99, 133, 144, 154, 302, 443, 548, 585, 591, 610, **626–627**, 630, 679, 822, 823
Nantes, Edict of (1598), **627**
Nantwich, Battle of (1644), **627**
nao, **627**
naphtha, **627**
Naples revolt (1647), **627**
nariada, **627**
Narragansetts, 440
Narrow Seas, Battle of (1588), **627**
Narváez, Pánfilo de (1480–1528), 838
Naseby, Battle of (1645), 161, 199, 267, 284, 461, **627–628**, 633, 670, 751
Nassau, William of, **628**
National Contingent, **628**
National Covenant (England), 168, 194, 266, **628**
National Covenant (Scotland), **628**
naval warfare and tactics, **628**
Navarre, **628**
Navarrette, Battle of (1367), **628**
nave, **628**
Navigation Acts, **629**
navy royale, **629**
Nayakas, **629**
nef, **629**
nefer-i am, **629**
Negora Temple, 411, **629**
Negroponte, Battle of (1470), **629**, 655
Nemçe (*Nemse*), **629**
Nêmecký Brod, Battle of (1422), 429, 515, 629–630, **629–630**, 702, 890, 955
Nemours, Treaty of (1585), 130, 240, 393, 394, 417–418, **630**
Neo-Confucianism, 170–171
Netherlands, **630–632**
Neuburg, Duke of, 888
Neville's Cross, Battle of (1346), **632**, 766
Nevsky, Alexander (1220–1263), 539, 619, **632**
Newburn, Battle of (1639), **632**
Newbury, First Battle of (1643), 140, 266, 272, **632**, 751
Newbury, Second Battle of (1644), 199, 460, 568, **632**
New England, **632**
New English, 168, 263, 459, 500–501, **633**, 646, 884–885
New France, **633**
New Laws (1542), 257–258
New Model Army, 135, 140, 199, 233, 249, 263, 267, 268, 284, 295, 460–461, 532, 596, 627, **633**, 639,

New Model Army (*continued*) 651, 713, 729, 730, 734, 751, 870, 888, 900, 907, 931, 944
New Monarchies, 369, **633**, 733
New Ross, Battle of (1643), **633**, 650
New Spain, Viceroyalty of, **634**
Ngola, 510, **634**, 736
Nicaea (1331), 652, 654
Nicaea, Council of (325 C.E.), 21
Nichiren Shonin (1222–1282), 383, **634**
Nicomedia, 652
Nicopolis, Battle of (1396), 17, 71, **634**, 785
Nieuwpoort, Battle of (1600), 8, 249, 584, **635**, 652
Nihil Novi statute, 768–769
Nijmegen, Siege of (1591), **635**
Nine Years' War (1594–1603), 256, 272, 459, 614, **635–636**, 884
ninja, **636**
Nizari sect, 432
Noblesse d'epée, **636**
Noblesse de robe, **636**
nobori, 298, 386, **636**
"*Noche Triste*" (1529), **636**, 839
Nombre de Dios, 226, 227, 301
noms de guerre, 871
Nonsuch, Treaty of (1585), 247, 256, 524, **636–637**, 646, 717, 956
Nordic Seven Years' War (1563–1570), 216, **637**, 640, 708, 818
Nördlingen, First Battle of (1634), 61, 76, 252, 290, 344, 607, 623, **637–638**, 647, 660, 696, 741, 854, 894, 931, 941
Nördlingen, Second Battle of (1645), 593, **638**, 856, 931
Normaljahr, 182, 385, **638**, 696, 932
Norman conquest, 308, 332, 416, 469, 646
Normans, 8, 101, 203, 259, 262, 292, 389, 458–459, 463, **638–639**
Northampton, Battle of (1460), **639**
Northampton, Treaty of, 765
North Carolina, 719
Northern Army, 267, **639**
Northern War, First (1558–1583), 68, 216, 271, 472, 537, 538, 539, 620, 637, **640**, 649, 688, 689, 889
Novara, Battle of (1500), **640**
Novara, Battle of (1513), **640–641**, 824, 956
Novgorod, 471
Noyon, Peace of (1516), **641**, 671
Nubia, 566
Nuova Scientia (Tartaglia), 835
Nur al-Din, 205, 756
Nuremberg, Congress of (1650), **641**, 906
Nurgaci (1559–1626), 62, 152, 298, 568, 569, **641**, 760, 870
nüzül, **641**
Nyāya, 402

Oberster Feldhauptmann, **643**
Oberster Feldweibel, **643**
Obrist, 76, 285, **643**
Obrona Potoczna, **643**
ocak, **643**
Oda Nobunaga (1534–1582), 16, 30, 97, 211, 305, 369, 411, 481, 625, **643–644**, 645, 680, 708, 772, 862, 867, 868, 874, 885, 900
Odenwald Band, 347
O'Donnell, Red Hugh (c.1573–1602), 635–636
odoshi ge, **644**
officer, **644–645**
Oghuz Turks, 877
Oikoumene, **645**, 917
Oirat Mongols, 950, 951
Okehazama, Battle of (1560), 643, **645**, 885
okka, **645**
Oldenbaarneveldt, Johan van (1547–1619), 248, 348, 358, 525, 584, 631, **645–646**, 879, 880, 896, 901
Old English, 168, 263, 459–460, 633, **646**
Old Irish, 168, 263, 459, 633, 646, **646**, 884
Olivares, conde-duque de (1587–1645), 127, 279, 530, **646–648**, 660, 677, 730, 740, 797, 812, 852, 905, 916
olive line, **648**
Oliwa, Peace of, 497–498
Oliwa (Oliva), Battle of (1627), **648**
Oman, Charles, 167
Oñate, Treaty of (1617), 250, 530, **648**, 676
Oneidas, 387, 439
O'Neill, Hugh (1550–1616), 635–636, **648**
O'Neill, Owen Roe (c.1583–1649), 268, **648**
O'Neill, Shane (1530–1567), 459
Ōnin War (1467–1477), 342, 481, **648–649**, 772
Onondagas, 387, 439
Opbud, **649**
open order, 229, **649**
Oprichnina, 472, 640, **649**, 835, 914
Orange, Principality and House of, **649**
Ordensmarschall, **649**

Ordensstaat, 71, 385, 430, 537, 538, **649**, 711–712, 843, 844
Order of Aziz, **649**
Order of the Garter, 154, 367, **650**
Order of the Golden Fleece, 154, **650**
Order of Trufac, 506, **650**
Order States, **650**
Ordinance of Valladolid, 798
Ordinary, **650**, 912
Ordonnances ecclésiastiques, 109
ordu bazar, **650**
Orgelgeschütz, **650**
Orissa, 6
Orkhan, 101
d'Orléans, Gaston (1608–1660), 740–741
Orléans, Siege of (1428–1429), **650**, 833
Ormonde, First Peace of (1646), 650–651
Ormonde, Second Peace of (1649), 651
Ormonde, 1st Duke of (1610–1688), 230, 264, 646, **650–651**, 721
Orta, 498, **651**, 722, 944
Orthodox Caliphs, 106
Orthodox Churches, **651**
Osaka Castle, Siege of (1615), **651–652**, 758, 769, 863, 886
Osman I (1259–1326), 100–101, **652**, 654
Osman II (1603–1622), 479, 884
Osnabrück, Treaty of (1648), 489, 618, **652**, 931–932, 934
Ostend, Siege of (1601–1604), 8, 249, 584, 635, **652**, 803
otaman, **653**, 895
Otterburn, Battle of (1388), **653**, 766
Otto I (912–973), 405, 425
Ottoman Army, **653**, 754
Ottoman Empire, 28, 102, 112, 364, 457, 652, **653–657**, 674, 688, 719, 723, 735, 770, 771, 828, 898–899, 917
  consolidation, 656–657
  expansion, 654–655
  logistics and, 560–561
Ottoman-Safavid Wars, **657**
Ottoman warfare, **657–658**, 784, 787
Otumba, Battle of (1520), 13, **659**
Ouagadougou, 613
Outremer, 410, 415, 506, 507, **659**, 844
outworks, 257, **659**
Overijssel, 630
overlordship, 659, **659**, 764, 872
Owu, 951
Oxenstierna (1583–1654), 623, **659–660**, 740, 820, 854, 865
Oyo, 951
o-yoroi, **660**

Pachacutec, Inca Yupanqui (d.1471), 435
Pacification of Ghent, 223, 246, **661**, 939
pacifism, **661**
Pacta Conventa, **661**
Padua, 895
page, 271, 503, **661**, 758
palace guards, **661–662**
palanka, **662**
Palatinate, 530, 801, 933. *See also* Friedrich V; Thirty Years' War (1618–1648)
The Pale, 499, 500, 572, 576, 633, 646, **662**, 885
palfrey, **662**, 919
Panama, 634
Pancerna cavalry, 115, **662**
Panipat, Battle of (1398), 215, 438, **662**, 861
Panipat, Battle of (1526), 57, 499, 615, **663**
Panipat, Battle of (1556), **663**
papacy, **664**
Papal States, 405, **664–665**, 674, 890
Pappenheim, Graf zu (1594–1632), 90, 115, 555, 557, 561, **665**, 859
Paradise Lost (Milton), 365
parapet, 195, 271, 349, **665**, 720
parcq en champ, **665**
"Pardon of Maynooth," **665**
parias, **665**
Parkman, Francis, 439
Parlement (of Paris), **665–666**
Parliament, **666**
Parma, duque di (1545–1592), 19, 131, 223, 247, 296, 342–343, 449, 557, 636, **666**, 859, 921, 939, 956
Parma, Margaret of (1522–1586), 766, 767
Parr, Katherine (1512–1548), 399
Parthian shot, **666**
partisan (1), **666**
partisan (2), **666**
pasavolante, 208, **666**
Pasha, Hasan, 846
Pasha, Kica Sinan, 846
Passau, Convention of (1552), 45, 142, 239, 286, **667**, 851
pata, 572, **667**
patache, 452, **667**, 953
Patay, Battle of (1429), **667**
patis, **667**
patron, **667**
pauldrons, 341, **667**, 801
Paul II (1417–1471), 924
Paul III (1468–1549), 189, 486
Paul IV (1476–1559), 115, 255, 279, 436–437, 447, **667**, 674
Paul V (1550–1621), 530

Pavia, Battle of (1525), 7, 87, 140, 309, 311, 398, 608, **667–668**, 672, 842
pavisade, **668**
pavisare, 201, **668**, 777
pavise, 381, **668**
Pax Dei, 159, 492, **668–669**, 872
Pax Hispanica, 82, **669**
Pax Romana, 290
Payens, Hugues de (d.1136), 507
Peace of God, **669**
Peacock Throne, 615
peasant revolts, **669**
pedites, **669**
pedrero, **669**
Pedro the Cruel (1334–1369), 82, 504, 626, **670**
  civil war between brothers and, 119
  murder of *Mestre* by, 505
  treachery and murders of, 506
Pembroke, Earl of (d.1469), 927
penal settlements, **670**, 870
Penenden Heath, Battle of (1648), **670**
pennant, 298, 502, **670**
pennon, 518, **670**
peones, **670**
Pequots, 440
Pequot War (1636–1637), 441, **670–671**
permanent navies, 101, 158, **671**, 908
Pernambuco, 252
"Perpetual Peace," 420, **671**, 824
perrier, 669, **671**
perrières, 871
Persia, **671**
Perth, 765
Peru, 634, 671, *See also* Inca Empire
Peru, Viceroyalty of (1544), **671**
pervase, 196, 621, **672**
Pescara, marchese di (1490–1525), 517, 667, **672**, 723
petering, **672**
pettite mottes, **672**
Petition of Compromise, 244, 766, 767
Petrarch, Francesco (1304–1374), 466
petrariae, **672**
petrary, **672**
petronels, **672**
petty officer, **672**
Petyhorcy, 662
peytral, **672**, 919
Pfenningmeister, **672**
phalanx, **672**
Philaret (d.1633), 744
Philip II, Augustus (1165–1223), 205, 757
Philip II, of Spain (1527–1598), 50, 223, 526, 669, **672–676**
  Aceh and, 2
  Act of Abjuration (1581) and, 247–248
  Alba and, 7–8
  Augsburg Confession and, 46
  Carafa War and, 115
  Catholic Church and, 407, 724
  Catholic League and, 130, 131, 472
  commission of military map by, 571
  convoys and, 177
  Council of Ten and, 529
  death of, 249
  Dutch rebels and, 17, 243–249
  Elizabeth I and, 247–249, 361, 701
  Ferdinand I and, 380
  finances of, 279, 673
  Franco-Spanish War and, 395
  French Civil Wars and, 320, 321
  grand strategy of, 674–675
  Granvelle and, 242
  Habsburg religious mission of, 142
  House of Fugger and, 332
  Inquisition and, 445, 447
  invasion of France by, 312, 328
  Invincible Armada and, 2, 448–456
  limits of absolutism, 673–674
  marriages of, 254–256, 260–261, 353, 579, 588, 768, 796–797, 944–945
  Mary Tudor and, 254–256, 579, 768, 796–797
  mercenaries and, 591
  outside aid from, 318
  Peace of Augsburg and, 243–244
  Peace of Cateau-Cambrésis and, 469
  Peace of Vervins and, 897
  Philippines and, 678
  Portugal and, 563, 693, 695, 759, 841
  Saint-Quentin and, 756
  Spanish Fury and, 799
  suppression of Protestantism by, 631
  Tenth Penny and, 10
  Treaty of Joinville and, 326, 489
  William the Silent and, 938, 939
  Wyatt's Rebellion and, 580
Philip III, of Spain (1578–1621), 279, 391, 589, **676–677**
  Catholic crusade and, 407
  Duke of Lerma and, 529
  embargo and, 248
  expulsion of Moors by, 281, 797
  finances of, 673–674
  Inquisition and, 446
  mercenaries and, 803
  Pax Hispanica and, 279, 669

Peace of Vervins and, 249–250, 897
Treaty of Oñate and, 648
Twelve Years' Truce and, 380, 879
Philip IV, of France (1285–1314), **677**
Philip IV, of France (1268–1314), Le Bel, 31, 315, 508
arrière-ban and, 31, 315
'Auld alliance and, 765
finances of, 508
Flanders and, 193–194, 299, 607
Papal States and, 664
Philip IV, of Spain (1605–1665), **677**, 797, 931–935
finances of, 251, 279
First Nördlingen (1634) and, 252
Olivares and, 646–648
Revolt of Catalonia and, 127
Thirty Years' War and, 380
Philip VI, of France (1293–1350), 195, **677**, 893
ascension to French throne, 118, 299
Fabian strategy of, 146
Hundred Years' War and, 418–419
Philiphaugh, Battle of (1645), 267, 530, 608, **677–678**
Philippines, 276, 634, **678**
Philippsburg, 741
Philip the Bold (1342–1404), 99–100
Philip the Good (1396–1467), 98
Piatka River, Battle of (1591), **678**
Picardy, 746
picchieri, **678**
Piccinino, Niccolò (1386–1444), 470
Piccolomini, Ottavio (1599–1656), 92, **678**
picorreurs, **678**
pike, 24, 94, 350, 352, 442, 523, 621, 639, **678–680**, 780, 798, 811, 821, 823, 825, 826, 919, 942. *See also* squares; Swiss square
pike-and-bow, 621
pike court, **680**
pikemen, 679, **680**, 760, 825–826
pillage, **680**
Pilsen, Battle of (1618), 570, **680**
Pinkie Cleugh, Battle of (1547), **680–681**, 763
pinnace, **681**
pioneers, **681**, 888
piracy, 39, 64, 68, 95, 115, 183, 331, 360, 536, **681–683**, 719, 768, 793, 799, 891, 902–903, 912
Pisa, Council of (1409), 354
pishchal, **683**
pishchal'niki, 619, **683**, 813
pistolade, 473, **683**
pistols, 352, 518, 581, **683**
Pius II (1405–1464), 923
Pius IV (1499–1565), 189
Piyadeğan militia, **684**
Pizarro, Francisco (c.1478–1541), 171, 435, **684**
Pizarro, Gonzalo (1510–1548), 435–436, 684
Pizarro, Juan (d.1536), 684
placard, **684**
place, 534
place d'armes, **684**
place de sûreté, 236, 240, 323, 419, **684**
Plantagenets, 260
Plantation of Ulster, 884
plantations, **864**, 870, 884
plate, 24, 350, 357, 503, 518, 777, 824
plate armor, 88, 208, 672, **685**, 689, 760, 762, 827
Pluderhosen, **685**, 887
plunder, 542–544, **685**, 732, 772, 836
poczet, **685**, 745
podestà, **686**
pogroms, 277
point-blank range, 686, **686**, 742
poison, **686**
Poissy, Colloquy of (1561), **686**
Poitiers, Battle of (1356), 4, 25, 69, 82, 92, 154, 217, 315, 420, 442, 546, 590, **686–687**, 747, 919
Poitou, Battle of (1622), 329, **687**
Poland, 163, 471, 537, 685, **687–689**, 712, 829, 866–867, 922
Poland-Lithuania, 163, 471, 829, 922
polearm, 626, **689**
poleax, 349, **689**
poleyns, **689**
Polish Army, 537, 685, **689–691**, 712, 745, 866, 887
Polish-Lithuanian Commonwealth (*Rzeczpospolita*), **691**
Polish-Muscovite War (1609–1619), **691**
Polish-Swedish War (1600–1611), **691**, 785
Polish-Swedish War (1621–1629), **691**
politiques (France), 325, **691**
politiques (Netherlands), 325, **691**
Pomerania, 61, **691**, 933
Pomest'e cavalry, **692**, 774, 795, 813
pommes, 871
Pont de Grésin, 897
Ponts de Cé, Treaty of (1598), 328–329

''Poor Conrad'' revolt (1514), **692**
Poor Knights, **692**
port, **692**
portcullis, **692**, 782
port fire, **692**
Portland Bill, Battle of (1588), **692**
portolan chart, 275, **692**, 797, 909
port piece, **692**
Portugal, **692–695**
Portuguese India, 10, **695**
porucznik, **695**
pots de fer, 10, 33–34, 38, 69, 84, 295, 342, 412, **695**, 715
powder scoop, **696**
Powhatans, 440
Powhatan War (1609), **696**
Powick Bridge, Battle of (1642), **696**, 750
Prague, Battle of (1420), **696**
Prague, Peace of (1635), 29, 132, 177, 288, 290, 331, 586, 638, 696, **696–697**, 697, 732, 854–855, 890, 911, 932
Prague, Siege of (1645), **697**
Prague, Siege of (1648), **697**
prangī, 302, **697**
predestination, 23, 109–111, 550, **697**, 703–710 *passim*, 956–957
Preliminaries of Pirna (1634), **697**
Presbyterianism, **697**
press gang, **697**
Prester John, Legend of, **697**
Preston, Campaign of (1648), 21, 199, 269, **697–698**
Preussische Bund, **698**, 712, 844, 922
Preveza, Battle of (1538), 64, 224, **698**
Prévôt des maréchaux, **698**
price revolution (of the 17th century), 381, **698**, 796, 847
prickers, **699**
Prince of Orange, 767, 887
Principe, 75, 510
printing, **699**
Prior Mor, **699**
prise, **699**
prisoners of war, 207, **699–701**
privateer, 39, 64, 68, 86, 88, 97, 158, 168, 203, 226, 233, 256, 261, 331, 360, 423, 477, 531, 535, 635, 682, **701–702**, 708, 712, 719, 734, 747, 748, 768, 779, 799, 909, 912, 953, 954
Privilegium minus, 406, **702**
prize, 681, 694, 701, **702**, 766
prize court, 344, 531, 701, **702**
prize money, 701–702, **702**
Procopius the Great (d.1434), 137, 702, **702**, 890
Procopius the Little (d.1434), **702**
professed, **702**
prohibited weapons, **702–703**
propaganda, **703**
Propositions, **703**
Protestant Ethic, 709
Protestantism, 16
Protestant Reformation, 9, 46, 81, 128, 138, 142, 168, 182, 190, 207, 235, 260–261, 332, 355, 357–358, 369, 380, 398, 407, 415, 431, 433, 447, 458, 487, 534, 545, 574, 602, 631, 655, 664, **703–710**, 733, 763, 785, 786, 799, 815, 817, 891, 924, 934
Protestant Union, 131, 157, 396, 408, 433, 476–477, 489–490, 585, **710–711**, 730, 847, 891
Providence Island, **711**
Provost, 576, **711**
provost marshal, **711**
Prussia, **711–712**
Prussian Confederation, **712**
psychological warfare, **712**
Pubei rebellion, **712**
pulk, **712–713**
punishment, **713**
Puritans, 24, 198–199, 707, **713**, 749
purser, **713**
Pūrva-mīmānsa, 402
purveyance, 699, **713**
Pusan, 868
Pushkin, Alexandr (1799–1837), 606
push of pike, 713
Pym, John (1583–1643), 140, 628, **713**, 912
Pyongyang, Battle of (1592), **713**
Pyrenees, Peace of (1659), 847, 925

Qalat Rawaah, 504
Qasr-i Shirin, 458, 955
Qazwin, 1, 14, 754
Qing dynasty, 217, 444, 568, 641, **715**, 760
Qin Shi Huang (259–210 B.C.E.), 355
Qizilbash, 2, 457, 651, **715**, 754
quarrel, 84, 117, **715**, 762
quarter, **715**
Quarter Army, 690, **716**
quarter deck, **716**
quartermaster, **716**, 926
quartermaster's mate, **716**
quarterstaff, **716**
quarto-cannon, **716**
Quebec, **716**
Quetzalcoatl, 184
quick match, 180, 536, **716**, 791

Raad van State, 524, 636, **717**
rabito, 400, **717**
race-built, **717**
rachat, **717**

Ragnit, fortress of (1275), 538
Rai, Gobind (1666–1708), 786
raiding, **717–718**, 757, 770, 784
Rain, Battle of (1632), 251, 376, **718**, 853, 859, 865
raison d'etat, 466, 599, 934
Rajputs, 5, 27, 499, 615, 629, **718–719**, 775, 914
rake, **719**
Rakoczy, George (1593–1648), **719**
Raleigh, Walter (1552–1618), 253, 416, 701, **719–720**, 748, 768
Ramadan, 567
ramming (of guns), **720**
ramming (of ships), **720**
rampart, 145, 209, 271, **720**, 842
ramrods, **721**
Rana Sangha (r.1509–1527), 499–500, **721**
ransom, **721**
Rantzau, Josias von (1609–1650), 879
Rathmines, Battle of (1649), 269, **721**
rations, **721–722**
Ravaillac, François (1578–1610), 396
ravelin, **723**
Ravenna, Battle of (1512), 302, **723**
Ravenspar, Battle of (1471), **723**
rawcon, **723**
Raya, 533, **723**
al-Raydaniyya, Battle of (1517), 655, **723**, 770
Razats, 326, **723**
razzia, 717, 718, **724**
"*Real*" (flagship), 528
real patronato, **724**
reaming, **724**
rear admiral, **724**, 897
Reconquista, 11, 64, 75, 80, 119, 126, 132, 171, 206–207, 207, 257, 289, 350, 351, 400, 415, 460, 463, 470, 488, 506, 507, 591, 597, 614, 628, 692, **724–728**, 795, 796, 798, 828, 832, 915–916
recruitment, 63, **728**
redan, **728–729**
"red barbarian cannon," **729**
redoubt, **729**
redshanks, 168, 636, **729**
Red Turbans, 79, 96, 149, 411, 517, **729**
reflex bow, **729**
reformadoes, 199, 264, **729**
Reformation, **729**
Reformation Parliament, 398
regard, **729**
regementsstycke, **730**
Regensburg, Treaty of (1630), 61, 647, **730**
Regensburg Diet (1640–1641), **730**
regiment guns, 372
regiments, **730**
Reichsgrafen, **730**
Reichskreis, 48, 131, 407, 513, 525, 532, 585, 711, **730**, 847, 911
Reichsritter, 696–697, **730**, 933
Reichsstädte, 696–697, **730**, 762, 933
Reichstag, 272, 406, **731**
Reims, 753
Reisläufer, 345, **731**, 824
Reiters, 114, 227, 319, **731**, 813, 936
reîtres, **731**
Religionsfriede, 239, **731**
Renaissance, **731**
Renatus (Rene II), Duke of Lorraine (1451–1508), 99, 626
renegades, 28, 34, 62, 64, 85, 438, 457, 478, 520, 658, **731**, 735, 737, 837
Rennfahne, 345, **731**
"*repartimiento*," 258
republicanism, 470
requerimiento, **731–732**
requisition, **732**
rerebrace, **732**
reservatum ecclesiaticum, 45, 561, 638, 696, **732**, 932
resfuerzo, **732**
res publica Christiana, 101, 129, 140, 183, 204, 369, 422, 466, 469, 492, 508–509, 559, 597, 704, **732–733**, 881
restaur, **733**, 919
Restauracão, 695
retirata, **733**
retrenchment, **733**
"Revenge," Fight of, **733**
Revolt of the Netherlands (1487–1492), **733**
Revolt of the Netherlands (1568–1648), **733**
revolution, 681
revolution in military affairs, 260, 263, 369, 381, 689, **733–736**, 869
Rex christianissimus, 182, 317, **736**
Rheinfelden, Battle of (1638), 76, **736–737**, 741, 855, 931
Rhineland, 801. *See also* Spanish Road; Thirty Years' War (1618–1648)
Rhodes, Siege of (1444), **737**
Rhodes, Siege of (1479–1480), **737**
Rhodes, Siege of (1522–1523), 205, 209, 415, 655, **737–738**, 814
ribat, 717, **738**
ribaudequin, 36, 600, 650, **738**
Richard I (1157–1199), 200, 205, 209, 721, 757, 759
Richard II (1367–1399), 82, 260, 420
Richard III (1452–1485), **738**
  claim to throne, 928

Richelieu, Cardinal Armand Jean du Plessis de (1585–1642), 13, 66, 118, 123, 140, 157, 219, 310, 330, 374, 381, 382, 385, 418, 444, 448, 480, 522, 549, 555, 559, 587, 589, 608–609, 646, 647, 660, 684, 691, **738–742**, 739–740, 740–741, 813, 819, 851–852, 854, 913, 921, 925, 931, 933–934
Riddarhus, **742**
rifled-bore, 720, **742**
Riga, Siege of (1621), **742**, 786, 863, 916
rigging, 116, 581, **742**, 755
"right to the bells," **742**
Rigksdag, 272, **742**
Rigsdag, **743**
rings, 518
Rinuccini, Giovanni Battista (1592–1653), 268
Río Salado, Battle of (1340), 11, 727, **743**
Ritter des Deutschordens, **743**
Ritterstand, 433, **743**, 849
Rizzio, David (1533–1566), 578
Roanoke, 720
Robert I (1274–1329), 63, 133, 765
Robert of Artois (1287–1342), 193
robinet, **743**
rockets, **743**
Rocroi, Battle of (1643), 166, 310, 740, **743–744**, 856
Rogers, N.A.M., 116–117
Roggendorf, Wilhelm von (1481–1541), 898
Rohan, Henri, duc de (1579–1638), 329, **744**
Roman Catechism (Council of Trent), 189, 706
Romanov, Michael (1586–1645), 273, 620, 688, **744**, 786, 861
Rome, Sack of (1527), **744**
rondel, **744**
ronin, 481, **744**, 772
Roosebeke, Battle of (1382), 194, 299, **744**
"Root and Branch" petition (1640), 264, **745**
Rostjeneste, 216, **745**
Rostov, 471, 933
rota, 231, **745**
rotmistrz, 156, **745**
Rotte, **745**
Rottmeister, **745**
Rottweil, French seizure of, 879
rotularii, **745**
Rouen, Siege of (1418–1419), **745**
Rouen, Siege of (1449), **745**
Rouen, Siege of (1591–1592), 420, **745–746**, 928
rouncey, 404, 518, 590, **746**
roundel (1), **746**
roundel (2), **746**
Roundheads, 66, 215, 235, 265, 266, 461, 539, 596, 627–628, 632, 721, **746**
Round Hill, 632
round robin, **746**
roundship, 353, **746**
Roundway Down, Battle of (1643), **746**
routiers, 9, 19, 49, 234, 309, 314, 342, 591, 626, 744, **746–747**
Rouvray, Battle of (1429), 285, **747–748**
rowbarge, **748**
royal edicts, registration of, 665–666
Royalists, 265, 576–577, 608, 627–628, 650, **748**, 939
Royal Navy, 477, **748–749**, 754, 806, 866, 897, 909, 912
Royal Prussia, **749**
royal ships, **749**
Royal Sovereign, 355
Royal Touch, **749**
Rudolf II (1552–1612), 191, 489, **749–750**, 779, 859, 955
  Maximilian II succession by, 586
  as mentally unbalanced, 380
  reimposition of Catholicism under, 426
  support of Counter-Reformation by, 407–408
Rudolf von Habsburg, Count (1218–1291), 406
Rumania, **750**
Rumelia, **750**
Rumis, **750**
Rump Parliament, 199
run the gauntlet, 596, **750**
Rupert, Prince (1619–1682), 235, 530, 628, 632, **750–751**
  Edgehill and, 235, 265–267
  Henry Ireton and, 461
  Marston Moor and, 576–577
ruse, **751**
ruses de guerre, 715, **751**
Russia, **751**
Russian Orthodox Church, 349
rusttjänst, **751**
Ruthven, Patrick (c.1573–1651), **751**

sabatons, **753**
Sablat, Battle of (1619), 95, 570, **753**, 849
Sachsen-Weimar, Bernhard von, **753**
sack (of a city), **753**
sacre (1), **753**
sacre (2), 317, 736, **753–754**
al-Sādiq, Ja'far (702–765), 432
Safavid Army, 479, **754**
Safavid Empire, 23, 58, 72, 133, 138, 364, 457, 567, 615, 655, 657, 694, 715, **754**, 770, 814, 891, 915

safeguard the sea, 396, **754**
Safi al-Din (1252–1334), 715
Sagrajas (1086), 725
Saifawa kingdom, 496
sail, **754**
Sailendra dynasty (760–860), 483
sails, 581, **755**
Saint-Denis, Battle of (1567), 162, 321, 608, **755–756**
Saint-Quentin, Battle of (1557), 127, 242, 392, 469, 608, **756**
Saiyids (of Delhi), 215
Saka, **756**
saker, 339, 399, 651, 756, **756**
salade, **756**
Salāh al-Dīn (1137–1193), 107, 205, 243, 415, 486, 508, 566, 659, **756–757**, 759, 877
Salic Law, 327, 418, 677, **757**
sallet, **757**
Salm-Reifferscheidt, Graf Nicholas zu, 898
saltpeter, 365, 366–367
salute, **757–758**
salva guardia, **758**
Salza, Hermann von (d.1239), 843
Samarkand, 57, 457, 604, 615, 891
Samian, Giraud de, 120
Samkhya, 402
samurai, 24, 26, 101, 125, 211, 294, 342, 383, 386, 481, 489, 495, 499, 511, 626, 643, 648, 651, 723, 744, **758**, 761, 772, 777, 828, 836, 863, 885, 942, 949
sanack bey, **758**
Sandalcis, 478
Sangallo, Guilliano da (1445–1516), 67
San Juan de Ulúa, 301
Sanskrit, 402
"*Santa Anna*" (great carrack), 355
Santa Cruz, marques de (1526–1588), 450, 529, **759**, 841
Santiago, Knights of, 597, **759**
Santiago Matamoros, **759**
Santo Domingo, 226, 301
"*São João*" (warship), 355
São Tomé, 75, 510
sap, 681, **759**
Sapa Inca, 435, **759**
sapper, **759**, 782, 795
Saracens, **759**, 816
Sardinia, **759**
Sarhu, Campaign of (1619), 641, **760**
sarmatian armor, **760**
sashimono, 298, 386, **760**
saubannerzug, **760**
sauve-garde, **760**
Savonarola, Girolamo (1452–1498), **760–761**
Saxon Army, 906
Saxony, **761**, 906
scaling ladders, 782
scalping, 441, **761**
scarp, **761**
schiltron, 63, 284, **761**, 765, 780
schiopettari, **761**
Schladming, Battle of (1525), **761**
Schlegelerbund, **762**, 817
Schmalkaldic League (1546–1547), 7, 47, 82, 142, 191, 216, 286, 379, 407, 433, 762, **762**, 845
Schnepper, 202, **762**
scholastic rationalism, 550
scholastic theology, 704
Schultheiss, **762**
schutterijen, 230, 244, 524, 583, **762**, 767
Schweizerdegen, **762**
Schweizerdolch, **762**
Schwyz, 957
schynbalds, 476, 689, **762**
scorched earth, **763**
Scotland, **763–764**
Scots Archers, 421, **764**, 897
Scots-Royalists, 697–698
Scottish Kirk, 263
Scottish Wars (13th–14th centuries), 63, 134, 146, 241, 260, 262, 284, 384–385, 404, 419, 436, 653, 700, 763, **764–766**, 810, 903
Scottish Wars (15th–17th centuries), **766**
Scotus, John Duns (d.1308), 550
scourers, **766**
scurvy, 222, 722, **766**
scutage (*scutagium*), 262, 436, 591, **766–767**, 773
scuttle, **767**
Sea Beggars ("*Gueux*"), 12, 19, 29, 93, 94, 198, 245, 249, 251, 296, 300, 323, 454, 525, 548, 583, 646, 647, 701, **767**, 880, 899, 939, 956
Sea Brothers, **767**
Seacroft Moor, Battle of (1643), **768**
sea dogs, 261, 388, 682, 701, **768**, 797
sea power, **768**
Sea Victuallers, **768**
Sebastião (Sebastian), of Portugal (1548–1578), 10, 89
seclusion decrees, **768**
secret, **768**
Sefarad, **768**
sefer bahşişi, 497, **768**
segadors, 127
Sejm, 272, 661, 691, **768–769**, 829
sejmiki, **769**
sekban, 136, 478, **769**
Sekigahara, Battle of (1600), 482, **769**, 863, 886

Selim I (1467–1520), 72, 108, 138, 457, 576, 655, **769–770**, 814
Selim II (1524–1574), 529, 586, 623, **770**
  fleet of, 526, 656
Seljuk Turks, 23, 102, 107, 204, 293, 299, 409, 463, 604, 639, 652, 654, 756–757, **770–771**, 814, 877–878, 878, 917
Seminara, Battle of (1495), 137, 179, 468, **771**
Sempach, Battle of (1386), 133, 154, 366, 384, 442, 700, 771, **771**, 823
Sempach, Covenant of (1393), 19, **771–772**, 823
Senecas, 387, 439
Sengoku daimyo, **772**
Sengoku jidai (1467–1568), 69, 125, 211, 295, 304, 369, 412, 481, 636, 648, 736, 758, **772**, 777, 874, 885
Seoul, Battle of (1592), **772**
seppuku, 862
serasker, **772**
Serbia, 750, **772**
Serb Sindin (''Serbian Defeat''), Battle of (1371), **772**
serdar, **772**
Serdengeçti (*serden-geçtiler*), 497, 658, **773**, 811, 886, 898–899
serfdom, **773**
sergeant, 133, 589, 659, 687, **773**, 842, 926
Seritsa River, Battle of (1501), **773**
serpentine, 29, 208, 582, **773**
Servetus, Michael (1511–1553), 109
service in the host, 773
serving the vent, **773**
servitium debitum, 146, 217, 262, 315, 367, 433, 728, **773**, 910, 912
servitium scottianum, 763, **774**
servitor cavalry, 135, 472, 619, 623, 640, 692, 914
servitor classes, 88, **774**, 795, 860
sesto, 470, **774**
Seville, 727
Seymour, Jane (c.1509–1537), 399
Sforza, Francesco (1401–1466), 470
Sforza, Ludovico (1451–1508), **774**, 818, 824
Sforza, Maximilian (1493–1530), 573, 640, **774**, 824
Sforza family, 468, 525, 573, 640, 774, 818, 824
shaffron, **774**
Shah Jahan (1592–1666), 615
Shajar al-Durr (d.1259), 566
Shakespeare, William (1564–1616), 255–256
shallop, **774**
Shameful Peace (1328), 262, 765
shell-keep, **774**
shells, **775**
Sher Khan (1486–1545), 615, 663, **775**
shī'a Islam, 175, 242, 297, 409, 465, 754, 756, 770, **775–776**, 788, 877
shields/shielding, 257, **776–777**, 811
shī'ism, 457
shi'ite, **777**
shijō, 304, 772, **777**
Shimabara Rebellion (1637–1638), 495, **777**
shino-gote, **777**
ship money, 263, **777**
ship-of-the-line, 336, 363, 534, **777**
ships, **778**
ship's boys, **778**
ship-smashers, 335, 542, **778–779**, 897
shipyards, **779**
Shirley, Anthony (1565–1635), 1, 754, **779–780**, 780
Shirley, Robert (c.1581–1628), 1, 754, 779, **780**
Shock (tactics), 114, 134, 161, 188, 372, 518, 679, **780**, 825, 907, 920
Shogun (''*Sei-i-tai-shogun*''), 59, 648, **780–781**, 863
Shona states, 793
shore-to-ship fire, 613
shorten sail, **781**
shot, 137, 666, 669, 720, 756, **781**
Shrewsbury, Battle of (1403), **781**
shugo, **781**
Shuisky, Vasily Vasilievich (1552–1612), 860
shynbalds, **781**
sich, **781**
Sicily, 431, **781**
Sickingen, Franz von (1481–1523), **781**
Sidney, Philip, 956
siege engines, 124, **781**, 871
siege mortars, 399
sieges, 38–39, 223, 746
siege train, 37, **781**
siege warfare, 32, 42, 133, 360, 416, 443, 535, 539, **781–785**, 793
  assaults, 482–783
  indirect approach, 783–785
Sigismund (1368–1437), 111, 137, 427, 428, 490, 515, 629, 634, **785**
Sigismund I (1466–1548), **785**
Sigismund III Vasa (1566–1632), 155, 374, 620, 659, 660, 688, 744, **785–786**, 813, 819, 850, 860
  claim to Swedish crown, 497–498, 894
  Wolgast and, 941

Sigismund August II (1520–1572), 476, 688, **786**
Union of Lublin and, 889
Sigismund of Brandenburg, 489
signals, **786**
Sikhism, **786**
silahdars, **786**
Silesia, **786–787**, 940–941
Simon de Montfort (d.1218), **787**
single-minded bands, 874
sipahis, 17, 43, 352, 478, 497, 512, 513, 529, 561, 575, 653, 773, 774, 786, **787**, 846, 915
sipar, **787**
Sis, Battle of (1606), 2, 458, 656, 754, **788**
Six Nations, 387
Sixteen, The, 212–213, 327, 586, **788**. *See also* French Civil Wars (1562–1629)
Sixtus IV, 445
Sixtus V, 326, 448
skeggøx, **788**
skeleton-built, 115, 116, 161, **788**
"skulking way of war," 440, **788–789**
Slavata, William, 214
slavery and war, **789–791**
slave soldiers, **791**
sleeping sickness, 918
sling, 125, **791**
sloop-of-war, 331, 336, **791**
slow match, 29, 503, 536, 582, 622, 716, **791**
Sluys, Battle of (1340), 241, 420, 423, 546, 765, **791–792**, 909
small shot, 382, **792**
small war, **792**
Smith, Thomas, 884
Smolino River, Battle of (1502), **792**
smoothbore, 443–444, 622, 720, 742, 789, **792**
Smutnoe Vremia (*Smuta*), **792**, 914
Smythe, John, 42
snacca, 547, **792**
Society of Jesus, 89, **792**
Sofala, **792–793**
sōhei, 629, **793**
Sold, **793**
solid shot, 60, 113, 117, 209, 284, 743, **793**
sollerets, **794**
Solomonid dynasty, 273
Somerset, Duke of (Edmund Beaufort, d.1455), 927
Song dynasty, 490
Songhay, 22, 86, 132, 369, 387, 564, 590, 612, 613, 736, 790, **794**, 875, 918
Son of Heaven, 569
Sorel, Agnes (c.1422–1450), 486
Sores, Jacques de, 417
Sound Tolls, 157, 496, 502, **794**, 818, 865
Southern Route Army, **794**
Southern Song, 604
Sovereign Military Order of Malta (SMOM), **795**
sovereignty, 260, 314, 682, 792, 795, 932–933. *See also* caliph; feudalism; "King's Two Bodies"; Protestant Reformation
"sovereignty of the sea," 260, 314, 682, 792, **795**
sow (*truies*), 782, **795**
soyughal, 774, **795**
spahis, **795**
Spain, **795–798**
Spanish America, **798**
Spanish Armada (1588), **798**
Spanish Army, **798–799**, 803
"Spanish Captivity" of Portugal (1580–1640), **799**
"Spanish Fury" (1576), 19, 81–82, 246, 269, 623, 661, 673, 727, **799**, 939
Spanish Inquisition, **779**
Spanish Main, **799**
Spanish Monarchy, **799**
"Spanish musket," 517, **799**
Spanish Netherlands, 16, **799**
Spanish-Portuguese War, 932
Spanish riders, 4, 303, 419, 442, **800**, 821
Spanish Road, 28, 76, 246, 273, 358, 396, 467, 560, 609, 673, 740, 744, **800–801**, 816–817, 854
spar, 581, 742, 778, **801**
spaudlers, 5, **801**
spears, **801**
Speicher (Vögelisegg), Battle of (1403), **801**
Spenser, Edmund (1552–1599), 255
Spice Islands, 534, **801**, 802, 896
spice trades, 10, 67, 175, 222, 332, 563, **801–802**, 804, 818
spiking (guns), 554, **802**
Spínola, Ambrogio di (1569–1630), 176, 249, 348, 391, 584, 652, 800, **803**
Spiritual Exercises (Loyola), 487
split thumb, 943
sponge, **803**
springald, 32, 84, **803**
spritsail, 755
Spurs, Battle of (1302), **803**
Spurs, Battle of (1513), **803**
squadron, 229, **804**
square rig, 755, **804**
squares (infantry), 21, 24, 62, 69, 90, 99, 109, 137, 140, 179, 201, 224, 283, 285, 302, 367, 373, 386, 400, 433, 443, 517, 520, 522, 528, 573, 583, 585, 609, 610, 611, 621, 625, 678, 734, 740, 743, 771, 780, 798, **804**, 811, 822, 823, 824–827, 841–842, 900, 907, 942
squire, 133, **804**

Sri Lanka, **804**
Stadholder, **804**
Stadtlohn, Battle of (1623), 76, 158, 251, **804–805**, 850, 859
Stafford, Edward, 450
staff-weapons, 349, 411, 596, **805**
St. Albans, First Battle of (1455), **805**, 926
St. Albans, Second Battle of (1461), **805**, 927
Stalin, Joseph (1879–1953), 472, 649
standardization (of weapons), **805**
standing army, 1, 2, 65, 71, 101, 107, 157, 164, 167, 177, 293, 371, 407, 412, 478, 521, 593, 599, 614, 653, 661, 690, 734, 754, 780, **805–806**, 836
standing navies, **806**
standing officer, 713, **806**
Stangebro, Battle of (1598), **806**
starotsy, **806**
starshnya, **806**
States General, 645, **806**
St. Augustine Massacre (1565), **806**
staysails, 755
St. Barthélemy, Knights of Malta and, 565
St. Bartholomew's Day Massacres (1572), 17, 162, 165, 212, 236, 240, 245, 323, 362, 392, 394, 417, 460, 588, **806–809**, 908
St. Bernard of Clairvaux (1090–1153), **809**
St. Crispin's Day, 4, 420
St. Croix, 565
St. Denis, Battle of (1567), **809**
St. Dominic (1170–1221), 9
Stegeborg, Battle of (1598), **809**
St. Elmo, fortress of, 565
steppe nomads, 870
sternpost rudder, 116, 161, **810**, 954
Stettin, Peace of (1570), 637, **810**
Stevin, Simon, 42
Stihmsdorf, Peace of (1635), 660
stiletto, **810**
Stirling Bridge, Battle of (1297), 133, 284, 442, 764, 765, **810**, 903, 937
Stirling Castle, 764
St. Jacob-en-Birs, Battle of (1444), **810–811**, 823
St. Lazarus, Knights of, **811**
Stolbova, Peace of (1617), **811**
stone-tossers, 871
stop-rib, **811**
storm, 599, **811**
Stormakstid, **811**
storming, 83, 813
storm petition, 849
Stoss, Battle of (1405), 532, **811**
Stowe-on-the-Wold, Battle of (1646), **811**
St. Quentin, Battle of (1557), **811**
stradiots, 519, 761, **811–812**
Straslund, Siege of (1628), 404, 532, **812**, 851, 905, 941
strategic metals, **812**
strategy, **812**
Stratton, Battle of (1643), **812**
strel'sty, 640, 683, 774, **813**, 914
St. Thomas, Military Orders and, 597
Stuart, Mary, **813**
studding, 755
Stühlingen, 344
Stuhm, Battle of (1629), 374, **813**
Stuhmsdorf, Truce of (1635), 13, **813**
Sturmgeld, **813**
subashi, **813**
subinfeudation, 639, **813**
sub utraque specie, 108, 427, **814**, 890, 957
Sudan, **814**
Sud-Beveland, Battle of (1574), **814**
Sudler, **814**
Sufism, 776, **814**
Suleiman I (1494–1566), 14, 64, 426, 478, 565, 602, 617, 656, 737–738, 762, 770, **814–815**, 898
Sully, duc de (1560–1641), **814**
sultan, **815–816**
"*Sultana*" (flagship), 528
sultanate, **816**
Suluk, Mehemet, 527
Sumatra, 563
sumpter, 518, **816**
Sunni Ali (r.1464–1492), 794
sunni Islam, 106–108, 615, 756, 770, 775, 788, 814, **816**, 877
Sun Tzu (c.500 B.C.E.), 41
supply lines, **816**
surcoat, 685, **816**, 937
surety towns, **816**
Susa, Peace of (1629), 140, 522, **816**
Susenyos of Ethiopia (d.1636), 274
sutlers, 58, 273, 531, 542, 800, **816**
Swabia, **817**
Swabian League, 345–346, 347, 520, 762, **817**, 823
Swabian War (1499), 109, 224, 313, 357, 520, 585, 774, 817, **817–818**, 823
Swahili Arabs, **818**, 953
Sweden, 811, **818–819**
Swedish Army, 637, **819–820**
Swedish-Muscovite War (1554–1557), **820**

Swedish-Muscovite War (1590–1595), **820**
sweeps, 353, **820**
Sweinfedder, **820**
Swiecino, Battle of (1462), 212, **820–821**, 923
Swift, Jonathan (1667–1745), 558
swine feathers, 800, **821**
Swiss Army, 283, 771, **821–822**, 823, 954
Swiss Confederation, 19, 144, 224, 311, 348, 379, 523, 574, 591, 609, 626, 817, 821, **822–824**, 825
Swiss guards, 662
Swiss square, 21, 62, 69, 99, 109, 201, 224, 283, 285, 302, 367, 386, 400, 433, 443, 517, 520, 522, 573, 585, 610, 611, 625, 678, 771, 780, 811, 822, 823, **824–827**, 942
swivel gun, 40, 125, 149, 302, 332, 339, 668, 692, **827**, 897
Sword Brethren, 406, **827**, 833, 843, 922, 924
sword hunts, **827**
swords, 133, 349, 503, 685, 758, 762, 800, **827–829**
Syon, Amda (r.1314–1344), 273
Syria, 566, **829**
Szigetvár, Siege of (1566), **829**
szlachta, 428, 769, **829**

tabard, **831**, 886
tabor, 366, 479, 500, 630, **831**, 890, 902, 955
Taborites, 298, **831**
Tabrīs, 1, 2, 14, 458, 754
tacking, 930
tackle, 581, **831**
tactics, **831**
Tahuantinsuyu, 434. *See also* Inca Empire
taifa states, 20, 108, 118, 206, 351, 410, 724, 725, **831–832**, 872–873
taille, **832**, 913
taillon, 832, **832**, 913
Taiwan, **832**
Takeda Katsuyori (1546–1582), 625, 862
Talbot, John (c.1385–1453), 119–120, 421, **832–833**
Tamerlane, 23, **833**
Tanegashima, 481
Tangier, 10, 11, 612, **833**
tanko, **833**
Tannenberg, Battle of (1410), 537, 687, 712, **833**, 844, 955
Tarasbüchsen, **833**
Tard-Avisés, 328, **833–834**
targe, **834**
targhieri, **834**
tarides, **834**
tarpaulin, **834**
Tartaglia, Niccolò (c.1499–1557), 42, **834–835**
Tartars, **835**
Tashufin, Yusuf ibn (d.1106), 726
tassets, **835**
tatami, **835**
Tatars, 6, 471, 472, 619, 640, 649, 658, 689, 690, 735, 774, 833, **835–836**, 860, 915, 923, 950
tate, **836**
taxes, **836**
Tauber Valley Band, 346
teamsters, **836**
technology and war, **837**
Tell, William of Uri, 826
Templars, **838**
Temüjin (1162–1227), 604
tenaille, **838**
Tendai monastery, 644
tenere in dominico, **838**
tenere in servitio, **838**
ten-eyed gun, **838**
Tengkodogo, 613
Tennoji, Battle of (1615), **838**
Tennyson, Alfred Lord (1809–1892), 357
Tenochtitlán, 13, 51, 52, 53–54, 71, 184, 185, 186, 601, 651, 659, 838–840, 840–841, 947
Tenochtitlán, First Siege of (1520), 13, 51, 52, 53–54, 185, 601, 651, **838–840**
Tenochtitlán, Second Siege of (1521), 13, 186, 659, **840–841**
Tenth Penny, 10, 244, **841**
Tepaneca, 51–52, 590
Tepeca, 840
terakki, 59, **841**
Terceira, Battle of (1582), 759, **841**
tercio, 90, 137, 140, 179, 373, 400, 517, 528, 583, 609, 621, 635, 668, 678, 734, 740, 743, 798, **841–842**, 900, 907, 942
Terek River, Battle of (1262), **842**
terrain, **842**
terre-plein, **842**
testudo, 782, **842**
Teutonic Knights, Order of, 70, 86, 118, 155, 162, 163, 207, 212, 234, 253, 257, 292, 305, 385, 406, 410, 425, 504, 507, 537, 538, 539, 572, 573, 592, 597, 604, 623, 649, 687, 698, 701, 711, 712, 768, 786, 818, 821, 832, 833, 835, **842–845**, 865, 872, 921–922, 954, 955
Tewkesbury, Battle of (1471), **845**, 928
Thérouanne, Siege of (1543), 399, **845**
Third Rome, **845–846**
Thirteen Years' War (1454–1466), **846**

Thirteen Years' War (1593–1606), 48, **846**
beginning of, 656
Celâli revolts and, 136
end of, 749, 955
Habsburgs and, 380–381, 457
Hungary and, 426
War of the Cities and, 921–922
Thirty, Battle of the (1352), 419–420, **846**
Thirty Years' War (1618–1648), 424, 762, 824, **847–858**, 893
anti-Habsburg propaganda during, 602
anti-Semitism in, 18, 80
artillery in, 121–122, 208, 798–799
Austrian Army and, 48
beginning of, 250, 433, 434, 487, 490, 514, 749, 753, 873, 904
Bernhard von Sachsen-Weimar and, 76
Bohemian Phase (1618–1625), 848–850
border warfare in, 955
Calvinism and, 111
Cateau-Cambrésis and, 310
Catholicism and, 665
cavalry in, 135
Christian IV and, 156
Christian of Anhalt-Bernburg and, 157
contributions in, 176–177, 530
Danish Phase (1625–1629), 850–852
demobilization plan and schedules after, 641
Denmark in, 216, 550, 850–852
Edict of Restitution and, 239
efforts to end, 696
Eighty Years' War and, 300
end of, 618, 652, 719, 856–858
England in, 261
Ferdinand II and, 272, 286, 380, 434
final phase of, 480, 525, 944
First Breitenfeld and, 90–91
flags and, 298
French Phase (1635–1648), 219, 316, 854–856
Friedrich V in, 330, 805
Germany and, 272, 408, 656, 847–858
Grisons in, 358, 842
Gustavus Adolphus in, 371, 374, 535, 751–787, 820, 859, 890
Habsburgs and, 290, 380–381, 447, 739
heralds in, 400
Hofkriegsrat in, 408
horrors of, 492
Huguenots and, 310
Imperial Army in, 660
infantry in, 444
intelligence in, 448
Jansenism and, 480
Lisowczyks in, 537
logistics and, 543
Louis XIII and, 549
magazines in, 560
Maurits of Nassau and, 584
Mazarin and, 587
Mecklenburg in, 587
mercenaries in, 592–593, 700, 763–764, 913, 931
mutinies during, 623
Netherlands and, 632
Peace of Augsburg and, 46
Peace of Vervins and, 897
Peace of Westphalia and, 182, 183, 290, 310, 344, 381, 408, 434, 447, 465, 514–515, 555, 587, 638, 641, 652, 660, 677, 697, 710, 732, 741, 797, 819, 824, 856, 865, 916–917, 931–936
penal settlements and, 670
prolonging of, 131
Protestant Reformation and, 708
Protestant Union in, 711
ransoms during, 721
rations in, 722
regiments in, 730
reservatum ecclesiaticum and, 732
revolution in military affairs and, 734
run the gauntler in, 750
sack of Magdeburg in, 71, 561
sectarian war and, 192
siege warfare in, 812
Spain in, 648, 676, 677
Spanish Road in, 800
Spinola and, 803
sutlers in, 273
Swedish Phase (1630–1635), 813, 819, 820, 852–854
Turenne in, 877
uniforms in, 888
von Mansfeld and, 570
war finance and, 911, 913, 916
White Mountain and, 937
Zusmarshausen and, 956
Thrace, 750
Three Kingdoms, Wars of (1639–1653), **858**
thugur, **858**
Thuringia, 344
Thurn, Count Mathias von (1567–1640), 95, 131, 157, 213–214, 570, 849, **858**, 904
Tiahuanacu, 434
Tibet, 77
Tier (of guns), **858**
Tilly, Count Johann Tserclaes (1559–1632), 90, 95, 131, 157, 158, 177, 251, 344, 375, 376, 404, 525, 552, 561, 570, 585, 599, 647, 718, 804, 851,

852–853, **858–859**, 905, 930–931, 937, 938, 939
timariots, 17, 43, 138, 352, 479, 497, 512, 602, 653, 658, 769, 774, 787, **860**, 915, 955
Timbuktu, 22, 564, 612, 794, 875
"Time of Troubles" (1604–1613), 272, 350, 537, 620, 744, 786, 811, **860–861**
Timur (1336–1405), 17, 57, 71, 215, 219, 438, 457, 566, 605, 615–616, 654, 662, 663, 754, **861–862**
Timurid dynasty, 438, 654, **862**
tin mining, 812
Tippermuir, Battle of (1644), 195, 267, 608, **862**
Tlatelolco, 51–52
Tlaxcala, 184, 659
Tlemcen, 432
Tokugawa Ieyasu (1542–1616), 16, 211, 369, 415, 481–482, 625, 643, 644, 645, 651, 758, **862–863**, 867, 885
Tokugawa Inquisition, 482
Tokugawa Iyemitsu (1604–1651), 482
Tokugawa Shogunate (1603–1867), 59, 63, 364, 405, 482, 483, 736, 742, 781, **863**, 868, 896
Toledo steel, 828
toleration, **863**
Toleration Edicts, 586
Tolsburg, Truce of (1618), 13, **863**
Toltecs, 51
Tomb of David, 405
tompion, **864**
Tonkin, 950
tonlet, **864**
tonnage, **864**
top, **864**
Top Arabacs (*top arabacilar*), 478, **864**
top castle, **864**
Topçu (*Topçuar*), 478, **864**
topgallant, 581, 755, **864**
Tophane-i Amire, **864**
topmast, 581
topsail, 755
Tordesillas, Treaty of (1494), 112, 226, 534, 693, **864**, 953
toredar, **864**
Toro, Battle of (1476), **864**
Torquemada, Tomas de (1420–1498), 278, 447, **864**
torre alberrano, **864**
torre del homenaje, **864**
Torrington, Battle of (1646), **864**
Torstensson, Lennart (1603–1651), 13, 90, 91–92, 480, 855–856, 865, **865**, 941, 944
Torstensson's War (1643–1645), 94, 157, 290, 660, 856, 865, **865**, 932
Tortuga, 565
Torun, Second Peace of (1466), 118, 212, 844, **865–866**, 924
Totonacs, 183
Toul, 933
Tournai, Siege of (1581), **866**
tournaments, 181, 218, 229, 390, 558, 757, **866**, 919
tourney, **866**
Towarzysz, 428, **866**
tower-keep, **866**
Tower of London, 28, 720, **866–867**, 927, 945
Towton, Battle of (1461), **867**
Toyotomi Castle, Siege of (1614–1645), **867**
Toyotomi Hideyori (1593–1615), 651–652, **867**
Toyotomi Hideyoshi (1537–1598), 97, 125, 151–152, 211, 305, 369, 481, 483, 511–512, 625, 644, 708, 758, 769, 862, 863, **867–868**, 878, 885, 908
Trabanten, **868**
trace italienne, 12, 67, 306, 631, **869–870**
train (1), **870**
train (2), **870**
train (3), **870**
trained bands, 78, 164, 199, 264, 272, 274, 434, 450, 632, 697, **870**
transportation, **870**
trans-Saharan trade routes, 564, 590, 873, 875
transubstantiation, 3, 189, 545, 857
Transylvania, **870**
trapper, **870**
treasure fleets, **870**
trebuchet, 28, 32, 124, 127, 223, 306, 672, 782, 843, 867, **871–872**
Trémoille, Louis de la (1460–1525), 640
Trent, Council of, **872**
Trent, Peace of (1501), 468, **872**
Treuga Dei, 203, 492, **872**
tribute, 659, **872–873**, 950
tri-confessionalism, 847
Tridentine Reforms, 189, **873**
Triebel, Battle of (1647), **873**
Trier, bishopric of, **873**
trinity, rejection of doctrine of, 22
Triple Alliance, **873**
Tripoli (Tripolitania), 64, 431–432, 432, 655, **873**, 876
Triumvirate, **873**
Tromp, Maarten van (1598–1653), 225, 252, **873**
Trondheim, 637

Troppau, Battle of (1642), 607, **873**
Tross, **874**
trou de loup, **874**
Troyes, Treaty of (1420), **874**
truages, **874**
Truce of God, **874**
True Pure Land, 411, 644, **874**
trunnion, 724, **874**
Tsushima Island, 383
Tuareg, 86, 564, 725, 794, **875**
Tudor, Mary, **875**
Tudors, **875**
tufang, **875**
Tüfeçis, **875**
Tughluqs, 437
Tula River, Battle of (1372), **875**
Tumu, Battle of (1449), 355, 605, **875–876**
tun, 864
Tunis, 64, 224, 431–432, 655, **876**
"tunnage and poundage," **876**, 912
Túpac Yupanqui (d.1493), 435
Tupís, 88
Turan Shah (d.1250), 107, 566
Turcopoles, 590, 659, **876**
Turenne, Henri de (1611–1675), 314, 531, 593, 638, 856, **876–877**, 879, 931, 944, 956
Turgel, 597
Turkish bow, **877**
Turkish sword, 828
Turks, 463, 835, **877–878**, 891, 917
Turnham Green, Battle of (1642), 265, **878**
Turnhout, Battle of (1597), 249, 584, **878**
turtle ships, 511, 868, **878**, 885
Tuscaroras, 387
Tuţora, Battle of (1620), **879**
Tüttlingen, Battle of (1643), 593, 856, 876, **879**, 931
Tver, 471
Twelfth-imam shi'ism, **879**
Twelve Years' Truce (1609–1621), 8, 29, 231, 250, 300, 331, 348, 358, 490, 529, 584, 600, 632, 646, 648, 676, 749, 797, 803, 847, **879–880**, 896, 897
two swords, doctrine of, **880–881**
Tyndale, William (d.1536), 699, **881**
Tyrol, 346
Tyrone, Earl of (1540–1616), 614, 635, **881**
Tyrone's Rebellion, **881**

udel, 914
Uhlans, 519, **883**
ujen cooha, **883**
Ukraine, **883–884**
Ukrainian Cossacks, 883–884
Ula River, Battle of (1564), **884**
ulema, 6, **884**
Ulm, Treaty of (1620), **884**
Ulrich of Württemberg (1487–1650), 345–346, 692
Ulster, **884–885**
Uluj Ali, 528–529
uma jirushi, **885**
Umar (c.581–634), 106
Umayyad Caliphate (661–750), 775, 790, 831
Umayyads, 106–107, 242, 565, 724
Umma, 461, 462, **885**
Uniate Churches, **885**, 888
Unification Wars (1550–1615), 211, 294, 342, 364, 369, 411, 481, 643, 651, 736, 758, 769, 772, 805, 828, **885–886**
uniforms, **886–888**
Union of Arms, **888**
Union of Arras, **888**
Union of Brest (1595), **888**
union of crowns, 763, 818, 833, **888–889**
Union of Kalmar (1397), 215, 370, 818, **889**, 894
Union of Krevo (1385), 687, **889**
Union of Lublin (1569), 163, 537, 640, 649, 688, 883, **889**
Union of Utrecht, 246, **889**, 939
United Provinces of the Midi, **889**
United Provinces of the Netherlands, **889**
untouchables, 402
Upanishads, 402
Upper Palatinate, 933
Urban (n.d.), **890**
Urban II (1042–1099), 200, 204, 669, **890**
Urban VI (1318–1389), 354, 924
Urban VIII (1568–1644), 480, 587, **890**
urca, **890**
Urslingen, Werner von, 166
Ustí nad Labem, Battle of (1426), 430, 702, **890**
Uthman (c.574–656), 106
Utraquists, 66, 108, 111, 189, 427, 428, 814, **890–891**
Utrecht, 630
Utskrivning, 820, **891**
Uzbeks, 1, 57, 457, **891**
Uzkok War (1615–1617), 48, **891**

vadia, **893**, 913
Valencia (1238), 20, 725, 727
valet, 503, 589, **893**
Valois, Henri, duc d'Anjou, 324, 688. *See also* Henri III, of France (1551–1589)

Valois, House of, 87, 317, 467, **893**
Valois, Margaret de (1553–1615), 323, 326, 394, 806–807
Valtelline, 358, 609, 677, 800, 801, 853, **893–894**
vambraces, **894**
van, **894**
vanguard, **894**
Varberg, 637
Varna, Battle of (1444), 425, 426, 513, **894**
Vasa, House of, 742, **894**
Vasco da Gama (1469–1524), 276, 792–793, 802, 804, **894**
Vasily III (1479–1533), 620
vassalage (*servitium debitum*), 910
Vassesika, 402
Vassy massacre (1562), 240, 319, 362, **894–895**
vatahy, **895**
Vattel, Emerich de (1714–1767), 415–416
Vauban, 793
Vedānta, 402
Vedas, 402
Vegetius, **895**
Velásquez, Diego (1599–1660), 183
Venice, 415, **895–896**, 904
Vera Cruz, 301
Verdun, 933
Vereenigde Oostindische Compaagnie (VOC), 2, 67, 144, 217, 234, 249–250, 482, 483, 646, 804, 879–880, **896**
Verneuil, Battle of (1424), 421, **897**
Vernon, John, 43
Verona, 895
verso, **897**
vertical loyalty, 858
Vervins, Peace of (1598), 249, 312, 395, 800, 879, **897**
vespers, 925
Vespucci, Amerigo (1451–1512), 276
Vesting Holland, **897**
veterans, **897**
veuglaire, **897**
vice admiral, 724, **897**
Vicenza, 895
victualer, **898**
Vienna, Congress of (1814–1815), 932
Vienna, Siege of (1529), 815, **898–899**
Vienne, Council of (1311–1313), 235
Vijayanagar, **899**
Vikings, 259
vintenar, **899**
Virginia, **899**
visor, **899**
Vitelli, Paolo (d.1499), 166
Vivarais, 723
vivente rege, **899**
Vlachs, **899**
Vladimir, Prince (956–1015), 651
vlieboot, 93, **899**
VOC, **899**
Vögelisegg (Voegelinsegg), Battle of (1403), 532, **899**
voivodes, **899**
Volhynia, 883
volley, 789
volley fire, 371, 382, 479, 583, 625–626, 792, 868, **899–900**
von Wallhausen, Johann Jacob, 43
Vorhut, 201, 302, 313, 609–610, 626, 810, **900**
votchina/votchiny, **900**
vouge, **900**
Voynuqs (*Voynuks*), 341, 658, 846, 860, **900**, 915
vozova hradba, 902

waardgelders, 24, 250, 584, **901**
Wachmeister, **901**
Wadids, 562
waft, **901**
wafter, **901**
Wagenburg, 117, 345, 400, 429, 479, 498, 663, 747, 813, 833, **901–902**, 904, 929, 955
Wailing Wall, 405
waist-lames, **902**
Wakefield, Battle of (1460), **902**, 926–927
wakō, 481, 511, 832, **902–903**
Walcheren, Battle of (1574), **903**
Waldemar IV (c.1320–1375), 889
Waldensian heresy, 445
Waldstätte, 302, **903**
Wales, **903**
Wallace, William (c.1274–1305), 133, 260, 284, 764–765, 810, **903–904**
Wallachia, 211, 750, 899
Wallenstein, Albrecht von (1583–1634), 13, 29, 44, 48, 76, 157, 176, 218, 239, 287–288, 290, 376, 404, 487, 514, 530, 544, 553–556, 570, 585, 587, 592, 596, 647, 678, 722, 812, 813, 851, 859, 865, **904–907**, 911, 938, 941
Waller, William (1597–1668), 266, 413, **907**
Wallhof, Battle of (1626), **907**
Walsingham, Sir Francis (c.1530–1590), 579, **908**
Wampanoags, 440
Wang Zhen, 875
Wanli Emperor (r.1573–1620), 151, **908**
war at sea, 682, **908–910**
War Between the Courts, **910**
war by diversion, **910**
war cart, 929
war chest, 98, 176, **910**

war cries, **910**
war dogs, **910**
war elephants, **910**
war finance, 284, 316, 341, 392, 658, 699, 735, **910–917**
  Austria and the Holy Roman Empire, 911
  China, 911–912
  England, 912
  France, 912–913
  Italy, 914
  Mughal Empire, 914
  Muscovy, 914
  Netherlands, 914–915
  Ottoman Empire, 915
  Safavid Iran, 915
  Spain, 915–916
  Sweden, 916–917
  Swiss Confederation, 917
war hammer, **917**
warhorses, 133, 162, 196, 198, 208, 299, 404, 437, 502, 518, 546, 589, 746, 816, 825, **917–921**
war junks, 490
War of Cologne (1583–1588), **921**
War of Smolensk (1632–1634), 853–854, **921**
War of the Breton Succession (1341–1365), 47, 92–93, **921**
War of the Cities (1454–1466), 118, 155, 212, 430, 573, 592, 687, 698, 701, 712, 820–821, 835, 844, 865, **921–924**, 954
War of the Debatable Lands (1532), **924**
War of the Eight Saints (1375–1378), 129, 297, 354, 388, 470, **924**
War of the Mantuan Succession (1627–1631), 287, 302, 330, 391, 549, 585, 647, 677, 730, 740, 852, 890, 893, 905–906, **924–925**
War of the Schmalkaldic League (1546–1547), **925**
War of the Sicilian Vespers (1282–1302), 102, 126, **925**
War of the Three Henries, 130, **925**
warp, **925**
warrant officer, 580, 713, **925–926**
"Warring States," 355, **926**
Warrington, Battle of (1648), **926**
warrior monks, **926**
warships, **926**
Wars of Investiture (1077–1122), 129, **926**
"Wars of Religion" (in France), 704, **926**
Wars of the Roses (1455–1485), 260, 263, 303, 422, 436, 533, 547, 766, **926–929**
Wars of the Three Kingdoms (1639–1651), 168, 701, **929**
war wagons, 623, **929**
Warwick, Earl of (1428–1471), 927–928
wastage, **929**
wasters, **929**
Waterloo, Battle of (1815), 792
weapons, 502, **929–930**
wear, **930**
weather (1), **930**
weather (2), **930**
weather, its effect on military operations, **930**
weather gauge, 68, 225, 452, **930**
weatherly, **930**
Weber, Max (1864–1920), 42, 559, 709
Weepers, 760, **930**
Weimar Army, **930**
Wenceslaus (Wenzel) IV (d.1419) 286, 429
Wenden, Siege of (1577), **930**
Werben, Battle of (1631), 375, 640, 859, **930–931**
Werth, Johann Count von (c.1595–1652), 638, 736, 855, 879, **931**
Wessex, 259
Western Army (England), **931**
Western Army (Japan), **931**
Western Association, 266, **931**
West Indies Company (WIC), **931**
Westphalia, Peace of (1648), 182, 183, 290, 310, 344, 381, 408, 434, 447, 465, 514–515, 555, 587, 638, 641, 652, 660, 677, 697, 710, 732, 741, 797, 819, 824, 856, 865, 916–917, **931–936**
  imperial issues, 932–933
  legal principles, 934–935
  territorial issues, 933–934
Wexford, Sack of (1649), 199, 269, **936**
wheeling, **936**
wheel lock, 30, 114, 115, 215, 229, 357, 373, 519, 582, 585, 683, 731, **936**
Whiggamore Rising (1648), 21, 530, 532, **937**
white armor, 24, 484, **937**
White Company, 166, 388, **937**
White Hoods, 746–747, **937**
White Legend, 82
White Mountain, Battle of (1620), 76, 95, 131, 157, 214, 250, 286–287, 329, 331, 344, 487, 570, 585, 743, 849, 859, 904–905, **937–938**, 938
Wiesloch, Battle of (1622), 76, 570, 849, 859, **938**
William I, of Nassau, **938**

William Louis, of Nassau (1560–1620), 539, **938**
William of Ockham (c.1280–c.1349), 550
William of Orange, 84, 322, 323. *See also* William the Silent
William the Conqueror (c.1028–1087), 613, 638, 639
William the Silent (1533–1584), 7, 17, 84, 94, 244, 269, 322, 323, 343, 390–391, 486, 524–525, 548, 582, 631, 645–646, 661, 675, 691, 717, 766, 767, 804, **938–939**, 956
Wilno (1510), 835
Wimpfen, Battle of (1622), 76, 157, 570, 849, 938, **939**
Winceby, Battle of (1643), 199, 284, 568, **939**
Winchelsea, Battle of (1350), **940**
wind, **940**
windlass, 195, 201, **940**
windward, 68, 930, **940**
winged-tiger gun, **940**
"Winter King," **940**
Winwick, Battle of (1648), **940**
Wismar, Treaty of (1636), 933
witchcraft, 80, 486, **940–941**
Witkov, Battle of (1420), **941**
Wittstock, Battle of (1636), 61, 607, 813, 855, **941**
Wladyslaw IV Vasa (1595–1648), 688, 861
Wolfenbüttel, 552
wolf holes, 874, **941**
Wolgast, Battle of (1628), 157, 813, 851, 941, **941**
Wolsey, Cardinal Thomas (1471–1530), 200, 397, 398, **941**
women, **941**
Woodville, Elizabeth (1437–1492), 927
Worcester, Battle of (1642), **942**
Worcester, Battle of (1651), 764, 870, **942**
worm, **942**
Worms, Diet of (1495), **942**
Worms, Diet of (1521), **942**
wounds, **942–944**
Wrangel, Karl Gustaf (1613–1676), 877, **944**, 956
Württemberg, 817
Würzburg, 346, 940
Wu Sangui (1612–1678), 153, **944**
Wyatt's Rebellion (1554), 254, 509, 524, 580, **944–945**
wybraniecka infantry, 690, **945**
Wycliffe, John (1320–1384), 173, 427, 429, 545, **945**

Xanten, Treaty of (1614), 490, **947**
xebec, 337, **947**
Xochiyaoyotl, **947**
Xuande Emperor (1398–1435), 903, **947**, 954

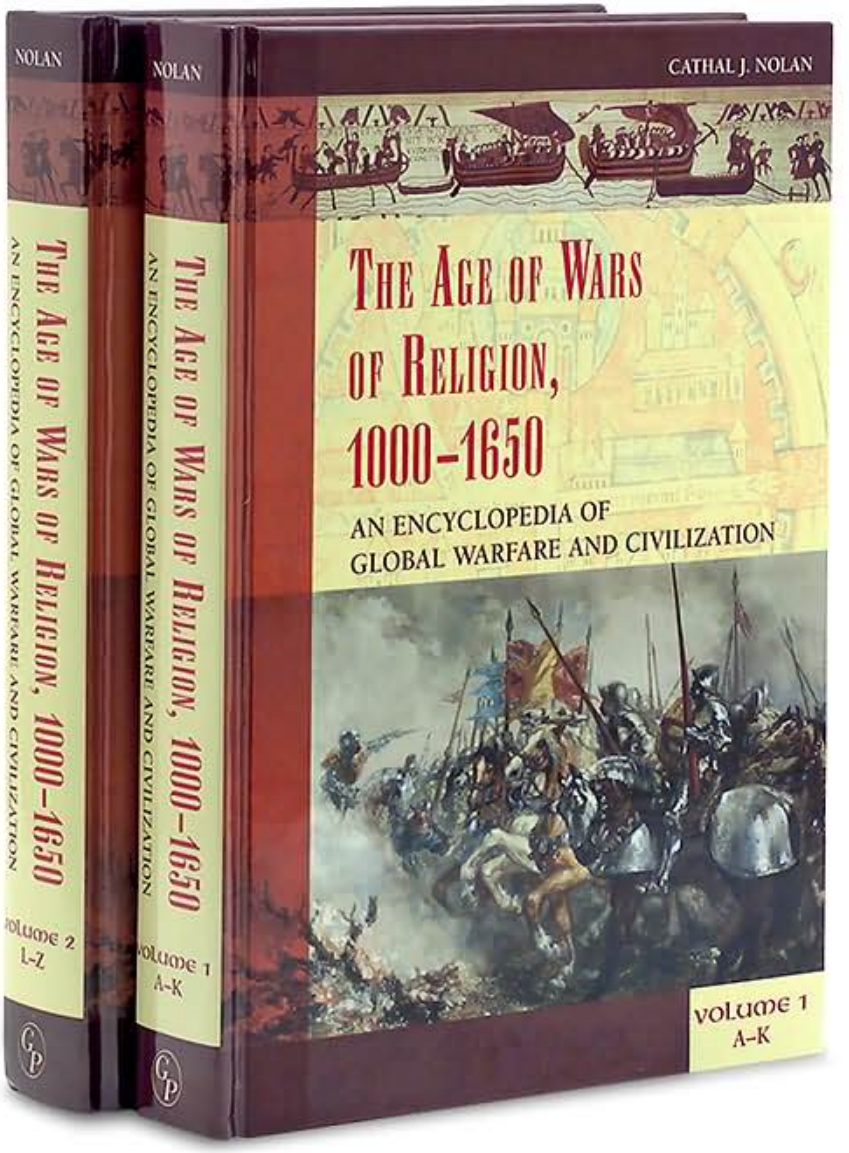
yabusame, **949**
Yaka, 634, **949**
yamajiro, 304, 772, **949**
Yamazaki, Battle of (1582), **949**
Yang Yinglong Rebellion (1587–1600), 908, **949**
yard, 581, 742, 755, 801, **949**
yardarm, **949**
yari, **949**
yari fusuma, **950**
Yaroslavl, 471
yatağan, 828
Yatenga, 613
Yathrib, 461
Yaya infantry, **950**
Yellow Ford, Battle of (1598), **950**
Yellow Waters, Battle of (1648), **950**
Yeniçeri Ağasi, **950**
Yeoman of the Guard, **950**
Yi Sun-Sin (1545–1598), 511, 878
Yongle Emperor (1360–1424, r.1402–1424), 254, 542, 671, 779, 875, **950–951**, 954
York, House of, 260, 926. *See also* Wars of the Roses
Yoruba, 75, 790, **951**
Yoshimoto Imagawa (1519–1560), 645
Ypres, 72
Yuan dynasty, 150, 356, 604

Zabern, Battle of (1525), **953**
zabra, 452, 667, **953**
zakat, **953**
Zanzibar, 818, **953**
Zaporozhian Cossacks, **953**
Zaragoza, Treaty of (1529), 20, 534, 725, **953**
zarbzens, **954**
Zaria, 387
Zatoka Swieza, Battle of (1463), 923–924, **954**
Zayanid, 11
Zemshchina, 649, **954**
zemsky sobor, 272–273, **954**
Zennichimaro, 634
zereb bagtar, **954**
Zeugherr, **954**
Zhang Xianzhong (d.1645), 152
Zhejiang, 903
Zheng He (1371–1433), 150, 274–275, 491, 571, 671, 950, **954–955**
Zhengtong Emperor (1427–1464), 151, 875, 876

Zhou dynasty, 569
Zhu Yijun (1563–1620), 908
Zhu Yuanzhang (1328–1398). *See* Hongwu emperor (r.1368–1398)
ziamet, 220, 860, **955**
Zierikzee, 246
Žižka, Jan (d.1424), 429, 515, 629–630, 720, 833, 890, 901, **955**
Zoroastrian Iran, 456, 462
Zsitva Torok, Treaty of (1606), 749, 846, 847, **955**
Zuhab, Treaty of (1639), 458, 656, **955**
Zuider Zee, Battle of (1573), 767, **955**
Zúñiga y Requesens, Luis (1528–1576), 245, 609, **955–956**
Zusmarshausen, Battle of (1648), 586, 607, 856, 877, 944, **956**
Zutphen, Battle of (1586), 245, 379, 524, 584, 666, **956**
Zutphen, Siege of (1591), **956**
Zwingli, Huldrych (1484–1531), 15, 46–47, 431, 497, 551, 574, 641, 704, 706, 824, **956–957**

About the Author

CATHAL J. NOLAN is Executive Director of Boston University's International History Institute, and Associate Professor of History. He is the author of the multiple award-winning *The Greenwood Encyclopedia of International Relations* (Greenwood, 2002) and the award-winning *Notable U.S. Ambassadors since 1775: A Biographical Dictionary* (Greenwood, 1997). Dr. Nolan has also authored, co-authored, or edited many books, including *Ethics and Statecraft: The Moral Dimension of International Affairs* (Praeger, 2004); *Power and Responsibility in World Affairs: Reformation versus Transformation* (Praeger, 2004); *NATO for a New Century: Atlanticism and European Security* (with Carl Hodge, Praeger, 2002); and *Principled Democracy: Security and Rights in U.S. Foreign Policy* (Praeger, 1993).


NOLAN
The Age of Wars of Religion, 1000–1650
An Encyclopedia of Global Warfare and Civilization
Volume 2
L–Z
NOLAN
The Age of Wars of Religion, 1000–1650
An Encyclopedia of Global Warfare and Civilization
Volume 1
A–K
CATHAL J. NOLAN
The Age of Wars of Religion, 1000–1650
An Encyclopedia of Global Warfare and Civilization
Volume 1
A–K